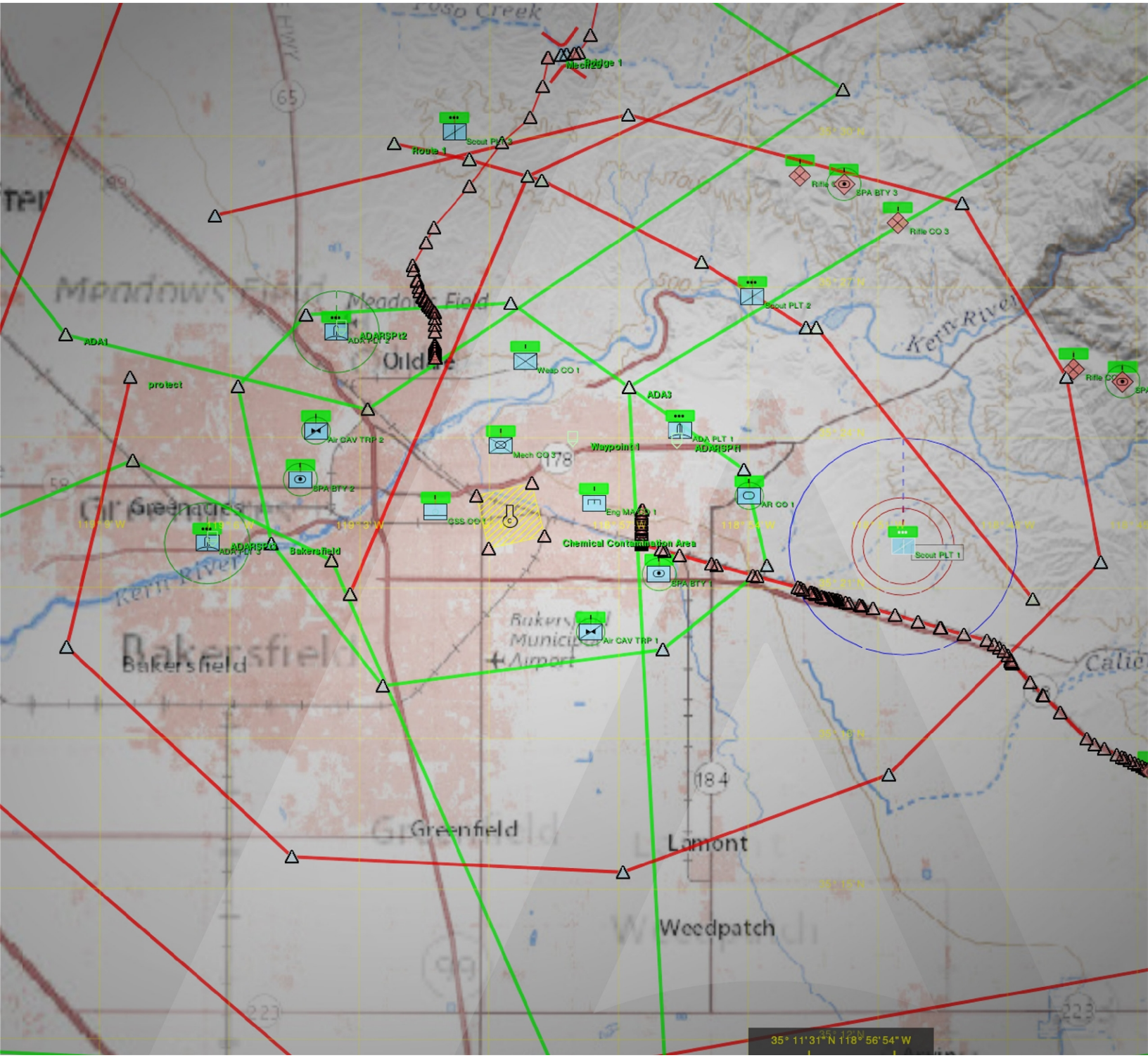
MAK TECHNOLOGIES

# VR-Forces Users Guide




Version 4.10

ST Engineering North America

Copyright © 2021 MAK Technologies
All rights Reserved. Printed in the United States.

Under copyright laws, no part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent of MAK Technologies.

VR-Exchange™, VR-TheWorld™, VR-Vantage™, DI-Guy™, and DI-Guy Scenario™ are trademarks of MAK Technologies. MÄK Technologies®, VR-Forces®, RTIspy®, B-HAVE®, and VR-Link® are registered trademarks of MAK Technologies.

GL Studio® is a registered trademark of The DiSTI® Corporation.

Portions of this software utilize SpeedTree® technology (©2008 Interactive Data Visualization, Inc.). SpeedTree is a registered trademark of Interactive Data Visualization, Inc. All rights reserved.

SilverLining™ is a trademark of Sundog Software.

Terrain Profiles are based in part on the work of the Qwt project (http://qwt.sourceforge.net).

3ds Max® is a registered trademark of Autodesk, Inc.

All other trademarks are owned by their respective companies.

For third-party license information, please see “Third Party Licenses" in the Preface.

MAK Technologies
10 Fawcett Street, Suite 204
Cambridge, MA 02138 USA

Voice: +1 617.876.8085
Fax: +1 617.876.9208

info@mak.com

www.mak.com

Revision VRF-4.10-1-211005

# Contents


## PREFACE

How This Manual is Organized ..... 56
Documentation Set ..... 61
MAK Products ..... 62
How to Contact Us ..... 64
- Telephone ..... 64
- E-mail ..... 64
- Internet ..... 64
- Post ..... 65

Document Conventions ..... 65
- Mouse Button Naming Conventions ..... 66

Third Party Licenses ..... 66
- Boost License ..... 68
- libXML and libICONV ..... 68
- Lua ..... 69
- Freefont OpenType Font Set ..... 69
- QScintilla and SciTE ..... 69
- Autodesk Gameware Navigation ..... 70
- NVIDIA ..... 70
- Third-Party Licenses for VR-Vantage Applications ..... 70

## I. INTRODUCTION, INSTALLATION, AND STARTUP

### 1. Introduction to VR-Forces

1.1. Overview ..... 75
- 1.1.1 Entity-Level and Aggregate-Level Simulation ..... 77
- 1.1.2 Realistic Display of Vehicles and Terrain (3D View) ..... 78

1.1.3 Create Complex Scenarios ... 78
1.1.4 Simulation Object Types Supported ... 79
1.1.5 Mission Planning ... 81
1.1.6 Simulation Object Tasks ... 81
1.1.7 Scripted Tasks and Set Data Requests ... 82
1.1.8 Tactical Graphics ... 82
1.1.9 Terrain Agility and Composability ... 83
1.1.10 Dynamic Terrain ... 83
1.1.11 Crowd Behaviors and Pattern of Life ... 83
1.1.12 Flexible, Intuitive Graphical User Interface ... 84
1.1.13 Overlays ... 84
1.1.14 Behaviors ... 84
1.1.15 Observer Attach Modes ... 84
1.1.16 Special Effects and Simulation Object Information Visualization ... 85
1.1.17 Dynamic Ocean ... 85
1.1.18 Lighting Effects ... 85
1.1.19 Accurate Vehicle Positioning ... 86
1.1.20 Batch Mode Operation ... 86
1.1.21 Remote Control ... 86
1.2. The VR-Forces Toolkit ... 86
1.2.1 Plug-in Architecture ... 87
1.3. DI-Guy ... 87
1.4. Helpful Utilities ... 88
1.5. Third-Party Software and Content ... 88
1.5.1 SilverLining ... 89
1.5.2 Triton Ocean SDK ... 89
1.5.3 GL Studio ... 90
1.5.4 SpeedTree ... 90
1.5.5 3D Models, Terrain, and Graphical Content ... 91
1.5.6 OpenSceneGraph ... 91
1.5.7 osgEarth ... 91
1.6. Distributed Simulation Standards Supported ... 92

## 2. Installing VR-Forces

2.1. Installing VR-Forces ... 94
2.1.1 Installing VR-Forces on Windows ... 94
2.1.2 Installing VR-Forces on a Linux System ... 95
2.1.3 Installing the Toolkit ... 95
2.1.4 Uninstalling VR-Forces from Windows ... 95
2.1.5 Uninstalling VR-Forces from Linux ... 95

2.2. The VR-Forces Directory Structure ..... 96
2.3. Installing and Setting Up the MAK License Manager ..... 97
2.3.1 Specifying the License Server ..... 97
2.4. Installing an RTI ..... 100
2.4.1 Installing the MAK RTI ..... 100
2.5. Localizing the Graphical User Interface ..... 101
2.5.1 Translating Other Interface Files ..... 104
2.5.2 Translating VR-Forces Scripts and Console Messages ..... 104
2.5.3 Applying the Language Files ..... 106

## 3. VR-Forces Application Concepts

3.1. The VR-Forces Program ..... 108
3.2. Front-end and Back-end Concepts ..... 108
3.2.1 How Front-ends and Back-ends Work Together ..... 108
3.2.2 How VR-Forces Back-ends Are Identified ..... 109
3.2.3 VR-Forces Sessions ..... 110
3.2.4 Coordinating Multiple Front-ends ..... 112
3.2.5 Working with Multiple Back-ends ..... 112
3.3. Objects ..... 113
3.3.1 The Object Parameter Database ..... 114
3.3.2 Local Objects and Remote Objects ..... 114
3.4. Representing and Managing Time in VR-Forces ..... 115
3.4.1 Simulation Time ..... 115
3.4.2 Time of Day ..... 115
3.4.3 Exercise Clock Modes ..... 116
3.5. Interactions ..... 117
3.6. Advanced Terrain Navigation ..... 117
3.7. Managing VR-Forces Settings ..... 118
3.7.1 Synchronizing Settings Among VR-Forces Installations ..... 120
3.7.2 Global Settings and Observer-Specific Settings ..... 120

## 4. Starting VR-Forces

4.1. Starting VR-Forces ..... 123
4.1.1 Starting VR-Forces from the VR-Forces Launcher ..... 123
4.1.2 Starting Independent VR-Forces Executables ..... 127
4.1.3 Specifying a Session ID ..... 128
4.1.4 VR-Forces Startup Tutorial ..... 128
4.2. The VR-Forces Window ..... 130
4.2.1 Opening New Windows ..... 132
4.2.2 Printing the VR-Forces Display ..... 133

4.2.3 Taking Screen Captures ..... 133
4.3. Managing a Front-end's Session Connection ..... 134
4.3.1 Joining a Session ..... 135
4.3.2 Resigning from a Session ..... 135
4.3.3 Configuring Session Messages and Join at Startup ..... 135
4.4. Using HLA Time Management ..... 137
4.4.1 VR-Forces Simulation Time Versus Federation Time ..... 137
4.4.2 Configuring Time Management for HLA Exercises ..... 138
4.5. Opening a Terrain Database ..... 139
4.5.1 Loading a Terrain Database at Startup ..... 140
4.5.2 Displaying Terrain Correlation Warnings ..... 141
4.5.3 Closing a Terrain ..... 141
4.6. Exiting VR-Forces ..... 141
4.6.1 Disabling the Quit Prompt ..... 141
4.7. Configuring Simulation Connections ..... 142
4.7.1 Opening the Simulation Connections Configuration Dialog Box ..... 142
4.7.2 Adding a Simulation Connection ..... 143
4.7.3 Editing a Simulation Connection ..... 144
4.7.4 Simulation Connection Parameters ..... 145
4.7.5 Deleting a Simulation Connection ..... 147
4.7.6 Configuring Auto Connect ..... 147
4.7.7 Displaying Connection Information ..... 148
4.8. Managing Plug-ins ..... 149
4.8.1 Loading Plug-ins ..... 149
4.8.2 Adding a Plug-in ..... 151
4.8.3 Specifying the DLLs for a Plug-in ..... 152
4.8.4 Adding a Plug-in Configuration ..... 153
4.8.5 Deleting a Plug-in Configuration ..... 154
4.8.6 Deleting a Plug-in ..... 154
4.8.7 Viewing a List of Loaded Plug-ins ..... 154
4.9. The VR-Forces Log Files ..... 155

## 5. Command-Line Options

5.1. Command-Line Options for vrfGui ..... 158
5.2. Command-Line Options for vrfSim ..... 168
5.3. Command-Line Options for vrfLauncher ..... 175
5.3.1 Running in Combined Mode from the Command Line ..... 176
5.3.2 Using the -- Command-line Argument ..... 177
5.4. Protocol-Independent Command-line Options ..... 177
5.4.1 Specifying the Site ID and Application Number ..... 177

5.4.2 Specifying the Language to Use in the GUI ..... 177
5.4.3 Setting the Notification Level ..... 177
5.4.4 Loading Plug-ins ..... 178
5.5. Command-Line Options for HLA Federations ..... 178
5.5.1 Specifying the Federation Execution ..... 178
5.5.2 Specifying the FED File ..... 179
5.5.3 Specifying the RPR FOM Version ..... 179
5.5.4 Specifying a FOM Mapper ..... 179
5.5.5 Specifying the RPR FOM Revision ..... 179
5.5.6 Specifying FOM Mapper Initialization Data ..... 180
5.5.7 Specifying a FED File That Is Appropriate for the FOM Mapper ..... 180
5.5.8 Enabling Time Management ..... 180
5.6. Command-Line Options for DIS Exercises ..... 180
5.6.1 Specifying the Port Number ..... 180
5.6.2 Specifying Point-to-Point or Multicast Operation ..... 181
5.6.3 Specifying the Multicast Time-to-Live ..... 181
5.6.4 Using Asynchronous I/O ..... 181
5.6.5 Specifying the Exercise ID ..... 181
5.6.6 Specifying the DIS Version ..... 181

## 6. Optimizing Performance

6.1. Introduction ..... 185
6.1.1 Optimizing Simulation Engine Performance ..... 185
6.1.2 Optimizing Front-End Performance ..... 185
6.2. Monitoring the Back-end Frame Rate ..... 187
6.3. Monitoring Script Frame Rates ..... 187
6.4. Displaying Performance Statistics ..... 188
6.4.1 Displaying VR-Forces Performance Statistics and Function Profiler ..... 190
6.4.2 Displaying OSG Statistics ..... 191
6.4.3 Using the Tracy Client ..... 191
6.5. Filtering Simulation Objects Using Interest Management ..... 191
6.5.1 Enabling Interest Management ..... 192
6.5.2 Configuring Interest Management ..... 192
6.6. Clearing the Model Instancing Cache ..... 193
6.7. Miscellaneous Performance Configuration Options ..... 194
6.7.1 Limiting Use of Spot Reports ..... 194
6.7.2 Using Asynchronous I/O for DIS Exercises ..... 194
6.7.3 Using Incremental Compiling with Streamed Data ..... 195
6.8. Setting the Tick Rate ..... 195
6.8.1 Specifying the Tick Rate for Components ..... 196

6.8.2 Tuning the Network Interface ..... 196
6.8.3 Tuning the State Repository Tick Rate ..... 196
6.9. Configuring Graphics Quality ..... 196
6.9.1 Alpha to Coverage ..... 196
6.10. Balancing Visual Quality Against Network Performance ..... 198
6.10.1 Enabling Configuration of Performance Settings ..... 199
6.11. Trajectory Smoothing ..... 199
6.11.1 Configuring Trajectory Smoothing ..... 200
6.11.2 Configuring Articulated Part Smoothing ..... 201
6.12. Tuning the Target Frame Rate ..... 201
6.13. Coloring Draw Calls ..... 201
6.14. Configuring VSync ..... 202
6.14.1 Managing 3D Settings and Multiscreen Performance ..... 203
6.15. Preloading Models ..... 203
6.15.1 Command-Line Options for Preloading Models ..... 204
6.16. DI-Guy Performance Settings ..... 205
6.17. Using the Developer Debug Overlay ..... 206
6.18. Linux CentOS 8 Memory Issue ..... 207

II. SCENARIOS

7. Creating and Running Scenarios

7.1. Creating a Scenario ..... 213
7.1.1 Specifying Multiple Simulation Model Sets ..... 218
7.1.2 Creating Simulation Model Set Configurations ..... 219
7.1.3 Specifying the Default SMS Configuration ..... 221
7.1.4 Setting the Scenario Starting Date and Time ..... 221
7.2. Importing Objects into Scenarios ..... 224
7.2.1 Importing (Merging) Scenarios ..... 224
7.2.2 Importing and Exporting MSDL ..... 225
7.2.3 Importing Scenario Objects from CSV Files ..... 227
7.2.4 Importing Airspace Control Orders ..... 229
7.3. Saving a Scenario ..... 230
7.3.1 Saving a Previously Saved Scenario ..... 231
7.3.2 Saving a Scenario to a New Name or a Different Format ..... 232
7.4. Loading a Scenario ..... 232
7.4.1 Loading a Recently Loaded Scenario ..... 234
7.4.2 Loading a Scenario from the Command Line ..... 234
7.4.3 Editing Scenario Properties ..... 235
7.4.4 Editing the Scenario Description ..... 237

7.4.5 Sample Scenarios ..... 238
7.5. Load Balancing Scenarios ..... 238
7.5.1 Load Balancing an Existing Scenario ..... 239
7.5.2 Loading a Load-Balanced Scenario ..... 240
7.6. Running a Scenario ..... 242
7.6.1 Changing the Simulation Speed ..... 242
7.6.2 Pausing a Scenario ..... 244
7.6.3 Rewinding a Scenario ..... 244
7.6.4 Closing a Scenario ..... 246
7.7. Reinitializing a Scenario ..... 246
7.8. Checkpoints and Snapshots ..... 247
7.8.1 Saving Checkpoints ..... 247
7.8.2 Deleting Checkpoints ..... 249
7.8.3 Creating Snapshots ..... 250
7.8.4 Clearing the Snapshot List ..... 251
7.9. Pausing a Scenario Automatically ..... 251
7.9.1 Setting the Scenario End Time for a New Scenario ..... 251
7.9.2 Setting the Scenario End Time for an Open Scenario ..... 252
7.10. Running VR-Forces in Batch Mode ..... 252
7.10.1 The Batch File ..... 252
7.10.2 Creating a Batch File ..... 253
7.10.3 Editing a Batch File ..... 253
7.10.4 Running VR-Forces in Batch Mode ..... 255
7.10.5 Recording Batch Scenarios ..... 256
7.11. Sending Run and Pause Messages to Simulation Participants ..... 256
7.12. Recording VR-Forces Simulations with the MAK Data Logger ..... 257

## 8. Scenario Events

8.1. Introduction to Scenario Events ..... 260
8.2. Creating a Scenario Event ..... 260
8.2.1 Adding Content to a Scenario Event ..... 263
8.2.2 Adding Linked Events ..... 263
8.3. Adding Intelligence Objects ..... 265
8.4. Starting a Scenario Event ..... 267
8.4.1 Controlling Scenario Events from a Plan ..... 268
8.5. Ending a Scenario Event ..... 269
8.6. Enabling and Disabling Scenario Events ..... 270
8.7. Sorting the Event List ..... 270
8.8. Deleting a Scenario Event ..... 271
8.9. Showing and Hiding Scenario Events ..... 271

## 9. Target Detection and Combat Features


9.1. Displaying Spot-Reported Simulation Objects ..... 274
9.1.1 Enabling or Disabling Spot Reports ..... 274
9.1.2 Configuring the Spot Reports Viewpoint ..... 275
9.1.3 Configuring the Spot Reports Certainty Level ..... 277
9.1.4 Applying Spot Reports to Tactical Graphics ..... 278
9.1.5 Displaying Labels for Spot Reports ..... 279
9.1.6 Using Spot Reports in Tasks ..... 279
9.1.7 Displaying Track Histories for Spot-Reported Objects ..... 279
9.2. Displaying Tactical Data Link Messages ..... 281
9.2.1 Configuring the Display of TDL Messages ..... 281
9.2.2 Displaying Track Histories for TDL Messages ..... 282
9.3. Managing Force Hostility Relationships ..... 283
9.3.1 Changing a Force's Hostility in a Plan ..... 284
9.4. Detecting Targets ..... 285
9.4.1 Target Detection and Spot Reports ..... 286
9.4.2 Lasing Targets ..... 287
9.5. Engagement Zones ..... 288
9.6. Electronic Warfare ..... 289
9.7. Radar Coverage ..... 289
9.7.1 Enabling the Display of Radar Coverage ..... 291
9.7.2 Displaying Radar Coverage ..... 291
9.7.3 Configuring Radar Coverage Displays ..... 291
9.8. Using Sonar ..... 292
9.8.1 Propulsion Noise and Sonar ..... 293
9.9. Launching Counter Measures (Chaff and Flare) ..... 294
9.10. Modeling Artillery Munitions ..... 296


## 10. Indirect Fire, Ballistic Missiles, and Munition Detonations


10.1. Introduction to Indirect Fire ..... 298
10.1.1 Creating an Indirect Fire Event ..... 298
10.1.2 Editing Indirect Fire Events ..... 301
10.1.3 Deleting Indirect Fire Events ..... 302
10.1.4 Configuring Indirect Fire Event Default Values ..... 302
10.2. Ballistic Missiles ..... 303
10.2.1 Firing Ballistic Missiles ..... 304
10.2.2 Editing Missile Target Events ..... 305
10.2.3 Deleting Missile Target Events ..... 306
10.3. Creating Munition Detonations ..... 306

## 11. Setting Environment Conditions


11.1. Introduction to Environment Conditions ..... 311
11.2. Setting the Date and Time of Day ..... 311
11.2.1 Setting the Date ..... 312
11.2.2 Setting the Time of Day ..... 313
11.2.3 Choosing the Illumination Model ..... 313
11.3. Setting Weather Conditions ..... 314
11.3.1 Setting the Wind Direction, Speed, and Visibility ..... 314
11.3.2 Setting the Air Pressure and Temperature ..... 316
11.3.3 Setting Visibility ..... 316
11.3.4 Specifying Precipitation Type and Intensity ..... 318
11.3.5 Setting Rain Accumulation ..... 318
11.3.6 Setting Snow Depth and Elevation ..... 319
11.4. Creating Local Weather Zones ..... 319
11.4.1 Creating a Weather Zone as a Tactical Graphic ..... 322
11.4.2 Editing a Weather Zone's Environment ..... 322
11.5. Using Weather Tactical Graphics ..... 323
11.5.1 Creating Blowing Dust, Sand, or Snow Areas ..... 324
11.5.2 Creating Ground Fog or a Sandstorm ..... 325
11.5.3 Creating Diamond Dust, Haze, Mist, or Smoke Areas ..... 325
11.5.4 Creating a Wind Corridor ..... 326
11.5.5 Creating an Air Turbulence Area ..... 327
11.6. Displaying Weather Conditions at a Location ..... 327
11.7. Configuring Marine Conditions ..... 328
11.7.1 Enabling Marine Effects ..... 329
11.7.2 Configuring Marine Conditions ..... 330
11.7.3 Enabling Tidal Stream Wakes ..... 332
11.7.4 Setting Ocean Quality ..... 333
11.7.5 Configuring Breaking Waves ..... 334
11.8. Setting the Thermocline ..... 334
11.9. Publishing Weather Over HLA Using NETN METOC FOM ..... 335
11.9.1 METOC Object Classes that Can Be Published ..... 335
11.9.2 Enabling the Publication of METOC FOM Classes ..... 336


## 12. Scenario Files


12.1. Introduction ..... 340
12.2. The Scenario File ..... 340
12.2.1 Scenario Parameters ..... 341
12.2.2 Specifying Pathnames for Scenario Files ..... 345
12.2.3 Changing the Terrain Database for a Scenario ..... 346

12.3. The Plan File ..... 346
12.4. The Object Map File ..... 347
12.5. Editing the Scenario Objects File ..... 347
12.5.1 Saving Default Parameters to the Scenario Objects File ..... 348
12.6. The Scenario Extras File ..... 348
12.7. Temporary Scenario Directories ..... 348

III. SIMULATION OBJECTS

13. Introduction to Simulation Objects

13.1. Simulation Objects ..... 352
13.2. How Simulation Objects Are Identified ..... 352
13.2.1 UUIDs ..... 353
13.2.2 Simulation Object Names ..... 353
13.2.3 Echelon IDs ..... 354
13.2.4 Object IDs ..... 354
13.2.5 Labels ..... 354
13.3. How Simulation Objects Are Organized ..... 354
13.3.1 How Echelon IDs Are Assigned ..... 355
13.4. How Simulation Objects Communicate ..... 355
13.4.1 Custom Communication Models ..... 356
13.5. VR-Forces Uses a Component Architecture ..... 356
13.5.1 Sensors ..... 357
13.5.2 Controllers ..... 357
13.5.3 Actuators ..... 357
13.6. Simulation Object Behaviors and Tasks ..... 358
13.7. Entity-Level Modeling and Aggregate-Level Modeling ..... 358
13.8. Collision, Obstacle, and Feature Avoidance ..... 359
13.9. Entity Movement and Soil Type ..... 360
13.9.1 Ground Vehicle Movement on Slopes ..... 362

14. Creating and Placing Objects

14.1. Creating Objects ..... 365
14.2. Selecting the Object to Create ..... 365
14.2.1 Selecting the Object to Create on an Object Palette ..... 366
14.2.2 Selecting the Object to Create on the Create Menu ..... 370
14.2.3 Filtering Object Creation Palettes ..... 370
14.2.4 Draw Mode ..... 373
14.3. Placing Objects ..... 375
14.3.1 Placing an Object Using Default Values (Click to Create) ..... 375

14.3.2 Specifying an Object's Properties Before You Create It (Click to Locate) ..... 377
14.3.3 Default Placement of New Entities ..... 379
14.3.4 Placing Entities Inside Buildings ..... 379
14.3.5 Placing Simulation Objects on Other Simulation Objects ..... 380
14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude ..... 380
14.4.1 Setting Altitude Dynamically ..... 380
14.4.2 Setting Altitude in the Create Object or Edit Object Dialog Box ..... 380
14.4.3 Specifying the Altitude for All of the Vertices in a Route ..... 381
14.5. Specifying an Object's Heading Dynamically ..... 382
14.6. Specifying an Object's Pitch Dynamically ..... 382
14.7. Locking the Mouse to the Object Being Created ..... 383
14.8. Simulation Object Resources ..... 384
14.9. Moving Objects ..... 384
14.9.1 Dragging an Object to a New Location ..... 384
14.10. Editing Simulation Objects ..... 386
14.10.1 Editing an Object's Name in an Object List ..... 388
14.11. Copying and Pasting Objects ..... 388
14.11.1 Copying Objects ..... 389
14.11.2 Pasting Objects ..... 389
14.11.3 Pasting Specific Entity Characteristics ..... 390
14.12. Deleting Simulation Objects ..... 392
14.13. Simulation Object Groups ..... 392
14.14. Creating Random Versions of Similar Entity Types ..... 393
14.15. Creating Cultural Features ..... 393
14.15.1 Embedding Cultural Features in the Terrain ..... 394
14.16. Creating Props ..... 394
14.17. Adding an Object to the Favorites List ..... 395
14.17.1 Removing an Object from the Favorites List ..... 396

## 15. Selecting Objects

15.1. The Objects List Panel ..... 398
15.2. Selecting Simulation Objects, Tactical Graphics, and Props ..... 399
15.2.1 Selecting Objects in the Window ..... 401
15.2.2 Selecting a Simulation Object in the Object Console Summary Panel ..... 402
15.3. Using Selection Groups ..... 402
15.3.1 Creating a Selection Group ..... 402
15.3.2 Selecting a Selection Group ..... 404
15.3.3 Adding Objects to a Selection Group ..... 404
15.3.4 Removing Objects from Selection Groups ..... 404
15.3.5 Renaming a Selection Group ..... 405

15.3.6 Deleting a Selection Group ..... 405

## 16. Viewing Information About Objects

16.1. Displaying Information About an Object ..... 409
16.1.1 Information Dialog Boxes for Entity-Level Scenarios ..... 409
16.1.2 Information Dialog Boxes for Aggregate-Level Scenarios ..... 412
16.1.3 Information Dialog Boxes for Tactical Graphics ..... 414
16.1.4 Viewing Information for Multiple Objects ..... 415
16.2. Displaying Entity Labels ..... 416
16.2.1 Displaying Text Labels for 3D Models ..... 418
16.2.2 Turning Entity Labels On and Off ..... 419
16.2.3 Pinning Text Labels and Symbol Decorations to the Window ..... 419
16.2.4 Displaying Labels for 2D Icons ..... 420
16.2.5 Configuring Shadowing and Background Color for 2D Labels ..... 422
16.3. Using Extended Labels ..... 422
16.3.1 Adding an Extended Label ..... 424
16.3.2 Changing an Extended Label's Index ..... 424
16.3.3 Deleting an Extended Label ..... 425
16.4. Customizing 2D Icon Colors ..... 425
16.5. Changing Force Colors ..... 426
16.6. Displaying HAT Lines for Entities (3D Only) ..... 426
16.7. Displaying Entity Resources ..... 427
16.7.1 Viewing Numerical Resource Data ..... 427
16.8. Displaying Bounding Volumes ..... 428
16.8.1 Enabling and Disabling Bounding Volumes for Entities ..... 429
16.8.2 Showing Bounding Volumes Only for Selected Entities ..... 429
16.9. Configuring Object Console Messages ..... 429
16.9.1 Setting the Notification Level for Console Messages ..... 430
16.9.2 Viewing All Console Messages ..... 430
16.9.3 Answering Questions from Scripted Tasks ..... 431
16.9.4 Saving Console Messages ..... 432
16.9.5 Displaying an Object Console Warning Icon ..... 432
16.9.6 Clearing the Object Console ..... 433
16.10. Viewing Object Counts ..... 433

## 17. Embarked and Embedded Entities

17.1. Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects ..... 436
17.1.1 Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects Instantly ..... 437
17.1.2 Disembarking Simulation Objects Using the Disembark Command ..... 440
17.2. Embedded Entities ..... 441

17.2.1 Configuring an Entity to Support Embedded Entities ..... 442
17.2.2 Assigning Tasks and Plans to Embedded Entities ..... 444
17.2.3 Restoring an Entity that has Embedded Entities ..... 444

## 18. Generating Traffic (Pattern of Life)

18.1. Generating Traffic ..... 446
18.1.1 Spawn and Sink Traffic Generation ..... 446
18.2. Creating Spawn Points ..... 447
18.2.1 Activating and Deactivating Spawn Points ..... 448
18.3. Creating Sink Points ..... 448
18.4. Spawn Patterns ..... 449
18.4.1 How Spawn Events are Scheduled ..... 450
18.4.2 Spawning Entities in Bursts ..... 451
18.4.3 Using a Custom Plan ..... 452
18.4.4 Default Spawn Patterns and Scenario-Specific Patterns ..... 453
18.5. Creating a Spawn Pattern ..... 453
18.5.1 Copying a Spawn Pattern ..... 457
18.6. Editing a Spawn Pattern ..... 457
18.7. Deleting a Spawn Pattern ..... 458
18.8. Generating Air Traffic ..... 459
18.8.1 Choosing an Air Traffic Generation Method ..... 459
18.8.2 Preparing to Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans ..... 460
18.8.3 Creating an Air Traffic Area ..... 462
18.8.4 Creating a Global Plan to Generate Air Traffic ..... 464

## 19. Crowds and Multiple Simulation Objects

19.1. Creating Crowds, Herds, and Multiple Simulation Objects ..... 468
19.2. Crowd and Herd Units ..... 468
19.2.1 Creating Crowd Units ..... 468
19.2.2 Creating Herd Units ..... 469
19.3. Crowd and Herd Areas ..... 470
19.3.1 Creating Crowds Using a Pedestrian Area ..... 470
19.3.2 Creating Animal Herds Using Areas ..... 470
19.3.3 Adding Entities to a Pedestrian or Herd Area ..... 471
19.4. Crowd Tasks ..... 471
19.5. Creating Multiple Simulation Objects ..... 472
19.5.1 Adding an Area for Multiple Simulation Object Creation ..... 475
19.5.2 Specifying the Simulation Objects to Create ..... 475
19.6. Pedestrian-Oriented Tactical Graphics ..... 476
19.6.1 Using Civilian Visit Points ..... 476

## 20. Creating and Using an Order of Battle

20.1. Introduction to the Order of Battle ..... 478
20.1.1 The Order of Battle Panel ..... 478
20.2. Creating an Order of Battle ..... 479
20.2.1 Adding Objects Directly to the Order of Battle ..... 479
20.2.2 Adding Existing Objects to the Order of Battle ..... 481
20.3. Creating Units in the Order of Battle Panel ..... 481
20.4. Instantiating Members of an Order of Battle in a Scenario ..... 481
20.4.1 The Order of Battle Palette ..... 482
20.5. Removing Objects from an Order of Battle ..... 482
20.6. Editing the Objects in an Order of Battle ..... 482
20.7. Changing the Order of Objects in an Order of Battle ..... 483
20.8. Exporting an Order of Battle ..... 483
20.9. Importing an Order of Battle ..... 483

# IV. MODELING UNITS

## 21. Entity-Level Unit Modeling

21.1. Units in Entity-Level Scenarios ..... 488
21.1.1 How Units Are Organized ..... 489
21.1.2 How Units Move ..... 490
21.1.3 How Units Carry Out Tasks ..... 491

## 22. How Aggregate-Level Modeling Works

22.1. The Aggregate Warfare Model ..... 495
22.1.1 Unit Combat ..... 495
22.1.2 Unit Footprints ..... 496
22.1.3 Unit Posture ..... 497
22.1.4 Unit Movement ..... 498
22.1.5 Limited Munition Attack ..... 499
22.1.6 Contamination Areas ..... 499
22.1.7 Unit Sensors ..... 500
22.2. Combat Engineering Objects ..... 500
22.2.1 Concealed Obstacles ..... 502
22.2.2 Creating Combat Engineering Objects ..... 503
22.2.3 How Engineering Units Create Engineering Objects ..... 503
22.3. Logistics ..... 504
22.3.1 Receiving Supplies ..... 506
22.3.2 Providing Supplies ..... 506

22.4. Electronic Warfare ..... 507
22.4.1 Jamming Communications ..... 507
22.4.2 Jamming Radar ..... 508
22.4.3 Sensing Electronic Emissions ..... 509
22.5. Air Combat ..... 509
22.5.1 Loadouts ..... 510
22.6. Air Missions ..... 510
22.7. Fuel Use and Aerial Refueling ..... 512
22.7.1 Aerial Refueling Systems ..... 512
22.7.2 Refueling Missions ..... 512
22.8. Air Bases and Air Missions ..... 513
22.8.1 Preparing Missions ..... 514
22.8.2 Landing Air Units ..... 515
22.8.3 Repairing Aircraft ..... 515
22.8.4 Quick Reaction Alert Status ..... 516

## 23. Creating and Controlling Units

23.1. Creating Units ..... 518
23.1.1 Creating a Unit by Combining Existing Simulation Objects ..... 518
23.1.2 Creating a Preconfigured Unit ..... 520
23.1.3 Configuring the Unit Creation State ..... 521
23.2. Selecting a Unit ..... 521
23.3. Adding Simulation Objects to a Unit ..... 522
23.4. Removing a Simulation Object from a Unit ..... 522
23.5. Units and Unit State in Entity-Level Scenarios ..... 523
23.5.1 How a Unit's State is Shown ..... 523
23.5.2 How Changing Aggregation State Affects a Unit ..... 524
23.6. Triggering Unit State Transitions ..... 525
23.6.1 Aggregating and Disaggregating Units Manually ..... 526
23.6.2 Configuring Automatic Aggregation and Disaggregation ..... 526
23.6.3 Using Disaggregation Areas ..... 527
23.7. Deleting a Unit ..... 527

## 24. Displaying Units

24.1. Selecting Units ..... 530
24.2. Expanding and Collapsing Units ..... 530
24.3. Displaying Ghosted Icons ..... 532
24.4. Displaying Unit Icons and Bounding Volumes ..... 535
24.4.1 Specifying the Color Scheme for Unit Bounding Volumes ..... 537

## V. TASKS

Introduction to Tasks ..... 540

### 25. Assigning Tasks

25.1. Assigning Tasks to Simulation Objects ..... 545
25.1.1 Task Procedures ..... 545
25.1.2 C++ Tasks and Scripted Tasks ..... 545
25.1.3 Concurrent Task Execution ..... 545
25.1.4 How Do I Know Which Simulation Objects Can Execute a Task? ..... 547
25.1.5 Escaping the Task Assignment Process ..... 548
25.1.6 Specifying Parameters for Tasks ..... 548
25.1.7 Viewing Task Status ..... 549
25.1.8 Filtering the Object Selection Lists ..... 550
25.1.9 Skipping (Stopping) a Task ..... 551
25.2. Assigning Tasks to Units ..... 551
25.2.1 Convoy Tasks ..... 552
25.2.2 Independently Tasking Unit Members ..... 552
25.3. Reactive Tasks ..... 552
25.3.1 Enabling Reactive Tasks ..... 554
25.3.2 Disabling Reactive Tasks ..... 554
25.3.3 Setting the Priority of a Reactive Task ..... 555
25.3.4 Managing Reactive Tasks ..... 556
25.3.5 Canceling a Reactive Task ..... 556
25.4. Using Behavior Sets to Manage Scripts ..... 557
25.4.1 Creating Behavior Sets ..... 558
25.4.2 Editing Behavior Sets ..... 559
25.4.3 Assigning a Behavior Set to a Force ..... 560
25.5. Entity Movement On Roads and Off Roads ..... 560
25.5.1 Road Driving Behavior ..... 561
25.5.2 Specifying the Side of the Road to Drive On ..... 561
25.6. Fixed-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors ..... 562
25.6.1 Placement of Newly Created Fixed-Wing Entities ..... 562
25.6.2 Fly Task Behavior Is Different from Move Task Behavior ..... 562
25.6.3 Specifying and Maintaining Altitude for Fixed-Wing Entities ..... 563
25.6.4 Fixed-Wing Entity Movement on the Ground and in the Air ..... 563
25.6.5 How Fixed-Wing Entities Take Off ..... 564
25.6.6 How Fixed-Wing Entities Land ..... 565
25.7. Rotary-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors ..... 566
25.8. Suppressive Fire Tasks ..... 567
25.8.1 Configuring Suppression Effects ..... 569

25.9. Configuring Task Execution Rules ..... 570
25.9.1 Configuring Action Categories ..... 570

## 26. Movement Tasks for Entity-Level Scenarios

26.1. Assigning Tasks Using the Entity Control Panel ..... 575
26.2. Airdrop Along Route ..... 576
26.3. Animated Movement ..... 577
26.4. Come to Stop ..... 578
26.5. Convoy Along ..... 578
26.6. Convoy To ..... 578
26.7. Establish Refueling Station ..... 579
26.8. Fixed-Wing Land At Aerodrome ..... 580
26.9. Fixed-Wing Land On Runway ..... 581
26.10. Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway ..... 582
26.11. Fly Altitude ..... 582
26.12. Fly Heading and Altitude ..... 583
26.13. Fly Heading ..... 584
26.14. To assign a Fly Loiter Pattern task:Fly Loiter Pattern ..... 584
26.15. Follow Entity ..... 585
26.15.1 How Fixed-Wing Entities Follow Entities ..... 586
26.16. Generate Air Traffic From Flight Plans ..... 586
26.17. Land at Airport Near Location ..... 586
26.18. Move Along Route ..... 586
26.19. Move Along Route with Actions ..... 588
26.20. Move Into Formation ..... 590
26.21. Move to Altitude ..... 591
26.22. Move to Bullseye Offset ..... 591
26.23. Move to Depth ..... 592
26.24. Move to Location ..... 592
26.24.1 Adding Multiple Move to Location Tasks to a Plan ..... 593
26.25. Move to Location (Plan Along Roads) ..... 593
26.26. Move to Location (Plan Path) ..... 594
26.27. Move to Waypoint ..... 595
26.28. Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads) ..... 595
26.29. Move to Waypoint (Plan Path) ..... 596
26.30. Orbit Object ..... 597
26.31. Orbit ..... 597
26.32. Patrol Area ..... 597
26.33. Patrol Between ..... 598
26.34. Patrol Route ..... 598

26.35. Pattern Hold (Location) ..... 599
26.36. Pattern Hold (Waypoint) ..... 599
26.37. Refuel From ..... 600
26.38. Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo to Location ..... 600
26.39. Rotary Wing Land ..... 601
26.40. Rotary Wing Retrieve Cargo ..... 601
26.41. Rotary Wing Unload Cargo ..... 602
26.42. Sail Heading ..... 602
26.43. Search and Rescue ..... 603
26.43.1 Fly Creeping Line Pattern ..... 603
26.43.2 Fly Expanding Square Pattern ..... 605
26.43.3 Fly Parallel Pattern ..... 607
26.44. Sweep Naval Mines ..... 609
26.45. Turn to Heading ..... 609
26.46. Zig Zag to Heading ..... 610

## 27. Engagement Tasks for Entity-Level Scenarios

27.1. Arm Mine at Depth ..... 613
27.2. Attack Aircraft with Guns ..... 613
27.3. Drop Naval Depth Charge ..... 613
27.4. Drop Naval Depth Charge at Location ..... 614
27.5. Drop Naval Mine ..... 614
27.6. Drop Naval Mines Along Route ..... 616
27.7. Execute Close Air Support ..... 616
27.8. Explode Charge at Depth ..... 619
27.9. Fire at Target ..... 619
27.10. Fire TOW At Target ..... 620
27.11. Fire Cruise Missile ..... 620
27.12. Fire for Effect Tasks ..... 622
27.12.1 Firing Naval Guns ..... 623
27.13. Fire Team Suppress Target ..... 623
27.14. Lase Location ..... 624
27.15. Lase Target ..... 624
27.16. Launch Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertical) ..... 625
27.17. Launch Ballistic Missile at Location ..... 625
27.18. Launch Ballistic Missile at Target Object ..... 625
27.19. Launch Counter Measures ..... 626
27.20. Launch Smoke ..... 626
27.21. Launch Torpedo ..... 627
27.21.1 Anti-ship (Fixed Depth) ..... 627

27.21.2 Anti-Submarine ..... 628
27.22. Place IED ..... 628
27.23. Provide Suppressive Fire at Location ..... 629
27.24. Provide Suppressive Fire at Object ..... 630
27.25. Release Bomb Tasks ..... 631
27.26. Strafe Ground Target ..... 632
27.27. Throw Grenade Tasks ..... 634
27.27.1 Throw Grenade at Location ..... 634
27.27.2 Throw Grenade at Target ..... 634

## 28. Human and Crowd Tasks

28.1. Circle Around Location ..... 637
28.2. Civilian Idle ..... 637
28.3. Civilian Pray ..... 637
28.4. Civilian Protest ..... 637
28.5. Civilian Talk ..... 638
28.6. Close Door ..... 638
28.7. Close Window ..... 638
28.8. Create Pedestrians ..... 638
28.9. Crowd Along Line ..... 639
28.10. Crowd Around Location ..... 639
28.11. Crowd Around Object ..... 640
28.12. Crowd Around Waypoints ..... 640
28.13. Crowd in Front of Entity ..... 641
28.14. DI-Guy Animation ..... 641
28.15. DI-Guy Gesture ..... 641
28.16. Disperse Crowd ..... 642
28.17. Find Cover ..... 642
28.18. Find Firing Position ..... 643
28.19. Fire Team Bound to Location ..... 644
28.20. Fire Team Occupy Fire Position ..... 645
28.21. Fire Team Travel to Waypoint ..... 645
28.22. Flee from Entities ..... 646
28.23. Move Between Cover to Location ..... 646
28.24. Open Door ..... 647
28.25. Open Window ..... 647
28.26. Parachute to Target ..... 648
28.27. Protest Along Line ..... 648
28.28. Protest Around Location ..... 649
28.29. Riot ..... 649

28.30. Rush to Location ..... 649
28.31. Squad Travel to Waypoint ..... 650
28.32. Wait in Queue ..... 650
28.33. Wander ..... 651
28.34. Wander In Area ..... 651

## 29. Embarkation, Wait, Radio, and Other Tasks

29.1. Embarkation Tasks ..... 655
29.1.1 Disembark ..... 655
29.1.2 Disembark All ..... 655
29.1.3 Embark ..... 656
29.1.4 Airdrop ..... 658
29.1.5 Airdrop from Aircraft ..... 658
29.1.6 Rope Sling Load Pick Up ..... 659
29.1.7 Rope Sling Load Drop Off ..... 660
29.1.8 Fast Rope Insertion ..... 660
29.1.9 Rope Suspension Extraction ..... 661
29.1.10 Extract Using Rope ..... 662
29.1.11 Rope Suspension Insertion ..... 663
29.1.12 Ladder Extraction ..... 663
29.1.13 Extract Using Ladder ..... 664
29.1.14 Ladder Insertion ..... 665
29.1.15 Insert Using Ladder ..... 666
29.1.16 Dismount ..... 666
29.2. Internal Transfer of Fuel Task ..... 667
29.3. Radio Tasks ..... 667
29.3.1 Send Radio Set ..... 667
29.3.2 Send Radio Task ..... 668
29.3.3 Send Text Message ..... 669
29.4. Wait Tasks ..... 670
29.4.1 Wait ..... 670
29.4.2 Wait Duration ..... 670
29.4.3 Wait Elapsed ..... 670
29.5. Tasks for Moving Articulated Parts ..... 671
29.5.1 Close Car Door ..... 671
29.5.2 Close Cargo Door ..... 671
29.5.3 Deploy Refueling Boom ..... 671
29.5.4 Lower Periscope ..... 672
29.5.5 Open Car Door ..... 672
29.5.6 Open Cargo Door ..... 672

29.5.7 Raise Periscope ..... 673
29.5.8 Stow Refueling Boom ..... 673
29.6. Embedded Entity Tasks ..... 673
29.6.1 Deploying Embedded Entities ..... 674
29.6.2 Recovering Deployed Entities ..... 674
29.6.3 Sector Search Operation ..... 674
29.6.4 Deploying an Entity by Assigning a Task ..... 675
29.7. Deploy Sonobuoy ..... 676
29.8. Deploy Sonobuoys Along Route ..... 676
29.9. Sonar Dip ..... 677
29.10. Release Next Entity From Queue ..... 677
29.11. User Task ..... 678
29.12. Reactive Tasks ..... 678
29.13. Background Processes ..... 679

## 30. Tasks for Aggregate-Level Scenarios

30.1. Introduction to Aggregate-Level Tasks ..... 684
30.2. Activate Jammer ..... 684
30.3. Air-to-Air Attack ..... 684
30.4. Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack ..... 684
30.5. Air-to-Ground Attack ..... 685
30.6. Attack by Fire ..... 686
30.7. Attack with Anti-Air Missile ..... 686
30.8. Attack with Anti-Ship Missile ..... 686
30.9. Attack with Land-Attack Missile ..... 687
30.10. Attack with Torpedo ..... 687
30.11. Automatic Air Defense ..... 687
30.12. Biological Attack ..... 688
30.13. Bomb Location ..... 688
30.14. Breach Obstacles ..... 689
30.15. Change MOPP Level ..... 690
30.16. Change Posture ..... 691
30.17. Chemical Attack ..... 691
30.18. Construct Abatis ..... 692
30.19. Construct Anti-Tank Ditch ..... 692
30.20. Construct Barbed Wire ..... 693
30.21. Construct Barricade ..... 693
30.22. Construct Berm ..... 694
30.23. Construct Booby Trap ..... 694
30.24. Construct Bridge ..... 695

30.25. Construct Dry Gap ..... 696
30.26. Construct Fortified Area ..... 696
30.27. Construct Fortified Line ..... 697
30.28. Construct Minefield ..... 697
30.29. Construct Strong Point ..... 698
30.30. Deactivate Jammer ..... 698
30.31. Destroy Bridge ..... 699
30.32. Destroy Ditch ..... 699
30.33. Destroy Explosive ..... 699
30.34. Destroy Fortification ..... 700
30.35. Destroy Obstacle ..... 700
30.36. Disembark ..... 700
30.37. Disembark All ..... 701
30.38. Drop Fuel Tanks ..... 701
30.39. Embark ..... 701
30.40. Escort Air Unit ..... 701
30.41. FASCAM ..... 701
30.42. Halt Movement ..... 702
30.43. Improve Booby Trap ..... 702
30.44. Improve Breach ..... 702
30.45. Improve Bridge ..... 703
30.46. Improve Ditch ..... 703
30.47. Improve Fortification ..... 703
30.48. Improve Obstacle ..... 704
30.49. Indirect Fire ..... 704
30.50. Land at Air Base ..... 705
30.51. Launch Flight ..... 705
30.52. Launch QRA Aircraft ..... 706
30.53. Move Along Route ..... 707
30.54. Move Along Route Retrograde ..... 707
30.55. Move to Location ..... 707
30.56. Move to Location Retrograde ..... 707
30.57. Move To Waypoint ..... 707
30.58. Move to Waypoint Retrograde ..... 707
30.59. Nuclear Attack ..... 707
30.60. Patrol Route ..... 708
30.61. Patrol Between ..... 708
30.62. Prepare QRA ..... 708
30.63. Refuel from Tanker ..... 708
30.64. Refueling Mission ..... 709
30.65. Send NBC Report ..... 709

30.66. Send Obstacle Report ..... 710
30.67. Send Radio Set ..... 710
30.68. Send Radio Task ..... 710
30.69. Send Text Message ..... 710
30.70. User Task ..... 710
30.71. Wait for Escort ..... 710
30.72. Wait Tasks ..... 711
30.73. Background Process List ..... 711

## 31. Creating Scripted Tasks and Sets

31.1. Introduction to Scripts ..... 715
31.1.1 Scripted Tasks ..... 716
31.1.2 Scripted Sets ..... 716
31.1.3 Reactive Task Scripts ..... 716
31.1.4 Background Process Scripts ..... 717
31.1.5 Script Metadata ..... 717
31.1.6 The Lua Scripting Language ..... 717
31.2. Creating a New Script ..... 717
31.2.1 Specifying the Script ID ..... 723
31.2.2 Specifying a Menu Icon ..... 723
31.2.3 Specifying an Extended Name ..... 724
31.2.4 Specifying a Short Description ..... 724
31.2.5 Specifying a Description ..... 725
31.2.6 Specifying Script Parameters ..... 725
31.2.7 Specifying a Menu Location ..... 734
31.2.8 Specifying Action Categories ..... 736
31.2.9 Configuring a Script's Availability to a Simulation Object Type ..... 736
31.2.10 Specifying Equivalent Scripts for a Toolbar Button ..... 740
31.2.11 Specifying the Programming Language for a Script ..... 741
31.2.12 Configuring Scripted Tasks to Run Concurrently ..... 742
31.2.13 Creating Scripted Sets ..... 742
31.2.14 Creating Reactive Tasks ..... 743
31.2.15 Creating Background Processes ..... 745
31.3. Saving Scripts ..... 746
31.4. Editing a Script ..... 747
31.5. Filtering the List of Scripts ..... 747
31.6. Organizing Scripts into Folders ..... 748
31.6.1 Adding a Folder ..... 748
31.6.2 Renaming a Folder ..... 748
31.6.3 Deleting a Folder ..... 748

31.6.4 Adding Scripts to a Folder ..... 748
31.6.5 Removing a Script from a Folder ..... 749
31.7. Exporting and Importing Scripts ..... 749
31.7.1 Importing a Script Package ..... 749
31.8. Copying a Script ..... 750
31.9. Deleting a Script ..... 751
31.10. Creating a System Script ..... 751
31.10.1 Including System Scripts on the Task and Set Menus ..... 751
31.11. Specifying a Script Editor ..... 753
31.12. Editing Lua Files ..... 753

## 32. Writing Scripts

32.1. The VR-Forces Lua Interface ..... 756
32.1.1 Lua Classes ..... 756
32.1.2 Lua Modules ..... 758
32.2. Script Loading and Execution ..... 759
32.2.1 Script Entry Points ..... 759
32.2.2 The Script Execution Sequence ..... 761
32.2.3 Limitations for Checkpointing Scripts ..... 764
32.2.4 Editing Scripts While a Scenario is Running ..... 766
32.3. Tasks and Subtasks ..... 766
32.3.1 Monitoring the Status of Tasks and Subtasks ..... 767
32.3.2 Stopping Tasks ..... 768
32.3.3 Task Parameters ..... 768
32.4. Geometry ..... 772
32.4.1 Location3D ..... 772
32.4.2 Vector3D ..... 772
32.4.3 VectorOffset3D ..... 774
32.4.4 VectorGeoc3D ..... 774
32.5. Coding Messages for Translation ..... 775
32.6. Error Detection ..... 775
32.7. Interactive Scripts ..... 777
32.8. A Basic Scripted Task ..... 777
32.8.1 Create and Move to Waypoint Metadata ..... 778
32.8.2 The Create and Move to Waypoint Lua Script ..... 780
32.9. A Simple Scripted Set ..... 781
32.10. A Simple Reactive Task ..... 782
32.11. Background Processes ..... 783

## 33. Using Qt Designer for Script Dialog Boxes

33.1. Introduction to Using Qt Designer for Scripts ..... 786
33.2. Selecting Qt Designer for Dialog Box Layout ..... 786
33.3. Adding Parameters When Using Qt Designer ..... 786
33.3.1 Specifying Choices for the Choice Parameters in Qt Designer ..... 789
33.3.2 Specifying Categories for a Simulation Object in Qt Designer ..... 790
33.4. Adding Design Elements ..... 791

# VI. SET DATA REQUESTS

## 34. Setting the State of Entity-Level Simulation Objects

34.1. Active Sonar Mode ..... 798
34.2. Add Jamming Target ..... 798
34.3. AI Enabled ..... 798
34.4. Aiming ..... 799
34.5. Aircraft Lighting ..... 799
34.6. Altitude ..... 800
34.7. Appearance ..... 800
34.8. Armed ..... 801
34.9. Articulated Part ..... 801
34.10. Assume Unknown is Hostile ..... 801
34.11. Attention Grabbing ..... 802
34.12. Automatically Close Doors ..... 802
34.13. Capabilities ..... 802
34.14. Collision Avoidance Types ..... 803
34.15. Concealed ..... 804
34.16. Counter Measures Auto Launch ..... 804
34.17. Current Speed ..... 804
34.18. Destroyed ..... 805
34.19. Detonation Fuse Type ..... 805
34.20. DI-Guy Characteristics (Appearance, Head, Body Weight) ..... 806
34.21. DI-Guy Hand Item ..... 806
34.22. Disembarked ..... 807
34.23. Embarked ..... 807
34.24. Emergency Beacon ..... 807
34.25. Emitter ..... 808
34.26. Engagement Zones ..... 809
34.27. Force ..... 809
34.28. Formation ..... 809
34.29. Freeze Fuel Levels ..... 810

34.30. Freeze Movement ..... 810
34.31. Freeze Munition Levels ..... 811
34.32. Group Clamp Fidelity ..... 811
34.33. Heading ..... 812
34.34. Hide Occupants ..... 812
34.35. IFF ..... 812
34.36. Invisible ..... 813
34.37. Invulnerable ..... 814
34.38. Jammer State ..... 814
34.39. Jamming Mode ..... 814
34.40. Lase Autonomous ..... 815
34.41. Laser Code ..... 815
34.42. Laser Power and Wavelength ..... 815
34.43. Loadout ..... 816
34.44. Location ..... 817
34.45. Look At ..... 817
34.46. Markings ..... 818
34.47. Navigation Enabled ..... 818
34.48. Navigation Preferences ..... 819
34.49. Navigation Priority ..... 819
34.50. Notify Level ..... 820
34.51. Orbit ..... 820
34.52. Ordered Speed ..... 820
34.53. Pitch ..... 821
34.54. Posture (Human) ..... 822
34.55. Preferred Trajectory Height ..... 823
34.56. Radar Mode ..... 823
34.57. Remote Sensor ..... 824
34.58. Remove Jamming Target ..... 824
34.59. Reorganize ..... 824
34.60. Resources ..... 825
34.61. Restore ..... 825
34.62. Rules of Engagement ..... 825
34.62.1 How Fire-When-Fired-Upon Works ..... 826
34.63. Sector Blanking ..... 826
34.64. Sector of Responsibility ..... 827
34.65. Sensor Aim ..... 828
34.66. Sensor Field of View Color ..... 828
34.67. Sensor Zoom ..... 829
34.68. Set TACAN Transmitter ..... 829
34.69. Skill Level ..... 829

34.70. Sonar Depth ..... 830
34.71. Spot Reports ..... 830
34.72. Stow Hand Item ..... 831
34.73. Subsystem Enabled ..... 832
34.74. Superior ..... 832
34.75. Surrendered ..... 832
34.76. Synchronize Laser Code ..... 833
34.77. Tanker Lighting ..... 833
34.78. Target ..... 833
34.79. Target Priority List - Add ..... 834
34.79.1 Viewing the Target Priority List ..... 834
34.80. Target Priority List - Clear ..... 834
34.81. Target Priority List - Update ..... 835
34.82. Tasked by Superior ..... 835
34.83. TDL Messaging ..... 836
34.84. Tracer Use ..... 836
34.85. Undetectable ..... 836
34.86. Unit State ..... 837
34.87. Urgency (Human) ..... 837

## 35. Setting the State of Aggregate-Level Simulation Objects

35.1. Activity ..... 841
35.2. Ammunition ..... 841
35.3. Ammunition Pacing/Tracking ..... 841
35.4. Assign Aircraft ..... 842
35.4.1 Editing Aircraft Assignments ..... 843
35.4.2 Deleting Aircraft Assignments ..... 843
35.5. Assume Unknown is Hostile ..... 844
35.6. Capabilities ..... 844
35.7. Concealed ..... 844
35.8. Contamination ..... 844
35.9. Current Speed ..... 844
35.10. Destroyed ..... 844
35.11. Disembarked ..... 844
35.12. Embarked ..... 844
35.13. Emitter ..... 844
35.14. Engagement Zones ..... 845
35.15. Engagement Results ..... 845
35.16. Equipment Pacing/Tracking ..... 845
35.17. Facilities ..... 845

35.18. Food, Water, Fuel, Oil and Lubricant ..... 846
35.19. Food, Water, Fuel, Oil and Lubricant Pacing/Tracking ..... 847
35.20. Force ..... 847
35.21. Has Drag Chute ..... 847
35.22. Heading ..... 847
35.23. Health ..... 848
35.24. IFF ..... 848
35.25. Loadout ..... 848
35.26. Location ..... 848
35.27. MOPP Level ..... 848
35.28. Morale ..... 849
35.29. Notify Level ..... 849
35.30. Ordered Speed ..... 849
35.31. Percent Complete ..... 849
35.32. Personnel and Supplies ..... 849
35.33. Posture (Unit) ..... 850
35.34. Preferred Targets ..... 850
35.35. Radar Mode ..... 850
35.36. Reorganize ..... 850
35.37. Resources ..... 851
35.38. Resources Pacing/Tracking ..... 851
35.39. Restore ..... 851
35.40. Resupply Mode ..... 851
35.41. Role ..... 852
35.42. Rules of Engagement ..... 852
35.43. Sector of Responsibility ..... 852
35.44. Spot Reports ..... 852
35.45. Subsystem Enabled ..... 852
35.46. Superior ..... 852
35.47. Supplying ..... 852
35.48. Tasked by Superior ..... 852
35.49. TDL Messaging ..... 853
35.50. Weapons Pacing/Tracking ..... 853

## VII. PLANS

Introduction to Plans ..... 856

### 36. Plan Concepts

36.1. Introduction to Individual Plans and Global Plans ..... 858
36.2. Conditional Statements ..... 859

36.2.1 The If Statement ... 861
36.2.2 Triggers ... 861
36.2.3 While Statements ... 863
36.2.4 Do Until Interrupt Statement ... 864
36.2.5 Wait Until Statements ... 864
36.2.6 Conditional Tests ... 865
36.3. Plan Variables ... 869
36.4. Viewing Plans ... 870
36.5. Considerations for Creating Plans ... 870
36.5.1 Considerations for Using Triggers ... 870
36.5.2 Using Concurrent Tasks in Plans ... 871
36.5.3 Moving In Formation ... 871
36.5.4 Using the Tasked-By-Superior Request in a Plan ... 871
36.5.5 Following Simulation Objects ... 872
36.5.6 Using Non-VR-Forces Simulation Objects in Plans ... 872

## 37. Writing Plans

37.1. Writing Plans for Simulation Objects ... 875
37.1.1 Adding a Task or Set Data Request to a Plan ... 876
37.1.2 Adding an If Block to a Plan ... 876
37.1.3 Adding a While Block to a Plan ... 877
37.1.4 Adding a Wait Until Statement to a Plan ... 878
37.1.5 Adding a Trigger to a Plan ... 878
37.1.6 Registering Triggers ... 880
37.1.7 Cleaning Up Unused Triggers ... 881
37.1.8 Editing a Statement ... 882
37.1.9 Deleting Statements from a Plan ... 882
37.2. Printing Plans ... 883
37.3. Saving Changes to a Plan ... 883
37.4. Building Condition Statements ... 883
37.4.1 Building a Condition Statement that Has One Condition ... 883
37.4.2 Building a Complex Condition ... 885
37.4.3 Editing Condition Statements ... 891
37.4.4 Specifying Names or Patterns in Condition Statements ... 892
37.5. Using Plan Variables ... 894
37.6. Creating Global Plans ... 896
37.6.1 Controlling When Global Plans Run (Quick Launch) ... 898
37.6.2 Opening an Information Dialog Box for a Global Plan ... 899
37.7. Adding Commands to a Plan ... 899
37.7.1 Adding Tasks and Sets from the Commands Menu ... 899

37.7.2 Sending Text Messages from the Commands Menu ..... 902
37.7.3 Sending Console Messages ..... 903
37.7.4 Creating Objects from Within a Plan ..... 904
37.7.5 Deleting Objects from Within a Plan ..... 904
37.7.6 Issuing a Plan ..... 904
37.7.7 Sending View Control Messages ..... 906
37.7.8 Creating a Sensor View from a Plan ..... 909
37.7.9 Sending Test Results ..... 910
37.8. Writing Plans for Units ..... 911
37.9. Writing a Plan for Multiple Simulation Objects ..... 911
37.10. Writing Plans for Remote Entities ..... 911
37.11. Copying Plans and Plan Statements ..... 912
37.12. Restarting a Plan ..... 912
37.13. Abandoning a Plan ..... 913

VIII. TACTICAL GRAPHICS

38. Introduction to Tactical Graphics

38.1. Introduction ..... 918
38.2. Points ..... 920
38.3. Phase Lines ..... 920
38.4. Routes ..... 921
38.5. Areas ..... 921
38.6. Obstacles ..... 921
38.7. Displaying Tactical Graphics ..... 922
38.7.1 Showing and Hiding Tactical Graphics ..... 923
38.7.2 Showing and Hiding Tactical Graphics Labels ..... 924
38.7.3 Displaying Height-Above-Terrain Lines for Vertices ..... 924

39. Overlays

39.1. Creating and Editing Overlays ..... 928
39.1.1 Creating an Overlay ..... 929
39.1.2 Selecting Overlays ..... 929
39.1.3 Locking an Overlay ..... 929
39.1.4 Hiding the Objects on an Overlay ..... 930
39.1.5 Hiding Newly Created Objects ..... 930
39.1.6 Changing an Overlay's Name ..... 931
39.1.7 Removing an Object from a User-Created Overlay ..... 931
39.1.8 Deleting an Overlay ..... 931
39.2. Saving and Loading Tactical Graphics and Overlays ..... 931

39.2.1 Loading Tactical Graphics and Overlays ..... 932
39.3. Exporting Tactical Graphics as Shapefiles ..... 932
39.3.1 Importing Shapefiles into Overlays ..... 933

## 40. Creating and Editing Tactical Graphics

40.1. Creating Tactical Graphics ..... 937
40.1.1 How Areas Are Drawn ..... 937
40.1.2 Creating Freehand Lines ..... 937
40.1.3 Drawing Circles and Ellipses ..... 938
40.1.4 Drawing Arcs ..... 939
40.1.5 Drawing Sector Areas ..... 939
40.1.6 Drawing Spider Webs ..... 940
40.1.7 Drawing Boxes ..... 941
40.1.8 Creating Volumetric (Extruded) Tactical Graphics ..... 941
40.1.9 Adding Text to an Overlay ..... 942
40.1.10 Assigning Tactical Graphics to an Overlay ..... 942
40.1.11 Displaying a Terrain Profile When You Create a Line ..... 943
40.1.12 Publishing Tactical Graphics ..... 944
40.2. Creating a Computed Route ..... 944
40.3. Creating an Intel Collection Area ..... 945
40.4. Creating and Editing a Minefield Area ..... 947
40.5. Creating Nav Edges ..... 948
40.6. Creating and Using Bullseyes ..... 949
40.6.1 Measuring Bearing and Range ..... 950
40.6.2 Attaching a Spider Web to a Bullseye ..... 951
40.7. Attaching Tactical Graphics to a Simulation Object ..... 952
40.7.1 Attaching a Tactical Graphic Automatically ..... 952
40.8. Deleting Tactical Graphics ..... 952
40.9. Editing Tactical Graphics ..... 953
40.9.1 Editing Vertices ..... 953
40.9.2 Resizing Boxes and Text Objects ..... 955
40.9.3 Rotating an Ellipse ..... 956
40.9.4 Changing the Direction of a Line ..... 956
40.9.5 Changing the Color of a Tactical Graphic ..... 956
40.9.6 Using the Force Color for Vertices ..... 956
40.9.7 Changing Linear and Areal Style Properties ..... 957
40.10. Active and Inactive Tactical Graphics ..... 959

## 41. Setting the State of Tactical Graphics

41.1. Set Data Requests for Tactical Graphics ..... 962

41.2. Activation ..... 962
41.3. Allow Crossing ..... 963
41.4. Arrowhead Style ..... 963
41.5. Color ..... 964
41.6. Fill Style ..... 964
41.7. Force ..... 964
41.8. Line Width ..... 964
41.9. Notify Level ..... 964
41.10. Pen Style ..... 965

## 42. Remote Graphics

42.1. Displaying Remote Graphics ..... 968
42.1.1 Viewing a List of Remote Graphics ..... 969

# IX. VISUAL AND AUDIO EFFECTS

## 43. Displaying Tactical Information and Effects

43.1. Displaying Trailing and Decal Effects (3D Only) ..... 975
43.1.1 Specifying Models for Trailing Effects and Decal Effects ..... 976
43.1.2 Displaying Persistent Tracks ..... 977
43.2. Displaying Track Histories ..... 978
43.2.1 Configuring Track History Segments and Timeout ..... 978
43.2.2 Coloring an Entity's Track History ..... 980
43.2.3 Displaying a Terrain Profile for a Track History ..... 980
43.3. Viewing Fire and Detonation Effects ..... 981
43.4. Viewing Fire and Detonation Lines ..... 981
43.5. Viewing Unit Combat Graphics ..... 982
43.6. Visualizing Tasks ..... 984
43.6.1 Displaying Task Visualizations for an Entity ..... 985
43.6.2 Pinning Task Visualizations for an Entity ..... 985
43.7. Displaying Sensor Contact Lines ..... 986
43.7.1 Enabling the Display of Sensor Contact Lines ..... 986
43.7.2 Specifying Which Simulation Objects Display Sensor Contact Lines ..... 987
43.7.3 Configuring Sensor Contact Lines ..... 988
43.8. Displaying Threat and Sensor Range Rings ..... 988
43.8.1 Enabling and Disabling the Display of Range Rings ..... 991
43.8.2 Pinning Range Rings for a Simulation Object ..... 992
43.8.3 Configuring the Display of Range Rings ..... 992
43.9. Displaying Laser Designators ..... 994
43.10. Displaying Supply Lines ..... 995

43.11. Displaying Tactical Smoke ..... 995
43.12. Displaying Electromagnetic Emissions ..... 996
43.13. Displaying Radio Communication Lines ..... 997
43.13.1 Enabling Radio Communications Graphics ..... 998
43.13.2 Configuring the Lifetime and Display Mode ..... 999
43.13.3 Configuring the Color of Radio Communication Lines ..... 1000
43.14. Enabling and Disabling Wheel Rotation ..... 1002

## 44. Visualizing 2D Icons and 3D Models

44.1. Simulation Object Icons ..... 1006
44.1.1 Changing the Size of 2D Icons ..... 1006
44.1.2 Rotating 2D Icons to a Simulation Object's Heading ..... 1007
44.2. Exaggerating the Scale of 3D Entity Models ..... 1008
44.3. Hiding 3D Models ..... 1011
44.4. Displaying DI-Guys in Vehicles ..... 1011

## 45. Lighting Effects

45.1. Displaying Lighting Effects ..... 1014
45.2. Advanced Lighting Settings ..... 1014
45.2.1 Configuring Ambient and Diffuse Lighting ..... 1015
45.2.2 Specifying the Emissive Lighting Scale ..... 1017
45.3. Displaying Dynamic Lighting ..... 1017
45.3.1 Daylight Control of Lights ..... 1018
45.4. Displaying Ocean Planar Reflections ..... 1018
45.4.1 Configuring Ocean Planar Reflections ..... 1020
45.5. Lens Flare ..... 1021
45.6. Displaying Crepuscular (Sun) Rays ..... 1022
45.7. Configuring the Skybox Cube Map ..... 1024
45.8. Flashlight Mode ..... 1025
45.9. Using High Dynamic Range Lighting ..... 1025
45.10. Disabling Lighting and Clouds ..... 1027
45.11. Displaying Shadows (3D Only) ..... 1028
45.11.1 Enabling Shadows on Trees ..... 1029
45.11.2 Configuring Shadows ..... 1030

## 46. Marine Effects

46.1. Displaying Water Droplets and Splash Effects ..... 1034
46.1.1 Enabling Sea Spray ..... 1036
46.1.2 Setting the Size of Water Droplets ..... 1037
46.1.3 Enabling and Disabling Rotor Wash ..... 1038

46.1.4 Enabling High Quality Rotor Wash ..... 1039
46.2. Displaying Wakes and Spray Effects ..... 1039
46.3. Enabling Buoyancy for Surface Entities ..... 1040

## 47. Using CameraFX Sensor Views

47.1. Using Sensors ..... 1044
47.2. Enabling Sensors ..... 1044
47.3. Configuring Sensors ..... 1045
47.4. Adding New Sensors ..... 1047

## 48. Intervisibility and Range

48.1. Intervisibility (Line-of-Sight) ..... 1050
48.2. Types of Intervisibility ..... 1051
48.2.1 Point-to-Point Intervisibility ..... 1051
48.2.2 Intervisibility Fan ..... 1051
48.2.3 Simulation Object Intervisibility ..... 1052
48.3. Intervisibility Objects Can Be Transient or Permanent ..... 1052
48.3.1 Creating a Transient Intervisibility Object ..... 1053
48.3.2 Creating a Permanent Intervisibility Object ..... 1054
48.4. Editing an Intervisibility Object ..... 1054
48.5. Configuring Intervisibility Lines and Fans ..... 1055
48.6. Pinning an Intervisibility Object to a Simulation Object ..... 1057
48.7. Showing and Hiding Intervisibility Lines ..... 1057
48.8. Displaying Intervisibility Line Information ..... 1057
48.9. Displaying an Intervisibility Line's Terrain Profile ..... 1058
48.10. Deleting Intervisibility Objects ..... 1059
48.11. Range Lines ..... 1059
48.11.1 Creating a Range Line ..... 1060
48.11.2 Configuring Range Lines ..... 1060

## 49. Configuring Emitter Volumes

49.1. Configuring Emitter Volumes ..... 1064
49.1.1 Configuring Emitter Volume Color ..... 1064
49.1.2 Controlling Emitter Volume Radius ..... 1065
49.1.3 Configuring Emitter Volume Segments ..... 1065

## 50. Sound Effects

50.1. Introduction to Sound Effects ..... 1070
50.2. Enabling Sound Effects ..... 1070

50.2.1 Configuring Sound Effects ..... 1071
50.3. Associating Sound Files with Entities and Events ..... 1072

## 51. MAK Radio

51.1. MAK Radio Overview ..... 1074
51.2. Using the Radio in VR-Forces ..... 1074
51.2.1 Operating the Radio from the Dialog Box or Application ..... 1075
51.2.2 Operating the Radio from the Radio Control Toolbar ..... 1076
51.3. Using the Intercom or a VOX Radio ..... 1077
51.4. Configuring the MAK Radio ..... 1077
51.5. Audio Settings ..... 1081
51.6. Jamming Radios ..... 1082

# X. THE OBSERVER AND VIEWING SCENARIOS

## 52. The Observer and Observer Modes

52.1. Switching Between the 2D and 3D Projections ..... 1086
52.2. Observer Modes ..... 1086
52.3. Changing the Observer Mode ..... 1087
52.4. Creating and Editing Observer Modes ..... 1087
52.4.1 Creating an Observer Mode ..... 1087
52.4.2 Deleting an Observer Mode ..... 1089
52.4.3 Editing an Observer Mode ..... 1089
52.4.4 Renaming an Observer Mode ..... 1089
52.5. Adding an Observer ..... 1089
52.5.1 Adding an Observer on the Observer Settings Page ..... 1090
52.5.2 Adding an Observer in the Display Engine Configuration Editor ..... 1090
52.6. Removing an Observer ..... 1092
52.7. Introduction to XR Mode ..... 1093
52.8. Model Sets ..... 1094
52.8.1 Changing the Model Set ..... 1094
52.9. Communicating Information About the Observer ..... 1094
52.9.1 Making the Observer Visible to Other Applications ..... 1094
52.9.2 Viewing and Attaching to Other Observers ..... 1095
52.10. Displaying Models for Remote Observers ..... 1095

## 53. Moving the Observer

53.1. Moving the Observer ..... 1099
53.1.1 Using the Compass to View the Observer's Heading ..... 1100
53.1.2 Editing the Compass's Attributes ..... 1101

53.2. Observer Movement Functions and Keyboard Mappings ..... 1102
53.2.1 3D Observer Movement Coordinate Systems ..... 1102
53.2.2 2D Observer Coordinate System ..... 1103
53.2.3 The Attached Context and Observer Movement (3D Only) ..... 1103
53.3. Moving the Observer from the Keyboard in the 3D View ..... 1105
53.3.1 Navigation Options ..... 1107
53.3.2 Orbiting ..... 1107
53.3.3 Moving the Camera ..... 1108
53.4. Moving the Observer Using the Mouse (3D View) ..... 1108
53.4.1 Dragging the Terrain ..... 1108
53.4.2 Changing the Observer's Orientation with the Mouse ..... 1111
53.4.3 Dragging the View ..... 1111
53.4.4 Orbiting the Terrain with the Mouse ..... 1111
53.4.5 Teleporting the Observer ..... 1112
53.5. Moving the Observer in the 2D View ..... 1112
53.5.1 Moving the Observer from the Keyboard in the 2D View ..... 1112
53.5.2 Moving the Observer Using the Mouse in the 2D Projection ..... 1113
53.6. Zooming the Observer ..... 1114
53.6.1 Zooming the Observer in the 3D Projection ..... 1114
53.6.2 Zooming the Observer in the 2D Projection ..... 1115
53.6.3 Setting the Scale Factor for Terrain ..... 1115
53.6.4 Setting the Magnification LOD Angle for Terrains ..... 1116
53.6.5 Zooming In to the Ocean Over Long Distances ..... 1117
53.6.6 Zooming to Extents ..... 1117
53.6.7 Configuring the LOD Center in the Observer Mode ..... 1118
53.7. Centering the Observer on a Simulation Object ..... 1119
53.7.1 Centering on an Object from the Object Console Summary Panel ..... 1119
53.7.2 Centering on an Object from an Information Panel ..... 1120
53.8. Simulating Camera Jitter ..... 1120
53.9. Forcing Orientation North ..... 1121
53.9.1 Specifying True or Magnetic North ..... 1121
53.10. Enabling and Disabling View Constraints (3D Only) ..... 1122
53.11. Controlling Navigation Speed ..... 1122
53.11.1 Enabling or Disabling Speed Scaling ..... 1122
53.11.2 Changing the Observer's Movement Speed ..... 1123
53.12. Saving and Recalling Views ..... 1124
53.12.1 Recalling a View ..... 1126
53.12.2 Deleting Views ..... 1126
53.12.3 Loading Views Automatically When You Load a Terrain ..... 1126
53.12.4 Specifying the Scenario Startup View ..... 1127
53.12.5 Saving Views to a File ..... 1128

53.12.6 Loading Views ..... 1129
53.13. Using the Go To Location Panel ..... 1129
53.14. Controlling the Observer from Other Applications ..... 1130
53.14.1 Enabling the Processing of View Control Messages ..... 1130

## 54. Attaching the Observer to Objects

54.1. Attaching the Observer to a Simulation Object or Prop ..... 1132
54.1.1 Attaching the Observer to Another Observer ..... 1133
54.1.2 Attaching to an Articulated Part ..... 1134
54.1.3 Attaching the Observer in Mimic Track or Tether Track Mode ..... 1134
54.1.4 Attaching the Observer in Mimic Location Track or Tether Location Track Mode ..... 1134
54.1.5 Filtering the Object Attachment List ..... 1135
54.1.6 Detaching from a Simulation Object ..... 1135
54.1.7 Hiding the Attached Model (3D Projection Only) ..... 1135
54.1.8 Attaching to Props ..... 1135
54.1.9 Improving Performance when Attaching to Ground Objects ..... 1135
54.2. Attach Modes in the 3D View ..... 1136
54.2.1 Absolute Mode ..... 1136
54.2.2 Follow Mode ..... 1136
54.2.3 Mimic Mode ..... 1137
54.2.4 Mimic Track Mode ..... 1138
54.2.5 Mimic Location Track Mode ..... 1139
54.2.6 Space Follow Mode ..... 1139
54.2.7 Tether Mode ..... 1140
54.2.8 Tether Track Mode ..... 1140
54.2.9 Tether Location Track Mode ..... 1141
54.2.10 Track Mode ..... 1141
54.3. Attach Modes in the 2D View ..... 1142
54.4. Attaching the Observer at Startup ..... 1143

## 55. Inset Views, Sensor FOVs, HUDs, and Depth of Field

55.1. Inset Views ..... 1146
55.2. Displaying Cockpit Displays ..... 1147
55.3. Displaying Instrument Panels ..... 1148
55.3.1 Configuring Entities to Use Instrument Panels ..... 1150
55.4. Displaying Sensor Views ..... 1150
55.4.1 Displaying a Sensor Field of View Cone ..... 1151
55.4.2 Controlling the Sensor View ..... 1152
55.5. Using the Depth of Field Effect ..... 1155

55.5.1 Configuring Depth of Field ..... 1157

## XI. TERRAIN

### 56. Introduction to Terrain Usage in VR-Forces

56.1. Composing Terrains (and Creating MTF Files) ..... 1162
56.2. Supported File Formats ..... 1162
56.2.1 Terrain Data ..... 1163
56.2.2 Elevation Data ..... 1163
56.2.3 Supported Image Formats ..... 1163
56.2.4 Supported Feature Data Formats in the Front-end ..... 1164
56.3. Feature Layers and Props ..... 1164
56.3.1 Geometric Representation of Point Feature Data ..... 1164
56.3.2 Feature Data Types Supported by the Back-end ..... 1165
56.4. Coordinate Systems ..... 1165
56.4.1 The UTM Coordinate System ..... 1165
56.4.2 Geocentric Terrain Databases ..... 1166
56.5. Loading Supported Databases ..... 1166
56.6. Using Large Terrain Databases ..... 1166
56.6.1 Terrain Paging ..... 1167
56.6.2 Terrain Streaming ..... 1167
56.7. Using Ground Clamping ..... 1168
56.7.1 Configuring Ground Clamping ..... 1169

### 57. Displaying Terrain Information

57.1. Introduction ..... 1172
57.2. Displaying Grid Lines ..... 1172
57.2.1 Configuring Grid Lines ..... 1173
57.3. Displaying Models and Terrain in Wireframe Mode ..... 1174
57.4. Filtering Earth File Layers ..... 1175
57.5. Displaying Feature Data (2D) ..... 1176
57.5.1 Displaying a List of Vector Features ..... 1178
57.5.2 Changing the Colors Used for Feature Data ..... 1179
57.6. Selecting a 2D View Layer ..... 1180
57.7. Displaying Coordinates and Soil Type for a Location ..... 1180
57.8. Viewing the Map Scale ..... 1181
57.8.1 The Map Scale Overlay ..... 1181
57.9. Configuring Visible Surfaces (GDB Soil Types) ..... 1182
Terrain Databases Provided with MAK Applications ..... 1183

## 58. Using Terrain Profiles

58.1. Terrain Profiles ..... 1188
58.1.1 Displaying a Line's Terrain Profile ..... 1188
58.1.2 Configuring Terrain Profiles ..... 1189
58.2. Analyzing Terrain Using a Terrain Profile Line ..... 1191

## 59. Generating Navigation Data

59.1. Introduction ..... 1194
59.1.1 How Navigation Data is Generated ..... 1194
59.1.2 Path Finding ..... 1196
59.2. Navigation Areas ..... 1198
59.2.1 Sectorizing Navigation Areas ..... 1199
59.2.2 Creating a Navigation Area ..... 1199
59.2.3 Editing a Navigation Area ..... 1202
59.2.4 Reverting Edits to a Navigation Area ..... 1202
59.2.5 Displaying Navigation Areas ..... 1202
59.2.6 Removing a Navigation Area ..... 1203
59.2.7 Displaying Information about a Navigation Area ..... 1203
59.3. Generating Navigation Data ..... 1203
59.3.1 Navigation Profiles ..... 1204
59.3.2 Generating Navigation Data for a Navigation Area ..... 1204
59.3.3 Using Newly Generated Navigation Data ..... 1206
59.3.4 Automatic Regeneration of Navigation Data ..... 1206
59.4. Generating Navigation Data for Entities ..... 1207
59.5. Importing Navigation Areas and Navigation Data ..... 1209
59.6. Displaying Navigation Data ..... 1210
59.6.1 Opening Navigation Lab from an Information Dialog Box ..... 1211
59.6.2 Showing Simulation Object Movement in Navigation Lab ..... 1211

## 60. Airports and Aerodromes

60.1. Overview of Airports and Aerodromes ..... 1214
60.2. Aerodromes and Runways ..... 1214
60.2.1 Computing Aerodromes in a Terrain ..... 1214
60.2.2 Creating an Aerodrome Object ..... 1215
60.2.3 Creating a Runway Object ..... 1215
60.3. Airport Settings Panel ..... 1216
60.3.1 Centering on an Airport ..... 1216
60.3.2 Setting Aerodrome Lights ..... 1216
60.3.3 Setting Runway Conditions ..... 1217
60.4. Aerodrome and Runway Set Data Requests ..... 1218

60.4.1 Aerodrome ..... 1218
60.4.2 Aerodrome Lights ..... 1218
60.4.3 Runway Arrestor Gear ..... 1218
60.4.4 Runway Conditions ..... 1220
60.4.5 Runways ..... 1220
60.5. Viewing Aerodrome and Runway Information ..... 1220
60.5.1 Aerodrome Information ..... 1220
60.5.2 Runway Information ..... 1221

## XII. CREATING AND EDITING SIMULATION MODELS

### 61. The Simulation Object Editor and SMSs

61.1. Introduction to the Simulation Object Editor ..... 1227
61.2. Starting the Simulation Object Editor ..... 1227
61.3. Simulation Model Sets ..... 1229
61.3.1 Including Simulation Model Sets in Other Simulation Model Sets ..... 1230
61.3.2 Enabling and Disabling Read Only Status for SMSs ..... 1231
61.3.3 SMS Priority for Included and Multiple SMSs ..... 1232
61.3.4 Lua Scripts in Included SMSs ..... 1233
61.3.5 Application-Level Files in Included SMSs ..... 1234
61.3.6 Search Paths for Referenced Files in an SMS ..... 1234
61.3.7 Promoting a Model to the Parent SMS ..... 1234
61.3.8 Promoting a System to the Loaded SMS ..... 1236
61.3.9 Hiding Included Objects ..... 1236
61.4. Visual Model Definitions ..... 1236
61.4.1 User-Created Visual Definition Files ..... 1237
61.5. Upgrading Old Simulation Model Sets ..... 1238
61.5.1 The Old SMS Includes a Standard SMS ..... 1238
61.5.2 The Old SMS Was Copied from a Standard SMS ..... 1239
61.5.3 The Old SMS Was Completely New or Copied from base.sms ..... 1240
61.5.4 Copying Visual Data ..... 1241
61.5.5 Running the SMS Upgrade Tool ..... 1241
61.5.6 Migrating an SMS to a New Release by Hand ..... 1242
61.5.7 Migrating Pre-4.7 Weapon and Damage Systems ..... 1242
61.5.8 Converting Pre-4.8 SMSs To Use Articulated Parts ..... 1243
61.6. Opening a Simulation Model Set ..... 1243
61.7. Creating New Simulation Model Sets ..... 1244
61.7.1 Creating a New SMS that Includes an Existing SMS ..... 1244
61.7.2 Creating a New SMS with Minimal Objects ..... 1245
61.7.3 Creating a New SMS by Copying an SMS ..... 1246

61.8. Importing .entity Files ..... 1246
61.9. Applying New and Updated Variables ..... 1246
61.10. Importing and Exporting Object Information ..... 1247
61.10.1 Exporting Object Information ..... 1247
61.10.2 Importing Object Information ..... 1248
61.11. Editing the Tags List ..... 1248
61.11.1 Adding a New Tag ..... 1248
61.11.2 Removing a Tag ..... 1249
61.11.3 Renaming a Tag ..... 1250
61.11.4 Undoing Tag Changes ..... 1250
61.11.5 Using Auto Tags ..... 1250
61.11.6 Assigning Tags Based on Visual Model Characteristics ..... 1251
61.11.7 Exporting Tags ..... 1251
61.11.8 Importing Tags ..... 1251
61.11.9 Managing Tags Using the Object Information File ..... 1251
61.12. Managing the Forces List ..... 1252
61.12.1 Adding a Force ..... 1252
61.12.2 Editing a Force ..... 1253
61.12.3 Removing a Force ..... 1253
61.13. Copying the Object List to the Clipboard ..... 1254

## 62. Editing Common Parameters

62.1. Editing Generic Object Parameters ..... 1257
62.1.1 Selecting an Object to Edit ..... 1257
62.1.2 Editing an Object's Tags ..... 1257
62.1.3 Changing an Object's Object Type Enumeration ..... 1258
62.1.4 Changing an Object's Name ..... 1261
62.1.5 Specifying Whether an Object Can Be Created ..... 1261
62.1.6 Specifying the Object Creation Palette ..... 1261
62.1.7 Specifying a Default User-Created Overlay ..... 1261
62.1.8 Specifying the Platform ..... 1262
62.1.9 Editing a Simulation Object's Country List ..... 1262
62.1.10 Creating Icon Lists ..... 1262
62.1.11 Undoing (Reverting) Changes to an Object ..... 1265
62.1.12 Reverting an Inherited Object's Parameters ..... 1265
62.2. Editing a Simulation Object's Visual Model ..... 1265
62.2.1 Changing the 3D Model or Colorized Model ..... 1267
62.2.2 Changing the 2D Icon Using a Font ..... 1268
62.2.3 Changing the 2D Icon Using an Image ..... 1269
62.2.4 Editing a Spot Report Model ..... 1270

62.2.5 Adding a New Visual Model or Image ..... 1271
62.2.6 Displaying Details about the Visual Model ..... 1272
62.2.7 Changing a Visual Model's Type ..... 1274
62.2.8 Specifying Visual Markings ..... 1275
62.2.9 Importing Visual Models ..... 1276
62.2.10 Pruning Visual Models ..... 1277
62.2.11 Exporting Visual Models ..... 1277
62.2.12 Reloading Visual Models in the VR-Forces GUI ..... 1277
62.3. Creating a New Simulation Object ..... 1278
62.3.1 Creating a Copy of New Model from an Existing Model ..... 1279
62.3.2 Inheriting a New Model from an Existing Model ..... 1279
62.4. Deleting an Object Model ..... 1280
62.5. Creating a Simulation Object Group ..... 1280
62.5.1 Setting the Simulation Connection when Creating an SOG ..... 1281
62.6. Editing Tactical Graphics ..... 1281
62.6.1 Editing a Tactical Graphic's Menu Icon ..... 1281
62.6.2 Setting the Default Values for Tactical Graphics Properties ..... 1282
62.6.3 Specifying Tactical Graphic Properties that Can Be Edited in the Front-End ..... 1283
62.6.4 Editing the Visual Model for a Tactical Graphic ..... 1284
62.7. Creating a Template ..... 1287
62.8. Editing Systems in the Simulation Object Editor ..... 1288
62.8.1 Creating a New System ..... 1288
62.8.2 Editing Probability Tables ..... 1290
62.8.3 Deleting a System ..... 1293
62.8.4 Reverting a System ..... 1293

## 63. Editing Entities for Entity-Level Scenarios

63.1. Editing Simulation Object Parameters ..... 1297
63.1.1 Editing a Simulation Object's Bounding Volume (Size) ..... 1297
63.1.2 Displaying a Simulation Object's Bounding Volume ..... 1298
63.1.3 Specifying Support Points ..... 1299
63.1.4 Excluding Entities from Batch Bounding Volume and Support Point Updates ..... 1300
63.1.5 Editing Behavioral Parameters ..... 1300
63.1.6 Adding Object Geometry to a Simulation Object ..... 1300
63.1.7 Configuring Cultural Features To Be Embedded in the Terrain ..... 1302
63.1.8 Ground Clamping Cultural Features ..... 1302
63.1.9 Specifying Entity Properties that Can Be Edited in the Front-End ..... 1303
63.1.10 Editing a Lifeform's Visual Model and Animation ..... 1303
63.2. Editing Sensor Signatures ..... 1307
63.3. Editing a Model's Articulated Parts ..... 1307

63.3.1 Adding Articulated Parts ..... 1307
63.3.2 Editing Articulated Parts ..... 1308
63.3.3 Animating Articulated Parts ..... 1309
63.3.4 Removing Articulated Parts ..... 1309
63.4. Editing a Simulation Object's Systems ..... 1310
63.4.1 Adding a System ..... 1311
63.4.2 Selecting a Damage Model ..... 1312
63.4.3 Selecting a Movement Model ..... 1312
63.4.4 Editing a System's Properties ..... 1312
63.4.5 Removing a System ..... 1313
63.5. Creating and Editing Munitions ..... 1313
63.5.1 Creating a Simulated Munition ..... 1313
63.5.2 Creating a New Ammunition Type ..... 1314
63.6. Configuring Wakes ..... 1314
63.7. Creating Randomized Simulation Objects ..... 1316
63.8. Configuring Scripted Entity Movement ..... 1319
63.8.1 Configuring Ballistic Missile Movement ..... 1320
63.8.2 Configuring Animated Movement ..... 1322
63.8.3 Editing Movement File Configurations ..... 1324

## 64. Editing Units for Entity-Level Scenarios

64.1. Introduction to Editing Units ..... 1328
64.2. Creating a Unit for Entity-Level Scenarios ..... 1328
64.3. Specifying an Aggregate As Option ..... 1328
64.4. Editing Unit Composition ..... 1329
64.4.1 Adding Subordinates ..... 1330
64.4.2 Removing Subordinates ..... 1331
64.4.3 Replacing Subordinates ..... 1332
64.4.4 Changing the Order of Subordinates ..... 1332
64.4.5 Editing a Subordinate Unit ..... 1332
64.5. Editing Formations ..... 1332
64.5.1 Adding Formations ..... 1333
64.5.2 Removing Formations ..... 1335
64.5.3 Renaming Formations ..... 1335
64.5.4 Specifying the Default Formation ..... 1335
64.5.5 Expanding and Collapsing the Display of Formations ..... 1335
64.5.6 Displaying Bounding Boxes ..... 1335
64.5.7 Copying Formations ..... 1336
64.5.8 Laying Out a Formation Automatically ..... 1337
64.5.9 Changing a Formation's Layout by Hand ..... 1338

## 65. Editing Aggregate-Level Objects

65.1. Creating Objects for Aggregate-Level Modeling ..... 1340
65.2. Configuring Simulation Objects for Aggregate-Level Modeling ..... 1340
65.2.1 Aggregating Units into Higher Echelon Units ..... 1342
65.3. Configuring Ammunition, Weapons, and Equipment ..... 1342
65.3.1 Defining Ammunition, Weapons, and Equipment Items ..... 1345
65.4. Assemblies ..... 1346
65.4.1 Creating Assemblies ..... 1347
65.4.2 Editing Assemblies ..... 1348
65.4.3 Adding Assemblies to a Unit ..... 1349
65.4.4 Removing Assemblies ..... 1349
65.5. Creating Roll Up Rules ..... 1350
65.6. Rolling Up Assemblies ..... 1351
65.7. Adding Activities ..... 1351
65.8. Object Parameters for Aggregate-Level Modeling ..... 1352
65.8.1 General Parameters ..... 1353
65.8.2 Physical Parameters ..... 1353
65.8.3 Movement Parameters ..... 1354
65.8.4 Sensor Parameters ..... 1357
65.8.5 Attack Parameters ..... 1357
65.8.6 Defense Parameters ..... 1359
65.8.7 Combat Parameters ..... 1359
65.8.8 Electronic Warfare (EW) Parameters ..... 1360
65.8.9 Personnel and Equipment Parameters ..... 1360
65.8.10 Supplies Parameters ..... 1361
65.9. Configuring Combat Engineering Objects ..... 1362
65.10. Editing Reader/Writer Key/Value Pairs ..... 1363

## 66. Configuring Embarkation

66.1. Enabling Embarkation ..... 1366
66.2. Configuring Slots ..... 1368
66.2.1 Adding Slots ..... 1368
66.2.2 Configuring Slot Parameters ..... 1370
66.2.3 Configuring Slot Exclusions ..... 1372
66.2.4 Specifying Ingress and Egress Techniques ..... 1373
66.3. Adding Ingress and Egress Points ..... 1374
66.4. Embarkation Slot Tutorial ..... 1376
66.4.1 Configure the SuperTanker for Embarkation ..... 1377
66.4.2 Configure Slots for the Supertanker ..... 1379
66.4.3 Add Ingress Points ..... 1382

66.4.4 Add Egress Points ..... 1383
66.4.5 Save the New Configuration ..... 1384
66.4.6 Test the Embarkation Configuration ..... 1384

## 67. Adding DI-Guy Models to VR-Forces

67.1. Adding New DI-Guy Models to VR-Forces ..... 1388
67.1.1 Copy DI-Guy Files to the Data Directory ..... 1388
67.2. DI-Guy Configuration Files ..... 1388
67.2.1 Adding a New DI-Guy Animation ..... 1389
67.3. How VR-Forces Maps DI-Guy Models ..... 1390
67.4. Add a New DI-Guy Entity in the SOE ..... 1390

## 68. The Object Parameter Database

68.1. The Object Parameter Database ..... 1392
68.1.1 VR-Forces Classes and Object Parameters ..... 1393
68.1.2 Object Types ..... 1393
68.1.3 Parameter Types ..... 1396
68.1.4 Local and Remote Subcomponents ..... 1397
68.2. Component Descriptors and Parameters ..... 1402
68.2.1 Common Elements of Component Descriptors ..... 1403
68.2.2 Configuring the Priority of Components ..... 1405
68.3. Platform Files ..... 1405
68.4. System Definition Files ..... 1406
68.4.1 Creating a System Definition File ..... 1406
68.4.2 Configuring System Connections ..... 1407
68.5. Adding Variable Bindings to Platform and System Files ..... 1411
68.5.1 Adding a Variable Binding ..... 1412
68.5.2 Making Variables Editable in the Simulation Object Editor ..... 1413
68.5.3 Adding Platform Variable Bindings to the SOE ..... 1413
68.5.4 Adding System Definition File Variables to the SOE ..... 1415
68.6. State Properties and Parameter Properties ..... 1415
68.6.1 Adding State Properties and Parameter Properties ..... 1415
68.6.2 Getting and Setting State Properties Using Lua Scripts ..... 1418
68.6.3 Displaying State Property Values in the Information Dialog Box ..... 1418
68.6.4 An Example of Adding State Properties ..... 1419
68.7. Configuring Units ..... 1426
68.8. Configuring Tactical Graphics ..... 1426
68.9. Pathname Interpretation in Simulation Model Set Files ..... 1427

## 69. Configuring Sensors

69.1. Configuring Sensors ..... 1430
69.1.1 Adding a New Sensor to a Simulation Object ..... 1430
69.1.2 Editing a Sensor System Definition File ..... 1431
69.1.3 Specifying a Sensor Signature ..... 1432
69.1.4 Specifying Sensor Detection Probabilities ..... 1435
69.1.5 Adding Detection Types (Why Doesn't My Sensor Sense Anything?) ..... 1437
69.1.6 Adding a New Sensor Type ..... 1437
69.1.7 Illumination and Time of Day ..... 1440
69.1.8 Configuring the Effects of Rain on Radar ..... 1440
69.2. Detection Tables ..... 1441

## 70. Configuring Weapon Systems

70.1. Introduction to Weapon Systems ..... 1444
70.1.1 The Weapon System System Definition Template File ..... 1445
70.1.2 The Weapon System System Definition File ..... 1447
70.2. Configuring Direct Fire Weapons ..... 1450
70.2.1 Sensing Targets ..... 1451
70.2.2 Configuring Ammunition ..... 1453
70.2.3 Hit Probability Tables ..... 1454
70.2.4 Damage Probability Tables ..... 1456
70.3. Configuring Missile Systems ..... 1456
70.3.1 Missile Launcher ..... 1457
70.3.2 Missile Projectile ..... 1458
70.3.3 Laser-Guided Missile Launcher ..... 1458
70.3.4 Laser-Guided Missile Projectile ..... 1458
70.4. Configuring Indirect Fire Weapons ..... 1459
70.5. Configuring Fixed Weapons ..... 1460
70.6. Configuring Bomb Bay Weapon Systems ..... 1461
70.7. Configuring Weapon Systems in the SOE ..... 1461
70.7.1 Specifying Target Types ..... 1462
70.7.2 Configuring Hit Probability ..... 1462
70.7.3 Configuring the Ammunition to Use ..... 1463
70.7.4 Using the Target Configuration Assistant ..... 1464
70.7.5 Configuring the Target Priorities ..... 1466
70.7.6 Configuring the Target Region ..... 1467
70.7.7 Configuring Missile Launcher Systems in the SOE ..... 1467
70.7.8 Configuring Explosive Devices ..... 1468

## 71. Configuring Damage Systems

71.1. Introduction to Damage Systems ..... 1470
71.1.1 Calculating Damage from Munitions ..... 1470
71.2. Configuring Damage-by-Power ..... 1470
71.2.1 Configuring the Power of a Detonation ..... 1471
71.2.2 Configuring Detonation Power in the SOE ..... 1474
71.2.3 The Damage File for Damage-By-Power ..... 1475
71.2.4 Adding a New Power Type ..... 1477
71.3. Configuring Damage in the SOE ..... 1479
71.3.1 Configuring Damage Power Entries ..... 1479
71.3.2 Configuring Impact Surfaces ..... 1480
71.3.3 Configuring the Angle of Incidence ..... 1481
71.3.4 Specifying Effect Data ..... 1481
71.4. Viewing Inter-Object Damage Probability Results ..... 1482
71.5. Configuring Damage for Dynamic Terrain ..... 1484
71.5.1 Standard Terrain Damage ..... 1484
71.5.2 High Fidelity Terrain Damage ..... 1485
71.6. Configuring Detonation Results ..... 1486

## 72. Configuring Movement Systems

72.1. Configuring Formations ..... 1490
72.1.1 Formation Files ..... 1490
72.1.2 Creating a User-Defined Formation ..... 1491
72.2. Configuring Obstruction Avoidance ..... 1492
72.2.1 Configuring Object Types ..... 1492
72.2.2 Configuring Vector Feature Types ..... 1492
72.3. Configuring Embarkation ..... 1493

## 73. Configuring Emitters and Radios

73.1. Configuring Emitters ..... 1496
73.2. Configuring Radios ..... 1498
73.2.1 Publishing Radio Transmitters ..... 1498

## 74. Joystick and Keyboard Controls

74.1. Using a Joystick to Control Entities ..... 1502
74.1.1 Switching Between Systems ..... 1503
74.1.2 Disabling Joystick Control ..... 1504
74.2. Using the Keyboard to Control an Entity ..... 1504
74.3. Configuring Joysticks and Keyboard Control ..... 1504

74.3.1 Creating a Joystick Configuration ..... 1505
74.3.2 Mapping the Joystick Stick ..... 1507
74.3.3 Mapping Joystick Buttons and Keyboard Keys ..... 1508
74.3.4 Configuring “Switch Between” Options ..... 1511
74.3.5 Using Multiple Joysticks ..... 1513
74.3.6 Specifying a Favorite Joystick Configuration ..... 1515
74.4. Installing a Gamepad on Linux ..... 1515

75. Attaching Components to Remote Entities

75.1. Attaching Components to Remote Entities ..... 1518

XIII. CONFIGURING THE GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE

76. Display Engine and Window Management

76.1. The Display Engine ..... 1524
76.1.1 Window Types ..... 1524
76.2. Managing Display Engine Configurations ..... 1524
76.2.1 Adding a Window ..... 1524
76.2.2 Adding a Channel to a Window ..... 1527
76.2.3 Removing a Window ..... 1528
76.2.4 Removing a Channel ..... 1528
76.2.5 Saving a Display Engine Configuration ..... 1528
76.2.6 Loading a Display Engine Configuration ..... 1528
76.3. Changing a Window’s Attributes ..... 1529
76.4. Changing a Channel’s Attributes ..... 1529
76.4.1 Setting the Clipping Planes ..... 1531
76.4.2 Specifying the Projection Resize Policy Attribute ..... 1533
76.4.3 Changing a Channel’s Frustum (Field of View) ..... 1535
76.4.4 Changing the Viewport ..... 1536
76.4.5 Configuring Water Visibility ..... 1538
76.4.6 Channel Keywords ..... 1538
76.5. Configuring Multichannel Displays ..... 1539
76.5.1 Changing the Camera’s Position and Orientation Offset ..... 1541
76.6. Stereoscopic Displays ..... 1541
76.6.1 Configuring Anaglyphic Stereo ..... 1542
76.6.2 Configuring Polarized Stereo ..... 1543

77. GUI Controls, Layouts, and Behaviors

77.1. Dockable Panels and Toolbars ..... 1546
77.1.1 Docking and Undocking a Panel ..... 1546

77.1.2 Docking and Undocking a Toolbar ..... 1546
77.1.3 Docking a Toolbar Vertically ..... 1547
77.1.4 Displaying and Hiding Panels and Toolbars ..... 1547
77.2. Saving Window Layouts ..... 1547
77.2.1 Creating a Window Layout ..... 1548
77.2.2 Choosing the Window Layout ..... 1549
77.2.3 Setting a Window Layout as the Default Layout ..... 1549
77.2.4 Reverting a Window Layout ..... 1550
77.2.5 Updating a Window Layout ..... 1550
77.2.6 Renaming a Window Layout ..... 1550
77.2.7 Deleting a Window Layout ..... 1551
77.2.8 Restoring a Factory Layout ..... 1551
77.3. Using Tear-Off Menus ..... 1551
77.4. Viewing the Window in Full-Screen Mode ..... 1552
77.4.1 Hiding the Mouse in Full Screen Mode ..... 1552
77.5. Using Context-Sensitive Menus ..... 1553
77.6. Common VR-Forces Buttons ..... 1553
77.7. Adding Text to the Title Bar ..... 1554
77.8. Specifying Display Units ..... 1555

## 78. Configuring Toolbars, Dialog Boxes, and Menus

78.1. Introduction ..... 1560
78.2. Configuring Menus and Menu Commands ..... 1560
78.2.1 Alphabetizing the Task and Set Menus ..... 1560
78.2.2 Creating New Menus ..... 1561
78.3. Configuring Dialog Box Pages ..... 1561
78.4. Configuring Context-Sensitive Menus ..... 1563
78.4.1 Editing the Task Menu ..... 1564
78.4.2 Editing the Set Menu ..... 1565
78.5. Configuring Toolbars ..... 1565
78.5.1 Creating Toolbars ..... 1566
78.5.2 Specifying an Icon for a Toolbar Item ..... 1566
78.6. Locking Main GUI Elements ..... 1566

## 79. Creating and Editing Key Mappings

79.1. Introduction to Key Maps ..... 1570
79.2. The Key Mapping Editor ..... 1570
79.2.1 Binary Key Mappings ..... 1571
79.3. Editing a Key Map ..... 1571
79.3.1 Adding a Key Mapping ..... 1571

79.3.2 Changing a Key Mapping ..... 1573
79.3.3 Deleting a Key Mapping ..... 1573
79.4. Using Combined Key Mappings ..... 1574
79.5. Filtering the Function List ..... 1574
79.6. Creating a Key Map ..... 1575
79.7. Deleting a Key Map ..... 1575

XIV. APPENDIXES

A. MTL Syntax

A.1. Introduction ..... 1580
A.2. MAK Technologies Lisp (MTL) Files ..... 1580
A.2.1 Using Environment Variables in an MTL File ..... 1581
A.2.2 Specifying Lists of Lists ..... 1581
A.2.3 Using Conditional Statements ..... 1581

B. The vrfSim.mtl Configuration File

B.1. The vrfSim.mtl Configuration File ..... 1584

C. Object Parameters

C.1. The Structure of a Simulation Object Parameter ..... 1600
C.2. The Parameter Type Hierarchy ..... 1600
C.2.1 Vrf Base Object Parameters ..... 1600
C.2.2 Vrf Object Parameters ..... 1605
C.2.3 Moving Object Parameters ..... 1606
C.2.4 Parameter Types for Entity Platforms ..... 1606
C.3. Object Type Enumerations ..... 1606
C.3.1 Object Super-type ..... 1606
C.3.2 AggregateKind ..... 1607
C.3.3 ObjectKind ..... 1607
C.3.4 Unit Category ..... 1607
C.3.5 Unit Specific ..... 1609
C.3.6 Point Object Category ..... 1609
C.3.7 Linear Object Category ..... 1609
C.3.8 Areal Object Category ..... 1609
C.3.9 Interaction ..... 1609

D. Deprecated Weapon System and Munition Damage Configuration

D.1. Configuring Direct Fire Weapons ..... 1612

D.1.1 Sensing Targets ... 1613
D.1.2 Ammo Select Tables ... 1614
D.1.3 Hit Probability Tables ... 1615
D.1.4 Damage Probability Tables ... 1617
D.2. Configuring Indirect Fire Weapons ... 1617
D.3. Configuring Fixed Weapons ... 1619
D.4. Configuring Bomb Bay Weapon Systems ... 1620
D.5. Calculating Damage from Munitions ... 1620
D.6. Configuring Damage-by-Power ... 1621
D.6.1 Configuring the Power of a Detonation ... 1622
D.6.2 The Damage File for Damage-By-Power ... 1625
D.6.3 Adding a New Power Type ... 1627
D.7. Configuring Damage-by-Ammo-Type ... 1629
D.7.1 Configuring Damage for Damage-by-Ammo-Type ... 1630
D.8. Direct Fire Configuration Examples ... 1631
D.8.1 Direct Fire Weapon Damage-By-Power Example ... 1631
D.8.2 Direct Fire Weapon Damage-by-Ammo-Type Example ... 1636

## E. Systems and System Usage

E.1. VR-Forces Systems ... 1640

## MAK PRODUCTS GLOSSARY

## INDEX

## VR-FORCES QUICK REFERENCE CARD

# Preface

This manual is written for persons who will install VR-Forces® or use the VR-Forces application. The manual assumes that you are familiar with your operating system and that you know how to work in your computer's graphical window environment.

Please see release documentation for information about changes and updates to VR-Forces since this manual went to press.

## How This Manual is Organized

The chapters are organized as follows:

- "Section I. Introduction, Installation, and Startup" on page 71
  - "Chapter 1. Introduction to VR-Forces" on page 73 briefly describes VR-Forces and its features.
  - "Chapter 2. Installing VR-Forces" on page 93 explains how to install VR-Forces, set up license management, and localize the GUI.
  - "Chapter 3. VR-Forces Application Concepts" on page 107 provides the conceptual background for the simulation process. It will help put some of the discussion in this manual into context.
  - "Chapter 4. Starting VR-Forces" on page 121 describes how to start VR-Forces, load terrain databases, and configure HLA time management.
  - "Chapter 5. Command-Line Options" on page 157 describes the command-line options for vrfGui (the front-end) and vrfSim (the back-end or simulation engine).
  - "Chapter 6. Optimizing Performance" on page 183 describes how to monitor VR-Forces's performance in the Frame Rate Monitor and how to configure VR-Forces to improve performance.
- "Section II. Scenarios" on page 209
  - "Chapter 7. Creating and Running Scenarios" on page 211 explains how to create and run scenarios, how to create batch scenarios, and how to checkpoint scenarios.
  - "Chapter 8. Scenario Events" on page 259 explains how to create and run scenario events.
  - "Chapter 9. Target Detection and Combat Features" on page 273 describes spot reports, laser targeting, entity hostility, and how entities take damage.
  - "Chapter 10. Indirect Fire, Ballistic Missiles, and Munition Detonations" on page 297 explains how to configure and call in indirect fire.
  - "Chapter 11. Setting Environment Conditions" on page 309 describes how to manipulate the date, time of day, and weather conditions.
  - "Chapter 12. Scenario Files" on page 339 describes the files used to define a scenario and how to edit them.
- "Section III. Simulation Objects" on page 349
  - "Chapter 13. Introduction to Simulation Objects" on page 351 contains conceptual details about simulation objects.
  - "Chapter 14. Creating and Placing Objects" on page 363 explains describes the common procedures for creating simulation objects, tactical graphics, and props.

  - "Chapter 15. Selecting Objects" on page 397 describes procedures common to simulation objects, control objects, and tactical graphics.
  - "Chapter 16. Viewing Information About Objects" on page 407 explains how simulation objects are displayed, how you can change the display of simulation objects, and how you can display information about simulation objects.
  - "Chapter 17. Embarked and Embedded Entities" on page 435 explains how to embark entities. It also explains how to deploy and recover embedded entities..
  - "Chapter 18. Generating Traffic (Pattern of Life)" on page 445 explains how to use the Spawn Pattern Manager to create pattern of life traffic.
  - "Chapter 19. Crowds and Multiple Simulation Objects" on page 467 explains how to create multiple simulation objects at one time and how to create and task pedestrian crowds.
  - "Chapter 20. Creating and Using an Order of Battle" on page 477 explains how to create an Order of Battle, how to import one into a scenario, and how to create the simulation objects in the Order of Battle.
- "Section IV. Modeling Units" on page 485
  - "Chapter 21. Entity-Level Unit Modeling" on page 487 describes working with units in entity-level scenarios.
  - "Chapter 22. How Aggregate-Level Modeling Works" on page 493 describes the aggregate-level warfare model.
  - "Chapter 23. Creating and Controlling Units" on page 517 explains how to create and edit units.
  - "Chapter 24. Displaying Units" on page 529 describes how to view units.
- "Section V. Tasks" on page 539
  - "Chapter 25. Assigning Tasks" on page 543 provides general information about assigning tasks and creating behavior sets.
  - "Chapter 26. Movement Tasks for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 573 describes movement tasks for simulation objects in entity-level scenarios.
  - "Chapter 28. Human and Crowd Tasks" on page 635, describes tasks for humans and crowds in entity-level scenarios.
  - "Chapter 29. Embarkation, Wait, Radio, and Other Tasks" on page 653, describes the tasks provided with VR-Forces that apply to simulation objects in entity-level scenarios.
  - "Chapter 30. Tasks for Aggregate-Level Scenarios" on page 681 describes the tasks that apply to simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios.
  - "Chapter 31. Creating Scripted Tasks and Sets" on page 713 introduces scripts and explains how to create them. It does not cover how to write scripts.

  - "Chapter 32. Writing Scripts" on page 755 introduces the Lua script API for VR-Forces and explains how to write scripts.
  - "Chapter 33. Using Qt Designer for Script Dialog Boxes" on page 785 explains how to use Qt Designer to design dialog boxes for scripted tasks and sets instead of using the automatic dialog box generation feature.
  - "Chapter 27. Engagement Tasks for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 611, describes combat-related tasks for simulation objects in entity-level scenarios.
- "Section VI. Set Data Requests" on page 793
  - "Chapter 34. Setting the State of Entity-Level Simulation Objects" on page 795 describes how to change the state of simulation objects in entity-level scenarios using set data requests.
  - "Chapter 35. Setting the State of Aggregate-Level Simulation Objects" on page 839 describes how to change the state of simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios using set data requests.
- "Section VII. Plans" on page 855
  - "Chapter 36. Plan Concepts" on page 857 describes plans and plan components.
  - "Chapter 37. Writing Plans" on page 873 explains how to write plans for simulation objects and how to write global plans.
- "Section VIII. Tactical Graphics" on page 915
  - "Chapter 38. Introduction to Tactical Graphics" on page 917 is a brief introduction to tactical graphics.
  - "Chapter 39. Overlays" on page 927 describes the creation and use of overlays.
  - "Chapter 40. Creating and Editing Tactical Graphics" on page 935 describes how to create tactical graphics other than points, lines, and areas, and how to edit tactical graphics.
  - "Chapter 41. Setting the State of Tactical Graphics" on page 961 describes set data requests that apply to tactical graphics.
  - "Chapter 42. Remote Graphics" on page 967 explains how to enable display of graphics generated by remote applications.
- "Section IX. Visual and Audio Effects" on page 971
  - "Chapter 43. Displaying Tactical Information and Effects" on page 973 describes how to display a variety of simulation object effects such as trailing effects, shadows, and sensor volumes.
  - "Chapter 44. Visualizing 2D Icons and 3D Models" on page 1005 explains how to change the size of models and icons and hide them.
  - "Chapter 45. Lighting Effects" on page 1013 describes the lighting effects supported by VR-Forces and how to manage them.

  - "Chapter 46. Marine Effects" on page 1033 describes water related effects, such as displaying rain splash and water spray. It also covers wake effects and entity buoyancy.
  - "Chapter 47. Using CameraFX Sensor Views" on page 1043 explains how to enable and configure infrared and night vision goggle sensor views.
  - "Chapter 48. Intervisibility and Range" on page 1049 explains how to determine if simulation objects can see other simulation objects or areas of the terrain.
  - "Chapter 49. Configuring Emitter Volumes" on page 1063 explains.
  - "Chapter 50. Sound Effects" on page 1069 explains how to enable and configure sound effects for entities.
  - "Chapter 51. MAK Radio" on page 1073 explains how to use the radio features.
- "Section X. The Observer and Viewing Scenarios" on page 1083
  - "Chapter 52. The Observer and Observer Modes" on page 1085, explains what an observer is and the different ways observers can be configured.
  - "Chapter 53. Moving the Observer" on page 1097 explains how to navigate the 3D and 2D views by moving the observer.
  - "Chapter 54. Attaching the Observer to Objects" on page 1131 explains how to attach the observer to simulation objects. This is an alternative to manually moving the observer through the terrain.
  - "Chapter 55. Inset Views, Sensor FOVs, HUDs, and Depth of Field" on page 1145 describes special secondary windows – inset views, sensor fields of view, and instrument panels, and HUDs.
- "Section XI. Terrain" on page 1159
  - "Chapter 56. Introduction to Terrain Usage in VR-Forces" on page 1161 provides conceptual background for terrain use in VR-Forces.
  - "Chapter 57. Displaying Terrain Information" on page 1171 describes ways to change how terrain is displayed. These options provide different types of information about the terrain.
  - "Chapter 58. Using Terrain Profiles" on page 1187 explains how to display and configure terrain profiles.
  - "Chapter 59. Generating Navigation Data" on page 1193 explains how to generate navigation data for advanced navigation by humans and ground entities.
  - "Chapter 60. Airports and Aerodromes" on page 1213 explains how to control airport settings either in a plan or by using the Airport Settings Panel.
- "Section XII. Creating and Editing Simulation Models" on page 1223

  - "Chapter 61. The Simulation Object Editor and SMSs" on page 1225 explains simulation model sets (SMSs) and how to create them in the Simulation Object Editor.
  - "Chapter 62. Editing Common Parameters" on page 1255 explains how to use the Simulation Object Editor to edit simulation object parameters that are common to entity-level and aggregate-level SMSs.
  - "Chapter 63. Editing Entities for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 1295 explains how to use the Simulation Object Editor to edit simulation object parameters, systems, and models that apply to individual entities.
  - "Chapter 64. Editing Units for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 1327, explains how to configure unit composition and formations in the Simulation Object Editor. This chapter applies to units in entity-level scenarios.
  - "Chapter 65. Editing Aggregate-Level Objects" on page 1339 explains how to configure aggregates for aggregate-level scenarios in the Simulation Object Editor.
  - "Chapter 66. Configuring Embarkation" on page 1365 explains how to enable embarkation and configure slots, ingress points, and egress points.
  - "Chapter 67. Adding DI-Guy Models to VR-Forces" on page 1387 explains how to configure new DI-Guy characters.
  - "Chapter 68. The Object Parameter Database" on page 1391 describes the object parameter database, which contains parameters for simulation objects and control objects, and how to edit it.
  - "Chapter 69. Configuring Sensors" on page 1429 explains how to configure sensors and sensor signatures.
  - "Chapter 70. Configuring Weapon Systems" on page 1443 explains how to configure weapon systems by editing configuration files and in the Simulation Object Editor.
  - "Chapter 71. Configuring Damage Systems" on page 1469 explains how to configure damage systems by editing configuration files and in the Simulation Object Editor.
  - "Chapter 72. Configuring Movement Systems" on page 1489 explains how to configure obstacle avoidance, embarkation, and formations.
  - "Chapter 73. Configuring Emitters and Radios" on page 1495 explains how to configure emitters and radios.
  - "Chapter 74. Joystick and Keyboard Controls" on page 1501 explains how to configure joysticks and keyboard keys to control entity movement.
  - "Chapter 75. Attaching Components to Remote Entities" on page 1517, explains how to configure sensors and sensor signatures.

- "Section XIII. Configuring the Graphical User Interface" on page 1521

  - "Chapter 76. Display Engine and Window Management" on page 1523 explains how to configure windows and channels and how to save and load display configurations.
  - "Chapter 77. GUI Controls, Layouts, and Behaviors" on page 1545 explains how to manage toolbars and other aspects of the VR-Forces GUI.
  - "Chapter 78. Configuring Toolbars, Dialog Boxes, and Menus" on page 1559 explains how to configure the menus, toolbars, and dialog box pages that get displayed.
  - "Chapter 79. Creating and Editing Key Mappings" on page 1569 explains how to edit key mappings and create new key mappings.
- "Section XIV. Appendixes" on page 1577.
  - "Appendix A. MTL Syntax" on page 1579 explains the syntax of configuration files provided with VR-Forces.
  - "Appendix B. The vrfSim.mtl Configuration File" on page 1583 describes the parameters in *vrfSim.mtl*.
  - "Appendix C. Object Parameters" on page 1599 describes the high level parameters used in Simulation Model Sets.
  - "Appendix D. Deprecated Weapon System and Munition Damage Configuration" on page 1611 describes the how legacy weapon systems and damage systems are configured. These systems are supported by VR-Forces but current systems are configured differently..
  - "Appendix E. Systems and System Usage" on page 1639 lists all the systems provided with VR-Forces and provides information about them, including which entities use them.

"MAK Products Glossary" on page 1647 *defines terms common to DIS, HLA, and MAK products.*

"VR-Forces Quick Reference Card" on page 1761 *lists command line options, keyboard shortcuts, and navigation and view options.*

## Documentation Set

VR-Forces documentation is provided as manuals in PDF format, online help, and HTML class documentation. Electronic versions of the documentation are in vrforcesx.x/doc. On Windows, you can access the documentation from the VR-Forces folder on the Start menu. You can also find the most current documentation at https://www.mak.com/support/product-user-guides. The VR-Forces documentation set is as follows:

- *VR-Forces Users Guide* contains all documentation for running VR-Forces, creating and running scenarios, and configuring VR-Forces.
- *VR-Forces Migration Guide* collates the most substantial migration details for recent releases.

- *VR-Forces Entity Model Catalog*. A catalog of all of the simulation objects and tactical graphics configured in the Simulation Object Editor, with basic parameter details and a screen capture of the 3D model or icon.
- *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual* explains how to add visual models and terrain to VR-Forces.
- *VR-Forces First Experience Guide*. A brief introduction to the most basic features of VR-Forces.
- Online help. The online help, accessible from the Help menu, replicates most of the information in *VR-Forces Users Guide* and *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- *VR-Forces Developers Guide* and API documentation. Class documentation and developers guides in linked HTML pages.
- *VR-Forces Release Notes* lists system requirements, release-specific requirements, new features and updates, bug fixes, and known problems.

## MAK Products

The MAK Technologies product line includes the following:

- VR-Link® Network Toolkit. VR-Link is an object-oriented library of C++ functions and definitions that implement the High Level Architecture (HLA) and the Distributed Interactive Simulation (DIS) protocol. VR-Link has built-in support for the RPR FOM and allows you to map to other FOMs. This library minimizes the time and effort required to build and maintain new HLA or DIS-compliant applications, and to integrate such compliance into existing applications.

  VR-Link includes a set of sample debugging applications and their source code. The source code serves as an example of how to use the VR-Link Toolkit to write applications. The executables provide valuable debugging services such as generating a predictable stream of HLA or DIS messages, and displaying the contents of messages transmitted on the network.
- MAK RTI. An RTI (Run-Time Infrastructure) is required to run applications using the High Level Architecture (HLA). The MAK RTI is optimized for high performance. It has an API, RTIspy®, that allows you to extend the RTI using plug-in modules. It also has a graphical user interface (the RTI Assistant) that helps users with configuration tasks and managing federates and federations.
- VR-Forces®. VR-Forces is a computer generated forces application and toolkit. It provides an application with a GUI, that gives you 2D and 3D views of a simulated environment.

  You can create and view entities, aggregate them into hierarchical units, assign tasks, set state parameters, and create plans that have tasks, set statements, and conditional statements. You can simulate using entity-level modeling, which focuses on the actions of individual people and vehicles, and aggregate-level modeling, which focuses on the interaction of large hierarchical units.

VR-Forces also functions as a plan view display for viewing remote simulation objects taking part in an exercise. Using the toolkit, you can extend the VR-Forces application or create your own application for use with another user interface.

- VR-Vantage™. VR-Vantage is a line of products designed to meet your simulation visualization needs. It includes three end-user applications (VR-Vantage Stealth and VR-Vantage IG) and the VR-Vantage Toolkit.
  - VR-Vantage Stealth displays a realistic, 3D view of your virtual world, a 2D plan view, and an exaggerated reality (XR) view. Together these views provide both situational awareness and the big picture of the simulated world. You can move your viewpoint to any location in the 3D world and can attach it to simulation objects so that it moves as they do.
  - VR-Vantage IG is a configurable desktop image generator (IG) for out the window (OTW) scenes and remote camera views. It has most of the features of the Stealth, but is optimized for its IG function.
  - SensorFX. SensorFX is an enhanced version of VR-Vantage that uses physics based sensors to view terrain and simulation object models that have been materially classified. It is built in partnership with JRM Technologies.
  - The VR-Vantage Toolkit is a 3D visual application development toolkit. Use it to customize or extend MAK's VR-Vantage applications, or to integrate VR-Vantage capabilities into your custom applications. VR-Vantage is built on top of OpenSceneGraph (OSG). The toolkit includes the OSG version used to build VR-Vantage.
- MAK Data Logger. The Data Logger, also called the Logger, can record HLA and DIS exercises and play them back for after-action review. You can play a recorded file at speeds above or below normal and can quickly jump to areas of interest. The Logger has a GUI and a text interface. The Logger API allows you to extend the Logger using plug-in modules or embed the Logger into your own application. The Logger editing features let you merge, trim, and offset Logger recordings.
- VR-Exchange™. VR-Exchange allows simulations that use incompatible communications protocols to interoperate. For example, within the HLA world, using VR-Exchange, federations using the HLA RPR FOM 1.0 can interoperate with simulations using RPR FOM 2.0, or federations using different RTIs can interoperate. VR-Exchange supports HLA, TENA, and DIS translation.
- VR-TheWorld™ Server. VR-TheWorld Server is a simple, yet powerful, web-based streaming terrain server, developed in conjunction with Pelican Mapping. Delivered with a global base map, you can also easily populate it with your own custom source data through a web-based interface. The server can be deployed on private, classified networks to provide streaming terrain data to a variety of simulation and visualization applications behind your firewall.

- DI-Guy™. DI-Guy is an SDK that allows you to embed the DI-Guy library in your real-time application and populate your world with lifelike human characters. DI-Guy provides high-fidelity human characters that move realistically, respond to simple high-level commands, and travel throughout the environment as directed by the hosting visual application. It comes with thousands of ready-to-use characters, appearances, and motions. DI-Guy character simulation is an integral part of all MAK's visual applications, including VR-Engage, VR-Forces, and VR-Vantage.
- RadarFX. RadarFX is a client-server application that simulates synthetic-aperture radar (SAR). The server application, which is based on VR-Vantage and SensorFX, loads a terrain database and, optionally, connects to simulations. A client application requests SAR images from the server. RadarFX includes a sample client application.
- VR-Engage. VR-Engage is a multi-role virtual simulator that lets users play the role of a first person human character, a ground vehicle driver, gunner or commander, a sensor operator, or the pilot of a fixed wing aircraft or helicopter. It incorporates the VR-Force simulation engine and the VR-Vantage graphics rendering capabilities.
- WebLVC Server. WebLVC Server implements the server side of the WebLVC protocol so that web-based simulation federates can participate in a distributed simulation. It is part of the WebLVC Suite, which includes the server and several sample applications that work with VR-Forces and VR-Vantage.
- MAK Legion. MAK Legion is a collection of applications and an SDK designed to support simulations with millions of simulation objects.

## How to Contact Us

For MAK Applications technical support, information about upgrades, and information about other MAK products, you can contact us in the following ways:

### Telephone

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Call or fax us at: | Voice: | 617-876-8085 (extension 3 for support) |
| | Fax: | 617-876-9208 |

### E-mail

| | |
|---|---|
| Sales and upgrade information: | info@mak.com |
| Technical support: | support@mak.com |

### Internet

| | |
|---|---|
| MAK web site home page: | www.mak.com |
| License key requests: | www.mak.com/support/get-licenses |
| Technical support: | jira.mak.com/servicedesk/customer/portal/1 |
| Product version and platform information: | www.mak.com/support/product-versions |
| For the free, unlicensed MAK RTI: | www.mak.com/support/bonus-material |

### Post

Send postal correspondence to:
MAK Technologies
10 Fawcett Street, Suite 204
Cambridge, MA 02138 USA

When requesting support, please tell us the product you are using, the version, and the platform on which you are running.

## Document Conventions

This manual uses the following typographic conventions:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Sans Serif** | Indicates commands, arguments, parameters, or values you enter. |
| **Sans Serif Bold** | Indicates a key on the keyboard. |
| *Monospaced Italic* | Indicates command variables that you replace with appropriate values. |
| **{ }** | Indicates required arguments. |
| **[ ]** | Indicates optional arguments. |
| **\|** | Separates options in a command where only one option may be chosen at a time. |
| ( \| ) | In command syntax, indicates equivalent alternatives for a command-line option, for example, **(-h \| --help)**. |
| / | Indicates a directory. Since MAK products run on both Linux and Windows PC platforms, we use the / (slash) for generic discussions of pathnames. |
| *Italic* | Indicates a file name, pathname, or a class name. |
| ➤ | Indicates a procedure. |
| **Menu > Option** | Indicates a menu choice. For example, an instruction to select the Save option from the File menu appears as:<br>Choose **File > Save**. |
| | Indicates supplemental or clarifying information. |
| | Indicates additional information that you must observe to ensure the success of a procedure or other task. |
| | Indicates that a section is valid only for entity-level scenarios. |
| | Indicates that a section is valid only for aggregate-level scenarios. |

Directory names are preceded with dot and slash characters that show their position with respect to the MAK Applications home directory. For example, the directory *vrforces#/doc* appears in the text as *./doc*.

### Mouse Button Naming Conventions

An instruction to click the mouse button refers to clicking the primary mouse button, usually the left button for right-handed mice and the right button for left-handed mice. The context-sensitive menu, also called a popup menu or right-click menu, refers to the menu displayed when you click the secondary mouse button, usually the right button on right-handed mice and the left button on left-handed mice.

## Third Party Licenses

MAK software products may use code from third parties. This section contains summary license information and where required, specific license documentation required by these third parties.

The following libraries are covered by the GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL) license:

- CIGI
- DevIL
- GEOS
- GStreamer
- LibIconV
- LibWebSockets
- OPCODE
- OpenAL
- OSG
- OsgEarth
- Pthread
- Qt
- Qwt

The following libraries are covered by the ZLib license:

- Bullet Physics
- LibPNG
- LibSDL
- Minizip
- Zlib

The following libraries are covered by the MIT license:

- Expat
- FreeGLUT
- GDAL
- GeoTiff
- GLM
- HarfBuzz
- LibCURL
- LibSquish
- LibXML
- LUA
- LuaBind
- Proj
- SMHasher
- TCLAP
- Qt Visual Graph Editor

The following libraries are covered by the BSD license:

- FreeType
- GLEW
- JPEG
- LibTiff
- Protobuf
- PCRE
- Ogg Vorbis

The following libraries are covered by the commercial licenses:

- FlexLM
- Gameware
- GLStudio
- JRM Technologies SenSimRT and SigSimRT
- OpenFlight
- SpeedTree
- Sundog Triton
- Sundog SilverLining
- CDB API

The following libraries are covered by custom licenses:

- NVidia CG Toolkit
- FreeImage (FreeImage Public License)
- Boost (Boost Software License)
- Poco (Boost Software License)

COLLADA DOM is covered by the SCEA Shared Source license.

Thread Building Blocks is covered by the GPL license:

SQLLite is in the public domain.

SWIG is covered by the GPL license.

## Boost License

VR-Link, and all MAK software that uses VR-Link uses some code that is distributed under the Boost License. All header files that contain Boost code are properly attributed. The Boost web site is: www.boost.org.

Boost Software License - Version 1.0 - August 17th, 2003

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the "Software") to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following:

The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## libXML and libICONV

VR-Link and all MAK software that uses VR-Link, links in libXML and libICONV. On some platforms the compiled libraries and header files are distributed with MAK Products. MAK has made no modifications to these libraries. For more information about these libraries please see the following web sites:

- The LGPL license is available at: http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html.
- Information about IconV is at: http://www.gnu.org/software/libiconv/.

- Information about LibXML is at: http://xmlsoft.org/.

## Lua

Some MAK products use the Lua programming language (www.lua.org). Its license is as follows:

Copyright © 1994–2012 Lua.org, PUC-Rio.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## Freefont OpenType Font Set

VR-Vantage applications and VR-Forces use the Freefont OpenType font set from the Free Software Foundation. It is covered by the General Public License (GPL). For details, please see: http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html

## QScintilla and SciTE

License for Scintilla and SciTE. Copyright 1998-2002 by Neil Hodgson <neilh@scintilla.org>. All Rights Reserved

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation.

NEIL HODGSON DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS

SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS, IN NO EVENT SHALL NEIL HODGSON BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

## Autodesk Gameware Navigation

The following are registered trademarks or trademarks of Autodesk, Inc., in the USA and other countries: 3ds Max, AutoCAD, Autodesk, DWF, DWG, DXF, Kynapse, Maya, MotionBuilder, and Powered with Autodesk Technology.

## NVIDIA

The HDR implementation uses the HDR NVIDIA gameworks SDK example that has the following copyright notice:

Multiple Files in folder: es3aep-kepler\HDR/

SDK Version: v2.11

Email: gameworks@nvidia.com

Site: http://developer.nvidia.com/

Copyright (c) 2014-2015, NVIDIA CORPORATION. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of NVIDIA CORPORATION nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Third-Party Licenses for VR-Vantage Applications

VR-Vantage applications use a variety of third-party libraries. Developers who want to use these libraries may be required to purchase developer's licenses. Please see *"Third-Party Software and Content,"* in section 1.2 in *VR-Forces Front-End Developers Guide*, in *VR-Vantage Users Guide* for details.

# I. Introduction, Installation, and Startup

VR-Forces is a computer generated forces (CGF) application and toolkit. VR-Forces is implemented using separate front-end (graphical user interface) and back-end (simulation engine) applications that allow tremendous flexibility for managing your simulation needs.

# 1. Introduction to VR-Forces

This chapter provides a high-level description of VR-Forces features.


1.1. Overview ..... 75
1.1.1 Entity-Level and Aggregate-Level Simulation ..... 77
1.1.2 Realistic Display of Vehicles and Terrain (3D View) ..... 78
1.1.3 Create Complex Scenarios ..... 78
1.1.4 Simulation Object Types Supported ..... 79
1.1.5 Mission Planning ..... 81
1.1.6 Simulation Object Tasks ..... 81
1.1.7 Scripted Tasks and Set Data Requests ..... 82
1.1.8 Tactical Graphics ..... 82
1.1.9 Terrain Agility and Composability ..... 83
1.1.10 Dynamic Terrain ..... 83
1.1.11 Crowd Behaviors and Pattern of Life ..... 83
1.1.12 Flexible, Intuitive Graphical User Interface ..... 84
1.1.13 Overlays ..... 84
1.1.14 Behaviors ..... 84
1.1.15 Observer Attach Modes ..... 84
1.1.16 Special Effects and Simulation Object Information Visualization ..... 85
1.1.17 Dynamic Ocean ..... 85
1.1.18 Lighting Effects ..... 85
1.1.19 Accurate Vehicle Positioning ..... 86
1.1.20 Batch Mode Operation ..... 86
1.1.21 Remote Control ..... 86
1.2. The VR-Forces Toolkit ..... 86
1.2.1 Plug-in Architecture ..... 87
1.3. DI-Guy ..... 87
1.4. Helpful Utilities ..... 88
1.5. Third-Party Software and Content ..... 88

1.5.1 SilverLining ..... 89
1.5.2 Triton Ocean SDK ..... 89
1.5.3 GL Studio ..... 90
1.5.4 SpeedTree ..... 90
1.5.5 3D Models, Terrain, and Graphical Content ..... 91
1.5.6 OpenSceneGraph ..... 91
1.5.7 osgEarth ..... 91
1.6. Distributed Simulation Standards Supported ..... 92

## 1.1. Overview

VR-Forces is a computer generated forces (CGF) application and toolkit. VR-Forces is implemented using separate front-end (graphical user interface) and back-end (simulation engine) applications that allow tremendous flexibility for managing your simulation needs. (For information about how this works, please see "3.1. The VR-Forces Program" on page 108.)

VR-Forces provides 3D and 2D views of your simulated world, integrated into one graphical user interface (GUI). The 2D view provides you with insights into a simulated battle by overlaying simulation objects and information onto 2D views of tactical, strategic, and visual databases. The 2D view answers typical questions about the placement of forces and how the terrain might affect the engagement more easily than do three-dimensional displays. It is ideally suited for viewing simulations over large areas of open terrain.

The 3D view provides three-dimensional, perspective views of the terrain and entity models. It is ideal for scenarios that require situational awareness, simulation debugging, or after action review. It is particularly useful for placing entities with precise location and orientation and for working in terrains in which entities can be at multiple altitudes at a given X, Y coordinate, such as urban terrains.

The 3D view includes exaggerated reality (XR) features. Model scaling and additional model sets help to provide a common operational picture of the simulated world.

VR-Forces is compatible with the Distributed Interactive Simulation (DIS) and High Level Architecture (HLA) simulation standards. It supports multiple database formats and terrain servers. VR-Forces is interoperable with other MAK products, such as VR-Vantage Stealth, VR-Engage, and MAK Data Logger.

The VR-Forces front-end is built with the VR-Vantage Toolkit. The VR-Vantage Toolkit is based on OpenSceneGraph[1], so you can leverage value-added plug-ins built by the OSG community and MAK partners.

Table 1 lists VR-Forces visual features supported in the 3D and 2D views for entity-level scenarios.

**Table 1. VR-Forces features by projection**

| Feature | 3D | 2D |
|---|---|---|
| Terrain agility and composability | X | X |
| Attach modes | X | X |

[1]"OpenSceneGraph is an Open Source, cross-platform graphics toolkit for the development of high-performance graphics applications such as flight simulators, games, virtual reality and scientific visualization. It is based on the concept of a SceneGraph, providing an object-oriented framework on top of OpenGL." (http://www.openscenegraph.org)

**Table 1. VR-Forces features by projection (continued)**

| Feature | 3D | 2D |
|---|---|---|
| **Observer movement modes** | | |
| Observer frame | X | X |
| Level observer frame | X | |
| Laptop | X | X |
| 2D level observer frame | | X |
| **Model sets** | | |
| 3D models | X | X (top view) |
| 3D colorized models | X | X (top view) |
| 2D icons | X | X |
| **Other Features** | | |
| Audio | X | X |
| Cockpit displays | X | |
| Communications lines | X | X |
| Detonation and muzzle flashes | X | |
| DI-Guy characters | X | |
| Display units configuration | X | X |
| Dynamic ocean | X | |
| Dynamic terrain | X | X |
| Emitter volumes | X | X |
| Entity labels | Text panels | Configurable symbol decorations |
| Environment effects | X | |
| Extruded tactical graphics | X | |
| Fire and detonation lines | X | X |
| Forward+ lighting | X | |
| High dynamic range lighting | X | |
| Illumination Flares | X | |
| Intervisibility | X | X |
| Paged terrain | X | X |
| Parachuting | X | X |
| Radar jamming | X | X |
| Range rings | X | X |
| Remote draw API | X | X (2D graphics only) |
| Sea spray effects | X | |
| Sensors | X | X (Stealth only) |

**Table 1. VR-Forces features by projection (continued)**

| Feature | 3D | 2D |
|---|---|---|
| Sensor contact lines | X | X |
| Shader-based effects maps | X | |
| Shadows | X | |
| SpeedTree trees | X | |
| Streaming buoys and beacons | X | X |
| Streaming terrain | X | X |
| Tactical Data Link support | X | X |
| Tactical graphics | X | X |
| Tactical smoke | X | |
| Task visualization | X | X |
| Terrain profiles | X | X |
| Tracers | X | |
| Track histories | X | X |
| Trailing effects | X | |
| View controls | X | X |
| Wireframe view | X | X |
| Zoom | X | X |

### 1.1.1 Entity-Level and Aggregate-Level Simulation

VR-Forces supports two approaches to simulation – entity-level simulation and aggregate-level simulation. In entity-level simulations, VR-Forces models individual entities, such as ships, tanks, automobiles, airplanes, and people. Interaction, and for military simulations, warfare, takes place between individual entities. You can aggregate entities into hierarchical units, but for the most part they are still modeled as individuals.

Aggregate-level simulations do not model individual entity interactions and combat. They are concerned with the high level movement and interaction of large numbers of personnel and equipment. Aggregate-level combat is modeled based on the relative strengths and weaknesses of hierarchical units in personnel, equipment, and location, not on the engagement of the individual entities that they represent. Aggregate-level simulations are used for modeling the operational tempo of large area/theater level missions overseen by command staff level officers. This is useful for training staff officers and stimulating Command and Control systems (for example, C2, C4I, C4ISR, and Mission Command systems). (Aggregate-level simulations include some entity models to facilitate certain types of munition attacks. However, they use the same modeling approach as units. They do not behave like the comparable entities in entity-level simulations.)

Most of the information in VR-Forces documentation applies to both types of modeling. The procedures for creating scenarios, adding simulation objects and tactical graphics, assigning tasks and writing plans, and displaying scenario information are almost identical in both types of scenarios. Therefore, if you want to know how to create a scenario that uses aggregate-level modeling, for example, just follow the procedures in "Chapter 7. Creating and Running Scenarios" on page 211. Or, if you want to learn about assigning tasks in entity-level scenarios, just read "Chapter 25. Assigning Tasks" on page 543.

If a section only applies to entity-level scenarios, it has an entity icon ( ) in the margin. If a section only applies to aggregate-level scenarios, it has a unit icon ( ) in the margin.

For conceptual information about the differences between entity-level modeling and aggregate-level modeling, please see:

- "13.7. Entity-Level Modeling and Aggregate-Level Modeling" on page 358.
- "Chapter 21. Entity-Level Unit Modeling" on page 487.
- "Chapter 22. How Aggregate-Level Modeling Works" on page 493.

## 1.1.2 Realistic Display of Vehicles and Terrain (3D View)

VR-Forces provides a realistic display using terrain and moving-model geometry in the OpenFlight format. It includes many 3D vehicle models, some of which display movement of articulated parts, such as turrets and rotors. These models can change to show a damaged or destroyed state. You can provide your own models and map them to object types. For details about terrain, please see Chapter 1, *Composing Terrains*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*. For details about models, please see Chapter 17, *Mapping Models and Effects*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

Aggregate-level scenarios do not use 3D vehicle models.

## 1.1.3 Create Complex Scenarios

VR-Forces lets you create complex scenarios to meet your simulation requirements. You can:

- Create and delete simulation objects.
- Create, delete, and edit tactical graphics.
- Assign a sequence of tasks and set data requests to a simulation object as a plan.
- Assign tasks and set data requests independently of plans.

- Create global plans that run independently of any simulation object.
- Observe the behavior of simulation objects in response to their environment.
- Create, save, and load scenarios that consist of:
  - Terrain database information.
  - Simulation objects, such as individual platforms, humans, and units.
  - Tactical graphics.
  - A plan for each simulation object.
- Manage hostility relationships.
- Manage spot reports.
- Determine line-of-sight between simulation objects.
- Aggregate and disaggregate, and expand and collapse units.
- Create overlays and add tactical graphics and simulation objects to them.
- Schedule scenario events to inject non-simulated input, such as text, video, and graphics to scenario participants.
- Apply weather conditions to a particular area of the terrain.

### 1.1.4 Simulation Object Types Supported

Using VR-Forces, you can interactively add simulation objects to a simulation and you can aggregate them into higher echelon units. Simulation objects provided for entity-level scenarios include:

- Ground entities, such as:
  - M1A2 Tank
  - T-80 Tank
  - HMMWV Utility Vehicle
  - BTR-80 APC
  - M2A2 Bradley IFV
  - IEDs
  - Civilian vehicles, such as automobiles, police cars, and fire engines.
- Air entities, such as:
  - F-16 Falcon
  - F/A-18 Hornet
  - A-10 Thunderbolt
  - VTUAV Cypher
  - MiG-29 Fulcrum
  - AH-64 Apache
  - Civilian aircraft, such as Boeing 747 and Airbus A320.

- Surface and subsurface entities, such as:
  - AAVC7A1 Landing craft
  - LCAC
  - Aircraft carrier
  - Guided missile frigate
  - Submarine
  - Sailboats
  - Cargo ships.
- Life forms, such as:
  - Dismounted infantry
  - Civilian.
- Units, such as platoons and companies.

Aggregate-level scenarios have simulation object types such as:

- ADA PLT
- Air Attack company
- Artillery battery
- Engineering company
- Ground attack aircraft
- Mechanized infantry company
- Mortar platoon
- Rifle company
- Tank company
- Destroyer
- Submarine

### Simulation Object States

You can interactively modify aspects of a simulation object's state, including:

- Speed.
- On-board stores, such as fuel and ammunition.
- Location.
- Heading.

For more information about changing a simulation object's state, please see "Section VI. Set Data Requests" on page 793.

You can modify simulation object parameters by editing the object parameter database and other configuration files.

#### Embarkation

Simulation objects can embark on and disembark from other simulation objects, for example, dismounted infantry can embark on a truck, HMMWVs can embark on an LCAC, and fixed-wing aircraft can land on and take off from aircraft carriers.

---

To use embarkation in HLA federations, you must use RPR FOM 2.0, draft 17 or later. For information about specifying the correct FOM, please see "4.1. Starting VR-Forces" on page 123 and "5.5.3 Specifying the RPR FOM Version" on page 179.

---

### 1.1.5 Mission Planning

You can create plans for simulation objects that contain tasks, set data requests, conditional statements and global commands. You can save plans and edit them.

Conditional statements specify that tasks will be executed only if a specific condition is true or false. Some of the conditions tested are:

- Is a simulation object in a specific area?
- Is a simulation object destroyed?
- Is a simulation object to the left or right of a phase line?

In addition to conditional statements that are checked only once (**If** statements), VR-Forces supports triggers, **While** statements, and **Wait Until** statements.

#### Global Plans

Global plans exist independently of any simulation object. They allow you to assign tasks and set data requests to simulation objects and execute other commands. In essence, they allow you to script the sorts of ad hoc actions that a VR-Forces user could take through the GUI. This provides a great amount of flexibility to automatically modify simulation objects and tactical graphics in response to events.

For more information, please see "Chapter 37. Writing Plans" on page 873.

### 1.1.6 Simulation Object Tasks

You can assign tasks to simulation objects as part of a plan or independently. The tasks supported in entity-level scenarios include:

- Move to an object.
- Patrol along a route.
- Patrol between two objects.
- Follow an entity.
- Fire for effect.
- Take off and land.
- Fly to a heading.

The tasks supported in aggregate-level scenarios include:

- Move to an object.
- Patrol along a route.
- Patrol between two objects.
- Construct a minefield (and other combat engineering objects).
- Breach an obstacle.
- Bomb a location.

Independently assigned tasks override the tasks in a plan, allowing you to respond to the course of a simulation as events transpire, without stopping to edit a simulation object's plan. For more information, please see "Chapter 25. Assigning Tasks" on page 543.

### 1.1.7 Scripted Tasks and Set Data Requests

You can create new tasks and set data requests by writing scripts using the Lua scripting language. Input dialog boxes are created automatically. The scripted action can be added to the Task or Set menu. This feature requires some programming skills, but you do not need a developers license or a C++ development environment. For more information please see "Chapter 31. Creating Scripted Tasks and Sets" on page 713.

Reactive tasks are a special kind of scripted task. They monitor the simulation and get executed only if some special condition is met. You can manage assignment of reactive tasks in the GUI. For more information, please see "25.3. Reactive Tasks" on page 552.

Background processes are another special type of scripted task. They run continuously and manage ongoing simulation object activities. There is no user interface for managing them. For more information, please see "32.11. Background Processes" on page 783.

You can organize scripts into groups called Behavior Sets. By assigning Behavior Sets to forces you can control whether or not scripts are available to simulation objects in those forces. For more information, please see "25.4. Using Behavior Sets to Manage Scripts" on page 557.

### 1.1.8 Tactical Graphics

Using VR-Forces, you can interactively create and name tactical graphics, such as:

- Points
- Phase lines
- Lines
- Areas
- Obstacles

Simulation objects are aware of some types of tactical graphics and can be assigned tasks such as following a route, or moving between points. VR-Forces can also determine if specified simulation objects are in an area and this information can be used as part of mission planning.

Aggregate-level scenarios support combat engineering objects, which can be areal, point, or linear objects that could impede, damage, or defend a simulation object.

Other types of tactical graphics are for informational and tactical management purposes and do not affect the simulation. For more information, please see "Chapter 39. Overlays" on page 927.

### 1.1.9 Terrain Agility and Composability

VR-Forces allows you to build your terrain at runtime using a variety of database and vector formats. It can load OpenFlight DTED, CTDB, CDB, MetaFlight, and GDB (MAK terrain format) databases. It can load feature data from shapefiles, S-57 files, and GDB files. You can also superimpose geospatial images such as GeoTiffs or other raster image files on the terrain.

You can load local terrain data and you can stream data from networked servers using the osgEarth earth file format.

---

VR-Forces only supports geocentric terrains in osgEarth earth files.

---

You can save these composed terrains in the MTF file format. For details, please see Chapter 1, *Composing Terrains*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*. For a list of supported file formats, please see "56.2. Supported File Formats" on page 1162.

VR-Forces supports the following coordinate systems:

- UTM
- Geocentric
- MGRS
- Latitude, longitude
- Database

You can overlay raster images, such as CADRG, BMP, and geotiff files on terrain databases.

### 1.1.10 Dynamic Terrain

Terrain state can be changed using switch nodes in the terrain models. Terrain changes can be caused by munition damage, user initiated changes, and using entity tasks.

Cultural features can be embedded in the terrain and navigation data can be dynamically regenerated so that entities can navigate around and through the objects.

### 1.1.11 Crowd Behaviors and Pattern of Life

You can quickly create civilian crowds that have inherent behaviors of wandering and fleeing munition detonations. You can assign tasks to crowds, such as gathering around a person or point. For details, please see "Chapter 19. Crowds and Multiple

Simulation Objects" on page 467.

You can use the pattern of life feature to generate civilian and vehicular traffic using various spawn patterns to simulate typical background traffic for scenarios. For details, please see "Chapter 18. Generating Traffic (Pattern of Life)" on page 445.

### 1.1.12 Flexible, Intuitive Graphical User Interface

VR-Forces's graphical user interface (GUI) allows you to manipulate VR-Forces from menus, dockable control panels, and the keyboard.

The VR-Forces display includes the following features:

- Manipulate the simulation map by zooming and panning.
- Select and track simulation objects.
- Turn display features on and off.
- Display a hierarchical, echelon view of simulation objects and an embarkation view.
- Display entity labels that include several types of information.
- Display line-of-sight (intervisibility) for simulation objects.

You can hide and display the control panels, keep them docked to the screen, or undock them to make more space available for the display window. The GUI controls can be hidden for full-screen demonstrations.

The GUI follows standard conventions for modern windowing systems. For additional details, please see "Chapter 77. GUI Controls, Layouts, and Behaviors" on page 1545. For descriptions of individual windows and dialog boxes, please see online help.

### 1.1.13 Overlays

Overlays mimic clear plastic sheets that a planner might use to draw graphics on top of a terrain map. All objects are automatically assigned to overlays. You can add overlays and move objects between overlays. You can hide the display of objects on an overlay. For details, please see "39. Overlays" on page 927.

### 1.1.14 Behaviors

Simulation objects understand how to interact with their environment. For example, they can:

- Respond appropriately to other simulation objects and tactical graphics, for example, avoiding simulation objects, waiting for orders, and so on.
- Respond to detected targets, for example, deciding which of multiple targets to acquire, which weapon to fire, and what ammunition to use.
- Follow a route.

### 1.1.15 Observer Attach Modes

The observer represents your eyepoint in the simulated terrain. VR-Forces offers attach modes that let you:

- Manually control the observer's position and orientation. (The observer represents the user's view, or eyepoint, in the simulated world.)
- Follow a simulation object, maintaining a consistent positional offset, with a matching heading.
- Mimic a vehicle's position and orientation. You can place the observer inside the vehicle for a driver's-eye view, or fly outside of it, moving in tandem with the vehicle.
- Tether the observer to a simulation object, maintaining a consistent positional offset without changing the observer's heading.
- Automatically track a vehicle's movement from a fixed viewpoint, as if watching from a control tower.

For more information, please see "Chapter 53. Moving the Observer" on page 1097.

### 1.1.16 Special Effects and Simulation Object Information Visualization

VR-Forces includes features that help you understand the interaction between simulation objects that add a realistic tone to interactions. These features include:

- Fire and detonation lines.
- Track histories.
- Range rings.
- Radio communications lines.
- Trailing effects, such as footprints, tire tracks, and wakes.

### 1.1.17 Dynamic Ocean

VR-Forces provides dynamic ocean visualization in the Stealth and Out-the-Window observer modes. The ocean shows waves, swells, and spray effects. Surface entities have realistic wakes and buoyancy behavior. Changes to wind speed and direction affect wave action.

### 1.1.18 Lighting Effects

VR-Forces supports a variety of lighting effects, including:

- Dynamic lighting.
- High dynamic range lighting.
- Ocean planar reflection.
- Lens flare.
- Crepuscular (sun) rays.

#### Shader-based Effect Maps

VR-Forces supports several types of shader-based effect texture maps. Shaders are computer programs that simulate the effect of light on the terrain and objects in the simulation. VR-Forces makes extensive use of them for visualization effects.

VR-Forces supports the following types of shader-based effect maps:

- Normal, or bump, maps. Normal maps give terrains the appearance of relief, such as a rocky landscape.
- Specular maps. Specular maps affect the highlight color of objects.
- Ambient occlusion maps. Ambient occlusion maps model areas that do not receive direct light, such as cracks and crevices and shaded areas of terrain and models. These areas are lit only by ambient light.
- Reflection maps. Reflection maps affect the reflectivity of surfaces, such as windows. Reflection maps reflect objects in the sky, not the terrain.
- Emissive maps. Emissive maps control the emissivity of whatever they are applied to based on the current ambient light values.

Lighting effects are described in "Chapter 45. Lighting Effects" on page 1013.

### 1.1.19 Accurate Vehicle Positioning

VR-Forces can smooth the trajectories of moving vehicles to compensate for discontinuous positional data. The ground clamping feature can ensure that all ground entities are placed correctly on the terrain surface. For details, please see "6.11. Trajectory Smoothing" on page 199 and "56.7. Using Ground Clamping" on page 1168.

### 1.1.20 Batch Mode Operation

Batch mode allows you to run a scenario multiple times or run several different scenarios, without direct action through the graphical user interface. This is useful for running unattended testing or to test the results of a scenario under differing conditions. You can record the results of batch mode simulations using the MAK Data Logger, for later review. For more information, please see "7.10. Running VR-Forces in Batch Mode" on page 252.

### 1.1.21 Remote Control

You can control the VR-Forces observer remotely through view control messages, which can be generated by MAK applications such as MAK Data Logger, and by programs that use the VR-Vantage Control Toolkit. For details, please see "53.14. Controlling the Observer from Other Applications" on page 1130.

You can also send view control messages from plans. For details, please see "37.7.7 Sending View Control Messages" on page 906.

## 1.2. The VR-Forces Toolkit

The VR-Forces toolkit lets you develop CGF applications. You can enhance the capabilities of the VR-Forces simulation engine and GUI, or integrate the simulation engine into your own user interface. The toolkit has several APIs. The Simulation API gives you control over:

- Behaviors
- Components
- Object types
- Parameters
- Messages
- Resources
- Tactical graphics
- Plans
- Tasks

The Remote Control API allows you to control a VR-Forces simulation engine from a remote application, such as a graphical user interface (GUI). The Terrain API lets you manipulate terrain databases.

The VR-Forces front-end is built with the VR-Vantage Toolkit. The toolkit is included with VR-Forces, allowing you to modify or extend the front-end. For details about the VR-Forces Toolkit, please see *VR-Forces Developers Guide*.

### 1.2.1 Plug-in Architecture

You can modify the VR-Forces front-end and back-end by rebuilding the applications or by writing plug-ins. In fact, much of the basic functionality of the front-end is implemented using plug-ins rather than as part of the main executable. Plug-ins are dynamically linked libraries that VR-Forces can load at startup. The rationale for choosing which method to use is described in API documentation. You can manage the use of plug-ins in the front-end. For details, please see "4.8. Managing Plug-ins" on page 149.

## 1.3. DI-Guy

VR-Forces uses DI-Guy software and content for human character animation.

VR-Forces comes with DI-Guy functionality built-in and with a large set of DI-Guy characters, appearances, and animations. A VR-Forces customer does not need a DI-Guy license of any kind to use DI-Guy animated characters in a VR-Forces-based application (including custom applications built using the VR-Forces Toolkit).

The DI-Guy Character Viewer is bundled with VR-Forces. It lets you view the entire library of DI-Guy characters, hand items, heads, and animations. For details about using it, please see *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

However, you need a DI-Guy Developer's license if you want to:

- Develop new character types, or alter the geometry, appearances, textures, or motions of DI-Guy characters.
- Directly access the DI-Guy API to modify or extend the way that VR-Forces uses the DI-Guy API or access DI-Guy functionality that MAK has not already integrated into VR-Forces.

DI-Guy libraries, models, textures, motion files, and other graphics resources are distributed in the VR-Forces package solely so that VR-Forces can use them. Use of DI-Guy software or content outside of VR-Forces-based applications is not permitted by the VR-Forces license.

For more information, please see"28.14. DI-Guy Animation" on page 641 and "34.20. DI-Guy Characteristics (Appearance, Head, Body Weight)" on page 806, and "67.2. DI-Guy Configuration Files" on page 1388 and "63.1.10 Editing a Lifeform's Visual Model and Animation" on page 1303.

## 1.4. Helpful Utilities

VR-Forces includes the following utilities for configuring and troubleshooting VR-Forces:

- The Simulation Object Editor is a graphical user interface that lets you add and remove component systems from simulation objects and specify common simulation object parameters. You can create new simulation objects in the editor. You can also create new simulation model sets. The Simulation Object Editor is also used to manage tactical graphics. For details, please see "Chapter 61. The Simulation Object Editor and SMSs" on page 1225.
- The vrfMsgDump utility displays the contents of VR-Forces messages discovered on the network. For details about vrfMsgDump, please see *VR-Forces Developers Guide*.
- The Boundary Generation Tool lets you calculate the boundaries of a high resolution terrain inset for inclusion in an earth file. For details, please see Section 3.9.1, *"Using the Boundary Generation Tool"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- The medfTool lets you encrypt 3D model files. For details, please see Section 18.15, *"Compressing Model Files"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- The mftTool lets you process MetaFlight terrains so that they will work in VR-Forces. For details, please see Section 6.4.1, *"The mftTool"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- osgEarth cache. This feature lets you cache terrain data from earth files offline. For details, please see Section 11.1.2, *"Caching earth File Terrain Data"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

## 1.5. Third-Party Software and Content

VR-Forces includes software and content licensed from third parties, including:

- SilverLining™: real-time sky and 3D cloud rendering from Sundog Software.
- Triton Ocean SDK™: 3D ocean and ship wakes from Sundog Software.
- GL Studio®: interactive cockpit instrumentation and HMI from DiSTI®.
- SpeedTree®: animated, 3D foliage from Interactive Data Visualization (IDV).

- 3D models, terrain, and graphical content from Simthetiq, RealDB, TurboSquid, and TerraSim.
- OpenSceneGraph: an open source 3D graphics toolkit hosted at http://www.openscenegraph.org.
- osgEarth: an open source streaming terrain plug-in by Pelican Mapping, at http://osgEarth.org.

---

**!** The run-time and developers' rights for VR-Forces customers vary from vendor to vendor. Please read this section carefully to understand which rights are included with VR-Forces licenses, and which rights require additional third-party licenses.

---

### 1.5.1 SilverLining

VR-Forces uses SilverLining software and content to compute lighting and to render the sky, clouds, sun, and moon. SilverLining is developed by Sundog Software (http://www.sundog-soft.com).

Most VR-Forces customers do not need to buy a SilverLining license of any kind. In general, a VR-Forces customer has the right to use the SilverLining technology that is built into VR-Forces in any VR-Forces-based application (including custom applications built using the Toolkit). However, there are two exceptions:

- If you want to extend or change the way that MAK has integrated SilverLining into VR-Forces by writing directly to the SilverLining API, then you need a SilverLining Developer's License.
- If you are building a commercial video game or other "mass-market" (consumer-level) commercial product on top of the VR-Forces Toolkit, and the resulting product includes the SilverLining functionality, then you need a SilverLining Developer's License.

By default, SilverLining (and therefore VR-Forces) uses a hard-coded star catalog. You can override this by setting the **star-catalog-file** parameter for the star catalog in the config file, *./data/Environment/Sky/SilverLining.config*. The comments include a reference to the example file *starcat.csv*, also located in the *Sky* directory; it shows the format SilverLining expects for the catalog.

SilverLining libraries, textures and other graphics resources are distributed in the VR-Forces package solely so that VR-Forces can use them. Use of SilverLining software or content outside of VR-Forces-based applications is not permitted by the VR-Forces license.

### 1.5.2 Triton Ocean SDK

VR-Forces uses the Triton Ocean SDK to render 3D oceans and ship wakes. Triton Ocean is developed by Sundog Software (http://www.sundog-soft.com).

Most VR-Forces customers do not need to buy a Triton Ocean license of any kind. In general, a VR-Forces customer has the right to use the Triton Ocean technology that is built into VR-Forces in any VR-Forces-based application (including custom applications built using the Toolkit). However, there are two exceptions:

- If you want to extend or change the way that MAK has integrated Triton Ocean into VR-Forces by writing directly to the Triton Ocean API, then you need a SilverLining Developer's License.
- If you are building a commercial video game or other "mass-market" (consumer-level) commercial product on top of the VR-Forces Toolkit, and the resulting product includes the Triton Ocean functionality, then you need a Triton Ocean Developer's License.

Triton Ocean libraries, textures and other graphics resources are distributed in the VR-Forces package solely so that VR-Forces can use them. Use of Triton Ocean software or content outside of VR-Forces-based applications is not permitted by the VR-Forces license.

### 1.5.3 GL Studio

VR-Forces uses GL Studio software and content to render interactive cockpit instrumentation displays. GL Studio is developed by DiSTI (http://www.disti.com).

VR-Forces is delivered with several generic cockpit displays. You can use the built-in cockpit displays in any VR-Forces-based application (including custom applications built using the Toolkit), without a GL Studio license of any kind.

If you want to build custom cockpits using the GL Studio editor or GL Studio API, you need a GL Studio Developer's license. If you want to execute custom cockpits in VR-Forces-based applications (regardless of whether the custom cockpits are built by you or a third party), you need GL Studio Run-Time licenses.

GL Studio libraries and graphics resources are distributed in the VR-Forces package solely so that VR-Forces can use them. Use of GL Studio software or content outside of VR-Forces-based applications is not permitted by the VR-Forces license.

### 1.5.4 SpeedTree

VR-Forces uses SpeedTree software and content for animated real-time 3D foliage and vegetation. SpeedTree is developed by Interactive Data Visualization (IDV) (http://www.speedtree.com).

A VR-Forces customer does not need a SpeedTree license of any kind to use the SpeedTree functionality that is built into the VR-Forces applications that MAK delivers. You may build and run plug-ins to our out-of-the-box applications without a SpeedTree license, as long as your plug-ins do not need to directly access the SpeedTree API.

However, you need a SpeedTree Developer's license if you want to:

- Write a plug-in that uses the SpeedTree API directly to extend or modify the way that SpeedTree is integrated into VR-Forces.
- Use the VR-Forces Toolkit to develop new applications, and you want your applications to include SpeedTree functionality.

SpeedTree libraries, models, textures, and other graphics resources are distributed in the VR-Forces package solely so that VR-Forces can use them. Use of SpeedTree software or content outside of VR-Forces-based applications is not permitted by the VR-Forces license.

### 1.5.5 3D Models, Terrain, and Graphical Content

VR-Forces includes a rich set of 3D models for vehicles, weapons, cultural features and urban clutter (signs, barriers, lampposts, and so on). It also includes several sample terrain databases to help you get started with VR-Forces, and to help demonstrate VR-Forces. Much of this content is derived from 3D data that we have licensed from third parties:

- Many of the high-quality vehicle models come from Simthetiq (http://www.simthetiq.com).
- Some models come from Real DB (http://www.realdb.qc.ca/company).
- Some of the middle-eastern building models and urban clutter objects that are used in our sample terrain databases were licensed from Turbosquid (http://www.turbosquid.com).

All of this content is distributed in the VR-Forces package solely so that VR-Forces can use it. Use of any of the VR-Forces models, textures, terrains, or other content outside of VR-Forces-based applications is not permitted by the VR-Forces license.

### 1.5.6 OpenSceneGraph

VR-Forces uses OpenSceneGraph for its underlying scene graph representation, rendering, file loading, and many other capabilities. OpenSceneGraph is an open source, cross-platform graphics toolkit for the development of high-performance graphics applications. The OpenSceneGraph source repository is maintained by Robert Osfield at http://www.openscenegraph.org. It is distributed under the OpenSceneGraph Public License (OSGPL), which is based on the GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL).

MAK will provide modified source code for OSG upon request, as per the OSGPL license. Please contact support@mak.com to obtain the download links for our modified source.

### 1.5.7 osgEarth

VR-Forces uses osgEarth to import streaming terrain elevation and imagery data. The data can be streamed from external servers and sources or from a directory on the

osgEarth is an open source plug-in to OpenSceneGraph, maintained by Pelican Mapping at http://osgEarth.org. osgEarth is distributed under the GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL).

MAK will provide modified source code for osgEarth upon request, as per the OSGPL license. Please contact support@mak.com to obtain the download links for our modified source.

## 1.6. Distributed Simulation Standards Supported

VR-Forces supports the HLA 1.3 specification, the current draft of the IEEE 1516 C++ API maintained by the SISO Dynamic Link Compatible RTI API Product Development Group, and HLA Evolved (IEEE 1516-2010). It also supports the Distributed Interactive Simulation (DIS) protocol, versions 4, 5, 6, and 7.

VR-Forces has built-in support for the HLA RPR-FOM and can support other FOMs through the FOM Mapping feature. For information about FOM mapping, please see "5.5.4 Specifying a FOM Mapper" on page 179. Please see *VR-Forces Release Notes* for a list of the versions of DIS supported.

VR-Forces supports time management for HLA exercises.

# 2. Installing VR-Forces

This chapter explains how to install VR-Forces on your computer. It also explains how to install other software required for use with VR-Forces.


2.1. Installing VR-Forces ..... 94
2.1.1 Installing VR-Forces on Windows ..... 94
2.1.2 Installing VR-Forces on a Linux System ..... 95
2.1.3 Installing the Toolkit ..... 95
2.1.4 Uninstalling VR-Forces from Windows ..... 95
2.1.5 Uninstalling VR-Forces from Linux ..... 95
2.2. The VR-Forces Directory Structure ..... 96
2.3. Installing and Setting Up the MAK License Manager ..... 97
2.3.1 Specifying the License Server ..... 97
2.4. Installing an RTI ..... 100
2.4.1 Installing the MAK RTI ..... 100
2.5. Localizing the Graphical User Interface ..... 101
2.5.1 Translating Other Interface Files ..... 104
2.5.2 Translating VR-Forces Scripts and Console Messages ..... 104
2.5.3 Applying the Language Files ..... 106

# 2.1. Installing VR-Forces

A full VR-Forces installation includes the application, data, the License Manager software and, for HLA operation, an RTI (or Runtime Infrastructure).

VR-Forces has an application installer and a data package (*.MAK-targz*) that has multiple files. You must run the application installer and then install the data package. The application installer can automatically install the data package if you configure it to do so. MAK also provides optional data packages that have additional terrains.

To install the VR-Forces toolkit, you must enter an installation code. Be sure you have received your code from your MAK salesperson before you start the installation process. If you do not have an installation code, you can install the runtime files. When you receive your installation code you can install the toolkit.

Before you install VR-Forces, please read the Release Notes to see if there are any special instructions for installation.

## 2.1.1 Installing VR-Forces on Windows

When you install large applications on Windows, there may be a delay of up to several minutes from the time you try to run the setup program to the time that an installation dialog box is displayed. This is due to how Windows scans setup programs before it executes them. If you experience this problem, turning off User Access Control can reduce or eliminate this delay.

Windows versions of VR-Forces are provided as executable installer files on DVD, or as downloaded files. The installers are named to indicate the compiler used to build that version of VR-Forces.

➤ To install VR-Forces, run the application installer. Follow the instructions in the installation wizard. You can specify that the application installer automatically find and install the application's data (it must be in the same directory as the application installer), or you can specify that the MAK Data Setup Wizard open and allow you to select the data to install.

### Default Windows Installation Directory

On Windows, the default is that VR-Forces installs in the *C:/MAK* directory. You can use another directory by defining a MAK_INSTALL_DIR environment variable. If you set up this environment variable, the product installs in the directory you specify instead of *C:/MAK*.

### Installing *VR-Forces Developers Guide*

On Windows, the files for *VR-Forces Developers Guide* and class documentation are in a separate installer. If you want to install these files, run the installer.

### 2.1.2 Installing VR-Forces on a Linux System

Linux versions of VR-Forces are provided as compressed tar files on DVD, or as downloaded files.

---

If you install VR-Forces in one directory and user data in another directory, VR-Forces will not start.

---

➤ **To install VR-Forces on Linux:**

1. Create the directory in which you want to install VR-Forces.
2. Copy the tar file to the install directory.
3. Uncompress and untar the application file:

   `tar -vxzf application.tar.gz`

   where *application* is the product release identification.
4. The data package consists of multiple files that have the extension *MAK-targz*. Uncompress and untar the data package files and copy them into the installation directory, or uncompress them and redirect the output, as follows:

   `tar -xzf makData<version>.MAK-targz -C /path-to-vrforces4.10`

### 2.1.3 Installing the Toolkit

The SDK toolkit is an API that allows developers to create and add functionality to VR-Forces, and it also includes examples about how to use the SDK.

The VR-Forces installer includes a step where you can install the toolkit. This requires that you purchase a separate license, which comes with its own installation code.

If you skipped the toolkit installation when you installed VR-Forces but you now have a toolkit installation code, you need to rerun the VR-Forces installer and enter the code when prompted.

### 2.1.4 Uninstalling VR-Forces from Windows

MAK Technologies product installations include an uninstaller application, which you can find in the installation directory. When you uninstall VR-Forces, the uninstaller does not remove the data package. Delete the data files manually unless you want to save scenarios or SMSs for use in another release. In that case, we recommend leaving all the data files in place.

### 2.1.5 Uninstalling VR-Forces from Linux

To uninstall MAK Technologies product installations from Linux, simply delete the installation directory. This catches everything.

## 2.2. The VR-Forces Directory Structure

The VR-Forces installation process creates a directory structure like the one shown in Figure 1. On PCs, the default installation directory is *C:\MAK\vrforces#.#*.)

**Figure 1. VR-Forces directory structure**

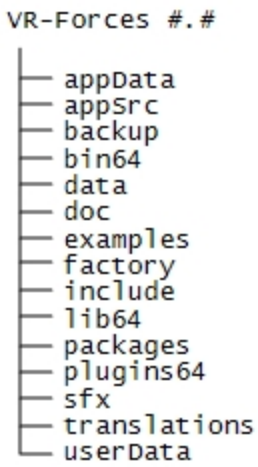



Table 2 describes the contents of the directories installed by VR-Forces.

**Table 2. Contents of VR-Forces directories**

| Directory | Directory contents |
|---|---|
| *./appData* | Schema, model definitions, settings, configuration files, and other data. |
| *./appsrc* | Source files and project files for API developers. |
| *./backup* | Backup configuration files. |
| *./bin64* | Product executables and DLLs. |
| *./data* | The *./data* directory has several subdirectories that contain:<br>• Bitmaps and icons.<br>• Simulation model sets.<br>• Terrain database source files.<br>• Visual model data. |
| *./doc* | VR-Forces documentation. |
| *./examples* | Sample code for toolkit users. |
| *./factory* | Backups of the application data and settings provided by MAK. |
| *./include* | Header files for use by API developers. |
| *./lib64* | Library files. |

**Table 2. Contents of VR-Forces directories (continued)**

| Directory | Directory contents |
|---|---|
| *./packages* | Header files and libraries for third-party and supplementary APIs that developers may need to build against. |
| *./plugins64* | Plug-in DLLs. |
| *./sfx* | Sound effect files |
| *./translations* | Files and an executable for localizing the GUI. |
| *./userData* | Scenarios, terrain files, and other files that are created as you use VR-Forces. |

## 2.3. Installing and Setting Up the MAK License Manager

Before you can use a MAK product, you must obtain a valid license file, install the MAK License Manager, and configure the license server and client machines. The License Manager uses a client-server architecture, so you do not need to install the License Manager on every computer on which you install MAK products. You only need to install it on the computer that you will use as the license server.

If you have already installed the License Manager for another MAK product, you do not have to install it again. You just need to make sure you have licenses for your newly installed products.

The License Manager installer is included on MAK installation media. It is separate from the product installers. You can download the installers from our web site at https://www.mak.com/support/license-support.

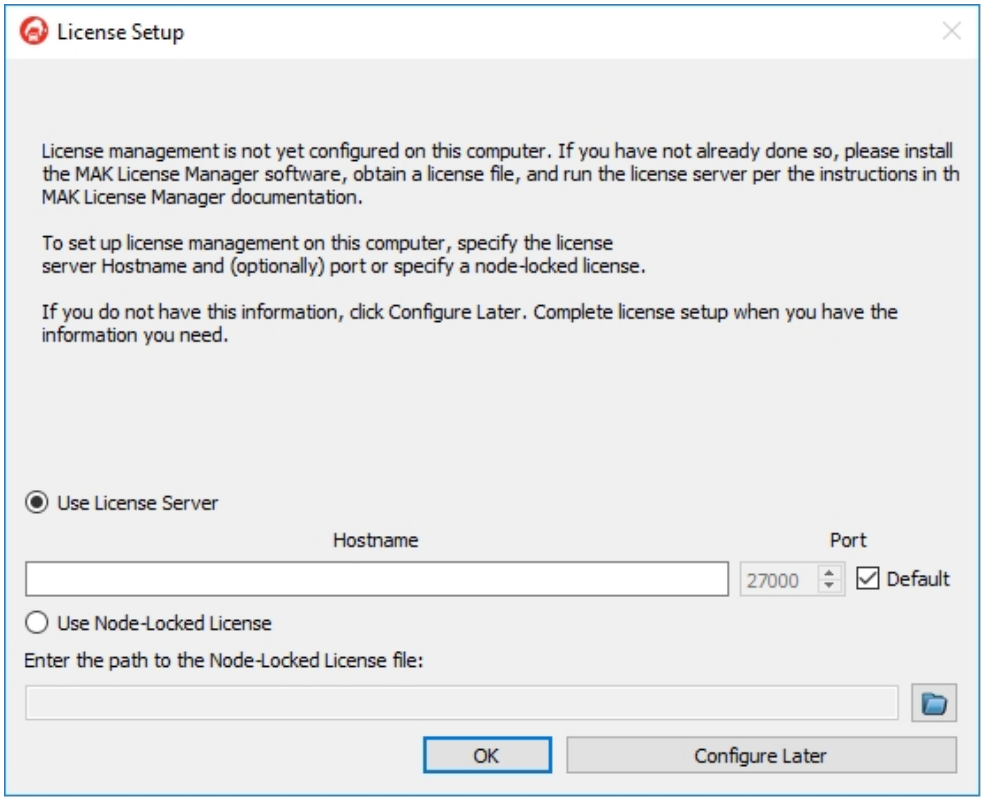
Complete installation and configuration instructions are included with the License Manager installer. Instructions are also available at the license support page.

Some customers use dongle licenses instead of running a license server. Instructions for using dongles are in the License Manager documentation.

### 2.3.1 Specifying the License Server

The first time you run a MAK application on a particular computer, the License Setup dialog box opens (Figure 2). It prompts you to enter the hostname of the license server and optionally, a port number.

**Figure 2. License Setup dialog box**




If you do not know the hostname of the license server, click Configure Later. When you have the hostname, you can start the application again and complete the dialog box. You will not be able to run any MAK applications until you set up license management.

If you know the hostname, type it in the Hostname box and then click OK. The application will start.

Under limited circumstances, MAK issues node-locked licenses. If you have a node-locked license, select the Use Node Locked License option and enter the path to the license file.

- If you are running MAK products on the license server machine, it is also a client, so you must specify the license server on that machine, too.
- If you change the license server, the saved configuration will no longer be valid and the License Setup dialog box will open the next time you start a MAK application.
- You can clear the saved license configuration by deleting the cache file. On Windows, it is *C:\Users\user_name\AppData\Roaming\MAK\licenses<n>.txt*. (The *AppData* directory is hidden by default.) On Linux, it is *.mak/license<n>.txt*. (There may be more than one cache file, for example, *licenses1.txt* and *licenses2.txt*.) You can also clear the cache in the RTI Assistant.

### The MAKLMGRD_LICENSE_FILE Environment Variable

As an alternative to using the License Setup procedure described in the previous section, you can configure the license server in an environment variable. The MAKLMGRD_LICENSE_FILE environment variable identifies the server machine. If you set this environment variable, it overrides the settings stored by the License Setup procedure.

The syntax for the environment variable is: *@server_name*. For example, if the server machine is oak, set the environment variable to **@oak**.

The following sections explain how to set environment variables on the different platforms that MAK products run on.

#### Windows

➤ **To add the MAKLMGRD_LICENSE_FILE in Windows:**

1. On the Start menu, click the Settings button. The Settings window opens.
2. In the search box, type environment. A list of choices is displayed.
3. Select Edit the System Environment Variables. The System Properties dialog box opens.
4. Click Environment Variables. The Environment Variables dialog box opens.
5. In the System Variables group box, click New. The New System Variable dialog box opens.
6. In the Variable Name field, enter MAKLMGRD_LICENSE_FILE.
7. In the Variable Value field, enter *@server_name*, where *server_name* is the name of the license server.
8. Click OK to back out of each dialog box and set the variable.

#### Linux

On Linux, you set environment variables in your *.cshrc* (or equivalent startup file). Set the variable similarly to the following example:

```
setenv MAKLMGRD_LICENSE_FILE @oak
```

If you are using the sh or bash shells, you set environment variables in your *.profile* file (or *.bashrc*). Set the variable similarly to the following example:

```
MAKLMGRD_LICENSE_FILE=@oak
export MAKLMGRD_LICENSE_FILE
```

Do not put spaces around the equal (=) sign.

You are ready to run the license server and use your new licenses or MAK products.

## 2.4. Installing an RTI

An RTI is a software library (and perhaps supporting executables) that implements an HLA Interface Specification. In HLA, applications exchange FOM data through RTI calls, which means that all HLA applications need to use an RTI.

---

Because of differences in the low-level network mechanisms used by different RTI implementations (which include, but are not limited to packet layout), applications that want to interoperate in the same federation execution must use the same RTI implementation.

---

Because RTIs are usually provided as dynamic libraries that implement a fixed API, a federation can often switch from one RTI implementation to another between runs (without even recompiling the applications), but during each run, all participants must agree on which RTI to use, much as they must also agree on which FOM to use.

For the most recent information about the RTI versions supported by MAK products, please see the release notes for your MAK application.

### 2.4.1 Installing the MAK RTI

To install the MAK RTI, follow the instructions in Chapter 2 of *MAK RTI Users Guide*.

#### Configuring Your System to Use the MAK RTI

The RTI dynamic libraries must be located somewhere on your dynamic library search path. The path is indicated by an environment variable as follows:

- Linux — LD_LIBRARY_PATH
- Windows — PATH

The MAK RTI needs to know where to find the following configuration files:

- The federation configuration file (*.fed*, *.fdd*, or *.xml*) for your federation execution (required).
- The RID file (*rid.mtl*) (optional).

Put the configuration files in the directory from which you are running, or set the environment variable RTI_CONFIG to the directory that contains them.

### Running Applications with the MAK RTI

➤ **To run a MAK application with the MAK RTI:**

1. Be sure the license server is running.
2. Start the application. The RTI Assistant will prompt you to choose an RTI configuration.
3. Choose a configuration. If necessary, start the rtiexec.
4. Click Connect. The application should run.

In many cases, you do not need to run the rtiexec to use the MAK RTI, however you can run the rtiexec if you want to. (It is required to use certain features of the MAK RTI.) For more information, please see your RTI documentation.

---

If you are running VR-Forces, it is recommended that you run the rtiexec.

---

## 2.5. Localizing the Graphical User Interface

You can localize your MAK product's graphical user interface so that it uses languages other than English. Your product includes a file called *./translations/product_untranslated.ts*, for example *logger_untranslated.ts* or *vrforces_untranslated.ts*. The file contains entries for all of the application-specific menu and dialog box text. The Qt Linguist tool, which is included with VR-Forces, lets you map the English text provided by MAK to your chosen language.

---

The *untranslated.ts* file does not include all of the text that may be displayed in the GUI or in console and error messages.

Some strings, such as those on the Create menu, are in configuration files. Others are in settings files. You can translate these strings by identifying the appropriate configuration file and translating the strings.

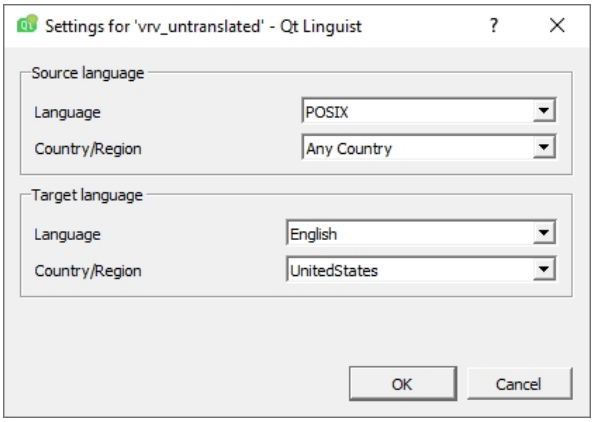
VR-Forces has a utility that can scan system scripts and SMS files and create translation files for user-visible text. For details, please see "2.5.2 Translating VR-Forces Scripts and Console Messages" on page 104.

---

➤ **To edit a resource file:**

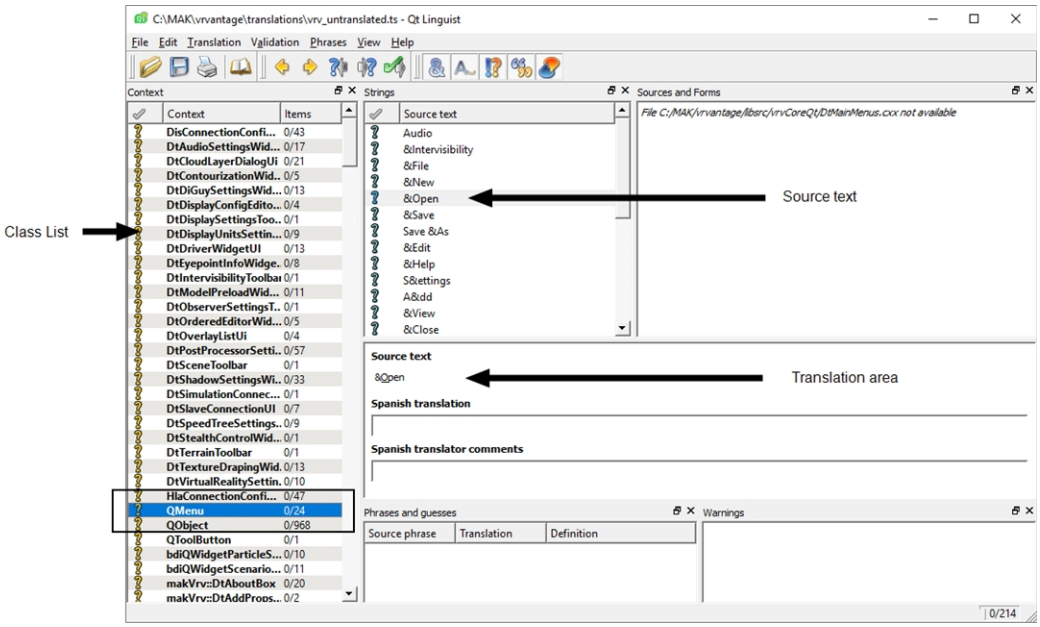
1. Start the Qt Linguist utility. It is *./translations/linguist.exe*
2. In the Qt Linguist window, choose **File > Open**. Select the file *./translations/product_untranslated.ts*. The Settings for filename dialog box opens (Figure 3).

**Figure 3. Linguist settings dialog box**




3. Select values for the source language, target language, and target region or country.
4. Click OK. The translation file is opened and a list of classes is displayed on the left side of the window (Figure 4).

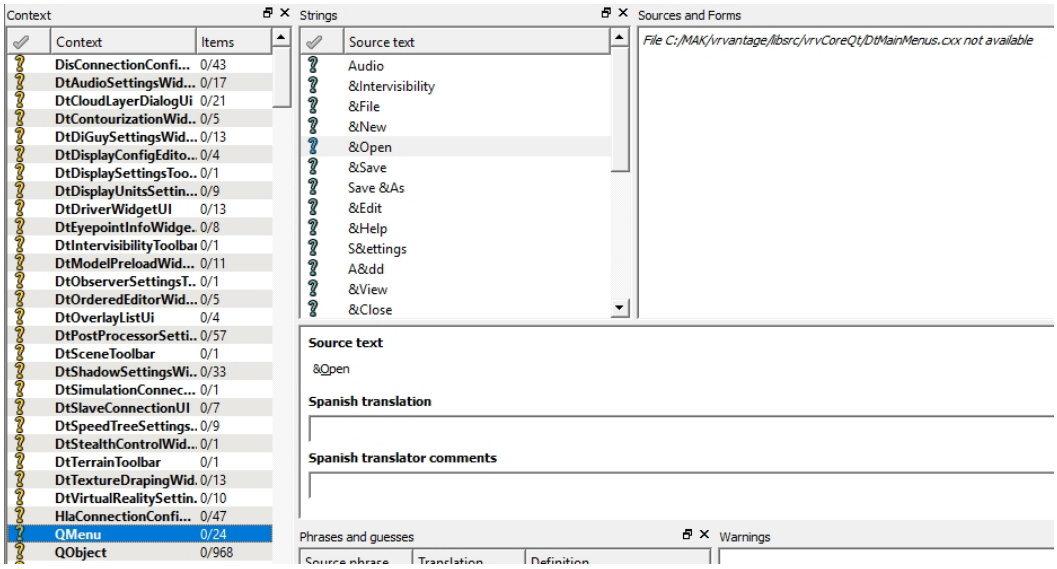
**Figure 4. Linguist window**




5. To translate text, you select each class in turn and translate the text associated with that class. You do not have to understand anything about what the classes mean; you only need to translate the text. In Figure 4, **QMenu** is selected. The Strings window lists text that can be translated. Text that has not been translated has a blue question mark in the checkmark column.

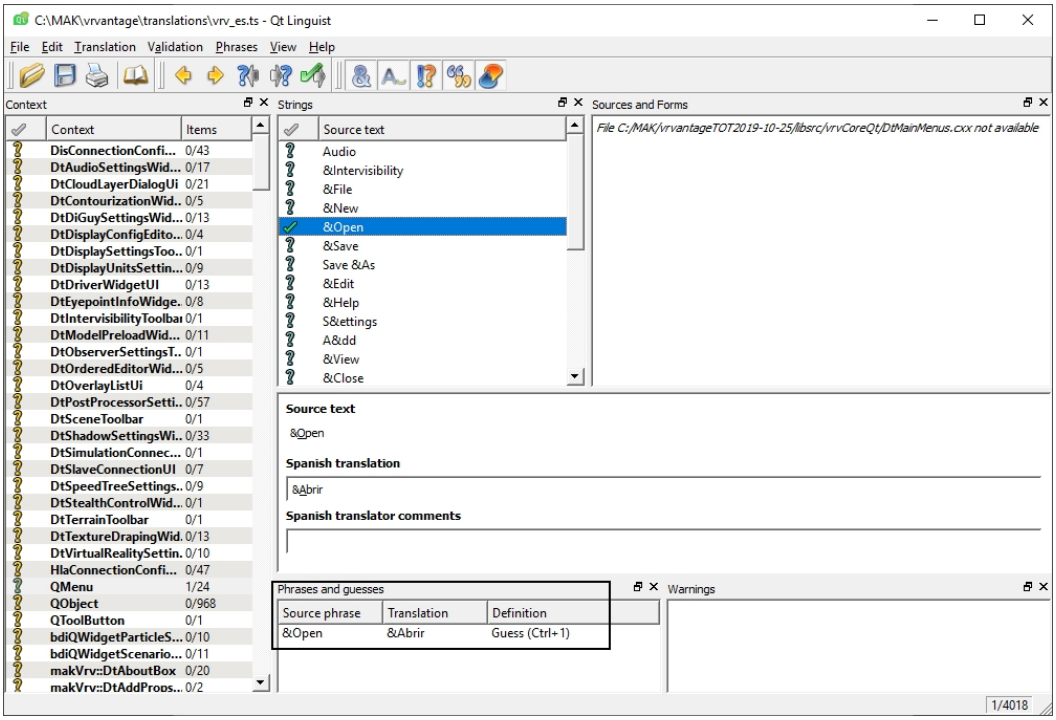
6. In the Source Text list, select the word you want to translate. The text is displayed under Source Text in the translation area (the window below the source text list). Figure 5 shows the text Open selected.

**Figure 5. Text selected for translation**




7. Place the cursor in the text box below *Language* Translation, where *Language* is the target language that you selected when you opened the translation file.
8. Type the translation text.
9. When you are done and you are certain of the translation, select the Done and Next button ( ) on the toolbar. A green check mark replaces the question mark (Figure 6). If you move to a different text string without clicking Done and Next, a yellow question mark is displayed for the string you translated. When you translate all elements for a class, a green check mark replaces the question mark next to the class name.

**Figure 6. Completed translation for Open**




10. Repeat this process for each element of source text for each class.
11. Choose **File > Release**. The file is saved in the format *filename.qm*.
12. Rename the file to a name that indicates the language to which you have translated the file, using the two-character abbreviation typically used with your language. For example, a Spanish translation would be renamed *product_es.qm*.
13. Save your translated *.ts* file.

## 2.5.1 Translating Other Interface Files

The *vrforces_untranslated.ts* file contains all the text used in the VR-Forces interface. However, there may be other text and messages that are not specific to the VR-Forces that are generated by the software that implements the VR-Forces GUI. To translate this text, you need to translate the file *qt_untranslated.ts*. Follow the same procedure as you did for *vrforces_untranslated.ts*.

## 2.5.2 Translating VR-Forces Scripts and Console Messages

The *vrforces_untranslated.ts* file includes text for dialog boxes and interface elements created using the Qt Toolkit. However, there are many messages generated by code and the dialog boxes for scripts are generated programmatically, rather than through Qt ui files. Therefore they are not included in *vrforces_untranslated.ts*. VR-Forces has a utility that can scan all system scripts (those in a simulation model set) as well as some of the common SMS files, and create a TS file for each script and SMS. You can then translate the text in the individual TS files. This script also creates a TS file for DI-Guy files.

For this process to work, you must code messages in your scripts in a certain way. For details, please see "32.5. Coding Messages for Translation" on page 775. VR-Forces also has a way to code console messages so that they can be extracted and translated. For details, please see 17.8.1, Coding Object Console Messages for Translation in *VR-Forces Developers Guide*.

### Generating TS Files for Scripts and Simulation Model Sets

If you code your scripts to support translation, you create TS files by running the translationFileCreate utility. By default, this application scans *./data/simulationModelSets* and its subdirectories for all system scripts and some generic files, and *./appData/settings* for DI-Guy files.

The utility creates an *untranslated.ts* file for each lua script. This file is saved in the directory that contains the script. It also creates a TS file for each simulation model set, which is saved in the SMS directory, and a *diguy_untranslated.ts* file, which is saved in *./translations*.

When you translate a script file, the translated file must remain with the back-end(s) that are hosting the scripts. The rest of the translated files must exist on the user machine. The *.qm* file for DI-Guy and VR-Forces must live in the translations directory and the *.qm* file for the simulation model sets with the *.sms* files.

The syntax for translationFileCreate is as follows:

```
translationFileCreate.exe [--directory filename] ...
[--smsfile string] ... [--nodiguy] [--nosms]
[--noscripts] [--] [-v] [-h]
```

**Table 3. translationFileCreate arguments**

| Argument | Description |
|---|---|
| `--directory` *directory_name* | Directory to scan for files of any of the supported types (lua, sysdef, xml, mtl) as per creation rules (scripts, systems, supporting). Accepted multiple times. |
| `(-h \| --help)` | Displays usage information and exits. |
| `--nodiguy` | Do not parse the DI-Guy configuration files. |
| `--noscripts` | Do not parse Lua files for translation. |
| `--nosms` | Do not parse the simulation model set directories for their supporting translatable items. |
| `--smsfile` *SMS_filename* | Specific SMS file to use when translating simulation model set directories. Accepted multiple times. If not specified, processes all SMS files. |
| `(-v \| --version)` | Displays version information and exits. |
| `(-- \| --ignore_rest)` | Ignores the rest of the labeled arguments following this flag. |

### Generating TS Files for Object Console Messages

If the messages in your source code are coded for extraction to TS files, you can generate an *untranslated.ts* file for them. To generate TS files, run:

`lupdate` *`source_directory`* `-ts my_new_translations.ts`

The resulting TS file is saved to the location pointed to by the path given to **-ts**.

## 2.5.3 Applying the Language Files

➤ **To put the language file into effect, use one of the following methods:**

- Set your computer's environment to the proper language (LANG environment variable).
- Set the locale to the proper language.
- Start the VR-Forces with the **-G** *`locale`* command line option, where *`locale`* is the two-letter country code for the local language.

# 3. VR-Forces Application Concepts

This chapter describes at a conceptual level the components of a VR-Forces simulation and how they work together.


3.1. The VR-Forces Program ..... 108
3.2. Front-end and Back-end Concepts ..... 108
3.2.1 How Front-ends and Back-ends Work Together ..... 108
3.2.2 How VR-Forces Back-ends Are Identified ..... 109
3.2.3 VR-Forces Sessions ..... 110
3.2.4 Coordinating Multiple Front-ends ..... 112
3.2.5 Working with Multiple Back-ends ..... 112
3.3. Objects ..... 113
3.3.1 The Object Parameter Database ..... 114
3.3.2 Local Objects and Remote Objects ..... 114
3.4. Representing and Managing Time in VR-Forces ..... 115
3.4.1 Simulation Time ..... 115
3.4.2 Time of Day ..... 115
3.4.3 Exercise Clock Modes ..... 116
3.5. Interactions ..... 117
3.6. Advanced Terrain Navigation ..... 117
3.7. Managing VR-Forces Settings ..... 118
3.7.1 Synchronizing Settings Among VR-Forces Installations ..... 120
3.7.2 Global Settings and Observer-Specific Settings ..... 120

## 3.1. The VR-Forces Program

Unlike most computer applications, which have one executable file, VR-Forces has two executable files: a front-end, or graphical user interface (GUI) and a back-end, or simulation engine. The front-end executable is vrfGui. The back-end executable is vrfSim*protocol*, where *protocol* is DIS, HLA13, HLA1516, or HLA1516e.

By separating the simulation engine from the visualization program, VR-Forces allows you to run multiple front-ends, back-ends, or both. If you run multiple front-ends, several VR-Forces users can work together to create and manage scenarios. Using session IDs, you can specify which front-ends control which back-ends. The front-ends also display simulation objects received over the network from other simulations participating in an exercise. (You have a limited ability to interact with these remote objects. For more information, please see "3.3.2 Local Objects and Remote Objects" on page 114, "37.10. Writing Plans for Remote Entities" on page 911 and "75.1. Attaching Components to Remote Entities" on page 1518.)

If you run multiple simulation engines, the work of simulating simulation objects and tactical graphics can be shared by multiple computers, which should improve performance. If you save a scenario, VR-Forces records which objects are simulated by each back-end, so that the configuration can be reproduced the next time you run the scenario.

---

In this manual, most procedures apply to interaction with the front-end. For the sake of simplicity, unless we are discussing a subject that applies specifically to either the front-end or back-end, we refer to VR-Forces in the sense of the combined interactions of both executables.

---

## 3.2. Front-end and Back-end Concepts

Although the separation of front-ends and back-ends, and the ability to run multiple instances of each adds to the power and flexibility of VR-Forces, you need to understand how the various executables interact to ensure that your scenarios are created and run smoothly. In this section, we describe:

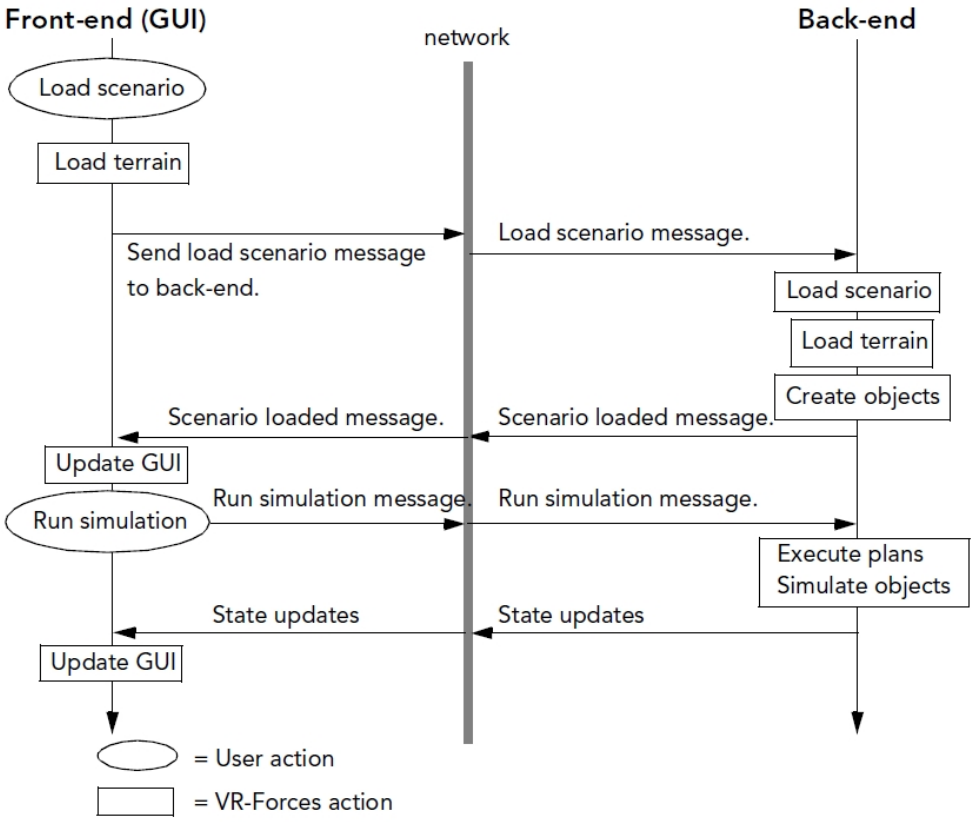
- How front-ends and back-ends work together.
- How back-ends are uniquely identified.
- Use of sessions.
- How to coordinate multiple front-ends.
- How scenarios are loaded and saved when you run multiple back-ends.

### 3.2.1 How Front-ends and Back-ends Work Together

The VR-Forces front-end is an interface to the simulation engine. It communicates with the back-end by sending messages over the network. (This relationship exists

even if you are not connected to a network.) It displays the state updates and interactions that the back-end generates and sends over the network. Figure 7 illustrates loading a scenario and running a simulation.

**Figure 7. Front-end and back-end interaction**




## 3.2.2 How VR-Forces Back-ends Are Identified

If you run multiple back-ends, you can specify which back-end you want to use when you create simulation objects and tactical graphics. This feature allows you to spread the simulation load across multiple PCs. However, to do this, each back-end must have a unique ID. VR-Forces back-ends are identified by their site ID and application number. Each back-end must have a unique site:application identifier. You assign the site:application identifier when you start an application. It is up to you to make sure that there are no duplicate identifiers. (For details, please see "4.1. Starting VR-Forces" on page 123.)

---

The site ID and application number concepts are borrowed from DIS. They apply to VR-Forces when it is running in HLA as well.

---

### 3.2.3 VR-Forces Sessions

VR-Forces uses sessions to help manage the relationships between front-ends and back-ends. Back-ends are always part of a session. Front-ends can join a session or operate independently of one. When a front-end is joined to a session, it can control the back-ends in that session. When a front-end is not joined to a session, it cannot control back-ends. However, it can open a terrain and view exercises running on its port. In this case it is just a viewer.

Use of sessions helps ensure consistency among front-ends that are controlling a common set of back-ends. The session mechanism ensures that:

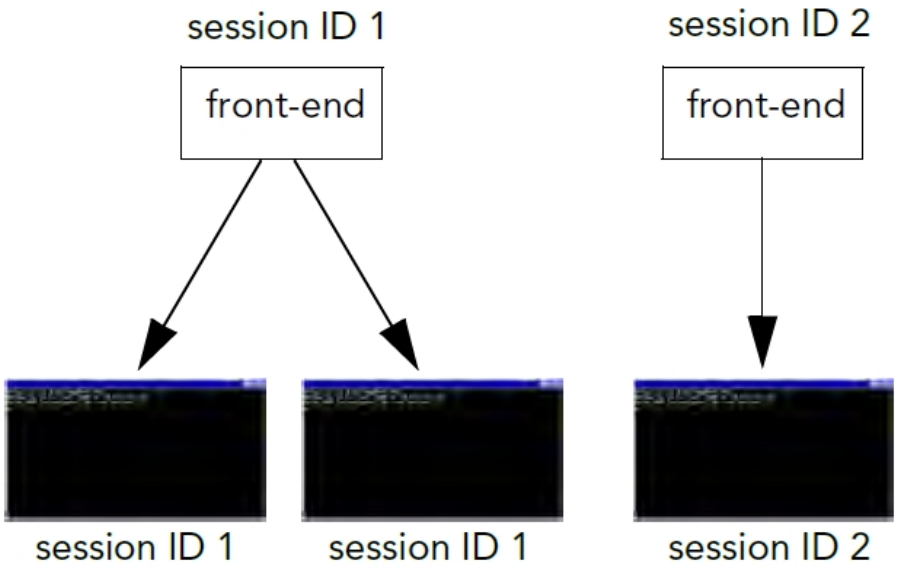
- All front-ends and back-ends in a session run the same scenario and use the same terrain.
- When a front-end joins a session that is running a scenario, it automatically loads the correct terrain for the scenario.
- If any front-end in a session tries to create a scenario or load a scenario, and a scenario is already running, the user is warned that this action will destroy the currently running scenario.
- If any front-end in a session loads a scenario or creates a new scenario, all of the back-ends and other front-ends in that session take the same action.

Sessions provide the following additional benefits:

- They allow you to specify which front-ends control which back-ends. This feature could be useful, for example, if you want one set of VR-Forces applications to simulate friendly forces and another set to simulate opposing forces. If all applications were in the same session, participants could send orders to the simulation objects in the opposing force. By using separate sessions, this is not possible.

  In Figure 8, the front-end with session ID 1 can control the back-ends with that same session ID. The front-end with session ID 2, controls the back-end with session ID 2.

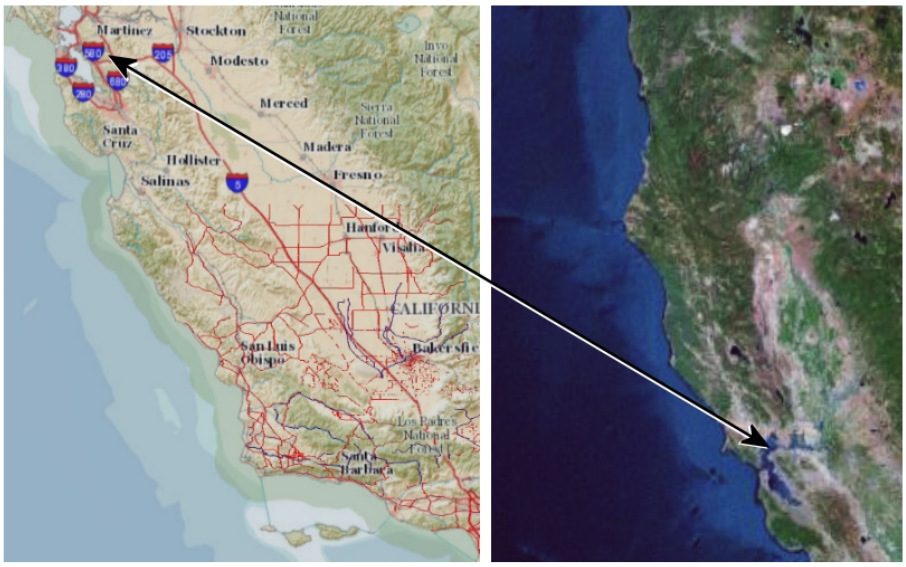
**Figure 8. Using session ID to control back-ends**




- Sessions allow you to load different terrain databases in different VR-Forces executables that are part of the same exercise. This feature may be helpful if you are participating in an exercise that covers a large geographical area, but only need to observe portions of that total terrain. Loading databases that cover a subset of the total exercise zone could improve the performance of your computer or the resolution of the terrain database.

  In Figure 9, the two sessions have loaded databases that cover different (but overlapping) portions of California, USA. The entire exercise would cover the terrain covered by two databases.

**Figure 9. Using session IDs to load different terrain databases**



If two different sessions use terrain databases that overlap, note the following possible sources of confusion:

- The front-ends in each session will see simulation objects from the other session that are simulated in the common portions of the terrain. However, the front-end for one session will have no ability to control the simulation objects that are simulated by the other session.
- If you save the scenario in one of these sessions, it only saves the simulation objects simulated in the session. It does not save the simulation objects from the other session, even though they may be visible in a front-end.
- If one of the sessions pauses or rewinds, the front-end in the other session will see the simulation objects in the overlapping region pause or return to their origin.

For more information, please see "4.1.3 Specifying a Session ID" on page 128 and "4.3. Managing a Front-end's Session Connection" on page 134.

### 3.2.4 Coordinating Multiple Front-ends

Figure 7 on page 109 shows how a VR-Forces front-end sends messages to a back-end and displays the simulation messages sent out by the back-end. When you run VR-Forces with multiple front-ends, any of them can send control messages to the back-ends and all of them display the state updates. However, you would not want users at different front-ends to send conflicting or overlapping messages. For example, you would not want two different users to try to load the same scenario. Therefore, when you run multiple front-ends, bear the following points in mind:

- Only one front-end in each session can load a scenario or create a new one (they can all create the objects in the scenario).
- Any front-end can save a scenario. However, this could lead to multiple, unsynchronized versions of a scenario. It is probably best to reserve saving of scenarios to a specific front-end.
- Any object that you create in any of the front-ends is visible in the others and can be managed from them.
- You can close the scenario from any front-end.

VR-Forces provides some help managing multiple front-ends. For example, if one front-end loads a scenario, VR-Forces automatically asks the other front-ends to load the appropriate terrain. And if you close a scenario in one front-end, VR-Forces automatically prompts the other front-ends to close their terrains.

### 3.2.5 Working with Multiple Back-ends

As noted previously, you can distribute simulation of simulation objects among multiple back-ends. The available back-ends are listed in the Selected Simulation Engine Toolbar (Figure 10). If you are running multiple back-ends, when you create simulation objects, you specify which back-end you want to create them on by selecting a back-end in the toolbar. (For more information, please see "14.2. Selecting the Object to Create" on page 365.)

**Figure 10. Selected Simulation Engine toolbar**

When you run multiple back-ends, bear the following points in mind:

- When you save a scenario created using multiple back-ends, the object map file ("12.4. The Object Map File" on page 347) records each object and the site and application ID of the back-end on which it was simulated. When you want to replay that scenario, you should run a set of back-ends with the same site and application IDs. (If you do not, you can remap objects to the back-ends that you are running.)
- Multiple back-ends must all be started and ready when a scenario is loaded. There is no way for a required back-end to join an exercise after it has started and catch up to the current state of the exercise.
- If, during an exercise, a back-end drops out of the exercise, there is no good way for it to rejoin the exercise. If you load the scenario being run, it will be at the beginning, not at the point that the rest of the participants had reached.
- If you want a back-end to join an exercise after it has started, you must explicitly load the terrain database using the **-T** command-line option. The back-end will not receive any information about existing simulation objects and tactical graphics, but it can be used to create new simulation objects and tactical graphics going forward in the simulation.
- When you save a scenario that uses multiple back-ends, the final scenario files are composed of information generated by each back-end and sent to the front-end, where it is combined. Therefore, if any of the back-ends has dropped out of the exercise or is otherwise unavailable, the scenario data will be incomplete.

### Remapping Back-ends

The previous section lists the issues you should consider when creating, saving, and loading scenarios that use multiple back-ends. If you choose to run a scenario that requires multiple back-ends and some of the back-ends are not available, VR-Forces lets you remap objects from the missing back-ends to the available back-ends. You can remap back-ends automatically or manually.

If a scenario is missing its object map (*.omp*) file, you can remap the objects and create a new object map file. By default, in combined mode all the simulation objects are remapped to the combined mode back-end. By default, in separate mode the remapping dialog box lists the missing back-end as “UNKNOWN”.

You might also want to manually remap back-ends to load balance a scenario. For more information, please see "7.5. Load Balancing Scenarios" on page 238.

## 3.3. Objects

All simulation objects and tactical graphics are objects. The procedures for selecting, viewing, and organizing different kinds of objects are fairly similar. However since their purposes and use are quite different, for the most part we discuss simulation

objects and tactical graphics separately.

### 3.3.1 The Object Parameter Database

VR-Forces creates objects based on parameter specifications in the object parameter database (OPD). In the OPD, object types are identified by an 8-field enumeration based on the SISO Enumeration Document (*Reference for Enumeration for Simulation Interoperability*). (The DIS enumerations have also been incorporated into the HLA RPR FOM.) In this manual, when we refer to entity or force type enumerations, we are referring to this set of enumerations. For information about the object parameter database and how to edit it, please see the chapters in "Section XII. Creating and Editing Simulation Models" on page 1223.

The objects in the OPD are organized into simulation model sets (SMS). An SMS contains all of the objects and supporting configuration files needed to populate a scenario. VR-Forces provides the following SMSs:

- *EntityLevel.sms*. Used by entity-level scenarios.
- *AggregateLevel.sms*. Used by aggregate-level scenarios.
- *base.sms*. Included in *EntityLevel.sms* and *AggregateLevel.sms* for use in both types of scenarios.

### 3.3.2 Local Objects and Remote Objects

From the point of view of a particular VR-Forces back-end, a local object is any object that is simulated in that back-end. In that same back-end, a remote object is an object that is received over the network from an external application, such as another VR-Forces simulation engine, or a non-VR-Forces simulation. A given VR-Forces application participating in a networked exercise may know about a mixture of local and remote objects.

There are two categories of remote objects: objects simulated by VR-Forces applications, and objects simulated by applications other than VR-Forces. When VR-Forces learns about a non-VR-Forces remote object, it knows only what is transmitted in the standard DIS or HLA message. By contrast, VR-Forces remote objects share additional state information over the network, including a unique identifier (UUID), a string name, an echelon ID (if the simulation object is organized), and a string label.

The VR-Forces front-end allows you to manage all the objects in a VR-Forces session regardless of which back-end is simulating them. Therefore, in the interest of simplicity, we refer to simulation objects simulated by a VR-Forces back-end, whether local or remote, simply as simulation objects and we refer to simulation objects simulated by applications other than VR-Forces as remote simulation objects.

You cannot control remote simulation objects from VR-Forces. However, you can attach VR-Forces components such as sensors and radios to remote simulation objects

and you can write plans that use these components. For more information, please see "37.10. Writing Plans for Remote Entities" on page 911 and ."75.1. Attaching Components to Remote Entities" on page 1518

## 3.4. Representing and Managing Time in VR-Forces

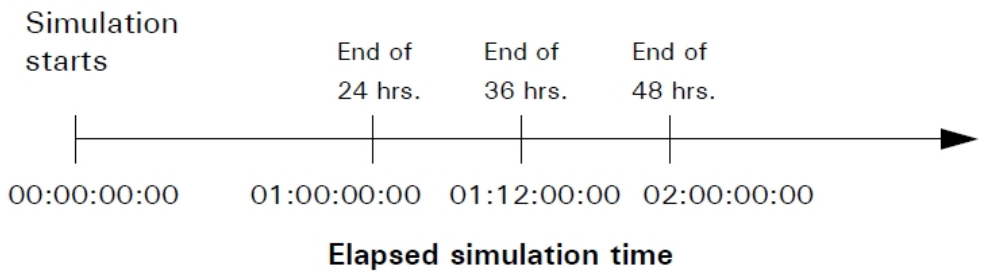
VR-Forces maintains an exercise clock. The clock tracks elapsed simulation time, date, and time of day. In HLA federations, it may be affected by federation time. These concepts also have a relationship to wall-clock, or real time.

### 3.4.1 Simulation Time

Elapsed simulation time is the amount of time that has passed since the simulation started, and is expressed in days, hours, minutes, and seconds in the format 00:00:00:00.

Application developers can manipulate simulation time. Unless a local developer tells you otherwise, simulation time starts at 00:00:00:00.

**Figure 11. Simulation time**




You can view the simulation time using the Simulation Time Toolbar or the Simulation Time Panel. Both of these show the same time and can you can float or dock them. You can resize the Simulation Time Panel and the font size adjusts proportionately.

### 3.4.2 Time of Day

VR-Forces represents the day/night cycle with the Time of Day value. By default, it starts at 10:00 A.M in the time zone of the first simulation object created in a scenario, but can be set when you create a scenario. Time of day affects the simulation. For example, visual sensors are less able to detect objects at night than they are in the day.

Normally, time of day advances with simulation time, but you can change the time of day after the scenario is created, and even while the scenario is running. You can reset the time of day at any time through the environment settings, or through a plan with the Set Time of Day command. For details, please see "11.1. Introduction to Environment Conditions" on page 311.

The display of time of day in the interface is 00:00 in hours and minutes. Time of day does not track number of days; when the time of day reaches midnight, it starts over at 00:00.

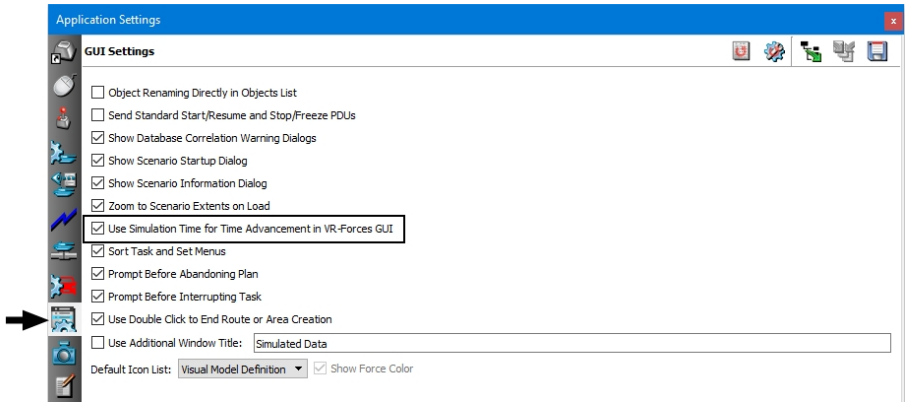
### Advancing Time Using Simulation Time or Wall Clock Time

By default, time advances based on the simulation time. When VR-Forces uses simulation time for time advancement, simulation objects dead reckon correctly in the GUI when you run faster or slower than real time. (This also affects animations, such as helicopter rotors and ocean movement.) However, simulation objects published by non-VR-Forces federates will not dead reckon correctly. VR-Forces provides the option of advancing time based on wall clock time. In this mode, the time scale is not taken into account for dead reckoning.

➤ **To specify how time advances:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the GUI Settings page (Figure 12).

**Figure 12. GUI Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Use Simulation Time for Time Advancement in VR-Forces GUI check box.

## 3.4.3 Exercise Clock Modes

The exercise clock supports the following modes:

- Variable-Frame Run-To-Complete mode advances simulation time by the amount of time passed since the last time the exercise clock was ticked. This mode is typical for distributed, interactive simulations. It does not provide repeatable results. Do not use this mode in time-managed HLA federations.
- Fixed-Frame Best-Effort mode advances simulation time by a fixed amount each frame, even if a frame takes longer than the fixed amount to compute. If the simulation takes less than the fixed frame time to compute, it waits until the frame time has elapsed before starting another.

This mode is suitable for viewing or interactive use if your hardware can handle the frame rate. It is suitable for distributed use only in time-managed HLA federations.

- Fixed-Frame Run-To-Complete mode advances simulation time by a fixed amount each frame, even if a frame takes longer than the fixed amount to compute, just as in Fixed-Frame Best-Effort mode. However, if the simulation takes less then the fixed frame time to compute, it does not wait for the remainder of the frame time to elapse before starting the next frame.

  This mode is most useful for situations where you want a simulation to run with internal consistency and high fidelity, and want it to run to completion, but do not need to observe the simulation. So, for example, you might run a simulation overnight and view the results the following day. Fixed-Frame Run-To-Complete mode is not suited for interactive use. It is suitable for distributed use only in time-managed HLA federations.

---

If you want to change the default clock mode, you must use the correct syntax. For information about how to set the exercise clock mode, please see "Chapter 12. Scenario Files" on page 339.

---

### Running a Simulation Faster than Real Time

VR-Forces supports simulation at rates faster than real-time by applying a multiplier to the tick time. For details, please see "7.6.1 Changing the Simulation Speed" on page 242.

---

- Do not run your simulation at faster than real-time if you are interacting with other real-time simulations.
- Running a simulation faster than real-time can cause performance of simulation object models to degrade.

---

## 3.5. Interactions

VR-Forces displays interactions, such as detonations, that it receives in interaction messages or PDUs. You cannot select or otherwise manipulate them. You can only view them.

## 3.6. Advanced Terrain Navigation

VR-Forces supports advanced terrain navigation for entities based on the Autodesk® Gameware Navigation artificial intelligence software. Using Gameware Navigation Lab, you can create topological models of the virtual 3D environment that allow VR-Forces to compute, in real time, an optimized path for entity movement. As entities follow the path, they automatically avoid obstacles and other entities. The topological models are called navigation data.

Gameware Navigation Lab is included with VR-Forces. You can use it to view the navigation data included with VR-Forces terrain databases. If you want to generate navigation data, you must purchase an additional license.

## 3.7. Managing VR-Forces Settings

VR-Forces has the following types of settings:

- Independent, or display, settings are the individual settings managed on the Settings menu and the pages of the Display Settings dialog box. Changing an independent setting, such as enabling track histories or wireframe mode, does not affect other settings.

  Independent settings are categorized as being global settings or observer-specific settings. Global settings apply regardless of the observer mode. Observer-specific settings can be different for each observer mode. For more information, see "3.7.2 Global Settings and Observer-Specific Settings" on page 120 .
- Dependent settings are the schemas, model definitions, element definitions, and object type mappings that collectively determine how simulation objects and objects are modeled in the scene. Changing a dependent setting, such as a model definition may affect settings that depend on it, such as an entity definition.

VR-Forces manages settings as follows:

- As you make changes to settings during a session, it saves the changes, except for model definitions, element definitions, and simulation object type mappings.
- It remembers the settings in effect when you exit and uses them as the default settings in your next session.
- During any particular session, you can revert to the default settings.
- You can save the current settings to a file.
- You can import saved settings.
- You can restore settings to those that were in effect when VR-Forces was first installed (factory settings).

Dependent settings have two additional options that independent settings do not have:

- You can save or restore some types of settings by specific setting.
- You can merge settings from a file into the current settings.

The procedures for saving and restoring settings are the same regardless of the types of settings. You start the process by clicking a button on a settings dialog box page. The way that VR-Forces saves and restores depends on the type of setting, as follows:

- When you initiate a save or restore operation on independent settings, it saves or restores all of the settings on the dialog box page from which you started the save or restore. If you have changed a setting on another page, it is not affected.
- When you initiate a restore operation on dependent settings, related settings may also be restored. VR-Forces displays a message listing the settings that will be restored.
- When you save dependent settings, you either export all settings of a given type or selected settings. For details, see relevant chapters in *Visual Models in MAK Applications* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

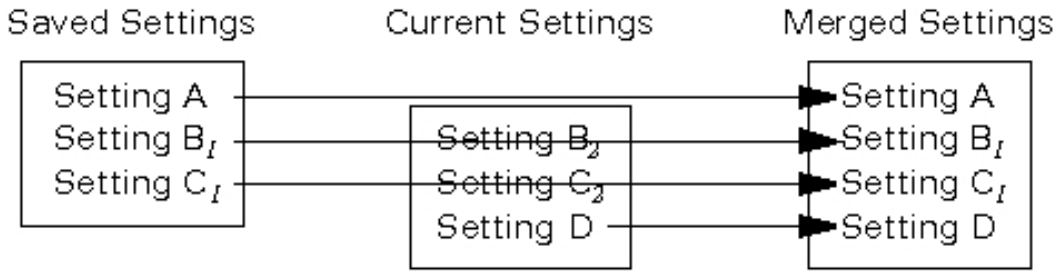
Figure 13 illustrates the common settings management buttons. (The Visual Model Editors dialog box has some additional buttons.)

**Figure 13. Settings buttons**

- Revert to the default settings. Overrides any changes made to settings during this session.
- Restore the factory settings. Changes settings to the settings used when VR-Forces was installed. (The factory settings and default settings may be different.)
- Import settings from a file. Replaces the current settings with those stored in the selected file.
- Merge in settings from a file. Merging works as follows:
  - Saved settings that do not have a match in the current settings are added.
  - Saved settings replace matching settings.
  - Current settings that are not replaced (that is, for which there is no match in the saved settings) remain valid.

  Figure 14 illustrates how merged settings work. Setting A in the saved settings has no match in current settings, so it is added to the merged settings. Current settings $B_2$ and $C_2$ are replaced with saved settings $B_1$ and $C_1$. Current setting D has no match in saved settings, so it is retained in the merged settings.

**Figure 14. Merged settings**




- Save all settings to a file. Saves the current settings to the selected file.
- Export selected setting to a file.

---

- The buttons described in this topic are disabled on dialog box pages on which their function is not supported. This includes most of the pages on the Terrain Settings dialog box.
- VR-Forces saves model definition and element definitions to settings to *./appData/definitions*. Other settings get saved to *./appData/settings/vrfGui*.
- If you load an alternative settings file at startup, it is treated like an imported settings file.

---

## 3.7.1 Synchronizing Settings Among VR-Forces Installations

If your simulation is using several front-ends and back-ends on multiple computers, you may want to use the same settings across all of them, particularly if you have added model definitions and mappings to the factory settings. To synchronize settings, copy the data directories (*./appData*, *./data*, and *./userData*) from the computer on which you have updated them to the computers on which the other front-ends and back-ends on multiple computers are installed. Then import the settings into any Settings page that you customized on the source VR-Forces machine.

## 3.7.2 Global Settings and Observer-Specific Settings

VR-Forces has two types of independent settings – global settings and observer-specific settings.

Global settings affect the display regardless of which observer mode you are using. Global settings include simulation object labels, tactical graphics, and cockpit displays. The settings on the Settings menu are all global settings.

Observer-specific settings can be different for each observer mode. In fact, given a similar projection and model set, it is the different settings that distinguish one observer mode from another. For example, one difference between Stealth observer mode and Out-the-Window observer mode is that Stealth mode has tactical smoke enabled and Out-the-Window mode has it disabled.

# 4. Starting VR-Forces

This chapter explains how to start and stop VR-Forces and load terrain databases.


4.1. Starting VR-Forces ..... 123
4.1.1 Starting VR-Forces from the VR-Forces Launcher ..... 123
4.1.2 Starting Independent VR-Forces Executables ..... 127
4.1.3 Specifying a Session ID ..... 128
4.1.4 VR-Forces Startup Tutorial ..... 128
4.2. The VR-Forces Window ..... 130
4.2.1 Opening New Windows ..... 132
4.2.2 Printing the VR-Forces Display ..... 133
4.2.3 Taking Screen Captures ..... 133
4.3. Managing a Front-end's Session Connection ..... 134
4.3.1 Joining a Session ..... 135
4.3.2 Resigning from a Session ..... 135
4.3.3 Configuring Session Messages and Join at Startup ..... 135
4.4. Using HLA Time Management ..... 137
4.4.1 VR-Forces Simulation Time Versus Federation Time ..... 137
4.4.2 Configuring Time Management for HLA Exercises ..... 138
4.5. Opening a Terrain Database ..... 139
4.5.1 Loading a Terrain Database at Startup ..... 140
4.5.2 Displaying Terrain Correlation Warnings ..... 141
4.5.3 Closing a Terrain ..... 141
4.6. Exiting VR-Forces ..... 141
4.6.1 Disabling the Quit Prompt ..... 141
4.7. Configuring Simulation Connections ..... 142
4.7.1 Opening the Simulation Connections Configuration Dialog Box ..... 142
4.7.2 Adding a Simulation Connection ..... 143
4.7.3 Editing a Simulation Connection ..... 144
4.7.4 Simulation Connection Parameters ..... 145

4.7.5 Deleting a Simulation Connection ..... 147
4.7.6 Configuring Auto Connect ..... 147
4.7.7 Displaying Connection Information ..... 148
4.8. Managing Plug-ins ..... 149
4.8.1 Loading Plug-ins ..... 149
4.8.2 Adding a Plug-in ..... 151
4.8.3 Specifying the DLLs for a Plug-in ..... 152
4.8.4 Adding a Plug-in Configuration ..... 153
4.8.5 Deleting a Plug-in Configuration ..... 154
4.8.6 Deleting a Plug-in ..... 154
4.8.7 Viewing a List of Loaded Plug-ins ..... 154
4.9. The VR-Forces Log Files ..... 155

# 4.1. Starting VR-Forces

In "3.1. The VR-Forces Program" on page 108, we describe the VR-Forces front-end and back-end applications. You can start front-ends and back-ends separately, which is called separate mode, or you can use the VR-Forces Launcher to start them together, which is called combined mode. The only real difference between the two startup modes is that in combined mode, when you shut down the front-end, the back-end automatically shuts down also.

By default, all front-ends and back-ends start with session ID 1. Front-ends automatically try to join a session. If no back-ends are running when a front-end starts, it does not join a session. However, if at a later time a back-end with the same session ID starts, the front-end automatically joins the session.

---

If you run VR-Forces for HLA, be sure that you have installed an RTI and configured your system to use it. For details, please see "2.4. Installing an RTI" on page 100.

---

For convenience you can create batch files or scripts to start VR-Forces. Please see "Chapter 5. Command-Line Options" on page 157 for a list of command-line options.

## 4.1.1 Starting VR-Forces from the VR-Forces Launcher

You can run VR-Forces using DIS, HLA 1.3, HLA 1516, or HLA Evolved. For the HLA specifications, you can run using one of several different versions of the RPR FOM. With all these different possible startup configurations, particularly for HLA, it can be confusing to keep track of the options for starting VR-Forces. The VR-Forces Launcher simplifies the process of specifying the simulation standard to use when starting VR-Forces.

The VR-Forces Launcher lets you start in combined mode or separate mode.

➤ **To start VR-Forces using the VR-Forces Launcher:**

1. On the Start menu, choose **MAK Technologies > VR-Forces** *configuration*.

   Where *configuration* is:

   — VR-Forces GUI

   — VR-Forces Simulation Engine

   — VR-Forces GUI + Simulation Engine

   ---

   Windows 10 has a flatter Start menu structure than previous versions of Windows. It does not support nested folders. If you are interested in using a nested menu for starting MAK applications on Windows 10, please read this blog: https://www.mak.com/learn/blog/entry/tech-tip-from-fred-starting-mak-applications-on-windows-10

To start the Launcher on Linux (or from the Windows command line), in a console window, enter the following command:

```
vrfLauncher options
```

For descriptions of the vrfLauncher command-line options, please see "5.3. Command-Line Options for vrfLauncher" on page 175. The basic startup configurations for vrfLauncher are:

- Start vrfGui and vrfSim (combined mode):

  ```
  vrfLauncher
  ```

- Start vrfGui only:

  ```
  vrfLauncher -F
  ```

- Start vrfSim only:

  ```
  vrfLauncher -B
  ```

- Start in combined mode and do not display the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box:

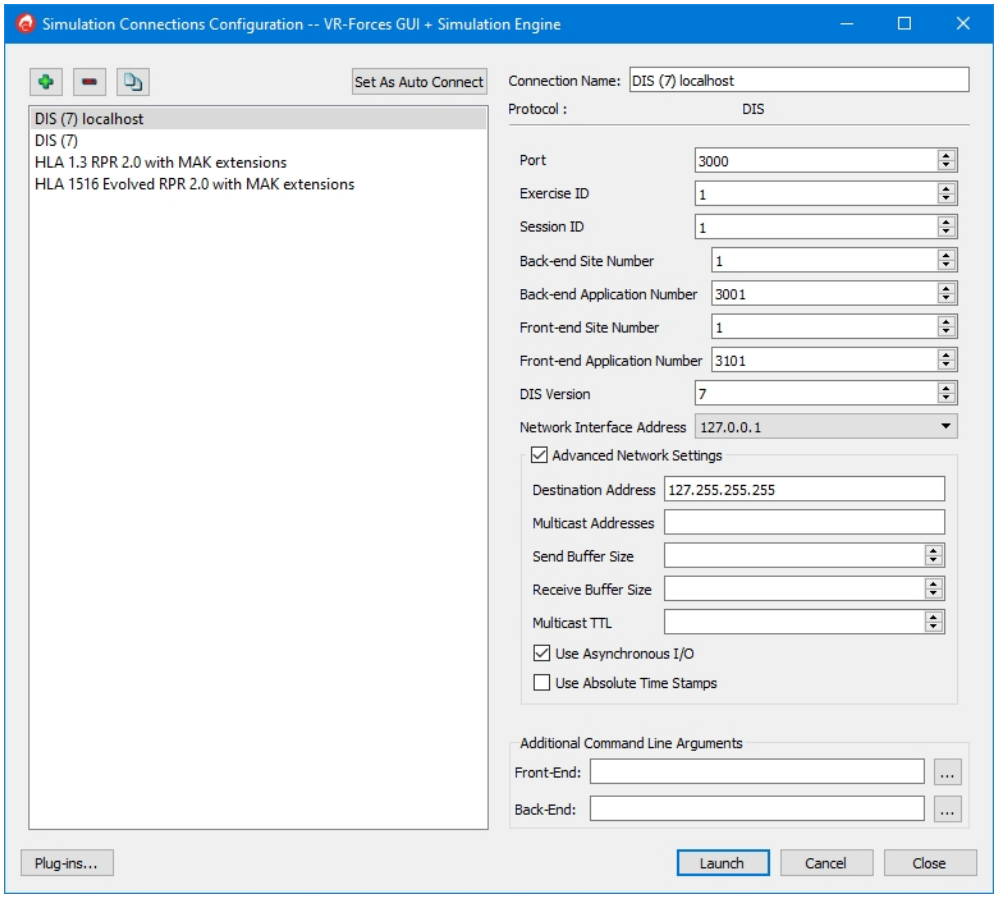
  ```
  vrfLauncher --usePredefinedConnection connection
  ```

  where *connection* is a previously defined configuration connection. If the connection name has spaces, you must surround it with quotes, for example, **"DIS (7)"**. If you want to use one of the connections provided with VR-Forces, you must start VR-Forces from the Launcher at least once before you try to use it from the command line. This allows VR-Forces to populate the network interface values.

  If this is the first time that you are running VR-Forces, or if you have not specified a default startup connection, the Simulation Connections

Configuration dialog box opens (Figure 15).

**Figure 15. Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box (DIS)**




2. In the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box, select a connection configuration. (Optionally, create a new configuration. For details about creating and editing simulation connections, please see "4.7. Configuring Simulation Connections" on page 142.)
3. Optionally, edit the connection's parameters. If you change a parameter, it is saved automatically.

---

If you are using a lightweight RTI connection on Linux, you must enable Ignore Advisories or the simulation engine will not publish entities.

---

4. Optionally, specify additional command line arguments for the front-end, back-end, or both. For a list of command line arguments, please see "Chapter 5. Command-Line Options" on page 157.

- If you click the Browse button at the end of the Additional Command Line Arguments entry for the front-end or back-end, VR-Forces displays the command that will be executed when you click Launch. You can copy the command and use it in a batch file, script, or for debugging.
- If you start the Launcher from the command line and use the **F--** or **B--** syntax, those commands are not shown as additional command line arguments. However, they will be executed when you click Launch.

5. Click Launch. The VR-Forces executables start. When the VR-Forces applications finish their startup process, the Scenario Startup dialog box opens (Figure 16). It lets you quickly create or load a scenario using common options.

**Figure 16. Scenario Startup dialog box**

6. To create a scenario or load a scenario, select one of the options and click OK. The options are as follows:
   - New scenario. Select a terrain and simulation model set. VR-Forces creates a scenario using default scenario parameters. To specify scenario parameters when you create a new scenario, please follow the procedure in "7.1. Creating a Scenario" on page 213.

— Load a scenario. Choose a scenario from the recently used list or select Load Scenario From Disk. If you choose the latter, when you click OK, a file chooser dialog box opens. This option is the same as choosing **File > Load Scenario** in the front-end.

7. If you do not want any of the options, click Close. (This closes the Scenario Setup dialog box; it does not close VR-Forces.)

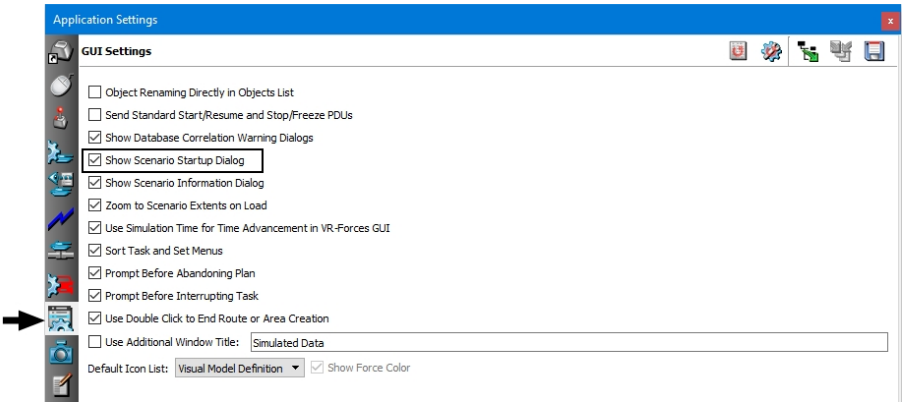
### Enabling and Disabling the Scenario Startup Dialog Box

If you do not want VR-Forces to display the Scenario Startup dialog box every time it starts up, you can disable it. You can enable the dialog box at a later time.

➤ **To enable or disable the Scenario Startup dialog box:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the GUI Settings page (Figure 17).

**Figure 17. GUI Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Show Scenario Startup Dialog check box.

---

You can also disable display of the Scenario Startup dialog box by selecting Do Not Show This Dialog At Startup on the dialog box itself.

---

## 4.1.2 Starting Independent VR-Forces Executables

You can start independent VR-Forces executables from the launcher or the command line.

➤ **To start independent VR-Forces executables from the command line:**

1. Open a console window.
2. Change to the *./bin64* directory.
3. Enter a command for each VR-Forces executable you want to run. You must specify the protocol to use. For vrfSim, the protocol is part of the executable name. For vrfGui, it is a command-line argument. Specify a unique

site:application identifier for each executable, for example:

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3000 {--dis | --hla13 | --hla1516 |
--hla1516e} options
vrfSimprotocol -s 1 -a 3001 options
```

where *protocol* is **DIS**, **HLA13**, **HLA1516**, or **HLA1516e**.

A VR-Forces window opens for each front-end you start and a console window opens for each back-end. For an example of running multiple front and back-ends, please see "4.1.4 VR-Forces Startup Tutorial" below.

## 4.1.3 Specifying a Session ID

➤ To assign a session ID, specify it in the VR-Forces Launcher or use the **-i** command line option.

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3000 -i 25 {--dis | --hla13 | --hla1516 |
--hla1516e} options]
vrfSimprotocol -s 2 -a 3002 -i 25
```

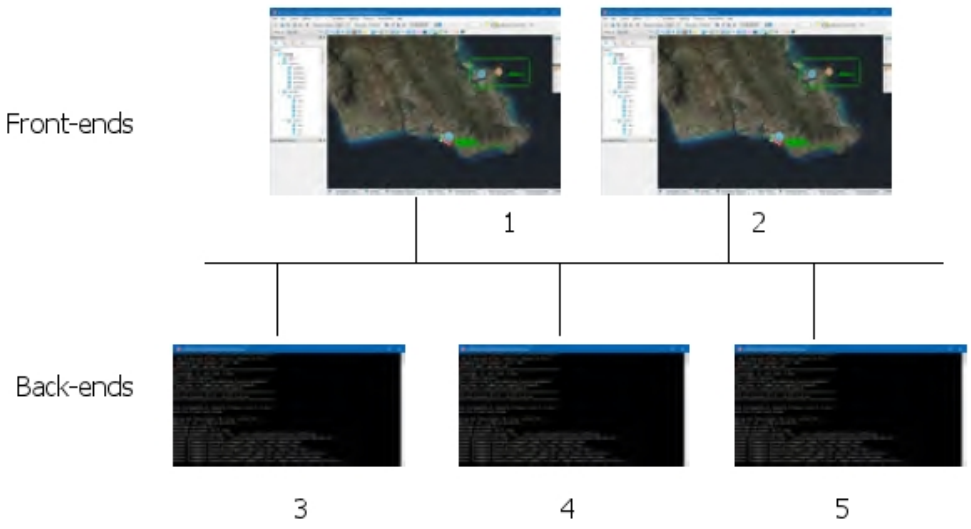
where *protocol* is **DIS**, **HLA13**, **HLA1516**, or **HLA1516e.**

The default session ID is 1. You cannot change the session ID during runtime.

## 4.1.4 VR-Forces Startup Tutorial

This section is a brief example of how to run multiple front and back-ends on multiple computers. Examples are provided for DIS and HLA. For both protocols, assume the configuration in Figure 18. This configuration has two front-ends and three back-ends. Each is on a different computer. Assume that they are all running in the same session.

**Figure 18. VR-Forces multicomputer configuration**



As an alternative to starting individual front-ends and back-ends from the command line and specifying their protocol information in the command line, you can use vrfLauncher to start the front-ends and back-ends. Be sure to specify unique site and application numbers in vrfLauncher. For details about vrfLauncher command syntax, please see "5.3. Command-Line Options for vrfLauncher" on page 175.

### DIS Configuration

In a DIS exercise, you typically specify a port so that the exercise traffic is isolated from other network traffic. Each front-end and back-end must have a unique site:application ID.

Run VR-Forces on each PC using the following commands:

- PC 1:

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3000 --dis -P 1234
```

- PC 2:

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3001 --dis -P 1234
```

- PC 3:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3002 -P 1234
```

- PC 4:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3003 -P 1234
```

- PC 5:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3004 -P 1234
```

### HLA Configuration

In an HLA exercise, you could simply specify the site:application ID and use default values to specify the HLA configuration parameters. Specification of the site:application ID is identical to that in DIS. For this example, we use HLA 1.3 and specify a FOM Mapper other than the default (RPR FOM 1).

Run VR-Forces on each PC using the following commands:

- PC 1:

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3000 --hla -x MAK-RPR-2.0
--rprFomVersion 2.0017 -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
```

- PC 2:

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3001 --hla -x MAK-RPR-2.0
--rprFomVersion 2.0017 -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
```

- PC 3:

```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3002 -x MAK-RPR-2.0
--rprFomVersion 2.0017 -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
```

- PC 4:

```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3003 -x MAK-RPR-2.0
--rprFomVersion 2.0017 -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
```

- PC 5:

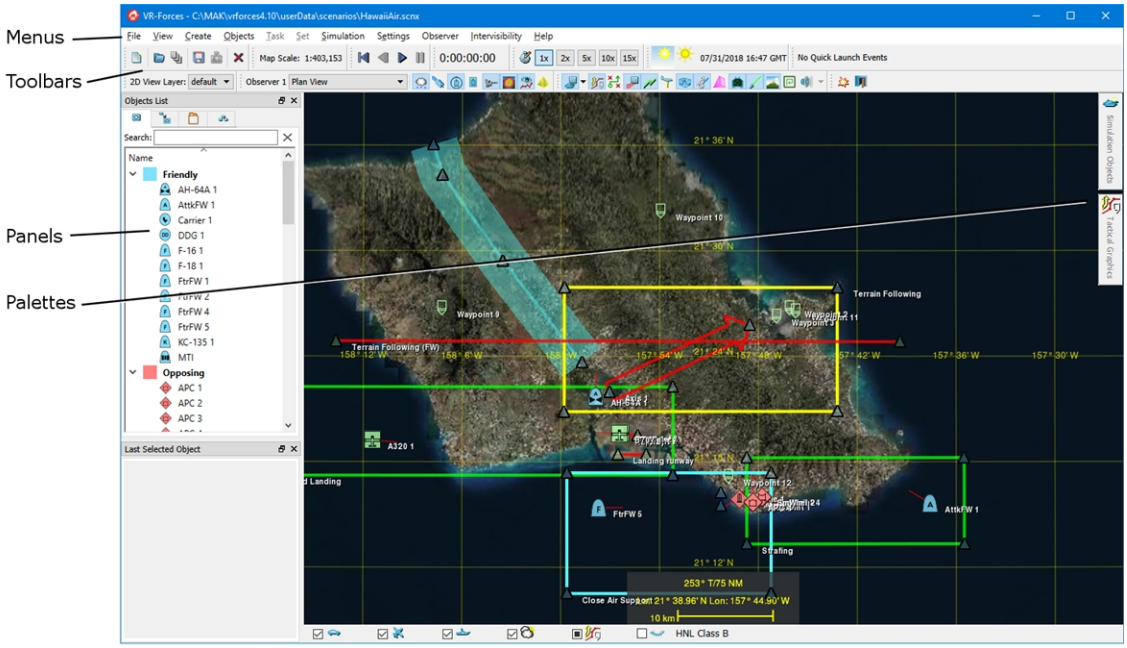
```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3004 -x MAK-RPR-2.0
--rprFomVersion 2.0017 -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
```

## 4.2. The VR-Forces Window

VR-Forces shows all the simulation objects and interactions on a terrain database. The VR-Forces window has the following main components (Figure 19):

- Menus. Menus for accessing VR-Forces commands.
- Simulation control toolbars:
  - Simulation Control toolbar. Allows you to start, pause, and rewind a scenario.
  - Simulation Selection toolbar. Displays site and application numbers of multiple back-ends, if present.
  - Simulation Time toolbar. Displays the elapsed simulation time.
  - Simulation Time Scale toolbar. Allows you to control the speed at which the simulation runs.
- Application panels. Dockable panels that provide information and let you manage the observer.
- Convenience toolbars. Toolbars that let you quickly select frequently used menu commands and configuration settings.
- Object creation palettes. Palettes for creating simulation objects, tactical graphics, and props.

**Figure 19. VR-Forces window (2D)**




Terrain and object display

You can view the terrain in 2D (Figure 19), 3D (Figure 20), and exaggerated reality (XR) (Figure 21) modes.

**Figure 20. VR-Forces window (3D)**

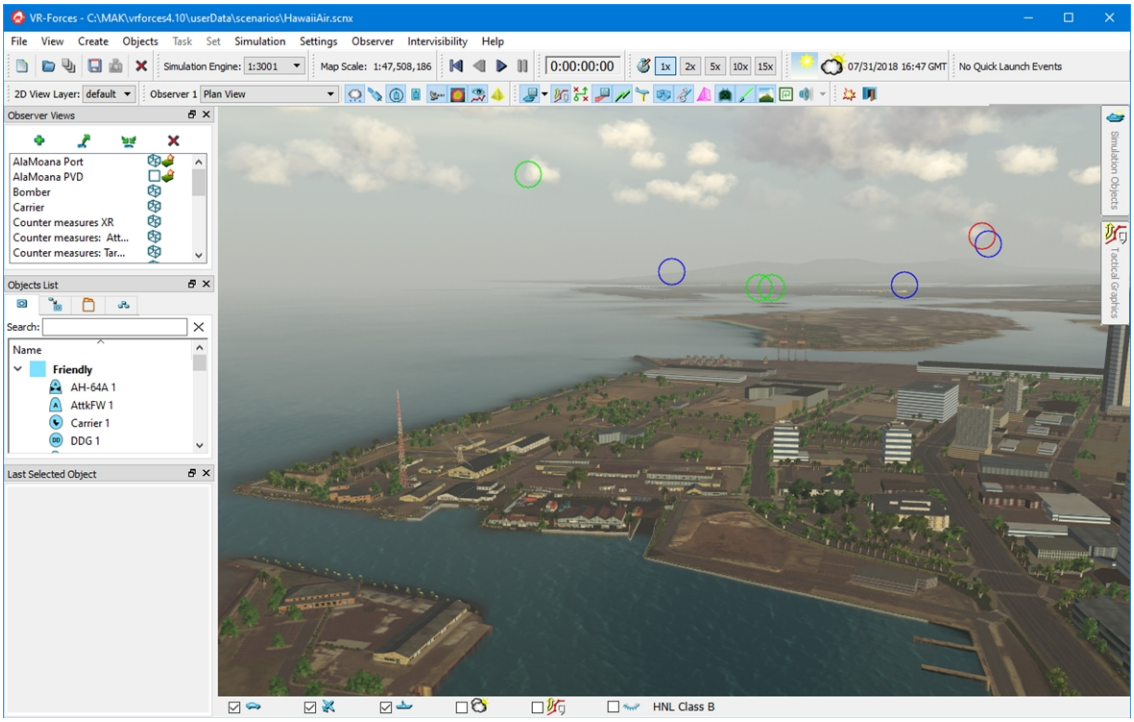
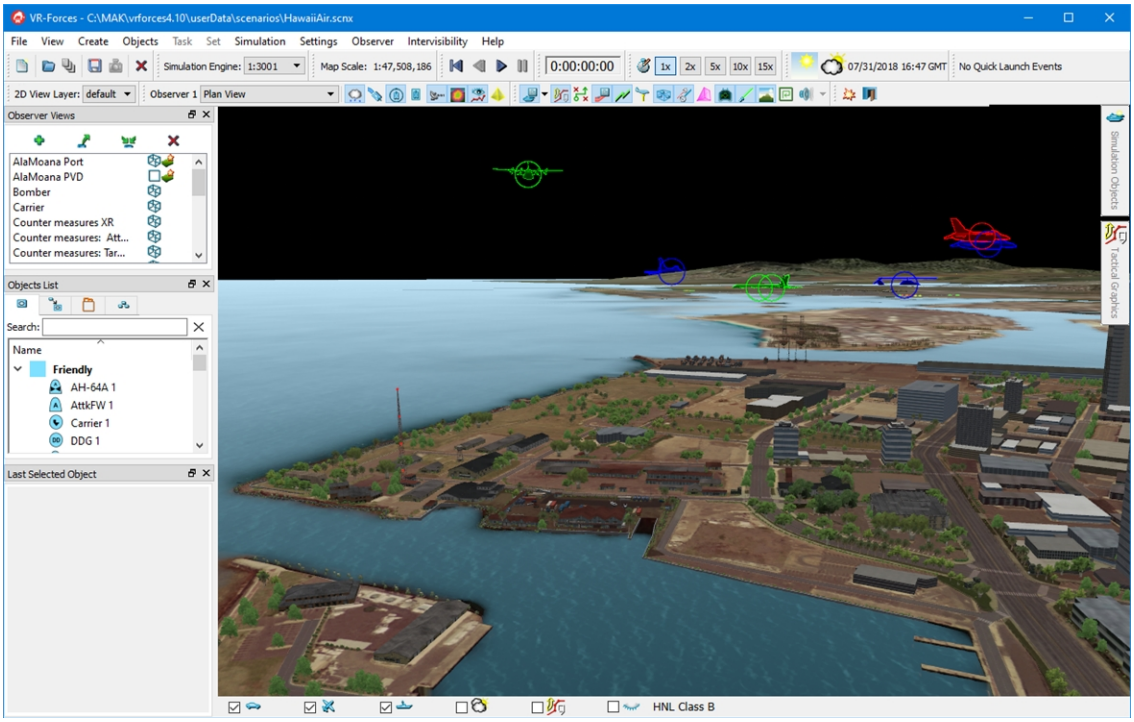


**Figure 21. VR-Forces window (XR)**




You can undock toolbars and panels and display them anyplace on your desktop. You can hide any toolbar that you do not want to be visible. (For details, please see "Chapter 77. GUI Controls, Layouts, and Behaviors" on page 1545.)

## 4.2.1 Opening New Windows

In addition to the main VR-Forces window, you can open secondary windows. These windows do not have any of the menus or toolbars of the main window. However, you can navigate the windows using the same keyboard and mouse options as the main window. When a secondary window has focus, the settings on the Observer Settings toolbar apply to that secondary window and changes you make affect the window.

You can open windows with a 2D view or 3D view. Once a window is open, you can change the view by changing the observer mode.

Opening a secondary window is not the same thing as running a second instance of the front-end. When you close a front-end, all secondary windows associated with it are also closed.

➤ To open a new window, choose **File > New Stealth Window** or **File > New Plan View Window**.

---

You can also open a new window by opening an inset view. For details, please see "55.1. Inset Views" on page 1146.

---

### 4.2.2 Printing the VR-Forces Display

You can print the VR-Forces display to any printer configured on your computer. None of the GUI controls or tabs get printed.

➤ **To print the VR-Forces display:**

1. Choose **File > Terrain > Print**. The Print dialog box opens.
2. Select a printer.
3. Click Print.

### 4.2.3 Taking Screen Captures

You can take screen captures of the VR-Forces window. None of the GUI controls or panels are saved.

By default, screen captures are saved to *./userData/screenshots*. You can change the default location. You can also change the key used for screen captures. For details about changing key mappings, please see .

➤ **To take a screen capture:**

1. Choose **File>Terrain>Save Terrain as Image**. The Save Map Area dialog box opens.
2. Select the directory in which you want to save the image.
3. Type a name for the file.
4. Select the format you want to save it as.
5. Click Save.

---

You can also take a screen capture by pressing **Ctrl+F5**. It is saved to the default directory with a default name.

---

---

On Linux machines, the screen capture may look a little dark in the default image viewer but it displays correctly in other image viewers or on a Windows machine.

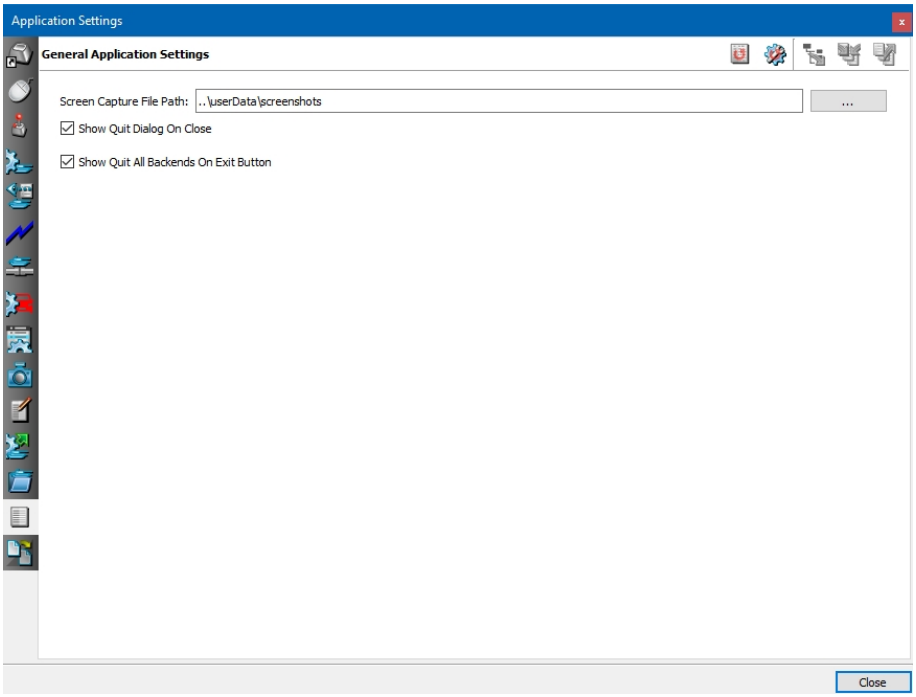
---

#### Specifying the Location of Screen Captures

➤ **To specify the location where screen captures are saved:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the General Application Settings page (Figure 22).

**Figure 22. General Application Settings page**




3. In the Screen Capture File Path box, specify the location where you want to save screen captures.

## 4.3. Managing a Front-end's Session Connection

A front-end can be joined to a session or not joined. When a front-end is not joined to a session, it cannot create, load, or manage a scenario. It can only load a terrain and function as a viewer. You can tell a front-end's session status by the availability of Join Session and Resign Session commands on the File menu.

By default, when you start a front-end it automatically tries to join a session. If there is no session running, it polls the network until one becomes available and then automatically joins it. Once a front-end is joined to a session, you can manually resign from and rejoin it.

When a front-end joins a session, its behavior depends on the session settings set in the Application Settings dialog box, Session Settings page. The options are:

- Ask to join the session.
- Always join the session with the session database.
- Always join the session with whatever database is currently loaded.

---

! If you do not load the terrain specified by the scenario, it is possible that visual and simulation terrains will not be synchronized.

---

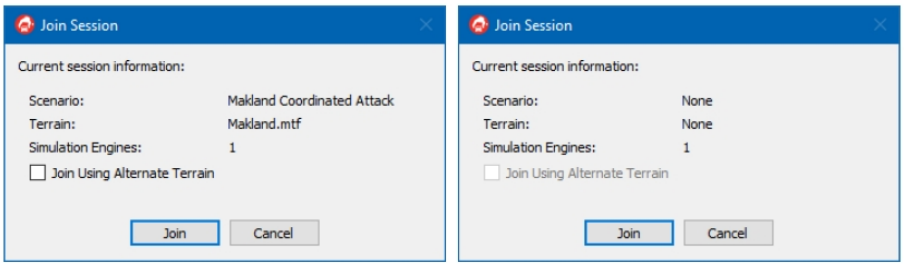
### 4.3.1 Joining a Session

When you join a session, all menu commands related to scenario management are enabled. If a scenario is loaded in the session, the terrain is automatically loaded in the joining front-end.

➤ **To join a session:**

1. Choose **File > Join Session**. If VR-Forces is configured to always join a session with the session database, the front-end loads the session database and joins the session. If VR-Forces is not configured to automatically use the session database, the Join Session dialog box opens (Figure 23). If a scenario is running, its details are listed.

**Figure 23. Join Session dialog box**




Scenario running | No scenario running

2. If a scenario is running, you can specify that you want to load an alternate terrain:
   a. Select the Join Using Alternate Terrain check box.
   b. Click Join. An Open Database dialog box opens.
   c. Select the terrain that you want to load.
   d. Click Open. The terrain is loaded and the front-end joins the session.

---

! If you join a session using an alternate terrain, the front-end (visual) and back-end (simulation) terrains might not be synchronized.

---

3. Click Join. The front-end joins the session.

### 4.3.2 Resigning from a Session

When you resign from a session, all menu commands related to scenario management are disabled. If you have a scenario loaded, the terrain is closed.

➤ To resign from a session, choose **File > Resign From Session**.

### 4.3.3 Configuring Session Messages and Join at Startup

You can configure the display of session-related messages and whether or not the front-end tries to join a session or open a terrain database automatically at startup.

➤ **To configure sessions:**

1. Choose **Settings>Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Session Settings page (Figure 17 on page 127).
3. Select the options that you want to enable, as follows:
   - Automatically Join Session. If selected, when the front-end starts, automatically join a session if it is available. If cleared, the front-end does not join a session and does not prompt you to do so.
   - Automatically Open Session Database without Joining Session. This option lets VR-Forces automatically load the terrain database for the current session and put you in view only mode. You cannot create objects or control them. It interacts with Automatically Join Session as shown in Table 4.

**Table 4. Join session and open session database interaction**

| Automatically Join Session | Open Session Database without Joining | Result |
|---|---|---|
| ☑ | ☐ | At startup, VR-Forces joins the session, loads the terrain, and you have full control of objects and scenario actions. |
| ☐ | ☑ | At startup, VR-Forces loads the terrain database. You have no ability to create published objects or control the scenario. (You can create local tactical graphics.) If you clear this check box after the terrain loads, it remains loaded. |
| ☑ | ☑ | If you resign from a session, the terrain database stays open and you cannot create published objects or control the scenario. (You can create local tactical graphics.) |
| ☐ | ☐ | If, after starting VR-Forces, you select Automatically Open Session Database without Joining Session and a session is open, the terrain is loaded. |

- Join Session Options. You can select one of the following options for joining a session:
  - Ask to Join Session. Provides session data (Figure 23 on page 135) and prompts you to approve whenever you join a session.
  - Always Join Session with Session Database. Always join a session using the database in the loaded scenario. (Does not display a Join Session dialog box.)
  - Always Join Session with Open Database. Always joins a session with whichever terrain is currently open in the front-end. This might generate a terrain correlation warning.
- Show Session Terrain Change Prompts. Enable if you want to get prompted when the terrain in a session changes
- Show Scenario Startup Dialog. Enable if you want to be prompted when a new session starts.

4. Click Close.

## 4.4. Using HLA Time Management

In HLA, use of time management allows the rate at which a federate proceeds to be controlled by another federate. Federates being controlled by other federates are said to be constrained. Federates that control other federates are time regulating. A federate can be both time regulating and constrained. It can also be unconstrained.

The main reasons why you might want to enable time management for VR-Forces are to run VR-Forces as part of a wider federation that is using time management or to synchronize multiple VR-Forces back-ends. Without time management, multiple back-ends can stay synchronized only if they all are able to maintain the same frame rate. However, if they cannot do so, they will no longer have a shared concept of simulation time and will become unsynchronized. By using time management services, multiple back-ends can be configured to run in lock-step with respect to simulation time, ensuring that events will always happen in the same order.

---

VR-Forces supports time management in the back-end only.

---

For details about enabling time management, please see"4.4.2 Configuring Time Management for HLA Exercises" on the next page.

### 4.4.1 VR-Forces Simulation Time Versus Federation Time

Time management synchronizes federates to federation time. Federation time is the common model of time for the federation as whole. It is the time used in time stamp ordered messages (TSO), exchanged by time-managed federates. During the lifetime of a federation, federation time always increases. (There is no notion of rewinding back to an earlier time as with VR-Forces simulation time.)

VR-Forces simulation time is not the same as HLA federation time. It is the elapsed time within a scenario (the time displayed in the Simulation Time toolbar). When you first start a simulation, federation time and simulation time may be similar. However, if you rewind a time-managed simulation, the discrepancy between the two time streams will increase. This should not have any effect on running and rewinding scenarios. As long as all the back-ends start from the same simulation state when you begin a simulation, they will be correctly synchronized (against federation time) as the simulation progresses.

## 4.4.2 Configuring Time Management for HLA Exercises

To use time management services in an HLA exercise, you must properly configure an RTI and enable time management in the VR-Forces back-end.

Time management is enabled at the application level, not the scenario level. Scenarios created without use of time management work in time-managed mode. No time management-specific information is saved as part of a scenario.

If you enable time management in the back-end, then whenever you create or load a scenario that specifies a fixed-frame mode (that is, the **frame-mode** parameter in the scenario file is set to either fixed-frame best effort or fixed-frame-run-to-complete), the back-end will become a regulating and constrained federate. It will remain in this state until the scenario is closed.

A time-managed back-end advances simulation time at a rate that is a function of the frame-mode specified in the scenario it is executing. If the **frame-mode** is fixed-frame, then it tries to advance simulation time at a rate approximating real time. However, if the back-end has a heavy simulation load, or another time-constrained federate is advancing at a relatively slower rate, the back-end may not achieve this rate. If the **frame-mode** is fixed-frame-run-to-complete, the back-end tries to advance simulation time as fast as possible, independent of wall-clock time.

### RTI Requirements for Time Management

To use time management in VR-Forces, your RTI must be properly configured to support this service. If you are using the MAK RTI, set the **RTI_useRtiExec** and **RTI_timeMgmt** parameters to 1. When you start the federation, you must run the rtiexec.

If you are using another RTI, please consult its documentation for configuration instructions.

### Enabling Time Management for the Back-end

**To enable time management in the back-end, use one of the following methods:**

- Set **runInTimeManagementMode** to 1 in *vrfSim.mtl*.
- Start the back-end with the **--timeManagement** command-line option. For example, to start the back-end in time management mode, the sample FED file configured for use with time management, and the federation name MAK-RPR1-TimeManagement-1-1:

```
vrfSimHLAprotocol -s 1 -a 3001 --timeManagement
-F MAK-RPR1-TimeManagement-1-1.fed -x MAK-RPR1-TimeManagement-1-1
```

- The back-end will only run in time management mode (time regulating and constrained) while it has a scenario loaded.
- If a scenario is configured with **frame-mode** set to variable-frame, the back-end will not become time regulating or constrained. It will print a warning to the console and run without time management enabled.

## 4.5. Opening a Terrain Database

If you are using multiple front-ends, when you load or create a scenario, the front-end on which you issue the command loads the correct terrain database. The other front-ends prompt you to load the terrain. However, you can choose to load a different terrain. Also, if you want to use the front-end as a viewer, you can manually load a terrain database. (For a brief description of the databases supplied with VR-Forces, please see "Terrain Databases Provided with VR-Forces".)

If you load a different terrain in the front-end than the one loaded in the back-end, there might be correlation issues between the terrains. VR-Forces can warn you about correlation issues. For details, please see "4.5.2 Displaying Terrain Correlation Warnings" on page 141.

You can only “open” terrains in MTF format. To open any other terrain format, you must compose a terrain, as described in Chapter 1, *Composing Terrains*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*, or use an earth file, as described in Chapter 2, *Paged and Streaming Terrains*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

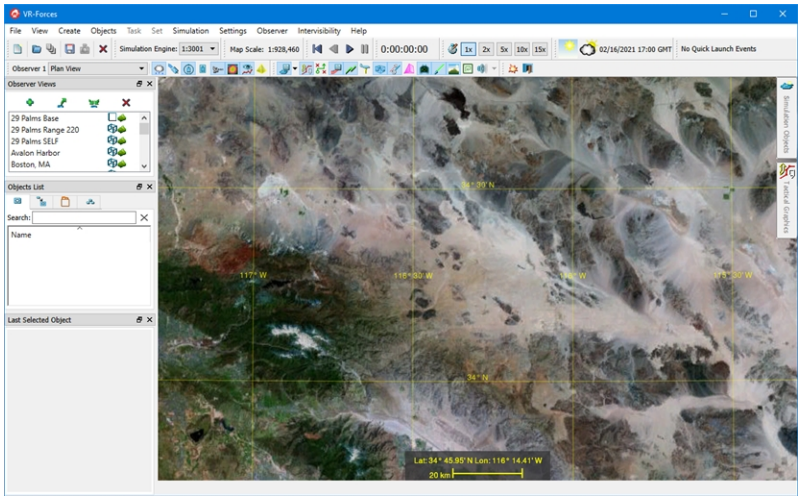
The first time you load a terrain (including the terrains supplied with VR-Forces), VR-Forces caches textures in its fast load format. This is a slow process. However, thereafter the terrain will load quickly. If you want to avoid runtime caching, you can preprocess the terrain with the medfTool before you load it. (For details about the medfTool, please see Section 18.15, *“Compressing Model Files”*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.) If you want to disable runtime caching, you can do so as described in Section 11.1, *“Configuring File Caching”*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

It is possible to open a terrain without having a scenario loaded. In such cases you can create tactical graphics and add props, but you cannot create simulation objects. To create and manipulate simulation objects, you must load or create a scenario.

➤ **To open a terrain database:**

1. In the VR-Forces window, choose **File > Terrain > Open Terrain**. The Open Terrain dialog box opens.
2. Select the terrain that you want to open.
3. Click Open. The database is displayed in the VR-Forces window (Figure 24).

**Figure 24. VR-Forces window with a database loaded**




- If you load a terrain database while one is currently loaded, VR-Forces closes the current database and then opens the new one.
- Paged terrains might not be visible when loaded in Plan View mode. To see the terrain, press **e** to zoom in. This problem potentially exists for all paged terrains whose page-in distance is less than the default observer distance in Plan View mode.
- Some MetaFlight terrains do not display in the 2D view when first loaded. To see the terrain, change to a 3D view mode, and press the space bar (center view on terrain) to move the eyepoint to the terrain location. After this, the terrain can be viewed in the 2D view.

## 4.5.1 Loading a Terrain Database at Startup

You can load a terrain database at startup by specifying it on the command line. If you start VR-Forces while a session is running, it can load the appropriate terrain database automatically. For details, please see "4.3.3 Configuring Session Messages and Join at Startup" on page 135.

➤ To load a terrain database when you start VR-Forces, use the **-T** command line option.

`vrfSim`*`protocol`* `-s 1 -a 3001 -T "../userData/terrains/myDatabase.mtf"`

where *`protocol`* is **DIS**, **HLA13**, **HLA1516**, or **HLA1516e**.

### 4.5.2 Displaying Terrain Correlation Warnings

By default, VR-Forces displays a warning message if the terrain loaded in the front-end might not correlate well with the terrain loaded in the back-end. You can enable and disable this warning message.

➤ **To enable or disable terrain correlation warning messages:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the GUI Settings page.
3. Select or clear the Show Database Correlation Warning Dialogs check box.
4. Click Close.

### 4.5.3 Closing a Terrain

➤ **To close a terrain, use one of the following methods:**

- Choose **File > Terrain > Close Terrain**.
- Choose **File > Terrain > New Terrain**.
- Open a different terrain.

## 4.6. Exiting VR-Forces

When you exit VR-Forces from the GUI, all GUI windows close. In combined mode, the simulation engine that started with the GUI also closes. If you are not running in combined mode or have multiple simulation engines, you must also close all simulation engines (either manually or using the correct Exit option). The Yes options on the exit prompt work as follows:

- Yes. In independent mode, closes the GUI. In combined mode closes the GUI and the simulation engine that was started with the GUI.
- Yes, and Quit All Back-Ends. Closes the GUI and all back-ends in the session, regardless of how you started them, which computer is running them, and which operating system they are running on.

You can disable the exit prompt if you want to. In that case exiting acts as if you clicked Yes on the exit prompt. For details, please see "4.6.1 Disabling the Quit Prompt" below.

➤ **To exit the VR-Forces GUI:**

1. Choose **File > Exit**. An exit prompt opens.
2. Click the button for the exit option you want.

➤ To exit a simulation engine from the console window, type **q** and then press **Enter**.

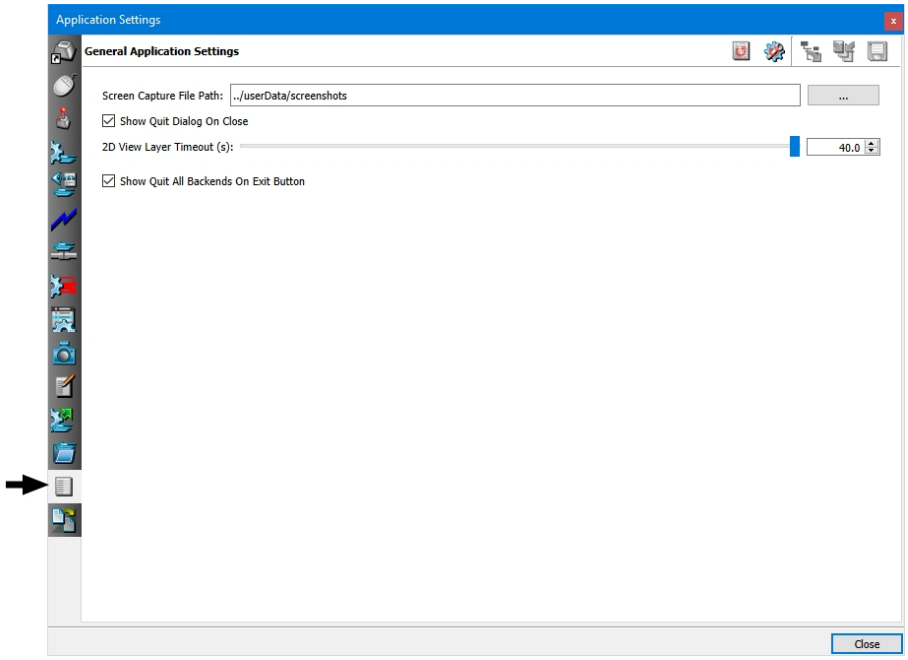
### 4.6.1 Disabling the Quit Prompt

When you exit VR-Forces, you are prompted to confirm that you want to exit. You can disable this prompt.

➤ **To disable the quit prompt:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the General Application Settings page (Figure 25).

**Figure 25. General Application Settings page**




3. Clear the Show Quit Dialog On Close check box.

## 4.7. Configuring Simulation Connections

A simulation connection specifies the connection parameters for a DIS or HLA simulation connection. VR-Forces comes with the following connection configurations:

- DIS (7) localhost (for use when disconnected from a network or if you do not want to interact with network traffic).
- DIS (7).
- HLA 1.3 RPR FOM 2.0 with MAK extensions.
- HLA 1516 Evolved RPR FOM 2.0 with MAK extensions.

You can edit the supplied configurations or add your own connection configurations that use, for example, a different DIS port or your own FOM Mapper.

### 4.7.1 Opening the Simulation Connections Configuration Dialog Box

Simulation connection configurations are maintained in the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box. This dialog box opens automatically when you start VR-Forces or run the vrfLauncher, unless you choose a configuration as the default connection for auto connection. If Auto Connect is enabled and you want to change the connection, you can open the dialog box from the Tools menu.

➤ To open the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box from the Windows Start menu, choose **MAK Technologies > Configure VR-Forces Connections.**

To start the vrfLauncher on Linux (or from the Windows command line), in a console window, enter the following command:

`vrfLauncher` *`options`*

For descriptions of the vrfLauncher command-line options, please see "5.3. Command-Line Options for vrfLauncher" on page 175.

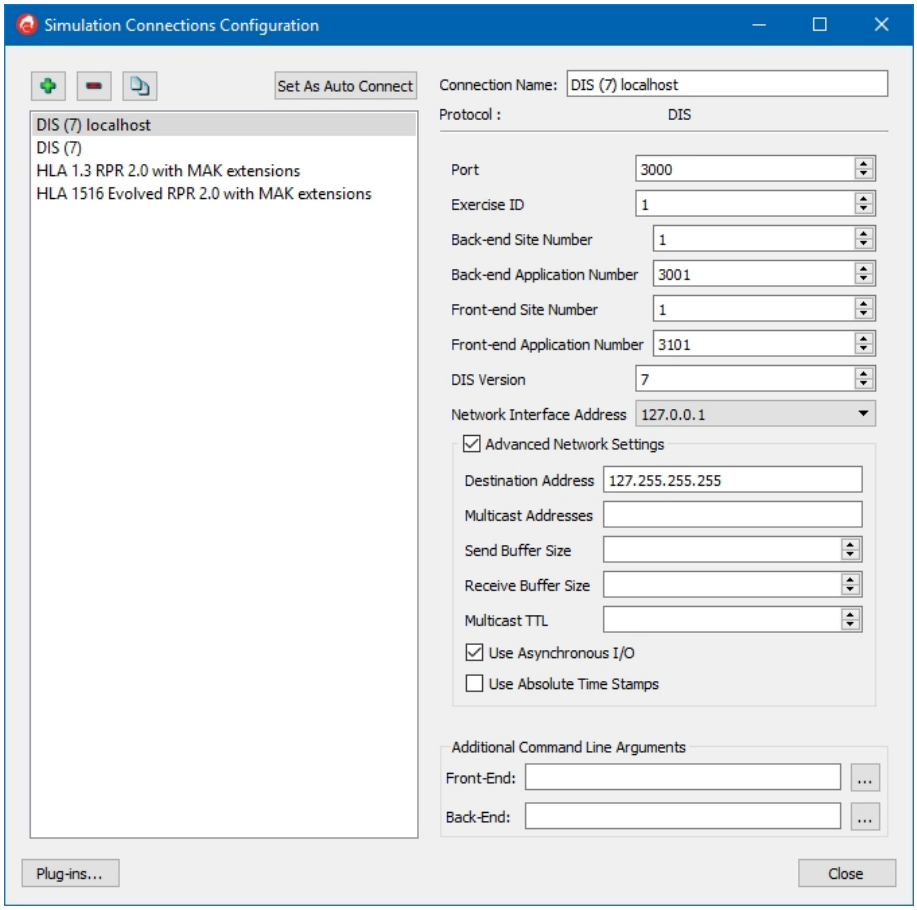
## 4.7.2 Adding a Simulation Connection

When you add a new simulation connection, it has the default values for the protocol that you select. You can then customize it to meet your needs. You can also add new connections by copying an existing connection.

➤ **To add a simulation connection:**

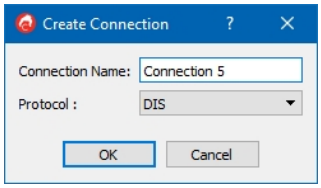
1. On the Windows Start menu, choose **MAK Technologies > Configure VR-Forces Connections.** The Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box opens (Figure 26).

**Figure 26. Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box**



2. Click the Add Connection button (). The Create Connection dialog box opens (Figure 27).

**Figure 27. Create Connection dialog box**




3. In the Connection Name box, type a name for the connection.
4. Select a protocol from the Protocol list.
5. Click OK.
6. The connection is added to the list in the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box.
7. Select the new connection in the list.
8. Edit the parameters as desired. They are described in "4.7.4 Simulation Connection Parameters" on the facing page.

### Copying a Simulation Connection

You can create a new simulation connection by copying an existing connection.

➤ **To copy a simulation connection:**

1. On the Windows Start menu, choose **MAK Technologies > Configure VR-Forces Connections**. The Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box opens (Figure 26).
2. Click the Copy Connection button (). The Copy Connection dialog box opens.
3. Accept the default name or type a new name.
4. Click OK.
5. Edit the parameters as desired. They are described in "4.7.4 Simulation Connection Parameters" on the facing page.

## 4.7.3 Editing a Simulation Connection

➤ **To edit a simulation connection:**

1. On the Windows Start menu, choose **MAK Technologies > Configure VR-Forces Connections**. The Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box opens (Figure 26 on the previous page).
2. In the list of connections, select the connection that you want to edit.
3. Edit the parameters as desired. They are described in "4.7.4 Simulation Connection Parameters" on the facing page.

### 4.7.4 Simulation Connection Parameters

The HLA and DIS simulation connection parameters are equivalent to command-line options for DIS and HLA. Table 5 describes the connection parameters for DIS and cross references the parameters to their descriptions in "Chapter 5. Command-Line Options" on page 157. Table 6 describes the connection parameters for HLA and cross references the parameters to their descriptions in "Chapter 5. Command-Line Options" on page 157.

**Table 5. Connection configuration parameters for DIS**

| Parameter | Command-line equivalent | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Port | `-P` | Specifies the DIS port. "5.6.1 Specifying the Port Number" on page 180. |
| Exercise ID | `-x` | Specifies the DIS exercise ID. "5.6.5 Specifying the Exercise ID" on page 181. |
| Back-end Site Number<br>Front-end Site Number | `-s` | Specifies the site ID. These values can be the same or different. It is entirely arbitrary. **"5.4.1 Specifying the Site ID and Application Number" on page 177.** |
| Back-end Application Number<br>Front-end Application Number | `-a` | Specifies the application number. The default front-end application number is created by adding 100 to the back-end application number. **"5.4.1 Specifying the Site ID and Application Number" on page 177.** |
| DIS Version | `--disVersion` | Specifies the DIS version: 4, 5, 6 or 7. Default: 7. "5.6.6 Specifying the DIS Version" on page 181. |
| Network Interface Address | `--deviceAddress` | Specifies the address of the network card to use for UDP traffic. |
| Destination Address | `-A` | Specifies a specific destination address (point-to-point). "5.6.2 Specifying Point-to-Point or Multicast Operation" on page 181. |
| Multicast Addresses | `-S` | Specifies one or more multicast addresses. "5.6.2 Specifying Point-to-Point or Multicast Operation" on page 181. |
| Send Buffer Size | `--sendBufferSize` | Specifies the send buffer size. Default: -1. |
| Receive Buffer Size | `--recvBufferSize` | Specifies the receive buffer size. |

**Table 5. Connection configuration parameters for DIS (continued)**

| Parameter | Command-line equivalent | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Multicast TTL | `--mcastTtl` | Specifies the multicast time-to-live. Default: -1. |
| Use Asynchronous I/O | `--useAsyncIO` | Use asynchronous I/O. Default: False. |
| Use Absolute Time Stamps | `--useAbsolute-TimeStamps` | Specifies use of absolute time stamps instead of relative time stamps. |

! If you select `--useAbsoluteTimeStamps`, it is your responsibility to ensure that the time clocks of exercise participants are synchronized. If they are not synchronized,VR-Forces may not work properly.

**Table 6. Connection configuration parameters for HLA**

| Parameter | Command-line equivalent | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Network Interface Address | `--deviceAddress` | The IP address of the host computer. |
| Federation Name | `-x` | Specifies the name of the federation execution. "5.5.1 Specifying the Federation Execution" on page 178. |
| FED File Name | `-F` | Specifies the FED file to use. "5.5.2 Specifying the FED File" on page 179. |
| Back-end Site Number<br>Front-end Site Number | `-s` | Specifies the site ID. These values can be the same or different. It is entirely arbitrary. **"5.4.1 Specifying the Site ID and Application Number" on page 177.** |
| Back-end Application Number<br>Front-end Application Number | `-a` | Specifies the application number. The default front-end application number is created by adding 100 to the back-end application number. **"5.4.1 Specifying the Site ID and Application Number" on page 177.** |
| RPR FOM Version | `--rprFomVersion` | "5.5.3 Specifying the RPR FOM Version" on page 179. |
| FOM Mapper Library | `-f` | Specifies the VR-Link FOM Mapper to use. "5.5.4 Specifying a FOM Mapper" on page 179. |

**Table 6. Connection configuration parameters for HLA (continued)**

| Parameter | Command-line equivalent | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Initialization String | `--fomMapperInit-Data` | Specifies initialization data required by the FOM Mapper, if any. "5.5.6 Specifying FOM Mapper Initialization Data" on page 180. |
| Local Settings Designator | `-s` | Specifies a string that is passed to the RTI during federate connect when using HLA Evolved. It is usually used to provide additional RTI configuration, but every RTI uses it differently. Please consult your RTI documentation for proper usage. |
| FOM Modules | `--fomModules` | Specifies FOM Modules. (HLA Evolved only.) |
| Ignore Advisories | `--useAdvisories` | Specifies whether or not to use HLA advisories. |

! If you are using a lightweight RTI connection on Linux you must enable Ignore Advisories or the simulation engine will not publish entities., .

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Use Absolute Time Stamps | `--useAbsolute-TimeStamps` | Specifies use of absolute time stamps instead of relative time stamps. |

! If you select `--useAbsoluteTimeStamps`, it is your responsibility to ensure that the time clocks of exercise participants are synchronized. If they are not synchronized,VR-Forces may not work properly.

## 4.7.5 Deleting a Simulation Connection

➤ **To delete a simulation connection:**

- Choose **MAK Technologies > Configure VR-Forces Connections**. The Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box opens (Figure 26 on page 143).
- In the list of connections, select the connection that you want to delete.
- Click the Delete button (−). A confirmation prompt opens.
- Click Yes.

## 4.7.6 Configuring Auto Connect

If you know that you will usually or always want to use the same simulation connection, you can set up Auto Connect and you will not have to select a connection every time you start VR-Forces.

➤ **To configure Auto Connect:**

1. Choose **MAK Technologies > Configure VR-Forces Connections**. The Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box opens (Figure 26 on page 143).
2. In the list of connections, select the connection that you want to use every time you start VR-Forces.
3. Click Set as Auto Connect. A star is displayed next to the selected connection.

### Disabling Auto Connect

➤ **To disable Auto Connect:**

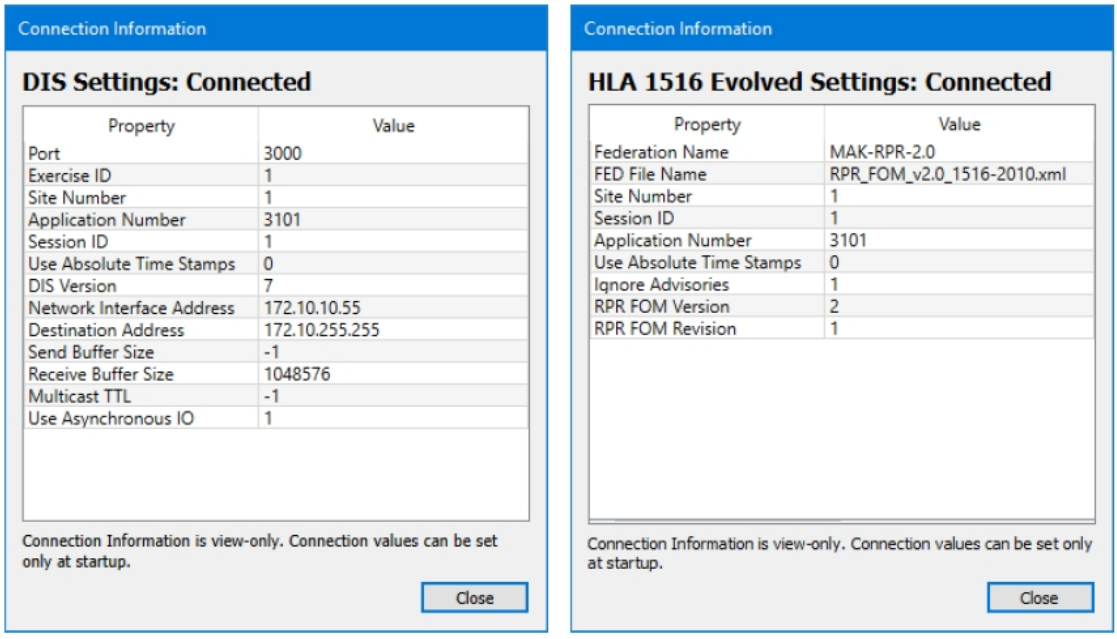
1. Choose **MAK Technologies > Configure VR-Forces Connections**. The Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box opens (Figure 26 on page 143).
2. In the list of connections, select the connection that is configured for auto connect.
3. Click Set as Auto Connect. Auto connect is disabled and the star is removed from next to the connection.

## 4.7.7 Displaying Connection Information

You can display connection information while you are running VR-Forces. This may be useful for diagnostic purposes.

➤ To view connection information, choose **Settings > Connection Information**. The Connection Information dialog box opens (Figure 28).

**Figure 28. Connection Information dialog box**



# 4.8. Managing Plug-ins

One way to extend the functionality of VR-Forces is by loading plug-ins that have been written for it by MAK or other software vendors. You can manage which plug-ins get loaded when VR-Forces starts up. You can also view information about the plug-ins that have been loaded. This is primarily used for back-end plug-ins.

Plug-ins are implemented as one or more dynamic linked libraries (DLL or SO files). The DLLs can be release or debug, for vrfSim or vrfGui, for Windows or Linux, and for a specific protocol or protocol-independent. Each association of an application, platform, build type, and transport type is called a configuration. The Plug-ins Editor lets you specify the DLLs to use for each of the desired configurations.

---

Changes to plug-in configurations do not take effect until the next time you start the affected VR-Forces application.

---

## 4.8.1 Loading Plug-ins

You can specify which plug-ins to load in either of the following ways:.

- In the Plug-ins dialog box, specify the plug-ins to load the next time VR-Forces starts.
- In the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box, specify the plug-ins to load at startup.

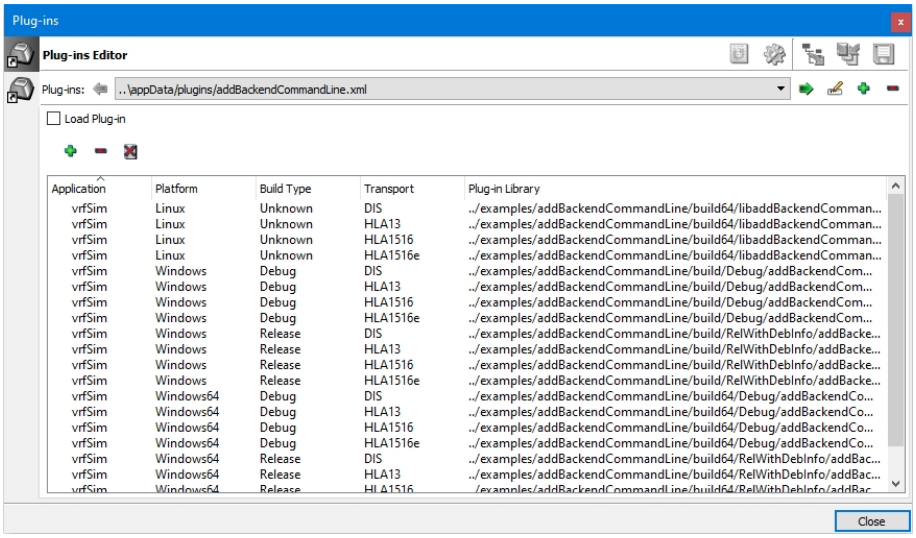
### Specifying the Plug-ins to Load in the Plug-ins Dialog Box

The Plug-ins dialog box lets you specify the plug-ins that will be loaded the next time that you start VR-Forces.

➤ **To specify that a plug-in be loaded or not loaded in the Plug-ins dialog box:**

1. Choose **Settings > Plug-ins**. The Plug-ins dialog box opens.
2. Select the Plug-ins Editor page (Figure 29).

**Figure 29. Plug-ins dialog box, Plug-ins Editor page**




3. In the list of plug-ins at the top of the page, select the one that you want to edit. The configurations for that plug-in are listed in the window.
4. Select or clear the Load Plug-in check box.

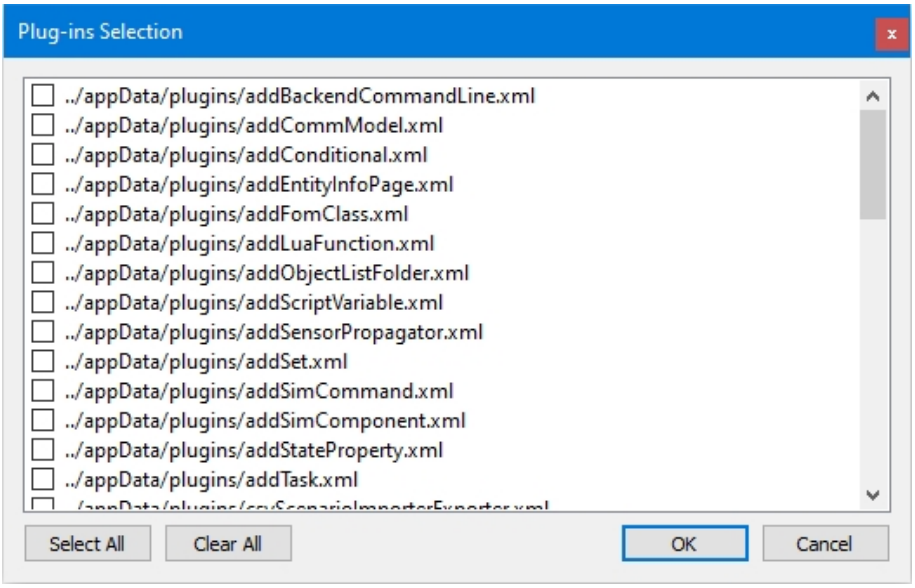
## Specifying the Plug-ins to Load in the Simulation Connections Configuration

You can select the plug-ins that you want to load at startup.

➤ **To specify the plug-ins to load in the simulation connections configuration:**

1. Start VR-Forces using the VR-Forces Launcher, as described in "4.1.1 Starting VR-Forces from the VR-Forces Launcher" on page 123. The Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box opens (Figure 26 on page 143).
2. Click Plug-ins. The Plug-ins Selection dialog box opens (Figure 29). The dialog box lists all of the plug-ins that are configured for VR-Forces. If a plug-in has previously been selected for loading, in this dialog box or in the Plug-ins Editor, it is checked.

**Figure 30. Plug-ins Selection dialog box**




3. Select the check boxes for the plug-ins that you want to load. Clear the check boxes for any plug-ins that you do not want to load.
4. Click OK. The plug-in configuration applies to all of the startup configurations.

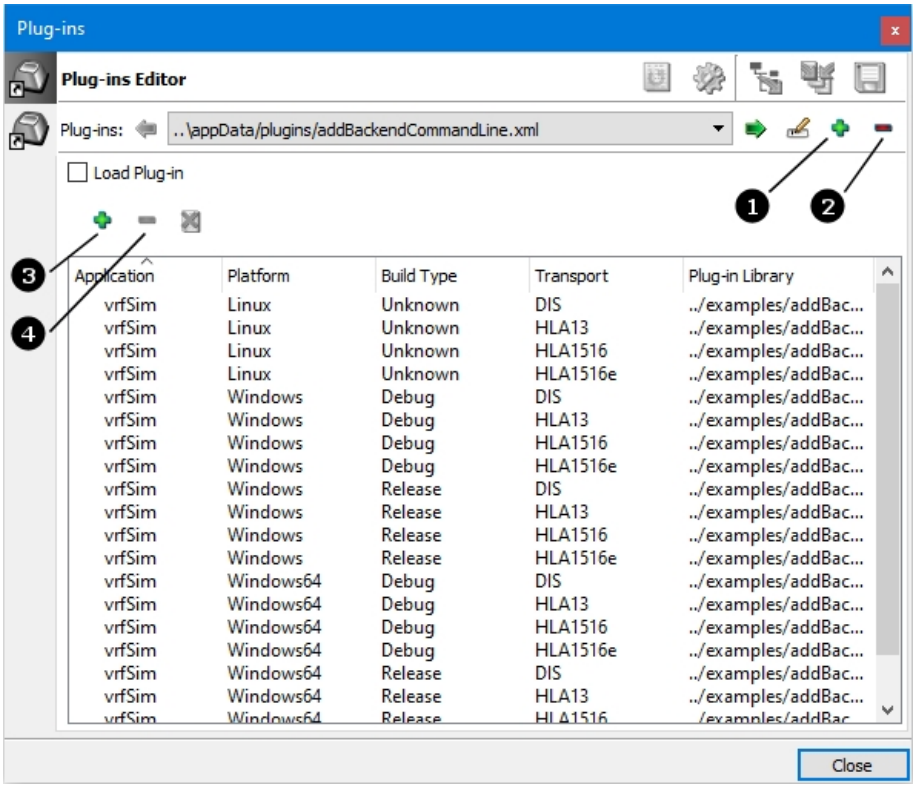
## 4.8.2 Adding a Plug-in

When you add a plug-in, VR-Forces creates an XML file (in *./appData/plugins*) that contains all of the information VR-Forces needs to load the plug-in. New plug-ins are added with entries for each of the configurations (application, platform, build type, transport). After you add a plug-in, you must specify the DLLs for each configuration that you want to support.

➤ **To add a plug-in:**

1. Choose **Settings > Plug-ins**. The Plug-ins dialog box opens (Figure 29 on the previous page).
2. Select the Plug-ins Editor page.
3. Click the Add button (+) at the upper right corner of the page (#1 in Figure 31). The New Plug-in dialog box opens.
4. Type a name for the plug-in.
5. Click OK. The plug-in is added to the Plug-ins list. It has configurations for each of the combinations of application, platform, build type, and transport (Figure 31) as shown in the figure.

**Figure 31. New plug-in**




6. Specify the DLL for each configuration that you want to support, as described in "4.8.3 Specifying the DLLs for a Plug-in" below.

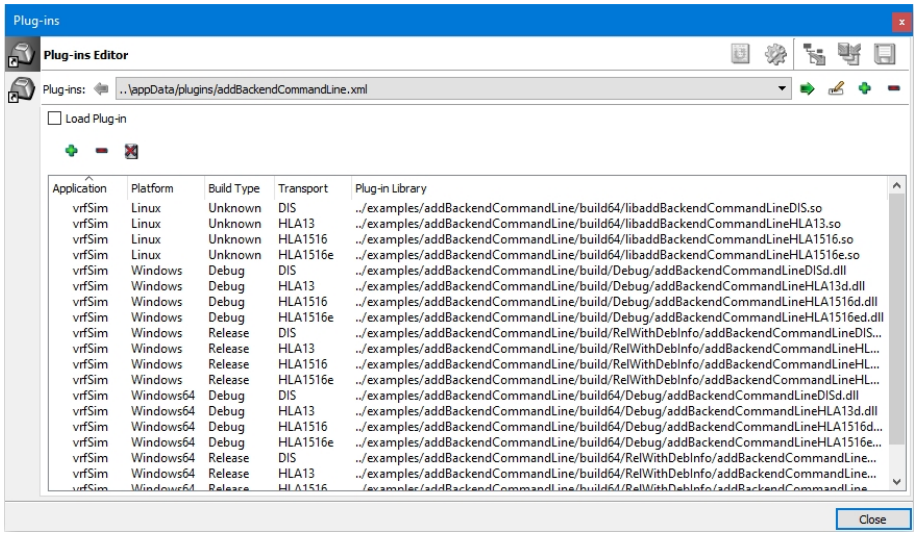
## 4.8.3 Specifying the DLLs for a Plug-in

Each plug-in configuration that you want to be able to load must specify the DLL to load for that configuration.

➤ **To specify the DLL for a plug-in configuration:**

1. Choose **Settings > Plug-ins**. The Plug-ins dialog box opens (Figure 29 on page 150).
2. Select the Plug-ins Editor page (Figure 32).

**Figure 32. Plug-ins Editor**




3. In the list of plug-ins at the top of the page, select the one that you want to edit.
4. Click the Plug-in Library column for the configuration that you want to edit. The Select Plugin dialog box opens.
5. Select the DLL that you want to load for this configuration.
6. Click Open. The value is changed.

### Removing a Plug-in's DLL

You can remove the DLL assignment for a plug-in configuration without removing the configuration.

➤ **To remove the DLL assignment for a plug-in:**

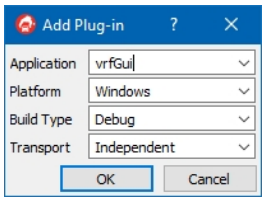
1. Choose **Settings > Plug-ins**. The Plug-ins dialog box opens (Figure 29 on page 150).
2. Select the Plug-ins Editor page.
3. Select the configuration whose DLL assignment you want to remove.
4. Click the Erase button ( ).

## 4.8.4 Adding a Plug-in Configuration

➤ **To add a plug-in configuration:**

1. Choose **Settings > Plug-ins**. The Plug-ins dialog box opens (Figure 29 on page 150).
2. Select the Plug-ins Editor page.
3. In the list of plug-ins at the top of the page, select the one that you want to edit.
4. Click the Add button ( ) above the list of configurations (#3 in Figure 31 on the previous page). The Add Plug-in dialog box opens (Figure 33).

**Figure 33. Add Plug-in dialog box**




5. For each parameter (Application, Platform, Build Type, and Transport), select a value from the list.
6. Click OK. The configuration is added to the list.
7. Specify a DLL for the configuration, as described in "4.8.3 Specifying the DLLs for a Plug-in" on page 152.

## 4.8.5 Deleting a Plug-in Configuration

➤ **To delete a plug-in configuration:**

1. Choose **Settings > Plug-ins**. The Plug-ins dialog box opens (Figure 29 on page 150).
2. Select the Plug-ins Editor page.
3. In the list of plug-ins at the top of the page, select the one that you want to edit.
4. Select the configuration that you want to delete.
5. Click the Delete button (−) that is above the list of configurations (#4 in Figure 31 on page 152).

## 4.8.6 Deleting a Plug-in

When you delete a plug-in, you delete the XML configuration file in *./appData/plugins* that specifies the plug-in configurations and whether or not to load it.

➤ **To delete a plug-in:**

1. Choose **Settings > Plug-ins**. The Plug-ins dialog box opens (Figure 29 on page 150).
2. Select the Plug-ins Editor page.
3. In the list of plug-ins at the top of the page, select the one that you want to delete.
4. Click the Delete button (−) to the right of the plug-ins list (#2 in Figure 31 on page 152).

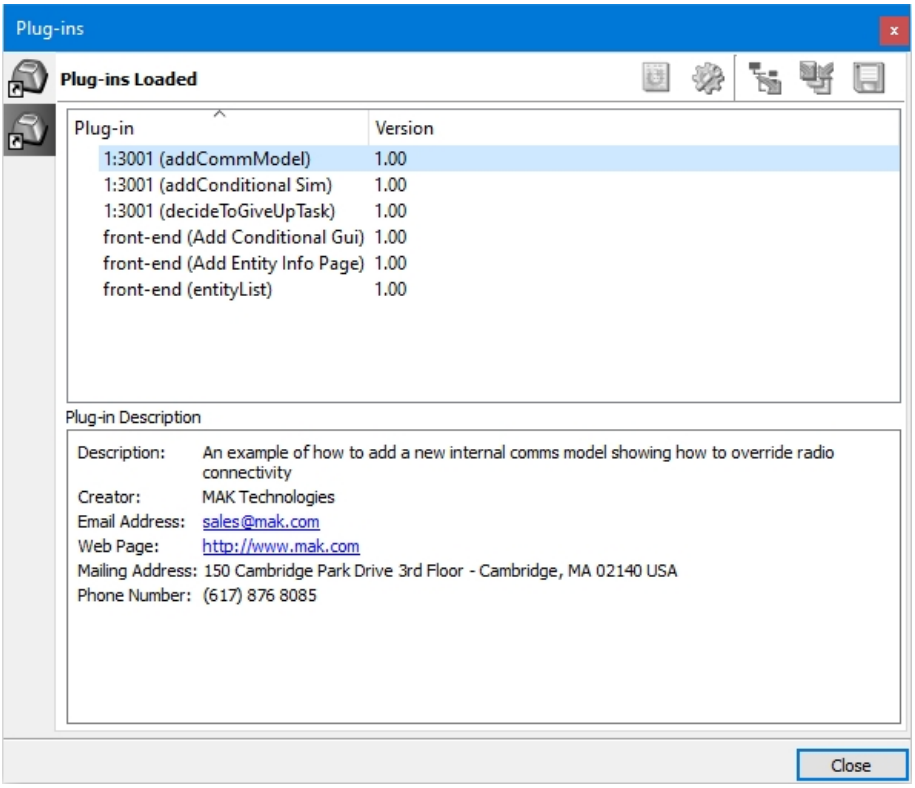
## 4.8.7 Viewing a List of Loaded Plug-ins

You can view a list of the plug-ins that are loaded when you start up VR-Forces. Plug-ins may include a description that you can also view.

➤ **To view the details of loaded plug-ins:**

1. Choose **Settings > Plug-ins**. The Plug-ins dialog box opens (Figure 29 on page 150).
2. Select the Plug-ins Loaded page (Figure 34).

**Figure 34. Plug-ins dialog box, Plug-ins Loaded page**




3. To view details about a plug-in, select it in the list.

## 4.9. The VR-Forces Log Files

On Windows, VR-Forces creates two log files, *vrfSim.log* and *vrfGui.log*. Both log files are written to the directory from which you run VR-Forces.

On Linux, in combined mode, VR-Forces automatically creates a log file, *vrfSim.log* for back-end output. Front-end output is sent to the console. If you want to view back-end output, open a second console window, and do **tail -f vrfSim.log**. If you want to send front-end output to log files, or if you are running in separate mode and want to create a log file for either the front-end or back-end, you need to redirect your output to a file, for example:

```
vrfGui > vrfGui.log
```

# 5. Command-Line Options

VR-Forces has command-line options for vrfGui and vrfSim.


5.1. Command-Line Options for vrfGui ..... 158
5.2. Command-Line Options for vrfSim ..... 168
5.3. Command-Line Options for vrfLauncher ..... 175
5.3.1 Running in Combined Mode from the Command Line ..... 176
5.3.2 Using the -- Command-line Argument ..... 177
5.4. Protocol-Independent Command-line Options ..... 177
5.4.1 Specifying the Site ID and Application Number ..... 177
5.4.2 Specifying the Language to Use in the GUI ..... 177
5.4.3 Setting the Notification Level ..... 177
5.4.4 Loading Plug-ins ..... 178
5.5. Command-Line Options for HLA Federations ..... 178
5.5.1 Specifying the Federation Execution ..... 178
5.5.2 Specifying the FED File ..... 179
5.5.3 Specifying the RPR FOM Version ..... 179
5.5.4 Specifying a FOM Mapper ..... 179
5.5.5 Specifying the RPR FOM Revision ..... 179
5.5.6 Specifying FOM Mapper Initialization Data ..... 180
5.5.7 Specifying a FED File That Is Appropriate for the FOM Mapper ..... 180
5.5.8 Enabling Time Management ..... 180
5.6. Command-Line Options for DIS Exercises ..... 180
5.6.1 Specifying the Port Number ..... 180
5.6.2 Specifying Point-to-Point or Multicast Operation ..... 181
5.6.3 Specifying the Multicast Time-to-Live ..... 181
5.6.4 Using Asynchronous I/O ..... 181
5.6.5 Specifying the Exercise ID ..... 181
5.6.6 Specifying the DIS Version ..... 181

## 5.1. Command-Line Options for vrfGui

Table 7 lists VR-Forces's the command line options for vrfGui.

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (-- \| --ignore_rest) | Ignore all command-line options after this one. This option is useful for disabling part of a command line in a script for test purposes so that you do not have to retype all of the command options at a later point. |
| --alphaBits *bits* | Sets the number of alpha bits (0, 8). |
| --antiAliasing *level* | Set the anti-aliasing level (0, 2, 4, 8, or 16). Default: 4.<br>Depending on your graphics card and driver, some combinations of anti-aliasing and bit settings (**--depthBits**, **--stencilBits**, and **--alphaBits**) may be incompatible. For example, if you set stencil bits to 8, the depth must be set to 24 and anti-aliasing may need to be set to 0 or 2. |
| --appDataDir *directory* | Specifies the location of application data. |
| (-c \| --showConsole) | Display a console window. |
| (-C \| --autoConnect) *{filename \| connector_name}* | Automatically connect to the network using the specified connector. |
| --dataDir *directory* | Specifies the location of the data directory (terrains and so on). |
| --defaultSimulationModelSet *sms* | The simulation model set to use as the default when starting up the GUI. |
| --depthBits *bits* | Sets the depth of graphics to 24 bits or 32 bits. Default: 24. |
| --dis | Start in DIS mode, using DIS command-line arguments to specify connection parameters. DIS-specific arguments do not have to follow **--dis**; they can be in any order. |
| --disableDynamicTerrain | Disables the dynamic terrain engine. May slightly speed up terrain loading and paging. |

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--disableErrorDialog` | Prevents an error message from displaying in the case that a terrain is missing. Error prints to the console instead. |
| `--disableIndirectEntities` | Disables indirect rendering of entities. To enable indirect rendering, use **`--enableIndirectEntities`**. |
| `--disableOcclusionCulling` | Disables occlusion culling. This may improve performance. |
| `(-z \| --disableReverseZBuffer)` | Disables use of reverse Z buffering, which is enabled by default. Leaving reverse Z buffering enabled can reduce Z-fighting when viewing the terrain from a distance. (3D observer modes only.) |
| `--disableTerrainObserverViews` | Disables the loading of terrain observer view files. Loading a terrain does not clear the observer views and the terrain's observer views do not load. |
| `--dispSetting` *`filename`* | Specifies the display engine configuration to load. |
| `--doNotCheckPluginVersions` | Do not check the version in a plug-in to make sure it can load in VR-Forces. A plug-in gets built against a particular version of VR-Forces. Ordinarily, when VR-Forces loads a plug-in, it checks to be sure it was created with that version of VR-Forces. This option prevents that check. |
| `--doNotLoadVrfPlugins` | Prevents loading of plug-ins in the *./plugins* directory. |
| `(-e \| --extraArgs)` *`string`* \| "*`string1 ... stringn`*" | Allows you to send arbitrary strings to the initializer, which can be queried for by plug-ins. This option works around the restriction on adding new command-line arguments. It can take one argument or multiple arguments. Multiple arguments must be wrapped in double quotes. |
| `(-E \| --entTypeMap)` *`filename`* | Load the specified object type mapping file. The file extension determines the type of mapping. |

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--enableIndirectEntities` | Enables indirect rendering of entities. To disable indirect rendering, use **--disableIndirectEntities**. |
| `--enableLogFileTimestamps` | Print a timestamp for each line in a log file. |
| `--enableVSync` | Turns on VSync. |
| `--entDispSetting` *filename* | Specifies the entity display setting to load. |
| `--entityDefsDir` *directory* | Loads the *.hier* and *.leaf* files in the specified directory. |
| `--envSetting` *filename* | Specifies the environment configuration file to load. |
| `--factoryRootDir` *directory* | Set the root directory used to restore settings to factory defaults. |
| `--forceTextShaping` | Force all text to use HarfBuzz shaping. Use this option if you need support for right-to-left languages. It may affect performance. |
| `--fowPerspective` *force* | Shows the ground truth and spot reports perspective of the specified force, where *force* can be Friendly, Opposing, Neutral, or None. Default: None. |
| `(-F \| --frameRate)--frameRate` *rate* | If rate is 0, the frame rate is variable. Otherwise, specifies a fixed frame rate for rendering. |
| `--fullScreen` | Start with the window in full screen mode. |
| `(-G \| --locale)` *language* | Specifies the locale (for localization). |
| `--gui` *filename* | Specify a GUI configuration file. This file specifies the layout of menus, toolbars, and dialog box pages. A simple filename assumes *./appdata/settings/vrfGui*. A relative filename is from the *./bin*64 directory. A full path is used as is. |
| `(-h \| --help)` | Display command-line usage information. |
| `--highestPriority` | Changes the priority of the application and the main render thread to the highest available priority. This command may starve other processes. |

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--hla13` | Start in HLA 1.3 mode, using HLA command-line arguments to specify connection parameters. HLA-specific arguments do not have to follow **--hla13**; they can be in any order. |
| `--hla1516` | Start in HLA 1516 mode, using HLA command-line arguments to specify connection parameters. HLA-specific arguments do not have to follow **--hla1516**; they can be in any order. |
| `--hla1516e` | Start in HLA Evolved mode, using HLA command-line arguments to specify connection parameters. HLA-specific arguments do not have to follow **--hla1516e**; they can be in any order. |
| `(-K \| --disableKDTrees)` | Disable creation of KD trees for intersections. |
| `(-l \| --logFileName)` *filename* | Specifies the log file name. |
| `(-L \| --loadObservers--loadObserverViews)` *filename* | Loads the saved observers observer view states in the specified file. You can use this command multiple times, for example: **--loadObservers file1 --loadObservers file2--loadObserverViews file1 --loadObserverViews file2** |
| `--layoutSettingsFile` *filename* | Specifies the GUI layout settings file to use. *filename* specifies the base filename. It is prefixed with *default_* and the extension *.uisx* is added. Default: UILayoutSettings. |
| `--loadPlugin` *filename* | Specifies a plug-in to load. Accepted multiple times. The filename can be a DLL or SO or an XML file that specifies the plug-ins to load. The order in which you list multiple plug-ins on the command line does not determine the order in which they are loaded. For details, please see "4.8. Managing Plug-ins" on page 149. |
| `--loadSimulationObjectGroup` *group* | Creates a new scenario on the simulation object group editing terrain and creates an instance of the simulation object group on that terrain. |

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--mainScreenNum` *num* | Specifies the display that the main window should use. The screen number can be a number from 0 to the number of screens -1. This number matches the screen number used in the Display Engine Configuration Editor for a window. |
| `--mergeEntityTypeMap {`*directory* \| *filename*`}` | Merges all entity type mapping files (*.*metx*) in a directory or individual entity type mapping files. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeHierarchyEntityDef {`*directory* \| *filename*`}` | Merges the *.hier* files in the specified directory or the individual *.hier* file into the default hierarchy (usually loaded from *./appData/definitions*.) Merging is additive only. No nodes in a previously loaded hierarchy are replaced. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeHierarchySpotReportDef {`*directory* \| *filename*`}` | Merges the element definition *.hier* files in the specified directory or the individual *.hier* file into the hierarchy after *./appData* or *./entityDefsDir* have been loaded. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeHierarchyTacticalGraphicsDef {`*directory* \| *filename*`}` | Merges the specified *.hier* file(s) into the default hierarchy (usually loaded from *./appData/definitions*.) Merging is additive only. No nodes in a previously loaded hierarchy are replaced. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeHierarchyUnitDef {`*directory* \| *filename*`}` | Merges the specified *.hier* file(s) into the default hierarchy (usually loaded from *./appData/definitions*.) Merging is additive only. No nodes in a previously loaded hierarchy are replaced. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeLeafEntityDef {`*directory* \| *filename*`}` | Merges the leaf files in the specified directory or the individual leaf file into the default entity element definitions. Can be used multiple times. |

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--mergeLeafSpotReportDef {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges the leaf files in the specified directory or the individual leaf file into the default spot report element definitions. This adds or replaces leaves. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeLeafTacticalGraphicsDef {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges the leaf files in the specified directory or the individual leaf file into the default tactical graphics element definitions. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeLeafUnitDef {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges the leaf files in the directory or the specified individual leaf file into the default unit element definitions. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeModelDefs {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges all model definition files (*.*ommx*) in the specified directory or individual model definition files. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeTacticalGraphicsTypeMap {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges all tactical graphics type mapping files (*.*mtgx*) in a directory or individual tactical graphics type mapping files. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeUnitTypeMap {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges all unit type mapping files (*.*magx*) in a directory or individual unit type mapping files. Can be used multiple times. |
| `(-n \| --notifyLevel)` *`notify_level`* | Specifies the notification level for application messages, where *`notify_level`* is a number from 0 through 4. The least verbose message level is 0, the highest is 4. The default is 2. For details, please see “Setting the Notification Level”. |
| `--noAppDataEntityDefs` | Do not load the entity element definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataEntityTypeMap` | Do not load entity type mappings in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataModelDefs` | Do not load model definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataSpotReportDefs` | Do not load the spot report definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataTacticalGraphicsDefs` | Do not load the tactical graphics element definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--noAppDataTacticalGraphicsTypeMap` | Do not load tactical graphics type mappings in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataUnitDefs` | Do not load the unit element definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataUnitTypeMap` | Do not load unit type mappings in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--nonVrfObjectsUUIDScheme` *scheme* | Sets the UUID scheme for non VR-Forces objects. Values are entity-identifier, global-identifier, marking-text. Default: entity-identifier. |
| `(-O \| --hasNTPSync)` | Enables synchronized ocean between different VR-Vantage applications, such as VR-Vantage Stealth and the VR-Forces front-end. System clocks must be synchronized. |
| `--plugin` *filename* | Load the specified plug-in. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--pseudoFullScreen` | Use pseudo full screen for full screen mode. This may improve performance when using dynamic ocean. |
| `--pvd` | Start the VR-Forcesfront-end with only 2D modes available. |
| `(-S \| --suppressHatIntersectOnAttach)` | Suppress the periodic HAT intersection when attached. This setting can improve performance if you need to attach the observer to ground vehicles a lot, but do not need to attach to air vehicles. |
| `--scenarioFile` *filename* | Specifies a scenario to load. |
| `--sharedSettingsDirectory` *directory* | Specifies the directory where shared settings are stored. The default directory is *$(APP_DIR)/settings*. If the **--useUserSettingsDirectory** flag is set, then the user settings directory is used to store the settings instead. |
| `--stealth` | Start the VR-Forcesfront-end with only 3D modes available. |
| `--stencilBits` *bits* | Sets the number of stencil bits (0 or 8). Default: 0. |

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (*terrain_MTF_file* \| *scene_MSF_file*)<br>*terrain_MTF_file* | Specifies a terrain (MTF) or scene (MSF) file to load. The path must be a relative path (from *./bin64*) to the file, for example, *../userData/terrains/MTF_file*. |
| --useFileCommChannel *channel* | The communication file to be used as a base for communicating text based commands from external applications. |
| --useUserSettingsDirectory | Indicates that the system should store settings in the user login settings directory, rather than the application settings directory. Used in conjunction with **--sharedSettingsDirectory**. |
| --userDataDir *directory* | Specifies the :user data directory. |
| --userScenarioDirectory *directory* | Specifies the :user scenario directory. |
| --userTerrainDirectory | Specifies the user terrain directory. |
| (-v \| --version) | Display version information and exit. |
| (-Z \| --ignoreZoomForSpeedtreeLod) | Disable zoom for SpeedTree LOD. |
| HLA Only | These options are available if you specify --hla13,<br>--hla1516, or --hla1516e. |
| (-a \| --appNumber) *number* | Application number. |
| (-f \| --fomMapperLib) *libname* | FOM Mapper library name. |
| (-F \| --fedFileName) *fedfile_name* | FED file name. |
| --fileTransporterReceivePort *port* | Port for the file transporter. This is the port used to receive order of battle and plan files. |
| --fomMapperInitData *data* | FOM Mapper initialization data. |
| --fomModules *module* | Specifies an HLA Evolved FOM module. Can be used multiple times. |
| (-H \| --hostAddressString) *address* | Specifies the host address. This is usually the same as the device address. |
| (-i \| --sessionId) *ID* | Specifies the session ID for this instance of the front-end. |
| --ignoreAdvisories | Enables or disables HLA advisory messages. Default: true. |

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--localSettingsDesignator` *designator* | Specifies a string that is passed to the RTI during federate connect when using HLA Evolved. It is usually used to provide additional RTI configuration, but every RTI uses it differently. Please consult your RTI documentation for proper usage. |
| (`-N` \| `--federateName`) *federate_name* | Specifies a unique name that can be assigned to the federate. No two federates within the same federation can have the same name. If no name is specified, the RTI will automatically assign a unique name for the federate. Default: VR-Forces. (HLA Evolved only) |
| (`-p` \| `--federateType`) *type* | Federate Type can be used to distinguish different categories of federates, and its only practical use is in save-and-restore. |
| `--fileTransporterReceivePort` *port* | Port for the file transporter. This is the port used to receive order of battle and plan files. |
| `--reportedHostAddressString` *address* | Specifies how VR-Forces reports its IP address to another VR-Forces application for the purpose of file transfers. It is only important when you have a GUI or remote controller on one side of a router and a simulation engine on the other, and there is some kind of network address translation occurring whereby they have to connect to one another using an IP address other than the one they recognize themselves at locally. |
| `--rprFomRevision` *revision_number* | RPR FOM revision for RPR FOM 2.0, draft 17. |
| `--rprFomVersion` *version_number* | RPR FOM version. (0.5, 0.7, 0.8, 1.0, 2.0006, 2.0014, 2.0017, or 2.0) |
| (`-s` \| `--siteId` *ID*) | Site ID. |
| `--useAbsoluteTimeStamps` | Enables use of absolute time stamps. Otherwise uses relative time stamps. |

! If you select **--useAbsoluteTimeStamps**, it is your responsibility to ensure that the time clocks of exercise participants are synchronized. If they are not synchronized,VR-Forces may not work properly.

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--useGeographicDdm` | Specifies use of geographic DDM if you are using the MAK RTI. Default: false. |
| (`-x` \| `--execName`) *exec_name* | Execution name. Default: MAK-RPR-2.0. |
| DIS Only | These options are available if you specify --dis. |
| (`-a` \| `--appNumber`) *number* | Application number. |
| (`-A` \| `--destAddrString`) *address* | Destination address. |
| `--appIdRange` *range* | The application ID range for VR-Forces back-ends. |
| `--defaultObjectTimeout` *timeout* | Specifies the timeout interval for objects. |
| `--deviceAddress` *address* | Specifies the address of the network card to use for UDP traffic. |
| `--disVersion` | The DIS version. Default: 7. |
| `--fileTransporterReceivePort` *port* | Port for the file transporter. This is the port used to receive order of battle and plan files. |
| (`-H` \| `--hostAddressString`) *address* | Specifies the host address. This is usually the same as the device address. |
| (`-i` \| `--sessionId`) *ID* | Specifies the session ID for this instance of the front-end. |
| `--mcastTtl` *time* | Specifies the multicast time-to-live. Default: -1. |
| `--multicastAddresses` *address1 ... addressn* | Specifies one or more multicast addresses. |
| (`-P` \| `--disPort`) *port* | DIS port. |
| `--recvBufferSize` *size* | Receive buffer size. |
| `--reportedHostAddressString` *address* | Specifies how VR-Forces reports its IP address to another VR-Forces application for the purpose of file transfers. It is only important when you have a GUI or remote controller on one side of a router and a simulation engine on the other, and there is some kind of network address translation occurring whereby they have to connect to one another using an IP address other than the one they recognize themselves at locally. |
| `--useAbsoluteTimeStamps` | Enables use of absolute time stamps. Otherwise uses relative time stamps. |

**Table 7. vrfGui command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| ! If you select **--useAbsoluteTimeStamps**, it is your responsibility to ensure that the time clocks of exercise participants are synchronized. If they are not synchronized,VR-Forces may not work properly. | |
| (-s \| --siteId *ID*) | Site ID. |
| --sendBufferSize *size* | Send buffer size. Default: -1. |
| --subnetMask *mask* | Specifies a subnet mask. |
| --useAsyncIO | Use asynchronous I/O. Default: False. |
| --useIpv6 | Use the IPV6 protocol, if available. |
| (-x \| --exerciseId) *ID* | Exercise ID. |

## 5.2. Command-Line Options for vrfSim

Table 8 describes the command-line options for vrfSim.

**Table 8. vrfSim command-line options**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (-- \| --ignore_rest) | Ignore all of the command-line options that are listed after this argument. This lets you quickly limit the arguments applied if you want to edit a script or batch file without losing the original command line. |
| (-a \| --appNumber) *application_number* | Specifies the application number. For details, see "5.4.1 Specifying the Site ID and Application Number" on page 177. |
| --additionalSystemScriptsDirectory *directory* | Specifies a directory where VR-Forces will look for system scripts when it populates the Scripted Task dialog box script list. |
| --appIdRangeMax *max* | Specifies a range maximum to roll the application number to the next ID in the range. When the upper limit of the entity number is reached, the application number for the next object created will be increased and the entity number restarted at 0. If the application number range max is reached no more objects will be created on the back-end until some are deleted. |

**Table 8. vrfSim command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (-B \| --batchScenarioFileName) *batch_file* | Runs the specified batch file (for use with one back-end only). For more information, please see "Running in Batch Mode from the Command Line" on page 256. |
| (-c \| --frontEndPID) *PID* | The process ID for the front-end when running in combined mode. |
| --clockMode *mode* | For Windows only, specifies whether to use the performance counter or the system clock for absolute time stamping. This only applies when Use Absolute Time Stamps is enabled.<br>**0** - Performance counter (default), highly accurate internal timer<br>**1** - Continual synchronization with system clock |
| --countryCodesMappingFile *file_name* | Specifies an alternative file that maps country codes to country names and DIS enumeration values. |
| (-d \| --settingsFile) *file_name* | Specifies a configuration file to load instead of *vrfSimSettings.xml*. |
| --daemon | (Linux only) Starts the back-end as a daemon process . If you start *vrfSim* as a daemon, it does not try to read characters from the console. It forks a background process at startup. It will exit cleanly if it receives a SITGTERM, SIGQUIT, or SIGINT signal. |
| --dataDir *directory* | Specifies the data directory for the back-end. |
| --defaultObjectTimeout *timeout* | Specifies the timeout interval for objects. |
| --diGuyAnimationsFile *file_name* | Specifies an additional configuration file for DI-Guy animations. |
| --diGuyCharacterDataFile *file_name* | Specifies an additional configuration file for DI-Guy character data. |
| --disableParallelTick | Execute all tick code serially. |
| --doNotLoadVrfPlugins | Do not load any VR-Forces plug-ins from the *./plugins* directory. |

**Table 8. vrfSim command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--enableChannel` *channel* | Enables a specific channel for the channel-specific output, even if it is disabled in *channelSettings.mtl*. |
| `--exitOnTestResultCommand` | If a plan in the simulation includes the Test Result statement, and the sim was started with this command, then the simulation sends the message to all back-ends to close after the Test Result statement. For details, please see "37.7.9 Sending Test Results" on page 910. |
| `--fileNotifyLevel` *level* | Notify level in log file to use. |
| `--fullyLoadTerrain` | For paged terrains, load all pages. |
| (`-h` \| `--help`) | Displays help information in a console window. |
| `--hostAddressString` *address* | The IP address of the host computer. Called Device Address in the Launcher. |
| (`-i` \| `--sessionId`) *session_ID* | Specifies a session ID. For details, please see"4.1.3 Specifying a Session ID" on page 128. |
| (`-L` \| `--scenarioFileName`) "*scenario_pathname*" | Loads the specified scenario. The pathname can be absolute or relative from the *./bin* directory. Mutually exclusive with the `-T` option. For details, please see"7.4.2 Loading a Scenario from the Command Line" on page 234. |
| `--loadPlugin` *plugin_file* | Specifies one or more plug-ins to load. (Accepted multiple times.) |
| `--logFrameRateStatistics` | Specifies that the back-end should log frame rate statistics. |
| `--msdlSIDCMappingFile` *file_name* | Specifies an alternative file for mapping SIDC codes to DIS enumerations. |
| (`-n` \| `--notifyLevel`) *notification_level* | Sets the level for messages written to the console or the VR-Forces log file (*vrf.log*), where *notification_level* is a number from 0 through 4. The least verbose message level is 0, the highest is 4. The default is 2. For details, please see "5.4.3 Setting the Notification Level" on page 177. |
| `--nonVrfObjectsUUIDScheme` *scheme* | Sets the UUID scheme for non vrf objects. Values are `entity-identifier`, `global-identifier`, `marking-text`. |

**Table 8. vrfSim command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--numCallbackThreads` *threads* | Number of threads in the callback queue. |
| `--outputLogFile` *file_name* | The file to use to write out application output. |
| `(-q \| --doNotUseConsole)` | Specifies that all *vrfSim* output go to the log file rather than the console (quiet mode). If you are using a high level of notification, sending output to the console can degrade performance. Running in quiet mode prevents this degradation of performance. This command only applies to back-ends running on Windows. To create a log file on Linux, redirect the output of vrfSim, for example:<br>`vrfSim > mylog.txt`<br>For more details about log files, please see "4.9. The VR-Forces Log Files" on page 155. |
| `(-r \| --startInRunMode)` | Starts the back-end in run mode. If you start the back-end without specifying a scenario (with `-L`) or a terrain database (with `-T`), the back-end starts in pause mode. |
| `(-s \| --siteId)` *site_id* | Specifies the site ID. For details, please see "5.4.1 Specifying the Site ID and Application Number" on page 177. |
| `--setMainThreadToHighPriority` | Sets the VR-Forces main thread to high priority. When enabled, other threads may be starved if there are insufficient processors available. If running on hardware with limited processor time, this may decrease overall system performance. (Windows only) |
| `--sharedSettingsDirectory` *directory* | Specifies the directory where shared settings are stored. The default directory is *$(APP_DIR)/settings*. If the `--useUserSettingsDirectory` flag is set, this is also used to store the settings. If not, the application's configuration location (system-dependent) is used. |

**Table 8. vrfSim command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--simulationModelSet` *sms* | Specifies the simulation model set. It must be declared separately for front-end and back-end even in combined mode. |
| `--startMinimized` | Minimizes the vrfSim console at startup. |
| `--suppressDataAvailableException` | Do not throw an exception when dataAvailable is not checked in non-blocking terrain calls. |
| (`-T` \| `--terrainDatabase`) *terrain_database* | Specifies a terrain database to load in the back-end. Mutually exclusive with the `-L` option. For details, please see "3.2.5 Working with Multiple Back-ends" on page 112 and "4.5.1 Loading a Terrain Database at Startup" on page 140. |
| `--targetFrameRate` *rate* | Specifies the frame rate above which vrfSim will yield CPU time to other processes. |
| `--testOutputFilename` *filename* | The name of the file to which you want to log scenario autotest outputs. |
| `--tracyPort` *integer* | Allows you to specify a back-end port to profile with the Tracy Client. You can then profile a different back-end port than the default, and also profile back-ends separately from front-ends. Be sure to include the colon before the port number. The default port is **:10101**. |
| `--useAbsoluteTimeStamps` | Enables use of absolute time stamps. Otherwise uses relative time stamps. |

! If you select `--useAbsoluteTimeStamps`, it is your responsibility to ensure that the time clocks of exercise participants are synchronized. If they are not synchronized,VR-Forces may not work properly.

| | |
|---|---|
| `--userDataDir` *directory* | Specifies the user data directory for the back-end. |
| `--useUserSettingsDirectory` | Indicates that the system should store settings in the user login settings directory, rather than the application settings directory. Used in conjunction with `--sharedSettingsDirectory`. |
| (`-v` \| `--version`) *version* | Displays version information. |

**Table 8. vrfSim command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--waitQueue` | Turn off main thread participation in parallel algorithms. |
| **HLA Only** | |
| `--enableMetoc` | Enables the METOC weather publishers. (Applies only to HLA 1516 Evolved.) |
| (`-f` \| `--fomMapperLib`) *libname* | FOM Mapper library name. |
| (`-F` \| `--fedFileName`) *fedfile_name* | FED file name. |
| `--fomMapperInitData` *data* | FOM Mapper initialization data. |
| `--fomModules` *module* | Specifies an HLA Evolved FOM module. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--ignoreAdvisories` | Enables or disables HLA advisory messages. Default: true. |
| `--mimModule` *HLAE_MIM* | Specifies an HLA Evolved MIM module. |
| (`-N` \| `--federateName`) *federate_name* | Specifies a unique name that can be assigned to the federate. No two federates within the same federation can have the same name. If no name is specified, the RTI will automatically assign a unique name for the federate. Default: VR-Forces. (HLA Evolved only) |
| `--noRtiCompilerCheck` | Disable RTI Compiler version check. |
| (`-p` \| `--federateType`) *type* | Federate Type can be used to distinguish different categories of federates, and its only practical use is in save-and-restore. |
| `--rprFomRevision` *revision_number* | RPR FOM revision for RPR FOM 2.0, draft 17. |
| `--rprFomVersion` *version_number* | RPR FOM version. (0.5, 0.7, 0.8, 1.0, 2.0006, 2.0014, 2.0017, or 2.0) |
| (`-S` \| `--localSettingsDesignator`) *designator* | Specifies a string that is passed to the RTI during federate connect when using HLA Evolved. It is usually used to provide additional RTI configuration, but every RTI uses it differently. Please consult your RTI documentation for proper usage. |
| `--timeManagement` | Enables time management for the back-end. |
| (`-x` \| `--execName`) *exec_name* | Execution name. Default: VR-Link. |
| **DIS Only** | |
| (`-A` \| `--destAddrString`) *address* | Destination address. |

**Table 8. vrfSim command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--appDataDir` *directory* | Specifies the location of the appData directory. |
| `--appIdRange` *lower-upper* | Specifies a range of application IDs that represent objects generated by VR-Forces. |
| `--attributePduStrategy` | This flag controls how VR-Forces sends DIS attribute PDUs. For the GUI to control VR-Forces Entities, the Simulation Engine must supply additional attributes through DIS. Some applications cannot correctly interpret coupled attribute PDUs in some DIS versions. In those cases, changing the default behavior may be required.The possible values are:<br>• 0: DtAttributePduStrategy_ Unspecified<br>• 1: DtAttributePduStrategy_ NoAttributePdu<br>• 2: DtAttributePduStrategy_Couple<br>• 3: DtAttributePduStrategy_ DoNotCouple<br>• 4: DtAttributePduStrategy_ DoNotCoupleAndSendAttributeFirst<br>The default is 0, which means that VR-Forces chooses based on the selected version of DIS. For DIS 6 and lower, it uses 3, and for DIS 7 it uses 2.<br>Mode 1 will not send any additional attributes, so VRF GUI will not recognize the published entities as VRF entities and will not be able to control them. |
| `--deviceAddress` *address* | Specifies the address of the network card to use for UDP traffic. |
| `--disVersion` | The DIS version. Default: 7. |
| `--mcastTtl` | Specifies the multicast time-to-live. Default: -1. |
| `(-S \| --multicastAddresses)` *address1 ... addressn* | Specifies one or more multicast addresses. |

**Table 8. vrfSim command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (-P \| --disPort) *port* | DIS port.<br>If you specify a DIS port that is less than 3000 or greater than 4000, discovered objects might not be seen as VR-Forces objects. If you want to use a DIS port outside this range, specify it for the front-end and back-end with the --appIdRange command-line argument. |
| --recvBufferSize *size* | Receive buffer size. |
| --sendBufferSize *size* | Send buffer size. Default: -1. |
| --subnetMask *mask* | Specifies the subnet mask. VR-Forces can usually figure out the subnet mask from the IP address. However, if it does not do this correctly, you can explicitly specify the subnet mask. |
| --suppressSelfReflect | Represses self reflection of the DIS exercise connection. |
| --useAsyncIO | Use asynchronous I/O. Default: False. |
| --useIpv6 | Specifies that the DIS exercise connection use IPV6. |
| (-x \| --exerciseId) *ID* | Exercise ID. |

## 5.3. Command-Line Options for vrfLauncher

Table 9 describes the command-line options for vrfLauncher.

**Table 9. vrfLauncher command-line options**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (-B \| --backend) | Start vrfLauncher for the back-end only. |
| (-C \| --config) | Open the Simulation Connections Configuration tool. |
| (-F \| --frontend) | Start vrfLauncher for the front-end only. |
| (-G \| --locale) *locale* | Specifies the language to use. |
| --guiArgs | Arguments after **--guiArgs** are passed only to the front-end. |
| (-h \| --help) | Displays help information in a console window. |

**Table 9. vrfLauncher command-line options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (-R \| --makRadio) | Launches the standalone MAK Radio application. For more information, see "Chapter 51. MAK Radio" on page 1073. |
| --simArgs | Arguments after **--simArgs** are passed only to the back-end. |
| --usePredefinedConnection *connection* | Specify an already defined connection name, such as DIS localhost, so that the vrfLauncher can launch without needing to display the Simulation Connections dialog box. |
| (-v \| --version) | Displays version information. |
| -- | Pass all arguments after this to vrfGui and vrfSim, except as modified by **F--** or **B--**. |
| **Special Commands for Arguments that Come After --** | |
| F-- | Arguments after **F--** are passed only to the front-end. |
| B-- | Arguments after **B--** are passed only to the back-end. |
| -debug | (Windows only) Appends a "d" to vrfGui or vrfSim to run the debug version. Can only be used following **B--** or **F--**. |

The use of the **--** command line option is the opposite of how it is used for other MAK applications.

### 5.3.1 Running in Combined Mode from the Command Line

If you want to run VR-Forces in combined mode from the command line, there are no command-line arguments for vrfGui or vrfSim to support this. However, you can run vrfLauncher with the `--usePredefinedConnection` argument and VR-Forces will load the specified connection without displaying the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box. This has the effect of running directly in combined mode from the command line. For example, suppose you want to start in combined mode using the DIS (7) connection. The command would be:

```
vrfLauncher --usePredefinedConnection "DIS (7)"
```

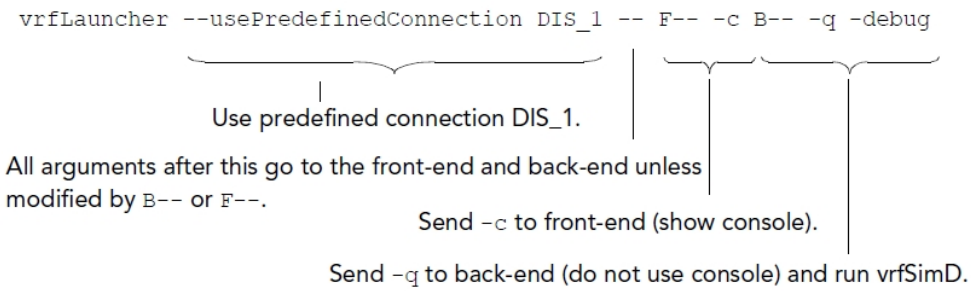
If a predefined connection has spaces in the name, you must surround the name with quotes. You must launch a predefined connection from the Launcher at least once so that VR-Forces can save the network address information it needs to start up.

### 5.3.2 Using the -- Command-line Argument

The -- command-line argument is used to send additional command-line arguments to the front-end and back-end. This is the opposite of how this argument is used in other MAK applications.

It has some special sub-arguments that allow you to direct some arguments only to the front-end or back-end. It also has an argument that lets you run vrfGui or vrfSim in debug mode. Figure 35 illustrates how these arguments are used.

**Figure 35. Using the -- command-line argument**




## 5.4. Protocol-Independent Command-line Options

This section describes in greater detail some of the most commonly used command-line options that you can use with both DIS and HLA.

### 5.4.1 Specifying the Site ID and Application Number

Each front-end and back-end must have a unique site ID:application number pair. To specify the site ID, use the **-s** option. To specify the application number, use the **-a** option, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 2 -a 3005
```

The default application number for vrfGui is 3101; for vrfSim it is 3001.

### 5.4.2 Specifying the Language to Use in the GUI

VR-Forces decides which translation files to use based on the language setting for your computer. However, you can override the language setting with the `-G` command-line option, for example, the following command sets the language to German:

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3000 -G de --dis
```

If you use this command-line option, you must have a file named *vrf_language_code* (for example, *vrf_de*) in the *./translations* directory. For more information, please see "2.5. Localizing the Graphical User Interface" on page 101.

### 5.4.3 Setting the Notification Level

You can control the types of messages sent to the console (and log file on a PC) by specifying a notification level.

➤ To specify a notification level, use the `-n` option, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 -n 1
```

The notification levels you can specify are:

- 0 – Only fatal messages are printed.
- 1 – Warning messages and fatal messages are printed.
- 2 – Some diagnostic information is printed with warnings and fatal messages.
- 3 – Verbose information is printed.
- 4 – Debug information is printed.

The default notification level is 2.

---

The Linux version of VR-Forces does not have a log file. Informational messages are sent to the window from which you start VR-Forces. To capture informational messages, redirect output to a file.

---

### 5.4.4 Loading Plug-ins

You can load plug-ins from the command line or by specifying them in a configuration file. (For details about creating a configuration file, please see "4.8. Managing Plug-ins" on page 149.)

➤ To load a plug-in from the command line, use the `--loadPlugin` command-line option, for example:

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3000 --loadPlugin pluginA
  --loadPlugin pluginB --dis
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 --loadPlugin pluginA
  --loadPlugin pluginB
```

---

Do not specify the extension of the plug-in (for example, *.dll*). If the extension is included, the plug-in will not load.

---

VR-Forces can display a list of the plug-ins that are loaded. For details, please see "4.8.7 Viewing a List of Loaded Plug-ins" on page 154.

## 5.5. Command-Line Options for HLA Federations

VR-Forces listens to whatever port is specified in the RID file. For information about the RID file, consult your RTI documentation.

### 5.5.1 Specifying the Federation Execution

By default, VR-Forces uses the *MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed* file and the MAK-RPR-2.0 federation execution.

➤ To specify the HLA federation execution name, use the **-x** option, for example:

```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3001 -x MAK-RPR-2.0
  --rprFomVersion 2.0 -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
```

---

**!** If you are using the MAK RTI and are running multiple, concurrent federation executions, you must run the rtiexec. In other words, you cannot use the MAK RTI in lightweight mode if you are running multiple federations. Please see the MAK RTI documentation for details about how to configure it to use the rtiexec.

---

### 5.5.2 Specifying the FED File

In combined mode, specifying `-F` in the command line also applies to the back-end. If you are running a back-end independently and want to specify a FED file name, you must use `-F`.

➤ To specify a FED file at startup, use the `-F` option.

### 5.5.3 Specifying the RPR FOM Version

VR-Forces has built-in support for the RPR FOM. The default version is 2.0.

You can specify a different RPR FOM version (0.5, 0.7, 0.8, 1.0, 2.0006, 2.0014, 2.0017, or 2.0). If you specify a different FOM version, you must also specify the correct FED file (with `-F`).

```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3001 --rprFomVersion 2.0
  -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
```

---

**i** Please see VR-Forces Release Notes for a list of the RPR FOM versions supported by your version of VR-Forces.

---

### 5.5.4 Specifying a FOM Mapper

VR-Forces supports alternative FOMs through the VR-Link FOM Mapper. You can specify which FOM Mapper to use with the `-f` command-line option:

```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3001 -x MAK-RPR-2.0
  --rprFomVersion 2.0 -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
  -f myFomMapper
```

### 5.5.5 Specifying the RPR FOM Revision

MAK revises FED files when it discovers errors in how it has previously handled various aspects of the HLA standard. It maintains multiple revisions to ensure compatibility with applications that depend on previous revisions.

➤ To specify the RPR FOM revision, use the `--rprFomRevision` *`revision`* command-line option, for example:

```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3001 --rprFomVersion 2.0017
  -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed --rprFomRevision 2
```

### 5.5.6 Specifying FOM Mapper Initialization Data

Some FOM Mappers require initialization data. If you specify a FOM Mapper that requires such data, specify the data with the `--fomMapperInitData` option:

```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3001 -x MAK-RPR-2.0
  --rprFomVersion 2.0 -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
  -f myFomMapper --fomMapperInitData ABC
```

The string "ABC" is passed to the FOM Mapper creation function in the shared library as an initialization parameter.

### 5.5.7 Specifying a FED File That Is Appropriate for the FOM Mapper

The `-f` option only tells the application which FOM Mapper to use. It does not ensure that you are using the right FED file for the FOM Mapper. Make sure that you are using a FED file that is consistent with the FOM Mapper you have chosen.

You can specify a FED file using the `-F` option.

The following example instructs the application to use the RPR FOM 2.0, version 17 FOM mapping code, in the federation execution MAK-RPR20017-1-1, with the *MAK-RPR20017-1-1.fed* file:

```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3001 --rprFomVersion 2.0017
  -x MAK-RPR20017-1-1 -F MAK-RPR20017-1-1.fed
```

### 5.5.8 Enabling Time Management

You can enable time management for the back-end from the command line, as follows:

```
vrfSimHLA13 -s 1 -a 3001 --timeManagement
  -F MAK-RPR1-TimeManagement-1-1.fed
  -x MAK-RPR1-TimeManagement-1-1
```

## 5.6. Command-Line Options for DIS Exercises

This section describes command-line options that apply only to using VR-Forces with DIS exercises.

### 5.6.1 Specifying the Port Number

By default, VR-Forces listens to port 3000.

If you specify a DIS port that is less than 3000 or greater than 4000, discovered objects might not be seen as VR-Forces objects. If you want to use a DIS port outside this range, specify it for the front-end and back-end with the `--appIdRange` command-line argument.

➤ To change the port that VR-Forces listens to, use the `-P` option, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 -P 3500
```

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3000 --dis -P 3500
```

### 5.6.2 Specifying Point-to-Point or Multicast Operation

You can specify that VR-Forces run in point-to-point mode or multicast.

➤ To specify point-to-point, use the `-A` option, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 -A 123.123.12.1
```

➤ To specify multicast, use the `-S` option, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 -S 233.233.22.3
```

You can specify more than one multicast address, as follows:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 -S address -S address ...
```

---

The default is broadcast mode.

---

### 5.6.3 Specifying the Multicast Time-to-Live

The multicast time-to-live specifies the number of routers that a message can pass through when PDUs are sent to multicast addresses.

➤ To specify the multicast time-to-live value, use the `--mcastTtl` option, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 -S address -S address --mcastTtl 3
```

### 5.6.4 Using Asynchronous I/O

If you want to use asynchronous I/O for DIS exercises, start VR-Forces with the `--useAsyncIO` option. Using asynchronous I/O can help prevent dropped packets and the resulting loss of information. There is no comparable command-line option for HLA. To use asynchronous I/O in HLA, you set a RID file parameter.

### 5.6.5 Specifying the Exercise ID

➤ To set the VR-Forces exercise ID, use the `-x` option, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 -x 6
```

### 5.6.6 Specifying the DIS Version

➤ To specify the DIS version, use the `--disVersion` command-line options, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 --disVersion 6
```

Please see VR-Forces Release Notes for a list of supported versions.

# 6. Optimizing Performance


6.1. Introduction ..... 185
6.1.1 Optimizing Simulation Engine Performance ..... 185
6.1.2 Optimizing Front-End Performance ..... 185
6.2. Monitoring the Back-end Frame Rate ..... 187
6.3. Monitoring Script Frame Rates ..... 187
6.4. Displaying Performance Statistics ..... 188
6.4.1 Displaying VR-Forces Performance Statistics and Function Profiler 190
6.4.2 Displaying OSG Statistics ..... 191
6.4.3 Using the Tracy Client ..... 191
6.5. Filtering Simulation Objects Using Interest Management ..... 191
6.5.1 Enabling Interest Management ..... 192
6.5.2 Configuring Interest Management ..... 192
6.6. Clearing the Model Instancing Cache ..... 193
6.7. Miscellaneous Performance Configuration Options ..... 194
6.7.1 Limiting Use of Spot Reports ..... 194
6.7.2 Using Asynchronous I/O for DIS Exercises ..... 194
6.7.3 Using Incremental Compiling with Streamed Data ..... 195
6.8. Setting the Tick Rate ..... 195
6.8.1 Specifying the Tick Rate for Components ..... 196
6.8.2 Tuning the Network Interface ..... 196
6.8.3 Tuning the State Repository Tick Rate ..... 196
6.9. Configuring Graphics Quality ..... 196
6.9.1 Alpha to Coverage ..... 196
6.10. Balancing Visual Quality Against Network Performance ..... 198
6.10.1 Enabling Configuration of Performance Settings ..... 199
6.11. Trajectory Smoothing ..... 199
6.11.1 Configuring Trajectory Smoothing ..... 200
6.11.2 Configuring Articulated Part Smoothing ..... 201

6.12. Tuning the Target Frame Rate ..... 201
6.13. Coloring Draw Calls ..... 201
6.14. Configuring VSync ..... 202
6.14.1 Managing 3D Settings and Multiscreen Performance ..... 203
6.15. Preloading Models ..... 203
6.15.1 Command-Line Options for Preloading Models ..... 204
6.16. DI-Guy Performance Settings ..... 205
6.17. Using the Developer Debug Overlay ..... 206
6.18. Linux CentOS 8 Memory Issue ..... 207

# 6.1. Introduction

VR-Forces's overall performance varies based on the following factors:

- Size of the terrain database.
- Amount of memory available on your computer.
- Computer speed and processing power.
- The number of objects (simulation objects and tactical graphics) in the scenario and how active the simulation objects are.
- The number of objects you try to simulate on a given back-end.
- The frequency of the tick rate.
- The number of front-ends and back-ends you run on your computer.

## 6.1.1 Optimizing Simulation Engine Performance

VR-Forces supports the following methods for optimizing the performance of the simulation engine:

- Adjusting the refresh rates. (For details, please see "6.10. Balancing Visual Quality Against Network Performance" on page 198.)
- Turning off processor-intensive features. (For details, please see "6.7. Miscellaneous Performance Configuration Options" on page 194.)
- Specifying the tick rate for a simulation object or component. (For details, please see "6.8. Setting the Tick Rate" on page 195.)
- Specifying a tick rate for the network interface. (For details, please see "6.8.2 Tuning the Network Interface" on page 196.)
- Specifying the VR-Forces sleep time. (For details, please see "42.1. Displaying Remote Graphics" on page 968.)
- Optimizing the terrain. (For details, please see various chapters in the "Section XI. Terrain" on page 1159, particularly "Chapter 56. Introduction to Terrain Usage in VR-Forces" on page 1161 and Chapter 11, *Terrain Performance and Configuration*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)
- Using interest management. (For details, please see"6.5. Filtering Simulation Objects Using Interest Management" on page 191.)

## 6.1.2 Optimizing Front-End Performance

The performance of the front-end depends on:

- Processor speed.
- Video card. (Always use the latest drivers for your video card.)
- Available memory.
- Size of the terrain database.

- The number and complexity of models loaded and how well they have been optimized for performance. For information about optimizing models, please see Section 18.13, *"Best Practices for Creating Models"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- Number of objects in the simulation and how active they are.
- Use of model instancing.

You can display statistics to help you evaluate VR-Forces's performance. For details, please see "6.4. Displaying Performance Statistics" on page 188.

The following display features can affect performance:

- Displaying performance statistics.
- Use of ground clamping.
- Displaying track histories.
- Displaying height-above-terrain lines.
- Displaying radio communications lines.
- Enabling advanced lighting and various lighting effects.
- Enabling dynamic ocean effects. When you are using Plan View observer mode, enabling wakes, spray effects, and the buoyancy model can seriously degrade performance. These features are disabled by default. If you inadvertently enable them and experience this problem, switching to Stealth mode and back to Plan View mode restores performance.
- Sound effects. Disabling sound effects can improve performance.
- You can configure anti-aliasing settings to improve performance. For details, please see "6.9. Configuring Graphics Quality" on page 196.

In addition to the sections in this chapter and in Chapter 11, *Terrain Performance and Configuration*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*, the following sections describe options for optimizing front-end performance:

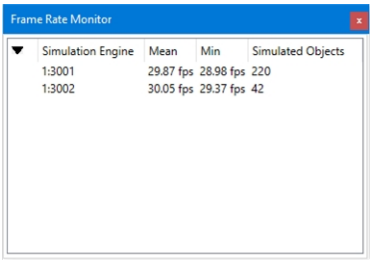
- Section 18.12, *"Configuring SpeedTree Trees"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- "6.6. Clearing the Model Instancing Cache" on page 193.
- "76.4.1 Setting the Clipping Planes" on page 1531.
- Section 1.1.1, *"Considerations and Limitations for Building Terrains"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- "6.5. Filtering Simulation Objects Using Interest Management" on page 191.
- Section 1.7, *"Setting the Ocean LOD Elevation"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- Section 1.6, *"Configuring the Ocean Height Map"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- "46.2. Displaying Wakes and Spray Effects" on page 1039.

- "45.7. Configuring the Skybox Cube Map" on page 1024.
- "54.1.9 Improving Performance when Attaching to Ground Objects" on page 1135.
- "46.3. Enabling Buoyancy for Surface Entities" on page 1040.
- "Chapter 45. Lighting Effects" on page 1013.

## 6.2. Monitoring the Back-end Frame Rate

You can monitor frame rate statistics for each back-end in your session. The Frame Rate Monitor Panel lists statistics for each back-end (Figure 36). Use the arrow on the left to determine what is included in the monitor.

**Figure 36. Frame Rate Monitor**

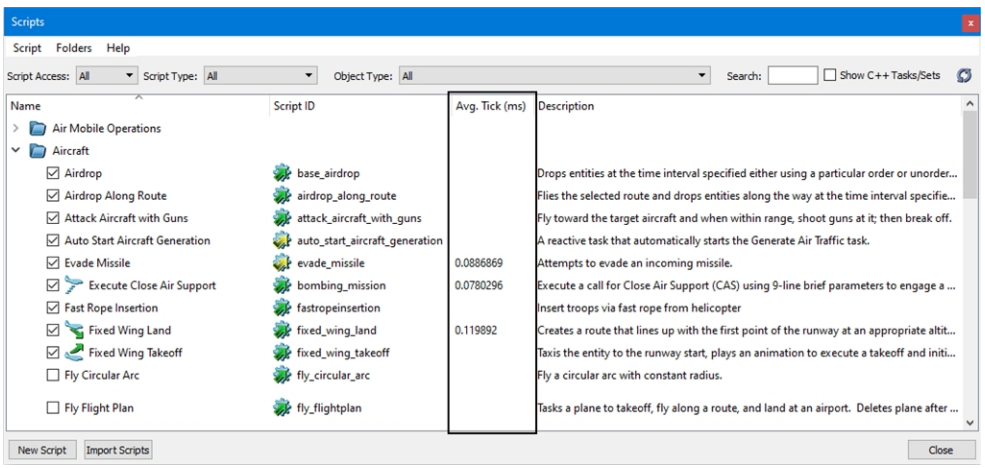



➤ To view the Frame Rate Monitor Panel, choose **View > Frame Rate Monitor Panel**.

## 6.3. Monitoring Script Frame Rates

VR-Forces can display the average time per tick for scripted tasks and other scripts. When this is enabled, the Scripts window shows the frame rate for all active scripts (Figure 37).

**Figure 37. Script frame rate**

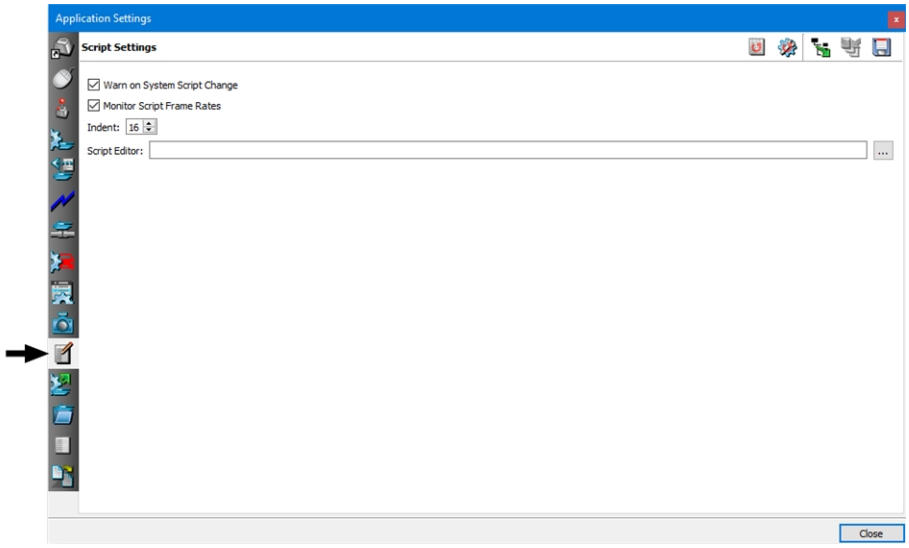



For information about scripts and the scripts window, please see "Chapter 31. Creating Scripted Tasks and Sets" on page 713

➤ **To display the frame rate for scripts:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Script Settings page (Figure 38).

**Figure 38. Script Settings page**




3. Select Monitor Script Frame Rates.
4. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens. A column called Avg Tick is added. It displays the tick rate for active scripts.

---

You can also open the Script Settings page from the Scripts menu in the Scripts dialog box.

---

## 6.4. Displaying Performance Statistics

VR-Forces can display two kinds of performance statistics — OSG statistics (Figure 39), and VR-Forces statistics (Figure 40). VR-Forces also has a function profiler that developers can use to assess the performance of new code.

**Figure 39. OSG performance statistics**

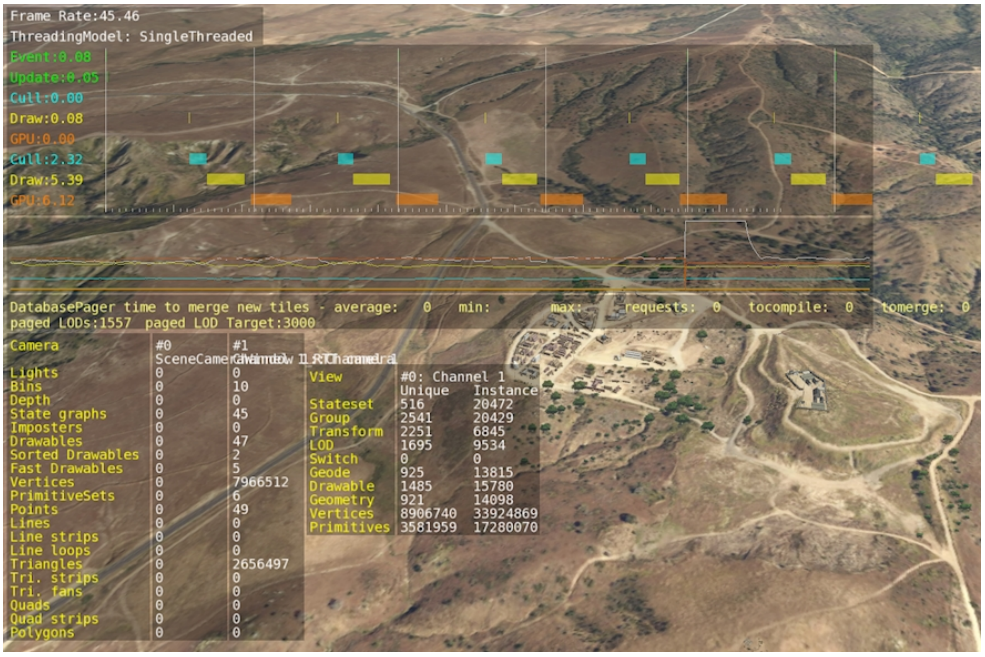
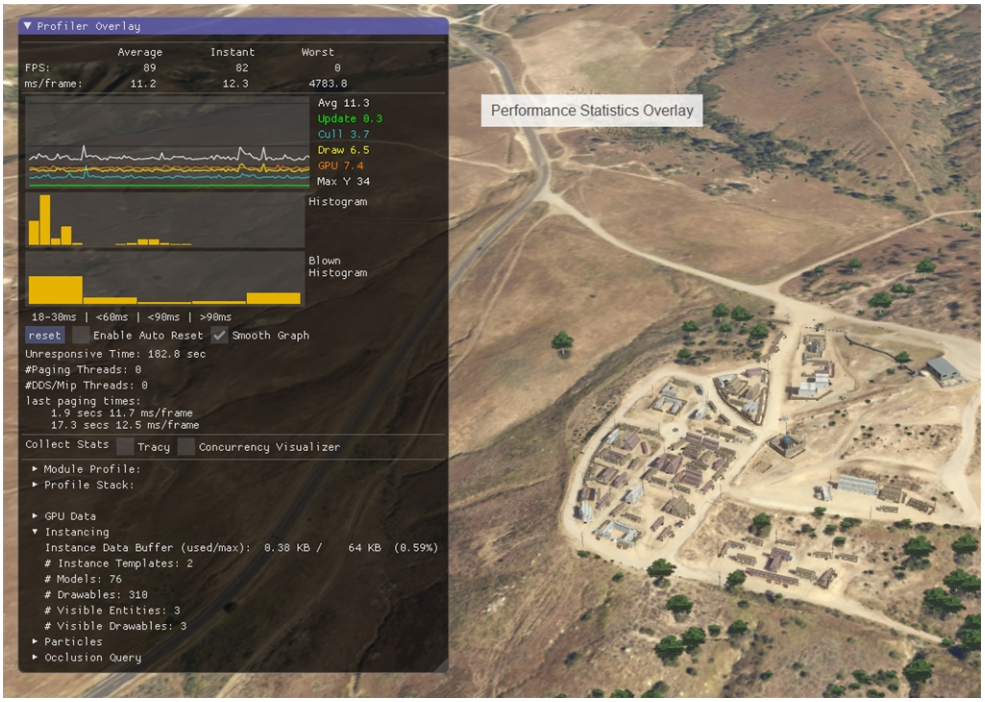



**Figure 40. VR-Forces performance statistics and function profiler**




Displaying performance statistics can affect performance. Displaying OSG statistics may affect performance more than VR-Forces statistics.

### 6.4.1 Displaying VR-Forces Performance Statistics and Function Profiler

The VR-Forces Performance Statistics s information about the scene, while the Function Profiler is primarily for the use of developers who are debugging VR-Forces applications. For information about how to integrate the profiler into your code, please see Chapter 11, Using the Function Profiler, in *VR-Forces Developers Guide*.

---

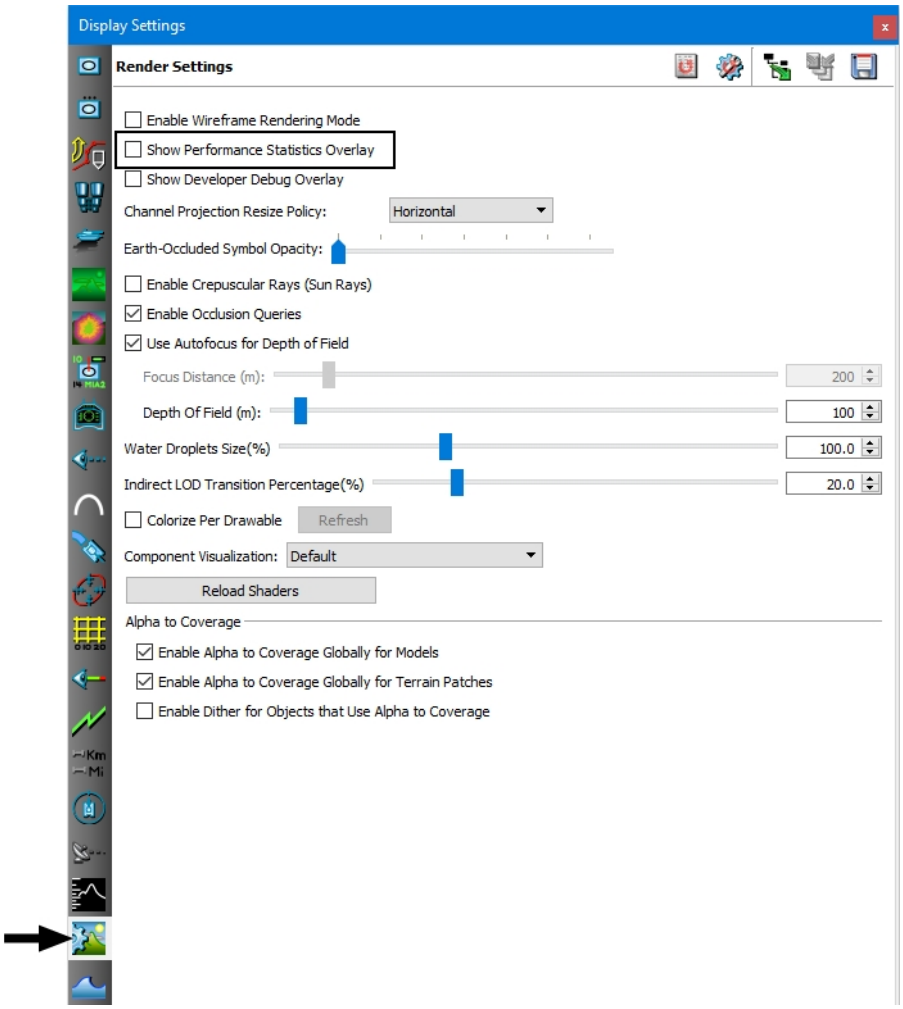
For information about another debugging utility, please see "6.17. Using the Developer Debug Overlay" on page 206.

---

➤ **To display VR-Forces performance statistics:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 41).

**Figure 41. Render Settings page**



3. Select the Performance Statistics Overlay check box. A statistics display is added to the window (Figure 40 on page 189).

### 6.4.2 Displaying OSG Statistics

If you display OSG statistics and VR-Forces statistics at the same time, they overlay each other.

➤ **To display OSG performance statistics:**

1. Press **F2**. The frame rate displays.
2. Continue pressing **F2**. Additional statistics display. When all statistics are displayed, pressing **F2** closes the statistics displays.

### 6.4.3 Using the Tracy Client

VR-Forces includes the Tracy Client, which you can use to evaluate performance or save a file to send to support@mak.com to help debug performance issues. To learn more about using the Tracy Client, you can read the documentation at *https://bitbucket.org/wolfpld/tracy/downloads*.

➤ **To run the Tracy Client and save a file:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. Display Settings dialog box opens. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 41 on the previous page).
2. Select the Show Performance Statistics Overlay check box. A statistics display is added to the window (Figure 40 on page 189).
3. Next to Collect Stats, select the Tracy check box.
4. To run Tracy Client:
   - On Windows, from the Start menu, choose **MAK Technologies > Tracy Client**.
   - On Linux, run *../bin64/Tracy-release*.
5. Verify the client address and then click Connect. The Tracy Client displays the information from VR-Forces.
6. To save the file, click Connection ( ). The Connection dialog opens.
7. Click Save Trace.
8. Save the file.

## 6.5. Filtering Simulation Objects Using Interest Management

VR-Forces can use interest management to improve front-endits performance in simulations that have high simulation object counts. Interest management is an implementation of HLA data distribution management (DDM). When interest management is enabled, VR-Forces filters out all simulation objects that are more than a specified distance from the observer.

### 6.5.1 Enabling Interest Management

To use interest management:

- You must use HLA (DIS does not support interest management).
- If you are using the MAK RTI, you must use MAK RTI 3.4a or later.
- You must configure your RTI to support DDM. (If you are using the MAK RTI, you can configure your system to use *ddm-rid.mtl*, which has DDM enabled.)
- When you connect to an exercise, you must enable DDM in the connection settings.

➤ To enable interest management, start vrfGui from the command line and include the **--useGeographicDdm** command line option with the HLA configuration commands, for example:

```
vrfGui -s 1 -a 3004 --hla -x MAK-RPR-2.0
  --rprFomVersion 2.0 -F MAK-RPR2-1-1.fed
  --useGeographicDdm
```

### 6.5.2 Configuring Interest Management

Interest management works by filtering out all simulation objects beyond a specified distance from the observer. You can configure this distance (DDM region size) and you can configure the threshold for observer movement (region update threshold) before VR-Forces recalculates which simulation objects should be displayed.

VR-Forces uses a geographic DDM scheme. The earth is divided into two dimensional regions, with X pointing north and Y pointing east. When you specify a DDM region size, you specify the length of one side of a region.

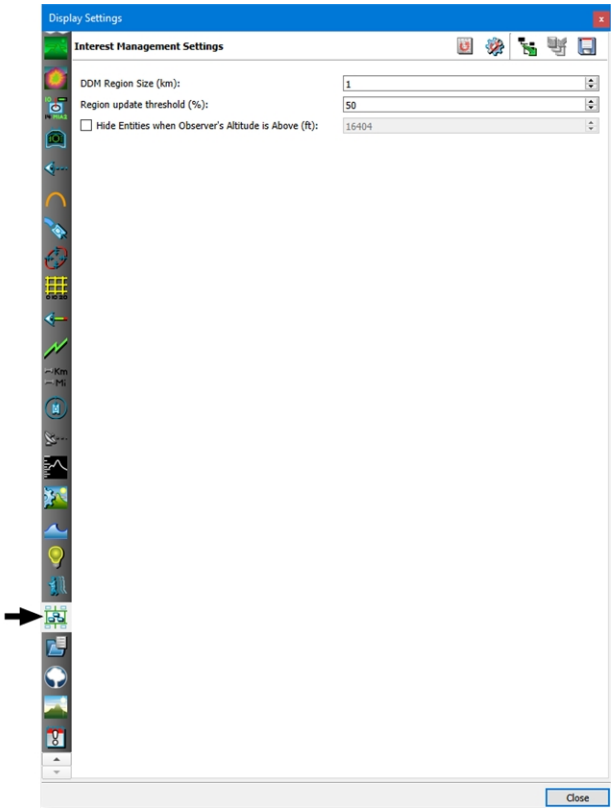
The region update threshold is a percentage of the distance from the center of the region to a side. When the observer moves beyond the threshold, the region is recalculated. For example, if the region size is 1000 meters, the distance from the center to a side is 500 meters. If the region update threshold is 50%, when the observer moves more than 250 meters from the center of the region, VR-Forces recalculates the display region.

DDM regions use a two-dimensional grid, so the altitude of the observer is not considered when filtering simulation objects. However, in 3D observer modes, you usually cannot see entity models once the observer is a certain distance above the terrain (although you can see labels). Therefore, you may want to filter out simulation objects based on the observer's altitude, thereby increasing performance.

➤ **To configure interest management:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Interest Management Settings page (Figure 42).

**Figure 42. Interest Management Settings page**




3. In the DDM Region Size box, type a value for the region size.
4. In the Region Update Threshold box, type a value, as a percentage, for the update threshold.
5. Optionally, filter simulation objects based on the observer's altitude, as follows:
    a. Select the Hide Entities When Observer's Altitude is Above check box.
    b. Specify the observer altitude at which to hide simulation objects.
6. Click OK.

## 6.6. Clearing the Model Instancing Cache

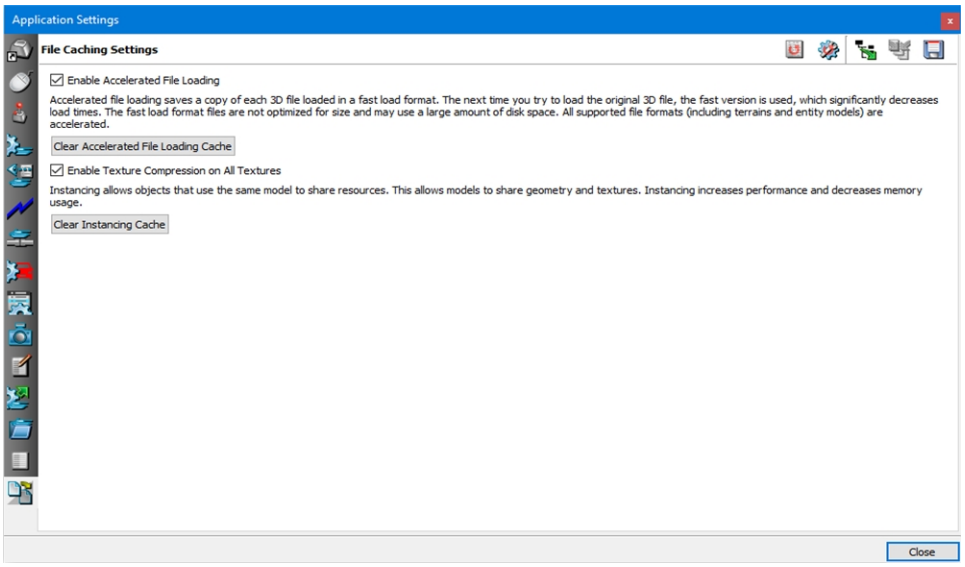
VR-Forces has a feature called model instancing that lets models share resources, such as geometry and textures. These shared resources are stored in a cache. Use of model instance caching decreases memory use and improves performance.

You can clear the model instancing cache if you need the disk space.

➤ **To clear the model instancing cache:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the File Caching Settings page (Figure 43).

**Figure 43. File Caching Settings page**




3. Click Clear Instancing Cache.

## 6.7. Miscellaneous Performance Configuration Options

You can improve front-end performance by limiting use of display features, as follows:

- Turn off track histories.
- Limit use of object transparency.
- Limit use of spot reports.
- In DIS, use asynchronous I/O.
- For streamed data, use incremental compiling.

### 6.7.1 Limiting Use of Spot Reports

Use of spot reports can degrade performance. You may want to limit the number of simulation objects for which they are generated or disable spot reports entirely. You can also specify that spot reports be sent only to the front-end. For details about using spot reports, please see “Displaying Spot Reports."

### 6.7.2 Using Asynchronous I/O for DIS Exercises

By its nature, DIS generates a lot of network traffic. Therefore, you may experience problems with dropped packets and simulation objects may time out. You can mitigate this problem by using asynchronous I/O. To use asynchronous I/O, start with the **--useAsyncIO** command line option or select Use Asynchronous I/O in the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box.

### 6.7.3 Using Incremental Compiling with Streamed Data

OSG option that allows the processing of streamed data to be spread across multiple frames, reducing performance spikes. To use it, create the environment variable OSG_ICO. (It does not need a value. It just needs to exist.)

---

Using OSG_ICO may cause LOD issues with other paged formats.

---

## 6.8. Setting the Tick Rate

VR-Forces lets you tune performance by varying the tick rate of components, state repositories, and network interfaces. By decreasing the frequency with which some simulation object components are ticked, you make more CPU time available to other simulation objects. For example you could decrease the tick rate for slow moving entities such as dismounted infantry or command posts, making more CPU available for entities such as aircraft or missiles.

Variable tick rates are determined by a minimum tick period and a minimum tick period variance. The minimum tick period parameter specifies the shortest period of time, in seconds, that can elapse between ticks of a simulation object's components. VR-Forces may tick the components less frequently (due to heavy CPU load), but it will never tick the entity's components more frequently than specified.

To reduce the frequency that a component can be ticked, increase the minimum tick period value. To increase the frequency that a component can be ticked, reduce the minimum tick period value.

The minimum tick period variance argument specifies an amount of variance allowed around the minimum tick period. Specifying a minimum tick period variance value helps prevent the spikes in CPU usage that would result if all components tried to tick at the same time. Calculation of the time to tick a component using minimum tick period variance is as follows (the example uses the entity component arguments):

If the current time is $t_o$ and the next scheduled tick is $t_{next}$ then:

$$t_{next} = t_0 + \text{min-tick-period} +/- \text{rand(min-tick-period-variance/2)}$$

If you insert some sample values (in seconds), you get:

$$t_{next} = .1 + .05 +/- \text{rand(.05/2)}$$

This means that the next tick will be no sooner than the current time plus .15 seconds plus or minus a random value between 0 and .0125 seconds.

---

If the next tick time calculated by this formula is less than the current tick time, it is set to the current tick time, which results in the component being ticked on the next tick.

---

### 6.8.1 Specifying the Tick Rate for Components

In the object parameter database, you can specify a **min-tick-period** and **min-tick-periodvariance** for each simulation object and for individual simulation object components. The component-level settings, if any, override the simulation object-level settings.

### 6.8.2 Tuning the Network Interface

You can tune the local and remote network interface subcomponents. Specify the **net-interface-min-tick-period** and **net-interface-min-tick-period-variance** parameters in the local and remote subcomponents blocks. If you reduce the rate at which the network interfaces are ticked, you can limit how often VR-Forces needs to do coordinate system conversion from network (geocentric) to database coordinates.

---

Reducing the frequency with which you tick network interface components could delay the discovery of objects in remote front-ends and back-ends.

---

### 6.8.3 Tuning the State Repository Tick Rate

You can tune the frequency with which state repositories get ticked. Specify the **state-repository-min-tick-period** and `state-repository-min-tick-period-variance` parameters in the local and remote subcomponents blocks. These parameters control how often VR-Forces recomputes the bounding volume of an object based on object geometry.

## 6.9. Configuring Graphics Quality

VR-Forces has command-line and display settings options that let you configure graphics quality. In particular, depending on the capabilities of your graphics card, you may need to adjust the default settings for anti-aliasing using **--antiAliasing** *level*. Anti-aliasing is a technique used to reduce the jagged edges of digital graphics. You can set the level to 0, 2, 4, 8, or 16. Default: 4.

On older graphics cards, you may need to set anti-aliasing to 0 to improve performance.

### 6.9.1 Alpha to Coverage

Alpha to coverage is a way of handling objects with transparency that improves rendering of objects that have a sharp transition between opaque and transparent. Grass, trees, and fences are a few examples of when alpha to coverage is a good option, as shown in Figure 44. In addition to improving visualization of some objects, there is a slight performance improvement when alpha to coverage is enabled.

**Figure 44. Alpha to coverage**

You can set alpha to coverage for models and terrains. For models, you can enable it globally or in specific model definitions. For terrains, you can enable it globally or for specific terrain patches.

By default, alpha to coverage is enabled globally for models and terrains.

If alpha to coverage is enabled, you can enable a dither shader that modifies the alpha with a noise pattern so that there are no hard edges between different alpha levels. The trade-off for this setting is that it adds a small amount of noise as the object or camera moves.

VR-Forces uses render bin 1 for the alpha to coverage render bin. You can change the render bin with the VRV_ALPHA_TO_COVERAGE_RENDERBIN environment variable. (Render bins are an OpenSceneGraph concept that affects the order in which scene objects are rendered. Do not set the render bin environment variable unless instructed to do so by a plug-in developer.)

### Enabling Alpha to Coverage for Models

You can enable alpha to coverage globally for models and you can specify it for specific models. When you enable alpha to coverage globally, it affects all models that do not have it specified specifically in their model definition.

To enable or disable alpha to coverage for a specific model, add the alphaToCoverageEnabled parameter to the model definition and set it to true or false. For information about editing model definitions, please see *"Editing a Model Definition,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To enable or disable alpha to coverage globally for models:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 41 on page 190).
3. Select or clear the Enable Alpha to Coverage Globally for Models check box.

### Enabling Alpha to Coverage for Terrains

You can enable alpha to coverage globally for terrains or for specific terrain patches. The global setting affects all terrain patches that do not have an alpha to coverage option specified in their MTF file.

You enable alpha to coverage for a terrain patch when you add it. For details, please see *"Adding Elevation Data (Terrain Patches) to a Terrain,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To enable or disable alpha to coverage globally for terrains:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 41 on page 190).
3. Select or clear the Enable Alpha to Coverage Globally for Terrain Patches check box.

### Enabling the Dither Shader for Alpha to Coverage

If alpha to coverage is enabled, you can enable a dither shader that modifies the alpha with a noise pattern so that there are no hard edges between different alpha levels. The trade-off for this setting is that it adds a small amount of noise as the object or camera moves.

➤ **To enable or disable the dither shader for alpha to coverage:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 41 on page 190).
3. Select or clear the Enable Dither for Objects that Use Alpha to Coverage check box.

## 6.10. Balancing Visual Quality Against Network Performance

VR-Forces allows you to tune performance by adjusting dead-reckoning thresholds. The primary benefit of this feature is to improve the appearance of entities in 3D visualization programs such as VR-Vantage Stealth and the VR-Forces Stealth observer mode. Reducing thresholds improves the accuracy of entity movement and reduces jumpy movement. However it does so at the expense of network performance, because a lower dead-reckoning threshold results in more packets being sent for each entity.

When you change thresholds at runtime, VR-Forces sends a message to all back-ends in the scenario to change their default thresholds for translation and rotation. The new thresholds remain in effect until the back-ends are closed. They apply to any scenario run during this time and they override thresholds set in *./appData/settings/vrfSim/vrfSimSettings.xml*. Changes to the default thresholds get saved in *vrfSimSettings.xml*.

If your exercise sends periodic updates, such as a DIS heartbeat, the thresholds evaluate changes since the most recent heartbeat.

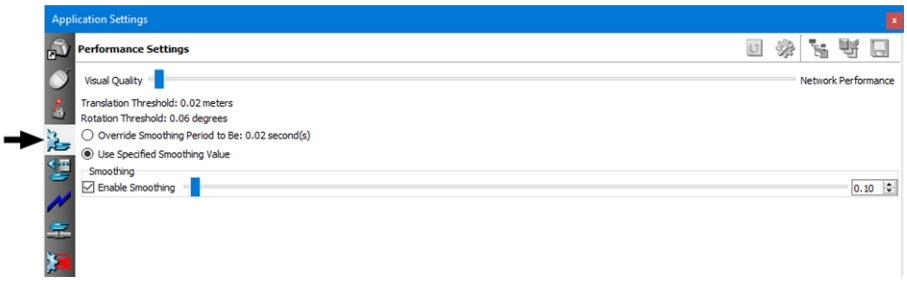
Changes made at runtime have no effect in the following cases:

1. If a back-end joins the scenario after the thresholds are sent. It uses the default VR-Link thresholds, or the values in the *vrfSimSettings.xml* file, if specified.
2. If an object was instantiated with a customized VR-Link `DtThresholder`.

➤ **To configure performance settings:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Performance Settings page (Figure 45).

**Figure 45. Performance Settings page**




3. Adjust the Visual Quality slider to your desired preference for visual quality versus network performance.
4. To have VR-Forces calculate the smoothing period, select Override Smoothing Period. To specify the smoothing period yourself, select Use Specified Smoothing Value and use the slider to set the smoothing period you want to use.

### 6.10.1 Enabling Configuration of Performance Settings

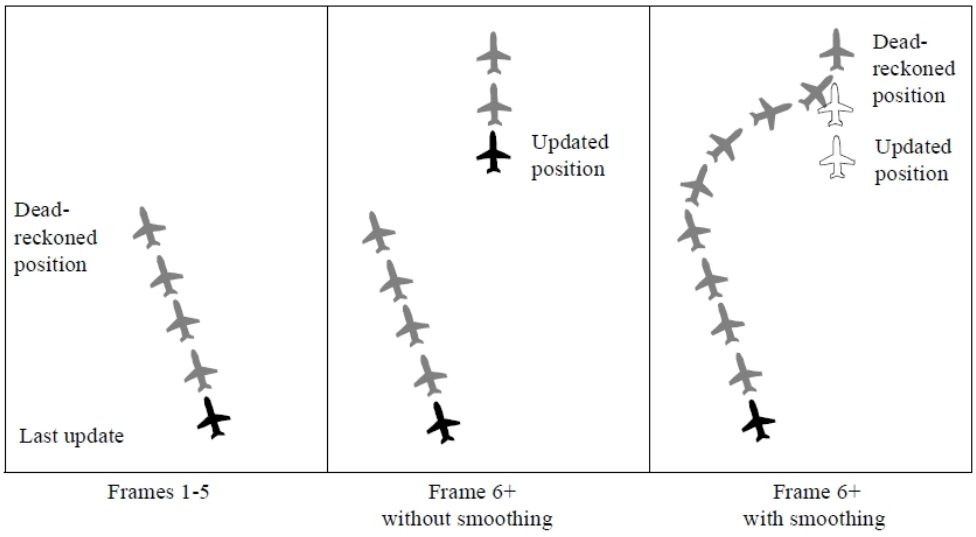
The **dr-allow-gui-overrides** configuration parameter, specified in each OPE file determines whether a given entity type can have its translation and rotation thresholds overridden by the value set by the Performance Settings page.

## 6.11. Trajectory Smoothing

From the time VR-Forces receives a state update message for a simulation object until it receives the next update, it calculates the location of the simulation object based on the heading and acceleration in the most recent state update. This process is called dead-reckoning. When the next state update arrives for the simulation object, VR-Forces moves it to the new position. If the actual position is significantly different from the dead-reckoned position, the simulation object could appear to jump from the dead-reckoned position to the actual position. VR-Forces can eliminate these discontinuities by smoothing trajectories and rotation paths.

Figure 46 illustrates dead-reckoning and smoothing.

**Figure 46. Dead-reckoning and smoothing**




The smooth period is the period of time over which smoothing takes place. The default period is 1/10 second. If course corrections appear abrupt with this setting, you may want to increase the smooth period.

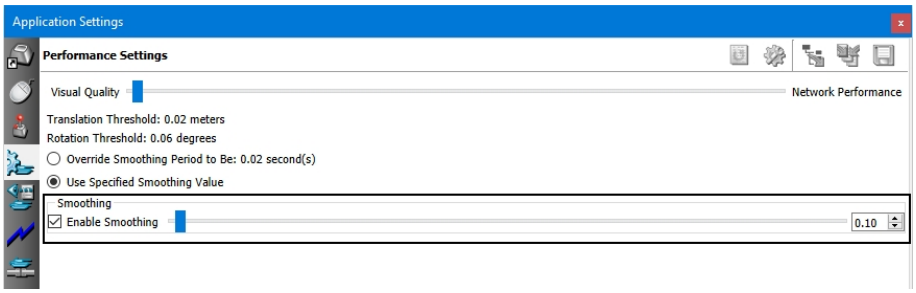
Smoothing makes fast-moving entities, such as fixed wing aircraft, look better. Slow moving entities, such as dismounted infantry, may look worse. If your simulation is mostly one or the other of these types of entities, enable or disable smoothing as appropriate for the best visualization experience.

## 6.11.1 Configuring Trajectory Smoothing

➤ **To configure trajectory smoothing:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Performance Options page (Figure 47).

**Figure 47. Smoothing settings**




3. Select the Use Specified Smoothing Value option. The Enable Smoothing check box becomes enabled.

4. To enable or disable smoothing, select or clear the Enable Smoothing check box.
5. To change the smooth period, adjust the Smoothing Period slider or type a value, in seconds, in the box.

### 6.11.2 Configuring Articulated Part Smoothing

Articulated parts are also dead-reckoned if velocities are provided for their values. This dead-reckoning can be smoothed in a manner similar to trajectory smoothing.

➤ **To configure articulated part smoothing:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page.
3. To enable or disable articulated part smoothing, select or clear the Enable Articulated Part Smoothing check box.
4. To change the articulated part smooth period, adjust the articulated part Smoothing Period slider, or enter a value in seconds.

## 6.12. Tuning the Target Frame Rate

The `--targetFrameRate` command line option and *`vrfSim.mtl`* parameter allow you to specify the frame rate above which the VR-Forces back-end should begin to sleep in order to give up CPU time to other processes. This parameter is only applicable to variable frame mode. The fixed frame modes already have a built in sleep that gives up unused time. Increasing the target frame rate prevents the back-end from sleeping only if it cannot achieve that rate – ultimately it is up to the operating system to determine how much CPU time each process receives.

## 6.13. Coloring Draw Calls

One of the factors that affects performance is the number of draw calls it takes to render a scene. VR-Forces lets you color the draw calls in a scene so that you can see which objects could be creating performance problems.

When you color draw calls, all the drawables in the scene are randomly colorized. The colors themselves do not convey any meaning. The important information is the number of draw calls required for a model. For example, if a vehicle has 25 different colored parts, you know that it requires 25 draw calls and you may want to edit the model to use fewer of them.

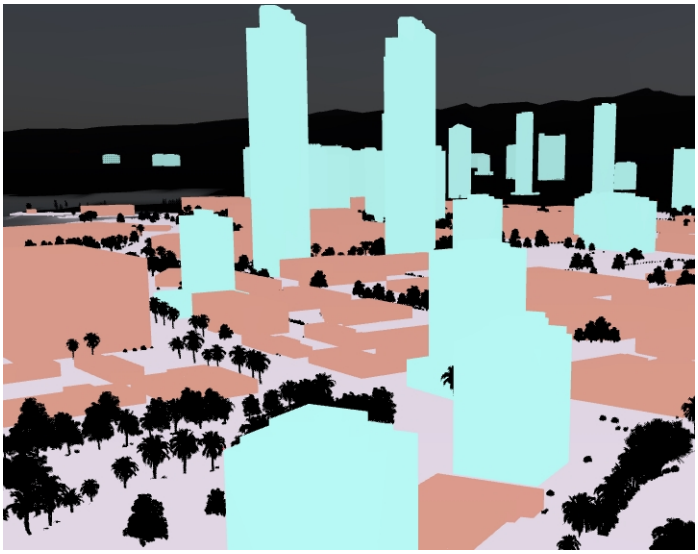
Figure 48 illustrates a terrain with the feature tiles colorized.

---

Indirect geometry groups draw calls together to ensure that there are fewer draw calls. Indirect rendering for entities is enabled by default. To learn more, see 11.5, Indirect Rendering of Terrain, or 13.6, Indirect Rendering of Entities, in the *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

---

**Figure 48. Colorized drawables on terrain**



The colors do not update as new information comes into the scene. Therefore, you can refresh the colorization to see your changes by clicking the Refresh button..

➤ **To visualize draw calls:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 41 on page 190).
3. Select the Colorize Per Drawable check box.
4. In the Component Visualization list, choose Debug Texture.

---

The colors may looked washed out if high dynamic range is enabled. See "45.9. Using High Dynamic Range Lighting" on page 1025.

---

## 6.14. Configuring VSync

VSync (vertical synchronization) synchronizes VR-Forces's frame rate with your monitor's refresh rate. This prevents a visual anomaly called tearing, in which parts of two frames of data can be visible at the same time, but it caps the maximum render frame rate based on the display. Typically this cap is 60 Hz.

In some cases, if the frame rate cannot quite keep up with the refresh rate, VSync can force the frame rate to a noticeably lower rate. To avoid this problem, we recommend that you enable triple buffering for your video card. You must do this in the video card's configuration application; VR-Forces cannot do this for you.

By default, VSync is disabled. If you want to enable it, start up with the `--enableVSync` command-line option, or you can configure your video card to force it to be on.

For `--enableVSync` to work, your graphics card must be set to “Use application setting”.

### 6.14.1 Managing 3D Settings and Multiscreen Performance

In a configuration with remote displays on different screens using the same host computer, you can encounter frame rate issues when vertical sync (VSync) is enabled.

If you see a very low frame rate or a frame rate that cycles between high and very low, first make sure that all monitors are using the same refresh rate (usually 60 Hz).

➤ **To check the refresh rate on a monitor:**

1. Open the NVIDIA Control Panel.
2. Choose the Change Resolution task.
3. Check the Refresh Rate.
4. If you made any changes, click Apply.

If that does not solve the problem, try changing the Vertical Sync setting in the NVIDIA Control Panel.

➤ **To edit the Vertical Sync settings:**

1. Open the NVIDIA Control Panel.
2. Choose the Manage 3D Settings task.
3. In the Global Settings tab, check the Vertical Sync setting. If Vertical Sync is set to On, try setting it to Use the 3D application setting or Off.
4. In the Program Settings tab, check whether vrvIG or vrvStealth are included in the list. If either is listed, try setting Vertical Sync to Use the 3D application setting or Off.
5. Click Apply.

## 6.15. Preloading Models

When VR-Forces discovers simulation objects on the network, it must load the visual models for these objects. This can affect performance. It is particularly noticeable when VR-Forces first connects to an exercise, but can occur at other times if there is a sudden influx of new objects. You can reduce the likelihood of this problem by loading models before you connect to an exercise.

To preload models, you create a list of the models that you expect to need. VR-Forces loads these models when it starts up. You can also load them immediately.

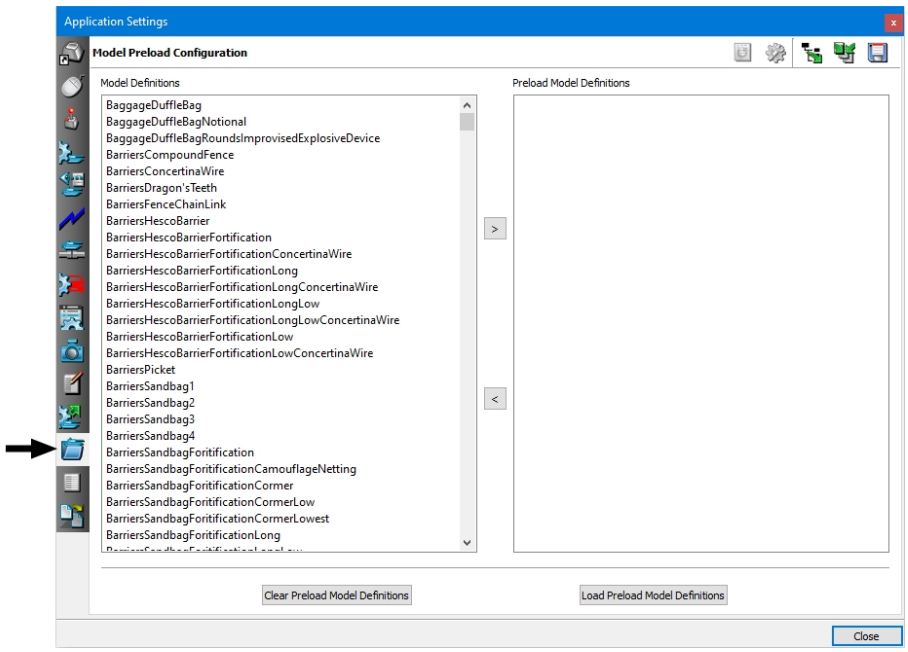
While VR-Forces is participating in an exercise, you can capture a list of models that have not been preloaded. You can then add this list of models to the default preload list or specify the list in a command-line argument.

By default, the list of models to be loaded is saved to *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default_ModelPreload.mpsx*. You can export the list to a different file name. You can also import and merge lists.

➤ **To configure the list of models for preloading:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Model Preload Configuration page (Figure 49).

**Figure 49. Model Preload Configuration page**




3. In the Model Definitions list, select the models that you want to preload. Use the standard methods of multiple object selection.
4. Click the right-facing arrow to move the models into the Preload Model Definitions list.
5. To load the models immediately, click Load Preload Model Definitions.

## 6.15.1 Command-Line Options for Preloading Models

By default, when VR-Forces starts, it loads the models listed in *default_ModelPreload.mpsx*. You can specify that it load a different model list with the `--modelPreloadFileName` command-line option. The syntax is:

```
--modelPreloadFileName filename
```

where *filename* is the name of the file to load.

While VR-Forces is participating in an exercise, it can capture a list of models that were not preloaded. You can then merge this list with the default preload file or specify it as an alternative to the default file on the command line. To capture a list of models, use the following command:

```
--discoveredModelPreloadFileName filename
```

where *filename* is the name of the file to save the list to.

# 6.16. DI-Guy Performance Settings

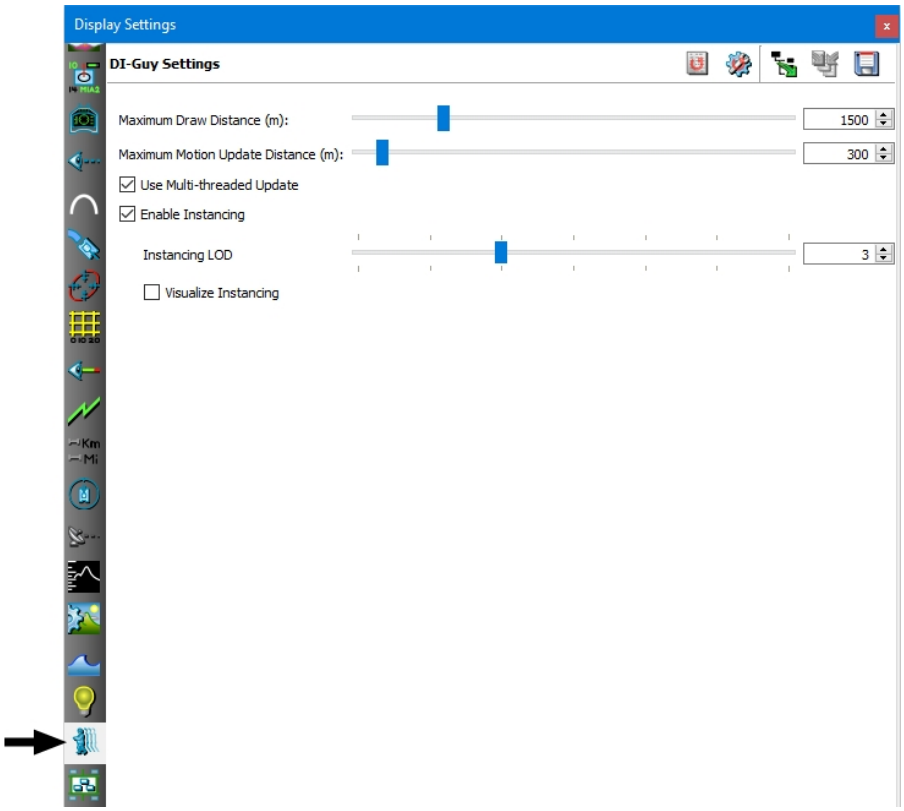
The following settings affect performance of DI-Guy human characters:

- Maximum draw distance. VR-Forces will not render characters that are farther away from the observer than this distance.
- Maximum motion update distance. The distance at which VR-Forces stops animating DI-Guys unless they are changing posture.
- Use multi-threaded update. Developers who are debugging DI-Guy may want to disable multi-threaded update to make it easier to debug.
- Enable instancing. Enabling instancing improves performance by reusing model data for similar characters. You can set the LOD beyond which instancing is used. You can visualize instanced characters.

➤ **To specify DI-Guy performance settings:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the DI-Guy Settings page (Figure 50).

**Figure 50. DI-Guy Settings page**



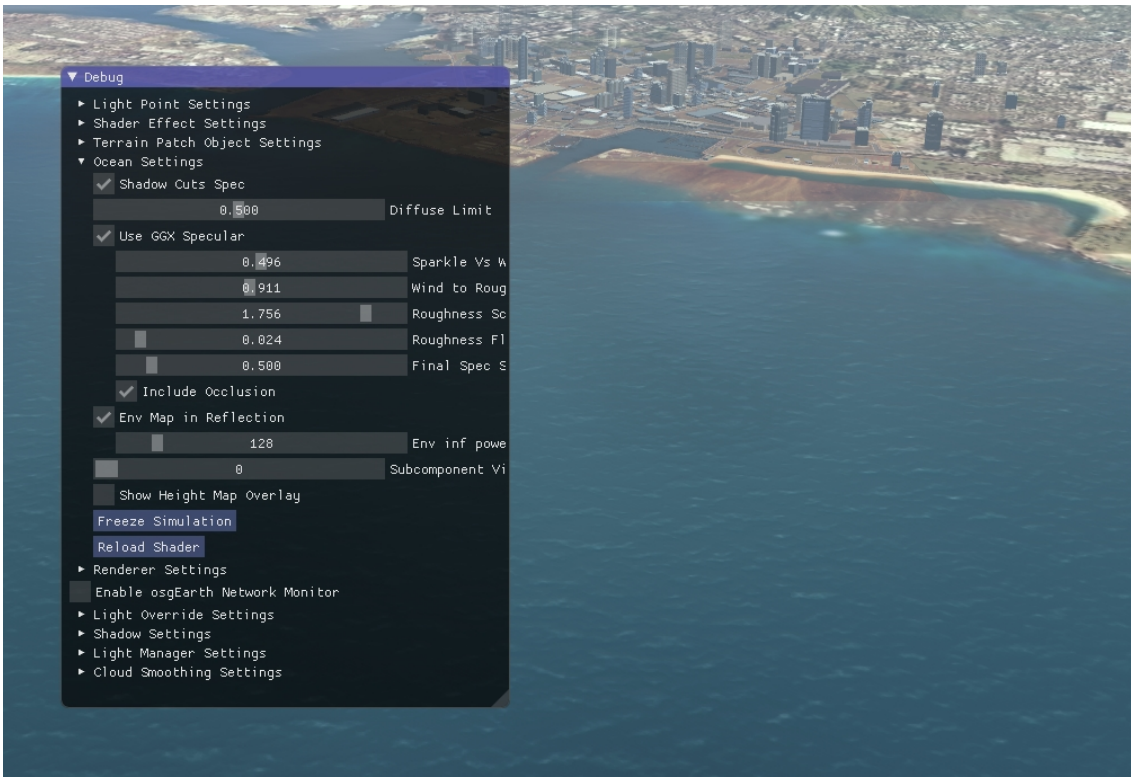

3. To set the maximum draw distance, adjust the Max Draw Distance slider or change the value in the box.

4. To change the distance at which DI-Guys stop animating, adjust the Maximum Motion Update Distance slider.
5. Optionally, select or clear the Use Multi-threaded Update check box.
6. Optionally, select or clear the Enable Instancing check box.
7. If instancing is enabled, adjust the Instancing LOD slider or change the value in the box.
8. Optionally, select or clear the Visualize Instancing check box.

## 6.17. Using the Developer Debug Overlay

VR-Forces uses the ImGui API to create an overlay that developers can use to test changes to some of its visual features. VR-Forces includes an overlay for testing ocean settings, shadow settings, and other visual features. It also includes an ImGui test user interface that demonstrates some of its features.

**Figure 51. Developer debug overlay**




This feature is provided “as is” for the use of interested developers. For complete information about how to use ImGui, please see documentation at https://github.com/ocornut/imgui and other web pages.

➤ **To enable the developer debug overlay:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 41 on page 190).
3. Select the Show Developer Debug Overlay check box. The Developer Debug Overlay opens. It has menus and options for Ocean Settings, SpeedTree Settings, osgEarth Network Monitor, and so on.
4. To view shadow settings:
    a. In the Display Settings dialog box, select the Shadow Settings page.
    b. Select the Enable Shadow check box.

## 6.18. Linux CentOS 8 Memory Issue

There is a known problem with VR-Forces and CentOS 8 running out of memory. When the OS runs out of memory or starts using the swap memory, it can become unresponsive. Here are some potential solutions:

- Upgrade the Linux kernel to at least version 5.7. We have found that the default kernel of 4.18 becomes unresponsive when the swap is being used but the 5.7 kernel does not have this problem.
- Adjust the terrain being loaded in VR-Vantage to have fewer osgEarth layers and simpler models to reduce the memory consumption.
- Add more RAM to your computer.

# II. Scenarios

Whenever you use VR-Forces, you work in the context of a scenario. A scenario consists of everything that needs to be specified to run a VR-Forces simulation. Each scenario has a scenario file (*.scn*) and the following supporting files:

- A scenario objects file (*.oob*).
- A plan file (*.pln*).
- An object map file (*.omp*).
- A terrain database for the front-end and back-end.
- An overlay file (*.ovl*).
- A scripts file (*.spt*). This file contains the scenario scripts, if any.
- A selection groups file (*.sgr*).
- A scenario “extras” file (*.xtr*). This file records hostility relationships and stores spawn pattern templates.
- A saved views file (*.osrx*). If a scenario has captured observer views, they get saved automatically. You can also specify a startup view.
- A settings file that records scenario-specific GUI settings (*.gui_settings*).

By default, scenarios are saved in a compressed zip archive with the extension *.scnx*. If you examine a compressed scenario file in an unzipping application, you will see that it contains the individual files described in the previous paragraphs.

A terrain database does not have to be stored in the same directory as a scenario. It is referenced by the scenario. This lets you use a terrain database, which can be quite large, in more than one scenario, without needing to make multiple copies of it. For more information about terrain databases, please see "Section XI. Terrain" on page 1159.

For details about scenario files, please see "Chapter 12. Scenario Files" on page 339.

# 7. Creating and Running Scenarios

This chapter explains how to create, load, run, and save scenarios.


7.1. Creating a Scenario ..... 213
7.1.1 Specifying Multiple Simulation Model Sets ..... 218
7.1.2 Creating Simulation Model Set Configurations ..... 219
7.1.3 Specifying the Default SMS Configuration ..... 221
7.1.4 Setting the Scenario Starting Date and Time ..... 221
7.2. Importing Objects into Scenarios ..... 224
7.2.1 Importing (Merging) Scenarios ..... 224
7.2.2 Importing and Exporting MSDL ..... 225
7.2.3 Importing Scenario Objects from CSV Files ..... 227
7.2.4 Importing Airspace Control Orders ..... 229
7.3. Saving a Scenario ..... 230
7.3.1 Saving a Previously Saved Scenario ..... 231
7.3.2 Saving a Scenario to a New Name or a Different Format ..... 232
7.4. Loading a Scenario ..... 232
7.4.1 Loading a Recently Loaded Scenario ..... 234
7.4.2 Loading a Scenario from the Command Line ..... 234
7.4.3 Editing Scenario Properties ..... 235
7.4.4 Editing the Scenario Description ..... 237
7.4.5 Sample Scenarios ..... 238
7.5. Load Balancing Scenarios ..... 238
7.5.1 Load Balancing an Existing Scenario ..... 239
7.5.2 Loading a Load-Balanced Scenario ..... 240
7.6. Running a Scenario ..... 242
7.6.1 Changing the Simulation Speed ..... 242
7.6.2 Pausing a Scenario ..... 244
7.6.3 Rewinding a Scenario ..... 244
7.6.4 Closing a Scenario ..... 246

7.7. Reinitializing a Scenario ..... 246
7.8. Checkpoints and Snapshots ..... 247
7.8.1 Saving Checkpoints ..... 247
7.8.2 Deleting Checkpoints ..... 249
7.8.3 Creating Snapshots ..... 250
7.8.4 Clearing the Snapshot List ..... 251
7.9. Pausing a Scenario Automatically ..... 251
7.9.1 Setting the Scenario End Time for a New Scenario ..... 251
7.9.2 Setting the Scenario End Time for an Open Scenario ..... 252
7.10. Running VR-Forces in Batch Mode ..... 252
7.10.1 The Batch File ..... 252
7.10.2 Creating a Batch File ..... 253
7.10.3 Editing a Batch File ..... 253
7.10.4 Running VR-Forces in Batch Mode ..... 255
7.10.5 Recording Batch Scenarios ..... 256
7.11. Sending Run and Pause Messages to Simulation Participants ..... 256
7.12. Recording VR-Forces Simulations with the MAK Data Logger ..... 257

# 7.1. Creating a Scenario

To use VR-Forces to simulate simulation objects, you must load a scenario or create a new one. When you start VR-Forces, the Scenario Startup screen asks you if you want to create or load a scenario (unless you have disabled this feature). Thereafter, to create a scenario, use the procedure in this section. (For details about creating a scenario from the Scenario Startup screen, please see "4.1.1 Starting VR-Forces from the VR-Forces Launcher" on page 123.)

---

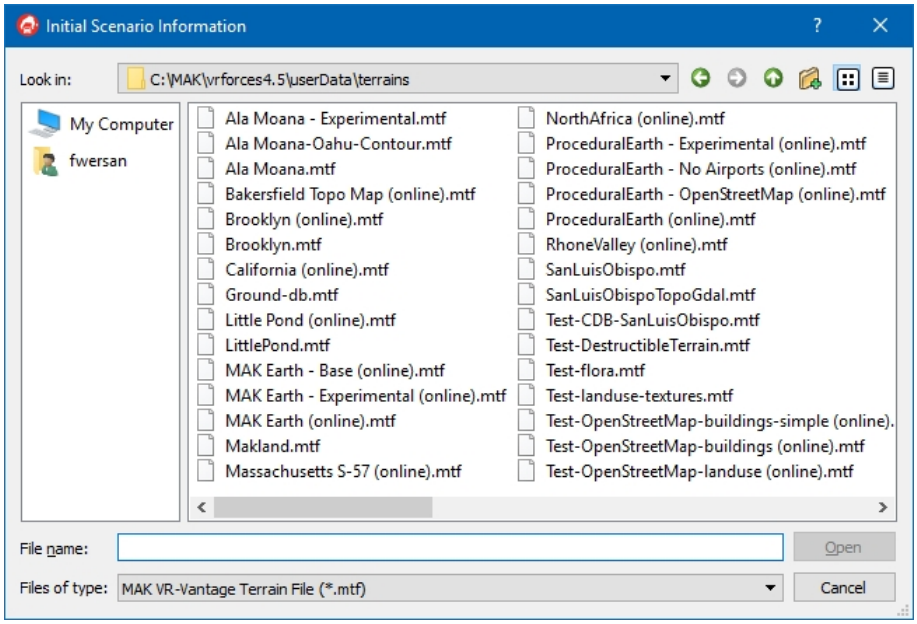
If you are using multiple front-ends in the same session, when one of them creates a scenario, the terrains in all other front-ends are closed (unless the terrain is the same as that for the new scenario) and the terrain for the new scenario is loaded.

---

➤ **To create a scenario:**

1. Choose **File > New Scenario**, or click the New Scenario button ( ) on the File Toolbar. The Initial Scenario Information dialog box opens (Figure 52). By default, it opens in *./userData/terrains*, the directory that contains the terrain files shipped with VR-Forces. (For a brief description of the databases supplied with VR-Forces, please see "Terrain Databases Provided with VR-Forces". For details about terrain files, please see "Section XI. Terrain" on page 1159.)

**Figure 52. Initial Scenario Information dialog box**



2. In the file list, select a terrain database. (MTF is the preferred file type.) A database must be a flat earth, geocentric, UTM, or Lambert Conformal Conic database. By default, this terrain is used for both the front-end and back-end.

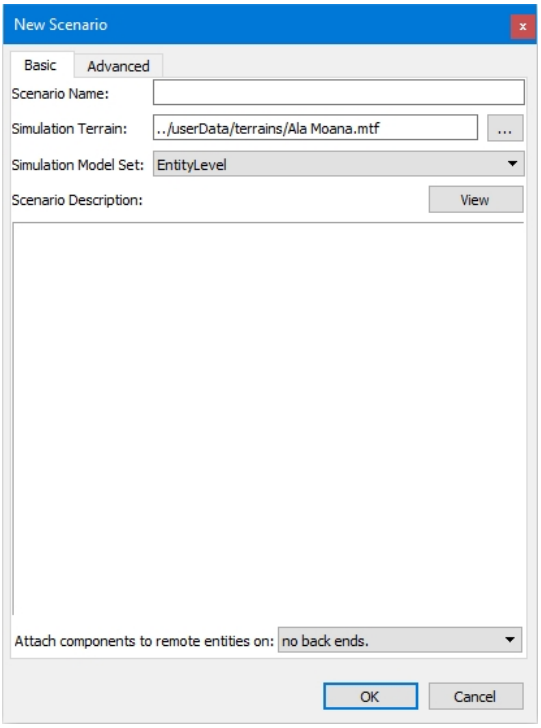
---

If you choose an MTF file and an MTD file with the same name exists, the back-end loads the MTD file. (MTD is a legacy format that may be present for older terrains.)

---

3. Click Open. The New Scenario dialog box opens (Figure 53).

**Figure 53. New Scenario dialog box**




4. Select the simulation model set (SMS) for the type of scenario you want to run – entity-level or aggregate-level.
5. Optionally, set other basic scenario parameters. Table 10 describes the basic parameters.

**Table 10. Basic scenario parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Scenario Name | Specifies the name of the scenario. This is the name used to identify the scenario when you join a session. If you do not specify a name, the scenario file name is used. |
| Simulation Terrain | Specifies the terrain to be used by the back-end. By default, this is the terrain you selected in the Initial Scenario Information dialog box. However, you can change it if you want to. |
| Simulation Model Set | The simulation model set to use. For entity-level scenarios, choose *EntityLevel.sms* or an SMS similar to it. For aggregate-level scenarios, choose *AggregateLevel.sms* or a similar SMS. |
| Scenario Description | The scenario description lets you provide a description of the scenario. This may be useful to remind you or other VR-Forces users of its purpose or special details. You can enter the description as plain text or as HTML. If you use HTML, when the description is displayed in the Scenario Properties dialog box, it is displayed using the HTML formatting. |
| Attach Components to Remote Entities On | Specifies whether or not to attach components to remote entities, and if so, the back-ends on which to manage the components that are being attached to remote entities. Unlike other scenario parameters, you can change this value when you load a scenario. For details about configuring components for attachment to remote entities, please see "75.1. Attaching Components to Remote Entities" on page 1518.<br><br>! This value is not saved in the scenario file. To attach components in future runs of the scenario, you must specify the appropriate setting each time you load the scenario. |

For more information about these parameters, please see "12.2.1 Scenario Parameters" on page 341.

6. Optionally, select the Advanced tab (Figure 54) and set advanced scenario parameters (overriding the default settings).

**Figure 54. New Scenario dialog box, Advanced tab**

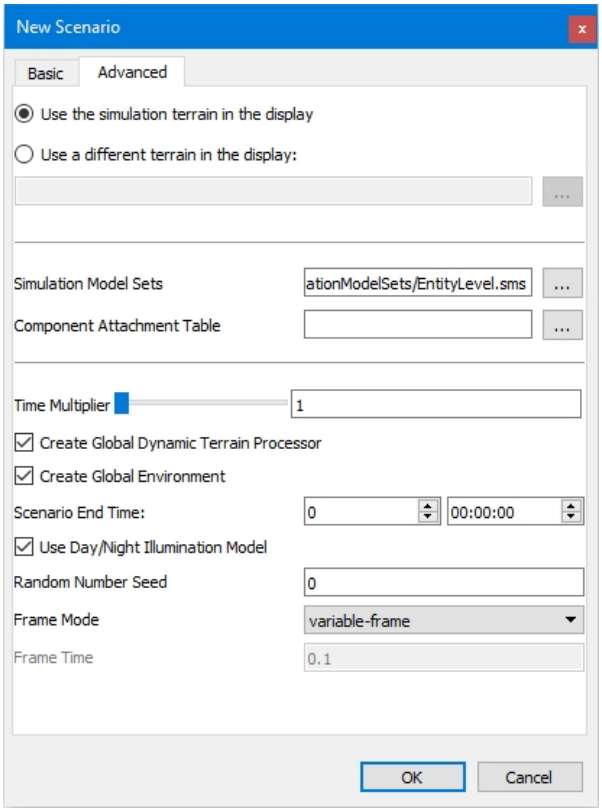



Table 11 describes the parameters you can set.

**Table 11. Advanced scenario parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Use the Simulation Terrain in the Display | If selected (the default), the scenario uses the same terrain for the front-end and back-end. |
| Use a Different Terrain for the Display | If selected, lets you specify the terrain to be used by the front-end. |
| Simulation Model Sets | Lets you specify simulation model sets other than or in addition to the default SMSs listed on the Basic tab. A scenario must specify at least one simulation model set. For more information, please see "7.1.1 Specifying Multiple Simulation Model Sets" on page 218. Default: *EntityLevel.sms*. |

**Table 11. Advanced scenario parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Component Attachment Table | If you plan to attach components to remote entities, specify the component attachment table that you want to use. For details about configuring components for attachment to remote entities, please see "75.1. Attaching Components to Remote Entities" on page 1518. |
| Time Multiplier | Specifies a time multiplier for the scenario. For HLA time-managed federations, this parameter is ignored. Default: 1.0 (real-time). |
| Create Global Dynamic Terrain Processor | If selected, the global dynamic terrain processor monitors the entire terrain for dynamic terrain changes. If disabled, dynamic terrain is not supported unless you create a dynamic terrain area. |
| Create Global Environment | If selected, global weather is supported. If cleared, the settings on the Environment Conditions dialog box, Weather page have no effect on the scenario. (You can still create weather zones.) |
| Scenario End Time | The simulation time at which to automatically pause the scenario. For more information, please see "7.9.1 Setting the Scenario End Time for a New Scenario" on page 251. |
| Use Day/Night Illumination Model | If selected, use an ephemeris model in the back-end to calculate illumination. This affects sensors. If cleared, the entire world is fully illuminated regardless of the time of day. For more information, please see "11.2.3 Choosing the Illumination Model" on page 313. |
| Random Number Seed | Specify a random number seed as an integer >= 0. |
| Frame Mode | Select a frame mode from the list. |
| Frame Time | Specifies the length of a frame, in seconds. This parameter is not enabled if Frame Mode is variable-frame. |

For more information about these parameters, please see:

- "3.4.1 Simulation Time" on page 115.
- "3.4.3 Exercise Clock Modes" on page 116.
- "12.2.1 Scenario Parameters" on page 341.

7. Click OK. The scenario information is displayed and the terrain is displayed in the Plan View (2D) observer mode.
8. Add the simulation objects and tactical graphics that you need for your simulation. For information about adding simulation objects and tactical graphics, please see "Chapter 14. Creating and Placing Objects" on page 363.

9. Save the scenario. For details about saving scenarios, please see "7.3. Saving a Scenario" on page 230.

## 7.1.1 Specifying Multiple Simulation Model Sets

You can specify more than one simulation model set for a scenario. One strategy for extending VR-Forces is to use an SMS provided with VR-Forces for the majority of objects and to create a separate SMS for customized simulation objects. As you upgrade to newer versions of VR-Forces, you can more easily migrate your customized SMS to the new version because your changes have not been integrated into the default SMS. (You can also include the SMSs provided by VR-Forces in your custom SMS. In that case you would just load the custom SMS and not multiple SMSs. For more information, please see "61.3. Simulation Model Sets" on page 1229.)

If you routinely use more than one SMS, consider creating an SMS configuration. For details, please see "7.1.2 Creating Simulation Model Set Configurations" on the facing page.

When you load multiple SMSs, if there is any overlap in the objects they specify, the last SMS loaded overrides previous SMSs.

---

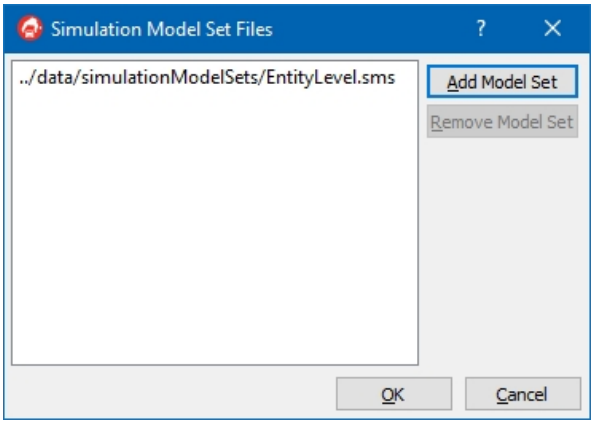
**!** Do not use an entity-level SMS and an aggregate-level SMS together. The simulation objects from the two SMSs will not be able to interact.

---

➤ **To specify multiple simulation model sets for a scenario:**

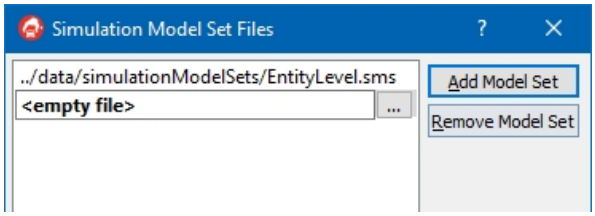
1. In the New Scenario dialog box, click the Browse button on the Simulation Model Set line. The Simulation Model Set Files dialog box opens. It lists the SMS files to be loaded for this scenario.

**Figure 55. Simulation Model Set Files dialog box**




2. In the Simulation Model Set Files dialog box, click Add Model Set. A blank line is added to the window (Figure 56).

**Figure 56. Add simulation model set**




3. Click the Browse button next to the blank line. The Choose File dialog box opens.
4. Select a simulation model set and click Open. The SMS is added to the text box.
5. Click OK.
6. Complete the New Scenario dialog box.

## 7.1.2 Creating Simulation Model Set Configurations

When you create a new scenario, you specify an SMS in the Initial Scenario Information dialog box (please see "7.1. Creating a Scenario" on page 213 for details). The Simulation Model Set list lists all SMSs in *./data/simulationModelSets*. The SMSs are listed in alphabetical order. If you want a particular SMS to be the default SMS you can create an SMS configuration and specify that it be the default. You can create as many SMS configurations as you want. An SMS configuration can have more than one SMS in it. So if you routinely create scenarios that use multiple SMSs, creating a configuration can save you from the necessity of always specifying the additional SMSs on the Advanced tab of the New Scenario dialog box (as described in "7.1.1 Specifying Multiple Simulation Model Sets" on the previous page).

---

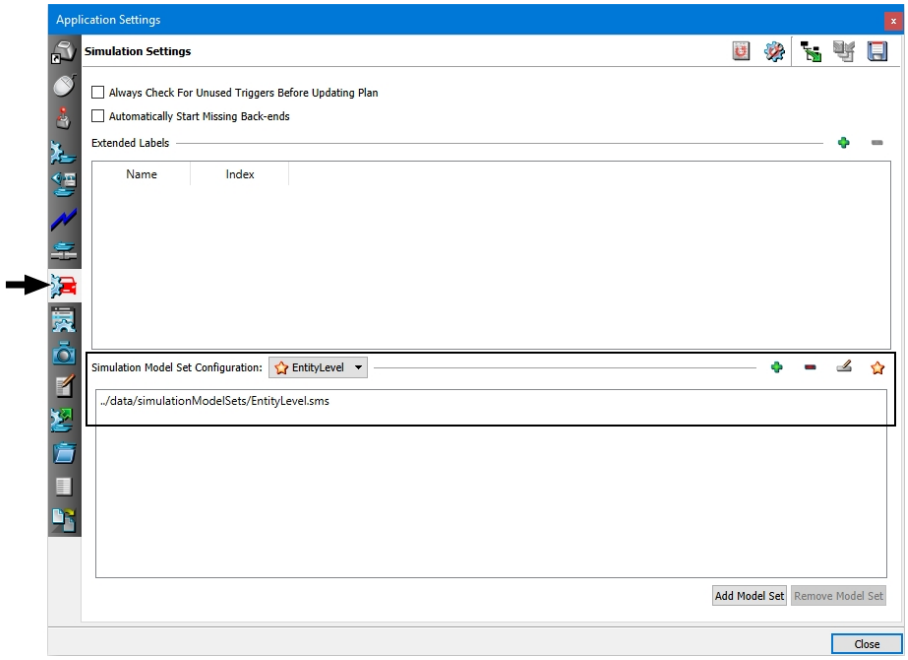
The Simulation Model Set list in the New Scenario dialog box lists all SMS configurations and all SMSs. It does not duplicate names, so if an SMS configuration has the same name as an SMS, only the SMS configuration is listed.

---

➤ **To create a simulation model set configuration:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Simulation Settings page (Figure 57).

**Figure 57. Simulation Settings page**




3. Click the Add button ( ) on the Simulation Model Set Configuration line. The Configuration dialog box opens.
4. Type a name for the configuration.
5. Click OK. The new configuration is added to the list.
6. Click Add Model Set. A line is added to the window.
7. Click the Browse button at the end of the new line. A file chooser dialog box opens.
8. Select the SMS you want to put in this configuration.
9. Click Open. The SMS is added to the list.
10. Optionally, add additional SMSs to this configuration.
11. Click Close.

### Specifying the Default SMS Configuration

You can specify that a particular SMS configuration be selected in the Initial Scenario Information dialog box whenever you create a new scenario.

---

Specifying an SMS as the default SMS automatically removes that designation from any other SMS.

---

➤ **To specify the default SMS configuration:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Simulation Settings page (Figure 57).
3. In the Simulation Model Set Configuration list, select the configuration that you want to be the default.
4. Click the Star button ( ). A star is displayed next to the configuration name in the list, indicating that it is the default configuration.

## 7.1.3 Specifying the Default SMS Configuration

You can specify that a particular SMS configuration be selected in the Initial Scenario Information dialog box whenever you create a new scenario.

---

Specifying an SMS as the default SMS automatically removes that designation from any other SMS.

---

➤ **To specify the default SMS configuration:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Simulation Settings page (Figure 57 on the previous page).
3. In the Simulation Model Set Configuration list, select the configuration that you want to be the default.
4. Click the Star button ( ). A star is displayed next to the configuration name in the list, indicating that it is the default configuration.

## 7.1.4 Setting the Scenario Starting Date and Time

By default, when you create a scenario, the starting simulation date and time is the current system date at 10:00 A.M. local time, where the local time zone is determined by the longitude of the first simulation object that gets created in the scenario.

You can change the date and time at which a scenario starts in either of the following ways:

- A date and time other than the default, but still at the location where the first simulation object is created.
- Use a date, time, and time zone without regard to where the first simulation object is created.

By default, before you create the first simulation object, as you move the observer through the terrain, the time shown on the Time of Day toolbar and in the Date and Time page changes to show you the time at the location of the observer relative to the selected time zone. (By default, the Time of Day toolbar and the Date and Time page show Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).) Furthermore, the sun moves with the observer so that the observer location is always in daylight.

The time zone is an approximation. It does not take into account unusual time zone boundaries or daylight savings time. The time zone is set once. If you create a simulation object and then delete it, the location of that entity still determines the time zone. Furthermore, if for some reason you were to create a scenario and then run it without creating any simulation objects, if at any point you created a simulation object, the starting date and time would be reset to the default value based on the location of that entity.

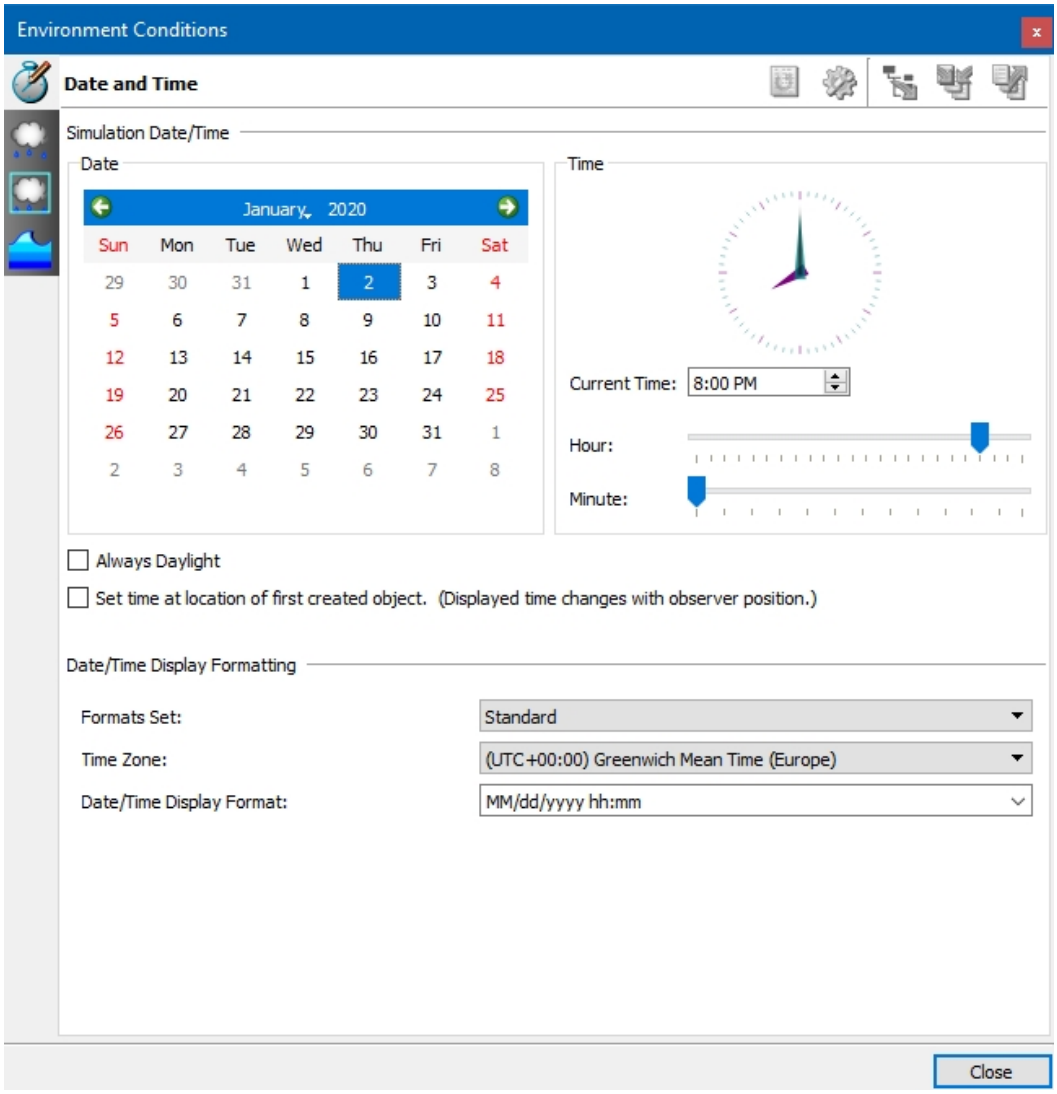
You can change the starting date and time when you create a scenario.

For more information about simulation time, please see "11.2. Setting the Date and Time of Day" on page 311.

➤ **To set the scenario start date and time using the time zone of the first simulation object:**

1. Begin the scenario creation process, as described in "7.1. Creating a Scenario" on page 213.
2. Before you create the first simulation object, choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**, or click the date on the Environment Settings Toolbar. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
3. Select the Date and Time page (Figure 58).

**Figure 58. Date and Time page**




4. Change the date and current time to the desired date and current time.
5. Create a simulation object in the desired location.

➤ **To set the scenario start time and time zone without respect to the first simulation object:**

1. Begin the scenario creation process, as described in "7.1. Creating a Scenario" on page 213.
2. Before you create the first simulation object, choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**, or click the date on the Environment Settings Toolbar. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
3. Select the Date and Time page (Figure 58).
4. Clear the Set Time at Location of First Created Object check box.
5. Set the date, time, and time zone that you want the scenario to start at.

6. Optionally, specify the date and time format (standard or military) and the display format.
7. Continue the scenario creation process.

## 7.2. Importing Objects into Scenarios

If you frequently need to create scenarios with the same simulation objects, scenario-level scripts, or other scenario components, consider using one or more of the following strategies:

- Create simulation object groups. Simulation objects groups are heterogeneous groups of simulation objects and tactical graphics that you can add to any scenario. Like the individual simulation objects that you can add to a scenario, they are not tied to a terrain location until you add them. Use them if you want to create a repeatable set of objects that do not fit into a unit hierarchy. For more information, please see "14.13. Simulation Object Groups" on page 392.
- Use scenario import. If you have a base scenario that you want to use repeatedly, create the scenario, then open it and rename it to preserve the original, or open a new scenario and import the base scenario. You can do this with a fully realized scenario or a scenario layout that you want to add to other scenarios. For example, you might want to create a town with background traffic for repeated use with different training problems added to it. Since this is a scenario, it is tied to the terrain location you use when you create it. Alternatively, you might have a set of scripts that you do not want to promote to system scripts. You can save them in a scenario and import the scenario into the scenarios for which you want to use the tasks. For more information, please see "7.2.1 Importing (Merging) Scenarios" below.
- Import MSDL. If you have a MSDL entity laydown, you can import that into different scenarios as needed. For more information, please see "7.2.2 Importing and Exporting MSDL" on the facing page.
- Import point, linear, or areal objects from a CSV file. For details, please see "7.2.3 Importing Scenario Objects from CSV Files" on page 227.
- Export an Order of Battle and import it into other scenarios. For details, please see "Chapter 20. Creating and Using an Order of Battle" on page 477.
- Export tactical graphics to shapefiles. For details, please see"39.3. Exporting Tactical Graphics as Shapefiles" on page 932.

### 7.2.1 Importing (Merging) Scenarios

VR-Forces users often assign scenario development to multiple persons or teams. Then they merge the separately-developed scenarios into a master scenario. You can easily merge scenarios by importing them. When you import a scenario, you can choose to rename simulation objects to avoid duplicate names, to import scenario events, and to create a selection group for the imported simulation objects.

---

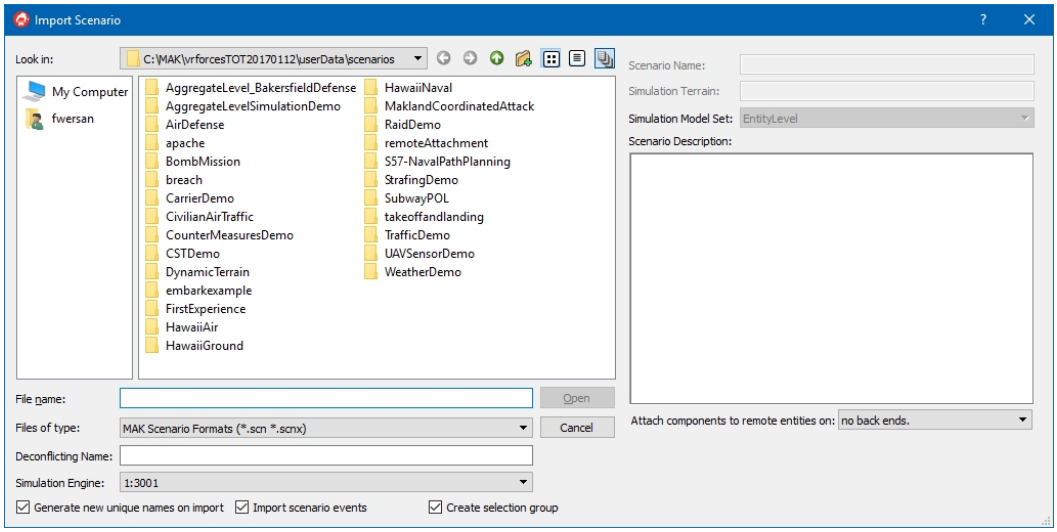
**!** If you import a scenario that was saved (checkpointed) with a simulation time that is different from the current time of the scenario into which you are importing it, there may be unexpected behaviors due to timing issues. For example, an entity executing a Wait Duration task may wait for a longer or shorter time than you expect.

---

➤ **To import a scenario:**

1. Open a scenario.
2. Choose **File > Import VR-Forces Scenario**. The Import Scenario dialog box opens (Figure 59).

**Figure 59. Import Scenario dialog box**




3. Select the scenario that you want to import.
4. Optionally, on the Deconflicting Name box, specify a text string that VR-Forces should add to object names in the imported scenario that match names in the base scenario.
5. Optionally, to allow duplicate names, clear the Generate New Unique Names on Import check box.
6. Optionally, specify whether or not to import scenario events.
7. Optionally, specify whether or not to create a selection group.

## 7.2.2 Importing and Exporting MSDL

Military Scenario Definition Language (MSDL) is a SISO standard for describing military scenarios using an XML format. It allows for interchange of scenario descriptions between simulation applications and systems that use different internal formats. You can import MSDL files into a VR-Forces scenario.

VR-Forces does not import all of the information that can be in an MSDL file. It imports and exports:

- Simulation objects and their locations. Locations are always exported in geocentric coordinates.
- Force relationships and hostility relationships. Any force with the word “neutral” in it (not case sensitive) is considered a neutral force, and all other forces are considered neutral to it unless specifically marked as hostile in the VR-Forces hostility matrix. Other forces not marked as hostile to one another are considered friendly.
- Country codes. If the scenario’s hostility matrix does not have countries assigned to forces, the country code is empty. You should define countries for the forces, including the Neutral force, to have country codes in the MSDL file.
- Unit formations.
- Tactical graphics.
- Area of Interest (bounding box).

---

If you try to import a unit type that is not available in the Simulation Object Editor, you will not be able to import it because it cannot be assigned to a unit type. You can add empty units in the Simulation Object Editor that will then be available for MSDL import. For more information, please see "Chapter 64. Editing Units for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 1327.

---

➤ **To import MSDL:**

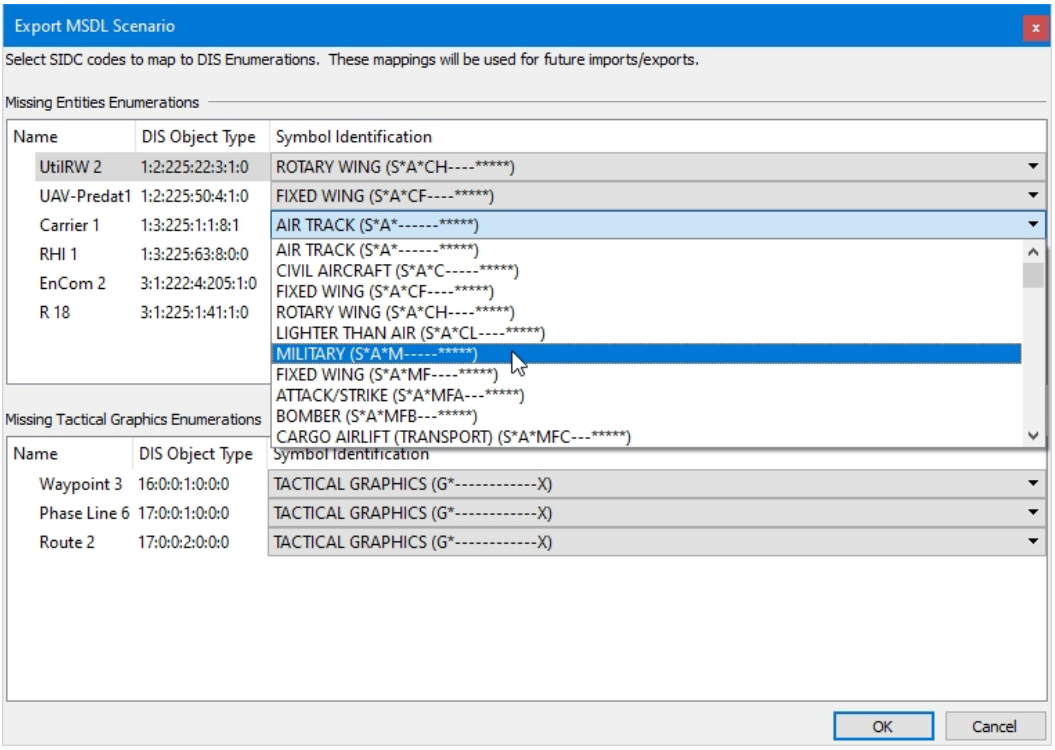
1. Create or load a scenario.
2. Choose **File > Import Scenario Objects**. The Import Scenario File dialog box opens.
3. In the Files of Type box, set the filter to MSDL Scenario File (*.xml).
4. Select the MSDL file that you want to import.
5. Click Open.

## Exporting MSDL

➤ **To export a scenario to MSDL:**

1. Create or load a scenario.
2. Choose **File > Export Scenario Laydown**. The Export Scenario dialog box opens.
3. In the Save As Type box, set the filter to MSDL Scenario File (*.xml).
4. Select the directory in which you want to save the file.
5. Type a name for the file.
6. Click Save. If VR-Forces is not sure how to export an entity type to MSDL, the Export MSDL Scenario dialog box opens (Figure 60).

**Figure 60. Export MSDL Scenario dialog box**




7. For each object type listed in the Export MSDL Scenario dialog box:
    a. In the Symbol Identification column, click the value. A list of possible identification codes is displayed. (These codes are from the MSDL specification, MILSTD 2525B. You need to familiarize yourself with the specification to fully understand them.)
    b. Select the proper identification.
8. Click OK.

## 7.2.3 Importing Scenario Objects from CSV Files

Some VR-Forces users like to plot tactical graphics and simulation object locations off line and then import them into a scenario. VR-Forces supports importation of points, lines, and areas from comma separated values (CSV) files. A CSV file can contain only one kind of object, as follows:

- One area.
- One route.
- One or more point objects. Points can represent tactical graphics, such as waypoints, or individual entities.

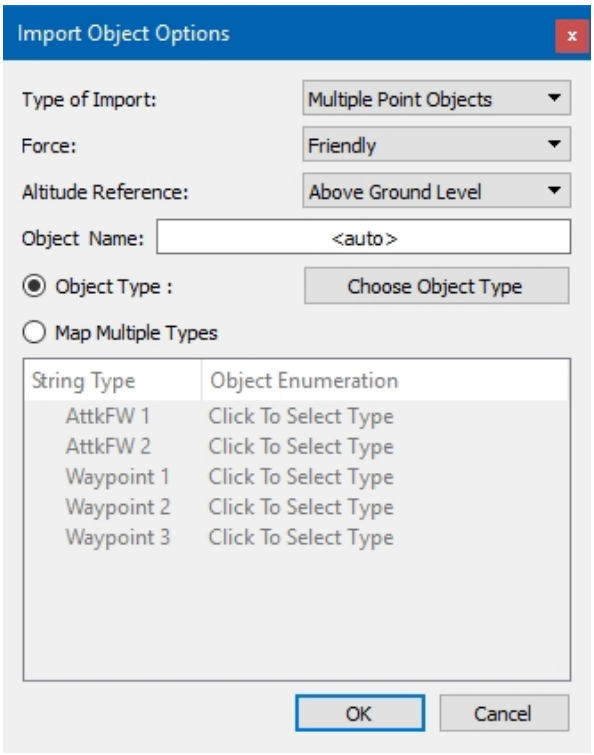
VR-Forces includes some example CSV files in *./userData/csvLaydown*.

You cannot export simulation objects to a CSV file. To make the objects in a scenario available to other scenarios, try some of the strategies in "7.2. Importing Objects into Scenarios" on page 224.

➤ **To import scenario objects from a CSV file:**

1. Choose **File > Import Scenario Objects**. The Import Scenario File dialog box opens.
2. In the Files of Type box, set the filter to CSV Scenario File (*.csv).
3. Select the CSV file that you want to import.
4. Click Open. The Import Object Options dialog box opens. If you selected a CSV file that has point data, the points are listed in the window

**Figure 61. Import Object Options dialog box**

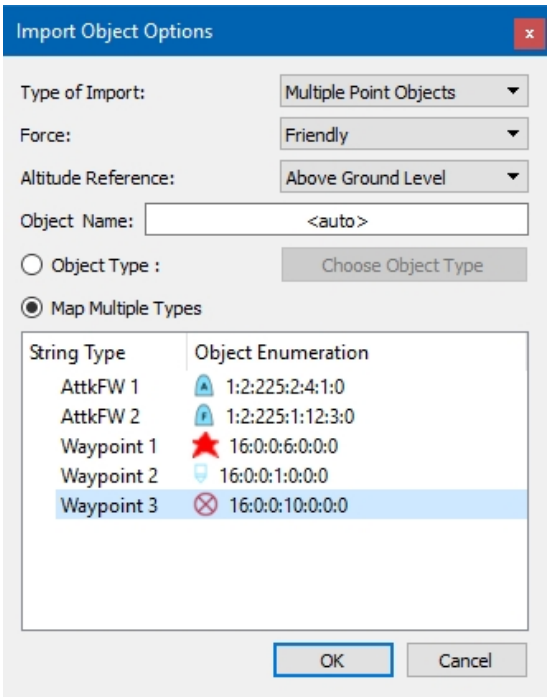



5. In the Type of Import, select the type of data you are importing.
6. Optionally, specify a force. All imported objects are imported with the same force.
7. Optionally, specify the altitude of objects as AGL (above ground level) or ASL (above sea level).
8. Optionally, in the Object Name box specify a name for the object. The default is to use VR-Forces naming conventions to automatically assign a name.

9. If you are importing an area or route:
    a. Select the Object Type option.
    b. Click Choose Object Type. The Entity Type dialog box opens. It lists objects of the type you selected in the Type of Import list. (The layout of the dialog box is similar to the object creation palettes.)
    c. Select the specific type of area or route that you want to use for the imported object. The Entity Type dialog box closes.

    If you are importing a list of waypoints:
    a. Select the Map Multiple Types option.
    b. Click a point in the list. The Entity Type dialog box opens.
    c. Select the specific type of point or entity that you want to use for the imported object. The Entity Type dialog box closes. The Import Object Options lists the object type enumeration for the object.

**Figure 62. Import Object Options dialog box**




    d. Repeat this process for each object in the list.

10. Click OK.

## 7.2.4 Importing Airspace Control Orders

An airspace control order (ACO) defines and establishes an airspace for military operations. It is can be part of an air tasking order (ATO) or a separate document. VR-Forces can import ACOs that are separate documents.

VR-Forces includes an example ACO file, *./userData/aco/exampleMontereyACO.aco*. The file's format is documented in *./userData/aco/acoFormattingReadme.txt*.

➤ **To import an ACO:**

1. Choose **File > Import Scenario Objects**. The Import Scenario File dialog box opens.
2. In the Files of Type box, set the filter to ACO Scenario File (*.aco).
3. Select the file that you want to import.
4. Click Open.

## 7.3. Saving a Scenario

The first time you save a scenario, VR-Forces saves the path of the terrain database and other scenario configuration data to a scenario file (extension *.scn*). (Paths are saved relative to the *./bin64* directory.) This information usually does not change between runs of a scenario. Every time you save a scenario, VR-Forces saves the list of simulation objects and tactical graphics, the plans, and object mapping information to individual files that have the same name as the scenario, but with file extensions that identify the information in the file (*.oob*, *.pln*, *.xtr*, *.omp*, and so on). By default, all these files are saved to a compressed archive with the extension *.scnx*. However, you can save them as individual files, as explained in this procedure.

---

- If you want to keep the initial state of a scenario (simulation time = 0 and no simulation has taken place), so that you can repeatedly run a simulation from the beginning, save the scenario when you have finished creating it, but before you run it. Then, do not save the scenario again under the same name (unless you specifically want to change the original state of the scenario). (If you forget to save a new scenario, you can rewind to the initial snapshot and save it.)
- If you load an alternate terrain in a front-end when it joins a session, the alternate terrain is not saved as part of the scenario.

---

When you save a scenario, whether during the course of setting it up or during a simulation, all object state information gets saved. Essentially, every save is a checkpoint. When you run a saved simulation, all simulation objects resume whatever they were doing when the scenario was saved.

---

If simulation objects are executing scripted tasks, some information regarding the tasks is not saved. For details, please see "32.2.3 Limitations for Checkpointing Scripts" on page 764.

---

Save behavior depends on when you save a scenario, as follows:

- If you save a previously saved scenario after it has started (whether it is paused or running), it is not saved to the original scenario file. It is saved to a checkpoint that is named using the convention *scenario_name*_at_time_

*time*.scn. This ensures that you cannot inadvertently overwrite the original scenario file. To overwrite the original scenario, you must use Save Scenario As. For more information, please see "7.8.1 Saving Checkpoints" on page 247 and "7.3.1 Saving a Previously Saved Scenario" below.

- If you run a new scenario without saving it and save it at some simulation time greater than zero, it is saved using whatever name you provide. The time is not included in the scenario name.

➤ **To save a new scenario:**

1. Choose **File > Save Scenario** or click the Save button ( ) on the File Toolbar. The Save Scenario dialog box opens.
2. Select the directory in which you want to save the scenario.

---

If you create a folder in the Save dialog box and it has a space at the end of the name, Windows does not recognize the existence of the folder. If you try to delete it, the system may blue screen. Running scandisk can solve this problem.

---

3. Give the scenario a name.
4. By default, scenarios are saved in a compressed archive (*.*scnx*). If you want to save a scenario as individual files, in the File of Type list, select MAK Scenario Format (*.scn).
5. Click Save. All scenario files are saved with the new name.

---

If you save a remapped scenario, you are prompted to save the scenario with the original mappings or with the remappings.

---

## 7.3.1 Saving a Previously Saved Scenario

In most computer applications, when you save a file that has been saved previously, the current version of the file simply overwrites the previously saved version. However, when VR-Forces saves a scenario, the save action depends on the status of the scenario. VR-Forces tracks the simulation time of the scenario. When you save a scenario:

- If a version of the scenario exists with the current simulation time, VR-Forces displays a message indicating that a version of the scenario at that simulation time exists and asks if you want to overwrite it.
- If there is no version with the current simulation time, VR-Forces creates a new checkpoint at the current simulation time, using the checkpoint naming convention.

This behavior ensures that if you change a scenario after you have started a simulation, you will never inadvertently overwrite the original version or another checkpoint.

➤ To save a previously saved scenario, choose **File > Save Scenario**.

#### Saving a Load Balanced Scenario

When you load a load-balanced scenario and do not have all of the required back-ends available, VR-Forces prompts you to allow it to remap objects to the available back-ends. Then it loads the scenario.

When you save a scenario that was originally load balanced, VR-Forces prompts you to either save the original mappings or to save the scenario with the back-end mappings used to load it in the current session.

If you save the original mappings, all objects that were part of the scenario when it was loaded maintain their previous mappings. Any objects that you created during the current session are mapped to the back-ends that they were created on in the current session.

### 7.3.2 Saving a Scenario to a New Name or a Different Format

You can save a scenario to a different name. You can also save it to a different format. That is, you can save a scenario that was originally saved as a compressed archive to individual files or save individual files to a compressed archive.

---

If you save a scenario to a different format and you use the same name, VR-Forces does not replace the previously saved files with the new format. The two sets of files live side-by-side. Therefore we recommend that you give the newly saved scenario a different name or remove the old files to avoid confusion between different versions of the same scenario.

---

➤ **To save a scenario to a new name:**

1. Choose **File > Save Scenario As.** The Save Scenario dialog box opens.
2. Select the directory in which you want to save the scenario.
3. Give the scenario a name.
4. If you are changing the format, select an option in the Files of Type list.
5. Click Save. The scenario is saved to the new name.

## 7.4. Loading a Scenario

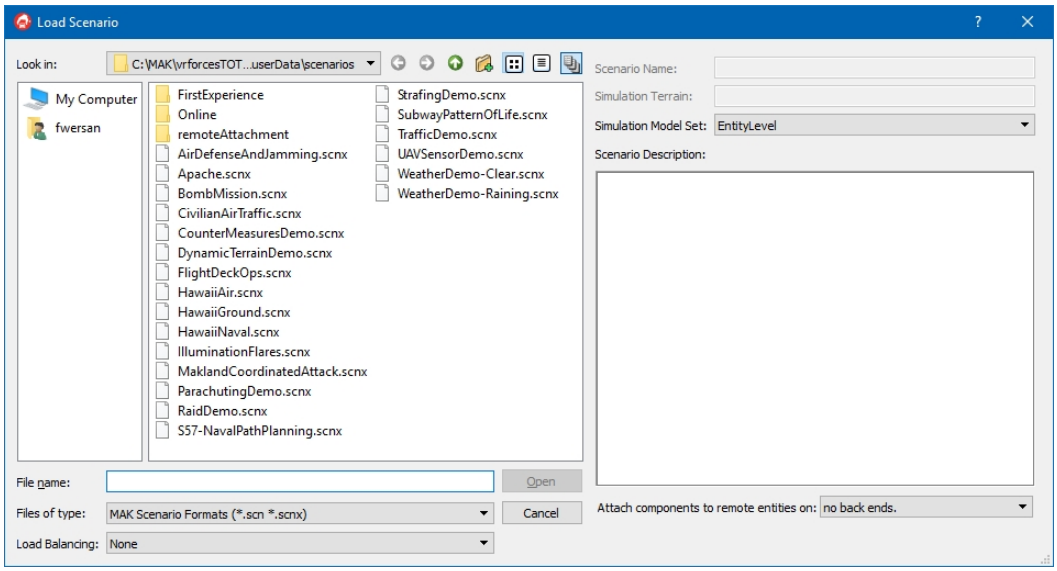
After you have created and saved a scenario, you can load it and run it on any platform supported by the version of VR-Forces in which you created it. Most scenarios are forward compatible. Please see VR-Forces Release Notes for compatibility issues.

- If you are running multiple front-ends in the same session, when you load a scenario, any terrains that are open on other front-ends are closed and the terrain for the newly loaded scenario is opened.
- When you load a scenario that uses multiple back-ends, if any of the required back-ends are not running, VR-Forces prompts you to remap the objects in the scenario. The Remap Missing Back-ends dialog box lists the unavailable back-ends and the available back-ends. You can specify which back-ends to map objects to or you can select “map all to” and map all objects to one back-end. For more information about remapping back-ends, please see "3.2.5 Working with Multiple Back-ends" on page 112.

➤ **To load a scenario:**

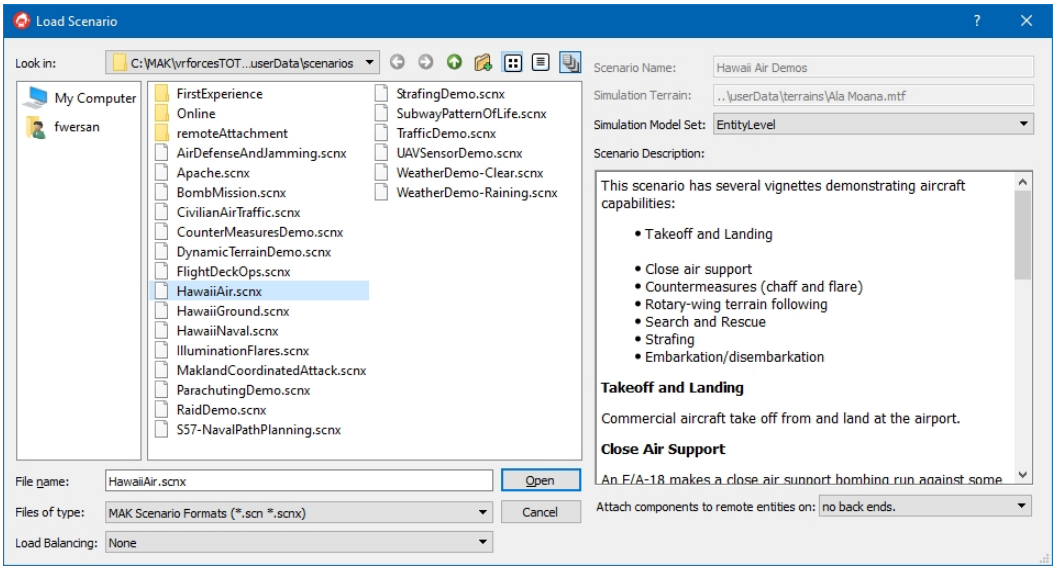
1. Choose **File > Load Scenario** or click the Open Scenario button ( ) on the File Toolbar. The Load Scenario dialog box opens (Figure 63).

**Figure 63. Load Scenario dialog box**




2. Select a scenario to load. Basic information about the scenario is displayed (Figure 64). Scenarios are files with the suffix *.scn* or *.scnx*. Sample scenarios are located in the *./userData/scenarios* directory. (Batch scenarios, described in "7.10. Running VR-Forces in Batch Mode" on page 252, have the suffix *.bsn*.)

**Figure 64. Load Scenario dialog box**




3. Optionally, specify whether or not to allow management of components on remote entities by selecting an option in the Attach Components to Remote Entities On list. For details about configuring components on remote entities, please see "75.1. Attaching Components to Remote Entities" on page 1518.
4. Optionally, select a load balancing option.
5. Click Open.

## 7.4.1 Loading a Recently Loaded Scenario

VR-Forces keeps a list of the scenarios you open. You can quickly open a scenario from the list.

➤ To open a recently used scenario, choose **File > Recent Scenarios >** *scenario_name*.

## 7.4.2 Loading a Scenario from the Command Line

If you start VR-Forces from the command line, you can specify a scenario to load. You can specify the scenario in the back-end or front-end. The other executable will load it as soon as it starts up.

To load a scenario when you start the back-end, use the `-L` command-line option, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001 -L "../userData/scenarios/myScenario.scnx"
```

To load a scenario when you start the front-end, use the `--scenarioFile` command-line option, for example:

```
vrfGui --scenarioFile "../userData/scenarios/myScenario.scnx" --dis -s
1 -a 3000
```

### 7.4.3 Editing Scenario Properties

When you create a scenario, you specify a variety of parameters (or accept default values) and, optionally, specify a name and description for the scenario. If a scenario has a description, when you load the scenario, the Scenario Information dialog box opens automatically and displays the scenario properties. (You can disable this behavior.) You cannot edit properties in the Scenario Information dialog box.

You can display scenario properties at any time while a scenario is loaded. You can edit the scenario properties. The following changes take place immediately:

- Scenario description.
- Scenario name.
- Time multiplier.
- Create global environment.
- Create global dynamic terrain processor.
- Scenario end time.

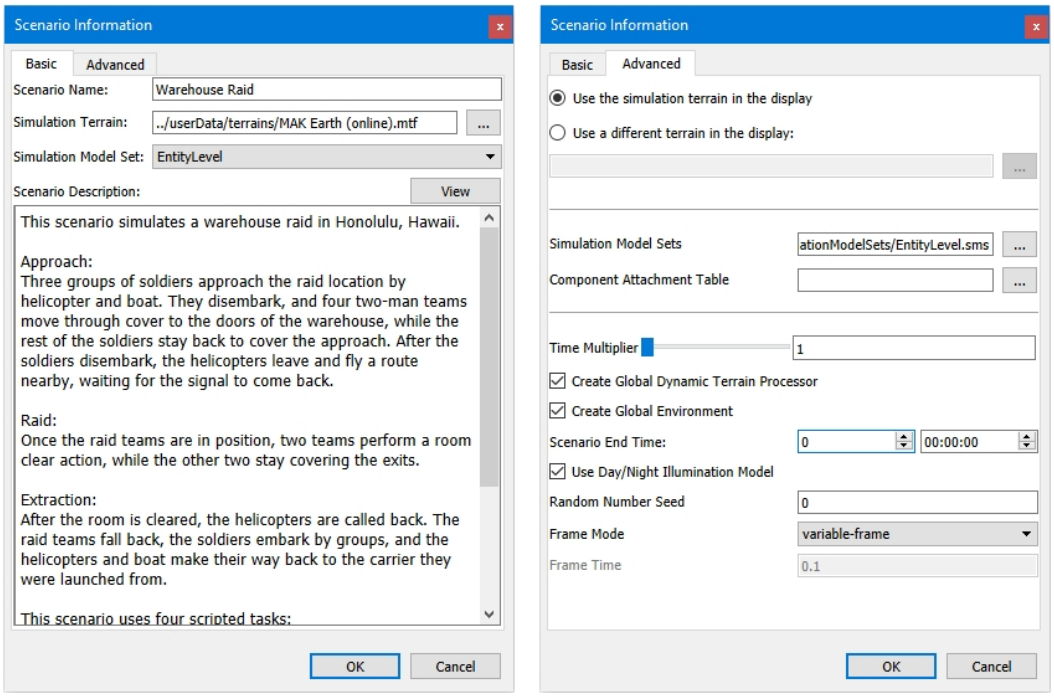
The following changes do not take effect until you save the scenario and reload it. If you edit one of these properties and have not yet saved the scenario, if you open the dialog box again, an icon is displayed to alert you to save the scenario.

- Simulation terrain.
- Use a different terrain in the display.
- Simulation model sets.
- Component attachment table.
- Random number seed.
- Frame mode.
- Frame time.

➤ **To edit scenario properties:**

1. Choose **File > Scenario Properties**. The Scenario Properties dialog box opens (Figure 65).

**Figure 65. Scenario Properties dialog box**




2. Edit properties as desired. (For descriptions of the properties, please see Table 10 on page 215 and Table 11 on page 216.)

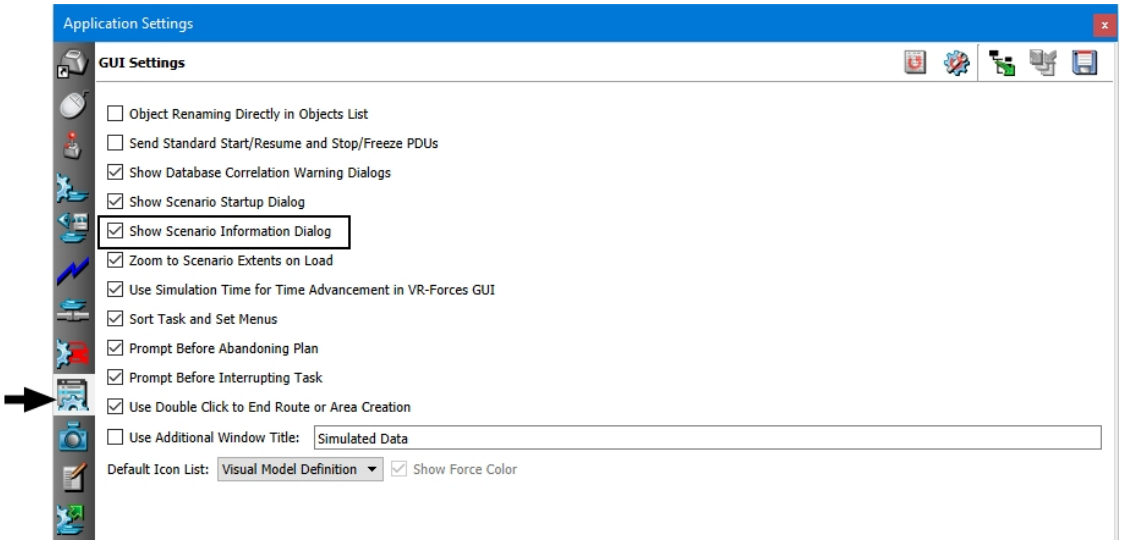
## Enabling and Disabling Display of the Scenario Description

By default, the scenario description gets displayed when you open a scenario. You can turn it off in the Scenario Information window and you can enable and disable its display in the Application Settings dialog box.

➤ **To disable display of scenario information when a scenario is loaded, use one of the following methods:**

- When the Scenario Information window opens, select the Never Show Again check box.
- On the Application Settings dialog box, GUI Settings page, clear the Show Scenario Information Dialog check box (Figure 66).

**Figure 66. GUI Settings page**




➤ To enable the Scenario Information dialog box, on the Application Settings dialog box, GUI Settings page, select the Show Scenario Information Dialog check box.

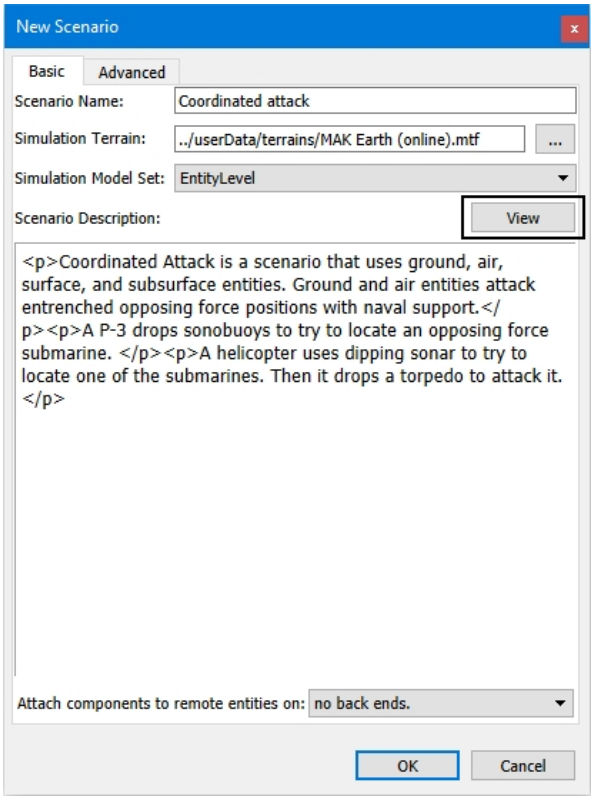
## 7.4.4 Editing the Scenario Description

You can edit a scenario's description in the Scenario Properties dialog box.

➤ **To edit a scenario's description:**

1. Choose **File > Scenario Properties**. The Scenario Properties dialog box opens (Figure 67).

**Figure 67. Scenario Properties**




2. Edit the text.
3. To see how the text will be displayed, click View.
4. Click OK.

### 7.4.5 Sample Scenarios

VR-Forces includes several sample scenarios. *VR-Forces First Experience Guide* has three tutorials for scenario creation.

## 7.5. Load Balancing Scenarios

One way to improve the performance of a scenario is to spread simulation of objects across multiple back-ends. This is called load balancing. VR-Forces supports even distribution (done automatically by VR-Forces) and manual load balancing.

You can load balance a scenario when you create it. You can also load balance a scenario after you create it.

---

! If you are using interest management to support large simulation object counts, do not enable load balancing. It will negate the assignment of simulation objects to specific back-ends that is part of designing a scenario for interest management.

---

➤ **To load-balance a new scenario:**

1. Start as many back-ends as you want to use in the scenario, as described in "4.1.1 Starting VR-Forces from the VR-Forces Launcher" on page 123 and "4.1.2 Starting Independent VR-Forces Executables" on page 127 .
2. Create the new scenario, as described in "7.1. Creating a Scenario" on page 213.
3. Before you create an object, select the back-end on which you want it to be simulated, as described in "14.2.1 Selecting the Object to Create on an Object Palette" on page 366 and "14.2.2 Selecting the Object to Create on the Create Menu" on page 370.

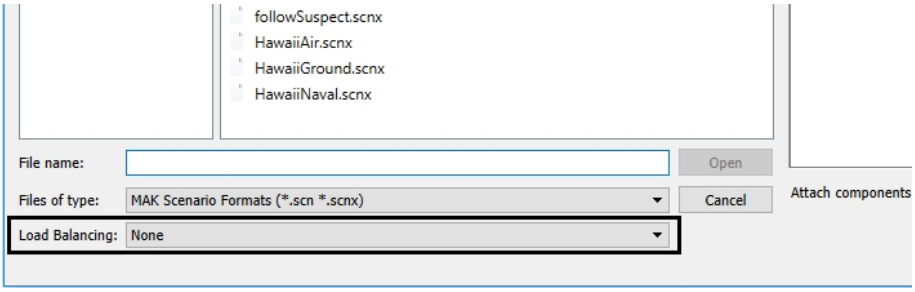
## 7.5.1 Load Balancing an Existing Scenario

You can change the object mappings for a scenario (load balancing) when you load it. You cannot change mapping after the scenario loads.

➤ **To load-balance an existing scenario:**

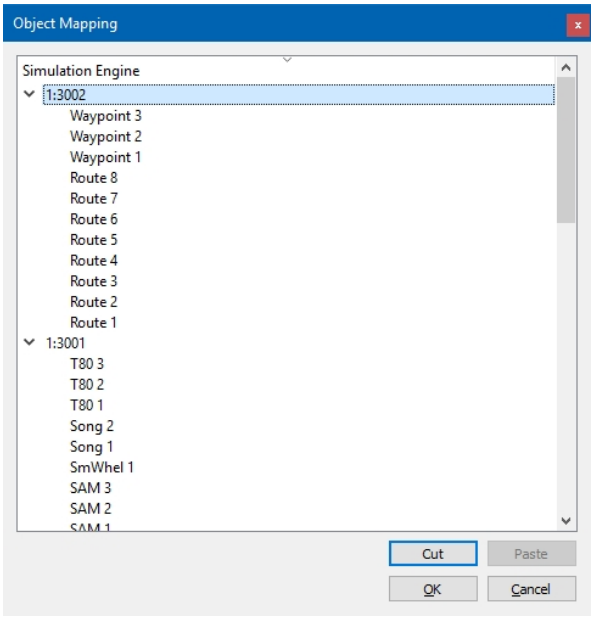
1. Start as many back-ends as you want to use in the scenario.
2. Choose **File > Load Scenario**. The Load Scenario dialog box opens.
3. In the Load Scenario dialog box, select an option from the Load Balancing list (Figure 68).

**Figure 68. Load Balancing list**




If you select Even Distribution, VR-Forces automatically distributes objects across the available back-ends. If you choose Manual load balancing, the Object Mapping dialog box opens (Figure 69) when you click Open.

**Figure 69. Object Mapping dialog box**




To load balance the scenario:

a. In the Object Mapping dialog box, expand the list for the back-end from which you want to distribute objects.

b. Redistribute objects by dragging them from a source back-end to a target back-end, or by cutting them from the source back-end and pasting them onto the target back-end. You can view the new distribution of objects by expanding the list for the target back-end.

c. Click OK.

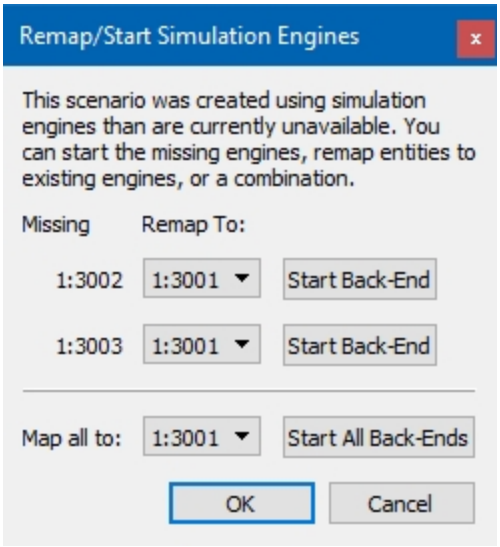
4. In the Load Scenario dialog box, click OK. The scenario loads. If you open the Information dialog box for an object, the title bar displays the back-end on which it is simulated.

5. To preserve the new object mappings, save the scenario. When you save the scenario, you are prompted to save the original mappings. Click No to save the new load balanced mappings.

## 7.5.2 Loading a Load-Balanced Scenario

When you load-balance a scenario, it saves the mapping between objects and simulation engines in the scenario's object mapping file. When you load the scenario, VR-Forces looks for the listed simulation engines based on their application numbers. If it does not find the required simulation engines, it prompts you for instructions on how to proceed (Figure 70). You can start the missing simulation engines, remap objects to available simulation engines, or if you are using more than two simulation engines, do a combination of both.

**Figure 70. Remap/Start Simulation Engines dialog box**




If you start a simulation engine as part of the process of loading a scenario, it is started in combined mode and will automatically be closed when you shut down the front-end.

➤ **To load a scenario that uses multiple simulation engines:**

1. Optionally, start all the required simulation engines and at least one front-end. One simulation engine can be started in combined mode with the front-end.
2. Load the scenario. If the scenario cannot find all of the required simulation engines, it prompts you to start them or remap objects to the available back-ends (Figure 70). For each unavailable simulation engine, you can remap objects to an available simulation engine or start the simulation engine. You have the following options:
   - To start a simulation engine, click the Start Back-End button for the Missing simulation engine.

     If there is more than one unavailable simulation engine, as you start them individually, the dialog box redisplays to show only those that are still unavailable. If you start all of the required simulation engines, the dialog box closes and the scenario loads.
   - To start all missing simulation engines, click the Start All Back-Ends button.
   - To remap objects for a missing simulation engine, select an available simulation engine from the Remap To list for the Missing simulation engine.

— To remap all objects to an available simulation engine, select an available simulation engine from the Map All To list.

When you select a simulation engine in the Map All To list, it sets the same simulation engine in the lists for each specific missing simulation engine. Put another way, when you click OK to close the dialog box, VR-Forces uses the remapping specified for each missing simulation engine. It ignores the setting for Map All To. Map All To is just a quick way to set all missing simulation engines to the same available one.

3. If you decided to remap objects to an available simulation engine, click OK. VR-Forces remaps the objects and the scenario loads.

## 7.6. Running a Scenario

If you want to use VR-Forces to simply observe a remote simulation, you can start it, open a terrain database, and wait for it to pick up messages from the network. However, you will probably use VR-Forces to run scenarios that have locally simulated simulation objects.

When you load a scenario, it opens in the paused state unless you start with the **-L** and **-r** back-end command line options.

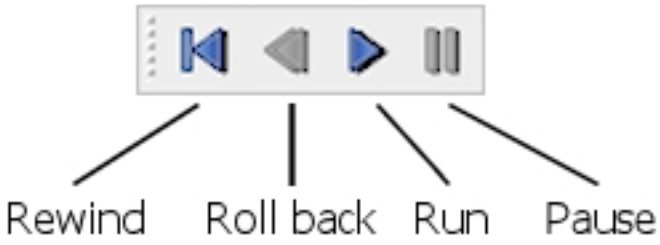
---

When you run a scenario, VR-Forces saves a snapshot of the state of the scenario in memory. However, it does not save the scenario to disk. We recommend that you save new or edited scenarios before you run them. If you choose not to, it is your responsibility to remember to rewind to the initial scenario snapshot if you want to save the starting point of the scenario.

---

➤ To run a scenario, choose **Simulation > Run Scenario**, or click the Run button ( ) on the Simulation Control Toolbar (Figure 71).

**Figure 71. Simulation Control Toolbar**




### 7.6.1 Changing the Simulation Speed

You can set the speed of a simulation to run faster or slower than real-time. If you are running VR-Forces with time management, the Simulation Time Scale Toolbar has no effect on simulation speed.

! If you increase the speed at which a scenario runs, the frame rate is reduced and performance of models may degrade.

➤ To change the speed of a simulation, click an option on the Simulation Time Scale Toolbar (Figure 72).

**Figure 72. Simulation Time Scale Toolbar**

### Configuring the Simulation Time Scale Toolbar

By default, the range for the Simulation Time Scale Toolbar is 1 to 15. You can change the range. To change the range, edit the following lines in *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default_GuiSettings.grsx*:

```
<myTimescaleLow>1</myTimescaleLow>
<myTimescaleHigh>15</myTimescaleHigh>
```

To change the options on the time scale buttons, edit the myTimescaleButtons elements:

```
<myTimescaleButtons>1;2;5;10;15</myTimescaleButtons>
```

If you want the Simulation Time Scale Toolbar to use a slider as in VR-Forces 4.6.1 and earlier, instead of discrete buttons, set the myTimescaleButtonMode to 0:

```
<myTimescaleButtonMode>0</myTimescaleButtonMode>
```

### Changing Simulation Parameters when Increasing the Time Scale

When you increase the time scale in scenarios that have many entities, particularly if they are fast moving entities such as aircraft, simulation quality may degrade. VR-Forces lets you change the dead-reckoning algorithm, frame mode, and frame time automatically to settings that may improve simulation quality.

These settings are configured in *./appData/settings/vrfSim/fastForwardSettings.mtl*. The comments in the file explain the acceptable values for each parameter. The following is an example configuration:

```
(fast-forward-settings
    (fast-forward-entry
        (play-speed 3)
        (settings
            (dead-reckon-algorithm Static)
            (frame-mode 2)            ;; fixed frame
            (frame-time 1.0)
        )
    )
    (fast-forward-entry
        (play-speed 6)
        (settings
```

```
            (dead-reckon-algorithm Static)
            (frame-mode 2)            ;; fixed frame
            (frame-time 2.0)
        )
    )
)
```

Each fast-forward entry specifies a time scale speed at which it takes effect. When you change the time scale, VR-Forces finds the highest play-speed specified in this file that is less than the current speed and updates the settings accordingly. If the current speed is less than the lowest value, default settings are used.

## 7.6.2 Pausing a Scenario

When you pause a simulation, local simulation objects stop executing plans and tasks. Display of remote entity activity continues as it is received over the network.

➤ To pause a simulation, choose **Simulation > Pause Scenario**, or click the Pause button ( ) on the Simulation Control Toolbar (Figure 72 on the previous page).

## 7.6.3 Rewinding a Scenario

If you are running a scenario and want to start it over again, you can rewind it. You can rewind a scenario to its initial state, which is captured as a snapshot, and you can roll back to any snapshot or checkpoint (if snapshots and checkpoints are enabled).

When you rewind a scenario, all back-ends are set to the paused state.

---

An initial snapshot is taken of a scenario when you play it even if periodic snapshots is not enabled. The initial snapshot is used for rewinding.

---

➤ To rewind a scenario, choose **Simulation > Rewind to Scenario Start**, or click the Rewind Scenario to the Beginning button ( ) on the Simulation Control Toolbar (Figure 72 on the previous page).

If you do not pause a scenario before you rewind it, it starts playing again immediately.

### Rolling Back to a Snapshot or Checkpoint

You can roll back to any of the available snapshots or checkpoints. When you roll back to a snapshot, VR-Forces loads the scenario as it existed at the point of that snapshot. When you run the snapshot, all snapshots from a later time than the one you rolled back to are deleted. Older snapshots are kept in memory. New snapshots are taken starting from the loaded snapshot.

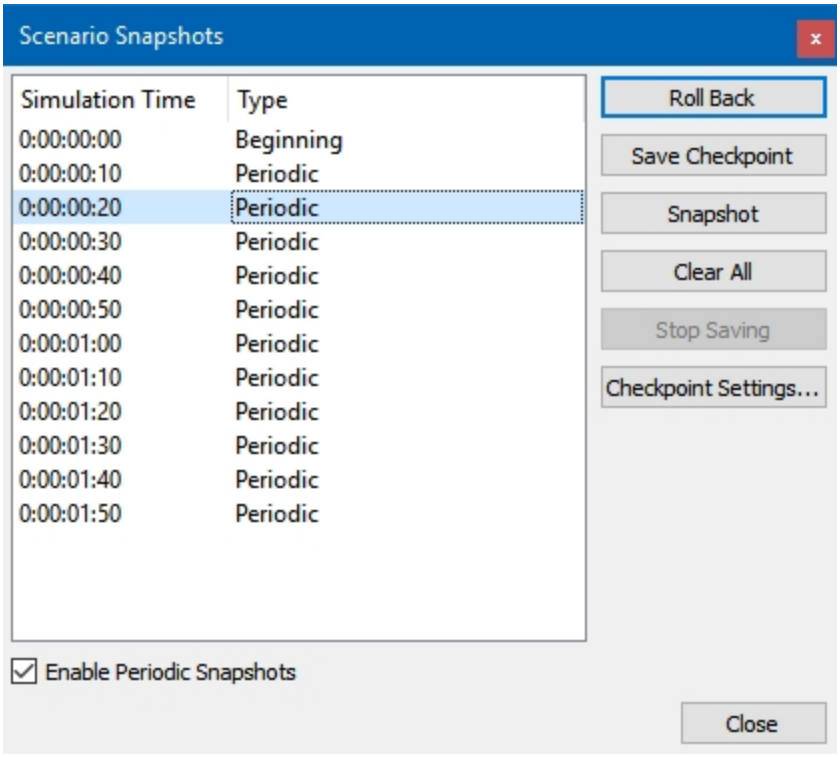
Once snapshots are deleted based on the maximum number of snapshots being reached, you cannot roll back to them. If you have saved periodic checkpoints, you can load them using the Load Scenario command on the File menu.

For details about checkpoints and snapshots, please see "7.8. Checkpoints and Snapshots" on page 247.

➤ **To roll back to a snapshot or checkpoint:**

1. Choose **File > Scenario Snapshots**, or on the Checkpoint Settings page, click Show Snapshots. The Scenario Snapshots dialog box opens (Figure 73).
2. Select the snapshot or checkpoint you want to roll back to.

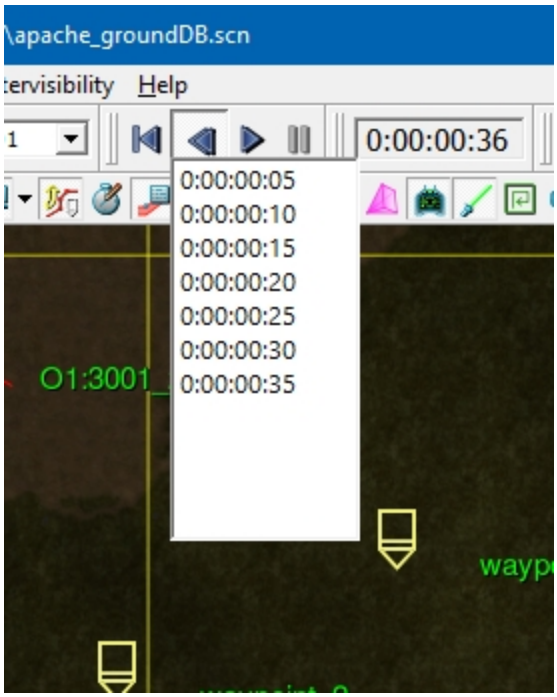
**Figure 73. Scenario Snapshots dialog box**




3. Click Roll Back.

You can also display a list of snapshots and checkpoints by clicking the Snapshots button ( ) on the Simulation Control Toolbar (Figure 74).

**Figure 74. Snapshot list**




### 7.6.4 Closing a Scenario

When you close a scenario, the terrain stays loaded. Checkpoints and snapshots remain in memory until a new scenario is loaded. Therefore, if you click Rewind after closing a scenario, the scenario opens again.

➤ To close a scenario, choose **File > Close Scenario**, or click the Close Scenario button on the File Toolbar.

## 7.7. Reinitializing a Scenario

Sometimes when you load a scenario that was created in a previous version of VR-Forces, entities do not behave as they did previously due to changes to systems. Usually, the way to fix this problem is to delete the objects, create new instances of the object type, and reconstruct their plans or tasks. Unfortunately, when you create a new object, it is assigned a unique ID. Since the unique ID for the newly created objects will be different from those of the deleted objects, any plans or tasks that referenced the deleted objects will not work, because they depend on the unique ID to identify the object that they are referencing. If you need to recreate an object and maintain its unique ID, you can reinitialize a scenario.

When you reinitialize a scenario, VR-Forces deletes all simulation objects and creates them again with the same unique IDs they originally had. This preserves task and plan relationships. However, this process does not preserve the entire state of entities. If you reinitialize a checkpointed scenario, it may lose information that is saved as part of a system. Plans are restarted, so the current task might be cleared. So there may be cases where reinitializing causes more problems than it solves.

Given this consideration, you should only use this option for scenarios that are at zero simulation time and only if you are sure that it is the only option. You may want to save a backup of the scenario in case you want to revert to it and try fixing it by manually deleting the offending object and adjusting other aspects of the scenario as needed.

➤ **To reinitialize a scenario:**

1. Optionally, save a backup of the scenario in case you want to revert to the original state.
2. Choose **File > Reinitialize Scenario**.

## 7.8. Checkpoints and Snapshots

As noted in"7.3. Saving a Scenario" on page 230 , each time you save a scenario, you are essentially creating a checkpoint. A checkpoint saves the state of a scenario to disk and allows you to run the scenario starting from the point at which it was saved. Since a checkpoint is saved to disk, you can return to it at any time. However, the time spent saving to disk may briefly interrupt scenario progress.

Sometimes VR-Forces users want to be able to quickly return to an earlier point in a simulation without the processing overhead required to save checkpoints. As an alternative or complement to checkpoints, you can save snapshots.

Snapshots save the state of a scenario to memory. You can quickly roll back to any saved snapshot and start running the scenario from that point. When you roll back to a snapshot, all snapshots that were taken at a later time than the rollback point get discarded and new snapshots get saved.

When you load a scenario, any snapshots in memory get discarded.

You can configure the frequency with which snapshots are saved and how many to keep in memory at a time. You can save snapshots as checkpoints.

### 7.8.1 Saving Checkpoints

You can save checkpoints in the following ways:

- Save the scenario.
- Save a snapshot as a checkpoint.
- Enable periodic checkpointing.

Checkpoints are saved to the same directory as the base scenario unless you specify otherwise. If periodic checkpoints are enabled, the Status bar displays the time until the next checkpoint.

If simulation objects are executing scripted tasks, some information regarding the tasks is not saved. For details, please see "32.2.3 Limitations for Checkpointing Scripts" on page 764.

When you run a checkpoint, simulation objects resume the tasks that they were executing at the time the checkpoint was saved. If detonations were scheduled or if missiles were in flight, they resume their former state.

### Saving an Individual Checkpoint

Whenever you save a scenario, it creates a checkpoint.

➤ To save an individual checkpoint, choose **File > Save Scenario**.

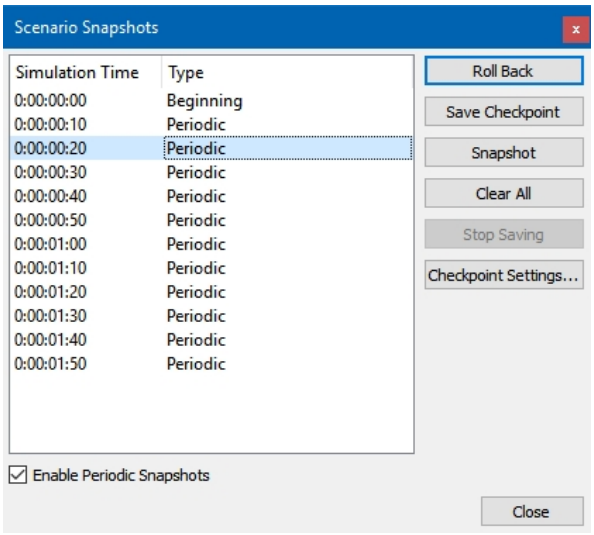
### Saving Snapshots as Checkpoints

If you enable periodic snapshots, you can save the snapshots as checkpoints.

➤ **To save a snapshot as a checkpoint:**

1. Choose **File > Scenario Snapshots**. The Scenario Snapshots dialog box opens (Figure 75). It lists all of the snapshots available.

**Figure 75. Scenario Snapshots dialog box**




2. Select the snapshots that you want to save as checkpoints.
3. Click Save Checkpoint. The snapshots are saved to checkpoints.

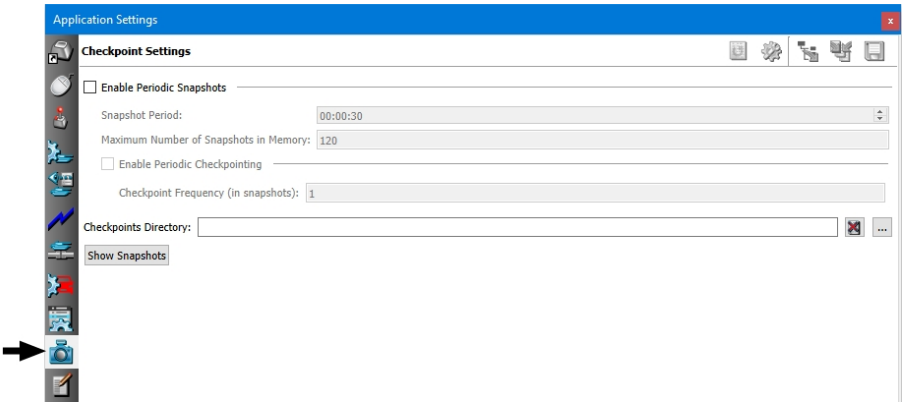
### Scheduling Periodic Checkpoints

You can configure VR-Forces to save checkpoints at regular intervals. When VR-Forces saves a checkpoint, it is actually saving the snapshot taken at the checkpointing interval. Therefore, to schedule periodic checkpoints, you must enable periodic snapshots.

➤ **To schedule checkpoints:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Checkpoint Settings page (Figure 76).

**Figure 76. Checkpoint Settings page**




3. Select the Enable Periodic Snapshots check box.
4. In the Snapshot Period box, specify how frequently VR-Forces should take snapshots.
5. Select the Enable Periodic Checkpointing check box.
6. In the Checkpoint Frequency box, specify how frequently to save checkpoints as a function of the number of snapshots taken. For example, 4 means save every fourth snapshot as a checkpoint. If you save snapshots every 30 seconds, then you would save a checkpoint every two minutes.
7. Optionally, specify the directory in which to save the checkpoints. If you leave this box blank, they are saved to the directory where the base scenario is located.

### Disabling Periodic Checkpointing

➤ **To disable periodic checkpointing:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Checkpoint Settings page (Figure 76).
3. Clear the Enable Periodic Checkpointing check box.

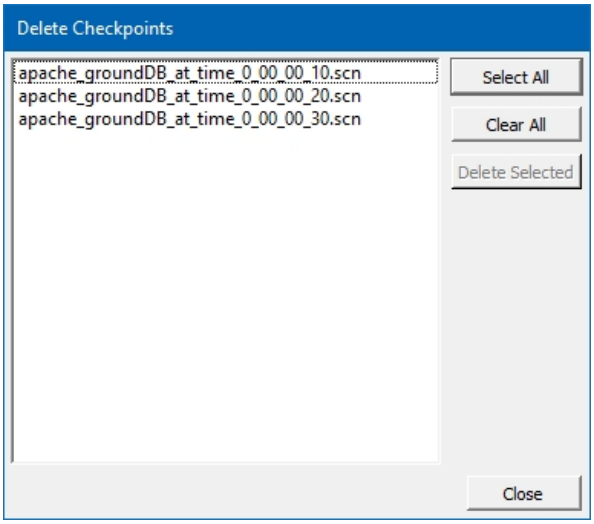
## 7.8.2 Deleting Checkpoints

You can delete checkpoints manually in a file browser, like you can delete any other files on your computer. You can also easily delete them from the front-end.

➤ **To delete checkpoints:**

1. Choose **File > Delete Scenario Checkpoints**. The Delete Checkpoints dialog box opens (Figure 77).

**Figure 77. Delete Checkpoints dialog box**




2. Select the checkpoints that you want to delete.
3. Click Delete Selected.

## 7.8.3 Creating Snapshots

You can create snapshots manually and you can specify that they be created automatically at a specified interval.

### Creating Snapshots Manually

➤ **To create a snapshot:**

1. Choose **File > Scenario Snapshots**, or on the Checkpoint Settings page, click Show Snapshots. The Scenario Snapshots dialog box opens (Figure 75 on page 248).
2. Click Snapshot.

---

You can also create a snapshot by clicking the Snapshot button ( ) on the Scenario Toolbar.

---

### Enabling Periodic Snapshots

When you enable periodic snapshots, you specify how frequently to take them, in simulation time, and the maximum number to store in memory at a time. If the number of snapshots reaches the maximum, VR-Forces drops the oldest snapshot and adds the newest.

➤ **To enable periodic snapshots:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Checkpoint Settings page (Figure 76 on the previous page).

3. Select the Enable Periodic Snapshots check box.
4. In the Snapshot Period box, specify how frequently VR-Forces should take snapshots.
5. In the Maximum Number of Snapshots in Memory box, specify how many snapshots to keep in memory.

### 7.8.4 Clearing the Snapshot List

Snapshots are stored in memory and listed in the Scenario Snapshots dialog box. They get cleared automatically when you load a scenario or rewind a scenario and run it again. If you roll back to a snapshot and run the scenario, all snapshots later than the rollback point are deleted. You can also clear snapshots manually.

When you clear the snapshot list, VR-Forces keeps the initial snapshot so that you can still rewind the scenario.

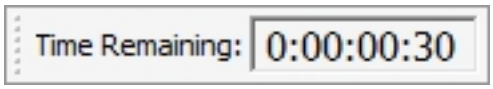
➤ **To clear the snapshot list:**

1. Choose **File > Scenario Snapshots**, or on the Checkpoint Settings page, click Show Snapshots. The Scenario Snapshots dialog box opens (Figure 75 on page 248).
2. Click Clear All.

## 7.9. Pausing a Scenario Automatically

You can specify a scenario end time (in simulation time). As the scenario progresses, the amount of time remaining is displayed in the Simulation Time Remaining Toolbar (Figure 78). When the scenario reaches this time it stops. You can resume the scenario by clicking the Play button.

**Figure 78. Simulation Time Remaining Toolbar**




You can set the scenario end time when you create a scenario or after you have loaded it.

### 7.9.1 Setting the Scenario End Time for a New Scenario

The default scenario end time for new scenarios is 0 – do not pause the scenario.

➤ **To set the scenario end time for a new scenario:**

1. Create a new scenario as described in "7.1. Creating a Scenario" on page 213.
2. In the New Scenario dialog box, select the Advanced tab.
3. In the Scenario End Time boxes, specify an end time in days, hours, minutes, and seconds.
4. Continue the scenario creation procedure.

### 7.9.2 Setting the Scenario End Time for an Open Scenario

You can set the scenario end time for a scenario after you open it. If you set a time that is sooner than the current elapsed time, the scenario stops immediately.

➤ **To set the scenario end time for an open scenario:**

1. Choose **File > Scenario Properties**. The Scenario Properties dialog box opens.
2. Select the Advanced tab
3. In the Scenario End Time boxes, specify an end time in days, hours, minutes, and seconds.
4. Click OK.
5. Optionally, save the scenario. Remember that if the scenario is already running or has advanced and then paused, the end time is saved to a checkpoint, not the original scenario.

## 7.10. Running VR-Forces in Batch Mode

Batch mode allows you to run one or more scenarios multiple times, without direct action through the graphical user interface. A scenario run in batch mode runs with the parameters in the scenario file, except that you can override the random number seed.

Batch mode is read-only. You cannot save a scenario, create simulation objects or objects, pause the scenario, or otherwise change it, while a batch is running. However, you can view the Objects List Panel, plan windows, and open informational dialog boxes. You can close a scenario that is running in batch mode and resume control of VR-Forces.

### 7.10.1 The Batch File

A batch mode file contains the information that VR-Forces needs to run scenarios in batch mode. Batch mode offers the following options:

- Run a particular scenario multiple times.
- Run a series of different scenarios (batches), each of which can be run multiple times.
- Run from the command line using one back-end. If a scenario was created using multiple back-ends, you cannot run it in batch mode using this method.
- Run from the VR-Forces front-end using one or more back-ends.
- Generate Logger Control messages to have the MAK Logger record each simulation.

For each batch (one scenario run one or more times) within the batch file, you can:

- Specify the length of time the simulation is to run (in real time or simulation time).
- Specify the object parameter database to use.

- Specify that the random number seed used be the value specified in the scenario file, a value specified in the batch file, or be computer generated.

A batch file has the file extension *.bsn*.

## 7.10.2 Creating a Batch File

To run VR-Forces in batch mode, you create a batch file (*.bsn*). VR-Forces supplies a sample batch file. Use it as a model for creating your own batch files.

➤ **To create a batch file:**

1. Create scenarios as you would any scenario. (For details, please see "7.1. Creating a Scenario" on page 213.)
2. In a text editor, open the sample batch file provided with VR-Forces.
3. Save the batch file under a new name, with the file extension *.bsn*.
4. Replace the sample values with your own, as described in "7.10.3 Editing a Batch File" below.
5. Save the new batch file.

## 7.10.3 Editing a Batch File

A batch file is written in MAK Technologies Lisp format (MTL). (For information about the MTL format, please see "A.2. MAK Technologies Lisp (MTL) Files" on page 1580.) A batch file starts with parameters that affect the entire batch. Then it has a batch list, which contains one or more batches. Each batch specifies a scenario, the number of times it is to be run, and other parameters. Table 12 describes the parameters.

The following is an example of a batch file:

```
(scenario-batch
    (use-logger-control True)
    (logger-files-path "..\logger_tapes") ;; path is relative to Logger
executable.
    (batch-list
        (batch
            (number-of-runs  2)
            (random-number-seed 4)
            (scenario-filename  "..\data\scenarios\Raid.scnx")
            (sms-filename
                "..\data\simulationModelSets\EntityLevel.sms")
            (simulation-run-duration 0 : 0 : 0 : 30.000000) ;; simulation time
        )
        (batch
            (number-of-runs  3)
            (scenario-filename
                "..\data\scenarios\Apache.scnx")
            (sms-filename
                "..\data\simulationModelSets\EntityLevel.sms")
            (run-duration 0 : 0 : 0 : 20.000000) ;; real time
```

```
            )
        )
)
```

**Table 12. Batch file parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **Scenario-batch parameters** | |
| **use-logger-control** | Specifies whether or not to generate Logger Control messages. Options:<br>• False – Do not generate messages.<br>• True – Generate messages to create Logger files for each run of each batch. |
| **logger-files-path** | If **use-logger-control** is True, specifies the directory in which to store Logger files. The path can be absolute or relative to the Logger executable. |
| **Batch-list parameters** | |
| **number-of-runs** | Specifies how many times to run the scenario in this batch run entry. |
| **random-number-seed** | Optional. Overrides the random number seed in the scenario file. It specifies a random number seed as follows:<br>• -1 – use a value generated by the computer. Values are different for each run of this batch.<br>• Any non-negative integer – use the number specified for each run of the batch. |
| **scenario-filename** | Specifies the scenario to be run in this batch run entry. The scenario can be specified as an absolute path or a path relative to the directory in which the executable is located. |
| **sms-filename** | Optional. Overrides the simulation model set specified by the scenario and specifies the simulation model set file to use. |

**Table 12. Batch file parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **simulation-run-duration** | Specifies the duration in simulation time that the simulation will run. It is mutually exclusive with **run-duration**. If both are specified, VR-Forces uses **simulation-run-duration**.<br><br>! Specify hours, minutes, and days as integers, for example 15. Specify seconds as real numbers, for example, 15.0. |
| **run-duration** | Specifies the duration in real time that the simulation will run. For example, if a scenario has a time scale set to 2 (twice real time), and a run-duration of 10 minutes, 20 minutes of simulation time will elapse before the batch stops running this scenario. It is mutually exclusive with **simulation-run-duration**.<br><br>! Specify hours, minutes, and days as integers, for example 15. Specify seconds as real numbers, for example, 15.0. |

## 7.10.4 Running VR-Forces in Batch Mode

➤ **To run VR-Forces in batch mode:**

1. Start VR-Forces. If any of the scenarios you plan to run in batch mode require multiple back-ends, start the back-ends with the required site and application IDs.
2. If you are going to generate Logger control messages, start the MAK Data Logger. (Make sure to use the same protocol as you are using for VR-Forces.)
3. Choose **File > Load Batch File**, or click the Load Batch File button ( ) on the File Toolbar. The Load Batch File dialog box opens.
4. Select the batch file you want to run.
5. Click Open.

VR-Forces begins running the first scenario in the batch file. When VR-Forces finishes running the batch file, it closes the final scenario.

- When VR-Forces runs a batch file, if it cannot load a scenario specified in the file, it skips the scenario and goes to the next batch entry in the file.
- Automatic remapping is always enabled for batch mode.

#### Running in Batch Mode from the Command Line

If your scenarios only need one back-end, you can run a batch file from the command line.

➤ To run a batch from the command line, use the **-B** parameter, with the back-end in separate mode, for example:

```
vrfSimDIS -s 1 -a 3001
  -B "../userData/scenarios/batchfile.bsn"
```

The scenario begins to run automatically.

### 7.10.5 Recording Batch Scenarios

You can generate Logger Control messages and save scenario output to a Logger file. You must start the Logger before you run the batch scenario.

If you generate Logger Control messages, each simulation is saved individually by the Logger, with a filename in the format:

<batch_scenario_name>_<scenario_run_number>_<random_number_seed>.lgr

You can specify the directory in which you want the Logger file to be saved.

The MAK Data Logger does not record batch file runs if a previous recording exists. By default, the Logger does not allow you to overwrite existing files using the remote control API. So, once you record a batch run, you cannot record a subsequent run of the same batch. You can work around this problem by editing the *lgrConfig.xml* file to permit overwriting of Logger files. Make the following edits in the configuration file for each protocol for which you want to record batch runs:

Add the following lines to the <defaults> section:

```
<var name="processRemoteControl" type="bool" value="true"/>
<var name="recordRemoteControl" type="bool" value="true"/>
<var name="allowDeleteRemoteControl" type="bool" value="true"/>
```

Add the following lines to the <commands name="startup"> section:

```
<command domain="Simulation" protocol="DIS"
command="SetRemoteControlSettings">
    <param name="process" var="processRemoteControl"></param>
    <param name="record" var="recordRemoteControl"></param>
    <param name="allowDelete" var="allowDeleteRemoteControl"></param>
</command>
```

Use the appropriate value for the protocol attribute. For DIS, set **listenWhenIdle** to false:

```
<var name="listenWhenIdle" type="bool" value="false"/>
```

## 7.11. Sending Run and Pause Messages to Simulation Participants

By default, when you run or pause a scenario, VR-Forces sends scenario control messages that are meaningful only to VR-Forces applications that are part of the current session. Sometimes VR-Forces users want all of the participants in a simulation, which may include non-VR-Forces applications, to know when VR-Forces

runs or pauses a scenario. You can achieve this by telling VR-Forces to send standard Start/Resume and Stop/Freeze messages instead of the VR-Forces-specific messages. All of the applications that are listening for them will receive them and can respond as needed.

---

If you are running multiple VR-Forces sessions and you use Start/Freeze messages, all of the sessions receive them, which may defeat the purpose of having separate sessions.

---

➤ **To enable use of Start/Freeze messages:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the GUI Settings page (Figure 57 on page 220).
3. Select the Send Standard Start/Resume and Stop/Freeze PDUs check box.

## 7.12. Recording VR-Forces Simulations with the MAK Data Logger

You can use the MAK Logger to record VR-Forces simulations and then play them back for review. If you want to view a Logger file in VR-Forces (as opposed to some other MAK viewer, such as VR-Vantage Stealth), note the following considerations:

- Do not load the original scenario in VR-Forces while you view the recording. Just load the terrain database that the simulation requires.
- If you are using HLA 1516, do not record a simulation and then immediately play it back. Exit the applications and start a new federation. Trying to play back the file in the federation from which it was recorded can result in name reservation conflicts and applications may crash.

If a scenario includes plans that have view control messages, the Logger records them. When you play the recording, VR-Forces and other VR-Vantage applications will change view modes in response to them. This feature lets you easily create demonstrations that change views.

# 8. Scenario Events

Scenario events let you provide non-simulated input to scenario participants.


8.1. Introduction to Scenario Events ..... 260
8.2. Creating a Scenario Event ..... 260
8.2.1 Adding Content to a Scenario Event ..... 263
8.2.2 Adding Linked Events ..... 263
8.3. Adding Intelligence Objects ..... 265
8.4. Starting a Scenario Event ..... 267
8.4.1 Controlling Scenario Events from a Plan ..... 268
8.5. Ending a Scenario Event ..... 269
8.6. Enabling and Disabling Scenario Events ..... 270
8.7. Sorting the Event List ..... 270
8.8. Deleting a Scenario Event ..... 271
8.9. Showing and Hiding Scenario Events ..... 271

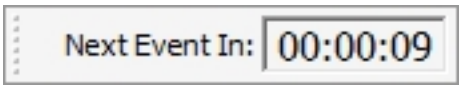
# 8.1. Introduction to Scenario Events

A scenario event represents an incident or condition that exercise participants can respond to, for example a political event, a natural disaster, or some other novel event that might require a participant to respond. VR-Forces does not simulate scenario events. Objects in a simulation do not interact with scenario events and scenario events do not directly affect simulation objects (plans can include conditional statements that are contingent on scenario events). Scenario events are placeholders that allow you to provide a richer simulation experience.

Events can include rich text, audio files (WAV), video (AVI) and raster files (JPG, PNG, SVG, or BMP). Use of these media allow you to expand the scope and quality of a training experience without needing to build a complicated simulation to support it. The flexibility of scenario events allows you to use them in any way that adds value to an exercise, for example, mission briefings, and video teaching points.

Unless you disable it, when an event gets triggered, VR-Forces displays a dialog box that displays the event information. If a scenario has events that are triggered by simulation time or time of day, the Scenario Event Toolbar displays the amount of time until the next event (Figure 79).

**Figure 79. Scenario Event Toolbar**



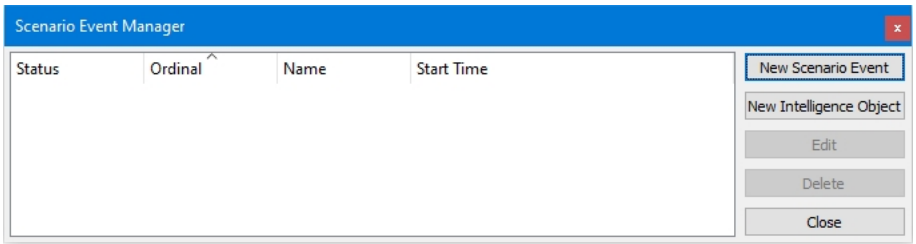

If you want to play MP4 video for scenario events, you must install an appropriate driver on your computer.

# 8.2. Creating a Scenario Event

➤ **To create a scenario event:**

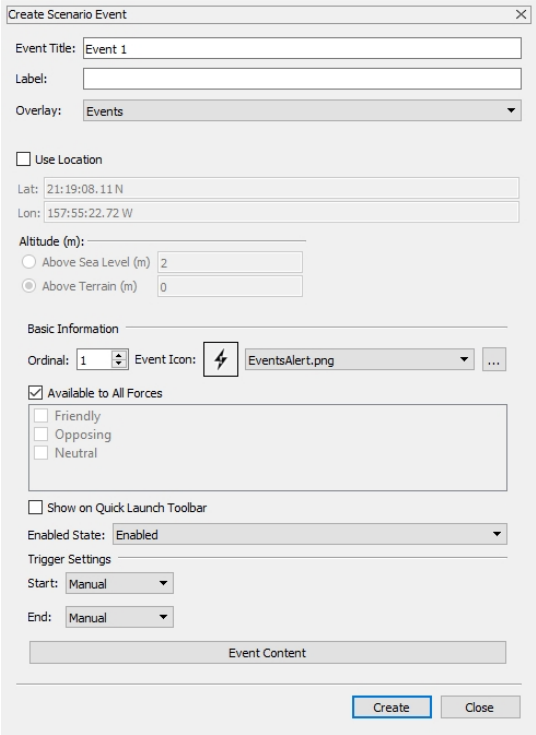
1. Choose **Simulation>Scenario Events**. The Scenario Event Manager opens (Figure 80).

**Figure 80. Scenario Event Manager**



2. Click New Scenario Event. The Create Scenario Event dialog box opens (Figure 81).

**Figure 81. Create Scenario Event dialog box**




3. Table 13 describes the parameters you can specify for a scenario event:

**Table 13. Scenario event parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Event Title | A short descriptive name for the event. |
| Label | The label to be displayed. (optional) |
| Extended labels | If present, fill out extended labels. (optional) |
| Overlay | The overlay to which the event is assigned. Default: Events. |
| Use Location | You can specify a location for an event icon to appear when the event is triggered. You can click on the map where you want the event to occur or enter a location in any of the location formats. (optional) |
| Ordinal | Events are numbered in the sequence they are created. You can change the numbers to suit your purposes. |

**Table 13. Scenario event parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Event Icon | Select an appropriate icon to appear on the map at the location and time of the event. This icon is also used on the Quick Launch toolbar. (optional) |
| Forces | Select the forces you want to get the event when it occurs. You can select multiple forces. |
| Show on Quick Launch Toolbar | Adds the event to the Quick Launch toolbar for one-click activation. |
| Start | Specify one of the options for how the event gets triggered:<br>— Manual. Event will be triggered manually by the scenario administrator.<br>— Time of Day. Specify the time of day that should trigger the event.<br>— Linked. Specify the linking events as described in "8.2.2 Adding Linked Events" on the facing page that should trigger the event..<br>— Simulation Time. Specify the simulation time that should trigger the event..<br>— Immediate. The event starts as soon as it is created. |
| End | Specify how the end of the event is triggered, as follows:<br>— Manual. Ended by the scenario administrator.<br>— Time of Day. Specify the time of day at which it should end.<br>— Duration. Specify how long the event lasts.<br>— Permanent. The event does not end until you manually change the end type and end it.<br><br>! If you trigger an event by time and the specified time is prior to the start time of the scenario, the event is triggered when the scenario starts. |
| Event Content | Add content as described in "8.2.1 Adding Content to a Scenario Event" on the facing page. |

4. Click Create. Your new event appears in the event list. You can sort events by any of the column headings.

### 8.2.1 Adding Content to a Scenario Event

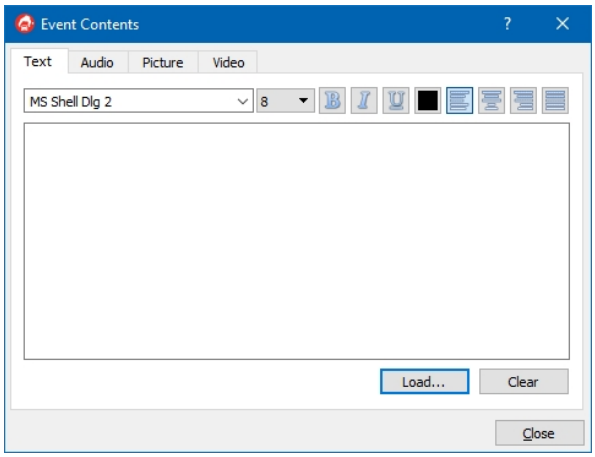
The content for a scenario event can be text, audio, video, graphics (BMP, JPG, SVG, or PNG), or some combination of them.

For sound and video files, you can specify files in any format that your computer supports.

➤ **To add content to a scenario event:**

1. Create an event as described in "8.2. Creating a Scenario Event" on page 260.
2. In the Create Scenario Event dialog box, click Event Content. The Event Contents dialog box opens (Figure 82).

**Figure 82. Event Contents dialog box**




3. Select the tab for the content type that you want for this event. You can have more than one type of content.
4. For video, picture, or audio:
   a. Click Choose. A file selection dialog box opens.
   b. Select the file you want to add.
   c. Click Open.

   For text:
   a. Type the text you want in the dialog box or click Load and select a text file to load.
   b. Format the text as desired.
5. Optionally, test video and audio files by clicking the Play button.
6. Click Close.

### 8.2.2 Adding Linked Events

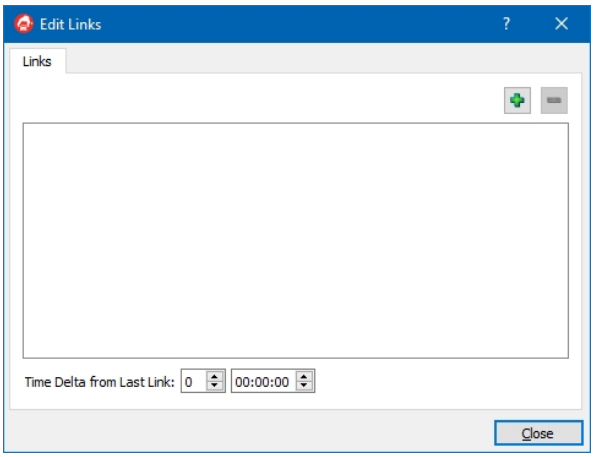
You can link multiple events to a single preceding event (many to one) or link one event to another linked event if your scenario requires it (one to one). You can create a linked event to trigger at any time after the preceding event it is linked to. For

example, an event of a bridge being washed away could be linked to a preceding event such as reporting heavy rains, flooding, or rising river levels.

➤ **To add a link to a scenario event:**

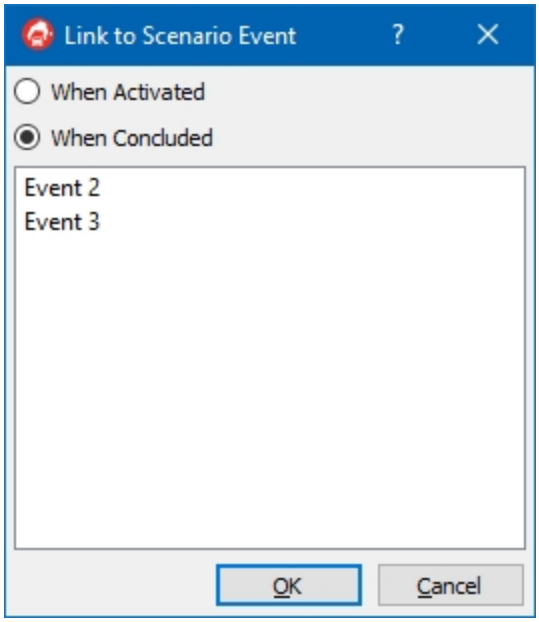
1. Create an event as described in "8.2. Creating a Scenario Event" on page 260.
2. For the Start trigger, select Linked. The Edit Links button is added to the dialog box.
3. Click Edit Links. The Edit Links dialog box opens (Figure 83).

**Figure 83. Edit Links dialog box**



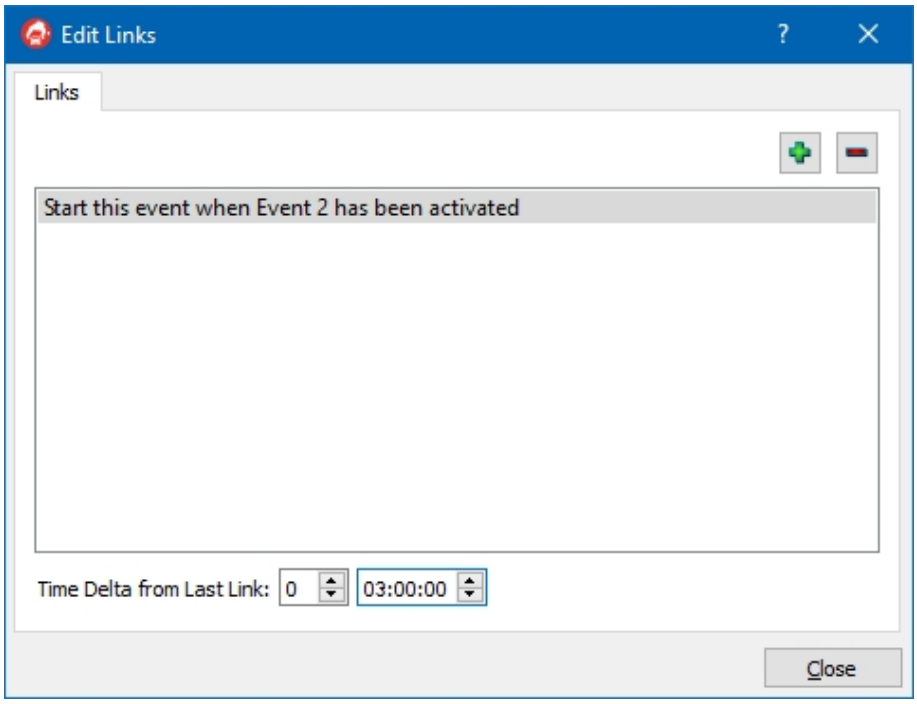

4. Click the Add button ( ). The Link to Scenario Event dialog box opens (Figure 84).

**Figure 84. Link to Scenario Event dialog box**



5. Select When Activated or When Concluded to indicate the relationship of the event to its linked event.
6. Select the event you want to link to.
7. Click OK.
8. Optionally, add additional linked events.
9. Specify the time delta. This is the amount of time to wait after the preceding event before triggering the linked event. If you specify multiple linked events, this is the time after all event conditions have been met.

**Figure 85. Edit Links dialog box with links**




10. Click OK.

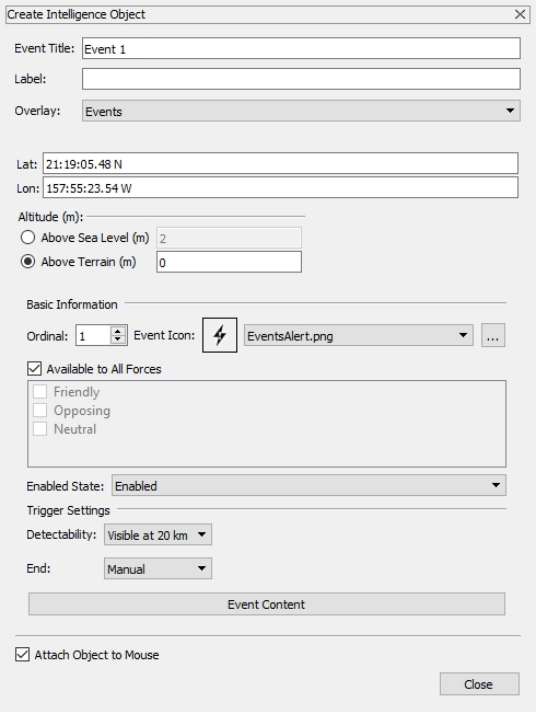
## 8.3. Adding Intelligence Objects

Intelligence objects are tactical graphics that trigger scenario events when they are detected by a simulation object. By default, intelligence objects are detected by visual sensors. However, you can configure them to be detectable by other sensors.

➤ **To add an intelligence object:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scenario Events**. The Scenario Event Manager opens (Figure 80 on page 260).
2. Click New Intelligence Object. The cursor changes to draw mode and the Create Intelligence Object dialog box opens (Figure 86).

**Figure 86. Create Intelligence Object dialog box**




3. Click where you want the intelligence object to be located, or type its location in the dialog box.
4. Specify basic information and trigger settings as you would for a scenario event ("8.2. Creating a Scenario Event" on page 260), except that instead of configuring a start event, you specify detectability.

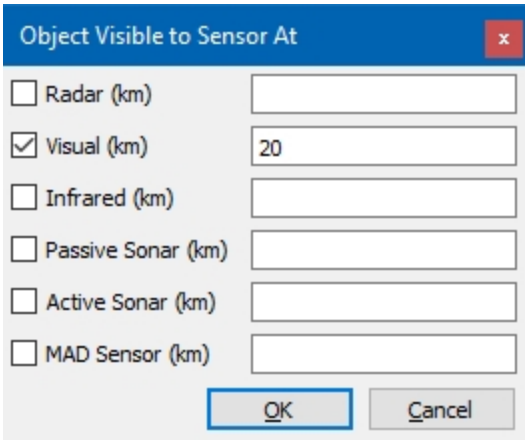
   To use only a visual sensor for detectability, select a distance in the Detectability list.

   To use other sensors, specify detectability as follows:

   a. In the Detectability list, select User Defined. The Edit Detectability button is added to the dialog box.

   b. Click Edit Detectability. The Object Visible to Sensor At dialog box opens (Figure 87).

**Figure 87. Set Sensor Signatures**




c. Select each sensor that you want to use to detect the intelligence object.

d. For each sensor specify the sensor signature. (Although sensor signatures are technically unit-less, as a practical matter the sensor signature represents the distance in kilometers at which the object can be sensed.)

e. Click OK.

f. Click Create.

## 8.4. Starting a Scenario Event

A scenario event starts based on the Start Event trigger, by a command in a plan, or manually. Regardless of how a scenario event's trigger is set up, you can manually start an event at any time.

---

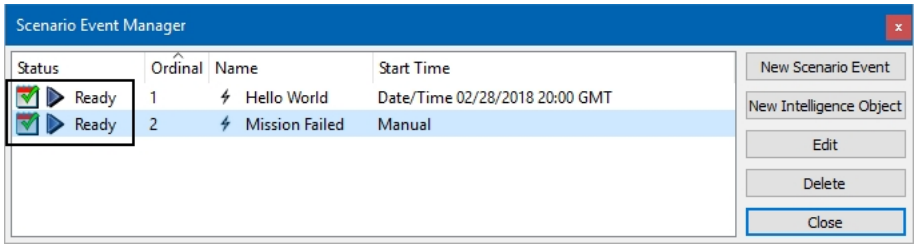
If an event has been added to the Quick Launch toolbar, you can start it by clicking its icon on the toolbar.

---

➤ **To start a scenario event manually:**

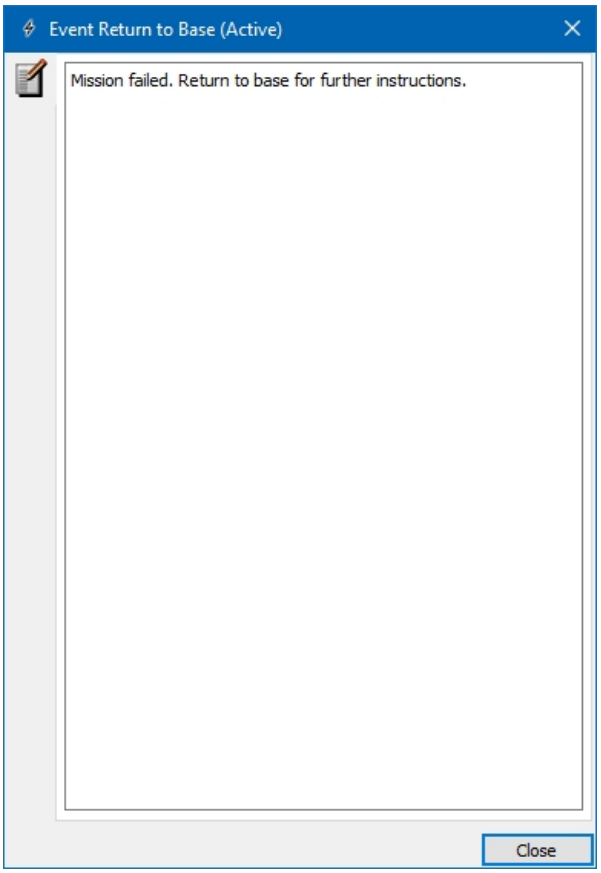
1. Choose **Simulation > Scenario Events**. The Scenario Event Manager opens (Figure 88).

**Figure 88. Scenario Event Manager, Play button**



2. In the Status column, click the Play button ( ) for the event you want to start (Figure 88). The Event window opens (Figure 89).

**Figure 89. Event window**




## 8.4.1 Controlling Scenario Events from a Plan

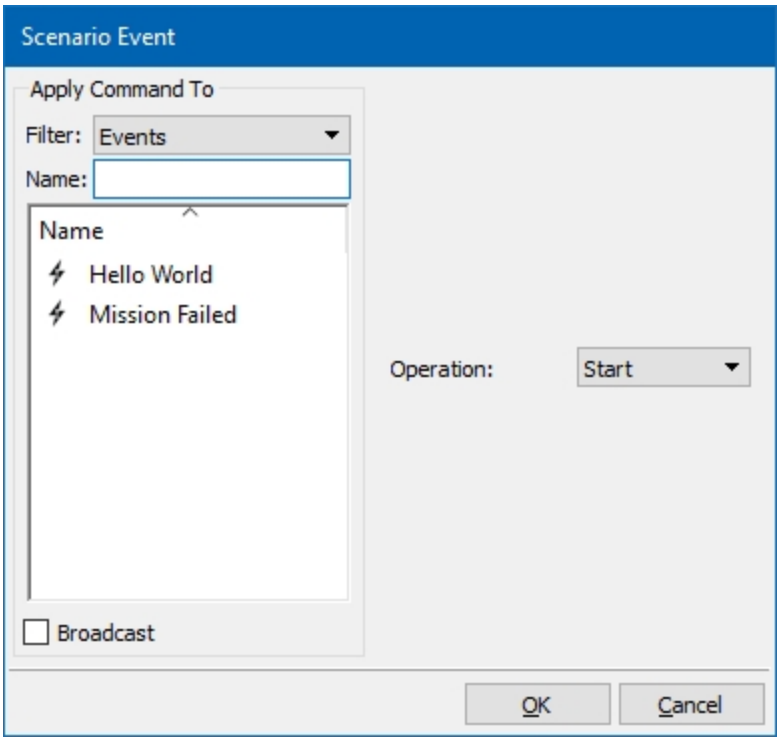
You can start, stop, enable, and disable scenario events from plans. For example, a simulation object's plan could have an Entity In Area condition and when that condition is satisfied, you could trigger an event such as, "The enemy has seized your headquarters!" or "Congratulations, you have seized the enemy headquarters!".

Scenario events can also be used as the condition in a trigger. For details, please see "Chapter 36. Plan Concepts" on page 857 and "Chapter 37. Writing Plans" on page 873.

➤ **To send a scenario event in a plan:**

1. In a plan window, choose **Commands > Scenario Event**. The Scenario Event dialog box opens (Figure 90).

**Figure 90. Scenario Event dialog box**




2. Select the event you want to send.
3. Select an option in the Operation list.
4. Click OK.

## 8.5. Ending a Scenario Event

An event ends based on the End Event trigger setting, by a command in a plan, or manually.

---

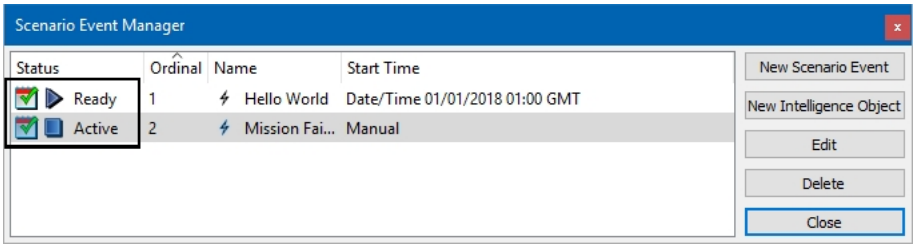
When a scenario event ends, the Event window does not close automatically. The title bar indicates that the event is over by changing the text from Active to Inactive. You must close the window manually.

---

➤ **To end a scenario event manually:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scenario Events**. The Scenario Event Manager opens.
2. In the Status column, click the Stop ( ) button for the event you want to stop (Figure 91).

**Figure 91. Scenario Event Manager, Stop button**




If the Status column says Active, but does not have a Stop button, this is a permanent event. To end it, you must edit the event and change the End mode to Manual. A Stop button will be displayed.

3. Click Close.

## 8.6. Enabling and Disabling Scenario Events

You can enable and disable scenario events. You can change their status from the Scenario Event Manager, the Edit Scenario Event dialog box, and from plans. For details about enabling and disabling a scenario event from a plan, please see "8.4.1 Controlling Scenario Events from a Plan" on page 268.

➤ **To enable or disable a scenario event in the Scenario Event Manager:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scenario Events**. The Scenario Event Manager opens (Figure 91 above).
2. In the Status column, click the Enable/Disable ( ) button for the event you want to stop (Figure 91).

➤ **To enable or disable a scenario event in the Edit Scenario Event dialog box:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scenario Events**. The Scenario Event Manager opens (Figure 91).
2. Select the event you want to edit.
3. Click Edit. The Edit Scenario Event dialog box opens (similar to Figure 81 on page 261).
4. In the Enabled State list, select the option you want.
5. Click Update.

## 8.7. Sorting the Event List

Scenario events have ID numbers. The numbers have no effect on when events get sent. They are simply a convenience for instructors and players. You can sort the list by number or by any other column listed.

➤ To change the sort order of scenario events, click the heading of the column that you want to sort on.

## 8.8. Deleting a Scenario Event

➤ **To delete a scenario event:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scenario Events**. The Scenario Event Manager opens (Figure 80 on page 260).
2. Select the event you want to delete.
3. Click Delete.

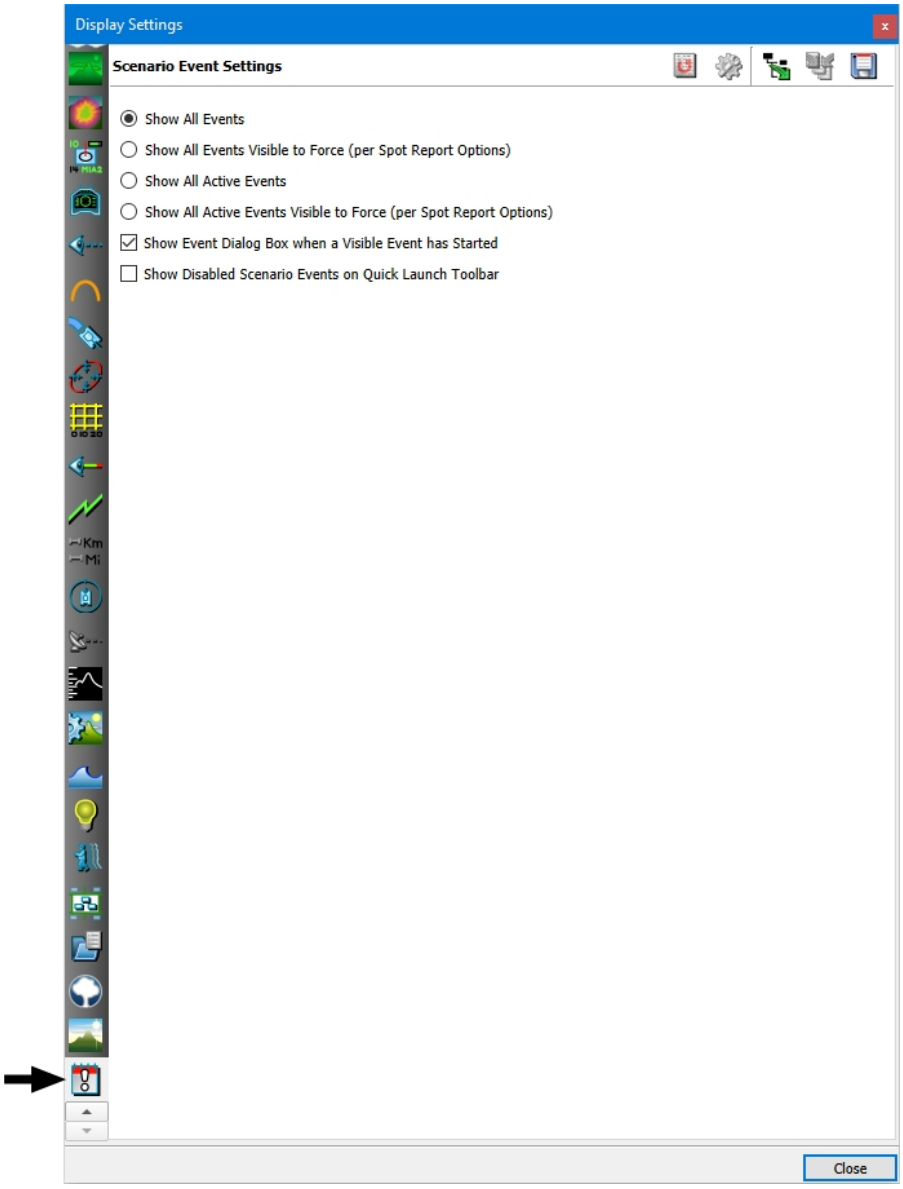
## 8.9. Showing and Hiding Scenario Events

You can specify which events, if any, are displayed and whether or not the Event dialog box is displayed when an event gets triggered. The visible to force settings refer to visibility according to spot report settings and are based on the force availability specified when a scenario event is created or edited.

➤ **To show or hide scenario events:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Scenario Event Settings page (Figure 92).

**Figure 92. Scenario Event Settings page**




3. Select an option for viewing events.

# 9. Target Detection and Combat Features

This chapter describes VR-Forces features related to target detection and acquisition, such as spot reports, hostility relationships, lasing, and munition damage.


9.1. Displaying Spot-Reported Simulation Objects ..... 274
9.1.1 Enabling or Disabling Spot Reports ..... 274
9.1.2 Configuring the Spot Reports Viewpoint ..... 275
9.1.3 Configuring the Spot Reports Certainty Level ..... 277
9.1.4 Applying Spot Reports to Tactical Graphics ..... 278
9.1.5 Displaying Labels for Spot Reports ..... 279
9.1.6 Using Spot Reports in Tasks ..... 279
9.1.7 Displaying Track Histories for Spot-Reported Objects ..... 279
9.2. Displaying Tactical Data Link Messages ..... 281
9.2.1 Configuring the Display of TDL Messages ..... 281
9.2.2 Displaying Track Histories for TDL Messages ..... 282
9.3. Managing Force Hostility Relationships ..... 283
9.3.1 Changing a Force's Hostility in a Plan ..... 284
9.4. Detecting Targets ..... 285
9.4.1 Target Detection and Spot Reports ..... 286
9.4.2 Lasing Targets ..... 287
9.5. Engagement Zones ..... 288
9.6. Electronic Warfare ..... 289
9.7. Radar Coverage ..... 289
9.7.1 Enabling the Display of Radar Coverage ..... 291
9.7.2 Displaying Radar Coverage ..... 291
9.7.3 Configuring Radar Coverage Displays ..... 291
9.8. Using Sonar ..... 292
9.8.1 Propulsion Noise and Sonar ..... 293
9.9. Launching Counter Measures (Chaff and Flare) ..... 294
9.10. Modeling Artillery Munitions ..... 296

# 9.1. Displaying Spot-Reported Simulation Objects

A spot report is a report by a simulation object to members of its force that it has detected a member of another force.

By default, VR-Forces displays simulation objects based on complete ground truth. That is, it shows all simulation objects in their exact location. However in real-world combat and training situations, participants rarely know where all other participants are, including those in their own force. This is called the fog of war. VR-Forces can simulate the fog of war by displaying simulation objects based on spot reports rather than ground truth.

When you display simulation objects based on spot reports, you do not see all members of forces other than your own. You only see spot-report icons for other-force simulation objects that have been detected by members of your force. Spot-report icons are similar to simulation object icons, but they do not move as simulation object icons do. Furthermore, since spot reports lose value over time as the detected entities may move to different locations, VR-Forces maintains a certainty level for the location of spot-reported entities. If a detected entity is not detected again for a period of time, its certainty level decreases and its icon becomes increasingly transparent to show that it is less certain that the entity is at the reported location.

---

- Generating spot reports can reduce the performance of the simulation engine.
- When spot reports are enabled, VR-Forces does not display icons for dead entities.
- When you rewind a scenario, the global spot report setting persists. Spot report settings for individual entities revert to the settings saved with the scenario.
- If you enable spot reports and you use Stealth observer mode, VR-Forces uses 2D icons for the entities that are identified by spot reports. You do not see any 3D models.

---

You can find links to videos that demonstrate simulation object classification and spot reports at https://www.mak.com/support/tutorials, or click the camera icon next to the procedure whose video you want to view.

## 9.1.1 Enabling or Disabling Spot Reports

You can enable or disable spot reports globally or per simulation object. To set spot reports for a simulation object, use the Spot Reports set data request, as described in "34.71. Spot Reports" on page 830.

By default, when you enable spot reports they are sent only to the front-end (for display purposes). They do not get sent to other simulation objects. This reduces the performance impact of spot reports on the back-end, but it means that entities do not receive that information for targeting purposes. Their spot report receivers do not show any spot reports in the Information dialog box. If you want spot reports to be sent to simulation objects, you must enable spot reports as described here and also specify that spot reports be sent to simulation objects using the Spot Report set data request. For more information, see "34.71. Spot Reports" on page 830.

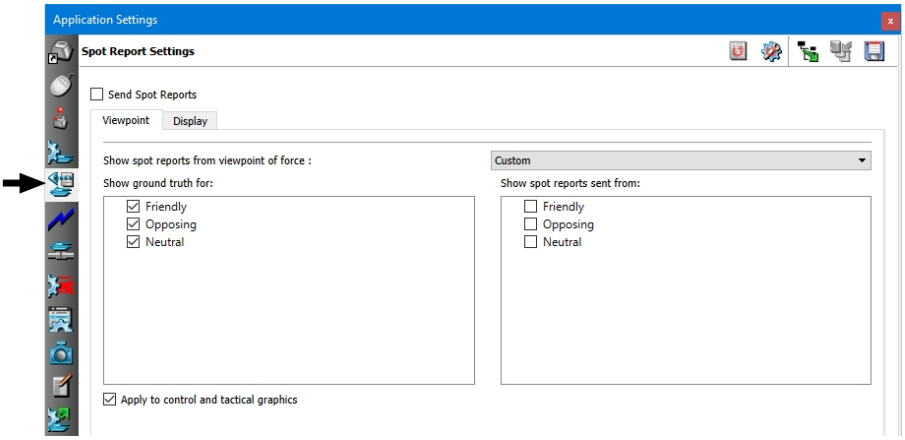
### Enabling or Disabling Spot Reports Globally

When you enable or disable spot reports globally, the setting is applied to all simulation objects that have not explicitly set spot reports on or off with the Spot Reports set data request. The setting persists, which allows you to set a simulation object to use the global spot report setting.

➤ **To enable or disable spot reports for all simulation objects:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Spot Report Settings page.
3. Select the Viewpoint tab (Figure 93).

**Figure 93. Spot Report Settings page, Viewpoint tab**




4. Select or clear the Send Spot Reports check box. The change takes effect immediately.

## 9.1.2 Configuring the Spot Reports Viewpoint

The spot report viewpoint determines which simulation objects and tactical graphics are shown using ground truth and which are shown using only spot reports. You can select preconfigured viewpoints or create custom viewpoints.

- If you create a simulation object for a force that is not visible based on the viewpoint setting, after you create the simulation object, it disappears. Therefore we recommend that you show ground truth for all forces when you are creating simulation objects and tactical graphics.
- When you rewind a scenario, the viewpoint configuration stays the same as in the previous run of the scenario. The global spot report setting stays the same. Entity-specific spot report settings revert to the settings saved with the scenario.

### Selecting a Preconfigured Spot Report Viewpoint

VR-Forces provides viewpoints for the friendly, opposing, and neutral forces. In each of these viewpoints, VR-Forces displays ground truth for the viewpoint force and spot reports for the other forces. For example, if you select the Friendly force viewpoint, all simulation objects in Force 1 are displayed showing ground truth. All other simulation objects are displayed only if they have been detected by a friendly simulation object that is configured to send spot reports.

When you select a preconfigured viewpoint, the check boxes in the windows in the Map View group box are automatically set to match the selected viewpoint.

➤ **To configure spot reports:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Spot Report Settings page.
3. Select the Viewpoint tab (Figure 93 on the previous page).
4. Select an option in the Show Spot Reports from Viewpoint of Force list.

### Configuring Custom Spot Report Viewpoints

If you do not want to use a preconfigured viewpoint, you can create a custom viewpoint. This option allows you to see ground truth and spot reports from a mix of forces. When you create a custom viewpoint, the Show Spot Reports from Viewpoint of Force list displays the viewpoint that you have created (usually Custom).

It is possible to create a custom configuration in which no objects are displayed, so think carefully about your choices.

➤ **To configure a custom viewpoint:**

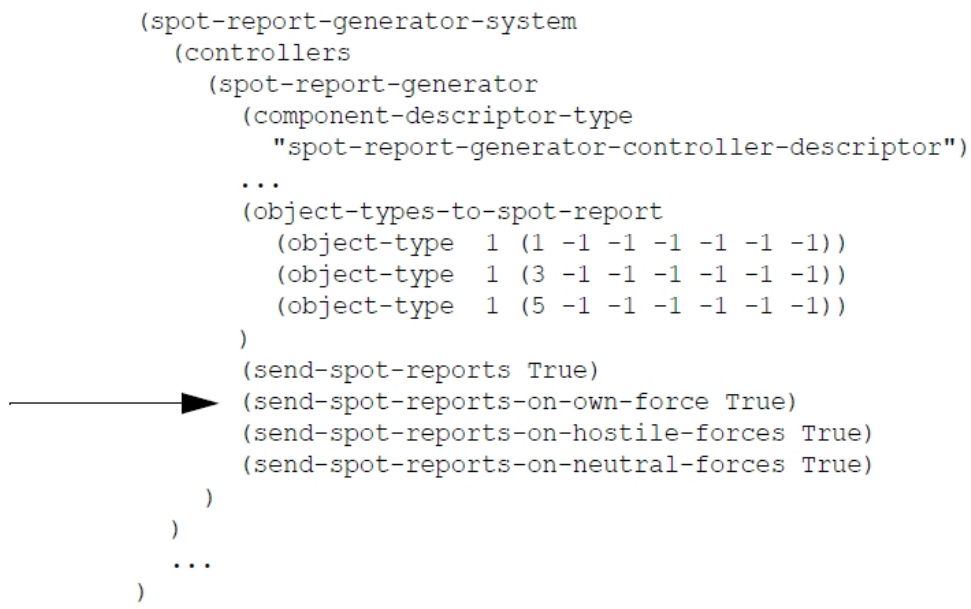
1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Spot Report Settings page.
3. Select the Viewpoint tab (Figure 93 on the previous page).
4. In the Show Ground Truth For window, select the forces for whom you want ground truth to be displayed. You would usually select the same forces as the ones selected in the Show Spot Reports Sent From window.

5. In the Show Spot Reports Sent From window, select the forces whose spot reports you want to display. In other words, if you are not showing ground truth for the opposing force and only want to see the opposing force simulation objects that are detected by friendly and neutral simulation objects, then select the Friendly and Neutral check boxes.

### Configuring Same-Side Fog of War

There may be cases when you want to simulate same-side fog of war. That is, members of a force do not know where other members of their force are unless detected by a simulation object and reported using a spot report.

To simulate same-side fog of war, you must edit the *spot-report-generator.sysdef* file. You might want to create a customized file that you can assign only to the simulation objects that you want to simulate same-side fog of war. (You can use the Simulation Object Editor to change the spot report systems that simulation objects use.) In the system definition file change the **send-spot-reports-on-own-force** parameter to True, as follows:



```
(spot-report-generator-system
  (controllers
    (spot-report-generator
      (component-descriptor-type
        "spot-report-generator-controller-descriptor")
      ...
      (object-types-to-spot-report
        (object-type  1 (1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
        (object-type  1 (3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
        (object-type  1 (5 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
      )
      (send-spot-reports True)
      (send-spot-reports-on-own-force True)
      (send-spot-reports-on-hostile-forces True)
      (send-spot-reports-on-neutral-forces True)
    )
  )
  ...
)
```

You can change other defaults in the sysdef file, including limiting the **object-types-to-spot-report**. Reducing the number of objects detected makes spot reporting less computationally expensive. You can also change the values of the **send-only-to-front-end** and **broadcast** parameters to change the default behavior of sport reports.

## 9.1.3 Configuring the Spot Reports Certainty Level

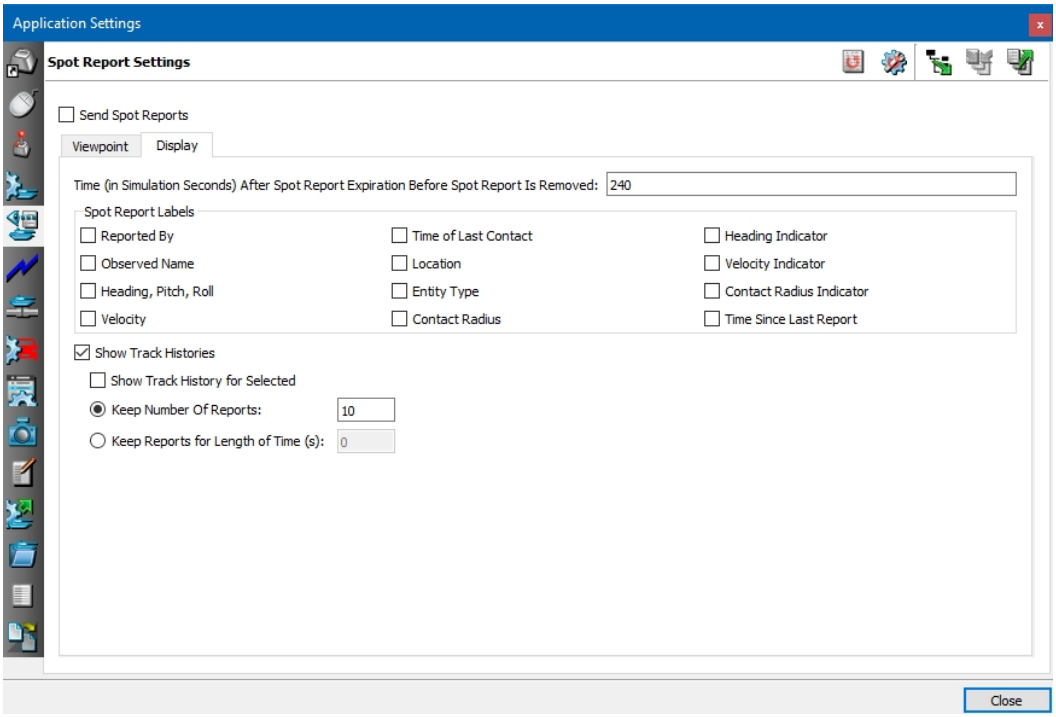
It is assumed that as time passes the validity, or certainty, of a spot report declines. To simulate this decline in certainty, VR-Forces can display the icons that represent spot-reported entities at increasing levels of transparency. Once the initial validity period has expired, the spot report degrades over a configurable amount of time. The icon's transparency decreases in four steps, with each step being 25% of the total time allotted for degradation.

The validity period is specified by the **report-resend-period** parameter in the *spot-report-generator.sysdef* file in the SMS you are using. The default is 60 seconds.

➤ **To configure the amount of time, in seconds, over which a spot report degrades:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Spot Report Settings page.
3. Select the Display tab (Figure 94).
4. Specify a value, in seconds, in the Time After Spot Report Expiration Before Spot Report Is Removed box.

**Figure 94. Spot Reports Option, Display tab**




## 9.1.4 Applying Spot Reports to Tactical Graphics

If a tactical graphic is assigned to a force, you can display it based on spot reports rather than ground truth. The same criteria are applied to their display as are applied to the display of simulation objects. For information about how to assign objects to a force, see "40.1. Creating Tactical Graphics" on page 937.

1. To apply spot reports to tactical graphics:
2. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
3. Select the Spot Report Settings page.

4. Select the Viewpoint tab (9.1.4).
5. Select the Apply to Control and Tactical Graphics check box.

### 9.1.5 Displaying Labels for Spot Reports

You can display labels (symbol decorations) for the icons of spot-reported entities with information similar to that for regular simulation object icons.

➤ **To display spot report labels:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Spot Report Settings page.
3. Select the Display tab (Figure 94 on the previous page).
4. In the Spot Report Labels group box, select the labels that you want to display.

---

You can also enable labels for spot-reported entity icons on the Display Settings dialog box, Symbol Decoration Settings page.

---

### 9.1.6 Using Spot Reports in Tasks

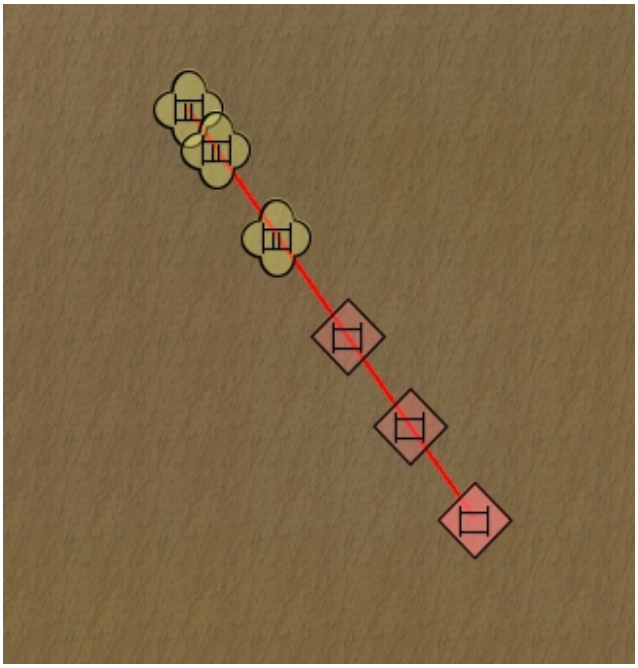
Spot-reported simulation objects are listed in the Objects List Panel and other simulation object lists. Although the spot report icon in the display window may not show information about a spot-reported object if it has not been identified, the entry in the list includes the object name. You can filter the list to show only spot-report icons.

You can select a spot-reported object as a parameter in tasks that require you to select a simulation object. If you use a spot-reported simulation object in a task, VR-Forces carries out the task based on the ground truth of the reported simulation object, not the location of the spot-report icon. For example, if you specify a spot-reported object in the Follow Entity task, and the target simulation object moves, the following simulation object will move toward the actual location of the spot-reported simulation object, not its location when the spot report was made.

### 9.1.7 Displaying Track Histories for Spot-Reported Objects

You can display track histories for spot-reported simulation objects (Figure 95). When you enable display of track histories for spot-reported objects, it does not actually cause them to be displayed. You must also enable them for the selected spot-reported object and select a spot report.

**Figure 95. Spot report track history**



The Track Histories setting on the Observer menu and the Observer toolbar do not affect the display of track histories for spot-reported objects.

➤ **To display track histories for a spot-reported simulation object:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Spot Report Settings page.
3. Select the Display tab (Figure 94 on page 278).
4. Select the Show Track Histories check box.
5. Select the Show Track History for Selected check box.
6. Select the spot-reported object whose track history you want to show.

### Pinning a Spot Report Track History

If you want to see more than one spot report track history at a time, you can pin track histories. If a track history is pinned, you do not have to select the spot-reported simulation object to see its track history.

➤ **To pin the track history for a spot-reported object:**

1. Select the spot-reported simulation object.
2. Choose **Objects > Decorations > Pin Track History**.

# 9.2. Displaying Tactical Data Link Messages

VR-Forces can display information about tactical data link (TDL) messages received over the network or sent by simulation objects that have a tactical data link message generator system. Systems are provided for each major platform type. TDL support is provided by an ITAR-controlled plug-in. However, if you do not have the plug-in, the base VR-Forces product simulates the effect of generating TDL messages.

When VR-Forces receives a TDL message, it displays:

- An icon similar to a spot report icon.
- Optionally, the time since the last report.
- Optionally, the data that accompanies the message, in up to 9 lines. The number of lines to display is configurable. There is no particular type of information or ordering information associated with the lines. It is simply based on the data in the TDL message.
- Optionally, track histories for the TDL reports.

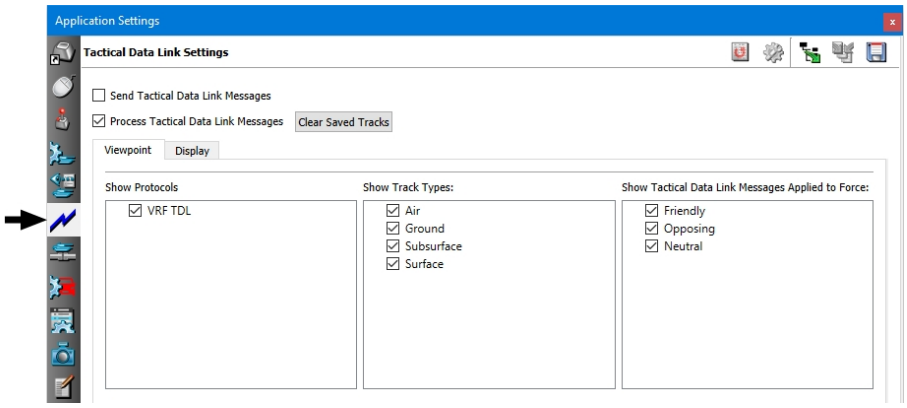
For information about configuring the display of TDL messages, please see "9.2.1 Configuring the Display of TDL Messages" below.

You can enable TDL messaging globally or for individual simulation objects. To enable TDL messages for a specific simulation object, use the TDL Messaging set data request. For details, please see"35.49. TDL Messaging" on page 853.

➤ **To enable TDL messaging globally:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Tactical Data Link Settings page (Figure 96).

**Figure 96. Tactical Data Link Settings page, Viewpoint tab**




3. To send TDL messages, select the Send Tactical Data Link Messages check box.
4. To display TDL messages, select the Process Tactical Data Link Messages.

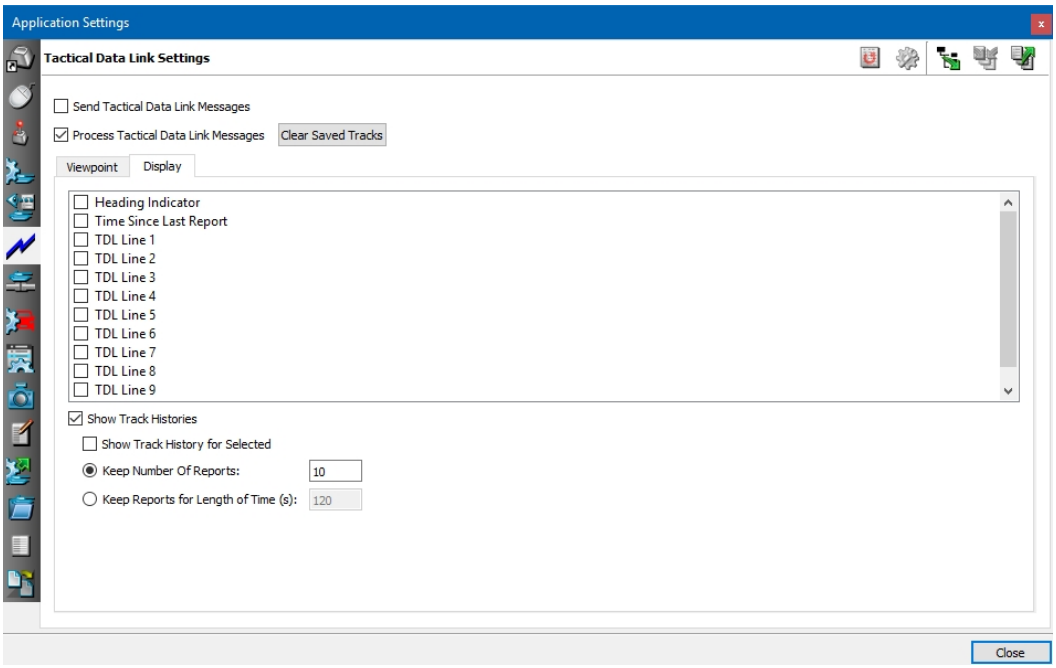
## 9.2.1 Configuring the Display of TDL Messages

You can configure how VR-Forces displays TDL messages.

➤ **To configure TDL messaging:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Tactical Data Link Settings page.
3. Select the Viewpoint tab (Figure 93 on page 275).
4. In the Show Protocols list, select the type of protocol for which you want to show messages. (If the ITAR plug-in is installed, the VR-Forces TDL messages are not sent.)
5. In the Show Track Types list, select the platforms for which you want to show messages.
6. In the force list, select the forces from which you want to display messages.
7. Select the Display tab (Figure 97).

**Figure 97. Tactical Data Link Settings, Display page**




8. Select check boxes for the data you want displayed next to the TDL message icon.
9. Optionally, select the Show Track Histories check box.
10. If you enable track histories, specify whether or not to show track histories only for the selected entity, the number of reports to track, and how long to display them. For information about how to display track histories, please see "9.2.2 Displaying Track Histories for TDL Messages" below.

## 9.2.2 Displaying Track Histories for TDL Messages

You can display track histories for tactical data link (TDL) messages. When you enable display of track histories for TDL messages, it does not actually cause them to be displayed. You must also enable them for the selected message and select a message.

The Track Histories setting on the Observer menu and the Observer toolbar do not affect the display of track histories for TDL messages.

➤ **To display track histories for a TDL message:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Tactical Data Link Settings page.
3. Select the Display tab (Figure 97 on the previous page).
4. Select the Show Track Histories check box.
5. Select the Show Track History for Selected check box.
6. Select the TDL message whose track history you want to show.

### Pinning a TDL Message Track History

If you want to see more than one TDL message track history at a time, you can pin track histories. If a track history is pinned, you do not have to select the message to see its track history.

➤ **To pin the track history for a TDL message:**

1. Select the message.
2. Choose **Objects > Decorations > Pin Track History**.

## 9.3. Managing Force Hostility Relationships

VR-Forces categorizes simulation objects as members of a force, such as friendly, opposing, or neutral. By default, friendly forces and opposing forces are hostile to each other. Neither is hostile towards neutral forces. You can change force hostility relationships dynamically. This may be particularly useful if you are simulating an environment in which civilian populations become hostile to a particular force, or in which armed militias, for example, switch allegiances to other forces.

You can add new forces in the Simulation Object Editor. For details, please see "61.12. Managing the Forces List" on page 1252. You can change a force's hostility in a global or individual plan. For details, please see "9.3.1 Changing a Force's Hostility in a Plan" on the next page.

You can change the default hostility relationships by editing the *forceHostilty.mtl* file for the simulation model set you are using (for example, *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/forceHostilty.mtl*).

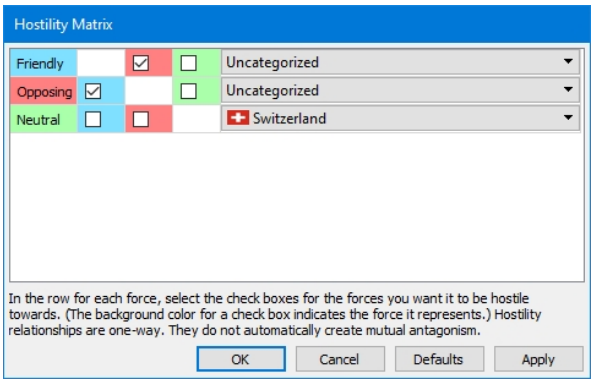
When you change force hostility at runtime, the changes are saved as part of the scenario. The hostility relationships loaded with a scenario override the hostility relationships loaded by the simulation model set's hostility file.

Hostility relationships are not reciprocal. For example if you set neutral force simulation objects to be hostile to friendly force simulation objects, that does not mean that friendly force simulation objects are hostile to neutral force simulation objects.

➤ **To change the force hostility matrix:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Hostility Matrix.** The Hostility Matrix dialog box opens (Figure 98). Each row in the matrix lists the hostility relationships between that row's force and all of the other forces (represented by color-coded columns).

**Figure 98. Hostility Matrix**



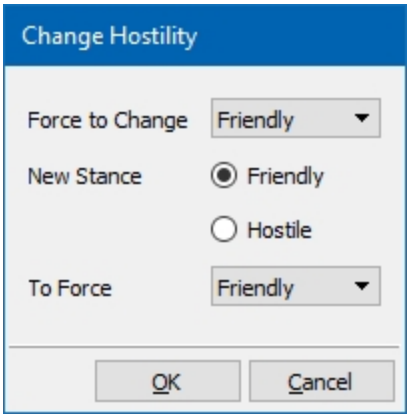

2. For each row in the matrix, select the check boxes in the columns for the forces that you want this force to be hostile towards. Clear the check boxes for forces that you do not want it to be hostile towards.
3. If desired, assign a country to a force by choosing it from the drop-down. When you create an entity for that force and the entity has markings defined for that country, then the entity will automatically display those markings.
4. Click OK.

## 9.3.1 Changing a Force's Hostility in a Plan

➤ **To change a force's hostility in a global or local plan:**

1. Open a global plan or an individual plan.
2. Choose **Commands > Change Hostility**. The Change Hostility dialog box opens (Figure 99).

**Figure 99. Change Hostility dialog box**




3. In the Force to Change list, select the force whose hostility you want to change.
4. Select the new force relationship (New Stance), either Friendly or Hostile.
5. In the To Force list, select the force towards which you want to change hostility.
6. Click OK. The command is added to the plan.

## 9.4. Detecting Targets

Simulation objects can have one or more sensors, for example, visual, sonar, or radar, for detecting and identifying other simulation objects. If a simulation object has a Remote Sensor Receiver system, it can use another entity's sensors to discover sensor contacts. (For more information about remote sensors, please see "34.57. Remote Sensor" on page 824.)

When a simulation object detects another simulation object, it assigns it a combat identification (CID) level. If it continues to maintain contact with the simulation object, it upgrades the CID level as follows:

- CID Level 0 – not detected .
- CID Level 1 – Detected: the simulation object is detected, but only its platform is known, for example, ground.
- CID Level 2 – Classified: the simulation object's category is known, for example, tank.
- CID Level 3 – Identified: the simulation object's category and subcategory are known, for example M1A2.
- CID Level 4 – Full Knowledge: all visible information about the simulation object is known.

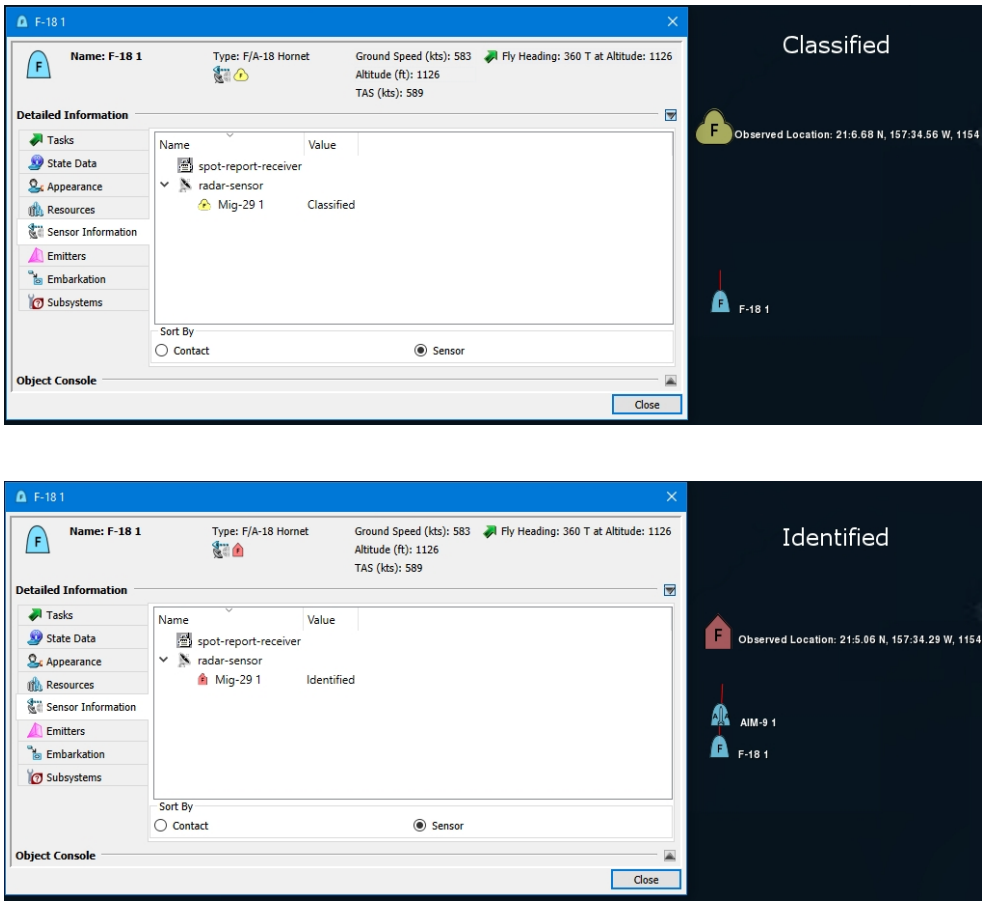
CID levels are assigned based on the distance to the detected simulation object and the length of time that the simulation object has been in contact. You can configure these values in the detection tables (*./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/detection/*.csv*). For details about these configuration files, please see "69.2. Detection Tables" on page 1441.

By default, simulation objects do not fire at a detected hostile simulation object until it achieves the Identified level. You can configure this behavior by changing the **detection-level-to-set-hostility** parameter in the simulation object's sensor system.

Figure 100 shows screen captures of a simulation object as its CID level is advanced from Classified through Identified. In this scenario, spot reports are enabled. Therefore, when a simulation object is detected, it is displayed with a yellow icon, rather than the normal color for the force. It is not given the correct force color until the detected simulation object is CID level Identified.

You can find links to videos that demonstrate simulation object classification and spot reports at https://www.mak.com/support/tutorials.

**Figure 100. Simulation object classification and display when spot reports are enabled**




## 9.4.1 Target Detection and Spot Reports

Simulation object detection and classification can be enhanced by enabling spot reports. Detected simulation objects are assigned CID levels based on length of contact and distance from the detecting simulation object. In some cases, such as a fixed-wing aircraft flying quickly over a battlefield, or a simulation object that is at the farthest point of its range from a target, contact might not be sufficient to advance to the

Identified CID level. In such cases, even though the simulation object is technically capable of firing on the target, it might not do so because the CID level is not high enough.

If spot reports are enabled, the classification of simulation objects in the spot reports that a simulation object receives is combined with the directly sensed information. Therefore, if a simulation object classifies a target at a low CID level, but it receives a spot report that classifies the target at a high CID level, it can fire on the target based on the CID level in the spot report. For example, as noted in the previous paragraph, a fixed-wing aircraft is unlikely to maintain contact with a ground-based simulation object long enough to elevate its CID level to Identified. However, if a member of its force on the ground identifies the target and sends out a spot report indicating CID level 3 or 4, when the fixed-wing aircraft receives the spot report, it can add the target to its target list.

## 9.4.2 Lasing Targets

Some entities, such as DI Lasing, have laser-targeting capability. Others, such as attack helicopters, have laser targeting capability and carry laser-guided missiles. Laser-guided missiles do not use the standard VR-Forces targeting mechanisms. They only fire on targets that are identified by laser beams that have the same laser code as the laser-guided missile launcher. The laser beam could be generated by a laser designator on the same entity (autonomous lasing), or could be generated by another entity.

Laser codes are numbers in the range of 1111-1788 using the digits 1 through 8. Three-digit codes in the range 111-788 are also supported with an implied initial 1 in the code. By default, VR-Forces calculates a unique laser code for each entity when it is created. When you assign a laser code to an entity, any laser beams sent by that entity use the assigned laser code and the missiles carried by that entity (if applicable) use the same code. Therefore, for example, the default behavior for attack helicopters would be to fire their laser-targeted missiles only at targets that they have lased.

A laser-guided missile launcher must be able to see a laser spot and an appropriate target before it fires. If the missile loses the laser spot before it hits the target, it tracks to the last known laser spot.

### Autonomous Lasing

By default, entities that have laser-guided missiles are configured for autonomous lasing. This means that they can lase targets and fire at them without outside intervention (for example, using the Lase Target task). Entities with autonomous lasing enabled identify and fire at targets independently, just like entities that use conventional munitions.

### Synchronizing Laser Codes

There are cases in which you will want more than one entity to use the same laser code. For example, you might want one entity to lase targets (the designator), and another one to fire on them (the shooter). In this case you would assign both entities the same laser code. The designator would be given the hold-fire rule of engagement or not have any missile resources. The shooter would be configured to not lase targets (Lase Autonomous would be set to Off). It would just fire on the targets identified by the designator's laser.

You can synchronize the laser codes of the lasing entity and the firing entity by setting them for each entity with the Laser Code set data request, or you can let VR-Forces synchronize the codes with the Synchronize Laser Code set data request. For details, please see "34.41. Laser Code" on page 815 and "34.76. Synchronize Laser Code" on page 833.

## 9.5. Engagement Zones

Engagement zones are areas associated with ground-based simulation objects and air units that affect their rules of engagement. VR-Forces supports two types of engagement zones – missile engagement zones (MEZ) and joint engagement zones (JEZ). Engagement zones can have infinite height, like most VR-Forces areas, or can have a floor and ceiling, like extruded areas.

MEZs usually refer to zones associated with a ground-based air defense system. The system is permitted to engage targets within this defined area. Multiple engagement zones can be associated with a single air defense system and multiple systems can be associated with an engagement zone. To associate simulation objects with an engagement zone, you use the Engagement Zone set data request. For details, please see "34.26. Engagement Zones" on page 809.

JEZs are zones in which multiple systems can engage targets, usually both air units and ground based units. Successful management of fire in a JEZ may require a mechanism to manage the various systems and to help prevent friendly fire.

When a simulation object that is associated with an engagement zone detects a target, VR-Forces checks its rules of engagement. If the ROE is set to Fire When in Engagement Zone and if the target is in the engagement zone, it can fire on the target. If the target is not in the engagement zone, it cannot fire at it.

Ordinarily, simulation objects do not fire on other simulation objects unless they have a combat identification level of Identified or Full Knowledge. An engagement zone can be set to assume that unknown objects are hostile. In this case, if a simulation object has the Fire When in Engagement Zone rule of engagement, it can fire on unknown objects. For more information, please see"34.10. Assume Unknown is Hostile" on page 801.

Radars detect the position and type of potential targets, but not the force. Therefore, when a simulation object is set to fire on unknown objects, it will fire on objects in its own force if they do not identify themselves as being of the same force. The force of a target is known only if it has an active transponder (IFF is enabled) and it is of the same force as the radar.

Like other areas, engagement zones can be activated and deactivated. If an engagement zone is inactive, simulation objects whose ROE is set to Fire When in Engagement Zone cannot fire at targets when they are in the zone.

You can create engagement zones just like you would other areal objects. For details, please see "Chapter 14. Creating and Placing Objects" on page 363 and "40.1.8 Creating Volumetric (Extruded) Tactical Graphics" on page 941.

## 9.6. Electronic Warfare

In entity-level scenarios, VR-Forces supports radar jamming by entities that have a tactical radar jammer system. The jamming entity must have line-of-sight to the jammed entity and the jammed entity must be within the cone of the electromagnetic emissions from the jamming entity. (For information about electromagnetic emissions, please see "43.12. Displaying Electromagnetic Emissions" on page 996.)

Radar jamming is enabled and set up using the following set data requests:

- "34.2. Add Jamming Target" on page 798.
- "34.38. Jammer State" on page 814.
- "34.39. Jamming Mode" on page 814.
- "34.58. Remove Jamming Target" on page 824.

## 9.7. Radar Coverage

VR-Forces can display the area in which a simulation object's radar can detect objects. The radar coverage area is color coded based on the altitude at which it is testing intersections. Each color shown indicates full visibility at that altitude and above. A sensor might be able to detect simulation objects at a lower altitude, but this is not certain. You can specify the altitudes at which you want to test intersections and can specify the colors used to display the radar coverage.

In 2D, the coverage area is depicted as bands of color (Figure 101). The color indicates the minimum altitude layer at which the radar can see in that direction.

**Figure 101. Radar coverage, 2D and color key**

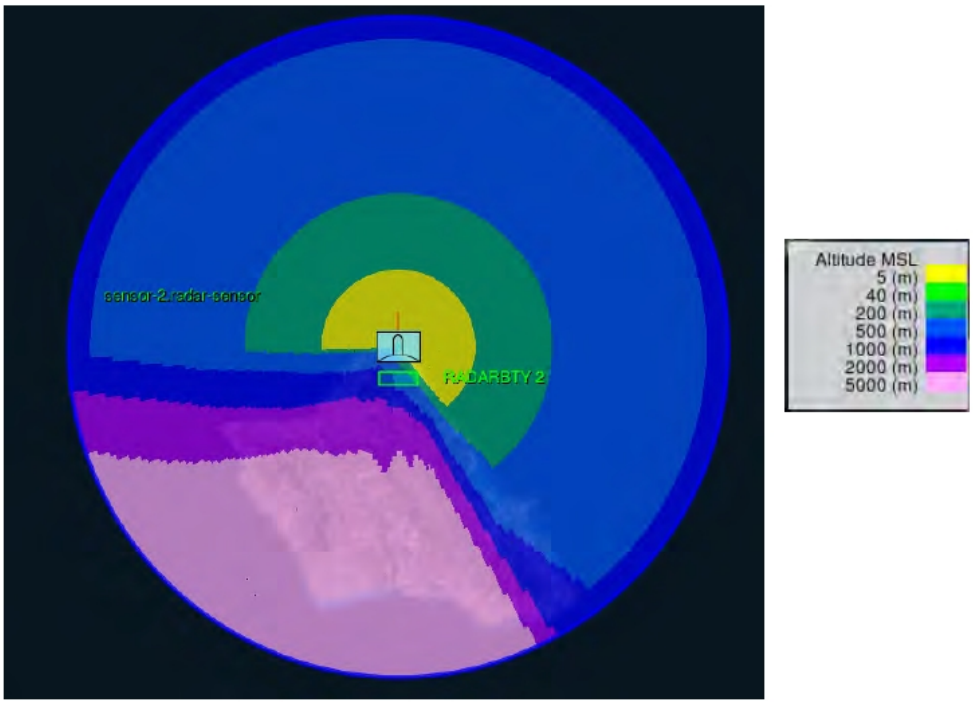
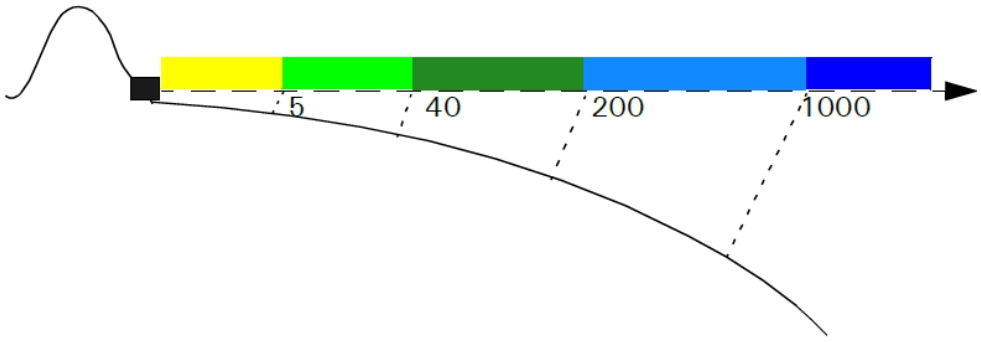



Figure 102 illustrates how the radar coverage display is calculated. Imagine a radar facility at sea level looking out over the ocean (similar to Figure 101). The dotted lines represent the height above sea level of the radar beam as the earth curves (the illustration is not to scale). In the yellow band, the radar can detect all objects that are 5 meters above sea level or higher. In the light green band, the radar can detect all objects that are 40 m above sea level or higher. It might also detect objects between 5 m and 40 m. For each specified intersection height that you want to test, VR-Forces adds another band of color.

**Figure 102. Radar coverage**




In 3D, the coverage area is depicted as a shaded section of a sphere surrounding the radar. Areas covered by the radar are shaded. Areas that are obscured have no shading. A color gradient is used to show varying altitudes.

You can configure altitude layers and colors on the Display Settings dialog box, Radar Coverage Settings page.

- Radar coverage displays can take some time to calculate, and fill in gradually as the calculation proceeds.
- Because the coverage area is computationally expensive to display, this feature is only usable on units and entities that are stationary.

## 9.7.1 Enabling the Display of Radar Coverage

Radar coverage is enabled or disabled globally per observer. It is displayed per simulation object. For details about displaying radar coverage, please see "9.7.2 Displaying Radar Coverage" below.

➤ **To enable the display of radar coverage, use one of the following methods:**

- Choose **Observer > Radar Coverage.**
- On the Observer Toolbar, click the Radar Coverage button ( ).
- On the Display Settings dialog box, Observer Settings page, select the Radar Coverage check box.

## 9.7.2 Displaying Radar Coverage

To display radar coverage, you must enable it for the observer and then display it for a specific simulation object. For details about enabling radar coverage, please see "9.7.1 Enabling the Display of Radar Coverage" above.

➤ **To display radar coverage:**

1. Select a simulation object that has a ground-based radar, such as the Patriot Radar AN/MPQ-65 (entity-level) or Air Defense Radar (aggregate-level).
2. Choose **Objects > Decorations > Pin Radar Coverage**. A radar coverage display is added, centered on the selected simulation object.

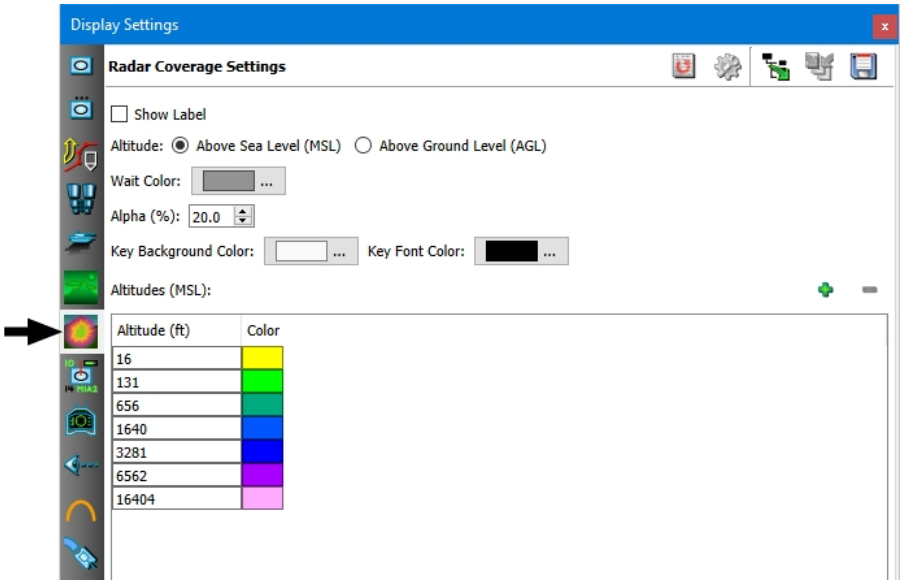
## 9.7.3 Configuring Radar Coverage Displays

You can configure the colors used for radar coverage displays, the altitude at which colors change, and other aspects of the display.

➤ **To configure radar coverage:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Radar Coverage Settings page (Figure 103).

**Figure 103. Radar Coverage Settings page**




3. Change the settings as desired. Table 14 describes the settings.

**Table 14. Radar coverage settings**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Show Label | Display the name of the radar coverage area. |
| Altitude | Calculate altitude above sea level or above ground level. |
| Wait Color | The color to use for the radar coverage fan while the front-end waits for results from the back-end. |
| Alpha | The amount of transparency for the coverage areas. |
| Key Background Color | The background color to use for the altitude key. |
| Key Font Color | The color to use for the text on the altitude key. |
| Altitudes | The altitudes to test for intersections and their associated colors. |

## 9.8. Using Sonar

VR-Forces simulates active and passive sonar. Entities can be configured with three types of sonar sensor systems: Active Sonar, Passive Sonar, and Sonar. The Sonar system includes both active and passive sonar. Both types of sonar use the VR-Forces sensor signature mechanism. The signatures are different, reflecting the different chances of detecting entities using the two types of sonar.

Passive sonar has the following characteristics:

- Sonar can be dipped at a depth other than that of the entity.
- If an entity is moving faster than a specified speed, passive sonar does not work.
- Sonar takes into account thermocline data. Thermoclines are layers of water that have different temperatures and, therefore, different density. Sound transmission varies as it passes through the thermocline. In VR-Forces sonar effectiveness is reduced as it passes through thermocline boundaries. For more information, please see "11.8. Setting the Thermocline" on page 334.
- Passive sonar ignores line-of-sight. It does not take into account underwater terrain or the presence of islands.
- If an entity is publishing propulsion noise, it can affect its detectability by passive sonar.

Active sonar has the following characteristics:

- Active sonar should acquire targets more quickly than passive sonar.
- If an entity has an active sonar system enabled, it is more easily detected by passive sonar systems.
- Entities with an active sonar that is enabled publish Underwater Acoustics PDUs.
- Entities can have multiple active sonar modes, similar to radar modes, using emitter beams. For details about configuring emitters, please see "73.1. Configuring Emitters" on page 1496.
- Active sonar detects targets within the range of its emitter beams, but without regard to the direction of the beams.
- Active sonar ignores propulsion noise and the presence of active sonar on the target.

---

**!** RPR FOM 1.0 does not support active sonar. If you try to create an entity that has an active sonar system, the entity will not be created and a warning will be sent to the console. If you try to load a scenario that has such an entity, it will not be created.

---

Sonar only works in water. Therefore rotary-wing entities with sonar systems must set their depth in order to sense anything.

## 9.8.1 Propulsion Noise and Sonar

If an entity is generating propulsion noise, it is easier to detect using passive sonar. VR-Forces publishes propulsion noise for surface and subsurface entities. If the power plant for an entity is turned off, it does not publish propulsion noise. To turn propulsion noise on or off, change the power plant appearance (for details, please see "34.7. Appearance" on page 800) or set the **power-plant-active** parameter in the propulsion-noise-generator component of the entity's movement system.

VR-Forces publishes three propulsion noise values:

- Current Shaft RPM, calculated as **current speed * speed-to-rpm-factor**.
- Ordered Shaft RPM, calculated as **ordered speed * speed-to-rpm-factor**.
- Shaft RPM Rate of Change, calculated as **current acceleration * acceleration-to-rpm-factor**.

The values for current speed, ordered speed, and current acceleration are the current values for the entity. The values for speed-to-rpm-factor and acceleration-to-rpm-factor are taken from the **speed-to-rpm-factor** and **acceleration-to-rpm-factor** parameters in the propulsion-noise-generator component of the entity's movement system.

When a target is being detected by passive sonar, if it is publishing propulsion noise, its calculated RPM is compared to a nominal RPM (default 100) to generate a sensor signature modifier. For example, if an entity is publishing an RPM of 80, its signature is scaled by 0.8. If its RPM is 150, the signature is scaled by 1.5.

---

! RPR FOM 1.0 does not support propulsion noise. If you try to create an entity that has propulsion noise enabled, the entity will not be created and a warning will be sent to the console. If you try to load a scenario that has such an entity, it will not be created.

---

## 9.9. Launching Counter Measures (Chaff and Flare)

Fixed-wing and rotary-wing entities can launch counter measures (chaff and flare) when they are targeted by air-to-air and ground-to-air missiles. By default, entities launch counter measures automatically based on settings in the *countermeasures.sysdef* file. When an aircraft detects a hostile missile within a specified range, it determines the type of missile and looks up the type of counter measures to use in the *USCounterMeasuresTable.asl* or *CISCounterMeasuresTable.asl* table.

Figure 104 shows a friendly force fighter launching counter measures against a sidewinder missile.

**Figure 104. Counter measures (flare)**

You can disable automatic counter-measures with the Counter Measures Auto Launch set data request. You can also launch counter-measures with the Launch Counter Measures task. The Launch Counter Measures task is not an exclusive task, so it does not interfere with the entity's current task. For details about the task and set data request, please see "27.19. Launch Counter Measures" on page 626 and "34.16. Counter Measures Auto Launch" on page 804.

You can configure the behavior of automatic counter measures in the *counter-measures-launcher.sysdef* and *cis-counter-measures-launcher.sysdef* files (in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/other*). Table 15 describes the parameters that you might want to change.

**Table 15. Counter measure launcher parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **auto-launch-enabled True** | Enables or disables automatic launching of counter measures. |
| **auto-launch-range** | The range within which an entity will detect missiles against which to launch counter measures. |
| **auto-launch-reset-time** | The amount of time, in seconds, an entity will wait before launching additional counter measures. |
| **auto-launch-default-resource** | The default counter measure to use. |
| **auto-launch-number-of-resources** | The number of counter measures to launch for each launch sequence. |
| **counter-measures-select-table-file** | The counter measures selection table to use to determine which counter measures to fire for a particular missile. |

## 9.10. Modeling Artillery Munitions

In entity-level scenarios, VR-Forces models artillery in two ways: it models an artillery entity that you have tasked to fire, or it models an indirect fire event in an area you specify. When you create a task directing a weapon such as a howitzer to fire munitions, VR-Forces models both the artillery entity and the munitions it fires. Indirect fire events simply model artillery barrages within an area, not the artillery entities or munitions. For details about indirect fire events, see "Chapter 10. Indirect Fire, Ballistic Missiles, and Munition Detonations" on page 297.

By default, when an artillery entity fires, VR-Forces models the munition. Munitions are not affected by wind speed or friction. VR-Forces can also model artillery without modeling the munition. In this case, it just publishes a fire event and detonation event. Modeling munitions requires more computer resources than not doing so. Therefore, in large simulations you may want to disable modeling of munitions.

To disable modeling munitions, in the indirect-fire-system, set the **simulate-munition** parameter to false for each weapon system by editing the sysdef file.

# 10. Indirect Fire, Ballistic Missiles, and Munition Detonations

This chapter explains how to create and edit indirect fire events and ballistic missiles. These features are only supported in entity-level scenarios.


10.1. Introduction to Indirect Fire ..... 298
- 10.1.1 Creating an Indirect Fire Event ..... 298
- 10.1.2 Editing Indirect Fire Events ..... 301
- 10.1.3 Deleting Indirect Fire Events ..... 302
- 10.1.4 Configuring Indirect Fire Event Default Values ..... 302

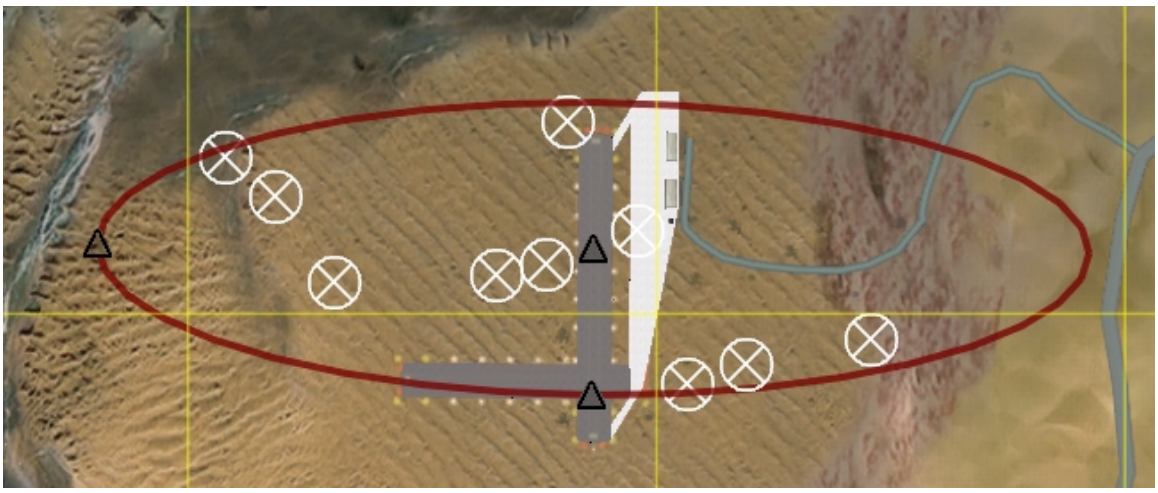
10.2. Ballistic Missiles ..... 303
- 10.2.1 Firing Ballistic Missiles ..... 304
- 10.2.2 Editing Missile Target Events ..... 305
- 10.2.3 Deleting Missile Target Events ..... 306

10.3. Creating Munition Detonations ..... 306

# 10.1. Introduction to Indirect Fire

Indirect fire events allow you to create, configure, and schedule indirect fire. Indirect fire events are not associated with a particular simulation object such as a howitzer. VR-Forces does not model the launcher or trajectory of the munitions. Indirect fire results in one or more salvos of one or more rounds in or near a designated area of the terrain. Figure 105 illustrates indirect fire within an indirect fire area.

**Figure 105. Indirect fire event**



Indirect fire types are configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/indirectArtilleryTypes.mtl*.

---

Indirect fire events, which are area-based, are not supported in aggregate-level scenarios. However, there is an indirect fire task available to artillery entities in aggregate scenarios; see"30.49. Indirect Fire" on page 704 for details.

---

## 10.1.1 Creating an Indirect Fire Event

When you create an indirect fire event, you specify an area in which the event is to take place, the parameters of the event, and a starting time. The area in which an indirect fire event takes place is a tactical graphic and is listed on the Objects List View of the Objects List Panel.

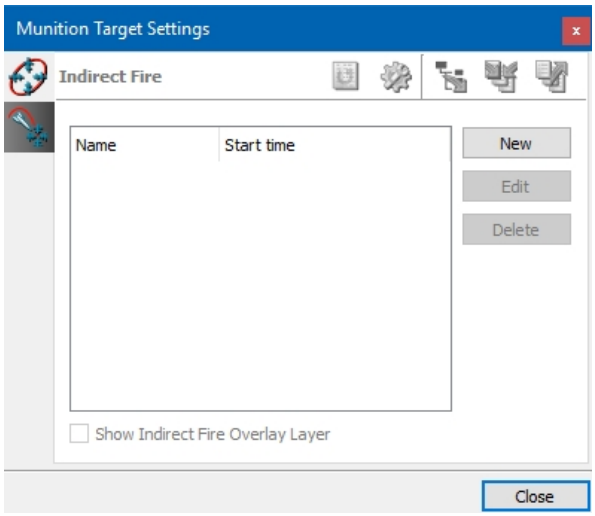
By default, indirect fire areas are placed on the Indirect Fire layer (which is created for the first indirect fire object). (For information about overlays, please see "Chapter 39. Overlays" on page 927.)

You can activate and deactivate indirect fire areas — see "40.10. Active and Inactive Tactical Graphics" on page 959 for details.

➤ **To create an indirect fire event:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Munition Targets**. The Munition Target Settings dialog box opens (Figure 106).

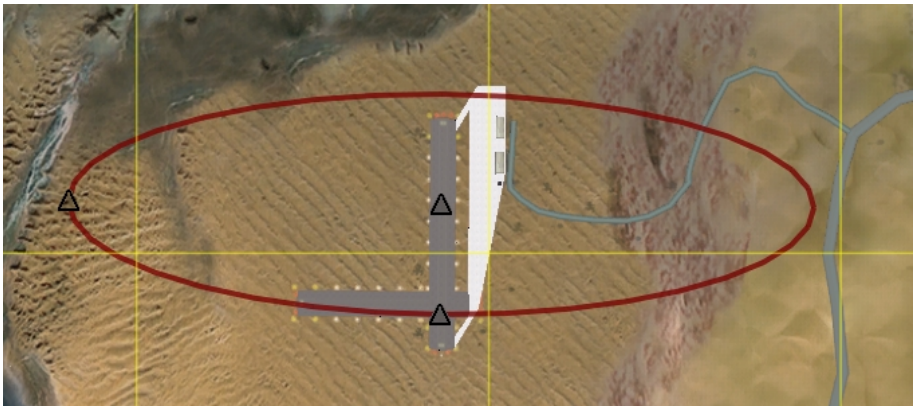
**Figure 106. Munition Target Settings dialog box, Indirect Fire page**




2. Select the Indirect Fire page.
3. Click New. The cursor changes to create mode and a tab for the Create Indirect Fire dialog box is added to the window.
4. Draw an ellipse on the map to specify the area of the fire event:
   a. Click to set the center of the ellipse. A center point is set and a small circle is displayed with a vertex indicator at the bottom of the circle.
   b. Drag the mouse up or down and click to set the height of the ellipse. A vertex indicator is added to the left side of the circle.
   c. Drag the mouse left and right and click to set the width of the ellipse (Figure 107).

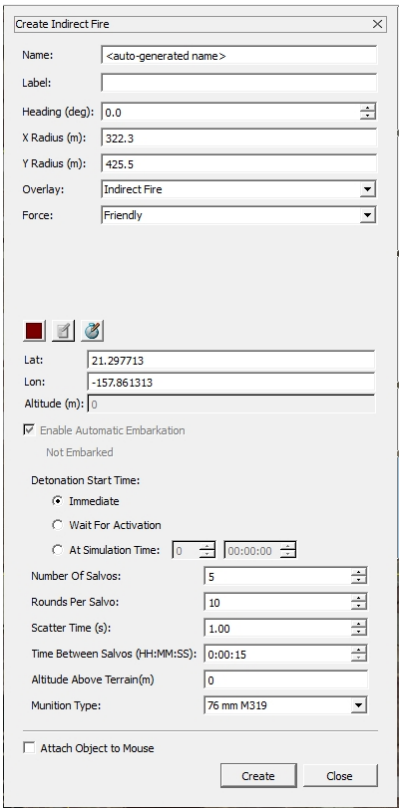
   Optionally, you can specify the properties of the ellipse in the Create Indirect Fire dialog box.

**Figure 107. Indirect fire event area**



5. Click the tab to display the Create Indirect Fire dialog box (Figure 108).

**Figure 108. Create Indirect Fire dialog box**

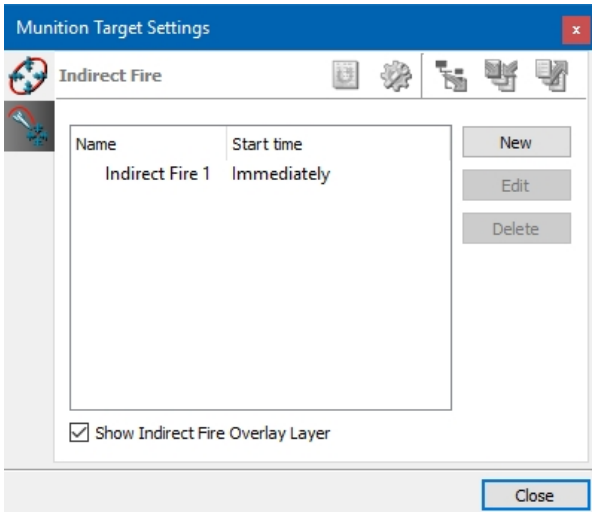



6. Type a name for the event in the Name text box, or accept the default name (Indirect Fire *n*).
7. Optionally, specify a layer for the event. (If there are no layers in the scenario, one is created when you click Create to create this indirect fire event.)
8. Configure the parameters of the fire event, as follows:

- Select the detonation start time. The options are:
  - Immediate. Indirect fire begins immediately.
  - Wait for Activation. The indirect fire area is created in the inactive state. Indirect fire begins when an Activation set data request activates the area. This allows you to activate indirect fire manually or from a plan.
  - At Simulation Time. The simulation time at which you want the munition to start firing.
- In the Number of Salvos box, enter the number of salvos you want to fire.
- In the Rounds Per Salvo box, enter the number of rounds you want to fire for each salvo.
- In the Scatter Time box, enter the length of time for each salvo. The rounds in each salvo will be detonated at random times within this time period.
- If you specified more than one salvo, in the Time Between Salvos box, enter the amount of time you want to pass between each salvo.
- Optionally, specify an altitude above the terrain at which the rounds should detonate.
- Select the munition type in the Munition Type list.

9. Click Create. The Indirect Fire event is added to the list (Figure 109). The area is added as an object on the Indirect Fire layer on the Overlays View of the Objects List Panel (unless you chose a different layer).

**Figure 109. Indirect Fire page with indirect fire event**




## 10.1.2 Editing Indirect Fire Events

You can edit the properties of an indirect fire event. You can also directly manipulate the area that specifies the event.

➤ **To edit an indirect fire event:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Munition Targets**. The Munition Target Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Indirect Fire page (Figure 109 on the previous page).
3. Select the indirect fire event that you want to edit.
4. Click Edit. The Edit Indirect Fire dialog box opens.
5. Change the properties that you want to change.
6. Click OK.

### 10.1.3 Deleting Indirect Fire Events

➤ **To delete an indirect fire event:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Munition Targets**. The Munition Target Settings dialog box opens (Figure 106 on page 299).
2. Select the Indirect Fire page (Figure 109 on the previous page).
3. Select the indirect fire event that you want to delete.
4. Click Delete.
5. Click Close.

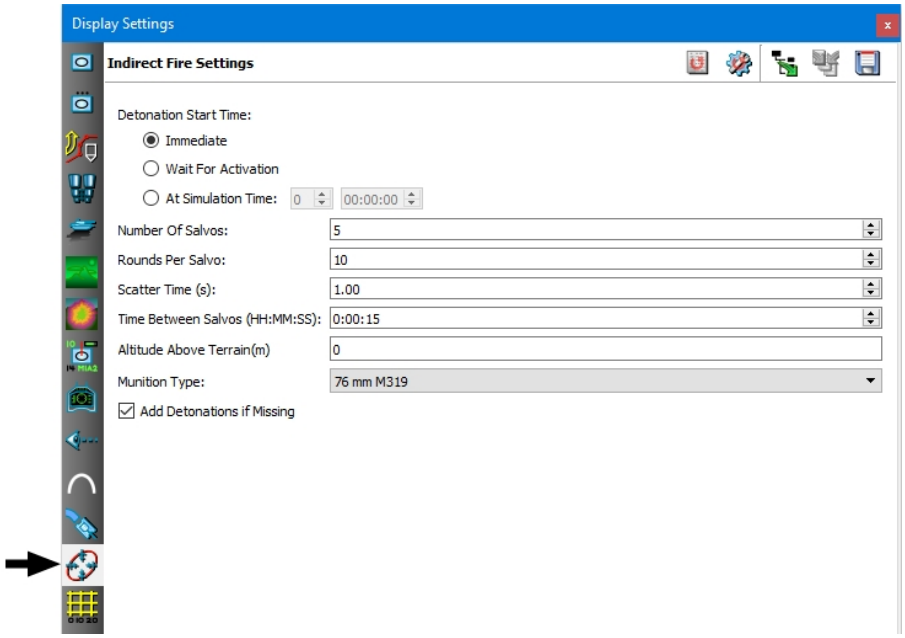
### 10.1.4 Configuring Indirect Fire Event Default Values

You can configure a set of default values that get applied to the Create Indirect Fire dialog box.

➤ **To configure default values for indirect fire events:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Indirect Fire Settings page (Figure 110).

**Figure 110. Indirect Fire Settings page**




3. Set the parameters to the desired default values. Most are self-explanatory. The Add Detonations if Missing check box causes VR-Forces to map a detonation to a detonation graphic if there are no mappings for that detonation event in the Detonation Mapping Settings page of the Simulation Object Type Mappings dialog box. If you do not want a detonation displayed for detonation events that are not mapped, clear this check box.
4. Click Close.

## 10.2. Ballistic Missiles

VR-Forces supports two types of ballistic missiles, as follows:

- Strategic missile weapon systems. Entities with strategic missile weapon systems can fire at targets using Launch Ballistic Missile tasks.
- Fixed trajectory ballistic missiles. The trajectory of a missile is determined by a series of coordinates in a comma-separated values (CSV) file. VR-Forces includes some sample CSV files. VR-Forces users are responsible for creating their own files if they want missiles to fly with different characteristics.

Strategic missile systems calculate a trajectory based on a maximum altitude and the distance to the target. They attempt to accurately represent the speed of the missile and they can take into account the curvature of the earth. (For information about strategic missile launch tasks, please see "27.17. Launch Ballistic Missile at Location" on page 625 and "27.18. Launch Ballistic Missile at Target Object" on page 625.)

The Ballistic Missile tasks do not use physics-based modeling. They calculate a simple parabola for the trajectory and move the missile along the trajectory ignoring atmospherics, thrust stages, cargo weight, gravity, and the rotation of the earth.

You fire a fixed trajectory ballistic missile by specifying a target and choosing a missile type. The characteristics of the missile type are specified in the Simulation Object Editor. A missile launches at the same altitude as the target point at a distance determined by the CSV file. Therefore, if a target point is placed at or near the ground, it is possible that due to variations in the terrain, the launch location could be underground. Once the missile launches, it follows the trajectory contained in the CSV file that it is configured with. It detonates when it reaches the target point. For details about configuring missiles, please see "63.8.1 Configuring Ballistic Missile Movement" on page 1320.

This remainder of this section describes how to fire fixed trajectory ballistic missiles.

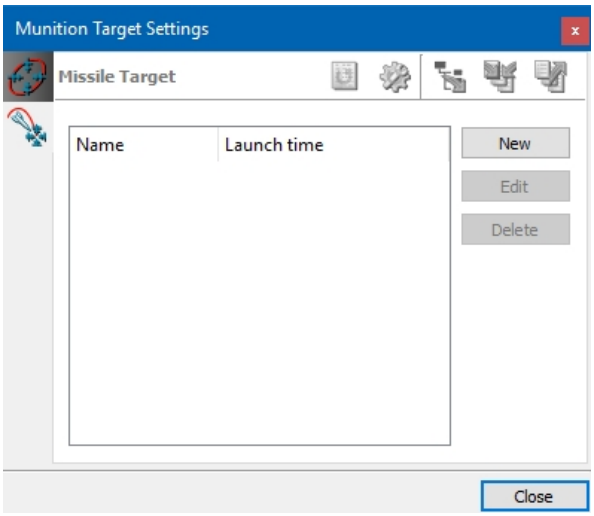
Ballistic missles are not supported in aggregate-level scenarios.

## 10.2.1 Firing Ballistic Missiles

➤ **To fire a ballistic missile:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Munition Targets**. The Munition Target Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Missile Target page (Figure 111).

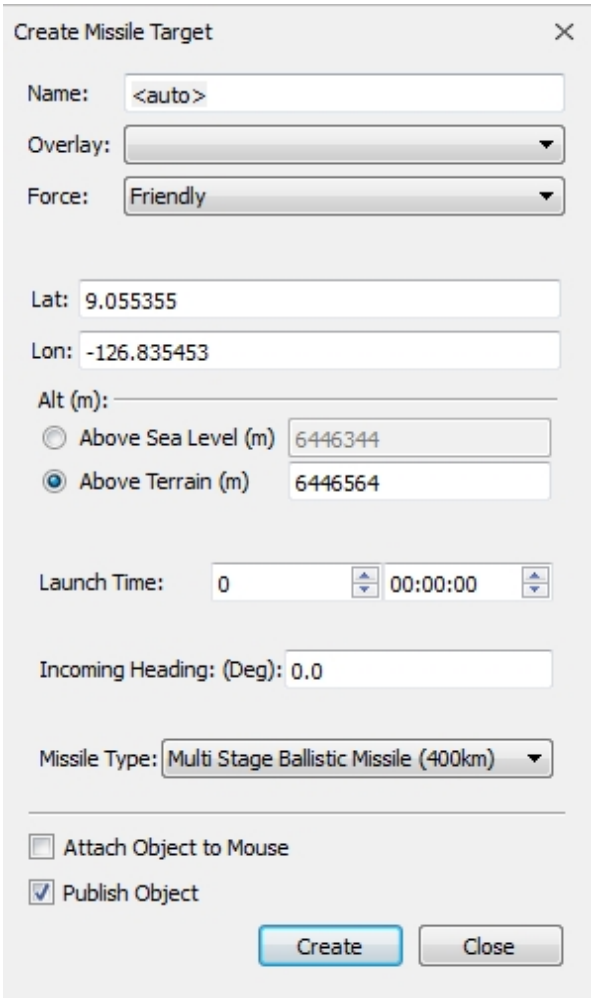
**Figure 111. Munition Target Settings dialog box, Missile Target page**




3. Click New. The cursor changes to cross-hairs.

4. Click the location where you want the missile to hit. The Create Missile Target dialog box opens (Figure 112).

**Figure 112. Create Missile Target dialog box**




5. Optionally, specify the parameters for the target. In particular, set the following parameters:
   - Name. The name of the target point.
   - Launch Time. The simulation time at which the missile will be launched.
   - Incoming Heading. The heading, relative to the target, from which the missile will be launched.
   - Missile Type. An option from the list.
6. Click Create. The missile event is listed in the Missile Target window.

## 10.2.2 Editing Missile Target Events

You can edit the properties of a missile target event. You can also directly manipulate the target point.

➤ **To edit a missile target event:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Munition Targets**. The Munition Target Settings dialog box opens (Figure 106 on page 299).
2. Select the Missile Target page (Figure 112 on the previous page).
3. Select the missile fire event that you want to edit.
4. Click Edit. The Edit Missile Target dialog box opens.
5. Change the properties that you want to change.
6. Click Update.

### 10.2.3 Deleting Missile Target Events

➤ **To delete a missile target event:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Munition Targets**. The Munition Target Settings dialog box opens (Figure 106 on page 299).
2. Select the Missile Target page (Figure 112 on the previous page).
3. Select the missile fire event that you want to delete.
4. Click Delete.
5. Click Close.

---

You can also delete a target event by deleting the target point from the terrain.

---

## 10.3. Creating Munition Detonations

When weapons fire munitions, they detonate and cause damage to simulation objects, terrain, or both. You can also manually create munition detonations. They have the same effect as the simulated munitions they represent.

---

Munition detonations are not supported in aggregate-level scenarios.

---

➤ **To create a munition detonation:**

1. Choose **Create > Munition Detonation**. The Create Detonation dialog box opens, as if you were creating a simulation object or tactical graphic. The cursor changes to red cross-hairs.
2. If you want to use the currently configured detonation type and result, click on the terrain where you want the detonation to occur. You can continue to click to create more detonations while in this mode.
3. If you want to change the munition type or result:

a. In the Munition Type list, select the type of munition you want to detonate.

b. In the Result list, select the type of detonation that you want to occur.

c. Optionally, specify the location for the detonation.

d. Click on the terrain where you want the detonation to occur. Click as many times as you want.

4. To exit detonation mode, close the Create Detonation dialog box or press **Esc**.

# 11. Setting Environment Conditions

This chapter explains how to set the time of day and weather conditions.


11.1. Introduction to Environment Conditions ..... 311
11.2. Setting the Date and Time of Day ..... 311
11.2.1 Setting the Date ..... 312
11.2.2 Setting the Time of Day ..... 313
11.2.3 Choosing the Illumination Model ..... 313
11.3. Setting Weather Conditions ..... 314
11.3.1 Setting the Wind Direction, Speed, and Visibility ..... 314
11.3.2 Setting the Air Pressure and Temperature ..... 316
11.3.3 Setting Visibility ..... 316
11.3.4 Specifying Precipitation Type and Intensity ..... 318
11.3.5 Setting Rain Accumulation ..... 318
11.3.6 Setting Snow Depth and Elevation ..... 319
11.4. Creating Local Weather Zones ..... 319
11.4.1 Creating a Weather Zone as a Tactical Graphic ..... 322
11.4.2 Editing a Weather Zone's Environment ..... 322
11.5. Using Weather Tactical Graphics ..... 323
11.5.1 Creating Blowing Dust, Sand, or Snow Areas ..... 324
11.5.2 Creating Ground Fog or a Sandstorm ..... 325
11.5.3 Creating Diamond Dust, Haze, Mist, or Smoke Areas ..... 325
11.5.4 Creating a Wind Corridor ..... 326
11.5.5 Creating an Air Turbulence Area ..... 327
11.6. Displaying Weather Conditions at a Location ..... 327
11.7. Configuring Marine Conditions ..... 328
11.7.1 Enabling Marine Effects ..... 329
11.7.2 Configuring Marine Conditions ..... 330
11.7.3 Enabling Tidal Stream Wakes ..... 332
11.7.4 Setting Ocean Quality ..... 333

11.7.5 Configuring Breaking Waves ..... 334
11.8. Setting the Thermocline ..... 334
11.9. Publishing Weather Over HLA Using NETN METOC FOM ..... 335
11.9.1 METOC Object Classes that Can Be Published ..... 335
11.9.2 Enabling the Publication of METOC FOM Classes ..... 336

## 11.1. Introduction to Environment Conditions

You can set the date, time of day, weather, and marine conditions from the front-end and in plans. The date, time of day, and weather conditions are back-end settings, not merely front-end display effects. They affect simulation object sensors and line-of-sight. For example, if visibility is set to 4 kilometers, a simulation object will not see a simulation object that is 5 km away. If the time of day changes from daytime to nighttime, lighting conditions in the 3D view change accordingly.

Date and Time and Weather are options on the Commands menu in plans.

## 11.2. Setting the Date and Time of Day

You can set the date, time zone, and time of day.

- Date: When you create a scenario, you specify a date. However, you can change the date at any time while you are creating or running a scenario. The date at a location is advanced when the time at that location advances through midnight. When this happens, all locations to the east, up to the time zones at GMT + 12 hours, are in the advanced date; all locations to the west, up to the time zones at GMT -12 hours, are in the previous date. Thus there is effectively a date line at a longitude 12 hours from GMT.
- Format: You can specify whether the time and date should be display in standard format or military format. You can also choose a display format for the date and time, which will be one of a variety of options relevant to either standard or military.
- Time zone: You can change the time zone displayed in the Environmental Settings toolbar to any zone that you want. If you change the time zone in the Environment Conditions dialog box, the time displayed in the Environment Settings Toolbar changes to the current time for that time zone. However, the time at a given location on the earth does not change. The illumination at a location therefore does not change when the time zone displayed in the toolbar changes. Since the time zone at a location may not be the same as the time zone displayed in the toolbar, the illumination at that location may not match the time displayed in the toolbar.
- Time of day: The time of day advances as simulation time advances. However, they are not directly tied to each other. For example, if at the start of a simulation (simulation time 0:00:00:00), you set the time of day to 10:00 AM, after eight hours of simulation time passes, the time of day will be 6:00 PM. However, you could just as easily set the initial time of day to some other time or change it at will during the course of the simulation. These changes would not affect the elapsed simulation time in any way. They would only change the starting point for the advance of the time of day.

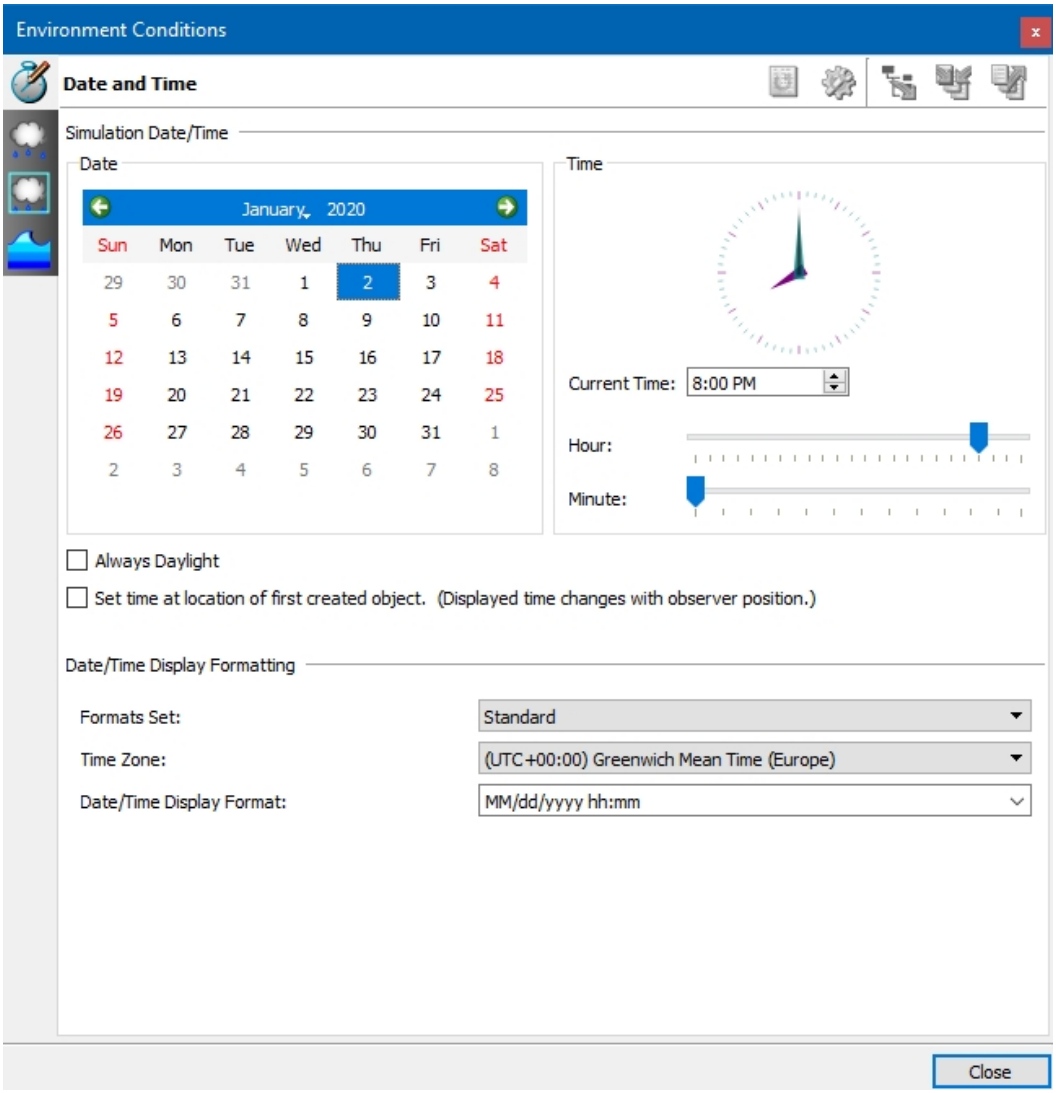
  VR-Forces uses an ephemeris model to calculate illumination based on the date and time of day. The amount of light affects visual sensors and scene lighting in Stealth view mode. Illumination at a location is based on the time of day at that location.

### 11.2.1 Setting the Date

➤ **To set the date:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**, or click the date on the Environment Settings Toolbar. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Date and Time page (Figure 113).

**Figure 113. Date and Time page**




3. To change the month, click the right or left arrows, or click the month and select a month from the list.
4. To change the year, click the right or left arrows, or click the year and type in a year or use the spin controls to select a value.
5. To specify the date, click on the date in the calendar.

6. To specify the format, select an option from the Formats Set and Date/Time Display Formats lists.

## 11.2.2 Setting the Time of Day

As time advances, the time displayed on the Environment Settings Toolbar changes. The time of day setting is independent of simulation time. The default time zone is Greenwich Mean Time. You can change the time zone to the local zone or any of the zones in the Time Zone list.

---

If you want to set the time of day and time zone, set the time zone first.

---

➤ **To set the time of day:**

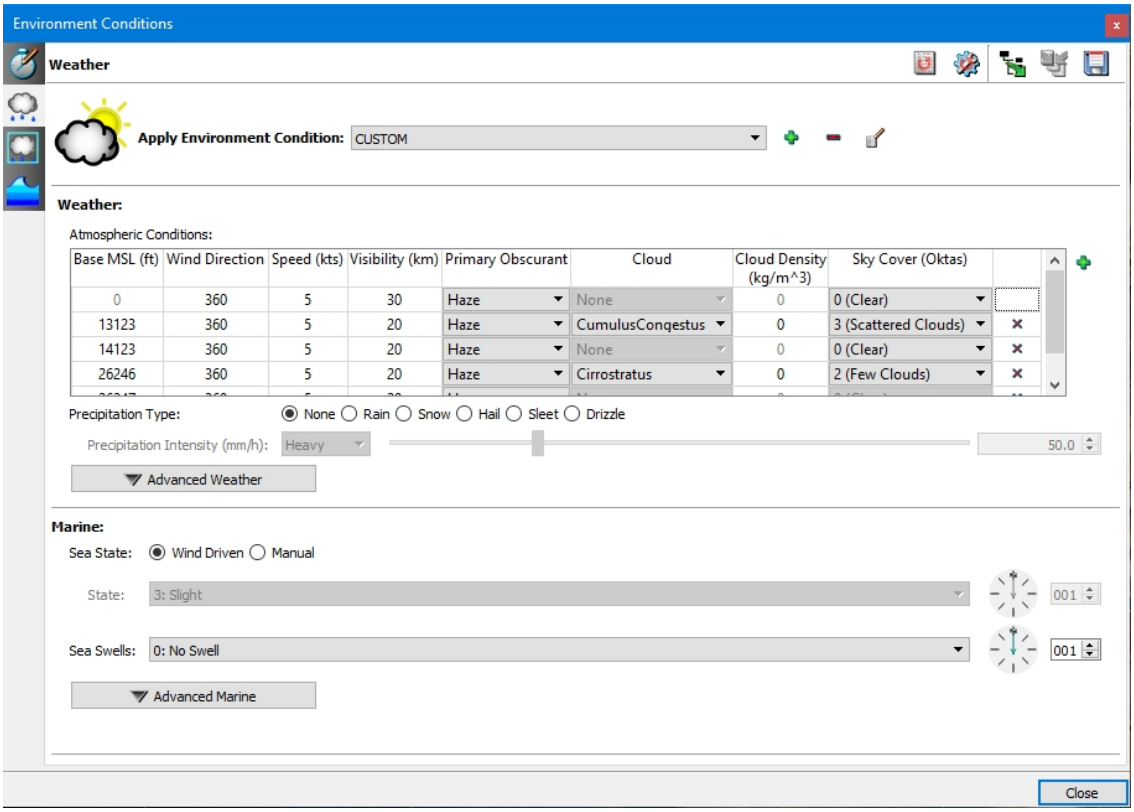
1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**, or click the date on the Environment Settings Toolbar. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Date and Time page (Figure 113 on the previous page).
3. Set the time of day by changing the value in the Current Time box or by adjusting the Hour and Minute sliders.
4. In the Formats Set box, specify the format for the time and date by selecting Standard or Military.
5. Select the time zone in one of the following ways:
   - Select a time zone in the Time Zone list.
   - Select Use Local Time Zone. The time zone set for your computer is used.
6. Optionally, select a date/time display format. This changes the format used in the Environment Settings Toolbar. The available formats are related to the option specified in Formats Set, either Standard or Military.

## 11.2.3 Choosing the Illumination Model

Illumination affects visual sensors. Illumination can be on all of the time or it can be affected by the time of day. The illumination setting does not affect the front-end. It only affects back-end calculations. If the day/night illumination model is active (Always Daylight is not checked), the back-end calculates illumination based on a simulation object's location given current Greenwich Mean Time, offset by the time zone where the simulation object is located (based on longitude). This calculation does not take into account daylight savings time or localized time zone variations.

➤ **To specify the illumination model:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**, or click the date on the Environment Settings Toolbar. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Date and Time page (Figure 113 on the previous page).
3. Select or clear the Always Daylight check box.




## 11.3. Setting Weather Conditions

You can set the following weather conditions:

- Cloud cover
- Visibility
- Precipitation
- Wind speed and direction
- Ambient air temperature

When you specify weather, the back-end sends out state updates with these conditions. Simulation objects respond to them only if their model has the ability to do so.

### 11.3.1 Setting the Wind Direction, Speed, and Visibility

You can set atmospheric conditions, including wind speed and direction, visibility, obscurant (such as fog, smoke, or dust), cloud types, and sky coverage. If you do not specify the sea state manually, it is set based on the wind conditions. (The maximum wind speed that you can set is 360 km/h.) The wind direction affects the angle at which precipitation falls. Wind speed and direction also affect SpeedTrees, grass, and particle systems (dust clouds, smoke, and so on).

You can specify different wind speeds and directions, visibility, obscurants, and cloud characteristics at various altitudes. This allows for a more realistic simulation for aircraft and simulation objects with parachutes. You can create up to ten levels of atmospheric configurations.

For information on setting the color of ground-level fog, see "Configuring Ground Fog" on page 317.

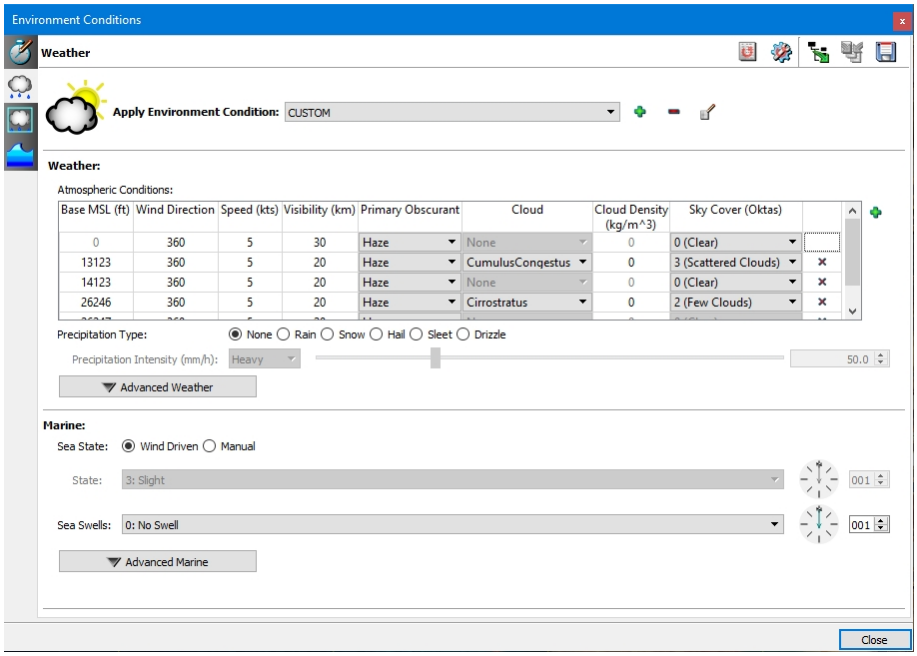
The highest elevation in the Atmospheric Conditions table is automatically configured with a Sky Cover value of 0 and no clouds. This elevation's Base from MSL value provides an effective ceiling for the clouds at the elevation immediately underneath it.

If you set Visibility to a large value, you might need to adjust the value of the channel's Z far attribute (also known as the far clipping plane). If the Z far attribute is set to a value smaller than the Visibility value, objects beyond the Z far distance are not visible in the channel. For details, see "76.4.1 Setting the Clipping Planes" on page 1531.

➤ **To set wind, visibility, and other elevation-based atmospheric conditions:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Weather page (Figure 114).

**Figure 114. Weather page**




3. Set the atmospheric conditions for one or more levels of elevation:
   a. Select an environment condition from the Apply Environment Conditions list, or click the Add button (+) to create a new environment condition.

      The first, default elevational configuration in the Atmospheric Conditions table begins at 0 feet above mean sea level (MSL). You can specify the base of each subsequent elevation.

b. Enter a Wind Direction heading between 001 and 360 degrees.

c. Enter the wind's Speed.

d. Enter a Visibility distance.

e. If visibility is limited, choose the Primary Obscurant.

f. Set the Sky Cover.

g. If you set Sky Cover to a nonzero value, you activate the Cloud column. Choose a cloud type.

h. To add a new elevational configuration, click the Add button (+) and specify the values for that elevation.

i. If you set Visibility to a high value, you might need to change the channel's Z far attribute value — it must be higher than the Visibility value. Z far defaults to 200 kilometers. For details on changing Z far, see "76.4.1 Setting the Clipping Planes" on page 1531.

## 11.3.2 Setting the Air Pressure and Temperature

You can specify the air pressure and temperature at any altitude, including sea level. VR-Forces does not do anything with this information. It is sent over the network for the use of applications that need to model air pressure and temperature.

➤ **To set the ambient air temperature:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Weather page (Figure 114 on the previous page).
3. In the Weather section of the page, click Advanced Weather. The dialog box expands to show more options.
4. In the Air Pressure field, set the air pressure in millibars.
5. Select At Sea Level or At Altitude.
6. If you selected At Altitude, set the altitude in meters for the new air pressure. (Setting an altitude of 0 has the same effect as selecting At Sea Level.)
7. In the Air Temperature field, set air temperature in degrees Celsius.
8. Select At Sea Level or At Altitude.
9. If you selected At Altitude, set the altitude in meters for the new air temperature. (Setting an altitude of 0 has the same effect as selecting At Sea Level.)

## 11.3.3 Setting Visibility

The visibility setting determines the denseness of obscurants in the atmosphere (fog, smoke, or dust, for example), which determines how far you can see.

➤ **To set visibility:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Weather page (Figure 114 on page 315).
3. In the Atmospheric Conditions table, change the value in the Visibility column.
4. If visibility is limited, choose a Primary Obscurant.
5. If you set Visibility to a large value, you might need to adjust the value of the channel's Z far attribute (also known as the far clipping plane). If the Z far attribute is set to a value smaller than the Visibility value, objects beyond the Z far distance are not visible in the channel. For details, see "76.4.1 Setting the Clipping Planes" on page 1531.
6. To change visibility at a different elevation, click the Add button (+) and then specify the values for that elevation.

### Configuring Ground Fog

You can set the height and color of ground-level fog. The fog height affects how much sky the observer can see when looking up from ground level. For example, if you set the fog height to 50m and look up, you will see some amount of sky above you, and to the sides it will be very gray. If you then set it to 10m and look up, you will see mostly blue sky above you, but still quite a bit of gray to the sides.

These steps create ground-based fog and let you choose the fog's color. To configure fog at higher elevations (or other obscurants like smoke or dust), see "11.3.3 Setting Visibility" on the previous page. To configure fog (or other obscurants) that's confined to a limited area, see "11.5. Using Weather Tactical Graphics" on page 323.

---

Fog settings are not modeled in the back-end. Therefore, they are not available when you set weather conditions in a plan.

---

➤ **To configure fog:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Weather page (Figure 114 on page 315).
3. In the Weather section of the page, click Advanced Weather. The dialog box expands to show more options.
4. To set the fog height, adjust the slider or enter a value in the box.
5. To set the fog color:
    a. Click the color swatch. A color picker dialog box opens.
    b. Select the color you want to apply to the fog. It is applied immediately, so you can easily see the effect of the new color and change it if you want to.
    c. Click OK.

### 11.3.4 Specifying Precipitation Type and Intensity

VR-Forces supports display of rain, snow, hail, sleet, and drizzle. You can configure the intensity of precipitation.

---

Precipitation has no effect on the simulation. It is only a visual effect. Snow does not accumulate.

---

➤ **To specify the precipitation type and intensity:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Weather page (Figure 114 on page 315).
3. Select a Precipitation Type. Once you select a type other than none, the Precipitation Intensity setting becomes editable.
4. Adjust the Precipitation Intensity slider or enter a value in the box. The range is 0 through 200 mm per hour. The intensities list updates based on the rate you specify. You can also choose one of the preset intensities from the list:
   - Light – 1.2 mm per hour.
   - Moderate – 6.2 mm per hour.
   - Heavy – 30 mm per hour.
   - Extreme – 125 mm per hour.

### 11.3.5 Setting Rain Accumulation

You can specify the accumulation of rain on the terrain. When you have rain accumulation, the terrain appears slightly shinier and specular.

You can also specify that puddles should appear in areas of the terrain. If it is raining, ripples appear in the puddles. To define where puddles should accumulate, use a Rain Texture map. See *"Using Shader-based Effect Maps"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To set the rain accumulation:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Weather page (Figure 114 on page 315).
3. Click Advanced Weather.
4. Adjust the Rain Ground Depth slider or enter a value in the box. This specifies the depth of rain on the ground and other terrain features. The depth specifies the level of specular reflection on the ground and the appearance of puddles.

### 11.3.6 Setting Snow Depth and Elevation

You can specify the depth of snow on the ground and roads, and you can also specify the elevation for the snow line. Snow can also display on the roofs of buildings.

If appropriate, you can mask out the snow for certain parts of the terrain using a Snow Texture map. You can also use the SNO effect texture or the snow mask effect map layer to have snow drift across the roads when the wind is blowing. See *"Using Shader-based Effect Maps"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To set the snow depth and minimum elevation:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Weather page (Figure 114 on page 315).
3. Click Advanced Weather.
4. Adjust the Snow Ground Depth slider or enter a value in the box. This specifies the depth of the snow on the ground and other terrain features. The range is 0.000 through 10,000.000 millimeters.
5. Adjust the Snow Road Depth slider or enter a value in the box. This specifies the depth of the snow on roads. The range is 0.000 through 10,000.000 millimeters. (At this time, this is only configured for the California (online) terrain.)
6. Adjust the Snow Elevation slider or enter a value in the box. This specifies the minimum elevation (in meters) where the snow cover appears.
7. If desired, use the Snow Range slider and box to specify the range in elevation at which the snow transitions from no snow to the defined snow depth. Adjust the slider or enter a value.

   For example, if the Snow Elevation is set to 100m and the range is set to 50m, there will be no snow at 100m, half the current snow coverage at 125m, and full coverage at 150m.
8. If you want to see snow blowing in the wind, create a Blowing Snow Area tactical graphic.
9. Click Close.

## 11.4. Creating Local Weather Zones

You can create local weather zones. Each zone can have different weather conditions—for example, rainy, clear, or overcast, with different wind and visibility conditions. Simulation objects can respond to those conditions as they move from zone to zone.

Weather zones can be boxes, free-form areas, circles, and ellipses. You can create them from the Tactical Graphics palette just as you would create the comparable tactical graphics. You can also create box weather zones from the Environment Conditions dialog box on the Local Weather Zones page.

Weather zones have a priority. If two zones overlap and one has a higher priority than the other, a simulation object in the overlapping area responds to the weather conditions in the higher priority zone. If overlapping zones have the same priority, the one that gets discovered first on the network is used.

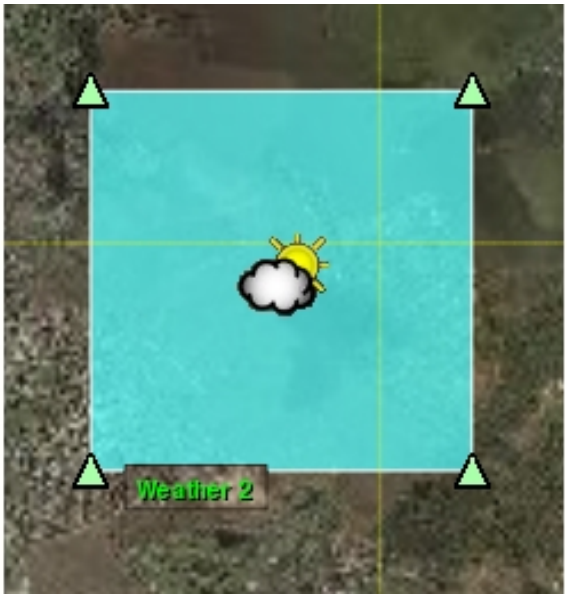
By default, weather zones are placed on the Weather Areas overlay. Weather zones display a graphic that represents the weather conditions. Figure 115 illustrates a weather zone set to the Partly Cloudy environmental condition. You can move and resize weather zones just as you can move and resize other tactical graphics.

---

Weather zones are used by the simulation engine and affect simulation objects in the scenario. They are not visualized in the user interface. For information on weather areas whose effects are visible, see "11.5. Using Weather Tactical Graphics" on page 323.

---

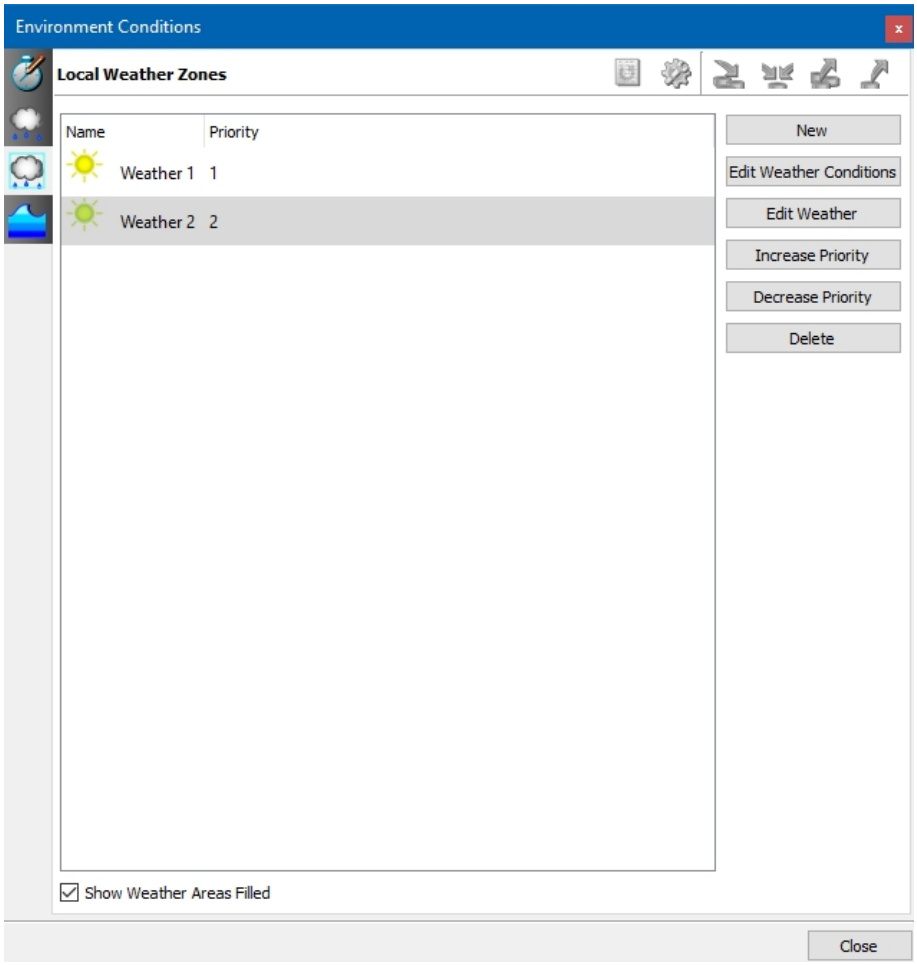
**Figure 115. Weather zone**




➤ **To create a local weather zone from the Local Weather Zones page:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Local Weather Zones page (Figure 116).

**Figure 116. Local Weather Zones page**




3. Click New. A weather zone box appears in the scenario.
4. Click on the terrain to place the lower left corner of the weather zone. The Create Weather dialog box opens.

---

The default size for a weather zone is 100,000 meters per side, so the zone might entirely cover small terrains. If this is a problem, edit the Length and Width in the Create Weather dialog box to reduce it to a manageable size.

---

5. Optionally, edit the parameters for the weather zone. In particular, select an environmental condition or edit the environment to specify the conditions you want to apply to this weather zone. For details about editing the environment, please see "11.4.2 Editing a Weather Zone's Environment" on the next page.
6. Click Create.
7. On the Local Weather Zones page, select a weather zone and use the Edit Weather Conditions or Edit Weather button to alter the zone's parameters.

8. When weather zones overlap, use the Increase Priority and Decrease Priority buttons to change the priority of the selected weather zone.
9. Select the Show Weather Areas Filled check box to fill all weather zones. Clear the check box to show weather zones as outlines.

## 11.4.1 Creating a Weather Zone as a Tactical Graphic

You can create all types of weather zones from the Tactical Graphics palette. They are listed as:

- Weather (Area). A free-form shape—you determine the number of sides.
- Weather (Box). The same weather zone as created from the Local Weather Zones page.
- Weather (Circle).
- Weather (Ellipse).

The procedures for drawing them are the same as for other similarly shaped graphics, as described in "14.3. Placing Objects" on page 375,"40.1.3 Drawing Circles and Ellipses" on page 938, and"40.1.7 Drawing Boxes" on page 941. The main difference is that when you create a weather zone, the Edit dialog box always opens so that you can specify the weather-specific parameters.

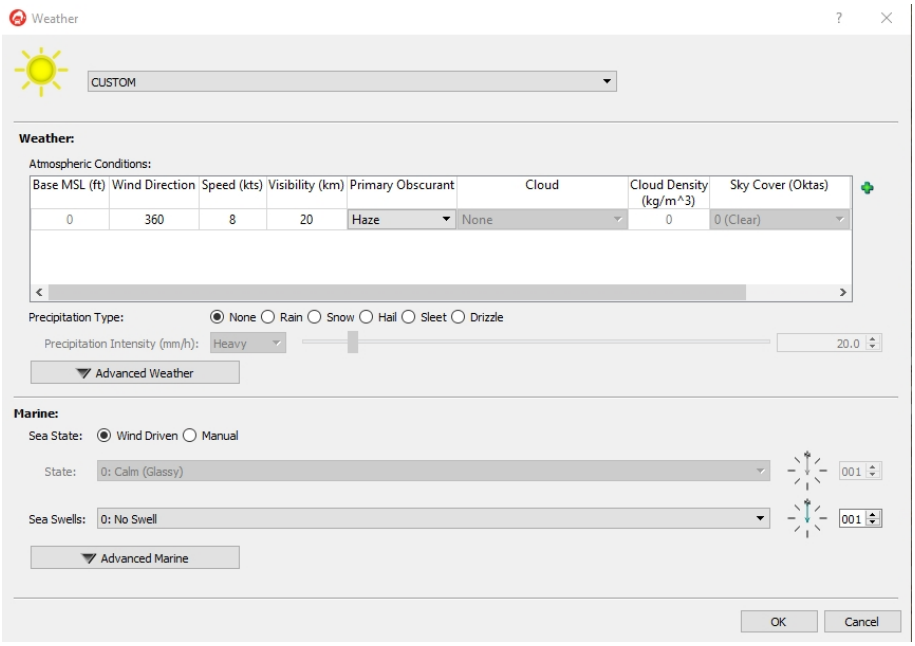
## 11.4.2 Editing a Weather Zone's Environment

You can edit a weather zone's environment when you create it or after you create it. You can assign it one of the preconfigured environmental conditions or change individual environment settings. You can edit all types of weather zones from the Local Weather Zones page. It does not matter how you created them. For details about preconfigured environmental conditions, see "Specifying the Environment Conditions".

➤ **To edit a weather zone's environment:**

1. Do one of the following:
   - In the Create Weather dialog box, click Edit Environment. The Weather dialog box opens (Figure 117).
   - On the Local Weather Zones page of the Environment Conditions dialog box, select the weather zone you want to edit and click Edit Weather Conditions. The Weather dialog box opens.

**Figure 117. Set Weather dialog box**




2. Change weather conditions as desired. They are the same as those on the Weather page of the Environment Conditions dialog box. For details, see "11.3. Setting Weather Conditions" on page 314.
3. Click OK.

## 11.5. Using Weather Tactical Graphics

The weather tactical graphics do not affect simulation objects in any way, except that you can use them in the Entity In Area condition in plans. VR-Forces publishes cloud layer details and VR-Vantage applications can use that information to display them.

Weather tactical graphics include:

- Weather zones (Area, Box, Circle, Ellipse). Areal graphics that visualize localized weather, as described in "11.4.1 Creating a Weather Zone as a Tactical Graphic" on the previous page.
- Blowing Dust, Sand, and Snow Areas. See "11.5.1 Creating Blowing Dust, Sand, or Snow Areas" on the next page.
- Ground Fog and Sandstorm. See "11.5.2 Creating Ground Fog or a Sandstorm" on page 325.
- Diamond Dust, Haze, Mist, and Smoke Areas. See "11.5.3 Creating Diamond Dust, Haze, Mist, or Smoke Areas" on page 325.
- Wind Corridor. A linear graphic that affects aircraft. See "11.5.4 Creating a Wind Corridor" on page 326.

### 11.5.1 Creating Blowing Dust, Sand, or Snow Areas

There are weather tactical graphics for creating visuals of blowing dust, sand, and snow. These are not modeled in the back-end, so they do not affect line of sight.

➤ **To create an area of blowing dust, sand, or snow:**

1. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, click the Weather filter to display only weather-related tactical graphics.
2. Select Blowing Dust Area, Blowing Sand Area, or Blowing Snow Area. The cursor changes to show the default boundaries of the area.
3. If necessary, scroll the mouse to zoom out until you can see the entire new area, then move the area around the terrain.
4. Click on the terrain where you want the bottom left corner of the area to be. The create dialog box opens.
5. Specify the parameters for the area. In addition to the typical parameters, such as name and label, weather areas have the following parameters:
   - Width and length. The area's dimensions in the X and Y planes.
   - Altitude. The height above sea level or terrain at which the base of the weather area is placed.
   - Thickness. The height of the object above the base height.
   - Density. Density controls how much of the area of the object is filled. Specified as a percentage between 0.00 and 100.00.
   - Corner Radius. Lets you soften the corners of the area from the default 90 degree angle.
   - Lightning Present. Toggles the display of occasional lightning bolts in the area.
6. Click Create.

---

To enhance the blowing sand, dust, and snow effects, try changing the wind speed and direction. Choose **Simulation>Environment Conditions**, select the Weather page, and set wind speed and direction in the Atmospheric Conditions table. For details, see "11.3.1 Setting the Wind Direction, Speed, and Visibility" on page 314 .

---

7. To modify the area:
   - Double-click a corner to resize the area.
   - Double-click and drag the area to move it.
   - Double-click the area and clear the Attach Object to Mouse check box to edit parameters.

## 11.5.2 Creating Ground Fog or a Sandstorm

There are weather tactical graphics for creating visuals of ground fog and sandstorms. These are not modeled in the back-end, so they do not affect line of sight.

➤ **To create a ground fog or a sandstorm:**

1. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, click the Weather filter to display only weather-related tactical graphics.
2. Select Ground Fog or Sandstorm. The cursor changes to show the default boundaries of the area.
3. If necessary, scroll the mouse to zoom out until you can see the entire new area, then move the area around the terrain.
4. Click on the terrain where you want the bottom left corner of the area to be. The create dialog box opens.
5. Specify the parameters for the area. In addition to the typical parameters, such as name and label, weather areas have the following parameters:
   - Width and length. The area's dimensions in the X and Y planes.
   - Altitude. The height above sea level or terrain at which the base of the weather area is placed.
   - Thickness. The height of the object above the base height.
   - Density. Density controls how much of the area of the object is filled. Specified as a percentage between 0.00 and 100.00.
   - Corner Radius. Lets you soften the corners of the area from the default 90 degree angle.
   - Lightning Present. Toggles the display of occasional lightning bolts in the area.
6. Click Create.
7. To modify the area:
   - Double-click a corner to resize the area.
   - Double-click and drag the area to move it.
   - Double-click the area and clear the Attach Object to Mouse check box to edit parameters.

## 11.5.3 Creating Diamond Dust, Haze, Mist, or Smoke Areas

There are weather tactical graphics for creating visuals of diamond dust (a ground-level cloud of ice crystals), haze, mist, and smoke. These are not modeled in the back-end, so they do not affect line of sight.

➤ **To create an area of diamond dust, haze, mist, or smoke:**

1. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, click the Weather filter to display only weather-related tactical graphics.

2. Select Diamond Dust Area, Haze Area, Mist Area, or Smoke Area. The cursor changes to show the default boundaries of the area.
3. If necessary, scroll the mouse to zoom out until you can see the entire new area, then move the area around the terrain.
4. Click on the terrain where you want the bottom left corner of the area to be. The create dialog box opens.
5. Specify the parameters for the area. In addition to the typical parameters, such as name and label, weather areas have the following parameters:
   - Width and length. The area's dimensions in the X and Y planes.
   - Altitude. The height above sea level or terrain at which the base of the weather area is placed.
   - Thickness. The height of the object above the base height.
   - Density. Density controls how much of the area of the object is filled. Specified as a percentage between 0.00 and 100.00.
   - Corner Radius. Lets you soften the corners of the area from the default 90 degree angle.
   - Lightning Present. Toggles the display of occasional lightning bolts in the area.
6. Click Create.
7. To modify the area:
   - Double-click a corner to resize the area.
   - Double-click and drag the area to move it.
   - Double-click the area and clear the Attach Object to Mouse check box to edit parameters.

## 11.5.4 Creating a Wind Corridor

Wind corridors are linear tactical graphics that specify a directional wind that aircraft can move through or along like a route. You can use this to represent an area where the wind is blowing at a different speed than elsewhere. For example, the wind in a valley might move at a different speed than the wind across the mountains. A wind corridor affects aircraft with either a tailwind or headwind, increasing or decreasing the true airspeed.

As with other linear tactical graphics, wind corridors have a direction. The wind direction starts at the first point you draw and moves to the final point.

➤ **To create a wind corridor:**

1. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, select Wind Corridor.
2. Click to place the vertices of the wind corridor. Double-click when you place the final vertex. The Create Wind Corridor dialog box appears.

3. Specify the parameters for the wind corridor. In addition to the typical parameters, wind corridors have the following parameters:
   - Width and height. The dimensions in the X and Z planes.
   - Altitude. This is the altitude of the vertical center of the wind corridor above sea level or terrain. Each vertex in the wind corridor can have a specific altitude. See "14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude" on page 380 to learn the different ways you can define the altitude.
   - Wind speed. The speed of the wind in the corridor.
   - Priority. This wind corridor's place in the order of precedence determines which corridor prevails when corridors overlap. The highest priority is 1.
4. Click Create.

### 11.5.5 Creating an Air Turbulence Area

You can create areas of air turbulence. Air Turbulence Areas allow you designate an area on the network where aircraft may experience turbulence. VR-Forces does not simulate the turbulence, but it is part of the comprehensive weather model simulated by VR-Forces. The information is sent over the network for the use of applications and other simulators that need to model air turbulence.

➤ **To create an air turbulence area:**

1. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, select Air Turbulence Area.
2. Click to place the vertices of the air turbulence area. Double-click when you place the final vertex. The Create Air Turbulence Area dialog box displays.
3. Specify the parameters for the wind corridor. In addition to the typical parameters, air turbulence areas have the following parameters:
   - Floor and Ceiling. The altitude of the bottom and the top of the area.
   - Air Turbulence Level. Select the level of turbulence in the area: Light, Moderate, Severe, or Extreme.
4. Click Create.

## 11.6. Displaying Weather Conditions at a Location

VR-Forces can display the weather conditions at a terrain location or the location of an entity in the Last Clicked Environment Panel (Figure 118). If the entity is not on the ground, the panel displays the weather at the altitude of the entity. For subsurface entities, the weather at sea level is reported. The panel shows:

- Cloud cover
- Precipitation
- Visibility
- Wind speed and direction
- Air Temperature

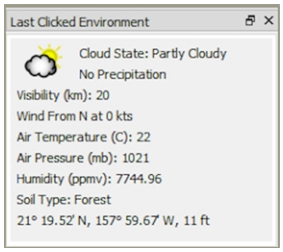
- Air Pressure
- Humidity
- Soil type
- Coordinates and elevation of the location or entity

---

As the entity moves, the environment information updates every two seconds.

---

**Figure 118. Last Clicked Environment Panel**




➤ **To view weather conditions at a location:**

1. Choose **View > Last Clicked Environment Panel**. The Last Clicked Environment Panel opens.
2. Click a location on the map or an entity.

## 11.7. Configuring Marine Conditions

VR-Forces supports a variety of dynamic ocean effects (Figure 119), including:

- Douglas Sea State. This includes wind waves (wind sea), swell character, and the directions of each. VR-Forces allows each to be separately configured.
- Wave chop.
- Surface transparency. The ability to see through the water from above sea level.
- Underwater visibility. The ability to see underwater.
- Swell.
- Surge depth. When bathymetry data is present, this is the depth of the water at which full storm effects take place. As the water gets shallower, it gets calmer.
- Tidal current speed and direction. If tidal stream wakes are enabled, they are automatically applied to streamed buoys and beacons.

**Figure 119. Ocean effects**

Enabling dynamic ocean effects can affect performance.

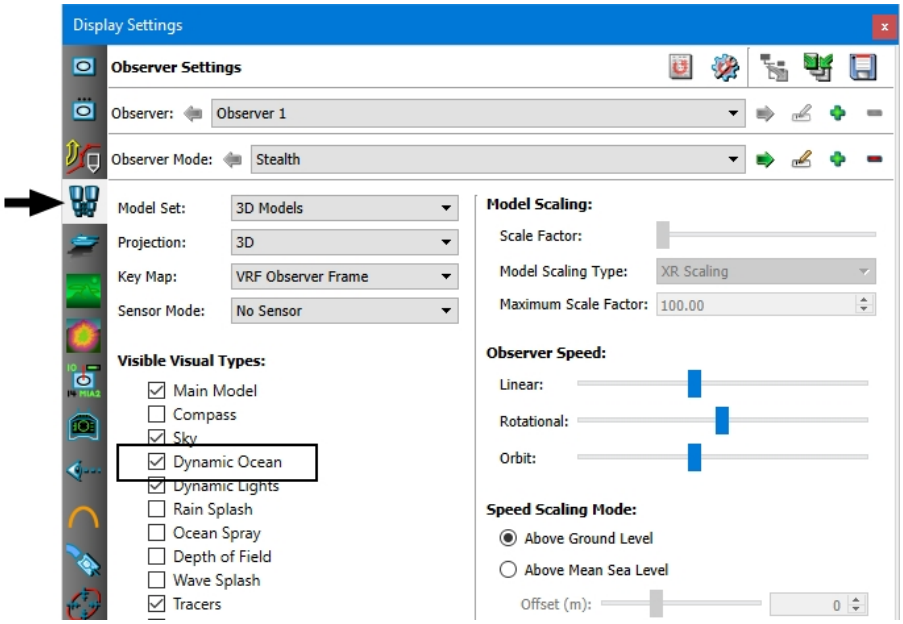
## 11.7.1 Enabling Marine Effects

Marine effects can reduce performance.

➤ **To enable marine effects (dynamic ocean):**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 120).

**Figure 120. Observer Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Dynamic Ocean check box.

---

You can also enable or disable dynamic ocean by choosing **Observer > Dynamic Ocean**, or clicking the Dynamic Ocean button (⛰) on the Observer Settings toolbar.

---

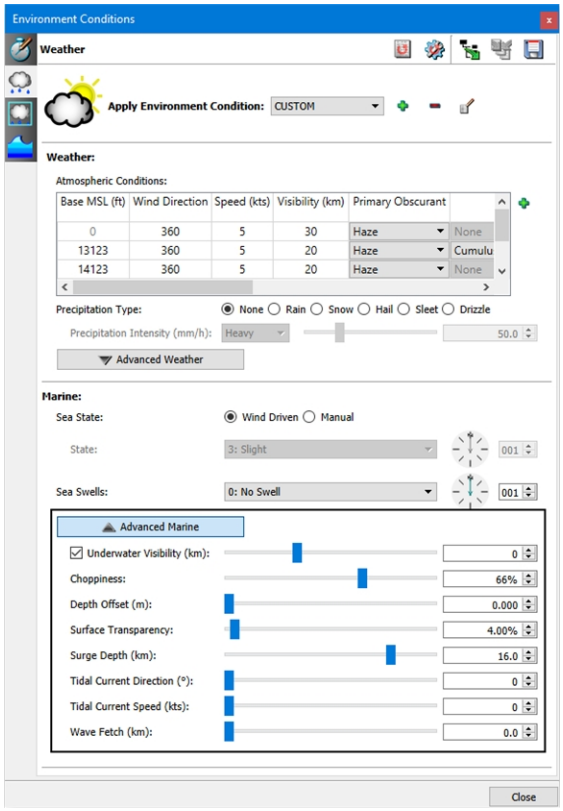
## 11.7.2 Configuring Marine Conditions

The preconfigured environment conditions include marine conditions. You can also customize the marine settings at any time.

➤ **To configure marine effects:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.
2. Select the Weather page (Figure 121).

**Figure 121. Weather page**




3. If the Marine section is not expanded, click Advanced Marine. The dialog box expands to show additional configuration options.
4. Change settings as desired. Table 16 describes the marine settings.

**Table 16. Advanced marine settings**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Sea Swells | The amount of rise and fall of waves independent of wind. Choose from 10 fixed swell states. You can also set the compass direction from which swells originate. |
| Sea State | Determined by the wind direction and speed or set manually. If manual, one of the swell states for the Douglas sea state scale. You can also set the compass direction from which sea state originates. |
| **Advanced parameters** | |
| Underwater visibility | The distance you can see underwater if the observer is underwater. |

**Table 16. Advanced marine settings (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Surface Transparency | The depth at which VR-Forces begins to apply transparency to the water surface if the terrain has bathymetry or underwater polygons. This setting helps reduce Z-fighting along the shoreline. It does not mean that you can see some distance into the water when the observer is over deep water. The maximum value represents transparency to 500 meters. |
| Choppiness | The percentage of turbulence on the water. |
| Surge depth | When bathymetry data is present, this is the depth of the water at which full storm effects take place. As the water gets shallower, it gets calmer. |
| Tidal Current Speed | The speed of the tidal current. This affects the display of tidal wakes on buoys and beacons. Default: 0. |
| Tidal Current Direction | The direction of the tidal current flow. This affects the display of tidal wakes on buoys and beacons. |

## 11.7.3 Enabling Tidal Stream Wakes

Tidal stream wakes create wake effects around buoys and beacons based on the movement of the tides. Tidal stream wakes are supported as standalone models. They are automatically attached to streamed buoys and beacons. VR-Forces includes wake models for each of the supported buoy and beacon models. They are named for the buoy or beacon type they support, for example, BuoysPillarWake or BeaconsLatticeWake. You may want to edit the **wakeLength** parameter to provide the best visuals for your terrain.

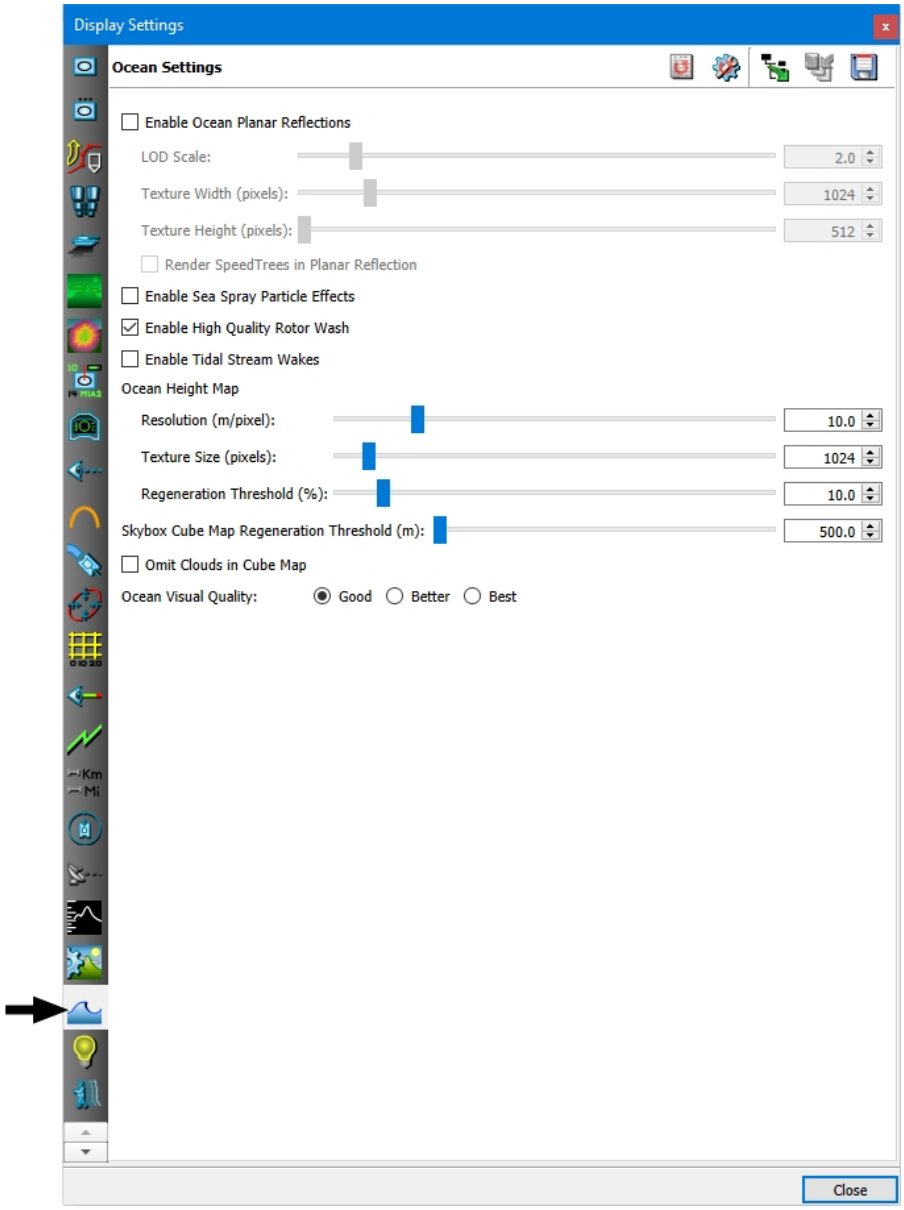
Tidal stream wakes are disabled by default.

Even if tidal stream wakes are enabled, you will not see any wakes unless you also specify a tidal current, which is 0 by default. For details about setting tidal current, please see "11.7. Configuring Marine Conditions" on page 328.

➤ **To enable or disable tidal stream wakes:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Ocean Settings page (Figure 122).

**Figure 122. Ocean Settings**




3. Select or clear Enable Tidal Stream Wakes.

## 11.7.4 Setting Ocean Quality

You can adjust the overall quality of visualization of the ocean. Increasing ocean quality decreases performance. Best quality may affect overall performance of your computer. We suggest using this setting primarily for demonstrations rather than large scenarios.

➤ **To set ocean quality:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Ocean Settings page (Figure 122 above).

3. Select one of the Ocean Visual Quality options.

### 11.7.5 Configuring Breaking Waves

VR-Forces can simulate the effect of waves breaking along the shore line. This feature uses shapefile data that defines the direction of the breaking waves. The *MAK Earth (online).mtf* terrain includes sample data for breaking waves. To see it, view the island of Oahu, Hawaii.

---

You can set the amplitude of breaking waves. By default, the amplitude is 0.

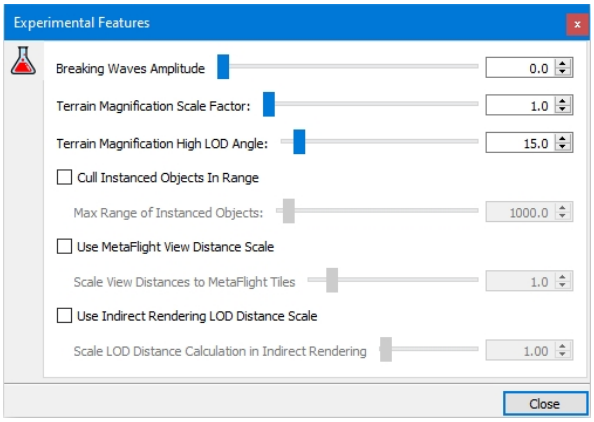
---

This is considered an experimental feature. It may be useful, but may affect performance.

➤ **To configure breaking waves:**

1. Choose **Settings > Experimental Features**. The Experimental Features dialog box opens (Figure 123).

**Figure 123. Experimental Features dialog box**




2. Adjust the Breaking Waves Amplitude slider or type a value in the box. The maximum value is 10.0.

## 11.8. Setting the Thermocline

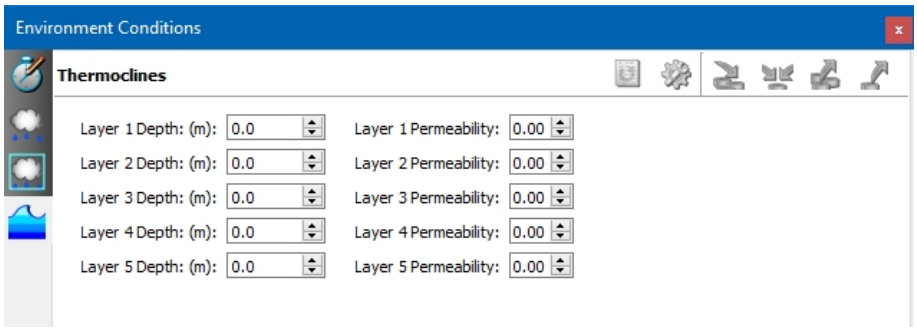
Thermoclines are layers of water that have different temperatures and, therefore, different density. Sound transmission varies as it passes through the thermocline. In VR-Forces, sonar effectiveness is reduced as it passes through thermocline boundaries. By default, VR-Forces does not set any thermoclines. You can specify the depth for up to five thermoclines.

➤ **To specify a thermocline:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Environment Conditions**. The Environment Conditions dialog box opens.

2. Select the Thermoclines page (Figure 124).

**Figure 124. Thermoclines page**




3. For each thermocline that you want to specify, enter or select a value in the depth box and the permeability box.

## 11.9. Publishing Weather Over HLA Using NETN METOC FOM

Using HLA Evolved, you can use VR-Forces to publish most of the object classes and attributes found in the NATO Education and Training Network (NETN) Meteorological and Oceanographic (METOC) Federation Object Model (FOM) module. This is also known as the METOC FOM.

When enabled, the VR-Forces simulation responsible for weather simulation publishes the weather state using:

- The use of an EnvironmentProcess with custom records
- The METOC FOM object classes

### 11.9.1 METOC Object Classes that Can Be Published

The published METOC object classes are based on both the global weather and any Weather Areas in the scenario. The global weather specifies a GeoReferenceType of 0 to indicate that it not a defined geographical area, but the whole world. Weather Areas use an appropriate GeoReferenceType.

Each global weather or Weather Area object publishes multiple METOC object classes.

- Multiple troposphere objects depending on the weather settings
- A single LandSurface object
- A single WaterSurface object
- A single SubsurfaceLayer object

The following attributes are currently supported for each METOC object class.

- Weather
- Temperature
- Precipitation

- VisibilityRange
- Wind.HorizontalSpeed
- Wind.Direction
- BarometricPressure
- Humidity
- TroposphereLayer
- Cloud
- LandSurface
- Snow.Depth
- WaterSurface
- Current
- Tide
- Swell
- SeaState
- Wave
- SubsurfaceLayer
- Temperature

## 11.9.2 Enabling the Publication of METOC FOM Classes

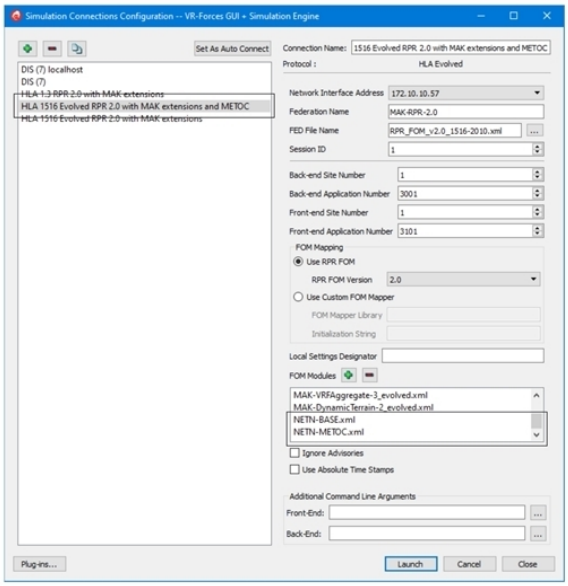
VR-Forces supports the METOC FOM module when you use HLA Evolved.

➤ **To enable the publishing of METOC FOM classes:**

1. Edit *./appData/settings/vrfSim/vrfSim.mtl*). In this file, change **(setqb enableMetoc 1)** to **(setqb enableMetoc 1)**.
2. In the VR-Forces launcher, either edit the existing HLA Evolved connection or duplicate it to add these modules:
   a. NETN-BASE.xml
   b. NETN-METOC.xml

To learn how to create or edit your connection configuration, see "4.7. Configuring Simulation Connections" on page 142. Figure 125 shows an example of a connection configuration that supports the METOC FOM.

**Figure 125. HLA Evolved connection configured for METOC**



# 12. Scenario Files

This chapter describes the files that are created when you create a scenario.


12.1. Introduction ..... 340
12.2. The Scenario File ..... 340
12.2.1 Scenario Parameters ..... 341
12.2.2 Specifying Pathnames for Scenario Files ..... 345
12.2.3 Changing the Terrain Database for a Scenario ..... 346
12.3. The Plan File ..... 346
12.4. The Object Map File ..... 347
12.5. Editing the Scenario Objects File ..... 347
12.5.1 Saving Default Parameters to the Scenario Objects File ..... 348
12.6. The Scenario Extras File ..... 348
12.7. Temporary Scenario Directories ..... 348

## 12.1. Introduction

When you create and save a scenario, VR-Forces stores information about the scenario in the following files:

- The scenario file, named *scenario_name.scn*, lists the locations of the other scenario files, the terrain database, and the simulation model set file, and it also sets several parameters for the scenario.
- The scenario objects file, named *scenario_name.oob*, stores identification and state information for simulation objects, control objects, and published tactical graphics.
- The object map file (*scenario_name.omp*) maps objects to the back-ends on which they were created.
- The plan file (*scenario_name.pln*) stores individual plans and global plans.
- The scenario extras file (*scenario_name.xtr*) lists the forces that each force is hostile to and it stores spawn pattern templates.
- The scripts file (*scenario_name.spt*) stores scenario-specific scripts.
- The overlay file (*scenario_name.ovl*) lists tactical graphics that are not published. Published tactical graphics are in the scenario objects file.
- The selection groups file (*scenario_name.sgr*) stores the selection groups in the scenario and their members.
- The saved views file (*scenario_name.osrx*) stores observer views, if any. It can also specify a startup view.
- The scenario-specific GUI settings file (*scenario_name.gui_settings*) contains GUI settings that only apply to this scenario.

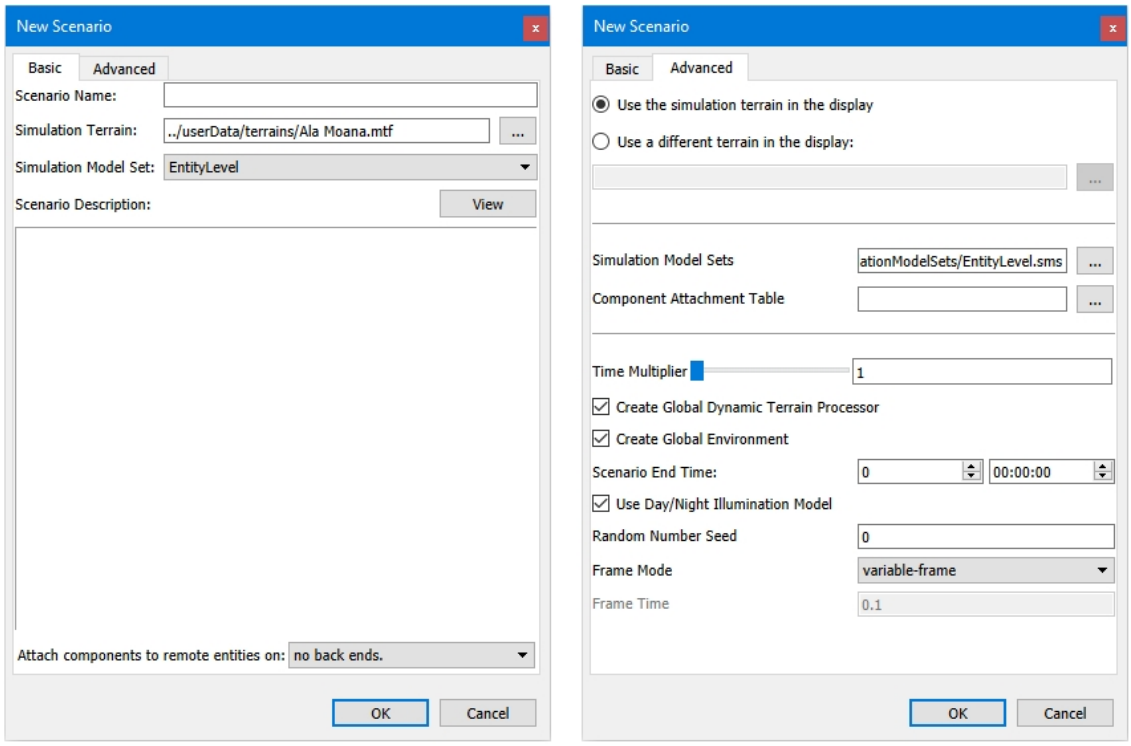
By default, scenarios are saved in a compressed zip archive with the extension *.scnx*. If you examine a compressed scenario file in an unzipping application, you will see that it contains the individual files described in the previous paragraphs.

For the most part, you will not want to edit scenario files by hand. In some cases, we recommend that you not edit them. However, this chapter explains how to edit them if you need to.

## 12.2. The Scenario File

When you create a scenario, you can set its parameters in the New Scenario dialog box (Figure 126).

**Figure 126. New Scenario dialog box**




The default values for scenario settings in the New Scenario dialog box are drawn from the file *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default-scenario.tmpl*. If you want to change the default settings, you can edit that file.

## 12.2.1 Scenario Parameters

A typical scenario file looks like the following (assume a scenario file called *myscenario.scn*):

```
(Scenario
    (Component-Attachment  0)
    (Component-Attachment-Table  "")
    (Terrain-Database  "..\userData\terrains\Ground-db.mtf")
    (Gui-Terrain-Database  "..\userData\terrains\Ground-db.mtf")
    (Order-Of-Battle  "myscenario.oob")
    (Scenario-Scripts  "myscenario.spt")
    (Orbat "myscenario.orb"
    (Plan  "myscenario.pln")
    (Overlay  "myscenario.ovl")
    (SelectionGroups  "myscenario.sgr")
    (Object-Map  "myscenario.omp")
    (Scenario-extras  "myscenario.xtr")
    (time-multiplier  1.000000)
    (auto-reorganize False)
    (random-number-seed  0)
    (frame-mode  "variable-frame")
    (frame-time  0.100000)
```

```
    (run-duration-time 0)
    (sim-time  0.000000) //no loner used
    (exercise-start-time  0.000000) // no longer used
    (additional-opds )
    (Simulation-Model-Set-Files "$(DATA_DIR)\simulationModelSets\
        EntityLevel.sms")
    (scenario-name  "myscenario"
    (scenario-data
        (ChangeOnSave_ComponentAttachmentTable  "")
        (Create_Global_Dynamic_Terrain  "1")
        (Create_Global_Environment  "1")
        (DefaultObserverView  "1 - Absolute")
        (GuiObserverViews  "myscenario.osrx")
        (GuiScenarioSettings  "myscenario.gui_settings")
        (HiddenTerrainViews  "AlaMoana PVD:2D;AlaMoana Port:3D")
        (Language  "en")
        (ScenarioDescription  "Some text that describes the scenario.")
        (ScenarioExtentInformation  "-2.81258e+006,-4.33259e+006,
                3.72903e+006,938.957")
        (Set_Scenario_Start_Time_At_Local_On_First_Object_Creation  "36000")
        (UseDayNightModel  "1")
    )
    (version  3.200000)
)
```

Paths in the scenario files are relative to the application directory, for example, *./bin64*.

The Starting Time of Day is stored in the scenario objects file, not the scenario file.

Table 17 describes the parameters in a scenario file.

**Table 17. Scenario file parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **Component-Attachment** | Specifies whether attachment of components to remote simulation objects is allowed in the scenario. The options are:<br>• 0: no component attachment.<br>• 1: the first back-end manages all remote components.<br>• 2: remote component attachment is load-balanced on all back-ends.<br>Although you can set this value in the New Scenario and Load Scenario dialog boxes, it is not saved in the scenario file. To force a specific value, you must edit the scenario file. |
| **Component-Attachment-Table** | Specifies the component attachment table to use if attachment of components to remote simulation objects is allowed. |
| **Terrain-Database** | Specifies the terrain database to be loaded by the back-end. |
| **Gui-Terrain-Database** | Specifies the terrain database loaded in the front-end. |
| **Order-Of-Battle** | Specifies the scenario objects file. |
| **Scenario-Scripts** | Specifies the file that has scenario-specific Lua scripts. |
| **Orbat** | Specifies the order of battle file. |
| **Plan** | Specifies the plan file. |
| **Overlay** | Specifies the overlay file. |
| **SelectionGroups** | Specifies the selection groups file. |
| **Object-Map** | Specifies the object mapping file. |
| **Scenario-Extras** | Specifies the extras file, which records force hostility relationships, and stores spawn pattern templates. It may be used for other purposes in the future. |
| **time-multiplier** | Specifies whether a scenario runs in real time or faster than real time. A value greater than 1 runs the simulation faster than real time. You can set this value dynamically using the Time Multiplier toolbar.<br>If you are running a scenario using HLA Time Management, it is strongly recommended that you set **time-multiplier** to 1. |
| **auto-reorganize** | Alloows you to specify the default behavior for unit reorganization. Set it to True or False. For information about reorganization, please see "21.1.1 How Units Are Organized" on page 489. |
| **random-number-seed** | Sets the default random number seed. It provides a starting point for the generation of random numbers needed by VR-Forces. Enter an integer between 0 and the largest integer permitted on your system. |

**Table 17. Scenario file parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **frame-mode** | Sets the frame rate mode to one of the following:<br>• Variable-Frame Run-To-Complete (variable-frame)<br>• Fixed-Frame Best-Effort (fixed-frame)<br>• Fixed-Frame Run-To-Complete (fixed-frame-run-to-complete).<br>These frame rate modes are described in "3.4.3 Exercise Clock Modes" on page 116. |
| **frame-time** | Specifies the length of a frame, in seconds. If **frame-mode** is set to **fixed-frame** or **fixed-frame-run-to-complete**, you must set the frame time to a non-zero value. A value of zero for frame time prevents simulation time from advancing in either of these modes. |
| **run-duration-time** | Specifies how long the scenario should run before automatically stopping. |
| **sim-time** | This parameter is not supported in scenarios created after VR-Forces 4.0.3 and is only for backwards compatibility |
| **exercise-start--time** | This parameter is not supported in scenarios created after VR-Forces 4.0.3 and is only for backwards compatibility |
| **additional-opds** | Specifies custom OPD files to load (for backwards compatibility only). |
| **Simulation-Model-Set-Files** | Specifies a list of SMS files to load. The path is relative to the default data directory (*./data*) or a user-specified data directory. |
| **scenario-name** | An optional parameter that assigns a name to the scenario. It is independent of the file name and is only used in some message dialog boxes. |

**Table 17. Scenario file parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **scenario-data** | A block of data with the following additional parameters:<br>• **Create_Global_Dynamic_Terrain** specifies whether the global dynamic terrain processor should be enabled. If this is disabled, dynamic terrain does not work unless you create a dynamic terrain area.<br>• **Create_Global_Environment** specifies whether the scenario supports environmental conditions.<br>• **DefaultObserverView** specifies the observer view to use at startup.<br>• **GuiObserverViews** specifies the saved views file for the scenario.<br>• **GuiScenarioSettings** specifies the *.gui_settings* file. It records scenario-specific GUI settings.<br>• **HiddenTerrainViews** lists views associated with the scenario terrain that are not displayed in the Observer Views Panel because they were cleared from the Observer Views Panel.<br>• **ScenarioDescription** is the text of the scenario description.<br>• **ScenarioExtentInformation** lists the extents of the scenario for the zoom to extents option.<br>• **Set_Scenario_Start_Time_At_Local_On_First_Object_Creation** specifies the start time for the scenario, in seconds.<br>• **UseDayNightModel** specifies whether to use the day/night illumination model. |
| **version** | Specifies versioning information for the scenario file. Do not edit this parameter. |

## 12.2.2 Specifying Pathnames for Scenario Files

Pathnames in a scenario file can be absolute or relative. When VR-Forces saves a new scenario, it creates pathnames that are relative to the application directory. If you think you might need to move a scenario to another computer or a new directory structure, change the paths to be relative to the *./bin64* directory. To change pathnames, edit the scenario file in a text editor. VR-Forces preserves the new paths when it saves the scenario.

---

**!** If you plan to run multiple front-ends and back-ends on multiple machines, particularly if they use different operating systems, you must change the pathnames for the terrain database and object parameter database to relative paths or simple pathnames.

---

#### Configuring How Paths are Interpreted

The following parameters in *vrfSim.mtl* determine how pathnames for the object parameter database and terrain database are resolved:

- **defaultParameterDatabasePath** specifies the path to search for OPD files when an explicit path is not specified in a scenario file.
- **defaultTerrainDatabasePath** specifies the path to search for terrain database files when an explicit path is not specified in a scenario file.

When the back-end loads a scenario file, it looks for the object parameter database using the following search order:

1. If the path is absolute, load the file in the specified path.
2. If the path is relative, try to load the file relative to the application path (*./bin64/vrfSimprotocol*).
3. Look in the directory specified by **defaultParameterDatabasePath.**

When the back-end loads a scenario file, it looks for the terrain database using the following search order:

1. If the path is absolute, load the file in the specified path.
2. If the path is relative, try to load the file relative to the application path.
3. Look in the directory specified by **defaultTerrainDatabasePath**.
4. Use the path in the user-defined environmental variable VRF_TERRAIN_PATH, if it is specified.

### 12.2.3 Changing the Terrain Database for a Scenario

When you create a new scenario, you must choose terrain databases for the front-end and back-end. By default, the back-end uses the same database as the front end.

You can edit the pathname of a terrain database in the scenario file or in the Scenario Properties dialog box. However, unless the new terrain database covers the same geographic area as the old one and is the same type of terrain (for example, UTM or geocentric), the scenario objects and overlay information associated with the scenario may be confusing or useless. (For details about editing Scenario Properties, please see "7.4.3 Editing Scenario Properties" on page 235.)

## 12.3. The Plan File

VR-Forces saves all individual and global plans to a plan file (*.pln*).

Plan files are created interactively in the VR-Forces Plan window. The Plan window ensures that the plan is written using the correct syntax. We recommend that you do not try to create plan files or edit plan files by hand.

## 12.4. The Object Map File

When you start VR-Forces with multiple back-ends, you can specify which back-ends simulate the various objects you create. The object map file records the back-ends on which objects are simulated. The next time you open the scenario, VR-Forces looks for the back-ends specified in the object map file. If any of the specified back-ends is not available, the front-end asks if you want to remap objects to the back-ends that are present. You can run the simulation without remapping. However, the behavior of a simulation that is missing simulation objects is unpredictable.

Mappings between objects and back-ends are saved to the object map file. If you have a scenario that uses multiple back-ends and you are uncertain about the site:application values you need to use to run the scenario, you can view the object map file to refresh your memory. The following example shows two entities and a route mapped to two different back-ends:

```
(map-entry
    (address  1 3201)
    (name  "M1A2 1")
)
(map-entry
    (address  2 3400)
    (name  "T80 2")
)
(map-entry
    (address  1 3201)
    (name  "route_1")
)
```

The **address** parameter lists the site and application number used for the back-end on which the object was simulated.

If you want to run an existing scenario using back-ends with different site and application values, you could edit the object map file and change the address field to match the new site and application values. However, if you make any mistakes in this process, your scenario might not run correctly. As an alternative to editing the object map file by hand, you could use the load balancing option to remap objects to back ends. For details about load balancing, please see "7.5. Load Balancing Scenarios" on page 238.

## 12.5. Editing the Scenario Objects File

When you create a scenario, you populate it with simulation objects and tactical graphics. When you save or checkpoint a scenario, VR-Forces saves a record of each simulation object and tactical graphic, including its state information and geographic location, to the scenario objects file. The next time you load this scenario, VR-Forces creates the simulation objects using the settings in the object parameter database, but then overrides those settings with the information in the scenario objects file. Therefore, changes you make to the object parameter database might not get picked up by existing scenarios. If you want to change a basic value, you might need to edit the scenario objects file.

### 12.5.1 Saving Default Parameters to the Scenario Objects File

When a simulation object in a scenario is saved to the scenario objects file, parameters that are unchanged from the initial values in the object parameter database entry are written out in the form:

(*parameter-name* USE-DEFAULT)

The USE-DEFAULT keyword indicates that the next time this file is loaded (as part of a scenario) it should be initialized from data in the simulation object's OPD entry. The practical effect of the USE-DEFAULT keyword in scenario objects files is that if you modify the object parameter database, the next time you load a scenario, those changes can affect the simulation objects in the scenario.

This allows you to experiment with changes to parameters and view the effects of the changes to existing scenarios, without modifying the scenario objects file.

## 12.6. The Scenario Extras File

VR-Forces permits you to configure hostility relationships: for any force you can specify which forces it is hostile towards. By default, Friendly and Opposing forces are hostile to each other. If you change the hostility relationships, they are saved in the scenario extras file (*.xtr*).

This file also stores spawn patterns.

## 12.7. Temporary Scenario Directories

When you load a scenario, VR-Forces creates temporary directories in which it stores files that it requires to maintain and update the scenario. To prevent conflicts in the temporary directories when running multiple copies of VR-Forces from the same directory, VR-Forces creates unique temporary directories. The directories are created in the path specified by the TMP environment variable. If this variable is not specified on Linux, the */tmp* directory is used. The TMP variable must be specified on Windows. If VR-Forces cannot create a temporary directory, an error message is printed and the application exits. In the front-end, the temporary directory is created by *DtVrfRemoteController* and starts with the prefix *vrffe*. In the back-end, the temporary directory is created by *DtCgfDispatcher* and has the prefix *vrfbe*. In both cases, the temporary directory is removed when VR-Forces shuts down.

# III. Simulation Objects

The chapters in this section explain how to add simulation objects to a scenario, how to select them, and how to display information about them.

# 13. Introduction to Simulation Objects

Simulation objects are the entities and units that VR-Forces simulates as part of a scenario.


13.1. Simulation Objects ..... 352
13.2. How Simulation Objects Are Identified ..... 352
13.2.1 UUIDs ..... 353
13.2.2 Simulation Object Names ..... 353
13.2.3 Echelon IDs ..... 354
13.2.4 Object IDs ..... 354
13.2.5 Labels ..... 354
13.3. How Simulation Objects Are Organized ..... 354
13.3.1 How Echelon IDs Are Assigned ..... 355
13.4. How Simulation Objects Communicate ..... 355
13.4.1 Custom Communication Models ..... 356
13.5. VR-Forces Uses a Component Architecture ..... 356
13.5.1 Sensors ..... 357
13.5.2 Controllers ..... 357
13.5.3 Actuators ..... 357
13.6. Simulation Object Behaviors and Tasks ..... 358
13.7. Entity-Level Modeling and Aggregate-Level Modeling ..... 358
13.8. Collision, Obstacle, and Feature Avoidance ..... 359
13.9. Entity Movement and Soil Type ..... 360
13.9.1 Ground Vehicle Movement on Slopes ..... 362

## 13.1. Simulation Objects

The players in a simulation are called simulation objects. There are two broad classes of simulation objects:

- Entities represent a discrete individual vehicle or person, such as a tank or a submarine.
- Units represent a hierarchical group of entities, units, or both, such as a platoon or a company.

The concepts described in this section are generally applicable to entity-level modeling and aggregate-level modeling. For details about the differences between aggregate-level modeling and entity-level modeling, please see "13.7. Entity-Level Modeling and Aggregate-Level Modeling" on page 358.

Simulation objects can act in and respond to their environment. They execute tasks and they have behaviors. Each simulation object is part of a force and may be a member of an organizational unit.

The VR-Forces application comes with a set of simulation object models that you can instantiate in a simulation. Application developers can create additional simulation objects with the VR-Forces toolkit. You can also create new simulation object types in the Simulation Object Editor. For information about creating new simulation objects, please see "Section XII. Creating and Editing Simulation Models" on page 1223.

## 13.2. How Simulation Objects Are Identified

VR-Forces identifies simulation objects by UUID (universal unique ID), name, echelon ID, object ID, and label. Table 18 summarizes the characteristics of each type of identifier.

**Table 18. Simulation object identifiers**

| Identifier | Characteristics |
|---|---|
| UUID | • Unique. Assigned by VR-Forces.<br>• Persists from exercise to exercise. |
| Name | • Persists from exercise to exercise.<br>• Set by user.<br>• Limits on the length of the character string.<br>• Does not have to be unique. |
| Echelon ID | • Must be unique.<br>• Persists from exercise to exercise.<br>• Assigned by VR-Forces. Changes if an entity is organized into a unit. |

**Table 18. Simulation object identifiers (continued)**

| Identifier | Characteristics |
|---|---|
| Object ID | • Unique.<br>• Does not persist from exercise to exercise.<br>• No user control. |
| Label | • Does not have to be unique.<br>• Persists from exercise to exercise.<br>• Controlled by user.<br>• No limit on character length. |

### 13.2.1 UUIDs

UUIDs are unique identifiers generated by VR-Forces to ensure that every simulation object can be uniquely identified and that the identification persists each time you run the scenario. In particular, the use of UUIDs supports importation of scenarios because while simulation objects in different scenarios might have the same names, they will not have the same UUIDs, so it is possible to import them and not change their names if you do not want to. (The default is to rename duplicate simulation objects.)

### 13.2.2 Simulation Object Names

A name is a text string that, by default, consists of the simulation object's short name, as defined in the object parameter database, and an integer. For example, if you create a new scenario and add two M1A2 tanks and two Apache helicopters, the default names are **M1A2 1**, **M1A2 2**, **AH-64A 1**, and **AH-64A 2**. When VR-Forces generates a name, it picks an integer that makes the name unique. However, if you import a scenario and do not specify that duplicate names be renamed, it is possible that more than one simulation object will have the same name.

You can edit a simulation object name to make it meaningful to you.

Simulation object names have the following restrictions on their length:

- Entities – 11 characters.
- Units – 31 characters.

If you are using a character set that requires multiple ASCII characters to represent a visible character, entity and unit names will need to be correspondingly shorter.

### 13.2.3 Echelon IDs

An echelon ID is a text string that identifies the simulation object's place in the force hierarchy. For example, if you create an **M1A2 1** in Blue force (or Force 1), the echelon ID would be **1 M1A2, 1 Force**. The syntax of echelon IDs and the details of simulation object organization are described in "13.3. How Simulation Objects Are Organized" below. You cannot edit a simulation object's echelon ID. The echelon ID changes if you change the force hierarchy by adding, removing, or editing simulation objects.

### 13.2.4 Object IDs

Each simulation object has a unique object ID (global object designator). The global object designator is equivalent to the HLA object name in HLA and the DIS entity identifier in DIS. The object ID is used to identify the simulation object internally and for network communications.

### 13.2.5 Labels

A label is a text string that you can use to identify simulation objects without the restrictions of uniqueness or character length that affect the other identifiers.

You can also identify simulation objects using extended labels – additional text strings that you can give descriptive names to. For details, please see "16.3. Using Extended Labels" on page 422.

---

In the VR-Forces GUI, entity labels refer to informational graphics displayed next to simulation objects. The label described in this section is one of the symbol decorations displayed in Plan View observer mode as part of the entity label. For more information about the different types of labels and information displays, please see "16.2. Displaying Entity Labels" on page 416 .

---

## 13.3. How Simulation Objects Are Organized

All simulation objects simulated by VR-Forces exist in the context of a hierarchy. At the top-most level, simulation objects are grouped according to force ID (friendly, opposing, neutral, and so on). At lower levels, simulation objects are grouped according to military organization, in which a simulation object has a designation in the hierarchy, such as 2nd Platoon, B Company. At each echelon level in the organization, a simulation object has a single superior simulation object. Disaggregated units contain one or more subordinate entities, units, or both. The hierarchy's lowest level contains an individual entity.

---

In entity-level scenarios, units can be in an aggregated state or a disaggregated state. For details, please see "21.1. Units in Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 488.

---

Each simulation object has an echelon ID in the following format:

*designator* [*category*] [*echelon*], *designator* [*category*] [*echelon*], ..., *force_number* Force

where:

- *designator* is a number or letter that differentiates the simulation object from other members of the echelon, such as 1 (M1A1), 2 (M1A2), and so on.
- *category* is an optional descriptor for the simulation object, such as M1A2.
- *echelon* is an optional descriptor for the organizational unit, such as "Platoon".
- *force_number* is the force the simulation object belongs to, based on the force type enumerations. The force is the highest level in the hierarchy.

When you create a new simulation object, it exists only within the default force. Therefore, its echelon ID would be similar to:

```
1 M1A2, 1 Force
```

If a simulation object becomes part of a unit, the unit information becomes part of the echelon ID, and the designator may change, for example:

```
2 M1A2, 2 Plt, 1 Force
```

### 13.3.1 How Echelon IDs Are Assigned

The short name and echelon labels that make up an echelon ID, such as "M1A2", "Plt", and so on, are specified in the VR-Forces object parameter database and are associated with object-types. When you create a simulation object of a certain type, the short name and echelon name associated with that type are assigned to the simulation object. You cannot change the labels interactively. You can change the labels by editing the object parameter database.

Designators are assigned by VR-Forces. You have no direct control over them. When you create new simulation objects, they are assigned designators sequentially, starting with one (1). If you aggregate a group of entities, the unit leader is assigned the designator 1, and the other entities in the unit are assigned successive designator numbers.

## 13.4. How Simulation Objects Communicate

VR-Forces includes a default communication model called simple-radio-comm-model. Using this simple communication model, radio messages always reach their intended destination (as long as the destination is on a reachable network), and messages are all passed instantly. The simple radio communication model has one parameter, which determines how the radio networks are set up. There are three connection-modes available:

- **aggregate** mode specifies that each unit has its own radio network. Messages sent from a simulation object can reach any simulation object that is in the same organization, at the same level (the simulation object's peers in the organization), and can also reach the simulation object's direct superior. All other simulation objects are outside the network and are unable to receive

messages sent by the simulation object. This is the default mode.

- **force** mode specifies that there is a radio network for each force in VR-Forces. Messages sent from a simulation object can reach any other simulation object of the same force.
- **all** mode specifies that all simulation objects in VR-Forces are part of one large radio network. In this case, any simulation object can receive messages sent by any other simulation object.

The communication model is configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/<sms>/CommModelParams.mtl*. For details about configuring radios, please see "73.2. Configuring Radios" on page 1498.

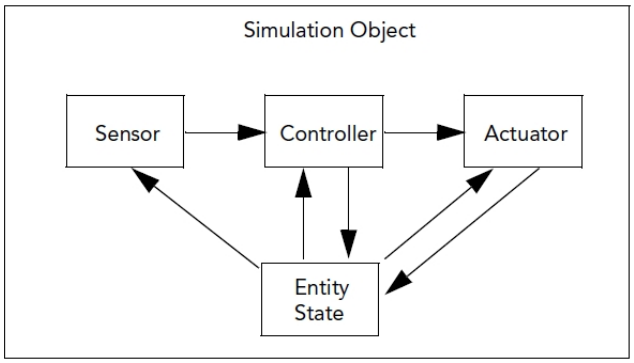
### 13.4.1 Custom Communication Models

You can create new communication models and install them in VR-Forces. This is useful if you want to define your own connectivity model or write your own algorithms for determining if radio messages get delivered. For details, please see API documentation.

## 13.5. VR-Forces Uses a Component Architecture

VR-Forces simulation objects use a component architecture similar to that used in many robotics applications. There are three basic types of components supported: sensors, controllers, and actuators. Components communicate with each other through data ports and port groups, which can provide data as simple as a single number (such as a throttle value) or more complex data such as a list of simulation objects that have been detected. The port groups make it possible to multiplex and prioritize multiple data sources to a single data recipient. For example, the automotive actuator of ground vehicles can receive inputs from a collision-avoidance controller, move-to-point controller, and follow-route controller, but it does not want inputs from all of those controllers at once.

**Figure 127. Simulation object component architecture**




The component architecture supports any number of sensors, controllers, and actuators in a simulation object. Components are specified in the object parameter

parameter information to a component.

For more information, please see "Appendix C. Object Parameters" on page 1599.

### 13.5.1 Sensors

Sensor components provide models of the simulated environment, which are used by controller components to make decisions and perform tasks. The simplest sensor might provide (simulated) ground truth, while more sophisticated ones could use complex models for sensing electromagnetic emissions, RADAR, or a cognitive model to simulate a soldier or crew member's perception of the simulated world. Sensor components can get information from:

- The virtual network.
- From a terrain database.
- By monitoring the state of the simulation object model.
- Many other potential sources.

The use of sensors is optional.

### 13.5.2 Controllers

Controller components typically provide control inputs to actuator components (although this is not required). Controllers can use information provided by sensors to perform their functions, but this is not a requirement either. For example, the controller that implements the various forms of the Wait task neither requires sensor information nor provides control inputs to any actuators.

### 13.5.3 Actuators

Actuator components:

- Provide the physical model of the simulation object being simulated.
- Change the simulation object’s state.
- Interact with other simulation objects (such as by sending messages).

Actuators can use control inputs provided by controller components as parameters to its model each simulation frame. Actuators may:

- Send messages on the radio system.
- Generate events on the virtual network, such as detonations.
- Modify the state of the simulation object: position, velocity, damage, and so on.

Actuators can also use data directly from a sensor, when modeled or filtered data is preferred over simulated ground truth for a model that does not require a controller.

## 13.6. Simulation Object Behaviors and Tasks

A behavior is something that a simulation object knows how to do on its own. Behaviors describe how a simulation object reacts to a specific condition or situation or how it performs a task. A task is something that you tell a simulation object to do. A simulation object does not innately know that it should move to a point. However, if you task it to move to a point, it knows how to locate the point and how to move to it.

Behaviors can override task assignments. For example, if an entity is moving along a route and detects another entity in its path, the collision-avoidance behavior overrides the movement task until the entity successfully avoids the obstacle and can return to moving along the route.

VR-Forces has behavioral models for the included simulation object types. These models simulate the behaviors you would expect from live participants and objects functioning in the real world. You can change the parameters for the behavior models. With the VR-Forces toolkit, you can change the models themselves and add additional models. For more information, please see *VR-Forces Developers Guide*.

- No semi-automated forces (SAF) system, such as VR-Forces, can completely emulate the behavior of a complex real-world entity. The behaviors provided by VR-Forces handle the lower-level activities necessary to complete a task and allow you to focus on the higher level activities involved in assigning tasks and preparing plans.
- If you do not want a simulation object to engage in any independent intelligent behaviors, you can disable them with the AI Enabled set data request. For details, please see "34.3. AI Enabled" on page 798.

## 13.7. Entity-Level Modeling and Aggregate-Level Modeling

VR-Forces supports two different approaches to modeling simulation objects: entity-level simulation and aggregate-level simulation.

In entity-level simulations, VR-Forces models the interaction among individual entities, such as ships, tanks, automobiles, airplanes, and people. When you create a simulation object, you are usually creating one tank, one ship, one human, or one of another object. Combat takes place between entities based on their weapon systems and their ability to withstand munitions.

In an entity-level simulation, you can combine entities into higher echelon units, such as platoons and companies, but when they engage in combat, they do so by modeling the interactions of their members at the individual entity level.

Aggregate-level simulations focus on the high-level movement and interaction of large numbers of personnel and equipment in hierarchical units. For the most part, they do not model individual simulation object interactions and combat. When you create a simulation object, you are usually creating a company, a brigade, or another object

representing an entire group. Aggregate-level combat is modeled on the relative strengths and weaknesses of simulation objects in personnel, equipment, and location, not on the engagement of individual entities.

As in entity-level simulations, in an aggregate-level simulation, you can combine entities and units into higher echelon units.

The type of modeling used in a scenario depends on the systems that simulation objects use, which are configured in the simulation model set it uses. If you use *EntityLevel.sms* or an SMS similar to it, it uses entity-level modeling. If you use *AggregateLevel.sms*, or an SMS similar to it, it uses aggregate-level modeling. Therefore, when you create a scenario, you must consider which type of modeling you want to use and you must remember which type of modeling you are using when you populate the scenario.

Aggregate-level modeling only works with HLA Evolved and MAK FOM extensions. (If you try to create a scenario with *AggregateLevel.sms* and you are using an unsupported protocol, VR-Forces displays an error message.) For a detailed discussion of the aggregate warfare model, please see "Chapter 22. How Aggregate-Level Modeling Works" on page 493.

*AggregateLevel.sms* has some simulation objects that represent individual entities. However, they use data-driven models that are different from those used by similar entities in *EntityLevel.sms*.

Although it is possible to create a scenario that uses both types of simulation model sets, the resulting behavior will be unpredictable because simulation objects that use aggregate-level modeling cannot interact with simulation objects that use entity-level modeling. Combining these SMSs is not supported and not recommended.

## 13.8. Collision, Obstacle, and Feature Avoidance

By default, in entity-level scenarios, simulation objects avoid other simulation objects, features, and obstacle control objects. If, while carrying out a task, a ground, lifeform, or rotary-wing entity detects that it is on course to collide with another entity, feature, or obstacle, it alters its route to avoid the collision. Then it returns to its task.

- In entity-level scenarios, aggregated units do not avoid obstacles and collisions. When disaggregated units move, the individual members of the units use collision avoidance.
- In aggregate-level scenarios, there is no collision avoidance between simulation objects. If a unit encounters an obstacle, it stops, sends a message to the console, and awaits further instructions.

When an entity avoids an obstacle, it does not necessarily follow the outline of the obstacle. Instead, it avoids the obstacle's bounding volume, which is conceptually the smallest rectangle that bounds all of the points in the obstacle.

Ground entities avoid features, such as buildings and plants. By default, entities avoid other entities (some cultural features are created as entities), buildings, water, and vegetation. (LCACs do not avoid vegetation by default.)

Collision avoidance has the following qualifications:

- To specify that ground entities should not move through the terrain (for example, through a wall or through a hill), set the **check-terrain-collisions** parameter in the automotive actuator component (powertrain) to True. For performance reasons, it defaults to False, so that entities that do not care about terrain collisions do not perform the check.
- If an entity is tasked to move to a point that is inside an obstruction, or very close to one, it might never reach the point, but it will continue to try to reach the point as long as the task is in effect. This behavior also applies to entities following routes that have vertices inside an obstruction.
- If a terrain has geometric features as well as point vector features, the feature avoidance may not work because the points are placed on the terrain on "top" of the existing geometry, which means they are on top of the geometric feature.
- Do not place entities inside obstacles. Their behavior will be unpredictable.
- Although you can assign a force to an obstacle when you create it, it has no effect on entity behavior. Entities avoid all obstacles.

You can configure the objects that an entity will avoid by editing its entry in the object parameter database. For details about configuring obstacle avoidance, please see "72.2. Configuring Obstruction Avoidance" on page 1492.

## 13.9. Entity Movement and Soil Type

In VR-Forces, the movement of simulation objects is affected by the surfaces on which they are moving. The speed of movement over a given surface is configured in the **soil-list** block in a simulation object's object parameter database entry or in its movement system definition file.

Table 19 lists the soil types supported for terrain databases and how they map to the roughness types you can configure in the **soil-list** block for VR-Forces simulation objects.

**Table 19. Soil type/roughness type mappings**

| Soil type | Roughness type |
|---|---|
| ocean | deep-water |
| deepLake | deep-water |
| shallowLake | shallow-water |

**Table 19. Soil type/roughness type mappings (continued)**

| Soil type | Roughness type |
|---|---|
| deepRiver | deep-water |
| shallowRiver | shallow-water |
| shallowPond | shallow-water |
| shallowStream | shallow-water |
| dryGround | hard-packed |
| pavedRoad | paved-road |
| gravelRoad | gravel |
| dirtRoad | gravel |
| asphalt | hard-packed |
| USRailroad | hard-packed |
| softSoil | sand |
| swamp | muck |
| mud | muck |
| forest | hard-packed |
| grass | hard-packed |
| cultivatedFields | hard-packed |
| orchards | hard-packed |
| rock | rocks |
| boulder | rocks |
| sand | sand |
| building | hard-packed |
| tree | hard-packed |

You can change the way a ground vehicle moves on each soil roughness type by editing the appropriate movement system definition file in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/movement*:

- *ground-tracked.sysdef*
- *ground-tracks-amphibious.sysdef*
- *ground-wheels-off-road.sysdef*
- *ground-wheels-road.sysdef*

Near the end of each movement sysdef file you will find a **soil-list** block that lists the soil roughness types (paved-road, hard-packed, gravel, and so on). Here you can adjust the **acceleration-factor** and **stopping-factor** values for each roughness type; VR-

Forces uses those values to calculate how fast a vehicle can accelerate, brake, and turn on that type of surface. (Do not modify the **max-speed-factor** value; it is not used and changes have no effect.)

The **acceleration-factor** affects the surface's drag on a vehicle. Use values ranging from 0 to 1, where lower values increase drag. A value of 1.0 means the surface exerts no drag (a paved road, for example); a value of 0.0 means the surface's drag prevents the vehicle from moving at all (deep water).

The **stopping-factor** affects the traction the vehicle has on the surface. Use values ranging from 0 to 1, where lower values reduce traction. A value of 1.0 means the surface provides maximum traction (a paved road, for example); a value of 0.0 means the surface provides no traction (deep water).

For example, to improve a road vehicle's ability to accelerate in snow, you might increase the **acceleration-factor** in the snow section of the **soil-list** block in *ground-wheels-road.sysdef* from

```
(snow
                (acceleration-factor 0.050000) ; for deep snow
```

to

```
(snow
                (acceleration-factor 0.080000) ; for deep snow
```

In addition, you can modify these parameters to control the way weather affects ground vehicle movement over different soils:

- **deep-snow-depth**:
  Depth of snow for full mobility degradation effect; in meters. Default is 1.0.
- **saturation-water-depth**:
  Rain accumulation for full wet effect; in meters. Default is 0.2.
- **water-slide-depth**:
  Depth of accumulated rain that makes a hard surface slippery; in meters. Default is 0.02.
- **water-slide-factor**:
  Fraction of traction retained on a hard, wet surface. Choose a value in the range 0 - 1. Default is 0.65.
- **hard-freeze-temperature**:
  Temperature at which shallow water freezes enough to support a vehicle; in Celsius. Default is -5.0.

You can find the parameters in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/physicalWorldParams.mtl*.

## 13.9.1 Ground Vehicle Movement on Slopes

There is a "cost" associated with ground vehicles moving up a slope. VR-Forces bases its calculations of what is too steep on the slope. If it is above the maximum slope that a ground vehicle is able to scale, that vehicle does not attempt it. To adjust the factor, edit the **slope-avoidance-factor** parameter in the appropriate ground movement *.sysdef* files in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/movement*.

# 14. Creating and Placing Objects

This chapter describes generic procedures for creating and placing simulation objects and tactical graphics. The later chapters assume that you are familiar with these procedures.


14.1. Creating Objects ..... 365
14.2. Selecting the Object to Create ..... 365
14.2.1 Selecting the Object to Create on an Object Palette ..... 366
14.2.2 Selecting the Object to Create on the Create Menu ..... 370
14.2.3 Filtering Object Creation Palettes ..... 370
14.2.4 Draw Mode ..... 373
14.3. Placing Objects ..... 375
14.3.1 Placing an Object Using Default Values (Click to Create) ..... 375
14.3.2 Specifying an Object's Properties Before You Create It (Click to Locate) ..... 377
14.3.3 Default Placement of New Entities ..... 379
14.3.4 Placing Entities Inside Buildings ..... 379
14.3.5 Placing Simulation Objects on Other Simulation Objects ..... 380
14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude ..... 380
14.4.1 Setting Altitude Dynamically ..... 380
14.4.2 Setting Altitude in the Create Object or Edit Object Dialog Box ..... 380
14.4.3 Specifying the Altitude for All of the Vertices in a Route ..... 381
14.5. Specifying an Object's Heading Dynamically ..... 382
14.6. Specifying an Object's Pitch Dynamically ..... 382
14.7. Locking the Mouse to the Object Being Created ..... 383
14.8. Simulation Object Resources ..... 384
14.9. Moving Objects ..... 384
14.9.1 Dragging an Object to a New Location ..... 384
14.10. Editing Simulation Objects ..... 386
14.10.1 Editing an Object's Name in an Object List ..... 388
14.11. Copying and Pasting Objects ..... 388

14.11.1 Copying Objects ..... 389
14.11.2 Pasting Objects ..... 389
14.11.3 Pasting Specific Entity Characteristics ..... 390
14.12. Deleting Simulation Objects ..... 392
14.13. Simulation Object Groups ..... 392
14.14. Creating Random Versions of Similar Entity Types ..... 393
14.15. Creating Cultural Features ..... 393
14.15.1 Embedding Cultural Features in the Terrain ..... 394
14.16. Creating Props ..... 394
14.17. Adding an Object to the Favorites List ..... 395
14.17.1 Removing an Object from the Favorites List ..... 396

# 14.1. Creating Objects

VR-Forces lets you create simulation objects, cultural features, tactical graphics, and props. You can create simulation objects and cultural features from the Create menu or the Simulation Objects Palette. You create tactical graphics from the Create menu or the Tactical Graphics palette. You create props from the Props Palette. The procedure for creating an object is essentially the same regardless of the type of object:

1. Select the object that you want to create.
2. Specify the location and properties of the object.

However, there are several ways to select the object you want to create and several ways to specify an object's location and properties. This chapter describes the different generic ways to create objects. Additional procedures specific to different object types are described in later chapters.

When you create an object, VR-Forces adds a tab to the right side of the window, below the object creation palettes. The tab is labeled Create *`object`*, where *`object`* is whatever object you selected to create. If you click that tab, it opens a dialog box that lets you specify the properties of the object you are creating. Table 20 lists the properties that you can set for each object type. You can also edit these same properties after you create an object.

**Table 20. Editable object properties**

| | Entity | Cultural Feature | Tactical Graphic | Prop |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Force | X | X | X | |
| Heading | X | X | | |
| Label (and extended labels) | X | X | X | |
| Location | X | X | X | X |
| Name | X | X | X | |
| Visual Markings | X (specific entities) | | | |
| Overlay | X (Edit only) | X (Edit only) | X | |
| Style | | | X | |
| Publish Object | | | X | |

# 14.2. Selecting the Object to Create

You can select the object to create on the Create menu or on an object palette (Simulation Objects Palette, Tactical Graphics Palette, or Props Palette). Once you have selected the object, placing the object is the same regardless of how you started the process. For details, please see "14.3. Placing Objects" on page 375.

The Create menu does not contain the full list of objects configured in VR-Forces. It only lists the simulation objects and tactical graphics that you have marked as “Favorites”. It gives you quick access to your most frequently used objects. For details, please see "14.17. Adding an Object to the Favorites List" on page 395.

### 14.2.1 Selecting the Object to Create on an Object Palette

VR-Forces has the following object palettes that let you quickly choose the object that you want to create:

- Simulation Objects Palette. Create simulation objects, cultural features, and buildings.
- Tactical Graphics Palette. Create tactical graphics, such as control objects, lines, circles, points, and text. You can also create weather objects, volumetric lines and areas, contamination areas, and various types of hazards, obstacles, and pedestrian-oriented graphics. (Some of these graphics are aggregate-level only.)
- Props Palette. Create props that can be saved as part of the terrain. (The default window layout does not display the Props Palette. You can open it from the View menu.)

Figure 128 shows the location of the palettes (with the Props Palette enabled).

**Figure 128. Object creation palette tabs**

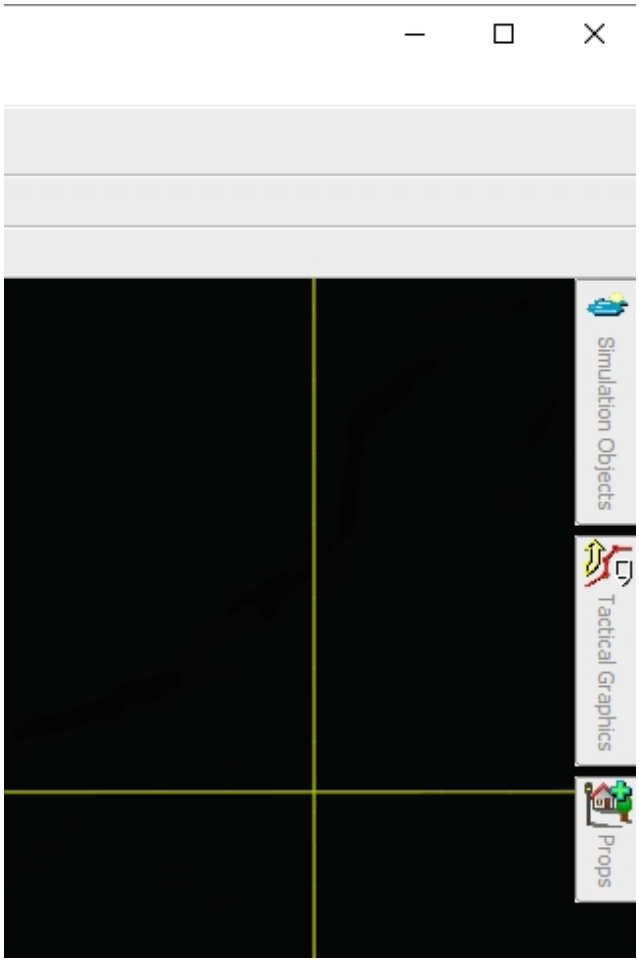
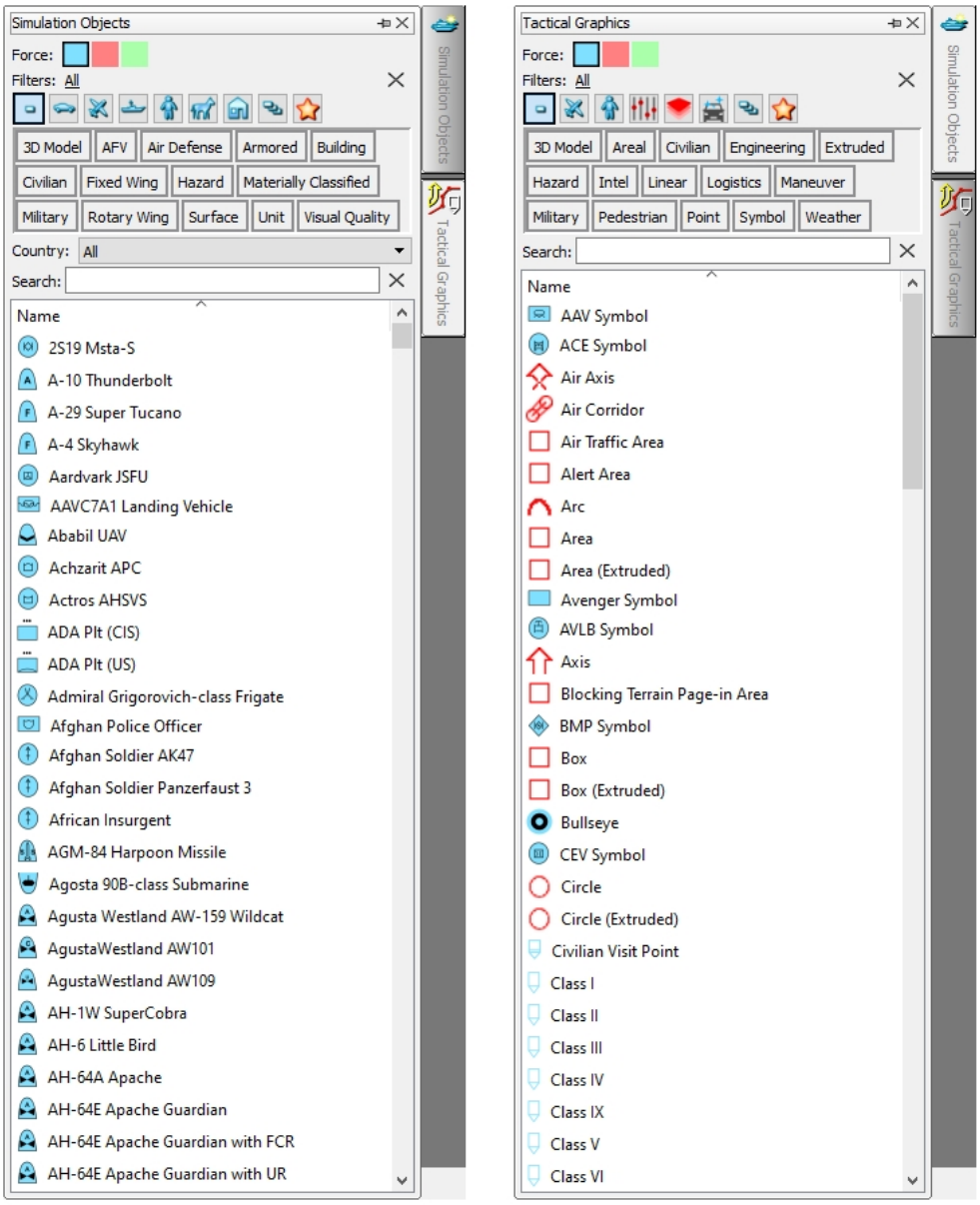



Figure 129 shows the Simulation Objects Palette and Tactical Graphics Palette when they are open.

**Figure 129. Simulation Objects and Tactical Graphics palettes**




The objects in the Simulation Objects Palette and Tactical Graphics Palette are identified by their 2D icon and their name. You can use images other than the default icons to identify objects. For details, please see"Using an Alternative Icon List" on page 1264 .

➤ **To select the object to create on an object palette:**

1. If you are using multiple simulation engines, in the Selected Simulation Engine Toolbar select the simulation engine on which you want to simulate the object. You can also use Automatic (the default option) to have VR-Forces add the simulation object to the least burdened back-end.

2. Click the tab for the palette you want to open. The palette is displayed (Figure 129).

   The palettes list all objects that can be created. There is no preconceived force for any of them. You can filter the Simulation Objects Palette list by tag, country of use, and text string. You can filter the Tactical Graphics Palette by tag and text string. The Props Palette organizes props in a tree list.

3. On the Force line, click the button that represents the force for which you want to create this simulation object.
4. Optionally, filter the list of objects. (For information about how to filter object creation palettes, please see "14.2.3 Filtering Object Creation Palettes" on the next page.)
5. Optionally, filter the Simulation Objects Palette by selecting a country in the Country list.

   ---

   The Country filter lists simulation objects of the selected tag that are used by the specified country. VR-Forces does not provide an exhaustive list of countries or the platforms that they use. You can add additional countries and categorize simulation objects in the Simulation Object Editor. For details, please see"62.1.9 Editing a Simulation Object's Country List" on page 1262.

   ---

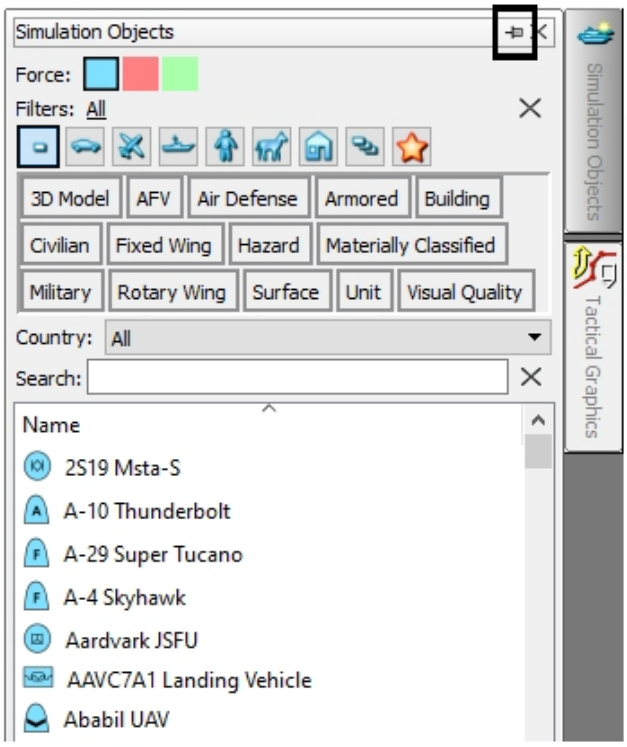
6. Optionally, type a search string to further filter the list.
7. In the list of objects, click the object that you want to create. The cursor changes to draw mode and a Create Object tab is added to the window. For details about draw mode, please see "14.2.4 Draw Mode" on page 373.
8. Create the object, as described in "14.3. Placing Objects" on page 375.

### Pinning an Object Palette to the Window

Ordinarily, after you select an object to create, the palette closes. However, you can pin the palette to keep it open so that you can select additional objects to create without needing to click the palette to reopen it. If you pin a palette, it becomes dockable and undockable and you can drag it off the window like the other panels. (For details about undocking panels, please see"77.1. Dockable Panels and Toolbars" on page 1546 .)

➤ To pin a palette so that it stays open after you select an object, click the pin button (⊣) in the palette's title bar (Figure 130).

**Figure 130. Palette pin**




## 14.2.2 Selecting the Object to Create on the Create Menu

Waypoints, routes, areas, and objects marked as Favorites are available on the Create menu.

➤ **To select the object to create on the Create menu:**

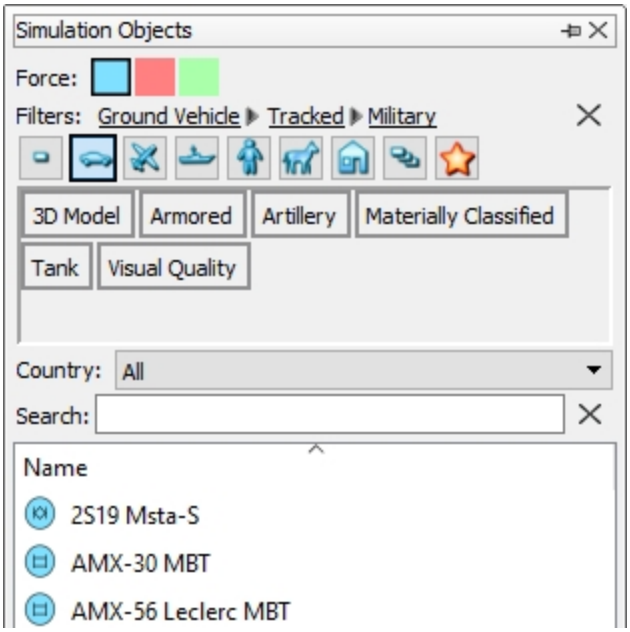
1. If you are using multiple simulation engines, in the Selected Simulation Engine Toolbar select the simulation engine on which you want to simulate the object. You can also use Automatic (the default option) to have VR-Forces add the simulation object to the least burdened back-end.
2. To create an object or graphic, choose **Create** > *tag* > *object_type*, where:
   - *tag* is a category of entity, such as Ground or Human, a category of cultural feature, or a category of tactical graphic.
   - *object_type* is a specific type within the category, such as M1A2 or T80.

   The cursor changes to draw mode and a Create Object tab is added to the window. For details about draw mode, please see "14.2.4 Draw Mode" on page 373.
3. Create the object, as described in "14.3. Placing Objects" on page 375.

## 14.2.3 Filtering Object Creation Palettes

You can filter object creation palettes to make it easier to find the object that you want to create. You can filter simulation objects by tags, country of use, and text strings. You can filter tactical graphics by tags and text strings.

**Figure 131. Object palette filtering**




Tags are categories, such as land, air, military, civilian, and so on.

Many object types are used by multiple countries. If you want to see the objects used by a particular country, you can select the country of interest. (This filter does not apply to tactical graphics.)

The Search field lets you enter a text string to search for in object names. As you type, simulation objects that contain that string are listed. The Tag window is updated to show only the tags that apply to the listed objects.

Simulation objects get assigned to tags and countries in the Simulation Object Editor. For details, please see "Chapter 61. The Simulation Object Editor and SMSs" on page 1225 and "Chapter 62. Editing Common Parameters" on page 1255.

➤ **To filter the objects listed in an object creation palette:**

1. To filter by tags, select the tags you want to filter by. For details, please see "Filtering Object Creation Palettes Using Tags" below.
2. To filter by country, select a country in the Country list.
3. To filter by text, type a text string in the Search box.

### Filtering Object Creation Palettes Using Tags

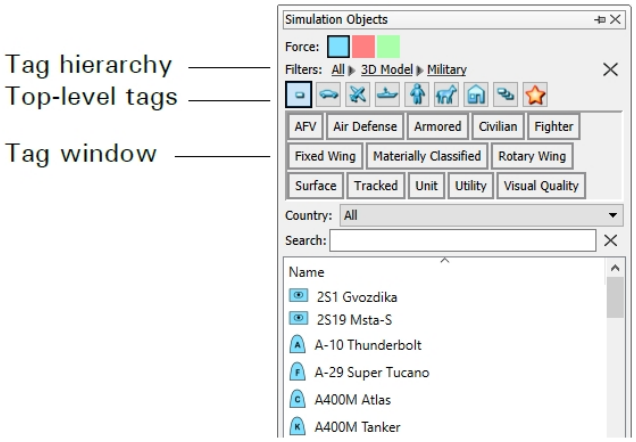
All simulation objects are categorized using tags. An object can have multiple tags. For example, a ground vehicle can have the Ground Vehicle tag, but it can also have other tags such as Military, Tracked, Materially Classified, and so on. You can filter for any of these tags.

Tags are listed in the Filters section of an object creation palette. The top row of tags (represented by buttons) is static during any VR-Forces session (Figure 132). It

contains the highest ranking tags. As you select tags, the Filters: line lists the tags you have selected from most inclusive to least inclusive. You can clear any level of filtering by clicking the label to its left.

The Tag window lists the tags that apply to simulation objects in the objects list that have not yet been filtered out. This list redisplays as you select additional tags. (If the number of tags that could be listed in the Tag window exceeds the space available, VR-Forces displays tags based on frequency of use and ranking. For details about ranking tags, please see "61.11.1 Adding a New Tag" on page 1248.)

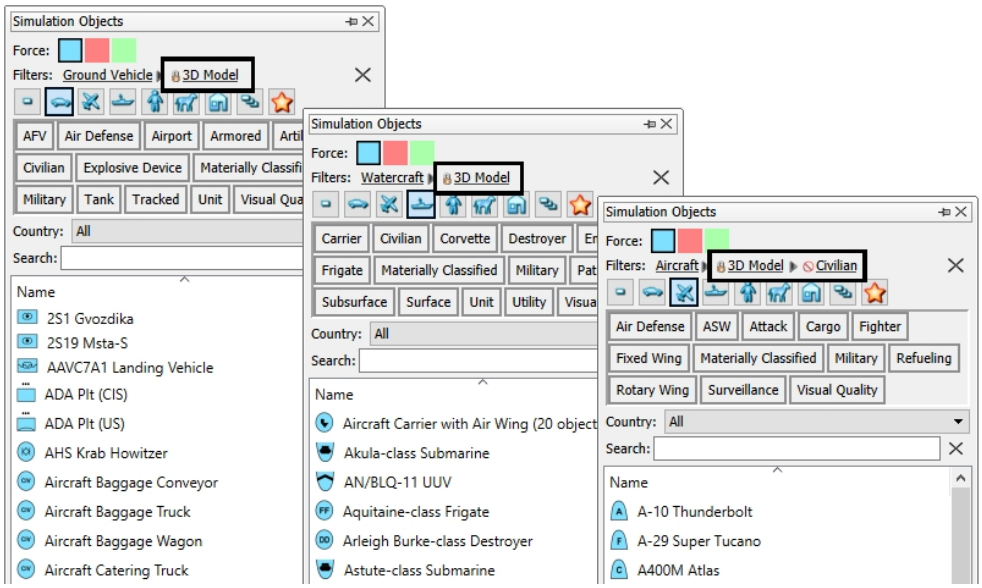
**Figure 132. Simulation Objects Palette filters**




VR-Forces remembers the tags selected for each top level tag. So if you set up some tags for Ground Vehicle and then filter using the Watercraft tag, if you go back to the Ground Vehicle tag, the tags you selected previously are still selected.

You can make tags "sticky". A sticky tag applies to all top level tags. For example, suppose you only want to see simulation objects that have 3D models, regardless of the platform. You could make 3D Models a sticky tag. Then no matter which top level tag you selected, it would be filtered for the 3D Models tag. Sticky tags displays with a lock icon on the Filters line (Figure 133). You can also set a filter to look for simulation objects that are not in a category. Not tags display with a no circle icon on the Filters line.

**Figure 133. Sticky and Not tags**



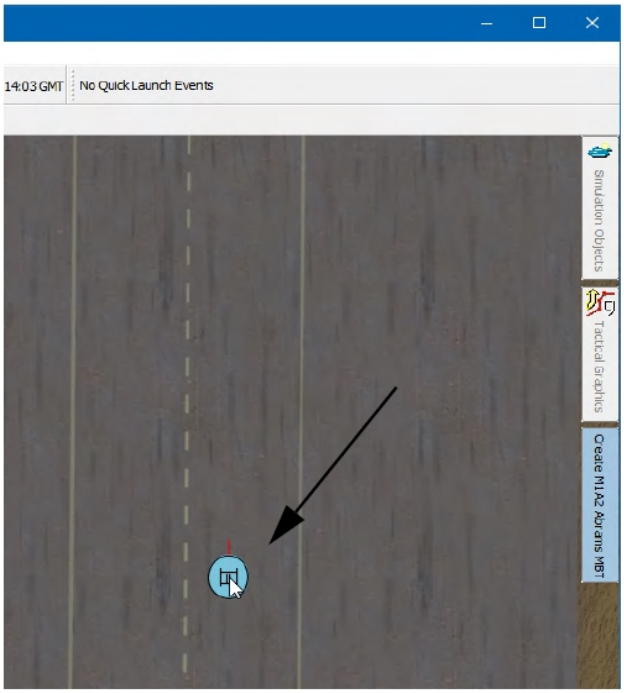

➤ **To filter a list using tags:**

1. Click a top level tag, or All.
2. Select additional tags in the Tag window to narrow the filtering. As you select tags, the object list redisplays and the tag list redisplays to show the tags that apply to the remaining members of the object list. As you select additional tags, the hierarchy of tags on the Filters line updates.
3. If you always want to use a certain tag, such as 3D Model, or Materially Classified, right click the tag button and choose Sticky. The tag is displayed with a lock icon on the Filters line. It applies to all top level tags.
4. If you want to search for simulation objects that are not in a category, right-click the tag button and choose Not. The tag is displayed with a not icon on the Filters line. It applies to all top-level tags.
5. To clear tags, in the breadcrumb path on the Filters line, click the tag to the left of the tag you want to clear. To clear all tags, click the X button.

## 14.2.4 Draw Mode

When you create an object, the cursor changes to draw mode. If you are creating a simulation object or a cultural feature in the 2D view, the cursor changes to a 2D icon that represents the chosen simulation object (Figure 134).

**Figure 134. 2D entity creation and Create *object* tab**



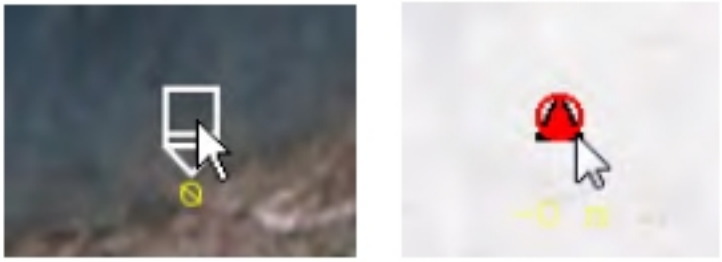

In the 3D view, the cursor changes to the 3D model for the chosen entity (Figure 135). If you are zoomed out, 3D models may be hard to see. If you are creating multiple human characters of a type that randomizes the appearance of the character that gets created, such as Civilian Male, after each character you create, the model attached to the cursor changes to show you the appearance of the next character that will be created.

**Figure 135. 3D entity creation**

Top-down view | Ground-level view

If you are creating a tactical graphic, the cursor displays the waypoint symbol when you create a point and a vertex symbol when you create any type of line or area. Figure 136 illustrates tactical graphics draw mode cursors.

**Figure 136. Tactical graphics cursors in draw mode**



If you are creating a prop, the cursor changes to show the model for the prop. In the 2D view, the model is a top down view and is proportional to the terrain, so it may be difficult to see if you are zoomed out.

## 14.3. Placing Objects

After you select the object that you want to create, the Create Object tab is added to the right side of the window below the palettes.

There are two basic methods for placing simulation objects, as follows:

- Click to Create. Each mouse click creates an instance of the selected object. For multi-vertex tactical graphics, each click specifies a vertex. Click to Create is best for rapidly creating objects using the default values for the object's properties.

  The create object graphic is attached to the mouse cursor. Although you can use the Create Object dialog box to specify an object's name or other properties, as you move the cursor into the dialog box, the creation location (as represented by the object graphic) moves with it, which can be disconcerting. You can set heading and altitude dynamically, so there is no need to use the Create Object dialog box for these properties.

- Click to Locate. Mouse clicks specify the coordinates, but do not cause the simulation object to be created. The create object graphic is placed at the specified coordinates, but is not attached to the mouse cursor.

  If you want to explicitly set the object's location, and particularly if you want to set the altitude relative to sea level, you must use this method. This method may also be more comfortable for persons who want to take a deliberative approach to specifying an object's properties before creating it.

### 14.3.1 Placing an Object Using Default Values (Click to Create)

Although you can specify an object's properties using the Click to Create method, it is best suited for quickly creating objects using default properties. Objects are placed on the default overlay for the object type.

You can use this method to automatically embark simulation objects and attach tactical graphics. For details, please see "17.1. Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects" on page 436 and "40.7.1 Attaching a Tactical Graphic Automatically" on page 952.

➤ **To place an object with each mouse click:**

1. Select the object that you want to create as described in "14.2. Selecting the Object to Create" on page 365. A Create object tab is added to the side of the window below the palettes.
2. For simulation objects and waypoints, click on the terrain for each object you want to place. You can create multiple single point objects without exiting create mode. For details about disabling this create mode, please see "14.7. Locking the Mouse to the Object Being Created" on page 383.

   For multi-vertex tactical graphics, click on the terrain to place each vertex. Double-click to place the last vertex in a route or area. (Do not try to close areas by clicking on the starting point. Doing so only creates another vertex near the first one.)

   To draw a circles, ellipses, boxes, or text, please see the sections in "Chapter 40. Creating and Editing Tactical Graphics" on page 935.

   - If new objects or vertices are not displayed as you click, it is possible that Attach Object to Mouse is disabled. To restore Click to Create mode:
     a. Click the Create Object tab. The Create Object dialog box opens.
     b. Select the Attach Object to Mouse check box.
   - If tactical graphics are not displayed after you create them, check to see if the display of tactical graphics has been disabled. For details, please see "38.7. Displaying Tactical Graphics" on page 922.

3. Optionally, you can set the altitude of an object as you create it. For details, please see "14.4.1 Setting Altitude Dynamically" on page 380.
4. Optionally, you can set the heading of an object as you create it. For details, please see "14.5. Specifying an Object's Heading Dynamically" on page 382.

   If you want to specify any of the object's properties in the Create Object dialog box while using Click to Create, you can do so. However, be aware that as you move the cursor into the dialog box, the object graphic will move also. Once you specify the desired properties, click on the terrain to create an object with those properties. The properties will be applied to any additional objects you create until you change them or close the dialog box.

5. For simulation objects and waypoints, right-click or press **Esc** to exit create mode.

## 14.3.2 Specifying an Object's Properties Before You Create It (Click to Locate)

In the Click to Locate method, clicking on the terrain sets the coordinates of the object, but does not create it. You can specify all of the object's properties in the Create Object dialog box before creating it. Table 20 on page 365 lists the properties that you can set for the different types of objects.

---

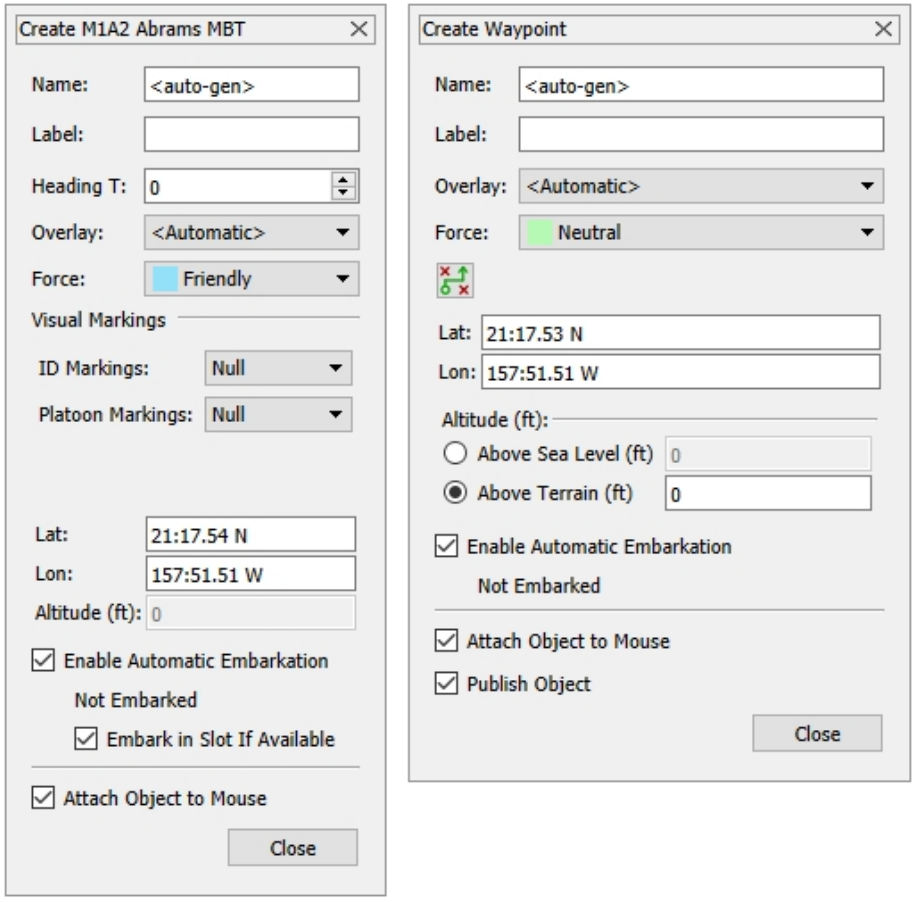
VR-Forces remembers how you use the Create Object dialog box on a per-object basis. For example, if you create a waypoint and open the Create Waypoint dialog box to specify its properties, the next time you create a waypoint, the Create Waypoint dialog box opens automatically. If the dialog box opens and you do not want it open for this object creation or for future creations of the current object type, click the Create Object tab. The dialog box will close and VR-Forces will still be in object creation mode. The next time you create this object type, the dialog box will not open automatically.

---

➤ **To specify the properties of an object when you create it:**

1. Select the object that you want to create as described in "14.2. Selecting the Object to Create" on page 365. A Create Object tab is added to the window below the palettes (Figure 134 on page 374).
2. Click the Create Object tab. A Create Object dialog box that is appropriate for the object opens (Figure 137 on the next page).

**Figure 137. Create Object dialog boxes**




3. Clear the Attach Object to Mouse check box. For details about this option, please see "14.7. Locking the Mouse to the Object Being Created" on page 383.
4. To specify the object's name, type a name in the Name box. For details about how simulation objects are named, please see "13.2. How Simulation Objects Are Identified" on page 352.
5. Optionally, specify a label.
6. Optionally, if extended labels are available, specify them. For information about extended labels, please see "16.3. Using Extended Labels" on page 422.
7. To specify the object's heading, type or select a value, in degrees, in the Heading box. (Simulation objects only.)
8. To specify the overlay on which to place an object, select an overlay from the Overlay list.
9. Specify a force.
10. Optionally, if visual markings are available, specify them.

11. To specify a simulation object or point object's coordinates, click on the terrain or type coordinate values in the dialog box. To specify the altitude, follow the procedure in "14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude" on the next page.

    To specify the vertices of a route or area:

    a. Click on the terrain to place the first vertex, or type the coordinates in the dialog box.

    b. Click the Add button ( ) to add a vertex.

    c. Click to locate the vertex or type the coordinates.

    d. Continue adding vertices until you are finished specifying the route or area. You can insert vertices anyplace in the object by selecting an existing vertex and clicking the Add button.

    To draw circles, ellipses, boxes, or text, please see "Chapter 40. Creating and Editing Tactical Graphics" on page 935.

12. For tactical graphics, specify whether or not to publish the object. For information about publishing tactical graphics, please see "40.1.12 Publishing Tactical Graphics" on page 944.

13. Click Create. The object is created. You can continue to create additional objects of this type with the same properties.

14. To close the dialog box, click Close.

### 14.3.3 Default Placement of New Entities

By default, ground, lifeform, rotary-wing, and fixed-wing entities are placed on the ground. Surface and subsurface entities are created at sea level.

Ground-based entities are placed at the highest possible terrain intersection at the location. If a terrain supports buildings with multiple levels, the entity is placed at the highest level. Once the entity begins moving, if the next calculated location resides in-between two levels of terrain, and if the entity is configured to respect terrain intersections when moving, and there is no terrain blocking its movement, the entity places itself at the closest elevation to the desired location.

### 14.3.4 Placing Entities Inside Buildings

One of the benefits of creating entities in a 3D observer mode is the ease of placing them in the precise location and orientation that you want them to be in, particularly inside buildings. However, placing entities inside small enclosed spaces can be hindered by the location of walls relative to the observer. You can work around this problem by adjusting the near clipping plane to remove the display of walls and floors until you see the location where you want to place entities. For details about changing the clipping plane, please see "76.4.1 Setting the Clipping Planes" on page 1531.

---

If you enable view constraints, it may restrict your ability to move the observer into buildings. You can disable view constraints by pressing **x**.

---

### 14.3.5 Placing Simulation Objects on Other Simulation Objects

If you want to place a simulation object on or in another simulation object, such as an aircraft on an aircraft carrier or a dismounted infantry entity in a truck, then you must embark the simulation object. Creating a simulation object on top of another simulation object will not provide the results you want. For example, if you create a fixed-wing entity and manipulate its location and altitude so that it looks like it is on the deck of an aircraft carrier, as soon as you start the simulation, the jet will start flying at that altitude, because it is not attached to the carrier. It is just created at a particular location. For complete details about embarking simulation objects, please see "17.1. Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects" on page 436.

## 14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude

You can specify an altitude for air platforms, sub-surface entities, the vertices of waypoints and routes, and props when you create them or edit their properties. (You can also set altitude for simulation objects using the Location set data request, Fly Altitude tasks, and the Move to Location task. You can set altitude dynamically or in the various dialog boxes for setting object properties or actions.)

### 14.4.1 Setting Altitude Dynamically

You can set altitude dynamically for simulation objects that support an altitude, for waypoints, for individual vertices of a route, and for props that have not been saved into a terrain. When you set altitude dynamically, it is set relative to the terrain.

➤ **To set altitude dynamically:**

- If you are creating an object, press and hold **Alt** and scroll the mouse wheel, or press and hold **Alt**+left mouse button and drag the mouse.
- If you are editing a simulation object or vertex:
  1. Double-click the object to make it editable.
  2. Press and hold **Alt** and scroll the mouse wheel, or press and hold **Alt**+left mouse button and drag the mouse.
  3. Click to set the new altitude.

### 14.4.2 Setting Altitude in the Create Object or Edit Object Dialog Box

When you set altitude in a dialog box, you have the following options:

- Above Sea Level. The distance above sea level. If the terrain is higher than the altitude entered, the entity will be below the surface of the ground.
- Above Terrain. The distance above the terrain at this location.
- If you are creating or editing a route, you can adjust the altitude of all of the vertices at the same time and in the same way. For details, please see "14.4.3 Specifying the Altitude for All of the Vertices in a Route" on the facing page.

➤ **To set altitude in a dialog box:**

1. If you are creating or editing an object:
   a. Click the Create Object (or Edit Object) tab. A dialog box opens.
   b. Clear the Attach Object to Mouse check box. The Location group box becomes enabled. (Although the entity will change its location as you move the cursor into the dialog box, it snaps back to its original location as soon as you clear the check box.)
2. In the Altitude group box, select one of the options.
3. Type an altitude in the box.

### 14.4.3 Specifying the Altitude for All of the Vertices in a Route

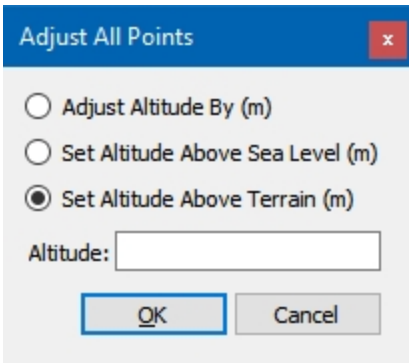
When you create a route or edit its vertices, you may want to change the altitude of all of its vertices in a similar way. VR-Forces lets you:

- Adjust all vertices by the same amount.
- Set all vertices to the same height above sea level.
- Set all vertices to the same height above the terrain.

➤ **To change the altitude for all of the vertices in a route:**

1. If you are creating a route, open the Create Route dialog box. If you are editing a route:
   a. Select the route.
   b. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Route dialog box opens.
2. Click the Adjust Points button ( ). The Adjust All Points dialog box opens (Figure 138).

**Figure 138. Adjust All Points dialog box**




3. Select the adjustment action as follows:

- Adjust Altitude By. Changes the altitude of each vertex by the amount specified in the Altitude box.
- Set Altitude Above Sea Level. Sets the altitude of each vertex to the amount above sea level specified in the Altitude box. This could result in some vertices being below ground.
- Set Altitude Above Terrain. Sets the altitude of each vertex the amount above the terrain specified in the Altitude box.

4. Type the desired altitude adjustment value in the Altitude box.
5. Click OK.

## 14.5. Specifying an Object's Heading Dynamically

When you create a simulation object, cultural feature, or prop, you can set its heading in the Create Object dialog box, or dynamically. Afterwards, you can edit a simulation object or cultural feature's heading directly or use the Heading set data request. For more information, please see"34.33. Heading" on page 812 .

---

In the 2D view, as you change the heading for a simulation object you can see the heading indicator change heading. However cultural features do not have heading indicators, so if you want to set the heading dynamically, you may want to switch to 3D view so that you can see the model rotate.

---

➤ To set an object's heading dynamically as part of the creation process, hold down the **Shift** key and the left mouse button, and drag the mouse.

➤ To edit the heading of an object that has already been created, double-click it to put it into edit mode. Then hold down the **Shift** key and the left mouse button, and drag the mouse.

## 14.6. Specifying an Object's Pitch Dynamically

In entity-level scenarios, some simulation objects, cultural features, and props allow you to set the pitch in the Create Object dialog box or dynamically. Afterwards, you can edit the object's pitch directly or use the Pitch set data request. For details, please see "34.53. Pitch" on page 821.

---

There is no indication of the pitch in the 2D view, therefore you may want to switch to 3D view so that you can see the model's pitch and adjust it as needed.

---

➤ To set an object's pitch dynamically as part of the creation process, press and hold **Shift**+**Ctrl** and the left mouse button, and drag the mouse.

➤ To edit the pitch of an object that has already been created, double-click it to put it into edit mode. Then press and hold **Shift**+**Ctrl** and the left mouse button, and drag the mouse.

## 14.7. Locking the Mouse to the Object Being Created

By default, when you create simulation objects or waypoints, you can create multiple objects by continuously left-clicking without exiting create mode. This is a very convenient feature if you want to create objects using default naming conventions and do not need to specify specific location coordinates or overlay assignments during the creation process. (You can always edit an object's properties after you create it.)

However, if you want to use the Create Object dialog box to specify location or other properties for each object as you create it, this feature can be inconvenient because as you move the mouse to the Create Object dialog box, the placement location changes with the mouse movement. Disabling this feature can give you greater control over the creation process, because clicking to set the location of the object or a vertex does not create it – it sets the coordinates, but lets you make further changes in the Create Object dialog box before you create the object.

If you disable an object's attachment to the mouse when you are creating objects, you create them by clicking Create in the dialog box rather than clicking on the terrain.

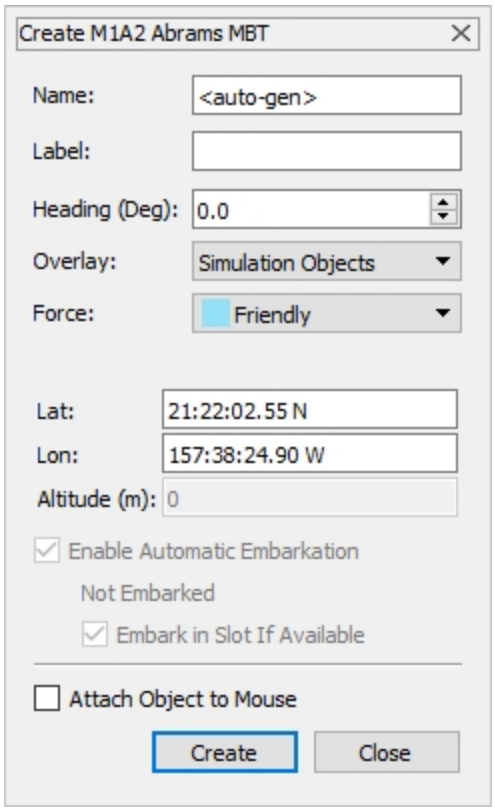
---

If you have cleared the Attach Object to Mouse check box in the Create object dialog box, you must still specify the minimum number of points for the object before the Create button is enabled. For simulation objects this is just the location of the object, but for tactical graphics such as lines, circles, and areas, you may need to specify two, three, or more points. Since the object is not attached to the mouse, you will not see dynamic resizing of the object as you specify the points.

---

➤ To enable or disable the mouse's attachment to the creation location, in the Create Object or Edit Object dialog box, select or clear the Attach Object to Mouse check box (Figure 139). When you clear the check box, a Create button gets added to the dialog box. The setting gets carried over to future object creations.

**Figure 139. Create Object dialog box**




## 14.8. Simulation Object Resources

When you create a simulation object, it has a full complement of resources, as defined in the object parameter database. You do not have to assign resources to a simulation object when you create it. However, if you want a simulation object to start a simulation with less than a full set of resources, you can use the Resources set data request to set its resources at some amount less than 100%. For details about the Resources set data request, please see "34.60. Resources" on page 825.

## 14.9. Moving Objects

You can move an object by dragging it, changing its location in the Edit dialog box, or for simulation objects only, sending a Location set data request.

For information about setting the location of a simulation object, please see "34.44. Location" on page 817.

---

You can only move objects simulated by VR-Forces.

---

### 14.9.1 Dragging an Object to a New Location

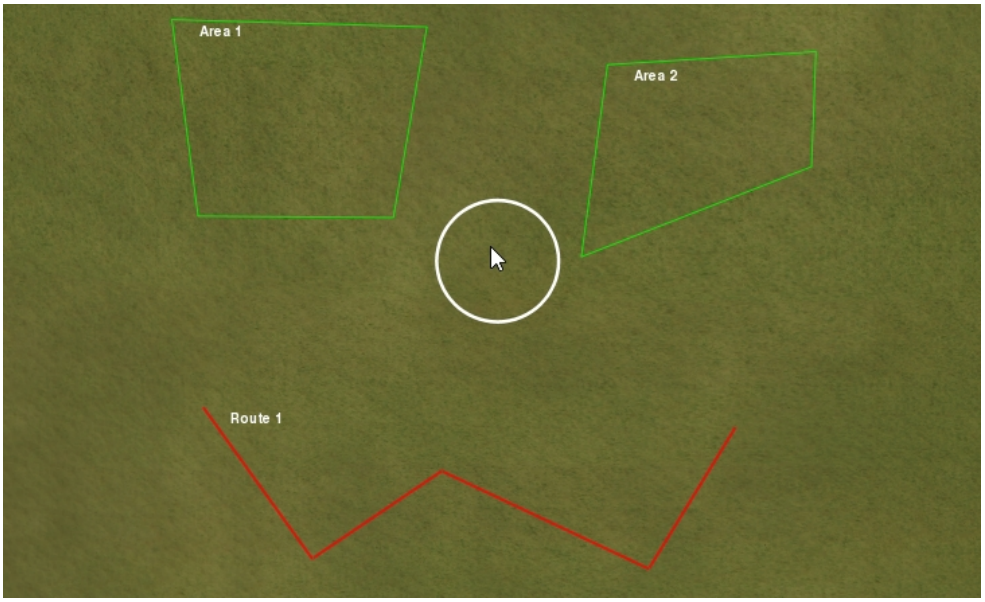
When you move objects, they are centered on the mouse location as follows:

- If you select an object by double-clicking, it attaches to the mouse at the location where you clicked it. (For simulation objects and point objects, the objects are centered on the mouse location, but for lines or areal objects, the attachment is at the point where you clicked.)
- If you select an individual object and move it by choosing the Move command:
- Point objects are centered on the mouse, just as when you double-click them.
- Routes attach to the mouse cursor at the first point of the route (Figure 140).
- Areas attach to the cursor at the center of mass.

**Figure 140. Mouse attachment when moving individual lines**

- If you select multiple objects and move them by choosing the Move command:
- Point objects attach to the cursor at their center of mass.
- Multiple objects have their centers of mass averaged and the center point attaches to the cursor (Figure 141).

**Figure 141. Moving multiple objects**




If you click the terrain and then **Shift**+click or **Ctrl**+click an object, the terrain is selected and the Move command will not be available.

➤ **To drag an object from one point on the terrain to another:**

1. Double-click the object, or select the object and choose **Objects > Move**.
2. Move the mouse to change the location of the object.
3. Left-click the mouse.

---

- You can drag multiple objects and they can be of different types.
- To drag multiple objects, you must select the objects and choose **Objects > Move**.

---

### Canceling a Drag-and-Drop Move

➤ To cancel a move made by dragging an object, press **Esc** before you click the left mouse button.

## 14.10. Editing Simulation Objects

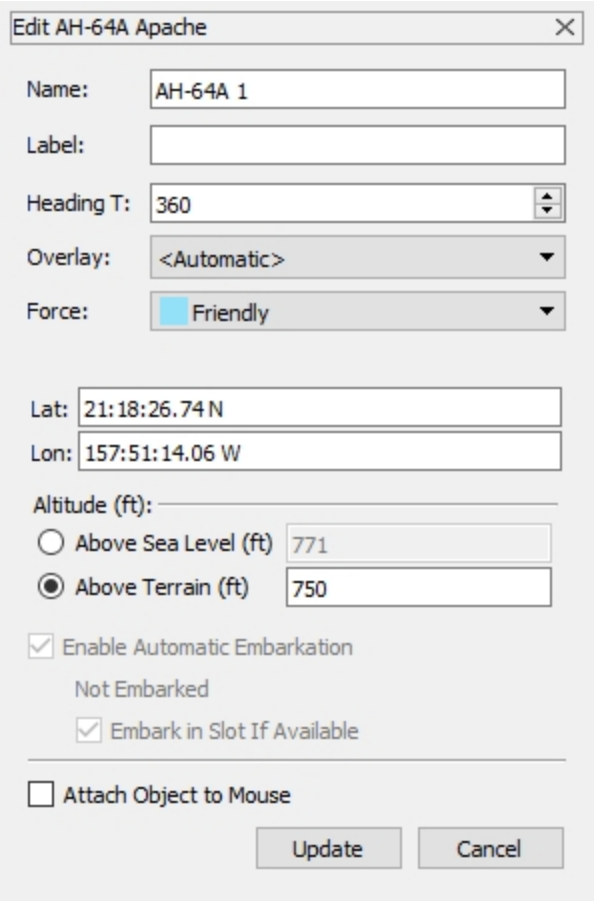
You can edit the following simulation object properties:

- Name
- Label (and extended labels if available)
- Force
- Visual Markings (if available)
- Location
- Heading
- Altitude
- Overlay

➤ **To edit a simulation object:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Object dialog box opens (Figure 142).

**Figure 142. Edit Object dialog box**




3. Change the properties as desired.
4. Click OK.

---

You can also change the location, altitude, and heading dynamically, through a variety of movement tasks, or with set data requests. For details, please see:

- "14.4.1 Setting Altitude Dynamically" on page 380.
- "14.5. Specifying an Object's Heading Dynamically" on page 382.
- "14.9. Moving Objects" on page 384.
- "Chapter 26. Movement Tasks for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 573.
- "Chapter 30. Tasks for Aggregate-Level Scenarios" on page 681.
- "Chapter 34. Setting the State of Entity-Level Simulation Objects" on page 795.

---

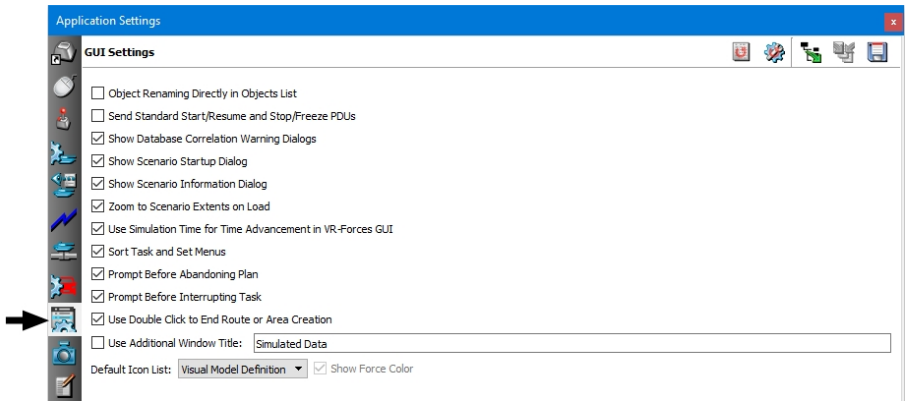
### 14.10.1 Editing an Object's Name in an Object List

You can edit an object's name in an Edit dialog box or directly in an object list. The ability to edit an object's name in an object list is disabled by default. This prevents you from inadvertently going into edit mode when you want to select an object.

➤ **To enable and disable editing an object's name in an object list:**

1. Choose Settings Application Settings. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the GUI Settings page (Figure 143).

**Figure 143. GUI Settings page**




3. To allow editing of names in an object list, select the Object Renaming Directly in Objects List check box. To prevent editing of names, clear the check box.
4. Click Close

➤ **To edit an object's name in an object list:**

1. Click the name of the object, then click again. This is not a double-click. The two clicks should be about 1 second apart. The name becomes editable.
2. Edit the name.
3. Click someplace else in the window.

## 14.11. Copying and Pasting Objects

You can copy objects and paste the copies elsewhere in a scenario or even in another scenario. The Paste Special option allows you to specify which entity characteristics you paste.

VR-Forces copies the following data about an object:

- Environmental objects:
- Original name
- Label
- Force

- Color
- Entities:
- Original name
- Label
- Force
- Heading
- Appearance (lights, landing gear, and so on)
- Rules of engagement
- Plan
- Units copy the same information as entities plus the list of subordinates.

VR-Forces does not copy:

- The current task.
- State information, except as noted previously.
- Load balancing status. All objects get pasted into the currently selected back-end.
- Embarkation structures. If, for example, you copy an aircraft carrier that has planes embarked, only the carrier is copied, not the embarked entities.

---

! The copy/paste process is resource intensive. It is primarily for use during scenario development. Use during a simulation could affect performance.

---

## 14.11.1 Copying Objects

➤ **To copy objects:**

1. Select the objects you want to copy.
2. Choose **Objects > Copy**.

## 14.11.2 Pasting Objects

A simple paste pastes all of the attributes of an object that get copied. It pastes objects as follows:

- Tactical graphics are placed on the currently selected overlay. If you copied objects that were on different overlays, that differentiation is not preserved.
- Copied objects maintain the state at the time that they were copied. Therefore, if you paste objects some time after they were initially copied, the copies do not reflect any changes that may have taken place to the original simulation objects. For example, if a simulation object was copied and then deleted, the copied version of the entity is still pasted.
- Embarkation structures are not copied, only the parent entity.

---

! Pasting plans may have unexpected consequences, because their object references do not change when you copy them. For example, suppose the plan for Entity A refers to Waypoint 1. You copy Entity A and Waypoint 1 and paste them as Entity B and Waypoint 2. If you copy the plan, Entity B's plan will still refer to Waypoint 1. If you expected it to refer to Waypoint 2, you will not see the behavior you expected. You can choose not to paste plans. For details, please see "14.11.3 Pasting Specific Entity Characteristics" below.

---

➤ **To paste objects:**

1. Choose **Objects > Paste**. The objects in the paste buffer are displayed on screen. They float as you move the cursor to show you where they will be placed when you paste them.
2. Click on the terrain where you want the objects to be pasted. They are pasted in the relative positions in which they were copied. If an object has an altitude, it is pasted using the same altitude above the terrain as the original object.
3. Optionally, continue pasting additional copies if desired.
4. Right-click to exit paste mode.

## 14.11.3 Pasting Specific Entity Characteristics

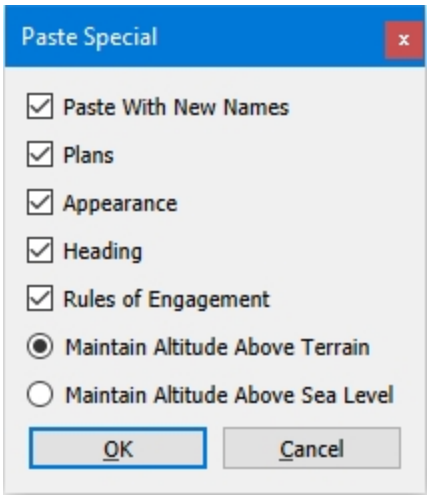
When you paste simulation objects, you can specify which of the following entity characteristics you want to paste with the entity:

- Plans
- Appearance
- Heading
- Rules of engagement
- Entity name
- Altitude. You can specify that the previous altitude be applied as above terrain or as above sea level.

➤ **To paste particular entity characteristics:**

1. Choose **Objects > Paste Special**. The Paste Special dialog box opens.

**Figure 144. Paste Special dialog box**

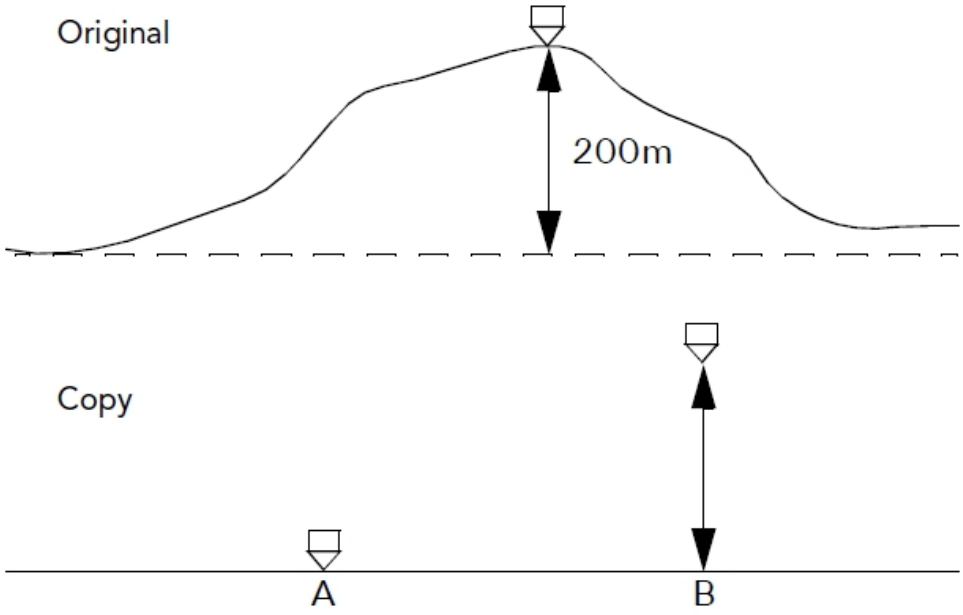



2. By default, all check boxes are selected. Clear the check boxes for the options you do not want to paste.
3. Choose the altitude option that you want to use.
4. Click OK. The objects in the paste buffer are displayed on screen. They float as you move the cursor to show you where they will be placed when you paste them.
5. Click on the terrain where you want the objects to be pasted. They are pasted in the relative positions in which they were copied.
6. Optionally, continue pasting additional copies if desired.
7. Right-click to exit paste mode.

### Pasting Altitude

When you paste objects, if the pasted object can have an altitude value, such as a fixed-wing entity, a waypoint, or the vertices of a route, the default behavior is to replicate the original altitude above the terrain. If you use the Paste Special operation, you can choose to apply the original altitude as being above sea level. Figure 145 illustrates these alternatives. A waypoint is placed on the terrain. It is 0 meters above the terrain. However, the terrain itself is 200m above sea level. If the waypoint is copied and pasted at point A and the altitude above the terrain is maintained, the point is placed at 0m above the terrain. If the point is pasted at point B and altitude above sea level is maintained, it is placed 200m above sea level.

**Figure 145. Pasting altitude**




## 14.12. Deleting Simulation Objects

➤ **To delete a simulation object:**

1. Select the object you want to delete.
2. Choose **Objects > Delete** or press the **Delete** key.

- If you delete a unit, all its subordinates also get deleted.
- If you delete a simulation object that has an intervisibility object pinned to it, the intervisibility object also gets deleted. For details, please see"48.10. Deleting Intervisibility Objects" on page 1059.

## 14.13. Simulation Object Groups

Simulation object groups (SOG) are a convenient mechanism for creating reusable configurations of simulation objects and tactical graphics. You create them in the Simulation Object Editor and they are listed on the Simulation Objects Palette with other simulation objects. VR-Forces places them in the relative positions that you specified when you created the SOG. VR-Forces includes example SOGs, including a carrier group, a Patriot missile battery, and a barracks with several soldiers. These examples demonstrate SOGs with tactical graphics, cultural features, and embarkation.

The Barracks With Guards SOG has some tactical graphics, but they are hidden by default. To see them, click the overlay icon at the bottom of the window, or select the check box on the Objects List Panel, Overlays View.

The Simulation Objects Palette has a tag for SOGs (Object Group), but like other simulation objects, they can have multiple tags. SOGs can be distinguished from other simulation objects in the lists because the object name includes the number of objects in the group.

For information about creating SOGs, please see "62.5. Creating a Simulation Object Group" on page 1280.

## 14.14. Creating Random Versions of Similar Entity Types

VR-Forces has many different models for generic types of entities, such as civilian vehicles or commercial aircraft. When you are creating a scenario with these sorts of entities, you can choose the specific entity types you want to use. However, if you want to quickly populate a scenario with a variety of similar objects, it is simpler to just let VR-Forces randomly create instances of the generic entity. This is done using the random simulation object.

A random simulation object is configured in the Simulation Object Editor with a list of specific simulation object types that it can draw from. When you create a scenario, you choose the random entity type on the Simulation Objects Palette and when you click on the terrain to place the object, VR-Forces picks a specific simulation object from the list.

VR-Forces includes a random simulation object for civilian vehicles.

You can add your own random simulation objects in the Simulation Object Editor.

## 14.15. Creating Cultural Features

Cultural features are objects that you can add to a scenario to simulate human artifacts such as buildings, bridges, and so on. They have the Cultural Feature tag on the Simulation Objects Palette. You add them to a scenario the same way you would add an entity or tactical graphic. Cultural features are listed in the Objects List View of the Objects List Panel. You can apply some set data requests to them, such as Location and Heading.

Some of the choices on the cultural feature lists are the same as those available on the Props Palette. However, cultural features are not the same things as props. Props are terrain objects and can be saved as part of a terrain. Cultural features are not part of the terrain, they are a type of simulation object and are saved in the scenario objects file.

### 14.15.1 Embedding Cultural Features in the Terrain

If you have a cultural feature, such as a house, that has object geometry, VR-Forces can treat that object as part of the terrain when you place it in a scenario. This means that entities can walk on it or in it (if it has interior geometry).

If you place the object outside of a navigation area, entities interact with it similarly to how they would interact with a prop. If you place the object in a navigation area, VR-Forces dynamically regenerates navigation data for the sectors in which the cultural feature is located. Entities can then use the navigation data to walk around or in the cultural feature more intelligently than if it was outside of a navigation area.

---

You do not need a license for generating navigation areas to dynamically regenerate navigation data. However, you must have a terrain on which navigation areas have been created, such as the terrains provided with VR-Forces. For information about navigation areas and navigation data, please see "59.3. Generating Navigation Data" on page 1203.

---

This feature has the following requirements and constraints:

- The cultural feature must be configured in the Simulation Object Editor to use object geometry in the simulation engine and to be embedded in the terrain. For details, please see "63.1.7 Configuring Cultural Features To Be Embedded in the Terrain" on page 1302.
- If you place the cultural feature in a navigation area, the area must be sectorized. If it is not sectorized, the navigation data will not be generated.
- Navigation data gets generated dynamically. It is not saved with the terrain or with the scenario. When you reload the scenario, the navigation data gets generated after the scenario is loaded. If you have many such cultural features in a scenario, this can take some time. During that time, you might not be able to use VR-Forces or other applications on your computer.
- Creating a navigation area and generating navigation data for a portion of a terrain in which you have placed a cultural feature does not generate navigation data for the cultural feature. The navigation data is generated based on the content of the terrain and the cultural feature is a simulation object, not part of the terrain. If you want the geometry of a cultural feature to be part of the terrain, add it as a prop.

➤ To embed a cultural feature in the terrain, create it in a scenario.

## 14.16. Creating Props

Props are terrain objects that you can select independently of the terrain. *“Extracting Props from a Terrain”*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*, explains how to create them by extracting them from a terrain or a feature layer. You

can also create them from the Props Palette, however, similarly to how you create simulation objects. This is a valuable feature if your terrains do not have any features that you can extract as props. Do note the following important details:

- Props are not saved in a scenario. If you want to save a prop, you must save the terrain. You can save the terrain to a different name or overwrite the existing terrain. The next time you open the terrain, the prop will be part of it.
- When you create a prop, the back-end does not know anything about it, because it is a terrain object. To have the back-end take the prop into account, you must save the terrain (as mentioned in the previous paragraph) and restart the scenario.
- Props get created on the front-end terrain. If the front-end and back-end are using different terrains, the back-end terrain will not include the props.
- You can export props to a shapefile. This lets you add them to a terrain using an earth file. For details, please see *"Exporting Props and SpeedTrees to a Shapefile"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- You can also create cultural features that look exactly like the props that you can create. However cultural features are not the same things as props. Cultural features are treated like simulation objects. They are listed with simulation objects and tactical graphics and get saved as part of the scenario.

---

The list of props that you can create from the Props Palette is based on the model definitions defined on the Model Definitions tab of the Visual Model Editors dialog box. Therefore, you can add new props to the Props Palette by adding new model definitions. For details, please see *"Adding Object Models as Props"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

---

## 14.17. Adding an Object to the Favorites List

As mentioned in "14.2. Selecting the Object to Create" on page 365, the Create menu does not include all of the objects that you can create. It just lists the objects that you have designated as "Favorites". When you specify that a simulation object or tactical graphic be a favorite, it is automatically added to the Create menu. An option is added to the menu for each tag associated with the favorite. As you add additional favorites, they are listed under all of the tags that apply to them.

There are no visible indications on the object creation palettes that objects are favorites. However, you can filter the object list using the Favorites tag ( ).

The favorites list is specific to a simulation model set. It is saved to *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/gui/favorites.mst*. You can copy the file to other instances of VR-Forces or future releases and your favorites list will be enabled.

➤ **To add or remove an object from the Favorites list:**

1. Open the palette that has the object you want to add to the Favorites list.
2. Right-click the object.

3. On the pop-up menu, select **Add to Favorites**.

## 14.17.1 Removing an Object from the Favorites List

When you remove an object from the Favorites list, it also gets removed from the Create menu.

➤ **To remove an object from the Favorites list:**

1. Open the palette that has the object you want to remove from the Favorites list.
2. Right-click the object.
3. On the pop-up menu, select **Remove from Favorites**.

# 15. Selecting Objects

This chapter describes ways to select simulation objects and tactical graphics.


15.1. The Objects List Panel ..... 398
15.2. Selecting Simulation Objects, Tactical Graphics, and Props ..... 399
15.2.1 Selecting Objects in the Window ..... 401
15.2.2 Selecting a Simulation Object in the Object Console Summary Panel ..... 402
15.3. Using Selection Groups ..... 402
15.3.1 Creating a Selection Group ..... 402
15.3.2 Selecting a Selection Group ..... 404
15.3.3 Adding Objects to a Selection Group ..... 404
15.3.4 Removing Objects from Selection Groups ..... 404
15.3.5 Renaming a Selection Group ..... 405
15.3.6 Deleting a Selection Group ..... 405

# 15.1. The Objects List Panel

There is a great deal of similarity in how you select, move, and view the different types of objects. You can manage them on the terrain, to some extent from the keyboard, and in the Objects List Panel, which is the central repository of object information.

The Objects List Panel has the following views:

- Object View: displays simulation objects in the simulation in a hierarchical list by force. Also lists tactical graphics (Figure 146).
- Embarkation View: displays the embarkation relationships of simulation objects (Figure 146).
- Overlays View: lists overlays and the objects that are on them (Figure 147).
- Selection Groups View: lists selection groups and their members (Figure 147).

**Figure 146. Objects List Panel – Objects List View and Embarkation View**

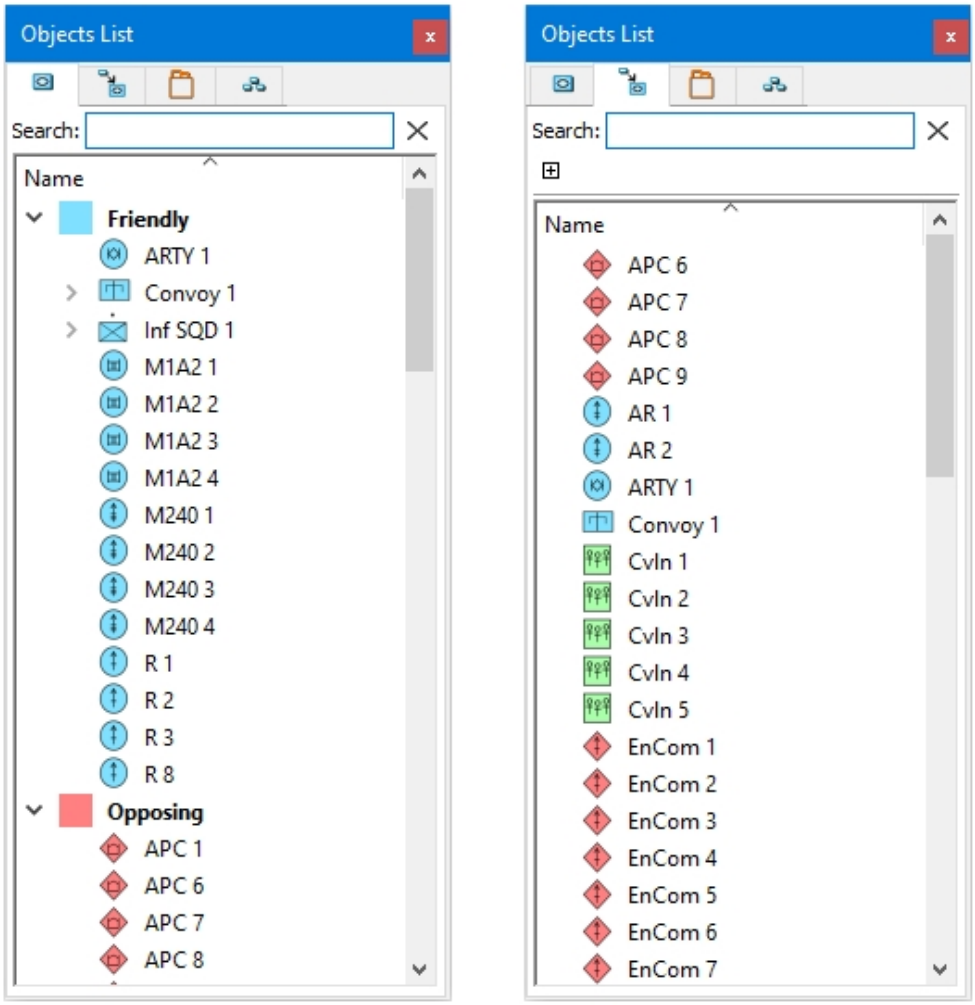
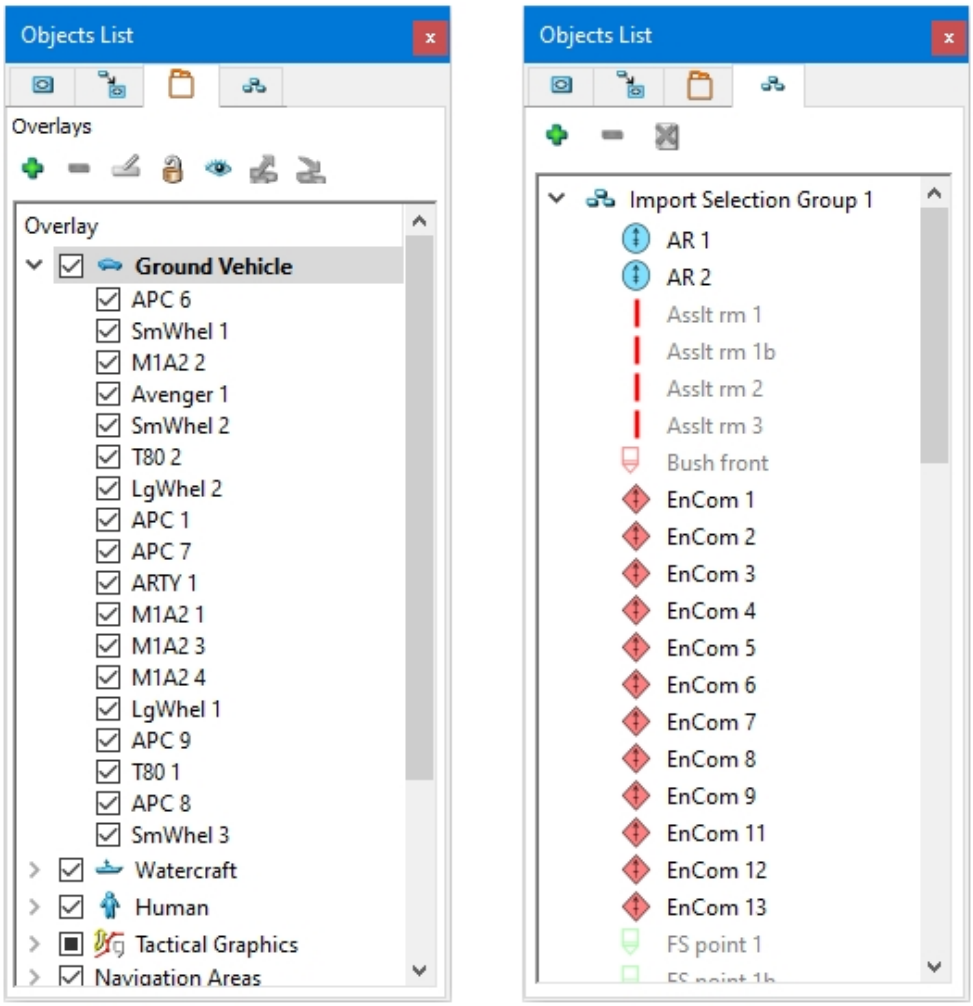


**Figure 147. Objects List Panel – Overlays View and Selection Groups View**




The objects in the objects list panel are identified by their 2D icon and their name. You can use images other than the default icons to identify objects. For details, please see "Using an Alternative Icon List" on page 1264.

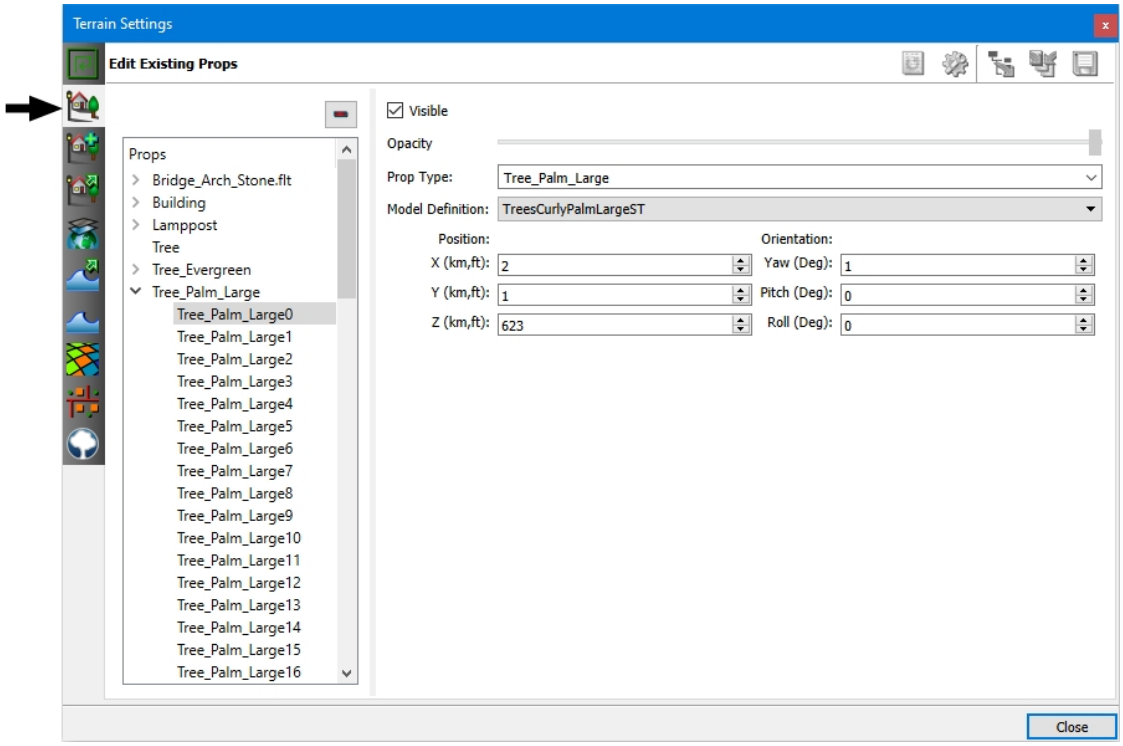
## 15.2. Selecting Simulation Objects, Tactical Graphics, and Props

VR-Forces displays the following kinds of objects that you might want to select:

- Simulation Objects. Any of the entity and unit types that you can create.
- Cultural features. Objects that have the Cultural Feature tag on the Simulation Objects Palette.
- Tactical graphics. Control objects and the points, lines, areas, text, and symbols on the Tactical Graphics Palette and Create menu.
- Props. Any of the props that you can create from the Props Palette or which are already part of the terrain.

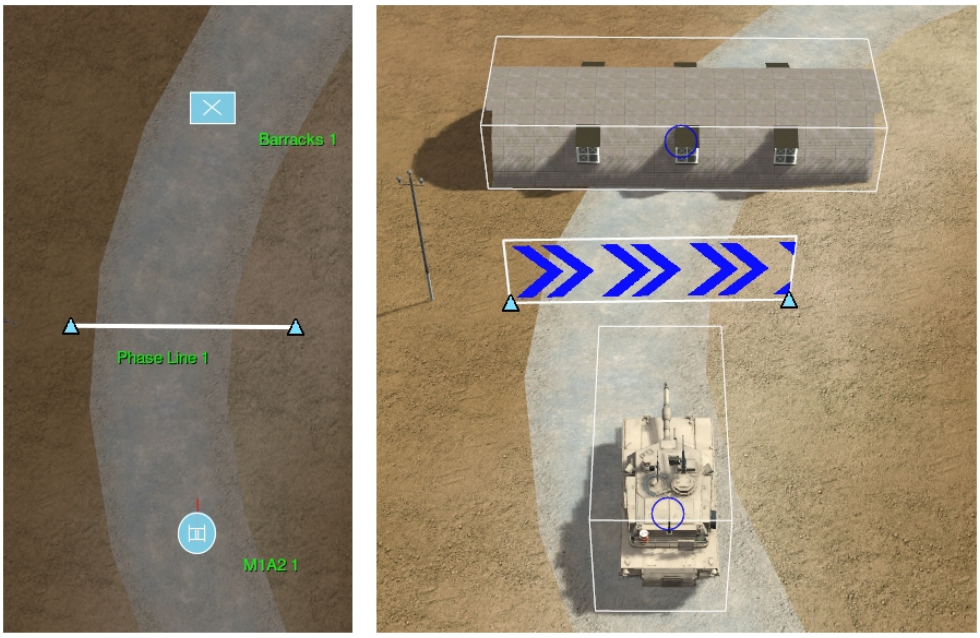
You can select all types of objects in the window. You can select simulation objects, cultural features, and tactical graphics in the Objects List Panel (Figure 146 on page 398). You can select simulation objects in the Object Console Summary Panel, and you can select props on the Props page of the Terrain Settings dialog box (Figure 148).

**Figure 148. Terrain Settings dialog box, Props page**




When you select a simulation object or tactical graphic in the 2D view, its border color changes to white. In the 3D views, all selected 3D objects display a bounding box (Figure 149). Tactical graphics change to white lines.

**Figure 149. Selected objects**




2D 3D

## 15.2.1 Selecting Objects in the Window

To select objects in the window, use any of the following mouse actions:

| Mouse Action | Result |
|---|---|
| Click the object. | Selects an object (and unselects any other selected objects). |
| **Ctrl**+click the object. | Selects an object while keeping existing selections. |
| Double-click the object. | Selects the object and makes it editable. This is the equivalent of selecting an object and choosing **Objects > Edit**. |
| **Alt**+drag a bounding box. | Selects multiple objects by dragging a selection box around them. |
| Right-click the object. | If no objects are selected, right-clicking selects an object and displays a menu.<br>If one or more objects are selected, right-clicking a selected object maintains the selection and displays a menu. Right-clicking an unselected object changes the selection to the object you right-clicked. |

When you select an object in the window, the views on the Objects List Panel add a gray highlight to the entry for the object to indicate that it is selected.

### 15.2.2 Selecting a Simulation Object in the Object Console Summary Panel

The Object Console Summary Panel lists messages that have been sent to simulation objects from the simulation engine, from a simulation object's plan, from other simulation objects, and from scripts. (For information about the Object Console Summary Panel, please see "16.9. Configuring Object Console Messages" on page 429.)

➤ **To select a simulation object in the Object Console Summary Panel:**

1. Right-click a message from the simulation object you want to select.
2. On the shortcut menu, choose Select Entity.

## 15.3. Using Selection Groups

Selection groups are named subsets of the objects in an exercise. Their purpose is to allow you to quickly select specific objects without needing to locate them on the map or the Objects List View in the Objects List Panel and select them individually. Using selection groups can be helpful if you want to quickly select a group of objects that do not fit neatly into the default filter options on the Objects List Panel views, for example a mix of friendly and opposing forces and tactical graphics. The group definitions are saved and loaded as part of the scenario.

An object can be in multiple selection groups.

### 15.3.1 Creating a Selection Group

You can create selection groups in any of the following ways:

- In the Selection Groups View on the Objects List Panel.
- From Selection Groups menu options.
- Using keyboard shortcuts.

---

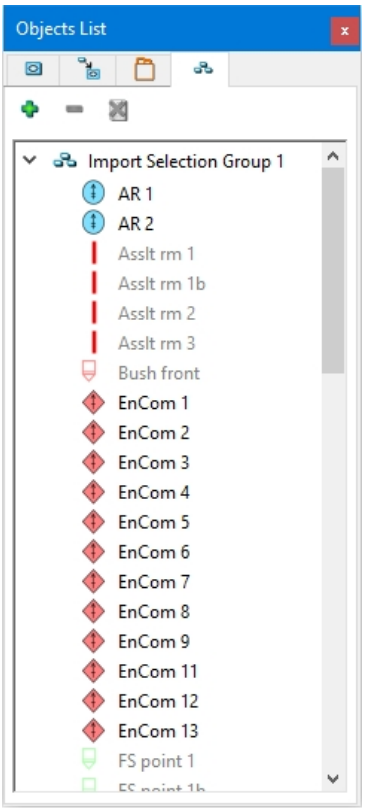
When you add a simulation object group to a scenario, VR-Forces automatically creates a selection group for all the objects in the simulation object group. For information about simulation object groups, please see "14.13. Simulation Object Groups" on page 392.

---

➤ **To create a selection group in the Selection Groups Panel:**

1. On the Objects List Panel, select the Selections Groups View (Figure 150).

**Figure 150. Selection Groups tab**




2. Click the Add button (+). The New Selection Group dialog box opens.
3. Type a name for the selection group.
4. Click OK. The group is added to the group list.

## Creating a Selection Group from a Selection Group Menu Command

When you create a selection group from a Selection Group menu command, you can combine the procedures for creating a new selection group and adding an object to it.

➤ **To create a selection group from a Selection Group menu command:**

1. Select the objects you want to put in a new selection group.
2. Choose **Objects > Selection Groups > Add to New Selection Group**. The New Selection Group dialog box opens.
3. Type a name for the selection group.
4. Click OK. The selection group gets created and the selected objects get added to it.

#### Creating a Selection Group from a Keyboard Shortcut

You can quickly create a selection group with a default name using a keyboard shortcut. When you create a selection group from the keyboard it is created as follows:

- If no objects are selected, an empty selection group is created.
- If objects are selected, a selection group is created with these objects as members.
- If the keyboard shortcut is for a selection group that already exists, a new selection group replaces the previous one. If the previous group had members and the new one is created without any objects selected, the new group is empty.

➤ To create a selection group from the keyboard, press **Ctrl** + *number*, where *number* is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 0. A selection group is created named Selection Group *number* (0 creates Selection Group 10). (The keypad numbers do not support this operation.)

### 15.3.2 Selecting a Selection Group

When you select the objects in a selection group, they are selected in the views on the Objects List Panel and in the display window.

➤ **To select a selection group, use one of the following methods:**

- In the Selection Groups view, select a selection group in the Group list.
- Choose **Objects > Selection Groups > Select Selection Group >** *group_name*, where *group_name* is one of the groups listed on the pull right menu.
- If selection groups named with the format Selection Group *number* exist, pressing a number key selects the corresponding selection group. (The keypad numbers do not support this operation.)

### 15.3.3 Adding Objects to a Selection Group

➤ **To add objects to a selection group:**

1. Select the objects you want to add to a selection group.
2. Choose **Objects > Selection Groups > Add To Selection Group >** *group_name*, where *group_name* is one of the groups listed on the pull right menu.

### 15.3.4 Removing Objects from Selection Groups

There are two ways to remove an object from a selection group. If you remove all the objects from a selection group, the group continues to exist.

➤ **To remove an object from a selection group:**

1. Select the objects you want to remove from a selection group.
2. Choose **Objects > Selection Groups > Remove from Selection Group >** *group_name*, where *group_name* is one of the groups listed on the pull right menu.

➤ **To remove an object from a selection group in the Selection Groups view:**

1. Select the selection group from which you want to remove an object.
2. Select the object you want to remove.
3. Click the Remove Selected from Selection Group button ( ).

## 15.3.5 Renaming a Selection Group

➤ **To rename a selection group:**

1. In the Selections Group view, double-click the name of the group you want to rename. It becomes editable.
2. Type a new name for the selection group.
3. Press **Enter**.

## 15.3.6 Deleting a Selection Group

Deleting a selection group does not delete the objects from the scenario. However, if you delete all the members of a selection group, the selection group also gets deleted.

➤ **To delete a selection group:**

1. In the Selections Group view, select the group you want to remove.
2. Click the Delete button ( ).

# 16. Viewing Information About Objects

This chapter describes how to get and display information about simulation objects.


16.1. Displaying Information About an Object ..... 409
16.1.1 Information Dialog Boxes for Entity-Level Scenarios ..... 409
16.1.2 Information Dialog Boxes for Aggregate-Level Scenarios ..... 412
16.1.3 Information Dialog Boxes for Tactical Graphics ..... 414
16.1.4 Viewing Information for Multiple Objects ..... 415
16.2. Displaying Entity Labels ..... 416
16.2.1 Displaying Text Labels for 3D Models ..... 418
16.2.2 Turning Entity Labels On and Off ..... 419
16.2.3 Pinning Text Labels and Symbol Decorations to the Window ..... 419
16.2.4 Displaying Labels for 2D Icons ..... 420
16.2.5 Configuring Shadowing and Background Color for 2D Labels ..... 422
16.3. Using Extended Labels ..... 422
16.3.1 Adding an Extended Label ..... 424
16.3.2 Changing an Extended Label's Index ..... 424
16.3.3 Deleting an Extended Label ..... 425
16.4. Customizing 2D Icon Colors ..... 425
16.5. Changing Force Colors ..... 426
16.6. Displaying HAT Lines for Entities (3D Only) ..... 426
16.7. Displaying Entity Resources ..... 427
16.7.1 Viewing Numerical Resource Data ..... 427
16.8. Displaying Bounding Volumes ..... 428
16.8.1 Enabling and Disabling Bounding Volumes for Entities ..... 429
16.8.2 Showing Bounding Volumes Only for Selected Entities ..... 429
16.9. Configuring Object Console Messages ..... 429
16.9.1 Setting the Notification Level for Console Messages ..... 430
16.9.2 Viewing All Console Messages ..... 430

16.9.3 Answering Questions from Scripted Tasks ..... 431
16.9.4 Saving Console Messages ..... 432
16.9.5 Displaying an Object Console Warning Icon ..... 432
16.9.6 Clearing the Object Console ..... 433
16.10. Viewing Object Counts ..... 433

# 16.1. Displaying Information About an Object

You can display information about individual objects, including entities, units, environmental objects, and Stealths. You cannot edit this information. You can also display entity labels. For details about entity labels, please see "16.2. Displaying Entity Labels" on page 416.

➤ **To display an object information dialog box:**

1. Select an object.
2. Choose **Objects > Information**, or press **i**.

---

You can also open the Information dialog box as follows:

- Select a message in the Objects Console Summary Panel and choose **Information** on the shortcut menu.
- Click any field in the summary panel to open the relevant dialog box page.
- Click the Information button 4 on the Last Selected Object Panel to open the State Data page.
- Click the current task on the Last Selected Object Panel to open the Information dialog box to the Tasks page.

---

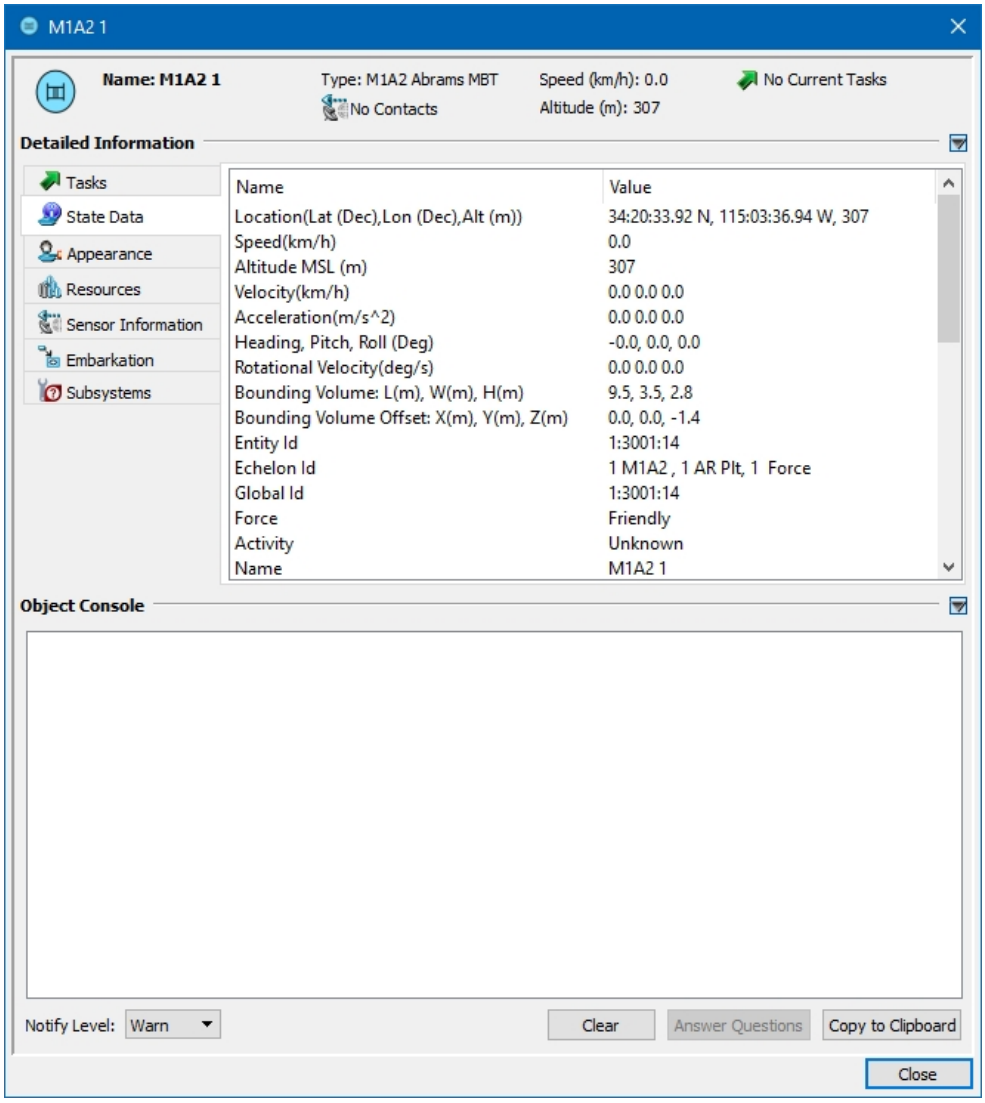
## 16.1.1 Information Dialog Boxes for Entity-Level Scenarios

An information dialog box in an entity-level scenario (Figure 151) has the following sections:

- Summary:
  - Simulation object icon.
  - Simulation object name.
  - Current task.
  - Sensor information.
  - TAS (true airspeed).
  - Altitude.
- Detailed information.
- Object console.

You can expand and contract the detailed information and object console sections to manage the amount of screen space used by the dialog box.

**Figure 151. Information dialog box for simulation object in entity-level scenario**




The Detailed Information section for simulation objects in an entity-level scenario has the following pages:

- Tasks. Shows the currently assigned task and any enabled reactive tasks. Allows you to cancel the current task.
- State Data. Shows location, movement values such as speed and heading, identifying information, and other status information.
- Appearance. Shows the status of appearance attributes, such as lights, firepower, and concealment.
- Resources. Shows that amount of fuel and ammunition available.
- Sensor Information. Shows information about simulation objects being detected.
- Emitters. Shows details about emitters, if applicable.
- Acoustics. Shows details about active sonar and propulsion noise, if applicable.

- Embarkation. Lists embarked objects, if any.
- IFF. Shows IFF information, if applicable.
- Subsystems. Lists the entity's subsystems and indicates whether they are enabled, if applicable.

---

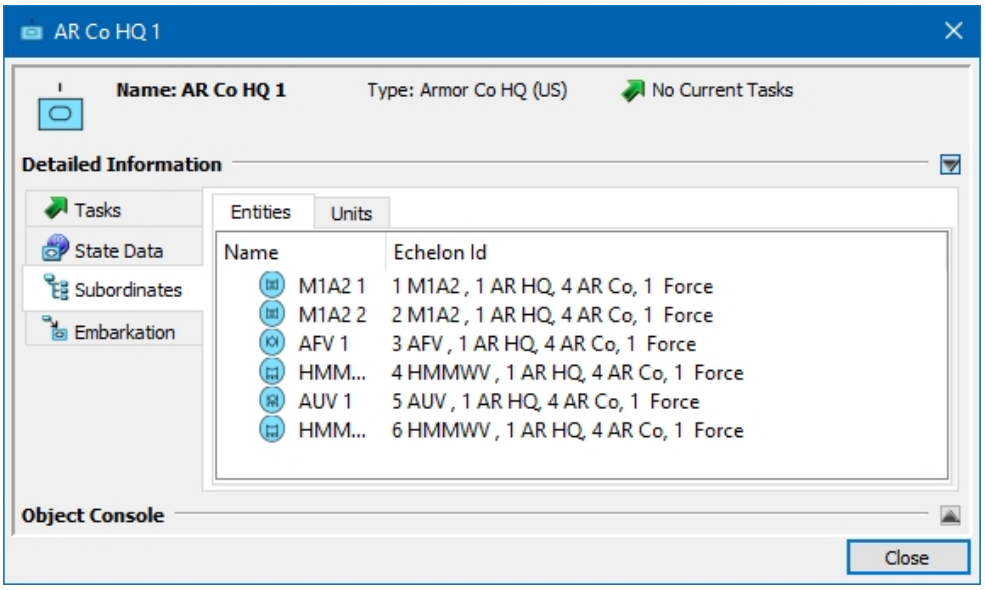
The pages listed for Detailed Information are context sensitive. If a page does not apply to an entity type, it is not shown.

---

The Detailed Information section for units in entity-level scenarios (Figure 152) has the following pages:

- Tasks.
- State Data.
- IFF (if applicable).
- Subordinates. Lists the subordinates.
- Acoustics (if applicable).
- Embarkation.

**Figure 152. Information dialog box for units in entity-level scenarios**




### Airspeed for Rotary and Fixed-Wing AIrcraft

The State Data page for rotary-wing and fixed-wing aircraft displays the following speed information:

- Speed. Ground speed is the velocity of the aircraft.
- True airspeed. Calculated based on ground speed, temperature, pressure, and altitude.
- Indicated airspeed. Indicated airspeed (IAS) is calculated as 2% less than true airspeed for every 300 ft of altitude.
- Mach.

If you want to substitute your own calculations for airspeed, you can do so using the VR-Forces API.

Indicated airspeed, true airspeed, and mach are user-created state properties that are defined in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/platforms/Fixed_Wing_Aircraft.ope* and *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/platforms/Rotary_Wing_Aircraft.ope*.

```
(DtRwReal IndicatedAirspeed 0.0 publish)
    (DtRwReal TrueAirspeed 0.0 publish)
    (DtRwReal MachNumber 0.0 publish)
```

Therefore, you can change the default value.

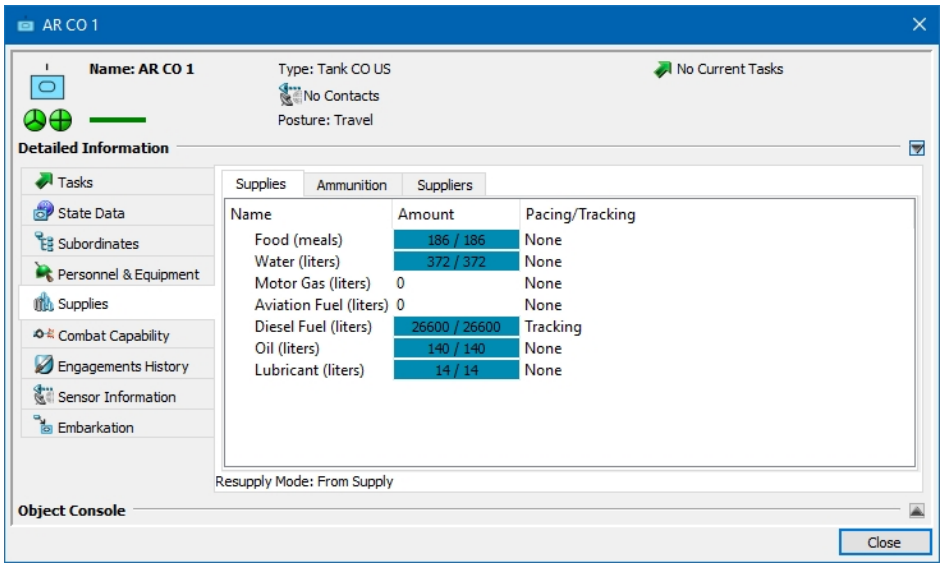
You can change the unit of measurement for true airspeed and indicated airspeed on the Display Settings dialog box, Display Unit Settings page.

## 16.1.2 Information Dialog Boxes for Aggregate-Level Scenarios

An information dialog box for units in an aggregate-level scenario (Figure 153) has the following sections:

- Summary:
  - Simulation object icon.
  - Simulation object name.
  - Current task.
  - Sensor information.
  - Posture.
  - Health status.
  - Health and weapon status gumballs.
- Detailed information.
- Object console.

**Figure 153. Information dialog box for simulation object in aggregate-level scenario**




The summary section for units in aggregate-level scenarios (Figure 153) includes a health status bar and gumball icons that display information about the health of the simulation object. Simulation object icons can also display gumballs. (Gumballs are disabled by default. Health status is enabled.)

Figure 154 describes the status represented by different gumball states.

**Figure 154. Gumball charts**

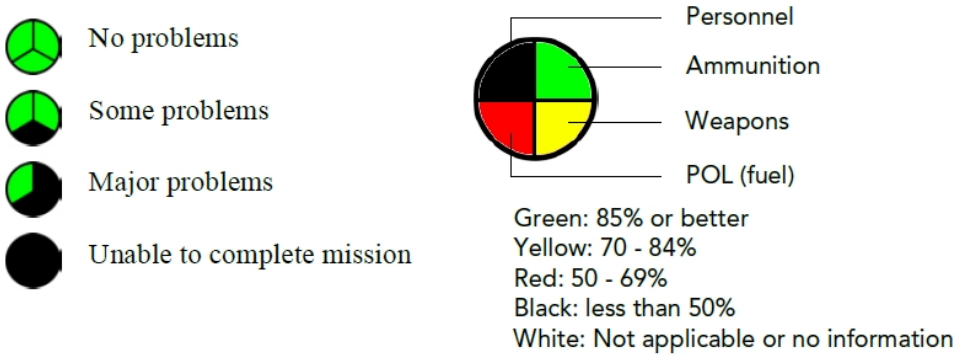



Figure 155 illustrates the health status bar and gumball charts for a simulation object icon.

**Figure 155. Icon with gumballs**

You can expand and contract the detailed information and object console sections to manage the amount of screen space used by the dialog box.

The Detailed Information section for simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios has the following pages:

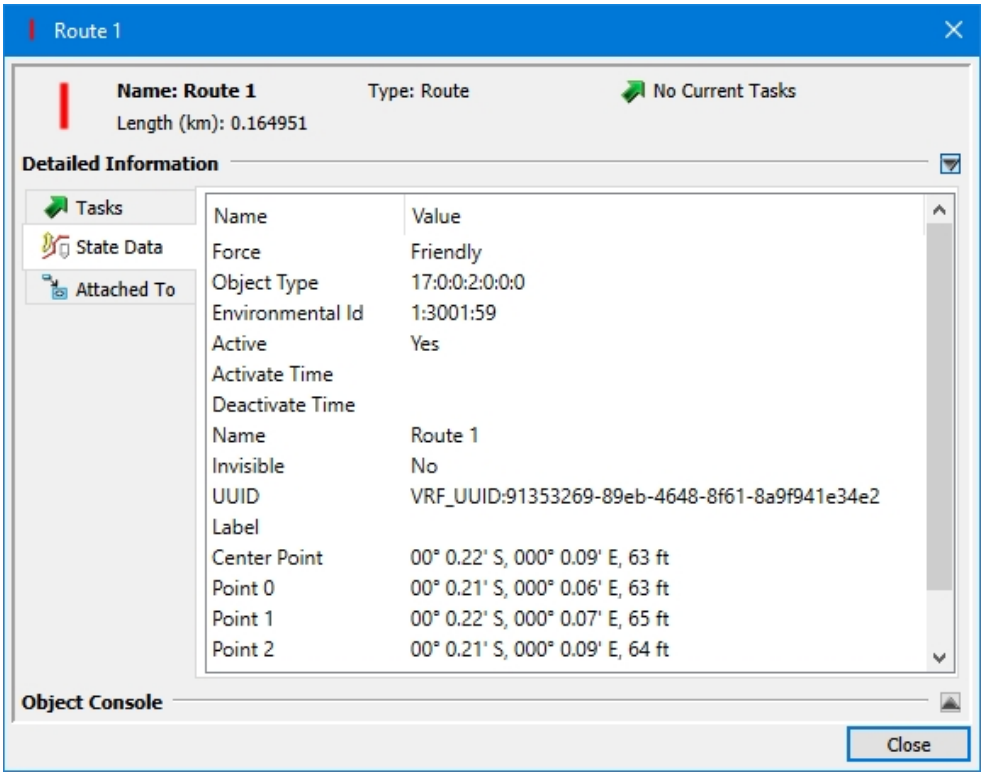
- Tasks.
- State Data.
- IFF.
- Subordinates. Lists the subordinates.
- Personnel and Equipment. The types of personnel and number of each. Casualties, by category.
- Supplies. Food, water, fuel, and ammunition. The Supplies tab displays information when a simulation object is receiving supplies or providing them to another simulation object. When a simulation object is receiving supplies, an up arrow is displayed next to the supply it is receiving.
- Combat Capability. Combat power by category (anti-air, anti-personnel, and so on) and defensive capability, by category.
- Engagements. Current attack and defense status.
- Sensor Information. The Sensors tab shows information about simulation objects being detected. The Jamming tab shows if the simulation object is being jammed (electronic warfare) or is jamming other simulation objects.
- Emitters.
- Acoustics.
- Embarkation.

### 16.1.3 Information Dialog Boxes for Tactical Graphics

The detailed information section for an environmental object (Figure 156), such as a route, has the following pages:

- State Data. Shows the force and coordinates.
- Attached To. The simulation object this object is attached to, if any.

**Figure 156. Environmental object information dialog box**



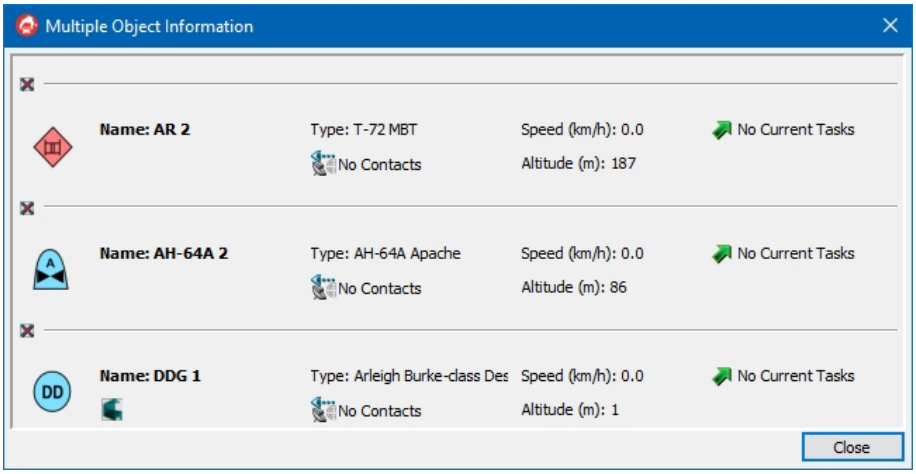

## 16.1.4 Viewing Information for Multiple Objects

You can select multiple objects and view summary information for all of them. From the summary information window, you can jump directly to an object and you can open its Information dialog box.

➤ **To view information about multiple objects:**

1. Select the objects.
2. Choose **Objects > Information**, or press **i**. The Multiple Object Information window opens (Figure 157).

**Figure 157. Multiple Object Information window**




3. To zoom to the extents of an object, click its icon.
4. To open an Information dialog box for an object, click any of the details about the object, such as its name.

## 16.2. Displaying Entity Labels

VR-Forces provides extensive information about simulation objects in the Information dialog box ("16.1. Displaying Information About an Object" on page 409). It also provides an abbreviated set of information in the form of simulation object labels.

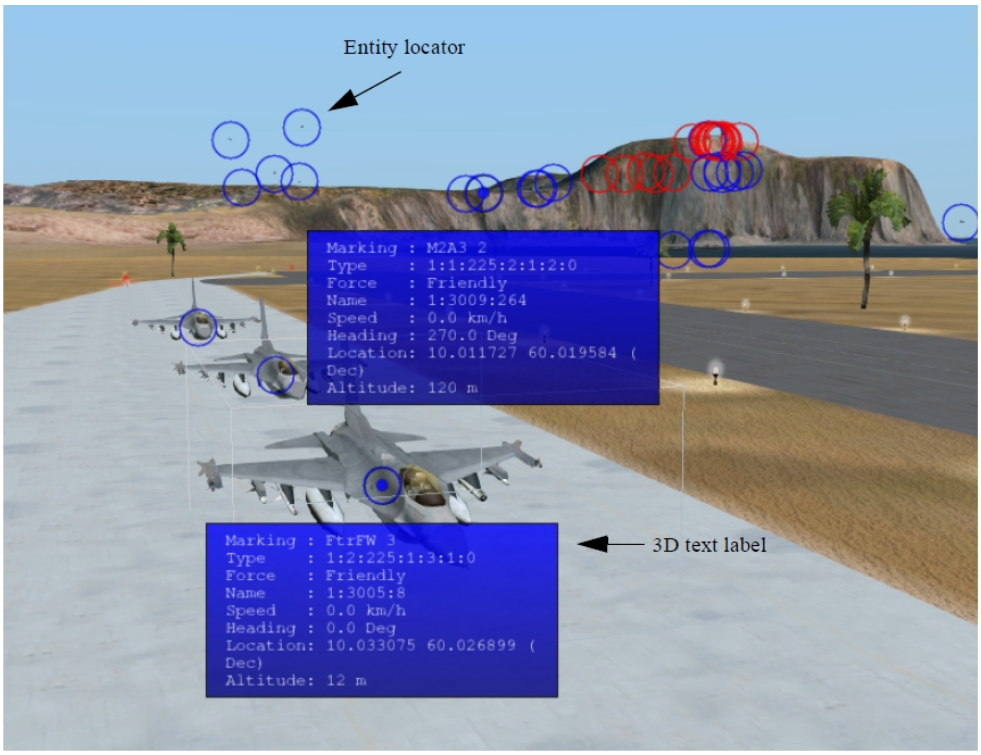
For 3D models, VR-Forces displays labels that help you locate and identify entities (Figure 158). The label consists of a locator circle, which is always visible when labels are enabled, and a text label that displays when you mouse over an entity. All entities within the view have locator circles, whether the model is visible or not. The color of an entity's label represents its force — blue for friendly, red for opposing, and green for neutral.

A 3D text label displays the entity's:

- Marking text
- Entity type enumeration
- Force
- Name
- Speed
- Heading
- Latitude and longitude
- Altitude

You can configure the attributes of the entity label, such as font size, and the height and width of the background by editing the entityInfo model definition in the Visual Models Editor. For details about editing model definitions, see *"Creating and Editing Model Definitions,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

**Figure 158. Entity labels for 3D models**




For 2D icons, labels are a set of individually enabled text labels called symbol decorations (Figure 159). Entity labels for 2D icons are supported both in the 2D view and the 3D view. If you resize 2D icons, the labels are also resized. 2D icons can display the simulation object's:

- Acceleration
- Altitude above mean sea level – This displays only for aircraft, space, ground vehicle, subsurface, and life form entities (not surface entities).
- Altitude above ground level – This displays only for aircraft, space, and life form entities.
- Heading indicator
- Label – If extended labels exist, each label can be displayed separately.
- Location
- Name

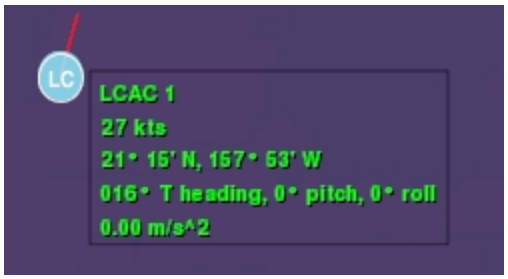
- Orientation
- Velocity
- Weather – Cloud state, precipitation intensity, visibility, wind direction, and wind speed.

---

If spot reports are enabled, you can display labels for spot reports. For details, see "9.1.5 Displaying Labels for Spot Reports" on page 279.

---

**Figure 159. Label for a 2D icon**




---

You can specify the order of symbol decorations in the 2D view. See exampleSymbolDecoration in the *VR-Forces Developers Guide* to learn how to do this.

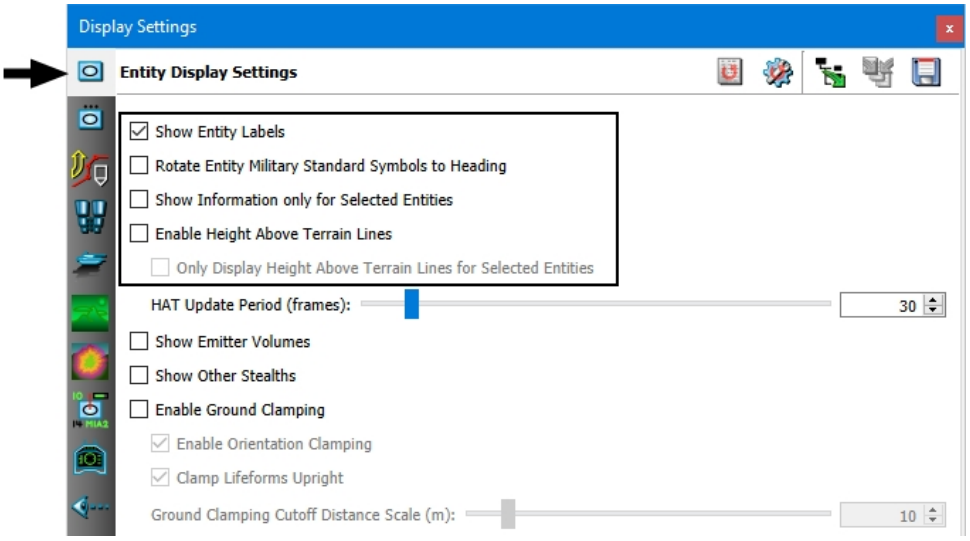
---

## 16.2.1 Displaying Text Labels for 3D Models

➤ **To view a 3D text label, use one of the following methods:**

- Move the cursor over the circle that represents the entity.
- On the Display Settings dialog box, Entity Display Settings page, select Show Information Only For Selected Entities (Figure 160). Then select the entity whose label you want to see.

**Figure 160. Display Settings, Entity Display Settings page**




## 16.2.2 Turning Entity Labels On and Off

➤ **To turn the display of entity labels on or off:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 160 above).
3. Select or clear the Show Entity Labels check box.

---

You can also enable and disable entity labels by choosing **Settings > Entity Labels**, pressing L, or by clicking the Entity Labels button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

---

## 16.2.3 Pinning Text Labels and Symbol Decorations to the Window

You can pin 3D text labels and 2D symbol decorations to the window, making them stay visible after you move the cursor away from the entity. The pin applies to both the 2D and 3D views. The pin icon indicates the state of each entity's label:

- (sideways). The label for each selected entity is not pinned.
- (upright). The label for each selected entity is pinned.
- (angled). Multiple entities are selected and only some of their labels are pinned.

➤ **To pin or hide a text label or symbol decoration in the window:**

1. Right-click an entity's locator circle or the entity name in the Objects List. A menu displays.

2. Choose **Decorations > Toggle Pinned Label**.

### Displaying Multiple Text Labels or Symbol Decorations

You can display multiple text labels or symbol decorations at one time.

➤ **To display multiple labels or decorations use either of the following methods:**

- Right-click and choose **Decorations > Toggle Pinned Label** for each entity whose label or decoration you want to see.
- For 3D text labels only, on the Display Settings dialog box, Entity Display Settings page, select Show Information Only For Selected Entities (Figure 160 on the previous page). Then, in the Objects List Panel or the window, multi-select the entities whose labels you want to see.

The 3D text labels display for pinned entities and selected entities. This does not pin or unpin labels. You cannot pin or unpin labels while Show Information Only For Selected Entities is selected.

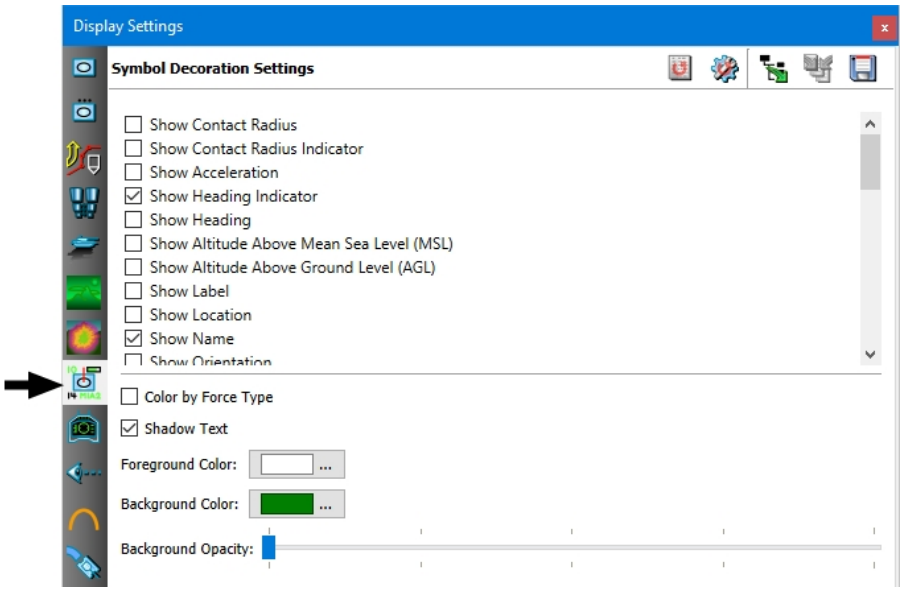
## 16.2.4 Displaying Labels for 2D Icons

You can enable and disable the display of labels for 2D icons by label type. This allows you to control how much screen space is taken up by the labels. You can control the display of labels in the Display Settings dialog box or on the Display Settings Toolbar.

➤ **To enable and disable display of 2D icon labels:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Symbol Decoration Settings page (Figure 161).

**Figure 161. Symbol Decoration Settings page**




3. Select the check box for each label that you want to display. Clear the check box for each label that you want to hide.

### Changing the Color for 2D Labels

The labels for 2D icons use the color specified by the Foreground Color setting on the Symbol Decoration Settings page. You can also specify that labels use the force color.

➤ **To change the color of 2D labels:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Symbol Decoration Settings page (Figure 161).
3. To set the color to any color:
   a. Click the Foreground Color color swatch. A color picker dialog box opens.
   b. Select the color you want to use.
   c. Click OK.
4. To use the force color for labels, select the Color by Force Type check box. This setting overrides the Foreground Color setting.

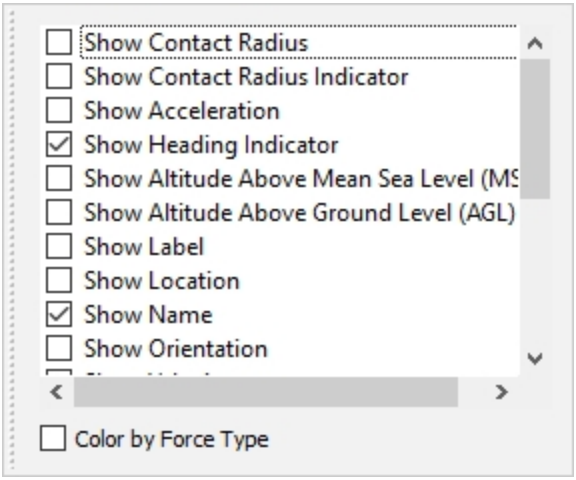
### Enabling 2D Labels on the Display Settings Toolbar

The Entity Labels button on the Display Settings Toolbar lets you open a panel that lists the symbol decorations that you can show or hide. It also lets you color labels by force type.

➤ **To enable or disable 2D labels on the Display Settings Toolbar:**

1. Click the arrow on the Entity Labels button (). A small panel displays. It is a persistent window.

**Figure 162. Symbol Decoration Panel**




2. Select the symbol decorations that you want to display. Clear the ones you want to hide.
3. To hide the Symbol Decorations Panel, click the arrow on the Entity Labels button.

### 16.2.5 Configuring Shadowing and Background Color for 2D Labels

2D labels are drawn on a background that, by default, is transparent. However, you can increase the opacity of the background to make it visible and can change the background color.

You can add shadowing to the text of 2D labels. This may improve visibility when simulation objects are on light colored terrain.

**Figure 163. 2D label with background**

➤ **To set the color and opacity of the 2D label background:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Symbol Decoration Settings page (Figure 161 on page 420).
3. To change the opacity of the background, adjust the Background Opacity slider.
4. To change the color of the background:
    a. Click the Background Color color swatch. A color picker opens.
    b. Select the color you want to use for the background.
    c. Click OK.

➤ **To configure shadows for 2D labels:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Symbol Decoration Settings page (Figure 161 on page 420).
3. Select or clear the Shadow Text check box.

## 16.3. Using Extended Labels

One of the ways to identify a simulation object is by its label. (For more information, please see "13.2.5 Labels" on page 354.) Extended labels are additional labels that you

can specify on an application-wide basis and define individually for simulation objects. The contents of each label gets sent over the network as part of the simulation object's information and is displayed in its Information dialog box.

You can add and remove extended labels and change the label name. Changing a label's name does not affect the text that is associated with the label for those simulation objects that use the label.

---

Extended labels are not scenario-specific. They affect all scenarios. Therefore, if you change a label's name or index, or delete it, be sure that you want this change to apply to all scenarios in which you use the extended label.

---

Figure 164 shows an extended label (called A Special Label) added in the Application Settings dialog box,. Figure 165 shows the text for the extended label for a specific entity entered in the Edit dialog box and then displayed on the screen.

**Figure 164. Extended label added to session**

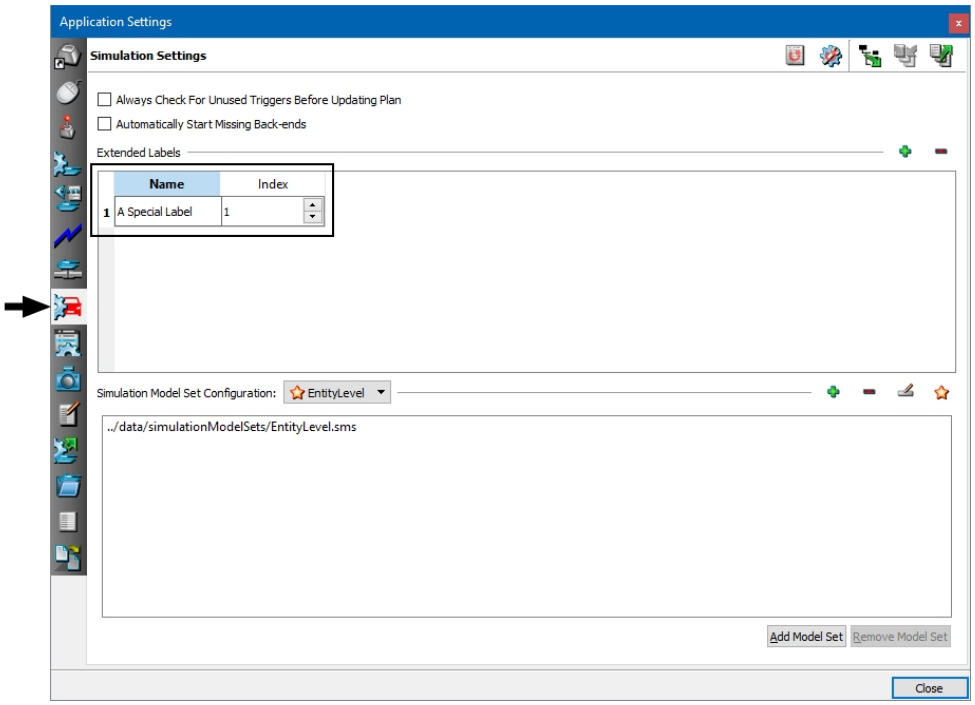
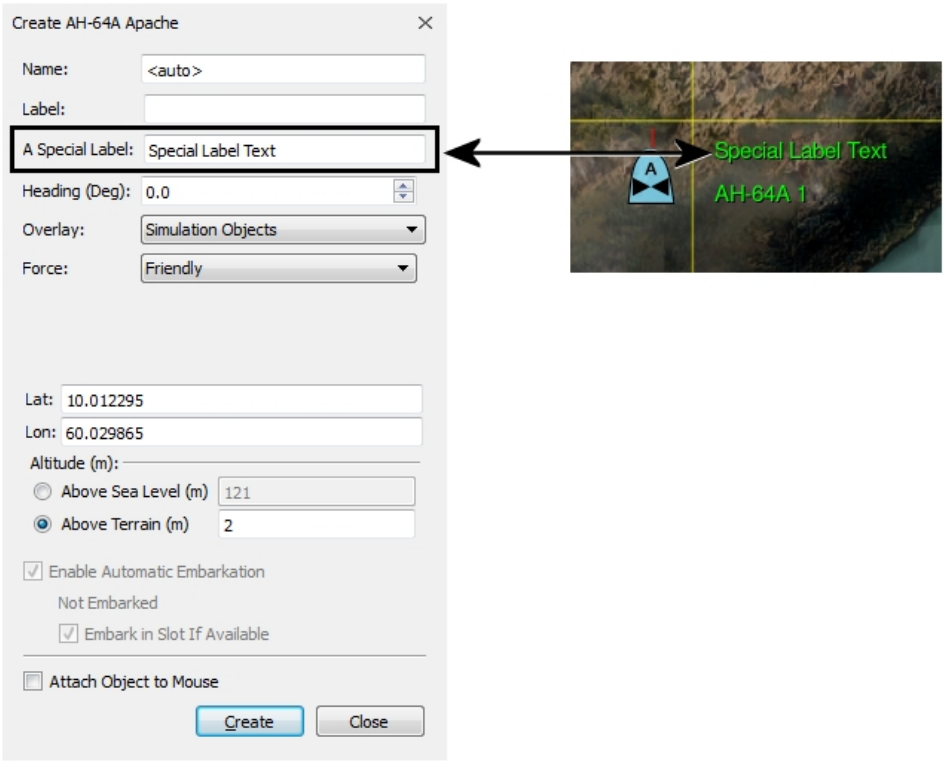


**Figure 165. Extended label text for a simulation object**




You can display extended labels in Plan View mode the same as other symbol decorations. For more information, please see"16.2.4 Displaying Labels for 2D Icons" on page 420 .

## 16.3.1 Adding an Extended Label

➤ **To add an extended label:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Simulation Settings page (Figure 164).
3. Click the Add button (+) on the Extended Labels line. A label is added to the list window. It has a generic name (for example, Label 1).
4. Double-click the label name to make it editable.
5. Type the name you want for this label.
6. Edit simulation objects to specify the text for this label.

## 16.3.2 Changing an Extended Label's Index

A label's index is used to store the label text and identify it when sent over the network. In Edit dialog boxes, extended labels are listed in indexed order. You can change an extended label's index. However, while changing an extended label's name does not affect the text that you save for a simulation object, changing its index could affect existing scenarios. Therefore, use caution in doing so.

➤ **To change an extended label's index:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Simulation Settings page (Figure 164 on page 423).
3. Click the up or down arrow next to a label's index number. The index number changes and, if applicable, the label moves up or down in the list.

### 16.3.3 Deleting an Extended Label

Deleting an extended label affects all scenarios that use that label. (In other words, it is not a scenario-specific setting.) If you delete an extended label, it is immediately removed from all simulation objects that are using that label.

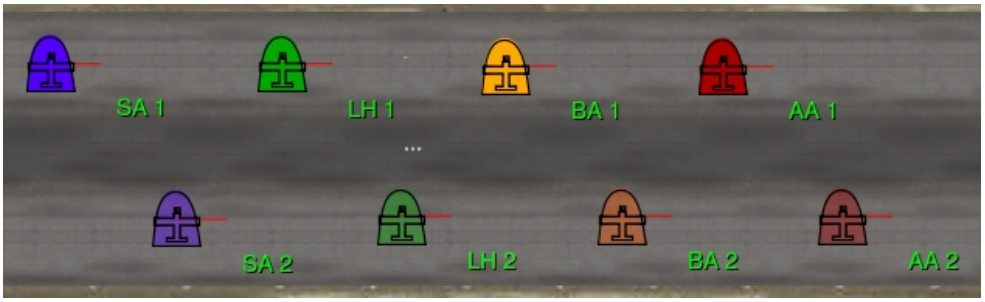
➤ **To delete an extended label:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Simulation Settings page (Figure 164 on page 423).
3. In the Extended Labels window, select the label you want to delete.
4. Click the Delete button (−).

## 16.4. Customizing 2D Icon Colors

During a session, you can adjust the colors and transparency of the 2D icons. These changes only apply to the current session and VR-Forces GUI; they are not saved and they are not visible in other GUIs. You can use this to categorize the icons, for example, to differentiate the simulation objects that you are working with from those you are not.

**Figure 166. 2D icons with different color and transparency settings**




➤ **To change the color and transparency of a 2D icon:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Objects > Decorations > Set Icon Color**. The Set Icon Color dialog box opens.
3. Adjust the color and transparency (alpha channel) settings as desired.
4. Click OK.

## 16.5. Changing Force Colors

By default, labels, detonation lines, and other force-related simulation object graphics (including the 3D Colorized Model model set in VR-Vantage Stealth) are displayed using primary colors (red, blue, and green). You can change the force coloring to use MIL-STD 2525B colors (light blue, light green, and pink (light red)).

You can also change the color of a force in the Simulation Object Editor. For details, please see "61.12.2 Editing a Force" on page 1253.

➤ **To change force coloring:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. For entities and entity graphics, select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 160 on page 419).

   For units, select the Unit Display Settings page (Figure 211 on page 534).
3. Select the Force Coloring Settings option that you want.

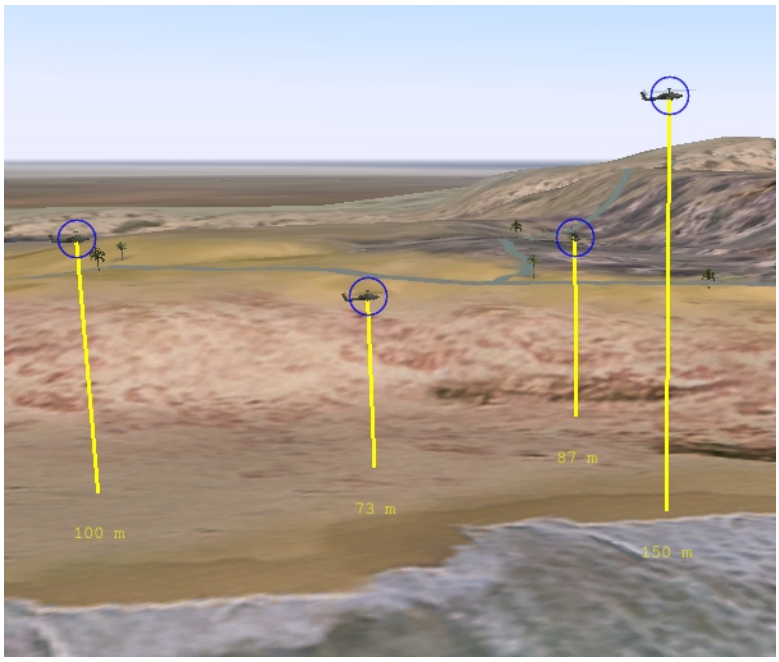
## 16.6. Displaying HAT Lines for Entities (3D Only)

Height-above-terrain (HAT) lines are vertical lines that run from an entity to the ground and display the altitude of the entity (using whatever units are configured on the Display Units Settings page) (Figure 167). They help you understand the relationship of the entity to the terrain.

HAT lines are shown only for entities that could be above or below the ground, such as fixed and rotary-wing vehicles. You can show and hide these lines globally and you can specify that they be shown only for the selected entities.

When you create or edit an entity, VR-Forces displays HAT lines even if they are otherwise disabled.

**Figure 167. Entity height-above-terrain lines**




---

Displaying height above terrain lines can reduce the frame rate.

---

➤ **To show or hide height-above-terrain lines:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 160 on page 419).
3. To display lines, select the Enable Height Above Terrain Lines check box.
4. To display lines only for selected entities, select the Only Display Height Above Terrain Lines For Selected Entities check box.

---

In VR-Vantage Stealth, you can also enable and disable entity HAT lines by choosing **Settings > Entity Height Above Terrain Lines** or by clicking the Entity Height Above Terrain Lines button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

---

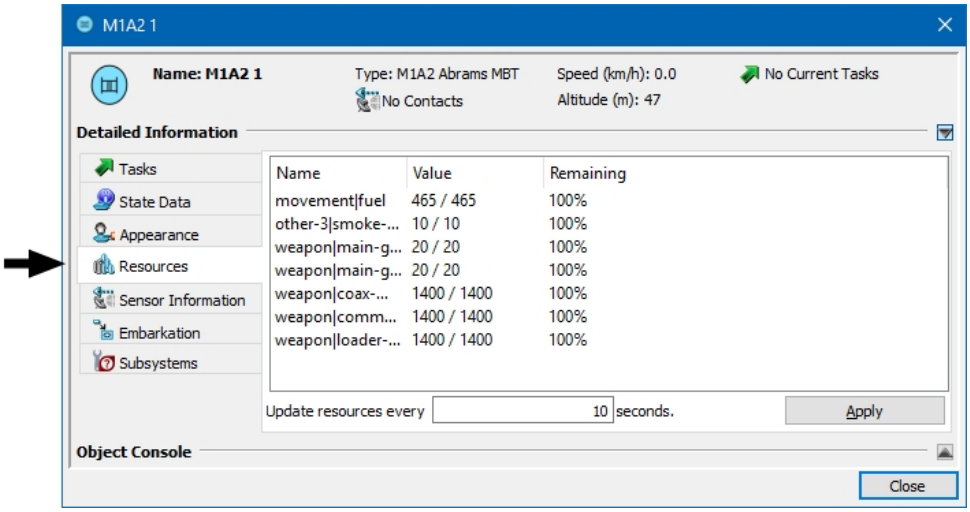
## 16.7. Displaying Entity Resources

VR-Forces tracks the amount of resources that a simulation object has. You can view the status of resources in the Information dialog box.

### 16.7.1 Viewing Numerical Resource Data

The Information dialog box lists the simulation object's current amount of resources, its starting amount, and the percentage remaining (Figure 168).

**Figure 168. Resource Information page**



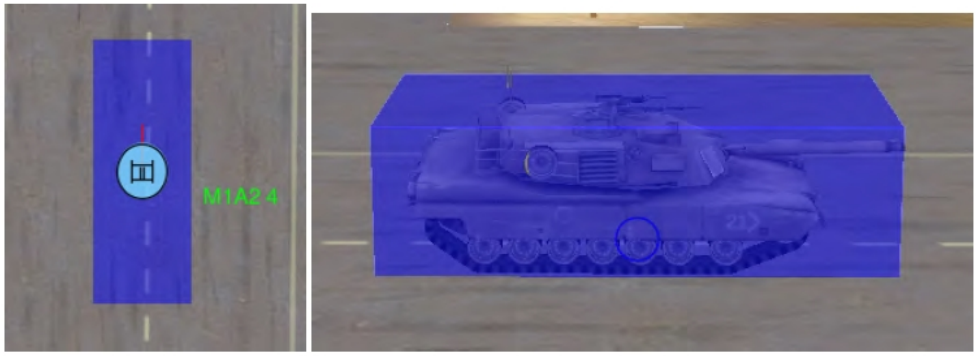

➤ **To view a simulation object's resource status:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Objects > Information**, or press **i**.
3. Expand the Detailed Information section.
4. Select the Resources page.

## 16.8. Displaying Bounding Volumes

You can display bounding volumes for simulation objects. Bounding volumes show the area around a simulation object that the back-end uses for intersection calculations. Bounding volumes are shown as translucent volumes in 3D and translucent rectangles in 2D (Figure 169). For simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios, the bounding volume is equivalent to the footprint.

**Figure 169. Bounding volumes**




2D 3D

Bounding volumes for units and bounding volumes for individual entities are managed by different settings. For information about displaying bounding volumes for units, please see "24.4. Displaying Unit Icons and Bounding Volumes" on page 535.

### 16.8.1 Enabling and Disabling Bounding Volumes for Entities

Display of bounding volumes for entities is an observer setting.

➤ **To enable or disable bounding volumes for individual entities:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page.
3. Select the observer mode for which you want to enable or disable bounding volumes.
4. Select or clear the Bounding Volume check box.

---

You can also enable and disable bounding volumes for entities by choosing **Observer>Bounding Volumes** or clicking the Bounding Volumes button ( ) on the Observer Settings Toolbar.

---

### 16.8.2 Showing Bounding Volumes Only for Selected Entities

You can configure VR-Forces so that it shows bounding volumes only for selected simulation objects.

➤ **To display bounding volumes only for selected entities:**

1. Enable bounding volumes, as described in "16.8.1 Enabling and Disabling Bounding Volumes for Entities" above.
2. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
3. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 160 on page 419).
4. Select the Show Bounding Volumes for Selected Entities check box.

## 16.9. Configuring Object Console Messages

The Information dialog boxes for simulation objects and tactical graphics have a console that displays messages sent from the simulation engine, from a simulation object's plan, from other simulation objects, and from scripts. You can set the notification level that controls the display of these messages. You can save them to the clipboard, and you can clear the display. These messages are also sent to the Object Console Summary Panel.

Scripted tasks can ask questions. You can answer these questions from the Object Console Summary Panel.

## 16.9.1 Setting the Notification Level for Console Messages

Console messages are displayed only if they match or exceed the notification level set for that object. The notification levels are:

- 0 – Only fatal messages are printed.
- 1 – Warning messages and fatal messages are printed.
- 2 – Some diagnostic information is printed with warnings and fatal messages.
- 3 – Verbose information is printed.
- 4 – Debug information is printed.

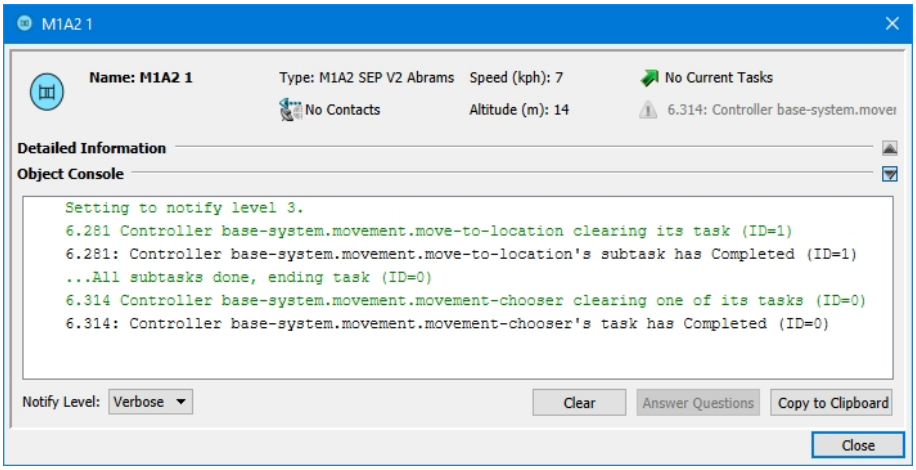
The default notification level is 2.

The notification level is set individually for each object. You can set the notification level in the object's Information dialog box, with the Notify Level set data request (for simulation objects), or with the **objectConsoleNotifyLevel** parameter in *vrfSim.mtl*. (For the set data request procedure, please see "34.50. Notify Level" on page 820.)

➤ **To set the notification level for an object's console in the Information dialog box:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Objects > Information**. The Information dialog box opens.
3. Expand the Object Console section (Figure 170).

**Figure 170. Information dialog box, Object Console**



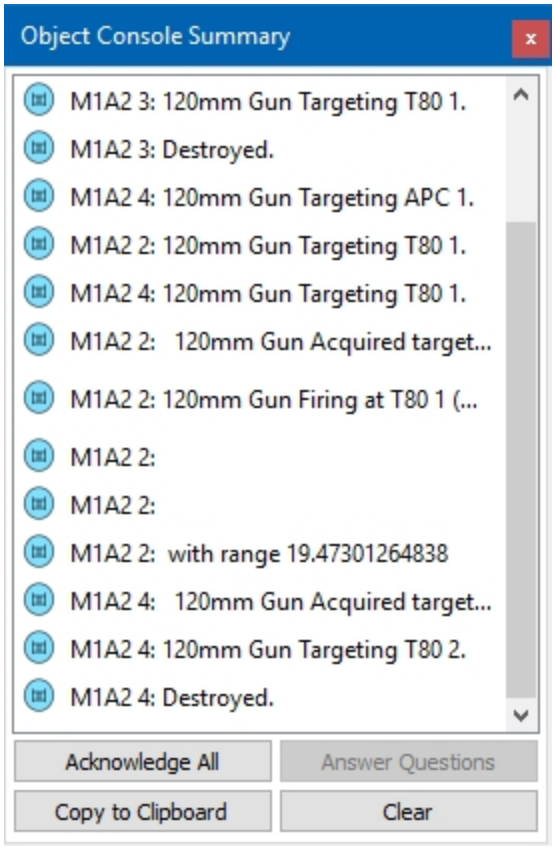

4. Select a notification level from the Notify Level list.

## 16.9.2 Viewing All Console Messages

You can view all object console messages in one place – the Object Console Summary Panel. Messages are displayed based on the notification levels of the individual simulation objects in the scenario. You can set the notification level in a simulation object's Information dialog box or with the Notify Level set data request.

When VR-Forces sends a message to a simulation object's console, it displays an exclamation point next to the entity until you view the message (unless you disable this feature). The messages in the Object Console Summary Panel also display an exclamation point until you open the Information dialog box for that entity or click Acknowledge All.

**Figure 171. Object Console Summary Panel**

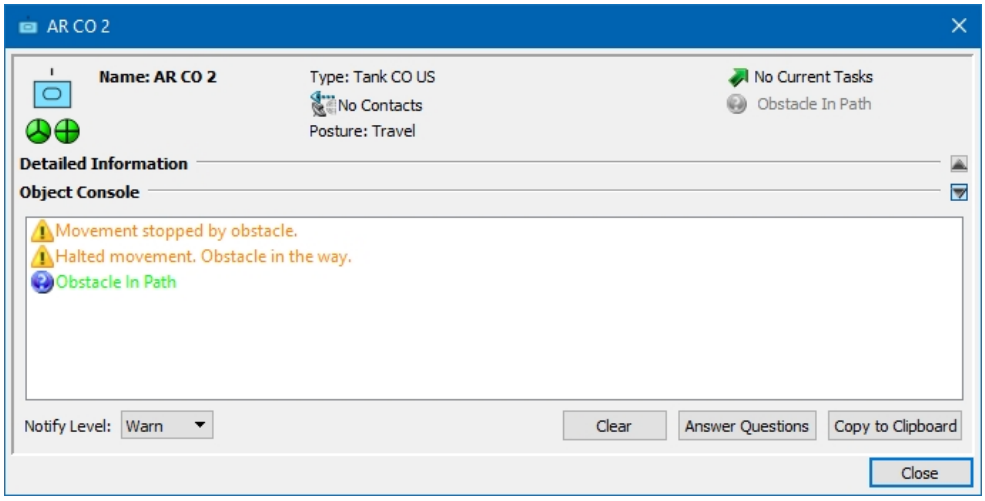



- To display the Object Console Summary Panel, choose **View > Object Console Summary Panel**.
- To remove the exclamation point from messages in the Object Console Summary Panel, click Acknowledge All.

## 16.9.3 Answering Questions from Scripted Tasks

Scripted tasks can send questions to the object console. Questions are indicated by a question mark next to the message (Figure 172). The script will offer a set of responses as buttons, option buttons, or a list. You can answer questions from the Object Console and the Object Console Summary Panel.

**Figure 172. Question in console**




➤ **To answer a question from a scripted task:**

1. On the Object Console or Object Console Summary Panel, click Answer Questions. A dialog box with the possible answers displays.
2. Choose an option.
3. Click OK.

## 16.9.4 Saving Console Messages

If you want to save the messages that are sent to the console, you can copy them to the clipboard and then paste them into a file.

➤ **To save console messages to the clipboard:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Objects > Information**. The Information dialog box opens (Figure 170 on page 430).
3. If the Object Console is collapsed, expand it.
4. To save all messages in the console, click Copy to Clipboard. To save specific messages, select them and click Copy to Clipboard.
5. Paste the text into the text editor or word processor of your choice.

## 16.9.5 Displaying an Object Console Warning Icon

VR-Forces can display a notification icon when an object receives a message on its object console (Figure 173). This option is enabled by default, however the default notification level is Warn and objects do not typically get messages at this level. The more likely use for this icon is to set the notification level to Info or lower and then check the console when a notification is received. For details about how to set the notification level, please see "16.9.1 Setting the Notification Level for Console Messages" on page 430.

**Figure 173. Object console warning icon**

Icons are displayed next to the entity icon in the display window, next to the entity's listing in the Objects List Panel, and if the entity has recently been selected, on the Last Selected Object Panel.

The icon is not displayed if the Information dialog box is open. If an icon is displayed for an object, when you open its Information dialog box, the icon is removed.

If you disable the warning icon, it no longer displays in the display window or the Objects List Panel. It still displays on the Last Select Object Panel, if the entity was the last selected object.

➤ **To enable or disable the console warning icon:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 160 on page 419).
3. Select or clear the Show Object Console Warning Icon check box.

### 16.9.6 Clearing the Object Console

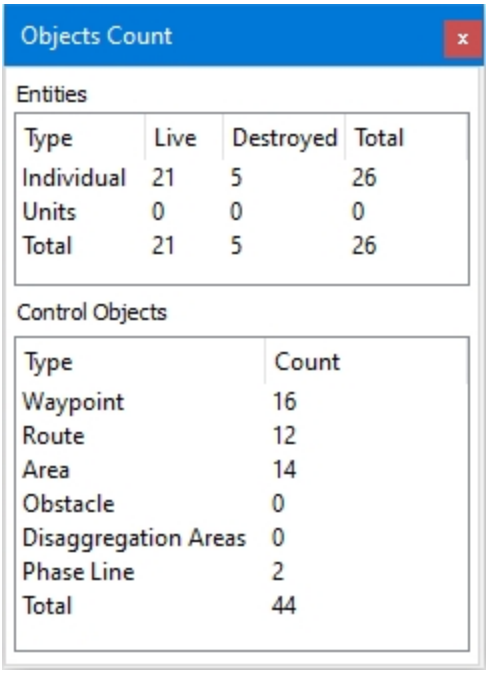
➤ To clear the messages from the object console, click Clear.

## 16.10. Viewing Object Counts

You can display the number of live and destroyed simulation objects in the simulation you are viewing and the number of VR-Forces control objects, by type.

➤ To display the object counts, choose **View > Objects Count Panel**. The Objects Count Panel is added to the display (Figure 174).

**Figure 174. Objects Count Panel**



# 17. Embarked and Embedded Entities

This chapter explains how to embark entities on other entities. It also explains how to manage embedded entities, which is another way to embark entities.


17.1. Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects ..... 436
17.1.1 Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects Instantly ..... 437
17.1.2 Disembarking Simulation Objects Using the Disembark Command 440
17.2. Embedded Entities ..... 441
17.2.1 Configuring an Entity to Support Embedded Entities ..... 442
17.2.2 Assigning Tasks and Plans to Embedded Entities ..... 444
17.2.3 Restoring an Entity that has Embedded Entities ..... 444

# 17.1. Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects

Embarkation places simulation objects into or onto other simulation objects, for example, dismounted infantry in a truck, trucks on an LCAC, or aircraft on an aircraft carrier. While embarked, the simulation objects travel with the simulation object on which they are embarked. Embarked simulation objects are not visible in the 2D view. They are visible in the 3D view if they are embarked on the ourside of the parent, such as on the deck of an aircraft carrier, or inside a parent that has interior geometry, such as some helicopters.

Embarked entities can shoot while they are embarked if they are embarked on an entity that has object geometry enabled.

---

If you are using HLA and want to use the embarkation feature, you must use RPR FOM 2, draft 17 or later. VR-Forces includes configurations in the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box that start VR-Forces using the correct FED file and FOM Mapper for HLA 1.3 and HLA Evolved using RPR FOM 2.

---

You can attach control objects to simulation objects so that embarked simulation objects can use them to move about on the parent simulation object. For example, an aircraft could taxi towards a waypoint on the flight deck of an aircraft carrier.

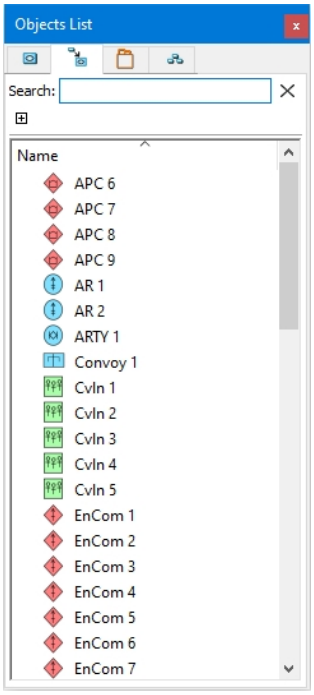
---

Attached objects are shown in the Embarkation View on the Objects List Panel.

---

The embarkation status of simulation objects is displayed in the Embarkation View of the Objects List Panel (Figure 175).

**Figure 175. Embarkation View**




You can embark and disembark simulation objects instantly (described in this section), or you can have them simulate embarkation and disembarkation using the Embark and Disembark tasks, described in "Chapter 29. Embarkation, Wait, Radio, and Other Tasks" on page 653.

When you embark a simulation object using the Embark task, the simulation object can embark only on simulation objects that are configured to accept that type of simulation object. For example, LCACs are configured to accept several types of ground vehicles. You cannot give a DI an Embark task to embark on an LCAC. However, when you use the immediate embark method to embark a simulation object, you can use preconfigured slots (spaces) for simulation objects or specify an override. When you specify an override you can embark a simulation object on any other simulation object at the coordinates you enter. However, it is your responsibility to know what the proper coordinates are.

---

Embarked entities controlled by joystick cannot disembark. For example, if you use a joystick to control a fixed-wing taking off from a carrier, the aircraft will take off, but it will remain in an embarked state.

---

## 17.1.1 Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects Instantly

You can embark and disembark simulation objects instantly in the following ways:

- Using the Embark On command.
- Using set data requests.

- In the Embarkation View.
- Using automatic embarkation.

Using set data requests lets you include immediate embarkation in plans. This may be particularly useful in a global plan, in which you may want to quickly create and embark simulation objects without paying attention to the realism of the action. For details about using set data requests for embarkation, please see "34.23. Embarked" on page 807 and "34.22. Disembarked" on page 807.

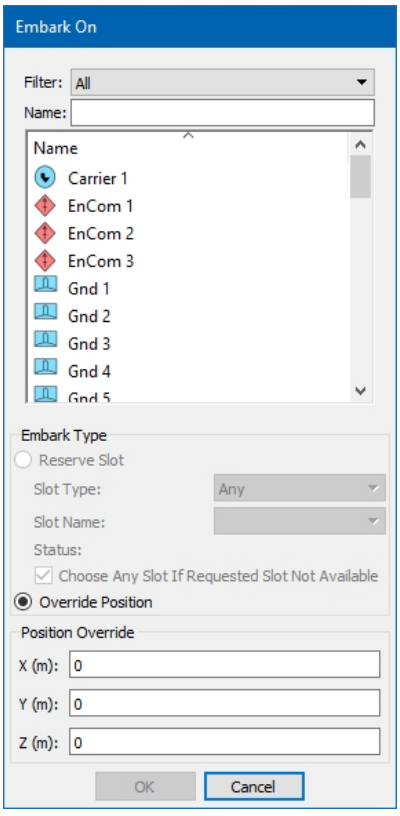
### Embarking Simulation Objects Instantly Using the Embark On Command

The Embark On command lets you embark simulation objects using preconfigured embarkation spaces or using specific coordinates. If the embarkation spaces on the parent simulation object are full, VR-Forces sends a message to the back-end console and the simulation object is not embarked. To embark simulation objects instantly from a plan, use the Embarked set data request.

➤ **To embark a simulation object instantly using the Embark On command:**

1. Select the simulation object that you want to embark.
2. Choose **Objects > Embarkation > Embark On**. The Embark On dialog box opens.

**Figure 176. Embark On dialog box**




3. Optionally, filter the list of potential parent simulation objects.

4. Select the parent simulation object.
5. To embark in a configured space, select the Reserve Slot option. To specify an embarkation point, select Override Position.
6. If you chose the Override Position option, specify the coordinates on the parent, in body coordinates, for the embarkation point.
7. Click OK.

### Embarking Simulation Objects in the Embarkation View

➤ **To embark an object in the Embarkation View:**

1. On the Objects List Panel, select the Embarkation View.
2. Drag the simulation object you want to embark onto the parent simulation object. The Embarked dialog box opens.
3. To specify an embarkation location, specify X, Y, and Z values. If you do not specify a location, the simulation object gets embarked at the center of the parent simulation object.
4. Click OK.

### Embarking Simulation Objects Using Automatic Embarkation

Automatic embarkation lets you embark simulation objects as you create them. It has the following conditions:

- It is only available in 3D observer modes.
- The simulation object you want to embark must be capable of embarking (as configured in the OPD).
- The simulation object you want to embark on must allow embarkation.
- There is no option to override embarkation slots by specifying a particular location.
- If slots are configured on the parent simulation object and you select the option to use slots, embarked simulation objects are placed in slots until the slots run out. Then they are placed on the parent simulation object where you click.

---

You can attach tactical graphics to simulation objects using this method. For more information, please see "40.7.1 Attaching a Tactical Graphic Automatically" on page 952.

---

➤ **To embark a simulation object using automatic embarkation:**

1. Create the entity on which you want to embark another entity (if it is not already created.)
2. In the Simulation Objects Palette, select the entity that you want to embark.
3. Optionally, configure auto-embarkation, as follows:

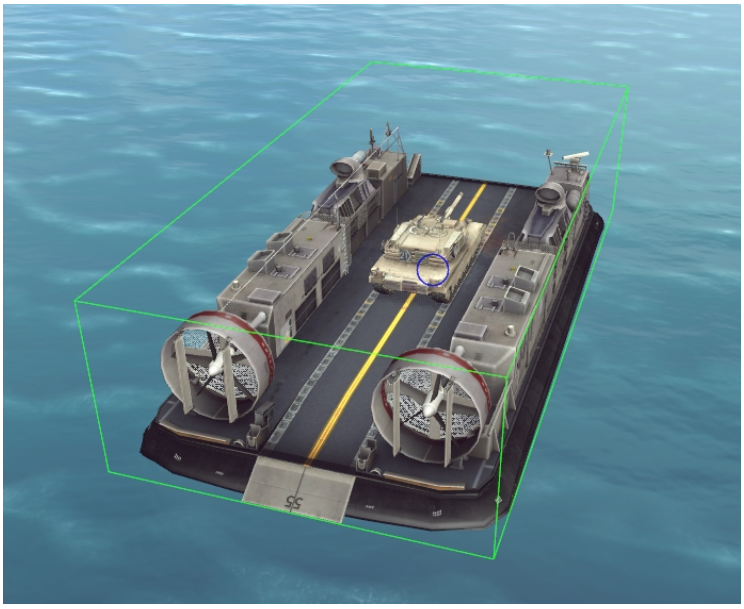
a. If the Create Entity dialog box is not open, click its tab to open it.

b. To enable or disable automatic embarkation, select or clear the Enable Automatic Embarkation check box.

c. To embark the entity in a slot if one is available, select the Embark in Slot if Available check box.

4. Move the cursor over the entity you want the new entity to embark on. If it supports embarkation and automatic embarkation is enabled, a green box is displayed (Figure 177). (If the entity does not support automatic embarkation, no green box is displayed.) If the create dialog box is open, the Not Embarked label changes to Embark On *entity_name*.

**Figure 177. Auto embarkation**



5. Click to place the entity.

## 17.1.2 Disembarking Simulation Objects Using the Disembark Command

Like the Embark On command, the Disembark command is typically used as part of scenario development. To simulate disembarkation, you would use the Disembark task. To provide instant disembarkation in a plan, you would use the Disembarked set data request.

---

Embarked entities controlled by joystick cannot disembark. For example, if you use a joystick to control a fixed-wing taking off from a carrier, the aircraft will take off, but it will remain in an embarked state.

---

➤ **To disembark a simulation object instantly:**

1. Select the simulation object that you want to disembark.
2. Choose **Objects > Embarkation > Disembark**. If the simulation object was embarked using the default embarkation point, it is disembarked next to the former parent simulation object. If the simulation object was embarked using a position override, it is disembarked in the same location as the former parent.

➤ **To disembark a simulation object in the Embarkation View:**

1. Open the Embarkation View.
2. Drag the simulation object you want to disembark from the parent simulation object to the force level.

### Disembarking All Simulation Objects

When you disembark all simulation objects from a parent, the placement of the simulation objects depends on how they were embarked. If the simulation objects were embarked with the Embark On command or the Embark task, they are disembarked to separate locations near the parent. If they were embarked with the Embarked set data request, they are all disembarked in the same location in the center of the parent simulation object. Since this behavior is usually not desirable, you should understand how you embarked the simulation objects before you use this command.

➤ **To disembark all simulation objects from a parent entity:**

1. Select the parent simulation object.
2. Choose **Objects > Embarkation > Disembark All**.

## 17.2. Embedded Entities

Embedded entities are a convenient way to manage entities that are typically embarked on other entities.

Ships, planes, and vehicles often carry other platforms or personnel. You can simulate this relationship by embarking entities on other entities. However, this involves creating the embarking entities, giving them plans, embarking them, disembarking them, and otherwise managing the relationship. This can be inconvenient if you need to simulate large numbers of embarked entities, such as the airplanes and helicopters on an aircraft carrier or multiple personnel on a personnel carrier.

The embedded entity feature lets you configure entities with a set of embedded entities. You can then deploy the embedded entities and give them tasks or plans. Once deployed, there is no difference between an embedded entity and any other entity, except that a parent entity can recover a deployed entity. You do not need to manage the initial process of creating the relationship between the entities via embarkation and disembarkation.

For details about deploying and recovering embedded entities, please see "29.6. Embedded Entity Tasks" on page 673.

### 17.2.1 Configuring an Entity to Support Embedded Entities

Embedded entities are configured in systems, which you then add to an entity in the Simulation Object Editor. An entity can have only one embedded entity system. Therefore, if you need different configurations of embedded entities for different parent entities, you must create a system for each configuration.

Within a configuration, you must specify each embedded entity. In other words, you cannot specify a system as containing, for example, 5 helicopters and 40 F/A-18 jets. In this case the system would have to individually specify each helicopter and each jet.

A system definition file for embedded entities specifies the entities and the metadata needed to edit properties in the Simulation Object Editor. You must give each entity a unique name.

An entity is formatted as follows (from *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/other/ddg-embedded-support-craft.sysdef*):

```
(embedded-entities
    (ee-1
        (entity-name  "SH-60 Seahawk Alpha")
        (entity-type  1 (1 2 225 22 3 1 0))
        (deployment-time 0.0)
        (recovery-distance 35.0)
        (relative-position $rel-pos-lamps-a)
        (relative-heading $rel-heading-lamps-a)
    )
    ...
    (ee-2
        (entity-name  "RHIB Alpha")
        (entity-type  1 (1 3 225 63 8 0 0))
        (deployment-time 15)
        (recovery-distance 50.0)
        (relative-position $rel-pos-rhib-a)
        (relative-heading $rel-heading-rhib-a)
    )
    ...
)
```

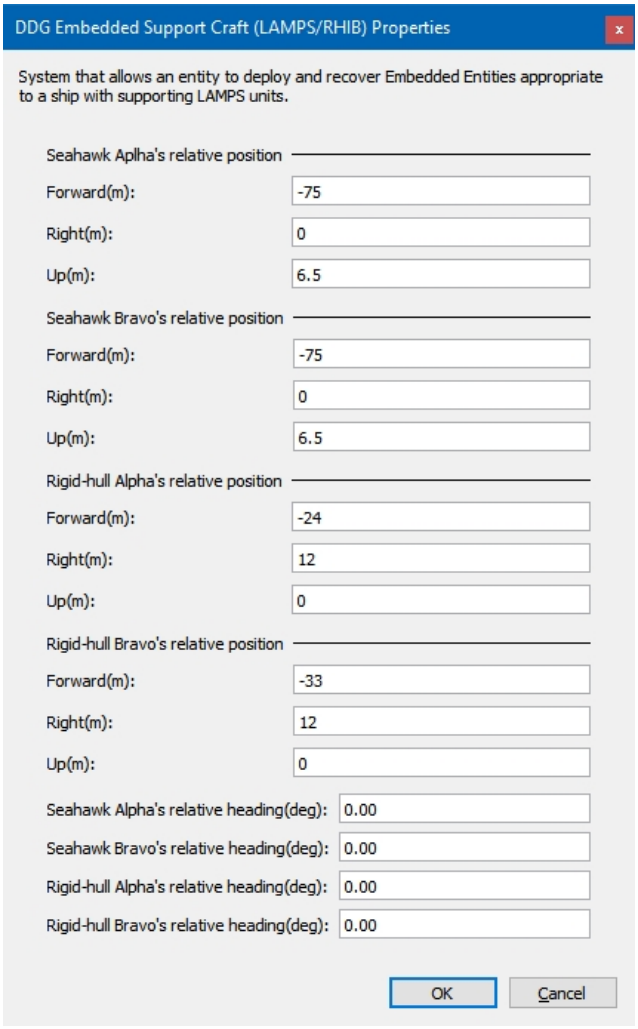
The **relative-position** and **relative-heading** parameters are variables that link to the metadata, as follows:

```
(parameter-data-list
    (vector-parameter-data
        (parameter-name  "rel-pos-lamps-a")
        (variable-type  "DtRwVector")
        (display-label  "Seahawk Alpha's relative position")
        (display-units  "meters")
        (source-units  "meters")
        (default-value  -75.000000 0.000000 -6.500000)
        (relative-to  "")
    )
```

```
    (vector-parameter-data
        (parameter-name  "rel-pos-rhib-a")
        (variable-type  "DtRwVector")
        (display-label  "Rigid-hull Alpha’s relative position")
        (display-units  "meters")
        (source-units  "meters")
        (default-value  -75.000000 10.000000 -6.500000)
        (relative-to  "")
    )
    ...
    (real-parameter-data
        (parameter-name  "rel-heading-lamps-a")
        (variable-type  "DtRwReal")
        (display-label  "Seahawk Alpha's relative heading")
        (display-units  "degrees")
        (source-units  "degrees")
        (default-value  0.000000)
    )
    (real-parameter-data
        (parameter-name  "rel-heading-rhib-a")
        (variable-type  "DtRwReal")
        (display-label  "Rigid-hull Alpha’s relative heading")
        (display-units  "degrees")
        (source-units  "degrees")
        (default-value  90.000000)
    )
    ...
)
```

Figure 178 illustrates the properties dialog box created for the system shown in the previous paragraphs.

**Figure 178. Embedded Entity Properties dialog box**




## 17.2.2 Assigning Tasks and Plans to Embedded Entities

Once an embedded entity is deployed, it is just like any other entity in the scenario. You can give it independent tasks or write a plan for it. Follow the standard procedures for these activities.

## 17.2.3 Restoring an Entity that has Embedded Entities

If you deploy an embedded entity and it gets destroyed, it is removed from the scenario and is not available to be deployed again. However, if you restore a parent entity and it had deployed entities that were subsequently destroyed, it is restored to the full complement of embedded entities. Entities that are deployed at the time the parent is restored are not affected. They are not duplicated in the parent's inventory and their relationship is not affected.

# 18. Generating Traffic (Pattern of Life)

This chapter explains how to automatically generate pattern of life simulation object traffic and how to create and task pedestrian crowds.


18.1. Generating Traffic ..... 446
18.1.1 Spawn and Sink Traffic Generation ..... 446
18.2. Creating Spawn Points ..... 447
18.2.1 Activating and Deactivating Spawn Points ..... 448
18.3. Creating Sink Points ..... 448
18.4. Spawn Patterns ..... 449
18.4.1 How Spawn Events are Scheduled ..... 450
18.4.2 Spawning Entities in Bursts ..... 451
18.4.3 Using a Custom Plan ..... 452
18.4.4 Default Spawn Patterns and Scenario-Specific Patterns ..... 453
18.5. Creating a Spawn Pattern ..... 453
18.5.1 Copying a Spawn Pattern ..... 457
18.6. Editing a Spawn Pattern ..... 457
18.7. Deleting a Spawn Pattern ..... 458
18.8. Generating Air Traffic ..... 459
18.8.1 Choosing an Air Traffic Generation Method ..... 459
18.8.2 Preparing to Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans ..... 460
18.8.3 Creating an Air Traffic Area ..... 462
18.8.4 Creating a Global Plan to Generate Air Traffic ..... 464

# 18.1. Generating Traffic

You can make your scenario more realistic by including ground vehicles, pedestrians, and water- and aircraft that appear to be going about their own business. VR-Forces offers:

- Two methods of generating air traffic only, and
- A general-purpose spawn-and-sink traffic feature that can generate both vehicular traffic (including aircraft, watercraft, and ground vehicles) and pedestrian traffic (including humans and animals)

Most of this chapter explainsthese topics explain spawn-and-sink traffic generation. For a discussion of choosing a method of air traffic generation and instructions on using the air-traffic-only methods, see "18.8. Generating Air Traffic" on page 459.

## 18.1.1 Spawn and Sink Traffic Generation

The VR-Forces spawn and sink traffic feature (also called pattern of life) lets you automatically generate background traffic for your scenario.

Automatically generated (spawned) simulation objects are created at spawn points. The default behavior for a spawned simulation object is to randomly choose a destination, called a sink point, and move towards that point. When it arrives at the sink point the object is removed from the scenario. This creates the effect of purposeful activity in an area of the terrain without the need to create and task simulation objects individually.

As an alternative to the default behavior, you can write a plan that is assigned to each simulation object created at a particular type of spawn point. This plan can include any tasks and set data requests that are appropriate for the object type.

The behavior of a spawned simulation object, as well as other details such as how frequently they are spawned and how many spawned simulation objects can exist at one time, is configured in a spawn pattern. VR-Forces comes with two spawn patterns to get you started. You can edit spawn patterns and create as many new ones as you wish. Spawn points and sink points for new and edited spawn patterns are dynamically added to the Create menu and Tactical Graphics Palette so that it is easy to create new spawn and sink points for all of the available patterns.

The SubwayPOL example scenario has spawn patterns that demonstrate continuous simulation object creation, burst traffic, and use of a custom plan.

You can find links to videos that demonstrate spawn patterns at https://www.mak.com/support/tutorials, or click the camera icon next to the procedure whose video you want to view.

---

Spawn and sink points are automatically added to the Create menu. However, they are not flagged as Favorites on the Tactical Graphics Palette. If you flag a spawn or sink point as a Favorite, a duplicate entry is added to the Create menu.

---

## 18.2. Creating Spawn Points

You can create spawn points from the Create menu, the Tactical Graphics Palette, or from the Spawn Pattern Manager. Figure 179 illustrates a spawn point.

**Figure 179. Spawn point**

If the plan for a spawn point specifies Use Roads and a spawn point is placed too far away from the road network to use roads, a message is sent to the spawn point's console. If warning icons are enabled, a warning icon is displayed. For details about the Use Roads option, please see "18.5. Creating a Spawn Pattern" on page 453. For details about configuring console messages and warning icons, please see "16.9. Configuring Object Console Messages" on page 429.

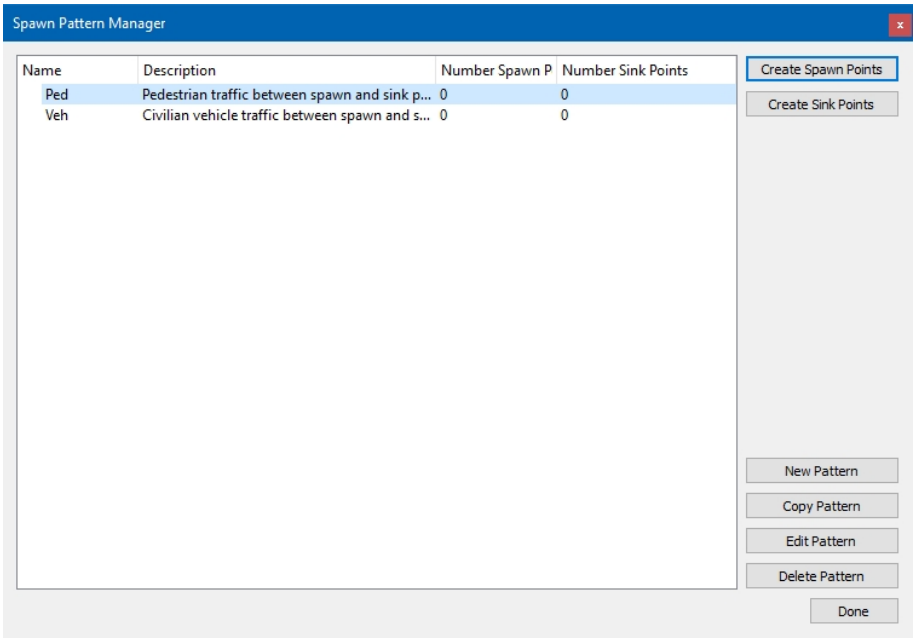
➤ **To create a spawn point from the Create menu:**

1. Choose **Create > Spawn Points >** *type*, where *type* is one of the spawn patterns. The cursor changes to the waypoint symbol.
2. Click on the terrain where you want to place the spawn point. You can continue clicking to create additional spawn points.
3. Right-click to exit create mode.

➤ **To create a spawn point from the Spawn Pattern Manager:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Spawn Pattern Manager**. The Spawn Pattern Manager opens (Figure 180).

**Figure 180. Spawn Pattern Manager**




2. Select the spawn pattern for which you want to create spawn points.
3. Click Create Spawn Points. The cursor changes to the waypoint symbol.
4. Click on the terrain where you want to place the spawn point. You can continue clicking to create additional spawn points.
5. Right-click to exit create mode.

### 18.2.1 Activating and Deactivating Spawn Points

You can activate and deactivate spawn points. To do so, use the Activation set data request. For details, please see "41.2. Activation" on page 962.

## 18.3. Creating Sink Points

If you are using the default spawned simulation object behavior – pick a sink point and move to it – then you have to create one or more sink points for the simulation objects to move to. Entities created at a given type of spawn point automatically choose among sink points of the same type. (You can configure spawned simulation objects to move to any kind of point by editing the spawn pattern. For details, please see "18.5. Creating a Spawn Pattern" on page 453.) You can create sink points from the Create menu, the Tactical Graphics Palette, or from the Spawn Pattern Manager. Figure 181 illustrates a sink point.

**Figure 181. Sink point**

If a sink point is more than 10 meters from a road and simulation objects move towards it with the Use Roads criteria, they move to the closest point on the road to the sink point and are then removed from the scenario.

➤ **To create a sink point from the Create menu:**

1. Choose **Create > Sink Points >** *type*, where *type* is one of the spawn patterns. The cursor changes to the waypoint symbol.
2. Click on the terrain where you want to place the sink point. You can continue clicking to create additional sink points.
3. Right-click to exit create mode.

➤ **To create a sink point from the Spawn Pattern Manager:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Spawn Pattern Manager**. The Spawn Pattern Manager opens (Figure 180 on the previous page).
2. Select the spawn pattern for which you want to create sink points.
3. Click Create Sink Points. The cursor changes to the waypoint symbol.
4. Click on the terrain where you want to place the sink point. You can continue clicking to create additional sink points.
5. Right-click to exit create mode.

## 18.4. Spawn Patterns

A spawn pattern configures the following aspects of spawned simulation object creation and behavior:

- The name and description of the spawn pattern.
- The timing of simulation object creation. Entities can be spawned continuously or in bursts.
- The type of simulation object created.
- The spawned simulation object's plan. Entities can follow a default plan or a custom plan.

A spawn pattern's name identifies it on the Create menu and is used to build the label for individual spawn points, for example Ped SpawnPt 1, Ped SpawnPt 2, and so on.

A scenario can have multiple spawn patterns and each spawn pattern can spawn one or more object types. Spawning multiple simulation object types in one pattern is useful when you want heterogeneous traffic. For example, in a stream of pedestrians

you might want to include men, women, and children. In other cases you might want a specific simulation object type engaging in specific behaviors and would only spawn one simulation object type in that pattern.

If you use the default plan, you can configure simulation object movement, as follows:

- Maximum and minimum speed. VR-Forces will randomly assign a speed between the maximum and minimum settings. It will not accept a speed that is greater than the maximum speed for the simulation object in the OPD file.
- Use Roads. Enables or disables road-following behavior for vehicles. Road following behavior is described in "13.8. Collision, Obstacle, and Feature Avoidance" on page 359 and "25.5. Entity Movement On Roads and Off Roads" on page 560.

When you use the default plan, the Create Spawn Pattern dialog box lists the sink points that this pattern will use.

The SubwayPOL example scenario has spawn patterns that demonstrate spawning simulation objects continuously and in bursts. It also demonstrates use of a custom plan. The following sections describe these different ways to set up spawn patterns.

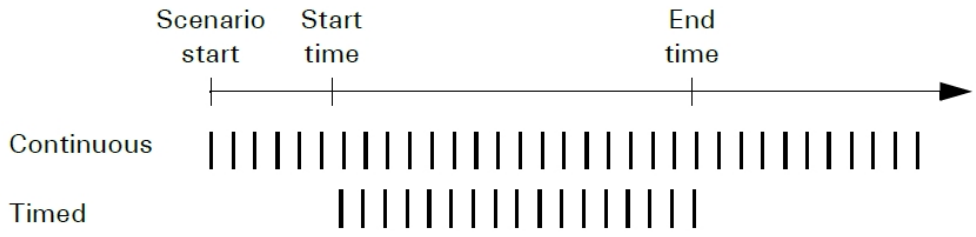
## 18.4.1 How Spawn Events are Scheduled

Spawn patterns control the time period during which simulation objects are spawned and the rate at which they are spawned during that time period. A spawn pattern can use one of the following options:

- Continuously. Entities are spawned as soon as the scenario starts and throughout its life.
- Time of Day. Entities are spawned between a starting time of day and ending time of day.
- Simulation Time. Entities are spawned between a specific starting and ending simulation time.

Figure 182 illustrates the difference between continuous and timed spawning.

**Figure 182. Continuous spawning compared to time-based**

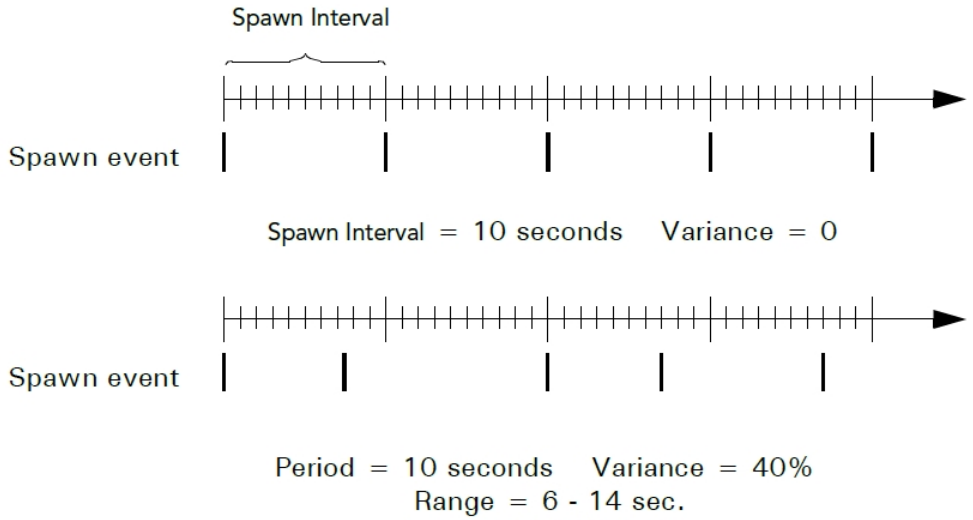



After you specify a time option, you must specify a spawn interval and a spawn interval variance. The spawn interval determines how frequently simulation objects are spawned. The spawn interval variance introduces some variability to the interval so that there is a more random and naturalistic flow of simulation object creation.

For example, if the spawn interval is 10 seconds, a simulation object is spawned every 10 seconds, plus or minus the variance. The variance is a percentage of the spawn interval. If the variance is 10%, then given a spawn interval of 10 seconds, an simulation object is spawned every 9 to 11 seconds. The spawn intervals are not fixed to an absolute time scale. A new spawn interval starts each time a spawn event occurs.

Figure 183 illustrates a series of spawn events with a spawn interval of 10 seconds and a spawn interval variance of 0% and a series of hypothetical events with a spawn interval of 10 seconds and a spawn interval variance of 40%. In the second case, each spawn event can take place anywhere between 6 and 14 seconds after the previous event. Notice that a new spawn interval starts at each spawn event.

**Figure 183. Spawn period and variance**




The frequency with which a spawn point spawns simulation objects can be affected by the total number of simulation objects that it has spawned. If the maximum number of simultaneous simulation objects for a spawn point is reached, no more simulation objects are spawned from that point until simulation objects from that spawn point are removed from the scenario.

## 18.4.2 Spawning Entities in Bursts

You can introduce additional variation to the spawn frequency by specifying that simulation objects be spawned in bursts. A burst pattern controls spawning behavior within a fixed period of time. For example, you could use a burst pattern to represent a cycle of train disembarkations or rush hour traffic.

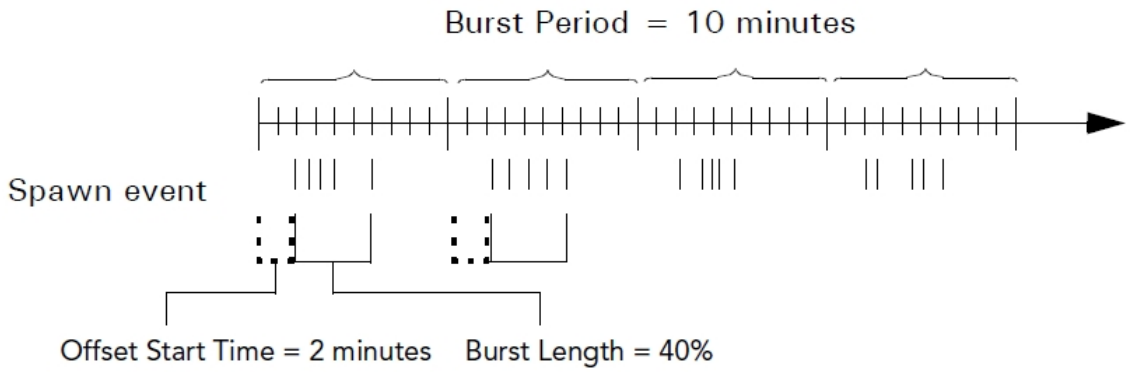
Burst patterns have the following parameters:

- Burst Period. The period of time during which a burst can take place.
- Burst Length. The percentage of the burst period in which to spawn simulation objects.
- Offset Start Time. An offset from the start of the burst period at which to start spawning simulation objects.

Within a burst, simulation objects are created at the rate determined by the spawn interval and spawn interval variance values.

Figure 184 illustrates a series of bursts. The burst period is 10 minutes. The offset start time is two minutes, so each burst starts two minutes after the start of the burst period. The burst lasts for 40% of the length of the burst period, in this case four minutes. Within each burst, the frequency of spawn events is controlled by the spawn interval and variance values.

**Figure 184. Burst periods**




## 18.4.3 Using a Custom Plan

As noted in "18.1.1 Spawn and Sink Traffic Generation" on page 446, the default behavior for a spawned simulation object is to choose a sink point, move to the sink point, and be removed from the scenario. However, you can introduce more complex behaviors for spawned simulation objects by writing a custom plan for a spawn pattern. The custom plan enables the simulation objects to engage in a complex set of behaviors, but you still have the benefit of automatic generation. An example of using a custom plan would be to generate a steady stream of jets taxiing to a runway and taking off from an airport.

Custom plans can include all of the tasks, sets, conditions, and global commands that a regular individual plan has. The plan is treated as an individual plan and applied to each simulation object as it is created. When you write a custom plan, simulation objects do not move to sink points. They remain in the scenario unless their plan removes them. You can delete simulation objects without needing to specify the specific simulation object with the Delete Self global command.

To enable IFF (Identification, Friend or Foe) in aircraft generated by a spawn point, write a custom plan that includes a Set to turn on IFF. Note, however, that in spawn points IFF does not include unique IFF identification codes or realistic flight IDs. For more on IFF, see "18.8.4 Creating a Global Plan to Generate Air Traffic" on page 464.

### 18.4.4 Default Spawn Patterns and Scenario-Specific Patterns

The VR-Forces includes default spawn patterns for civilian vehicles and civilian lifeforms. When you create a scenario, these patterns are added to the scenario. When you save a scenario, the spawn patterns get saved with the scenario in the scenario extras file (*.xtr*). (This includes the default spawn patterns if you do not edit them, the edited versions if you have edited them, and any new spawn patterns you have created.) They are now scenario-specific. The next time you load the scenario, it uses the spawn patterns in the scenario extras file, not the default spawn patterns.

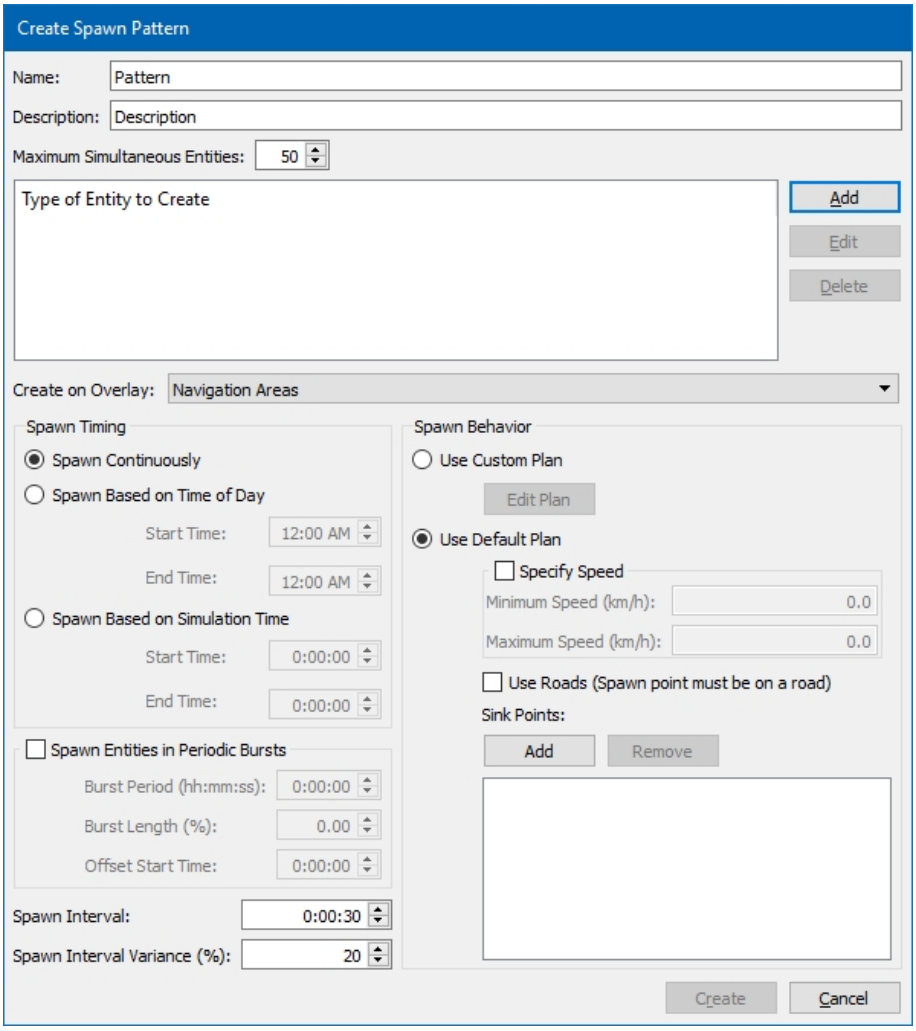
If you want to have additional default spawn patterns for your scenarios, you can add entries to *./appData/settings/vrfSim/defaultSpawnTemplates.mtl*. Copy one of the patterns in the file, then change the name and parameter values to suit your needs. Or, create a spawn pattern in a scenario and copy it from the *.xtr* file to *defaultSpawnTemplates.mtl*.

## 18.5. Creating a Spawn Pattern

➤ **To create a spawn pattern:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Spawn Pattern Manager**. The Spawn Pattern Manager opens (Figure 180 on page 448).
2. Click New Pattern. The Create Spawn Pattern dialog box opens (Figure 185).

**Figure 185. Create Spawn Pattern dialog box**




3. In the Name box, type a name for the spawn pattern. This name is used for the label for spawn points and sink points created from this pattern. This is a required field.
4. In the Description box, type a description of the pattern. This description is listed in the Spawn Pattern Manager to help identify the purpose of the pattern. This is a required field.
5. Specify the maximum number of simulation objects that can be spawned from a spawn point using this pattern and exist in the scenario at the same time. When the maximum is reached for a given spawn point, no more simulation objects are spawned from that point until a simulation object that was spawned from that point is removed from the scenario.

   For example, if the maximum number of simultaneous simulation objects for a spawn pattern is 200 and you have 10 spawn points of that type, you could have as many as 2000 spawned simulation objects. None of the spawn points will spawn more than 200 simulation objects at one time.

---

**!** A high maximum number of simultaneous simulation objects along with a small spawn interval can quickly generate tens to hundreds of simulation objects. This may affect performance.

---

6. Specify the simulation object types to create:
   a. Click the Add button. The Entity Type dialog box opens.
   b. Optionally, filter the simulation object list. (For information about how to filter an objects list using tags, please see "14.2.3 Filtering Object Creation Palettes" on page 370.)
   c. Select the simulation object type that you want to add. The simulation object is added to the Type of Entity to Create list.
   d. Add additional simulation object types as desired.

---

**i** The Entity Type dialog box lets you specify all types of simulation objects, cultural features, and control objects, some of which do not necessarily make any sense to spawn. It is up to you to select types of simulation objects that make sense.

---

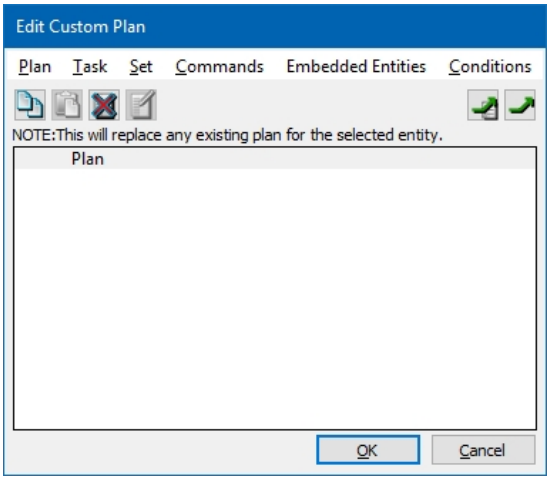
7. In the Create on Overlay list, select the overlay on which you want spawned simulation objects to be created.
8. Choose an option in the Spawn Timing group box, as follows:
   — Spawn Continuously. Entities are spawned throughout the simulation.
   — Spawn Based on Time of Day. Specify the starting time of day and ending time of day during which you want simulation objects to be spawned.
   — Spawn Based on Simulation Time. Specify the starting simulation time and ending simulation time during which you want simulation objects to be spawned.
9. Optionally, select Spawn Entities in Periodic Bursts. (For an explanation of periodic bursts, please see "18.4.2 Spawning Entities in Bursts" on page 451.) If selected, configure as follows:
   — Burst Period. The time period for each burst.
   — Burst Length. The length of time, as a percentage of the burst period, during which simulation objects are spawned.
   — Offset Start Time. An offset from the start of the burst period to start spawning simulation objects.
10. Specify the spawn interval. This specifies the amount of time between each spawn event, modified by the spawn interval variance.
11. Specify the spawn interval variance as a percentage of the spawn interval.

12. In the Spawn Behavior group box, select a behavior option as follows:

    a. To use Custom Plan:
    Click Edit Plan. The Edit Custom Plan dialog box opens.

    b. Write a plan that each simulation object created from this spawn pattern will use. Unless you want the simulation objects to remain in the scenario permanently, end the plan with a Delete Self command. (For details about how to write plans, please see "Chapter 37. Writing Plans" on page 873.)

**Figure 186. Edit Custom Plan dialog box**




    a. To use a Default Plan:
    Optionally, select the Specify Speed check box and specify the minimum and maximum speeds for spawned simulation objects. If you do not select this option, spawned simulation objects move at the default ordered speed in their OPD file. If you select it, they move at randomly chosen speeds between the minimum and maximum values. This option introduces some variance in behavior. Although the GUI allows you to set any maximum speed, simulation objects will not move faster than the maximum speed in the OPD file.

    b. To have a simulation object move on roads, select the Use Roads check box. If this option is cleared, simulation objects move directly towards sink points without regard to vector road networks.

---

! Use Roads is valid only for ground vehicles. Do not select this option for any other simulation object type.

If Use Roads is selected, spawn points must be within 10 meters of the road. If a spawn point is farther away, the simulation objects are removed from the scenario as soon as they are created.

If a sink point is more than 10 meters from a road, simulation objects that are moving towards that sink point move to the point on the road that is closest to it and are then removed from the scenario.

---

c. Optionally, use the Add button to edit the Sink Points list. A new spawn pattern will not have any sink points listed because until you create the spawn pattern, you cannot create any sink points for that pattern. Entities will automatically use sink points that match the spawn pattern, so after you create them, you do not have to add them to the list. However, they can also move to waypoints. If you want spawned simulation objects to move to waypoints, you must add them to the list.

13. Click Create.

### 18.5.1 Copying a Spawn Pattern

If you want to create a new spawn pattern that will be similar to an existing spawn pattern, you can copy the existing spawn pattern to a new name.

➤ **To copy a spawn pattern:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Spawn Pattern Manager**. The Spawn Pattern Manager opens (Figure 180 on page 448).
2. Select the spawn pattern that you want to copy.
3. Click Copy Pattern. The Create Spawn Pattern dialog box opens. It has a default name based on the original pattern name.
4. Edit the spawn pattern. The meaning of each option is described in "18.5. Creating a Spawn Pattern" on page 453.
5. Click Create.

## 18.6. Editing a Spawn Pattern

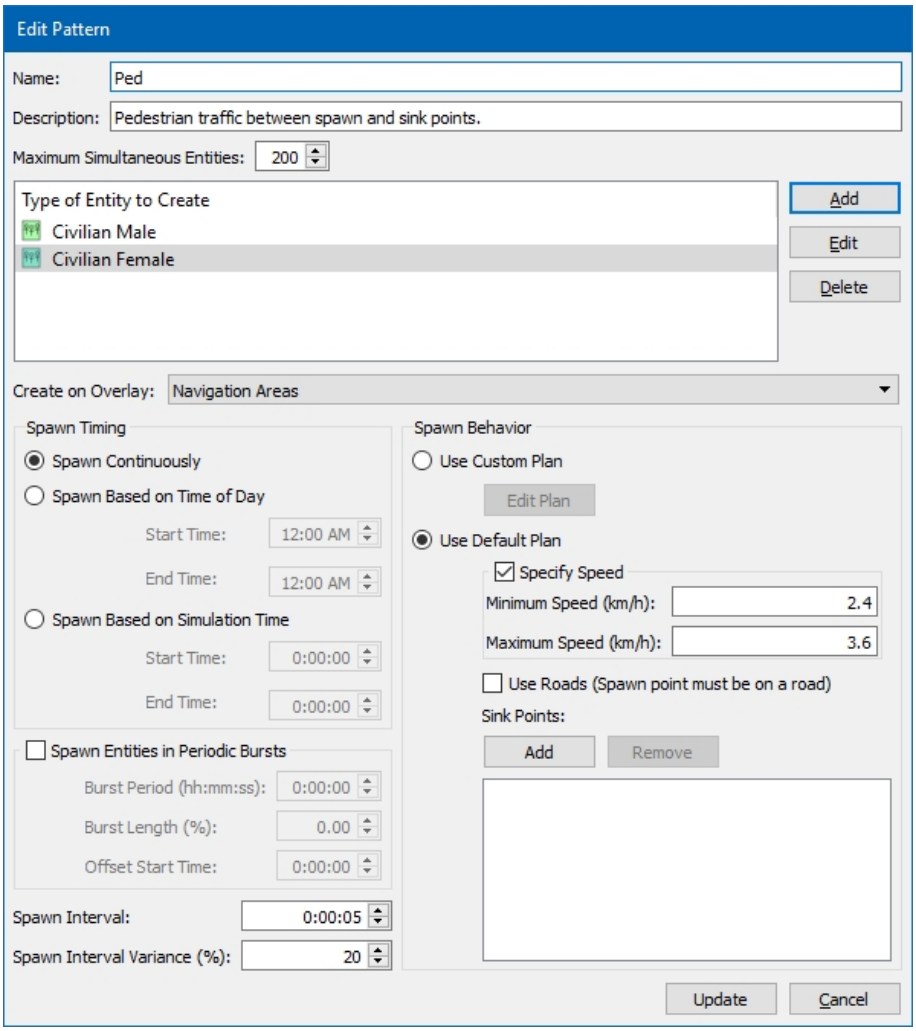
You can change any of the parameters of a spawn pattern. The changes do not affect any simulation object that has already been spawned.

➤ **To edit a spawn pattern:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Spawn Pattern Manager**. The Spawn Pattern Manager opens (Figure 180 on page 448).
2. Select the pattern that you want to edit.

3. Click Edit Pattern. The Edit Spawn Pattern dialog box opens (Figure 187).

**Figure 187. Edit Spawn Pattern dialog box**




4. Change any value as desired. The meaning of each option is described in "18.5. Creating a Spawn Pattern" on page 453.
5. Click Update.

## 18.7. Deleting a Spawn Pattern

If you delete a spawn pattern, all spawn points of that type get deleted. Sink points do not get deleted. The spawn and sink points of this type are removed from the Create menu and Tactical Graphics Palette. If the scenario is running, any simulation objects that were spawned from these points continue executing their plans.

➤ **To delete a spawn pattern:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Spawn Pattern Manager**. The Spawn Pattern Manager opens (Figure 180 on page 448).

2. Select the spawn pattern that you want to delete.
3. Click Delete Pattern. You are prompted to confirm the deletion.
4. Click Yes.

## 18.8. Generating Air Traffic

You can generate air traffic:

- Using spawn points
- Using an air traffic area
- Using a global plan with a Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task

For help deciding how to create air traffic, see "18.8.1 Choosing an Air Traffic Generation Method" below.

### 18.8.1 Choosing an Air Traffic Generation Method

To decide how to generate air traffic, review these points and identify the method that is best for you:

- Spawn points are generally easier to set up but do not scale as well as an air traffic area or a global plan with a Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task.
- Spawn patterns along with custom plans give you extensive control over the types of aircraft generated by spawn points, when and how quickly they are generated, and how they behave. For details, see "18.5. Creating a Spawn Pattern" on page 453.
- If you want to model air traffic in a large area with many origins and destinations, use an air traffic area or a global plan—it will be easier to set up than a network of spawn and sink points.
- If you want to use X-plane-format flight plans (*.fms* files), use an air traffic area or a global plan. (X-plane is a third-party flight simulator.) Conversely, if you are unable to create or obtain suitable X-plane-format flight plans or use the sample flight plans provided in the *./data/flightPlans* directory, use spawn points.
- If you do not want to rely on procedural airports, use spawn points. Air traffic areas and global plans require terrains with procedural airports to generate flights. (The procedural airports need not be within the air traffic area or the area specified in the Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task as long as there are flight plans that pass through it.)

  The ProceduralEarth (online) terrain has procedural airports; to see them, select the views in the Observer Views list that include “(Airport)”. In the ProceduralEarth (online) database, procedural airports are provided by the aerodromes model layer. For information on composing terrains, see Section 1.1, *“Creating a Composed Terrain”*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

- If you want your flights to have realistic flight IDs (similar to FlightAware's ident codes), use an air traffic area or a global plan.
- If you want your aircraft to take off and land realistically (using VR-Forces' fixed wing take-off and land tasks), use an air traffic area or a global plan.

Once you make your decision, set up the air traffic generator you selected:

- Spawn points: see "18.2. Creating Spawn Points" on page 447, and "18.3. Creating Sink Points" on page 448
- Air traffic area or global plan: see "18.8.2 Preparing to Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans" below

## 18.8.2 Preparing to Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans

VR-Forces can generate air traffic along routes created using X-Plane-format flight plans. Read this section and follow the steps here before you set up either an air traffic area or a global plan that generates air traffic from flight plans.

To generate flights, an air traffic area or a global plan must:

- Occupy a terrain that contains procedural airports. The procedural airports need not be inside the air traffic area or the area covered by the global plan's Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task. See "Checking for Procedural Airports" on the facing page.
- Have access to flight plans:
  - That are in X-plane format. X-plane flight plans are text files that you can read and edit. See "Organizing Flight Plans" on the facing page.
  - That include at least four points each: a departure airport (the first point), an arrival airport (the last point), and at least two points between the airports. Flight plans with fewer than four points are ignored.
  - Whose routes overlap the air traffic area or the area covered by the global plan's Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task.

### Avoiding Redundant Traffic

In a scenario, create no more than one air traffic area *or* one global plan with a task that generates air traffic. Because air traffic areas and global plans both generate air traffic from the flight plans in your *./data/flightPlans* directory, including more than one in a simulation is likely to result in redundant traffic. In addition to seeing more flights than expected, you might see collisions, screen graphics that are hard to read, and reduced performance.

It is safest to avoid combining air traffic generation methods. However, if you take care to avoid redundant routes, you can use spawn points and sink points to flesh out traffic coverage provided by an air traffic area or a global plan. If you do that, be aware that spawn-and-sink flights have a different style of flight ID from flight-plan-based flights and do not give you the option to enable IFF.

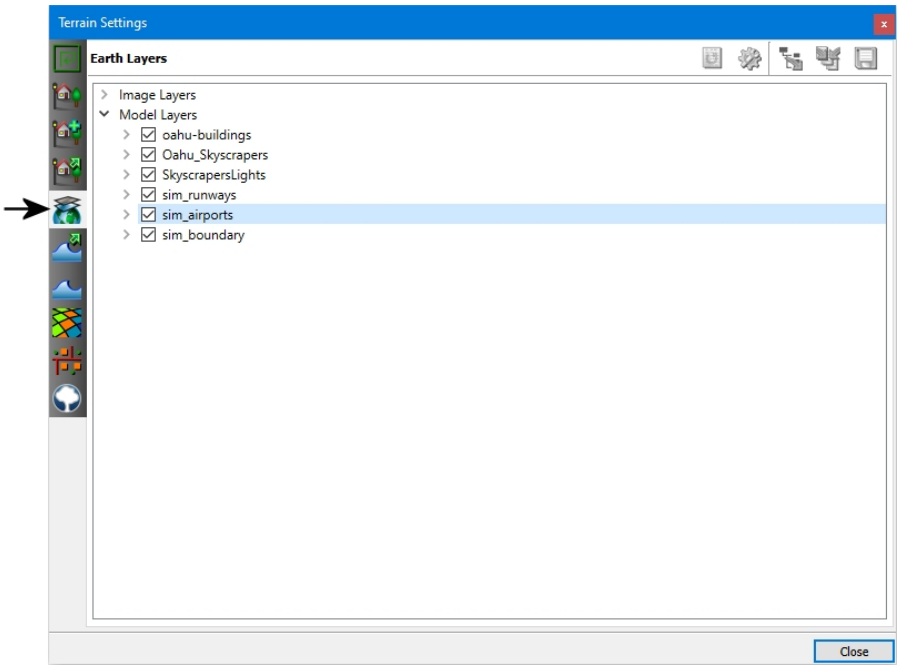
### Checking for Procedural Airports

Air traffic areas and global plans with Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans tasks both depend on procedural airports.

➤ **To determine whether a terrain includes procedural airports:**

1. Start VR-Forces and load a terrain or scenario.
2. Choose **Settings > Terrain**.
3. In Terrain Settings, select the Earth Layers page (Figure 188).

**Figure 188. Checking a terrain for sim-airports and sim-runways.**




4. Expand Model Layers. If you see sim-airports and sim-runways, this terrain has procedural airports that indicate the presence of procedural airport information, which supports air traffic generation.

### Organizing Flight Plans

When you install VR-Forces, the flight plan directory (*./data/flightPlans*) contains a number of flight plans for routes in the U.S. and between the U.S. and Europe. You can use those flight plans, edit them, replace them with your own flight plans, or use a mixture of old and new flight plans.

When you run a scenario that includes an air traffic area or a global plan with a Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task, VR-Forces:

- Checks for flight plans that overlap the area associated with the task or the air traffic area, and
- Generates flights for any flight plans that overlap the area or air traffic area in question.

If the flight plan directory includes no flight plans overlapping the air traffic area or the area associated with the Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task, VR-Forces sends an error message to the air traffic area's or global plan's Information dialog box.

To specify how often VR-Forces generates aircraft on each route defined in your flight plan directory, you assign weights to the plans using a list file, *./data/flightPlans/flightPlanList.txt*.

➤ **To set up your flight plans:**

1. Add flight plan files in X-plane *.fms* format to the *./data/flightPlans* directory. Alternatively, you can use, copy, or edit the sample files provided in the directory.
2. Edit the flight plan list file, *./data/flightPlans/flightPlanList.txt*, to add any new flight plan files and assign weights to the flight plans in the directory. Give higher numbers to the flight plans you want to use most often and lower numbers to the ones you want to use less often. To prevent a flight plan from generating flights, assign it a weight of 0.

   This is a sample flight plan list file. It directs VR-Forces to generate flights between several pairs of cities in both directions: flights between Boston (KBOS) and New York (KJFK) most often, flights between Boston and Baltimore/Washington (KBWI) less often, flights between Boston and Orlando (KMCO) at half the rate it generates Boston/New York flights, and no flights between Boston and Los Angeles (KLAX).

```
KBOS-KJFK.fms 110
KBOS-KBWI.fms 70
KBOS-KMCO.fms 55
KBOS-KLAX.fms 0
KJFK-KBOS.fms 110
KBWI-KBOS.fms 70
KMCO-KBOS.fms 55
KLAX-KBOS.fms 0
```

Next, create the air traffic area or global plan that will generate your air traffic:

- Air traffic area: see "18.8.3 Creating an Air Traffic Area" below
- Global plan: see "18.8.4 Creating a Global Plan to Generate Air Traffic" on page 464

## 18.8.3 Creating an Air Traffic Area

When you run a scenario that includes an air traffic area, VR-Forces uses stored flight plans to generate air traffic in your simulation. An air traffic area, which is a tactical graphic, by default generates one aircraft per minute, and no more than one aircraft every five minutes from a single airport, up to a maximum of 100 aircraft in the area at any time.

If you need to change the maximum number of aircraft in an air traffic area, to enable IFF for air traffic areas, or to create aircraft en route in air traffic areas, edit the air traffic area sysdef file, *data/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/other/air-traffic-generator.sysdef*. Locate this section:

```
(script-variables
   (create-air-variables
      (script-id "auto_start_aircraft_generation")
      (variables
         (DtRwInt max-aircraft $max-aircraft)
         (DtRwBoolean use-iff $use-iff)
         (DtRwBoolean create-en-route $create-en-route)
      )
   )
)
```

- To change the maximum number of aircraft created in the air traffic area, for example to 500, change *(DtRwInt max-aircraft $max-aircraft)* to *(DtRwInt max-aircraft 500)*.
- To enable IFF in air traffic areas, change *(DtRwBoolean use-iff $use-iff)* to *(DtRwBoolean use-iff true)*.
- To enable air traffic areas to create aircraft en route, change *(DtRwBoolean create-en-route $create-en-route)* to *(DtRwBoolean create-en-route true)*.

If you need to change the air traffic area aircraft generation rate and you are comfortable editing LUA scripts, you can edit the script at *data/SimulationModelSets/EntityLevel/scripts/generate_air_traffic.lua*.

Before creating an air traffic area, complete the procedures in "18.8.2 Preparing to Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans" on page 460.

➤ **To create an air traffic area:**

1. Click the Tactical Graphics tab and select Air Traffic Area from the list. A Create Air Traffic Area tab appears below the Tactical Graphics tab on the right side of the screen.
2. Click the Create Air Traffic Area tab.
3. Optionally, enter a label for the new area in the dialog box.
4. Optionally, choose an overlay or leave it at the default, Tactical Graphics.
5. Use the mouse to draw a polygon around the new air traffic area. Click to place a vertex; double-click to place the last vertex and stop drawing.
6. Start the scenario (**Simulation > Run Scenario**) to see air traffic crossing the air traffic area. Each aircraft generated by the air traffic area appears in the Objects List.

## 18.8.4 Creating a Global Plan to Generate Air Traffic

When you run a scenario that includes a global plan with a Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task, VR-Forces uses stored flight plans to generate air traffic in your simulation.

Before creating an air traffic area, complete the procedures in "18.8.2 Preparing to Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans" on page 460.

### IFF

IFF (Identification, Friend or Foe) is a technology air traffic controllers use to identify aircraft. Air traffic created by a global plan's Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task uses IFF mode A, mode C, and mode S. IFF is off by default.

When IFF is enabled, each plane created by the Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task has a persistent IFF code—the code does not change during a flight. IFF flights generate IFF status messages in the simulation.

➤ **To create a global plan with a Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task:**

1. Create the area in which your global plan will generate flights:
   a. Click the Tactical Graphics tab and select Area from the list. A Create Area tab appears below the Tactical Graphics tab on the right side of the screen.

      Be sure to create an area, not an air traffic area.

   b. Click the Create Area Tab.
   c. Optionally, enter a label for the new area in the dialog box.
   d. Use the mouse to draw a polygon around the new area. Click to place a vertex; double-click to place the last vertex and stop drawing.
2. Choose **Simulation > Global Plans**.
3. Click New.
4. Optionally, enter a name for your global plan and select a server and port.
5. Click OK.
6. Choose **Task > Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans**. The Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans dialog box opens.
7. Under Area, choose Areas from the Filter list.
8. Select the area you created earlier. Its name appears in the Name field.
9. In the Maximum Aircraft field, enter the maximum number of aircraft you want to have flying at one time. (The limit is 5000.)
10. To create air traffic along the routes when the task starts rather than have all the planes start at the beginning of their routes, select the Create En Route check box. Clear the box if you want planes to always appear at their airports of

origin.

11. Optionally, select the Use IFF check box to enable IFF mode A, mode C, and mode S on all aircraft generated by this task.
12. Optionally, select the Quick Launch check box if you want to be able to launch this plan manually. If you do not set quick launch, the global plan launches automatically when you start the scenario. For more on quick launch, see "37.6. Creating Global Plans" on page 896 and "37.6.1 Controlling When Global Plans Run (Quick Launch)" on page 898.
13. Click OK.

# 19. Crowds and Multiple Simulation Objects

This chapter explains how to create many simulation objects at one time, how to create and task pedestrian crowds, and how to create animal herds.


19.1. Creating Crowds, Herds, and Multiple Simulation Objects ..... 468
19.2. Crowd and Herd Units ..... 468
19.2.1 Creating Crowd Units ..... 468
19.2.2 Creating Herd Units ..... 469
19.3. Crowd and Herd Areas ..... 470
19.3.1 Creating Crowds Using a Pedestrian Area ..... 470
19.3.2 Creating Animal Herds Using Areas ..... 470
19.3.3 Adding Entities to a Pedestrian or Herd Area ..... 471
19.4. Crowd Tasks ..... 471
19.5. Creating Multiple Simulation Objects ..... 472
19.5.1 Adding an Area for Multiple Simulation Object Creation ..... 475
19.5.2 Specifying the Simulation Objects to Create ..... 475
19.6. Pedestrian-Oriented Tactical Graphics ..... 476
19.6.1 Using Civilian Visit Points ..... 476

# 19.1. Creating Crowds, Herds, and Multiple Simulation Objects

VR-Forces can quickly create multiple simulation objects within an area. This allows you to create crowds, traffic, or other multi-object groups without having to place each simulation object by hand. You can use any of the following methods to create multiple objects:

- Crowd unit. Create a crowd unit from the Simulation Objects Palette or aggregate individual humans into a crowd unit. Assign crowd-specific tasks to the crowd.
- Herd units. Create a herd unit of cows, goats, or sheep from the Simulation Objects Palette. They graze and wander around the central point where you placed the unit.
- Pedestrian area. A pedestrian area is populated by a random number of male and female civilians. They execute a wander task.
- Herd areas. An area is populated by a random number of cows, goats, or sheep. The herd animals graze and wander around the area.
- Multiple simulation objects. You can specify the number of simulation objects to create, the type of objects to create, and you can assign tasks and set data requests to them.

# 19.2. Crowd and Herd Units

You can create a crowd or herd by placing a unit of the type you need. VR-Forces then creates entities of the particular type.

Based on the entity file, the entities may have random appearances. You cannot control the entities' appearances when you create the unit, but you can set the available appearances for the entity in the Simulation Object Editor. For more information, please see"63.1.10 Editing a Lifeform's Visual Model and Animation" on page 1303.

## 19.2.1 Creating Crowd Units

VR-Forces has six preconfigured crowd units: small, medium, and large crowds of western or middle eastern civilians. They create a unit of civilian males and females. You can also create crowd units by aggregating individual human entities. However, some of the animations used in crowd tasks are specific to the civilian characters used in the supplied units.

When you place a crowd, if the terrain has pedestrian paths or other pedestrian-specific locations, the members of the crowd are placed in these locations.

Crowd members are created within a configurable radius of the location you specify, with a configurable density. By default, crowds are created using the parameters in Table 21. You can change the values in the Simulation Object Editor.

**Table 21. Crowd units**

| Unit | Radius (m) | Density | Approximate Size* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Civilian Crowd (Small) | 15 | 2 | 50 |
| Civilian Crowd (Medium) | 30 | 2 | 100 |
| Civilian Crowd (Large) | 50 | 2 | 175 |
| Civilian Mideast Crowd (Small) | 15 | 2 | 50 |
| Civilian Mideast Crowd (Medium) | 30 | 2 | 100 |
| Civilian Mideast Crowd (Large) | 50 | 2 | 175 |
| *If there are not enough valid locations to place entities, the size of the unit may be smaller than the theoretical maximum. | | | |

Crowd units are supported only in entity-level scenarios.

---

! You can create preconfigured crowds only in navigation areas and crowd tasks can be executed only in navigation areas. Although you can aggregate individual entities into a crowd outside of a navigation area, they will not be able to execute any crowd tasks.

---

➤ **To create a crowd:**

1. Open the Simulation Objects Palette.
2. Clear any filters (click the All top level tag).
3. Optionally, click the Civilian tag and then click the Crowd tag.
4. Select the crowd unit you want.
5. Click on the terrain to place the unit.

## 19.2.2 Creating Herd Units

VR-Forces has three preconfigured herd units: cows, goats, and sheep. Each unit generates thirty-six animals that graze and wander within an approximate 20-meter radius around the point where you placed the unit. You can also create herd units by aggregating individual animals, but they will not wander automatically.

➤ **To create a herd:**

1. Open the Simulation Objects Palette.
2. Clear any filters (click the All top level tag).

3. Optionally, click the Animal tag and then click the Crowd tag.
4. Select the herd unit you want.

# 19.3. Crowd and Herd Areas

You can draw areas to create crowds of people or herds of animals. VR-Forces then creates entities of the particular type.

Based on the entity file, the entities may have random appearances. You cannot control the entities' appearances when you create the area, but you can set the available appearances for the entity in the Simulation Object Editor. For more information, please see "63.1.10 Editing a Lifeform's Visual Model and Animation" on page 1303.

## 19.3.1 Creating Crowds Using a Pedestrian Area

When you create a pedestrian area, VR-Forces populates it with a random number of male and female civilian entities. They are created as a ground unit. They are all assigned a wander task. You cannot specify the number of entities to create or the mix of entities to create when you create the area.

---

! If you delete a pedestrian area, all of the entities that were created for it are also deleted.

You can create pedestrian areas only in navigation areas.

---

➤ **To create a crowd using a pedestrian area:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Optionally, filter the list by selecting the Simulation Effect Object button ( ).
3. Select Pedestrian Area.
4. Draw an area on the terrain as you would any other areal tactical graphic. When the area is completed, VR-Forces creates entities to populate the area.

## 19.3.2 Creating Animal Herds Using Areas

You can create herds of cows, goats, or sheep using the appropriate area type. Once you create the area, VR-Forces populates it with a random number of that type of animal and they will graze and wander within the area. You cannot specify the number of animals to create at first.

➤ **To create a herd using an area.**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Optionally, filter the list by selecting the Simulation Effect Object button ( ).

3. Select the area for the type of herd you want to create: Cow, Goat, or Sheep Area.
4. Draw an area on the terrain as you would any other areal tactical graphic. When the area is completed, VR-Forces creates animals of the selected type to populate the area.

### 19.3.3 Adding Entities to a Pedestrian or Herd Area

After you create a  pedestrian or herd area, you can automatically add additional entities to the area.

➤ **To automatically add entities to a pedestrian area:**

1. Select the area.
2. Choose **Task > Create Pedestrians**. The Create Pedestrians dialog box opens.
3. Specify the number of pedestrians to create.
4. Select a placement option.
5. Click OK. The pedestrians are added to the area.

## 19.4. Crowd Tasks

Crowds can execute some of the tasks available to other ground units. Crowds created as a unit or in an area can perform these tasks. They have the following movement tasks:

- Crowd along a line
- Crowd around a location
- Crowd around an object
- Crowd around waypoints
- Gather in front of an entity
- Wander
- Flee from entities
- Protest along a line
- Protest around a location
- Riot
- Disperse crowd

---

When a crowd gathers around a location or object, VR-Forces calculates a target destination for each member of the crowd and each member of the crowd tries to move to that destination. If you send two or more crowds to the same location or object, these target destinations may overlap. Individual entities may give up on their movement tasks or may end up very close to members of the other crowd.

---

For details about each task, please see its section in "Chapter 28. Human and Crowd Tasks" on page 635.

## 19.5. Creating Multiple Simulation Objects

You can add multiple simulation objects to a scenario in one operation and assign them a common task. The simulation objects are added to the scenario as members of a selection group. (For information about selection groups, please see "15.3. Using Selection Groups" on page 402.) Creation of multiple simulation objects has the following constraints:

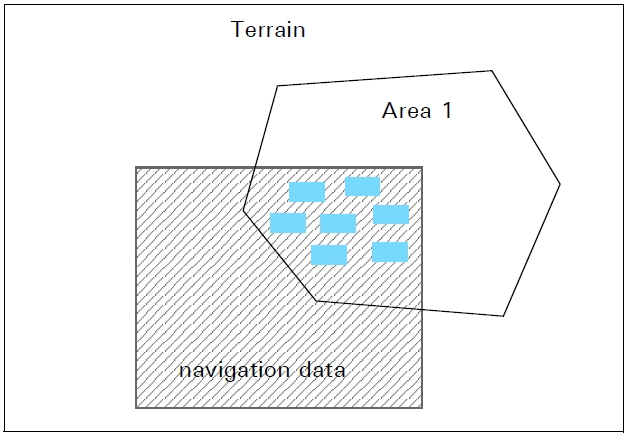
- The simulation objects are added within a specified area. If an appropriate area does not already exist, you can create one as part of the simulation object creation process.
- If the area in which you want to place simulation objects overlaps navigation data, the simulation objects are placed only in the portion of the area that has navigation data, as illustrated in Figure 189.
- If the area you choose for placing simulation objects is too small to contain the number of simulation objects that you specify, some simulation objects might not be created.

When you create multiple simulation objects, VR-Forces automatically puts them in a selection group named group_*number*, where *number* starts at 0 and is incremented for each group created.

In Figure 189, Area 1 overlaps the navigation data. If, for example, you try to place 25 entities in this area, they are placed only in the portion of Area 1 that overlaps navigation data, and only the number of simulation objects that fit in this subset of Area 1 are created.

- If VR-Forces cannot create the number of simulation objects specified (due to one of the reasons mentioned in this section), there is no notification. It is your responsibility to check to see how many simulation objects were created.
- Creating multiple simulation objects as described in this section is not the same thing as pattern of life traffic generation or creating simulation object groups. It is just a way to create a lot of simulation objects at one time and give them a task. And unlike creating crowds, which only contain civilians, you can create any type of simulation object.

**Figure 189. Placement of multiple simulation objects**



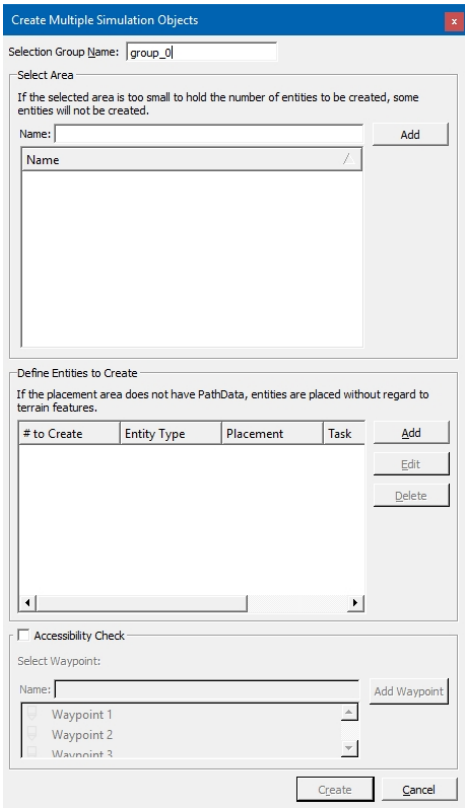

When you create multiple simulation objects, you can ask VR-Forces to run an accessibility check before it creates each simulation object. VR-Forces tries to ensure that the simulation object being created can reach a specified waypoint from a candidate location in the specified area. This check is primarily designed to avoid putting simulation objects on top of buildings that are unreachable and would not allow the simulation object to leave the building. It works as follows:

- If the terrain does not have navigation data, the accessibility check is disregarded and the simulation objects get created.
- If the terrain has navigation data and if the candidate location cannot use navigation data to reach the waypoint, VR-Forces does not create the simulation object at that location. It tries to find another location at which to place the simulation object. If after multiple attempts to place a simulation object the accessibility check still fails, VR-Forces proceeds as follows:
  - If this is the first simulation object that VR-Forces has tried to create, the accessibility check is disregarded and VR-Forces creates the simulation objects (within the constraints previously mentioned).
  - If the accessibility check fails for any simulation object after the first simulation object was created, VR-Forces assumes there is no more space in which to create simulation objects and stops trying to create them.

➤ **To add multiple simulation objects to a scenario:**

1. Choose **Create > Multiple Simulation Objects**. The Create Multiple Simulation Objects dialog box opens (Figure 190).

**Figure 190. Create Multiple Simulation Objects dialog box**




2. Optionally, change the name of the selection group.
3. In the Select Area group box, type the name of the area in which you want to create the simulation objects, or select the area from the list or on the map. If the area in which you want to create the simulation objects does not exist, add a new area as described in "19.5.1 Adding an Area for Multiple Simulation Object Creation" on the facing page.
4. In the Define Entities To Create group box, add the simulation objects that you want to create. For details about this part of the procedure, please see "19.5.2 Specifying the Simulation Objects to Create" on the facing page.
5. Optionally, edit or remove any of the entity sets listed in the Define Entities To Create list.
6. Optionally, select the Accessibility Check check box. If you select this check box, select a waypoint. You can create a waypoint from this dialog box if necessary.
7. Click Create. The entities are created in the specified area.

### 19.5.1 Adding an Area for Multiple Simulation Object Creation

➤ **To add an area from the Create Multiple Entities dialog box:**

1. In the Select Area group box, click Add. A Create Area tab is added to the window.
2. Create an area following the standard VR-Forces procedure for creating areas. For details, please see "14.3. Placing Objects" on page 375.

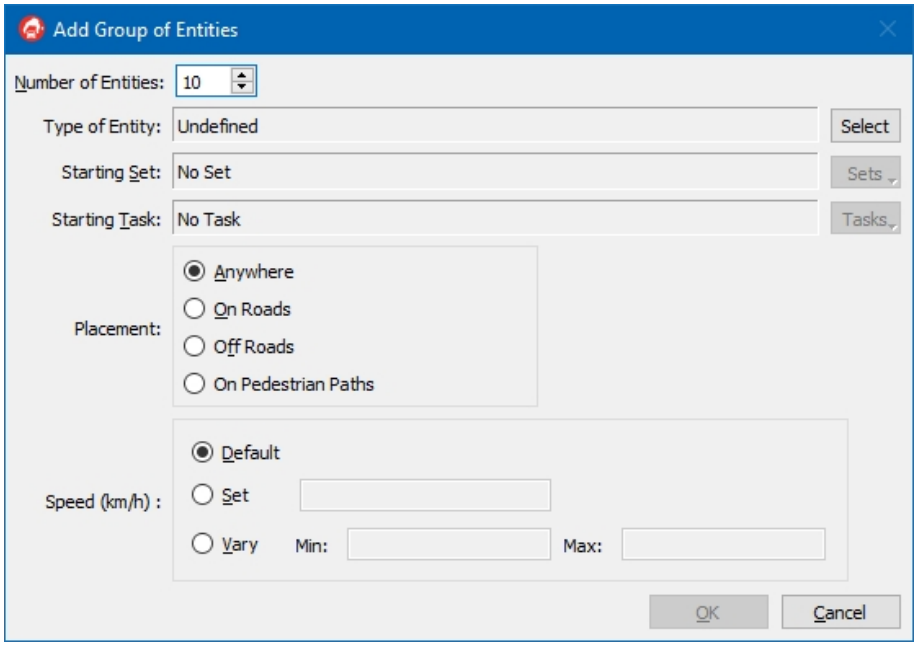
### 19.5.2 Specifying the Simulation Objects to Create

When you add multiple simulation objects to a scenario, you can specify any of the supported object types and assign a common task or set data request to a specific set of simulation objects.

➤ **To specify the simulation objects to add in the Create Multiple Entities dialog box:**

1. In the Define Entities to Create group box, click Add. The Add Group of Entities dialog box opens (Figure 191).

**Figure 191. Add Group of Entities dialog box**




2. In the Number of Entities box, specify the number of simulation objects you want to add for this set.
3. Click the Select button that is next to the Type of Entity text box. The Entity Type dialog box opens. The list of object types available is the same list of simulation objects provided on the Simulation Objects Palette.
4. Select the object type you want to add. The dialog box closes and the object type is listed in the Type of Entity box.

5. Optionally, specify a starting set data request by clicking the Sets button and selecting a set data request. The list is not context sensitive. You must ensure that the selected set data request is appropriate to the object type that you are adding.
6. Optionally, specify a starting task by clicking the Tasks button and selecting a task. The list is not context sensitive. You must ensure that the selected task is appropriate to the object type that you are adding.
7. Optionally, select an option in the Placement group box. VR-Forces will try to place the simulation objects in the desired location.
8. Optionally, set a speed and variance range.
9. Click OK. The object set is added to the list in the Define Entities To Create group box (Figure 190 on page 474).
10. Optionally, add additional object sets.

## 19.6. Pedestrian-Oriented Tactical Graphics

VR-Forces has the following tactical graphics that are particular to pedestrians. These objects only work in navigation areas.

- Pedestrian path. When humans plan paths in navigation areas that have navigation data, if a pedestrian path is present that can take them to their destination, they will use it. You can think of a pedestrian path as a route that a human automatically chooses to follow instead of being told to follow it. Pedestrian paths are supported only for entity-level scenarios.
- Civilian visit points. Waypoints that attract the attention of civilians.
- Crosswalks. Crosswalks are similar to pedestrian paths. Pedestrians prefer them when path planning. The unique aspect of crosswalks is that if an entity is configured with a human crosswalk controller, it checks to see if it is safe to cross the street before proceeding. (Crosswalks are an experimental feature. Please contact support@mak.com if they do not work as you expect.)
- Pedestrian areas. Pedestrian areas automatically generate pedestrians when you create them. For details, please see "19.3.1 Creating Crowds Using a Pedestrian Area" on page 470 .

### 19.6.1 Using Civilian Visit Points

Civilian visit points are waypoints that attract the attention of civilian entities that are walking nearby. The civilians can be members of a crowd or individual entities. When a civilian comes within a configurable distance of a civilian visit point, it stops and faces the point a configurable percentage of the time. If it stops, it waits a few seconds and then continues its task.

This behavior is controlled by the Visit Interest Points reactive task. You can edit the parameters that control an entity's behavior in the Manage Reactive Tasks dialog box. For more information about reactive tasks, please see "25.3. Reactive Tasks" on page 552.

# 20. Creating and Using an Order of Battle

An Order of Battle is a description of the simulation objects and simulation object hierarchy that you can create in a scenario.


20.1. Introduction to the Order of Battle ..... 478
20.1.1 The Order of Battle Panel ..... 478
20.2. Creating an Order of Battle ..... 479
20.2.1 Adding Objects Directly to the Order of Battle ..... 479
20.2.2 Adding Existing Objects to the Order of Battle ..... 481
20.3. Creating Units in the Order of Battle Panel ..... 481
20.4. Instantiating Members of an Order of Battle in a Scenario ..... 481
20.4.1 The Order of Battle Palette ..... 482
20.5. Removing Objects from an Order of Battle ..... 482
20.6. Editing the Objects in an Order of Battle ..... 482
20.7. Changing the Order of Objects in an Order of Battle ..... 483
20.8. Exporting an Order of Battle ..... 483
20.9. Importing an Order of Battle ..... 483

# 20.1. Introduction to the Order of Battle

In the abstract, an Order of Battle (OOB) describes the hierarchical structure of the personnel and resources that are available to a military commander. The term can also be used to refer to the hierarchical structure of the personnel and resources deployed in a particular engagement.

VR-Forces implicitly supports the second sense of the term by listing all simulation objects in a scenario in the Objects List Panel. It also supports the abstract sense of the term by allowing you to construct an Order of Battle that represents a hierarchy of simulation objects that can be instantiated (created) in a scenario.

You create an Order of Battle in the context of a scenario. However, once you create an OOB, you can export it and then import it into other scenarios. This lets you quickly create new scenarios that use the same OOB for training or scenario development. You can configure VR-Forces so that users do not have access to the Simulation Objects Palette and can only add simulation objects to a scenario if they are in the OOB.

An Order of Battle can include any simulation object that you can create from the Simulation Objects Palette. However, unlike the Simulation Objects Palette in which each object is essentially a template for creating multiple instances of that object type, each member of an Order of Battle has its own unique ID (UUID). When you instantiate a member of the OOB, you only create that one instance of the object type.

In VR-Forces you can:

- Create an Order of Battle, which involves:
  - Adding members.
  - Removing members.
  - Changing the name or object type of members.
  - Changing the order of members.
  - Organizing members into units.
- Instantiate members of the OOB in a scenario.
- Import and export OOBs.

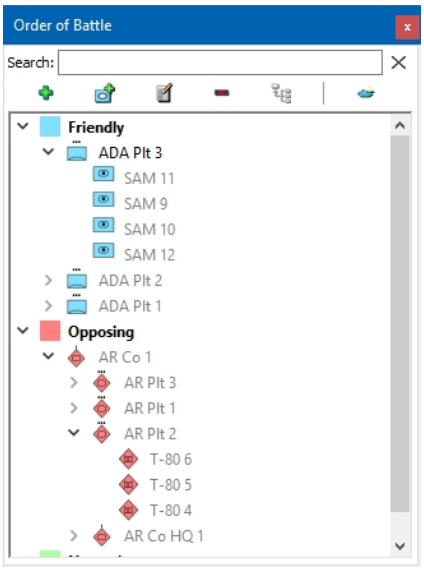
When you create an OOB, it gets saved with the scenario.

## 20.1.1 The Order of Battle Panel

You can view and manage the Order of Battle on the Order of Battle Panel (Figure 192). The Order of Battle Panel lists the members of the OOB, by force. Each object in the OOB list indicates its status in the scenario as follows:

- Gray text. A member of the OOB that is not instantiated in the scenario.
- Black text. A member of the OOB that is instantiated in the scenario.

**Figure 192. Order of Battle Panel**




➤ To open the Order of Battle Panel, choose **View > Order of Battle Panel**.

## 20.2. Creating an Order of Battle

You create an Order of Battle by adding members. You can add any simulation object that is available on the Simulation Objects Palette.

You can add objects to the OOB in either of the following ways:

- Add objects to the Order of Battle without adding them to the scenario.
- Add objects that exist in the scenario, but are not part of the OOB, to the OOB.

### 20.2.1 Adding Objects Directly to the Order of Battle

You can add a simulation object to the Order of Battle, without creating it in the scenario.

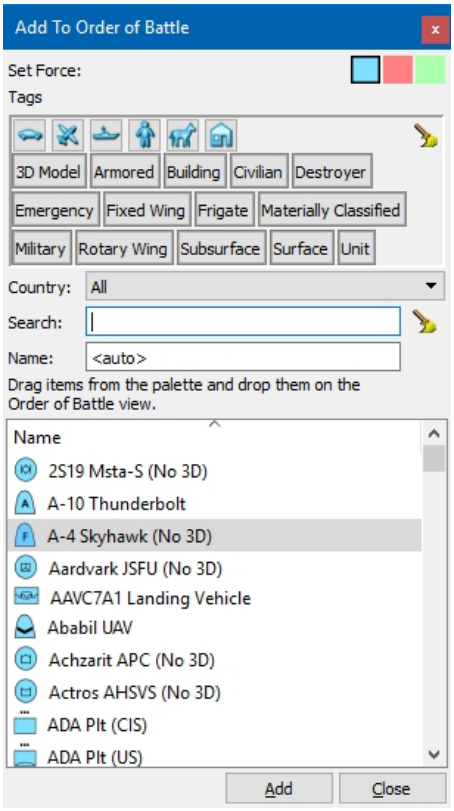
When using this method, if you want to have more than one instance of an object in the OOB, you must add a discrete member for each one. For example, if you want to have 10 HMMWVs in the OOB, you must add 10 HMMWVs, one at a time.

If you want to add many instances of the same simulation object to the Order of Battle, it may be quicker to create them in the scenario from the Simulation Objects Palette and then add them to the OOB.

➤ **To add simulation objects directly to an Order of Battle:**

1. Open the Order of Battle Panel.
2. Click the Add button (+). The Add to Order of Battle dialog box opens (Figure 193). It is similar to the Simulation Objects Palette, except that you can also specify a name for the object.

**Figure 193. Add to Order of Battle dialog box**




3. On the Set Force line, select the force to which you want to add this object.
4. Optionally, filter the list.
5. In the list of simulation objects, select the object you want to add to the OOB.
6. Optionally, specify a name for the object you want to add to the OOB.
7. In the Order of Battle Panel, select the force or unit under which you want to add the object. The following rules apply:
   - If you add to a force, it becomes a top level subordinate of the force.
   - If you add to a unit, it becomes a subordinate of that unit.
   - If you add it to an entity, it becomes a sibling of the entity. If the entity is part of a unit, the new member becomes part of the unit.
8. In the Add to Order of Battle dialog box, click Add.

---

You can quickly add objects to the OOB by dragging them from the Add to Order of Battle dialog box to the Order of Battle Panel. The same rules for adding members apply. Also, regardless of the force selected on the Set Force line, when you drag an object onto the Order of Battle Panel, it becomes part of the force you drag it to.

---

### 20.2.2 Adding Existing Objects to the Order of Battle

You can create objects from the Simulation Objects Palette and then add them to the OOB. You can also use this method to add objects from existing scenarios to an OOB. You can add objects individually and you can add all objects at once.

When you add an existing object to the OOB, it gets added to the same force and its place in the force hierarchy is preserved. If you add a member of a unit, the entire unit gets added to the OOB.

➤ **To add an existing object to the OOB:**

1. Select the objects that you want to add to the OOB.
2. Choose **Simulation > Order of Battle > Add to Order of Battle**.

➤ To add all objects in the scenario to the OOB, choose **Simulation > Order of Battle > Add All Simulation Objects to Order of Battle**.

## 20.3. Creating Units in the Order of Battle Panel

You can aggregate objects listed in the Order of Battle Panel into units. The process and criteria for creating units is the same as described in "23.1.1 Creating a Unit by Combining Existing Simulation Objects" on page 518.

To aggregate members of an Order of Battle into units:

1. Select the objects that you want to aggregate.
2. Choose **Objects > Unit > Aggregate As**, or click the Aggregate As button () on the Order of Battle Panel. The Aggregate As dialog box opens.
3. Select the unit type you want from the list.
4. Optionally, change the order of the unit members.
5. Click OK.

## 20.4. Instantiating Members of an Order of Battle in a Scenario

If an Order of Battle includes simulation objects that have not been instantiated (created) in the scenario, you can add them to a scenario. Since each member of the OOB represents a specific simulation object with its own unique ID (UUID), when you add a simulation object from the OOB, you only add that specific object. You cannot add multiple instances of the object type as you would from the Simulation Objects Palette.

➤ **To add a simulation object to a scenario from the Order of Battle:**

1. In the Order of Battle Panel, select the simulation object you want to add to the scenario. (You can only add objects that are not already in the scenario. That is, objects listed in gray text.)
2. Click the Add Object button ().

3. Click on the terrain where you want to place the object. The entry for the object in the Order of Battle Panel changes from gray to black.

### 20.4.1 The Order of Battle Palette

There may be cases where you want to set up a training exercise in which participants can only add simulation objects from the Order of Battle. VR-Forces has an Order of Battle Palette that contains the Order of Battle as listed in the Order of Battle Panel, but without any of the controls for adding, removing, or editing the OOB. This palette is hidden by default, but you can enable it from the View menu.

Using the window layout feature you could save a layout in which the Simulation Objects Palette is hidden and the Order of Battle Palette is visible. Taking things a step further, you could edit the GUI configuration file so that the Simulation Objects Palette and the Order of Battle Panel are not even available in the GUI. For information about saving window layouts, please see "77.2. Saving Window Layouts" on page 1547. For information about configuring the menu options in the GUI, please see "Chapter 78. Configuring Toolbars, Dialog Boxes, and Menus" on page 1559.

## 20.5. Removing Objects from an Order of Battle

You can remove objects from the OOB. When you remove an object from the OOB, if it is instantiated in the scenario, it stays in the scenario. If you delete an object from a scenario, if it is a member of the OOB, it is not removed from the OOB. The object's entry in the Order of Battle Panel changes from black to gray.

If you remove a unit, all its subordinates get removed. If you remove a member of a unit, the rest of the unit is not affected.

➤ **To remove an object from the Order of Battle:**

1. Select the object in the Order of Battle Panel or on the map.
2. Click the Delete button (−) on the Order of Battle Panel or press the **Delete** key.

## 20.6. Editing the Objects in an Order of Battle

You can edit the members of an Order of Battle as follows:

- If an object is created in the scenario, editing it opens up the standard Edit dialog box for a simulation object. For details, please see "14.10. Editing Simulation Objects" on page 386.
- If an object is not created in the scenario, you can change its name, object type, and force.

➤ **To edit a member of the Order of Battle:**

1. Select an object in the Order of Battle Panel.
2. Click the Edit Object button ( ).

   If the object has been created, a standard Edit dialog box opens.

   a. Make changes as desired.

   b. Click Update.

   If the object has not been created, the Edit Name / Object Type dialog box opens.

   a. To change the name, type a different name in the Name box.

   b. To change the object type, select a different object in the list.

   c. Click OK.

In either case, you can change a simulation object's name by clicking the name in the Order of Battle Panel to make it editable.

## 20.7. Changing the Order of Objects in an Order of Battle

You can reorganize the members of the OOB. This lets you populate the OOB in the most convenient manner and then organize it into the desired hierarchy. You can move members from units into other units, from units to the force level, and from the force level to units. You cannot change the order in which sibling objects or units are listed.

➤ To reorganize an object in the Order of Battle, in the Order of Battle Panel, drag the object to its new location.

## 20.8. Exporting an Order of Battle

You can export an Order of Battle so that you can import it into other scenarios.

➤ **To export an Order of Battle:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Order of Battle > Export Order of Battle**. The Export Order of Battle dialog box opens.
2. Type a name for the Order of Battle.
3. Click Save.

## 20.9. Importing an Order of Battle

You can import an Order of Battle into a scenario. When you import an OOB, you can merge it with the existing OOB, if any, or you can selectively import members of the OOB.

➤ **To import an Order of Battle:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Order of Battle > Import Order of Battle**. The Import Order of Battle dialog box opens.
2. Select the OOB you want to import.
3. Click Open. The Order of Battle Selector dialog box opens.
4. To import all members of the selected OOB, click Import All.

   To Import selected members of the OOB, drag them from the Order of Battle Selector to the Order of Battle Panel.
5. If necessary, close the Order of Battle Selector.

# IV. Modeling Units

VR-Forces has two, quite different, ways to model simulation objects – entity-level modeling and aggregate-level modeling. These modeling approaches affect how units are modeled.

The chapters in this section provide conceptual background about modeling units, how to create them, and how to display them.

# 21. Entity-Level Unit Modeling

This chapter describes how units are modeled in entity-level scenarios.


21.1. Units in Entity-Level Scenarios ..... 488
21.1.1 How Units Are Organized ..... 489
21.1.2 How Units Move ..... 490
21.1.3 How Units Carry Out Tasks ..... 491

## 21.1. Units in Entity-Level Scenarios

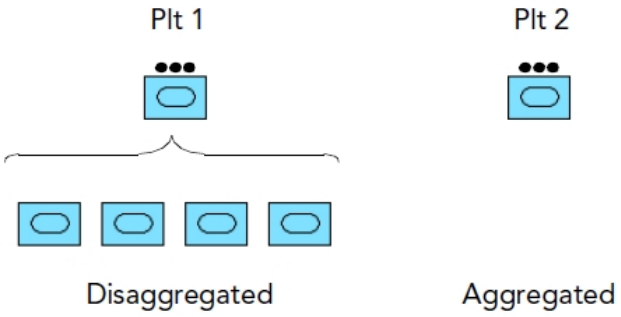
In entity-level scenarios units are simulated in either of two states:

- Disaggregated: Subordinates are simulated and published as individual entities (Figure 194). The members of a unit can move individually through the scene, have their own plans, interact with other simulation objects, and do all the things you would expect of an individual entity. When a unit engages in combat, the individual members of the unit fight the opposing forces using their weapon systems and survive or die as individuals.

  Units in this state can be tasked and given plans, but usually pass responsibility for execution to their subordinates. For example, if you give a disaggregated unit a movement task, each member of the unit plots a path and follows it.

- Aggregated: Subordinates are not simulated separately. Tasks and plans are executed by the unit. For example, if you give an aggregated unit a movement task, the object representing the unit moves.

**Figure 194. Disaggregated and aggregated units**




- The disaggregated and aggregated states are not the same as expanded and collapsed units (which are explained in "24.2. Expanding and Collapsing Units" on page 530.). Expanded and collapsed units are simply different visual representations of the unit. Aggregated and disaggregated states are different simulation states.
- An aggregated unit in an entity-level scenario is similar to a unit in an aggregate-level scenario in that there is no representation of subordinates. However, an aggregated unit can disaggregate and model subordinates, whereas a unit in an aggregate-level scenario cannot do so. Furthermore, their underlying modeling is completely different.
- Although it is theoretically possible for an entity-level scenario to have units that cannot be disaggregated into individual vehicles and persons, *EntityLevel.sms* does not have any units of this type.

A unit can be in either the aggregated or disaggregated state. At any given time, one subset of components and systems is enabled, and the other is disabled. At runtime, you can switch dynamically between these states.

You can configure VR-Forces so that unit state is determined automatically according to a set of rules, or to have unit state controlled manually.

The choice of whether to simulate units in the aggregated or disaggregated state depends on your goals for the simulation. For example, if you need to support large numbers of simulation objects, and do not want or need to simulate individual entity behavior, then you may want to simulate some or all of your units in the aggregated state. Conversely, if you need to simulate the detailed behavior of subordinates, then you will want to simulate units in the disaggregated state.

---

! A unit in the aggregated state only simulates movement behavior. It does not model combat behavior. If you want a unit to model attrition, simulate it in the disaggregated state. A unit in the aggregated state keeps track of its current resource and attrition state. If a unit later transitions to a disaggregated state, this state information is preserved.

---

For more details about the differences between aggregated and disaggregated units, please see "Chapter 23. Creating and Controlling Units" on page 517.

## 21.1.1 How Units Are Organized

The organization within a disaggregated unit is based on the echelon ID of each member. For example, in Table 22, four unique entities (identified by name) are assigned designators in **2 Plt**.

**Table 22. Example of names and echelon IDs**

| Name | Echelon ID |
|---|---|
| Tank 1 | 1 M1A2, 2 Plt, 1 Force |
| Tank 2 | 2 M1A2, 2 Plt, 1 Force |
| Tank 3 | 3 M1A2, 2 Plt, 1 Force |
| Tank 4 | 4 M1A2, 2 Plt, 1 Force |

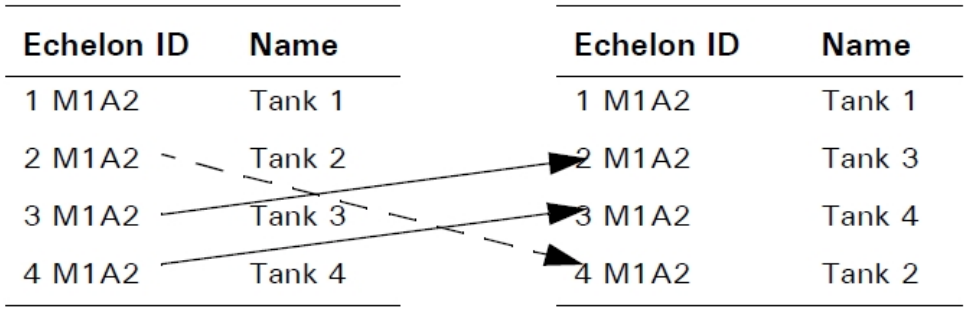
Assignment of echelon IDs is handled automatically by VR-Forces when you create a unit.

### Reorganizing Units

Reorganization is the reassignment of echelon IDs to the members of a unit when a member gets destroyed. If reorganization is enabled, when a member of a unit gets destroyed, the destroyed member is assigned the highest numerical ID in the unit, and the surviving members' echelon IDs are moved down numerically by one. For example, assume a platoon as shown in the leftmost table in Figure 195. If **2 M1A2** (currently the entity named Tank 2) gets destroyed, reorganization would result in the

new echelon ID assignments illustrated in the rightmost table. The former **3 M1A2** is now **2 M1A2**, former **4 M1A2** is now **3 M1A2**, and the former **2 M1A2**, is now **4 M1A2**. Their echelon IDs have changed. Their names and object IDs have not.

**Figure 195. Reorganization of Platoon 2**




You can configure VR-Forces to reorganize units automatically, or you can reorganize manually. Manual reorganization does not require you to reassign each designator; you simply order the unit to reorganize with the Reorganize command.

Reorganization only applies to disaggregated units.

## 21.1.2 How Units Move

When an aggregated unit receives a movement command, VR-Forces calculates the path it must follow. Then it moves to the location similarly to any individual entity. The unit icon is placed at the center of the bounding box of the area that would be encompassed by the unit if it was disaggregated.

When a disaggregated unit receives a movement command, VR-Forces calculates the path the unit leader must follow for movement. Then it calculates parallel paths (taking into account the formation) for each member of the unit. The unit members are responsible for following these paths until the unit completes the movement task.

### Closing Formation

VR-Forces can close up holes in formations that are created when a unit member is removed from a formation. When a unit is ordered to form up, it assigns formation positions to each of its members. Each position in the formation has an internal ID. If at some point one or more of the unit's members are destroyed, removed, or independently tasked, the unit reassigns the formation IDs for its list of members. Members that are removed, destroyed, or independently tasked, are not given formation IDs. The active members are moved up in the formation to fill the vacancies. Assignment to a different formation position has no effect on echelon designator.

The process of closing formation is internal to a unit. Formation position is not reported as part of simulation object information. The only way to determine a simulation object’s formation position is to observe the formation as the unit moves.

Closing formation is an inherent feature of units in the VR-Forces application. You do not need to do anything to put it into effect and you cannot turn it off.

#### Closing Formation Versus Reorganization

Closing the formation of the entities in a unit is not the same thing as reorganization. Reorganization changes the echelon designators of its members. Closing formation does not change the echelon designators of unit members, or the tasks a simulation object is assigned. It only affects the relative positioning of members within a formation.

### 21.1.3 How Units Carry Out Tasks

Like other simulation objects, each unit has a plan and you can assign independent tasks to units. When a disaggregated unit is given a task, it sends radio messages to its subordinates directing them to carry out their role in the task, for example, getting into formation and moving to a waypoint.

If a unit is in the aggregated state, it does not send task messages to subordinates. However, if while carrying out its task the unit disaggregates, it sends appropriate task messages to its subordinates to continue with the task execution. For example, suppose a unit is moving to a point and its path to the point passes through a disaggregation area. When it enters the disaggregation area, it disaggregates, calculates routes for its subordinates, and sends them Move Along Route tasks. When the unit exits the disaggregation area, it aggregates again and the tasks for its subordinates are abandoned.

---

Disaggregation areas are special control objects. If automatic aggregation and disaggregation is enabled, when a unit enters a disaggregation area, it automatically disaggregates. When it leaves the area it aggregates. For more information, please see "23.6.3 Using Disaggregation Areas" on page 527.

---

The precise way in which a unit sends out messages to its subordinates is part of the modeling of the unit that is built into the VR-Forces application.

# 22. How Aggregate-Level Modeling Works

This chapter describes the aggregate warfare model and how simulation objects created using *AggregateLevel.sms* work.


22.1. The Aggregate Warfare Model ..... 495
22.1.1 Unit Combat ..... 495
22.1.2 Unit Footprints ..... 496
22.1.3 Unit Posture ..... 497
22.1.4 Unit Movement ..... 498
22.1.5 Limited Munition Attack ..... 499
22.1.6 Contamination Areas ..... 499
22.1.7 Unit Sensors ..... 500
22.2. Combat Engineering Objects ..... 500
22.2.1 Concealed Obstacles ..... 502
22.2.2 Creating Combat Engineering Objects ..... 503
22.2.3 How Engineering Units Create Engineering Objects ..... 503
22.3. Logistics ..... 504
22.3.1 Receiving Supplies ..... 506
22.3.2 Providing Supplies ..... 506
22.4. Electronic Warfare ..... 507
22.4.1 Jamming Communications ..... 507
22.4.2 Jamming Radar ..... 508
22.4.3 Sensing Electronic Emissions ..... 509
22.5. Air Combat ..... 509
22.5.1 Loadouts ..... 510
22.6. Air Missions ..... 510
22.7. Fuel Use and Aerial Refueling ..... 512
22.7.1 Aerial Refueling Systems ..... 512
22.7.2 Refueling Missions ..... 512
22.8. Air Bases and Air Missions ..... 513

22.8.1 Preparing Missions ..... 514
22.8.2 Landing Air Units ..... 515
22.8.3 Repairing Aircraft ..... 515
22.8.4 Quick Reaction Alert Status ..... 516

## 22.1. The Aggregate Warfare Model

VR-Forces supports a warfare model for aggregate-level scenarios. The aggregate warfare model requires use of *AggregateLevel.sms* or a similar SMS and only works with HLA Evolved and the MAK FOM extensions.

The aggregate warfare model is data-driven. Simulation objects have combat power and combat vulnerability. Their overall state is expressed as their health. These are abstract values that represent relative strengths of different units.

When opposing force simulation objects come into contact, they inflict damage on each other until one of the simulation objects is destroyed or breaks off combat. A unit is considered killed when its health is 0.

Some of the features that distinguish aggregate-level scenarios from entity-level scenarios include:

- Footprint. The area occupied by the unit.
- Posture. The unit's mode of interaction with the environment.
- Logistics. Management of personnel and matériel.
- Combat engineering objects. Tactical graphics that affect simulation object movement and health.
- Reports. Some data tracked in a simulation, such as personnel levels and pacing and tracking, is not used by the back-end. It is sent over the network to be used by command and control systems and human participants.

---

*AggregateLevel.sms* includes some individual entities, such as surface vessels and aircraft. However, these entities also use the aggregate warfare model. They do not behave like they would if you were using the same entity types in entity-level modeling.

---

### 22.1.1 Unit Combat

Combat power is the ability of a simulation object to cause casualties and damage, and is a function of how many weapons it has, the size (destructive power) of their munitions, the rate of fire of the weapons, the accuracy of the weapons, and the effectiveness of the subordinate simulation objects in conducting an attack (tactics, coordination, target selection, and so on).

A simulation object's ability to engage in combat is expressed as a strength value in one or more of the following domains:

- Anti-air
- Anti-tank
- High explosive
- Anti-personnel
- Anti-ship

The strength value describes the attrition rate per second imposed on the target by the attacking unit.

A combat domain has a range. When an opposing force simulation object is within the range of a combat domain for which a simulation object has strength, it attacks the simulation object.

Health is a function of the amount of equipment, personnel, or both in the simulation object, and the difficulty in destroying them. For example, a unit with 10 tanks would have twice the health of a unit with 5 of the same kind of tank. However, note that the initial health for a unit is set by the SMS designer in the Simulation Object Editor. It is independent of other parameters or resource variables. It is not computed based on the equipment in the unit. Also, health values in different domains are not usually comparable to each other. They are only meaningful relative to units in the same domain.

Simulation objects also have a vulnerability in each of these domains. Base vulnerability describes how susceptible a simulation object is to a given category of weapon. In particular, it describes how easy it is to hit and kill the equipment in the simulation object with the given category of weapon. For example, infantry is very susceptible to high explosive munitions, light armor fairly susceptible, and heavy armor not very susceptible.

Vulnerability is expressed as a modifier of the combat power (attrition rate) of the attacker. It is multiplied by the attrition rate to calculate the actual damage. For example, a Mech Inf CO US has an Anti-personnel strength of 78. A Mech Inf CO RU has an Anti-personnel vulnerability of .1. If the US company attacks the Russian company, the actual damage for personnel will be 78 * 0.1 = 7.8 per second.

Both combat power and vulnerability are modified by a variety of factors, including posture, MOPP level, sector, and morale. The combination of all modifiers results in the final attrition rate.

The attrition across all domains is applied to the simulation object's health. If health declines to 0, the simulation object is killed.

### 22.1.2 Unit Footprints

A unit footprint is an abstract representation of the area the unit occupies with vehicles, personnel, and equipment. A unit takes damage from events that occur within its physical footprint, such as explosions or other simulation objects firing into that area.

The physical footprint has four sectors: front, rear, left flank, and right flank. The interactions of the unit with other simulation objects in the scenario varies based on which sector another entity is encountered on. For example, a unit is typically much more vulnerable to attack on the rear and flank sectors.

Both the physical footprint size and the size of the sectors for a unit are configured with a base value, but can then change during the scenario depending on actions of the unit.

---

The footprint is always circular. The footprint parameter describes the radius.

### 22.1.3 Unit Posture

Posture is an abstraction of the positioning of the equipment and personnel of a unit within its physical footprint, and its state of readiness for various activities.

The supported postures are:

- Deliberate-Defense. Planned, prepared. Lower mobility, lower vulnerability, moderate attack power. It is a positional defense.
- Hasty-Defense. Reactionary. Moderate mobility, moderate vulnerability, lower attack power. Happens when the unit first makes contact with the enemy. This is a positional defense, but with less time to prepare than deliberate-defense.
- Deliberate-Attack. Planned, prepared. Moderate mobility, moderate vulnerability, higher attack power. A fully planned attack executed as a deliberate advance using fire and maneuver techniques.
- Hasty-Attack. Reactionary. Higher mobility, higher vulnerability, lower attack power. Used for movement when enemy contact is expected.
- Reconnaissance. Mobile maneuver, locate and report on enemy, avoid detection, avoid engagement (if you can). Sensor signature and vulnerability are low, but so are combat power and speed.
- Travel. Very high mobility, but very vulnerable to attack and low attack power. Useful when the unit is moving from one location to another in a safe area.
- Rout. Health is less than 50% and unit is under attack. It cannot change to another posture until its health exceeds 50%.

A unit's posture affects:

- Footprint. The amount of space that the unit occupies.
- Sensing. For example, in reconnaissance posture the unit detects objects more quickly and at a greater distance than in a defensive posture.
- Sensor signature. The ability of other units to detect a unit is affected.
- Movement speed.
- Sector sizes.
- Combat power. Many weapon systems can only be used in certain postures. In particular, most cannot be used in Travel posture (which is the posture a simulation object is in when it is created).
- Vulnerability.

When a unit transitions between postures, it does so over time. Transitions may take up to several hours. The transition delay models the planning and preparation necessary to perform the task expected in the new posture. For example, deliberate defense is a well prepared defense that assumes planning fires, digging fighting positions, and so on. It significantly reduces the vulnerability of the defender. However, it may require 3 hours to transition to this posture. Hasty attack is the only

posture that does not require a long transition time, as it is the posture for quick actions on contact, meeting engagements, pursuits, and so on. Transition times between each posture are configured in the Simulation Object Editor.

Because transitioning between postures can take hours of simulation time, when you set up a scenario you must decide if you want units to start in a given posture or transition to it as part of the simulation.

Defense postures assume stationary defense.

Aircraft and ships generally do not distinguish postures, except that they are not battle-ready in Travel posture.

### 22.1.4 Unit Movement

Units try to move at their ordered speed. The movement speed of a unit over the terrain depends on many factors, including the following:

- The slope of the terrain and the broad categories of the terrain underneath the unit, alter the maximum possible travel speed.
- Roads allow units to move more quickly, while restricted areas like forests or cities slow them down.
- Rivers and water bodies may stop a unit completely, although bridges allow them to cross.
- Overlapping footprints cause units to slow down.

---

The movement speed modifiers for slope, terrain, footprint overlap, MOPP, posture, and so on only affect maximum speed. If ordered speed is less than the net modified maximum speed, you will not see a change in speed due to these factors.

---

For movement speed calculations, the center point of the unit is used to determine what type of terrain the unit is on.

If the footprints of two units overlap, their movement is slowed based on their Max Speed Modifier When Overlapping Another Unit parameter. This parameter is set on the Movement tab for a unit in the Simulation Object Editor. The lower the value, the greater the movement penalty. When unit footprints overlap, the lowest modifier among all overlapping units is applied to all of them.

---

Aggregate-level scenarios do not support collision avoidance among simulation objects.

---

The effect of terrain features on movement is configured in a unit's movement system. For details, please see *"Configuring Aggregate-Level Movement Restrictions"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

VR-Forces supports a variety of combat engineering objects that affect entity movement. They may cause a unit to go more slowly or they may damage the unit. For information about combat engineering objects, please see "22.2. Combat Engineering Objects" on the next page.

### 22.1.5 Limited Munition Attack

Most aggregate-level combat is automated and continues until a combatant is killed or combatants run out of ammunition. There are no specific fire or detonation interactions involved and combat essentially takes place in the background. The aggregate warfare model also supports limited munition attacks, in which a limited amount of munitions are used and the attack then ends. In the case of artillery, this is a specified number of rounds from a battery, delivered over a short time. In the case of large munitions such as missiles and bombs, the attack for each munition is generally instantaneous. VR-Forces does not model the time it takes for a munition to reach its target.

---

Not all missile attacks are modeled as limited munition attacks. Anti-tank missiles in ground units, for example, are launched by multiple launchers in the unit against multiple targets in the defender, and are modeled with normal combat power.

---

Individual missile attacks typically make use of a hit factor from the attacker and a defense factor from the defender to determine a hit probability. The missile must hit before its combat power is applied in an attack.

### 22.1.6 Contamination Areas

The aggregate warfare model supports nuclear, biological, and chemical contamination areas (NBC areas) that may damage or impede a unit. You can create contamination areas as tactical graphics, or simulation objects with nuclear, biological, or chemical weapon systems can create them as a result of attacking with these weapons.

Contamination areas have parameters that are similar to other areal tactical graphics, plus the following parameters:

- Agent type. The type of contamination. It determines the configuration used for damage calculations.
- Terrain type. Informational only; not used by VR-Forces.
- Topography type. Informational only; not used by VR-Forces.
- Vegetation type. Informational only; not used by VR-Forces.

The terrain, topography, and vegetation types are published by VR-Forces, but do not affect unit modeling or interaction. They may be useful to other applications that interact with VR-Forces.

By default, NBC hazard areas are placed on the Contamination Areas overlay.

#### Contamination (NBC) Areas and MOPP Level

When a unit is attacked by NBC weapons or enters an NBC area, it suffers attrition. It stops its current task and increases its mission oriented protective posture (MOPP) level until it stops suffering attrition. Then it resumes its task. However, any contamination that took place persists.

If a unit is moving and it detects an NBC hazard area in its path, it stops moving and increases its MOPP level to a point that will allow it to pass through the hazard area without suffering attrition.

Increasing MOPP level affects a unit's speed, combat effectiveness, sensor sensitivity, posture transition time, and vulnerability.

---

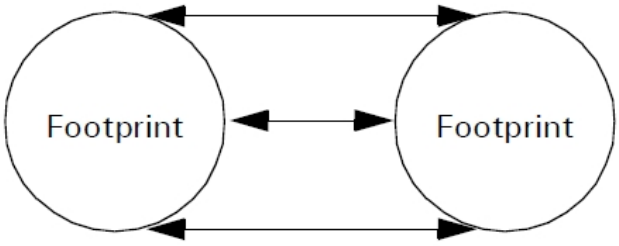
Some types of contamination are benign enough that they cause little, if any, damage to simulation objects. Other types, such as gamma rays, cause attrition even at the highest MOPP level.

---

### 22.1.7 Unit Sensors

Simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios use the same sensor signature mechanism as simulation objects in entity-level scenarios. Sensor systems allow them to detect other simulation objects in various domains. Sensor signatures indicate how detectable they are by other simulation objects in the applicable domains. The main difference between simulation objects in the two types of modeling is in the detection checks. Simulation objects in entity-level scenarios do a line-of-sight check from the center of the simulation object . Simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios do three checks – from the center of the outer ring of the footprint and from the edges of the circumference of the footprint, as illustrated in Figure 196.

**Figure 196. Aggregate-level sensing**




## 22.2. Combat Engineering Objects

VR-Forces supports a variety of combat engineering objects that affect unit movement. They may cause a unit to go more slowly or they may damage the unit. Combat engineering objects (CEOs), such as fortifications, can also protect a unit, in that they affect the effectiveness of opposing forces.

CEOs are displayed as tactical graphics. You can create combat engineering objects from the Tactical Graphics Palette. Also, units can create combat engineering objects in response to combat engineering object tasks.

Units can counter the presence of combat engineering objects by breaching them, bridging them, defusing them, or destroying them.

Combat engineering objects can have the following effects on units:

- Mobility. CEOs can decrease entity mobility. Mobility modifiers are configured by mobility type. For instance, an object might affect the mobility of soldiers on foot more than tanks. When a simulation object comes in contact with an engineering object, it checks the object type's mobility modifier against the entity's mobility type. The entity slows down based on the modifier value.

  The modifier is scaled based on the completion percentage of the object. Modifiers only affect the maximum speed, so speed is affected only if the modified maximum speed is less than the current speed of the unit.

  If a unit encounters an obstacle that obstructs its movement or may cause damage, it stops moving and sends a message to the console indicating that it is obstructed (Figure 197). The user must then tell it what to do. The console message may use the question and answer capability. (For information about console questions, please see "16.9.3 Answering Questions from Scripted Tasks" on page 431.)

  ---

  The unit may not be able to move until you respond to the question.

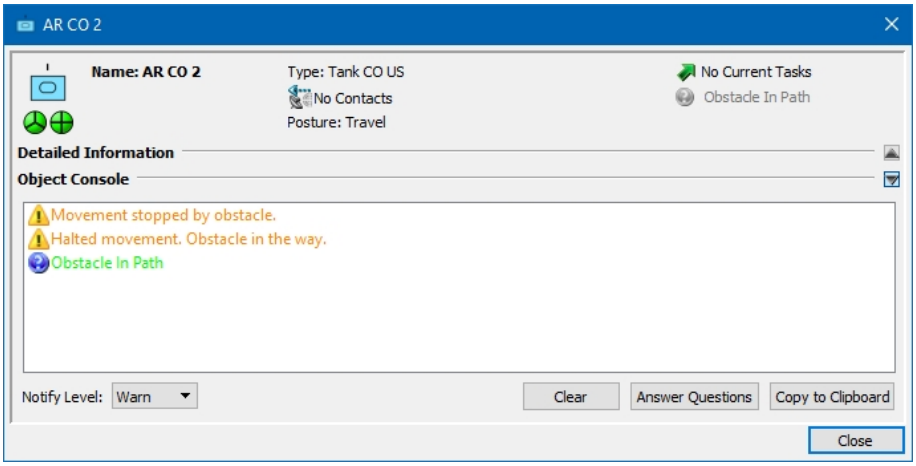
  If an obstacle is concealed, the unit does not stop. For information about concealed obstacles, please see "22.2.1 Concealed Obstacles" on the next page.

  ---

- Mobility enabling. Certain types of engineering objects are treated as terrain features by a moving unit. For instance, a simulation object may determine that an engineering object represents a road or bridge, giving it additional path planning options. This capability is either on or off.
- Vulnerability. Vulnerability modifiers are configured by weapon type. For instance, a fortification might do very well at stopping anti-personnel weapons, but may do little or nothing to stop high explosives. When a simulation object under fire contacts an engineering object, it checks the object type's vulnerability modifier against the attacking weapon's category. This may reduce the amount of damage the entity takes from that weapon.

  The modifier is scaled based on the completion percentage of the object.

**Figure 197. Question in entity console**




- Visibility. When a simulation object contacts an engineering object with a visibility modifier, its visibility to opposing simulation objects is increased or decreased accordingly.

  The modifier is scaled based on the completion percentage of the object.

- Attrition over time. When a simulation object contacts an engineering object that causes damage (for example a minefield), that object continues taking damage over time as long as it remains in contact. The damage is configured as one of the existing damage/weapon categories, for example, high-explosive. Simulation objects with more or less vulnerability to that damage type take more or less damage accordingly.

  The attrition is scaled based on the completion percentage of the object.

- Immediate attrition. Some engineering objects cause one-time, immediate damage to any unit that comes in contact with them. For instance, a simulation object might trigger an IED. Usually the engineering object is destroyed in the process.

  The modifier is scaled based on the completion percentage of the object.

  The various modifiers are configured for each CEO in the Simulation Object Editor.

### 22.2.1 Concealed Obstacles

By default, minefields, booby traps and unexploded ordnance objects are concealed. (This attribute is configurable in the Simulation Object Editor, so you can set it for other objects if you want to.) The engineering object sensor does not automatically detect concealed objects within its sensing radius. The sensor has a random (configurable) chance of detecting the object each sensor cycle that the object is within range.

If a sensor detects a concealed minefield, the Mark Minefield reactive task marks it as detected. Thereafter, the minefield is always 100% detectable. (The Mark Minefield reactive task is enabled by default.)

Unit movement systems check the concealed flag for obstacles. For non-friendly obstacles that are concealed, the “stop and ask” behavior is suppressed unless the object has been specifically detected by the sensor. Therefore, if the sensor has not detected the object, the unit enters it without first stopping and alerting you to the presence of the object.

Concealed objects are always discovered if they are causing damage to a simulation object.

### 22.2.2 Creating Combat Engineering Objects

You can create combat engineering objects directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette or you can task simulation objects with the appropriate systems, such as combat engineering units, to create them.

Combat engineering objects are implemented as points, lines, and areas, so you can create them the same way that you would create tactical graphics. Most areal CEOs are fixed size, which is configurable in the Simulation Object Editor. You just have to specify the lower left corner of the area.

When you create a CEO from the Tactical Graphics Palette, you can give it a name, specify a layer and set all the parameters you would expect for that type of object. When you task a unit to create a CEO, it is given a default name and you can only specify its location.

Many tactical graphics have the same default names as CEOs, for example, fortified lines and minefields. They may also look the same on the map. However tactical graphics do not affect unit movement and combat the way that CEOs do. To help distinguish tactical graphics from CEOs, CEOs created by units are placed on the Combat Engineering Object layer. It is recommended that if you create CEOs from the Tactical Graphics Palette, that you place them on the CEO layer.

### 22.2.3 How Engineering Units Create Engineering Objects

When a unit with engineering capabilities creates a CEO, it expends construction material at a rate specified in the object’s model (configured in the Simulation Object Editor). Depending on the type of objects, the process can take hours of simulation time.

While an object is partially complete, its effectiveness is reduced. Some effects, such as enabling mobility over previously impassable terrain (for example by using bridges), do not take effect until the object is complete.

---

You can follow the progress of object construction in two ways. You can view the engineering unit’s use of construction material on the Supplies page of its Information dialog box. You can view the percent of the object’s completion on the Engineering Object Information page of the Information dialog box for the object (Figure 198).

---

**Figure 198. Barbed wire under construction**

Units create combat engineering objects as follows:

1. The unit moves within range of the location to create the object.
2. The unit creates a new object that is 0% complete. The object is displayed on the terrain.
3. The unit begins constructing the object. As it does so, its supply of construction material decreases.
4. When the object is complete or the unit runs out of construction material, it ends the task.

If a creating unit is interrupted and must halt construction, it notifies that object that construction has stopped. The object stays at its current level of completion, which may or may not be useful, depending on the object type. A constructing unit might also reduce its rate of construction if it takes damage.

If the constructing unit is able to resume construction or another unit is tasked to improve the object, it moves within range of the object and construction starts again.

Multiple units with construction capability can work together. To task a second unit to assist the first, task it to improve the object under construction.

You can also set the completion percentage of a combat engineering object with the Percent Complete set data request.

## 22.3. Logistics

Simulation objects have resources, such as fuel, ammunition, and food. Over time, and particularly during combat, these resources are consumed. Logistics is the process by which a unit resupplies itself.

Units can resupply the following resources:

- Health
- Food
- Water

- Motor gas
- Aviation fuel
- Diesel fuel
- Oil
- Lubricant
- Anti-Tank
- High-Explosive
- Anti-Personnel
- Anti-Air
- Anti-Ship
- Large-Munition
- Other

Anti-Tank, High-Explosive, Anti-Personnel, Anti-Air, and Anti-Ship refer to ammunition in that category. There is no distinction made between different ammunition names within a category. Large-munition covers all other categories of ammunition, such as indirect fire munitions, bombs, and missiles. Other supplies covers any other type of supply, including engineering materials.

The Supplies page on the Information dialog box indicates when a simulation object is receiving or providing supplies. You can display supply lines that show when a supply unit is supplying another unit (Figure 199). In Figure 200, green arrows show the supplies that the entity is receiving.

**Figure 199. Supply information and supply lines**

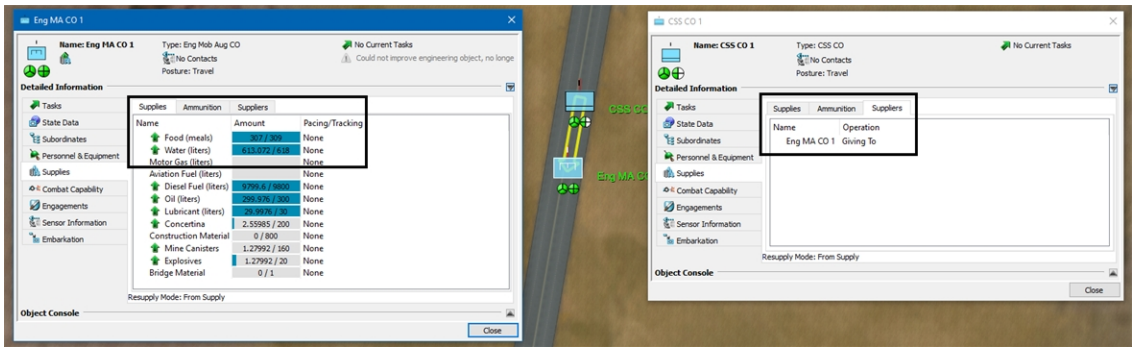
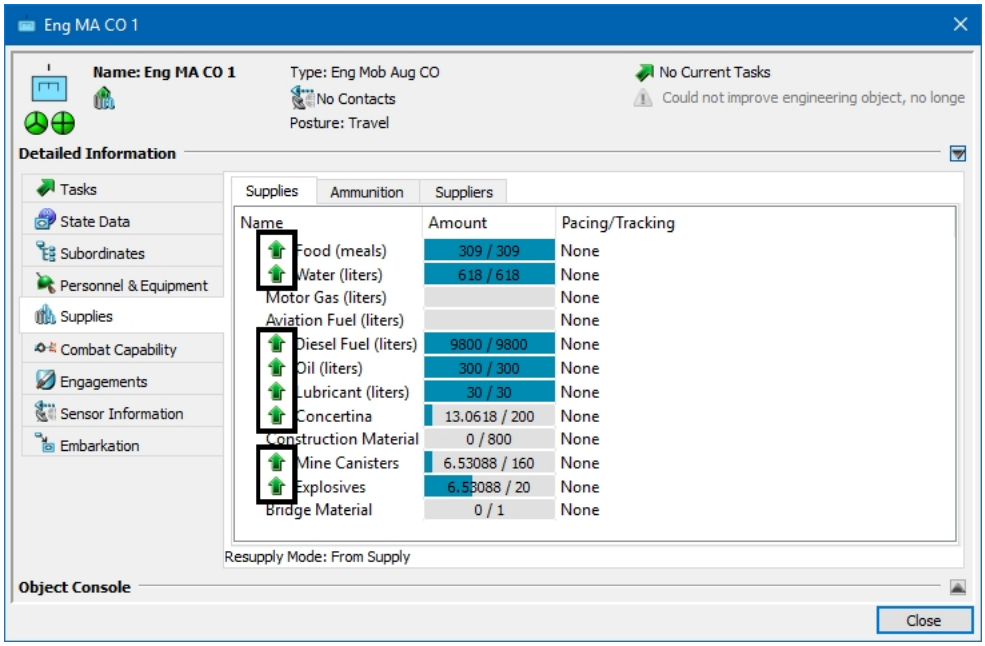


**Figure 200. Supplies being received**




## 22.3.1 Receiving Supplies

Units can receive supplies in the following ways:

- Take supplies from a supply unit. Units take supplies from a friendly supply unit that is within range and has notified them that it can provide supplies. The resupply range is specified in the Simulation Object Editor as part of a supply system.
- Auto Resupply Continuously. Supplies increase continuously at a configurable rate.
- Auto Resupply Periodically. Simulation objects refill all supplies at specified intervals. The interval is configurable.
- Refueling. Air units can refuel from tanker units. For details, please see "22.7. Fuel Use and Aerial Refueling" on page 512.

The ability to resupply can be restricted if a simulation object is moving, attacking, or defending. This is configured in the Simulation Object Editor on the Supplies tab. You can change how a simulation object receives supplies using the Set Resupply Mode task. If they are configured for airborne refueling (Can Receive Fuel While Airborne parameter), airplanes can receive fuel while they are flying, but must be on the ground to receive any other type of supply.

## 22.3.2 Providing Supplies

Simulation objects can provide supplies to other simulation objects if they have a resupply system (*resupplier.sysdef*). A supply unit can be configured to provide any of

the supplies that are supported. A supply unit can provide supplies to any number of other simulation objects. It is assumed to have its own supply source, so it never runs out. You can change a supply unit's status with the Change Supplying Command task.

A supply unit runs a background process that tests for friendly simulation objects in its area and notifies them that it is available to provide supplies. It checks for conditions that might prevent a simulation object from receiving supplies. It stops providing supplies to simulation objects that move out of range.

Aircraft units that have a refueling capacity can refuel other air units that request refueling.

## 22.4. Electronic Warfare

The aggregate warfare model supports three types of electronic warfare – communications jamming, radar jamming, and sensing electronic emissions.

### 22.4.1 Jamming Communications

Each unit has an EW-Comms-Dependence and an EW-Defense-Strength property. The dependence property indicates how much it can be affected if its communications are jammed. The defense factor indicates how well its technology and practices protect it from communications jamming. Units also have, in their state properties, a list of jamming attacks being made against them (type and strength) and a net EW-Comms-Degradation-Percentage.

When a simulation object attacks another entity with jamming, it sends EW attack information to the target.

---

Simulation objects jam all enemy simulation objects in range; there is no target selection. Friendly simulation objects are not affected.

---

When a simulation object suffers communications jamming attacks, the strengths of all attacks are added together and compared to the defensive strength. The ratio determines a modifier between 0 and 1, which is multiplied by the EW-Comms-Dependence. The result is a degradation percentage. This degradation percentage is applied to reduce combat power, and increase vulnerability and posture change time (by a maximum factor of 2.0).

Units can have a system called an aggregate-comms-jammer. This system has parameters for strength, maximum range, and a set of allowed postures. Strength falls off with $1/r^2$ (r is range in kilometers). This system can trigger EW attacks using the Make EW Attack background scripted task. It has a jammer controller that can publish an emitter.

You can enable or disable the emitter using the Emitter set data request. Turning it on activates jamming, and turning it off deactivates jamming. If the emitter is turned on while the simulation object is not in an allowed posture for jamming, a warning is printed to the console. In this case the emitter is on, but it is not used for jamming attacks.

When jamming is enabled the Make EW Attack script determines which jamming systems on the simulation object are on, and then uses them to attack all targets within range. It updates (new) EW-Attacks and Jamming-Strength-On state properties on the simulation object. The Jamming-Strength-On property summarizes the strength from all jammers the simulation object has turned on, and is used for emissions sensing. The Update_EW_Degradation background script computes the effects of EW attacks on a simulation object.

The MI PLT (military intelligence platoon) unit is configured to have an aggregate-comms-jammer.

## 22.4.2 Jamming Radar

Each unit has a state property Radar-Jamming-Strength-Receiving, which is updated by the Update_EW_Degradation background script. This is the total radar jamming strength being received.

Radar jamming can have the following effects:

- Reduce the sensitivity of radar sensors so they cannot detect targets.
- Reduce the hit factor of radar-homing missiles so they have a smaller hit probability.

The active-radar-sensor system has a parameter called **jamming-defense-factor**. This factor reflects the technology of the radar (not power) and is used with the jamming strength received to compute a sensitivity modifier for the sensor. The modifier varies from 0 to 1.

The weapon systems that use a controller that uses an aggregateReleaseBombControllerDescriptor have parameters **can-be-radar-jammed** and **jamming-defense-factor**. This includes the following weapon systems:

- aggregate-antiair-missile
- aggregate-antiship-missile
- aggregate-land-attack-missile
- aggregate-release-bomb
- aggregate-unguided-bomb

If **can-be-radar-jammed** is true, then **jamming-defense-factor** is used with jamming strength received to calculate a modifier for the hit factor of the weapon.

Weapon systems are configured with either a constant or variable for **can-be-radar-jammed**, to provide examples of different guidance systems:

- Anti-air missiles use a variable, to allow modeling of IR or radar-homing missiles.
- Anti-ship missiles set **can-be-radar-jammed** true, thus assuming radar guidance.
- Land attack missiles use a variable.
- Release-bomb omits the parameter (default is false), to simulate optical

guidance.

- Unguided bomb omits the parameter (default is false).

The aggregate-radar-jammer system can publish an emitter and can be turned on and off using Emitter set data request. It enables the EW_Attack script.

The radar jammer strength falls off with $1/r^2$ (r is range in kilometers).

The EA-18G entity is configured with a radar jamming system.

### 22.4.3 Sensing Electronic Emissions

The emission sensor domain allows simulation objects to sense RF electromagnetic emissions from simulation objects. Each simulation object has an emissions signature, which is a parameter for each object type. This can be detected by the SIGINT sensor. This is the “normal background signature”.

There is a sensor signature modifier for emissions. VR-Forces determines if specific emitters are turned on, thus adding to the normal background signature for the simulation object .

The emissions signature modifier has a parameter, **jam-strength-factor**, that converts jamming strength to a signature value. It is set in the platform files.

There is a sensor system emissions-sensor for emissions. It is called a SIGINT (signals intelligence) sensor. The MI PLT unit is configured with a SIGINT Sensor.

## 22.5. Air Combat

All air-to-air and air-to-ground engagements are executed using the limited munitions attack capability in the aggregate model. The core of this model is that a single munition is fired at a time, and then a hit calculation is performed. The hit calculation uses the hit-factor of the shooter and compares it to the defense factor of the target to determine a hit chance. A random draw is done and compared to the hit chance to determine if an actual hit takes place. If the hit occurs, then the attack power of the munition is applied to the target.

Aircraft units can represent one or more aircraft. Each aircraft has a primary equipment attribute, which is usually the airframe. When aircraft units engage in combat, damage is calculated against the primary equipment. For example, if an F-16 aircraft has the F-16 airframe as its primary equipment, a unit that represents four F-16s has a primary equipment count of four. When that unit takes damage, no more than one F-16 can be damaged by each hit.

Each aircraft type has a loadout that is defined in the Simulation Object Editor. A loadout specifies the equipment and weapons for the aircraft. At runtime, you can set the loadout for an aircraft unit. The loadout for a unit determines how effective it is when it attacks another simulation object.

The results of air-to-air engagements are determined by the following rules:

- Sensor capabilities. The sensor range and sensitivity, and the sensor signature of the target determine the maximum range for detection, and therefore the maximum range for engagement of a target.
- Weapon type. The weapon types on the aircraft determine the maximum engagement range when engaging with a weapon. The weapon type also determines the hit factor that affects the chance of a weapon hitting, and the total damage done if the weapon does hit.
- Tactical Data Link. If the aircraft unit is equipped with a Tactical Data Link combat system, the unit receives a bonus to its defense factor.
- Number of aircraft. Defending aircraft units receive a combat maneuvers bonus to their defense factor. Attacking aircraft have a smaller attack interval when the number of aircraft is larger, causing them to fire more missiles in a shorter period of time. This bonus is based on the current number of aircraft in the unit. It is reduced if some of the aircraft are destroyed during combat.
- Battle management support. If the attacking unit has active spot-report data on the target aircraft from other units in the scenario, it receives a hit-factor bonus when engaging the target. A defending unit also receives a defense-factor bonus if it has active spot reports on the attacking entity.

The details of an engagement are displayed in the Information dialog box.

The AWACS unit is configured with long range radar. It can provide spot report tactical data to other aircraft units, which allows them to engage units that are beyond the sensor range of their aircraft.

### 22.5.1 Loadouts

Aircraft loadouts are defined in the Simulation Object Editor for each aircraft type, in the Combat tab. Each defined loadout specifies the quantity of weapons and equipment in the loadout. One loadout can be marked as the default. At scenario runtime, you can set the loadout for an aircraft unit and the unit will be equipped with the predefined loadout items.

The weapons and equipment determine the effectiveness of the attacks a unit can make. Additional fuel tanks can increase the range of aircraft. Jammer pods increase defense against radar guided weapons.

## 22.6. Air Missions

Missions are abstract command objects that link together aircraft that will be launched as a flight. A mission has the following attributes:

- Name (call sign).
- List of base aircraft in mission.
- Aircraft loadout.
- Target launch time.

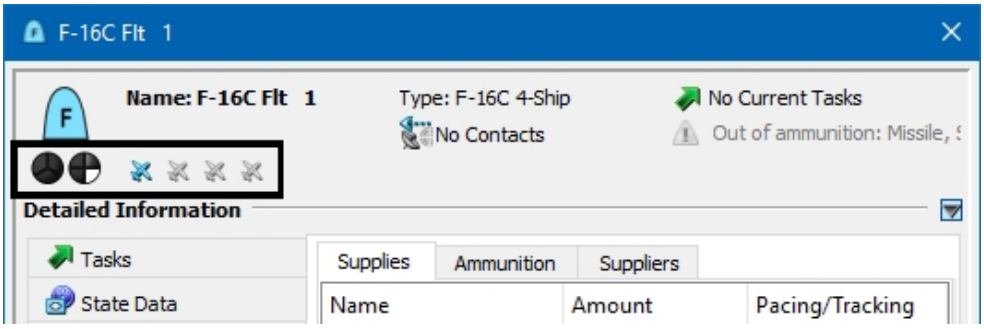
- Time to start preparing for launch. This is computed from the target launch time and an estimate of the aircraft preparation time.
- Simulation object type for the air unit that will be created for this flight.

Air missions are carried out by aircraft units. A mission can be carried out by a single unit (which can represent multiple aircraft) or by multiple units. A multiple unit mission consists of multiple single units and a single “Mission Superior” object that is the superior of all the single units that are part of the mission.

The icons for air units have graphics that indicate the number of aircraft in the unit (Figure 201). Information dialog boxes also show the number of aircraft. If a unit suffers attrition, the number of graphics is reduced (Figure 202).

**Figure 201. Aircraft unit icon**

**Figure 202. Aggregate information after attrition**




The units that execute a mission can be created as part of the initial scenario laydown, they can be created during runtime by plans, players, or instructors, or they can be launched by an air base.

For single unit missions, the mission orders are issued directly to the unit. For multi-unit missions, the mission orders are issued to the mission superior.

Mission orders may include a task to land at an air base at the end of the mission. The units executing the mission are deleted when they land, so the mission ceases to exist. Any report of mission status should be made by the mission plan before this occurs.

---

VR-Forces does not have any specific mission management features. Users can manage missions with the global and unit plans, through player interaction, or through externally developed applications that use the remote control API.

---

# 22.7. Fuel Use and Aerial Refueling

Fuel is a supply that is configured in the SOE (on the Supplies tab) and consumed based on aircraft activity. Air units use fuel based on their altitude and speed. When an aircraft unit is in a holding pattern, fuel use is calculated based on the default speed. VR-Forces interpolates values for altitudes and speeds that fall between the configured values.

For tankers, the fuel available for refueling other aircraft is assumed to be the same fuel that the tanker itself uses to fly. When refueling is complete, aviation fuel supplies are transferred from the tanker to the receiving aircraft.

## 22.7.1 Aerial Refueling Systems

An aircraft unit can refuel other aircraft if it is configured with an aerial refueling system. The fueling system can be a flying boom type, a drogue-and-probe type, or a combination. The configuration cannot be changed during a simulation run.

The boom system specifies a maximum fuel transfer rate. It can also be configured to have drogue lines on it, with a different transfer rate for the drogues.

Drogue systems define the number of drogues and the fuel flow rate for each fuel line.

Aircraft that are to receive fuel must be configured with an aerial refueling receiver system. The aerial refueling receiving system specifies whether the system is a boom or drogue system and what the maximum fuel transfer rate is. Air units may only refuel from tankers that have compatible refueling equipment.

Refueling systems and fuel receiving systems get assigned on the Additional Systems tab in the SOE. *AggregateLevel.sms* has two tanker units, a KC-135A with a boom system, and a KC-130J with two drogues.

## 22.7.2 Refueling Missions

Air units can be tasked to refuel from a tanker unit with the Refuel from Tanker task. Tanker units provide fuel in response to a Refueling Mission task. When a tanker unit receives a Refueling Mission task, it flies to the designated location, flies a race track pattern, and services aircraft that need fuel. It can continue to refuel aircraft until its fuel level falls below a configurable threshold. (For details about the Refueling Mission task, please see ("30.64. Refueling Mission" on page 709). For details about the Refuel from Tanker task, please see ("30.63. Refuel from Tanker" on page 708).)

The tanker coordinates with the refueling aircraft by exchanging text radio messages. The aircraft unit initiates a refueling request and says what type of system it is using and how much fuel is required. The tanker then either rejects the request (based on refueling system type and amount of fuel available) or accepts it. The aircraft unit is expected to move close to the tanker and report in with a message. When the tanker has a refuel line available, it tells the unit to move to the tanker and begins fueling it. The transfer rate is dependent on the transfer rates of the tanker and the aircraft, and the number of aircraft and drogue lines available. Supply transfer messages are sent to the refueling aircraft periodically, and corresponding aviation fuel resources in the tanker are reduced.

When refueling is complete, the tanker notifies the refueling unit.

If multiple aircraft units request refueling, the tanker coordinates with each of them and refuels them each in turn.

## 22.8. Air Bases and Air Missions

An air base is a special type of entity that is placed on the ground. Air bases have a variety of resources that they can use to prepare, launch, and recover air missions. They do this using a background process (Manage Air Base) and several tasks and set data requests.

An air base represents the following physical features:

- Apron. The aircraft that are assigned to an air base wait on the apron to be assigned to missions, prepared for launch, or sent to a hangar to be repaired. The apron has a maximum capacity of aircraft.
- Hangar. When a damaged aircraft is actively undergoing repair, it is moved to a hangar. Hangars have a maximum capacity of aircraft.
- Runway. Aircraft that are prepared for a mission taxi on the runway area for a few minutes before taking off.
- Operational Readiness Platform (ORP). The location at the end of a runway where aircraft on Quick Reaction Alert (QRA) are stationed. The ORP has a maximum capacity of aircraft.

Air bases have the following types of resources:

- Aircraft. All of the aircraft at an air base are on the ground. Air bases do not track the aircraft that are executing missions. When an aircraft takes off, it is deleted from the air base records. Aircraft have the following attributes:
  - Type (equipment name).
  - Health. Health is expressed as a percentage and represents the status of the air frame and the amount of fuel on board.
  - Number of munitions loaded.
  - Location on the air base.

  An aircraft can be in one of the following states:
  - Available. The aircraft is at 100% health and is available to be assigned to a mission.
  - Assigned. The aircraft has been assigned to a mission. Some time before the mission launches, an assigned aircraft begins fueling and arming and its air crew gets ready.
  - In Repair. The aircraft is in this state if its health is less than 100%. It can only be actively repaired (have its health improved) if it is in a hangar and has ground crew assigned to it.
  - QRA. The aircraft has been assigned and prepared, and is waiting at the ORP.

- Air crews. Each aircraft must be manned by one air crew. An air crew can man any type of aircraft. Air crews can be available or assigned. Air crews are assigned (to missions) when the air base is tasked to launch aircraft.
- Ground crew personnel. Ground crew personnel are used to repair, fuel, and arm aircraft. They may be in one of the following states and locations:
  - Available. Not assigned to any activity.
  - In-Hangar. Repairing aircraft.
  - On-Apron. Fueling and arming aircraft.
- Fuel. A single type of fuel is used to fill all aircraft prior to launching them on a mission.
- Munitions. Large munitions (bombs, missiles, and rockets) are aggregated into one count of munitions for the air base. When an aircraft is assigned a mission and given a loadout, the quantity of munitions in the loadout is deducted from the base munition count.
- Runways. An air base can have one or more runways. Runways have a length and a heading. The length of a runway determines whether aircraft can land at the air base.

You can specify the resources of an air base with the following set data requests:

- "35.4. Assign Aircraft" on page 842
- "35.17. Facilities" on page 845
- "35.32. Personnel and Supplies" on page 849

### 22.8.1 Preparing Missions

When an air base has pending missions, the Manage Air Base process handles the preparation of the aircraft as follows:

1. It estimates the preparation time and sets a time to begin preparation so that the flight can launch at the desired time.
2. When the preparation time arrives, the process assigns ground crew to the aircraft and computes the time at which fueling, arming, and preparing the air crew will complete. These tasks occur in parallel.
   - Fueling time requires a setup time and depends on how much fuel is taken on board.
   - Arming time is constant. It is independent of the loadout.
   - Crew preparation time is constant. It is independent of the type of aircraft.
3. When all preparation tasks are complete, the ground crew is made available to the air base.
4. When all aircraft in the flight are ready, they taxi onto the runway.

5. An air unit is created and the aircraft counts in the air base are decremented to remove the flight from the air base.

The *AirBase.ope* platform file includes parameters for the Manage Air Base script that determine:

- The size of the ground crew needed to fuel an aircraft.
- The size of the ground crew needed to arm an aircraft.
- The time required to arm an aircraft.
- The time required to set up refueling.
- The rate at which fuel can be transferred to the aircraft.
- The time required for the air crew to prepare.
- The time required for the flight to taxi and take off.

### 22.8.2 Landing Air Units

When an air unit wants to land at an air base (Land at Air Base task), it sends a message to the air base requesting to land. It tells the air base the number of aircraft in the unit and how long the runway needs to be for it to land. The Manage Air Base background process handles this request.

If the air base has room for the aircraft and its runway is long enough, it tells that air unit that it can land. The air unit flies to the air base and then requests final permission to land.

The air base determines the properties of the air unit, as follows:

- The aircraft type.
- Number of aircraft.
- Air frame health percent.
- Fuel in the tanks.
- Number of munitions.

When the air unit lands, the unit is removed from the scenario. The air base adds the aircraft to its list, and makes them either available or in-repair (if they are damaged). An air crew is added to the available air crews for each aircraft. Fuel and munitions are added to the air base's fuel and munition counts. The count of aircraft on the apron is incremented for each aircraft.

### 22.8.3 Repairing Aircraft

The Manage Air Base background process manages aircraft repair. When an air base has damaged aircraft, it moves them into the hangar and assigns ground crew personnel to them. The process can only start this repair if there is space in the hangar and ground crew available. Aircraft in the hangar are repaired at a rate that is proportional to the number of ground crew assigned. When the aircraft is at 100% health, the ground crew are made available again, and the aircraft is moved back to the apron and becomes available.

The *AirBase.ope* platform file includes parameters for the Manage Air Base script that determine:

- The repair rate (% repair / ground crew / second).
- The maximum number of ground crew that can be assigned to an aircraft.

### 22.8.4 Quick Reaction Alert Status

When aircraft are assigned Quick Reaction Alert (QRA) status, they prepare to take off and taxi to the Operational Readiness Platform (ORP), which is a set of parking spaces at the end of the runway. When events require it, one or more aircraft are ordered to take off and intercept a target. Aircraft and crews cannot remain prepared indefinitely, so after some time they must be returned to unprepared status at the base.

You can specify a level of quick reaction capability. For example, some QRA aircraft might keep their engines running, while others are fueled and armed on the apron with the crew in a ready room. In general the faster the reaction capability, the less time the aircraft can be on QRA.

Aircraft in QRA status remain part of the air base inventory rather than being formed into a unit.

You assign aircraft to the QRA status with the Prepare QRA task. You launch them with the Launch QRA Aircraft task. For details, please see "30.62. Prepare QRA" on page 708 and"30.52. Launch QRA Aircraft" on page 706.

# 23. Creating and Controlling Units

This chapter explains how to create and manage units.


23.1. Creating Units ..... 518
23.1.1 Creating a Unit by Combining Existing Simulation Objects ..... 518
23.1.2 Creating a Preconfigured Unit ..... 520
23.1.3 Configuring the Unit Creation State ..... 521
23.2. Selecting a Unit ..... 521
23.3. Adding Simulation Objects to a Unit ..... 522
23.4. Removing a Simulation Object from a Unit ..... 522
23.5. Units and Unit State in Entity-Level Scenarios ..... 523
23.5.1 How a Unit's State is Shown ..... 523
23.5.2 How Changing Aggregation State Affects a Unit ..... 524
23.6. Triggering Unit State Transitions ..... 525
23.6.1 Aggregating and Disaggregating Units Manually ..... 526
23.6.2 Configuring Automatic Aggregation and Disaggregation ..... 526
23.6.3 Using Disaggregation Areas ..... 527
23.7. Deleting a Unit ..... 527

# 23.1. Creating Units

You can create a unit by selecting simulation objects (which can be individual entities or units) and combining them to form a unit, or by placing a preconfigured unit from the Simulation Objects Palette. In entity-level scenarios, most preconfigured units can be disaggregated to the level of individual vehicles and persons. In aggregate-level scenarios, most preconfigured units cannot be disaggregated.

When you create a unit, it is created as a subordinate to the force level. You cannot create units that are subordinates of an existing unit. Once you create a unit, you can subordinate it to another unit. (For details, please see "23.3. Adding Simulation Objects to a Unit" on page 522 ).

---

Except where noted, the procedures for creating and editing units apply to entity-level scenarios and aggregate-level scenarios.

---

## 23.1.1 Creating a Unit by Combining Existing Simulation Objects

When you create a unit by combining simulation objects, you can specify the order of subordinates in the unit. This determines which subordinate is considered the unit leader and affects the assignment of echelon IDs. (It also affects the icon used to represent the unit.) You cannot change the subordinate order after you create the unit.

VR-Forces has many unit types configured in the Simulation Object Editor that are not available to create from the Simulation Objects Palette, but which are available as options on the Aggregate As dialog box.

---

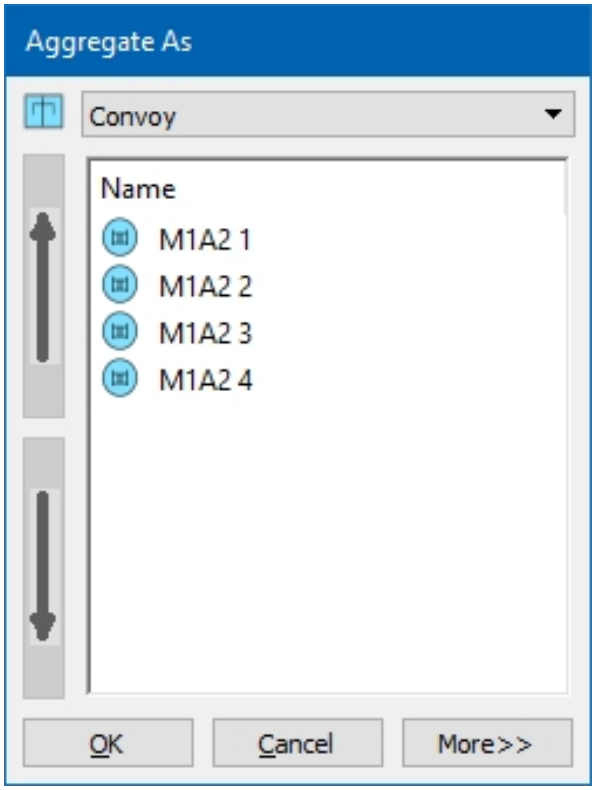
- When you create a unit, the members of the unit get new echelon IDs to reflect the new entity hierarchy.
- If the simulation objects that you are aggregating have plans and your unit setting is to aggregate new units, the plans are deleted. However since individual plans get deleted whenever a unit enters the aggregated state, in entity-level scenarios you cannot count on simulation objects keeping their plans even if you change this setting.
- When you aggregate individual entities into a unit, you can include non-VR-Forces entities. These entities will be included for the purposes of calculating the bounding volume of the unit and for expanding and collapsing the display of unit members. However, VR-Forces actions that would not typically apply to non-VR-Forces entities, such as tasks and set data requests, will not affect the non-VR-Forces entities.

---

➤ **To create a unit by combining existing simulation objects:**

1. Select the simulation objects that you want to become part of a unit.
2. Choose **Objects > Unit > Aggregate As**. The Aggregate As dialog box opens (Figure 203).

**Figure 203. Aggregate As dialog box**



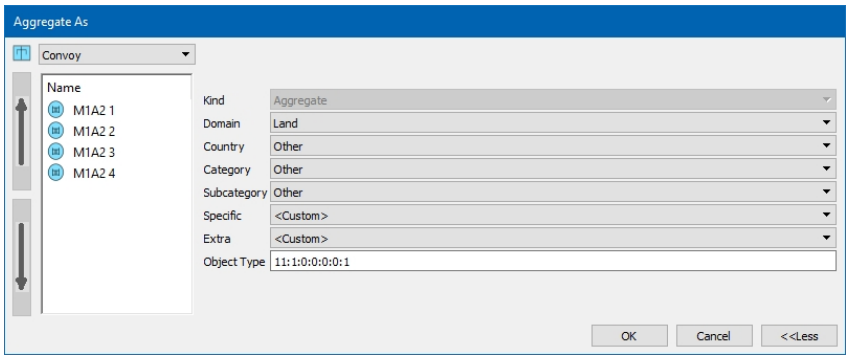

3. Select a unit type from the list.

- The Convoy unit can only be assigned convoy tasks. Its only purpose is to allow you to quickly aggregate miscellaneous ground vehicles into a convoy. You cannot aggregate or disaggregate a convoy.
- The default list of unit types is limited and is different for entity-level scenarios and aggregate-level scenarios. You can specify the unit types that are on the list in the Simulation Object Editor. For details, please see "64.3. Specifying an Aggregate As Option" on page 1328.

4. Optionally, customize the entity type enumeration for the unit, as follows:

a. Click More. The dialog box expands to show the entity type enumeration for the unit type selected (Figure 204).

**Figure 204. Aggregate As dialog box**




b. Edit the enumeration by selecting values from the lists, or by typing an enumeration.

---

If an edit to the enumeration results in an entity type that does not match the unit type selected in the list, the list entry does not change. However, the unit will be created with the entity type specified by the custom enumeration.

---

5. Optionally, change the order of subordinates, as follows:
   a. Select the subordinate whose order you want to change.
   b. Click the up or down arrow to move it to a new position in the list of subordinates.
6. Click OK.

### Creating Higher Echelon Units in Aggregate-Level Scenarios

In aggregate-level scenarios, you can combine entities and units to create higher echelon units just as you can in entity-level scenarios. However, unlike in entity-level scenarios, you cannot switch these units between an aggregated and disaggregated state. They are always disaggregated.

## 23.1.2 Creating a Preconfigured Unit

*EntityLevel.sms* and *AggregateLevel.sms* include preconfigured units at several hierarchical levels. You can configure them and add additional units in the Simulation Object Editor. (For details, please see"64.4. Editing Unit Composition" on page 1329 .)

You create preconfigured units by selecting them on the Simulation Objects Palette and follow the standard procedures for creating simulation objects. The abbreviations in the unit names in *EntityLevel.sms* have the following meanings:

- ADA. Air defense artillery.
- COLT. Combat observation lasing team.
- CSS. Combat service support.
- FA. Field artillery.
- MI. Mechanized infantry.

---

By default, units in entity-level scenarios are created in a disaggregated state. You can change the default aggregation state. For details, please see "23.1.3 Configuring the Unit Creation State" below .

---

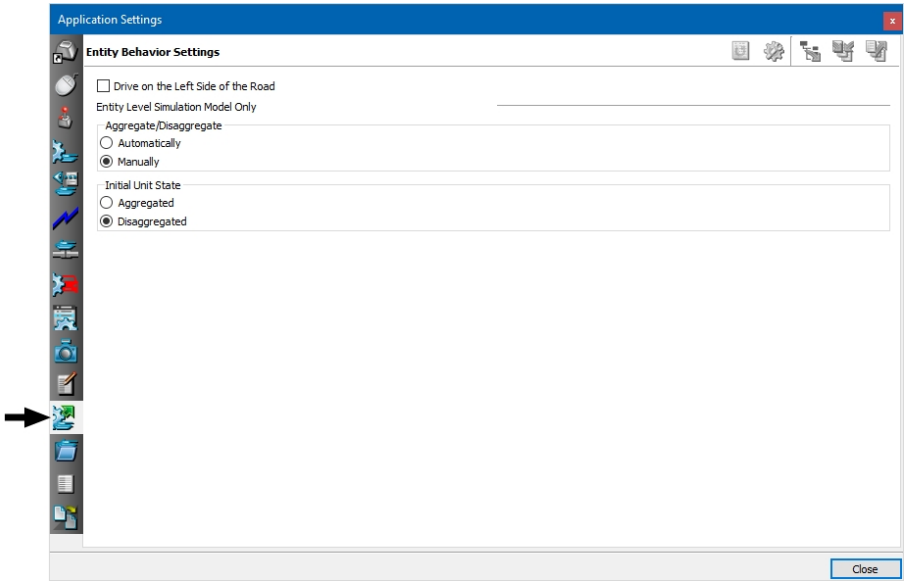
### 23.1.3 Configuring the Unit Creation State

This procedure only applies to units in entity-level scenarios.

➤ **To configure the aggregation state used when units are created:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Behavior Settings page (Figure 205).

**Figure 205. Entity Behavior Settings page**




3. In the Initial Unit State group box, select the creation option that you want.
4. Click OK.

## 23.2. Selecting a Unit

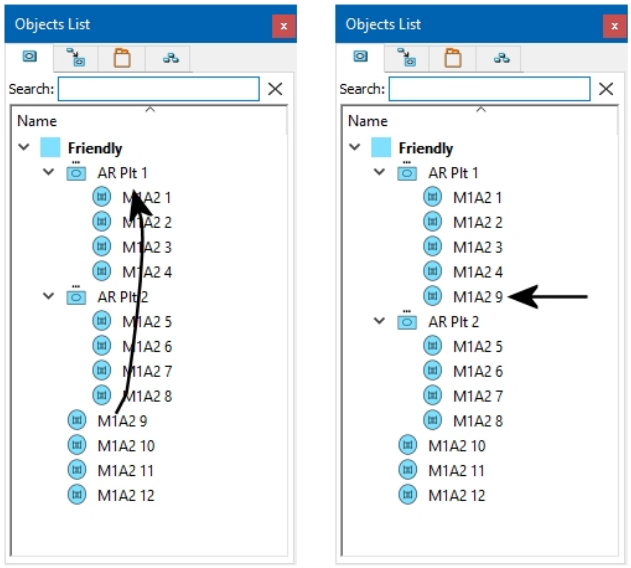
➤ To select a unit, select its icon on the terrain, or select it in one of the views on the Objects List Panel.

## 23.3. Adding Simulation Objects to a Unit

➤ To add a simulation object to a unit, in the Objects List View, select the simulation object you want to add and drag it onto the unit as illustrated in Figure 206. The name of the simulation object stays the same, but its echelon ID changes. (You can see the echelon ID in the object's Information dialog box.)

- You can add simulation objects to a unit in an entity-level scenario only if it is in the disaggregated state.
- You can also add simulation objects to a unit with the Superior set data request. For details, please see "34.74. Superior" on page 832.

**Figure 206. Adding a simulation object to a unit**

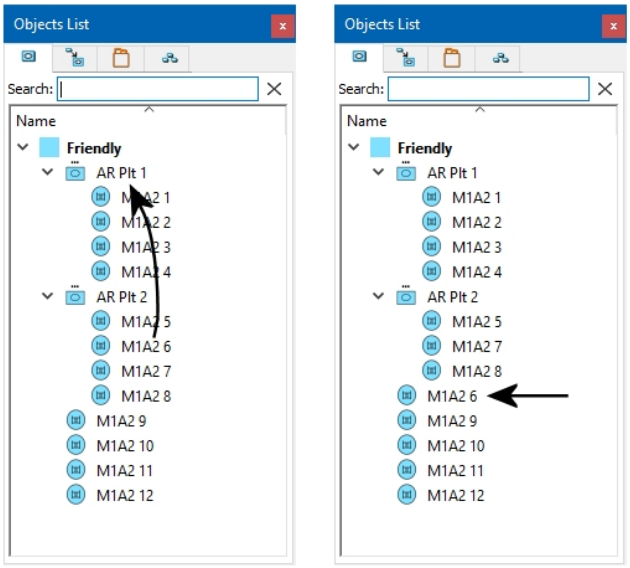



## 23.4. Removing a Simulation Object from a Unit

➤ To remove a simulation object from a unit, in the Objects List View, drag the simulation object from the unit to the force level in the window, as illustrated in Figure 207, or into another unit. The name of the simulation object stays the same, but its echelon ID changes. (You can see the echelon ID in the object's Information dialog box.)

- You can remove simulation objects from a unit in an entity-level scenario only if it is in the disaggregated state.
- You can also remove simulation objects from a unit with the Superior set data request. For details, please see "34.74. Superior" on page 832.

**Figure 207. Removing a simulation object from a unit**




## 23.5. Units and Unit State in Entity-Level Scenarios

In entity-level scenarios, units can switch back and forth between the aggregated state and the disaggregated state. It is important to understand the differences between these states. The types of units are introduced in "Section 21.1. Units in Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 488. This section provides additional details about how units function in the two different aggregation states.

---

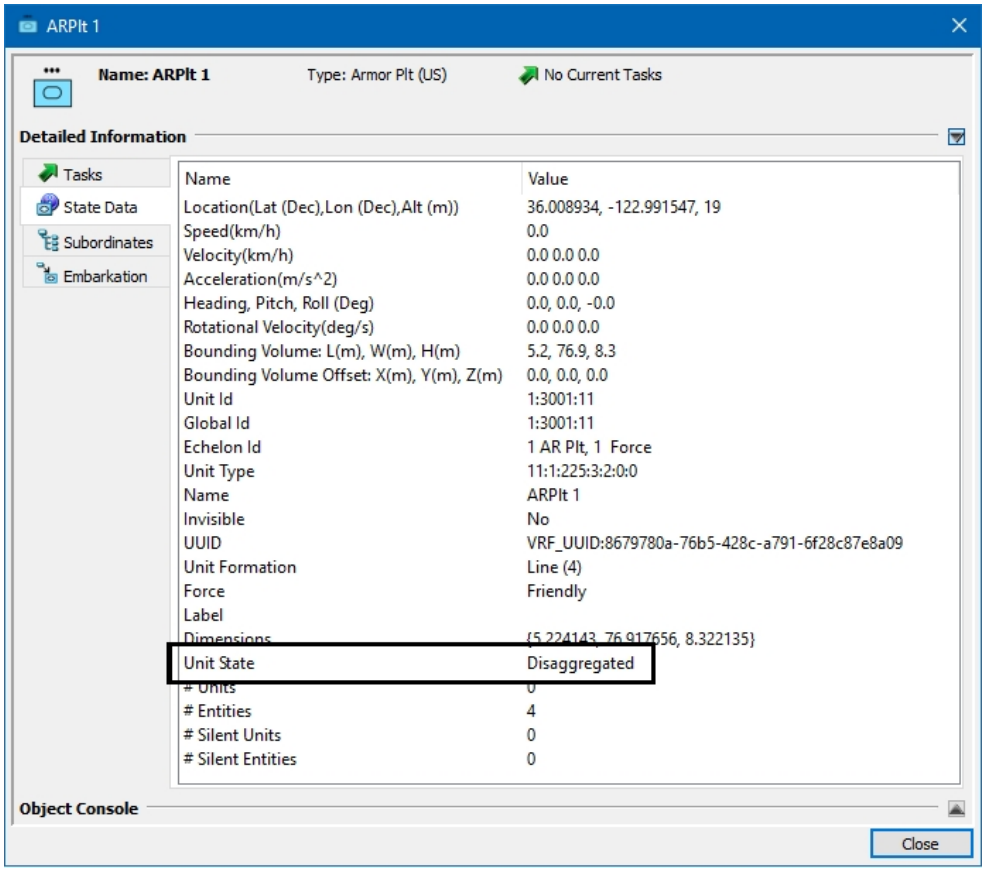
The Convoy unit does not support aggregation and disaggregation.

---

### 23.5.1 How a Unit's State is Shown

Units publish their aggregation state using the DIS/RPR FOM aggregate state enumeration. The current value for this parameter is displayed on the State Data page in a unit's Information dialog box (Figure 208). It can be accessed in the unit's *`DtVrfAggregateStateRepository`* member.

**Figure 208. State Data page**




### Aggregated State

When a unit is in the aggregated state, its subordinates do not exist as distinct simulation objects. It does not have any subordinates shown in the Objects List View or on the Subordinates page of its Information dialog box. It does not display ghosted icons for subordinates. You cannot expand or collapse it.

### Disaggregated State

When a unit is in the disaggregated state, its subordinates are simulated as distinct simulation objects. (However, it is possible to have a disaggregated unit with no subordinates.) Subordinates are displayed under the unit in the Objects List View and are listed on the Subordinates page of its Information dialog box. You can expand or collapse the unit.

## 23.5.2 How Changing Aggregation State Affects a Unit

Units can change their aggregation state at runtime. All state information maintained by the unit (for example, the current task it is executing, plan state, current resource levels) is maintained across the transition between aggregated and disaggregated states. This section describes how units handle transitions for the most important activities.

### Movement

All movement tasks can be executed in either aggregated or disaggregated state. Units can transition between states at any time, without interrupting movement tasks. For example, suppose a unit in the disaggregated state, is executing a move-to-location task. While it is executing the task, you issue a Unit State set data request, indicating it should switch to the aggregated state. The unit transitions into the aggregated state (subordinates are deleted, and the state associated with them is mapped and stored internally in the unit), and continues moving toward its destination. Similarly, making a transition in the opposite direction while executing a movement task, does not interrupt the execution of that task.

Units preserve their formation across unit state transitions.

### Combat

Only disaggregated units can engage in combat. However, a unit remembers any loss of resources or subordinates while it is aggregated. If a subordinate is destroyed while the unit is disaggregated, it is not created again if the unit aggregates and then disaggregates again.

### Resources

Resources are tracked and restored across state transitions. However, if a subordinate is destroyed while in the disaggregated state, then all of its resources are lost. They are not redistributed to other subordinates.

---

When you restore a unit that is in the aggregated state (using Restore), the original configuration of the unit is recreated. If you restore a unit that is in the disaggregated state, then only those subordinates still present in the simulation are restored. Any destroyed subordinates that were previously removed from the simulation as result of a disaggregate-->aggregate-->disaggregate transition are not restored. To fully recover all subordinates, restore the unit while in the aggregated state.

---

### Plans and Tasks

While a unit is disaggregated, its members can be given tasks and plans. However, when the unit aggregates, all tasks and plans are discarded. If the initial unit creation state is set to Aggregated and you create a unit from existing simulation objects, if the simulation objects have plans, the plans are discarded. (For information about settings the initial aggregation state, please see "23.1.3 Configuring the Unit Creation State" on page 521.)

## 23.6. Triggering Unit State Transitions

You can initiate unit state transitions manually or automatically, as follows:

- Manually: You can send a Unit State set data request or use Aggregate and Disaggregate commands on the Objects menu. This immediately forces the unit to change state. As a set data request, state changes can be included in plans.
- Automatically: On the Entity Behavior Settings page of the Application Settings dialog box, you can configure automatic aggregation and disaggregation. In automatic mode, units automatically aggregate or disaggregate according to the following rules:
  - If a unit is within disaggregation range of a hostile entity or unit, the unit is in the disaggregated state. Disaggregation range is the range around a simulation object or unit in which you want to force any nearby aggregated units to disaggregate so you can detect or engage them. This range is configurable for every type of entity and unit in the Simulation Object Editor (Maximum Disaggregation Range). If the disaggregation ranges of two units are not the same size, the larger of the ranges triggers disaggregation of both units.
  - If the unit's formation footprint (projection of its bounding extent in a topographic plane) overlaps a disaggregation area, the unit is in the disaggregated state. (A disaggregation area is a specific type of control object.)
  - If neither of the above conditions is in effect, the unit is in the aggregated state.

## 23.6.1 Aggregating and Disaggregating Units Manually

➤ **To aggregate a disaggregated unit:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Objects > Unit > Aggregate**.

---

You can also change a unit's state with the Unit State set data request (which also means that you can change state from within a plan).

---

➤ **To disaggregate an aggregated unit:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Objects > Unit > Disaggregate**.

## 23.6.2 Configuring Automatic Aggregation and Disaggregation

➤ **To configure automatic aggregation and disaggregation:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Behavior Settings page (Figure 205 on page 521).
3. In the Aggregate/Disaggregate group box, select Automatically or Manually.
4. Click OK.

### 23.6.3 Using Disaggregation Areas

When an aggregated unit that has automatic aggregation and disaggregation enabled enters a disaggregation area, it disaggregates. When it leaves the area, it aggregates again. A disaggregation area is a control object. You create one just like any other area, as described in "Chapter 14. Creating and Placing Objects" on page 363.

## 23.7. Deleting a Unit

If you delete a unit, all its members are deleted.

➤ **To delete a unit:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Objects > Delete**.

# 24. Displaying Units

Many aspects of managing units are the same as for individual entities. This chapter focuses on features that are unique to units.


24.1. Selecting Units ..... 530
24.2. Expanding and Collapsing Units ..... 530
24.3. Displaying Ghosted Icons ..... 532
24.4. Displaying Unit Icons and Bounding Volumes ..... 535
24.4.1 Specifying the Color Scheme for Unit Bounding Volumes ..... 537

## 24.1. Selecting Units

You can select units in the same ways that you can select entities. (For details about selecting entities, please see "15.2. Selecting Simulation Objects, Tactical Graphics, and Props" on page 399.) However, to select a unit, you must select the unit icon, not individual members of the unit. If a disaggregated unit is expanded, the unit icon might not be visible. To select the unit, you can collapse it, or you can select the unit in the Objects List View.

## 24.2. Expanding and Collapsing Units

You can display disaggregated units in expanded or collapsed mode. When a unit is collapsed, it is displayed as one icon. When a unit is expanded, all the members of the unit are visible as individual entities or subordinate units and the unit icon is hidden. Multi-level units can expand and collapse at each level of aggregation. For example, a company could be collapsed to the company level (one icon), the platoon level (an icon for each platoon), or fully expanded.

---

Aggregate-level scenarios do not support aggregation and disaggregation of units. Units are always disaggregated. Therefore, they can always be expanded and collapsed.

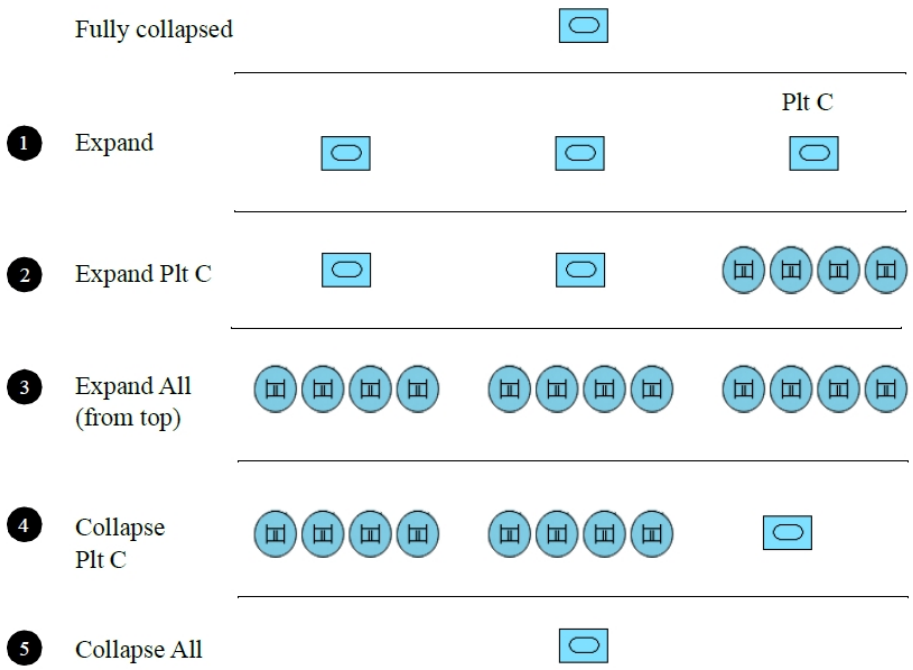
---

When you Expand or Collapse a unit, you can expand or collapse one level of aggregation or all levels. When you Expand or Expand All, expansion is downward from the current unit and does not affect any sibling units. When you Collapse, contraction is upward in the hierarchy. Collapse All collapses all members of the unit to the topmost level.

Figure 209 illustrates these relationships. Assume a company with three platoons, each of which has four vehicles.

- If you Expand the top level unit, it expands to the platoon level. (1)
- If you select Plt C and choose Expand or Expand All, it expands just Plt C. (2)
- If you select the top level unit and expand all, it expands to the leaf level – 12 individual vehicles. (3)
- If the unit is fully expanded and you select one member of Plt C and choose Collapse, just Plt C collapses. (4)
- If you select any member of an expanded unit and select Collapse All, the entire unit collapses. (5)

**Figure 209. Unit expand and collapse**




A unit's icon does not indicate whether it is aggregated or disaggregated. However you can easily infer its state from the Objects menu or the Objects List View. The unit commands on the Objects menu are context sensitive. If you select a unit and the Disaggregate command is available, then the unit is in the aggregated state. Similarly, if you view a unit in the Objects List View, if it is aggregated, you cannot expand it in the tree. If it is disaggregated, you can expand it to see its subordinates.

You can also view its state explicitly on the State Data page of the Information dialog box.

➤ **To expand a unit:**

1. Select the unit icon or its entry in the Objects List View of the Objects List Panel.
2. Choose **Objects > Unit > Expand**.

➤ **To expand a unit and all its subordinate units:**

1. Select the unit icon or its entry in the Objects List View of the Objects List Panel.
2. Choose **Objects > Unit > Expand All**.

➤ **To collapse a unit one level:**

1. Select any member of the unit.
2. Choose **Objects > Unit > Collapse**.

➤ **To collapse a unit to its root level:**

1. Select any member of the unit.
2. Choose **Objects > Unit > Collapse All**.

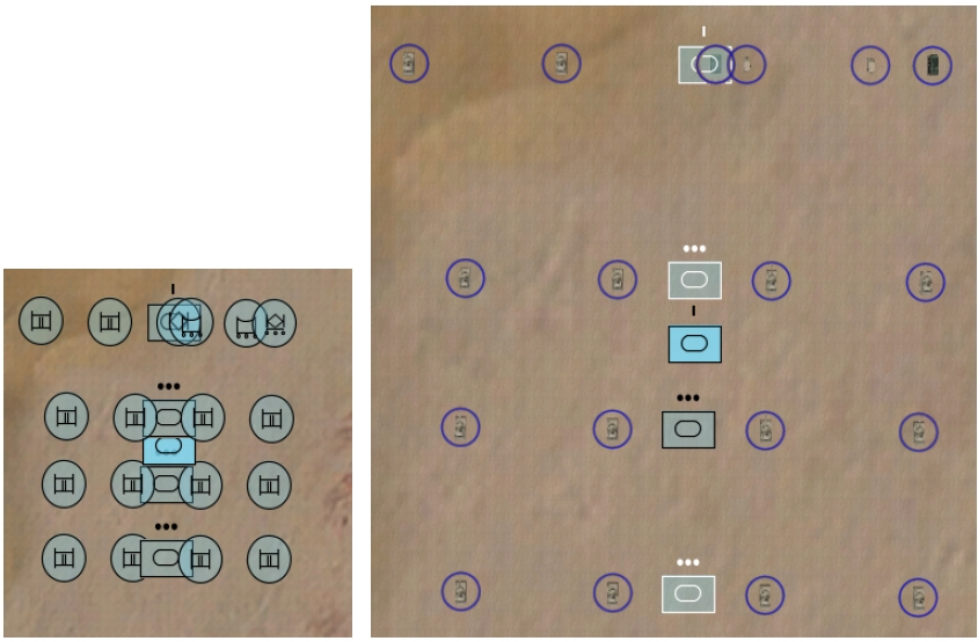
## 24.3. Displaying Ghosted Icons

If you want to select units, you need to collapse them so that you can select the unit icon. However, when you do this, you can no longer see where individual subordinate simulation objects are located and if subordinates are destroyed, you cannot see which ones are destroyed and which are functional. VR-Forces provides the following options for displaying unit icons so that you can work with them in a way that best meets your visualization and simulation object management needs:

- Display ghosted icons for hidden simulation objects.
- Allow ghosted icons to be selected.
- Display all unit members.
- Manually expand and collapse the display.
- Display leaf-level unit members.

In the Plan View observer mode, when you display ghosted units, the unit icon is displayed normally, and the subordinate members are displayed using semi-transparent icons. In 3D observer modes, units that are subordinate to the top level unit are displayed using semi-transparent icons. Leaf-level entities are displayed using the appropriate model for the observer mode (Figure 210).

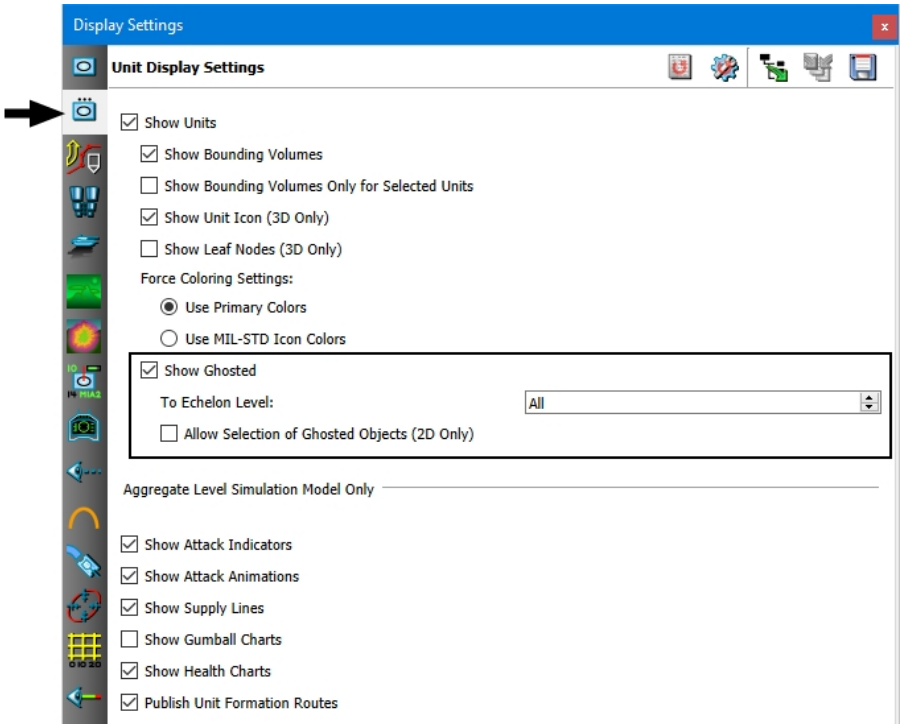
**Figure 210. Ghosted icons**




➤ **To configure the display of unit icons:**

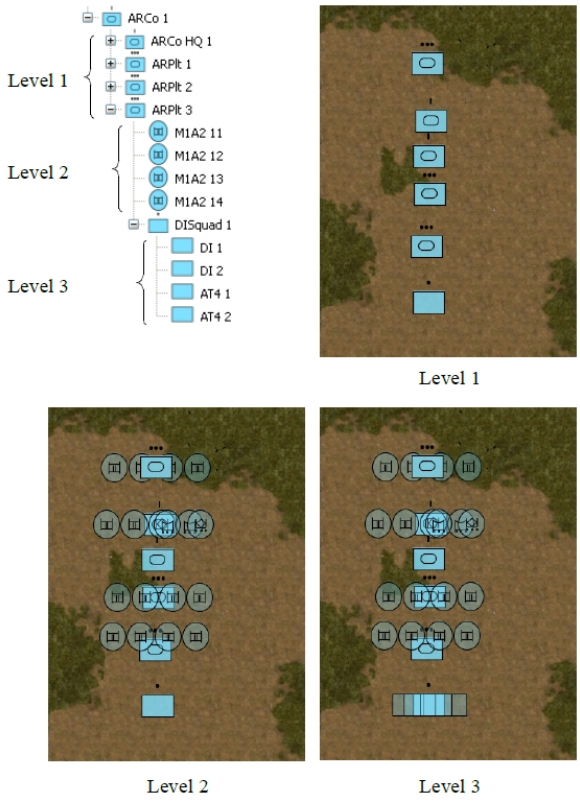
1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Unit Display Settings page (Figure 211).

**Figure 211. Unit Display Settings page**




3. To display unit members based on the current level of aggregation only, clear Show Ghosted.
4. To display ghosted icons:
    a. Select Show Ghosted.
    b. In the To Echelon Level box, select the level of aggregation to show ghosted icons for. To show all levels without needing to consider how many levels there are, select All. Figure 212 illustrates the effect of changing the echelon level for displaying ghosted icons for the VR-Forces unit hierarchy shown.
    c. To allow selection of ghosted icons (2D view only), select Allow Selection of Ghosted Icons. (In 3D views, you can always select entities at the leaf level.)

**Figure 212. Displaying ghosted icons by echelon level**




## 24.4. Displaying Unit Icons and Bounding Volumes

VR-Forces lets you configure when to display unit icons and bounding volumes. Bounding volumes are translucent polygons that show the extents of the unit. This is useful when the individual entity icons or models are not displayed. You can configure icons and bounding volumes as follows:

- Enable and disable the display of units. When disabled, only the 2D icons or 3D models for leaf level unit members are displayed.
- Enable and disable the display of bounding volumes. Bounding volumes are displayed only for collapsed units. You can restrict the display of bounding volumes to the selected units.
- In 3D observer modes, enable or disable the display of unit icons.

Figure 213 shows a unit bounding volume in Stealth observer mode, with leaf nodes displayed.

**Figure 213. 3D bounding volume**

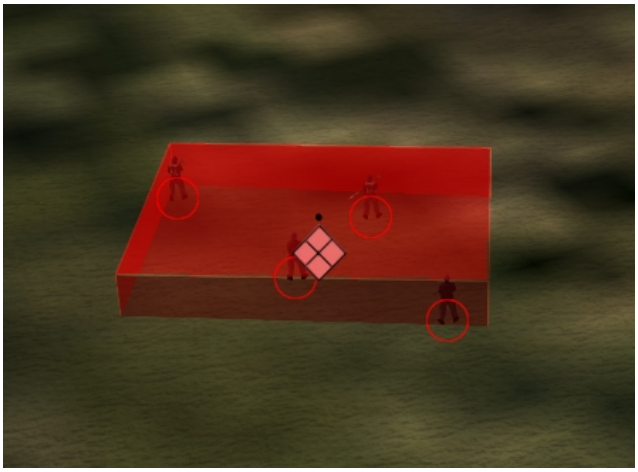
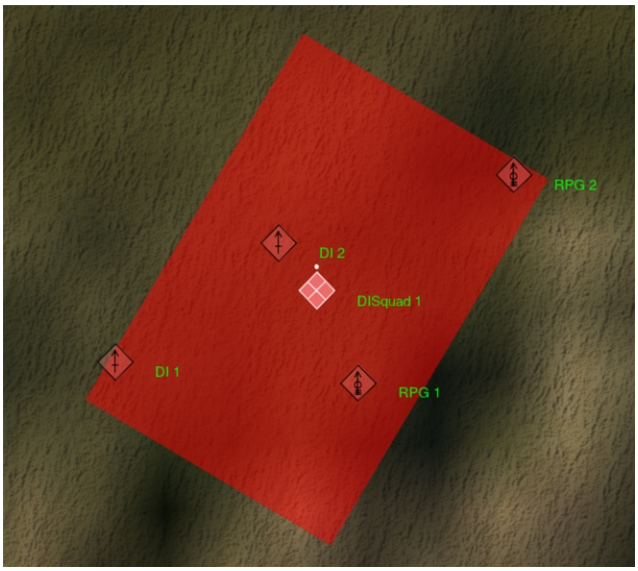


Figure 214 shows a unit bounding volume in Plan View observer mode, with ghosting enabled.

**Figure 214. 2D bounding volume**




You can display unit icons without showing bounding volumes and vice versa.

➤ **To configure the display of unit icons and bounding volumes:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Unit Display Settings page (Figure 211 on page 534).
3. To enable the display of unit icons, bounding volumes, or both, select Show Units.
4. To display bounding volumes for collapsed units, select Show Bounding Volumes.

5. To restrict the display of bounding volumes to the selected units, select Show Bounding Volumes Only for Selected Units.
6. To display unit icons in 3D observer modes, select Show Aggregate Icon (3D Only).

---

You can also enable and disable units by choosing **Settings > Units** or by selecting the Units button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

---

### 24.4.1 Specifying the Color Scheme for Unit Bounding Volumes

Unit bounding volumes can be displayed using primary colors or MIL-STD colors.

➤ **To specify the color scheme to use for unit bounding volumes:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Unit Display Settings page (Figure 211 on page 534).
3. Select the Force Coloring Settings option that you want (Use Primary Colors or Use MIL-STD Icon Colors).

# V. Tasks

This section describes tasks and scripted tasks and sets.

# Introduction to Tasks

VR-Forces simulation objects can execute a variety of movement and tactical tasks. These tasks can be assigned in plans or through the Task menu. Tasks assigned outside of a plan are called independent tasks.

Some tasks are mutually exclusive with other tasks, for example, a simulation object cannot execute two different movement tasks at the same time. Other tasks, such as Send Text Message, can run concurrently with movement tasks. When you give a task to a simulation object, if the new task is mutually exclusive with the current task, the simulation object immediately stops the current task and begins the new one. If the new task is not mutually exclusive with the current task, the simulation object executes the new task and continues with the previous task. For information about how to configure mutually exclusive tasks, please see "25.9. Configuring Task Execution Rules" on page 570 .

If a simulation object has a plan, when you give it an independent task, it abandons the rest of the plan.

Independent tasks are useful for assigning tasks to simulation objects without the need to edit a plan. You can assign them interactively, so simulation participants can respond immediately to events in a simulation by assigning new tasks to a simulation object as they might have to do in the field. General issues for assigning tasks are described in detail in "Appendix 25. Assigning Tasks" on page 543. Specific task procedures are in the succeeding chapters.

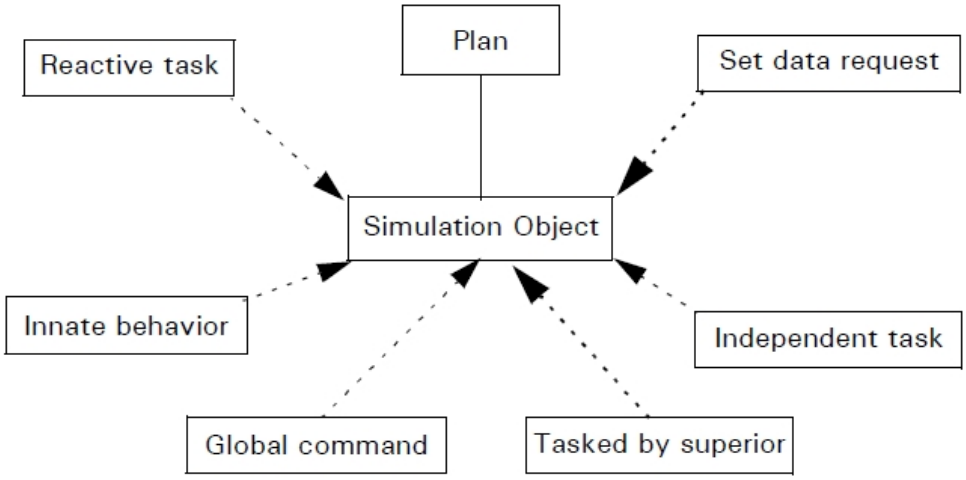
Many tasks are implemented as part of the VR-Forces code (C++ tasks) and cannot be added to or changed by end-users. Other tasks, called scripted tasks, are implemented using Lua scripts. You can edit scripted tasks and write new ones. For details, please see "31. Creating Scripted Tasks and Sets" on page 713.

VR-Forces has a special type of scripted task, called a reactive task, that does not get explicitly assigned to simulation objects. Reactive tasks monitor the simulation and run only if certain conditions are met. For information about reactive tasks, please see "25.3. Reactive Tasks" on page 552.

A third type of scripted task is the background process. Background processes run continuously to handle certain types of ongoing aggregate-level activities, such as consuming or receiving supplies, calculating a unit’s footprint, and automatically attacking opposing forces. For information about background processes, please see "32.11. Background Processes" on page 783.

Figure 215 illustrates the many ways that a simulation object can have its task, behavior, and state changed.

**Figure 215. Inputs to simulation object actions**



# 25. Assigning Tasks

This chapter provides general details about how to assign tasks to simulation objects. For the procedures for assigning tasks, please see the rest of the chapters in this section.


25.1. Assigning Tasks to Simulation Objects ..... 545
25.1.1 Task Procedures ..... 545
25.1.2 C++ Tasks and Scripted Tasks ..... 545
25.1.3 Concurrent Task Execution ..... 545
25.1.4 How Do I Know Which Simulation Objects Can Execute a Task? ..... 547
25.1.5 Escaping the Task Assignment Process ..... 548
25.1.6 Specifying Parameters for Tasks ..... 548
25.1.7 Viewing Task Status ..... 549
25.1.8 Filtering the Object Selection Lists ..... 550
25.1.9 Skipping (Stopping) a Task ..... 551
25.2. Assigning Tasks to Units ..... 551
25.2.1 Convoy Tasks ..... 552
25.2.2 Independently Tasking Unit Members ..... 552
25.3. Reactive Tasks ..... 552
25.3.1 Enabling Reactive Tasks ..... 554
25.3.2 Disabling Reactive Tasks ..... 554
25.3.3 Setting the Priority of a Reactive Task ..... 555
25.3.4 Managing Reactive Tasks ..... 556
25.3.5 Canceling a Reactive Task ..... 556
25.4. Using Behavior Sets to Manage Scripts ..... 557
25.4.1 Creating Behavior Sets ..... 558
25.4.2 Editing Behavior Sets ..... 559
25.4.3 Assigning a Behavior Set to a Force ..... 560
25.5. Entity Movement On Roads and Off Roads ..... 560
25.5.1 Road Driving Behavior ..... 561
25.5.2 Specifying the Side of the Road to Drive On ..... 561

25.6. Fixed-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors ..... 562
25.6.1 Placement of Newly Created Fixed-Wing Entities ..... 562
25.6.2 Fly Task Behavior Is Different from Move Task Behavior ..... 562
25.6.3 Specifying and Maintaining Altitude for Fixed-Wing Entities ..... 563
25.6.4 Fixed-Wing Entity Movement on the Ground and in the Air ..... 563
25.6.5 How Fixed-Wing Entities Take Off ..... 564
25.6.6 How Fixed-Wing Entities Land ..... 565
25.7. Rotary-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors ..... 566
25.8. Suppressive Fire Tasks ..... 567
25.8.1 Configuring Suppression Effects ..... 569
25.9. Configuring Task Execution Rules ..... 570
25.9.1 Configuring Action Categories ..... 570

# 25.1. Assigning Tasks to Simulation Objects

You can assign tasks to a simulation object as part of its plan, as part of a global plan, and independently of any plan. For conceptual information about tasks, please see "Introduction to Tasks" on page 540. For information about how to add a task to a plan, please see "37.1.1 Adding a Task or Set Data Request to a Plan" on page 876.

You cannot assign tasks to non-VR-Forces simulation objects. However, you can use a remote simulation object as a parameter in a task, for example, following a remote simulation object, or targeting a remote simulation object. For more information, please see "36.5.6 Using Non-VR-Forces Simulation Objects in Plans" on page 872.

## 25.1.1 Task Procedures

For the procedures for assigning tasks, please see chapters 26 through 30.

If your installation uses the VR-Forces API to add additional tasks, consult with your software engineers for procedural information. Please see "25.6. Fixed-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors" on page 562 and "25.7. Rotary-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors" on page 566, for additional information about assigning tasks to these simulation object types.

The instructions for creating tasks direct you to use options on the Task menu. However, all the options available on the main menu are also available on context-sensitive menus. A limited number of tasks are available on the Tasks Toolbar and on the Last Selected Object Panel.

## 25.1.2 C++ Tasks and Scripted Tasks

The VR-Forces application includes a basic set of tasks for movement, weapons fire, and other actions, that were developed using the VR-Forces Toolkit and the C++ API. System integrators often use the C++ API to add additional tasks before delivering VR-Forces to their customers. These tasks are called C++ tasks to distinguish them from another type of task – the scripted task. Scripted tasks, written in the Lua programming language, use the lower-level C++ tasks and the VR-Forces Lua API to build higher-order tasks for simulation objects. You do not need the VR-Forces Toolkit or a developers license to write scripted tasks.

To the VR-Forces end user, scripted tasks, most of which are listed on the Task menu, are indistinguishable from C++ tasks. For information about scripted tasks, please see "Appendix 31. Creating Scripted Tasks and Sets" on page 713.

VR-Forces also supports two special categories of scripted tasks called reactive tasks and background processes. These tasks are not on the Task menu. Reactive tasks execute when a condition becomes true. For details, please see "25.3. Reactive Tasks" on page 552. Background processes run continuously. (For details, please see "30.73. Background Process List" on page 711.)

## 25.1.3 Concurrent Task Execution

Some tasks can execute at the same time. Some are mutually exclusive. If you assign a simulation object a task that is mutually exclusive with its current task, the current task is abandoned. If you assign a task that is not mutually exclusive with the current

task, it executes the new task while continuing to execute the previous task.

---

When you assign a mutually exclusive independent task, VR-Forces displays a prompt that asks you to confirm interruption of the current task. You can disable this prompt if you always want a new task to interrupt the current task. For details, please see "Enabling and Disabling the Task Confirmation Prompt" below.

---

C++ tasks are organized into the following groups:

- Weapon
- Movement
- Radio
- Depth control

All tasks within a group are mutually exclusive among themselves. For example, all movement tasks are mutually exclusive. Simulation objects that are moving can usually execute a task from one of the other groups at the same time. For example, simulation objects can execute the various Send tasks while they are executing movement tasks. When you create a scripted task, you can specify which groups it conflicts with. For information about how to configure mutually exclusive tasks, please see "25.9. Configuring Task Execution Rules" on page 570. For information about scripted tasks, please see "Appendix 31. Creating Scripted Tasks and Sets" on page 713. For information about how to use concurrent tasks in plans, please see "36.5.2 Using Concurrent Tasks in Plans" on page 871.

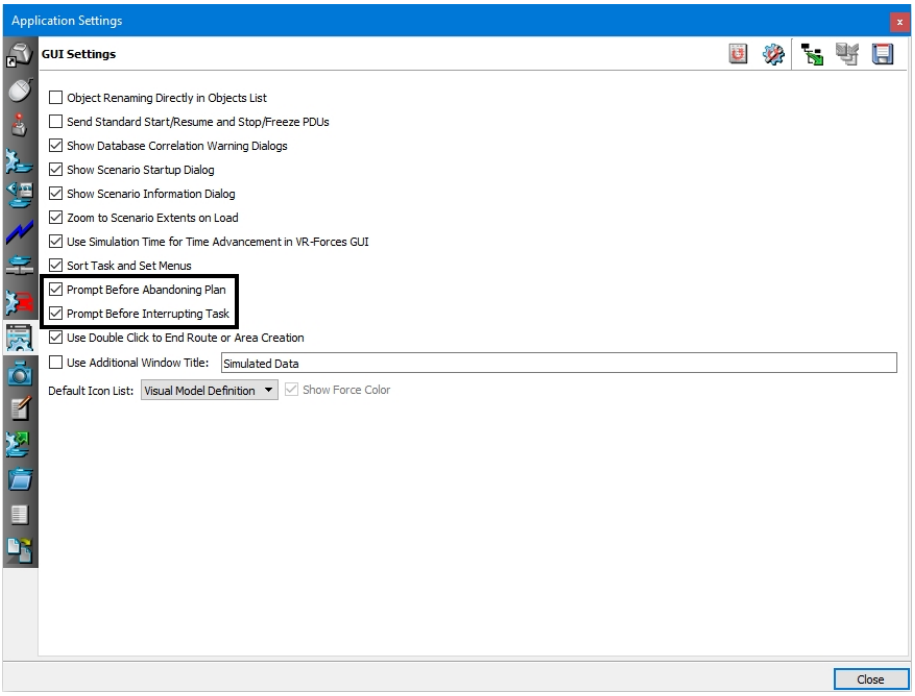
### Enabling and Disabling the Task Confirmation Prompt

When you give a simulation object an independent task, if it is executing a task or a plan, VR-Forces informs you that the new task will override the task or plan and asks you to confirm the action. You can enable and disable the confirmation prompt.

➤ **To enable or disable the task override confirmation prompt:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the GUI Settings page (Figure 216).

**Figure 216. GUI Settings page**




3. To enable or disable the prompt for abandoning a plan, select or clear the Prompt Before Abandoning Plan check box.
4. To enable or disable the prompt for interrupting a task, select or clear the Prompt Before Interrupting Task check box.
5. Click Close.

### 25.1.4 How Do I Know Which Simulation Objects Can Execute a Task?

Some VR-Forces tasks apply to almost all simulation objects, such as Radio tasks and some movement tasks. Others are valid only for particular platforms or even particular entity types. Sometimes it is obvious which entity types can execute a task. For example, you would expect that Fixed-Wing Land only applies to fixed-wing entities. Similarly, Raise Periscope applies to submarines. However, for other tasks, it is not always evident which simulation object can execute a task.

Simulation objects can execute tasks for which they have an appropriate controller. They access most task controllers through systems. Therefore, simulation objects can execute the tasks supported by their various movement, weapon, sensor, and other systems. For example, to deploy naval mines, an entity needs a Naval Mine Deployment system.

To see which systems a simulation object has, and thereby infer which tasks it can execute, you can examine the simulation object's systems in the Simulation Object Editor. You can also refer to *VR-Forces Entity Model Catalog*, which lists the systems for each simulation object configured in the Simulation Object Editor. "Appendix E. Systems and System Usage" on page 1639 lists each system and the scripted tasks associated with it.

### 25.1.5 Escaping the Task Assignment Process

You can escape the task assignment process at any point before you complete it.

➤ To escape the task assignment process, in the task dialog box, click Cancel.

### 25.1.6 Specifying Parameters for Tasks

VR-Forces lets you specify task parameters in dialog boxes or by selecting them on the terrain. Many tasks require you to select a tactical graphic or a simulation object.

If you select the appropriate object, the selection is reflected in the task dialog box.

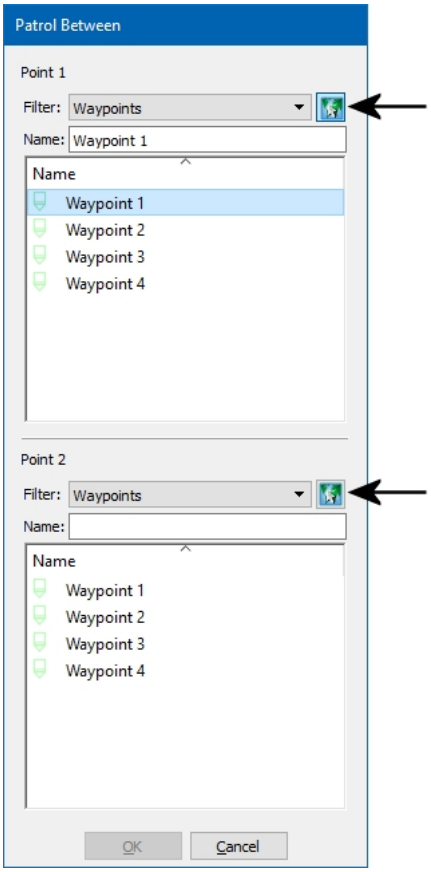
If you prefer, you can specify all parameters in the task dialog box. Depending on the zoom level of the terrain and the number of simulation objects and tactical graphics you have created, it may be easier to select an object from a list than to select it from a densely packed group of icons.

#### Selecting Objects in Multiple List Dialog Boxes

Some task dialog boxes, such as Patrol Between, require you to select multiple objects, each of which is selected from a different list.

You can select the objects in the list window or in the display window. At any given moment, one of the lists is the active list and a selection in the display window is reflected in that list. The active list is indicated by the button next to the Filter list (Figure 217).

**Figure 217. Multiple list dialog box**




The active list is determined as follows:

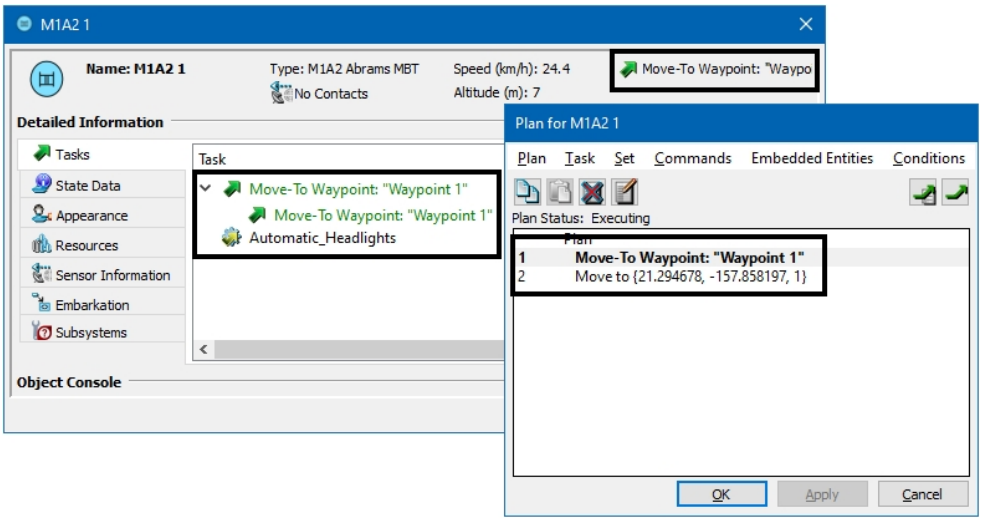
- When you first open the dialog box, the first list window is automatically active. If you select an object in the display, it is selected in the first list window. Then the second list window automatically becomes active and the next object you select in the display is selected in the second list window. This sequence continues until all list windows have a selection. Then the last window stays as the active list.
- Selecting an object in a list window makes it active.
- Clicking the Filter button ( ) next to the Filter list makes that list window active. It stays active until you click the button to inactivate it or click in another list window.
- If all lists are inactive (by clicking the Filter button to put it into the unselected state), you can click objects in the display without affecting the selections in the list windows.

## 25.1.7 Viewing Task Status

The Information dialog box for a simulation object lists its current task on the summary section. It also lists the state of the reactive tasks that are enabled for the simulation object. If a simulation object is executing a task as part of its plan, you can

see which task it is executing by opening its Plan window (Figure 218). You can also see the current task on the Last Selected Object Panel and the Tasks page of the Information dialog box.

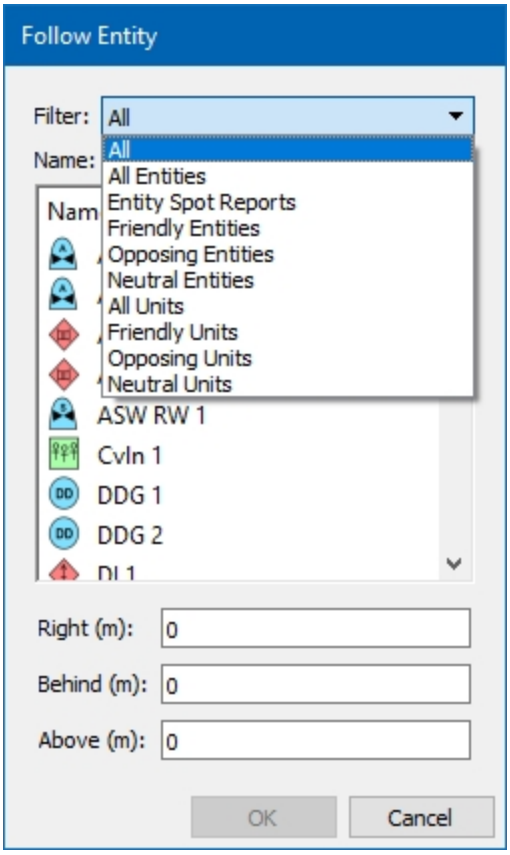
**Figure 218. Display of simulation object task status**




## 25.1.8 Filtering the Object Selection Lists

If a task requires you to select objects, you can filter the object selection list to make it easier to find the particular objects you need to select (Figure 219). If you are selecting simulation objects, for example in a Follow Entity task, you can display all simulation objects, individual simulation objects only, or units only. Within the latter two groups, you can display friendly or opposing simulation objects. In a Move To task, you can filter for waypoints, friendly simulation objects, or opposing simulation objects.

**Figure 219. Simulation object filter list**




➤ To filter a simulation object list, in a task or set data request dialog box, choose the filter type from the list.

### 25.1.9 Skipping (Stopping) a Task

You can instruct a simulation object to stop executing its current task. If the simulation object is executing a plan, it moves to the next task in its plan. If there are no further tasks, the simulation object waits for further orders.

➤ To order a simulation object to skip a task, choose **Objects > Manage Plan > Skip Task**.

---

- Skip Task does not apply to members of a unit that are executing tasks assigned to them by the unit leader.
- You can also stop tasks from the Task Status page of the Information dialog box. For details, please see "25.3.5 Canceling a Reactive Task" on page 556.

---

## 25.2. Assigning Tasks to Units

➤ To assign a task to a unit, select the unit, then assign it a task as you would any individual entity.

### 25.2.1 Convoy Tasks

VR-Forces has two tasks for moving in convoys – Convoy Along and Convoy To. These tasks can only be assigned to units made up of ground vehicles. When a unit receives a convoy task, it organizes itself into a column based on the echelon IDs. Then it executes the task.

Once the task begins, the members of the unit try to maintain a consistent distance apart from each other. You can configure this distance by editing the Ground Convoy Movement system. The distance is specified by the **separation-distance** parameter. You can also specify an amount by which the separation distance can vary using the **separation-tolerance** parameter.

---

If VR-Forces can determine that a convoy task is not appropriate for a given unit, for example a rotary wing unit, the convoy tasks are not available on the Task menu. However, in other cases, such as mixed units or if you aggregate disparate entities as Ground Unit, it is up to you to know whether or not a unit consists only of ground vehicles or contains platforms that do not support convoy tasks.

---

### 25.2.2 Independently Tasking Unit Members

Members of a disaggregated unit can have individual plans or be assigned tasks independently of the unit. If a member of a unit is independently tasked, when it completes its task it automatically becomes tasked by its superior. You do not need to give it a Tasked by Superior set data request. You can override this behavior by setting an object's **tasked-by-superior-upon-task-complete** parameter in the object parameter database to False.

If a Skip Task command is given to an independently tasked subordinate, it remains in the independently tasked state until it either completes a task or it is given a Set Tasked by Superior set data request.

When a simulation object becomes tasked by its superior, it does not execute the task that the unit is currently executing. It receives the next task that is sent out by the unit.

---

When a disaggregated unit changes to the aggregated state, the individual subordinates cease to exist. Therefore, if a subordinate is executing an independent task, when the unit changes state, the task activity ends immediately.

---

## 25.3. Reactive Tasks

Reactive tasks are a special category of scripted tasks. Unlike other tasks (whether scripted or C++), reactive tasks do not begin to execute as soon as they are assigned. They monitor events in a simulation and execute in response to conditions specified in

the script. In this way they are similar to collision avoidance, which takes over entity movement in response to an imminent collision, or trigger statements in plans, which get triggered when a condition becomes true.

Because reactive tasks are scripted tasks, you are not restricted to the few conditions available in plans. You have the full VR-Forces Lua API available to script the conditions and the resulting behaviors. Like other scripted tasks, reactive tasks are either scenario-specific or system reactive tasks.

Reactive tasks have the following behaviors and characteristics:

- Reactive tasks can be automatically enabled for a category of simulation object. They can also be individually enabled and disabled.
- When a reactive task is activated, the current task is suspended. When the reactive task concludes, the simulation object resumes the previous task, if possible. There may be cases where the previous task is no longer meaningful due to changes in the scenario.
- Reactive tasks support task concurrency.
- Reactive tasks can be interrupted by other reactive tasks. Precedence among reactive tasks is based on a task's priority. If a reactive task is executing and a reactive task with a higher priority gets triggered, it suspends the current reactive task. When the higher priority task completes, the lower priority task resumes. When it completes, the original task resumes. Multiple nesting of tasks in this way is permitted. Reactive tasks with the same or lower priority do not interrupt the active task.
- Reactive tasks can have parameters, just like any other task. If a reactive task is enabled and the parameters are not set, it may not work as expected. A well-written reactive task should have default values for parameters, but VR-Forces does not enforce this.
- Users can change the priority of a reactive task while a scenario is running. This affects the next activation of the task.
- If a reactive task is interrupted by a non-concurrent independent task assignment from the Task menu or a global plan, the reactive task and all suspended tasks are canceled and the new task is executed. However, it is still possible that the new task could be interrupted by the same or a different reactive task.
- Active reactive tasks can be canceled by a VR-Forces user.
- After a reactive task is complete, it enters the enabled state and can become triggered again.
- The status of a reactive task is displayed on the Task Status page of the Information dialog box, along with the status of the current or suspended task.

The following sections describe how to manage reactive tasks in a scenario. VR-Forces includes a collection of reactive tasks, listed in "29.12. Reactive Tasks" on page 678. For information about how to write and configure reactive tasks, please see "Appendix 32. Writing Scripts" on page 755.

## 25.3.1 Enabling Reactive Tasks

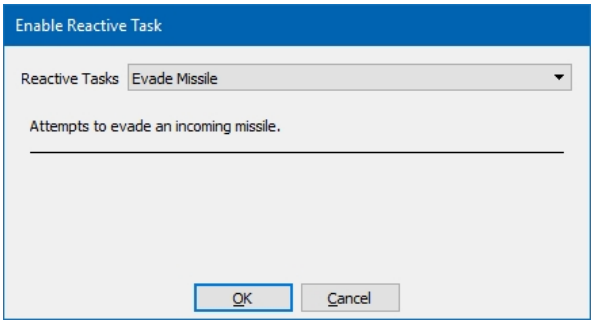
Like other scripted tasks, when a reactive task is written, it is specified as being valid for one or more simulation object types. It can also be configured to be enabled by default. If a reactive task is not enabled by default, you can enable it for specific simulation objects.

This procedure applies to the currently selected simulation object. If you have multiple Information windows open, selecting a reactive task on the Task Status page of a simulation object does not select the simulation object and does not make it the task affected by this procedure.

➤ **To enable a reactive task:**

1. Select the simulation object for which you want to enable the task.
2. Choose **Set > Reactive Tasks > Enable**. The Enable Reactive Task dialog box opens (Figure 220). If there are no reactive tasks available, the dialog box states this. This condition occurs if all appropriate reactive tasks are already enabled or there are no reactive tasks for this entity type.

**Figure 220. Enable Reactive Task dialog box**




3. In the Reactive Tasks list, select the task you want to enable. If the task requires parameters, the dialog box redisplays and lists the parameters.
4. If necessary, specify the parameters.
5. Click OK.

You can also enable reactive tasks in the Manage Reactive Tasks dialog box. For details, please see "25.3.4 Managing Reactive Tasks" on page 556.

## 25.3.2 Disabling Reactive Tasks

You can disable reactive tasks on a per-simulation object basis. When you disable a reactive task, any active tasks continue to execute. However, no new instances of the disabled task will be activated.

This procedure applies to the currently selected simulation object. If you have multiple Information windows open, selecting a reactive task on the Task Status page of a simulation object does not select the simulation object and does not make it the task affected by this procedure.

➤ **To disable a reactive task for a simulation object:**

1. Select the simulation object for which you want to disable a reactive task.
2. Choose **Set > Reactive Tasks > Disable**. The Disable Reactive Task dialog box opens. If there are no reactive tasks available, the dialog box states this. This condition occurs if all appropriate reactive tasks are already disabled or there are no reactive tasks for this simulation object type.
3. In the Reactive Tasks list, select the task you want to disable.
4. Click OK.

You can also disable reactive tasks in the Manage Reactive Tasks dialog box. For details, please see "25.3.4 Managing Reactive Tasks" on the next page.

### 25.3.3 Setting the Priority of a Reactive Task

When a reactive task is created, it is assigned a priority. The priority determines which reactive tasks it can override or be overridden by. Priorities are expressed as integers, with 1 being the highest priority. You can change the priority of a reactive task on a per-simulation object basis.

This procedure applies to the currently selected simulation object. If you have multiple Information windows open, selecting a reactive task on the Task Status page of a simulation object does not select the simulation object and does not make it the task affected by this procedure.

➤ **To change the priority of a reactive task:**

1. Select the simulation object for which you want to change a reactive task's priority.
2. Choose **Set > Reactive Tasks > Priority**. The Reactive Task Priority dialog box opens. If there are no reactive tasks available, the dialog box states this.
3. In the Reactive Tasks list, select the task whose priority you want to change.
4. Select a priority in the box. The lower the number, the higher its priority.
5. Click OK.

You can also change priority in the Manage Reactive Tasks dialog box. For details, please see "25.3.4 Managing Reactive Tasks" below.

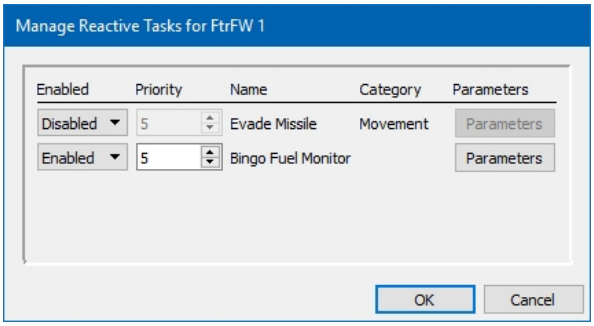
## 25.3.4 Managing Reactive Tasks

You can enable, disable, and change priority for all the reactive tasks that apply to a simulation object from the Manage Reactive Task dialog box.

➤ **To manage multiple reactive tasks for a simulation object:**

1. Select the simulation object for which you want to manage reactive tasks.
2. Choose **Set > Reactive Tasks > Manage** or choose **Objects > Manage Reactive Tasks**. The Manage Reactive Task dialog box opens (Figure 221). It lists each reactive task configured for this simulation object type, its status, and its priority. If a task requires parameters, you can set them.

**Figure 221. Manage Reactive Task dialog box**




3. For each task, to enable or disable, select an option from the list in the Enabled column.
4. For each task, change the priority by selecting an option in the box in the Priority column.
5. For each task that has parameters, click Parameters and set its parameters. (A task must be enabled to set its parameters.)
6. Click OK.

## 25.3.5 Canceling a Reactive Task

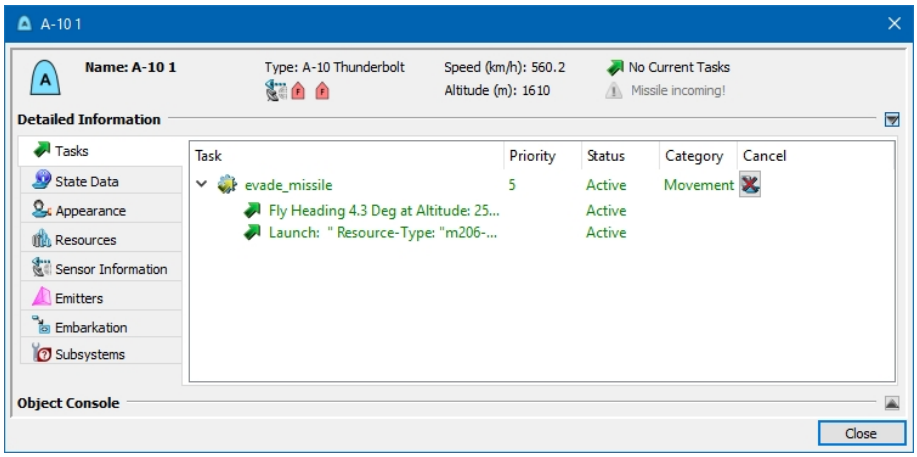
You can cancel a reactive task while it is executing. When you cancel a reactive task, the simulation object resumes the suspended task. However, if the condition that caused the reactive task to activate is still true, when you cancel a reactive task, it will usually immediately activate again.

You can also use this procedure to cancel (skip) a regular task.

➤ **To cancel a reactive task:**

1. Select the simulation object whose task you want to cancel.
2. Choose **Objects > Information**, or press **i**. The Information dialog box opens.
3. Select the Task Status page. If a reactive task is active, it has a button in the Cancel column (Figure 222).

**Figure 222. Active reactive task**




4. Right-click the active task and choose **Cancel Reactive Task**, or click the button in the Cancel column.

## 25.4. Using Behavior Sets to Manage Scripts

Behavior sets let you organize scripts so that a set of related tasks and set data requests can be enabled or disabled at the force level.

If a script is not assigned to a behavior set, its availability to a simulation object is determined by the following settings:

- The Valid for Entity Types list for the script.
- For tasks specific to systems, configuration of that system on a simulation object.
- For reactive tasks, the Enable/Disable setting in the Manage Reactive Tasks dialog box for the simulation object.

If a script is assigned to a behavior set, then in addition to the requirements in the previous list, it is available to simulation objects only if the behavior set is assigned to a force and only to simulation objects of that force. (You can assign a behavior set to more than one force.)

As an example of how you might use behavior sets, suppose that dismounted infantry react differently to an attack depending on whether they are operating in rural terrain or in urban terrain. You have a set of scripted tasks that you have written for reacting to attack in each of these two situations. If you are not using behavior sets, then to manage which tasks would get used when the simulation objects are under attack, you might use one of the following strategies:

- Tell users not to use the inappropriate tasks.
- Enable and disable the correct set of tasks in the Scripts dialog box before the start of the scenario.
- Enable and disable the tasks on a per simulation object basis in the Manage Reactive Tasks dialog box.

Shifting back and forth between simulations in different terrains might become a management problem.

Using behavior sets, you could:

1. Create a behavior set for rural terrain operations and one for urban operations.
2. Assign the relevant scripts to each behavior set.
3. Before you run a scenario, you would assign the behavior set you want to use to the force.

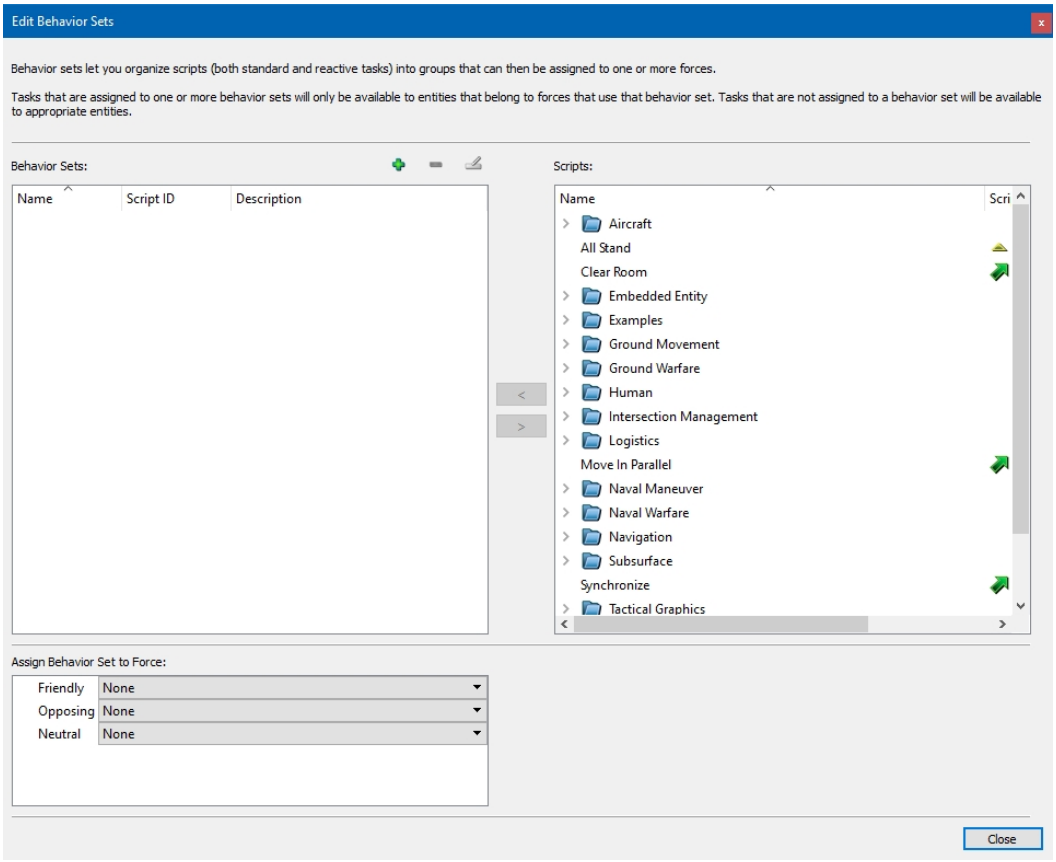
The tasks in the behavior set would be enabled and those in the unused behavior set would be disabled. There would be no further configuration required.

## 25.4.1 Creating Behavior Sets

➤ **To create a behavior set:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Behavior Sets**. The Edit Behavior Sets dialog box opens (Figure 223).

**Figure 223. Edit Behavior Sets dialog box**




2. Click the Add button ( ). The New Behavior Set Name dialog box opens.
3. Type a name for the behavior set.
4. Click OK.
5. In the Scripts list, select the scripts that you want to assign to this behavior set.
6. Click the left-facing arrow. The scripts are added to the behavior set. If you select a folder, all tasks in the folder get added to the behavior set. (You can also assign tasks to behavior sets in the Edit Script dialog box. For details, please see "31.2. Creating a New Script" on page 717.)
7. Optionally, assign the behavior set to a force.

## 25.4.2 Editing Behavior Sets

You can edit behavior sets, rename them, and delete them.

➤ **To edit behavior sets:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Behavior Sets**. The Edit Behavior Sets dialog box opens (Figure 223).
2. Expand the behavior set that you want to edit.

3. Add and remove scripts by selecting them and clicking the appropriate arrow button.

➤ To rename a behavior set, select it in the Behavior Sets list, click the Rename button ( ), and type a new name.

➤ To delete a behavior set, select it in the Behavior Sets list and click the Delete button ( ).

### 25.4.3 Assigning a Behavior Set to a Force

You can only assign one behavior set to a force at any given time.

➤ **To assign a behavior set to a force:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Behavior Sets**. The Edit Behavior Sets dialog box opens (Figure 223).
2. In the Assign Behavior Set to Force window, click the list for the force to which you want to assign a behavior set.
3. Select the behavior set that you want to assign. If you do not want any behavior sets assigned, select the blank line in the list.

## 25.5. Entity Movement On Roads and Off Roads

Some terrains have vector road networks. Ground vehicles can use these networks to move precisely through the terrain. The tasks for moving on roads are distinct from the tasks for moving without respect to road networks. (For a description of how entities move when they use road driving, please see "25.5.1 Road Driving Behavior" on the facing page.) If you want entities to move both on and off roads, you need to understand how these tasks interact.

The road driving tasks are Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads) and Move to Location (Plan Along Roads). The generic movement tasks are Move to Location and Move to Waypoint.

---

! Road driving tasks are valid only for ground vehicles. If you give a road driving task (including Move To (Plan Along Roads), Treat Route as Road, and Use Roads in pattern of life default plans) to any other type of entity, it will fail.

---

When you give a simulation object a generic Move To task, it moves directly towards its destination. If navigation data is available, it plans a path using that data. If no navigation data is available, the entity avoids obstacles, but otherwise does not pay attention to the terrain except to the extent that it cannot move on certain soil types or terrains that are too steep.

When you give an entity a Plan Along Roads task, it looks for a road network. If it finds one:

- It moves to the nearest point on the road.
- It moves along the road network to the nearest point to the final destination.
- It moves to the final destination.

---

The road driving feature in VR-Forces requires that the road vectors making the network be connected at their edges. If your terrain's data does not have accurate positions for road ends, causing them to be disconnected, VR-Forces might not be able to plan a path along those roads.

Vehicles follow vector features and ground clamp to the terrain. If there is a crater in the vehicle's path, the vehicle drives through it. If a bridge is destroyed, the road vector remains and the vehicle drives across the terrain that the bridge previously spanned.

---

## 25.5.1 Road Driving Behavior

The Move To (Plan Along Roads) tasks use road driving behaviors intended to provide realistic behavior of multiple cars on a road network. When an entity is given one of these tasks:

- It clamps to the road and does not deviate from it.
- It goes around corners accurately.
- It ignores any obstacles that are near to the road and which would ordinarily trigger obstacle avoidance. The vehicle only responds to obstacles that block the road. This does not include craters.
- If a vehicle is blocking its progress and there is an adjacent lane in the road that is clear, the entity passes the blocking vehicle.

In the Move Along Route task, you can specify that VR-Forces treat the route as a road. The entity would then use the road driving system to follow the route.

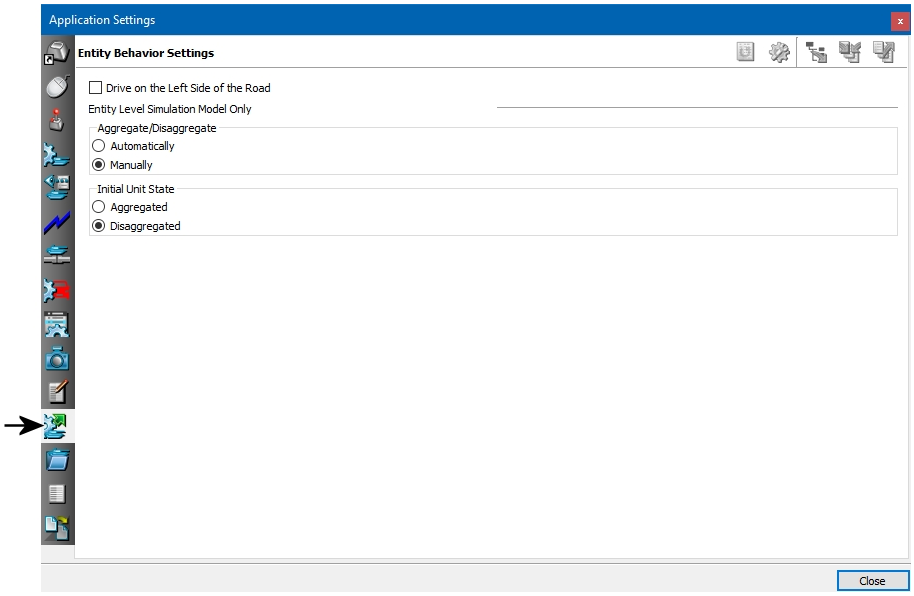
## 25.5.2 Specifying the Side of the Road to Drive On

By default, entities that use road driving behavior drive on the right side of the road. You can specify that entities drive on the left side of the road. For this setting to take effect, you must make the change before you load a scenario or before you rewind it. If you change the setting after you rewind a scenario or while the scenario is running, the behavior does not change until the next time you rewind the scenario.

➤ **To specify the side of the road to drive on:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Behavior Settings page (Figure 224).

**Figure 224. Entity Behavior Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Drive on the Left Side of the Road check box.
4. Click Close.

## 25.6. Fixed-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors

This section describes the behaviors of fixed-wing entities supplied with VR-Forces and the issues you should keep in mind when assigning tasks and set data requests.

### 25.6.1 Placement of Newly Created Fixed-Wing Entities

When you create a fixed-wing entity, it is placed on the ground. If you want a fixed-wing entity to start a scenario in the air, you must set its altitude at the beginning of the scenario. It will loiter at the specified altitude.

### 25.6.2 Fly Task Behavior Is Different from Move Task Behavior

Fixed-wing entities can move in response to Fly tasks (Fly Altitude, Fly Heading, and so on) and Move tasks (Move to Waypoint, Move Along Route, and so on). There are important differences between how fixed-wing entities respond to the different classes of movement tasks. Fixed-wing entities can move on the ground (taxi), in which case they move like ground vehicles.

For Move and Patrol tasks, if a fixed-wing entity is in the air, when it arrives at a point or the end point of a route, it loiters.

Fly tasks are only for entities that are in the air. You cannot use them to cause an entity to take off or land. For Fly tasks:

- Entities move to a new altitude at the specified heading, at the specified climb or descent rate.
- When they reach the new altitude, they continue flying at their current heading.

Given these differences, if you want to change heading, altitude, or both for an entity that is in the air and not executing a Move or Patrol task, use a Fly task. These tasks are not designed to have an entity move to a particular location or along a route. To have an entity move to a particular location or along a route, use a Move or Patrol task. In most cases, Fly Altitude will be preferable to Move to Altitude.

### 25.6.3 Specifying and Maintaining Altitude for Fixed-Wing Entities

You can explicitly change a fixed-wing entity's altitude in the following ways:

- The Altitude set data request moves an entity immediately to the specified altitude.
- The Move to Altitude task causes an entity to spiral to the specified altitude at the same coordinates that it had when it received the task.
- The Fly Altitude and Fly Heading and Altitude tasks cause the entity to move smoothly to the new altitude while continuing to fly at its current or newly specified heading.

An entity's altitude changes implicitly if it is given a Move or Patrol task in which the altitude of the target point or vertex is different from the entity's current altitude. When moving along a route, the entity changes altitude as it flies along a line between vertices.

When you assign a task that includes a location and you specify the location by clicking on the terrain, the default altitude is zero. If you do not specify a non-zero altitude in the task dialog box, VR-Forces uses the altitude of the entity at the time the task is assigned. This prevents you from inadvertently specifying a location that would cause the entity to crash.

### 25.6.4 Fixed-Wing Entity Movement on the Ground and in the Air

Fixed-wing aircraft support takeoff and landing. Since they can move on the ground and in the air, you need to understand their behavior in these different environments. Table 23 and Table 24 describe how fixed-wing entities respond to Move To, Move Along Route, and Patrol Route tasks depending on their current location. The rest of this section provides additional details about take-off and landing.

**Table 23. Fixed-wing entity Move To behavior**

| If entity is on/in the: | and waypoint is on/in the: | the entity: |
|---|---|---|
| Ground | Ground | taxis to point. |
| Ground | Air | takes off towards the point. |
| Air | Air | flies to point. |
| Air | Ground | crashes. |

**Table 24. Fixed-wing entity route-following behavior**

| If entity is on/in the: | and next vertex is on/in the: | the entity: |
|---|---|---|
| Ground | Ground | taxis to vertex. |
| Ground | Air | takes off toward the vertex. |
| Air | Air | flies to the vertex. |
| Air | Ground | tries to land at the vertex. |

The aircraft looks ahead a configured distance in its current flight direction. If any terrain blocks the path between it and its destination vertex on the route, it ascends to avoid the terrain. When no blocking terrain is found, it resumes flying toward the destination vertex directly.

## 25.6.5 How Fixed-Wing Entities Take Off

You can have fixed-wing aircraft take off using the Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway task (for details, please see "26.10. Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway" on page 582) or by using innate behavior. This section describes take-off using innate behavior.

Fixed-wing entities take off by moving to a waypoint that is above ground level or by following a route that has a vertex above ground level.

When you task a fixed-wing entity to move to a waypoint that is above ground level, the entity orients itself directly towards that point and accelerates in the direction of the point. When it reaches its minimum lift speed, it takes off and rises to the altitude of the point it is moving to. You can control the distance required to take off by setting the **max-thrust parameter**.

When a fixed-wing entity takes off, it does not take into account the soil type or terrain, except that if the slope of the terrain along which the entity must move to take off is greater than the **max-slope** parameter, the entity halts.

Fixed-wing entities do not know anything about runways that may be part of a terrain database. When you create a waypoint towards which an entity will take off, or create a route along which an entity will take off, you are responsible for ensuring that the entity is properly oriented towards the runway.

If an entity takes off as part of route following, you can define a runway with two points on the ground. If an entity detects that the point in the route after the one it is moving towards is in the air, it uses the current point as the take-off direction, but takes off as soon as possible and flies to the point in the air. Figure 225 illustrates this behavior.

**Figure 225. Defining a runway for take-off**

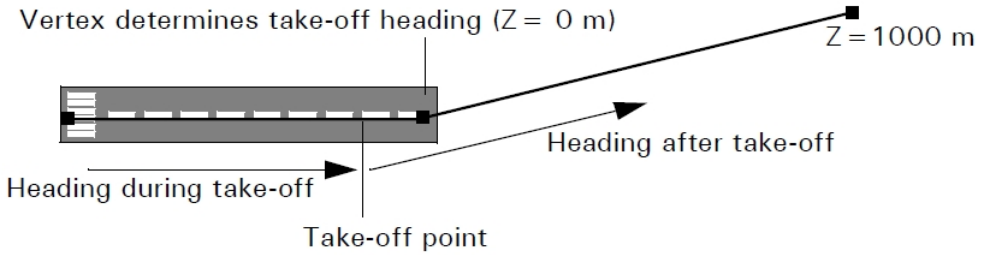



Figure 25-10. Defining a runway for take-off

## 25.6.6 How Fixed-Wing Entities Land

You can have aircraft land using a fixed-wing landing task (see "26.8. Fixed-Wing Land At Aerodrome" on page 580, or "26.9. Fixed-Wing Land On Runway" on page 581), or as described in this section. Using a fixed-wing landing task automates the process of setting up the approach route and landing.

A fixed-wing entity can land only in the context of following or patrolling a route. When a fixed-wing entity follows a route and determines that the next vertex in the route is on the ground, it decelerates as it reduces altitude towards that vertex. If it does not have enough distance from the previous vertex to decelerate sufficiently, it may crash. To ensure adequate deceleration, you may want to create a trigger that sets the entity's speed when it approaches the runway.

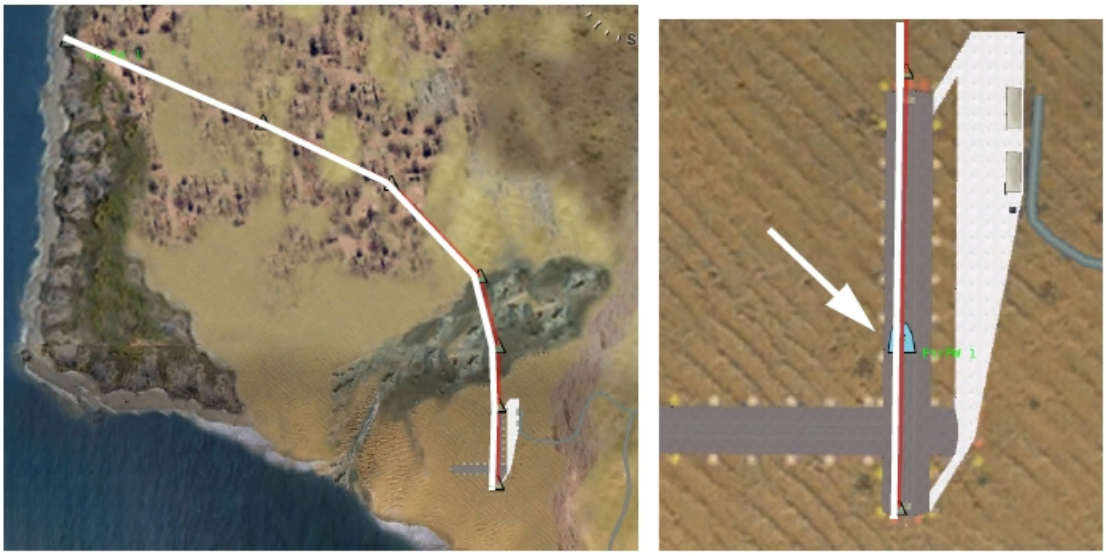
---

Any time an entity is within the **on-ground-tolerance** distance of the terrain and it is moving within 10 percent of its minimum lift speed, it will try to land. The **on-ground-tolerance** for most fixed-wing entities is 10 meters.

---

To orient an entity for landing, you may have to create several vertices prior to the runway to get the entity properly lined up. Figure 225 shows two different routes ending at an airport (the routes have been edited to improve visibility). The first route has vertices that line up the entity with the runway. The second route curves in towards the runway, so the entity does not approach the runway in a straight line. Therefore, as it reaches the landing point, it is not lined up with the runway and it lands on the taxiway.

**Figure 226. Landing fixed-wing entities**



Entity lands on runway

Entity lands to left of runway

# 25.7. Rotary-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors

This section describes the behaviors of rotary-wing entities supplied with VR-Forces and the issues you should keep in mind when assigning tasks and set data requests.

Rotary-wing entities get created on the ground unless you specify an altitude at creation. (For details about specifying an altitude when you create an air platform, please see "14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude" on page 380.)

If a rotary-wing entity is airborne and it is not assigned a task, it hovers at the specified location and altitude. When it completes a task, it hovers in the location where it completed the task.

The `terrain-check` parameter determines how a rotary-wing entity interacts with the terrain. If `terrain-check` is False, a rotary-wing entity ignores the terrain. It could appear to fly below ground. However, when `terrain-check` is set to False, VR-Forces does not have to check ground points, so performance may improve.

When `terrain-check` is True, rotary-wing entities interact with the terrain. If a rotary-wing entity approaches a ground point at three meters per second or less, it lands. If it approaches the ground at a greater speed, it crashes.

---

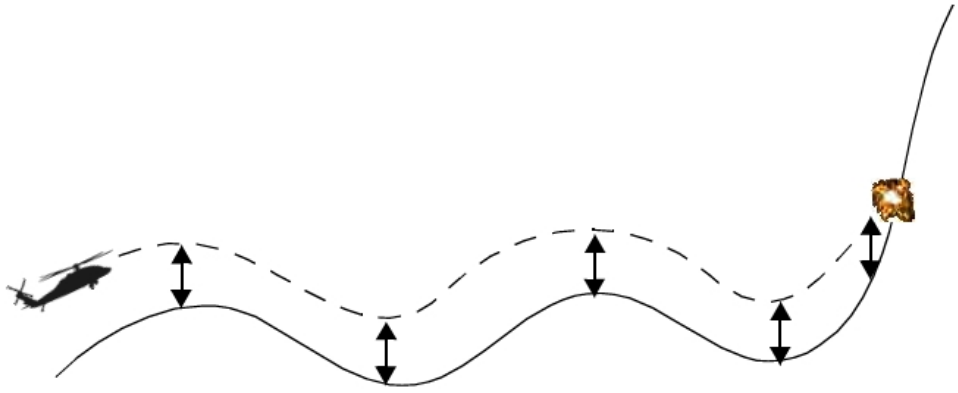
When you assign a task that includes a location and you specify the location by clicking on the terrain, the default altitude is zero. If you do not specify a non-zero altitude in the task dialog box, VR-Forces uses the altitude of the entity at the time the task is assigned. This prevents you from inadvertently specifying a location that would cause the entity to crash.

---

Helicopters have a basic terrain avoidance algorithm that helps prevent crashing if they are sent to waypoints or follow routes that do not have an altitude. The terrain avoidance logic maintains a distance above the ground; it does not look ahead. So, a helicopter could crash if the terrain rises suddenly (Figure 227). You can view the terrain profile of the route to check for intersections with the terrain. (For details, please see"58.1.1 Displaying a Line's Terrain Profile" on page 1188.)

Rotary-wing aircraft take wind resistance and the weight of the aircraft, including the weight of any embarked objects, into account when calculating fuel consumption.

**Figure 227. Helicopter terrain avoidance**



## 25.8. Suppressive Fire Tasks

VR-Forces has two suppressive fire tasks.

- The Provide Suppressive Fire task tells an entity to fire at a simulation object such as a point, along a line, or in an area, one targeting one meter above the terrain. If the entity must stand or move to the side to see the target, it does so.

- The Provide Suppressive Fire on Location task tells an entity to fire at a location, one meter above that location.

Fire is rapid at first, then sustained for a specified period of time and maximum rounds to fire, or until the entity runs out of ammunition. The rapid and sustained rates of fire are configured in the weapon's system definition file. If you want to suppress a floor of a building, set the altitude at or slightly above the altitude of the floor of the building. Suppressive fire is executed even if line of sight is blocked near the target location, so you can place the target in a building and get fire on the wall in front of it.

Suppressive fire insults on an entity are accumulated as part of the internal state of the entity. This suppression value also continually decays over time. Therefore large insults, or many small insults in a short time, raises the suppression value, but the value naturally drops back down to its starting level.

An entity is considered suppressed when its suppression value rises above a certain threshold. The entity is no longer suppressed when its decaying suppression value falls below a different, lower threshold. This allows the model to produce a delay in suppression recovery and at the same time continue handling new insults.

The model represents three suppression levels (in addition to "not suppressed") so that behavior can be changed for more severe suppression. The number of suppression levels was chosen arbitrarily. Higher levels of suppression are reached when the suppression value passes higher thresholds. The State Data page in the Information dialog box displays the suppression level of the entity, a value between 0 and 3.

Suppressive fire causes humans that are near the detonation locations to temporarily stop shooting and lose some ability to sense entities. When an entity is suppressed:

- Its sensors may have their sensitivity reduced.
- Its guns may be prevented from firing.
- It may be forced into a crouching posture.
- It may be forced to stop moving and go prone.

The default configuration for humans is:

- Visual sensor sensitivity is reduced to 0.
- Guns are disabled.
- Level 1 suppression forces a crouch.
- Level 2 and 3 suppression stops movement and makes the entity go prone.

The Lifeform Suppression system enables two reactive behaviors. The first one makes the human adopt a crouching posture when it is suppressed. This does not interrupt other movement. The second reaction makes the entity go prone when it is suppressed to level 2 or 3. This interrupts any ongoing movement task. Both reactions restore the original posture when the reaction ends.

Several vehicles are configured so that they cannot fire their machine guns if they are suppressed.

An entity is susceptible to suppression if it has a suppression system. Lifeforms can have a Lifeform Suppression system. Vehicles can have a Vehicle Exposed Crew Suppression system. For details about configuring suppression, please see "25.8.1 Configuring Suppression Effects" below.

## 25.8.1 Configuring Suppression Effects

Suppression effects are configured by parameters in several components.

The suppression system contains a suppression actuator with several parameters to control its behavior.

- **suppression-insult-level**. The level of insult necessary to suppress the entity, that is, reach the level 1 threshold. This value should be set appropriately for the amount of insult caused by munitions, as defined in the damage-model portion of this descriptor. You can set this parameter in the Simulation Object Editor.
- **suppression-recovery-time**. The time required to recover from the level 1 suppression threshold to a not-suppressed state. This same time is required to recover to level 2 from level 3, and to level 1 from level 2. You can set this parameter in the Simulation Object Editor.
- **passing-rounds-suppress**. Determines whether rounds passing by the entity, but not necessarily detonating near it, are considered when detecting insults. You can turn off this effect to save computation time. Default: true.
- **max-detonation-distance-for-passing-rounds**. The maximum distance that the actuator looks for detonations. A line of fire that passes near the entity may detonate some distance beyond the entity. To find such lines, the actuator must look at distant detonations. This may result in the actuator processing many detonations. (The detonation manager makes a distance test for each entity for each detonation, so not much computation is saved by reducing this parameter value.)
- **hostile-fire-only**. If true, the actuator does not consider detonations and passing rounds as insults if they are from a friendly force. Default: true. While the default may be unrealistic in the case of HE shells landing near the entity, it avoids unintended suppression when nearby friendly entities are firing at the enemy.

The actuator descriptor includes a damage-model section that is just like the damage-model in a damage system. For each munition there are two parameters:

- **suppression-detonation-insult**. The maximum insult that this munition can cause, if it detonates at the entity location or passed directly over the entity.
- **suppression-detonation-range**. The maximum range at which the munition can have effect. The insult from the munition decreases linearly until it is 0 at the maximum range.

In ballistic gun controllers, **disabled-by-suppression** indicates whether the gun is susceptible to suppression. If true, the gun is not allowed to fire while the entity is suppressed. This is true for the handheld weapon systems, but it can also be selectively set for guns on vehicles. For example, tank machine guns are often operated by an exposed crew member, and could be suppressed by small arms fire

even if the tank is otherwise unaffected by such fire. The handheld systems have this parameter set True, while other machine guns use a variable and so the parameter can be set in the Simulation Object Editor.

In sensor components, **suppression-degrades-sensor-performance-by** indicates how they are affected by suppression. It is a value from 0 - 1.0. A value of 0 means that the sensor is not degraded at all by suppression, while a value of 1.0 means that sensitivity is reduced to 0 by suppression. The value can be set in the Simulation Object Editor.

## 25.9. Configuring Task Execution Rules

Each simulation object OPE file contains a parameter called **task-execution-rules** that specifies a task execution rule configuration file. (The default rules file is *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/taskRules/default-task-rules.tsk*.) The task execution rule file specifies whether or not tasks can be executed concurrently, and if so, which tasks are mutually exclusive.

The task execution rules file has the following parameters:

- **all-tasks-exclusive**. This parameter enables (False) or disables (True) use of concurrent execution of tasks. When True, the Task Manager executes only one task at a time, and the **mutually-exclusive-task-groups** parameter is ignored.
- **mutually-exclusive-task-groups**. This parameter is a list of groups. Each group contains a list of tasks that cannot be executed at the same time. Any time a task from a particular group is started by the Task Manager, any currently running task that is part of the same group is interrupted. Tasks that are part of other groups, or not part of any group, are allowed to continue running.

The task names that are listed in the **mutually-exclusive-task-groups** parameter are the names that are registered with the task factory when a task is added to the system. Groups can contain any number of tasks, and there can be any number of groups.

Tasks are always considered to be mutually exclusive with themselves. For that reason, it is impossible to execute two tasks of the same type at the same time on a single simulation object.

*default-task-rules.tsk* configures the tasks that come with VR-Forces and which were developed in C++. It does not include scripted tasks. Concurrency for scripted tasks gets set when they are created.

### 25.9.1 Configuring Action Categories

In scripted tasks, action categories serve the same function as task rules for enforcing concurrency. Action categories are configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/taskRules/actionCategories.tsk*. An action category is specified with the following entry:

```
<item>
    <first>Movement</first>
    <second>
        <first>Movement</first>
```

```
        <second>1</second>
    </second>
</item>
```

If the value in the <first> element matches a group in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/taskRules/default-task-rules.tsk*, scripted tasks that use that action category are unioned with the tasks specified in *default-task-rules.tsk* to form the complete set of mutually exclusive tasks.

---

If you edit *actionCategories.tsk*, be sure to update the <count> element to reflect additions or deletions.

---

# 26. Movement Tasks for Entity-Level Scenarios

This chapter describes the movement tasks supplied with VR-Forces that apply to entity-level scenarios. Some of these tasks are also used in aggregate-level scenarios. "Appendix 28. Human and Crowd Tasks" on page 635, describes some movement tasks that are specific to human characters. "Chapter 18. Generating Traffic (Pattern of Life)" on page 445 discusses methods of generating air, sea, and ground traffic to provide realistic background activity in your scenarios.

Models with wheels and treads have the ability to rotate those at speeds relative to the entity's movement speed. Wheels can also articulate when the entity makes a turn to realistically represent the steering.


26.1. Assigning Tasks Using the Entity Control Panel ..... 575
26.2. Airdrop Along Route ..... 576
26.3. Animated Movement ..... 577
26.4. Come to Stop ..... 578
26.5. Convoy Along ..... 578
26.6. Convoy To ..... 578
26.7. Establish Refueling Station ..... 579
26.8. Fixed-Wing Land At Aerodrome ..... 580
26.9. Fixed-Wing Land On Runway ..... 581
26.10. Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway ..... 582
26.11. Fly Altitude ..... 582
26.12. Fly Heading and Altitude ..... 583
26.13. Fly Heading ..... 584
26.14. To assign a Fly Loiter Pattern task:Fly Loiter Pattern ..... 584
26.15. Follow Entity ..... 585
    26.15.1 How Fixed-Wing Entities Follow Entities ..... 586
26.16. Generate Air Traffic From Flight Plans ..... 586
26.17. Land at Airport Near Location ..... 586
26.18. Move Along Route ..... 586
26.19. Move Along Route with Actions ..... 588

26.20. Move Into Formation ..... 590
26.21. Move to Altitude ..... 591
26.22. Move to Bullseye Offset ..... 591
26.23. Move to Depth ..... 592
26.24. Move to Location ..... 592
26.24.1 Adding Multiple Move to Location Tasks to a Plan ..... 593
26.25. Move to Location (Plan Along Roads) ..... 593
26.26. Move to Location (Plan Path) ..... 594
26.27. Move to Waypoint ..... 595
26.28. Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads) ..... 595
26.29. Move to Waypoint (Plan Path) ..... 596
26.30. Orbit Object ..... 597
26.31. Orbit ..... 597
26.32. Patrol Area ..... 597
26.33. Patrol Between ..... 598
26.34. Patrol Route ..... 598
26.35. Pattern Hold (Location) ..... 599
26.36. Pattern Hold (Waypoint) ..... 599
26.37. Refuel From ..... 600
26.38. Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo to Location ..... 600
26.39. Rotary Wing Land ..... 601
26.40. Rotary Wing Retrieve Cargo ..... 601
26.41. Rotary Wing Unload Cargo ..... 602
26.42. Sail Heading ..... 602
26.43. Search and Rescue ..... 603
26.43.1 Fly Creeping Line Pattern ..... 603
26.43.2 Fly Expanding Square Pattern ..... 605
26.43.3 Fly Parallel Pattern ..... 607
26.44. Sweep Naval Mines ..... 609
26.45. Turn to Heading ..... 609
26.46. Zig Zag to Heading ..... 610

# 26.1. Assigning Tasks Using the Entity Control Panel

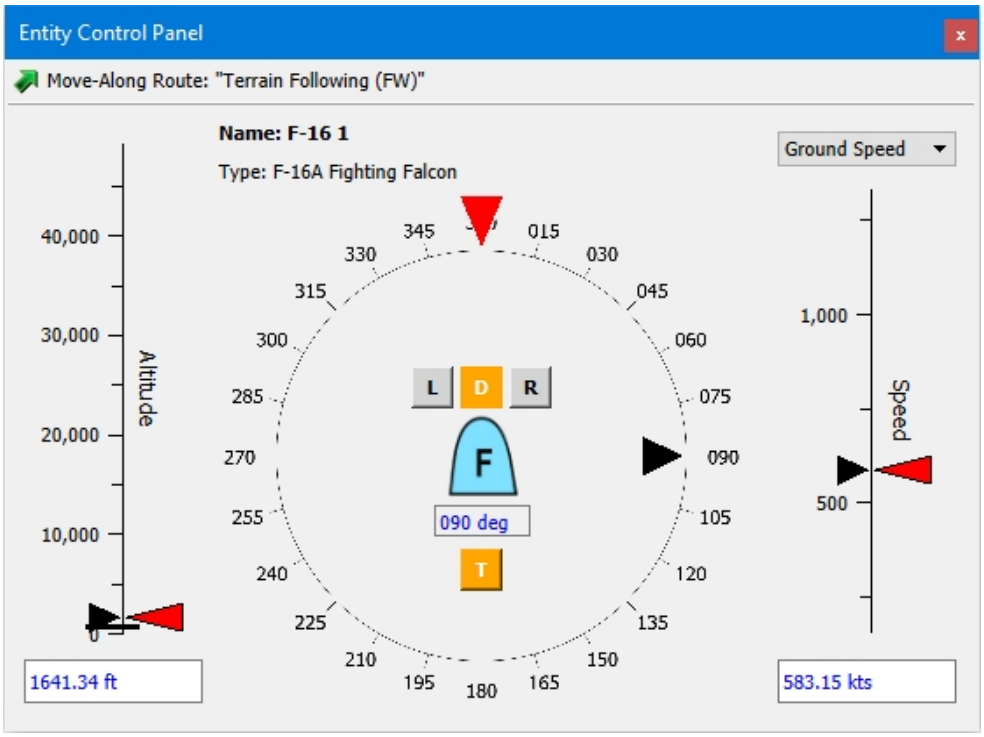
You can quickly assign the following tasks from the Entity Control Panel:

- Fly Heading and Altitude
- Sail Heading
- Move to Depth.

You can also issue Set Ordered Speed for aircraft, surface, and subsurface entities.

The Entity Control Panel (Figure 228) displays the name, type, altitude, heading, and speed of the selected entity with black arrows. Text boxes also show the current values. Red arrows show the desired values. The panel also shows the current task of the entity.

**Figure 228. Entity Control Panel**




When you change the altitude or heading of an entity using the Entity Control Panel, you are issuing a movement task. Like any other task assignment, this action causes the entity to stop its current task and begin executing the new task.

By default, when you change heading VR-Forces chooses the direction in which to turn. However, you can specify which direction you want it to turn.

You can specify that the heading be aligned with either true north or magnetic north. For information about magnetic north in VR-Forces, see "53.9.1 Specifying True or Magnetic North" on page 1121.

If you change the ordered speed, the entity accelerates or decelerates to the desired speed. Changing the speed does not change the task.

When you single-click to change an entity's heading, speed, or altitude, then the entity makes the change at a normal speed. If you double-click, this indicates an emergency maneuver and the entity makes the change more rapidly than normal.

The Entity Control Panel displays the same information for ground entities and lifeforms as it does for aircraft and marine entities, but you cannot change the values.

You can use the Entity Control Panel to assign movement tasks to multiple entities and to units. If there are mixed entity types in the selection, the panel applies the appropriate tasks to the various entities.

If you drag the panel onto the map, it becomes translucent. This enables you to see the scenario.

➤ **To assign a movement task from the Entity Control Panel:**

1. Choose **View > Entity Control Panel**. The Entity Control Panel opens.
2. In the object list or terrain, select the entity, unit, or entities that you want to command.
3. To change altitude or depth, click along the Altitude line or type an altitude in the text box.
4. To change heading, click a heading on the compass or type a heading in the text box. To have the entity change heading at the maximum speed possible, double-click the heading. To specify the direction of turn, click L (left) or R (right).
5. The button below the heading text box indicates whether the heading is true north (T) or magnetic north (M). Click the button to change the setting.
6. To set the ordered speed, click along the Speed line or type a value in the text box. For aircraft, you can use the list at the top right to specify the measurement of the speed: Ground Speed, TAS (true airspeed), IAS (indicated air speed), or Mach.

## 26.2. Airdrop Along Route

The Airdrop Along Route task causes an aircraft to move along a specific route or to a specific plan variable. Upon reaching the route or variable, the aircraft disembarks paratroopers or entities such as vehicles. It specifies only when the entities embarked on the aircraft will parachute, and it can specify the number of "drop slots" available to those objects.

Drop slots are not the same as embarkation slots. On an aircraft, drop slots indicate the number of intervals at which entities can exit the aircraft with the Airdrop from Aircraft task. On entities, the drop slot indicates the order in which they will perform that task. Drop slots do not support units.

The entities must have a task for deploying the parachute or they will not exit the aircraft. Please see "29.1.5 Airdrop from Aircraft" on page 658 for details.

The movement task Parachute to Target does not coordinate with Airdrop Along Route.

➤ **To assign an Airdrop Along Route task:**

1. Select an aircraft that has entities embarked on it.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Airdrop Along Route**. The Airdrop Along Route dialog box opens.
3. Specify the time to wait between each entity drop in seconds.
4. Use Drop Route to specify where the aircraft should begin the airdrop. It can be a route or a plan variable.
5. Optionally, you can select the Use Drop Slots check box and then specify the number of drop slots. One or more entities can exit the aircraft at each drop slot, as specified in the Airdrop from Aircraft task.
6. Click OK.

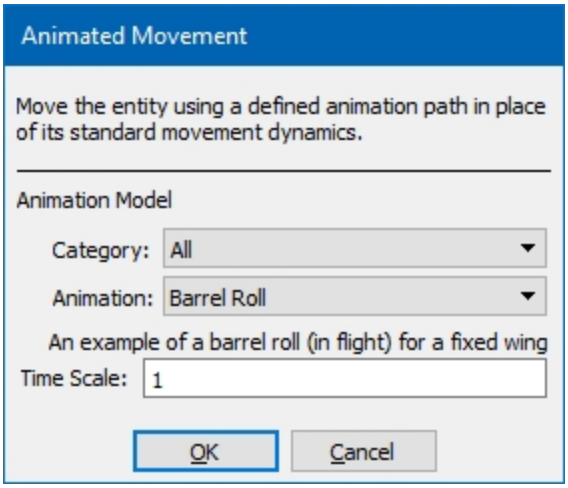
## 26.3. Animated Movement

The Animated Movement task lets you assign a scripted behavior to an entity. This task is a generalized version of firing ballistic missiles, which is described in"10.2. Ballistic Missiles" on page 303. To use this task, you must first create a file that describes the movements that you want an entity to make. Animated movement files can be in comma-separated values (CSV) format or 3DS ASCII Export (ASE) format. You configure animated movement tasks in the Simulation Object Editor. For details, please see "63.8.2 Configuring Animated Movement" on page 1322.

➤ **To assign an animated movement task:**

1. Select the entity to task.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Animated Movement**. The Animated Movement dialog box opens (Figure 229).

**Figure 229. Animated Movement dialog box**




3. Optionally, filter the animation list by selecting a category in the Category list.

4. Select an animation in the Animation list. You are responsible for knowing that the animation is appropriate to the entity you selected.
5. Optionally, specify a time scale. By changing the time scale you can make the animation run faster or slower than specified in the animation file.
6. Click OK.

## 26.4. Come to Stop

The Come to Stop task stops a surface entity using a normal stop, an emergency stop, or a slow drift.

➤ **To assign a Come to Stop task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Come to Stop**. The Come to Stop dialog box opens.
3. Select an option for how to stop.
4. Click OK.

## 26.5. Convoy Along

The Convoy Along task commands a unit to move along a route in a convoy. When the task starts, the lead entity moves far enough along the route for the rest of the unit to create a column that ends approximately at the beginning of the route. Then the unit begins moving along the route.

The Convoy Along task is valid only for ground-vehicle aggregates.

For more details about convoys, please see "25.2.1 Convoy Tasks" on page 552.

➤ **To assign a Convoy Along task:**

1. Select the unit that you want to send in a convoy.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Convoy Along**. The Convoy Along dialog box opens.
3. Specify the route to convoy along.
4. Click OK.

## 26.6. Convoy To

The Convoy To task commands a unit to move to a waypoint in a convoy. If you specify use of roads, VR-Forces uses the information in the road network to plan the convoy's movement. If you do not specify use of roads, the convoy moves directly across the terrain as an individual entity would move in a Move To task.

The Convoy To task is valid only for ground-vehicle aggregates.

For more details about convoys, please see "25.2.1 Convoy Tasks" on page 552.

➤ **To assign a Convoy To task:**

1. Select the unit that you want to send in a convoy.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Convoy To**. The Convoy To dialog box opens.
3. Specify the waypoint to convoy to.

   ---

   ! When you specify use of roads, VR-Forces looks for roads over a fairly wide area and if one is found, will try to use them even if this results in an indirect approach to the waypoint. If there are no roads close to the route you would expect the unit to take to reach the waypoint, do not select this option.

   ---

4. Click OK.

## 26.7. Establish Refueling Station

Entities with the Air Refueling Supplier system can establish a refueling station where other aircraft can refuel using the Refuel From task. The Establish Refueling Station task requires two waypoints: one to use as the Air Refueling Control Point (ARCP) and the other to use as the Air Refueling Initial Point (ARIP). These should be placed approximately 50 kilometers apart in the terrain.

While performing the Establish Refueling Station task, the tanker aircraft first moves to the specified ARCP waypoint and then flies a holding pattern relative to that waypoint. The tanker then waits for aircraft to request refueling and queues the aircraft in the order it received the requests. It flies the holding pattern for a specified length of time.

An aircraft performing the Refuel From task (see "26.37. Refuel From" on page 600) then flies to the tanker's ARIP waypoint. When it is about four minutes away from the waypoint, that aircraft sends a request. The tanker either accepts or rejects the request. If it accepts the request, the refueling proceeds as described below. If it rejects the request, the tanker returns to its station and the aircraft performs the next task in its plan, if any. Reasons that the tanker would reject a request are:

- Its aviation-fuel resource is depleted.
- The aircraft has a different fuel supply type than what the tanker is carrying. The fuel supply type is identified by its SISO entity type.
- The aircraft requires a different refuel connection than is available on the tanker, either because the tanker is not equipped with it or it is disabled.

  Tankers can be equipped with an air-to-air refueling system: boom, boom wingtip drogue, wingtip drogue, centerline boom drogue attachment, or multi-point. Aircraft can be equipped with an air refueling receiver boom or drogue system.

If the tanker accepts the request, it sends a message to the aircraft that indicates a rendezvous location and an approximate time of arrival. The aircraft makes altitude and speed adjustments to arrive at the location on time. Once the two aircraft are near the ARCP waypoint, the tanker sends a refueling location to the aircraft. The aircraft then moves to that location and the tanker and aircraft fly in a straight line. The tanker deploys its air-to-air refueling system and the aircraft moves to connect with it. During the refueling, the aircraft's movement|fuel resource increases as the tanker's aviation-fuel resource decreases.

When the aircraft's fuel is nearly full, they separate. The aircraft moves to the next statement in its plan, if any. The tanker returns to refueling station holding pattern and checks for other refuel requests. If another aircraft placed a request while the tanker was refueling the first aircraft, that aircraft orbits the ARIP waypoint until its request is accepted or rejected.

---

You can also task a tanker to refuel itself. See "29.2. Internal Transfer of Fuel Task" on page 667.

---

➤ **To assign an Establish Refueling Station task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Establish Refueling Station**. The Establish Refueling Station dialog box opens.
3. Specify the ARCP waypoint.
4. Specify the ARIP waypoint.
5. Specify a heading, in degrees, and indicate whether it is relative to true or magnetic north.
6. Enter the speed at which the entity should travel.
7. Enter the altitude it should fly.
8. Select the desired Turn Direction.
9. Enter the length of time that the aircraft should spend at the refueling station waiting for refuel requests.
10. Specify the Pattern Type, either Time or Distance.
    - When using the Time pattern, you specify the length of time to complete each leg of the flight pattern.
    - When using the Distance pattern, you specify the length and width of the pattern.
11. Click OK.

## 26.8. Fixed-Wing Land At Aerodrome

"25.6.6 How Fixed-Wing Entities Land" on page 565, describes how fixed-wing entities land and the steps to design a landing approach. The Fixed Wing Land At Aerodrome task automates the process of landing a fixed-wing aircraft. However, you

must specify a aerodrome object for the aircraft to land at. See "60.2. Aerodromes and Runways" on page 1214 to learn about creating aerodrome objects.

When the task is invoked, VR-Forces defines an approach route for the plane to move along and selects a runway object associated with the aerodrome to land on. The length of the approach route is either the plane's altitude or the length needed to slow the plane down to landing speed, whichever is greater. The route is created and the plane moves along the route, coming to landing speed. At the end of the approach route, the plane is tasked to move along the runway.

➤ **To assign a Fixed Wing Land At Aerodrome task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fixed Wing Land At Aerodrome**, or click the Fixed Wing Land At Aerodrome button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Fixed Wing Land At Aerodrome dialog box opens.
3. In the Name box, type the name of the aerodrome object where you want it to land, or select the aerodrome in the list or on the terrain.
4. Click OK.

## 26.9. Fixed-Wing Land On Runway

"25.6.6 How Fixed-Wing Entities Land" on page 565, describes how fixed-wing entities land and the steps to design a landing approach. The Fixed Wing Land On Runway task automates the process of landing a fixed-wing aircraft. However, you must specify a runway object for the aircraft to land on. See "60.2. Aerodromes and Runways" on page 1214 to learn about creating runway objects.

When the task is invoked, VR-Forces defines an approach route for the plane to move along. The length of this route is either the plane's altitude or the length needed to slow the plane down to landing speed, whichever is greater. The route is created and the plane moves along the route, coming to landing speed. At the end of the approach route, the plane is tasked to move along the runway.

---

! Although it is possible to land an entity on another entity, such as an aircraft carrier, if you want to embark an entity, you must use the Embark task, not a landing task.

---

➤ **To assign a Fixed Wing Land On Runway task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fixed Wing Land On Runway**, or click the Fixed Wing Land On Runway button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Fixed Wing Land On Runway dialog box opens.

3. In the Name box, type the name of the runway object you want it to land on, or select the runway in the list or on the terrain.
4. Select the specific runway on which the entity should land.
5. Click OK.

## 26.10. Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway

You can explicitly task a fixed-wing entity to take off. (For details about implicit take-off, please see "25.6.5 How Fixed-Wing Entities Take Off" on page 564.) In a Fixed Wing Takeoff task, the entity moves along the specified route, reaches takeoff speed (30% of minimum lift), and then moves to a point defined by the controller some distance up and away from the end of the route.

➤ **To assign a Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway**, or click the Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway dialog box opens.
3. Select the runway object to take off on or type its name in the Name box.
4. Specify the specific runway from which the entity should take off.
5. Optionally, select the Teleport to Runway Start check box to have the entity move immediately to the start of the runway. This saves some time by quickly positioning the entity for takeoff.
6. Click OK.

## 26.11. Fly Altitude

The Fly Altitude task commands a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity to fly to the specified altitude at a specified ascent or descent rate, using its current heading and ordered speed. When it reaches the altitude it continues to fly at that altitude at the current heading until it receives other commands. The entity will not exceed the limits for altitude or ascent/descent rate set in the OPD for the entity type.

You cannot use a Fly Altitude task to cause a fixed-wing entity to take off. A fixed-wing entity that is on the ground ignores this task.

If a rotary-wing entity is on the ground and is given this task, it rises to the specified altitude as it moves forward at its current heading. If a rotary-wing entity is in the air and is given this task with an altitude of zero, it descends to approximately 33 M and continues flying at that altitude at its current heading.

➤ **To assign a Fly Altitude task:**

1. Select a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fly Altitude**, or click the Fly Altitude button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Fly Altitude dialog box opens.
3. In the Altitude box, specify the altitude above sea level to fly to.
4. In the Climb/Descent Rate box, specify the rate.
5. Click OK.

## 26.12. Fly Heading and Altitude

The Fly Heading and Altitude task commands a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity to fly to a specified altitude, at a specified ascent or descent rate, while turning to a specified heading at a specified turn rate. If you do not specify a heading or altitude, the entity continues to use the current value for that parameter.

While executing this task, the entity maintains its current speed. When it completes the command, it continues to fly at the new altitude and heading until given other commands. The entity will not exceed the limits on altitude, turn rate, and ascent/descent rate set in the OPD.

You cannot use a Fly Heading and Altitude task to cause a fixed-wing entity to take off. A fixed-wing entity that is on the ground ignores this task.

If a rotary-wing entity is on the ground and is given this task, it takes off and moves forward while it rises to the specified altitude and turns to the specified heading. If a rotary-wing entity is in the air and is given this task with an altitude of zero, it moves forward and turns to the new heading while it descends to approximately 33 M and continues flying at that altitude on the new heading.

---

You can also quickly assign or change this task using the Entity Control Panel. For details, please see "26.1. Assigning Tasks Using the Entity Control Panel" on page 575.

---

➤ **To assign a Fly Heading and Altitude task:**

1. Select a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fly Heading and Altitude**, or click the Fly Heading and Altitude button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Fly Heading and Altitude dialog box opens.
3. In the Heading box, specify the heading to fly to.
4. Next to the Heading box, indicate whether the entity should fly to the heading relative to true north or magnetic north.
5. In the Altitude box, specify the altitude above sea level to fly to.

6. In the Turn Rate box, specify the rate.
7. In the Climb/Descent Rate box, specify the rate.
8. Click OK.

## 26.13. Fly Heading

The Fly Heading task commands a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity to turn to the specified heading at the specified turn rate. It maintains its current altitude and speed. When it is finished turning to the new heading, it continues to fly at this heading until it receives other commands. The entity will not exceed the turn rate specified in the OPD.

A fixed-wing entity that is on the ground ignores this task.

If a rotary-wing entity is on the ground and is given this task, it rises to approximately 25 meters above the terrain while simultaneously moving forward and turning to the specified heading. After turning to the new heading, it continues moving forward. Its altitude varies somewhat as it follows the terrain.

➤ **To assign a Fly Heading task:**

1. Select a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fly Heading**, or click the Fly Heading button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Fly Heading dialog box opens.
3. In the Heading box, specify the heading to fly to.
4. Next to the Heading box, indicate whether the entity should fly to the heading relative to true north or magnetic north.
5. In the Turn Rate box, specify the rate.
6. Click OK.

## 26.14. To assign a Fly Loiter Pattern task:Fly Loiter Pattern

The Fly Loiter Pattern task commands a fixed-wing entity to fly in a loiter pattern, which can be a circle, figure eight, racetrack, or cloverleaf. The entity loiters around the control point you specify. You also determine the turn direction, altitude, speed, and the duration of the loiter pattern flight. For the figure eight, racetrack, and cloverleaf patterns, you specify the bearing and length to indicate the direction of the main axis and the space between loop centers.

The racetrack pattern is an air-traffic-control hold pattern, which requires the entity to fly the appropriate approach to that pattern. This might be more complicated than the approaches to the other patterns.

The entity will not exceed the limits on altitude and air speed set in the OPD.

1. Select a fixed-wing entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fly Loiter Pattern**. The Fly Loiter Pattern dialog box opens.
3. In the Loiter Point section, select the waypoint that marks the center of the entity's loiter pattern.
4. In the Radius box, specify the radius of the loops made in the pattern.
5. Select the desired Turn Direction.
6. In the Altitude box, specify the altitude above sea level to fly the pattern.
7. In the Speed box, enter the speed to fly the pattern.
8. Specify the desired Duration Type:
   - Duration in Laps: Enter the number of laps the entity should fly the pattern. This must be a whole number.
   - Duration in Time: Enter the length of time that the entity should fly the pattern. The first box is the number of days, and the second box is hours, minutes, and seconds.
9. Specify the desired Loiter Pattern.
10. If the entity will fly in a figure 8, racetrack, or cloverleaf pattern:
    a. In the Bearing box, enter the bearing of the main axis of the pattern.
    b. In the Length box, enter the space between loop centers.
11. Click OK.

## 26.15. Follow Entity

You can order an entity to follow a simulation object. You can specify a distance and offset between the simulation objects. If you tell two or more entities to follow the same simulation object, make sure that you do not give them the same offset (please see "36.5.5 Following Simulation Objects" on page 872).

An entity continues to follow its target entity until:

- The task is overridden.
- The followed entity is destroyed.

If entity A is assigned to follow entity B, but it cannot find entity B, entity A continues to look for entity B until entity B becomes available, or until entity A is assigned another task.

The following entity tries to match the speed of the followed entity unless it has to hold back or catch up to accommodate changes in direction or terrain effects.

➤ **To assign a Follow task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Follow Entity**. The Follow Entity dialog box opens.

3. Optionally, filter the entity list.
4. In the Name box, type the name of the entity to follow, or select it from the list or on the terrain.
5. Optionally, type an offset in the Behind, Right, and Above text boxes. If you want an entity to follow in front, to the left, or below, put a minus sign (-) in front of the value.
6. Click OK.

### 26.15.1 How Fixed-Wing Entities Follow Entities

A fixed-wing entity can follow an entity that is on the ground, or might be on the ground, for example if it is following a fixed-wing entity that lands. In this case, to ensure that the follower does not crash, make sure that it is following above the followed entity and that the distance above is high enough to account for changes in the terrain.

## 26.16. Generate Air Traffic From Flight Plans

VR-Forces can generate air traffic along routes created using X-Plane format flight plans. It can also generate air traffic without flight plans by using spawn points and sink points.

- For help deciding which air traffic generation method to use, see "18.8.1 Choosing an Air Traffic Generation Method" on page 459.
- For instructions on generating air traffic from flight plans, see "18.8.2 Preparing to Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans" on page 460

## 26.17. Land at Airport Near Location

The Land at Airport Near Location task causes VR-Forces to find an airport near the specified location and land the specified aircraft on an appropriate runway based on the wind direction. This task requires use of a terrain database that has airport and runway data. The *ProceduralEarth (online).mtf* terrain has airport data.

➤ **To assign a Land at Airport Near Location task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Land at Airport Near Location**. The Land At Airport Near Location dialog box opens.
3. Specify the location in the dialog box or on the terrain.
4. Click OK.

## 26.18. Move Along Route

By default, a simulation object moves along a route from its nearest vertex to its end point.

- If you edit a route while a simulation object is moving to the starting point of that route as part of a Move Along Route task, the simulation object moves to the nearest vertex, whether it is the starting point, or not.
- If a human is moving along a route outside of a navigation area and you move it away from the route or change the route, the entity plans a path to the route vertex it is moving to rather than moving to the nearest point on the route and then proceeding to the target vertex.
- If you want a simulation object to repeatedly move along the same route from beginning to end (for example, to follow a circular route), be sure to clear the Start at Closest Vertex check box. If you do not, after the first time the simulation object moves along the route, it keeps going to the end vertex, because that is the closest vertex to where it is starting the new Move Along Route task.
- When you task an air platform entity to follow a route, be sure to take into account the altitude of the route's vertices and the terrain the entity has to pass over to complete the task. (For more information, please see "25.6.4 Fixed-Wing Entity Movement on the Ground and in the Air" on page 563 and "25.7. Rotary-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors" on page 566.)
- Units do not generate subordinate routes until they reach the beginning of the route.
- A unit starts moving along a route when the leading edge of its formation is at the first point of the route. It is considered finished when the leading edge reaches the last point of the route.
- In addition to routes, you can use other linear tactical graphics in this task, including corridors, lines, pedestrian paths, and supply routes.

➤ **To assign a Move Along Route task:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move Along Route**, or click the Move Along Route button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Move Along Route dialog box opens.
3. In the Name box, type the name of the route you want the simulation object to follow, or select a route in the list or on the terrain.
4. To have the simulation object move from the end of the route to the beginning, select Reverse Direction.
5. To have a ground vehicle use the road driving movement strategy, select the Treat Route as Road check box. The route is treated as a two-lane bidirectional road.

---

! If you select Treat Route as Road, the entity must be within 10 meters of the route or the task will fail.

---

6. To have the simulation object start the route at the beginning, clear the Start at Closest Vertex check box.
7. Click OK.

## 26.19. Move Along Route with Actions

Move Along Route with Actions lets you assign actions to an entity that is following a route. The tasked entity performs the actions at points in the route that you specify, then continues to follow the route.

- By default, a simulation object executing a Move Along Route with Actions task goes to the beginning of the route, rather than starting the route at its nearest vertex.
- If a human entity is moving along a route outside of a navigation area and you move it away from the route or change the route, the entity plans a path to the route vertex it is moving to rather than moving to the nearest point on the route and then proceeding to the target vertex.
- If you want a simulation object to repeatedly move along the same route from beginning to end (for example, to follow a circular route), be sure to clear the Start at Closest Vertex check box. If you do not, after the first time the simulation object moves along the route, it keeps going to the end vertex, because that is the closest vertex to where it is starting the new Move Along Route with Actions task.
- The Move Along Route with Actions task includes a Specify Time on Target option that lets you set the time at which the tasked entity must reach the target location on the route (TL). When you set a time on target, the task employs a hold location (HL), where the tasked entity can wait or circle to use up extra time and complete the task at the specified time.
- You can control the tasked entity's speed by setting Ordered Speed, which offers Enforced and Suggested options. However, if you set both a time on target and an enforced ordered speed, the entity might not be able to complete the task.
- The Abandon if Time on Target Cannot Be Achieved option is available when you use Specify Time on Target. If you select the option, the tasked entity abandons the task if it determines that it cannot reach the target location within 10 seconds of the specified time.
- When you task an air platform entity to follow a route, take into account the altitude of the route's vertices and the terrain the entity has to pass over to complete the task. If you are using an existing ground route, you can set an ordered altitude that puts the tasked entity at the height you want, or raise vertices to enable the entity to follow the route. (For more information, see "25.6.4 Fixed-Wing Entity Movement on the Ground and in the Air" on page 563 and "25.7. Rotary-Wing Entity Tasks and Behaviors" on page 566.)
- For air platforms, the flight path shown in the terrain profile in the Move Along Route with Actions dialog box is an approximation, not a precise rendering.

- In addition to routes, you can use other linear tactical graphics in this task, including air axes, air corridors, lines, and supply routes.

➤ **To assign a Move Along Route with Actions task:**

1. Identify the entity that will follow the route, or use the Simulation Objects tab to create one.

   ---

   If you create an airplane in the air, set its altitude to a few hundred meters to keep it from stalling.

   ---

2. Identify the route (or other linear tactical graphic) to be followed, or use the Tactical Graphics tab to create one.
3. If the action in the task you are creating relies on tactical graphics such as target points or areas, use the Tactical Graphics tab to create them along the route.

   ---

   To drop a bomb, you must create a target point on the route. You cannot drop a bomp on the route's target location, which is simply the end point of the route.

   ---

4. Select the entity that will move along the route and perform the actions.
5. Choose **Plan > Task > Movement > Move Along Route with Actions**, or click the Move Along Route With Actions button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Move Along Route with Actions dialog box opens.
6. In the Name box, type the name of the route you want the simulation object to follow or select a route in the list. The dialog displays a terrain profile of the route you selected and a numbered list of the route's vertices.
7. Right-click any of these to add an action:
   - In the Move Along Route with Actions dialog box, any location on the route in the terrain profile.
   - In the Action list, any vertex.
   - In Plan View, any location on the route.
8. In the context menu, choose **Insert Task** or **Insert Set** and select an option. For example, you might choose **Insert Task > Engagement > Release Bomb on Target**or **Insert Set > Action > Ordered Altitude.**
9. In the new dialog box, either:
   - Select the target of the action, or
   - Enter required information and click OK.

   The action appears in the Action list in the Move Along Route with Actions dialog box.

10. Optionally, set a speed for the object to follow: in the Move Along Routes with Actions dialog box, right-click a point on the route and select **Insert Set > Action > Ordered Speed**.
11. In the Ordered Speed dialog box, enter a speed. For aircraft entities, this is the ground speed.
12. Optionally, select Enforced under Ordered Speed. (If you also specify time on target below, the entity might not be able to achieve the time on target at the ordered speed unless you change or remove the ordered speed later in the task. You can do that by adding another **Insert Set > Action > Ordered Speed** for a different speed, or even for the same speed by selecting Suggested rather than Enforced.)
13. Click OK. VR-Forces updates the estimated times in the Move Along Routes with Actions dialog box.
14. Optionally, select Specify Time on Target and set the time at which you want the simulation object to reach the target point in the route. When you enable Specify Time on Target, VR-Forces recalculates the estimated times in the Action list, counting backward from the Time on Target at the route's target location. (Estimated times before the hold location do not change.) When it is not possible for the tasked entity to achieve an action in the time allowed, the numbers in the Time on Target field and the estimates for the actions in question turn red.
15. Optionally, select Abandon if Time on Target Cannot Be Achieved if you want the tasked entity to give up on the task if it estimates that it cannot complete the task by the time you specified in Time on Target (within 10 seconds).
16. To have the simulation object move from the end of the route to the beginning, click Reverse Route.
17. To reverse the order of the actions along the route, click Reverse Actions. You can also reorder by right-clicking an action or the target location in the Actions list and selecting Move.
18. To have the simulation object start the route at the nearest vertex rather than moving to the beginning of the route, select the Start at Closest Vertex check box.
19. Click OK.
20. Save and run the scenario.

## 26.20. Move Into Formation

You can order a disaggregated ground unit to move to a formation at a specified location. Moving to a formation is not the same as setting formation. Setting formation changes the formation instantly. Moving to a formation causes the members of the unit to travel through the terrain into the new formation.

For aggregated units, Move Into Formation has the same effect as a Formation set data request.

➤ **To assign a Move Into Formation task:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move Into Formation**. The Move Into Formation dialog box opens.
3. Select the desired formation from the list.
4. Specify the location at which the unit is to move into formation by entering coordinates, or by clicking on the terrain.
5. Specify the heading the unit is to assume at the target location.
6. Click OK.

## 26.21. Move to Altitude

You can order an aircraft entity to move to an altitude. When you assign this task, the entity moves to the new altitude at the same coordinates. Fixed-wing aircraft spiral to the new coordinates. Rotary-wing entities rise or descend. Moving to an altitude is not the same as setting altitude. Setting altitude moves an entity instantaneously. It is also not the same thing as Fly Altitude. At the conclusion of Move to Altitude, an aircraft circles or hovers at the new altitude. At the conclusion of Fly Altitude, an aircraft continues moving at its current heading.

---

Fixed-wing entities that are on the ground cannot respond to a Move to Altitude task. If they are given this task, a message is printed to the object console and the task is ignored.

---

➤ **To assign a Move to Altitude task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move to Altitude**, or click the Move to Altitude button ( ) on the Tasks Toolbar. The Move to Altitude dialog box opens.
3. Type the altitude that you want the entity to move to.
4. Click OK.

## 26.22. Move to Bullseye Offset

Use the Move to Bullseye Offset task to send an aircraft to a bearing and range relative to a bullseye tactical graphic in the scenario.

➤ **To assign a Move to Bullseye Offset task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move to Bullseye Offset**. The Move to Bullseye Offset dialog box opens.
3. Select the bullseye.

4. Enter the bearing from the bullseye to the location where you want the aircraft to move to. Indicate whether the heading is relative to true or magnetic north.
5. Enter the range.
6. Click OK.

## 26.23. Move to Depth

The Move to Depth task lets you specify the depth for subsurface entities. When an entity moves to a depth, it continues any horizontal movement that was in effect prior to starting the task.

---

You can also quickly assign or change this task using the Entity Control Panel. For details, please see "26.1. Assigning Tasks Using the Entity Control Panel" on page 575.

---

➤ **To assign a Move to Depth task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move to Depth**. The Move to Depth dialog box opens.
3. Select an option for the depth. If you choose a specific depth, type a depth in the Target Depth box.
4. Specify the ascent/descent rate.
5. Click OK.

## 26.24. Move to Location

You can order a simulation object to move to a location. If navigation data is present, simulation objects take it into account in planning their path to the location.

If you add Move to Location tasks to a plan, you have more options than when you give an independent task.

Moving to a location is not the same as setting location. Setting location moves a simulation object instantaneously. Moving to a location causes a simulation object to travel through the terrain.

If you want a simulation object to use the road network to move to a location, use Move to Location (Plan Along Roads). For details about road movement, please see "25.5. Entity Movement On Roads and Off Roads" on page 560.

➤ **To assign a Move to Location task:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move to Location**, or click the Move to Location button ( ) on the Tasks Toolbar. The Move to Location dialog box opens.

3. Click on the terrain where you want the simulation object to move, or enter the coordinates of the location in the Move to Location dialog box.
4. Optionally, set the altitude, as described in "14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude" on page 380.

---

If you specify the location by clicking and the task is for an air platform that is in the air, be sure to change the altitude to a height that will prevent the entity from crashing.

---

5. Click OK.

### 26.24.1 Adding Multiple Move to Location Tasks to a Plan

When you add a Move to Location task to a plan, you can add multiple locations without clicking OK and selecting the task again from the menu. Also, since in this method you cannot specify the altitude for each location, you can specify a height above the terrain for the altitude of the succeeding points.

➤ **To add multiple Move to Location tasks to a plan:**

1. In the Plan window for a simulation object, choose **Task > Movement > Move to Location**. The Move to Location dialog box opens.
2. Select Each Click Generates A Task.
3. If you want to specify an altitude for the locations, specify an altitude, as described in "14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude" on page 380.
4. Click a point on the terrain for each location that you want the simulation object to move to. A Move to Location task is added to the plan for each location.
5. Click OK.

## 26.25. Move to Location (Plan Along Roads)

The Move to Location (Plan Along Roads) task directs a ground vehicle to move to a location using roads, if there is a road network.

When an entity receives this task, it determines if there is a road network near by. If there is, it moves directly to the nearest point on the road network. Then it moves along the roads using road driving behavior until it gets to the point on the road that is closest to the destination. Then the entity moves off the road directly to the destination (unless you select Stay On Road When Complete).

For more information about road driving and how the path planning tasks work, please see "25.5. Entity Movement On Roads and Off Roads" on page 560.

➤ **To assign a Move to Location (Plan Along Roads) task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move to Location (Plan Along Roads)**. The Move to Location (Plan Along Roads) dialog box opens.
3. Click on the terrain where you want the entity to move, or enter the coordinates of the location in the dialog box.
4. Optionally, you can select Stay On Road When Complete. If the location is not on a road, the entity stops when it reaches the point on the road network that is closest to the destination.
5. Click OK.

## 26.26. Move to Location (Plan Path)

The Move to Location (Plan Path) task is for surface and subsurface entities. It plots a route to the destination location based on the depth of water between the starting point and ending point. You specify the minimum depth required for the ship to maneuver. You can specify that the depth be based on the ship's draft or you can enter a specific depth value. The ship's draft is determined by calculating the distance its bounding box extends below its origin, as set in the Simulation Object Editor.

If you give this task to a submarine, VR-Forces assumes that it is moving on the surface.

---

The formula for calculating the draft is:

draft = height/2 - offset (Up)

where height and offset are set in the Size group box in the Simulation Object Editor.

---

---

For this task to work, your terrain must include S-57 data or depth information provided in a similar way. The Massachusetts S-57 (online) terrain, included with VR-Forces, is an example.

---

➤ **To assign a Move to Location (Plan Path) task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move to Location (Plan Path)**. The Move to Location (Plan Path) dialog box opens.
3. Click on the terrain where you want the entity to move, or enter the coordinates of the location in the dialog box.
4. Specify how you want VR-Forces to determine the minimum depth of water for the route.

5. If you want to see the path displayed, select Display Route.
6. Click OK.

## 26.27. Move to Waypoint

You can order a simulation object to move to a point or a simulation object. If navigation data is present, simulation objects take it into account in planning their path to the waypoint.

Moving to a point is not the same as setting location. Setting location moves a simulation object instantaneously. Moving to a point causes a simulation object to travel through the terrain.

If you want a ground entity to use the road network to move to a waypoint, use the Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads) task. For details about road movement, please see "25.5. Entity Movement On Roads and Off Roads" on page 560.

---

Rotary-wing entities are not able to reach moving waypoints or land on moving ships. A rotary-wing entity will approach a given waypoint or landing point, but will never completely reach the goal.

---

➤ **To assign a Move to Waypoint task:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move to Waypoint**, or click the Move to Waypoint button ( ) on the Tasks Toolbar. The Move to Waypoint dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, filter the selection list.
4. In the Name box, type the name of the waypoint or entity to move to, or select it in the list or on the terrain.
5. If the task is part of a plan, you can select the Continue On check box. The entity will maintain speed, instead of slowing as it approaches the waypoint.
6. Click OK.

## 26.28. Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads)

The Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads) task directs an entity to move to a waypoint and use the road network if it is available.

When an entity receives this task, it determines if there is a road network near by. If there is, it moves directly to the nearest point on the road network. Then it moves along the roads using road driving behavior until it gets to the point on the road that is closest to the destination. Then the entity moves off the road directly to the destination (unless you select Stay On Road When Complete).

For more information about road driving and how the path planning tasks work, please see "25.5. Entity Movement On Roads and Off Roads" on page 560.

➤ **To assign a Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads) task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads)**. The Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads) dialog box opens.
3. Select the waypoint.
4. Optionally, you can select Stay On Road When Complete. If the waypoint is not on a road, the entity stops when it reaches the point on the road network that is closest to the destination.
5. Click OK.

## 26.29. Move to Waypoint (Plan Path)

The Move to Waypoint (Plan Path) task applies to surface and subsurface entities. It plots a route to the waypoint based on the depth of water between the starting point and ending point. You specify the minimum depth required for the ship to maneuver. You can specify that the depth be based on the ship's draft or you can enter a specific depth value. The ship's draft is determined by calculating the distance its bounding box extends below its origin, as set in the Simulation Object Editor.

If you give this task to a submarine, VR-Forces assumes that it is moving on the surface.

---

The formula for calculating the draft is:

draft = height/2 - offset (Up)

where height and offset are set in the Size group box in the Simulation Object Editor.

---

---

For this task to work, your terrain must include S-57 data or depth information provided in a similar way.

---

➤ **To assign a Move to Waypoint (Plan Path) task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move to Waypoint (Plan Path)**. The Move to Waypoint (Plan Path) dialog box opens.
3. Select the waypoint to move to.
4. Specify how you want VR-Forces to determine the minimum depth of water for the route.
5. If you want to see the path displayed, select Display Route.
6. Click OK.

## 26.30. Orbit Object

The Orbit Object task causes an aircraft to fly a circular pattern around a simulation object or point tactical graphic. If the object moves, the aircraft moves to maintain the orbital relationship.

➤ **To assign an Orbit Object Task:**

1. Select the entity that you want to orbit.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Orbit Object**, or click the Orbit Object button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Orbit Object dialog box opens.
3. Select the simulation object or tactical graphic around which you want the entity to orbit.
4. In the Orbit Radius box, specify the radius of the orbit.
5. To orbit clockwise, select the Clockwise check box.
6. Click OK.

## 26.31. Orbit

The Orbit task allows an aircraft to circle around a point without needing to create a route for it to follow.

➤ **To assign an Orbit task:**

1. Select the entity that you want to orbit.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Orbit**. The Orbit dialog box opens.
3. Specify the coordinates of a point on the terrain around which the entity should orbit. You can click on the terrain to specify the point.
4. Specify the altitude at which to fly.
5. Specify the radius of the circle.
6. Select or clear the Clockwise option to specify the direction of travel.
7. Click OK.

## 26.32. Patrol Area

The Patrol Area task is for surface and subsurface entities. This allows you to have a ship patrol an area such as a harbor. The task uses a line between the two most distant points that falls within the area and then moves the ship in a zig-zag pattern across the area with that line as the spine of the pattern.

The ship can be outside of the area at the beginning of the task. It will move into the area to patrol it.

➤ **To assign a Patrol Area task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Patrol Area**. The Patrol Area dialog box opens.
3. Select the area for the ship to patrol.
4. Click OK.

## 26.33. Patrol Between

A simulation object can patrol between two point objects, simulation objects, or both. When a simulation object patrols between two objects, it goes to the starting object, then moves back and forth between the two objects.

➤ **To assign a Patrol Between task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Patrol Between**, or click the Patrol Between button ( ) on the Tasks Toolbar. The Patrol Between dialog box opens.
3. In the Name box for Point 1, type the name of the first object to patrol between, or select an object in the list or on the terrain.
4. In the Name box for Point 2, type the name of the second object to patrol between, or select an object in the list or on the terrain.
5. Click OK.

## 26.34. Patrol Route

When a simulation object patrols along a route, it moves to the nearest vertex of the route, to the end point, back to the beginning of the route, and then continues going back and forth along the route until given another command.

If a human is moving along a route outside of a navigation area and you move it away from the route or change the route, the entity plans a path to the route vertex it is moving to rather than moving to the nearest point on the route and then proceeding to the target vertex.

---

For more information about moving along routes, see the issues discussed in "26.18. Move Along Route" on page 586.

---

➤ **To assign a Patrol Route task:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Patrol Route**, or click the Patrol Route button ( ) on the Tasks Toolbar. The Patrol Along Route dialog box opens.

3. In the Name box, type the name of the route to patrol, or select the route in the list or on the terrain.
4. Click OK.

## 26.35. Pattern Hold (Location)

The Pattern Hold (Location) task causes a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity to execute a racetrack hold pattern at the specified location.

In a standard racetrack, the aircraft tries to spend one minute per leg. Therefore, the length of the leg varies with the speed. The default turn radius is three degrees/second. In a custom racetrack, you specify the length and width of the legs.

The aircraft enters the pattern using direct, parallel, or teardrop entry. It determines the approach based on its location relative to the desired pattern. If you set the plane's object console to Info, the chosen entry method is displayed.

It may take an aircraft one or two loops before it settles into the desired pattern.

➤ **To assign a Pattern Hold (Location) task:**

1. Select a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Pattern Hold (Location)**, or click the Pattern Hold (Location) button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Pattern Hold (Location) dialog box opens.
3. Enter the Holding Fix (location) or select it on the terrain.
4. Specify the heading, speed, and altitude for the hold pattern.
5. Specify the turn direction for the hold pattern.
6. For the Pattern Type, select Time or Distance. If you select Time, specify the amount of time per leg of the pattern. If you select Distance, specify a length and width.
7. Click OK.

## 26.36. Pattern Hold (Waypoint)

The Pattern Hold (Waypoint) task causes a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity to execute a racetrack hold pattern at the specified waypoint.

In a standard racetrack, the aircraft tries to spend one minute per leg. Therefore, the length of the leg varies with the speed. The default turn radius is three degrees/second. In a custom racetrack, you specify the length and width of the legs.

The aircraft enters the pattern using direct, parallel, or teardrop entry. It determines the approach based on its location relative to the desired pattern. If you set the aircraft's object console to Info, the chosen entry method is displayed.

It may take an aircraft one or two loops before it settles into the desired pattern.

➤ **To assign a Pattern Hold (Waypoint) task:**

1. Select a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Pattern Hold (Waypoint)**, or click the Pattern Hold (Waypoint) button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Pattern Hold (Waypoint) dialog box opens.
3. In the Holding Fix section, select the waypoint.
4. Specify the heading, speed, and altitude for the hold pattern.
5. Specify the turn direction for the hold pattern.
6. For the Pattern Type, select Time or Distance. If you select Time, specify the amount of time per leg of the pattern. If you select Distance, specify a length and width.
7. Click OK.

## 26.37. Refuel From

The Refuel From task causes an aircraft with the Air Refueling Receiver system to rendezvous with an air tanker that is performing the Establish Refueling Station task. See "26.7. Establish Refueling Station" on page 579 for more information.

➤ **To assign a Refuel From task:**

1. Select a fixed-wing entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Refuel From**. The Refuel From dialog box opens.
3. Select the air tanker that the aircraft should refuel from.
4. Click OK.

## 26.38. Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo to Location

The Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo to Location task causes an unmanned rotary-wing aircraft to move to a list of objects, embark them onto itself, move to a location, and disembark the objects. The objects must be configured as embarkable.

If the total weight of the objects plus the weight of the aircraft is greater than the aircraft can carry, the aircraft will embark the objects, but be unable to fly.

The unmanned aircraft needs to use the Quadcopter or Quadcopter Heavy Lift movement dynamics system.

➤ **To assign a Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo to Location task:**

1. Select an unmanned aircraft.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo to Location**. The Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo To Location dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, filter the list of object types.

4. Type the name of an object in the Name box, or in the Cargo Objects list select one or more objects.
5. In the Cruise Altitude box, specify the altitude at which you want the aircraft to fly.
6. Specify the destination location by typing in the coordinates, or click the Destination Location filter button ( ) to give the Destination Location focus, and click on the terrain to specify the destination location.
7. Click OK.

## 26.39. Rotary Wing Land

The Rotary Wing Land task automates the process of landing a rotary-wing aircraft. Rotary-wing aircraft can land on points.

---

**!** Although it is possible to land an entity on another entity, such as an aircraft carrier, if you want to embark an entity, you must use the Embark task, not a landing task.

---

➤ **To assign a Rotary Wing Land task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Rotary Wing Land**. The Rotary Wing Land dialog box opens.
3. In the Name box, type the name of the waypoint on which you want the entity to land, or select the waypoint in the list or on the terrain.
4. Click OK.

## 26.40. Rotary Wing Retrieve Cargo

The Rotary Wing Retrieve Cargo task causes an unmanned aircraft to move to one or more cargo items and embark them onto itself. It hovers at the location of the last item retrieved until given further tasks.

➤ **To assign a Rotary Wing Retrieve Cargo task:**

1. Select an unmanned aircraft.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Rotary Wing Retrieve Cargo**. The Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo To Location dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, filter the list of object types.
4. Type the name of an object in the Name box or in the Cargo Objects list, select one or more objects.

5. In the Cruise Altitude box, specify the altitude at which you want the aircraft to fly.
6. Click OK.

## 26.41. Rotary Wing Unload Cargo

The Rotary Wing Unload Cargo task causes a rotary-wing aircraft to unload (disembark) its cargo at the current location of the aircraft.

➤ **To assign a Rotary Wing Unload Cargo task:**

1. Select an unmanned aircraft.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Rotary Wing Unload Cargo**. The aircraft unloads its cargo.

## 26.42. Sail Heading

The Sail Heading task causes a surface or subsurface entity to sail towards the specified heading. After turning to the heading, the entity moves at its ordered speed indefinitely.

---

You can also quickly assign or change this task using the Entity Control Panel. For details, please see "26.1. Assigning Tasks Using the Entity Control Panel" on page 575.

---

➤ **To assign a Sail Heading task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Sail Heading**, or click the Sail Heading button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Sail Heading dialog box opens.
3. Specify a heading in the indicated units.
4. Next to the Final Heading box, indicate whether the entity should sail to the heading relative to true north or magnetic north.
5. Specify the diameter of the turn.
6. Specify the direction of the turn, as follows:
   - Toward Heading. Chooses the most direct turn.
   - Port. Turns to port until it reaches the heading.
   - Starboard. Turns to starboard until it reaches the heading.
7. Click OK.

# 26.43. Search and Rescue

There are three search and rescue patterns available to aircraft: creeping line, expanding square, and parallel.

## 26.43.1 Fly Creeping Line Pattern

The Fly Creeping Line Pattern search and rescue task causes an aircraft to fly a pattern starting at the Commence Search Point. You specify the Major Axis for the direction in which the search expands (creeps). The search legs are perpendicular to this axis. The Search Area Length is the size of the search area (box) in the direction of the Major Axis, and the Search Area Width is the size perpendicular to the Major Axis. The search area is either to the right or the left of the Commence Search Point.

The entity will not exceed the limits on altitude and air speed set in the OPD.

**Figure 230. Fly Creeping Line Pattern dialog box**

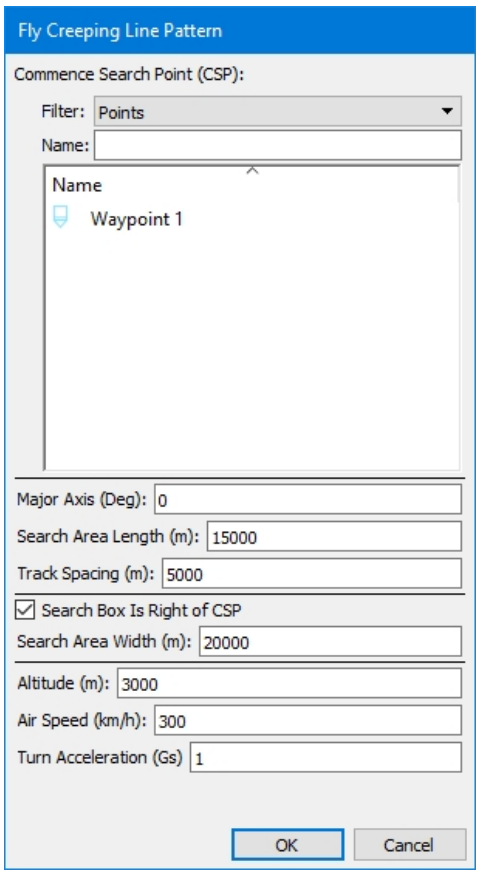
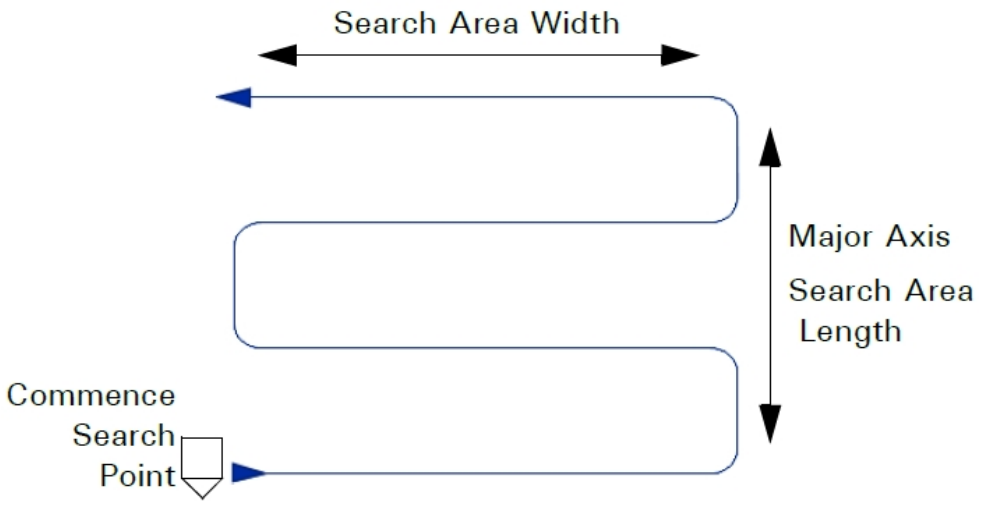


**Figure 231. Creeping Line Pattern, search right of CSP**




➤ **To assign a Fly Creeping Line Pattern search and rescue task:**

1. Select an aircraft.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Search and Rescue > Fly Creeping Line Pattern**. The Fly Creeping Line Pattern dialog box opens (Figure 230).
3. Specify the parameters:
   - In the Commence Search Point section, select the waypoint.
   - In the Major Axis box, enter the axis for the search. Next to this box, indicate whether the entity should fly relative to true north or magnetic north.
   - In the Search Area Length box, enter the length of the search area. This is measured along the Major Axis.
   - In the Track Spacing box, enter the spacing between the search legs.
   - Select the Search Box Is Right of CSP check box to search the area to the right of the Commence Search Point. Clear the check box to search the area to the left of the waypoint.
   - In the Search Area Width dialog box, enter the width of the search area. This is the width measured from the Commence Search Point.
   - In the Altitude box, specify the altitude above sea level to fly the search and rescue pattern.
   - In the Air Speed box, enter the speed to fly the pattern.
   - In the Turn Acceleration box, enter the maximum Gs for the turns. This acceleration, together with the selected air speed, determines the radius of the loops in the pattern. You must set the air speed and turn acceleration such that the aircraft can turn 180 degrees within the track spacing distance.
4. Click OK.

## 26.43.2 Fly Expanding Square Pattern

The Fly Expanding Square Pattern search and rescue task causes an aircraft to fly a pattern that starts at the Commence Search Point. That point is the center of the search, and the entity moves around it in an expanding series of right turns until the search box is covered.

The entity will not exceed the limits on altitude and air speed set in the OPD.

**Figure 232. Expanding Square Pattern**

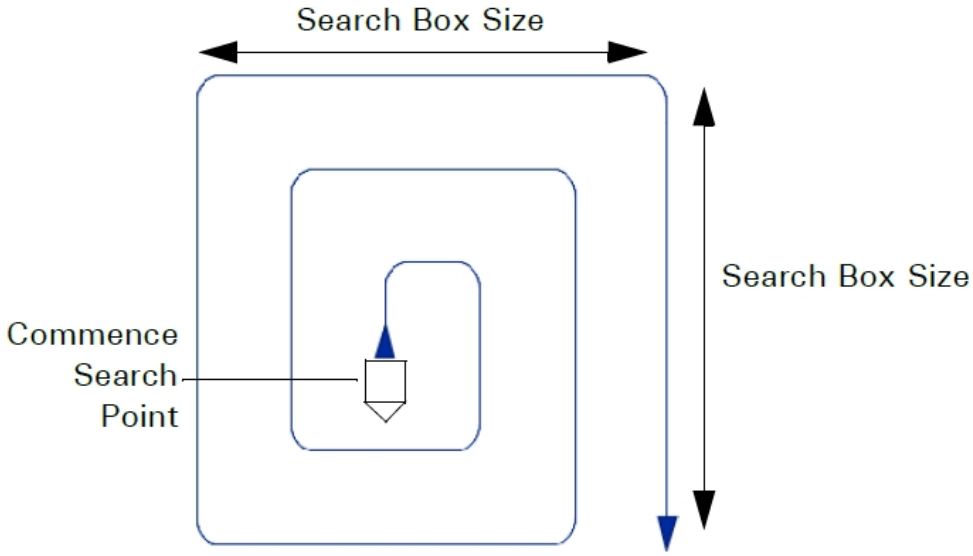
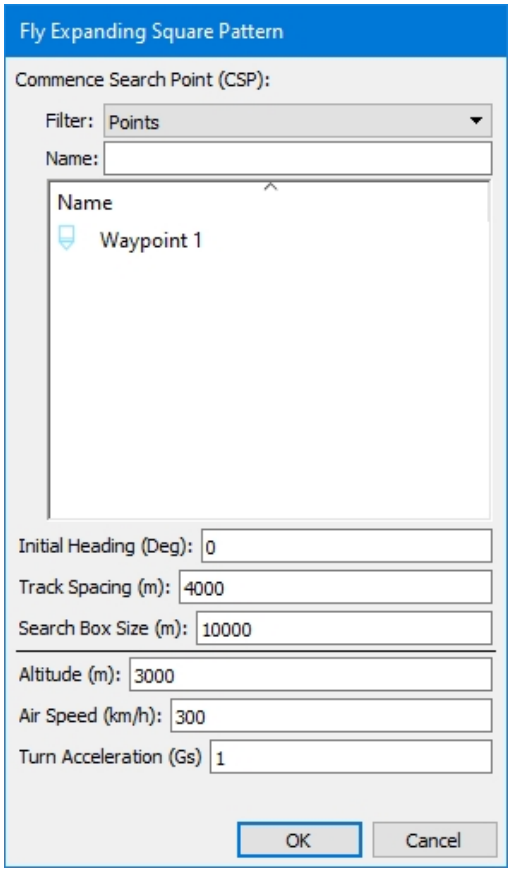


**Figure 233. Fly Expanding Square Pattern dialog box**




➤ **To assign a Fly Expanding Square Pattern search and rescue task:**

1. Select an aircraft.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Search and Rescue > Fly Expanding Square Pattern**. The Fly Expanding Square Pattern dialog box opens (Figure 233).
3. Specify the parameters:
   - In the Commence Search Point section, select the waypoint.
   - In the Initial Heading box, enter the heading at which the entity should begin the pattern. Next to this box, indicate whether the entity should fly to that heading relative to true north or magnetic north.
   - In the Track Spacing box, enter the spacing between the search legs.
   - In the Search Box Size box, enter the length for the sides of the search square.
   - In the Altitude box, specify the altitude above sea level to fly the search and rescue pattern.
   - In the Air Speed box, enter the speed to fly the pattern.

— In the Turn Acceleration box, enter the maximum Gs for the turns. This acceleration, together with the selected air speed, determines the radius of the loops in the pattern. You must specify an air speed and turn acceleration such that the aircraft can turn 180 degrees within the track spacing distance (the first two turns).

4. Click OK.

## 26.43.3 Fly Parallel Pattern

The Fly Parallel Pattern search and rescue task causes a aircraft to fly a pattern starting at the Commence Search Point. You specify a Major Axis. The search legs are in line with this axis, and the search area expands perpendicularly to the distance of the Search Area Width. The Search Area Length is the size of the search area (box) in the direction of the Major Axis. The search area is either to the right or the left of the Commence Search Point.

The entity will not exceed the limits on altitude and air speed set in the OPD.

**Figure 234. Parallel Pattern, search right of CSP**

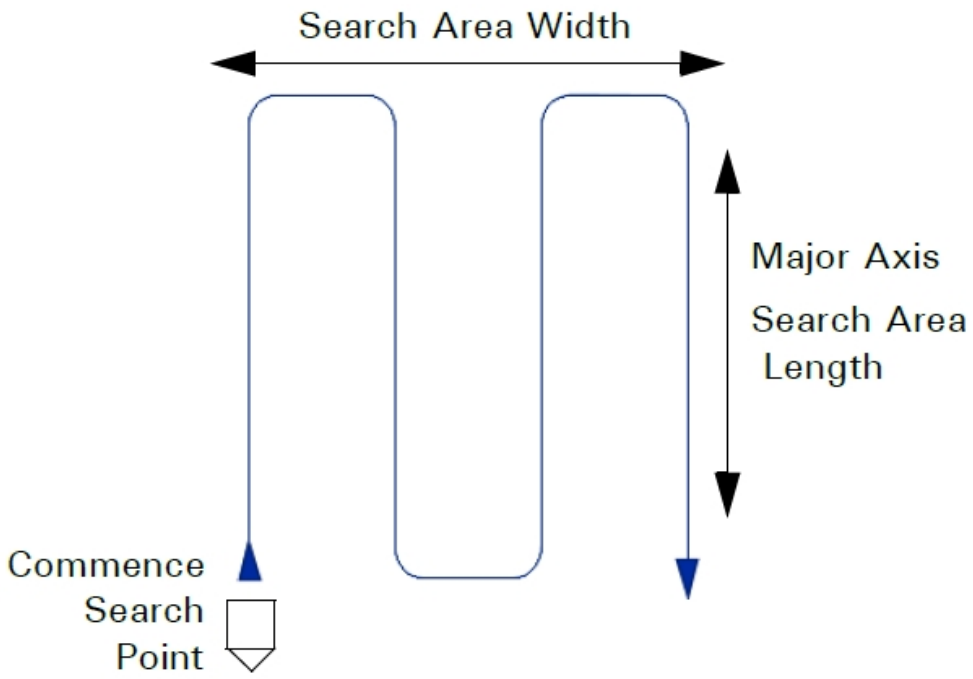
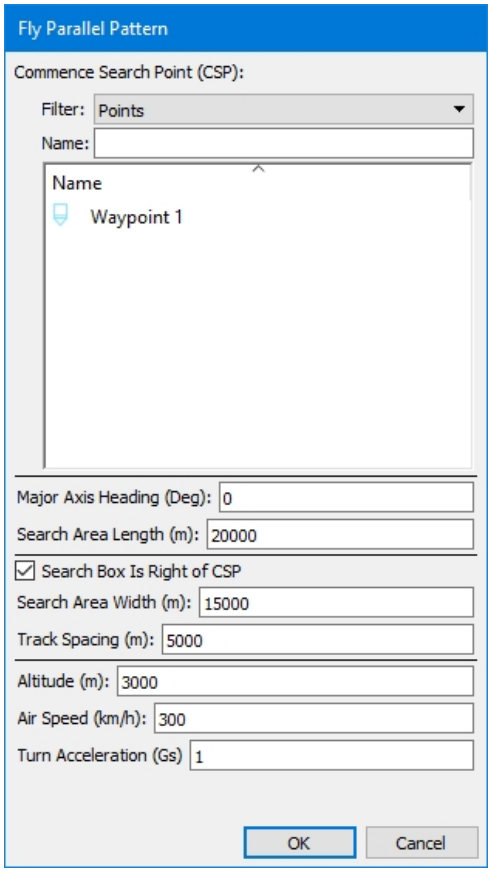


**Figure 235. Fly Parallel Pattern dialog box**




➤ **To assign a Fly Parallel Pattern search and rescue task:**

1. Select a aircraft.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Search and Rescue > Fly Parallel Pattern**. The Fly Parallel Pattern dialog box opens (Figure 235).
3. Specify the parameters:
   - In the Commence Search Point section, select the waypoint.
   - In the Major Axis Heading box, enter the axis for the search. Next to the this box, indicate whether the entity should fly relative to true north or magnetic north.
   - In the Search Area Length box, enter the length of the search area. This is measured along the Major Axis.
   - In the Track Spacing box, enter the spacing between the search legs.
   - Select the Search Box Is Right of CSP check box to search the area to the right of the Commence Search Point. Clear the check box to search the area to the left of the waypoint.
   - In the Search Area Width dialog box, enter the width of the search area. This is the width measured from the Commence Search Point.

- In the Altitude box, specify the altitude above sea level to fly the search and rescue pattern.
- In the Air Speed box, enter the speed to fly the pattern.
- In the Turn Acceleration box, enter the maximum Gs for the turns. This acceleration, together with the selected air speed, determines the radius of the loops in the pattern. You must specify an air speed and turn acceleration such that the aircraft can turn 180 degrees within the track spacing distance.

4. Click OK.

## 26.44. Sweep Naval Mines

The Sweep Naval Mines task causes an entity to look for and disable naval mines along a route. It looks within a specified distance from the route. An error rate specifies a percentage chance that the entity will detect a mine, but not disable it. The Sweep Naval Mines task is available to surface entities that have a Naval Mine Sweep system.

➤ **To assign a Sweep Naval Mines task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Sweep Naval Mines**. The Sweep Naval Mines dialog box opens.
3. Select the route to follow.
4. Specify the sensing range. The default is 300 meters.
5. Optionally, specify the disarm failure probability. This is the percentage chance that a mine will be found, but not disabled.
6. Click OK.

## 26.45. Turn to Heading

The Turn to Heading task provides a realistic way for ground vehicles to turn to a new heading. Rather than turning instantly, as happens with the Heading request, a vehicle pivots or makes a K-turn to the new heading. The turning behavior for an entity is controlled by its `can-pivot` parameter in the object parameter database.

➤ **To assign a Turn to Heading task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Turn to Heading**. The Turn to Heading dialog box opens.
3. Type a heading.
4. In the Relative To list, select one of the following options:

- True. Turn to the specified absolute heading (true north).
- Host (if embarked). If embarked, turn to the specified heading relative to the host simulation object.
- Current Heading. Turn the specified number of degrees relative to the current heading.
- Magnetic. Turn to the specified heading relative to magnetic north.

5. Click OK.

## 26.46. Zig Zag to Heading

The Zig Zag to Heading task causes a surface vessel to move towards a heading using a zig zag pattern.

➤ **To assign a Zig Zag to Heading task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Zig Zag to Heading**. The Zig Zag to Heading dialog box opens.
3. Specify the heading.
4. Specify the amount of time to spend on each leg of the zig zag pattern.
5. Specify the angle of direction for each leg.

# 27. Engagement Tasks for Entity-Level Scenarios

This chapter describes tasks in the engagement category that apply to entity-level scenarios.


27.1. Arm Mine at Depth ..... 613
27.2. Attack Aircraft with Guns ..... 613
27.3. Drop Naval Depth Charge ..... 613
27.4. Drop Naval Depth Charge at Location ..... 614
27.5. Drop Naval Mine ..... 614
27.6. Drop Naval Mines Along Route ..... 616
27.7. Execute Close Air Support ..... 616
27.8. Explode Charge at Depth ..... 619
27.9. Fire at Target ..... 619
27.10. Fire TOW At Target ..... 620
27.11. Fire Cruise Missile ..... 620
27.12. Fire for Effect Tasks ..... 622
    27.12.1 Firing Naval Guns ..... 623
27.13. Fire Team Suppress Target ..... 623
27.14. Lase Location ..... 624
27.15. Lase Target ..... 624
27.16. Launch Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertical) ..... 625
27.17. Launch Ballistic Missile at Location ..... 625
27.18. Launch Ballistic Missile at Target Object ..... 625
27.19. Launch Counter Measures ..... 626
27.20. Launch Smoke ..... 626
27.21. Launch Torpedo ..... 627
    27.21.1 Anti-ship (Fixed Depth) ..... 627
    27.21.2 Anti-Submarine ..... 628
27.22. Place IED ..... 628
27.23. Provide Suppressive Fire at Location ..... 629

27.24. Provide Suppressive Fire at Object ..... 630
27.25. Release Bomb Tasks ..... 631
27.26. Strafe Ground Target ..... 632
27.27. Throw Grenade Tasks ..... 634
27.27.1 Throw Grenade at Location ..... 634
27.27.2 Throw Grenade at Target ..... 634

## 27.1. Arm Mine at Depth

If a naval mine has been deployed, Arm Mine at Depth lets you change the mine's parameters.

Arm Mine at Depth is a system scripted task. It is disabled by default.

➤ **To assign an Arm Mine at Depth task:**

1. Select the mine.
2. Choose **Task > Arm Mine at Depth**. The Arm Mine at Depth dialog box opens.
3. Specify the depth at which to arm the mine.
4. Specify the radius within which target entities will detonate the mine.
5. Optionally, specify a time when the mine will be armed, in days and hours:minutes:seconds.
6. In the Targets list, add the types of entities that can trigger the mine, as follows:
7. Click the Add button ( ). The Entity Type dialog box opens.
8. Build an entity type by selecting options from the lists for each enumeration component or type an enumeration.
9. Click OK.
10. To specify that only hostile entities will set off the mine, select Hostile Only. If this setting is cleared, any entity will set off the mine.
11. Click OK.

## 27.2. Attack Aircraft with Guns

The Attack Aircraft with Guns task commands aircraft that have mounted guns, such as the A10, to attack other aircraft with their guns rather than air-to-air missiles.

➤ **To assign an Attack Aircraft with Guns task:**

1. Select an aircraft entity that has a gun.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Attack Aircraft with Guns**. The Attack Aircraft with Guns dialog box opens.
3. Select the target entity.
4. Click OK.

## 27.3. Drop Naval Depth Charge

The Drop Naval Depth Charge task causes a fixed-wing, rotary wing, or surface entity to drop a depth charge at its current location. To execute this task, an entity must have a Naval Depth Charge Deployment weapon system.

➤ **To assign a Drop Naval Depth Charge task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Drop Naval Depth Charge**. The Drop Naval Depth Charge dialog box opens.
3. In the Naval Depth Charge list, select the type of depth charge to drop.
4. Specify the depth at which you want the depth charge to explode.
5. Click OK.

## 27.4. Drop Naval Depth Charge at Location

The Drop Naval Depth Charge at Location task causes a fixed-wing, rotary wing, or surface entity to move to the specified location and drop a depth charge. To execute this task, an entity must have a Naval Depth Charge Deployment weapon system.

---

In this task, the location is the location of the entity when it drops the depth charge. Since the entity is flying, the location must include a reasonable altitude.

---

➤ **To assign a Drop Naval Depth Charge at Location task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Drop Naval Depth Charge at Location**. The Drop Naval Depth Charge At Location dialog box opens.
3. In the Naval Depth Charge list, select the type of depth charge to drop.
4. Specify the depth at which you want the depth charge to explode.
5. Specify the location where you want to drop the depth charge.

   By default, this task uses the altitude of the entity at the time the task is assigned as the altitude for the drop location. (Use Current Altitude check box.) If you specify an altitude and the check box is selected, VR-Forces ignores the altitude you entered and uses the current entity altitude. If you want to specify the altitude, clear the check box and make sure that you specify the altitude in the Altitude group box. If you click on the terrain to specify the X, Y location, the altitude gets set to 0, so be sure to enter the altitude you want after clicking on the terrain.
6. Click OK.

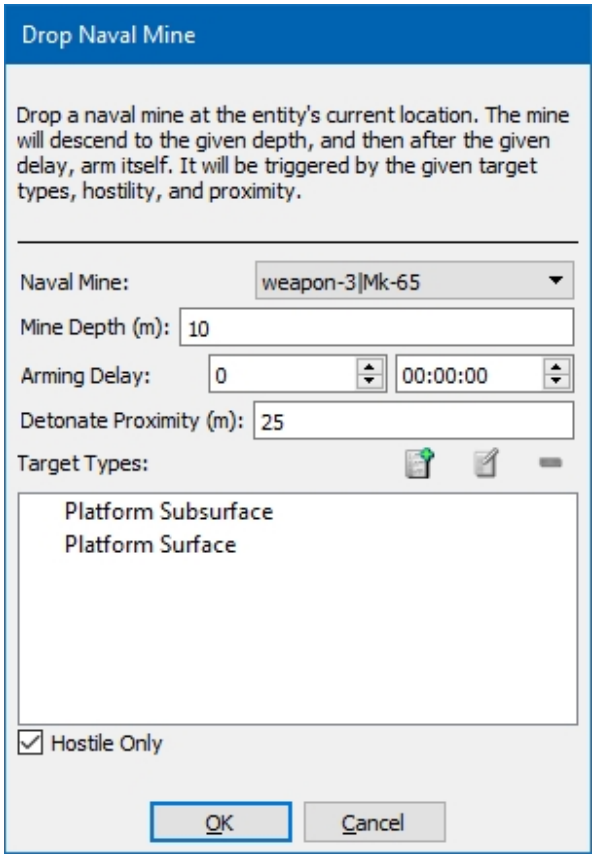
## 27.5. Drop Naval Mine

The Drop Naval Mine task allows entities with a Naval Mine Deployment system (fixed-wing, surface, and subsurface) to drop naval (underwater) mines at their current location.

➤ **To assign a Drop Naval Mine task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Drop Naval Mine**. The Drop Naval Mine dialog box opens (Figure 236).

**Figure 236. Drop Naval Mine dialog box**




3. In the Naval Mine list, select the type of mine to drop.
4. In the Mine Depth field, set the depth to drop the mine. Positive numbers are below sea level.
5. In the Arming Delay fields, set the time to elapse before the mine becomes armed. The first field is days. The second field is Hours:Minutes:Seconds.
6. In the Detonate Proximity field, set the distance from the mine within which a target entity will detonate the mine.
7. In the Trigger Entity Types list, add the types of entities that can trigger the mine, as follows:

    a. Click the Add button ( ). The Entity Type dialog box opens.

    b. Build an entity type by selecting options from the lists for each enumeration component or type an enumeration.

c. Click OK.

8. To specify that only hostile entities will set off the mine, select Hostile Only. If this setting is cleared, any entity will set off the mine.
9. Click OK.

## 27.6. Drop Naval Mines Along Route

The Drop Naval Mines Along Route task allows entities with a Naval Mine Deployment system (fixed-wing, surface, and subsurface) to drop naval (underwater) mines while they travel along a route.

➤ **To assign a Drop Naval Mines Along Route task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Drop Naval Mines Along Route**. The Drop Naval Mines Along Route dialog box opens.
3. Select the route to follow.
4. In the Mine Spacing field, specify the distance between each mine.
5. In the Naval Mine list, select the type of mine to drop.
6. In the Mine Depth field, set the depth to drop the mine. Positive numbers are below sea level.
7. In the Arming Delay fields, set the time to elapse before the mine becomes armed. The first field is days. The second field is Hours:Minutes:Seconds.
8. In the Detonate Proximity field, set the distance from the mine within which a target entity will detonate the mine.
9. In the Trigger Entity Types list, add the types of entities that can trigger the mine, as follows:

   a. Click the Add button ( ). The Entity Type dialog box opens.
   b. Build an entity type by selecting options from the lists for each enumeration component or type an enumeration.
   c. Click OK.
10. To specify that only hostile entities will set off the mines, select Hostile Only. If this setting is cleared, any entity will set off the mine.
11. Click OK.

## 27.7. Execute Close Air Support

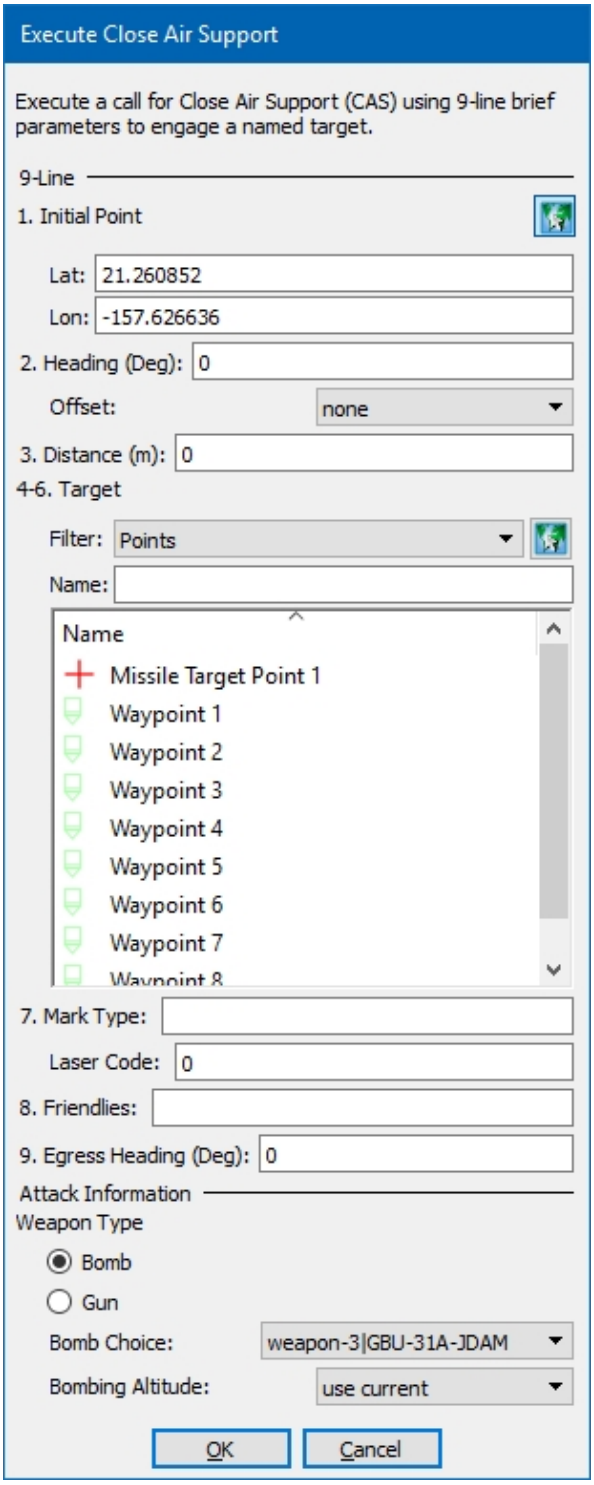
The Execute Close Air Support task assigns a fixed-wing fighter or bomber a close air support (CAS) task based on a 9-Line Briefing. You can call for a bombing run or a strafing run. The entity being tasked must be in the air to execute this task.

A 9-Line Briefing is a format used by U.S. armed forces to call in CAS. The Execute Close Air Support dialog box explicitly or implicitly requests all of the information in a 9-Line Briefing. However, the scripted task does not use all of this information to simulate CAS. (The procedure notes which fields are not used.) The task has parameters for all 9 lines to provide simulation authenticity. Since this is a scripted task, you could modify it to use all of the parameters.

➤ **To assign an Execute Close Air Support task:**

1. Select the entity you want to execute close air support.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Execute Close Air Support**. The Execute Close Air Support dialog box opens (Figure 237).
3. In the Initial Point section, specify the location from which the aircraft should line up with the target by entering location values or clicking on the terrain.
4. In the Heading box, specify the approach heading. Optionally, specify an offset if you want the entity to favor a particular side of the line of approach.
5. In the Distance box, specify the distance from the initial point to the target. This information is not used by the task.
6. Select the target. Target selection satisfies lines 4, 5, and 6 of a 9-Line briefing, because it provides the location, altitude, and name of the target.
7. In the Mark Type box, specify how the target is marked. This information is not used by the task.

**Figure 237. Execute Close Air Support dialog box**




8. If you are using a laser designator to mark the target, enter the laser code. (If you specify a laser code, an entity in the simulation must be lasing the target for the CAS to work.)

9. In the Friendlies box, specify the distance and direction of friendly forces from the target. This information is not used by the task.
10. In the Egress Heading box, specify the heading by which the attacking entity should leave after firing at the target. It will continue on this heading until it is given another task.
11. In the Attack Information section, select bomb or gun. If you select gun, the entity executes a strafing attack.
12. If you selected bomb, select a Bomb Choice and Bombing Altitude.
13. Click OK.

## 27.8. Explode Charge at Depth

The Explode Charge at Depth task explodes a depth charge at the specified depth. You can use this task to explode a depth charge that has been deployed, but has not yet exploded.

Explode Charge at Depth is a system scripted task. It is disabled by default.

➤ **To assign an Explode Charge at Depth task:**

1. Select the depth charge.
2. Choose **Task > Explode Charge at Depth**. The Explode Charge at Depth dialog box opens.
3. Specify the depth.
4. Click OK.

## 27.9. Fire at Target

The Fire at Target task commands an entity to fire at a specific target. You can specify which weapon system to use and how many rounds to fire.

When you issue this task, the entity ignores its rules of engagement and force types. Entities will fire at their own force if told to do so. The shooter must have line-of-sight to the target and have an appropriate weapon system and ammunition for the target.

---

If an entity has multiple laser guided systems, and one is given a Fire at Target task, the others (that do not have a Fire at Target task) block firing until the missile given the Fire at Target task is destroyed. You can set fire-at-target-blocks-firing-of-other-integrated-laser-systems to false in the laser template to turn off this behavior.

---

➤ **To assign a Fire at Target task:**

1. Select the entity you want to fire.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Fire at Target**, or click the Fire at Target button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Fire at Target dialog box opens.
3. Select the target entity.
4. In the Weapon Selection group box, select an option as follows:
   - To let VR-Forces choose the weapon, select Automatic.
   - To choose the weapon yourself, select Manual and select a weapon from the list.
5. In the Maximum Rounds to Fire box, enter the number of rounds you want the entity to fire. (The entity stops firing when the target is destroyed or when the maximum number of rounds has been fired, whichever comes first.)

## 27.10. Fire TOW At Target

A TOW missile can be fired at a target.

➤ **To assign a Fire TOW At Target task:**

1. Select an entity that has a TOW missile launcher.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Fire TOW At Target**. The Fire TOW At Target dialog box opens.
3. Select a target entity from the list or on the terrain, or type its name in the Name box.
4. Specify the maximum number of missiles to fire.
5. Click OK.

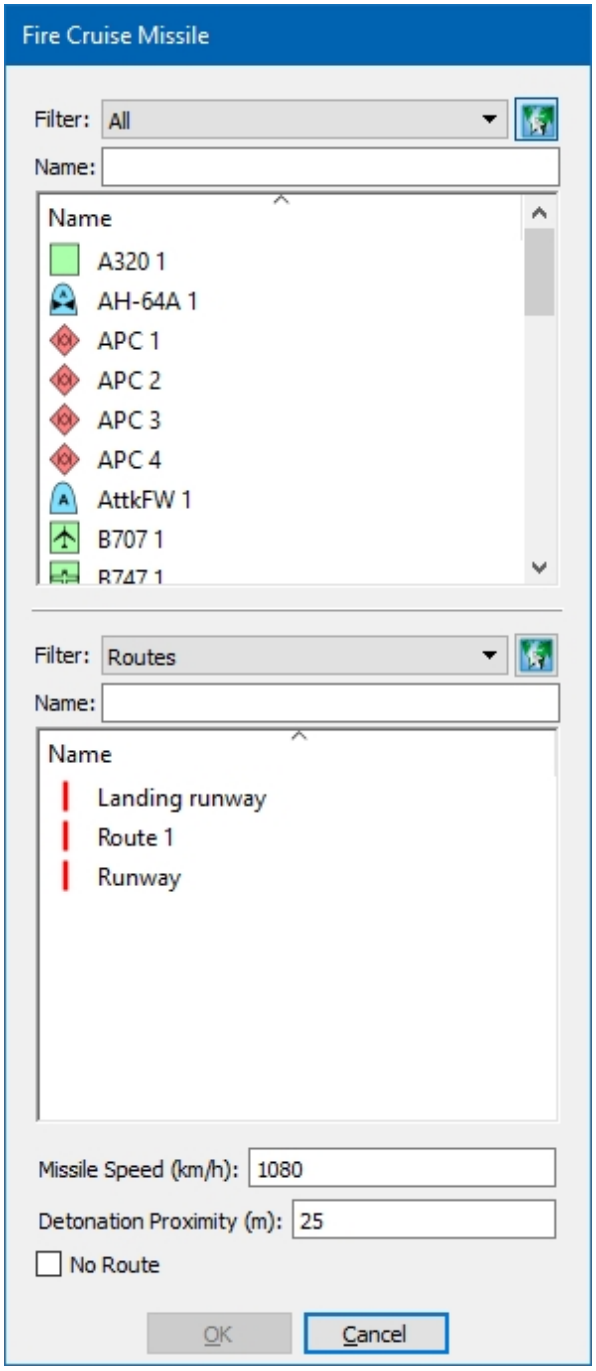
## 27.11. Fire Cruise Missile

A cruise missile can fly directly to a target or follow a route.

➤ **To assign a Fire Cruise Missile task:**

1. Select an entity that has cruise missiles.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Fire Cruise Missile**. The Fire Cruise Missile dialog box opens (Figure 238).

**Figure 238. Fire Cruise Missile dialog box**




3. Select the target from the list or on the terrain, or type its name in the Name box. Targets can be entities or points.
4. Select a route for the missile to follow or select the No Route check box. If no route is selected, the missile flies directly to the target.
5. Specify the ordered speed for the missile.

6. Specify the detonation proximity for the warhead. It will detonate within this range of the selected target.
7. Click OK.

## 27.12. Fire for Effect Tasks

You can task artillery entities and surface vessels that have naval guns to fire for effect. The three options are:

- Fire-for-Effect on Entity.
- Fire-for-Effect on Location, where location is a point on the terrain.
- Fire-for-Effect on Target, where a target is a waypoint.

If an entity has more than one weapon, you can select multiple weapons to fire. However, they will all fire on the same target. You cannot target them independently.

➤ **To assign a Fire-for-Effect task:**

1. Select the entity to which you want to assign the task.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Fire-for-Effect on Entity** (or Location or Target). The appropriate dialog box opens.
3. Identify the target as follows:
   - For FFE Entity, select the target entity in the list, select it on the terrain, or type its name in the Name box.
   - For FFE Location, click a location on the terrain, or enter the coordinates.
   - For FFE Target, select a point from the list, or select it on the terrain.

   For FFE Entity and FFE Target, you can filter the target list.
4. In the Select Weapons list, select the weapons that you want to fire.
5. Specify the number of rounds.
6. Optionally, specify the height above the terrain at which rounds should detonate.
7. Click OK.

- The Fire-for-Effect tasks are only meaningful when assigned to artillery entities or surface vessels that have naval guns.
- When you choose Fire-for-Effect on Entity, if the target entity is moving, VR-Forces dead reckons its position and the artillery fires at its expected location, not the location it was at the start of the task.
- Artillery entities have maximum and minimum ranges. To see these ranges, enable range rings for the entity. (For details, please see"43.8. Displaying Threat and Sensor Range Rings" on page 988.) The back-end console window prints messages when you select targets that are outside of the entity's range.
- The default preferred trajectory height for artillery and naval guns is 500 meters. If this height is not attainable given other parameters involved in calculating the trajectory, VR-Forces calculates a more appropriate height. You can specify a different preferred trajectory height with the Preferred Trajectory Height set data request. For details, please see "34.55. Preferred Trajectory Height" on page 823.

### 27.12.1 Firing Naval Guns

Ordinarily, naval guns fire their munitions in a parabola, similar to artillery. However, they can also fire directly at a target if the following conditions are true:

- The target's range is greater than the weapon's minimum range, but less than the first value in its range list.
- The **capable-of-direct-alignment** parameter for the weapon system's naval-gun-controller is set to True.
- The firing entity has line-of-sight to the target.

## 27.13. Fire Team Suppress Target

The Fire Team Suppress Target task tells a fire team to fire at a simulation object such as a point, line, or area, one meter above the terrain. If one of the entities in the fire team must stand or move to the side to see the target, it does so. For more information, please see "25.8. Suppressive Fire Tasks" on page 567.

➤ **To assign a Fire Team Suppress Target task:**

1. Select a fire team.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Fire Team Suppress Target**. The Fire Team Suppress Target dialog box opens.
3. Select the simulation object to fire at.
4. In the Rapid Fire Duration box, enter the number of seconds for the rapid fire.

5. In the Total Fire Duration box, enter the number of minutes the entity should provide suppressive fire.
6. Click OK.

## 27.14. Lase Location

The Lase Location task simulates aiming a laser beam at a location to guide a laser guided weapon. By default, entities with laser capability lase autonomously. Use this task if you want to lase a specific location. An entity can lase a location while it is executing a movement task.

To lase a location, an entity must have a Laser Designator system. For more information about lasing targets, please see:

- "9.4.2 Lasing Targets" on page 287.
- "34.41. Laser Code" on page 815.
- "34.76. Synchronize Laser Code" on page 833.

➤ **To assign a Lase Target task:**

1. Select the entity that will aim the laser.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Lase Location**. The Lase Location dialog box opens.
3. Click on the map or enter the coordinates of the location.
4. Click OK.

## 27.15. Lase Target

The Lase Target task simulates aiming a laser beam at a target to guide a laser guided weapon. By default, entities with laser capability lase autonomously. Use this task if you want to lase a specific target. An entity can lase a target while it is executing a movement task.

To lase a target, an entity must have a Laser Designator system. For more information about lasing targets, please see:

- "9.4.2 Lasing Targets" on page 287.
- "34.41. Laser Code" on page 815.
- "34.76. Synchronize Laser Code" on page 833.

➤ **To assign a Lase Target task:**

1. Select the entity that will aim the laser.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Lase Target**. The Lase Target dialog box opens.
3. Select the entity that you want to lase.
4. Click OK.

## 27.16. Launch Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertical)

The Launch Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertical) task lets a surface entity launch a missile that flies to the vicinity of the target and then drops a homing torpedo. To execute this task, an entity needs an Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertically Launched) weapon system.

➤ **To assign a Launch Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertical) task:**

1. Select the surface entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Launch Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertical)**. The Launch Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertical) dialog box opens.
3. Select the target entity.
4. Specify the location at which to drop the homing torpedo.
5. Click OK.

## 27.17. Launch Ballistic Missile at Location

The Launch Ballistic Missile at Location task lets an entity that has a strategic missile weapon system launch a missile at a location.

---

The Ballistic Missile tasks do not use physics-based modeling. They calculate a simple parabola for the trajectory and move the missile along the trajectory ignoring atmospherics, thrust stages, cargo weight, gravity, and the rotation of the earth.

---

➤ **To launch a ballistic missile at a location:**

1. Select an entity with a strategic missile weapon system.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Launch Ballistic Missile at Location**. The Launch Ballistic Missile at Location dialog box opens.
3. Specify a location.
4. In the Missile Type list, select the missile to fire.
5. Click OK.

## 27.18. Launch Ballistic Missile at Target Object

The Launch Ballistic Missile at Target Object task lets an entity that has a strategic missile weapon system launch a missile at a point object, entity, or unit. The destination of the missile is the target's location when the missile is fired. The missile does not track moving targets.

The Ballistic Missile tasks do not use physics-based modeling. They calculate a simple parabola for the trajectory and move the missile along the trajectory ignoring atmospherics, thrust stages, cargo weight, gravity, and the rotation of the earth.

➤ **To launch a ballistic missile at a target object:**

1. Select an entity with a strategic missile weapon system.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Launch Ballistic Missile at Target Object**. The Launch Ballistic Missile at Target Object dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, filter the list of objects.
4. Select the object to fire at.
5. In the Missile Type list, select the missile to fire.
6. Specify the altitude where the missile should detonate.
7. Click OK.

## 27.19. Launch Counter Measures

Fixed-wing and rotary-wing entities can launch counter measures, such as chaff and flares. Launch Counter Measures is not an exclusive task. It does not interrupt an entity's current task. (For more information, please see "9.9. Launching Counter Measures (Chaff and Flare)" on page 294.)

The Evade Missile reactive task automatically launches chaff and flare when a fixed-wing entity evades a missile.

➤ **To assign a Launch Counter Measures task:**

1. Select the entity that you want to launch counter measures.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Launch Counter Measures**. The Launch Counter Measures dialog box opens.
3. In the Counter Measure Types list, select the type of counter measures you want to launch.
4. In the Number To Fire box, specify the number of counter measures to launch.
5. In the Time Between Fires box, specify the amount of time, in seconds, between each counter measure launch.
6. Click OK.

## 27.20. Launch Smoke

The Launch Smoke task causes an entity to create a smoke cloud. The cloud is created as an environmental object. It grows over time.

An entity can launch a smoke cloud towards a threat or in a specific direction. Smoke clouds affect sensors. They do not affect entity movement.

- Tactical smoke is delivered by the M250 smoke grenade launcher. An entity must have this system to execute this task.
- Wind and precipitation dissipate tactical smoke. You can adjust those dissipation factors by editing the Tactical Smoke simulation object in the Simulation Object Editor.

➤ **To assign a Launch Smoke task:**

1. Select the entity that you want to launch smoke.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Launch Smoke**. The Launch Smoke dialog box opens.
3. Select At Nearest Threat or Toward Compass Heading.
4. If you selected Toward Compass Heading, specify a compass heading, in degrees, and indicate whether it is relative to true or magnetic north.
5. Click OK.

## 27.21. Launch Torpedo

Subsurface entities can launch two types of anti-ship torpedoes. One moves at a fixed depth; one homes in on the center of the target. In both cases, the torpedo travels at an initial bearing for a fixed distance before it homes in on the target.

Torpedoes rise to target depth at a fixed rate. If a submarine is quite close to a target when it fires, the torpedo might not be able to rise to target depth in the distance from the submarine to the target. If this happens, it circles until it reaches target depth.

### 27.21.1 Anti-ship (Fixed Depth)

➤ **To assign a Launch Torpedo – Anti-ship (Fixed Depth) task:**

1. Select a subsurface entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Launch Torpedo > Anti-ship (Fixed Depth)**. The Anti-ship (Fixed Depth) dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, filter the entity list.
4. Select the target entity.
5. In the Homing Start Delay box, enter the amount of time that the torpedo should travel on its initial bearing.
6. In the Cruise Depth box, specify the depth the torpedo should travel at. It will remain at this depth.

7. In the Initial Bearing box, specify the bearing the torpedo should travel at until it begins homing in on the target.
8. In the Proximity Trigger Distance box, set the distance from a target at which the torpedo will detonate.
9. Click OK.

### 27.21.2 Anti-Submarine

The anti-submarine torpedo homes in on the center of the target.

➤ **To assign a Launch Torpedo – Anti-submarine task:**

1. Select a subsurface entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Launch Torpedo > Anti-submarine**. The Anti-Submarine dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, filter the entity list.
4. Select the target entity.
5. In the Homing Start Delay box, enter the amount of time that the torpedo should travel on its initial bearing.
6. In the Initial Bearing box, specify the bearing the torpedo should travel at until it begins homing in on the target.
7. In the Proximity Trigger Distance box, set the distance from the target at which the torpedo will detonate.
8. Click OK.

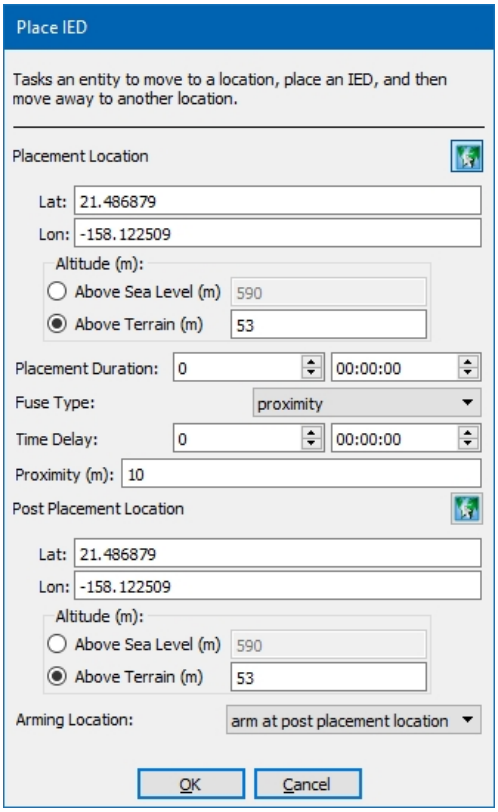
## 27.22. Place IED

The Place IED task lets a human entity place an improvised explosive device (IED) at a particular location and move to a post-placement location. This task also sets the parameters for how the IED will be armed.

➤ **To assign a Place IED task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Place IED**. The Place IED dialog box opens (Figure 239).

**Figure 239. Place IED dialog box**




3. Enter the location where the IED should be placed, or click on the terrain to specify the location.
4. In the Placement Duration box, enter the amount of time it takes to place the IED.
5. Select a fuse type from the Fuse Type list.
6. For a timed delay fuse, specify the time to delay in the Time Delay box.
7. For a proximity fuse, specify the distance from the IED within which another entity will trigger the IED.
8. For the Post Placement Location, specify the location where the entity should move to after it places the IED, or click on the terrain to specify the location.
9. In the Arming Location list select Arm at Placement Location to arm the IED as soon as it is placed, or Arm at Post Placement Location to arm it when the entity reaches the post-placement location.
10. Click OK.

## 27.23. Provide Suppressive Fire at Location

The Provide Suppressive Fire on Location task tells an entity to fire at a location, one meter above that location. For more information, please see "25.8. Suppressive Fire Tasks" on page 567.

The target of suppressive fire must be at least 25 meters away.

➤ **To assign a Provide Suppressive Fire at Location task:**

1. Select the entity that will deliver suppressive fire.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Provide Suppressive Fire at Location**. The Provide Suppressive Fire at Location dialog box opens.
3. Specify the location.
4. In the Duration of Rapid Fire box, type the number of seconds for the initial burst of rapid fire.
5. In the Total Fire Time box, type the number of minutes the entity should provide suppressive fire.
6. In the Maximum Round to Fire box, type the maximum number of rounds to fire.
7. In the Gun list, select the gun to use.
8. Click OK.

## 27.24. Provide Suppressive Fire at Object

The Provide Suppressive Fire from Cover task tells an entity to fire at a simulation object such as a point, line, or area, one meter above the terrain. If the entity must stand or move to the side to see the target, it does so. For more information, please see "25.8. Suppressive Fire Tasks" on page 567.

The target of suppressive fire must be at least 25 meters away.

➤ **To assign a Provide Suppressive Fire from Cover task:**

1. Select the entity that will deliver suppressive fire.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Provide Suppressive Fire from Cover**. The Provide Suppressive Fire from Cover dialog box opens.
3. Select the simulation object to fire at.
4. In the Rapid Fire Duration box, enter the number of seconds for the rapid fire.
5. In the Total Fire Duration box, enter the number of minutes the entity should provide suppressive fire.
6. In the Gun list, select the gun to use.
7. Click OK.

# 27.25. Release Bomb Tasks

Fixed-wing entities can release bombs targeted to a laser spot, a location, or an entity. The Release Bomb on Laser Spot task requires that another entity lase the target. You must synchronize the laser code for the bomber with the laser code for the lasing entity. Use of lasers is described in:

- "9.4.2 Lasing Targets" on page 287.
- "27.15. Lase Target" on page 624.
- "34.41. Laser Code" on page 815.
- "34.76. Synchronize Laser Code" on page 833.

The Release Bomb on Target and Release Bomb on Location tasks cause a bomb to be immediately dropped. The task assumes that the target is in front of the aircraft. The targetable area is a circle whose radius is defined by the altitude of the airplane and its maximum range.

The bomb navigates toward its target based on **max-range** and **max-range-altitude** parameters (configurable in the Simulation Object Editor). A bomb can navigate **max-range** meters laterally if it is at **max-range-altitude** meters above the target. As the altitude changes, the distance it can travel changes accordingly, so at half of **max-range-altitude** it can travel half of **max-range**.

The bomb follows a straight line path from its launch to the point it is navigating to, assuming it can reach it. If its target point is out of range, it gets as close to the target as it can. If the target point moves, the bomb changes course and heads for the new target point.

---

Use of a Release Bomb task requires that you determine if the airplane is in range of the target. The Execute Close Air Support task ensures that the airplane is within range of the target before it drops its bomb. Therefore, we recommend using that task rather than one of the Release Bomb tasks.

---

The Release Bomb on Laser Spot task steers the bomb towards the laser point.

➤ **To assign a release bomb task:**

1. Select the entity that will release the bomb.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement >** *task*, where *task* is Release Bomb on Laser Spot, Release Bomb on Location, or Release Bomb on Target. The appropriate dialog box opens.
3. In the Bomb Types list, select the type of bomb you want to drop.
4. In the Detonation Proximity box, enter the distance from the target at which the bomb should detonate.
5. For Release Bomb on Location, specify the location.

6. For Release Bomb on Target, select the target.
7. Click OK.

## 27.26. Strafe Ground Target

Fixed-wing entities that have the appropriate armament can strafe ground targets. The Strafe Ground Target task takes the following parameters:

- Target Point. The target point to strafe.
- Initial Point. The point at which the aircraft reaches strafing altitude and lines up to strafe the target point. VR-Forces enforces a minimum distance from the initial point to the target. It varies based on the plane's dive angle, strafe range, entry speed, and other parameters. Two kilometers is a good minimum for most entities. If the initial point is too close to the target, VR-Forces sends an error message to the entity console.
- Target Types. The type of entity or object to be targeted at the target point. If you specify none, the entity strafes the target location. If you specify an object type, the entity looks for that object type. If it finds the target type, it strafes it. If it does not find the target type, it either strafes the target point (default behavior) or aborts the strafing run, depending on the state of the Abort Without Target check box.
- Egress Maneuver and Egress Heading. The way the aircraft should exit the strafing run and the heading at which it exits.

You can also initiate a strafing run from the Execute Close Air Support task. Table 25 shows how arguments to the Execute Close Air Support task map to the Strafe Ground Target task.

**Table 25. CAS to Strafe argument mapping**

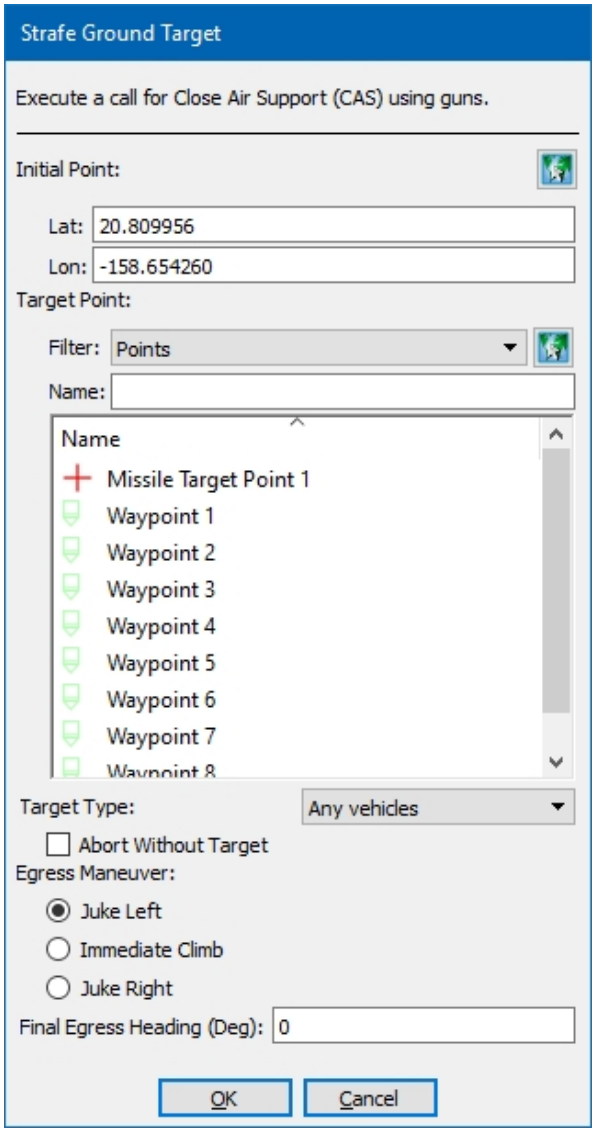
| CAS Argument | Strafe Ground Target Argument |
|---|---|
| Initial Point | Initial Point. |
| Target Point | Target Point. |
| Target: a waypoint | Target Type: None (target location). |
| Target: an entity | Target Type: Target the indicated entity. |
| Offset: none | Egress Maneuver: Immediate Climb. |
| Offset: left | Egress Maneuver: Juke Left. |
| Offset: right | Egress Maneuver: Juke Right. |
| | Abort without target. |
| Egress Heading | Final Egress Heading. |

The effectiveness of a strafing run at killing entities around the target point depends in part on the value of the **dispersal-angle** parameter specified for the munition. You can edit this parameter in *./data/simulationModelSets/base/detonationParams.mtl*. The parameter is described in the comments at the top of the file.

➤ **To assign a Strafe Ground Target task:**

1. Select the entity that will make the strafing run.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Strafe Ground Target**. The Strafe Ground Target dialog box opens (Figure 240).

**Figure 240. Strafe Ground Target dialog box**




3. Click the terrain to specify the initial point or type the coordinates.
4. Select the target point.
5. Optionally, select a target type.
6. If you select a target type other than none, select the Abort Without Target check box to abort the strafing run if the target type is not found. Clear the check box if you want the entity to strafe the target point if the target type is not found.

7. Select an egress maneuver.
8. Optionally, specify an egress heading.
9. Click OK.

## 27.27. Throw Grenade Tasks

Infantry characters can throw hand grenades at a target or at a location. An entity can throw the following types of grenades:

- M67 - fragmentation.
- M7A3 - CS tear gas.
- M84 - stun, or flashbang.
- M18 - colored smoke.
- M83 - white smoke.

### 27.27.1 Throw Grenade at Location

➤ **To assign a Throw Grenade at Location task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Throw Grenade at Location**. The Throw Grenade at Location dialog box opens.
3. In the Grenade Type list, select the type of grenade to throw.
4. Specify the location.
5. Click OK.

### 27.27.2 Throw Grenade at Target

➤ **To assign a Throw Grenade at Target task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Throw Grenade at Target**. The Throw Grenade at Target dialog box opens.
3. Specify the target.
4. In the Grenade Type list, select the type of grenade to throw.
5. Click OK.

# 28. Human and Crowd Tasks

This chapter describes the tasks for humans and crowds that apply to entity-level scenarios. Generic movement and engagement tasks that also apply to humans are described in "Appendix 26. Movement Tasks for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 573 and "Appendix 27. Engagement Tasks for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 611.


28.1. Circle Around Location ..... 637
28.2. Civilian Idle ..... 637
28.3. Civilian Pray ..... 637
28.4. Civilian Protest ..... 637
28.5. Civilian Talk ..... 638
28.6. Close Door ..... 638
28.7. Close Window ..... 638
28.8. Create Pedestrians ..... 638
28.9. Crowd Along Line ..... 639
28.10. Crowd Around Location ..... 639
28.11. Crowd Around Object ..... 640
28.12. Crowd Around Waypoints ..... 640
28.13. Crowd in Front of Entity ..... 641
28.14. DI-Guy Animation ..... 641
28.15. DI-Guy Gesture ..... 641
28.16. Disperse Crowd ..... 642
28.17. Find Cover ..... 642
28.18. Find Firing Position ..... 643
28.19. Fire Team Bound to Location ..... 644
28.20. Fire Team Occupy Fire Position ..... 645
28.21. Fire Team Travel to Waypoint ..... 645
28.22. Flee from Entities ..... 646
28.23. Move Between Cover to Location ..... 646
28.24. Open Door ..... 647

28.25. Open Window ..... 647
28.26. Parachute to Target ..... 648
28.27. Protest Along Line ..... 648
28.28. Protest Around Location ..... 649
28.29. Riot ..... 649
28.30. Rush to Location ..... 649
28.31. Squad Travel to Waypoint ..... 650
28.32. Wait in Queue ..... 650
28.33. Wander ..... 651
28.34. Wander In Area ..... 651

## 28.1. Circle Around Location

The Circle Around Location task causes the members of a unit or crowd to form a circle around a location. They can face in or out. This task only apples to the individually simulated members of a unit (that is, leaf members). If a unit has subordinate units, the task is not passed down to them.

If a unit or crowd has many members, using a small radius may result in overlapping entities.

➤ **To assign a Circle Around Location task:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Circle Around Location**. The Circle Around Location dialog box opens.
3. Specify the location.
4. Specify the direction to face.
5. Specify the radius of the circle to create.

## 28.2. Civilian Idle

The Civilian Idle task causes a human character to stand and cycle through DI-Guy animations typical of a person standing in a group.

➤ **To assign a Civilian Idle task:**

1. Select a human character.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Civilian Idle**.

## 28.3. Civilian Pray

The Civilian Pray task causes a human character to perform a praying animation.

➤ **To assign a Civilian Pray task:**

1. Select a human character.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Civilian Pray**.

## 28.4. Civilian Protest

The Civilian Protest task causes a human character to stand and cycle through DI-Guy animations typical of a person participating in a protest.

---

If you need many people to protest, use the Protest Along Line or Protest Around Location crowd tasks rather than assigning this task to individuals. Please see "28.27. Protest Along Line" on page 648, or "28.28. Protest Around Location" on page 649.

---

➤ **To assign a Civilian Protest task:**

1. Select a human character.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Civilian Protest**.

## 28.5. Civilian Talk

The Civilian Talk task causes a human character to stand and cycle through DI-Guy animations typical of a person engaging in a conversation.

➤ **To assign a Civilian Talk task:**

1. Select a human character.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Civilian Talk**.

## 28.6. Close Door

If a human is within approximately one meter of an open door, this task causes the door to close. This task applies to doors controlled by switch nodes in the terrain, not articulated parts. For more information about opening and closing doors, please see Chapter 8, *Dynamic Terrain*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To assign a Close Door task:**

1. Move a human to within one meter of an open door.
2. Choose **Task > Terrain > Close Door**.

## 28.7. Close Window

If a human is within approximately one meter of an open window, this task causes the window to close. This task applies to windows controlled by switch nodes in the terrain, not articulated parts. For more information about opening and closing windows, please see Chapter 8, *Dynamic Terrain*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To assign a Close Window task:**

1. Move a human to within one meter of an open window.
2. Choose **Task > Terrain > Close Window**.

## 28.8. Create Pedestrians

The Create Pedestrians task adds pedestrians to a crowd. If the crowd is part of a pedestrian area, the new pedestrians wander within the area. If the crowd is not part of a pedestrian area, their wandering is unrestricted.

When the Create Pedestrians task runs, it gives each new pedestrian a Move To Location task, followed by a Wander task. The Create Pedestrians task is not complete until all the Wander tasks have been sent. Therefore, the task does not complete as quickly as you might expect simply based on when the pedestrians get created.

➤ **To assign a Create Pedestrians task:**

1. Select a crowd or select a pedestrian area.
2. Choose **Task > Create Pedestrians**. The Create Pedestrians dialog box opens.
3. Specify the number of pedestrians to create.
4. Select a placement option.
5. Click OK.

## 28.9. Crowd Along Line

The Crowd Along Line task causes a crowd to gather to the left or right of a line at its center point.

➤ **To assign a Crowd Along Line task:**

1. Select a crowd.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Crowd Along Line**. The Crowd Along Line dialog box opens.
3. Select the line the crowd should crowd along.
4. Specify left or right of the line.
5. Click OK.

## 28.10. Crowd Around Location

The Crowd Around Location task causes a crowd unit to cluster around the specified location.

➤ **To assign a Crowd Around Location task:**

1. Select a crowd.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Crowd Around Location**. The Crowd Around Location dialog box opens.
3. Click on the terrain to specify the location or enter the coordinates in the dialog box.
4. Click OK.

## 28.11. Crowd Around Object

The Crowd Around Object task causes a crowd unit to cluster around the specified simulation object or point.

---

The Crowd Around Object task calculates target locations for the members of the crowd to move to that are greater than or equal to the minimum distance specified from the object. However, due to interactions between the crowd members as they move, it is possible that some will end up closer to the target object than the minimum distance.

---

➤ **To assign a Crowd Around Object task:**

1. Select a crowd.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Crowd Around Object**. The Crowd Around Object dialog box opens.
3. In the Filter list, select All Entities or Points.
4. Select the simulation object or point you want the crowd to gather around.
5. In the Minimum Distance box, specify the minimum distance between a member of the crowd and the object.
6. Click OK.

## 28.12. Crowd Around Waypoints

The Crowd Around Waypoints task causes members of a crowd to gather at a waypoint and perform the selected behavior for a specified amount of time. You can choose one or more waypoints. If you choose multiple waypoints, the individual crowd members move to the waypoint closest to them.

➤ **To assign a Crowd Around Waypoints task:**

1. Select a crowd.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Crowd Around Waypoints**. The Crowd Around Waypoints dialog box opens.
3. Select one or more waypoints where the crowd should gather.
4. In the Behavior list, select Talk or Pray to indicate what the members of the crowd should do at the waypoint.
5. In the Duration box, enter the number of minutes that the crowd should perform the selected behavior. Once the time has elapsed, the crowd is ready to perform another task. They continue performing the behavior until another task is assigned.
6. In the Minimum Distance box, specify the minimum distance between a member

of the crowd and the waypoint.

7. Click OK.

## 28.13. Crowd in Front of Entity

The Crowd in Front of Entity task causes a crowd to gather in front of an entity, where the front of the entity is determined based on its heading.

➤ **To assign a Crowd in Front of Entity task:**

1. Select a crowd.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Crowd in Front of Entity**. The Crowd in Front of Entity dialog box opens.
3. Select the entity you want the crowd to gather in front of.
4. Click OK.

## 28.14. DI-Guy Animation

VR-Forces can specify the movements and appearance of DI-Guy models used in the Stealth observer mode and in 3D visualization programs such as VR-Vantage Stealth. The DI-Guy Animation task directs the 3D model to engage in a one-time or repeated series of motions. VR-Forces does not simulate the actions that the 3D model performs; it just adjusts the location and orientation of the VR-Forces entity to synchronize it with the 3D model's animated behavior. To change a 3D model's appearance, use the DI-Guy Appearance set data request. For details, please see "34.20. DI-Guy Characteristics (Appearance, Head, Body Weight)" on page 806.

---

The DI-Guy Animation task applies only to lifeform entities.

---

➤ **To assign a DI-Guy Animation task:**

1. Select the lifeform entity whose behavior you want to animate.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > DI-Guy Animation**. The DI-Guy Animation dialog box opens.
3. In the Animation list, select an animation.
4. In the Animate group box, specify the duration of the animation.
5. Click OK.

## 28.15. DI-Guy Gesture

The DI-Guy Gesture task lets you assign a gesture to a human character. Gestures are motions that a character makes using part of its body. By contrast, animations may involved moving from one place to another.

➤ **To assign a DI-Guy Gesture task:**

1. Select the lifeform entity whose behavior you want to animate.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > DI-Guy Gesture**. The DI-Guy Gesture dialog box opens.
3. In the Gestures list, select a gesture.
4. Select the Wait Until Complete check box if you do not want the entity to start another gesture until this one is complete.
5. Select the Preview check box to see what the gesture looks like.
6. Click OK.

## 28.16. Disperse Crowd

The Disperse Crowd task causes a crowd to wander freely. If the crowd was created as part of a pedestrian area, this task allows it to wander outside the area. (A Wander task would restrict it to the area.) The primary purpose of this task is to disperse a crowd that has previously crowded around an entity or location.

➤ **To assign a Disperse Crowd task:**

1. Select the crowd you want to disperse.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Disperse Crowd**.

## 28.17. Find Cover

The Find Cover task causes a human entity to find a location from which a specified entity (the threat) cannot see it. The task takes a range, a distance from threat, and threat radius.

The range is the distance from its starting location within which the tasked entity will seek cover. The distance from threat is the minimum distance to maintain between the threat and the tasked entity. For example, you wouldn't expect the entity to run right next to the threat to reach some point on the other side of it. You would expect it to maintain some distance from the threat entity.

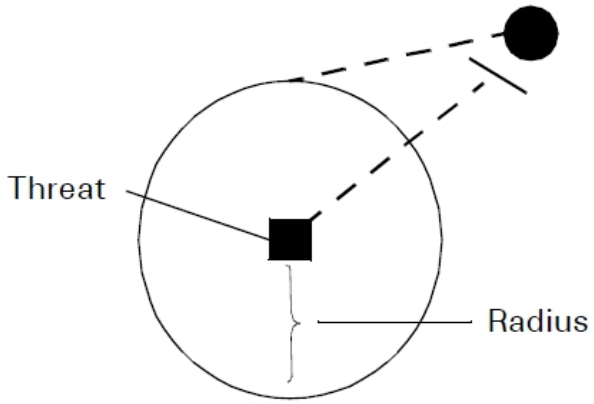
The threat radius defines an area around the threat from which line-of-sight calculations are made. Figure 241 illustrates this concept. Line-of-sight between the threat and the covered entity is blocked. However, the covered entity is still visible from a point within the threat radius.

---

The entity seeking cover cannot hide behind other entities. It only hides behind terrain features, such as walls or doors.

---

**Figure 241. Threat radius**



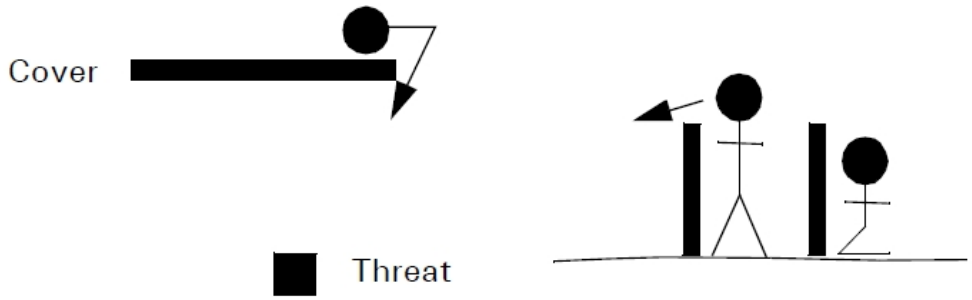

➤ **To assign a Find Cover task:**

1. Select an entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Find Cover**. The Find Cover dialog box opens.
3. Select the entity to find cover from (the threat).
4. Specify the Threat Radius.
5. Specify the Range.
6. Specify the Distance From Threat.
7. Click OK.

## 28.18. Find Firing Position

The Find Firing Position task causes a human entity to find a location from which a specified entity (the threat) cannot see it, but from which it can easily fire on the threat entity. Figure 242 illustrates this concept. The entity under cover can easily move to a location that has line-of-sight to the threat. This could be by moving to the side or looking over the top of the terrain feature it is hiding behind.

**Figure 242. Firing position**



The entity seeking cover cannot hide behind other entities. It only hides behind terrain features, such as walls or doors.

The task takes a range, a distance from threat, and a threat radius value. The range is the distance from its starting position within which the tasked entity will seek cover. The distance from threat is the minimum distance to maintain between the threat and the tasked entity. For example, you wouldn't expect the entity to run right next to the threat to reach some point on the other side of it. You would expect it to maintain some distance from the threat entity.

The threat radius defines an area around the threat from which line-of-sight calculations are made. Figure 241 on the previous page illustrates this concept. Line-of-sight between the threat and the covered entity is blocked. However, the covered entity is still visible from a point within the threat radius.

➤ **To assign a Find Firing Position task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Find Firing Position**. The Find Firing Position dialog box opens.
3. Select the entity to find cover from (the threat).
4. Specify the Threat Radius.
5. Specify the Range.
6. Specify the Distance From Threat.
7. Click OK.

## 28.19. Fire Team Bound to Location

The Fire Team Bound to Location task causes a fire team to move in successive bounds to the specified destination while watching the location of a threat.

Initially, the team moves to points that they can use as fire positions while hidden from the threat location. Next, the team splits into two groups and each group then alternates between watching the threat (overwatch) and moving toward the threat. While moving toward the destination, the entities rush forward approximately 10-15 meters and then assume new overwatch positions. If you select the Always Fire check box, then the entities in the overwatch position will fire toward the threat location if they have line of sight.

➤ **To assign the Fire Team Bound to Location task:**

1. Select the fire team.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fire Team Bound to Location**. The Fire Team Bound to Location dialog box opens.
3. Click the Destination select button .

4. Click on the terrain where you want the fire team to move towards, or enter the coordinates of the location.
5. Optionally, set the altitude. Note that whatever altitude you use, the destination will be at ground level.
6. Click the Threat Location select button.
7. Specify the location of the threat, and optionally the altitude, as described in "14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude" on page 380. The altitude can be useful if you want to specify a point above the terrain that is more visible to the fire team.
8. If you want the members of the team to fire at the threat location while they are in the overwatch position, select the Always Fire check box.
9. Click OK.

## 28.20. Fire Team Occupy Fire Position

The Fire Team Occupy Fire Position task causes a unit to find firing positions. This is similar to the Find Firing Position task, but it works for a unit instead of individuals. Please see "28.18. Find Firing Position" on page 643, for details.

➤ **To assign the Fire Team Occupy Fire Position task:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fire Team Occupy Fire Position**. The Fire Team Occupy Fire Position dialog box opens.
3. Specify the Fire Position.
4. Specify the Range.
5. Select the entity to find cover from (the threat).
6. Specify the Threat Radius.
7. Specify the Distance From Threat.
8. Click OK.

## 28.21. Fire Team Travel to Waypoint

You can order a fire team to move to a waypoint in a specified formation. The formations and their spacing are defined in the Simulation Object Editor. You can override the spacing when you assign the task.

To learn more about configuring formations, please refer to "64.5. Editing Formations" on page 1332.

➤ **To assign the Fire Team Travel to Waypoint task:**

1. Select the fire team.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Fire Team Travel to Waypoint**. The Fire Team Travel to Waypoint dialog box opens.
3. In the Name box, type the name of the waypoint to move to, or select it in the list or on the terrain.
4. From the Formation list, select the formation that the fire team should move in.
5. Optionally, select the Override Formation Spacing check box to have the entities in the team move with a different spacing than is specified in the SMS.
6. If you chose to override the formation spacing, enter the new spacing in the Minimum Entity Spacing box, in meters.
7. Click OK.

## 28.22. Flee from Entities

The Flee from Entities task causes a human entity to flee from a specified entity. It flees until it is a specified distance away. This task can be assigned to individual humans and to crowds. The entities must be within a navigation area.

➤ **To assign a Flee from Entities task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Flee From Entities**. The Flee From Entities dialog box opens.
3. Select the entity that you want this entity to flee from.
4. Optionally, specify the radius of the flight zone.
5. Click OK.

## 28.23. Move Between Cover to Location

The Move Between Cover to Location task causes an entity to move to a location by moving between cover points (locations where it is not visible to a specified threat entity). The task requires you to specify a distance from the threat entity and a threat radius.

---

The entity seeking cover cannot hide behind other entities. It only hides behind terrain features, such as walls or doors.

---

The distance from threat is the minimum distance to maintain between the threat and the tasked entity. For example, you wouldn't expect the entity to run right next to the threat to reach some point on the other side of it. You would expect it to maintain some distance from the threat entity.

VR-Forces calculates cover points based on line-of-sight from a threat radius around the threat entity. Figure 241 illustrates this concept. Line-of-sight between the threat and the covered entity is blocked. However, the covered entity is still visible from a point within the threat radius.

---

The default values for threat radius and distance from threat are fairly small. Unless you are playing in a congested area, you will probably want to change them.

---

➤ **To assign a Move Between Cover to Location task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Move Between Cover to Location**. The Move Between Cover to Location dialog box opens.
3. Click on the terrain to specify the location or enter coordinates in the dialog box.
4. Select the threat entity in the Find Cover From list.
5. In the Threat Radius box, specify the threat radius.
6. In the Distance From Threat box, specify the minimum distance to maintain between the threat entity and the moving entity.
7. Click OK.

## 28.24. Open Door

If a human is within approximately one meter of a closed door, this task causes the door to open. This task applies to doors controlled by switch nodes in the terrain, not articulated parts. For more information about opening and closing doors, please see Chapter 8, *Dynamic Terrain*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To assign an Open Door task:**

1. Move a human to within one meter of a closed door.
2. Choose **Task > Terrain > Open Door**.

## 28.25. Open Window

If a human is within approximately one meter of a closed window, this task causes the window to open. This task applies to windows controlled by switch nodes in the terrain, not articulated parts. For more information about opening and closing windows, please see Chapter 8, *Dynamic Terrain*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To assign an Open Window task:**

1. Move a human to within one meter of a closed window.
2. Choose **Task > Terrain > Open Window**.

## 28.26. Parachute to Target

The Parachute to Target task causes a paratrooper entity to disembark from an aircraft, deploy its parachute and try to land at the target object or location. The paratrooper tries to land as close to the target as it can given the altitude at which it disembarks and the distance to the target. If it cannot reach the target before it lands, the entity walks towards the target after it lands.

---

While an entity is parachuting, if you double-click it to try to move it, it snaps to the terrain.

The Air Drop task can also cause paratroopers to parachute. For details, please see "26.2. Airdrop Along Route" on page 576.

---

➤ **To assign a Parachute to Target task:**

1. Select the paratrooper.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Parachute to Target**. The Parachute to Target dialog box opens.
3. Specify a target. It can be a simulation object or a location. If you specify both, the object is used. The Target Object section automatically has focus. If you want to set a location, be sure to select the filter button first. (For details about controlling focus in dialog boxes, please see "25.1.8 Filtering the Object Selection Lists" on page 550.)
4. Specify the altitude at which to deploy the parachute. If the aircraft is below the deployment altitude, the parachute deploys as soon as the entity disembarks.
5. Click OK.

## 28.27. Protest Along Line

The Protest Along Line task causes a crowd to gather along a specified line and continuously execute a series of protest animations.

➤ **To assign a Protest Along Line task:**

1. Select the crowd.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Protest Along Line**. The Protest Along Line dialog box opens.
3. Specify a line.
4. Specify which side of the line to protest on.
5. Click OK.

## 28.28. Protest Around Location

The Protest Around Location task causes a crowd to gather around a specified location and continuously execute a series of protest animations.

➤ **To assign a Protest task:**

1. Select the crowd.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Protest**. The Protest Around Location dialog box opens.
3. Specify a location.
4. Click OK.

## 28.29. Riot

The Riot task causes a crowd to move into an area specified for the riot, going to riot points or other places in the area. The members of the crowd run and perform angry gestures. You can also specify that the rioters should start fires, which are ignited at each riot point inside the area. Rioters ignore riot points placed outside the area.

The area where the riot occurs can be any area, while riot points are a specific type of tactical graphic.

➤ **To assign a Riot task:**

1. Select a crowd.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Riot**. The Riot dialog box opens.
3. Select an area where the riot will occur.
4. Optionally, select the Start Fires check box. Rioters will start fires at the riot points inside the specified area.
5. Click OK.

## 28.30. Rush to Location

The Rush to Location task causes an entity to move quickly to the specified location and then assume a prone position or, optionally, a kneeling position.

➤ **To assign a Rush to Location task:**

1. Select an entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Rush to Location**. The Rush to Location dialog box opens.
3. Specify a location.
4. Optionally, select the Destination Is High Cover check box. This causes the entity to kneel at the specified location rather than lying prone.
5. Click OK.

## 28.31. Squad Travel to Waypoint

You can order a squad to move to a waypoint. The squad's formation is a lead fire team that moves in a wedge formation, followed by the squad leader and then the trailing fire team. The spacing of the formation is defined in the Simulation Object Editor but you can override it when you assign the task.

To learn more about configuring formations, please refer to "64.5. Editing Formations" on page 1332.

If you select the Use Overwatch check box, then the squad leader and the trailing fire team follow the lead fire team at a greater distance. Another waypoint is created just past the waypoint specified in the task. The lead fire team gathers at this new waypoint, while the squad leader and the trailing fire team gather at the task's waypoint.

➤ **To assign the Squad Travel to Waypoint task:**

1. Select the squad.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Squad Travel to Waypoint**. The Squad Travel to Waypoint dialog box opens.
3. In the Name box, type the name of the waypoint to move to, or select it in the list or on the terrain.
4. Optionally, select the Use Overwatch check box to increase the following distance between the lead fire team and the squad leader and the trailing fire team.
5. Optionally, select the Override Formation Spacing check box to have the entities in each fire team move with a formation spacing that is different than is specified in the SMS.
6. If you chose to override the formation spacing, enter the new spacing in the Minimum Entity Spacing box, in meters.
7. Click OK.

## 28.32. Wait in Queue

The Wait in Queue task causes a human to move to the beginning of a queue tactical graphic and then move along the line until it stands behind the last human in the line. (The first human in line moves to the end point of the tactical graphic, which is the beginning of the queue.) As people leave the top of the queue, the entity moves up in line.

Since this is a Wait task, the entity does not move to the next task in its plan until it is released from the queue. Entities get released from a queue when the Release Next Entity From Queue task is sent to the queue. For more information, please see "29.10. Release Next Entity From Queue" on page 677.

The Wait in Queue task only works with a queue tactical graphic. It does not work with other types of lines.

➤ **To assign a Wait in Queue task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Wait > Wait in Queue**. The Wait in Queue dialog box opens.
3. Select the queue that the entity should wait in.
4. Click OK.

## 28.33. Wander

The Wander task causes a lifeform entity to move to a series of randomly chosen locations for the specified amount of time. You can constrain wandering to a specified area. If the entity is using a preferred navigation mode and there is preferred road data for the terrain, the Wander task will only choose destinations that meet the preference criteria. (For information about setting navigaiton preferences, please see "34.48. Navigation Preferences" on page 819.) The entity must be in a navigation area.

➤ **To assign a Wander task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Wander**. The Wander dialog box opens.
3. Select a Duration option – Indefinitely or Timed. If you select Timed, specify the amount of time to wander in days, hours, minutes, and seconds.
4. Select a Movement options – Free or Restricted To Area. If you select Restricted To Area, type the name of an area or select it in the list or on the map.
5. Click OK.

## 28.34. Wander In Area

The Wander In Area task causes a crowd to wander in the specified area. The entity must be in a navigation area.

➤ **To assign a Wander In Area task:**

1. Select the crowd.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Wander In Area**. The Wander In Area dialog box opens.
3. Select the area to wander in.
4. Click OK.

# 29. Embarkation, Wait, Radio, and Other Tasks

This chapter describes the tasks supplied with VR-Forces that are categorized as Embarkation, Radio, Wait, Other, and uncategorized.


29.1. Embarkation Tasks ..... 655
29.1.1 Disembark ..... 655
29.1.2 Disembark All ..... 655
29.1.3 Embark ..... 656
29.1.4 Airdrop ..... 658
29.1.5 Airdrop from Aircraft ..... 658
29.1.6 Rope Sling Load Pick Up ..... 659
29.1.7 Rope Sling Load Drop Off ..... 660
29.1.8 Fast Rope Insertion ..... 660
29.1.9 Rope Suspension Extraction ..... 661
29.1.10 Extract Using Rope ..... 662
29.1.11 Rope Suspension Insertion ..... 663
29.1.12 Ladder Extraction ..... 663
29.1.13 Extract Using Ladder ..... 664
29.1.14 Ladder Insertion ..... 665
29.1.15 Insert Using Ladder ..... 666
29.1.16 Dismount ..... 666
29.2. Internal Transfer of Fuel Task ..... 667
29.3. Radio Tasks ..... 667
29.3.1 Send Radio Set ..... 667
29.3.2 Send Radio Task ..... 668
29.3.3 Send Text Message ..... 669
29.4. Wait Tasks ..... 670
29.4.1 Wait ..... 670
29.4.2 Wait Duration ..... 670
29.4.3 Wait Elapsed ..... 670

29.5. Tasks for Moving Articulated Parts ..... 671
29.5.1 Close Car Door ..... 671
29.5.2 Close Cargo Door ..... 671
29.5.3 Deploy Refueling Boom ..... 671
29.5.4 Lower Periscope ..... 672
29.5.5 Open Car Door ..... 672
29.5.6 Open Cargo Door ..... 672
29.5.7 Raise Periscope ..... 673
29.5.8 Stow Refueling Boom ..... 673
29.6. Embedded Entity Tasks ..... 673
29.6.1 Deploying Embedded Entities ..... 674
29.6.2 Recovering Deployed Entities ..... 674
29.6.3 Sector Search Operation ..... 674
29.6.4 Deploying an Entity by Assigning a Task ..... 675
29.7. Deploy Sonobuoy ..... 676
29.8. Deploy Sonobuoys Along Route ..... 676
29.9. Sonar Dip ..... 677
29.10. Release Next Entity From Queue ..... 677
29.11. User Task ..... 678
29.12. Reactive Tasks ..... 678
29.13. Background Processes ..... 679

# 29.1. Embarkation Tasks

This section describes tasks for simulating embarking and disembarking. Simulation objects move to the parent simulation object to embark, and move away after disembarking. For immediate embarkation and disembarkation, use the Embarked and Disembarked set data requests or the embarkation commands on the Objects menu. For a conceptual discussion of embarkation, please see "17.1. Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects" on page 436.

## 29.1.1 Disembark

The Disembark task causes a simulation object to move to the parent simulation object's egress (exit) point and disembark. If the selected simulation object is a unit (disaggregated), the disembark task is given to all embarked subordinates. The task is considered complete when all subordinates are disembarked.

- When a simulation object disembarks, it goes to the disembarkation location. However, it does not move away from that location. If you plan to disembark several simulation objects from the same parent by giving them disembark tasks, you are responsible for making sure that each simulation object moves from the disembarkation point before the next simulation object disembarks.
- Units in the aggregated state cannot embark or disembark. If a disaggregated unit is embarked, you cannot aggregate it either manually, or as a result of automated aggregation conditions.
- The Fast Rope Insertion task causes infantry to disembark from a helicopter. For details, please see "29.1.8 Fast Rope Insertion" on page 660.

➤ **To assign a Disembark task:**

1. Select the simulation object you want to disembark.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Disembark**, or click the Disembark button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar.

## 29.1.2 Disembark All

The Disembark All task is given to a parent simulation object. It gives a Disembark task to all embarked simulation objects except aggregates. When you issue a Disembark All task, VR-Forces tries to disembark the simulation objects sequentially and have them move to sufficiently dispersed locations to avoid collision problems.

➤ **To assign a Disembark All task:**

1. Select the parent simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Disembark All**.

### 29.1.3 Embark

The Embark task causes a simulation object to move to the ingress (entry) point of the parent simulation object and embark on it. If the embarking simulation object is a unit, each available taskable subordinate is given an embark task. When all subordinates have embarked, the task is considered complete.

---

Units in the aggregated state cannot embark or disembark.

---

The Embark task is valid only if the specified parent simulation object is configured to accept the simulation object that wants to embark on it. If you task a simulation object to embark on a simulation object that is not configured to receive it, for example, you task a DI to embark on an M1A2, the simulation object will not respond to the task. If you want to embark a simulation object on a simulation object that is not configured to receive it, you can use the immediate embarkation process. For details, please see "17.1. Embarking and Disembarking Simulation Objects" on page 436.

Human characters have a set of animations that allow them to open and close car doors and get into and out of vehicles that have interior geometry and articulated doors. For details, please see "Embarking Humans in Cars" on the facing page.

---

- If you are using HLA and want to use the embarkation feature, you must use RPR FOM 2, draft 17 or later.
- If the embarkation spaces on the parent simulation object are full, VR-Forces sends a message to the back-end console and the simulation object does not try to embark.
- If you give multiple simulation objects embark tasks for the same parent, you are responsible for spreading the tasks over time so that the simulation objects do not all converge on the parent at the same time, which would result in problems due to collision avoidance.
- A simulation object is considered embarked as soon as it reaches its ingress point. In plan view mode, its icon is hidden immediately. However, in a 3D mode, the simulation object may need to continue moving to reach its slot on the parent. If you task the parent simulation object to move before a simulation object has moved to its slot, the embarking 3D model may end up in an odd position relative to the parent simulation object. To avoid this visual problem, allow time for the embarking simulation object to stop moving before the parent entity moves.

---

➤ **To assign an Embark task:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Embark**, or click the Embark button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Embark On dialog box opens.

   ---

   Unlike the Embark On dialog box that opens when you choose **Objects > Embarkation > Embark**, the Embark On dialog box for the Embark task does not allow you to choose the embarkation point.

   ---

3. Select the parent simulation object (the simulation object to embark on) or type its name in the Name box.
4. If the parent simulation object has slots of a specific type and you want the simulation object to embark in a slot of a particular type, select the type in the Slot Type list. Slots of that type are listed in the Slot Name list. (For information about slot types and slot names, please see "66.2. Configuring Slots" on page 1368.)
5. Select a slot from the Slot Name list.
6. If you want the simulation object to use any available slot, select the Choose Any Slot if Requested Slot Not Available check box.
7. Click OK.

### Embarking Humans in Cars

Some human characters have animations that allow them to open and close car doors and get into and out of cars. Humans get into and out of cars using the Embark and Disembark tasks.

When you give an entity an embark task for a car, you can specify that it embark in the driver's seat or a passenger seat. If you choose a passenger seat, you can specify which one to use. You do this by specifying the slot to embark in, as described in "29.1.3 Embark" on the previous page.

If you do not specify the slot to use, the first entity that embarks in a car gets into the driver's seat. Additional entities embark in passenger seats until the number of slots available is used up.

The embark in cars capability is primarily intended for use with aerial surveillance scenarios. Viewing embarkation at ground level will not provide a completely realistic experience, including the following issues:

- You cannot change the speed at which entities enter and exit the vehicle and open and close the door. For example, they cannot run and jump into a car or jump out of a car and immediately run away.
- Contact between an entity's hand and the car door will not be entirely lifelike.

- If Show Occupants is enabled, an entity that embarks in the driver's seat will get in on top of the automatically displayed driver. We recommend you disable occupants for all cars or at least the car to be embarked on. For information about showing and hiding occupants, please see "34.34. Hide Occupants" on page 812 and "44.4. Displaying DI-Guys in Vehicles" on page 1011.
- The entry and exit animations are calibrated for civilian vehicles. Trying to embark on a large vehicle, such as a truck that has doors that are high off the ground, is not taken into account.
- This release does not support drivers in the right front seat.

## 29.1.4 Airdrop

The Airdrop task is used by aircraft to disembark paratroopers or entities such as vehicles. It specifies only when the objects embarked on the aircraft will parachute, and it can specify the number of "drop slots" available to those entities.

Drop slots are not the same as embarkation slots. On an aircraft, drop slots indicate the number of intervals at which entities can exit the aircraft with the Airdrop from Aircraft task. On entities, the drop slot indicates the order in which they will perform that task. Drop slots do not support units.

The entities must have a task for deploying the parachute or they will not exit the aircraft. Please see "29.1.5 Airdrop from Aircraft" below for details.

---

The movement task Parachute to Target does not coordinate with Airdrop.

---

➤ **To assign an airdrop task:**

1. Select the aircraft that the parachuting entities are embarked upon.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Airdrop**. The Airdrop dialog box opens.
3. Indicate the number of seconds between drop. Entities will exit the aircraft at that interval.
4. Optionally, you can select the Use Drop Slots check box and then define the number of drop slots. One or more entities can exit the aircraft at each drop slot, as specified in the Airdrop from Aircraft task.
5. Click OK.

## 29.1.5 Airdrop from Aircraft

Paratrooper entities and simulation objects with the Air Drop Capable system (such as vehicles) can parachute from an aircraft on which they are embarked. The aircraft must have a task for airdropping the entity. For more information, please see "29.1.4 Airdrop" above, or "26.2. Airdrop Along Route" on page 576Airdrop or Airdrop Along Route.

Drop slots are optional. If you use them, you should specify the drop slots in both the tasks for the entities on the aircraft and the aircraft itself. If the aircraft's airdrop task does not use drop slots, then the entities will parachute one at a time (regardless

of any specified drop slots). If the aircraft's airdrop task has fewer drop slots defined than the drop slot specified for an entity, then that entity will not perform the airdrop. Units cannot use drop slots.

---

While an entity is parachuting, if you double-click it to try to move it, it can snap to the terrain. If the entity was on a palette, its palette continues to descend.

---

➤ **To assign an airdrop from aircraft task:**

1. Select the entity embarked on the aircraft.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Airdrop from Aircraft**. The Airdrop from Aircraft dialog box opens.
3. Indicate whether the entity should deploy the parachute after a specific amount of time or at a particular altitude.
   - To specify that the entity should deploy the parachute seconds after exiting the aircraft, select the Deploy At Elapsed Time check box and then enter the number of seconds.
   - If you choose to deploy at altitude, you can enter the altitude in meters. You can use the check box to indicate that the altitude be above ground level (default is sea level).

   Be sure that the entity deploys the parachute at a point where it will open and slow their descent to the terrain.
4. If the entity is a vehicle or another simulation object with the Air Drop Capable system, you can specify the number of parachutes that the entity should use from the Cargo Parachute Type list. This setting does not affect the parachute for Paratrooper entities.
5. Optionally, specify a point where the entity should try to land.
6. Optionally, specify a drop slot. This is the order in which the entity will exit the aircraft if the Airdrop or Airdrop Along Route task includes drop slots. Multiple entities can use the same slot to exit the aircraft simultaneously.
7. Click OK.

## 29.1.6 Rope Sling Load Pick Up

The Rope Sling Load Pick Up task causes a helicopter to move to a specified location and then move to a designated cargo to load on the rope. Helicopters require the Fast Roping system.

➤ **To assign a Rope Sling Load Pick Up task:**

1. Select the helicopter.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Rope Sling Load Pick Up**. The Rope Sling Load Pick Up dialog box opens.

3. Optionally, filter the Pickup Point list to view either Waypoints or Plan Variables.
4. Specify the location that the helicopter should move to.
5. Specify the cargo for the helicopter to pick up.
6. Click OK.

### 29.1.7 Rope Sling Load Drop Off

The Rope Sling Load Drop Off task causes a helicopter to move to a specified location and drop off cargo that it picked with the Rope Sling Load Pick Up task.

➤ **To assign a Rope Sling Load Drop Off task:**

1. Select the helicopter.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Rope Sling Load Drop Off**. The Rope Sling Load Drop Off dialog box opens.
3. Specify the location where the helicopter should drop off the cargo.
4. Click OK.

### 29.1.8 Fast Rope Insertion

The Fast Rope Insertion task causes a helicopter to move to a specified waypoint and disembark a specified number of embarked entities using a fast rope animation. The disembarked entities slide down the rope, then move to a specified muster point and assume a kneeling posture.

This task is only available to helicopters that have the Fast Roping system, such as the MH-60 Black Hawk or the CH-47 Chinook.

➤ **To assign a Fast Rope Insertion task:**

1. Embark entities on a helicopter that supports the Fast Rope Insertion task.
2. Select the helicopter.
3. Choose **Task>Embarkation>Fast Rope Insertion**. The Fast Rope Insertion dialog box opens.
4. Optionally, filter the Insertion Point list to view either Waypoints or Plan Variables.
5. Specify the location at which the insertion should take place.
6. Specify the altitude at which the helicopter should hover.
7. Specify the number of entities to be disembarked and inserted.
8. Optionally, filter the Muster Point list to view either Waypoints or Plan Variables.
9. Specify the destination where the entities should move to after disembarking.
10. Click OK.

### 29.1.9 Rope Suspension Extraction

Helicopters with the Fast Roping system can perform a rope extraction. The Rope Extraction task specifies the waypoint where the helicopter will lower the rope and which entities to extract. Those entities must be within 50 meters of the rope and also have the Extract Using Rope task or they will not embark on the rope. For details, see "29.1.10 Extract Using Rope" on the next page.

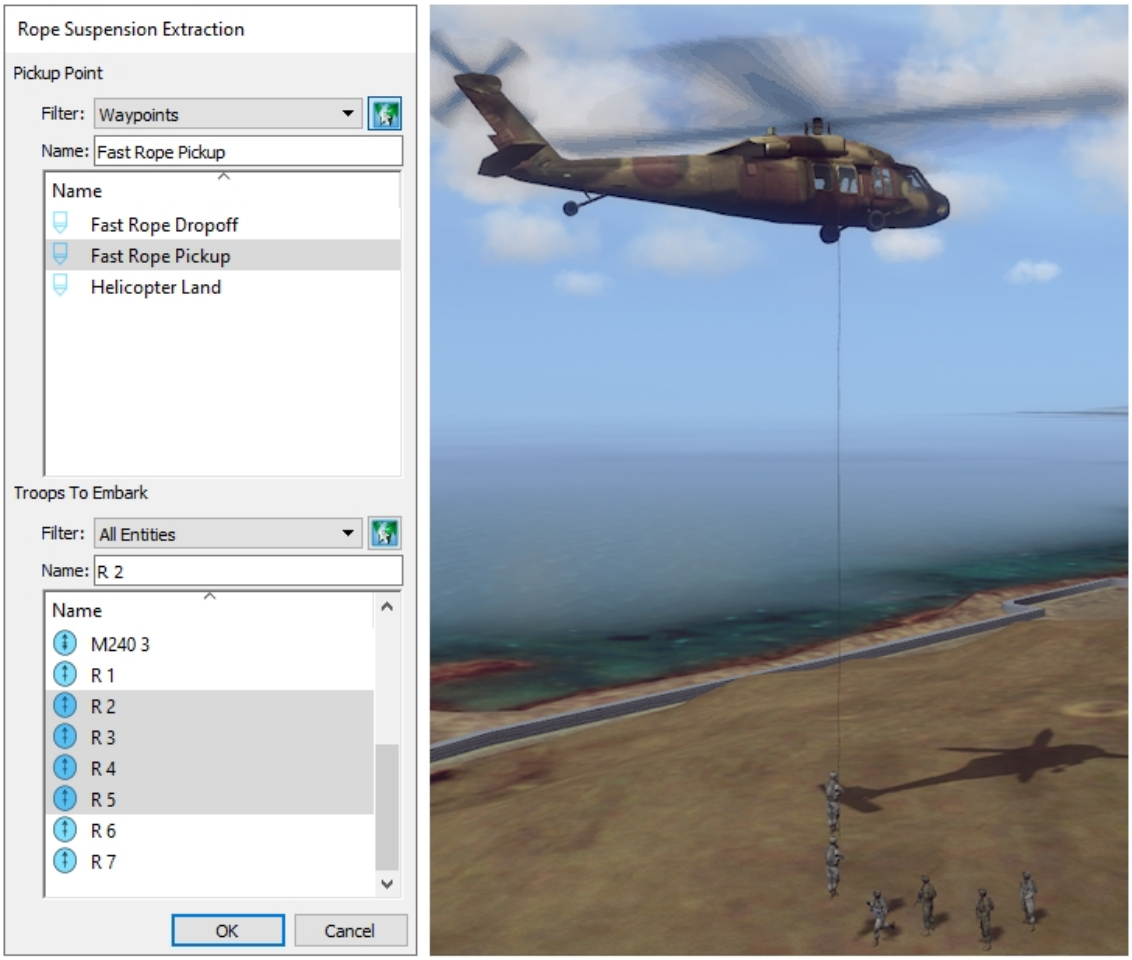
This task is only available to helicopters that have the Fast Roping system.

➤ **To have a helicopter extract entities with a rope:**

1. Select a helicopter that supports the Rope Extraction task.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Rope Suspension Extraction**. The Rope Suspension Extraction dialog box opens (Figure 243).
3. Optionally, filter the Pickup Point list to view either Waypoints or Plan Variables.
4. In the Pickup Point list, specify the location from which the entities will be extracted.
5. Optionally, filter the Troops to Embark list to see either All Entities or Plan Variables.
6. In the Troops to Embark list, select the entities to extract.
7. Click OK.

When the vehicle arrives at the waypoint and deploys the rope, entities on its Troops to Embark list that have the Extract Using Rope task and are within 50 meters of the rope will embark on the rope one at a time. After an entity attaches itself to the rope, the vehicle ascends slightly to allow the next entity to attach to the rope.

**Figure 243. Rope Suspension Extraction**




## 29.1.10 Extract Using Rope

Entities can be extracted via a rope deployed by a helicopter using the Rope Suspension Extraction task; please see "29.1.9 Rope Suspension Extraction" on the previous page. In addition to the Extract Using Rope task, the entities must be included on the Troops to Embark list in the Rope Suspension Extraction task, and they must be within 50 meters of the point on the terrain where the rope was deployed.

Entities that have been extracted using the rope can only disembark from the rope via the Rope Suspension Insertion task. Please see "29.1.11 Rope Suspension Insertion" on the facing page.

➤ **To specify that an entity will be extracted using a rope:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Extract Using Rope**.

When the helicopter arrives and deploys the rope, surviving entities embark on the rope one at a time. After an entity attaches itself to the rope, the vehicle ascends slightly to allow the next entity to attach to the rope.

### 29.1.11 Rope Suspension Insertion

Helicopters with the Fast Roping system can perform an insertion via rope suspension using the Rope Suspension Insertion task. This applies to entities that are embarked on the helicopter's rope from an earlier extraction, and is the only way to disembark those entities. Please see "29.1.9 Rope Suspension Extraction" on page 661, to learn how to embark entities on the rope.

This task is different from the Fast Rope Insertion task, which is used for entities that begin while embarked inside a helicopter and then slide down a rope. For details, please see "29.1.8 Fast Rope Insertion" on page 660.

This task is only available to helicopters that have the Fast Roping system.

➤ **To have a helicopter insert entities via rope suspension:**

1. Select a helicopter that supports the Rope Suspension Insertion task.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Rope Suspension Insertion**. The Rope Suspension Insertion dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, filter the Dropoff Point list to see either Waypoints or Plan Variables.
4. In the Dropoff Point list, select the location where the entities will be inserted.
5. Click OK.

When the helicopter arrives at the waypoint, entities on the rope will disembark one at a time. After the entity at the bottom disembarks, the helicopter descends slightly so that the next entity on the rope can disembark.

### 29.1.12 Ladder Extraction

Helicopters with the Rope Ladder system can perform a ladder extraction. The Ladder Extraction task specifies the waypoint where it will drop the ladder and which entities to extract. Those entities must be within 50 meters of the ladder and also have the Extract Using Ladder task, or they will not climb the ladder and board the vehicle. For details, see "29.1.13 Extract Using Ladder" on the next page.

This task has the option to open the vehicle's rear cargo door. You can use the Simulation Object Editor to edit the Rope Ladder system and attach it to the rear of the helicopter instead of the front crew door. In that case, the ladder would deploy from the back and then the entities ascend the ladder and embark on the helicopter using the cargo door. Please see "63.4.4 Editing a System's Properties" on page 1312 for details.

This task is only available to helicopters that have the Rope Ladder system.

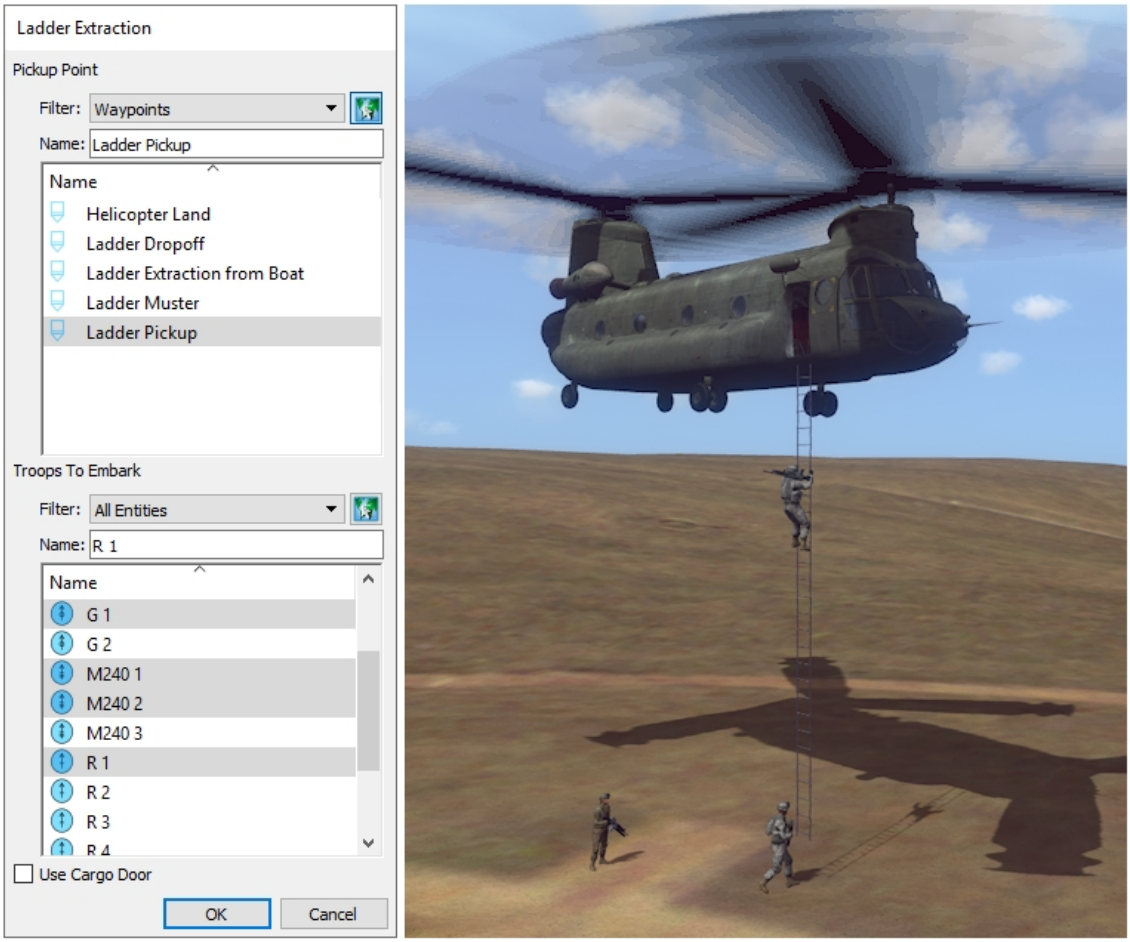
➤ **To have a helicopter extract entities with a ladder:**

1. Select a helicopter that supports the Ladder Extraction task.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Ladder Extraction**. The Ladder Extraction dialog box opens (Figure 244).

3. Optionally, filter the Pickup Point list to view either Waypoints or Plan Variables.
4. In the Pickup Point list, specify the location from which the entities will be extracted.
5. Optionally, filter the Troops to Embark list to see either All Entities or Plan Variables.
6. In the Troops to Embark list, select the entities to extract.
7. Optionally, select Use Cargo Door to open the vehicle's rear cargo door.
8. Click OK.

When the helicopter arrives at the destination and deploys the ladder, entities on its Troops to Embark list that have the Extract Using Ladder task and are within 50 meters of the ladder will climb it and embark on the vehicle.

**Figure 244. Ladder Extraction**




## 29.1.13 Extract Using Ladder

Entities can be extracted via a ladder deployed by a helicopter using the Ladder Extraction task. Please see "29.1.12 Ladder Extraction" on the previous page. For an entity to successfully execute the Extract Using Ladder task, the entity must be

included on the Troops to Embark list in the Ladder Extraction task and must be within 50 meters of the extraction point.

➤ **To specify that an entity will be extracted using a ladder:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Extract Using Ladder**.

When the helicopter arrives at the destination and deploys the ladder, surviving entities climb it and embark on the vehicle.

### 29.1.14 Ladder Insertion

Helicopters with the Rope Ladder system can perform a ladder insertion. The Ladder Insertion task specifies the waypoint where it will drop the ladder. Entities embarked on the helicopter with the Insert Using Ladder task will descend the ladder and move into formation. For details, see "29.1.15 Insert Using Ladder" on the next page. There is no restriction on how the entities were embarked on the helicopter.

This task is only available to helicopters that have the Rope Ladder system.

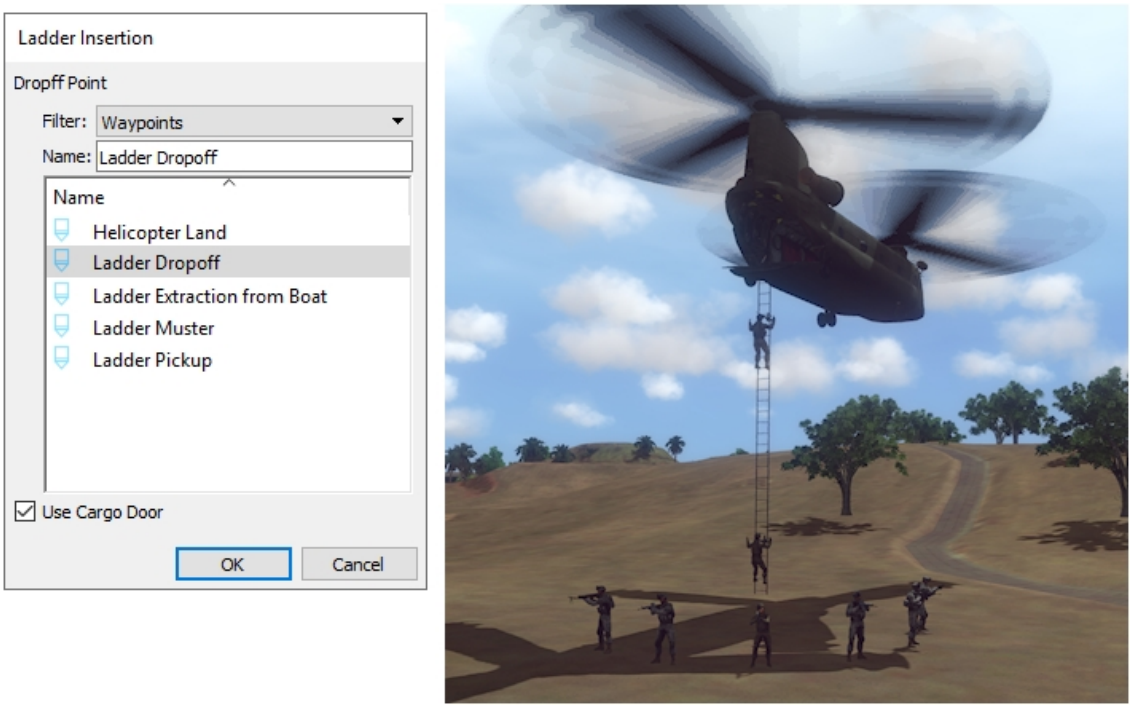
➤ **To have a helicopter insert entities with a ladder:**

1. Select a helicopter that supports the Ladder Insertion task.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Ladder Insertion**. The Ladder Insertion dialog box opens (Figure 245).
3. Optionally, filter the Dropoff Point list to see either Waypoints or Plan Variables.
4. In the Dropoff Point list, specify the location where the entities will be inserted.
5. Optionally, select Use Cargo Door to open the vehicle's cargo door.

   You can use the Simulation Object Editor to edit the Rope Ladder system and attach it to the rear of the helicopter instead of the front crew door. In that case, the ladder deploys from the back and the entities descend the ladder from there (Figure 245). Please see "63.4.4 Editing a System's Properties" on page 1312 for details.
6. Click OK.

When the helicopter arrives at the destination and deploys the ladder, embarked entities that have the Insert Using Ladder task will climb down it and then move into formation.

**Figure 245. Ladder Insertion with Use Cargo Door and with Rope Ladder system positioned at rear of vehicle**




## 29.1.15 Insert Using Ladder

Entities can be inserted via a ladder deployed by a helicopter using the Ladder Insertion task. Please see "29.1.14 Ladder Insertion" on the previous page. The entities must be embarked on the helicopter and have the Insert Using Ladder task assigned to be included in the insertion. There is no restriction on how the entities were embarked on the helicopter.

➤ **To specify that an entity will be inserted using a ladder:**

1. Select an entity that is (or will be) embarked on the helicopter that has the Ladder Insertion task.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Insert Using Ladder**.

When the helicopter arrives at the destination and deploys the ladder, each entity with this task will descend the ladder and then move into formation around its base.

## 29.1.16 Dismount

You can task squads or fire teams that are embarked on a rotary-wing aircraft or ground vehicle with the Dismount task. The entities will exit and assemble in formation around the aircraft or vehicle.

➤ **To task a squad or fire team to exit an aircraft or vehicle and assume formation:**

1. Select a squad or fire team unit.
2. Choose **Task > Embarkation > Dismount**.

## 29.2. Internal Transfer of Fuel Task

Entities with the Air Refueling Supplier system, typically tanker aircraft, can transfer their off-load fuel to their onboard fuel supply using the Internal Transfer of Fuel task. You can specify whether they should fill up to their full capacity or just a specific amount of fuel, as well as the rate at which the fuel supply should be replenished.

➤ **To task a tanker aircraft to transfer fuel to itself:**

1. Select the tanker aircraft.
2. Choose **Task > Logistics > Internal Transfer of Fuel**. The Internal Transfer of Fuel dialog box opens.
3. Specify the parameters for the transfer.
4. Click OK.

## 29.3. Radio Tasks

This section describes the tasks that allow you to use the VR-Forces radio network to send messages, tasks, and set data requests.

### 29.3.1 Send Radio Set

The Send Radio Set task lets you send a set data request to a simulation object using a VR-Forces radio message. The receiving entity executes the set data request as if you had issued it directly to the entity from the Set menu or a set data request in a plan.

---

Since VR-Forces has no idea what type of entity you might want to give a set data request to, when you add this task the full list of possible sets is available. There is no context sensitivity like there is when you select a simulation object and view the Set menu. It is up to you to be sure that the set you are assigning to a simulation object is supported by that object type.

---

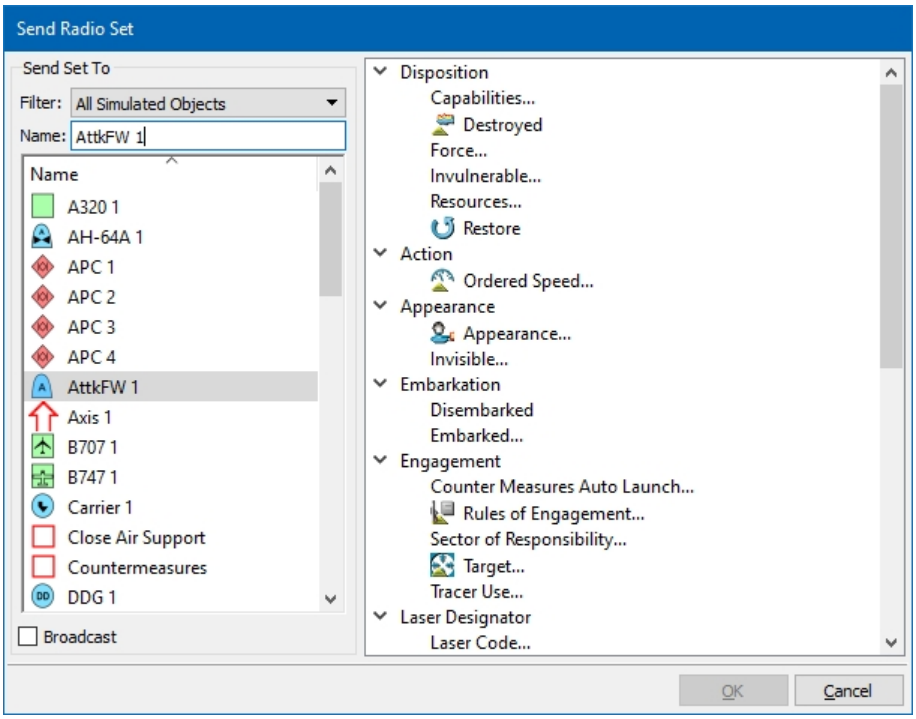
➤ **To assign a Send Radio Set task:**

1. Select the simulation object that will send the message.
2. Choose **Task > Radio > Send Radio Set**. The Send Radio Set dialog box opens.
3. To send the message to all simulation objects configured to receive messages from this simulation object's radio, select the Broadcast check box. (For details about configuring the radio model, please see "73.2. Configuring Radios" on page 1498.)

   To send the message to a specific simulation object, in the Send Set To group box, in the Name text box, type the name of the simulation object that will receive the set data request message, or select the simulation object in the list or on the terrain.

A list of set data requests is displayed (Figure 246).

**Figure 246. Send Radio Set dialog box**




4. Select the set data request you want to send.
5. Click OK. If the set data request requires input, an appropriate dialog box opens. If no input is required, the task setup is finished.
6. If a dialog box opens, complete the dialog box as described in chapters 34 and 35.
7. Click OK.

## 29.3.2 Send Radio Task

The Send Radio Task task lets you send a task to a simulation object using a VR-Forces radio message. The receiving simulation object executes the task as an independent task.

---

Since VR-Forces has no idea what type of simulation object you might want to give a task to, when you add this task the full list of possible tasks is available. There is no context sensitivity like there is when you select a simulation object and view the Task menu. It is up to you to be sure that the task you are assigning to a simulation object is supported by that object type.

---

➤ **To assign a Send Radio Task:**

1. Select the simulation object that will send the message.
2. Choose **Task > Radio > Send Radio Task**. The Send Radio Task dialog box opens.
3. To send the message to all simulation objects configured to receive messages from this simulation object's radio, select the Broadcast check box. (For details about configuring the radio model, please see "73.2. Configuring Radios" on page 1498.)

   To send the message to a specific simulation object, in the Send Task To group box, in the Name text box, type the name of the simulation object that will receive the task message, or select the simulation object in the list or on the terrain.

   A list of tasks is displayed (similar to Figure 246 on the previous page).
4. Select the task you want to send.
5. Click OK. If the task requires input, an appropriate dialog box opens. If no input is required, the task setup is finished.
6. If a dialog box opens, complete the dialog box as described in the various task procedure chapters.
7. Click OK.

### 29.3.3 Send Text Message

The Send Text Message task lets you send a text message to a simulation object using a VR-Forces simulated radio message. The receiving simulation object must be on the same radio network as the sending simulation object. Usually this means the same unit or same force. The receiving simulation object can test for receipt of the message in a conditional statement in its plan. (For details, please see "Receive Text Message" on page 868.)

---

If you want to send a text message that can be received by simulation objects in a different radio network from the sender, use the Send Text Message command. (For details, please see "37.7.2 Sending Text Messages from the Commands Menu" on page 902.)

---

➤ **To assign a Send Text Message task:**

1. Select the simulation object that will send the message.
2. Choose **Task > Radio > Send Text Message**. The Send Text dialog box opens.
3. To send the message to all simulation objects configured to receive messages from this simulation object's radio, select the Broadcast check box. (For details about configuring the radio model, please see "73.2. Configuring Radios" on page 1498.)

To send the message to a specific simulation object, in the Name text box, type the name of the simulation object that will receive the message, or select the simulation object in the list or on the terrain.

4. In the Message Text box, type the message.
5. Click OK.

## 29.4. Wait Tasks

You can order a simulation object to wait indefinitely, for a specified period of time, or until a specified elapsed simulation time. You can also order a human to wait in a queue. For details, please see "28.32. Wait in Queue" on page 650.

---

The Wait task is not equivalent to an immediate stop task. If a simulation object is moving and you give it a Wait task, it might not stop immediately, particularly if a controller such as the collision avoidance controller is controlling its movement.

---

### 29.4.1 Wait

➤ **To assign a Wait task:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Wait > Wait.**

---

If you put an indefinite wait in a plan, the simulation object does not progress through its plan until it receives another command.

---

### 29.4.2 Wait Duration

➤ **To assign a Wait Duration task:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Wait > Wait Duration.** The Wait Duration dialog box opens.
3. Specify the duration of the wait in hours, minutes, and seconds.
4. Click OK.

### 29.4.3 Wait Elapsed

➤ **To assign a Wait Elapsed task:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Wait > Wait Elapsed.** The Wait Elapsed dialog box opens.

3. Specify the elapsed time from the start of the simulation, in hours, minutes, and seconds.
4. Click OK.

For information about simulation time and simulated exercise time, please see"3.4.1 Simulation Time" on page 115.

## 29.5. Tasks for Moving Articulated Parts

Some entity models have articulated parts, such as doors and periscopes, that you can move.

### 29.5.1 Close Car Door

Vehicles that have a Car Door system and whose model includes articulated parts for the car doors can open and close their doors. Close Car Door closes a specific door on a vehicle.

➤ **To close a car door:**

1. Select a vehicle that has an open door.
2. Choose **Task > Car Door > Close Car Door**. The Close Car Door dialog box opens.
3. In the Door list, select the door that you want to close.
4. Optionally, in the Swing Rate box, specify the speed at which you want the door to close.
5. Click OK.

### 29.5.2 Close Cargo Door

The Close Cargo Door task closes a cargo door on an entity that has a cargo door articulated part.

➤ **To assign a Close Cargo Door task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Cargo Door > Close Cargo Door**.

### 29.5.3 Deploy Refueling Boom

The Deploy Refueling Boom task causes an aircraft that has a refueling boom articulated part to extend it (Figure 247). Use Stow Refueling Boom ("29.5.8 Stow Refueling Boom" on page 673) to retract the boom.

---

This task is strictly for visual effect. There is no refueling task in *EntityLevel.sms*.

---

**Figure 247. KC-135 Stratotanker with refueling boom deployed**

➤ **To assign a Deploy Refueling Boom task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Refueling Boom > Deploy Refueling Boom**. The boom is extended.

## 29.5.4 Lower Periscope

The Lower Periscope task lowers the periscope of a subsurface entity. The periscope is an articulated part that is visible in the Stealth view.

➤ **To assign a Lower Periscope task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Other > Lower Periscope**.

## 29.5.5 Open Car Door

Vehicles that have a Car Door system and whose model includes articulated parts for the car doors can open and close their doors. Open Car Door opens a specific door on a vehicle.

➤ **To open a car door:**

1. Select a vehicle that has a Car Door system.
2. Choose **Task > Car Door > Open Car Door**. The Open Car Door dialog box opens.
3. In the Door list, select the door that you want to open.
4. Optionally, in the Swing Rate box, specify the speed at which you want the door to open.
5. Click OK.

## 29.5.6 Open Cargo Door

The Open Cargo Door task opens a cargo door on an entity that has a cargo door articulated part.

**Figure 248. CH-53E Super Stallion with open cargo door**

➤ **To assign an Open Cargo Door task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Cargo Door > Open Cargo Door**.

### 29.5.7 Raise Periscope

The Raise Periscope task raises the periscope of a subsurface entity. The periscope is an articulated part that is visible in the Stealth observer mode.

➤ **To assign a Raise Periscope task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Other > Raise Periscope**.

### 29.5.8 Stow Refueling Boom

The Stow Refueling Boom task causes an aircraft that has a refueling boom articulated part to stow it. Use Deploy Refueling Boom ("29.5.3 Deploy Refueling Boom" on page 671) to deploy a refueling boom.

➤ **To assign a Stow Refueling Boom task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Refueling Boom > Stow Refueling Boom**. The boom contracts.

## 29.6. Embedded Entity Tasks

You can deploy and recover embedded entities. You can also task an embedded entity to conduct a sector search. For details about embedded entities, please see "17.2. Embedded Entities" on page 441.

## 29.6.1 Deploying Embedded Entities

To add an embedded entity to a simulation, you deploy it from the parent entity. You can deploy an embedded entity explicitly or implicitly (by assigning a task to it). An embedded entity's label displays its name and the name of its parent.

---

There is a delay of a few seconds from the time a deployment is ordered and the time it is executed.

---

➤ **To assign a Deploy task:**

1. Select the parent entity.
2. Choose **Task > Embedded Entity > Deploy**. The Deploy dialog box opens.
3. Select the entity you want to deploy.
4. Click OK. The embedded entity gets deployed next to the parent entity in the relative position in its configuration.

## 29.6.2 Recovering Deployed Entities

If you want an embedded entity that has been deployed to return to its parent, you can have the parent recover it. If you do not recover it, the deployed entity continues to function in the scenario just like any other entity.

➤ **To assign a Recover task:**

1. Select the parent entity.
2. Choose **Task > Embedded Entity > Recover**. The Recover Embedded Entity dialog box opens.
3. Select the entity you want to recover.
4. Click OK. The parent sends a message to the deployed entity to return. It returns and is embedded again.

## 29.6.3 Sector Search Operation

The Sector Search Operation task causes an embedded entity to fly a sector search and rescue pattern. In addition to the basic search and rescue parameters, you have the following options:

- If there are no undeployed embedded entities available, divert an already deployed entity to do the search.
- Force the parent entity to wait until the search is complete and the embedded entity is recovered until it continues with its plan or allow the parent entity to continue with its plan while the search is underway.

➤ **To assign a Sector Search Operation task:**

1. Choose an entity that has embedded entities.
2. Choose **Task > Sector Search Operation**. The Sector Search Operation dialog box opens.
3. Select the Allow Diversion check box if you want a deployed entity to be diverted to this task if necessary.
4. Select the Recover When Finished check box if you want the parent entity to wait until it recovers the deployed entity before it continues with its plan.
5. Specify the starting point of the search.
6. In the Leg box, specify the length of each leg of the search.
7. In the Altitude box, specify the altitude the search aircraft should fly at.
8. In the Air Speed box, specify the speed of the search aircraft.
9. Click OK.

## 29.6.4 Deploying an Entity by Assigning a Task

You can assign a task to a deployable entity, that is, an embedded entity that has not been deployed yet. This implicitly deploys the entity so that it can execute the task. You can assign a task to an embedded entity in the parent's plan or you can directly assign a task to the embedded entity. The Sector Search example scripted task is an example of how to task a parent entity to deploy an embedded entity.

---

There is a delay of a few seconds from the time a deployment is ordered and the time it is executed.

---

➤ **To assign a task to a deployable entity in a parent's plan:**

1. Select the parent entity.
2. Choose **Objects > Plan**. The Plan window opens.
3. Choose **Embedded Entities >** *entity* **> Task** (or **Set**) **>** *task* (or *set*), where *entity* is one of the entities that the parent can deploy and *task* (or *set*) is one of the tasks or sets on the Task or Set menu. An appropriate dialog box for the task or set opens.

   ---

   If an entity does not have embedded entities, the Embedded Entities menu is not available.

   ---

4. Fill out the dialog box like you would for any task or set.
5. Click OK. The task is added to the plan. When you run the scenario, the embedded entity gets deployed and is assigned the task or set.

When you deploy an entity from the Objects menu, you can continue to set its state or assign tasks using this method or you can select the entity itself and issue tasks and sets from the Task and Set menus. The logic of assigning tasks from the Objects menu's Embedded Entities submenu rather than directly, is that the parent entity issues the tasks to the deployed entity.

➤ **To deploy an embedded entity by assigning it a task:**

1. Select the parent entity.
2. Choose **Objects > Embedded Entities >** *entity* **> Task** (or **Set**) **>** *task* (or *set*), where *entity* is one of the entities that the parent can deploy and *task* (or *set*) is one of the tasks or sets on the Task or Set menu. An appropriate dialog box for the task or set opens.
3. Fill out the dialog box like you would for any task or set.
4. The entity is deployed. If you assigned it a task, it begins to execute its task. If you set its state, it is deployed with the updated state setting.

## 29.7. Deploy Sonobuoy

The Deploy Sonobuoy task lets an aircraft deploy a sonobuoy for taking sonar readings. A sonobuoy is deployed as an entity. This task is available to entities that have a Sonobuoy Deployer system configured.

RPR FOM 1.0 does not support active sonar. You will not be able to create sonobuoys if they have an active sonar system.

➤ **To assign a Deploy Sonobuoy task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Deploy Sonobuoy**. The Deploy Sonobuoy dialog box opens.
3. Select the type of sonar to use – Active or Passive.
4. Specify the depth at which to deploy the sonobuoy.
5. Click OK.

## 29.8. Deploy Sonobuoys Along Route

The Deploy Sonobuoys Along Route task lets an aircraft deploy sonobuoys as it moves along a route. A sonobuoy is deployed as an entity. This task is available to entities that have a Sonobuoy Deployer system configured.

RPR FOM 1.0 does not support active sonar. You will not be able to create sonobuoys if they have an active sonar system.

➤ **To assign a Deploy Sonobuoys Along Route task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Deploy Sonobuoys Along Route**. The Deploy Sonobuoys Along Route dialog box opens.
3. Select the route to use.
4. Specify the distance between each sonobuoy.
5. Select the type of sonar to use – Active or Passive.
6. Specify the depth at which to deploy the sonobuoys.
7. Click OK.

## 29.9. Sonar Dip

Rotary-wing entities that have sonar can dip the sonar into water at a specified depth. Dipped sonar is not visualized in the Stealth view. The sonar is just simulated at the specified depth. Entities cannot dip sonar if they are moving faster than a set speed.

➤ **To assign a Sonar Dip task:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Task > Sonar Dip**. The Sonar Dip dialog box opens.
3. Specify the location at which to dip the sonar.
4. Specify how long the sonar should stay dipped.
5. Select the type of sonar to dip – Active or Passive.

RPR FOM 1.0 does not support active sonar.

6. Specify the depth for the sonar.
7. Click OK.

## 29.10. Release Next Entity From Queue

The Release Next Entity From Queue task gets sent to a queue tactical graphic and releases the entity at the head of the queue to move to the next task in its plan.

You can assign this task directly, as described in this procedure, or from the **Commands > Send Task** command in a plan. If you are trying to create a scenario that involves crowd queueing behaviors, then using a plan to control the queue is the more likely approach.

When an entity is released from the queue, the Wait in Queue task ends. If the entity does not have another task in its plan, it remains in its location. The next entity in the line moves to the head of the queue. This might result in some visual anomalies.

➤ **To assign a Release Next Entity From Queue task:**

1. Select the queue tactical graphic.
2. Choose **Task > Release Next Entity From Queue**.

## 29.11. User Task

User tasks are tasks that have been added to VR-Forces using the VR-Forces toolkit. To assign a user task, you must know the name of the task and the required values for up to four parameters.

---

The User Task command is not available on the Task menu unless a developer adds a controller that accepts a user task.

---

➤ **To assign a user task:**

1. Select the simulation object that you want to execute the task.
2. Choose **Task > Other > User Task**. The User Task dialog box opens.
3. Type the name of the task.
4. Type any required parameters.
5. Click OK.

## 29.12. Reactive Tasks

Reactive tasks are not listed individually because most of them run automatically; typically, no user action is required to execute them. This section describes the reactive tasks included with VR-Forces.

You can disable or enable reactive tasks as needed; see "25.3. Reactive Tasks" on page 552 for instructions.

29.12 lists the reactive tasks provided with VR-Forces.

**Table 26. Reactive tasks**

| Reactive Task | Description |
|---|---|
| Automatic Headlights | Turn headlights and taillights on and off based on local lighting conditions. This is disabled by default. You must enable this reactive task to have he lights come on automatically. |
| Automatic Jamming | Causes an entity to automatically respond to being tracked by radar. |
| Automatic Look | Causes humans to randomly look at other humans. |

**Table 26. Reactive tasks (continued)**

| Reactive Task | Description |
|---|---|
| Auto-Enable Show Terrain | Turns on Show Terrain task for object upon creation. |
| Avoid Other Ships | Considers ship type: Aircraft carrier is higher than fishing boat (assumes nets are out), which is higher than sailboat, which is higher than other. Will avoid surfaced submarines. |
| Bingo Fuel Monitor | Monitors fuel on embedded entities and requests a recovery when bingo fuel level is reached. |
| Evade Missile | Causes fixed-wing entities to try to evade missiles. |
| Flee From Threats | Entity will run from explosions, the source of gun fire, entities killed nearby, and objects that match the configured entity types. Flee from Fire Events is disabled by default, but you can enable it for entities in the Simulation Object Editor (SOE). |
| IADS Launcher Control | Automates the launcher of an Integrated Air Defense system. Communicates with a control station running the IADS Command Station script. |
| IFF Code Changer | Automatically changes the IFF code every half hour based on the time of day. |
| Make Way for Emergency | If an emergency vehicle that has its lights on approaches a ground vehicle that is driving on a road, the vehicle pulls over to the side of the road. |
| Suppressed Crouch | Forces entity to crouch when suppressed. Returns to previous posture when no longer suppressed. Does not otherwise interrupt movement. |
| Suppressed Prone | Forces the entity to stop and fall prone when suppressed to level 2 or 3. Resumes movement at old posture when no longer suppressed. |
| Visit Interest Points | Causes civilians to visit nearby civilian visit points. |

## 29.13. Background Processes

*EntityLevel.sms* has the following background processes:

- Delete Created Pedestrians. Deletes pedestrians when a pedestrian area is deleted.
- Flare Fade. Gradually fades out illumination flares.
- Queue Manager. Manages queuing for the Wait in Queue task.

# 30. Tasks for Aggregate-Level Scenarios

This chapter describes tasks that apply to aggregate-level scenarios.


30.1. Introduction to Aggregate-Level Tasks ..... 684
30.2. Activate Jammer ..... 684
30.3. Air-to-Air Attack ..... 684
30.4. Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack ..... 684
30.5. Air-to-Ground Attack ..... 685
30.6. Attack by Fire ..... 686
30.7. Attack with Anti-Air Missile ..... 686
30.8. Attack with Anti-Ship Missile ..... 686
30.9. Attack with Land-Attack Missile ..... 687
30.10. Attack with Torpedo ..... 687
30.11. Automatic Air Defense ..... 687
30.12. Biological Attack ..... 688
30.13. Bomb Location ..... 688
30.14. Breach Obstacles ..... 689
30.15. Change MOPP Level ..... 690
30.16. Change Posture ..... 691
30.17. Chemical Attack ..... 691
30.18. Construct Abatis ..... 692
30.19. Construct Anti-Tank Ditch ..... 692
30.20. Construct Barbed Wire ..... 693
30.21. Construct Barricade ..... 693
30.22. Construct Berm ..... 694
30.23. Construct Booby Trap ..... 694
30.24. Construct Bridge ..... 695
30.25. Construct Dry Gap ..... 696
30.26. Construct Fortified Area ..... 696
30.27. Construct Fortified Line ..... 697

30.28. Construct Minefield ..... 697
30.29. Construct Strong Point ..... 698
30.30. Deactivate Jammer ..... 698
30.31. Destroy Bridge ..... 699
30.32. Destroy Ditch ..... 699
30.33. Destroy Explosive ..... 699
30.34. Destroy Fortification ..... 700
30.35. Destroy Obstacle ..... 700
30.36. Disembark ..... 700
30.37. Disembark All ..... 701
30.38. Drop Fuel Tanks ..... 701
30.39. Embark ..... 701
30.40. Escort Air Unit ..... 701
30.41. FASCAM ..... 701
30.42. Halt Movement ..... 702
30.43. Improve Booby Trap ..... 702
30.44. Improve Breach ..... 702
30.45. Improve Bridge ..... 703
30.46. Improve Ditch ..... 703
30.47. Improve Fortification ..... 703
30.48. Improve Obstacle ..... 704
30.49. Indirect Fire ..... 704
30.50. Land at Air Base ..... 705
30.51. Launch Flight ..... 705
30.52. Launch QRA Aircraft ..... 706
30.53. Move Along Route ..... 707
30.54. Move Along Route Retrograde ..... 707
30.55. Move to Location ..... 707
30.56. Move to Location Retrograde ..... 707
30.57. Move To Waypoint ..... 707
30.58. Move to Waypoint Retrograde ..... 707
30.59. Nuclear Attack ..... 707
30.60. Patrol Route ..... 708
30.61. Patrol Between ..... 708
30.62. Prepare QRA ..... 708
30.63. Refuel from Tanker ..... 708
30.64. Refueling Mission ..... 709
30.65. Send NBC Report ..... 709
30.66. Send Obstacle Report ..... 710
30.67. Send Radio Set ..... 710
30.68. Send Radio Task ..... 710

30.69. Send Text Message ..... 710
30.70. User Task ..... 710
30.71. Wait for Escort ..... 710
30.72. Wait Tasks ..... 711
30.73. Background Process List ..... 711

## 30.1. Introduction to Aggregate-Level Tasks

This chapter describes tasks that simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios can run. A few tasks are identical to tasks supported by simulation objects in entity-level scenarios.

## 30.2. Activate Jammer

The Activate Jammer task turns on jamming for a simulation object equipped with a jamming emitter. This task has the same effect as Set Emitter - On.

➤ To activate a simulation object's jammer, choose **Task > Jamming > Activate Jammer**, or click the Activate Jammer button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar.

## 30.3. Air-to-Air Attack

The Air-to-Air Attack task instructs an air unit to attack another air unit.

➤ **To assign an air-to-air attack:**

1. Select an air unit.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Air-to-Air Attack**, or click the Air-to-Air Attack button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Air-to-Air Attack dialog box opens.
3. Select the target unit.
4. Optionally, in the Maximum Engagement Distance box, specify the maximum distance from which the unit can attack the target. If it is set to 0 (zero), the maximum range is the maximum range of the weapon.
5. Click OK.

## 30.4. Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack

The Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack task causes a unit to move along an ingress route, move to a target point, make HE attack(s) against an air base, and then move along the egress route. The unit attacks with each different HE ammunition type in succession. For each ammunition type, the unit expends all of its ammunition. There is a 30-second delay between attacks with different ammunition types as the unit prepares to attack again.

➤ **To order an air-to-ground air base attack:**

1. Select an aircraft unit.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack**, or click the Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack dialog box opens.
3. In the Target Air Base window, select the air base to attack.
4. Optionally, in the Part to Target list, select a specific type of target at the airbase (buildings, apron, runway, or no specific part).
5. In the Ingress Route window, select the route the unit should follow to approach the air base.
6. In the Egress Route window, select the route the unit should follow to leave the air base.
7. Click OK.

## 30.5. Air-to-Ground Attack

The Air-to-Ground Attack task requires an attack (ingress) route, an exit (egress) route, and a target point.

When the aircraft reaches the target point, it attacks with each type of HE ammunition it has. It expends all ammunition of each type. There is a 30 second delay between attacks with each ammunition type.

➤ **To assign an Air-to-Ground Attack task:**

1. Select the unit that will attack.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Air-to-Ground Attack**, or click the Air-to-Ground Attack button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Air-to-Ground Attack dialog box opens.
3. Select a target point.
4. Select an ingress route.
5. Select an egress route.

   This is a multiple list dialog box. For details about how to control which list has focus, please see "Selecting Objects in Multiple List Dialog Boxes" on page 548.

6. Click OK.

## 30.6. Attack by Fire

The Attack By Fire task is for use by units created by aggregating multiple units. When assigned, the units move to the specified location. Armor and mechanized units are placed towards the front of the unit. Artillery is placed in the rear. Other units are placed between the forward and rear simulation objects. When the unit is in position, artillery begins indirect fire on the target and the other units engage any enemy simulation objects that are in range.

➤ **To assign an Attack By Fire task:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Attack By Fire.** The Attack By Fire dialog box opens.
3. Specify the location of the target entity.
4. Specify a location for the attacking unit.
5. Click OK.

## 30.7. Attack with Anti-Air Missile

This task is available to any simulation object that has anti-air missiles.

➤ **To assign an Attack with Anti-Air Missile task:**

1. Select the simulation object that will attack.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Attack with Anti-Air Missile**, or click the Attack with Anti-Air Missile button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Attack with Anti-Air Missile dialog box opens.
3. Select a target.
4. Specify the number of missiles to fire.
5. Click OK.

## 30.8. Attack with Anti-Ship Missile

This task is available to any simulation object that has anti-ship missiles.

➤ **To assign an Attack with Anti-Ship Missile task:**

1. Select the simulation object that will attack.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Attack with Anti-Ship Missile**, or click the Attack with Anti-Ship Missile button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Attack with Anti-ship Missile dialog box opens.
3. Select a target.
4. Specify the number of missiles to fire.
5. Click OK.

## 30.9. Attack with Land-Attack Missile

This task is available to entities that have land-attack missiles, such as the Arleigh Burke DDG.

➤ **To assign an Attack with Land-Attack Missile task:**

1. Select the simulation object that will attack.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Attack with Land-Attack Missile**, or click the Attack with Land-Attack Missile button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Attack with Land-Attack Missile dialog box opens.
3. Select a target.
4. Specify the number of missiles to fire.
5. Click OK.

## 30.10. Attack with Torpedo

This task is available to entities that have torpedoes, such as the Arleigh Burke DDG.

➤ **To assign an Attack with Torpedo task:**

1. Select the entity that will attack.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Attack with Torpedo**, or click the Attack with Torpedo button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Attack with Torpedo dialog box opens.
3. Select a target.
4. Specify the number of torpedoes to fire.
5. Click OK.

## 30.11. Automatic Air Defense

When a simulation object has the Automatic Air Defense task, it automatically fires at enemy aircraft that enter the specified area. A simulation object must have an anti-air weapon, such as air-to-air missile to execute this task.

➤ **To assign an Automatic Air Defense task:**

1. Select a simulation object that has anti-air capability.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Automatic Air Defense**, or click the Automatic Air Defense button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Automatic Air Defense dialog box opens.
3. Select the area in which the simulation object should automatically fire anti-air weapons.
4. Click OK.

## 30.12. Biological Attack

The Biological Attack task lets a simulation object create an area contaminated with biological agents.

When you assign a Biological Attack task, you specify the center of the area in which it will take place. The size of the area and the allowed range from the simulation object is specified in the biological weapon weapon system. You can edit these values in the Simulation Object Editor.

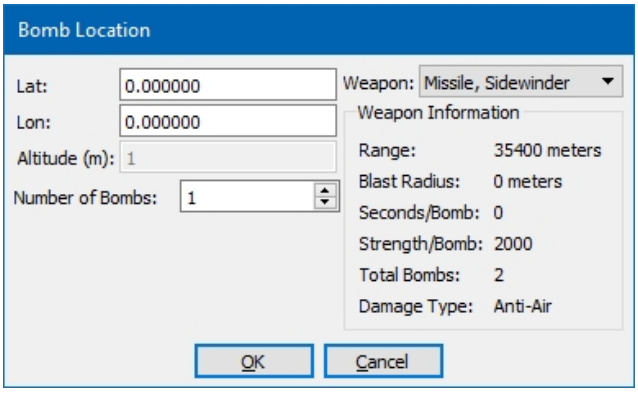
➤ **To assign a Biological Attack task:**

1. Select the simulation object that will make the attack.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Biological Attack**. The Biological Attack dialog box opens.
3. Click a location for the center of the area of attack or specify the coordinates.
4. In the Agent Type list, select the type of biological agent.
5. Click OK.

## 30.13. Bomb Location

You can specify that a simulation object bomb a location. When you choose a weapon, the Bomb Location dialog box displays information about the chosen weapon (Figure 249).

**Figure 249. Bomb Location dialog box**




➤ **To assign a Bomb Location task:**

1. Select the simulation object that will attack.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Bomb Location**. The Bomb Location dialog box opens.
3. Click the location to bomb or enter the coordinates.
4. Specify the number of bombs to drop.
5. In the Weapon list, select the type of bomb to drop.
6. Click OK.

# 30.14. Breach Obstacles

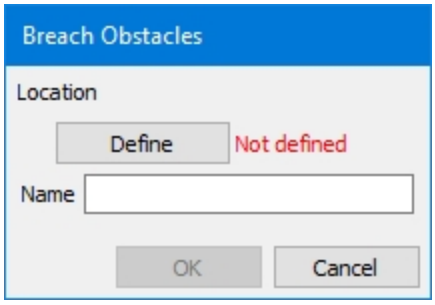
The Breach Obstacles task lets an engineering unit breach an obstacle so that units can pass through it. Depending on the breaching system a unit has, it may be able to breach fortifications, minefields, or ditches.

A breach line is specified with two points.

➤ **To assign a Breach Obstacles task:**

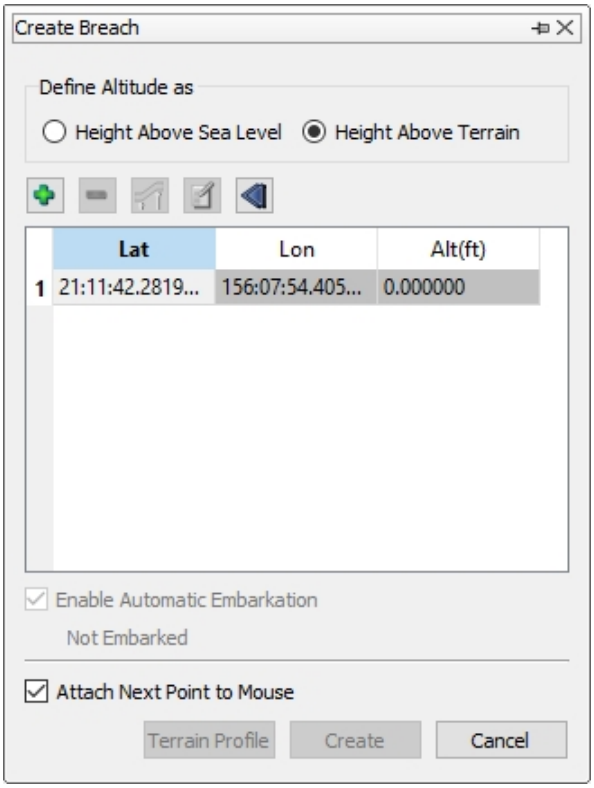
1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Breach Obstacles**, or click the Breach Obstacles button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Breach Obstacles dialog box opens (Figure 250).

**Figure 250. Breach Obstacles dialog box**




3. Click Define. The cursor changes to draw mode and the Create Breach dialog box opens or becomes available (Figure 251).

**Figure 251. Create Obstacles dialog box**




4. Draw a two-point line to specify where to create the breach. After the second click the line disappears. This is because it is not being created now. The Breach Obstacles dialog box button now says Edit and the text next to it says Defined.
5. Click OK.

## 30.15. Change MOPP Level

Units automatically raise their mission oriented protective posture (MOPP) level when they encounter a contamination area. However, you can manually change a unit's MOPP level.

Supported MOPP levels are as follows:

- MOPP Level 0 — Protective mask carried. Suit, gloves, and boots accessible/available.
- MOPP Level 1 — Suit worn. Mask, gloves and boots carried.
- MOPP Level 2 — Suit and boots worn. Gloves and mask carried.
- MOPP Level 3 — Suit, boots and mask worn. Gloves carried.
- MOPP Level 4 — All protection worn.

Changes to MOPP level do not take place immediately. (To change the MOPP level immediately, use Set MOPP Level.) Increasing the MOPP level degrades a simulation

object's speed and combat effectiveness. Increasing the MOPP level does not remove existing contamination, but prevents most NBC contamination from harming the simulation object.

➤ **To assign a Change MOPP Level task:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Task > Change MOPP Level**, or click the Change MOPP Level button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Change MOPP Level dialog box opens.
3. Specify a new MOPP level.
4. Click OK.

## 30.16. Change Posture

You can set a simulation object's posture to one of the following:

- Travel
- Reconnaissance
- Hasty attack
- Deliberate attack
- Hasty defense
- Deliberate defense

Changes to posture take place over time. To change posture immediately, use Set Posture.

➤ **To assign a Change Posture task:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Change Posture**, or click the Change Posture button on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Change Posture dialog box opens.
3. Specify a new posture.
4. Click OK.

## 30.17. Chemical Attack

The Chemical Attack task lets a unit create an area contaminated with chemical agents.

When you assign a Chemical Attack task, you specify the center of the area in which it will take place. The size of the area and the allowed range from the unit is specified in the chemical weapon weapon system. You can edit this value in the Simulation Object Editor.

➤ **To assign a Chemical Attack task:**

1. Select the unit that will make the attack.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Chemical Attack**. The Chemical Attack dialog box opens.
3. Click a location for the center of the area of attack or specify the coordinates.
4. In the Agent Type list, select the type of chemical agent.
5. Click OK.

## 30.18. Construct Abatis

Combat engineering units can construct abatises. An abatis is specified as a point.

---

You can create abatises directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this obstacle.

---

➤ **To assign a Construct Abatis task:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Abatis**, or click the Construct Abatis button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Abatis dialog box opens (similar to Figure 250 on page 689 ). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Abatis dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690).
4. Click where you want to locate the abatis.
5. In the Create Abatis dialog box, click OK.
6. Optionally, specify a name for the abatis.
7. In the Construct Abatis dialog box, click OK.

## 30.19. Construct Anti-Tank Ditch

Combat engineering units can construct anti-tank ditches. An anti-tank ditch is a linear object. This task takes place over time.

---

You can create anti-tank ditches directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this obstacle.

---

➤ **To assign a Construct Anti-Tank Ditch task:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Anti-Tank Ditch**, or click the Construct Anti-Tank Ditch button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Anti-Tank Ditch dialog box opens (similar to Figure 250). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Anti-Tank Ditch dialog box opens and the cursor changes to draw mode.
4. Click to specify the vertexes of the line as you would when creating any linear object, or add points in the dialog box and click Create.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the ditch.
6. Click OK.

## 30.20. Construct Barbed Wire

Combat engineering units can construct barbed wire obstacles. Barbed wire is specified as a line.

---

You can create barbed wire directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this obstacle.

---

➤ **To construct barbed wire:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Barbed Wire**, or click the Construct Barbed Wire button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Barbed Wire dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Barbed Wire dialog box opens.
4. Click to specify the vertexes of the line as you would when creating any linear object.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the barbed wire.
6. In the Construct Barbed Wire dialog box, click OK.

## 30.21. Construct Barricade

Combat engineering units can construct barricades. A barricade is specified as a line.

---

You can create barricades directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this obstacle.

➤ **To construct a barricade:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Barricade**, or click the Construct Barricade button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Barricade dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Barricade dialog box opens.
4. Click to specify the vertexes of the line as you would when creating any linear object.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the barricade.
6. In the Construct Barricade dialog box, click OK.

## 30.22. Construct Berm

Combat engineering units can construct berms. A berm is specified as a line.

---

You can create berms directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this obstacle.

---

➤ **To construct a berm:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Berm**, or click the Construct Berm button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Berm dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Berm dialog box opens.
4. Click to specify the vertexes of the line as you would when creating any linear object.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the berm.
6. In the Construct Berm dialog box, click OK.

## 30.23. Construct Booby Trap

Combat engineering entities can construct booby traps. A booby trap is a location where explosives detonate if triggered by the presence of a simulation object. Booby traps cause some level of attrition on the affected simulation object. To create a booby trap, a unit must have explosive resources.

---

You can create booby traps directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this object.

---

➤ **To construct a booby trap:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Booby Trap**, or click the Construct Booby Trap button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Booby Trap dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Booby Trap dialog box opens.
4. Click where you want to locate the booby trap or type the coordinates in the dialog box and click OK.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the booby trap.
6. Click OK.

## 30.24. Construct Bridge

Combat engineering units can construct bridges. A bridge is specified as a two-point line.

---

You can create bridges directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this object.

---

➤ **To construct a bridge:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Bridge**, or click the Construct Bridge button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Bridge dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Bridge dialog box opens and the cursor changes to draw mode.
4. Click on the terrain to specify the start and end vertices of the bridge. The Create Bridge dialog box closes.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the bridge.
6. Click OK.

## 30.25. Construct Dry Gap

Combat engineering entities can construct dry gaps. A dry gap is a type of ditch. (Use Improve Ditch and Destroy Ditch to continue building a dry gap or destroy it.)

---

You can create dry gaps directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this object.

---

➤ **To construct a dry gap:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Dry Gap**, or click the Construct Dry Gap button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Dry Gap dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Dry Gap dialog box opens and the cursor changes to draw mode.
4. Click to specify the vertices of the dry gap.
5. Double-click to finish the dry gap, or click Create in the Create Dry Gap dialog box.
6. Optionally, specify a name for the dry gap.
7. Click OK.

## 30.26. Construct Fortified Area

Combat engineering entities can construct fortified areas. A fortified area is defined as a box. You specify the southwest corner of the area. Construction of a fortified area takes place over time.

---

You can create fortifications directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this object.

---

➤ **To construct a fortified area:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Fortified Area**, or click the Construct Fortified Area button ( ) on the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Fortified Area dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.

3. Click Define. The Create Fortified Area dialog box opens and the cursor changes to show an area.
4. Click where you want to locate the southwest corner of the area or type the coordinates in the dialog box and click Create.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the area.
6. Click OK.

## 30.27. Construct Fortified Line

Combat engineering entities can construct fortified lines.

---

You can create fortifications directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this object.

---

➤ **To construct a fortified line:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Fortified Line**, or click the Construct Fortified Line button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Fortified Line dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Fortified Line dialog box opens and the cursor changes to draw mode.
4. Click to specify the vertexes of the line as you would when creating any linear object, or add points in the dialog box and click Create.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the line.
6. Click OK.

## 30.28. Construct Minefield

Combat engineering entities can construct volcano minefields. Minefields are fixed size rectangles.

---

You can create minefields directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this obstacle.

---

➤ **To construct a minefield:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Minefield**, or click the Construct Minefield button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Minefield dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Minefield (Volcano) dialog box opens and the cursor changes to show a minefield.
4. Click where you want to locate the southwest corner of the minefield or type the coordinates in the Create Minefield (Volcano) dialog box and click Create.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the minefield.
6. In the Construct Minefield dialog box, click OK.

## 30.29. Construct Strong Point

Combat engineering entities can construct strong points. A strong point is defined as a box. You specify the southwest corner.

---

You can create strong points directly from the Tactical Graphics Palette. This task is used when you want a unit to construct this object.

---

➤ **To construct a strong point:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Construct Strong Point**, or click the Construct Strong Point button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Construct Strong Point dialog box opens (similar to Figure 251 on page 690). The Location is specified as “Not defined”.
3. Click Define. The Create Strong Point dialog box opens and the cursor changes to show a box.
4. Click where you want to locate the southwest corner of the box or type the coordinates in the dialog box and click Create.
5. Optionally, specify a name for the strong point.
6. Click OK.

## 30.30. Deactivate Jammer

The Deactivate Jammer task turns off jamming for a simulation object equipped with a jamming emitter. This task has the same effect as Set Emitter - Off.

➤ To deactivate a simulation object's jammer, choose **Task > Jamming > Deactivate Jammer**, or click the Deactivate Jammer button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar.

## 30.31. Destroy Bridge

When you task an engineering unit to destroy a bridge, it consumes its Explosives resource. As the unit attacks the bridge, the bridge's completeness percentage decreases. When the completion percentage reaches zero, the bridge is removed from the scenario.

➤ **To destroy a bridge:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Destroy Bridge**, or click the Destroy Bridge button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Destroy Bridge dialog box opens.
3. Select the bridge you want to destroy.
4. Click OK.

## 30.32. Destroy Ditch

When you task an engineering unit to destroy a ditch, it consumes its Explosives resource. As the unit attacks the ditch, the ditch's completeness percentage decreases. When the completion percentage reaches zero, the ditch is removed from the scenario.

➤ **To destroy a ditch:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Destroy Ditch**, or click the Destroy Ditch button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Destroy Ditch dialog box opens.
3. Select the ditch you want to destroy.
4. Click OK.

## 30.33. Destroy Explosive

The Destroy Explosive task lets a unit destroy a booby trap or unexploded ordnance.

➤ **To destroy explosives:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Destroy Explosive**, or click the Destroy Explosive button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Destroy Explosive dialog box opens.
3. Select the booby trap or unexploded ordnance you want to destroy.
4. Click OK.

## 30.34. Destroy Fortification

When you task an engineering unit to destroy a fortification, it consumes its Explosives resource. As the unit attacks the fortification, the fortification's completeness percentage decreases. When the completion percentage reaches zero, the fortification is removed from the scenario.

➤ **To destroy a fortification:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Destroy Fortification**, or click the Destroy Fortification button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Destroy Fortification dialog box opens.
3. Select the fortification you want to destroy.
4. Click OK.

## 30.35. Destroy Obstacle

The Destroy Obstacle task lets a unit destroy obstacles (such as berms, barricades, and barbed wire) that do not have a specific destroy task, such as Destroy Fortification or Destroy Explosive.

➤ **To destroy an obstacle:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Destroy Obstacle**, or click the Destroy Obstacle button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Destroy Obstacle dialog box opens.
3. Select the obstacle you want to destroy.
4. Click OK.

## 30.36. Disembark

For details, please see "29.1.1 Disembark" on page 655.

## 30.37. Disembark All

For details, please see "29.1.2 Disembark All" on page 655.

## 30.38. Drop Fuel Tanks

The Drop Fuel Tanks task causes an air unit to drop its fuel tanks.

➤ **To drop an air unit's fuel tanks:**

1. Select an air unit.
2. Choose **Task > Drop Fuel Tanks**, or click the Drop Fuel Tanks button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar.

## 30.39. Embark

For details, please see "29.1.3 Embark" on page 656.

## 30.40. Escort Air Unit

The Escort Air Unit task causes an aircraft unit to move to a location and escort the specified unit.

➤ **To assign an escort air unit task:**

1. Select an air unit.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Escort Air Unit**, or click the Escort Air Unit button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Escort Air Unit dialog box opens.
3. Select a point as the location to meet.
4. Select the unit to escort.
5. Click OK.

## 30.41. FASCAM

Entities with a FASCAM weapon system, such as artillery, can fire FASCAM (family of scatterable mines).

➤ **To fire FASCAM:**

1. Select a simulation object that can execute this task.
2. Choose **Task > FASCAM**, or click the FASCAM button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The FASCAM dialog box opens (similar to Figure 250). The Location is specified as "Not defined".

3. Click Define. The Create Minefield (ADAM-RAAM) dialog box opens and the cursor changes to show a minefield.
4. Click where you want to locate the southwest corner of the minefield or type the coordinates in the Create Minefield (ADAM-RAAM) dialog box and click Create.
5. Optionally, specify a heading.
6. In the FASCAM dialog box, click OK.

## 30.42. Halt Movement

The Halt Movement task causes a simulation object to stop moving.

➤ **To halt a simulation object's movement:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Halt Movement**, or click the Halt Movement button (

) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. Movement stops immediately.

## 30.43. Improve Booby Trap

The Improve Booby Trap task lets a combat engineering unit improve an incomplete booby trap. When you improve a booby trap it gets improved to as complete a strength level as the unit can bring it to. This task can be assigned to a unit to assist another unit that is creating a booby trap.

➤ **To improve a booby trap:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Improve Booby Trap**. The Improve Booby Trap dialog box opens.
3. Select the booby trap that you want to improve.
4. Click OK.

## 30.44. Improve Breach

The Improve Breach task lets a combat engineering unit improve an incomplete breach. When you improve a breach it gets improved to as complete a strength level as the unit can bring it to. This task can be assigned to a unit to assist another unit that is breaching an obstacle.

➤ **To improve a breach:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Improve Breach**. The Improve Breach dialog box opens.

3. Select the breach you want to improve.
4. Click OK.

## 30.45. Improve Bridge

The Improve Bridge task lets a combat engineering unit improve an incomplete bridge. When you improve a bridge it gets improved to as complete a strength level as the unit can bring it to. This task can be assigned to a unit to assist another unit that is creating a bridge.

➤ **To improve a bridge:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Improve Bridge**. The Improve Bridge dialog box opens.
3. Select the bridge you want to improve.
4. Click OK.

## 30.46. Improve Ditch

The Improve Ditch task lets a combat engineering unit improve an incomplete anti-tank ditch. When you improve a ditch it gets improved to as complete a strength level as the unit can bring it to. This task can be assigned to a unit to assist another unit that is creating a ditch.

➤ **To improve a ditch:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Improve Ditch**. The Improve Ditch dialog box opens.
3. Select the ditch that you want to improve.
4. Click OK.

## 30.47. Improve Fortification

The Improve Fortification task lets a unit improve an incomplete fortification area, line, or strong point. When you improve a fortification it gets improved to as complete a strength level as the unit can bring it to. This task can be assigned to a unit to assist another unit that is creating a fortification.

➤ **To improve a fortification:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Improve Fortification**. The Improve Fortification dialog box opens.
3. Select the fortification that you want to improve.
4. Click OK.

## 30.48. Improve Obstacle

The Improve Obstacle task lets a unit improve an incomplete obstacle (such as berms, barricades, and barbed wire) that does not have a dedicated improve task, such as Improve Breach or Improve Bridge. When you improve an obstacle it gets improved to as complete a strength level as the unit can bring it to. This task can be assigned to a unit to assist another unit that is constructing an obstacle.

➤ **To improve an obstacle:**

1. Select a combat engineering unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Engineering > Improve Obstacle**. The Improve Obstacle dialog box opens.
3. Select the obstacle that you want to improve.
4. Click OK.

## 30.49. Indirect Fire

The Indirect Fire task allows a simulation object to fire on a point. The indirect fire scatters bursts within a sheaf radius, which is a circle around the target point.

If multiple units are within the radius, they are all attacked. Attack strength is applied fully to each attacked simulation object. It is not divided among them. For example, if there are four units in the sheaf radius and the attack strength is 100, an attack strength of 100 is applied to each of the units.

If the blast effect radius of the munitions being fired is less than the sheaf radius, the attack strength is reduced by the ratio of the areas of the blast circle to the sheaf circle. For example, if the sheaf radius is 100 and the blast effect radius is 50, the ratio of the areas is 1:4, so the attack strength would be 25% of the full value.

➤ **To specify indirect fire for a unit:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Indirect Fire**, or click the Indirect Fire button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel. The Indirect Fire dialog box opens.
3. Select the point on which you want to center the indirect fire.
4. In the Weapon list, select the weapon you want to use. Its characteristics are displayed.
5. In the Number of Attacks box, specify how many attacks to make.
6. In the Sheaf Radius box, specify the radius, in meters, around which to scatter indirect fire. This value must be equal to or less than the Max Sheaf Radius value shown in the Weapon Information group box for the selected weapon.
7. Click OK.

## 30.50. Land at Air Base

The Land at Air Base task causes an air unit to request an air base to let it land. The air unit tells the air base how many aircraft it has and how long a runway it requires.

If the request is accepted, the unit flies to the air base and requests final permission to land. The air base absorbs the resources of the unit and deletes it from the scenario. For complete details about how landing works, please see "22.8.2 Landing Air Units" on page 515.

➤ **To land an aircraft unit at an air base:**

1. Select an aircraft unit.
2. Choose **Task > Movement > Land at Air Base**, or click the Land at Air Base button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Land at Air Base dialog box opens.
3. Select the air base you want the unit to land at.
4. Click OK.

## 30.51. Launch Flight

An air base uses the Launch Flight task to configure and launch a flight of aircraft. A flight can be launched to execute a single unit mission or it can be one of several flights being launched as part of a multi-unit mission. If you want to set up a multi-unit mission, you must create a unit independently of the air base to act as the mission superior. For information about missions, please see "22.6. Air Missions" on page 510.

When you assign this task, aircraft of the indicated type are taken from the available aircraft at the base. The air base determines the munitions and fuel required by the flight given the loadout and provides them from its stores. Air crews are supplied from the available air crews. If the air base does not have enough of any of these resources, the task fails and the flight is not scheduled to launch.

When the flight is launched, the aircraft and crews are removed from the air base.

A Launch Flight task takes values for the following parameters:

- Call sign.
- Aircraft type.
- Number of aircraft in the flight.
- Loadout.
- Mission superior.
- Mission type. The mission can be one of the following:

  - BAI. Battlefield air interdiction.
  - CAP. Combat air patrol.
  - CAS. Close air support.
  - Escort.
  - Intercept.
  - OCA. Offensive counter air (bombing air bases).
  - Recon. Reconnaissance.
  - SEAD. Suppression of enemy air defense.
  - Sweep. Sweep enemy aircraft from the air space where you are going to attack.
  - Tanker.

  The mission type is informational. It does not influence the behavior of the flight.

- Launch time. This can be immediate or at a specified date and time.
- Wait for launch. Global plans only. If selected, the global plan does not move to the next task until the flight is launched.

➤ **To launch a flight:**

1. Select an air base.
2. Choose **Task > Launch Flight**, or click the Launch Flight button on the Last Selected Object Panel. The Launch Flight dialog box opens.
3. Specify a call sign for the flight. It can be any text.
4. Select the aircraft type. It must be a type of aircraft that is already assigned to the air base. The list of aircraft types may include aircraft that are not assigned.
5. Specify the number of aircraft in the flight.
6. The Unit Type is not editable. It is taken from the aircraft type.
7. Select a loadout from the Loadout list.
8. Optionally, specify a mission superior if this flight is subordinate to another one.
9. In the Mission Type list, select the type of mission this is.
10. Select Launch as Soon as Aircraft are Available or specify a date and time for the launch.
11. Optionally, for global plans only, specify that the global plan not proceed to the next task until the flight is launched (Wait for Launch check box).

## 30.52. Launch QRA Aircraft

The Launch QRA Aircraft task creates an air unit and launches the specified number of aircraft that are on Quick Reaction Alert (QRA) status.

➤ **To launch a QRA unit:**

1. Select an air base.
2. Choose **Task > Launch QRA Aircraft**, or click the Launch QRA Aircraft button on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Launch QRA Aircraft dialog box opens.
3. Specify a call sign for the unit that is to be created.
4. Specify the number of aircraft to include in the unit.
5. Click OK.

## 30.53. Move Along Route

For details, please see "26.18. Move Along Route" on page 586.

## 30.54. Move Along Route Retrograde

Move Along Route Retrograde is the same as Move Along Route, except that the simulation object does not change its heading to the direction of movement. It maintains the heading at the start of movement or a heading necessary for defensive operations. See the Move Along Route task for the procedure for this task.

## 30.55. Move to Location

For details, please see "26.24. Move to Location" on page 592.

## 30.56. Move to Location Retrograde

Move to Location Retrograde is the same as Move to Location, except that the simulation object does not change its heading to the direction of movement. It maintains the heading at the start of movement or a heading necessary for defensive operations. See the Move to Location task for the procedure for this task.

## 30.57. Move To Waypoint

For details, please see "26.27. Move to Waypoint" on page 595.

## 30.58. Move to Waypoint Retrograde

Move to Waypoint Retrograde is the same as Move to Waypoint, except that the simulation object does not change its heading to the direction of movement. It maintains the heading at the start of movement or a heading necessary for defensive operations. See the Move to Waypoint task for the procedure for this task.

## 30.59. Nuclear Attack

The Nuclear Attack task lets a simulation object create an area contaminated with nuclear radiation.

When you assign a Nuclear Attack task, you specify the center of the area in which it will take place. The size of the area and the allowed range from the simulation object is specified in the nuclear weapon's weapon system. You can edit this value in the Simulation Object Editor.

➤ **To execute a nuclear attack:**

1. Select the simulation object that will make the attack.
2. Choose **Task > Engagement > Nuclear Attack**. The Nuclear Attack dialog box opens.
3. Click a location for the center of the attack area or specify the coordinates.
4. In the Agent Type list, select the type of radiation.
5. Click OK.

## 30.60. Patrol Route

For details, please see "26.34. Patrol Route" on page 598 .

## 30.61. Patrol Between

For details, please see "26.33. Patrol Between" on page 598.

## 30.62. Prepare QRA

The Prepare QRA task assigns aircraft to quick reaction alert (QRA) status. You specify the type of aircraft, loadout, when they should be prepared, and their response time. Once the aircraft are prepared they are available to be launched.

➤ **To prepare aircraft for QRA status:**

1. Select an air base.
2. Choose **Task > Prepare QRA**, or click the Prepare QRA button on the Last Selected Object Panel. The Prepare Aircraft for QRA Status dialog box opens.
3. In the Aircraft Type list, select an aircraft type.
4. In the Number list, select the number of aircraft.
5. In the Loadout list, select a loadout.
6. If you want aircraft to be prepared as soon as they are available, select the Prepare As Soon As Aircraft Are Available check box. If you want them prepared at a specific time, clear the check box and in the Start Time box, specify the time when you want the preparation process to start.
7. Select a Response Time option.
8. Click OK.

## 30.63. Refuel from Tanker

The Refuel from Tanker task causes an aircraft unit to request refueling from a fuel tanker. A message is sent to the tanker indicating the amount of fuel required and the type of connection. The tasked aircraft then performs a series of steps as follows:

1. The aircraft unit flies to a standby position near the tanker and follows the tanker.
2. The aircraft unit follows the tanker at range 0 and refuels.
3. The aircraft unit moves away from the tanker and follows at a small distance.

Each of these steps is performed in response to a message from the tanker indicating that the tanker is ready. During this time the receiving aircraft unit also gives the tanker information about the number of aircraft in the unit and the maximum transfer rate for the aircraft.

If the receiving aircraft unit is an echelon containing subordinate units, then each subordinate coordinates with the tanker independently.

➤ **To refuel an aircraft unit:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Service Support > Refuel from Tanker** or click the Refuel from Tanker button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Refuel from Tanker dialog box opens.
3. Select the tanker you want to refuel from.
4. Click OK.

## 30.64. Refueling Mission

The Refueling Mission task causes a tanker aircraft to follow a route or move to a waypoint and fly a holding pattern. It awaits requests from other aircraft to refuel, per the task "30.63. Refuel from Tanker" on the previous page.

➤ **To issue a refueling mission:**

1. Select an aircraft that has refueling capability.
2. Choose **Task > Combat Service Support > Refueling Mission**, or click the Refueling Mission button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Refueling Mission dialog box opens.
3. Specify the altitude at which to conduct the refueling mission.
4. Specify how much fuel to reserve for the tanker's own use. If the fuel level drops to this amount, the tanker will stop refueling other aircraft.
5. Specify a route to follow or specify the parameters for a race track holding pattern.
6. Click OK.

## 30.65. Send NBC Report

Sending an NBC report is the equivalent of sending a spot report when an NBC area is found. (An NBC area is a nuclear, biological, or chemical contamination area.) NBC reports are sent automatically if a simulation object has an NBC sensor. However, this

task allows you to send a report manually. For more on NBC areas, see "22.1.6 Contamination Areas" on page 499.

➤ **To send an NBC report:**

1. Select a simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Send NBC Report**. The Send NBC Report dialog box opens.
3. Select the contamination area for which to send a report.
4. Specify the Engagement Result. This is any text that you want to accompany the report.
5. Click OK.

## 30.66. Send Obstacle Report

Sending an obstacle report is the equivalent of sending a spot report when an obstacle area is found. Obstacle reports are sent automatically if a simulation object has an engineering object sensor. However, this task allows you to send a report manually.

➤ **To send an obstacle report:**

1. Select a simulation object.
2. Choose **Task > Send Obstacle Report**. The Send Obstacle Report dialog box opens.
3. Select the obstacle for which to send a report.
4. Specify the Engagement Result. This is any text that you want to accompany the report.
5. Click OK.

## 30.67. Send Radio Set

For details, please see "29.3.1 Send Radio Set" on page 667.

## 30.68. Send Radio Task

For details, please see "29.3.2 Send Radio Task" on page 668.

## 30.69. Send Text Message

For details, please see "29.3.3 Send Text Message" on page 669 .

## 30.70. User Task

For details, please see "29.11. User Task" on page 678.

## 30.71. Wait for Escort

You can instruct an aircraft unit to move to a waypoint and wait for an escort.

➤ **To assign a Wait for Escort task:**

1. Select an aircraft unit.
2. Choose **Task > Movment > Wait for Escort**, or click the Wait for Escort button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel or the Tasks Toolbar. The Wait for Escort dialog box opens.
3. Select the waypoint that the unit should move to.
4. Click OK.

## 30.72. Wait Tasks

You can specify unconditional wait, wait for a duration, or wait until a simulation time. For details, please see "29.4. Wait Tasks" on page 670.

## 30.73. Background Process List

Background processes are not described in detail because they run automatically; no user action is required to execute them.

Table 27 lists the background tasks provided. These tasks are only available for units in *AggregateLevel.sms*.

**Table 27. Background processes**

| Background Process | Description |
|---|---|
| Attack Enemies | Determines when to begin and stop attacking enemies. |
| Attrit Air Base | Handles air-to-ground attacks against an air base. |
| Calculate Maximum Speed Modifier | Calculates a modifier that is applied to the maximum possible speed of a unit to modify its movement rate. |
| Make EW Attack | If a jammer system is turned on, attack all non-friendly simulation objects within range of the jammer. The simulation object attacks continuously. |
| Manage Air Base | Launches scheduled flights and updates resources for an air base. |
| Perform Attrition | Determines when a unit is being attacked and modifies its health based on the current attrition rate. |
| Provide Supplies | Continually checks to see if conditions allow providing supplies (not in combat, not ordered to stop providing supplies).<br>Checks to see what friendly units are in range, and sends each new unit an influence to let it know that this unit is available.<br>When a unit goes out of range, or this unit is ordered to stop providing supplies, it sends a stop influence to that unit. |

**Table 27. Background processes (continued)**

| Background Process | Description |
|---|---|
| Receive Construction | Allows an engineering object to receive construction from other simulation objects. |
| Resize Footprints | Updates the size of a simulation object's physical and sensor footprints. |
| Update Combat Effectiveness | Updates the combat effectiveness state of a simulation object. |
| Update EW Degradation | Processes jamming interactions and computes the level of degradation in communications and radar from these attacks. |
| Use Supplies | Uses supplies based on the simulation object's current activities. |

# 31. Creating Scripted Tasks and Sets

VR-Forces lets you create new tasks and set data requests by writing scripts. You do not need to know C++ or have a developers license to write these scripts. This chapter explains how to create and edit script metadata and how to organize and enable scripts. "Appendix 32. Writing Scripts" on page 755 explains how to write script code. "Appendix 33. Using Qt Designer for Script Dialog Boxes" on page 785 explains how to use Qt Designer to lay out dialog boxes.


31.1. Introduction to Scripts ..... 715
- 31.1.1 Scripted Tasks ..... 716
- 31.1.2 Scripted Sets ..... 716
- 31.1.3 Reactive Task Scripts ..... 716
- 31.1.4 Background Process Scripts ..... 717
- 31.1.5 Script Metadata ..... 717
- 31.1.6 The Lua Scripting Language ..... 717

31.2. Creating a New Script ..... 717
- 31.2.1 Specifying the Script ID ..... 723
- 31.2.2 Specifying a Menu Icon ..... 723
- 31.2.3 Specifying an Extended Name ..... 724
- 31.2.4 Specifying a Short Description ..... 724
- 31.2.5 Specifying a Description ..... 725
- 31.2.6 Specifying Script Parameters ..... 725
- 31.2.7 Specifying a Menu Location ..... 734
- 31.2.8 Specifying Action Categories ..... 736
- 31.2.9 Configuring a Script's Availability to a Simulation Object Type ..... 736
- 31.2.10 Specifying Equivalent Scripts for a Toolbar Button ..... 740
- 31.2.11 Specifying the Programming Language for a Script ..... 741
- 31.2.12 Configuring Scripted Tasks to Run Concurrently ..... 742
- 31.2.13 Creating Scripted Sets ..... 742
- 31.2.14 Creating Reactive Tasks ..... 743
- 31.2.15 Creating Background Processes ..... 745

31.3. Saving Scripts ..... 746
31.4. Editing a Script ..... 747
31.5. Filtering the List of Scripts ..... 747
31.6. Organizing Scripts into Folders ..... 748
31.6.1 Adding a Folder ..... 748
31.6.2 Renaming a Folder ..... 748
31.6.3 Deleting a Folder ..... 748
31.6.4 Adding Scripts to a Folder ..... 748
31.6.5 Removing a Script from a Folder ..... 749
31.7. Exporting and Importing Scripts ..... 749
31.7.1 Importing a Script Package ..... 749
31.8. Copying a Script ..... 750
31.9. Deleting a Script ..... 751
31.10. Creating a System Script ..... 751
31.10.1 Including System Scripts on the Task and Set Menus ..... 751
31.11. Specifying a Script Editor ..... 753
31.12. Editing Lua Files ..... 753

## 31.1. Introduction to Scripts

The script capability in VR-Forces allows you to create new tasks and set data requests for simulation objects without using the VR-Forces Toolkit and C++ API. Scripts use the Lua programming language. The actions that simulation objects can carry out are still limited to the basic C++ tasks provided by VR-Forces. However, since Lua is a full-featured scripting language, it is far more powerful than the language used to create plans and you can be much more creative in how you use the basic tasks. In addition to functions for tasks and sets, Lua scripts can make many types of calls to the simulation engine to get simulation object status or other simulation data. Scripts can also set some simulation data.

Scripts are classified as system scripts or as scenario scripts. System scripts are saved as part of a simulation model set (SMS) and are available to all scenarios that use that SMS. Scenario scripts are available only in the scenario for which the script was created. However, you can save a scenario script as a system script if you want to and, just as with other data used by VR-Forces, there are ways of copying scripts from one VR-Forces installation to another.

VR-Forces supports the following types of scripts:

- Task. Scripted tasks can be listed on the Task menu and used as independent tasks or in plans just like C++ tasks.
- Reactive task. A reactive task monitors the simulation and gets activated when the conditions set in the script become true. Reactive tasks are enabled or disabled for simulation objects through the GUI.
- Background process. A background process runs continuously from the time a simulation object is created. There is no user interface for assigning background processes to simulation objects. Their use is based entirely on the scripting process.
- Set data request. Set data request scripts change simulation object state without interrupting the current task.

From a Lua script you can:

- Create and delete simulation objects and tactical graphics.
- Set weather and environment state.
- Get simulation object state, such as:
  - Aggregation
  - Location
  - Embarkation
  - Type
  - Force
  - Damage state
  - Velocity

- Monitor and set simulation object resources.
- Get simulation object sensor contacts.
- Task other simulation objects.
- Subtask self.
- Send Set Data Request messages.
- Test terrain:
  - Get terrain height.
  - Check line of sight.
  - Find feature data.

VR-Forces includes a text editor (SciTE) to use as the default script editor. You can configure VR-Forces to use a different editor if you want to. For details, please see "31.11. Specifying a Script Editor" on page 753.

### 31.1.1 Scripted Tasks

Scripted tasks can be added to the Task menu and are treated just like the tasks that are built into VR-Forces.

When you create a scripted task, you can specify input parameters. VR-Forces can automatically build a dialog box for users to specify the parameter values or you can use Qt Designer to lay out the dialog box. For more information, please see "Appendix 33. Using Qt Designer for Script Dialog Boxes" on page 785.

### 31.1.2 Scripted Sets

Scripted sets can be added to the Set menu and are treated just like the set data requests that are built into VR-Forces.

When you create a scripted set, you can specify input parameters. VR-Forces can automatically build a dialog box for users to specify the parameter values or you can use Qt Designer to lay out the dialog box. For more information, please see "Appendix 33. Using Qt Designer for Script Dialog Boxes" on page 785.

A scripted set cannot issue tasks to the entity that executes it or to any other entity.

### 31.1.3 Reactive Task Scripts

Reactive tasks monitor a simulation and get activated when the conditions set in the script become true. Reactive tasks are not added to the Task menu. In most respects the process for creating and writing reactive tasks is the same as creating and writing all scripts. Assume that all details about scripts apply to reactive tasks unless noted otherwise. For conceptual details about reactive tasks, please see "25.3. Reactive Tasks" on page 552.

### 31.1.4 Background Process Scripts

The background process is a script that runs in the background for the simulation object types for which it was written. Since a background process has no user interface, it does not have any input parameters. When you create a background process, you specify the simulation object types for which it is available and you write the script.

### 31.1.5 Script Metadata

A script has two major components, the script code, and the script metadata. The metadata provides all of the information that VR-Forces needs to store the script, add it to a menu, and generate a dialog box.

### 31.1.6 The Lua Scripting Language

Lua is a lightweight scripting language used by VR-Forces to implement the script feature. VR-Forces includes a set of Lua functions that map the built-in tasks and set data requests as well as the ability to obtain simulation object state information. You use these functions as the starting point for building new tasks. For details about the Lua language, please see the Lua web site (www.Lua.org).

## 31.2. Creating a New Script

To create a new script, you specify the metadata for the script and write the script code. A script's metadata specifies the script's name, where it will be placed on a menu, and its parameters, if any. Specifying metadata may be an iterative process, particularly the parameters, which may change as you write the code for the script. However, the minimum first step in creating a script is to specify a name for the script and add it to the list of scripts. Once you do this, you can edit the metadata and the code as needed until you have completed the script to your satisfaction.

All new scripts are created as scenario scripts. If you want to create a new system script, you save the scenario script as a system script. For details, please see "31.10. Creating a System Script" on page 751.

---

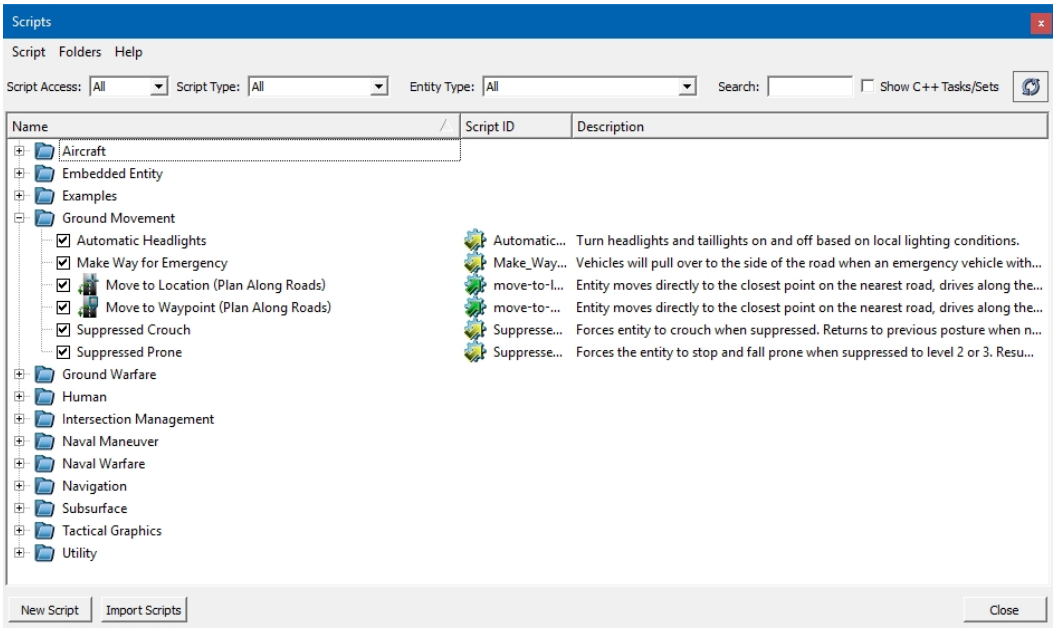
To create a script, you must have a scenario open. This is true even if you plan to create a system script rather than a scenario script.

---

➤ **To create a new script:**

1. Open a scenario. (If you want to create a system script, you must create it in the context of a scenario. Then you will promote it to a system task.)
2. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts dialog box opens (Figure 252).

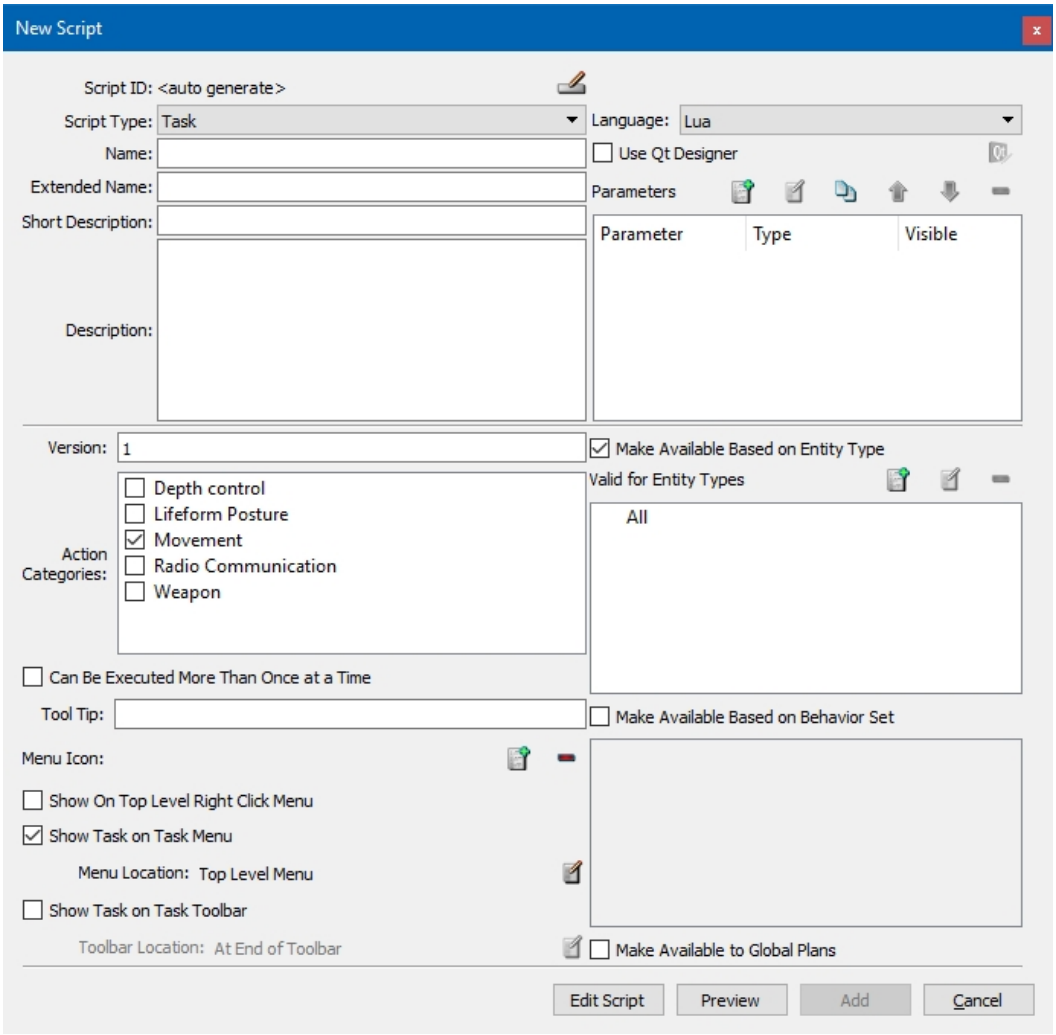
**Figure 252. Scripts dialog box**




3. If you have a folder hierarchy and want to create the script in a particular folder, select the folder. (For more information, please see "31.6. Organizing Scripts into Folders" on page 748.)

4. Choose **Script > New Script** or click the New Script button. The New Script dialog box opens (Figure 253).

**Figure 253. New Scripted Task dialog box**




5. In the Script Type list, select the type of script you are creating (Task, Reactive Task, Set, or Background Process). The dialog box displays the correct set of metadata for the type of script you chose.
6. Complete the fields in the dialog box. They are described in Table 28 and in following sections.

**Table 28. Script metadata**

| Input Field | Description |
|---|---|
| Script ID | A unique name for the script. VR-Forces generates a default name, but you will probably want to change it to something meaningful. It is your responsibility to make sure that it is unique. Please see "31.2.1 Specifying the Script ID" on page 723 for details. |
| Script Type | One of the following:<br>— Task.<br>— Reactive Task.<br>— Background Process.<br>— Set.<br>The fields on the New Script dialog box vary based on which type of task is being created. |
| Language | Specify Lua if you are writing a Lua script. Specify C++ if you have written a new task controller and want to use the script interface to create the GUI portion of the task. (Does not apply to reactive tasks and background processes.) For more information, please see "31.2.11 Specifying the Programming Language for a Script" on page 741. |
| Name | The text that will be added to the Task or Set menu for this script. |
| Extended Name | An alternative name to use on context-insensitive task or set lists if more than one task or set has the same name. For details about extended names, please see "31.2.3 Specifying an Extended Name" on page 724. |
| Short Description | The text to use for this script in a Plan window. |
| Description | A description of what the script does. This text is displayed on the dialog box. Providing a description is optional. Also, optionally you can choose to include the description on the task or set dialog box. |
| Version | Script version. Available as a parameter to a Lua script. For use by script writers who want to have different versions of a script. |
| Action Categories | For tasks, specifies the categories of tasks that this scripted task will interrupt. (In other words, action categories manage task concurrency. For details about concurrent tasks, please see "25.1.3 Concurrent Task Execution" on page 545.) (Does not apply to background processes or sets.) |

**Table 28. Script metadata (continued)**

| Input Field | Description |
|---|---|
| Can Be Executed More Than Once at a Time | Allows an entity to manage more than one instance of this task at a time. For details, please see "31.2.12 Configuring Scripted Tasks to Run Concurrently" on page 742. |
| Tool Tip | Text for a tooltip when the script is selected on a menu. (Optional) (Does not apply to reactive tasks and background processes.) |
| Menu Icon | The icon to display next to the name on a menu. Please see "31.2.2 Specifying a Menu Icon" on page 723 for details. (Optional) (Does not apply to reactive tasks and background processes.) |
| Parameters | The input parameters that the task or set requires. Please see "31.2.6 Specifying Script Parameters" on page 725 for details. (Optional) (Does not apply to background processes.) |
| Make Available Based on Entity Type | If selected, the script is available to the simulation object types in the Valid for Entity Types list. |
| Valid for Entity Types | The simulation object types that can use this script. Editable only if Make Available Based on Entity Type is selected. This entry affects the context sensitivity of the Task or Set menu. Please see "Specifying the Valid Simulation Object Types for a Script" on page 737 for details. Default: All. |
| Make Available Based on Behavior Sets | If selected, the script is available to the simulation object only if the selected behavior set is assigned to its force. |
| Make Available to Global Plans | If selected, the script is available on the Task or Set menu in global plans. |
| Behavior Sets | Select each behavior set that you want this script to be part of. You can also assign scripts to behavior sets in the Edit Behavior Sets dialog box. For details about behavior sets, please see "25.4. Using Behavior Sets to Manage Scripts" on page 557. |
| Show on Top Level Right Click Menu | Select to show the task or set on the top level of the shortcut menu. This setting can be in addition to showing the script on the Task or Set menu. |

**Table 28. Script metadata (continued)**

| Input Field | Description |
|---|---|
| Show Task on Task Menu | Select to show the scripted task on the Task menu. Clear to hide the task. (You might want to write a script that will be used by other scripts, but which you do not want a user to assign directly to a simulation object.) (For task scripts only.) |
| Show Set on Set Menu | Select to show the scripted set data request on the Set menu. Clear to hide the set. (You might want to write a script that will be used by other scripts, but which you do not want a user to assign directly to a simulation object.) (For set scripts only.) |
| Menu Location | The location on the Task or Set menu where this script will be listed. Please see "31.2.7 Specifying a Menu Location" on page 734 for details. (Does not apply to reactive tasks and background processes.) |
| Show Task on Task Toolbar | Select to add this task to the Task Toolbar. The toolbar displays the name of the script. If you want to display an icon, select a Task menu icon for this task, as described in "31.2.2 Specifying a Menu Icon" on the facing page. (Tasks only.) |
| Show Set on Set Toolbar | Select to add this set data request to the Set Toolbar. The toolbar displays the name of the script. If you want to display an icon, select a menu icon for this task, as described in "31.2.2 Specifying a Menu Icon" on the facing page. (Sets only.) |
| Toolbar Location | The location on a toolbar for this script. You can assign more than one script to a toolbar button. For details, please see "31.2.10 Specifying Equivalent Scripts for a Toolbar Button" on page 740. |
| Enabled by Default | Reactive tasks only. If selected, the reactive task is automatically enabled for all supported simulation object types. |
| Default Priority | Reactive tasks only. The priority for this task. For information about the effect of reactive task priority, please see "25.3. Reactive Tasks" on page 552. |
| View Like Priorities | Reactive tasks only. Displays a list of the reactive tasks that are valid for this task's simulation object types and action categories. This helps you decide what priority you want to give to the reactive task you are creating or editing. |

7. Optionally, click Preview to see the dialog box that the script will create.
8. Optionally, click Edit Script to begin writing the code for this script.
9. Click Add. The script is added to the list in the Scripts window.
10. To save the script task as part of the scenario, save the scenario.
11. Write the code for the script. For details, please see "Appendix 32. Writing Scripts" on page 755.

## 31.2.1 Specifying the Script ID

Each script must have a unique ID. VR-Forces generates a default ID, but it does not contain meaningful text. Therefore, you may want to change the ID.

---

! The script ID is used internally by VR-Forces to manage how a script is executed. If a script is used in a plan, it is referenced by its script ID. If you change the ID, you must ensure that it is unique.

---

➤ **To specify the script ID:**

1. In the New Script (or Edit Script) dialog box, click the button to the right of the Script ID. The New Script ID dialog box opens.
2. Type the ID you want to use. Internally, VR-Forces converts all script IDs to lower case. Therefore it is recommended that you use lower case when creating a script ID.
3. Click OK.

### Editing a Script ID

Editing script IDs is not recommended because it can invalidate scripts that reference the changed script. However, you can change a script ID if you want to.

If you change the script ID for a scenario script, you are responsible for ensuring that scripts that reference it are changed accordingly.

If you change the script ID for a system script, VR-Forces generates an alias so that scripts that reference the old script ID will continue to work.

➤ **To edit a script ID:**

1. Open the script whose ID you want to change.
2. Click the button to the right of the Script ID. The New Script ID dialog box opens.
3. Type the ID you want to use. Internally, VR-Forces converts all script IDs to lower case. Therefore it is recommended that you use lower case when creating a script ID.
4. Click OK.

## 31.2.2 Specifying a Menu Icon

If you want to put an icon on the Task or Set menu next to the menu text, you can specify one. (Does not apply to reactive tasks and background tasks.)

➤ **To specify a menu icon:**

1. Click the Add button ( ) next to the Menu Icon label. The Select Menu Icon dialog box opens.
2. Browse the directory structure and select the icon that you want to use.
3. Click Open.

➤ To remove a menu icon for a script, click the Remove button ( ) next to the Menu Icon label.

## 31.2.3 Specifying an Extended Name

Sometimes a script needs to be implemented differently for different types of simulation objects. To accomplish this you can write different scripts for each type of simulation object, but give the task the same name. The scripts are distinguished by their script IDs and VR-Forces picks the correct script using context sensitivity. For example, you might have two scripts with the IDs Move_To_Waypoint_Entity and Move_To_Waypoint_Unit. Both would have the name Move to Waypoint. When you wanted to give a Move to Waypoint task, you would select the simulation object and choose Move to Waypoint from the Task menu. VR-Forces would pick the correct version of the task.

The one problem with this system is that in cases where VR-Forces does not enforce context-sensitivity of task or set lists, you would end up with two tasks called Move to Waypoint and no way to know which was the correct one to use for the simulation object that you wanted to assign the task to. The extended name solves this problem. If you specify an extended name for a script, it is used to distinguish between scripts that use the same task or set name.

## 31.2.4 Specifying a Short Description

When you add a scripted task or set data request to a plan, the entry in the Plan window can be lengthy and cryptic. It often includes information, such as location values that are not easily understood or put to use by a reader. The Short Description field for a script lets you specify a short, meaningful description to be used in the Plan window.

The description can include variable information. To include variable data, use the syntax *$variable_name*, where *variable_name* is one of the variables for the script. For example, the default listing for the Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads) task is:

```
move-to-waypoint-path-plan: destination=Waypoint1
```

If you specify a short description of Move to $destination (Plan Path), the listing in the Plan window would be:

```
Move to Waypoint1 (Plan Path)
```

In this case, the value of the destination parameter replaces the text $destination in the description.

### 31.2.5 Specifying a Description

You can include a long description of the script. You can do this solely for the benefit of someone examining the metadata in the Edit Script dialog box or you can include the text of the description in the dialog box that gets generated for the scripted task or set. This is a way of providing context-sensitive help to the person who must specify the parameter values for the task or set.

➤ **To specify a task or set description:**

1. In the Description box, type a description of the task or set.
2. If you want the description to appear on the generated dialog box, select the Description check box.

### 31.2.6 Specifying Script Parameters

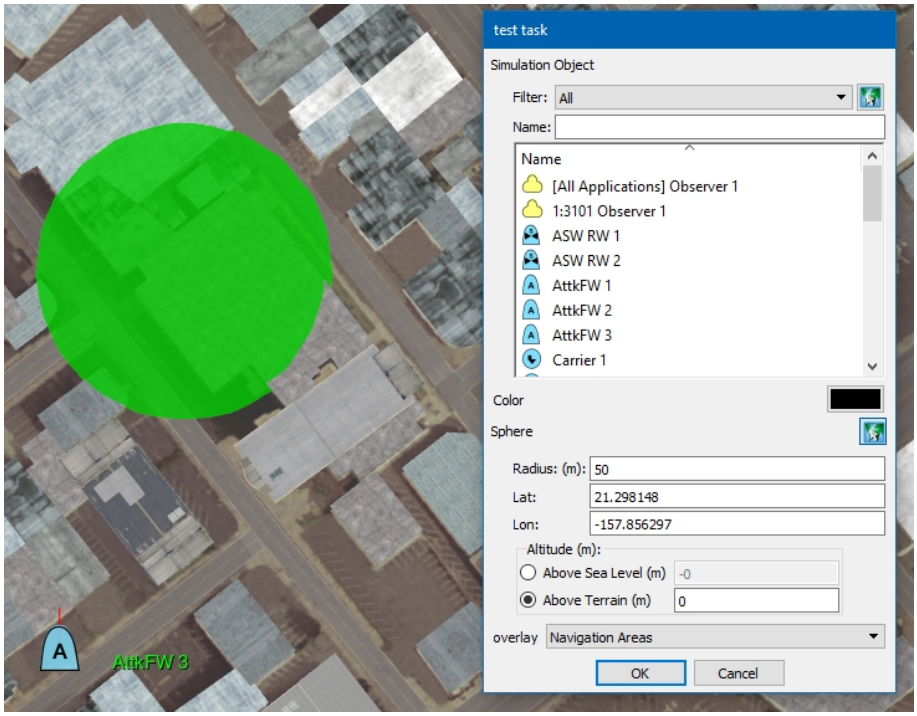
Scripted tasks and sets can take input parameters. When you specify parameters for a script, VR-Forces automatically builds a dialog box that lets you enter the parameter values. The parameter types that you can specify for a script are as follows:

- Active Sonar Mode. Lets you select the sonar mode to use.
- Aggregate Formation. Provides a list of formations for units.
- Altitude Label. Adds an altitude label independently of the altitude parameter.
- Altitude MSL. Altitude above mean sea level.
- Altitude Rate Change. Lets you specify the rate at which an aircraft changes altitude.
- Animated Movement. Lets you assign an animated movement to an entity.
- Bomb Resource. Creates a list of bomb resources.
- Boolean. Creates a check box.
- Choice (Drop-Down List). Specifies choices presented in a drop-down list.
- Choice (Image Drop-Down List). Lets you specify a set of images to choose instead of text.
- Choice (Multiple Option Buttons). Specifies choices presented as a group of option (radio) buttons.
- Choice (Single Option Button). Specifies a choice presented as a single option (radio) buttons. Single option buttons can be associated through a button group, but placed at different locations on the dialog box.
- Color. Lets you select a color.
- DI-Guy Animation. Lets you select a DI-Guy animation.
- DI-Guy Appearance. Lets you select a DI-Guy appearance.
- DI-Guy Gesture. Lets you select a DI-Guy gesture.
- Date/Time. Specifies the date and time.
- Depth MSL. Specifies the depth below mean sea level.

- Direct Fire Weapon. Lets you select a direct fire weapon.
- Distance. Specifies a distance.
- Embarkation Slot. Lets you select a slot an entity can embark on.
- Embedded Entity. Lets you select an embedded entity to deploy.
- Entity Type. Lets you specify one object type enumeration.
- Entity Types. Lets you specify a list of object type enumerations.
- Filename. Lets you specify a file name.
- Force. Specifies the force.
- Heading. Heading, in degrees.
- Heading Label. Adds a heading label independently of the heading parameter.
- Indirect Fire Weapon. Specifies an indirect fire weapon.
- Integer. A whole number.
- Integer Map. Maps a keyword to an integer.
- Jammer Selector. Lets you select a jammer for an entity. The jammer types list is built automatically based on the entity type.
- Jamming Mode. Lets you select a jamming mode. The jamming mode list is built automatically based on the entity type. If you add a Jamming Mode parameter, VR-Forces automatically adds an Emitter ID parameter to the dialog box.
- Loadout. Specify a loadout for an aircraft unit. (Aggregate-level only.)
- Location (with altitude). Vector description of a location, in geocentric, including altitude.
- Location (without altitude). Vector description of a location, in geocentric, altitude not included.
- Munition Resource. Creates a list of munitions.
- Naval Mine Resource. Specifies a naval mine resource.
- New Tactical Graphic. Lets you define a tactical graphic.
- Observer Mode. Specifies an observer mode, for example, Stealth, Plan View, or XR.
- Observer Saved View. Specifies a saved view.
- Offset Location. Specifies an offset to the side, behind, and above, as in the Follow Entity task.
- Overlay Parent. Lets you select an overlay.
- Radar Mode. Lets you specify a radar mode. The radar mode list is built automatically based on the entity type. If you add a Radar Mode parameter, VR-Forces automatically adds an Emitter ID parameter to the dialog box.
- Radar Selector. Lets you select a type of radar. The radar list is built automatically based on the entity type.
- Range Label. Adds a range label.

- Rate Label. Adds a rate label.
- Real. A floating point decimal number.
- Real Map. Maps a keyword to a real number.
- Resource. Creates a list of available resources.
- Separator. Lets you put a separator in the generated dialog box. This is just for formatting purposes.
- Simulation Object (Single). Lets you select one simulation object in a list window.
- Simulation Objects (Multiple). Lets you select multiple simulation objects in a list window.
- Speed. Any kind of rate, such as speed, climb rate, and so on.
- Sphere. Lets you create a sphere for defining an area on the terrain (Figure 254).

**Figure 254. A sphere created as part of a scripted task**




- String. An alphanumeric string.
- String Map. Maps a keyword to a string.
- Time. Time in days:hours:minutes:seconds.
- Topographic Orientation. Specifies orientation in topographic coordinates.
- Turn Rate. Turn rate in radians/second.
- Turn Rate Label. Adds a turn rate label independently of the turn rate parameter.

- Visual Meta Data. Allows you to select markings for objects that support settings marking, such as a flag or license plate.
- Weapon. Specifies a weapon.

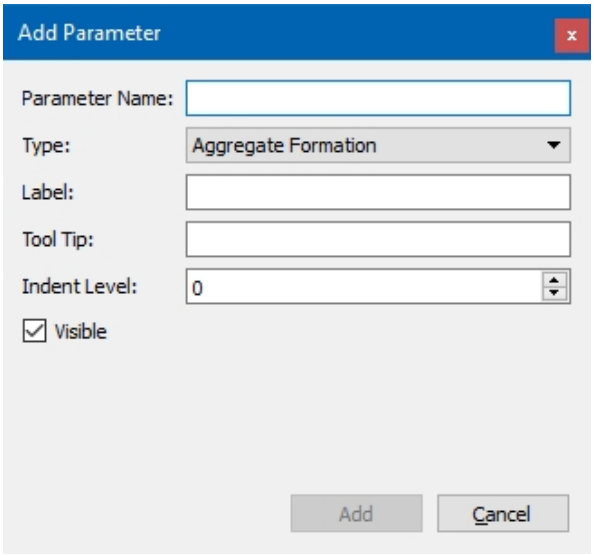
If a script does not have any input parameters, it executes as soon as it is assigned to a simulation object, like the Wait command does.

This section explains how to add parameters using the VR-Forces script creation interface and automatic dialog box creation. You can also add parameters using Qt Designer. For details, please see "33.3. Adding Parameters When Using Qt Designer" on page 786.

➤ **To specify a parameter for a script:**

1. Click the Add button ( ) above the Parameters list. The Add Parameter dialog box opens (Figure 255).

**Figure 255. Add Parameter dialog box**




2. In the Parameter Name box specify a name for the parameter. This is the name used in scripts to get the parameter value.
3. Select the type of parameter from the Type list. If appropriate, the dialog box redisplays to request the details required for the parameter type you selected.
4. Specify the details for the parameter. Table 29 explains how to fill out the properties for the various parameter types.

**Table 29. Scripted task parameter properties**

| Parameter property | Description |
|---|---|
| Parameter Name | The name to be used by the Lua script for this parameter. For example, if you give a parameter the name **taskDestination**, in the Lua code for the script, the parameter will be accessed as **taskParameters.taskDestination.** |
| Label | This is the text used on the dialog box that is generated for the task. If you leave this field blank, the parameter name is used. |
| Button Group | For Choice (Single Option Button) parameters, specifies the button group that the option buttons are a part of. |
| Tool Tip | Text for a tool tip. (Optional) |
| Indent Level | The level of indentation for this parameter. The indentation level is multiplied by the Indent setting (in pixels) on the Application Settings dialog box, Script Settings page. This allows you to apply some formatting to the dialog box. For details about setting the indentation distance, please see "Setting the Indentation Distance for Script Dialog Boxes" on page 733. |
| Required | For Simulation Object lists only, specifies that this parameter must be set before the OK button is enabled. If the check box is cleared, the requirement is not in effect. |
| Visible check box | Specifies that the parameter be included on the script dialog box. (You might want a parameter to be available in the code, but not have it set by a user when the script is assigned.) |
| Default value or state | Many, but not all, parameters have an optional default value. |
| Range Bottom | The lowest acceptable value for this parameter, if applicable. |
| Range Top | The highest acceptable value for this parameter, if applicable. |
| Default value for boolean parameter | The Boolean parameter type lets you create a check box. You can specify that the default be selected or cleared. |
| Affects Controls | If selected, some fields are populated with the actual simulation object state values. For details about the Affects Controls option for the simulation object parameter, please see "Using the Affects Controls Option" on page 733. |

**Table 29. Scripted task parameter properties (continued)**

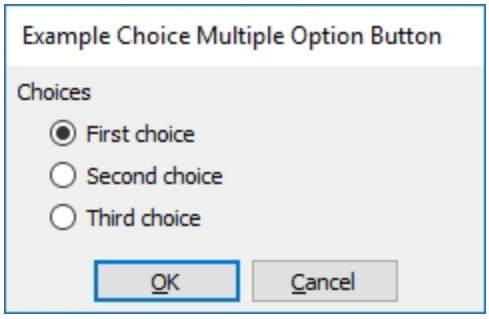
| Parameter property | Description |
|---|---|
| Choice | Adds choice option buttons. For details about adding choices to a Choice parameter, please see "Specifying Choices for the Choice Parameters" on the facing page. |
| Filter category | Lets you add categories for filtering object lists. For details about adding categories to a filtered list, please see "Specifying Categories for a Simulation Object" on page 732. |

5. Click Add.

### Choosing an Option Button Type

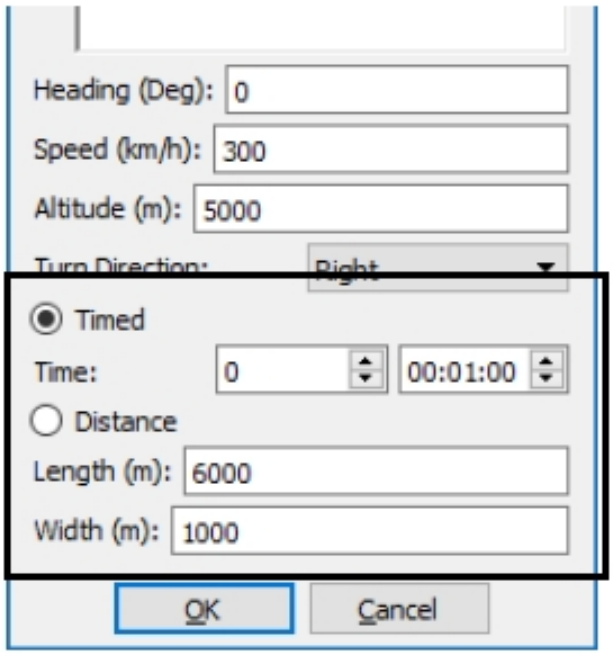
Scripted tasks can use two types of option buttons – multiple or single. The multiple option button choice is a typical option list, as illustrated in (Figure 256)(as illustrated in the figure). In a multiple option list, the choices are mutually exclusive and are automatically associated with each other. You cannot enable or disable other input parameters based on the selection of one of these options.

**Figure 256. Choice (Multiple Option Buttons)**




A single button option puts one option button on the dialog box. You can create multiple single button options and place them on the dialog box wherever you want. This allows you to associate other parameter inputs with the option button using the dialog box layout (Figure 257). To ensure that these options are mutually exclusive, you associate them by specifying a button group.

**Figure 257. Choice (Single Option Button)**




You can create multiple sets of options and multiple buttons groups if you need to.

Although you can lay out single option buttons and associated parameters using the default GUI builder for scripts, to associate parameters with the options, you must use Qt Designer. For details about laying out dialog boxes using Qt Designer, please see "Appendix 33. Using Qt Designer for Script Dialog Boxes" on page 785.

### Specifying Choices for the Choice Parameters

The Choice (Drop-Down List), Choice (Image Drop-Down List), and Choice (Multiple Option Buttons) parameters require a list of choices, which get added to the dialog box as option buttons or as a list. For the image drop down list, you specify images. For the other two, you specify text. You can add choices, edit them, and delete them.

➤ **To add a text choice:**

1. Click the Add Parameter button ( ) on the Choice Box Values line. The New Choice dialog box opens.
2. Type the text for the choice.
3. Click OK.
4. Repeat this procedure for each choice that you want to have available. (The last choice added becomes the default choice.)

➤ **To add an image choice:**

1. Click the Add Parameter button ( ) on the Choice Box Images line. The Select Image dialog box opens.
2. Type the path for an image or click the Edit button and select an image in the file browser. The image gets displayed in the dialog box.
3. Click OK. The image is added to the list next to Choice Box Images.
4. Repeat this procedure for each image that you want to have available. (The last choice added becomes the default choice.)

## Specifying Categories for a Simulation Object

The Simulation Object parameter lets you build a list of categories on which to filter the display of simulation object types in a dialog box.

➤ **To add a category to the simulation object list:**

1. Click the Add Parameter button ( ) on the Filters line. The Choose Filter dialog box opens.
2. Select a filter from the Filters list.
3. Click OK.
4. Repeat the procedure to add as many filters as you want.

### Editing the Category List for a Simulation Object Parameter

You can edit the list of filter categories for a Simulation Object parameter. The edit operation is essentially a replacement of the current category with a new one. You can achieve the same effect by deleting the current category and adding a new one.

➤ **To edit the list of filter categories in a Simulation Object parameter:**

1. Select the parameter you want to edit in the Parameters list on the New Scripted Task dialog box.
2. Click the Edit button ( ). The Script Variable dialog box opens.
3. In the Filters list, select the filter that you want to edit.
4. Click the Edit button ( ). The Choose Filter dialog box opens.
5. Select the filter category that you want to use.
6. Click OK. The original category is removed and the new one is added.

➤ **To delete a category from a Simulation Object parameter:**

1. Select the parameter you want to edit in the Parameters list on the New Scripted Task dialog box.
2. Click the Edit button ( ). The Script Variable dialog box opens.

3. In the Filters list, select the filter that you want to delete.
4. Click the Delete button ( ). The category is removed from the list.

### Using the Affects Controls Option

The Simulation Object (Single) and Simulation Objects (Multiple) parameters have a check box labeled Affects Controls. If you select this check box, when you select a simulation object in the task dialog box, the values for the following parameter types update to the correct values for the selected simulation object:

- DI-Guy Animation
- DI-Guy Appearance
- Embedded Entity
- Emitter
- Force
- Formation
- Location
- Overlay
- Weapon

If you use the Simulation Objects (Multiple) parameter, it only affects controls if you select just one simulation object.

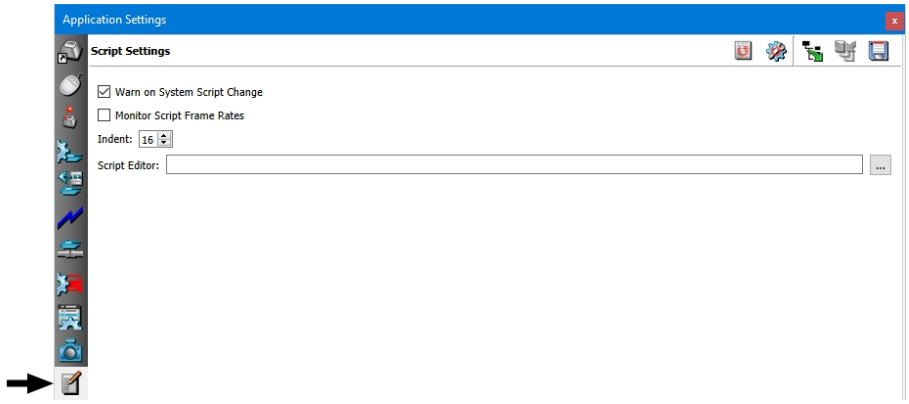
### Setting the Indentation Distance for Script Dialog Boxes

When you add parameters to a script dialog box, you can specify an indent level. The indent level is the level of indentation, not the distance of indentation. The distance that the parameter is indented on the dialog box is the indent level multiplied by the Indent value (in pin the Application Settings dialog box, Script Settings page.

➤ **To set the indentation distance for script dialog boxes:**

1. Choose **Settings>Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Script Settings page (Figure 258).

**Figure 258. Script Settings page**




3. Change the value (in pixels) in the Indent box.
4. Click Close.

---

You can also open the Script Settings page from the Scripts menu in the Scripts dialog box.

---

## 31.2.7 Specifying a Menu Location

Scripted tasks get added to the Task menu unless you specify that they not be shown (by clearing the Show Task on Task Menu check box). Scripted set data requests get added to the Set menu. The default location is the top level of the menu. However, you will probably want to organize your tasks and sets using the submenus provided by VR-Forces or in newly created submenus. The New Script dialog box displays the menu under which the script is placed. It does not show the full path from the top level menu.

You can also add a scripted task or set to the top level shortcut menu. The script can be listed in both places.

---

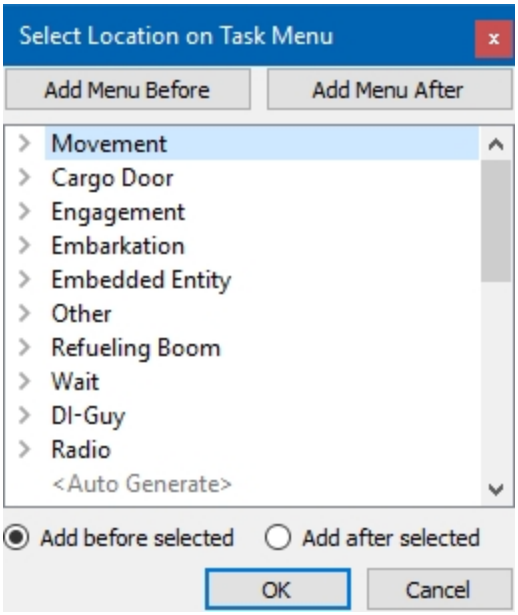
- When you add a script to a menu, it does not appear on the menu until you reload the scenario.
- By default, VR-Forces alphabetizes all Task and Set menu commands. Therefore even if you specify a specific location on a menu, the task or set will be listed in alphabetical order unless you disable alphabetization. For information about alphabetizing Task and Set menu commands, please see "78.2.1 Alphabetizing the Task and Set Menus" on page 1560.

---

➤ **To specify a menu location for a script:**

1. On the Menu Location line, click the Edit button ( ). For task scripts, the Select Location on Task Menu dialog box opens (Figure 252 on page 718). For set scripts, the Select Location on Set Menu dialog box opens. The two dialog boxes are functionally identical.

**Figure 259. Select Location on Task Menu dialog box**




2. To add the script to an existing submenu:
   a. Expand the submenu on which you want to put the script.
   b. Select the menu item that you want the new script to be next to.
   c. To put the new script above the selected menu item, select the Add Before Selected option. To put the new script below the selected menu item, select the Add After Selected option.
   d. Click OK.
3. To create a new submenu for the script:
   a. Select the submenu next to where you want to add the new submenu.
   b. To add the new menu before the selected submenu, click Add Menu Before. To add the new menu after the selected submenu, click Add Menu After. The New Menu Name dialog box opens.
   c. Type a name for the new submenu.
   d. Click OK.
   e. Add the script to the new submenu using the procedure in step 2.

## 31.2.8 Specifying Action Categories

Some VR-Forces tasks can run at the same time as other tasks, while some are mutually exclusive. This is called task concurrency. (For details about concurrent tasks, please see "25.1.3 Concurrent Task Execution" on page 545.) The C++ tasks provided with VR-Forces are organized in groups to help manage concurrency. They are configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/taskRules/default-task-rules.tsk*.

In the New Script dialog box, these groups are represented as action categories. The action categories displayed in the New Script dialog box are configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/taskRules/actionCategories.tsk*. (For details about configuring action categories, please see"25.9.1 Configuring Action Categories" on page 570 .)

When you create or edit a scripted task you can specify which groups of tasks the new task can run concurrently with and which it will interrupt. By default, the Movement category is selected, which means that if you do not change the setting, the new task will interrupt movement tasks.

➤ To specify which tasks a scripted task will interrupt, in the Action Categories list, select the categories to interrupt. For example, if the new task involves movement, you probably want it to interrupt other movement tasks, so you would select the Movement category check box. If it is a new type of message task, you probably want to let it run concurrently with movement tasks, so you would clear the Movement category check box.

## 31.2.9 Configuring a Script's Availability to a Simulation Object Type

Scripts can be available to a simulation object based on the following criteria:

- The script is available for certain simulation object types. For details, please see "Specifying the Valid Simulation Object Types for a Script" on the facing page.
- The script is part of a behavior set. For details, please see "Specifying Availability by Behavior Set" on page 738.
- A task or set is specified in a system definition. (For example, the Naval Mine Sweep task is available to entities with a Naval Mine Sweep system.) This state is not shown in the Edit Script dialog box. For details, please see "Specifying a Scripted Task or Set in a System Definition" on page 738.

The default setting for new scripts is that they are available to all simulation objects.

Availability by simulation object type and by behavior set is configured in the New Script and Edit Script dialog boxes. Table 30 shows the interaction of these settings.

**Table 30. Scripted task availability**

| Available by Entity Type | Available by Behavior Set | Availability |
|---|---|---|
| ☑ | ☐ | The script is available only to those simulation object types listed. |
| ☐ | ☑ | The script is available to all simulation objects, but only if one of the selected behavior sets is applied to the simulation object's force. |
| ☑ | ☑ | The script is available to the specified simulation object types, but only if one of the selected behavior sets is applied to the simulation object's force. |

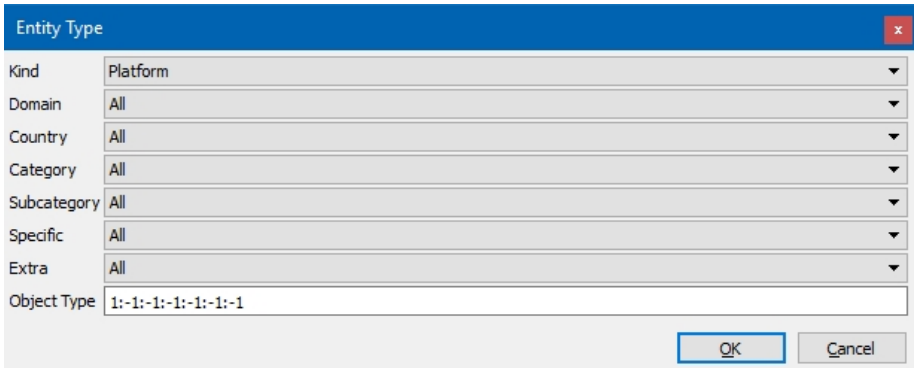
## Specifying the Valid Simulation Object Types for a Script

You can restrict a script to specific simulation object types. If you do this, the script will not appear on the Task or Set menu when you select a simulation object for which it is not valid. Just as with built-in VR-Forces tasks and sets, there are cases, such as for global plans, where VR-Forces cannot determine the simulation object context and the script will be available on the menu even though it is not appropriate to the simulation object that you selected. In those cases it is up to you to know that a task or set is valid.

➤ **To specify the valid entity types for a script:**

1. Select the Make Available Based on Entity Type check box.
2. Click the Add button ( ) on the Valid for Entity Types line. The Entity Type dialog box opens (Figure 260). You can build an enumeration by selecting options from the enumeration field lists or you can type in the enumeration directly.

**Figure 260. Entity Type dialog box**



3. For each field of the simulation object type (Kind, Domain, Country, and so on), select an option from the list.

   The options are drawn from the SISO Enumerations document. As you select an option, the enumeration at the bottom of the dialog box changes to reflect your choice. You do not have to make a selection for each field. VR-Forces uses wild carding to match simulation objects against the final enumeration.

4. If appropriate, add additional enumerations for each simulation object type that is valid for the script.

### Specifying Availability by Behavior Set

You can restrict a script to specific behavior sets. If you do this, the task will not appear on a menu when you select a simulation object whose force does not have the behavior set assigned to it.

➤ **To specify that a script is available by behavior set:**

1. Select the Make Available Based on Behavior Set check box.
2. Select each behavior set for which you want this script to be available.

---

You must create the behavior sets before you can assign scripts to them. All available behavior sets are automatically listed in the dialog box window.

---

### Specifying a Scripted Task or Set in a System Definition

Some scripted tasks and sets are available to simulation objects because they are specified in a system that the simulation object uses. They are not assigned to simulation object types as part of the script metadata.

---

This method is used for many of the system scripted tasks supplied with VR-Forces.

---

Scripted tasks and sets are specified in a system definition by their script IDs in the **script-ids** parameter. (In *AggregateLevel.sms*, some scripted tasks for combat engineering objects are specified in the **create-script-id**, **improve-script-id**, and **destroy-script-id** parameters.) Script IDs can be specified in a script-enable-controller and in controllers derived from it.

The following example is from *ground-aggregate-movement.sysdef* in *AggregateLevel.sms*. Any simulation object with this system definition can use the Maximum_Speed_Modifier, Halt_Movement, Move_To_Location_Plan_Path, and Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path scripted tasks. The variables described in the script-variables block are accessible to the script through the vrf:getScriptAttribute() function.

```
(script-enable-controller
    (component-descriptor-type "script-enable-controller-descriptor")
    ...
    (script-ids "Maximum_Speed_Modifier" "Halt_Movement"
        "Move_To_Location_Plan_Path" "Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path")
```

```
    (script-variables
        (maximum-speed-modifier-variables
            (script-id "Maximum_Speed_Modifier")
            (variables
                (DtRwReal Rain-Modifier-By-Intensity
                    $rain-modifier-by-intensity)
                (DtRwReal Snow-Modifier-By-Intensity
                    $snow-modifier-by-intensity)
                (DtRwReal Visibility-Degrades-When-Below
                    $visibility-degrades-when-below)
                (DtRwReal Visibility-Can-Degrade-Speed-Up-To
                    $visibility-can-degrade-speed-up-to)
            )
        )
        (move-to-location-variables
            (script-id "Move_To_Location_Plan_Path")
            (variables
                (DtRwString Obstacle-Feature-Query "MAK_OBSTACLE")
                (DtRwString Path-Feature-Query "MAK_ROAD")
            )
        )
    ...
    )
)
```

The following example is from the *aggregate-5-inch-gun.sysdef* in *AggregateLevel.sms*. It adds the **script-ids** parameter to the **aggregate-indirect-fire-controller**, which is derived from the **script-enable-controller**. Any simulation object with this system can use the Indirect Fire and Limited Munition Attack scripted tasks.

```
(weapon-indirect-fire
    (systems )
    (sensors )
    (controllers
        (aggregate-indirect-fire-controller
            (component-descriptor-type "aggregate-indirect-fire-controller-
descriptor")
            (component-type  "aggregate-indirect-fire-controller")
            (min-tick-period  -1.000000)
            (min-tick-period-variance  -1.000000)
            (process-state-repository-name "aggregate-indirect-fire-controller-
process-state-repository-default")
            (process-state-repository-type  "aggregate-indirect-fire-controller-
process-state-repository")
            (is-enabled True)
            (script-ids "Indirect_Fire" "Limited_Munition_Attack")
            (weapon-name  "5 inch shell")
            ...
        )
    )
```

The following example is from *obstacle-builder.sysdef* and shows the **create-script-id** and **improve-script-id** parameters:

```
(creatable-objects
        (affectable-object
            (object-type  1 (16 1 0 62 3 0 0))
            (time-to-complete $time-to-create-abatis)
            (range $creation-range-abatis)
            (create-script-id "Construct_Abatis")
            (improve-script-id "Improve_Obstacle")
        )
        ...
)
```

## 31.2.10 Specifying Equivalent Scripts for a Toolbar Button

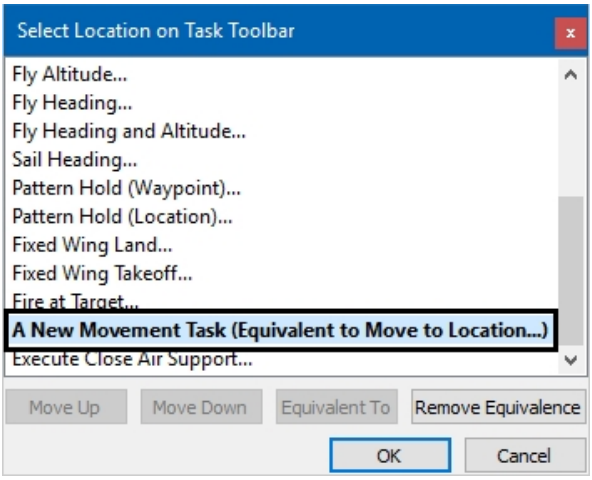
There may be occasions when you want to have tasks or sets with the same name that work differently depending on the simulation object you give them to. For example you might have a movement task that works one way for an individual entity and another way for a unit. You can ensure that when you select a simulation object it gets the correct version of the script by specifying the simulation object type that the script is available to. To simplify the Task or Set toolbars, you can map these different scripts to the same toolbar button. This is done by specifying that one script is equivalent to another script.

If you map multiple scripts to the same toolbar button, when you select a simulation object, the toolbar button is enabled and you can give the simulation object the task or set. VR-Forces chooses the correct version of the script. If you select multiple simulation objects that would have different versions of the script, the toolbar button becomes disabled.

➤ **To specify an equivalent script for a Task or Set Toolbar button:**

1. Create a new script.
2. On the New Script dialog box (or Edit Script dialog box), select Show Task on Task Toolbar (or Show Set on Set Toolbar).
3. Click the Toolbar Location edit button ( ). The Select Location on Task (Set) Toolbar dialog box opens.
4. Select the task or set that you want this script to be equivalent to. The Equivalent To button becomes active.
5. Click the Equivalent To button. Text is added to the script's entry in the list indicating the script it is equivalent to (Figure 261).

**Figure 261. Select Location on Task Toolbar dialog box**




Do not move the new script to a different location on the toolbar. Moving it breaks the equivalency.

6. Click OK.
7. Save the script.

## 31.2.11 Specifying the Programming Language for a Script

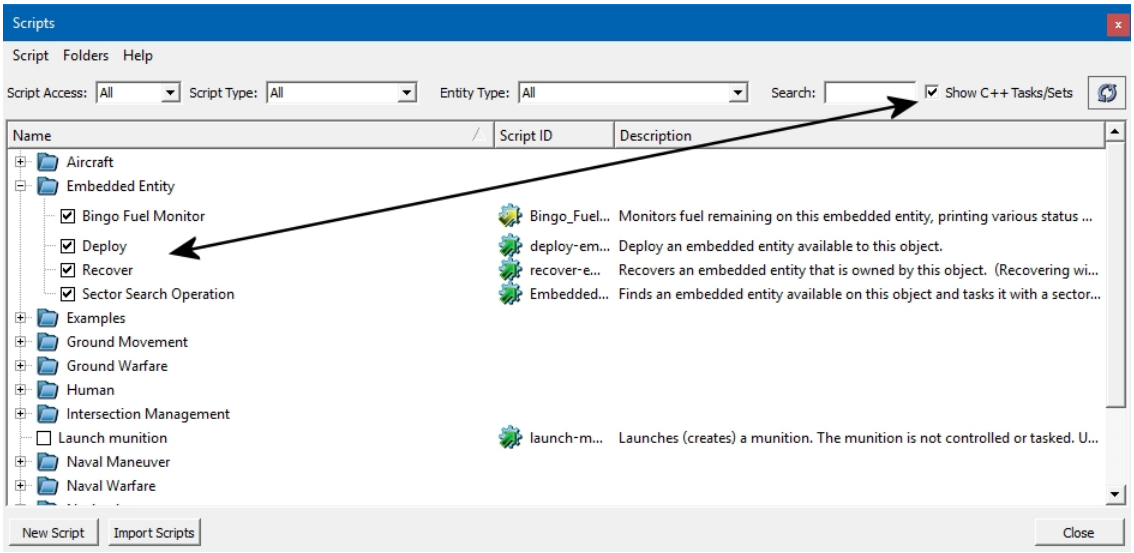
The Language list in the New Script dialog box has two options, Lua and C++. In most cases you will choose Lua and write a script to implement the task or set. However, since the script interface automatically generates dialog boxes and updates menus, it can be a convenient way to add the GUI component for new tasks or sets that developers have written in C++ with the VR-Forces Toolkit. Developers who take this approach do not have to rebuild the VR-Forces front-end or write a plug-in to add their new task or set to the menu and code a dialog box.

The Language option only applies to Task and Set type scripted tasks. Reactive tasks and background processes are always written in Lua.

If a developer adds a new C++ task controller using this approach, it looks for the script ID of the scripted task. For example, the Deploy and Recover tasks for embedded entities use the scripted task interface to create their dialog boxes. The addTask example in the VR-Forces Toolkit demonstrates this method of adding tasks. For more information, please see *VR-Forces Developers Guide*.

You can display C++ tasks and sets in the Scripts dialog box by selecting the Show C++ Tasks check box (Figure 262).

**Figure 262. C++ tasks**




## 31.2.12 Configuring Scripted Tasks to Run Concurrently

You can specify that an entity be able to run more than one instance of a task at the same time. The concurrent task feature is intended for tasks that require an entity to manage two non-conflicting activities, such as when an air base launches a flight in an aggregate-level scenario. If an air base receives two launch flight tasks in close succession and concurrent tasks are allowed, both tasks would complete. If this option is not in effect, the second task would cause the air base to stop executing the first instance of the task.

---

This setting overrides the action category settings. It is your responsibility to make sure that you do not allow concurrent task execution for tasks that would not make sense to run concurrently.

---

➤ To specify that a task can be run concurrently, select the Can Be Executed More Than Once at a Time check box on the Edit Scripts dialog box.

## 31.2.13 Creating Scripted Sets

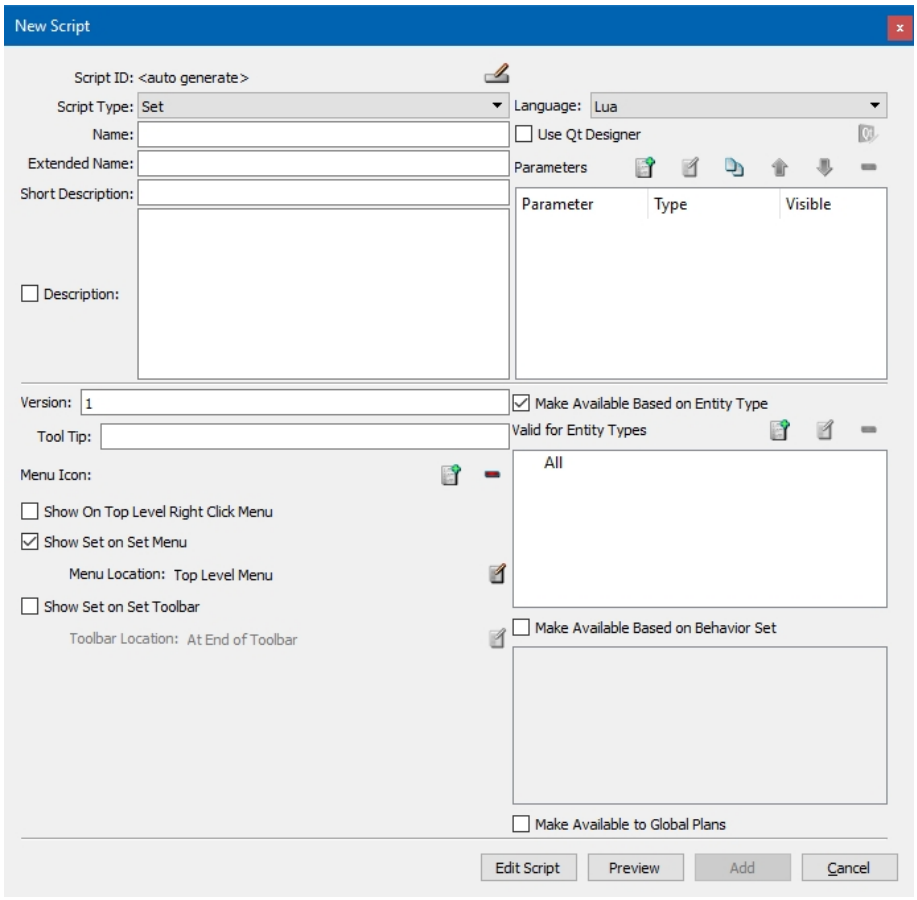
The metadata for a scripted set is identical to that of a scripted task except that a scripted set does not have action categories.

➤ **To create a scripted set:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts dialog box opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. If you have a folder hierarchy and want to create the script in a particular folder, select the folder. (For more information, please see "31.6. Organizing Scripts into Folders" on page 748.)

3. Choose **Script > New Script** or click the New Script button. The New Script dialog box opens (Figure 253 on page 719).
4. In the Script Type list, select Set. The New Script dialog box redisplays to show the metadata fields for a scripted set (Figure 263 below).

**Figure 263. New Script dialog box, scripted set**




5. Complete the fields in the dialog box. Fields that are common to all scripts are described in Table 28 on page 720.

## 31.2.14 Creating Reactive Tasks

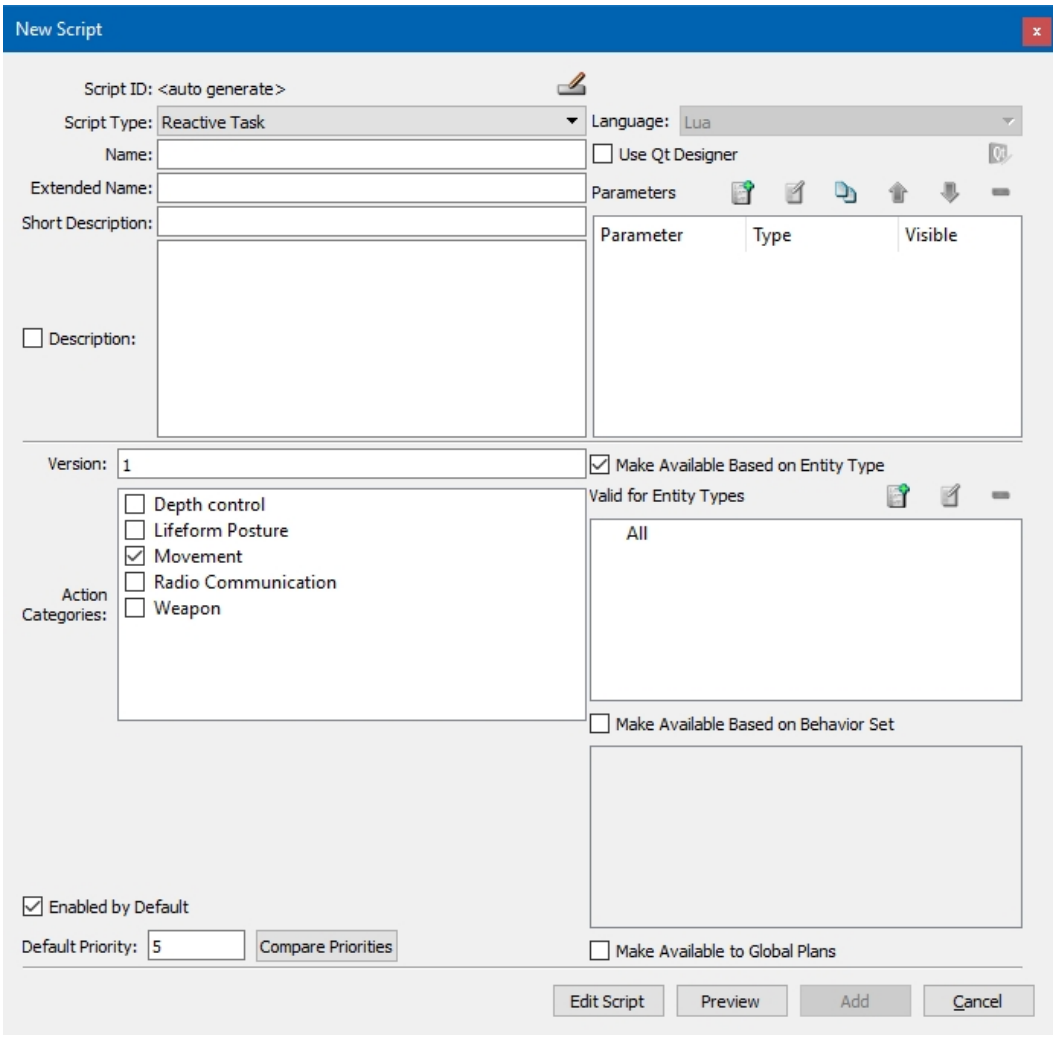
The process for creating a reactive task is largely the same as for creating other scripts. This procedure focuses on the differences.

➤ **To create a reactive task:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts dialog box opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. If you have a folder hierarchy and want to create the script in a particular folder, select the folder. (For more information, please see "31.6. Organizing Scripts into Folders" on page 748.)

3. Choose **Script > New Script** or click the New Script button. The New Script dialog box opens (Figure 253 on page 719).
4. In the Script Type list, select Reactive Task. The New Script dialog box redisplays to show the metadata fields for a reactive task (Figure 264).

**Figure 264. New Script dialog box, reactive task**




5. Complete the fields in the dialog box. Fields that are common to all scripts are described in Table 28 on page 720.
6. To make this reactive task enabled by default, select the Enabled By Default check box.
7. In the Default Priority box, type the priority for this task. The lower the number, the higher the priority. To help you set the priority, you can view a list of all reactive tasks that are valid for the simulation object types of this task so that you can consider their relative importance and set an appropriate priority.
8. Optionally, click Compare Priorities to see a list of reactive tasks and their priorities.
9. Click Add.

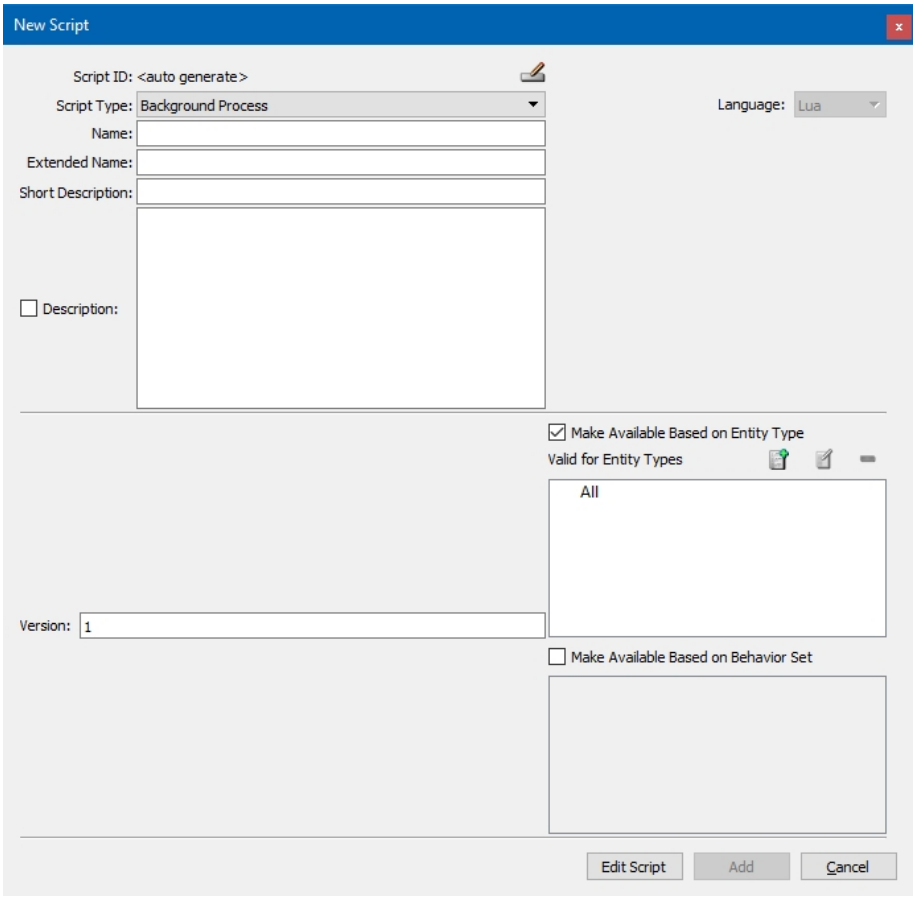
### 31.2.15 Creating Background Processes

The procedure for creating a background process is essentially the same as for other script types. The main difference is that there are fewer fields to complete in the New Script dialog box. For details about writing a background process script, please see "32.11. Background Processes" on page 783.

➤ **To create a background process:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts dialog box opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. If you have a folder hierarchy and want to create the script in a particular folder, select the folder. (For more information, please see "31.6. Organizing Scripts into Folders" on page 748.)
3. Choose **Script > New Script** or click the New Script button. The New Script dialog box opens (Figure 265).
4. In the Script Type list, select Background Process. The New Script dialog box redisplays to show the metadata fields for a background process (Figure 253 on page 719).
5. Complete the fields in the dialog box. Fields that are common to all scripts are described in Table 28 on page 720.

**Figure 265. New Script dialog box, background process**




6. Click Add.

## 31.3. Saving Scripts

When you create or edit a script, its listing in the Scripts window is in italics, prefaced by an asterisk. When you save the scenario, or promote a script to a system script, the script gets saved and the italics and asterisk get removed.

It is likely that you will test scripts by running a scenario and you will want to edit the script as you find problems. If you create or edit a script while a scenario is running and you decide to rewind the scenario without saving it (which would be normal behavior for rewinding a scenario), you are prompted to preserve the changes to the script after the scenario rewinds. The script is still not saved and you will, therefore, receive the standard "scenario modified" prompt when you start the scenario again. You do not have to save the scenario if the only thing that changed is the script. You can continue to run the scenario and rewind while you are working on the script. Eventually you will have to save the scenario if you want to save your changes to the script.

Metadata for system scripts gets saved to a file in the format *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/scripts/script_name.xml*. The script name is always saved as lower case.

➤ To save a scenario script, save the scenario.

➤ To save a system script, after updating the script in the Edit Script dialog box, click Update.

## 31.4. Editing a Script

You can edit scripts.

---

**!** If you edit a system script, the changes affect all scenarios that use the script. You are responsible for ensuring that any changes have the intended results for all scenarios that are affected.

---

➤ **To edit the metadata for a scenario script:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. Select the script that you want to edit.

---

**i** In the Script ID column the icon indicates the type of script, Task ( ), Reactive Task ( ), Set ( ), or Background Process ( ).

---

3. Choose **Script > Edit Script Meta Data**, or double-click the script name. The Edit Script dialog box opens. (If you are editing a system script, you are prompted to confirm that you want to edit it.)
4. Edit the metadata as desired.
5. Click Update.

## 31.5. Filtering the List of Scripts

You can filter the tasks listed in the Scripts dialog box by selecting options from the lists below the menu bar, as follows:

- Script Access: Show system scripts, scenario scripts, or all scripts.
- Script Type: Show scripted tasks, reactive tasks, sets, background processes, or all scripts.
- Entity Type: Show scripts that apply to the selected simulation object type.

> This filter is based on the Valid for Entity Types list for each script. Some scripts do not have any simulation object types listed. These scripts, such as Drop Naval Depth Charge, become available to simulation objects based on the systems that they have configured. Therefore, this list may be somewhat misleading in terms of the overall applicability of scripts to the different platforms.

- Show C++ Tasks: Toggles the display of tasks and sets that are written in C++, but whose GUIs are created using the script mechanism.

## 31.6. Organizing Scripts into Folders

You can create folders and organize scripts by folder.

### 31.6.1 Adding a Folder

➤ **To add a folder:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. Choose **Folders > Add Folder**. The Folder Name dialog box opens.
3. Type a name for the folder.
4. Click OK.

### 31.6.2 Renaming a Folder

➤ **To rename a folder:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. Select the folder that you want to rename.
3. Choose **Folders > Rename Folder**. The Folder Name dialog box opens.
4. Type a new name for the folder.
5. Click OK.

### 31.6.3 Deleting a Folder

You cannot delete a folder that has scripts in it.

➤ **To delete a folder:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. Select the folder that you want to delete.
3. Choose **Folders > Delete Folder**.

### 31.6.4 Adding Scripts to a Folder

➤ To add a script to a folder, drag it onto the folder.

### 31.6.5 Removing a Script from a Folder

➤ To remove a script from a folder, drag it away from the folder.

## 31.7. Exporting and Importing Scripts

Scenario scripts are saved in a scenario's SPT file, not as individual scripts. If you want to make a scenario script available to other scenarios, but you do not want to save it as a system script, you can export the script from the scenario in which you created it and import it into any other scenario. You can export multiple scripts to one file as a script "package".

---

You cannot add or remove scripts from a script package. To change the contents you would have to create a new package.

---

If scripts are organized in folders, when you save them the folder structure is also saved.

➤ **To export scripts:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. Select the scripts that you want to export. (The window supports typical methods for selecting multiple entries in a list.)
3. Choose **Script > Export Script Package**. The Choose Script File dialog box opens. By default it opens in *./userData/taskScripts*.
4. Type a name for the scripts file.
5. Click Save. The scripts gets saved to a file with the extension *.spt*. The file contains the metadata and the script code.

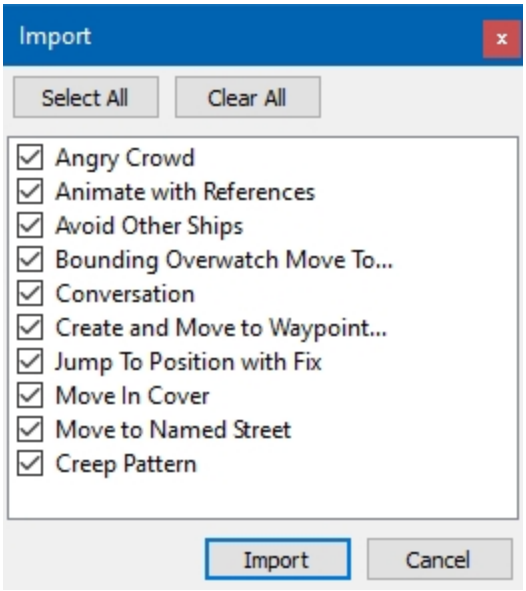
### 31.7.1 Importing a Script Package

If you import a script package that has multiple scripts, you can choose which scripts to import. Scripts get imported with the folder hierarchy that they were saved in.

➤ **To import scenario scripts:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. Choose **Script > Import Script Package** or click Import Scripts. The Choose Script File dialog box opens.
3. Select the script file that you want to import.
4. Click Open. The Import dialog box opens (Figure 266). It lists the scripts saved in the script file.

**Figure 266. Import dialog box**




5. Select the scripts that you want to import.
6. Click Import.

## 31.8. Copying a Script

If you want to create a new script that is similar to an existing one, you can copy an existing script and then edit it for its new purpose.

➤ **To copy a script:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. Select the script that you want to copy.
3. Choose **Script > Duplicate**. The New Script dialog box opens. If you copied a scenario script, the duplicate script is assigned a new script ID. If you copied a system script, the script ID is not changed. You will have to change the script ID manually.

---

If you do not change the script ID for a copied system script, the system script gets removed from the list of scripts for this scenario and the new script is added as a scenario script. This lets you experiment with changes to a system script without actually changing it. The original system script will still be available to other scenarios.

---

4. Edit the script.
5. Click Duplicate. The script is added to the list.

## 31.9. Deleting a Script

If you delete a script that is assigned to a simulation object in a scenario, a task assignment, whether as an independent task or as part of a plan, will fail. If a scripted task is used as a subtask in another scripted task, that scripted task will fail. Scripted sets also fail. VR-Forces does not warn you if either of these cases exist. It is your responsibility to consider the effects of deleting a script.

➤ **To delete a script:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. Select the script that you want to delete.
3. Choose **Script > Delete Script**.

## 31.10. Creating a System Script

To create a system script, you create a scenario script and then save it as a system script. System scripts are saved in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/scripts*. A system script has two files. The metadata is saved in a file ending with the extension *.xml*. The code is saved in a file with the extension *.lua*.

➤ **To save a scenario script as a system script:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. Select the script that you want to save as a system script.
3. Choose **Script > Promote to System Script**. You are prompted to confirm the change.
4. Click Yes.

### 31.10.1 Including System Scripts on the Task and Set Menus

Most of the system scripted tasks and sets included with VR-Forces are listed on the Task and Set menus. The scripts in the Examples folder and a few others are not listed. You can specify whether or not particular scripted tasks or sets are listed. You might want to do this to reduce clutter on the menus. Or you might want to limit the tasks available to players in a particular deployment of VR-Forces.

A system script's inclusion on a menu is controlled by the following settings:

- The Show Task on Task Menu (or Show Set on Set Menu) check box on the New Script and Edit Script dialog boxes.
- The check box next to the script's entry on the Scripts dialog box (Figure 267).
- Its membership in a behavior set. The effect of behavior sets on script availability is additive to the configuration discussed in this section. For details about using behavior sets, please see "25.4. Using Behavior Sets to Manage Scripts" on page 557.
- Crowd tasks file names must be included in the list of script IDs in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/*

*movement/pedestrian-crowd-movement.sysdef*. The script files must be saved in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/scripts*.

**Figure 267. Show script on menu check box**

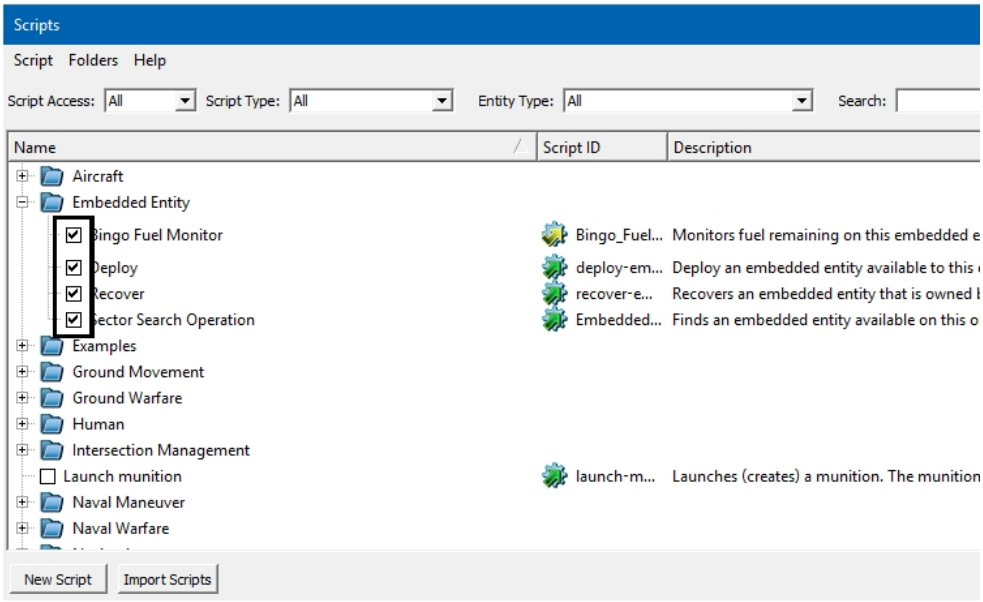



Table 31 shows when a scripted task is listed on a menu based on the configuration check boxes selected.

**Table 31. System scripted task inclusion on Task menu**

| Show Script on Menu check box | System script list check box | Task included on menu |
|---|---|---|
| ☑ | ☑ | Yes |
| ☑ | ☐ | No |
| ☐ | ☑ | Yes, for this scenario. |
| ☐ | ☐ | No |

➤ **To specify the availability of a system script on a menu:**

1. Choose **Simulation>Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252 on page 718).
2. In the list of system scripts, select the script whose availability you want to change. Use Table 31 to determine which check box configuration you need for your desired menu status.
3. Choose **Script>Edit Script Meta Data**. The System Script Editing prompt opens. (If you have disabled this prompt, the Edit Script dialog box opens. Skip to step 5.)
4. In the System Script Editing prompt, click Yes. The Edit Script dialog box opens.

5. Select or clear the Show Task on Task Menu check box (or the equivalent for sets).
6. Click Update.
7. In the list of scripts, select the check box next to the system script you are editing to make it available. Clear the check box to make it unavailable.
8. If this is for a crowd task, edit *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/movement/pedestrian-crowd-movement.sysdef* and add the task to the **script-ids** list.

## 31.11. Specifying a Script Editor

VR-Forces installs SciTE as the default script editor for scripted tasks. However, you can use any text editor that you want.

➤ **To specify the editor to use for scripts:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Script Settings page (Figure 258 on page 734).
3. Click the Browse button ( ) next to the Script Editor box. The Choose Script Editor dialog box opens.
4. Select the application that you want to use as the editor.
5. Click Open.

---

You can also open the Script Settings page from the Scripts menu in the Scripts dialog box.

---

## 31.12. Editing Lua Files

To edit the code for scenario scripts you need to work through the Script GUI because the scripts are embedded in the scenario scripts file rather than being saved as individual Lua files. System scripts are saved as Lua files, but even in this case it is better to edit them in the context of the entire script process rather than by editing the Lua file. However, VR-Forces includes some libraries of Lua functions that are independent of any of the scripts. They are available to be included in your scripts. If you want to edit the functions in these libraries or add to them, you need to edit the individual Lua files. The function libraries are in *./userData/scripts*. You can open them in any editor, or access them through the Scripts dialog box.

➤ **To edit a Lua file from the Scripts window:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts window opens (Figure 252).
2. Choose **Script > Edit External Script**. A file chooser dialog box opens.
3. Select the script that you want to edit. The file opens in a text editor.

4. Edit the file.
5. Save the file.

# 32. Writing Scripts

This chapter explains how to write Lua scripts for scripted tasks and sets.


32.1. The VR-Forces Lua Interface ..... 756
32.1.1 Lua Classes ..... 756
32.1.2 Lua Modules ..... 758
32.2. Script Loading and Execution ..... 759
32.2.1 Script Entry Points ..... 759
32.2.2 The Script Execution Sequence ..... 761
32.2.3 Limitations for Checkpointing Scripts ..... 764
32.2.4 Editing Scripts While a Scenario is Running ..... 766
32.3. Tasks and Subtasks ..... 766
32.3.1 Monitoring the Status of Tasks and Subtasks ..... 767
32.3.2 Stopping Tasks ..... 768
32.3.3 Task Parameters ..... 768
32.4. Geometry ..... 772
32.4.1 Location3D ..... 772
32.4.2 Vector3D ..... 772
32.4.3 VectorOffset3D ..... 774
32.4.4 VectorGeoc3D ..... 774
32.5. Coding Messages for Translation ..... 775
32.6. Error Detection ..... 775
32.7. Interactive Scripts ..... 777
32.8. A Basic Scripted Task ..... 777
32.8.1 Create and Move to Waypoint Metadata ..... 778
32.8.2 The Create and Move to Waypoint Lua Script ..... 780
32.9. A Simple Scripted Set ..... 781
32.10. A Simple Reactive Task ..... 782
32.11. Background Processes ..... 783

# 32.1. The VR-Forces Lua Interface

The VR-Forces Lua interface provides predefined elements that you can use to create scripts. These elements include object classes that represent the simulation, simulation objects, and geometric objects, plus Lua modules that provide tools for common tasks.

The classes and functions in the Lua interface are documented in the VR-Forces Lua API Documentation. This is a set of HTML files similar to the VR-Forces Toolkit documentation. It is accessible from the Windows Start menu or in *./doc/luadoc/index.html*.

## 32.1.1 Lua Classes

The Lua interface defines classes for common objects and functions. The classes in the interface are not fully featured classes as in the C++ language, but they do abstract the representation of information associated with an object and collect a set of methods related to the object. In Lua, to call a method **fn** on object **obj**, write:

```
obj:fn()
```

Several of the classes defined in the interface do not have constructors, because their objects are pre-defined or created only as return values to other functions. The classes and pre-defined objects in the interface are as follows:

- *ComponentSystem*. A component system is a capability that is assigned to a simulation object in the Simulation Object Editor. Systems represent movement and damage capabilities, and represent individual weapons and sensors. In scripts, system objects are obtained from the ownship simulation object (“this”) with a call to getSystem(), passing the name of the system (as used in the Simulation Object Editor) as an argument. The script can then access various attributes of the system through getAttribute calls.
- *FeatureSet*. This class represents a set of features obtained from a query to the terrain database. A *FeatureSet* is created with a *vrf* query function. *FeatureSet* methods allow a script to examine the features to determine their attribute values, vertex locations, and so on.
- *Location3D*, *Vector3D*, *VectorGeoc3D*, *VectorOffset3D*. These classes represent geometric objects. For more information, please see "32.4. Geometry" on page 772.
- *ScriptAnimationModel*. *ScriptAnimationModel* refers to an animation model that can be used by a scripted task to animate an entity's movement. This class is serialized to the simulation and might contain movement data if supplied by the developer.
- *SensorGimbal*. *SensorGimbal* is a class of Lua object that represents a sensor that rotates on a gimbal.
- *SimObject*. *SimObject* refers to a single object in the simulation. It may be an entity, waypoint, route, or any other simulation object. These objects may be VR-Forces simulated objects, or remote objects received over DIS or HLA by VR-

Forces. There is no constructor for SimObjects in the interface, but there are *vrf* functions that create objects, that get objects by name, that get nearby objects, and so on. *SimObject* methods are provided for getting information about the object such as location, force type, and embarkation status.

- *SwingingArtPart*. *SwingingArtPart* is a class of Lua object that represents a rotating articulated part.
- *TranslatableArtPart*. *TranslatableArtPart* is a class of Lua object that represents a translating articulated part.
- *TranslatableStream*. *TranslatableStream* is a text stream class that can be translated by VR-Forces for display in the GUI as text that is translated to the current language the user is displaying (as long as those translations exist.)
- *this*. *this* is an object of class *SimObject* that is defined for all Lua scripts. It represents the simulation object running the script, also known as "ownship". It is not possible to construct a *this* object in a script. In addition to being able to use all of the *SimObject* methods, a Lua script can change the location and heading of *this*, manipulate its resources, and examine the contacts detected by the simulation object's sensors.
- *vrf*. *vrf* is defined as a global object for all Lua scripts. It is an instance of a class that represents the Lua interface; other instances cannot be created in a script. The *vrf* object provides functions that control and access information in the VR-Forces simulation.

---

In Lua, variables assigned to objects actually just hold a reference to an object, so that if one variable is assigned to another they will both hold a reference to the same object. In the following example, **firstObj** and **secondObj** refer to the same object.

```
firstObj = getObjectByName("APC 1")
secondObj = firstObj
```

In most cases this is what a Lua programmer wants. However, for the geometric objects, a Lua programmer may sometimes want to make a copy of an object. A simple assignment does not make a copy in Lua, so the geometric objects have **makeCopy()** methods to provide copies.

---

### Reserved Words

Table 32 lists reserved words (in addition to those reserved by Lua), which should not be used except for their intended purpose.

**Table 32. Reserved words**

| Name | Module | Function |
|---|---|---|
| vrf | vrf | Module singleton |
| this | SimObject | Ownship name |

**Table 32. Reserved words (continued)**

| Name | Module | Function |
|---|---|---|
| ScriptVrfObject | SimObject | Class name |
| Location3D | Location3D | Class name |
| Vector3D | Vector3D | Class name |
| VectorGeoc3D | VectorGeoc3D | Class name |
| VectorOffset3D | VectorOffset3D | Class name |
| ScriptFeatureSet | FeatureSet | Class name |
| ScriptAnimationModel | ScriptAnimationModel | Global function |
| vrfprint | vrfutil | Global function |
| printDebug | vrfutil | Global function |
| printVerbose | vrfutil | Global function |
| printInfo | vrfutil | Global function |
| printWarn | vrfutil | Global function |
| printError | vrfutil | Global function |
| EntityType | vrfutil | Global table of functions |
| bhaveLoaded | vrfutil | Global function |
| new | fsm | Function name |

### 32.1.2 Lua Modules

The Lua interface includes Lua modules for use in Lua scripts. A module **stuff** can be accessed in a Lua script by writing

```
require "stuff"
```

The modules available in the interface are as follows:

- *vrfutil*. Technically, *vrfutil* is not a Lua module. (It is not defined with a module function.) It is just a set of global utility functions. The Lua script template that opens when a new script is created contains:

  ```
  require "vrfutil"
  ```

  so that these functions are available to the script by default.

- *fsm*. The *fsm* module defines a class that implements finite state machine logic. There is one function in this module, new(), which creates an *fsm* object.
- *exectool*. The *exectool* module is a package of functions that supports the use of a single Lua function to describe the control flow of a scripted task. To use this tool, the task logic is described in a function we call a scriptFunction. This function is written as if it will execute up to a subtask invocation, and then wait until that subtask is completed before continuing.

The *.lua* module files are located in *./userData/scripts*. You can add user-created modules to this directory and then import them into scripts with a **require** statement.

## 32.2. Script Loading and Execution

This section describes script entry point functions and the execution sequence for scripted tasks and sets. It also describes how VR-Forces checkpoints scripted tasks and executes them when a checkpointed scenario is run.

### 32.2.1 Script Entry Points

The Lua API includes functions that we call “entry points” to a scripted task. When you create a new script, they are included in the default script template. Unlike the Lua functions that you might write as part of a script, you do not have to call entry point functions from within the script. They are called by the simulation engine. (However, if an entry point function is not defined in a script, it does not get called.)

- init(). Use init() to set up the initial state of your scripted task’s environment. The init() function is the first function called when a scripted task is executed. It is called when a task is assigned to a simulation object, even if the scenario is paused. It is never called again for the life of the scripted task.
- tick(). The tick() function is the heart of every scripted task. It is called at every tick of the simulation engine once the simulation object has completed its initialization. Most of a scripted task's logic should be written into the tick() function as it is the only entry point function consistently called in the script.
- suspend(). The suspend() function gets executed when a reactive task is triggered for a simulation object and the reactive task cannot run concurrently with the current task. The typical behavior, as embodied in the scripted task template, is to stop all tasks and subtasks.
- resume(). The resume() function gets executed when a reactive task completes. The typical behavior is to reinitialize the suspended task.

As you can see from their descriptions, the suspend() and resume() functions do not exactly suspend and resume tasks as those terms are commonly understood. In most cases (this is task dependent), VR-Forces does not preserve the state of a simulation object’s tasks when they are suspended, it stops the tasks. Nor does it resume the previous task from the point at which it was suspended, it restarts the task from the current state of the simulation object. However, VR-Forces always saves the lua state of scripted tasks, so when a scripted task resumes, its variables may need to be reset in init() or checkInit().

- saveState(). If a script is running, the saveState() function is called just before a scenario is about to be saved. VR-Forces automatically saves the state of script execution. (For details, please see "32.2.3 Limitations for Checkpointing Scripts" on page 764.) This function lets you do any additional processing to save the state of your scripted task. Most scripts do not use this function.

- loadState(). If a script was running when a scenario was saved, the loadState() function is called just after a scenario is loaded or rewound. VR-Forces automatically restores the state of a scripted task that was running when a scenario was saved. This function lets you do any additional processing required to restore the state of the script. If your script uses the saveState() function, you probably want to include complementary processing in loadState(). Most scripts do not use this function.

  ---

  If your loadState() function assumes the presence of other simulation objects, you must take into account that other simulation objects might not have loaded yet when the function is called.

  ---

- shutdown(). The shutdown() function is called when the task is ending for any reason. You will not typically need to write any code in this function, however it is available if there is a case in which you want to do anything before the task ends.
- receiveObjectMessage(). The receiveObjectMessage() function is called when the simulation object executing this task receives an object message. The function provides some data to determine what type of object message it is and which simulation object the message came from.

  This function takes three arguments:

  - **messageType**. A text string identifying the message that matches the registered name of the object message type.
  - **message**. A table of parameters that is specific to the messageType.
  - **sender**. The simObject that sent the message.

  Refer to the sendObjectMessage() function in the Lua documentation for messageType-specific parameters.
- receiveTextMessage(). The receiveTextMessage() function is called when the simulation object executing this task receives a text message. The function provides some data to determine what the text message is and which simulation object the text message came from. This function takes two arguments, the message and the sender. The message is a text string and the sender is the simObject that sent the message.
- entityDestroyed(). The entityDestroyed() function is called once when the entity executing the script is destroyed.
- receiveInfluence(influencer, influenceName, influenceParams). The receiveInfluence() function is called in aggregate-level scenarios when a simulation object receives an Influence interaction from another simulation object. Influence interactions represent different ways an object might affect another. These include engagement, jamming, providing supplies, improving engineering objects, or destroying engineering objects.

  The receiveInfluence() function has the following parameters:

- **influencer**. The simulation object that is performing this influence action.
- **influenceName**. The name of the influence being performed. It matches one of the subclasses of the Influence interaction FOM class.
- **influenceParameters**. A table of parameters of the influence. These parameters correspond to the parameters available to the Influence interaction FOM subclass, as specified by **influenceName**. Different subclasses have different parameters.

The following script entry points are only used in reactive tasks:

- check(). The check() function defines the condition under which the reactive task gets triggered. It keeps checking the condition until it becomes true, at which point it starts the reactive task.
- checkInit(). The checkInit() function initializes the reactive task when it is enabled. It sets the initial conditions for the check() function. checkInit() runs when a reactive task is first enabled and runs again after the reactive task completes so that it can begin checking the condition again.

## 32.2.2 The Script Execution Sequence

A Lua script has several distinct sections, including the entry points described in "32.2.1 Script Entry Points" on page 759 and the global commands in the script. When a scripted task is assigned to a simulation object, the following actions happen, even if the scenario is paused:

1. The script environment is initialized. This step defines the *vrf* and *this* objects and all of the class functions in the Lua API.
2. The script text is loaded. All Lua statements in the global scope are executed. Normally, the script defines (assigns initial values to) global variables here.
3. The **init()** function is called.

This sequence is followed whenever a scripted task is assigned, including the following situations:

- A scripted task is assigned while the scenario is running.
- A simulation object has a script assigned at the beginning of a scenario and the scenario is loaded or rewound.
- You modify the script or script metadata while the script is running.

If the simulation is running, after the **init()** function is called VR-Forces begins calling the **tick()** function at the period specified by the **setTickPeriod()** function (default: 0.5 seconds).

Suppose a script “test” contains the following code:

```
print("Global statements")
t = {}
function init()
   print("Init function")
   vrf:setTickPeriod(0.5)
```

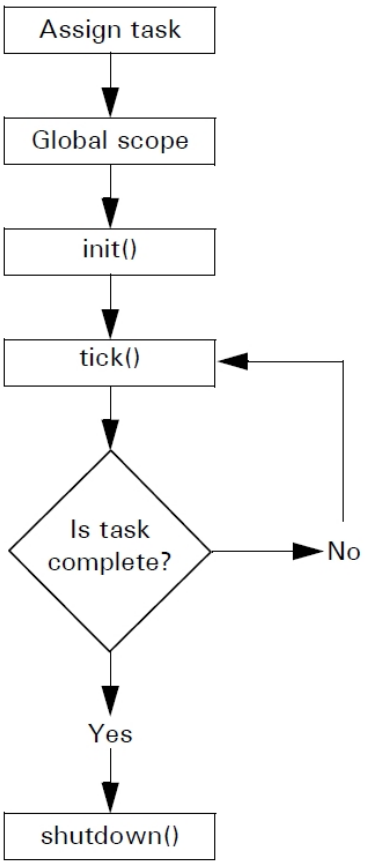
```
   t[1] = 0
end
function tick()
   table.insert(t, vrf:getExerciseTime())
   print("Tick ", #t)
end
```

If the script is assigned to a simulation object and then the scenario runs for a short time, the console output would be as follows:

```
Global statements
Init function
DtCgfDispatcher::controlScenario: run
Tick 2
Tick 3
Tick 4
DtCgfDispatcher::controlScenario: pause
```

Figure 268 illustrates the control flow for a scripted task.

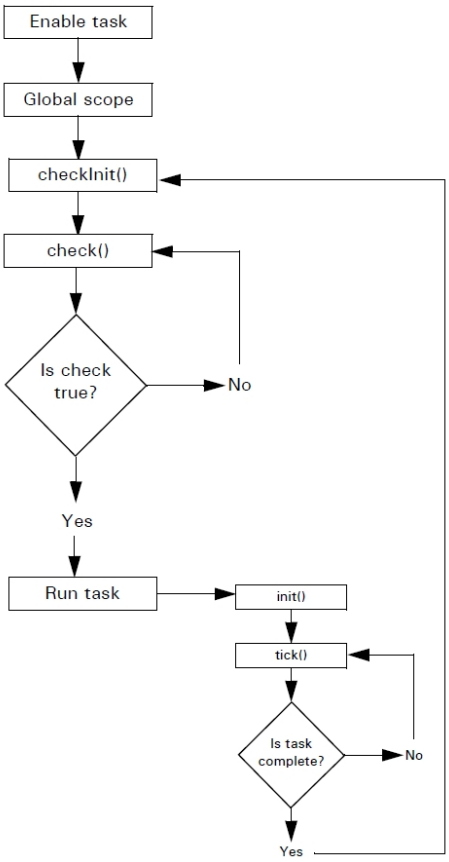
**Figure 268. Scripted task control flow**



### The Script Execution Sequence for Reactive Tasks

Figure 269 illustrates the script execution sequence for reactive tasks. It is distinguished from that for scripted tasks by the addition of the checking process.

**Figure 269. Reactive task control flow**




### The Script Execution Sequence for Saved Scenarios

When a scenario is saved (checkpointed), VR-Forces first runs **saveState()** and then saves the Lua state in the scenario file. (Checkpointing a scripted task has some limitations. For details, please see "32.2.3 Limitations for Checkpointing Scripts" on the next page. For general details about checkpointing, please see "7.3. Saving a Scenario" on page 230.) When a saved scenario is loaded, the following steps are taken to restore the scripted task:

1. The script environment is initialized. This step defines the *vrf* and *this* objects and all of the class functions in the Lua API.
2. The script text is loaded. All Lua statements in the global scope are executed. Global variables defined and initialized in this part of the script are re-initialized.
3. VR-Forces restores the values of global variables to the saved values. These values replace the initial values assigned in step 2.
4. The **loadState()** function is called.

The **init()** function is not run when a scenario is reloaded.

Assume that the “test” scripted task described in the previous section is saved at the point shown in the sample code (t = 4). When the scenario is run from the checkpoint, the console output will be as follows:

```
DtCgfDispatcher::controlScenario: run
Tick 5
Tick 6
DtCgfDispatcher::controlScenario: pause
```

### 32.2.3 Limitations for Checkpointing Scripts

When VR-Forces saves (or checkpoints) a scenario, it saves the following aspects of the Lua state in the checkpoint:

- The values of global variables that contain strings, numbers, and objects (of the classes listed in "32.1.1 Lua Classes" on page 756).
- Tables, but only table values that contain strings, numbers, objects, and tables. Tables cannot contain values that refer to the same table, either directly or indirectly through another table.

The following aspects of the Lua state do not get saved in a checkpoint:

- Variables containing functions or threads.
- Variables declared in the global scope with the keyword **local** preceding the declaration.
- Table entries that do not use numbers or strings as keys.

Lua scripts that contain elements that do not get saved can still be restored after a checkpoint if the global statements in the script reset the elements. For example, a variable containing a function is not saved in the scenario file, but if this variable is initialized in the global Lua statements, it is reset when those statements are loaded. However, if the value of this variable was changed during script execution (in the init () or tick() functions), then its value will not be restored correctly.

Tables that reference themselves in the table do not get saved properly.

To demonstrate how scripted tasks get saved, assume the following script:

```
print("Global statements")
 a = 0
 t = {foo = 0, bar = 1}
 f = function () print("hello") end
 function init()
    print("Init function")
    vrf:setTickPeriod(0.5)
    a = 100  -- change a
    t.foo= 10 -- change t.foo
    t.bar = nil -- remove t.bar
```

```
   f = function () print("world") end -- change f
end
function tick()
   print ("Tick. a = ",a, "t.foo = ", t.foo, "t.bar = ", t.bar)
   f()
   print()
end
```

The output the first time the scripted task runs is as follows:

```
Global statements
Init function
DtCgfDispatcher::controlScenario: run
Tick. a = 100     t.foo = 10      t.bar = nil
world
```

When the scenario is saved and then reloaded, and the simulation is run again, the following is printed:

```
DtCgfDispatcher::controlScenario: run
Tick. a = 100     t.foo = 10      t.bar = 1
hello
```

A comparison of the outputs reveals that variable **a** and table entry **t.foo** were restored to the correct values. However, table entry **t.bar** and function **f** were re-initialized in the global statements, but were not restored to the values they had when the scenario was saved.

### Saving the State of Global Variables

Global variables get saved when a scenario gets checkpointed in one of the following ways:

- If the checkpoint mode is AllGlobals, all global variables defined are saved.
- If the checkpoint mode is CheckpointStateOnly, the script only saves variables that are part of the checkpointState table. If you remove this value, it defaults to the behavior of saving all globals.

If you want to change the mode, call setCheckpointMode(AllGlobals) to save all globals or setCheckpointMode(CheckpointStateOnly) to save only those variables in the checkpointState table. They get reinitialized when a checkpointed scenario is loaded.

```
vrf:setCheckpointMode(CheckpointStateOnly)
```

The following code, from *vrfutil.lua*, defines some global values:

```
-- Global booleans to help define which checkpoint state to use
AllGlobals = false
CheckpointStateOnly = true
```

For more information about vrf:setCheckpointMode, please see the VR-Forces Lua documentation.

### 32.2.4 Editing Scripts While a Scenario is Running

You can add, remove, and edit scripts during scenario creation or while a scenario is running. If a script is not being used by any simulation objects, editing or deleting it has no effect on the scenario. If you change a script that is being executed by a simulation object, when you save the change the script may be stopped, restarted, or continue to execute depending on what has changed.

Table 33 lists the effect on scripts and scripted tasks running as subtasks if you edit the code or metadata:

**Table 33. Side effects of editing scripts**

| Change to script | Result |
|---|---|
| Change code or any metadata except the script ID. Entity type is still supported. | The script restarts. Changes to the Action Category take effect when the scenario restarts. |
| Entity types supported changes. | The script stops for simulation objects that no longer support it. |
| Script ID changes. | The script continues to execute. Any script that uses this scripted task as a subtask will fail until its code is updated to use the new script ID. |

If you changed the simulation object types that can use the script, then it is added to or removed from the menu for the appropriate simulation object types. (This change takes place immediately.)

## 32.3. Tasks and Subtasks

The primary way that a scripted task carries out actions is through starting subtasks for the simulation object running it or sending tasks to other simulation objects. All C++ tasks and other scripted tasks are available for sending as subtasks or tasks.

If a scripted task needs to give a task to the simulation object that is running it, it does so as a subtask. (The simulation object's current task is the scripted task itself, so any action that it needs to take is a subtask to the scripted task.) Subtasks are started using the **vrf:startSubtask()** function.

If a scripted task needs to give a task to a simulation object other than the one running it, it uses the **vrf:sendTask()** function.

A startSubtask() or sendTask() function specifies the task name and task parameters, if any. The name must be the name of one of the C++ tasks, as listed in the Task page of the Lua API Documentation, or the script ID of another scripted task.

The task parameters are passed as a Lua table, with parameter names as the indices and the parameter values as the values. The valid parameters for C++ tasks are listed in the Lua API documentation. For scripted tasks, the parameter names are the parameter names defined for that task. You can view them by opening a scripted task in the Edit Script dialog box. Any parameters that are not specified when starting the task use their default values.

The following example subtask gives a Move to Waypoint task to the simulation object running the scripted task:

```
vrf:startSubtask("move-to", {destination = "Waypoint 1"})
```

---

If a task does not have any parameters, startSubtask() must represent the parameters as {}. For example:

```
vrf:startSubtask("wait", {})
```

---

The following example task sends a Patrol Between Waypoints task to the simulation object named “someEntity”:

```
vrf:sendTask(someEntity, "patrol-two-points", {first_control_
point="Waypoint 1", second_control_point="Waypoint 2"})
```

If a task is started with an invalid name or invalid parameters, a runtime error will occur in the script.

Whenever a task or subtask is started, a task ID integer is returned. This task ID is used to monitor or stop the task.

---

If a task is started on a simulation object that cannot execute it, the task will enter the Complete (failed) state shortly after the start call is made. This may not happen until a subsequent tick of the scripted task.

---

### 32.3.1 Monitoring the Status of Tasks and Subtasks

Once a task is started, the scripted task that started it can monitor it using its task ID. A task can be in one of three states: Running, Complete, or Canceled, as follows:

- Running. The task was started, but has not completed or been canceled.
- Complete (success). The task has completed, and called endTask(true) to end itself.
- Complete (failure):
  - The task has ended itself by calling endTask(false).
  - The task failed to start because the simulation object was incapable of executing this task.
- Canceled:
  - The task was explicitly canceled using stopTask().
  - The task was replaced by a conflicting task.
  - The user issued a Skip Task.

---

The success or failure of task completion is defined by the task being executed, and may not be consistent between task types.

Subtasks are monitored with the functions:

- **isSubtaskComplete(taskID)**
- **subtaskResult(taskID)**
- **isSubtaskRunning(taskID)**
- **isSubtaskCanceled(taskID).**

Tasks are monitored with the functions:

- **isTaskComplete(taskID)**
- **taskResult(taskID)**
- **isTaskRunning(taskID)**
- **isTaskCanceled(taskID).**

### 32.3.2 Stopping Tasks

Any task or subtask that has been started from a scripted task can be stopped by that task before it has completed. This is done using **stopTask(taskID)** or **stopSubtask(taskID).**

### 32.3.3 Task Parameters

Task parameters are the parameters that are gathered from the user, or set by a parent task, when a task is started. They are passed into the new task when it starts.

A script gets the value of a parameter with the syntax **taskParameters.***parameterName*, as in the following example:

```
 waypoint = vrf:createWaypoint
({location=taskParameters.waypointLocation})
```

For scripted tasks, the task parameters are available in a Lua table named taskParameters available in the global scope. The table contains items named using the parameter names specified in the parameters section of the Scripted Task dialog box when the task was created. The types of these parameters depend on the parameter types selected by the user in this dialog box.

Table 34 lists the parameter types you can specify when you create a scripted task and the corresponding Lua types in the taskParameters table.

**Table 34. Task parameters and Lua types**

| Parameter Type | Lua Type |
|---|---|
| Active Sonar Mode | |
| Aggregate Formation | String. |
| Altitude Label | View only. No Lua type. |
| Altitude MSL | Number (meters). |

**Table 34. Task parameters and Lua types (continued)**

| Parameter Type | Lua Type |
|---|---|
| Altitude Rate Change | Double (meters/second). |
| Animated Movement | String. |
| Bomb Resource | String (resource name). |
| Boolean | Boolean. Must be true or false (lowercase). |
| Choice (Drop-Down List) | Number (Index of the option chosen). |
| Choice (Image Drop-Down List) | Number (Index of the option chosen). |
| Choice (Multiple Option Buttons) | Number (Index of the option chosen). |
| Choice (Single Option Button) | Number (Index of the option chosen). |
| Color | Color: rgba (name red, green, blue, alpha from 0 - 255). |
| Date/Time | Integer (seconds in UTC). |
| Depth MSL | Double (meters). |
| DI-Guy Animation | String. |
| DI-Guy Appearance | String. |
| DI-Guy Gesture | String (gesture name). |
| Direct Fire Weapon | String (weapon name). |
| Distance | Number (meters). |
| Embarkation Slot | Slot: <name>.slot, <name>.chooseAny (where slot is an integer and chooseAny is a boolean which means choose any other if that slot is not available.) |
| Embedded Entity | String (embedded entity name). |
| Emitter | Number (Index of the emitter system). |
| Entity Type | String (entity type as x:x:x:x:x:x:x). |

**Table 34. Task parameters and Lua types (continued)**

| Parameter Type | Lua Type |
|---|---|
| Entity Types | Table (list) of entity types. |
| Filename | String (pathname). |
| Simulation Object Type | String (DIS type enumeration, colon separated). |
| Force | String. |
| Heading | Number (radians). |
| Heading Label | View only. No Lua type. |
| Indirect Fire Weapon | String (name of weapon). |
| Integer | Number. |
| Integer Map | Table of key of string and value of integer. |
| Jammer Selector | Interger (jammer selected, like Radar Mode). |
| Jamming Mode | Integer (mode selected, like Radar Mode). |
| Loadout | String. |
| Location (with altitude) | Location3D. |
| Location (without altitude) | Location3D. |
| Munition Resource | String (resource name). |
| Naval Mine Resource | String (resource name). |
| New Tactical Graphic | A table pf Dt:pcatopm3D Lua objects. |
| Observer Mode | String. |
| Observer Saved View | A string that contains the XML ouptut of an observer view record. |
| Offset Location | VectorOffset3D. |
| Overlay Parent | String. |
| Radar Mode | Integer. |
| Radar Selector | Integer (radar selected, like Radar Mode). |

**Table 34. Task parameters and Lua types (continued)**

| Parameter Type | Lua Type |
|---|---|
| Range Label | View only. No Lua type. |
| Rate Label | View only. No Lua type. |
| Real | Number. |
| Real Map | Map of key/value of key of string and value of double. |
| Resource | String (resource name). |
| Separator | Not applicable. |
| Simulation Object (Single) | SimObject. |
| Simulation Objects (Multiple) | Table of SimObjects. |
| Speed | Number (meters / second). |
| Sphere | Sphere: variable.center (Location3D), variable.radius (radius in meters). |
| String | String. |
| String Map | Map of key/value of key of string and value of string. |
| Time | Number (seconds). |
| Topographic Orientation | A Vector3D with bearing and inclination. Does not include roll. |
| Turn Rate | Number (radians / second). |
| Turn Rate Label | View only. No Lua type. |
| Visual Meta Data | String Map that contains key/value pairs of the marking and the value for the marking. |
| Weapon | String. |

### Getting the Task Parameters for a Script

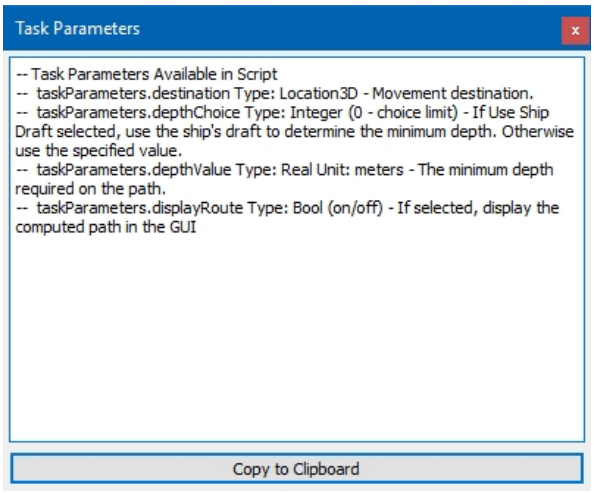
You can quickly get a list of the parameters available in a scripted task or set, their type, and a description, if one was created. You can copy the list to the clipboard so that you can paste it into your script.

➤ **To get a list of the task parameters in a script:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts dialog box opens.
2. Select the script whose parameters you want.
3. Choose **Script > Edit Script Meta Data**. If this is a system script, you might be prompted to continue. If so, click Yes. The Edit Script dialog box opens.

4. Click the taskParameters button ( ). A window opens that lists the parameters in the script.

**Figure 270. Task parameters list**




5. Optionally, click Copy to Clipboard.

## 32.4. Geometry

The Lua interface includes classes representing geometric objects. The classes represent locations and vectors in three dimensional space. Different classes are defined for vectors in different contexts so that functions that manipulate them know what their context is and can convert between contexts automatically. Therefore, a script does not have to, for example, create rotation matrices to perform coordinate transformations between vectors that are in an entity-body context and vectors that are in a world context.

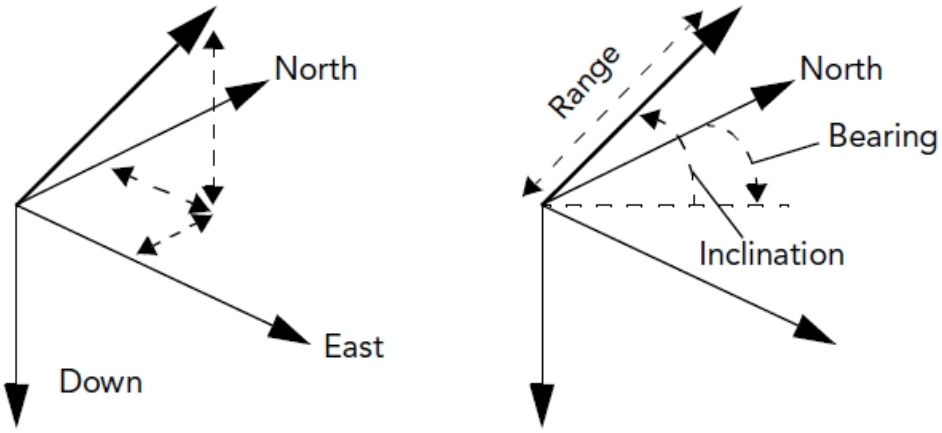
### 32.4.1 *Location3D*

A *Location3D* represents a point in three-dimensional (3D) space. Scripts can access the three components of the location as latitude, longitude, and altitude. There is no other access to components in any other coordinate system. Methods are available to construct a *Location3D*, to create a vector from the difference between two locations, and to generate a new point by adding a vector to a location.

### 32.4.2 *Vector3D*

A *Vector3D* is a direction in a north-east-down coordinate system. Scripts can access these three components of a *Vector3D*, or access bearing-inclination-range (Figure 271). This is the type of vector that scripts will use most often to find directions between locations, to create new locations relative to other locations, and so on.

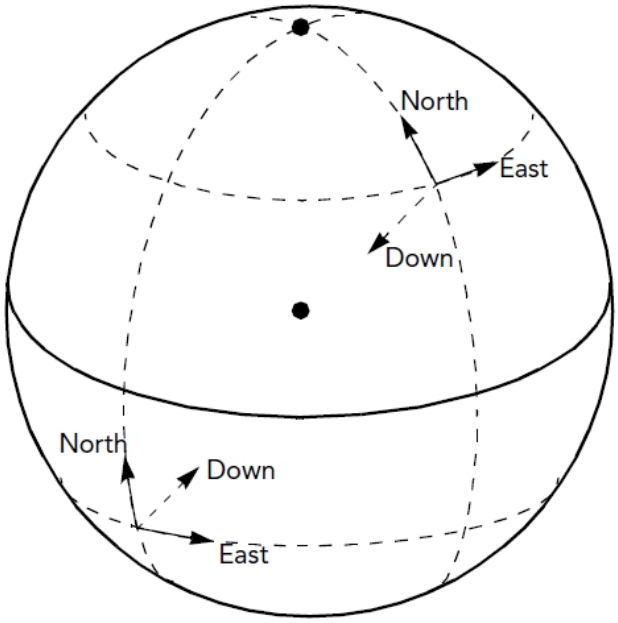
**Figure 271. Vector3D: North-East-Down, or Bearing-Inclination-Range**




When viewed from the perspective of a 3D Cartesian coordinate system that is fixed to the earth, there is no single north-east-down coordinate system. This is because “north” and “east” directions vary depending on where the observer is located on the earth. The *`Vector3D`* is therefore similar to a vector in topographic coordinates. At higher latitudes, “north” for two different simulation objects may not be the same direction (for example, two planes near the north pole, but at different longitudes, that are both flying “north,” are not on parallel courses).

Figure 272 shows two north-east-down coordinate systems with origins at different locations on the earth. The coordinate systems have different orientations with respect to a coordinate system fixed to the earth.

**Figure 272. Coordinate systems with different origins**



A *Vector3D* is not strictly a vector, in that it is not a straight line in a Cartesian coordinate system fixed to the earth. Just as the direction "east" changes (viewed in the Cartesian coordinate system) to follow the curvature of the earth, so does a *Vector3D*. This definition is different from topographic coordinates, which are Cartesian coordinates fixed to a point on the surface of the earth. Implications of this definition include the following:

- The heading of a *Vector3D* from one location to another is the heading of the shortest route around the earth (the great circle route) between the locations. The length is the great circle distance.
- The inclination of a *Vector3D* between two locations with the same altitude is 0.0, even when one location is over the horizon from the other.
- A *Vector3D* with length equal to the circumference of the earth, and inclination 0.0, when added to a location on the surface of the earth will produce a location coincident with the first location.

### 32.4.3 *VectorOffset3D*

A *VectorOffset3D* is a set of three values that define an offset from some reference direction defined by a *Vector3D*. The three values represent *right-forward-up*, where:

- *forward* is in the same direction as the reference.
- *right* is to the right in a horizontal plane. Horizontal means the plane defined by an inclination of zero; this definition implies that the "roll" component of the reference direction is assumed to be zero.
- *up* is perpendicular to *forward* and *right*, that is, *right* X *forward*.

A *VectorOffset3D* is appropriate to use, for example, to define the offsets of simulation object formation positions from a central location. Actual formation positions could be generated by transforming the offsets to *Vector3Ds* using the direction vector of the simulation object, and then adding the *Vector3Ds* to the simulation object location.

### 32.4.4 *VectorGeoc3D*

A *VectorGeoc3D* is a vector in a Cartesian coordinate system fixed to the earth (geocentric coordinates). The actual coordinate meanings and values are not accessible to the script, because they are considered to be abstract. A *VectorGeoc3D* can be generated only by taking the difference of two locations, or by transforming a *Vector3D* at a particular location.

A *VectorGeoc3D* between two locations is the line-of-sight vector between the locations. Therefore:

- A *VectorGeoc3D* between two points on opposite sides of the earth, at the same altitude, will go through the earth. (A *Vector3D*, by contrast, will go around the earth parallel to the surface.)

- The angle between two *VectorGeoc3D* vectors corresponding to north for two simulation objects near the north pole will be the difference in their longitudes. (The angle between their *Vector3Ds* for north, by contrast, will be zero.)

The Lua interface does not have any simulation functions that require *VectorGeoc3Ds*. However, they may be manipulated to compute angles and so forth.

## 32.5. Coding Messages for Translation

VR-Forces has a utility, translationFileCreate, that can extract the user-visible text in a script dialog box and make it available for translation. (For details, please see "2.5. Localizing the Graphical User Interface" on page 101.) If a script contains messages such as printWarn, printInfo, and so on, you can code these messages so that they are also extracted to the translation file.

To code messages for translation, use the following syntax:

```
printWarn(vrf:trUtf8("Text message."))
```

You can include variable data in the message, as follows:

```
printWarn(vrf:trUtf8("Some text %1. Some more text %2):arg
(variable1):arg(variable2))
```

where an argument can be a string or number.

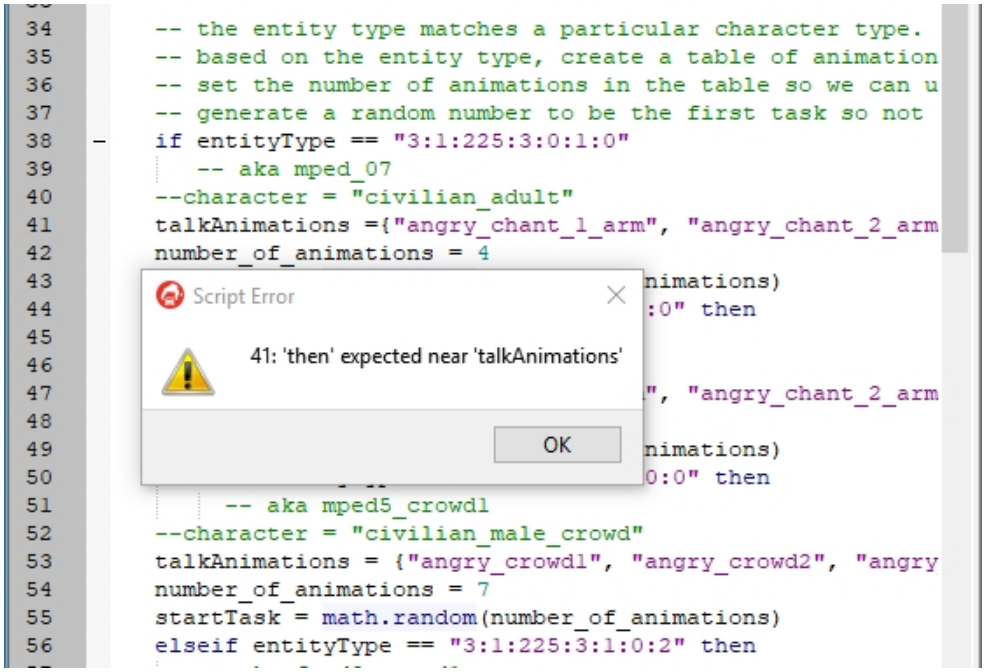
For more information about coding for translation, please see the !HowToPrint page in the Lua documentation (*./doc/luadoc/index.html*).

## 32.6. Error Detection

The VR-Forces Lua implementation can detect syntax errors and runtime errors.

When you save a script, it is checked for syntax errors. If an error is found, it is reported in an error message. In Figure 273, the **if** statement in line 38 is missing the **then** keyword.

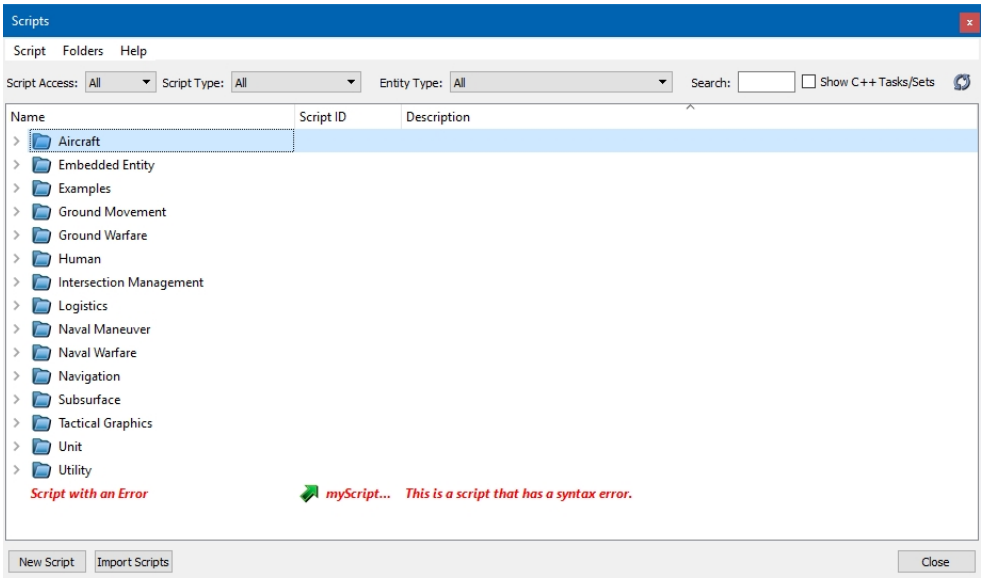
**Figure 273. Lua syntax error**




Detection of a syntax error does not prevent the script from being saved. If you do not fix the error and try to use the script, the back-end generates an error.

When you run a script, the back-end can detect errors due to incorrect use of user functions and the Lua API functions, such as calling an object that does not exist, or trying to access feature data before it is paged in. When a runtime error is detected, the back-end generates an error message. When the back-end generates an error, the script that caused the error is displayed in bold, red type in the Scripts dialog box (Figure 274). Therefore, you may want to keep the dialog box open while you are testing new or edited scripts.

**Figure 274. Lua error message**




➤ **To view an error message:**

1. In the Scripts dialog box, select the script that has generated an error.
2. Choose **Script > View Script Error**. An error message is displayed.

Script errors are also sent to the console in the Information dialog box.

## 32.7. Interactive Scripts

You can write scripts that request input from the VR-Forces user. Script questions are sent to the simulation object's object console and to the Object Console Summary Panel. Users can answer questions from the Object Console Summary Panel.

To create interactivity in a script, use the vrf:askUserQuestion() Lua function. When a script sends a question to the console, the Answer Questions button becomes active. When the user clicks the button, a set of choices is displayed. The choices can be presented as buttons, as option buttons, or as a drop-down list.

The script can do whatever it wants with the user input.

## 32.8. A Basic Scripted Task

VR-Forces includes many scripted tasks, all of which can serve as examples of how to write one. The Create and Move to Waypoint scripted task is a basic example that shows you how to:

- Set up metadata.
- Include the VRF Utilities module.

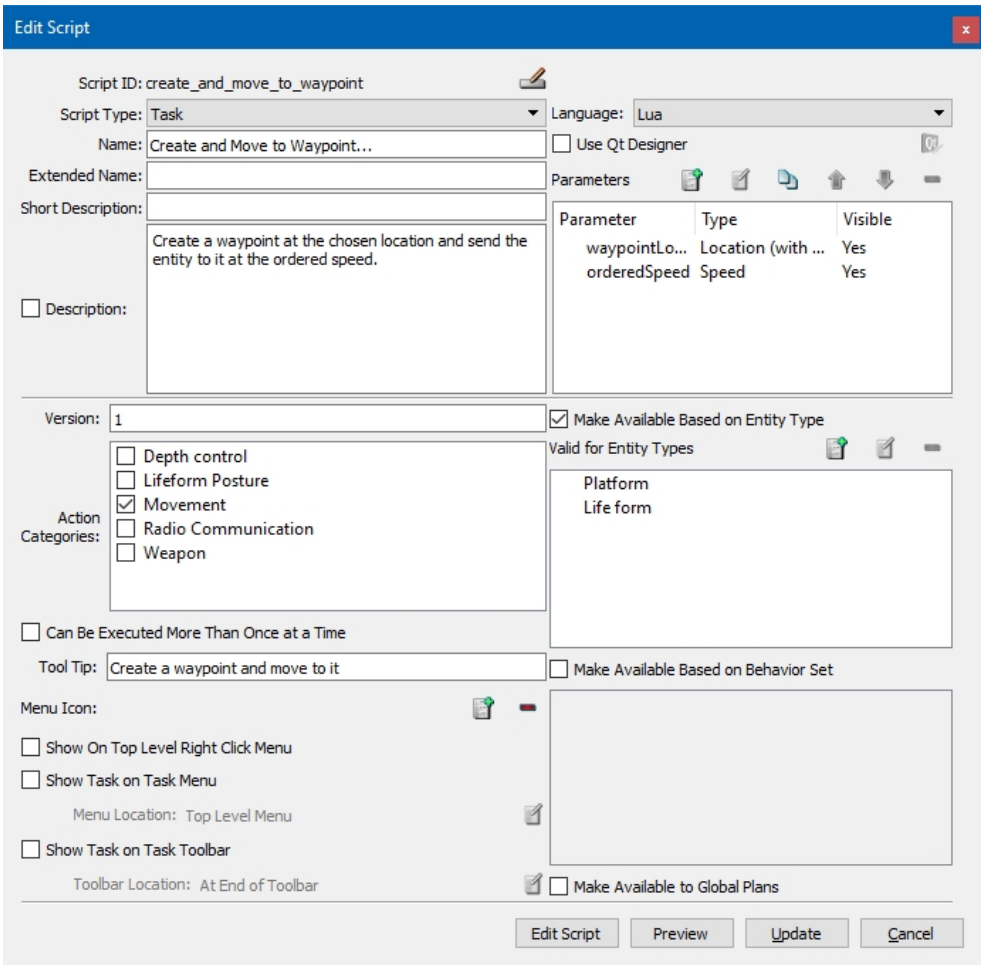
- Initialize a subtask ID.
- Use the init() function.
- Create a waypoint using input from the task's dialog box.
- Send a set data request to a simulation object, using input from the task's dialog box.
- Use the tick() function.
- Send a subtask and get the subtask ID.
- Check for completion of the task.
- Stop the task.

The Lua code is comprehensively commented. This section supplements the comments.

## 32.8.1 Create and Move to Waypoint Metadata

Figure 275 shows the metadata for the Create and Move to Waypoint scripted task.

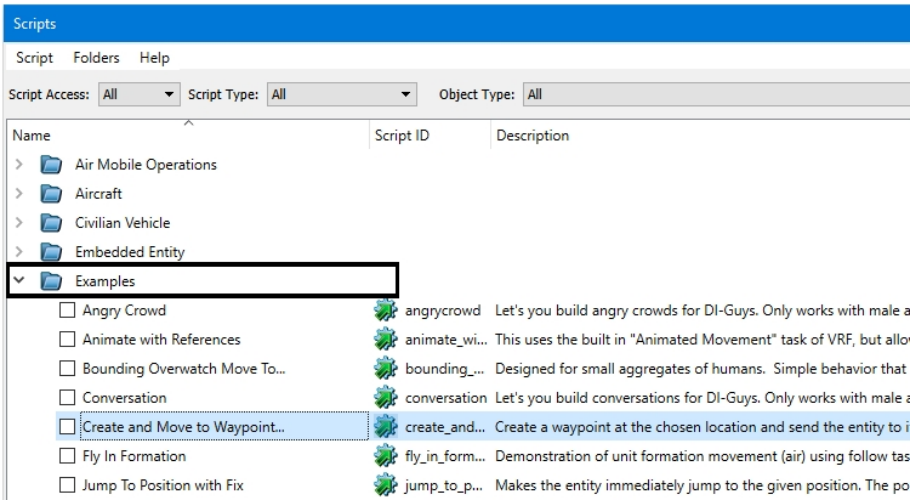
**Figure 275. Create and Move to Waypoint script**



➤ **To view the metadata:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Scripts**. The Scripts dialog box opens.
2. Expand the Examples folder (Figure 276).

**Figure 276. Scripts dialog box**




3. Select Create and Move to Waypoint.
4. Choose **Script > Edit Script Meta Data** or double-click the script name. The Edit Script dialog box opens (Figure 275).

Note how the Name column of the Create and Move to Waypoint entry in the Scripts dialog box matches the Menu Text in the Edit Script dialog box. The Script ID and Description fields are also drawn from the scripted tasks metadata.

Now let's look at the parameters. This scripted task has two parameters, waypointLocation and orderedSpeed. To see the definition of a parameter, select it and click the Edit button ( ). Figure 277 shows the dialog boxes that specify the parameters.

**Figure 277. Parameter definitions**

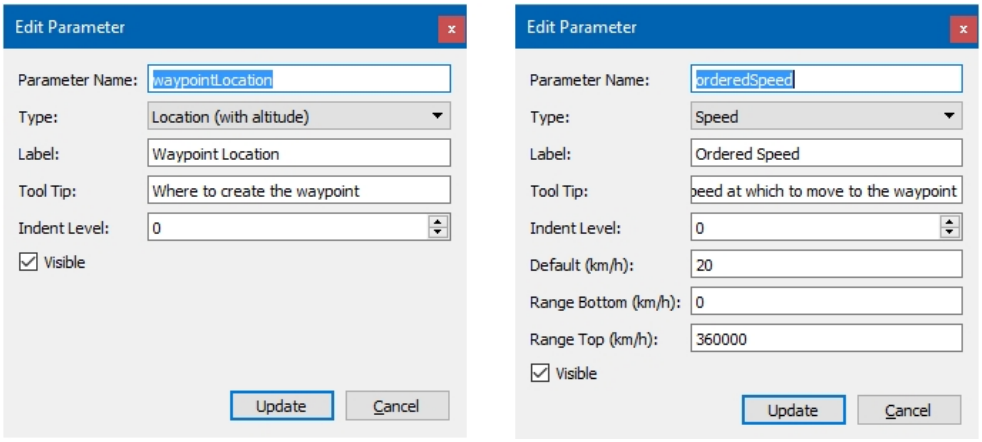
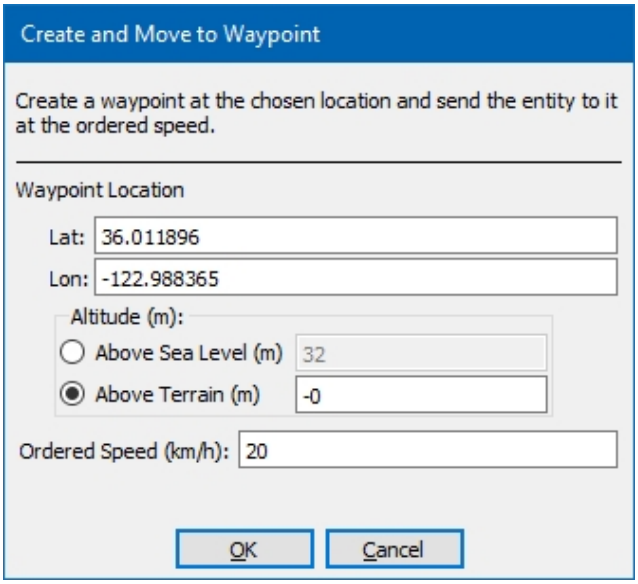


Figure 278 shows the dialog box that is displayed when you assign a simulation object this task. Note that the description of the task on the dialog box matches the description in the metadata. The parameter labels in the dialog box match the labels specified for the two parameters. The labels are not the same thing as the parameter name. The parameter name is the name used in the Lua script for this scripted task.

**Figure 278. Create and Move to Waypoint dialog box**




When this scripted task is assigned to a simulation object, the user will specify the waypoint and the ordered speed. Then the scripted task executes. Now we will look at the Lua script to see what happens.

## 32.8.2 The Create and Move to Waypoint Lua Script

The entire Lua script for this scripted task (without comments) is as follows:

```
1  require "vrfutil"
2  moveToWaypointSubtaskId = -1
3  function init()
4      vrf:setTickPeriod(0.5)
5
6      waypoint =          vrf:createWaypoint
   ({location=taskParameters.waypointLocation,
7          force=this:getForceType()})
8
9      vrf:sendSetData(this, "set-speed",
10         {speed=taskParameters.orderedSpeed})
11 end
12 function tick()
13     if moveToWaypointSubtaskId == -1 then
14         moveToWaypointSubtaskId = vrf:startSubtask("move-to",
15             {control_point=waypoint})
```

```
16      end
17      if vrf:isSubtaskComplete(moveToWaypointSubtaskId) then
18           vrf:endTask(true)
19      end
20  end
21  function shutdown()
22      vrf:deleteObject(waypoint)
23  end
```

The comments in the script describe the control flow. The essence is that using the input from the task dialog box, the waypoint gets created and the speed gets set in init() (line 3). The first time the task is ticked, it sends the Move to Waypoint subtask. Thereafter, each time the task is ticked (line 12), it checks to see if the subtask is complete (line 13). When the subtask is complete (line 17), the task is ended and the waypoint is removed.

The functions in this script are all in the *vrf* class, which is described in "32.1.1 Lua Classes" on page 756. The createWaypoint() function (line 6) takes its location from the waypointLocation parameter that was defined in the scripted task metadata and whose value was provided in the Create and Move to Waypoint dialog box when the task was assigned. Similarly, the ordered speed is set with the sendSetData() function (line 9) and the value is taken from the orderedSpeed parameter for the task. The script gets the parameter values with the **taskParameters.***parameter* syntax.

This script uses three of the entry point functions – init(), tick(), and shutdown(). If you were to checkpoint the scenario while the script was executing, the standard save actions would take place, but no script-specific actions would be taken, because there is no saveState() function in the script. Similarly, no special action would be taken when the scenario was loaded again because loadState() is not used.

For details about the parameters and return values of the functions, please see the VR-Forces Lua API documentation. Similarly, the tasks and set data requests that you can assign with the startSubtask() and sendSetData() functions are described on the Task and Set pages of the Lua API documentation. You should review the lists of functions to see what you can do in a scripted task.

## 32.9. A Simple Scripted Set

This example script shows how to create a scripted set. It takes two input values from a dialog box using setParameters. Then it uses the sendSetData() function to set the values for the entity. It needs an endSet() function to finish the process.

```
require "vrfutil"
function init()
   vrf:setTickWhilePaused(true)
   vrf:setTickPeriod(0.5)

end
function tick()
   vrf:sendSetData(this, "set-speed", {speed=setParameters.setSpeed})
   vrf:sendSetData(this, "set-force", {force=setParameters.setForce})
   vrf:endSet()
```

```
end
```

The following scripted task does exactly the same thing as the scripted set. It sets the speed and force of the selected simulation object. The difference is that since this is a scripted task, it interrupts the task that the simulation object is executing. Try these two scripts to see the difference.

```
require "vrfutil"
function init()
   vrf:setTickWhilePaused(true)
   vrf:setTickPeriod(0.5)

end
function tick()
   vrf:sendSetData(this, "set-speed", {speed=taskParameters.setSpeed})
   vrf:sendSetData(this, "set-force", {force=taskParameters.setForce})
   vrf:endTask()
end
```

---

As you can see there is nothing in the scripts that identifies them as a scripted task or scripted set other than the endTask() and endSet() functions. VR-Forces determines the type of script from the myScriptType value in the metadata. Scripted task types are defined in *./include/vrfutil/scriptedTaskMetaData.h*.

---

## 32.10. A Simple Reactive Task

The difference between a scripted task and a reactive task is the use of the check() and checkInit() functions in the reactive task. The check() function tests a condition at whatever tick rate you specify. If the condition returns true, the task runs.

The simple reactive task in this section monitors the speed of a simulation object. When it exceeds 15 meters per second, the simulation object is destroyed. The script works as follows:

1. The checkInit() function sets the tick rate to 1.0 second.
2. In check(), VR-Forces gets the speed of the simulation object and prints it to the console.
3. It tests to see if the speed is greater than 15 meters per second. If the condition is met, the function returns true.
4. If the function returns true, the script executes init() and begins to tick().
5. In the tick() function, the simulation object is destroyed and the task is complete. Note that in the executeSetData() function, set-destroy does not have parameters, but the command must include empty braces.

```
function checkInit()
    vrf:setTickPeriod(1.0)
end
```

```
function check()
    currentSpeed = this:getSpeed()
    print("speed is:", currentSpeed)
    if currentSpeed > 15 then
        return true
    end

    return false
end

function init()
    vrf:setTickPeriod(0.5)
end

function tick()
    vrf:executeSetData("set-destroy", {})
    vrf:endTask(true)
end
```

## 32.11. Background Processes

Background processes are scripts that run continuously in the background. When you create a background process, you specify which simulation object types it is valid for. Thereafter, whenever you create those simulation object types the background process initializes as soon as the simulation object is created. The supported simulation object type can be as general or as specific as you want it to be, based on the entity type enumeration that you specify.

Background processes are used for simulation object actions that happen continuously in a scenario, such as consuming or receiving supplies, calculating the simulation object's footprint, and automatically attacking opposing forces.

Background processes have one important restriction - they cannot issue tasks to simulation objects or stop their tasks.

There is no indication in the GUI that a background process is running. The only way to know which background processes are available and which simulation objects they might be affecting is to examine them in the Scripts dialog box.

The following code is a very simple background process that checks a simulation object's speed every five seconds. If the speed exceeds three meters/second, it prints a message to the console. The script's metadata specifies that it applies to lifeforms. Therefore, this background process will run for each lifeform entity in the scenario.

```
require "vrfutil"
function init()
   vrf:setTickPeriod(5.0)
end

function tick()
```

```
    currentSpeed = this:getSpeed()
    if currentSpeed > 3 then
        print("Speed is:", currentSpeed, ". Going too fast.")
    else
        print ("Speed is OK."
    end
end
```

# 33. Using Qt Designer for Script Dialog Boxes

You can let VR-Forces create dialog boxes for scripted tasks and sets using default layout rules or you can design the dialog boxes yourself using Qt Designer.


33.1. Introduction to Using Qt Designer for Scripts ..... 786
33.2. Selecting Qt Designer for Dialog Box Layout ..... 786
33.3. Adding Parameters When Using Qt Designer ..... 786
33.3.1 Specifying Choices for the Choice Parameters in Qt Designer ..... 789
33.3.2 Specifying Categories for a Simulation Object in Qt Designer ..... 790
33.4. Adding Design Elements ..... 791

## 33.1. Introduction to Using Qt Designer for Scripts

When you create a scripted task or set that requires input from a user, VR-Forces can automatically build a dialog box with fields for each parameter. These dialog boxes are built using a default layout scheme. This layout scheme is functional, but it may not always capture relationships between different parameters, particularly dependencies. Also, the resulting dialog boxes may not be as esthetically pleasing as well-designed dialog boxes should be. As an alternative to automatic dialog box creation, you can use Qt Designer to lay out dialog boxes. This capability is integrated into the script creation process.

The VR-Forces graphical user interface is built using Qt, a cross-platform GUI SDK. Qt Designer is a utility that developers can use to quickly lay out GUI design elements. It is beyond the scope of this manual to fully explain how to use Qt Designer. This chapter will provide enough information about it to get you started.

## 33.2. Selecting Qt Designer for Dialog Box Layout

By default, VR-Forces automatically builds dialog boxes for scripted tasks and sets.

➤ To specify use of Qt Designer for dialog box layout, in the New Script or Edit Script dialog box, select the Use Qt Designer check box.

## 33.3. Adding Parameters When Using Qt Designer

When you create or edit a script, you can add parameters in the New Script or Edit Script dialog box. If you select Qt Designer for dialog box layout, any parameters that you have already defined in the New Script dialog box are implemented in Qt Designer using the default dialog box layout (which you can change). However, once you select Qt Designer, you cannot add any more parameters in the New Script dialog box. You can only add parameters in Qt Designer.

If you decide to use Qt Designer before you add parameters in the New Script dialog box, then all parameters get added using Qt Designer.

---

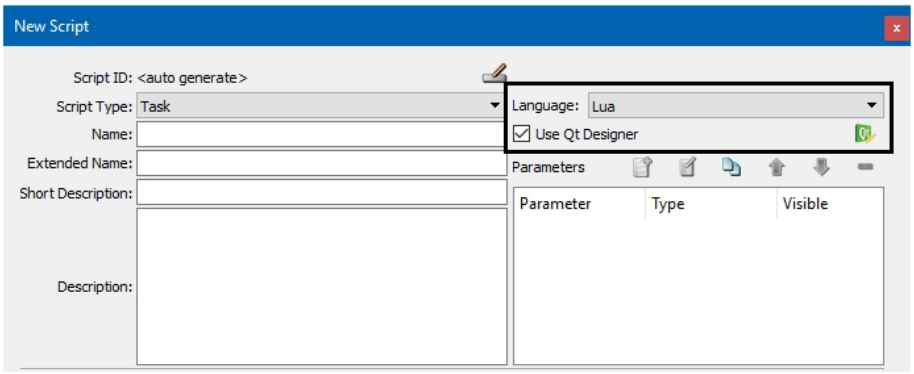
! If you lay out a dialog box using Qt Designer and then unselect the Use Qt Designer check box, all the layout information that you added in Designer is lost, except that if you rearranged the order of parameters, those changes affect the order in which the parameters are listed in the Edit Script dialog box. Any parameters that you added in Designer are still valid and part of the script.

---

➤ **To add parameters in Qt Designer:**

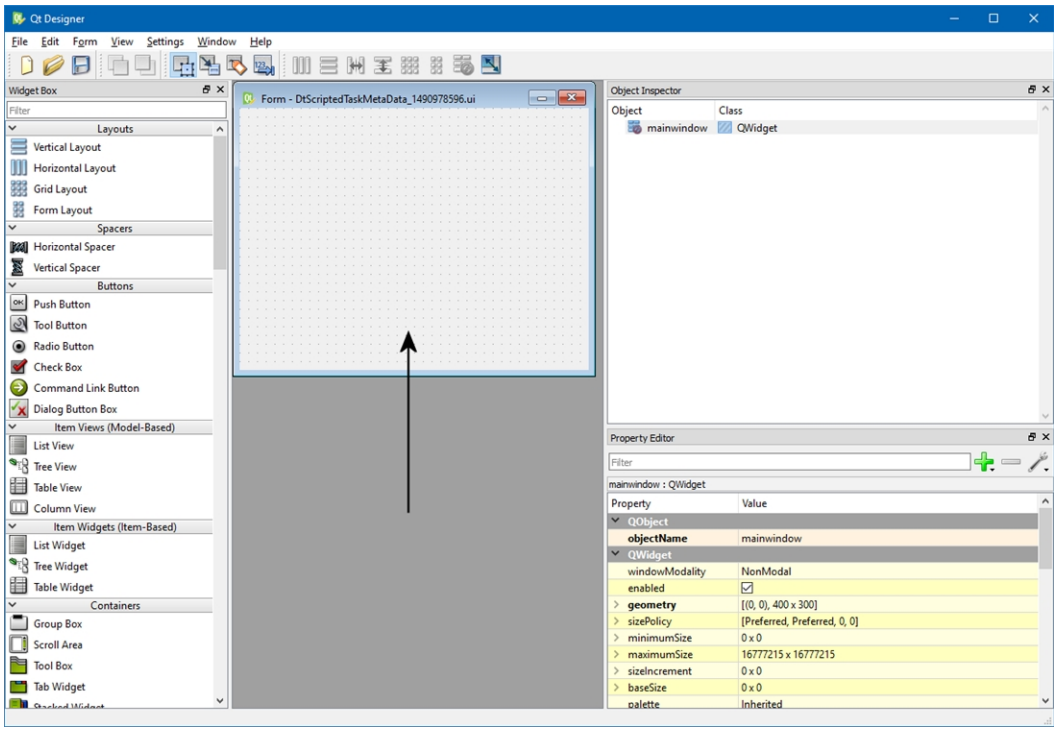
1. In the New Script or Edit Script dialog box, select the Use Qt Designer check box (Figure 279).

**Figure 279. New Script dialog box**




2. Click the Qt button ( ) to the right of the Qt Designer check box. Qt Designer opens (Figure 280). If the script already has parameters, it displays a default dialog box layout for the script. If there are no parameters, it displays a blank canvas.

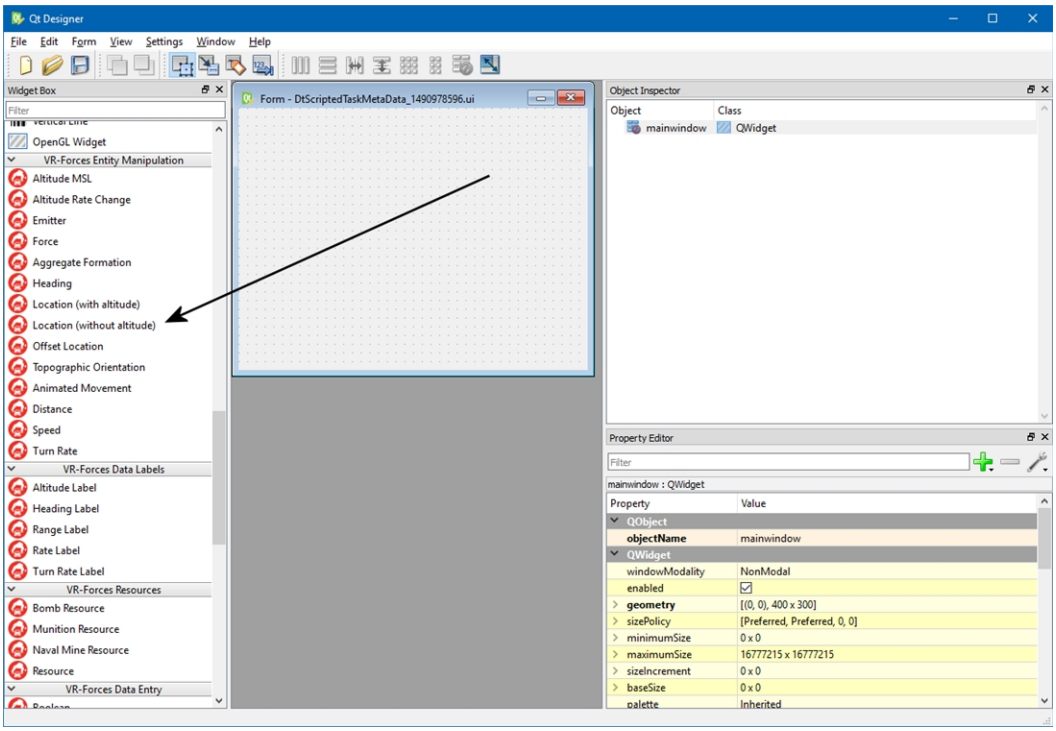
**Figure 280. Qt Designer with blank canvas**




! You must use the canvas that gets created when you open Designer. If you close it and open a new one from the File menu, it might not work.

3. Scroll through the widget box until you see the list of widgets for VR-Forces script parameters (Figure 281).

**Figure 281. VR-Forces widgets**




4. Drag a parameter onto the dialog box canvas.
5. In the Property Editor, specify the required and optional information for the parameter type, such as a label, tooltip, or default value.

   All of the parameters have the following properties:

   - **objectName**. The name to be used by the Lua script for this parameter. For example, if you give a parameter the name **taskDestination**, in the Lua code for the script, the parameter will be accessed as **taskParameters.taskDestination**.
   - **label**. This is the text used on the dialog box that is generated for the task. If you leave this field blank, the parameter name is used.
   - **toolTip**. Optional text for a tool tip.
   - **indent**. The number of pixels to indent the parameter on the task dialog box. This allows you to apply some formatting to the dialog box.
   - **isVisible**. Specifies that the parameter be included on the script dialog box. (You might want a parameter to be available in the code, but not have it set by a user when the script is assigned.)

   Many parameters let you specify a default value or state.

   Some parameters let you specify a range for the acceptable values:

- **rangeBottom**. The lowest acceptable value for this parameter.
- **rangeTop**. The highest acceptable value for this parameter.

The Boolean parameter type lets you create a check box. You can specify that the default be checked or unchecked.

6. Add design elements such as dividers and labels as desired.

---

Nothing in Qt Designer will prevent you from adding non-VR-Forces properties. However, you cannot use non-VR-Forces properties in scripts.

---

7. Choose a layout option on the Form menu. Doing so preserves your layout. If you do not select a layout option, VR-Forces might rearrange the layout when it displays the dialog box for the script.
8. In Qt Designer, choose **File > Save** or click the Save button. If this is a system script, Qt Designer saves a UI file with the layout information. If this is a scenario script, the layout information gets saved in the scenario.
9. Close Qt Designer.

### 33.3.1 Specifying Choices for the Choice Parameters in Qt Designer

The Choice parameters require a list of choices, which get added to the dialog box as option buttons or as a list. You can add choices, edit them, and delete them.

Option buttons have a property called **buttonGroup**. Buttons within the same button group are mutually exclusive. If you add more than one group of option buttons to a script, you must edit the **buttonGroup** property to make sure that the different groups have a different value for the property.

➤ **To add a drop-down list of choices:**

1. From the VR-Forces Data Entry section, drag the Choice (Drop-Down List) widget onto the canvas.
2. In the Property Editor, click the Value column for the **values** property. The text changes to Change String List.
3. Click Change String List. The Dialog - Qt Designer dialog box opens. Add a string for each choice you want to make available, as follows:
   a. Click New. A text box is added to the list.
   b. Type the string you want to be displayed.
   c. Repeat this procedure for each string you want to be in the drop-down list.
   d. Click OK. The dialog box closes. The strings you entered are listed in the Value column for the values property.

➤ **To add option button choices:**

1. From the VR-Forces Data Entry section, drag the Choice (Option Button) widget onto the canvas. It creates a widget with one button that has the text Radio Button.
2. In the Property Editor, click the Value column for the **values** property. The text changes to Change String List.
3. Click Change String List. The Dialog - Qt Designer dialog box opens. Add a string for each choice you want to make available, as follows:
    a. Double-click the text Radio Button to make it editable.
    b. Change the text to something meaningful for this parameter.
    c. Click New. A text box is added to the list.
    d. Type the string you want to be displayed for the next option button.
    e. Repeat step c and d for each option button you want.
    f. Click OK. The dialog box closes. The strings you entered are listed on the canvas and in the Value column for the values property.

## 33.3.2 Specifying Categories for a Simulation Object in Qt Designer

The Simulation Object parameter lets you build a list of categories on which to filter the display of simulation object types in a dialog box.

➤ **To add a category to the simulation object list:**

1. Double-click the Filter widget on the form. A dialog box opens. The top line reads Filters and it has several icons.
2. Click the Add button ( ) on the Filters line. The Choose Filter dialog box opens.
3. Select a filter from the Filters list.
4. Click OK.
5. Repeat the procedure to add as many filters as you want.
6. Click OK.

### Editing the Category List for a Simulation Object Parameter

You can edit the list of filter categories for a Simulation Object parameter. The edit operation is essentially a replacement of the current category with a new one. You can achieve the same effect by deleting the current category and adding a new one.

➤ **To edit the list of filter categories in a Simulation Object parameter:**

1. Double-click the Filter widget on the form. A dialog box opens. The top line reads Filters and it has several icons.
2. In the window, select the filter that you want to edit.

3. Click the Edit button ( ) on the Filters line. The Choose Filter dialog box opens.
4. Select the new filter category.
5. Click OK. The original category is removed and the new one is added.
6. Click OK.

➤ **To delete a category from a Simulation Object parameter:**

1. Double-click the Filter widget on the form. A dialog box opens. The top line reads Filters and it has several icons.
2. In the window, select the filter that you want to delete.
3. Click the Delete button ( ). The category is removed from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 33.4. Adding Design Elements

You can add design elements such as dividers, group boxes, and indentation. You do so by dragging the appropriate widgets from the list onto the canvas and setting their properties. Please see Qt Designer documentation for details about how to design dialog boxes.

# VI. Set Data Requests

Set data requests affect the state or behavior of a simulation object, such as its speed or posture. They take effect immediately. Assignment of a set data request does not override the task that a simulation object is executing. By contrast, if you assign a simulation object a task, it stops its current task and begins the new task. You can send set data requests from a plan or from the Set menu.

You can create new set data requests using the same Lua scripting process that you can use to create scripted tasks.

Some set data requests only apply to entity-level scenarios. Others only apply to aggregate-level scenarios. These set data requests indicate the applicable simulation type with an entity ( ) or unit ( ) icon in the margin.

The Set menu is context sensitive. It only shows the options that apply to the selected simulation object.

The graphical user interface does not necessarily know about the state of a simulation object. When you open a dialog box for a Set command, any data in the dialog box represents either default values or the most recently used value. Do not assume that a dialog box shows current values.

---

You can check the current status of most simulation object state data in the Information dialog box.

---

You can filter simulation object selection lists. For details, please see "25.1.8 Filtering the Object Selection Lists" on page 550.

The instructions for setting simulation object state direct you to use options on the Set menu. However, all the options available on the main menu are also available on context-sensitive menus. A limited number of set data requests are available on the Sets Toolbar and on the Last Selected Objects Panel.

You can also set the state of tactical graphics. For details, please see "Chapter 41. Setting the State of Tactical Graphics" on page 961.

# 34. Setting the State of Entity-Level Simulation Objects

This chapter explains how to set simulation object states for entities and units in entity-level scenarios. Some of the set data requests also apply to aggregate-level scenarios. They are cross-referenced from "Chapter 35. Setting the State of Aggregate-Level Simulation Objects" on page 839.


34.1. Active Sonar Mode ..... 798
34.2. Add Jamming Target ..... 798
34.3. AI Enabled ..... 798
34.4. Aiming ..... 799
34.5. Aircraft Lighting ..... 799
34.6. Altitude ..... 800
34.7. Appearance ..... 800
34.8. Armed ..... 801
34.9. Articulated Part ..... 801
34.10. Assume Unknown is Hostile ..... 801
34.11. Attention Grabbing ..... 802
34.12. Automatically Close Doors ..... 802
34.13. Capabilities ..... 802
34.14. Collision Avoidance Types ..... 803
34.15. Concealed ..... 804
34.16. Counter Measures Auto Launch ..... 804
34.17. Current Speed ..... 804
34.18. Destroyed ..... 805
34.19. Detonation Fuse Type ..... 805
34.20. DI-Guy Characteristics (Appearance, Head, Body Weight) ..... 806
34.21. DI-Guy Hand Item ..... 806
34.22. Disembarked ..... 807
34.23. Embarked ..... 807
34.24. Emergency Beacon ..... 807
34.25. Emitter ..... 808

34.26. Engagement Zones ..... 809
34.27. Force ..... 809
34.28. Formation ..... 809
34.29. Freeze Fuel Levels ..... 810
34.30. Freeze Movement ..... 810
34.31. Freeze Munition Levels ..... 811
34.32. Group Clamp Fidelity ..... 811
34.33. Heading ..... 812
34.34. Hide Occupants ..... 812
34.35. IFF ..... 812
34.36. Invisible ..... 813
34.37. Invulnerable ..... 814
34.38. Jammer State ..... 814
34.39. Jamming Mode ..... 814
34.40. Lase Autonomous ..... 815
34.41. Laser Code ..... 815
34.42. Laser Power and Wavelength ..... 815
34.43. Loadout ..... 816
34.44. Location ..... 817
34.45. Look At ..... 817
34.46. Markings ..... 818
34.47. Navigation Enabled ..... 818
34.48. Navigation Preferences ..... 819
34.49. Navigation Priority ..... 819
34.50. Notify Level ..... 820
34.51. Orbit ..... 820
34.52. Ordered Speed ..... 820
34.53. Pitch ..... 821
34.54. Posture (Human) ..... 822
34.55. Preferred Trajectory Height ..... 823
34.56. Radar Mode ..... 823
34.57. Remote Sensor ..... 824
34.58. Remove Jamming Target ..... 824
34.59. Reorganize ..... 824
34.60. Resources ..... 825
34.61. Restore ..... 825
34.62. Rules of Engagement ..... 825
34.62.1 How Fire-When-Fired-Upon Works ..... 826
34.63. Sector Blanking ..... 826
34.64. Sector of Responsibility ..... 827
34.65. Sensor Aim ..... 828

34.66. Sensor Field of View Color ..... 828
34.67. Sensor Zoom ..... 829
34.68. Set TACAN Transmitter ..... 829
34.69. Skill Level ..... 829
34.70. Sonar Depth ..... 830
34.71. Spot Reports ..... 830
34.72. Stow Hand Item ..... 831
34.73. Subsystem Enabled ..... 832
34.74. Superior ..... 832
34.75. Surrendered ..... 832
34.76. Synchronize Laser Code ..... 833
34.77. Tanker Lighting ..... 833
34.78. Target ..... 833
34.79. Target Priority List - Add ..... 834
34.79.1 Viewing the Target Priority List ..... 834
34.80. Target Priority List - Clear ..... 834
34.81. Target Priority List - Update ..... 835
34.82. Tasked by Superior ..... 835
34.83. TDL Messaging ..... 836
34.84. Tracer Use ..... 836
34.85. Undetectable ..... 836
34.86. Unit State ..... 837
34.87. Urgency (Human) ..... 837

## 34.1. Active Sonar Mode

If an entity has an active sonar system, you can set the sonar mode.

---

RPR FOM 1.0 does not support active sonar.

---

➤ **To set the active sonar mode:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Active Sonar Mode**. The Active Sonar Mode dialog box opens.
3. In the System ID list, select the sonar system that you are setting. The entities provided with VR-Forces just have one active sonar system.
4. In the Mode list, select a sonar mode or select Off to disable active sonar.
5. Click OK.

## 34.2. Add Jamming Target

The Add Jamming Target set data request lets you specify a target for an entity to jam. You can only specify one target at a time using this set, but you can issue it multiple times to specify multiple jamming targets.

➤ **To specify a jamming target:**

1. Select the entity that has a jamming capability.
2. Choose **Set > Jammer > Add Jamming Target**. The Add Jamming Target dialog box opens.
3. Select the entity that you want to jam.
4. Click OK.

## 34.3. AI Enabled

The AI Enabled set data request lets you disable intelligent decision making by simulation objects. By default, simulation objects can respond to their environment by avoiding obstacles (excluding aircraft), firing on targets, and so on. In some cases, exercise participants do not want simulation objects to take any actions other than those specifically tasked to them by plans or human players. AI Enabled lets you remove independent action from simulation object behavior.

AI Enabled disables the following behaviors:

- Collision avoidance.
- Automatic firing at other entities.
- Reacting to being fired upon. That is, there is no suppression or fleeing.

Aircraft entities do not have obstacle avoidance. The artificial intelligence for aircraft, when enabled, does not attempt to avoid collisions with obstacles in their flight path.

➤ **To enable or disable artificial intelligence:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Action > AI Enabled**, or click the AI Enabled button ( ) on the Sets Toolbar. The AI Enabled dialog box opens.
3. In the Enabled list, select Yes or No.
4. Click OK.

## 34.4. Aiming

The Aiming set data request tells an entity to aim at a point, an object, or an angle. It does not cause the entity to shoot. If the entity acquires a target, it aims at the target and fires. Then it returns to the aiming behavior specified by the set data request.

An entity can move while it is aiming. If an entity is moving and it can no longer reasonably aim in the specified direction, it stops aiming. For example, if the entity is aiming at a point and the entity's movement causes the point to be behind it, the entity stops aiming (unless it has a turret that can aim in that direction). If the entity stopped aiming while it was moving, when it stops moving, it turns to aim in the specified way.

You can also use this set data request to stop the aiming behavior.

➤ **To have an entity aim at a location or object:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Aiming**. The Aiming dialog box opens.
3. Select the aiming option you want.
4. Specify the appropriate parameter for the aiming choice:
   - Aim at Point – specify the location.
   - Aim at Object – select the object.
   - Aim at Angle – specify the azimuth and elevation.
   - Cease Aiming – no parameters required.
5. Click OK.

## 34.5. Aircraft Lighting

The Aircraft Lighting set data request causes a fixed-wing aircraft to publish its lighting information as specified. The 3D visuals on the fixed wing model reflect the lighting if the model is configured with those lights.

For tankers, there is another set data request: Tanker Lighting. See "34.77. Tanker Lighting" on page 833.

➤ **To set the lights on a fixed-wing aircraft:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Aircraft Lighting**. The Aircraft Lighting dialog box opens.
3. Specify the settings for the lights.
4. Click OK.

## 34.6. Altitude

The Altitude request changes the altitude of simulation objects immediately. If you want a fixed-wing or rotary-wing entity to move to an altitude, use the Move to Altitude or Fly Altitude task. You can set the altitude manually or place an entity at a specific level in a multi-level terrain feature, such as a building.

➤ **To set an entity's altitude:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Position > Altitude**, or click the Altitude button ( ) on the Sets Toolbar. The Altitude dialog box opens. It displays the entity's current altitude.
3. Select MSL (mean sea level) or AGL (above ground level) to specify the base for the altitude value.
4. Type the new altitude.
5. Click OK.

## 34.7. Appearance

You can set appearance attributes for simulation objects. The appearance attributes that are available for a simulation object are determined by its entry in *./appData/settings/vrfGui/SISO-REF-010.xml*. The default list of appearance attributes is based on the DIS standard.

The Lifeform State field of the Appearance dialog box sets the posture for an entity. If VR-Forces does not support a selected posture, it simulates the entity using the closest similar posture. If a posture involves walking or running, VR-Forces chooses the posture to use based on the entity's speed. For more information about setting posture, please see "34.54. Posture (Human)" on page 822.

If you want to set the appearance of a human character, use the DI-Guy Appearance set data request, described in ("34.20. DI-Guy Characteristics (Appearance, Head, Body Weight)" on page 806).

---

In aggregate-level scenarios, the Appearance set data request is included in the list of commands for the Send Radio Set task and the list of commands available on the Command menu in plans. However, it is not supported and if used, will fail. Its presence is due to the lack of context sensitivity for these menus.

➤ **To set appearance values:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Appearance**. The Appearance dialog box opens. The settings displayed are the current settings for the simulation object.
3. Change appearance settings as desired.
4. Click OK.

## 34.8. Armed

IEDs, car bombs, and suicide bombers must be armed to detonate. They are all armed by default. You can disarm them and re-arm them.

---

IEDs, car bombs, and suicide bombers have radios. Therefore, you can arm and disarm them using the Send Radio Set task.

---

➤ **To arm or disarm an explosive device:**

1. Select the explosive device.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Armed**. The Armed dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.9. Articulated Part

The Articulated Part set data request allows you to set the position of a simulation object's articulated part at runtime. This applies only to articulated parts that are not controlled by another system.

➤ **To set the position of an articulated part:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Articulated Part**. The Articulated Part dialog box opens.
3. Select the articulated part.
4. Specify the translation or rotation for the articulated part.
5. Click OK.

## 34.10. Assume Unknown is Hostile

The Assume Unknown is Hostile set data request means that a simulation object associated with an engagement zone can assume that any unknown simulation object that enters the engagement zone is hostile.

➤ **To set unknown objects in an engagement zone to be hostile:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Assume Unknown is Hostile**. The Assume Unknown is Hostile dialog box opens.
3. Select No or Yes.
4. Click OK.

## 34.11. Attention Grabbing

The Attention Grabbing set data request specifies how interesting an object should be to humans as they randomly pay attention to other objects in their environment.

➤ **To set the level of attention for an object:**

1. Select the object whose level of attention you want to set.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Attention Grabbing**. The Attention Grabbing dialog box opens.
3. Select an option for the amount of attention that this object should get.
4. Click OK.

## 34.12. Automatically Close Doors

If Automatically Close Doors is enabled, when a human entity goes through a door that can be opened or closed and there is no one else behind it, the door closes automatically. Default: enabled.

You can also close doors with the Close Door task ("28.6. Close Door" on page 638). For more information about opening and closing doors, please see Chapter 8, *Dynamic Terrain*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To enable or disable automatically closing doors:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Automatically Close Doors**. The Automatically Close Doors dialog box opens.
3. Select Yes to enable, No to disable.

## 34.13. Capabilities

The capabilities that are available for a simulation object are determined by its entry in *./appData/settings/vrfGui/SISO-REF-010.xml*. The default list of capabilities is based on the DIS standard.

➤ **To set simulation object capabilities:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Capabilities**. The Capabilities dialog box opens. It displays the current settings for the simulation object.
3. Change the settings you want to change.
4. Click OK.

## 34.14. Collision Avoidance Types

Sometimes entities exhibit undesired collision avoidance behavior because they try to avoid objects that are close to their line of travel, but not necessarily blocking it. You can enable and disable avoidance of entities, buildings, and trees on a per-entity basis. This option overrides the collision avoidance settings in the object parameter database entry for the entity.

- Collision avoidance settings are saved in an entity's process state repository. However, there is no indication in the GUI what these settings are. Therefore, we recommend that you not change collision avoidance settings through the GUI indiscriminately because you may lose track of which entities are avoiding which types of objects. To permanently set collision avoidance for an entity, edit its components in the object parameter database.
- When the Collision Avoidance Types dialog box opens, it does not reflect the settings for the selected entities. It only provides a default setting. Make sure that you review all the settings in the dialog box to be sure you do not inadvertently enable or disable a setting that you do not want to change.
- The Collision Avoidance Types set data request lets you specify collision avoidance only for broad categories of objects. You can set collision avoidance more specifically in the object parameter database.

➤ **To set collision avoidance for specific object types:**

1. Select an entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Collision Avoidance Types**. The Collision Avoidance Types dialog box opens.
3. Select the check boxes for object types to avoid and clear the check boxes for the object types that the entity should not try to avoid.
4. Click OK.

## 34.15. Concealed

The Concealed request sets a simulation object's concealment attribute to True or False. For entity-level scenarios, this only affects the DIS or RPR FOM data sent over the network. It does not affect the simulation. For aggregate-level scenarios, when a simulation object is concealed, its sensor signature is changed so that it is harder to detect.

➤ **To set the concealment attribute:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Concealed**. The Concealed dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.16. Counter Measures Auto Launch

The Counter Measures Auto Launch set data request lets you enable and disable automatic launching of counter measures. If you disable automatic counter measures, you can still launch them manually using the Launch Counter Measures task "27.19. Launch Counter Measures" on page 626).

➤ **To enable or disable automatic launch of counter measures:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Counter Measures Auto Launch**. The Auto Launch dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.17. Current Speed

The Current Speed set data request sets the speed of a simulation object immediately and changes the ordered speed to this new speed value. By contrast, Ordered Speed ("34.52. Ordered Speed" on page 820) causes a simulation object to accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed.

A negative value causes the entity to go backwards if it supports backwards movement.

---

For all simulation objects except humans and fixed-wing aircraft that are in the air, if you set the current speed and the object does not have a task, it begins to move at that speed and then slows down until the speed reaches 0. Fixed-wing aircraft that are in a default orbit mode change their speed to the new current speed. Humans might take a step, but then will stop moving.

---

➤ **To set current speed:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Current Speed**. The Current Speed dialog box opens.
3. In the Current Speed text box, set the speed.
4. Click OK.

## 34.18. Destroyed

You can set a simulation object's state to be destroyed. This can be helpful when you want a simulation object to be destroyed without having to first simulate its destruction by another simulation object.

➤ **To set an object's state to destroyed:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Destroyed**. The simulation object is immediately destroyed.

## 34.19. Detonation Fuse Type

The Detonation Fuse Type set data request lets you configure detonation of improvised explosive devices (roadside IED entity), suicide bombers, and car bombs. You can set them to detonate immediately, at a certain time delay, or based on the proximity of a target entity. If you specify proximity detonation, you can set the radius of the proximate area. If you specify time, you must set the time in seconds until detonation. Detonation Fuse Type implicitly arms the device. (For details about arming devices, please see "34.8. Armed" on page 801.)

---

IEDs, car bombs, and suicide bombers have radios. Therefore, you can detonate them using the Send Radio Set task.

---

➤ **To set the detonation fuse type:**

1. Select the object that you want to configure.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Detonation Fuse Type**. The Detonation Fuse Type dialog box opens.
3. In the Fuse Type list, select the fuse type (Timed, Immediate, or Proximity).
4. If you selected a Timed fuse, in the Time box, specify the elapsed time, in seconds, at which the IED should detonate.
5. If you selected a Proximity fuse, in the Proximity box, specify the radius of the area in which a simulation object will trigger the detonation.
6. Click OK.

## 34.20. DI-Guy Characteristics (Appearance, Head, Body Weight)

The DI-Guy Characteristics set data request determines the clothing and physical characteristics of a lifeform when it is displayed in a 3D simulation that uses DI-Guy characters.

The DI-Guy Characteristics set data request applies only to lifeform entities.

➤ **To set DI-Guy appearance, head, or body weight:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > DI-Guy Characteristics**. The DI-Guy Characteristics dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, in the 3D view only, select the Apply Selected Appearance Immediately check box. This displays the selected entity with the new appearance so that you can see what it looks like before you apply the change.
4. Optionally, filter the appearance list by choosing options in the various filter lists.
5. To change the appearance, select an appearance from the DI-Guy Appearance list.
6. To change the head, select an option in the DI-Guy Head list.
7. To change the weight of the character, slide the DI-Guy Body Weight slider or change the value in the text box (the range is 0.5 - 5.0).
8. Click OK.

## 34.21. DI-Guy Hand Item

The DI-Guy Hand Item set data request lets you change the hand item that a character has. DI-Guys can have a variety of hand items. For example, a civilian can have a cell phone, a pistol, or a camcorder, while a soldier can have a variety of weapons.

➤ **To set a DI-Guy's hand item:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Hand Item**. The DI-Guy Hand Item dialog box opens.
3. Select a hand item from the list.
4. Optionally, in the 3D view only, select the Apply Selected Hand Item Immediately check box. This displays the selected entity with the new hand item so that you can see what it looks like before you apply the change.
5. Click OK.

## 34.22. Disembarked

The Disembarked set data request immediately disembarks a simulation object (as opposed to simulating disembarkation, as done by the Disembark task). It is the equivalent of the **Objects > Disembark** command. However, Disembarked allows you to include immediate disembarkation in a plan.

➤ **To set a simulation object to be disembarked:**

1. Select the simulation object. (If you are using the 2D icon model, embarked simulation objects are not displayed, so you have to select it in the Objects List Panel.)
2. Choose **Set > Embarkation > Disembarked**.

## 34.23. Embarked

The Embarked set data request immediately embarks a simulation object (as opposed to simulating embarkation, as done by the Embark task). It is the equivalent of the **Objects > Embarkation > Embark On** command. However, Embarked allows you to include immediate embarkation in a plan.

The default location for this set data request is the center of the parent simulation object (0,0,0). It does not use preconfigured slots like the Embark task does. If you are using a Stealth observer mode and want placement of embarked simulation objects to look good, you will have to calculate offsets for each simulation object you embark.

---

! If you are using HLA and want to use the embarkation feature, you must use RPR FOM 2, draft 17 or later.

---

➤ **To set a simulation object to be embarked:**

1. Select the simulation object to be embarked.
2. Choose **Set > Embarkation > Embarked**. The Embarked dialog box opens.
3. Select the simulation object to embark on.
4. Optionally, specify an embarkation offset.
5. Click OK.

## 34.24. Emergency Beacon

The US Air Force human entity is equipped with an emergency transponder, which can be turned on or off by using the Emergency Beacon set data request. When the transponder is on, it is easier for an entity with the Search and Rescue Sensor to identify. Even if the transponder is off, however, the sensor can detect it when the sensor is close to the transponder. (Detecting the transponder is limited by the sensor's maximum range.)

➤ **To turn an emergency beacon on or off:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Emergency Beacon**. The Emergency Beacon dialog box opens.
3. From the Emergency Beacon list, select either On or Off.
4. Click OK.

## 34.25. Emitter

The Emitter set data request enables or disables the publication of emitter data for simulation objects that have emitters. This models basic electromagnetic emissions.

Some sensors have an active emitter system that you must enable for the sensor to detect targets. The emitters publish one or more beams with the sensor-specific data to the network. That information displays in the entity's information dialog under Emitters. Currently, three types of sensors use emitter systems: active radar, jamming radar, and active sonar.

Emission properties (azimuth, elevation, effective radiated power, and so on) for each beam are specified in the sensor component descriptor in the object parameter database. Emission properties are published by the sensor component. A sensor component can publish its emission data as a standard beam type or a tracking beam type.

---

- Setting a target does not cause the beam to actually track the target. The beam's behavior is determined by the parameters in its description in the object parameter database.
- The emitter continues to publish the targeted entity as its tracking target until you set another target, regardless of the status of that entity in the exercise. There is no way to set the target to "none".
- See "73.1. Configuring Emitters" on page 1496 for an explanation of how to configure individual and multiple emitters in the object parameter database.

---

➤ **To turn on electromagnetic emissions:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Emitter**. The Emitter dialog box opens.
3. Select the Radar ID from the list, or you can choose All.
4. In the Emitter list, select On.
5. Click OK.

## 34.26. Engagement Zones

The Engagement Zone set data request lets you associate one or more engagement zones with a simulation object.

➤ **To associate a simulation object with an engagement zone:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Engagement Zones**. The Engagement Zones dialog box opens.
3. Select one or more engagement zones in the list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.27. Force

You can change a simulation object's force during runtime. This might be useful in a simulation in which neutral forces begin assisting one force or another, or in which opposing forces capture friendly force weaponry and begin using it. You can also set the force for combat engineering objects in aggregate-level scenarios.

When you change a simulation object's force, its:

- Echelon ID changes to reflect the new force.
- Icon changes to the appropriate force color and type.
- Force ID changes.

The entity enumeration does not change.

➤ **To set the force of an object:**

1. Choose **Set > Disposition > Force**. The Force dialog box opens.
2. Select a force from the list.
3. Click OK.

## 34.28. Formation

VR-Forces supports the following formations:

- Column (default)
- Line
- Wedge
- Vee
- User-defined formations

Formations are defined in formation files in the directory *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/formation*. Formation files have the extension *.frm*. In addition to the named formations provided by MAK, VR-Forces

supports user-defined formations. If you create a new formation in the Simulation Object Editor, it automatically gets added to the formation list for the unit types that support it.

---

The vee and wedge formations provided with VR-Forces place the unit leader at the end of one of the arms of the formation. If a unit has fewer than seven or eight members, it will not be symmetrical.

---

When you set the formation for a disaggregated unit, the simulation objects that make up the unit snap to formation immediately. If you want simulation objects to simulate moving into formation, rather than snapping to formation, use the Move Into Formation task.

If you set the formation for an aggregated unit, the unit remembers the formation and uses it the next time it disaggregates.

➤ **To set a unit's formation:**

1. Select the unit whose formation you want to set.
2. Choose **Set > Unit > Formation**. The Formation dialog box opens.
3. In the Formation list, select the formation that you want the unit to use.
4. Click OK.

For information about configuring formations and about how to create user-defined formations, please see "72.1. Configuring Formations" on page 1490.

## 34.29. Freeze Fuel Levels

You can set an entity to stop depleting fuel by freezing the resource. The entity behaves normally in the scenario; it simply no longer expends its fuel resources as it moves.

➤ **To freeze or unfreeze an entity's fuel levels:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Freeze Fuel Levels**. The Freeze Fuel Levels dialog box opens.
3. In the Freeze Fuel Levels list, select Yes or No.
4. Click OK.

## 34.30. Freeze Movement

The Freeze Movement request freezes an entity's movement system. It prevents any physics- or simulation-related change to the object's spatial attribute (location in the simulated world). The end user can move the entity within the UI, but during the normal simulation the entity publishes the same location and orientation.

Tasks that require an entity to move, such as Move to Location, pause while Freeze Movement is set to Yes. The entity's other systems, such as weapons, remain active, and the entity will attempt reactive tasks that do not require a spatial change. For example, a tank's turret may move to fire, a soldier may move his arms to aim a weapon, and so on.

➤ **To freeze or unfreeze an entity's movement:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Freeze Movement**. The Freeze Movement dialog box opens.
3. In the Freeze Movement list, select Yes or No.
4. Click OK.

## 34.31. Freeze Munition Levels

You can set an entity to stop depleting munitions by freezing the resource. The entity behaves normally in the scenario; it simply no longer expends munitions while using its weapon(s). This includes countermeasures.

➤ **To freeze or unfreeze an entity's munition levels:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Freeze Munition Levels**. The Freeze Munition Levels dialog box opens.
3. In the Freeze Munition Levels list, select Yes or No.
4. Click OK.

## 34.32. Group Clamp Fidelity

By default, individual human entities clamp to the ground with high fidelity, so that they move around on the terrain in a realistic manner. You can set human entities to clamp with low fidelity, clamping them to the navigation mesh instead of the terrain. This improves performance but the human characters can appear to move through the terrain instead of on it. For performance reasons, when you add a crowd simulation object, the entities in it default to low fidelity clamping.

Low fidelity clamping only works in navigation areas. If there is no navigation area specified for the terrain, the human entities use high fidelity clamping.

➤ **To set the ground clamp fidelity for human entities:**

1. Select the entity or entities.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Ground Clamp Fidelity**. The Ground Clamp Fidelity dialog box opens.
3. In the Ground Clamp Fidelity list, select Low or High.
4. Click OK.

## 34.33. Heading

The Heading request instantly sets a simulation object's heading. If you want a simulation object to move to a new heading by pivoting or executing a K-turn, use the Turn To Heading task. You can also set a simulation object's heading manually. For details, please see "14.5. Specifying an Object's Heading Dynamically" on page 382.

➤ **To set an object's heading:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Position > Heading**, or click the Heading button ( ) on the Sets Toolbar. The Heading dialog box opens. It displays the simulation object's current heading.
3. In the Heading text box, type a heading, in degrees.
4. In the Relative To list, select one of the following options:
   - North. Turn to the specified absolute heading.
   - Current Heading. Turn the specified number of degrees relative to the current heading.
   - Host (if embarked). If embarked, turn to the specified heading relative to the host simulation object.
   - Magnetic. Turn to the specified heading relative to magnetic north.
5. Click OK.

## 34.34. Hide Occupants

The Hide Occupants set data request overrides the Show Occupants setting on the Entity Display Settings page for the entity for which you set it. VR-Forces can automatically display civilians in the driver's seat of civilian vehicles. These occupants are not simulated objects, they are just visualized. You might want to disable this setting for performance reasons or because you are embarking a simulated person in the vehicle.

For more information about displaying occupants in a vehicle, please see "44.4. Displaying DI-Guys in Vehicles" on page 1011.

➤ **To display or hide occupants of a vehicle:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Hide Occupants**. The Hide Occupants dialog box opens.
3. Select an option in the Occupant Visibility list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.35. IFF

Friendly fixed-wing entities can model a NATO Identification Friend or Foe (IFF) transponder.

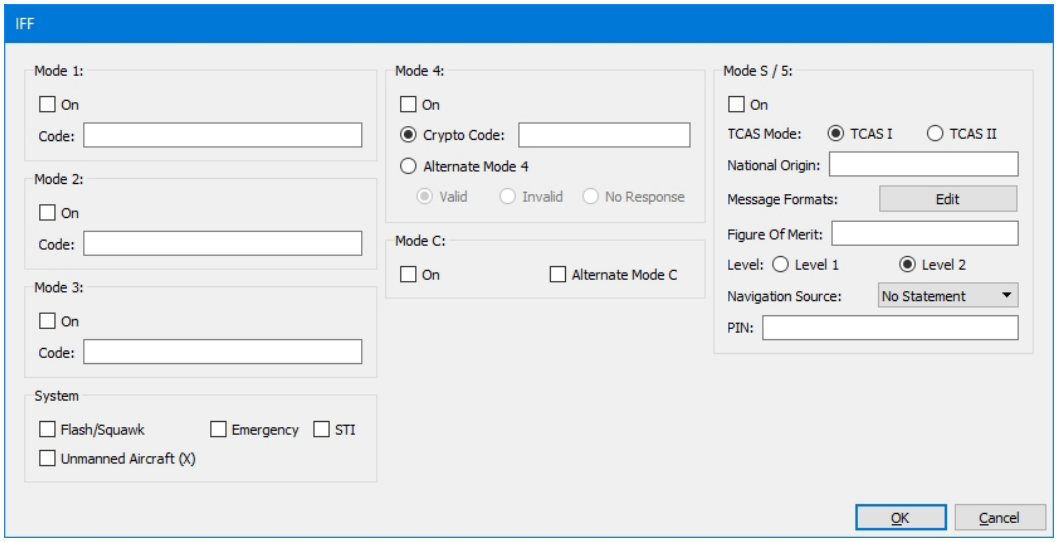
- Mode S / 5 and mode C are equivalent.
- The dialog box does not force you to enter valid codes. It truncates invalid entries to the correct length (but not necessarily valid data).
- When you open the dialog box, it reflects the current IFF settings for the entity, if any.
- You can view an entity's IFF settings on the IFF tab of its Information dialog box.

If an aircraft has an IFF Code Changer system and it enables the IFF Code Changer reactive task, its IFF code will change every half hour based on the entries in a CSV file. By default, entities are not configured with this system and the task is inactive. A sample CSV file is provided: *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/extra/iff-codes.csv*.

➤ **To set the IFF transponder:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > IFF**. The IFF dialog box opens (Figure 282).

**Figure 282. IFF dialog box**




3. Fill out fields as desired.
4. Click OK.

## 34.36. Invisible

The Invisible set data request causes simulation objects to be invisible on the map display in 2D or 3D. They are still listed in the Objects List Panel.

➤ **To set a object to be invisible:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Invisible**. The Invisible dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the Invisible list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.37. Invulnerable

If a simulation object is invulnerable, it does not take damage from munitions.

➤ **To set an object to be invulnerable:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Invulnerable**, or click the Invulnerable button ( ) on the Sets Toolbar. The Invulnerable dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the list.

## 34.38. Jammer State

The Jammer State set data request enables and disables radar jamming for an entity. For more information about jamming, please see "9.6. Electronic Warfare" on page 289.

➤ **To set the jammer state:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Jammer > Jammer State**. The Jammer State dialog box opens.
3. In the State list, select On or Off.
4. Click OK.

## 34.39. Jamming Mode

The Jamming Mode set data request lets you specify the emitter ID for a jammer and the mode it uses. The options are:

- Deception jamming
- Mixed mode jamming
- Mixed noise

For more information about jamming, please see "9.6. Electronic Warfare" on page 289.

➤ **To specify the jamming mode:**

1. Select the jamming entity.
2. Choose **Set > Jammer > Jamming Mode**. The Jamming Mode dialog box opens.

3. The Emitter ID is Jamming Emitter.
4. Select a mode in the Mode list.
5. Click OK.

## 34.40. Lase Autonomous

By default, entities with laser capability lase targets autonomously as part of the built-in target acquisition and firing process. You can specifically enable and disable autonomous lasing.

➤ **To enable or disable autonomous lasing:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Laser Designator > Lase Autonomous**. The Lase Autonomous dialog box opens.

---

The Lase Autonomous dialog box does not show the current lasing state of the entity.

---

3. Select an option from the list (Yes or No).
4. Click OK.

## 34.41. Laser Code

The Laser Code set data request sets the code for laser beams sent by an entity and the code that the entity's missiles seek when they fire. By default, VR-Forces calculates a laser code for each laser-capable entity when it is created. You can change the laser code to a code of your choice. For information about the consequences of setting laser codes, please see "9.4.2 Lasing Targets" on page 287.

➤ **To set a laser code:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Laser Designator > Laser Code**. The Laser Code dialog box opens.
3. Type a number between 1111 and 1788, using only the digits 1-8.
4. Click OK.

## 34.42. Laser Power and Wavelength

The Laser Power and Wavelength set data request lets you specify the power and wavelength for a laser designator. VR-Forces does not use these settings when it simulates laser designators. However the information is sent over the network for use by applications that can use it. For example, the color of the laser designator can be set based on the wavelength if it is visualized in another application.

The dialog box does not report the current value, so if you only want to change one value, set the other one to -1 to keep the current value.

➤ **To set the laser power and wavelength for a lasing entity:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Laser Designator > Laser Power and Wavelength**. The Laser Power and Wavelength dialog box opens.
3. Specify the Power value, in watts. Setting it to -1 preserves the current value.
4. Specify the Wavelength value, in microns. Setting it to -1 preserves the current value.
5. Click OK.

## 34.43. Loadout

The F/A-18 Hornet is able to use the Loadout set data request, which changes the number of different kinds of missiles currently loaded on the entity. This enables you to change the missiles available for use by the entity during the course of a simulation.

You can use *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/scripts/set-loadout.lua* as an example for creating your own script to change the current missile loadouts for an entity.

**Table 35. Loadout settings**

| Loadout | Missile Distribution |
|---|---|
| Default | • Maverick = 2<br>• Sidewinder = 2<br>• AMRAAM = 2<br>• Harpoon = 0 |
| Intercept | • Maverick = 0<br>• Sidewinder = 2<br>• AMRAAM = 6<br>• Harpoon = 0 |
| Surface | • Maverick = 0<br>• Sidewinder = 0<br>• AMRAAM = 2<br>• Harpoon = 4 |
| Ground | • Maverick = 4<br>• Sidewinder = 0<br>• AMRAAM = 2<br>• Harpoon = 0 |

➤ **To set the missile loadout for an F/A-18 Hornet:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Loadout**. The Loadout dialog box opens.
3. Specify the Loadout. Table 35 shows the missile counts in each setting.
4. Click OK.

## 34.44. Location

To move a simulation object instantly from one place to another, you can set its location or you can drag it to a new location. For information about dragging simulation objects, please see "14.9.1 Dragging an Object to a New Location" on page 384. For ground entities, specifying an altitude lets you place an entity at different levels (floors) in buildings that have interior geometry.

➤ **To set location:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Position > Location**. The Location dialog box opens. It displays the simulation object's current location. The cursor changes to input mode.
3. Click on the terrain where you want to move the simulation object, or enter the coordinates of the location in the Location dialog box.
4. Optionally, set the altitude, as described in "14.4. Specifying an Object's Altitude" on page 380.
5. Click OK.

## 34.45. Look At

The Look At set data request tells a human entity to look at a point, an object, or an angle. This set causes the entity's head to move, not its body. It will move up to 90 degrees to either side (azimuth) and up to 45 degrees of elevation (where looking straight ahead is 0 degrees). If the target object or location is at a greater angle than the maximum allowed amount, the head does not turn.

The range of head motion is configurable in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/platforms/human.ope* in the **look-at-actuator**. It is specified in radians.

You can also use this set data request to stop the look at behavior.

➤ **To have an entity look at a location or object:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Look At**. The Look At dialog box opens.
3. Select the Look At option you want.

4. Specify the appropriate parameter for the aiming choice:
   - Look at Point – specify the location.
   - Look at Object – select the object.
   - Look at Angle – specify the azimuth (heading) and elevation.
   - Cease Looking – no parameters required.
5. Click OK.

## 34.46. Markings

Some vehicles are configured with texture maps that let you dynamically change exterior markings, such as a national flag, unit type, and other emblems. You can change the markings at run time. Figure 283 shows a C-130 aircraft with U.S.A.F. markings and desert camouflage, and the same model with R.A.F. markings and forest camouflage.

**Figure 283. Changing markings**

If you assign this set to a unit, the markings are passed to its subordinates.

For details about configuring markings, please see "62.2.8 Specifying Visual Markings" on page 1275 and *"Adding Dynamically Changeable Markings to Models"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

➤ **To set a simulation object's markings:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Markings**. The Markings dialog box opens.
3. In each list, select the markings that you want to set for this object.
4. Click OK.

## 34.47. Navigation Enabled

By default, ground vehicles and humans use the navigation data in navigation areas to plan movement. The Navigation Enabled set data request lets you disable use of navigation data.

Navigation is disabled on a per-entity basis. If you disable navigation for an entity, other entities still treat that entity as an obstacle for navigation purposes.

➤ **To enable or disable use of navigation data:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Navigation Enabled**. The Navigation Enabled dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the Enabled list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.48. Navigation Preferences

The Navigation Preferences set data request allows you to specify that when an entity plans its path using navigation data, it should take into account road data, if it is available.

When an entity is set to Prefer Roads, the entity gives preference to all segments along the preferred graph over those on the non-preferred movement graph. This is typically used to have vehicles prefer movement along roads, rather than cutting across open terrain, even if the distance along roads is longer.

If the movement mode is Avoid Roads, entities try not to move along roads. If they must cross a road, they take the shortest path across the road.

Entities can also ignore roads.

You can configure an entity to start up with a navigation preference or to ignore roads by editing the **initial-road-preference** parameter in the **navigation-preference** controller in the movement system definition file for this entity type.

➤ **To set navigation preferences:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Navigation Preferences**. The Navigation Preferences dialog box opens.
3. To have the entity take road data into account, select Prefer Roads or Avoid Roads from the Navigation Preferences list. To have an entity plan its path as if there were no road data, select Ignore Roads.
4. Click OK.

## 34.49. Navigation Priority

The Navigation Priority set data request allows you to specify whether the entity should have more time for path planning. High priority entities have more path planning time than low priority entities, allowing them to move more effectively. By default, crowds are set to low and all other entities are set to high.

➤ **To set navigation priority:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Navigation Priority**. The Navigation Priority dialog box opens.

3. To give the entity higher priority for path planning time, select High Priority from the list. To reduce the time the entity has for path planning, select Low Priority.
4. Click OK.

## 34.50. Notify Level

You can set the notification level for simulation object console messages without opening the Information dialog box. You can also set the notification level for combat engineering objects in aggregate-level scenarios.

➤ **To set the notification level:**

1. Choose **Set >Other > Notify Level**. The Notify Level dialog box opens.
2. Select a notification level in the list.
3. Click OK.

## 34.51. Orbit

The Orbit set data request lets you specify the orbit for a satellite. You can specify a Kepler orbit or a geostationary orbit. Kepler orbits are specified by two-line elements. They are available at http://celestrak.com/ and https://www.space-track.org.

➤ **To set the orbit for a satellite:**

1. Select the satellite.
2. Choose **Set > Position > Orbit**. The Orbit dialog box opens.
3. To set a Kepler orbit:
    a. Select the Kepler Orbit option. The input window is enabled.
    b. Paste in the two-line element that you want to use.
4. To set a geostationary orbit:
    a. Select the Geostationary Orbit option.
    b. Type the longitude of the orbit, in degrees.
5. Click OK.

## 34.52. Ordered Speed

The ordered speed is the speed at which you want a simulation object to move. It may not move at that actual speed due to soil type, slope, and so on. In aggregate-level scenarios, speed may be affected by modifiers. If you set the speed while a simulation object is moving, it accelerates or decelerates from the current speed to the new ordered speed, if it can.

A negative value causes the entity to go backwards if it supports backwards movement.

- Regardless of the speed that you enter, a simulation object's speed cannot exceed the value set by the **max-speed** parameter in the object parameter database.
- The Ordered Speed request sets the ordered speed of a fixed-wing entity in its current context – air or ground. The entity will not exceed the maximum speed for that context. However, if the maximum allowable ground speed is greater than the lift speed of the entity, and you assign an ordered speed greater than the lift speed, when the entity reaches that speed, it tries to take off.
- If you want a simulation object's speed to change instantly, use the Current Speed set data request ("34.17. Current Speed" on page 804).
- If a simulation object is not moving, this set data request has no effect.
- You can quickly change the ordered speed for aircraft and marine entities using the Entity Control Panel. For details, please see "26.1. Assigning Tasks Using the Entity Control Panel" on page 575

➤ **To set the ordered speed of an object:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Ordered Speed**. The Ordered Speed dialog box opens.
3. In the Ordered Speed text box, set the speed.
4. For aircraft entities, specify the measurement of the speed: Ground Speed, TAS (true airspeed), IAS (indicated air speed), or Mach.
5. Click OK.

## 34.53. Pitch

Some simulation objects allow you to set the pitch. The Pitch request instantly sets a simulation object's pitch. You can also set a simulation object's pitch manually. For more information, please see "14.6. Specifying an Object's Pitch Dynamically" on page 382.

➤ **To set an object's pitch:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Position > Pitch**. The Pitch dialog box opens, displaying the simulation object's current pitch.
3. In the Pitch text box, type a pitch, in degrees. You can enter a number between 90 and -90.
4. Click OK.

# 34.54. Posture (Human)

A human entity (civilian or dismounted infantry) has a posture that determines its position when it is not moving and its type of movement when it is moving. Table 36 lists the position and movement relationships for each posture.

**Table 36. Posture relationships**

| Posture | When it is not moving, it is: | When it is moving, it is: |
|---|---|---|
| standing | standing | walking or running |
| kneeling | kneeling | crawling |
| prone | prone | crawling |
| running | standing | walking or running |
| walking | standing | walking or running |
| crawling | prone | crawling |
| parachuting | standing | walking or running |
| jumping | standing | walking or running |
| sitting | standing | walking |
| squatting | prone | crawling |
| crouching | prone | crawling |
| wading | standing | walking or running |

- For those postures listed as “walking or running”, VR-Forces sets the movement posture based on the entity’s speed.
- If an entity does not support a particular posture, it is set to the closest supported posture.
- Setting posture in the Lifeform State field of the Appearance dialog box has the same effect as setting the posture using the Posture set data request.
- Some embarkation slots specify the posture of occupants.

➤ **To set a lifeform’s posture:**

1. Select the lifeform.
2. Choose **Set>Action>Posture**. The Posture dialog box opens.
3. Select a posture from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.55. Preferred Trajectory Height

The Preferred Trajectory Height set data request specifies the preferred height for indirect fire munitions, such as Fire for Effect tasks and munitions that are not triggered by a task. Indirect fire tasks override the preferred trajectory height if they need to use a different trajectory to hit the target.

➤ **To specify a preferred trajectory height:**

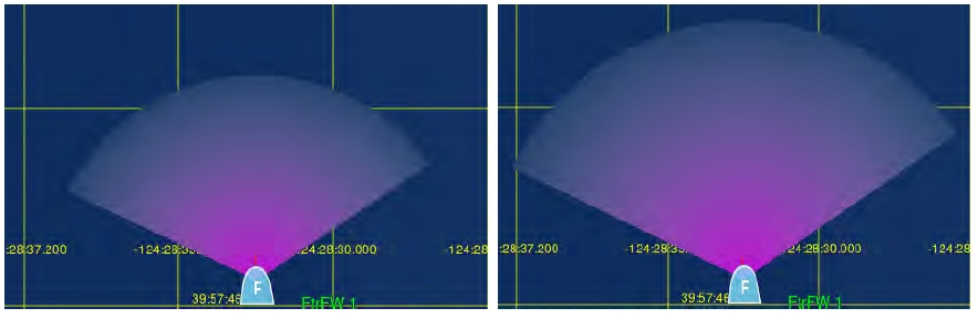
1. Select an entity that has indirect fire capability.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Preferred Trajectory Height**. The Preferred Trajectory Height dialog box opens.
3. Specify the desired altitude.
4. Click OK.

## 34.56. Radar Mode

The Radar Mode set data request lets you change the type of beam that an entity emitter publishes. By default, each fixed-wing aircraft has one emitter that has two beam types, search and track.

Figure 284 illustrates the difference in appearance between the beams for the two radar modes in the 2D view. (The beams do not display unless you show emitter volumes.)

**Figure 284. Radar mode beams**




For more information about emitter beams, please see "73.1. Configuring Emitters" on page 1496.

➤ **To set the radar mode:**

1. Select the entity whose radar mode you want to set.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Radar Mode**. The Radar Mode dialog box opens.
3. If the entity has more than one emitter, select the emitter ID you want to set in the Emitter ID list.
4. Select the mode in the Mode list.

## 34.57. Remote Sensor

The Remote Sensor set data request lets an entity use another entity's sensors to discover sensor contacts. This set data request is only available to entities that have a Remote Sensor Receiver system.

An example of using a remote sensor is the Patriot Missile Battery. The Patriot Engagement Control System has a Remote Sensor Receiver system. It receives spot reports from the Patriot Radar AN/MPQ-65.

➤ **To specify a remote sensor for an entity:**

1. Select the entity that needs to receive remote spot reports.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Remote Sensor**. The Remote Sensor dialog box opens.
3. Select the remote entity (the entity from which this entity wants to receive spot reports).
4. Click OK.

## 34.58. Remove Jamming Target

The Remove Jamming Target set data request tells an entity to stop jamming the specified target. You can only remove one target at a time using this set, but you can issue it multiple times to remove multiple jamming targets. The Remove Jamming Target dialog box lists all entities. There is no list available that only lists jamming targets.

➤ **To remove a jamming target:**

1. Select the entity that is jamming.
2. Choose **Set > Jammer > Remove Jamming Target**. The Remove Jamming Target dialog box opens.
3. Select the target to stop jamming.
4. Click OK.

## 34.59. Reorganize

If automatic reorganization is not enabled, you can reorganize a unit by issuing the Reorganize set data request.

➤ **To reorganize a unit:**

1. Select the unit that you want to reorganize.
2. Choose **Set > Unit > Reorganize**.

The change takes place immediately. For more information about reorganization, please see "Reorganizing Units" on page 489.

## 34.60. Resources

You can specify the value to assign to a resource. In entity-level scenarios, the resources provided with VR-Forces that you can set are fuel and ammunition. The object parameter database lists the ammunition types available for each type of simulation object. In aggregate-level scenarios a simulation object might not have any resources, depending on how it is configured in the Simulation Object Editor.

➤ **To specify a resource:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Resources**. The Resources dialog box opens.
3. Select a resource from the Resource list. The dialog box displays the maximum amount of the resource allowed, as configured in the object parameter database.
4. Specify a value for the resource.
5. Click OK.

## 34.61. Restore

Restoring a simulation object returns its resources to the default values specified in the Simulation Model Set. If the simulation object is destroyed, it returns it to life.

---

When you restore an entity-level unit that is in the aggregated state (using Restore), the original configuration of the unit is recreated. If you restore a unit that is in the disaggregated state, then only those subordinates still present in the simulation are restored. Any destroyed subordinates that were previously removed from the simulation as result of a disaggregate--> aggregate-->disaggregate transition are not restored. To fully recover all subordinates, restore the unit while in the aggregated state.

---

➤ **To restore an object:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Restore**.

## 34.62. Rules of Engagement

Rules of engagement specify the conditions under which a simulation object will fire at the enemy. The options are:

- Fire at Will. If an entity detects a target, it can fire automatically.
- Fire When Fired Upon. Do not fire at detected targets unless the simulation object has already been under fire.

- Fire When In Engagement Zone. If a detected target is in an engagement zone that is associated with the firing simulation object, it may fire at the target at will.
- Fire on Priority Targets Only. Fire only at targets in the simulation object's target priority list. Please see "34.79. Target Priority List - Add" on page 834, to learn how to add targets to the priority list.
- Hold Fire. Do not fire at targets.

---

The rules of engagement for a fixed-wing entity are in effect whether it is on the ground or in the air. If you do not want fixed-wing entities to fire missiles while they are on the ground, you must change the rules of engagement.

---

➤ **To specify the rules of engagement:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Rules of Engagement**, or click the Rules of Engagement button ( ) on the Sets Toolbar. The Rules of Engagement dialog box opens.
3. In the Rules of Engagement list, select the rule you want to apply.
4. Click OK.

### 34.62.1 How Fire-When-Fired-Upon Works

A simulation object considers itself under fire if either of the following is true:

- An "Entity Impact" detonation interaction that targeted this entity has recently (within **underFireTime** seconds (default 120)) been received.
- Any detonation has happened within **underFireDistance** (default 1000 meters) of this entity.

There is no attempt to return fire specifically at the attacking entity. If a simulation object thinks that it is under fire, it will fire at any enemies that it can target.

---

The **underFireTime** and **underFireDistance** parameters are part of the under-fire-determination-sensor component in a simulation object's platform (OPE) file.

---

## 34.63. Sector Blanking

When Sector Blanking is enabled, targets within the specified sector are not spotted. This set data request is available to simulation objects that have a radar sensor. Sector blanking parameters are stored on a per-entity basis and are saved in the scenario and checkpoint files.

Sectors are defined by a start azimuth and end azimuth. They are relative to the entity orientation, with 0 degrees being directly ahead.

➤ **To enable or disable sector blanking:**

1. Select a simulation object that has a radar sensor.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Sector Blanking**. The Sector Blanking dialog box opens.
3. Select or clear the Enable Sector Blanking check box.
4. If you are enabling sector blanking, specify a start azimuth and end azimuth, with 0 degrees being directly ahead of the simulation object.
5. Click OK.

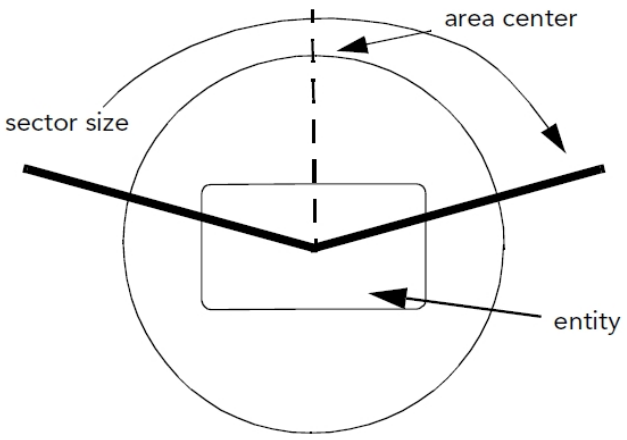
## 34.64. Sector of Responsibility

A simulation object's sector of responsibility is used with detection tables to determine the priority of targets. Normally, the priority of targets that are outside a simulation object's sector of responsibility is lower than the priority of targets in its sector of responsibility. For information about the target detection tables, please see "69.2. Detection Tables" on page 1441.

You must specify a sector center and a sector size. Sector center is the center of the area you wish to designate, and sector size is the size of the area, both in degrees. Degrees are measured as 0 to the front (based on the heading), increasing clockwise. If the Turret Scan Controller is mounted on an entity with an articulating turret, then the turret scans the sector of responsibility specified. Sector center is the midpoint of the area. Figure 285 illustrates these parameters. The sector size is approximately 140 degrees, a bit less than half the circle. The sector center is at 0 degrees.

The default sector of responsibility is 90 degrees, centered at zero degrees.

**Figure 285. Sector of responsibility parameters**



➤ **To set an object's sector of responsibility:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Sector of Responsibility**. The Sector of Responsibility dialog box opens.
3. In the Size text box, set the size of the area to be scanned, in degrees.
4. In the Center text box, set the center of the scan area, in degrees.
5. Click OK.

## 34.65. Sensor Aim

The Sensor Aim set data request specifies where a gimbaled sensor should look.

You can also aim a gimbaled sensor from the Sensor View Control Panel. For details, please see "55.4.2 Controlling the Sensor View" on page 1152.

➤ **To aim a sensor:**

1. Select an entity that has a gimbaled visual sensor.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Sensor Aim**. The Sensor Aim dialog box opens.
3. Choose an aiming option and provide the required input, as follows:
   - Aim at Point. Click on the terrain or type in coordinates. By default, the altitude is the altitude of the entity.
   - Aim at Object. Select the simulation object to aim at.
   - Aim at Angle. Specify the Azimuth (the horizontal angle relative to the sensing entity) and elevation (the vertical angle that the sensor aims at).
   - Scan. By default, the sensor scans back and forth within a 180 degree range. You can change the elevation and azimuth angles in the gimbaled sensor system definition file.
4. Click OK.

## 34.66. Sensor Field of View Color

The Sensor Field of View Color set data request lets you override the color that VR-Forces automatically assigns to the field of view.

➤ **To specify the color of a sensor field of view:**

1. Select an entity that has a sensor.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Sensor Field of View Color**. The Sensor Field of View Color dialog box opens.
3. In the Sensor list, select the sensor you want to specify the color of.
4. Click the color swatch. A color picker dialog box opens.
5. Select the color you want.

6. Click OK to close the color picker.
7. Click OK.

## 34.67. Sensor Zoom

The Sensor Zoom set data request lets you change the field of view of a gimbaled visual sensor, essentially zooming in on the aim point.

You can also zoom a gimbaled sensor from the Sensor View Control Panel. For details, please see "55.4.2 Controlling the Sensor View" on page 1152.

➤ **To zoom a visual sensor:**

1. Select the entity whose sensor you want to zoom.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Sensor Zoom**. The Sensor Zoom dialog box opens.
3. If the entity has more than one sensor, in the Sensor list, select the sensor you want to zoom.
4. Type the zoom level you want or drag the slider.
5. Click OK.

## 34.68. Set TACAN Transmitter

The Set TACAN Transmitter set data request allows you to set fixed-wing aircraft and TACAN Ground Station entities to publish tactical air navigation aids. These are published on the network as a type of radio transmission.

➤ **To set the TACAN transmitter:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Other > Set TACAN Transmitter**. The Set TACAN Transmitter dialog box opens.
3. From the Operational Status list, choose either On or Off.
4. Enter an identification code.
5. Enter a channel number between 1 and 126.
6. In the list next to Channel, select X or Y to indicate the pulse band.
7. Click OK.

## 34.69. Skill Level

The Skill Level set data request allows you to specify an entity's level of skill with hand-held or ballistic weapons systems. There are three levels: Novice, Experienced, and Expert. The skill level is a modifier on the probability of a hit for hand-held or ballistic weapons. On indirect fire, it acts as a modifier on the error of the shot. The default skill level for all simulation objects is Expert.

Each weapon system has a configurable maximum effect that the skill level can have on its probability. For example, a weapon with built-in corrections would not be affected as much as a hand-held M16. The skill level is a percentage modifier that is

applied to the probability to hit. The maximum effect can be set differently for different weapon systems in the Simulation Object Editor. If the maximum effect is set to .20 (20%), then the probability can shift as much as 20% for a novice, 10% for an experienced entity, and 0% for an expert.

In addition, the modifier affects the three positional errors on indirect artillery and mortars, which are also set in the Simulation Object Editor. The error of indirect fire is set to be close to standard error data points. You can also edit the object to vary the error of indirect fire based on the range at which the munition is being fired.

➤ **To set an entity's skill level:**

1. Select the entity whose skill level you want to adjust.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Skill Level**. The Skill Level dialog box opens.
3. In the Skill Level list, select the level that you want the entity to have.
4. Click OK.

## 34.70. Sonar Depth

The Sonar Depth set data request lets you set the depth at which an entity's sonar operates. This allows you to simulate a helicopter dipping a sonar sensor into the water or a vessel dipping a sensor to a lower depth. Since sonar only works when the sensor is in the water, setting the sonar depth is the only way for helicopter-born sonar to work.

The sonar stays at this depth regardless of the altitude or depth of the entity. If you set the depth to be the depth of the entity with the Use Entity Depth option, it has the effect of retracting the sonar. If you set the sonar to the depth of the entity and the entity changes depth, the sonar stays at the assigned depth.

➤ **To set sonar depth:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Sonar Depth**. The Sonar Depth dialog box opens.
3. Specify the depth.
4. Optionally, select Use Entity Depth to set a dipped sonar to the depth of the entity.
5. Click OK.

## 34.71. Spot Reports

A spot report is a report by a simulation object to members of its force that it has detected a member of another force. You can use spot reports for display only (meaning you see spot-reported entities but members of your force are not aware of them), or for avoidance and targeting (meaning members of your force can "see" them too).

For display purposes, you can set spot reports on or off for all simulation objects (global setting) from the Spot Report Settings page of the Application Settings dialog box. For more information about spot reports, including setting them globally, see "9.1. Displaying Spot-Reported Simulation Objects" on page 274.

For avoidance and targeting purposes, you must enable the display of spot-reported simulation objects as described in "9.1. Displaying Spot-Reported Simulation Objects" on page 274, and also set each simulation object you want to avoid/target either to broadcast spot reports or to send spot reports to particular simulation objects in your force, as described here.

---

You cannot set a unit in an entity-level scenario to send spot reports; you can only set spot reports for individual simulation objects. However, you can select multiple individual simulation objects and set spot reports for all of them at the same time.

---

➤ **To set spot reports on or off:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Sensors > Spot Reports**. The Spot Reports dialog box opens. If you are turning spot reports off, skip to step 5.
3. Select one of the following options:
   - Only to Front End. Do not send spot reports to other back-ends or to other simulation objects. This option can improve performance. However, since entities do not receive the spot reports, they cannot use that information for targeting purposes. Choose this option if you simply want to display the objects sensed by this entity.
   - Broadcast. Send spot reports to all simulation objects in the same unit as the entity sending the spot report. (This is based on the behavior of radio messages because spot reports are transmitted as radio messages.)
   - Send to Specific Entities. Send spot reports to simulation objects that you specify.
4. If you selected Send to Specific Entities, the simulation object list is enabled. Select the simulation objects to which you want this simulation object to send spot reports.
5. Select an option from the Spot Reports Enabled list. If you choose On or Off, the setting persists regardless of the global spot report setting. If you want the simulation object to use the global spot report setting, choose Use Global Setting.
6. Click OK.

## 34.72. Stow Hand Item

The Stow Hand Item set data request hides or displays a hand item for a human character.

➤ **To stow or display a hand item:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Stow Hand Item**. The Stow Hand Item dialog box opens.
3. In the Stow Item list, select Yes or No.
4. Click OK.

## 34.73. Subsystem Enabled

The Subsystem Enabled set data request enables or disables one of the entity's subsystems. Only certain subsystems can be enabled or disabled, such as sensors and weapons.

➤ **To enable or disable a subsystem:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Subsystems > Subsystem Enabled**. The System Enabled dialog box opens.
3. In the subsystem list, select the subsystem that you want to enable or disable, or select All.
4. In the Enabled list, select Yes or No.
5. Click OK.

## 34.74. Superior

The Superior set data request lets you add a simulation object (individual or unit) to a unit or move a simulation object from a unit to the force level. The superior unit must already exist. For entity-level scenarios, the superior unit must be disaggregated. For aggregate-level scenarios, the superior must be a higher echelon unit.

➤ **To specify an object's superior:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Other > Superior**. The Superior dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, filter the list.
4. Select the unit that you want to be this simulation object's superior. If you want to move the simulation object out of a unit to the force level, select the Set Force As Superior check box.
5. Click OK.

## 34.75. Surrendered

The Surrendered set data request only applies to lifeforms. When a lifeform is in the surrendered state, it does not fire at other simulation objects and other simulation objects do not fire at it.

➤ **To set an entity to be surrendered:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Surrendered**. The Surrendered dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.76. Synchronize Laser Code

The Synchronize Laser Code set data request lets an entity with laser-guided weapons easily synchronize its laser code with the laser code of the lasing entity. The alternative to this command would be to use the Laser Code set data request to set the code for the lasing entity and the firing entity.

➤ **To synchronize laser codes:**

1. Select the entity that has a laser-guided weapon.
2. Choose **Set > Laser Designator > Synchronize Laser Code**. The Synchronize Laser Code dialog box opens.
3. Select the lasing entity that you want this entity to synchronize with.
4. Click OK. The laser code for the selected entity is changed to match that of the lasing entity.

## 34.77. Tanker Lighting

The Tanker Lighting set data request causes an air tanker to publish its lighting information as specified. The 3D visuals on the fixed wing model reflect the lighting if the model is configured with those lights.

There is also a generic lighting set data request for all fixed-wing aircraft: Aircraft Lighting. See "34.5. Aircraft Lighting" on page 799.

➤ **To set the lights on a air tanker:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Tanker Lighting**. The Tanker Lighting dialog box opens.
3. Specify the settings for the lights.
4. Click OK.

## 34.78. Target

You can command an entity to specifically target another entity. For this set data request to be effective, the target must be visible to the targeting entity. When you set a target, you override the priorities set by the target selection controller. If the specified target is in the list of candidate targets, it gets the highest priority as a target. However, if the specified target is not visible as a target to the targeting entity, the entity fires at the other available targets. It does not keep looking for the specified target.

➤ **To set an entity's target:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Target**. The Target dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, filter the entity selection list.
4. In the Target list, or on the terrain, select the entity to target.
5. Click OK.

# 34.79. Target Priority List - Add

The Target Priority List - Add set data request allows you to set a simulation object's priority for targeting other entities in the scenario. You can specify that the simulation object should only target the entities in the priority list using the Rules of Engagement set data request as described in "34.62. Rules of Engagement" on page 825. To remove all items from a target priority list, use the Clear Target Priority List set data request; see "34.80. Target Priority List - Clear" below for more information.

➤ **To add a target to the priority list:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Target Priority List - Add**. The Target Priority list dialog box opens.
3. From the Priority list, select High, Medium, or Low.
4. Optionally, filter the entity selection list. The default is Opposing Entities unless there are no opposing entities in the scenario.
5. In the Target list or on the terrain, select the entity to target.
6. Click OK.

## 34.79.1 Viewing the Target Priority List

You can view an entity's list of prioritized targets using the viewing the State Data page of the Information dialog box or the Target Priority List -Update set data request. (For the latter, see "34.81. Target Priority List - Update" on the facing page.)

➤ **To view the current target priority list in the State Data page:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Objects > Information**.
3. Select the State Data page.
4. Scroll to the Target Priority List line.

# 34.80. Target Priority List - Clear

Use the Target Priority List - Clear set data request to remove all targets from an entity's priority list. This applies to all targets that were added to or updated in the target priority list. See "34.79. Target Priority List - Add" above, and "34.81. Target

Priority List - Update" on the facing page.

➤ To remove entities from a target priority list, select the entity and then choose **Set > Engagement > Target Priority List - Clear**.

## 34.81. Target Priority List - Update

The Target Priority List - Update set data request allows you to add and remove targets from an entity's priority list, as well as change the priority for each target.

---

You cannot use the Target Priority List - Update set data request in plans. Use it to manage an entity's target priority list outside of plans.

---

➤ **To update an entity's target priority list:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Target Priority List - Update**. The Update Target Priority List dialog box opens.
3. Manage the list of targets:
   - To add a target to the list, click the Add button ( ). In the Add to Target Priority List dialog box, select the priority and the target, and then click OK.
   - To remove a target from the list, select the row and then click the Delete button ( ).
   - To change a target's priority, select High, Medium, or Low from that target's Priority list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.82. Tasked by Superior

You can order a simulation object that is part of a unit, and which is executing its own plan or is conducting an independent task, to stop executing those tasks and take commands from its unit. When you order a simulation object to be tasked by its superior, it stops conducting independent tasks and waits for the next order from the unit. (It does not execute the unit's current task, if any.) For more information about being tasked by superior, please see "25.2.2 Independently Tasking Unit Members" on page 552.

➤ **To order an object to be tasked by its superior:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Other > Tasked by Superior**.

## 34.83. TDL Messaging

The TDL Messaging set data request enables or disables TDL messages for a simulation object or sets it to use the global setting.

➤ **To specify TDL messaging:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Other > TDL Messaging**. The TDL Messaging dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the TDL Messaging Enabled list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.84. Tracer Use

You can specify use of tracer rounds for entities that have weapons that support them. To see tracers, you must enable them for the observer you are using. They are not supported in 2D observer modes.

➤ **To enable or disable use of tracers:**

1. Select the entity for which you want to enable or disable use of tracers.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Tracer Use**. The Tracer Use dialog box opens.
3. Choose an option from the Use Tracers list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.85. Undetectable

The Undetectable set data request sets any simulation object to be undetectable by other objects. The undetectable, or stealth state has the following characteristics:

- Objects in stealth mode can take damage. They are not invulnerable. This means that missiles/bullets can still impact with stealth mode entities. Missiles already launched at an entity while it is not in stealth mode will continue to track an entity even after it is turned to stealth mode, and may hit and destroy it.
- Stealth mode entities can trigger mines.
- Lua scripts using the getObjectsNear() function will find stealth objects in the list, but may check the "stealth" property of the object if the particular script should ignore stealth entities.
- Collision avoidance takes into account stealth entities.
- Stealth entities block line of sight checks that pass through them, just as they would if they were not stealth.

➤ **To set a simulation object to be undetectable:**

1. Select the entity you want to be undetectable.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Undetectable**. The Undetectable dialog box opens.

3. Select an option in the Undetectable list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.86. Unit State

The Unit State request lets you change an entity-level unit from the aggregated state to the disaggregated state and the reverse.

➤ **To set a unit's aggregation state:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Set > Unit > Unit State**. The Unit State dialog box opens.
3. Select the desired state from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 34.87. Urgency (Human)

The Urgency set data request controls the speed at which a human entity performs animations, such as transitions between postures.

➤ **To set a human's urgency:**

1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Set > Action > Urgency**. The Urgency dialog box opens.
3. Use the Urgency list to specify the level of urgency, from Slowest to Immediate. Immediate skips any transition animations. The other urgency settings move through the animations at various speeds.

# 35. Setting the State of Aggregate-Level Simulation Objects


35.1. Activity ..... 841
35.2. Ammunition ..... 841
35.3. Ammunition Pacing/Tracking ..... 841
35.4. Assign Aircraft ..... 842
    35.4.1 Editing Aircraft Assignments ..... 843
    35.4.2 Deleting Aircraft Assignments ..... 843
35.5. Assume Unknown is Hostile ..... 844
35.6. Capabilities ..... 844
35.7. Concealed ..... 844
35.8. Contamination ..... 844
35.9. Current Speed ..... 844
35.10. Destroyed ..... 844
35.11. Disembarked ..... 844
35.12. Embarked ..... 844
35.13. Emitter ..... 844
35.14. Engagement Zones ..... 845
35.15. Engagement Results ..... 845
35.16. Equipment Pacing/Tracking ..... 845
35.17. Facilities ..... 845
35.18. Food, Water, Fuel, Oil and Lubricant ..... 846
35.19. Food, Water, Fuel, Oil and Lubricant Pacing/Tracking ..... 847
35.20. Force ..... 847
35.21. Has Drag Chute ..... 847
35.22. Heading ..... 847
35.23. Health ..... 848
35.24. IFF ..... 848
35.25. Loadout ..... 848
35.26. Location ..... 848

35.27. MOPP Level ..... 848
35.28. Morale ..... 849
35.29. Notify Level ..... 849
35.30. Ordered Speed ..... 849
35.31. Percent Complete ..... 849
35.32. Personnel and Supplies ..... 849
35.33. Posture (Unit) ..... 850
35.34. Preferred Targets ..... 850
35.35. Radar Mode ..... 850
35.36. Reorganize ..... 850
35.37. Resources ..... 851
35.38. Resources Pacing/Tracking ..... 851
35.39. Restore ..... 851
35.40. Resupply Mode ..... 851
35.41. Role ..... 852
35.42. Rules of Engagement ..... 852
35.43. Sector of Responsibility ..... 852
35.44. Spot Reports ..... 852
35.45. Subsystem Enabled ..... 852
35.46. Superior ..... 852
35.47. Supplying ..... 852
35.48. Tasked by Superior ..... 852
35.49. TDL Messaging ..... 853
35.50. Weapons Pacing/Tracking ..... 853

## 35.1. Activity

You can give a simulation object an activity. Activities are configured by simulation object type, so they may vary from one simulation object to another. Some of the available activities include the following:

- Unknown
- Attacking
- Bivouacking
- Emplacing obstacle
- Indirect fire
- Jamming
- Other
- Patrolling
- Probing
- Retreating

➤ **To specify an activity:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Activity**. The Activity dialog box opens.
3. Select an activity from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 35.2. Ammunition

You can specify the amount of each type of ammunition that a simulation object has.

➤ **To set the ammunition level:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Ammunition**. The Ammunition dialog box opens.
3. Select the check box for each type of ammunition that you want to set.
4. For each selected type of ammunition, adjust the slider or type a value.
5. Click OK.

## 35.3. Ammunition Pacing/Tracking

Ammunition Pacing/Tracking lets you specify that a particular ammunition type be marked as pacing, tracking, or neither. Pacing indicates that the status of this item is critical to the mission. Tracking indicates that the commander is interested in the status of this item. These designations do not affect the simulation. They are reported for use by external systems.

➤ **To specify pacing or tracking for a unit's ammunition:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Ammunition Pacing/Tracking**. The Ammunition Pacing/Tracking dialog box opens.
3. Select the check box for each type of ammunition for which you want to specify pacing or tracking.
4. For each selected ammunition type, select an option from the list.
5. Click OK.

## 35.4. Assign Aircraft

The Assign Aircraft set data request lets you assign aircraft to an air base, edit existing assignments, and remove aircraft from the air base.

The aircraft assignments process works differently depending on whether you are using it directly from the Set menu or as part of a plan. When you assign aircraft from the Set menu, the Assign Aircraft shows all of the aircraft types currently assigned to the air base and the amount of each type of aircraft. By default (the Set Assigned Aircraft to This List option), when you click OK the new or updated list of assigned aircraft replaces whatever the previous list was. This is the way set data requests typically work.

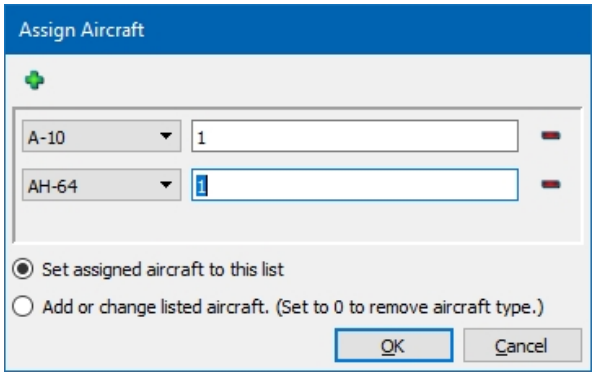
If you include an Assign Aircraft set data request in a plan, there is no way to know what the state of aircraft assignments will be when the plan statement is executed. Therefore, the default behavior for Assign Aircraft when used in a plan is to add or change only the specific aircraft assignments listed in the Assign Aircraft dialog box, rather than resetting all aircraft assignments (the Add or Change Listed Aircraft option).

The Assign Aircraft dialog box has a set of option buttons whose default settings support the different use cases described in previous paragraphs. However, you can choose the alternative options if you want to.

➤ **To add an aircraft type to an air base:**

1. Select the airbase.
2. Choose **Set > Air Base > Assign Aircraft**. The Assign Aircraft dialog box opens (Figure 286). If the air base already has aircraft assigned to it, they are listed in the window along with the number of each type assigned. (If you are editing a plan, the current aircraft assignments are not listed.)

**Figure 286. Assign Aircraft dialog box**




3. For each aircraft type that you want to assign to the air base:
   a. Click the Add button ( ). A row is added to the dialog box window.
   b. In the aircraft list, select the type of aircraft you want to add.
   c. In the text box, type the number of this type of aircraft you want to add.
4. Optionally, edit any existing aircraft assignments.
5. Select the appropriate option button. (It is usually best to accept the default option.)
6. Click OK.

## 35.4.1 Editing Aircraft Assignments

You can add or remove aircraft types for an air base and you can change the number of aircraft of a specific type. When you add aircraft, they are added in the Available state. No fuel, munitions, or air crews are added.

If you reduce the number of aircraft of a specific type, the aircraft are taken from the Available aircraft first, followed by In-Repair and Assigned. If Assigned aircraft are removed, their fuel, munitions, and air crews are returned to the air base.

## 35.4.2 Deleting Aircraft Assignments

➤ **To delete an aircraft assignment for an air base:**

1. Select the airbase.
2. Choose **Set > Air Base > Assign Aircraft**. The Assign Aircraft dialog box opens. If the air base already has aircraft assigned to it, they are listed in the window along with the number of each type assigned. (If you are editing a plan, the current aircraft assignments are not listed.)
3. If you are not editing a plan, click the Delete button next to the row that you want to delete or set the number of aircraft to zero. If you are editing a plan, add the aircraft type that you want to delete and set its amount to 0.

4. Select the appropriate option button. (It is usually best to accept the default option.)
5. Click OK.

## 35.5. Assume Unknown is Hostile

For details, please see "34.10. Assume Unknown is Hostile" on page 801.

## 35.6. Capabilities

For details, please see "34.13. Capabilities" on page 802.

## 35.7. Concealed

For details, please see "34.15. Concealed" on page 804.

## 35.8. Contamination

The Contamination set data request lets you set the contamination type for a simulation object.

➤ **To set contamination:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Contamination**. The Contamination dialog box opens.
3. Select a contamination type from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 35.9. Current Speed

For details, please see "34.17. Current Speed" on page 804.

## 35.10. Destroyed

For details, please see "34.18. Destroyed" on page 805.

## 35.11. Disembarked

For details, please see "34.22. Disembarked" on page 807.

## 35.12. Embarked

For details, please see "34.23. Embarked" on page 807.

## 35.13. Emitter

For details, please see "34.25. Emitter" on page 808.

## 35.14. Engagement Zones

For details, please see "34.26. Engagement Zones" on page 809.

## 35.15. Engagement Results

An engagement result is a a text string that gets included in entity state update messages that get sent over the network. The purpose is for a human participant to comment on the current state of a simulation object as a simulation progresses. Once specified, the text string continues to get sent until the expiration time is reached or a new engagement result is set.

➤ **To set engagement results:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Engagement Results**. The Engagement Results dialog box opens.
3. Specify the engagement result. This can be any text you want to enter.
4. Set the expiration time in days and hours:minutes:seconds.
5. Click OK.

## 35.16. Equipment Pacing/Tracking

Equipment Pacing/Tracking lets you specify that a particular type of equipment be marked as pacing, tracking, or neither. Pacing indicates that the status of this item is critical to the mission. Tracking indicates that the commander is interested in the status of this item. These designations do not affect the simulation. They are reported for use by external systems.

➤ **To specify pacing or tracking for a unit's equipment:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Equipment Pacing/Tracking**. The Equipment Pacing/Tracking dialog box opens.
3. Select the check box for each type of equipment for which you want to specify pacing or tracking.
4. For each selected ammunition type, select an option from the list.
5. Click OK.

## 35.17. Facilities

The Facilities set data request lets you specify all of the capabilities of an air base, as follows:

- Runways. Specify a name, length, width, and main direction for each runway.
- Has Night Support. Able or not able to launch missions at night.

- ORP Aircraft Capacity. The number of units that can be in operational readiness platform parking spaces.
- Apron Area. The size of the apron. VR-Forces calculates the number of aircraft that can be on the apron based on their footprints.
- Repair Hangar Aircraft Capacity. The number of aircraft that can be in the repair hangar at one time.
- Aviation Fuel Capacity. The amount of aviation fuel the airbase can store.
- Munition Storage Capacity. The amount of munitions the air base can store.
- Barracks Capacity. The number of personnel that can be on the airbase and in the barracks.
- Is Apron Concealed.
- Is Hangar Concealed.

➤ **To specify air base facilities:**

1. Select an air base.
2. Choose **Set > Air Base > Facilities.** The Facilities dialog box opens.
3. To add a runway:
   a. Click the Add button ( ). A new runway is added to the runway list.
   b. Type values in each column of the runway description.
4. To delete a runway:
   a. Put the cursor in a cell in a runway row.
   b. Click the Delete button ( ).
5. To enable night support, select Yes in the list.
6. For the storage capacities, enter the amount of that item that you want to store in the air base.
7. To revert any settings or the configured runways to their original values, click the Revert button ( ) for that setting.
8. To set the concealment status of the apron or hangar, select an option in the appropriate list.
9. Click OK.

## 35.18. Food, Water, Fuel, Oil and Lubricant

You can set the resources for a simulation object.

➤ **To set the level of food, water, fuels, and lubricants:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Food, Water, Fuel, Oil and Lubricant**. The Food, Water, Motor-Gas, Aviation-Fuel, Diesel Fuel, Oil, Lubricant dialog box opens.
3. Select the check box for each type of resource you want to specify.
4. For each selected resource type a value.
5. Click OK.

## 35.19. Food, Water, Fuel, Oil and Lubricant Pacing/Tracking

Food, Water, Fuel, Oil, and Lubricant Pacing/Tracking lets you specify that a particular resource be marked as pacing, tracking, or neither. Pacing indicates that the status of this item is critical to the mission. Tracking indicates that the commander is interested in the status of this item. These designations do not affect the simulation. They are reported for use by external systems.

➤ **To set pacing and tracking for food, water, fuel, and lubricants:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Food, Water, Fuel, Oil and Lubricant Pacing/Tracking**. The Food, Water, Motor-Gas, Aviation-Fuel, Diesel Fuel, Oil, Lubricant Pacing/Tracking dialog box opens.
3. Select the check box for each type of resource for which you want to specify pacing or tracking.
4. For each selected resource select an option from the list.
5. Click OK.

## 35.20. Force

For details, please see "34.27. Force" on page 809.

## 35.21. Has Drag Chute

The Has Drag Chute set data request specifies whether or not the aircraft in an air unit have a drag chute.

➤ **To set a drag chute:**

1. Select an aircraft unit.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Has Drag Chute**. The Has Drag Chute dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the Has Drag Chute list.
4. Click OK.

## 35.22. Heading

For details, please see "34.33. Heading" on page 812.

## 35.23. Health

Health is a value based on a simulation object's total personnel, equipment, and weapons. The Health set data request lets you restore personnel to their full values and set the overall health of the simulation object. For details about simulation object health, please see "22.1. The Aggregate Warfare Model" on page 495.

➤ **To set an object's health:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Health**. The Health dialog box opens. It displays the current state of personnel, equipment, and weapons.
3. To restore all personnel, select Reset Kill, Captured, Wounded, Missing.
4. To specify the overall health of the simulation object, adjust the Health slider or type a number in the Health box. As you move the slider to the left, the amount of personnel, equipment, and weapons decreases.
5. Click OK.

## 35.24. IFF

For details, please see "34.35. IFF" on page 812.

## 35.25. Loadout

The Loadout set data request lets you specify the loadout for an air unit. It lists the contents of the selected loadout.

➤ **To set the loadout for an air unit:**

1. Select an air unit.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Loadout**. The Loadout dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the Loadout Name list. The number of munitions available in the loadout displays.
4. Click OK.

## 35.26. Location

For details, please see "34.44. Location" on page 817.

## 35.27. MOPP Level

When you set a unit's MOPP level, the MOPP level changes instantly. To change MOPP level over time, use the Change MOPP Level task.

➤ **To set the MOPP level:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > MOPP Level**. The MOPP Level dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 35.28. Morale

➤ **To set a unit's morale:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Morale**. The Morale dialog box opens.
3. Adjust the slider or type a value from 0 through 100.
4. Click OK.

## 35.29. Notify Level

For details, please see "34.50. Notify Level" on page 820.

## 35.30. Ordered Speed

For details, please see "34.52. Ordered Speed" on page 820.

## 35.31. Percent Complete

Percent Complete lets you set the degree of completion for combat engineering objects.

➤ **To set the percent complete:**

1. Select a combat engineering object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Percent Complete**. The Percent Complete dialog box opens.
3. Adjust the slider or type a value in the box.
4. Click OK.

## 35.32. Personnel and Supplies

The Personnel and Supplies  set data request lets you specify the number of air crews and ground crew available to an air base. You can also set the amount of munitions and aviation fuel. The total of air crews and ground crew cannot exceed the barracks capacity (set using the Facilities set data request). The maximum amount of munitions and aviation fuel that an air base can have is set with the Facilities set data request.

➤ **To specify personnel and supplies for an air base:**

1. Select an air base.
2. Choose **Set > Air Base > Personnel**. The Personnel dialog box opens.
3. Optionally, type a value for Ground Crew Available.
4. Optionally, type a value for Air Crew Available.
5. Optionally, type a value for the amount of munitions.
6. Optionally, type a value for the amount of aviation fuel.
7. To revert any setting to its original value, click the Revert button ( ) for that setting.
8. Click OK.

## 35.33. Posture (Unit)

You can set the posture of a unit. The posture changes instantly. To change posture over time, use the Change Posture task.

➤ **To set an object's posture in an aggregate-level scenario:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Posture**. The Posture dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the list.
4. Click OK.

## 35.34. Preferred Targets

Units can target up to three simulation objects. By default, they target the three simulation objects that are most vulnerable to attack. If you want a simulation object to target specific simulation objects that it might not choose automatically, the Preferred Targets set data request lets you specify them as preferred targets.

➤ **To specify preferred targets:**

1. Select a unit.
2. Choose **Set > Engagement > Preferred Targets**. The Preferred Targets dialog box opens.
3. Select up to three simulation objects.
4. Click OK.

## 35.35. Radar Mode

For details, please see"34.56. Radar Mode" on page 823.

## 35.36. Reorganize

For details, please see "34.59. Reorganize" on page 824.

The change takes place immediately. For more information about reorganization, please see "Reorganizing Units" on page 489.

## 35.37. Resources

For details, please see "34.60. Resources" on page 825.

## 35.38. Resources Pacing/Tracking

Resources Pacing/Tracking lets you specify that a resource type be marked as pacing, tracking, or neither. Pacing indicates that the status of this item is critical to the mission. Tracking indicates that the commander is interested in the status of this item. These designations do not affect the simulation. They are reported for use by external systems.

➤ **To set pacing and tracking for a resource:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Resources Pacing/Tracking**. The Resources Pacing/Tracking dialog box opens.
3. Select Resources.
4. Click OK.

## 35.39. Restore

For details, please see "34.61. Restore" on page 825.

## 35.40. Resupply Mode

Resupply Mode specifies one of the following resupply modes for simulation objects:

- None. The simulation object does not resupply itself.
- From Supply Units. When a resupply unit is in range, the unit gets supplies from it.
- From Self-Continuous. The unit resupplies itself continuously based on its resupply rate parameters. For details, please see "22.3. Logistics" on page 504.
- From Self-Periodic. The unit periodically resets all of its supplies, except health, to the base level. This level is reduced by health losses.

➤ **To specify the resupply mode:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Set > Logistics > Resupply Mode**. The Resupply Mode dialog box opens.
3. Select a resupply mode from the Resupply Mode list.
4. If you select From Self-Periodic, specify the resupply period in the Periodic Resupply Period boxes.
5. Click OK.

## 35.41. Role

The Role set data request lets you specify the role of an air unit, such as fighter, attack, bomber, or QRA.

➤ **To set the role of an air unit:**

1. Select an air unit.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Role**. The Role dialog box opens.
3. Select an option in the Role list.
4. Click OK.

## 35.42. Rules of Engagement

For details, please see "34.62. Rules of Engagement" on page 825.

## 35.43. Sector of Responsibility

For details, please see "34.64. Sector of Responsibility" on page 827.

## 35.44. Spot Reports

For details, please see "34.71. Spot Reports" on page 830.

## 35.45. Subsystem Enabled

For details, please see "34.73. Subsystem Enabled" on page 832.

## 35.46. Superior

For details, please see"34.74. Superior" on page 832.

## 35.47. Supplying

The Supplying set data request sets a supply unit to stop providing supplies or to start providing supplies.

➤ **To stop or start a supply unit providing supplies:**

1. Choose **Set > Logistics > Supplying**. The Supplying dialog box opens.
2. Select Stop or Start.
3. Click OK.

## 35.48. Tasked by Superior

For details, please see "34.82. Tasked by Superior" on page 835.

## 35.49. TDL Messaging

For details, please see "34.83. TDL Messaging" on page 836.

## 35.50. Weapons Pacing/Tracking

Weapons Pacing/Tracking lets you specify that a weapon be marked as pacing, tracking, or neither. Pacing indicates that the status of this item is critical to the mission. Tracking indicates that the commander is interested in the status of this item. These designations do not affect the simulation. They are reported for use by external systems.

➤ **To set pacing or tracking for a unit's weapons:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Weapons Pacing/Tracking**. The Weapons Pacing/Tracking dialog box opens.
3. Select the check box for each weapon for which you want to specify pacing or tracking.
4. For each selected weapon type, select an option from the list.
5. Click OK.

# VII. Plans

This section describes how to write plans.

## Introduction to Plans

VR-Forces has two kinds of plans: global plans and individual plans. Both kinds of plans can assign tasks and set data requests to a simulation object. Plans can also contain commands that create or delete simulation objects and tactical graphics. The commands in a plan can be conditional; that is, they will be executed only if a condition is satisfied. When you open a scenario, it is in pause mode (unless you start it with the **-I** command line option). When you start the simulation, the plans start executing.

An individual plan is a set of statements that order a particular simulation object to complete a sequence of tasks, change its state, or both. The simulation object carries out the tasks in order unless it is interrupted by an independent task or global command.

A simulation object owns its individual plan. Changing its name, echelon relationship, or force does not change its plan.

Global plans are created and executed independently of any particular simulation object. Commands sent to simulation objects from a global plan affect them as if they received an independent task through the Task menu — they interrupt the current task, if any, and cause the simulation object to abandon its plan, if it has one.

If a simulation object does not have a plan, it does not mean that it has nothing to do. A simulation object may be assigned tasks by its superior in the force hierarchy. It can also be assigned tasks interactively from the front-end. If you want a simulation object to take planned actions independently of those assigned by its superior, you need to add statements to its plan.

You can view a simulation object's plan at any time in the Plan window. The task that a simulation object is currently executing is highlighted. A simple plan might look like:

```
Move-To Waypoint:"red point"
Wait-Duration Seconds-ToWait:900
Move-To Waypoint:"white point"
Set Engagement-Rules="Fire-at-will"
```

You can edit plans while a simulation is running. However, when you change a plan during a simulation, the simulation object starts executing the plan from the beginning, which may cause its activities to be out of synchronization with the other simulation objects in the simulation.

# 36. Plan Concepts

This chapter describes plans and plan concepts.


36.1. Introduction to Individual Plans and Global Plans ..... 858
36.2. Conditional Statements ..... 859
- 36.2.1 The If Statement ..... 861
- 36.2.2 Triggers ..... 861
- 36.2.3 While Statements ..... 863
- 36.2.4 Do Until Interrupt Statement ..... 864
- 36.2.5 Wait Until Statements ..... 864
- 36.2.6 Conditional Tests ..... 865

36.3. Plan Variables ..... 869
36.4. Viewing Plans ..... 870
36.5. Considerations for Creating Plans ..... 870
- 36.5.1 Considerations for Using Triggers ..... 870
- 36.5.2 Using Concurrent Tasks in Plans ..... 871
- 36.5.3 Moving In Formation ..... 871
- 36.5.4 Using the Tasked-By-Superior Request in a Plan ..... 871
- 36.5.5 Following Simulation Objects ..... 872
- 36.5.6 Using Non-VR-Forces Simulation Objects in Plans ..... 872

# 36.1. Introduction to Individual Plans and Global Plans

A plan contains one or more statements that get executed by VR-Forces without human intervention. You build these statements in dialog boxes. VR-Forces writes the statement to the plan, so you do not have to worry about syntax errors in your statements when you first create them. However, you must understand the meaning of individual commands and parameters and the implications of how you order them, to make sure that a plan does what you want it to do.

VR-Forces supports two types of plans – individual plans and global plans. They have the following characteristics:

- Individual plans apply to a specific simulation object. They contain tasks and set data requests that are specific to the simulation object and which get executed sequentially. The sequence of task execution can be interrupted by receipt of a task from an external actor (a global plan command or independent task). The task sequence can also be interrupted if a trigger (a form of conditional statement) or a reactive task is activated.

  ---

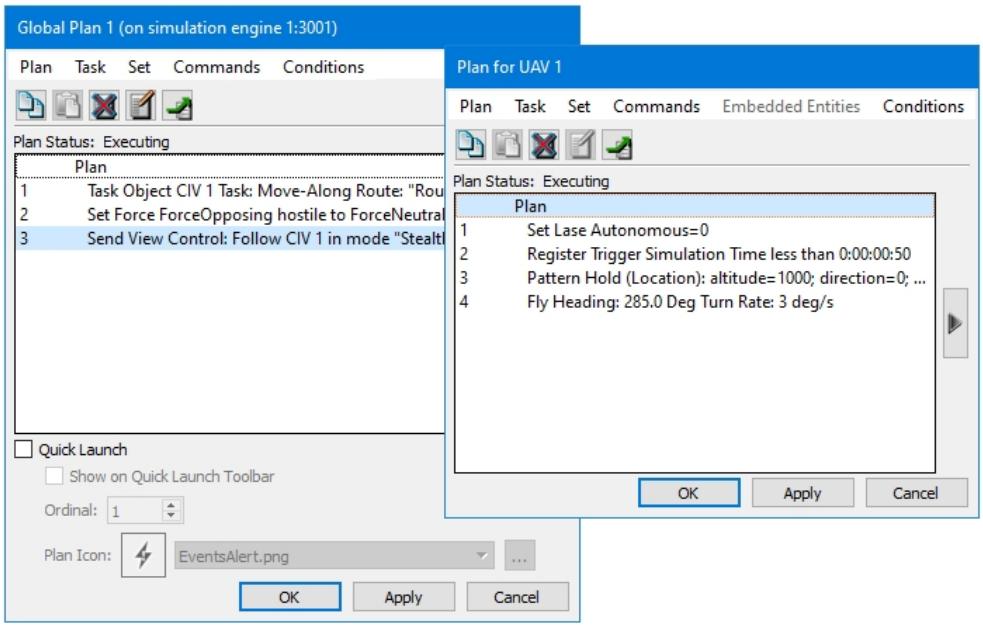
  **!** Individual plans can include global commands (which are described later in this section). However, you must be careful not to use global commands, tasks, or sets for a simulation object in its own plan when you really want simulation object-specific tasks or sets. Sending a simulation object a global command, even from within its own plan, terminates its plan.

  ---

- Global plans are independent of any simulation object. The statements in a global plan affect the scenario as a whole (create and delete object commands) or a specific simulation object (task and set commands). Tasks sent to a simulation object from a global plan have the same effect on the simulation object as independent tasks assigned by a human player. They interrupt any task that the simulation object is engaged in and terminate its plan. Furthermore, if a global plan has a series of tasks for the same simulation object, they get sent in order without regard to completion of the previous task (as if you issued a series of commands from the Task menu, one immediately after another). In such a case, only the last command sent is likely to be completed.

Figure 287 shows a global plan and an individual plan. Note that the individual plan window (on the right) is tied to a particular simulation object (shown in the title bar).

**Figure 287. Global plan and individual plan**




## 36.2. Conditional Statements

Many of the statements used in plans set a parameter or direct a simulation object to perform a specific task unconditionally. However, the plan language also includes conditional statements. A conditional statement specifies a condition and a block of plan statements that get executed if the condition is true. VR-Forces supports the following conditional statements:

- **If**. An **If** statement is evaluated once, when the plan execution flow arrives at the statement. If the condition is true at that point, VR-Forces executes the statements in the **If** block. For details, please see "36.2.1 The If Statement" on page 861.
- Trigger. A trigger statement lets you plan for a condition without knowing in advance when the condition will occur. It specifies a condition that is evaluated continuously by VR-Forces. If the condition becomes true, VR-Forces executes the statements in the trigger. For details, see "36.2.2 Triggers" on page 861.
- **While**. A **While** statement executes a block of statements repeatedly while a condition remains true. VR-Forces evaluates the condition when the plan first arrives at the **While** statement. If the condition is true, it executes the statements in the block. When it completes the statements, it evaluates the condition again. If it is still true, VR-Forces executes the statements again. It continues to do so as long as the **While** condition is true. For details, please see "36.2.3 While Statements" on page 863.
- **Do Until Interrupt**. A **Do Until Interrupt** statement allows you to assign a simulation object to perform a task until a condition takes place. Then the simulation object moves to the next statement in the plan. For details, see "36.2.4 Do Until

Interrupt Statement" on page 864.

- **Wait Until.** A **Wait Until** statement causes a simulation object to wait in place until the condition becomes true. Then the simulation object moves to the next statement in the plan. For details, see "36.2.5 Wait Until Statements" on page 864.

The conditions that can be tested by conditional statements are:

- Is a simulation object in a given area? (Entity In Area)
- Is a simulation object to the left of a phase line? (Entity Left of Phase Line)
- Has a specific entity been created? (Entity Created)
- Is a simulation object destroyed? (Entity Destroyed)
- Is a simulation object under fire? (Entity Under Fire)
- Has a simulation object located a target? (Entity Has Target)
- Has a simulation object's embarkation state changed? (Entity Embarked)
- Is a simulation object above or below a specified altitude? (Entity Altitude)
- Has this simulation object detected another simulation object? (Detect Entity)
- Has this simulation object received a text message? (Receive Text Message)
- Has an engineering object been breached? (Engineering Object Breached)
- Has this simulation object received a missile approach warning? (Missile Approach Warning)
- Is a scenario event in process or concluded? (Scenario Event)
- Has a lifeform surrendered? (Lifeform Surrendered)
- Does a lifeform have a particular DI-Guy animation? (Entity Di-Guy Animation Check)
- Does a lifeform have a particular DI-Guy appearance? (Entity Di-Guy Appearance Check)
- Is a random probability true? (Random)
- Is a resource for this simulation object at a certain level? (Resource)
- Is the simulation time greater than or less than a specific elapsed time? (Simulation Time)
- Is a subordinate of a unit independently tasks? (Simulation Object Independently Tasked)
- Is the simulation date and time a certain value? (Simulation Date/Time)
- Is a tactical graphic active? (Tactical Graphic Active)

Conditional statements can test for True and False, and can include the logical operators AND, OR, and NOT.

For details, please see "36.2.6 Conditional Tests" on page 865.

### 36.2.1 The If Statement

An **If** statement tests a condition. It only tests the condition once.

---

Do not use an **If** statement to test for receipt of a message or some other circumstance that does not represent a simulation object's state. VR-Forces does not keep a record of events and such a test will almost always evaluate to false. Use a trigger to test for conditions that do not evaluate simulation object state.

---

An **If** block consists of:

- The word **If**
- A condition to be evaluated
- A block of statements
- An **else** statement
- Optionally, statements for the **else** condition
- An **endif** statement

If the condition is true at the moment the **If** statement is evaluated, control passes to the first statement of the **If** block. If the condition is false, control passes to the first statement in the **else** block, if you have one, or to the first statement after the complete **If** block if you do not have an **else** block. You can nest **If** statements within **If** statements. The syntax is as follows:

```
If (condition) then
   zero_one_or_more_statements
else
   zero_one_or_more_statements
endif
```

When VR-Forces reaches the end of the block of **If** or **else** statements, control passes to the first statement after the **If** statement.

The Add Conditional Expression dialog box ensures that you have the correct syntax. It does not ensure that your **If** block makes logical sense.

### 36.2.2 Triggers

A trigger consists of a condition and a block of statements that are executed when the condition becomes true.

When you create a trigger, it is not automatically added to the plan's execution sequence. You must register a trigger before VR-Forces will test it. (If you have a programming background, it may be helpful to think of triggers as functions or subroutines that you write separately and then call from elsewhere in a plan. Extending the analogy, a trigger is always local to its plan.)

When you register a trigger, VR-Forces checks the condition. If the condition is true, control passes to the first statement in the trigger body. If the condition is false, VR-Forces continues to the next statement in the plan. It continues to check the trigger condition periodically. If at any point, the condition evaluates as true, control passes to the block of statements associated with the trigger.

When you create a trigger, you can specify that it interrupt the current task or that it suspend and resume the current task.

If you specify that a trigger interrupt the current task, task execution proceeds as follows:

- If a trigger contains any tasks that are mutually exclusive with the currently executing task, the current task is discarded and the statements in the trigger are executed.
- If the tasks in a trigger are not mutually exclusive with the current task, or if the trigger only has set data request statements, the trigger's statements are executed and the current task continues. For more information about this case, please see "Using Triggers That Do Not Have Mutually Exclusive Tasks" on page 871.
- After the tasks in the trigger block are completed, control returns to the next statement in the simulation object's plan after the one that was interrupted by the trigger.

If you specify that a trigger suspend the current task, task execution proceeds as follows:

- If a trigger contains any tasks that are mutually exclusive with the currently executing task, the current task is suspended and the statements in the trigger are executed.
- If the tasks in a trigger are not mutually exclusive with the current task, or if the trigger only has set data request statements, the trigger's statements are executed and the current task continues. For more information about this case, please see "Using Triggers That Do Not Have Mutually Exclusive Tasks" on page 871.
- After the tasks in the trigger block are completed, the suspended task is resumed, if possible. There may be cases where the previous task is no longer meaningful due to changes in the scenario.

---

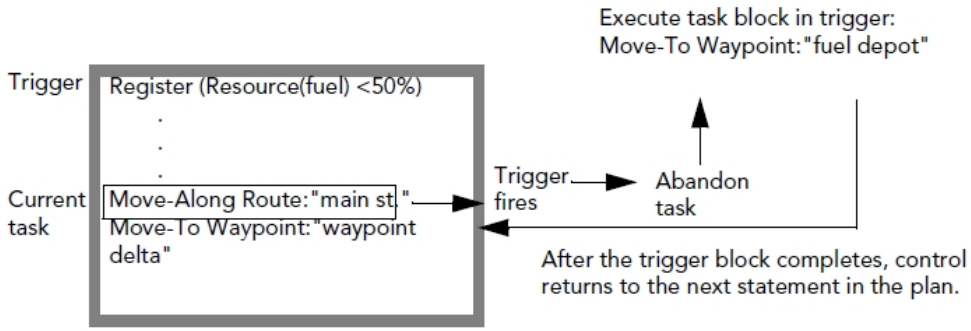
The location of a trigger in a plan has an important affect on its functioning. For a discussion about where to place triggers, please see "Deciding Where to Put Triggers " on page 870.)

---

By default, the name of a trigger is the syntax of its condition. However, you can change the name of a trigger to be any text you want to improve readability or shorten it.

Figure 288 illustrates the process when a trigger has a task that is mutually exclusive with the current task and you have specified that the current task be discarded. After the tasks in the trigger are completed, control returns to the next statement in the simulation object's plan. If the simulation object was in a **While** loop when the trigger fired, it returns to the next statement in the **While** block.

**Figure 288. Flow of control for triggers**




By default, after a trigger fires, it is removed from the list of registered triggers. If you want to continue to test for the same condition, you must reregister the trigger. You can design the plan in such a way that the trigger is registered again. Alternatively, when you create a trigger, you can specify that it reregister automatically.

---

An alternative to using triggers in a plan is to write a reactive task. For information about reactive tasks, please see "Appendix 31. Creating Scripted Tasks and Sets" on page 713.

---

## 36.2.3 While Statements

A **While** statement consists of:

- The word **While**
- A condition to be evaluated
- A block of statements
- An **endWhile** statement

If the condition is true at the moment the **While** statement is reached, control passes to the first statement of the **While** block. If the condition is false, control passes to the first statement after the complete **While** block. You can nest **While** statements within other conditional blocks.

When VR-Forces reaches the end of the **While** block, it evaluates the condition again. If the condition is still true, VR-Forces executes the statements again. If it is false, control passes to the first statement after the **While** block.

- VR-Forces re-evaluates a **While** condition only after it has executed all of the statements in the block. If the condition becomes false while VR-Forces is executing statements in the block, VR-Forces continues to execute all statements because it does not re-evaluate the condition until it completes the **While** block.
- If you put a continuous task such as Wait or Patrol Between in a **While** block, it is possible that the condition will never be re-evaluated, because these tasks never finish.

### 36.2.4 Do Until Interrupt Statement

A **Do Until Interrupt** statement allows you to have a simulation object perform a task, even one that otherwise could continue indefinitely. It consists of:

- The words **Do Until Interrupt**
- A condition to be evaluated
- An **End Do Until Interrupt** statement

If the condition is true at the moment the **Do Until Interrupt** statement is reached, the simulation object continues to the next task in the plan. If the condition is false, the simulation object performs the task(s) in the **Do Until Interrupt** statement. VR-Forces continually checks the condition until the condition becomes true or the simulation object is tasked by some other form of input, such as a trigger or independent task. If the condition becomes true, control passes to the next statement in the plan.

If a **Do Until Interrupt** state is interrupted by a trigger, the plan returns to the **Do Until Interrupt** task(s) after the trigger's tasks are completed.

### 36.2.5 Wait Until Statements

A **Wait Until** statement consists of:

- The words **Wait Until**
- A condition to be evaluated

If the condition is true at the moment the **Wait Until** statement is reached, the simulation object continues to the next task in the plan. If the condition is false, the simulation object waits in place. VR-Forces continues to check the condition periodically until the condition becomes true or the simulation object is tasked by some other form of input, such as a trigger or independent task.

If a **Wait Until** state is interrupted by a trigger and the trigger's Interrupt Current Task check box is not selected, the plan returns to the **Wait Until** state after the trigger's tasks are completed. If the trigger's Interrupt Current Task check box is selected, the plan moves to the statement after the **Wait Until**.

If the condition becomes true, control passes to the next statement in the plan.

## 36.2.6 Conditional Tests

This section describes each of the conditions that VR-Forces can test. When you set up conditions, keep in mind the following:

- If there is no simulation object with the specified name, the result is always false.
- If the specified simulation object is destroyed, the condition might never be satisfied. Your plan should take this possibility into account.

### Altitude

Altitude returns true if the simulation object (or member of a unit) is at a higher or lower altitude than the one specified.

### Detect Entity

The Detect Entity condition tests to see if this simulation object has detected another simulation object at a particular identification level. The identification levels are Detected, Classified, Identified, and Full Knowledge. Identification levels are determined by the detection probability configuration files, based on the distance between the detecting simulation object and the target and for how long the simulation object has been detected. For details about the detection probability files, please see "69.2. Detection Tables" on page 1441.

This condition is not supported in global plans.

### Engineering Object Breached

The Engineering Object Breached condition returns true if the specified engineering object has been breached. (Aggregate-level scenarios only.)

### Entity Destroyed

Entity Destroyed returns true if the specified simulation object is destroyed.

- The definition of destruction for a unit is implementation specific. For the entity-level models provided with VR-Forces, disaggregated units are considered to be destroyed when all members of the unit are destroyed.
- If you have implemented units locally using the VR-Forces Toolkit, they could have a different definition of destroyed.

### Entity DI-Guy Animation Check

The Entity Di-Guy Animation Check condition tests the current DI-Guy animation for a lifeform. This condition may be useful if you are scripting a series of animations. For example, if a particular entity is using a threatening or hostile animation, you might want to have other simulation objects respond a certain way.

### Entity DI-Guy Appearance Check

The Entity Di-Guy Appearance Check condition tests the current DI-Guy appearance for a lifeform. This condition may be useful if you are scripting a lifeform's interaction with another lifeform based on ethnicity or how they are dressed.

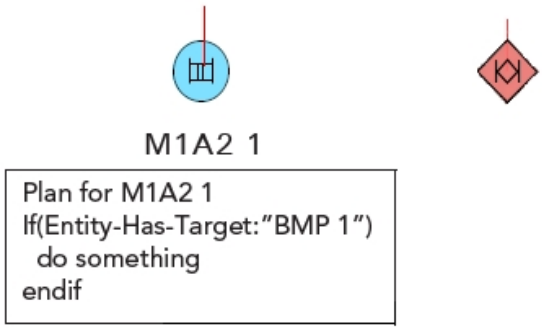
### Entity Embarked

Entity Embarked returns true if the named simulation object is embarked.

### Entity Has Target

Entity Has Target returns true if the simulation object specified in the condition identifies a target. For example, consider the entities in Figure 289. The condition in M1A2 1's plan is true when BMP 1 has a target, not when M1A2 1 targets BMP 1.

**Figure 289. Entity Has Target condition**




If a simulation object's rules of engagement prevent it from firing, this condition does not return true when the simulation object identifies a target.

### Entity In Area

Entity In Area returns true if the simulation object reports that it is in the named area. You can use the **NOT** operator, to test whether a simulation object is outside the area.

If a simulation object enters an extruded area, VR-Forces does a 2D check first, to see if it is in the area. Then it checks the simulation object's altitude to see if it is within the area's volume.

If you have a plan in which you are testing for entities in an area and destroying them as they enter it, the Exclude Destroyed Simulation Objects option lets you reregister a trigger and only test for entities that have not been destroyed.

### Entity Left of Line

Entity Left of Line returns true if the simulation object reports that it is to the left of the specified phase line.

A simulation object is considered to be to the left of a phase line if it is on the left side of an infinite extension of the phase line as viewed from a point on the line facing in the direction of the line. For a description of phase line direction, please see "Phase Lines".

### Entity Under Fire

Entity Under Fire returns true if the simulation object is under fire. An entity is considered to be under fire if it is directly targeted in a Fire PDU or if there is a hostile detonation within the **under-fire-parameter** distance specified in the **under-fire-determination-sensor** sensor in its OPE file. The default for all entities is 1000 meters.

### Lifeform Surrendered

The Lifeform Surrendered condition tests to see if a lifeform entity has surrendered (using the Surrendered set data request).

### Missile Approach Warning

The Missile Approach Warning condition returns true if a hostile missile is within the specified distance of this simulation object. This condition is not available in global plans.

### Random

You can use the Random condition to randomly decide a simulation object's behavior at run time.

`Percentage` – A floating point probability percentage value between 0% (zero) and 100%. Random returns true if a random number between zero and 100 is less than or equal to the specified value.

If you use the Random condition, consider the following issues:

- Random is not very useful in triggers, since triggers may evaluate their condition expressions as often as once per tick. This means that a trigger expression of “Random Probability:50%” is likely to fire within the first couple of times it is evaluated. Therefore, we recommend that you not create triggers that are based on a random condition.
- If you use a random condition in a cascading sequence of **If** statements, and you want to ensure the correct probability distribution, be careful how you specify the percentage value. For example, randomly selecting one of three paths with equal probability would be done like this:

  ```
  If (Random Probability:33.33%) then
  ```

```
    Move-Along Route:"1"
Else
    If (Random Probability:50%) then
        Move-Along Route:"2"
    Else
        Move-Along Route:"3"
    Endif
Endif
```

### Resource

The Resource condition tests the amount of a specified resource for this simulation object using comparison operators. This condition is not available in global plans.

### Receive Text Message

The Receive Text Message condition tests to see if this simulation object has received a text message that contains the text specified in the Receive Text Message dialog box. This condition is not available in global plans. The text message can be received as the result of a Send Text Message task or the Send Text Message command in a plan.

### Scenario Event

The Scenario Event condition returns true if the specified scenario event is in process or has completed.

### Simulation Object Independently Tasked

The Simulation Object Independently Tasked condition tests to see if an object that is a member of a unit is executing a task independently of the unit. If a unit member is independently tasked, you might not want to issue a new task to the unit until the subordinate finishes its task. This condition lets you test the independent task status of all members of a unit or particular members of a unit to help plan the timing of unit tasks. For example, in the Parachuting example scenario, the plan for the helicopter CH 47 1 waits until all members of Inf SQD 1 are not independently tasked before it sends a message to the squad.

### Simulation Time

The Sim Time condition returns true if the elapsed simulation time is greater than (Sim Time >) or less than (Sim Time <) the time specified in the statement. Sim Time is the elapsed simulation time in days, hours, minutes, and seconds.

### Simulation Date/Time

The Simulation Date/Time condition returns true if the simulation date and time matches the specified value.

### Tactical Graphic Active

The Tactical Graphic Active condition returns true if a published tactical graphic is in the active state. For details about setting a tactical graphic's state, please see"40.10. Active and Inactive Tactical Graphics" on page 959 and "41.2. Activation" on page 962.

### Boolean Operators

You can use the following boolean operators in conditional expressions:

- **True.**
- **False.**
- **AND (***expression, expression***)** – evaluates as true if both conditional expressions are true.
- **OR (***expression, expression***)** – evaluates as true if either of the expressions are true.
- **NOT** (*expression*) - evaluates as true if the conditional expression is false.

## 36.3. Plan Variables

Many tasks require you to specify a simulation object to act on, such as Fire on Target. Conditional tests, such as Entity Destroyed, require you to identify a simulation object to evaluate. However, you will not always know the name of the simulation object that you need to specify. Variables let you specify a simulation object without knowing its name. Plans can reference two variables:

- Simulation Object. The Simulation Object variable references a simulation object that has been identified by a conditional test, such as Entity in Area or Entity Left of Line. For example, suppose that if an opposing force entity enters an area you want to fire at it. You can create a trigger using an Entity in Area condition. Then in the body of the trigger, you can insert a Fire at Target task that specifies the Simulation Object variable rather than the name of a specific entity.

  In an AND condition, the variable is set to the last condition satisfied. In an OR condition, the variable is set to the first condition satisfied.

- Created Object. The Created Object variable references the most recently created object. For example, suppose you create an object from a plan and do not give it a name. You can issue it a plan or refer to it using the Create Object variable. This variable refers to the most recently created object.

Plan variables are specific to each simulation object plan. A variable value in one plan does not affect the variable value in a different plan. Therefore, if you want to use the Created Object variable, you must create the object in the plan in which you want to use it. You could not, for example, create an object in a global plan and then reference it using the Created Object variable from a simulation object's plan.

Once a variable has a value, you can use that variable in a plan as many times as you want to. However, you will need to keep track of plan logic that might change the value as the simulation object progresses through the plan.

For details about how to use variables in plans, please see "37.5. Using Plan Variables" on page 894.

## 36.4. Viewing Plans

You can view a simulation object's plan and observe its progress through the plan. Statements are numbered to show the order in which they will execute unless interrupted by a trigger, independent task, or other external input. If a plan is executing the statements in a conditional block, VR-Forces draws a box around the block and the numbering is shown for the statements in the block.

If the Plan window is collapsed (that is, the Trigger pane is not visible) and control passes to a trigger, the window automatically expands to show the tasks in the trigger that is being executed.

The task that a simulation object is executing is highlighted in the Plan window. When the simulation object completes its plan, a message is displayed in the status area at the bottom of the Plan window.

You can view the plans for as many simulation objects at a time as you want. In addition to viewing plan status in the Plan window, you can view the current task on the Task Status page of the Information dialog box. The Last Selected Object Panel also lists the currently executing task.

➤ **To view a simulation object's plan:**

1. Select the simulation object whose plan you want to view.
2. Open the Plan window using one of the following methods:
   - Choose **Objects > Plan**.
   - Press **p**.
   - On the Last Selected Object Panel, click the Plan button ().

## 36.5. Considerations for Creating Plans

This section has tips for constructing plans including how to avoid problems that are hard to debug and how statements affect each other, with implications for how to organize the statements in a plan.

### 36.5.1 Considerations for Using Triggers

Triggers are a versatile part of plans and you should have a good understanding of their intricacies before you use them.

#### Deciding Where to Put Triggers

VR-Forces does not evaluate a trigger condition until it registers the trigger. If you want to ensure that a trigger is always evaluated by VR-Forces, register it at the beginning of a plan before any non-trigger statements. If you register a trigger later in a plan, it is possible that it will never be evaluated. This could occur if a plan is abandoned. Of course, you might decide that you do not want a trigger to be evaluated unless a set of preceding tasks have been completed. In that case, placing it later in the plan may be exactly what you want to do.

You can also register a trigger inside a conditional block so that it gets registered only if a particular condition is true at a particular time.

For example, if you always want entity 1 to respond to entry of hostile forces into an area, put a trigger at the beginning of the plan. If you want entity 1 to respond to a hostile simulation object in an area only after the simulation has progressed for 15 minutes, nest the trigger inside another trigger that fires when Sim Time > 15 minutes.

#### Using Triggers That Do Not Have Mutually Exclusive Tasks

A trigger does not need to have any task statements in its statement block. It could have only Set statements, or it could have sets and concurrent tasks. If a trigger block just has Set statements, it does not interrupt the task that the simulation object is executing when the trigger gets executed. The Set statements are executed while the simulation object is performing its task. This has the same effect as if you manually set the simulation object's state while it was performing a task.

Using a trigger that just has Set statements can be useful if you want to change a simulation object's state under certain conditions, but do not know in advance when those conditions might exist.

### 36.5.2 Using Concurrent Tasks in Plans

If you are assigning tasks to simulation objects manually, you can give a simulation object a concurrent task while it is executing some other task. You cannot do this directly in a plan, because you cannot assign two tasks at the same time. A plan always waits for its current task to complete before it starts the next task, even if the next task does not conflict with the current one. If you want to assign a concurrent task in a plan, you must use a trigger. If a trigger that just has a concurrent task fires, the simulation object executes the concurrent task and continues its existing task. If the trigger has other tasks, the behavior will be as expected for triggers.

For more information about concurrent tasks, please see "25.1.3 Concurrent Task Execution" on page 545.

As an alternative to using plan triggers to automatically assign concurrent tasks, you can create reactive tasks. For information about reactive tasks, please see "25.3. Reactive Tasks" on page 552.

### 36.5.3 Moving In Formation

If you want a unit to move in a certain formation, you can set the formation (Formation set data request) or you can have the unit move into a formation (Move Into Formation task). The default formation is a column.

### 36.5.4 Using the Tasked-By-Superior Request in a Plan

If you put the Tasked-By-Superior request in the body of a plan, it has no real effect. This is because, as soon as it is set, the plan goes to the next task and overrides the superior. The only way that the Tasked-By-Superior command gets implemented as part of a plan is if it is the last statement in a plan or the last statement in a trigger that happens to get executed after all the statements in a simulation object's plan have been executed.

### 36.5.5 Following Simulation Objects

If you tell two or more simulation objects to follow another simulation object, do not give them the same offset values. If the followed simulation object stops, one follower will arrive at the specified offset position and stop, while the others will circle the location because they cannot all occupy the same space.

### 36.5.6 Using Non-VR-Forces Simulation Objects in Plans

You can use a non-VR-Forces simulation object as a parameter in a plan, for example, following a remote simulation object, or testing to see if a remote simulation object is in an area.

To identify non-VR-Forces entities, VR-Forces uses their marking text. If a non-VR-Forces simulation object does not have marking text, VR-Forces uses its simulation object identifier as its name.

VR-Forces does not recognize remote units as units, so it cannot check their children. Remote units are ignored by the simulation engine.

- Referring to remote entities by their marking text may have unpredictable results if there is more than one remote simulation object with the same marking text.
- If you include a non-VR-Forces simulation object in a plan you must ensure that the remote simulator uses the same name for the simulation object in future runs.

# 37. Writing Plans

This chapter explains how to combine tasks, set data requests, global commands, and conditions into plans.


37.1. Writing Plans for Simulation Objects ..... 875
37.1.1 Adding a Task or Set Data Request to a Plan ..... 876
37.1.2 Adding an If Block to a Plan ..... 876
37.1.3 Adding a While Block to a Plan ..... 877
37.1.4 Adding a Wait Until Statement to a Plan ..... 878
37.1.5 Adding a Trigger to a Plan ..... 878
37.1.6 Registering Triggers ..... 880
37.1.7 Cleaning Up Unused Triggers ..... 881
37.1.8 Editing a Statement ..... 882
37.1.9 Deleting Statements from a Plan ..... 882
37.2. Printing Plans ..... 883
37.3. Saving Changes to a Plan ..... 883
37.4. Building Condition Statements ..... 883
37.4.1 Building a Condition Statement that Has One Condition ..... 883
37.4.2 Building a Complex Condition ..... 885
37.4.3 Editing Condition Statements ..... 891
37.4.4 Specifying Names or Patterns in Condition Statements ..... 892
37.5. Using Plan Variables ..... 894
37.6. Creating Global Plans ..... 896
37.6.1 Controlling When Global Plans Run (Quick Launch) ..... 898
37.6.2 Opening an Information Dialog Box for a Global Plan ..... 899
37.7. Adding Commands to a Plan ..... 899
37.7.1 Adding Tasks and Sets from the Commands Menu ..... 899
37.7.2 Sending Text Messages from the Commands Menu ..... 902
37.7.3 Sending Console Messages ..... 903
37.7.4 Creating Objects from Within a Plan ..... 904

37.7.5 Deleting Objects from Within a Plan ..... 904
37.7.6 Issuing a Plan ..... 904
37.7.7 Sending View Control Messages ..... 906
37.7.8 Creating a Sensor View from a Plan ..... 909
37.7.9 Sending Test Results ..... 910
37.8. Writing Plans for Units ..... 911
37.9. Writing a Plan for Multiple Simulation Objects ..... 911
37.10. Writing Plans for Remote Entities ..... 911
37.11. Copying Plans and Plan Statements ..... 912
37.12. Restarting a Plan ..... 912
37.13. Abandoning a Plan ..... 913

# 37.1. Writing Plans for Simulation Objects

This section explains how to write individual plans. For conceptual information about plans, see "Introduction to Plans" on page 856, and the previous sections in this chapter.

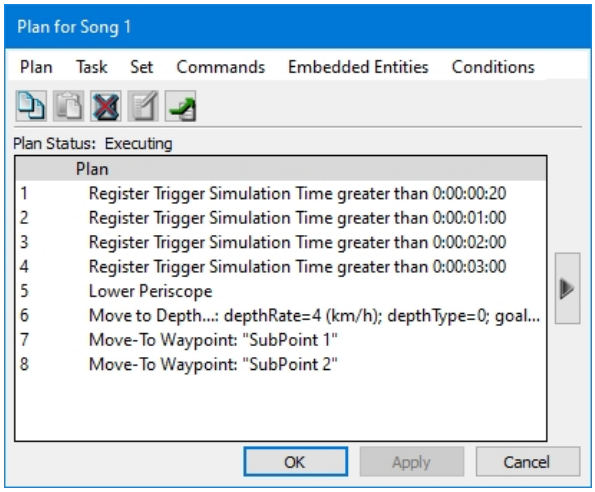
When you write a plan, keep the following considerations in mind:

- If you edit a plan during a simulation, when you apply the changes, the simulation object whose plan has been changed begins executing it from the beginning. This might mean its activities are no longer synchronized with those of the other simulation objects, unless the updated plan only includes statements that you want to execute starting at the current point of the simulation. Therefore, we recommend that you edit plans when you first load a scenario, before you start running the simulation.
- If you have two or more Plan windows open at the same time and you then open a dialog box, such as Move To, but do not complete the command, you cannot open that same dialog box from another Plan window until you complete the one that is open.

➤ **To edit a simulation object's plan:**

1. Select a simulation object.
2. Choose **Objects > Plan**, or press **p**. The Plan window opens. The simulation object's plan displays.

**Figure 290. Plan window**




You can also open the Plan window by clicking the Plan button ( ) on the Last Selected Object Panel.

3. Add new statements, edit statements, or delete statements as described in the following sections.

## 37.1.1 Adding a Task or Set Data Request to a Plan

When you add statements to a plan, you add them after the currently selected statement.

➤ **To add a task to a plan:**

1. Open the Plan window for a simulation object.
2. In the Plan window, select the statement immediately above where you want to insert a new statement. If the plan does not have any statements yet, the plan root – **Plan** is already selected.
3. Choose **Task >** *category* **>** *Task*, where *category* is one of the categories on the Task menu and *Task* is a task listed for the selected category. A dialog box appropriate to the task opens. The procedures for filling out each type of task dialog box are described in the chapters in "Section V. Tasks" on page 539.
4. Complete the required parameter information.
5. Click OK in the task dialog box to add the statement. You can click Cancel at any time to exit a task dialog box.

➤ To add a set data request to a plan, follow the same procedure as for adding a task, except choose **Set >** *category* **>** *Set Data Request*.

The procedures for filling out Set statement dialog boxes are in the chapters in "Section VI. Set Data Requests" on page 793.

---

Some task and set statements, such as Wait, or Reorganize, do not require you to specify any values. They are added immediately to the plan without any intermediate dialog boxes.

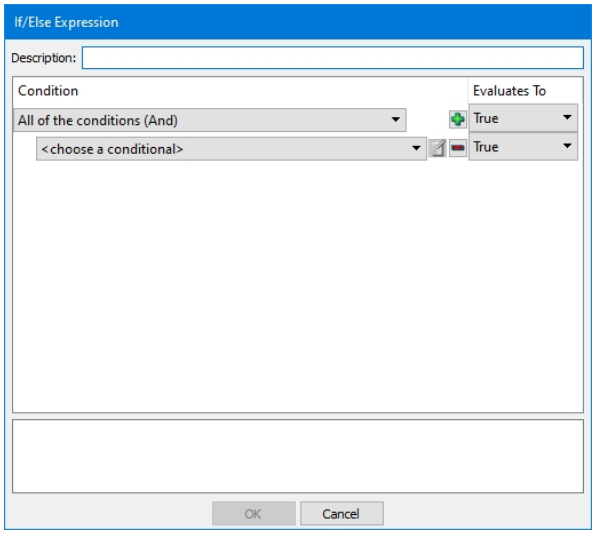
---

## 37.1.2 Adding an If Block to a Plan

➤ **To add an If condition to a plan:**

1. Open the Plan window for a simulation object.
2. In the Plan window, select the statement immediately above where you want to insert the **If** block. If the plan does not have any statements yet, the plan root – **Plan** is already selected.
3. Choose **Conditions > If**. The If/Else Expression dialog box opens (Figure 291).

**Figure 291. If/Else Expression dialog box**




4. Optionally, in the Description box, type a description to use in the If statement instead of the condition syntax.
5. Create the conditional expression as described in "37.4. Building Condition Statements" on page 883.
6. Click OK. An **If** statement block is added to the plan.
7. Select the first line in the block (the **If** statement).
8. Add the tasks, sets, or other commands that you want to be executed if the condition is true.
9. Optionally, select the **else** line and add the commands you want to be executed if the condition is false.

## 37.1.3 Adding a While Block to a Plan

➤ **To add a While block to a plan:**

1. Open the Plan window for a simulation object.
2. In the Plan window, select the statement immediately above where you want to insert the **While** block. If the plan does not have any statements yet, the plan root – **Plan** is already selected.
3. Choose **Conditions > While**. The While Expression dialog box opens. (It is identical to the If/Else Expression dialog box (Figure 291).)
4. Optionally, in the Description box, type a description to use in the While statement instead of the condition syntax.
5. Create the conditional expression as described in "37.4. Building Condition Statements" on page 883.
6. Click OK. A **While** statement block is added to the plan.
7. Select the first line in the block (the **While** statement).

8. Add the tasks, sets, or other commands that you want to be executed if the condition is true.

### 37.1.4 Adding a Wait Until Statement to a Plan

➤ **To add a Wait Until statement to a plan:**

1. Open the Plan window for a simulation object.
2. In the Plan window, select the statement immediately above where you want to insert the **Wait Until** statement. If the plan does not have any statements yet, the plan root – **Plan** is already selected.
3. Choose **Conditions > Wait Until**. The Wait Until Expression dialog box opens. (It is identical to the If/Else Expression dialog box (Figure 291).)
4. Optionally, in the Description box, type a description to use in the **Wait Until** statement instead of the condition syntax.
5. Create the conditional expression as described in "37.4. Building Condition Statements" on page 883.
6. Click OK. A **Wait Until** statement is added to the plan.

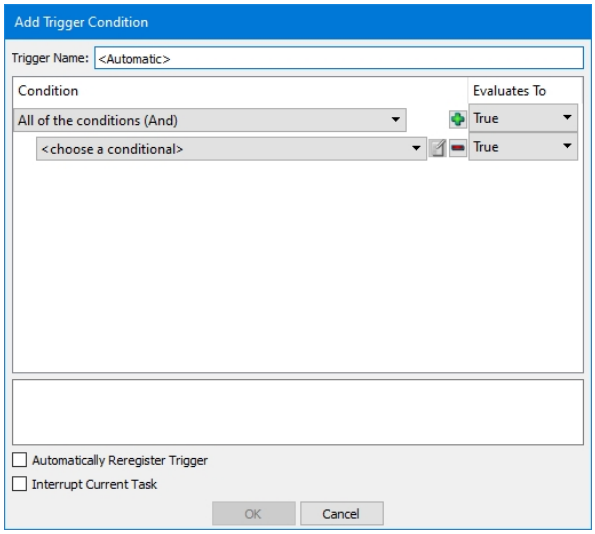
### 37.1.5 Adding a Trigger to a Plan

Adding a trigger to a plan is a three-step process. First, you specify the trigger condition. Then you add the commands to be executed to the trigger body. Finally, you register the trigger in the body of the plan.

➤ **To add a Trigger to a plan:**

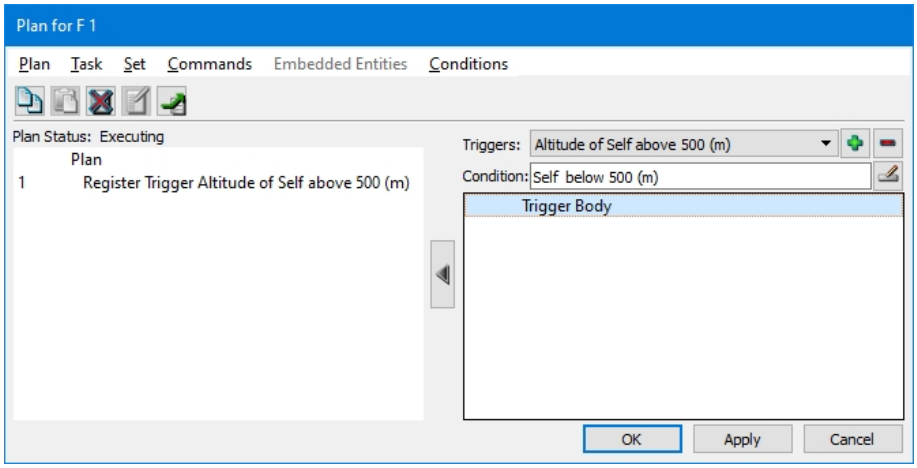
1. Open the Plan window for a simulation object.
2. Choose **Conditions > Add Trigger**. The Edit Trigger Condition dialog box opens (Figure 292). (You can also add a trigger by choosing **Conditions > Register Trigger** and selecting New in the trigger list.)

**Figure 292. Trigger dialog box**




3. Optionally, in the Trigger Name box, type a name for the trigger. If you specify a name, it is displayed in the Register command when you register the trigger. If you do not specify a name, the text of the condition is displayed in the Register command.
4. Optionally, select the Automatically Reregister Trigger check box to specify that the trigger should be automatically reregistered after it runs.
5. Optionally, select the Interrupt Current Task check box to specify that the trigger should interrupt the currently running task rather than suspending and resuming it.
6. Create the conditional expression as described in "37.4. Building Condition Statements" on page 883.
7. Click OK. If the Trigger Body pane is not already visible, the Plan window expands to show the it (Figure 293).

**Figure 293. Trigger pane**



8. Select the first line in the Trigger pane (**Trigger Body**).
9. Add the tasks, sets, or other commands that you want to be executed when the condition becomes true.
10. Register the trigger. For details, please see "37.1.6 Registering Triggers" below.

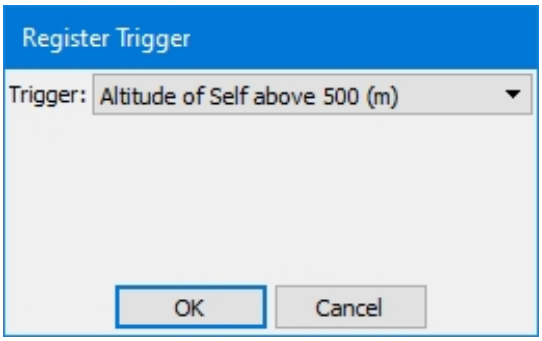
## 37.1.6 Registering Triggers

Writing a trigger does not necessarily include it in a plan. To use a triger, you must register it. If you create a new trigger using **Conditions > Add Trigger**, you must register it manually. If you create a new trigger by choosing **Conditions > Register Trigger** and selecting New, it automatically gets registered at the currently selected location in the plan.

➤ **To register a trigger:**

1. In the Plan window, select the statement below which you want to register the trigger.
2. Choose **Conditions > Register Trigger**. The Register Trigger dialog box opens (Figure 294).

**Figure 294. Register Trigger dialog box**




3. Select the trigger you want to register from the list. (If there are no triggers in the plan, select New.)
4. Click OK.

### Reregistering Triggers

By default, once the statements in a trigger get executed, the trigger is unregistered and VR-Forces no longer tests the condition. However there may be cases where you want to test for a recurring condition. You could register the trigger again when the trigger block competes. Or, when you create or edit a trigger, you can specify that it automatically reregister. For details. please see "37.1.5 Adding a Trigger to a Plan" on page 878.

As an alternative to using triggers, you can write reactive tasks, which work similarly to triggers or you can write a regular scripted task that is designed to repeatedly test a condition.

### Unregistering Triggers

You can unregister triggers from within a plan. Unregistering a trigger does not remove it from a plan. It causes VR-Forces to stop testing the condition. You might want to unregister a trigger in response to a change in scenario circumstances that makes the actions in the trigger undesirable.

➤ **To unregister a trigger:**

1. Select the plan statement above where you want to add an Unregister Trigger statement.
2. In the Plan window, choose **Conditions > Unregister Trigger**. The Unregister Trigger dialog box opens.
3. Select the trigger that you want to unregister.
4. Click OK.

## 37.1.7 Cleaning Up Unused Triggers

If you add triggers to a plan and then decide not to use (register) them, you can quickly remove them from the plan. (However, there is no penalty for leaving unused triggers in a plan.)

➤ To clean up unused triggers, choose **Plan > Clean Up Unused Triggers**.

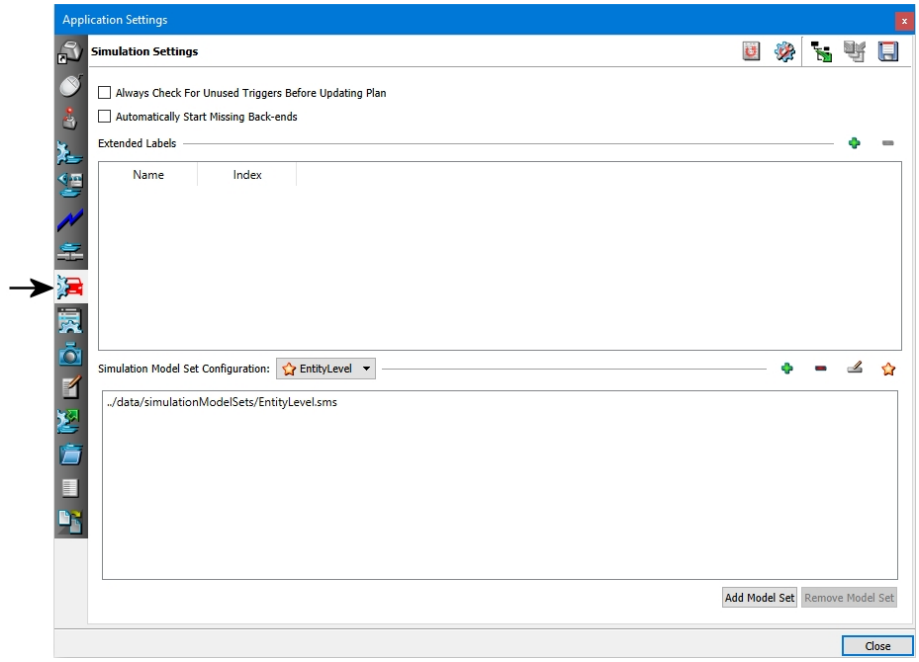
### Automatically Checking for Unused Triggers

VR-Forces can automatically check for unused triggers when you save or apply changes to a plan. If it finds any, it displays a dialog box offering you options for handling them.

➤ **To specify that VR-Forces should check for unused triggers when it updates a plan:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Simulation Settings page (Figure 295).

**Figure 295. Simulation Settings page**




3. Select the Always Check For Unused Triggers Before Updating Plan check box.
4. Click Close.

## 37.1.8 Editing a Statement

You can edit simple statements in the Plan window.

➤ **To edit a plan statement:**

1. Double-click the statement or select the statement and click the Edit button . An edit dialog box for the particular statement type opens.
2. Enter the changes you want to make.
3. Click OK in the edit dialog box.
4. Click OK or Apply in the Plan window.

## 37.1.9 Deleting Statements from a Plan

You can delete statements from a plan individually, or all at once. You can delete the individual statements in the statement block of a conditional statement. If you delete the conditional statement itself, all substatements are also deleted.

➤ **To delete a statement from a plan:**

1. Select the statement you want to delete.
2. Click the Delete button or press **Delete**.

### Deleting All Statements From a Plan

➤ **To delete all statements in a plan:**

1. Select the top line in the plan.
2. Click Delete or press **Delete**.

## 37.2. Printing Plans

You can print plans. The printout lists the name of the scenario, the simulation object's name, and the plan statements.

➤ **To print a plan:**

1. Open a global plan or the Plan window for the simulation object whose plan you want to print.
2. Choose **Plan > Print**. A standard print dialog box for your operating system opens.
3. Complete the dialog box as you normally would.

## 37.3. Saving Changes to a Plan

You can save changes to a plan and continue editing, or save changes and exit the Plan window. The plan is saved to the scenario plan file. You do not specify a file to save it to.

➤ To save changes to a plan, in the Plan window click Apply or OK.

## 37.4. Building Condition Statements

If you want to add an **If** block, a **While** loop, a **Wait Until**, or a trigger, you must specify a condition to be tested. The conditional expression dialog box is a dynamic dialog box that lets you build a condition. It contains lists that have the permissible options for each step of a condition. As you select options, the dialog box redisplays, adding additional fields. You can build condition statements using comparison operators, logical operators, and tests of simulation object status.

A condition statement can have one condition or many. They can be nested and grouped. In the following sections we explain how to build a simple condition and how to build a complex condition.

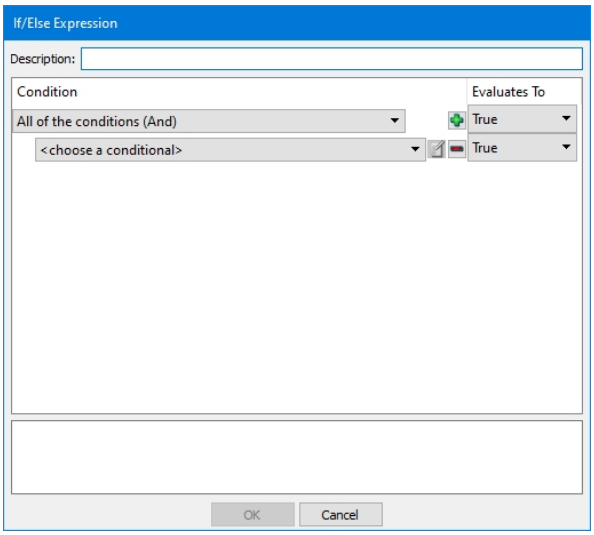
### 37.4.1 Building a Condition Statement that Has One Condition

Although the If/Else Expression, While Expression, Wait Until Expression, and Trigger dialog boxes differ slightly, the process of building a condition is the same for all of them.

➤ **To build a condition statement that has one condition:**

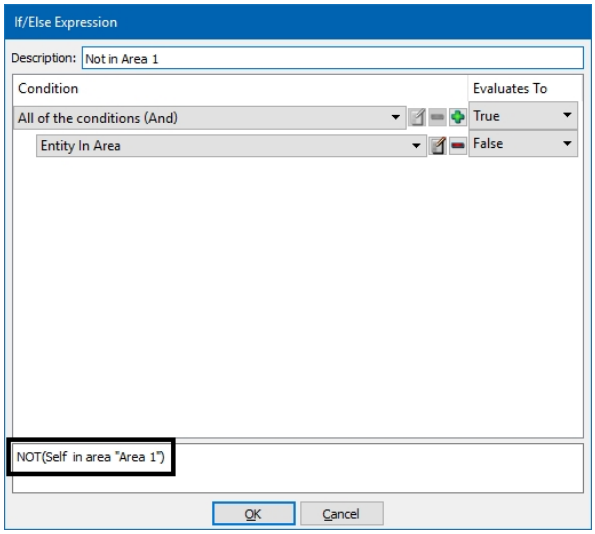
1. On the Conditions menu, choose the type of condition you want to create. The applicable dialog box opens (Figure 296). The top line in the condition specifies that all of the conditions are True. Since we are creating a condition statement that just has one condition, this line is largely irrelevant except for the Evaluates To column.

**Figure 296. If/Else Expression dialog box**



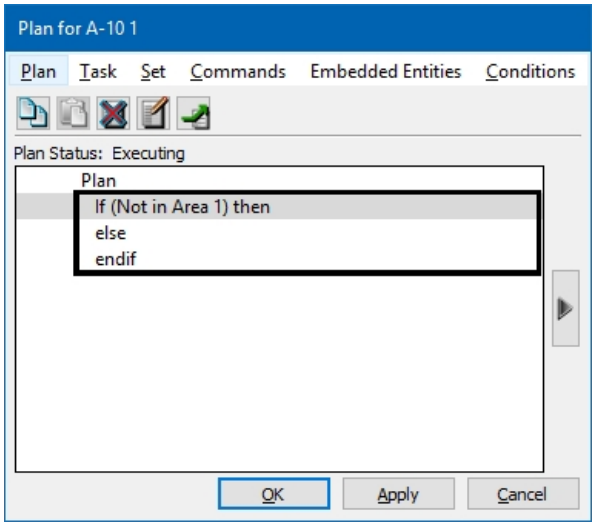

2. Optionally, in the Description box, type a short summary of the condition.
3. Optionally, in the Evaluates To list, change the entire condition from True to False.
4. In the <choose a conditional> list, select the condition that you want to test. If applicable, a dialog box opens for you to specify the parameters of the condition.
5. Specify the parameters of the condition.
6. Click OK. The condition is displayed in the display box at the bottom of the dialog box (Figure 297).
7. Optionally, in the Evaluates To list, change the condition from True to False. Figure 297 shows a simple condition.

**Figure 297. Simple conditional expression**




8. Click OK. The condition statement is added to the plan or the Trigger pane. In Figure 298, note that the If statement uses the text from the description (in Figure 297) instead of the full syntax of the condition shown at the bottom of the If/Else Expression dialog box.

**Figure 298. Simple conditional expression in a plan**




## 37.4.2 Building a Complex Condition

You can build condition statements with multiple conditions, nested conditions, and logical operators. The condition expression dialog box displays the syntax of the condition as you build it. The layout of the window shows which conditions are grouped and which are subordinate to others. For an example, of building a complex condition, please see "Complex Condition Tutorial" on the next page.

➤ **To build a complex condition:**

1. On the Conditions menu, choose the type of condition you want to create. The applicable condition expression dialog box opens. The top line in the condition specifies that all of the conditions are True.
2. Optionally change the top level logical operator to Or.
3. Optionally change the top level evaluator to False.
4. In the <choose a conditional> list, select the condition that you want to test. If applicable, a dialog box opens for you to specify the parameters of the condition.
5. Specify the parameters of the condition.
6. Click OK. The condition is displayed in the display box at the bottom of the dialog box.
7. Click the Add button ( ) next to the top line of the condition. A new condition line is added.
8. Select a condition to test and specify its parameters.
9. Continue to add conditions as desired. The condition syntax updates as you add conditions.
10. Optionally, select a new logical operator in the conditions list (And or Or). A subordinate condition line is added under the logical operator and indented.
11. Add conditions for the logical operator group as you did for the top level logical operator. To simplify the view, you can expand and collapse the logical grouping by clicking the arrow to the left of the logical operator line.
12. Continue adding conditions as desired.
13. Click OK.

### Complex Condition Tutorial

This section walks you through the process of creating a complex condition. It creates the following conditional expression:

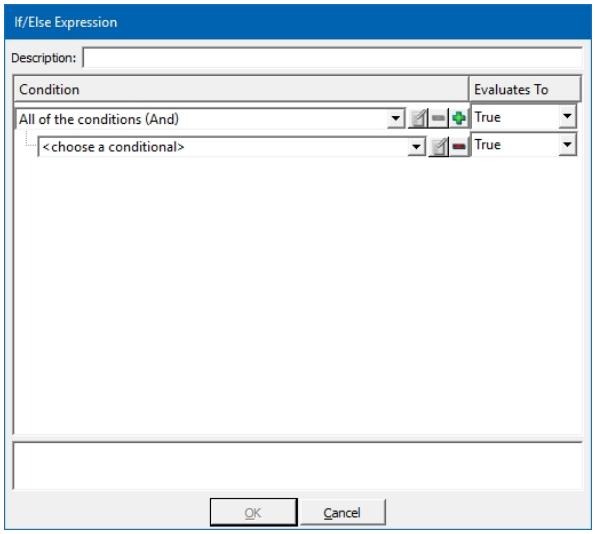
```
If(“M1A2 4" in area "Area 1" AND ("M1A2 2" left of "Phase Line 1" OR
Entity "T80 1" destroyed))then
else
endif
```

The procedure assumes a scenario with four M1A2 entities, a T-80, a phase line, and an area.

➤ **To build the condition statement:**

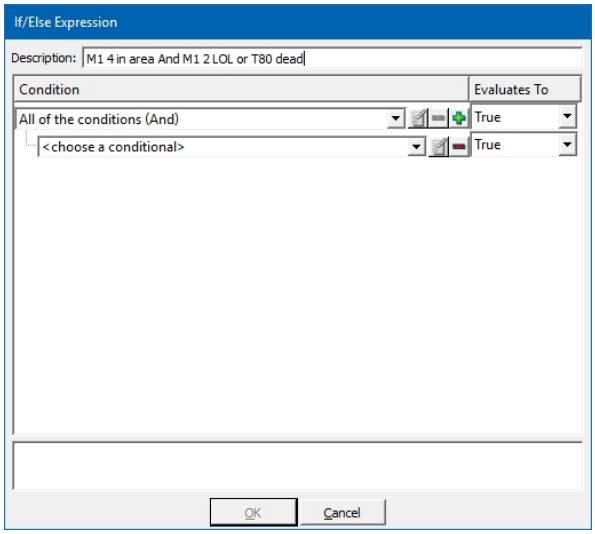
1. Open the Plan window for M1A2 1.
2. Choose **Conditions > If**. The If/Else Expression dialog box opens (Figure 299).

**Figure 299. If/Else Expression dialog box**



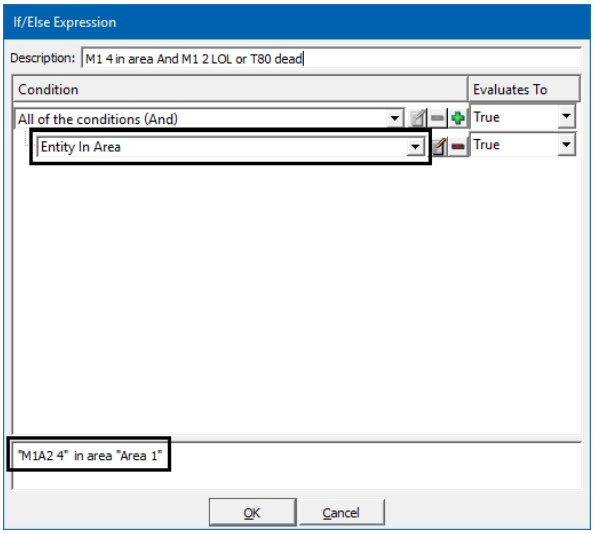

3. Type a description for the expression you want to build (Figure 300).

**Figure 300. Description added**



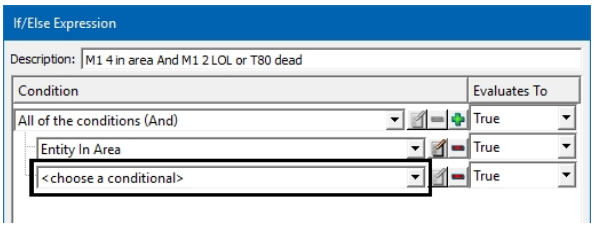

4. In the <choose a conditional> list, select **Entity in Area**. The Entity in Area dialog box opens.
5. In the Entity in Area dialog box, select M1A2 4 and Area 1.
6. Click OK. The condition is added and the If expression is updated (Figure 301).

**Figure 301. Entity in Area condition added**



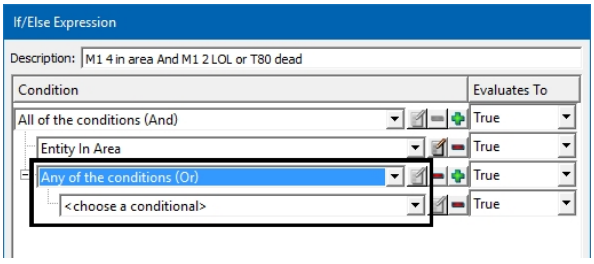

7. On the All of the conditions line, click the Add button ( ). A new line is added to the window (Figure 302).

**Figure 302. Condition added**



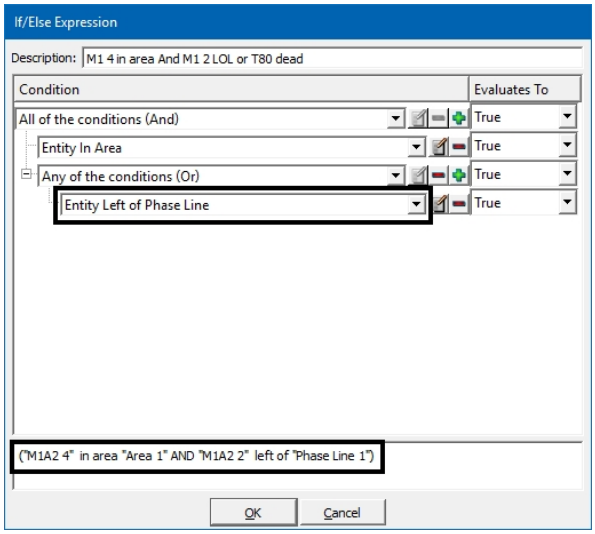

8. In the <choose a conditional> list, select **Any of the conditions (Or)**. A new line is added to the window (Figure 303).

**Figure 303. Or operator and condition added**



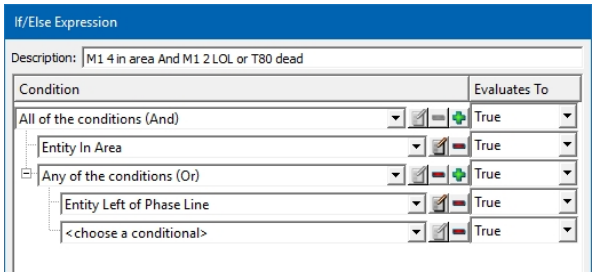

9. In the <choose a conditional> list, select **Entity Left of Phase Line**. The Entity Left of Phase Line dialog box opens.
10. Select M1A2 2 and Phase Line 1.
11. Click OK. The condition is added and the If expression is updated (Figure 304).

**Figure 304. Entity Left of Phase Line condition specified**



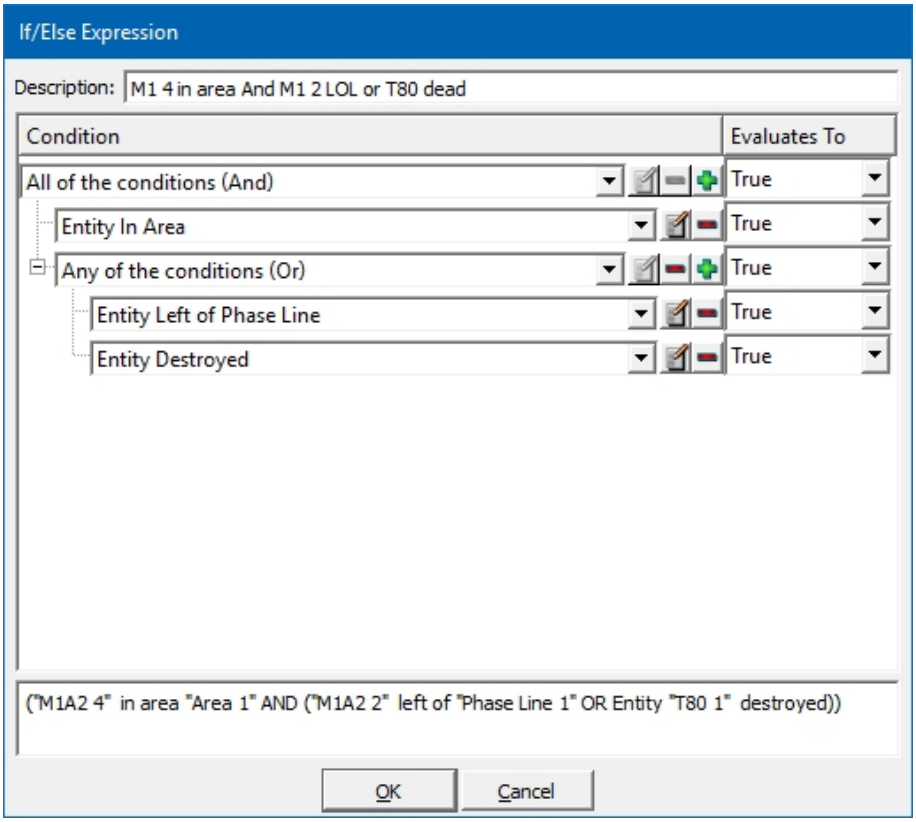

12. On the Any of the conditions (Or) line, click the Add button. A new line is added to the window (Figure 305).

**Figure 305. Last condition line added**



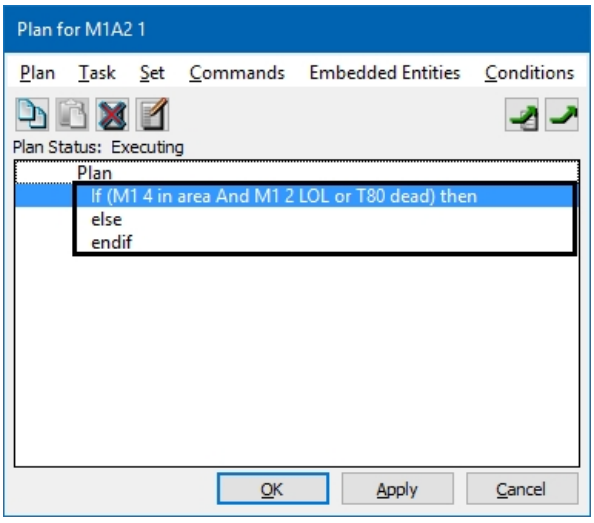

13. In the <choose a conditional> list, select **Entity Destroyed**. The Entity Destroyed dialog box opens.
14. Select T80 1.
15. Click OK. The condition is added and the If expression is updated (Figure 306).

**Figure 306. Completed expression**



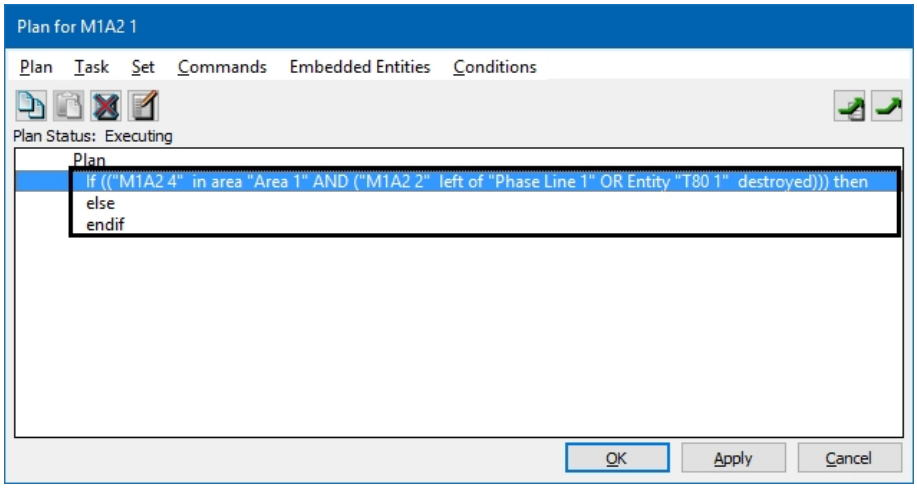

16. In the If/Else Expression dialog box, click OK. The If expression is added to the plan window. Notice that the expression uses the text from the Description box (Figure 307).

**Figure 307. If expression using condition description**




17. If you did not include a description, the entire syntax of the expression is displayed (Figure 308).

**Figure 308. If expression using expression syntax**




## 37.4.3 Editing Condition Statements

➤ **To edit an If, While, or Wait Until condition statement:**

1. In the Plan window, double click the statement. The applicable expression building dialog box opens.
2. To edit the parameters of a condition, click the Edit button ( ) for that condition and change the parameters as desired.
3. To change the condition being tested, select a different condition in the list and specify its parameters.
4. To delete a condition, click the Delete button ( ) for that condition.
5. To change how the condition is evaluated, choose a different option in the Evaluates To list.
6. Click OK.

➤ **To edit a Trigger:**

1. If the Trigger pane is not displayed, click the Expand button ( ) to show it.
2. In the Triggers list, select the trigger that you want to edit.
3. Click the Edit button ( ). The Trigger dialog box opens.
4. To edit the parameters of a condition, click the Edit button ( ) for that condition and change the parameters as desired.
5. To change the condition being tested, select a different condition in the list and specify its parameters.
6. To delete a condition, click the Delete button ( ) for that condition.

7. To change how the condition is evaluated, choose a different option in the Evaluates To list.
8. Click OK.

### 37.4.4 Specifying Names or Patterns in Condition Statements

Many of the conditions that you can use to build a condition statement require you to specify simulation objects for which the condition will be tested. You can specify:

- A specific named simulation object, for example, simulation object M1A2 1 is in Area 1.
- That the condition applies to "Self", for example, "I" am in Area 1. Specifying a condition for one's self makes it easy to copy plans or plan statements and paste them into the plans of other simulation objects without doing any editing.
- An enumeration, for example, any simulation object with enumeration 1:1:225:1:1:3:0 (any M1A2).
- The inverse of the selection, for example, any simulation object but myself, or any simulation object except an M1A2.
- That for units, the entire unit must satisfy the condition (the default), or that any subordinate member of a unit satisfies the condition. For example, the default behavior when Entity Is Destroyed is applied to a unit is that all members of the unit must be destroyed for the condition to be true. The alternative is that the condition is true if any member of the unit is destroyed.

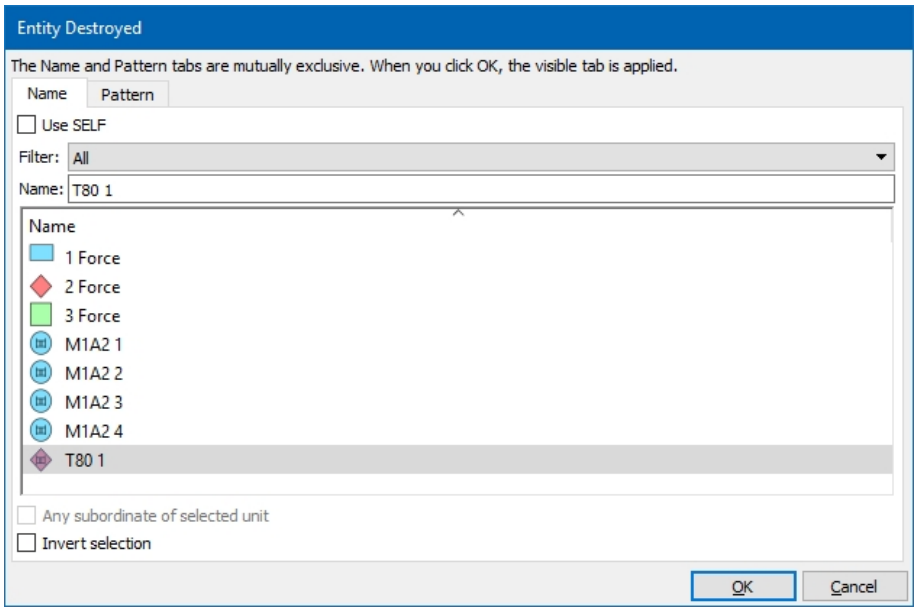
The Name and Pattern specifications are mutually exclusive. You cannot specify a name and a pattern. The tab in the Condition dialog box that is visible when you click OK is the specification that gets applied.

## Specifying a Name in a Condition Statement

➤ **To specify a named simulation object in a condition statement:**

1. In a condition dialog box, select the Name tab (Figure 309).

**Figure 309. Name tab in condition dialog box**




2. To specify the simulation object whose plan this is as the simulation object in the condition, select the Use SELF check box.

   To specify a simulation object by name:

   a. Optionally filter the list. If you want to use a plan variable, you must select the Plan Variables filter.

   b. Select the simulation object or variable in the list or type its name in the Name text box.

3. If you select a unit in the list, the Any Subordinate of Selected Unit check box is enabled. If you want the condition to be satisfied when any member of the unit meets the condition, select the check box.

4. To specify the inverse of the name, that is, any member except the selected one, select the Invert Selection check box.

---

Selecting both Any Subordinate of Selected Unit and Invert Selection causes the condition to be true if it is true for any entity in the scenario.

---

5. Click OK.

### Specifying a Pattern in a Condition Statement

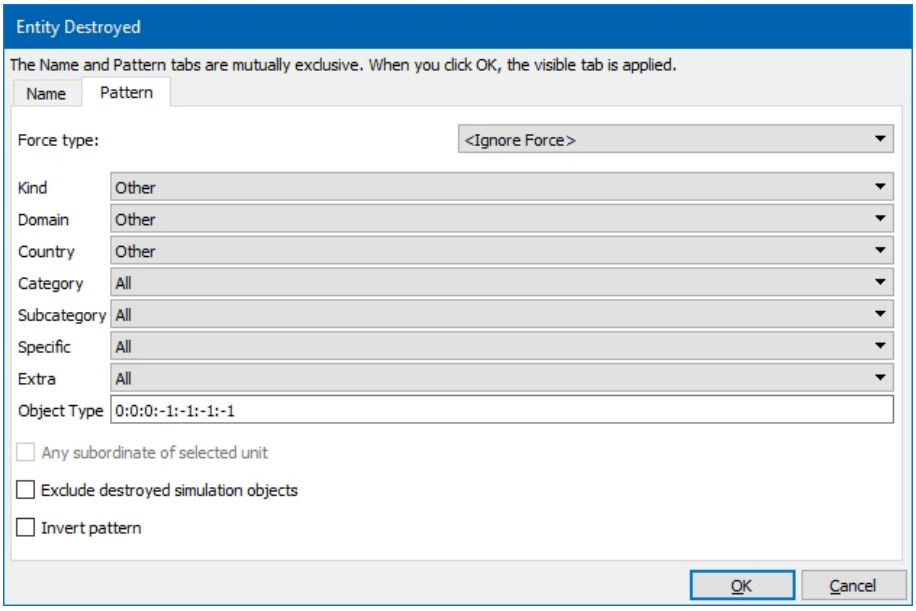
The enumerations used in the lists on the Pattern tab are loaded from the file *./appData/settings/vrfGui/condition-entity-types.csv*. They represent a subset of the enumerations typically used for simulation objects in simulations. However, you can enter any numeric value you want in the enumeration value box.

If you expect that you will consistently need to specify enumeration values that are not part of *condition-entity-types.csv*, such as a particular country code, you can edit it to add the patterns you need.

➤ **To specify a pattern in a condition statement:**

1. In a conditional statement dialog box, select the Pattern tab (Figure 310).

**Figure 310. Pattern tab in condition dialog box**




2. Optionally, specify a force to test for.
3. For each element of the enumeration, select an option from the list, or type an enumeration in the text box.
4. If the enumeration you enter is for a unit, the Any Subordinate Of Selected Unit check box is enabled. If you want the condition to be satisfied when any member of the unit meets the condition, select the check box.
5. To specify the inverse of the name, that is, any member except the selected one, select the Invert Pattern check box.
6. Click OK.

## 37.5. Using Plan Variables

You can use plan variables in most places where you would select a specific simulation object in a task, set, or conditional test. Plan variables use the names Simulation Object and Created Object. You cannot add your own variables or change

the names.

The variables get assigned values only after an object has been created from within a plan (Created Object) or a conditional test has been met that identifies a simulation object (Simulation Object). If you use a variable in a plan that does not have a value, it is ignored.

A Simulation Object variable does not get assigned a value until a condition has been completely evaluated. Therefore, you cannot do something like If Entity In Area AND Simulation Object is Destroyed and expect that the Simulation Object variable refers to the entity identified by Entity in Area. In this case, the Simulation Object variable would refer to a previously identified simulation object or it would just be empty.

---

Remember that the values assigned to plan variables can change as a simulation object progresses through its plan.

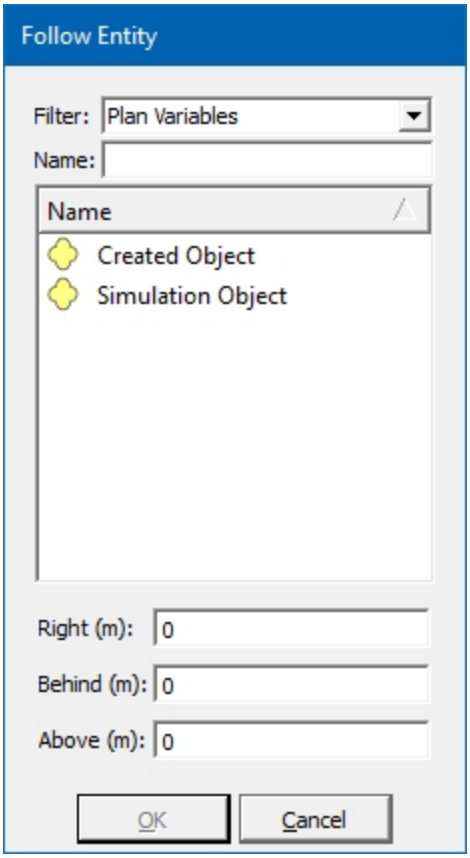
---

For conceptual information about plan variables, please see "36.3. Plan Variables" on page 869.

➤ **To use a plan variable in plan statement:**

1. In the statement creation dialog box, select Plan Variables in the Filter list. The dialog box lists Created Object and Simulation Object (Figure 311).

**Figure 311. Plan variables**




2. Select the variable that you want to use.
3. Complete the rest of the dialog box normally.

## 37.6. Creating Global Plans

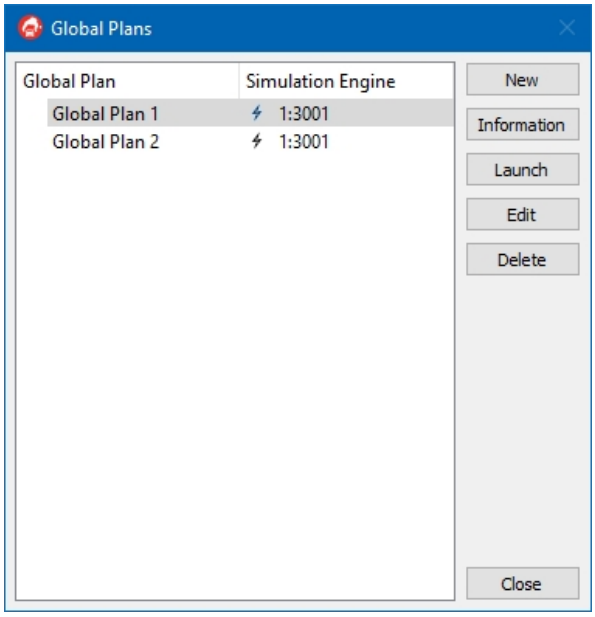
Global plans are not tied to a specific simulation object. However, since they must be executed by a simulation engine, they are assigned to a specific back-end.

Global plans have a limited set of Task and Set commands and the same set of Commands menu options and conditions as individual plans. (You can add additional tasks using the VR-Forces API or by writing scripted tasks.) You can open an Information dialog box for a global plan to see its task status and console messages.

➤ **To create a global plan:**

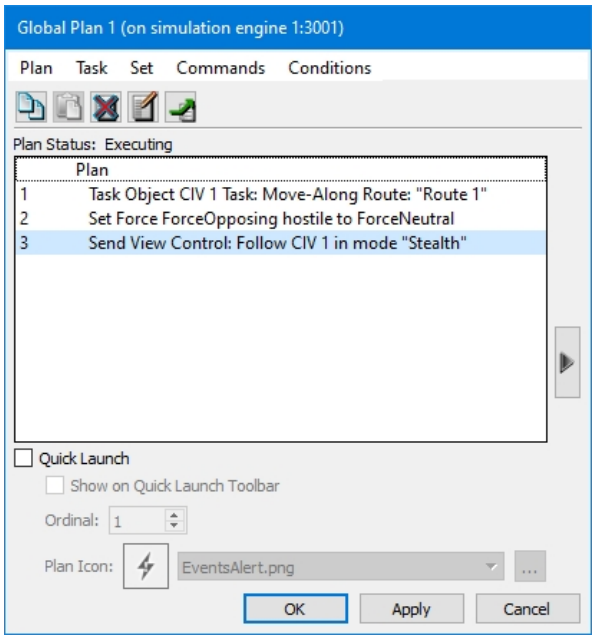
1. Choose **Simulation > Global Plans**. The Global Plans window opens (Figure 312). It lists each global plan and the simulation engine on which it is executed.

**Figure 312. Global Plans window**




2. Click New. The New Global Plan Information dialog box opens.
3. In the Plan Name box, type a name for the plan.
4. If your scenario has more than one back-end, select the back-end on which you want to run the global plan.
5. Click OK. The Global Plan window opens (Figure 313).

**Figure 313. Edit Global Plan window**



6. Add commands from the Task, Set, or Conditions menu, as described in "37.1.1 Adding a Task or Set Data Request to a Plan" on page 876 and "37.1.2 Adding an If Block to a Plan" on page 876. Add commands from the Commands menu as described in "37.7. Adding Commands to a Plan" on the facing page.
7. Optionally, select the Quick Launch check box to enable quick launching of this plan. For information about using the Quick Launch Toolbar, please see "37.6.1 Controlling When Global Plans Run (Quick Launch)" below.
8. Optionally, select the Show on Quick Launch Toolbar check box to add this global plan to the Quick Launch toolbar.
9. Optionally, in the Ordinal box, specify the position of this plan on the Quick Launch toolbar.
10. Optionally, change the icon for this plan on the Quick Launch toolbar, as follows:
    a. Click the Browse button next to the icon name. A file chooser window opens.
    b. Select the file you want to use for the icon.
    c. Click Open.
11. Click OK.

## 37.6.1 Controlling When Global Plans Run (Quick Launch)

If you enable quick launch for a global plan, it does not start executing until you launch it. You can launch it from the Quick Launch toolbar, from the Global Plans window, or from another plan. (You can enable quick launch without putting an icon on the Quick Launch toolbar.) When you launch a global plan, it runs to the end. When it finishes, you can launch it again.

---

When the Quick Launch toolbar is docked, it shows an icon for each quick launch item. To find out what the icon represents, mouse over it and read its tooltip. If you undock the toolbar, it displays the name for each quick launch item.

---

➤ To launch a global plan from the Quick Launch toolbar, click its icon.

➤ **To launch a global plan from the Global Plans window:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Global Plans**. The Global Plans window opens (Figure 312).
2. Select the global plan you want to launch. If it is not running, the Launch button becomes active.
3. Click Launch. The global plan runs. When it completes, the Launch button becomes active again.

➤ **To launch a global plan from a plan:**

1. Open the plan window for an individual plan or a global plan.
2. Choose **Commands > Launch Global Plan**. The Launch Global Plan window opens.
3. Select the global plan you want to launch.
4. Click OK.

### 37.6.2 Opening an Information Dialog Box for a Global Plan

➤ **To open an Information dialog box for a global plan:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Global Plans**. The Global Plans window opens (Figure 312).
2. Select the global plan for which you want to open an Information dialog box.
3. Click Information.

## 37.7. Adding Commands to a Plan

The Commands menu lets you assign tasks and set data requests to simulation objects and create the objects on the Simulation Objects Palette and Tactical Graphics Palette. There are also several commands that are only available on the Commands menu. Except as noted in this section, the procedures for adding global commands and conditional statements to a global plan are the same as the procedures for adding them to individual plans.

---

Since a global plan has no idea what type of simulation object you might want to give a task or set data request to, when you add a task or set, the full list of possible tasks and sets is available. There is no context sensitivity like there is when you select a simulation object and view the Task or Set menu. It is up to you to be sure that the task or set you are assigning to a simulation object is supported by that object.

The best way to determine this is to create a simulation object of the type to which you want to give a task and see if the task or set data request is available on its context-sensitive Task or Set menu. You can also checkthe Simulation Object Editor to see if a simulation object has the system used for a particular task.

---

### 37.7.1 Adding Tasks and Sets from the Commands Menu

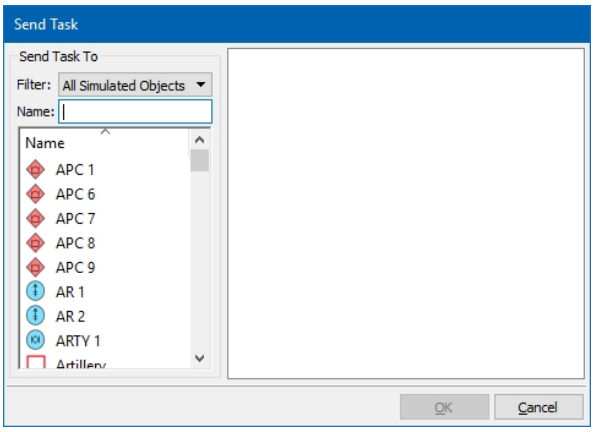
The commands on the Task and Set menus in an individual plan apply implicitly to the simulation object for whom you are writing a plan. Tasks and sets on the Commands menu must be assigned explicitly to a target simulation object.

Other than the requirement to specify the target simulation object, adding a global task or set command to a plan uses the same procedure as adding any task or set to an individual plan.

➤ **To assign a task from the Commands menu:**

1. In a Plan window or Global Plan window, choose **Commands > Send Task**. The Send Task dialog box opens (Figure 314).

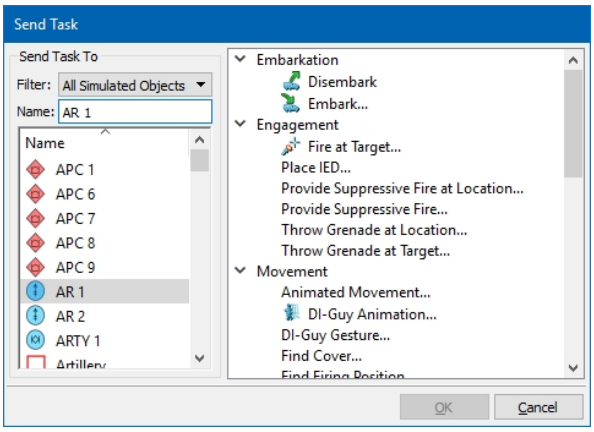
**Figure 314. Task dialog box**




The procedure for adding a set data request is the same as for a task, except that you choose **Commands > Send Set** and the Send Set dialog box opens.

2. In the Apply Command To group box, select a simulation object from the list or type its name in the Name box. The simulation object does not have to exist in the scenario at the time you add the command, but you should be sure that it will be created before the command is run. The window displays a list of tasks for the selected simulation object (Figure 315). If the simulation object already exists in the scenario, the list of tasks is context-sensitive.

**Figure 315. Task list**



Remember that a command task affects a simulation object like an independent task. It interrupts the current task and causes the simulation object to abandon its plan. If you are adding a command to an individual plan, be sure that you are assigning it to some other simulation object and not the simulation object for whom you are writing the plan. (Unless you want the simulation object to abandon its plan.)

3. Select the task you want to assign.
4. Click OK. If the task takes parameters, a dialog box opens.

   If the task does not take parameters, such as Wait, the command is added to the plan.
5. If the task takes parameters, specify the parameters and click OK in the task-specific dialog box. Please see the chapters in "Section V. Tasks" on page 539 and "Section VI. Set Data Requests" on page 793 for the details of assigning specific tasks and sets.
6. Click OK. The command is added to the plan.

### Editing Task and Set Commands in Plans

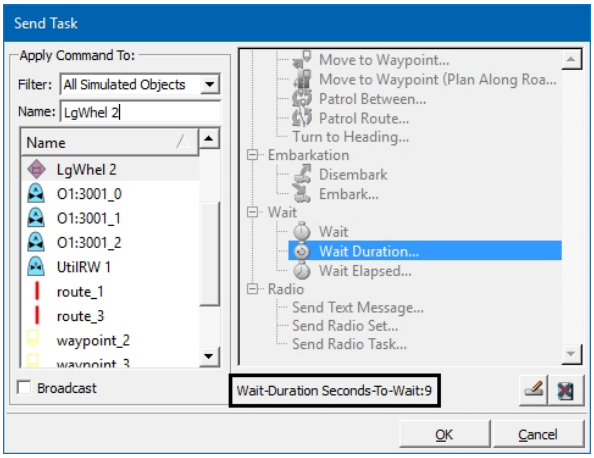
If you want to edit a task or set command in a plan, you can:

- Delete the plan statement and start over.
- Edit the existing statement. If you edit the existing statement, you can:
  - Delete the current task and choose a different one.
  - Edit the parameters of the task.

**➤ To edit a task or set command in a plan:**

1. Select the plan statement you want to edit.
2. Click the Edit button, or double-click the statement. The Send Task or Send Set dialog box opens. The task list is grayed out. If you are not sure of the task that you are editing, you can read the text of the command below the window (Figure 316).

**Figure 316. Send Radio Task dialog box for plan command**




3. To clear the task and start over, click the Delete button ( ).

4. To keep the same task and change the parameters, click the Edit button ( ). The appropriate dialog box opens and you can edit the parameters.

5. Click OK.

## 37.7.2 Sending Text Messages from the Commands Menu

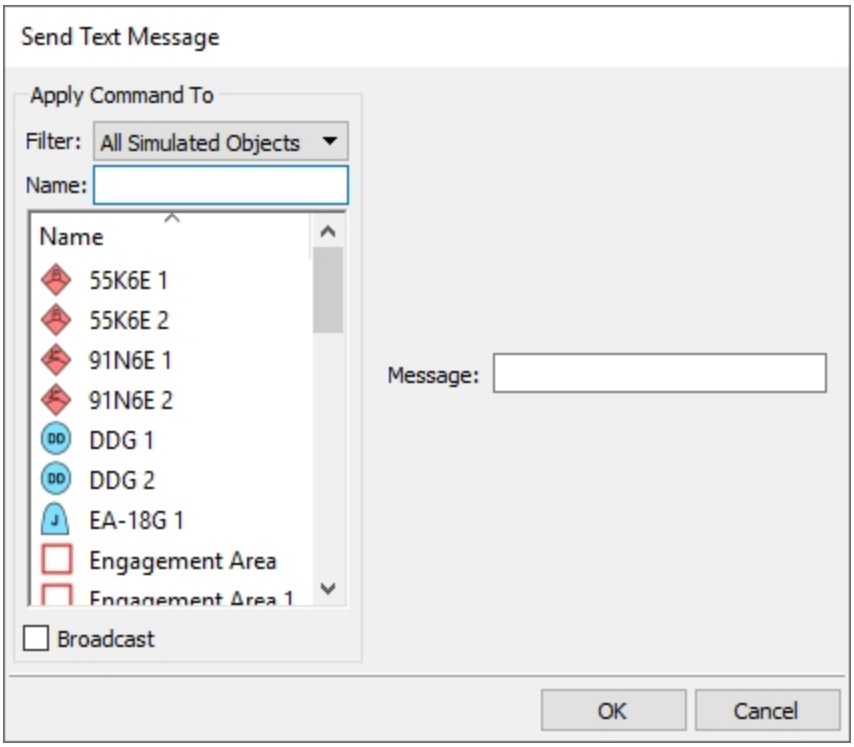
The Send Text Message command lets you send a text message to a simulation object without using the radio network. The receiving simulation object can test for receipt of the message in a conditional statement in its plan. (For details, please see "Receive Text Message" on page 868.)

Because the Send Text Message command does not use the radio network, simulation objects in forces other than the sending simulation object can receive the text message. Additionally, text messages sent using the Send Text Message command do not display communication lines and the sending object does not display squawk indicators.

➤ **To send a text message from the Commands menu:**

1. In a Plan window or Global Plan window, choose **Commands > Send Text Message**. The Send Text Message dialog box opens (Figure 317).

**Figure 317. Send Text Message dialog box for plan command**




2. To send the message to all simulation objects in the scenario, select the Broadcast check box.

   To send the message to a specific simulation object, in the Name text box, type the name of the simulation object that will receive the message, or select the simulation object in the list or on the terrain.

3. In the Message box, type the text message.
4. Click OK. The command is added to the plan.

## 37.7.3 Sending Console Messages

You can send messages to be displayed in the console on an object's Information dialog box and to the back-end console. Messages sent by global plans go to the back-end console. Messages sent from a simulation object's plan go to the console in its Information dialog box.

If the notification level for a console message is lower than the notification level configured for the back-end or the target simulation object, the message is not displayed. For example, if a simulation object's notification level is set to Info, it receives Error, Warn, and Info messages, but not messages set to Verbose or Debug.

➤ **To send a console message from a plan:**

1. In a plan window, choose **Commands > Console Message**. The Console Message dialog box opens.
2. Select the notify level from the list.

3. Type the message you want to send.
4. Click OK.

## 37.7.4 Creating Objects from Within a Plan

You can create any of the objects on the Simulation Objects and Tactical Graphics palettes from within a plan.

➤ **To create an object from a plan:**

1. In a plan window, choose **Commands > Create >** *palette*, where *palette* is one of the object creation palettes. The selected palette opens.
2. Select the object you want to create.
3. Create the desired object as you would if you were creating it directly from one of the object creation palettes. When you are finished creating the object, a Create command is added to the plan and the object itself disappears. (The object disappears because you are not actually creating the object right now, you are just creating the command that will create it when the plan executes.)

## 37.7.5 Deleting Objects from Within a Plan

You can delete any object in a scenario from a plan.

➤ **To delete an object from a plan:**

1. In a plan window, choose **Commands > Delete Object**. The Delete Object dialog box opens.
2. Type the name of the object you want to delete or select the object in the list or on the terrain.
3. Click OK.

### Deleting One's Self from the Scenario

The Delete Object global command lets you delete any specified object. If you just want to delete the simulation object whose plan you are editing, you can use the Delete Self command. Like the Use Self option in some conditions, Delete Self provides a non-entity-specific command that is useful for plans that you want to assign to multiple simulation objects.

➤ To assign the Delete Self command, choose **Commands > Delete Self**.

## 37.7.6 Issuing a Plan

The Issue Plan global command lets you assign a plan to a simulation object. When you issue a plan, the new plan replaces whatever plan or task the simulation object is executing. Although you can issue a plan to any simulation object, this command is particularly useful when you create a simulation object after a scenario has started.

When you create a scenario, you cannot create a plan for a simulation object that does not exist. Therefore, if you create a simulation object after the scenario starts (using the Create global command), it is difficult to send it a sequence of tasks because

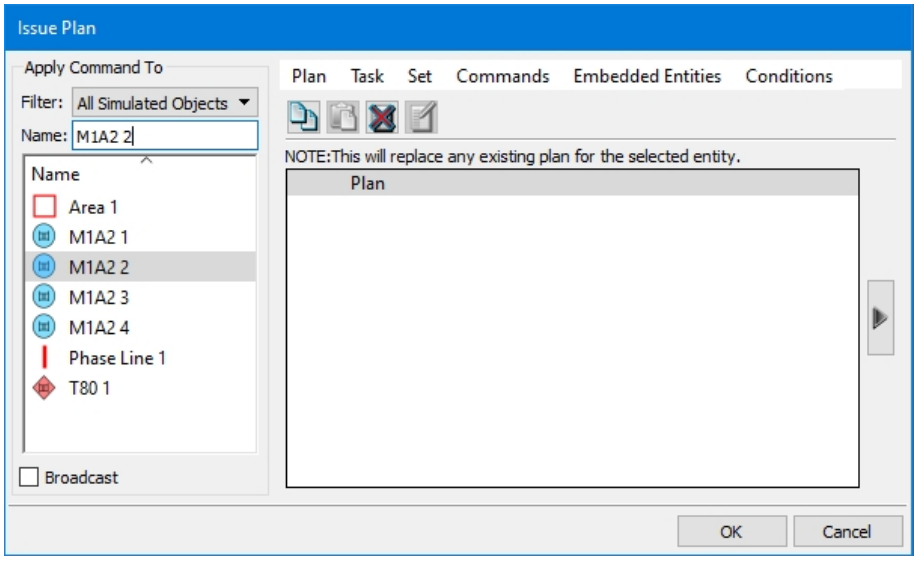
global commands are not executed in sequence (as discussed in "36.1. Introduction to Individual Plans and Global Plans" on page 858). The Issue Plan command solves this problem.

Issue Plan is a concurrent task. Including it in a plan does not affect the current task that the simulation object is executing or the sequencing of tasks in its plan.

➤ **To issue a plan to a simulation object:**

1. In a plan window, choose **Commands > Issue Plan**. The Issue Plan dialog box opens (Figure 318).

**Figure 318. Issue Plan dialog box**




2. In the Apply command To: group box, select the simulation object to which you want to assign this plan or type the name of the simulation object in the Name text box.

   If this is a simulation object that does not yet exist (because you plan to create it after the scenario starts), you must type the name and you are responsible for ensuring that the name you type matches the name of the simulation object that gets created. You must also ensure that the scenario does not have more than one entity with the same name.

   If you want to issue a plan to an entity that has just been created, you can use the Created Object plan variable to identify the object. For more information about the Created Object variable, please see "36.3. Plan Variables" on page 869.

3. Use the right side of the dialog box to write a plan. It has the exact same set of menus and commands as the Plan dialog box. Follow the procedures described elsewhere in this chapter to write the plan.

4. Click OK.

### 37.7.7 Sending View Control Messages

You can send view control messages to set the view mode for observers in the simulation. This includes the observers in VR-Forces and in any other VR-Vantage applications in the exercise. (The VR-Forces front-end is built using the VR-Vantage toolkit and is, therefore, considered a VR-Vantage application.) When you send a command you can direct it to a specific observer or to all similarly named observers, for example, all Observer 1s.

You can also send saved observer views. Observer views work only with VR-Forces. They do not affect other VR-Vantage applications. If you send an observer view, you can specify a transition time to the new view, similar to the automated transition described in "Animating Transitions Between Observer Views" on page 1126.

---

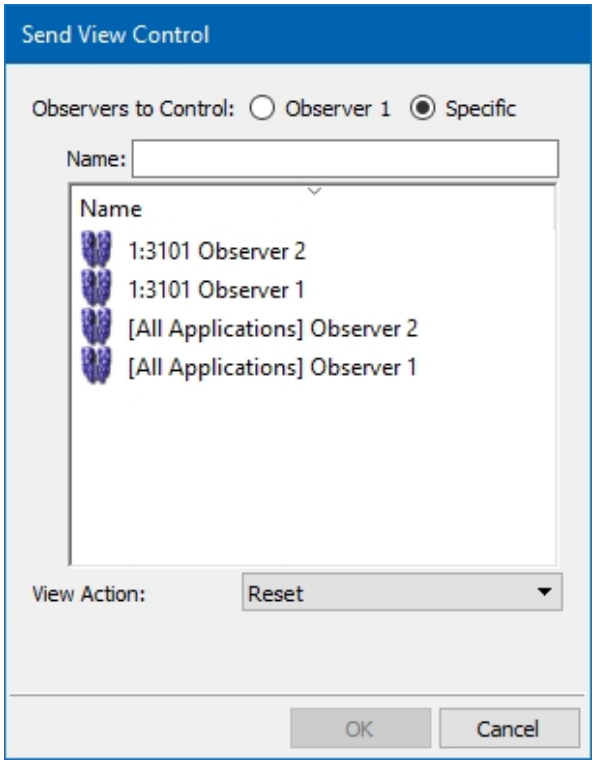
- The View Control command does not support all of the view modes. However, you can create a saved view using any view mode and send the saved view (to VR-Forces only).
- If you send an observer view, the current values for the observer view are put into the plan. If you subsequently change the observer view, the changed values do not get picked up.
- If you record a scenario with the MAK Data Logger, it records view control commands. You can use them to create demonstration recordings that automatically change to different views as the recording progresses.

---

➤ **To send a view control message:**

1. In a plan window, choose **Commands > Send View Control**. The Send View Control window opens (Figure 319).
2. Select an Observers to Control option. Observer 1 sends the view control command to Observer 1 in all VR-Vantage applications. If you want to direct the view control message to a particular observer:
    a. Select Specific. The dialog box expands to show a list of observers.
    b. Select the observers you want to control by object name (such as 1:3101 Observer 1) or by observer name (such as Observer 2).
    c. Click OK.

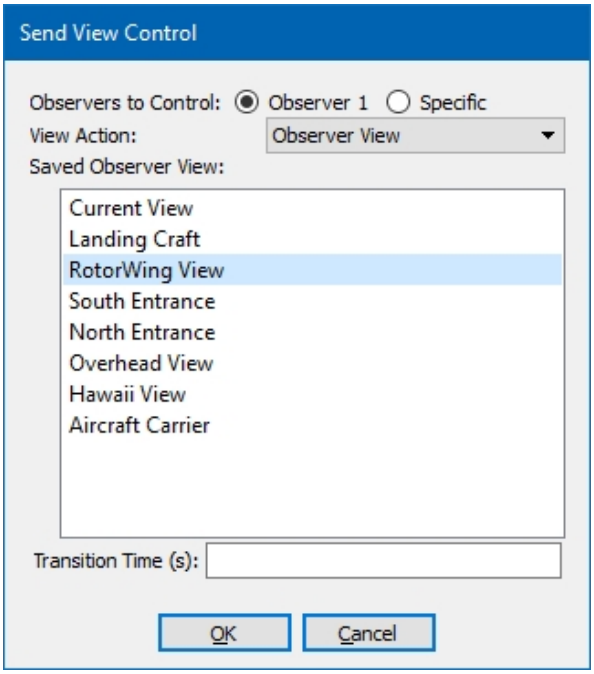
**Figure 319. Observers to control**




3. In the View Action list, select the view control you want to send, as follows:
   - Reset. Reset the observer view to the default view.
   - Detach. Detach the observer from an attached simulation object.
   - Observer View. Sends the selected observer view (from the Observer Views Panel).
   - *`Attach mode`*, where *`Attach mode`* is Absolute or one of the attach modes. Sends the selected attach mode.

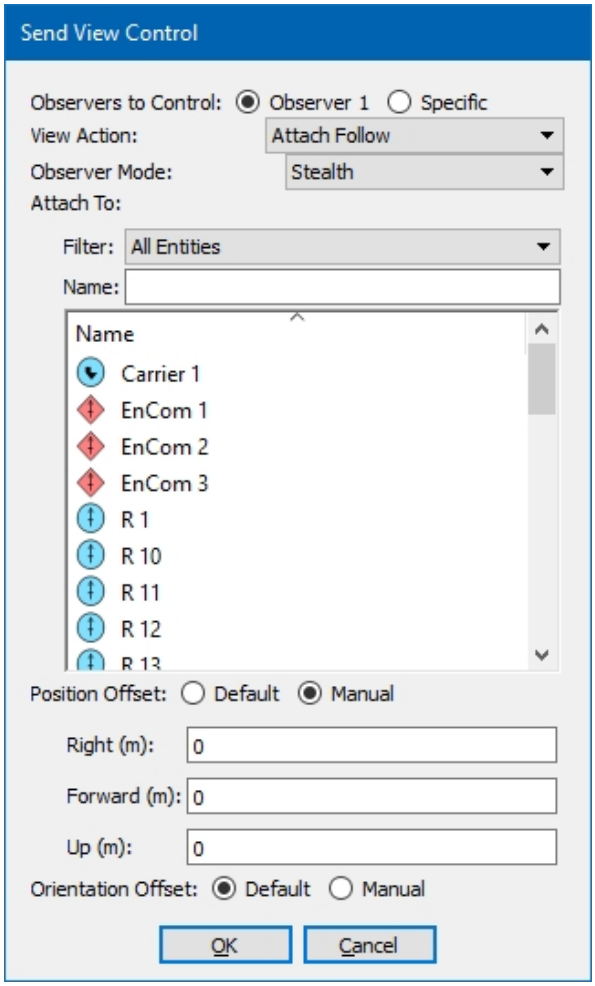
   For every command except Reset and Detach, the dialog box redisplays to add a selection window appropriate to the view mode.
4. If you selected Observer View as the View Action, select the observer view that you want to send (Figure 320). Optionally, specify a transition time, in seconds.

**Figure 320. Observer view**




5. If you selected Absolute mode or an attach mode as the View Action, complete the dialog box (Figure 321) as follows:
    a. In the Observer Mode list, select the observer mode for the view control message.
    b. If you selected Absolute mode, specify the location of the observer and, optionally, an offset orientation.
    c. If you selected an attach mode, select the simulation object to attach to.
    d. If you selected an attach mode that supports an offset vector or offset orientation, optionally select Manual and specify an offset. The default offset is 0,0,0.

**Figure 321. Attach mode**




e. If you select Track, specify the location for the observer to track from.

f. If you select Tether Track, select a secondary simulation object and, optionally, a position offset.

6. Click OK.

## 37.7.8 Creating a Sensor View from a Plan

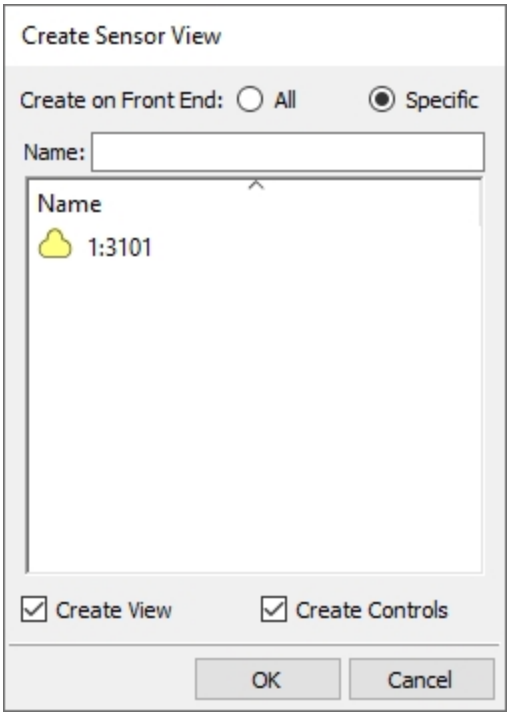
If a simulation object has a gimbaled sensor, it can create a view as part of its plan. You can specify whether the view displays in all front-ends or only a specific one. You can also indicate whether the view should include the sensor controls.

➤ **To create a sensor view from a plan:**

1. In a plan window, choose **Commands > Create Sensor View**. The Create Sensor View dialog box opens.
2. You can choose to create the sensor view in all front-ends or for a specific one. If you choose to create the view for a specific front-end, the dialog box allows you to specify the front end.

3. Select the Create View check box to control whether the sensor view displays.
4. Optionally, select the Create Controls check box if you want to include view controls for the sensor view.
5. Click OK.

**Figure 322. Create Sensor View**




## 37.7.9 Sending Test Results

You can include test results in a plan for testing purposes. Test results print to the console, similar to console messages (as described in "37.7.3 Sending Console Messages" on page 903).

---

You can set the sim to exit immediately after the test result is issued. For details, see the `--exitOnTestResultCommand` command-line option in Table 8 on page 168.

---

➤ **To send a test result from a plan:**

1. In a plan window, choose **Commands > Test Result**. The Test Result dialog box opens.
2. Select the result from the list.
3. Optionally, enter a message for the test result.
4. Click OK.

## 37.8. Writing Plans for Units

➤ **To write a plan for a unit:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Follow the procedures for writing a plan for an individual simulation object.

---

Please see "25.2.2 Independently Tasking Unit Members" on page 552 for notes about how simulation objects that are members of units respond to individual plans and independent tasks.

---

## 37.9. Writing a Plan for Multiple Simulation Objects

You can write a plan and assign it to multiple simulation objects at the same time. If any of the simulation objects already has a plan, it is overwritten by the new plan. After you assign a plan using this procedure, you can subsequently edit the plans for particular simulation objects and the changes do not affect the other simulation objects.

---

If you select several simulation objects and they all have the exact same plan, the plan window displays that plan. If any of the simulation objects have different plans, you are given the option to continue or cancel. If you continue, VR-Forces displays an empty Plan window and the new plan replaces whatever plans the simulation objects previously had.

---

➤ **To write a plan for multiple simulation objects:**

1. Select the simulation objects to which you want to assign the same plan.
2. Choose **Objects > Plan**. The Plan window opens.
3. Add statements to the plan as you would if you were writing a plan for an individual simulation object.
4. Click OK. The plan is assigned to the selected simulation objects.

## 37.10. Writing Plans for Remote Entities

If you attach components to remote entities, you can write plans for those entities. To assign plans, the entities must exist in the exercise, must have attached components, and must be present in the exercise when VR-Forces saves the scenario. The plans must be appropriate for the attached components. Movement tasks are not appropriate, because VR-Forces cannot control the location of a remote simulation object. Appropriate plan statements might be to enable spot reporting, or to send a radio message. For details about how to attach components to remote entities, please see "75.1. Attaching Components to Remote Entities" on page 1518.

## 37.11. Copying Plans and Plan Statements

You can copy plans and individual plan statements and paste them elsewhere in a plan or into another simulation object's plan. You can even paste them into another scenario if you do not close VR-Forces between the copy and paste operations.

---

In addition to copy and paste, you can drag statements and condition blocks from one location to another in a plan and to other plans.

---

➤ **To copy plans and plan statements:**

1. Open the Plan window for the plan that you want to copy.
2. To copy the entire plan, select the top line in the plan (**Plan**). To copy a statement, select the statement. If you select a conditional statement, the entire statement block is selected.
3. Choose **Plan > Copy Plan** or click the Copy button ( ).
4. Open the Plan window for the simulation object you want to copy the plan to.
5. Select the line just above where you want to insert the copied plan.
6. Click the Paste button ( ).
7. Continue editing the plan.
8. Save the plan.

## 37.12. Restarting a Plan

There may be occasions when you want to restart a simulation object's plan without restarting a scenario. You can restart a plan interactively or by placing a Restart Plan command in a plan.

When you restart a plan, VR-Forces processes the statements in the plan, starting from the first statement. However, the simulation object executes tasks starting from its current location, not the location it had at the start of the scenario (unless it has not moved since the start of the scenario).

➤ **To restart a plan interactively:**

1. Select the simulation object whose plan you want to restart.
2. Choose **Objects > Manage Plan > Restart Plan**.

➤ **To restart a plan from within a plan:**

1. Open a simulation object's plan or a global plan.
2. Choose **Commands > Restart Plan**. The Restart Plan dialog box opens.
3. Select the simulation object whose plan you want to restart.

4. Click OK.
5. Save the plan.

➤ **To restart a plan from the Plan window:**

1. Open a simulation object's plan.
2. Click Restart.

## 37.13. Abandoning a Plan

If you give a simulation object that is executing a plan an independent task, it abandons the plan. You can also order a simulation object to stop executing its plan. When you abandon a plan, the following things happen:

- The simulation object stops whatever task it is working on, even if it is an independent task.
- The plan is marked as complete.
- All registered triggers are deleted.
- The statement indicator skips to the end of the plan.
- The simulation object enters a wait state.

---

If you give a simulation object that is executing a plan an independent task, VR-Forces prompts you before it abandons the plan. (There is no prompt for the Abandon Plan command.) You can disable the prompt. For details, please see "Enabling and Disabling the Task Confirmation Prompt" on page 546.

---

You can abandon a plan interactively or by sending an Abandon Plan command in an individual or global plan.

➤ **To abandon a plan interactively:**

1. Select the simulation object whose plan you want to abandon.
2. Choose **Objects > Manage Plan > Abandon Plan**.

➤ **To abandon a plan from within a plan:**

1. Open a simulation object's plan or a global plan.
2. Choose **Commands > Abandon Plan**. The Abandon Plan dialog box opens.
3. Select the simulation object whose plan you want to abandon.
4. Click OK.
5. Save the plan.

➤ **To abandon a plan from the Plan window:**

1. Open a simulation object's plan.
2. Click Abandon.

# VIII. Tactical Graphics

Tactical graphics are objects that represent points, lines, areas, and information overlaid on the terrain. This section describes overlays and particular details about tactical graphics.

- For generic information about creating tactical graphics, please see "Chapter 14. Creating and Placing Objects" on page 363.
- For information about creating and using spawn points, sink points, and air traffic areas (all of which are tactical graphics), see "Chapter 18. Generating Traffic (Pattern of Life)" on page 445.
- For information about combat engineering objects, which are displayed similarly to tactical graphics, please see "22.2. Combat Engineering Objects" on page 500.

# 38. Introduction to Tactical Graphics

This chapter is a brief introduction to tactical graphics.


38.1. Introduction ..... 918
38.2. Points ..... 920
38.3. Phase Lines ..... 920
38.4. Routes ..... 921
38.5. Areas ..... 921
38.6. Obstacles ..... 921
38.7. Displaying Tactical Graphics ..... 922
38.7.1 Showing and Hiding Tactical Graphics ..... 923
38.7.2 Showing and Hiding Tactical Graphics Labels ..... 924
38.7.3 Displaying Height-Above-Terrain Lines for Vertices ..... 924

# 38.1. Introduction

VR-Forces lets you add tactical graphics to scenarios. Tactical graphics are objects that represent points, lines, areas, and information overlaid on the terrain. They are automatically assigned to overlays. (You can change the overlay at or after creation.) Simulation objects have knowledge of some types of tactical graphics, which allows tasks and plans to take them into account. VR-Forces supports the following types of tactical graphics:

**Table 37. Types of tactical graphics**

| Tactical Graphic | Description |
|---|---|
| **Control objects** | **Simulation objects are aware of control objects and can respond to them. They avoid obstacles, can move to waypoints, follow routes, and so on.** |
| Waypoint | A specific X, Y, Z coordinate. |
| Area | A polygonal area. Areas are considered to have volume, so that air and subsurface entities can interact with them. |
| Route | A sequence of points in three-dimensional space. |
| Phase Line | Infinitely long line defined by two points. |
| Obstacle | A polygonal area on the terrain that simulation objects try to avoid if obstacle avoidance is enabled. |
| Linear Obstacle | A line on the terrain that simulation objects try to avoid if obstacle avoidance is enabled. Linear obstacles are supported only for entity-level scenarios. They work only in navigation areas. |
| Pedestrian Path | When humans plan paths in navigation areas that have navigation data, if a pedestrian path is present that can take them to their destination, they will use it. You can think of a pedestrian path as a route that a human will automatically choose to follow instead of being told to follow it. Pedestrian paths are supported only for entity-level scenarios. |
| Disaggregation Area | An area in which an aggregated unit automatically disaggregates if automatic disaggregation is enabled. (Entity-level only) |
| Terrain Page-in Area | An area in which streaming or paged terrain is given priority for paging in. |
| **Other tactical graphics** | |
| Terrain Profile Line | A line that lets you examine the profile of the terrain along the line. |
| Intervisibility Line | A line that shows line-of-sight between two points. |
| Lines | Generic lines and lines with particular graphics, such as main axis and fortified line. Simulation objects treat most lines as routes. |

**Table 37. Types of tactical graphics (continued)**

| Tactical Graphic | Description |
|---|---|
| Aerodromes and runways | Aerodrome and runway tactical graphics give you realistic places where aircraft can take off and land. See "Chapter 60. Airports and Aerodromes" on page 1213, to learn more. |
| Bullseye | A graphic for measuring distances between a simulation object or the mouse cursor and the bullseye. |
| Points | Various military symbology, such as point of contact and decision point. Simulation objects treat most points as waypoints. |
| Areas | Minefields and other areal objects. These are not treated like area control objects. |
| Weather | A variety of weather conditions that display in the 3D view. For information about weather tactical graphics, see"11.5. Using Weather Tactical Graphics" on page 323 . |
| Text | Any arbitrary informational text on the screen. |
| Symbols | Symbols that do not represent simulated objects. They are just graphics on the screen and do not affect the simulation. |
| Circles, ellipses, boxes, and spider webs | These are just graphics and do not affect the simulation. |
| Volumetric objects | Volumetric areas, circles, boxes, ellipses, and corridors allow you to test for a simulation object's presence in a 3D volume rather than just a 2D area. They are useful for defining air corridors and airspace. |
| Combat engineering objects | Combat engineering objects are lines and areas that can impede the progress of simulation objects and cause damage to them. Combat engineering objects are supported only in aggregate-level scenarios. For information about how they work, see "22.2. Combat Engineering Objects" on page 500. |

In aggregate-level scenarios, linear obstacles and pedestrian paths are not supported.

Tactical graphics have names. New objects are assigned default names in the format **Point 1**, **Point 2**, **Route 1**, **Route 2**, and so on. You can specify an alternative name when you create the object. A graphical object's name can be up to 255 characters long.

Tactical graphics can have labels and extended labels. They do not have to be unique and do not have a length restriction.

Tactical graphics are assigned to a force. Waypoints and bullseyes are displayed using their force color. To determine the force of other tactical graphics, examine the Force attribute in the State Data page of the graphic's Information dialog box. For more information, please see "16.1. Displaying Information About an Object" on page 409.

The following sections provide more information about the basic control objects. For information about the other tactical graphics types mentioned in this section, please see:

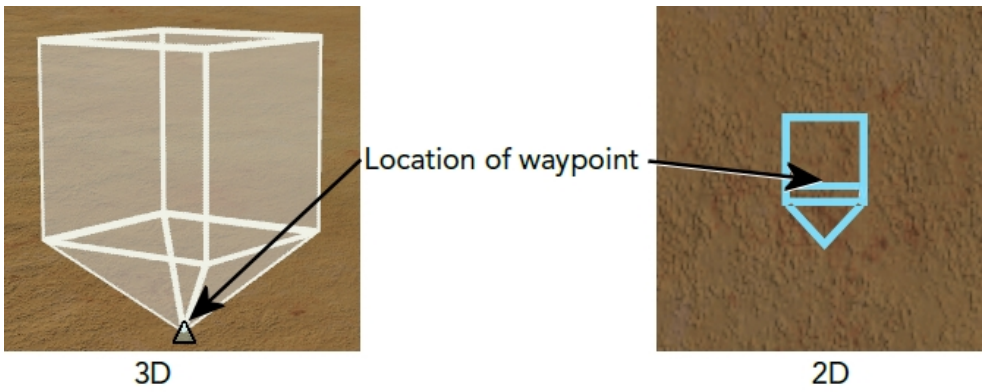
- "Chapter 48. Intervisibility and Range" on page 1049.
- "58.1. Terrain Profiles" on page 1188.
- Section 2.4, *"Manually Paging-In Terrain in VR-Forces"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- "23.6.3 Using Disaggregation Areas" on page 527.
- "Chapter 14. Creating and Placing Objects" on page 363.
- "Chapter 39. Overlays" on page 927.

## 38.2. Points

A point identifies an X, Y, Z coordinate in the terrain. You can command a simulation object to travel to a point and to travel back and forth between points. Figure 323 illustrates waypoints in the 3D and 2D views. In 3D, the bottom of the symbol points to the location of the waypoint. In 2D, it is centered. You can place several different kinds of points on overlays.

A point can have an altitude value. This allows you to send aircraft to waypoints or have them patrol between points.

**Figure 323. Waypoint symbol**




Waypoints clamp to the actual surface of the entity. To place a waypoint on a simulation object in the ocean, disable buoyancy before placing the waypoint; see "46.3. Enabling Buoyancy for Surface Entities" on page 1040.

## 38.3. Phase Lines

A phase line is defined by two points, but is considered to extend indefinitely in either direction and have infinite height. A phase line is used to test the location of a simulation object, for example: Is simulation object A to the left of phase line B? The

left side of the line is determined relative to the direction in which the line is drawn. A phase line's label is placed at the beginning of the line. Therefore, you can always determine which side of a line is the left side. Figure 324 illustrates two phase lines. The arrows are placed to the left of the line and indicate the direction of the line.

Simulation objects cannot move along phase lines, so do not create a phase line if you want a two point route.

**Figure 324. Phase line direction**

## 38.4. Routes

A route is a sequence of points in three-dimensional space. Like phase lines, routes have a direction. A line's name is displayed at its beginning.

Simulation objects can move along routes from one end to the other, and can patrol back and forth along them.

- Do not create a two-point route if you want a phase line. VR-Forces cannot determine whether a simulation object is to the left or right of a route.
- Many "line" tactical graphics are treated as routes by simulation objects.

## 38.5. Areas

An area defines a polygonal area on the terrain. (This is not a terrain polygon, it is just a graphic.) An area is used to test the location of a simulation object, for example: Is simulation object A in area B?

## 38.6. Obstacles

Obstacles represent lines and areas of the terrain that would cause a simulation object problems, such as a ditch or minefield. In entity-level scenarios, if obstacle avoidance is enabled, if a ground entity encounters an obstacle in its path, it tries to drive around the obstacle.

In addition to obstacles, aggregate-level scenarios support combat engineering objects and contamination areas. These objects can defend, damage, or impede simulation objects.

The many combat engineering objects available in aggregate-level scenarios make simple obstacles comparatively less useful. Linear obstacles are not supported in aggregate-level scenarios. They only work in navigation areas.

## 38.7. Displaying Tactical Graphics

You can configure the display of tactical graphics as follows:

- Enable and disable the display of tactical graphics.
- Show or hide vertex indicators for point, linear, and areal objects.
- Show or hide height-above-terrain lines.
- Display height-above-terrain lines only for selected graphics.

**Figure 325. Tactical graphics with height-above-terrain lines (3D)**

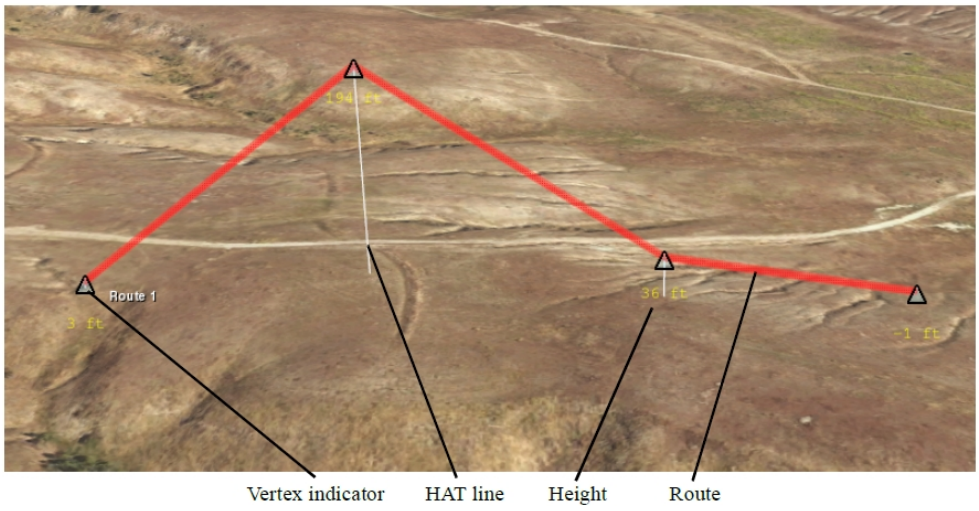
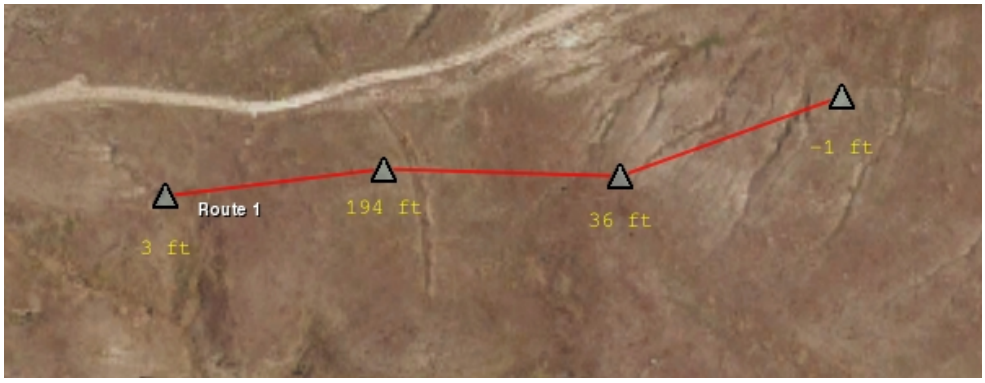



**Figure 326. Tactical graphic (2D)**



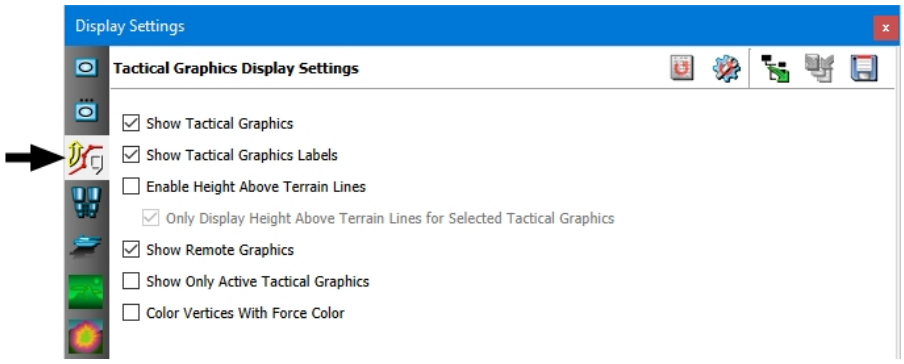
## 38.7.1 Showing and Hiding Tactical Graphics

You can control the display of tactical graphics from the Display Settings dialog box, Tactical Graphics Display Settings page, and from menu and toolbar options, and from the Overlays tab.

➤ **To show or hide tactical graphics:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Tactical Graphics Display Settings page (Figure 327).

**Figure 327. Tactical Graphics Display Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Show Tactical Graphics check box.
4. To show only active tactical graphics, select Show Only Active Tactical Graphics. For more information about active tactical graphics, please see "40.10. Active and Inactive Tactical Graphics" on page 959.

---

You can also enable and disable tactical graphics by choosing **Settings > Tactical Graphics** or clicking the Tactical Graphics button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

---

### Showing and Hiding Tactical Graphics on the Overlays Tab

On the Overlays tab, you can show and hide tactical graphics individually and by overlay.

➤ **To control the display of tactical graphics from the Overlays tab:**

1. On the Objects List Panel, select the Overlays tab (Figure 1).
2. To hide all graphics on a particular overlay, clear the check box for that overlay.
3. To hide a specific tactical graphic, clear its check box.
4. To redisplay a hidden tactical graphic or overlay, select its check box.

## 38.7.2 Showing and Hiding Tactical Graphics Labels

In addition to displaying the outlines of tactical graphics, you can display graphics (labels) for the vertices of these objects. Vertex labels are enabled in Figure 325 on page 922 and Figure 326 on page 922. In Plan View mode, VR-Forces also displays a tactical graphic's name, label, and extended labels, if any. For details about displaying labels for 2D icons, please see "16.2.4 Displaying Labels for 2D Icons" on page 420.

---

Displaying vertex labels can affect performance.

---

➤ **To show or hide vertex labels:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Tactical Graphics Display Settings page (Figure 327 on the previous page).
3. Select or clear the Show Tactical Graphics Labels check box.

---

You can also enable and disable tactical graphics labels by choosing **Settings > Tactical Graphics Labels** or clicking the Tactical Graphics Labels button () on the Display Settings Toolbar.

---

## 38.7.3 Displaying Height-Above-Terrain Lines for Vertices

In 3D observer modes, you can display height-above-terrain (HAT) lines for the vertices of tactical graphics (Figure 325 on page 922). These vertical lines between an object's vertices and the ground help you understand the relationship of the object to the terrain. The height for each vertex is displayed (using whatever units are configured on the Display Units Settings page).

HAT lines are shown only for tactical graphics that could be above or below the ground, such as routes, and waypoints. You can show and hide these lines and you can specify that they be shown for all objects or only for the selected objects.

---

Use of height above terrain lines can reduce the frame rate.

---

➤ **To show or hide height-above-terrain lines:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Tactical Graphics Display Settings page (Figure 327 on the previous page).
3. To display HAT lines, select the Enable Height Above Terrain Lines check box.

4. To only display lines for selected objects, select the Only Display Height Above Terrain Lines For Selected Tactical Graphics check box.

# 39. Overlays

This chapter explains how to create and edit overlays.


39.1. Creating and Editing Overlays ..... 928
39.1.1 Creating an Overlay ..... 929
39.1.2 Selecting Overlays ..... 929
39.1.3 Locking an Overlay ..... 929
39.1.4 Hiding the Objects on an Overlay ..... 930
39.1.5 Hiding Newly Created Objects ..... 930
39.1.6 Changing an Overlay's Name ..... 931
39.1.7 Removing an Object from a User-Created Overlay ..... 931
39.1.8 Deleting an Overlay ..... 931
39.2. Saving and Loading Tactical Graphics and Overlays ..... 931
39.2.1 Loading Tactical Graphics and Overlays ..... 932
39.3. Exporting Tactical Graphics as Shapefiles ..... 932
39.3.1 Importing Shapefiles into Overlays ..... 933

# 39.1. Creating and Editing Overlays

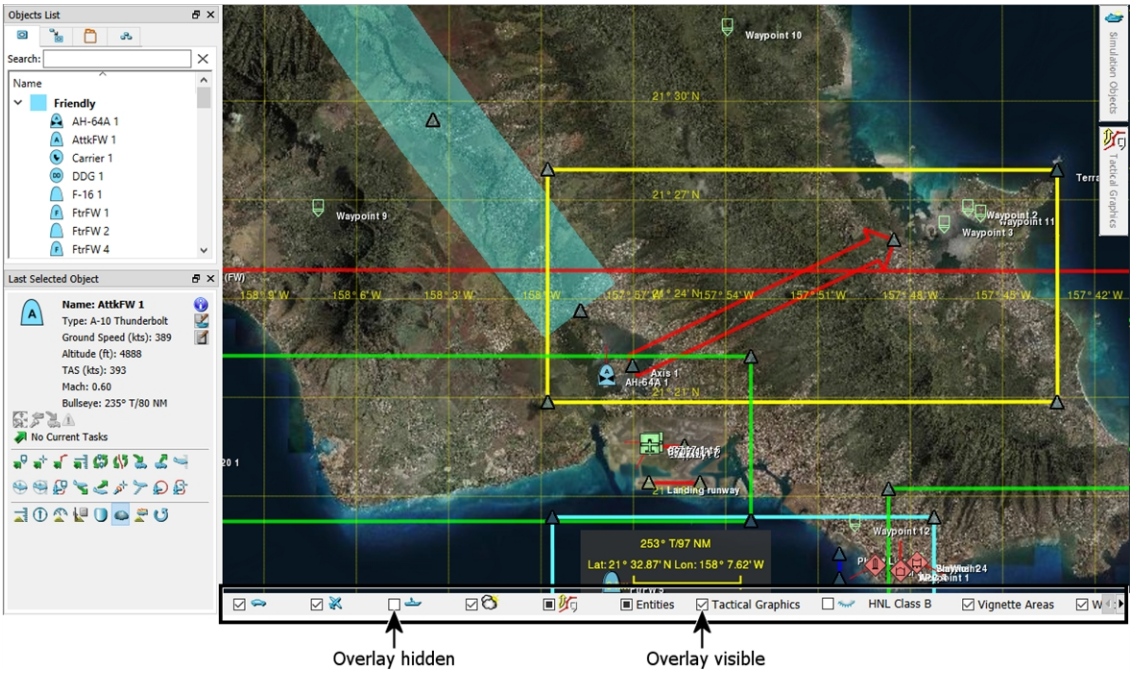
Overlays provide a convenient way to organize and manage the tactical graphics and simulation objects in a simulation. They are the equivalent of adding clear plastic overlays to a physical map and drawing on them. You can add any number of overlays. You can enable or disable editing of the objects they contain.

When you create an object, if you do not explicitly assign it to an overlay, it is placed on a default overlay. By default, simulation objects are placed on an overlay that corresponds to its high level filter – ground, air, human, and so on. All tactical graphics are placed on the tactical graphics overlay.

You can add overlays in the Simulation Object Editor and specify that they be used as the default overlay for specific object types. They are identified by text. You cannot specify an icon.

Overlays and their contents are displayed in the Overlays View of the Objects List Panel. The default overlays are identified by icons on the Overlay toolbar and by icons and text on the Overlays View of the Objects List Panel. You can show and hide objects by overlay and individually (Figure 328).

**Figure 328. Overlays View and Overlay Bar**

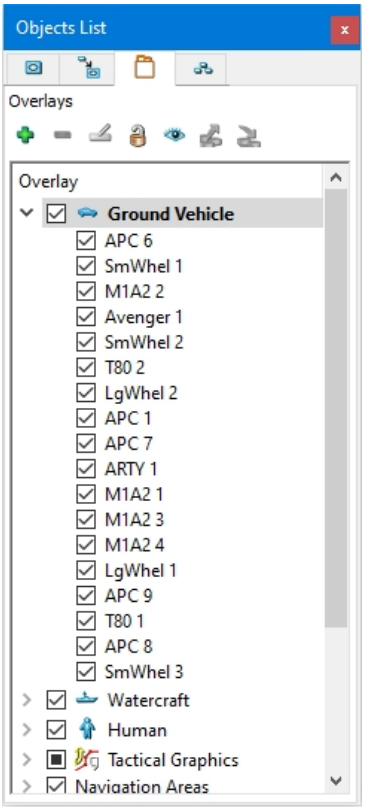


### 39.1.1 Creating an Overlay

➤ **To create an overlay:**

1. On the Objects List Panel, select the Overlays View (Figure 329).

**Figure 329. Overlays View**




2. Click the Add button ( ). An overlay is added to the list with a default name.
3. Optionally, change the name as described in "39.1.6 Changing an Overlay's Name" on page 931.

### 39.1.2 Selecting Overlays

➤ To select an overlay, click its name on the Overlays View.

### 39.1.3 Locking an Overlay

When an overlay is locked, you cannot edit the objects on it. You can still add and delete objects.

When you save a scenario, VR-Forces saves the locked/unlocked state of each overlay. (If you lock or unlock an overlay while you are running a scenario, but do not save the scenario, the state of the overlay is not saved.

➤ **To lock or unlock an overlay:**

1. On the Objects List Panel, select the Overlays View.
2. Select the overlay you want to lock or unlock.
3. Click the Lock/Unlock button (), or double-click the entry in the Locked column. It will toggle between Yes and No.

## 39.1.4 Hiding the Objects on an Overlay

You can hide the objects on an overlay. This may be convenient if you want to focus on a particular set of simulation objects or tactical graphics while you are editing or observing a scenario. You can hide all of the objects on an overlay or individual objects. You can also quickly do the following:

- Hide all overlays except the selected one.
- Hide all overlays.
- Show all overlay.

---

When you save a scenario, the show/hide state of default overlays and objects on them is not saved. The state of user-created overlays is saved.

---

➤ To hide all of the objects on an overlay, on the Overlay Bar or on the Object Lists Panel, Overlays View, clear the check box for the overlay whose objects you want to hide.

➤ To hide individual objects on an overlay, on the Objects List Panel, Overlays View, clear the check box for the object.

➤ **To hide all overlays except the selected one:**

1. Right-click the overlay that you want to be visible. A menu opens.
2. Choose Hide All but This.

➤ **To show all overlays:**

1. Right-click any overlay. A menu opens.
2. Choose Show All Overlays.

➤ **To hide all overlays:**

1. Right-click any overlay. A menu opens.
2. Choose Hide All Overlays.

## 39.1.5 Hiding Newly Created Objects

You can specify that newly created objects be hidden. When you set this option on one of the default overlays, the setting does not get saved. When you set this option on a user-created overlay, it gets saved with the scenario.

➤ **To specify that newly created objects be automatically hidden:**

1. On the Overlay Views panel, select the overlay whose objects you want hidden.
2. Click the Auto-hide button ( ). A closed eyelid is added to the overlay name to show that objects created on this overlay are hidden.

### 39.1.6 Changing an Overlay's Name

You can customize the name of a default overlay, such as Ground Vehicle or Tactical Graphics. However, the next time you create an object that gets assigned to a default overlay, unless you assign it to the renamed overlay, a new

overlay with the default name is created.

➤ **To change an overlay's name:**

1. On the Objects List Panel, select the Overlays View.
2. Select the overlay that you want to rename and click the Rename button, or slowly double-click the overlay whose name you want to change. The name becomes editable.
3. Type a new name.
4. Press **Enter**.

### 39.1.7 Removing an Object from a User-Created Overlay

You can remove objects from a user-created overlay. You might do this if you want to delete the overlay but do not want to remove the simulation object.

➤ To remove an object from a user-created overlay, in the Overlays View, right-click the object that you want to remove from the overlay and then choose **Remove From Overlay**.

### 39.1.8 Deleting an Overlay

➤ **To delete an overlay:**

1. On the Objects List Panel, select the Overlays View.
2. Select the overlay you want to delete.

---

! When you delete an overlay, all of the simulation objects and tactical graphics on it are also deleted.

---

3. Click the Delete button ( ).

## 39.2. Saving and Loading Tactical Graphics and Overlays

If you publish a tactical graphic, it is automatically saved to the scenario objects file (*.oob*). If you do not publish a tactical graphic, it is automatically saved to the overlay

file (*.ovl*). There may be cases where you want to create a set of overlays for use in multiple scenarios. You can save them to an overlay file independently of the scenario, or even save the overlays and not save the scenario at all.

---

When you save overlay objects, only unpublished tactical graphics get saved.

---

To save overlays and tactical graphics:

1. Choose **File > Overlay > Save Overlay**. The Save Overlay dialog box opens.
2. Type a name for the overlay file.
3. Click Save.

### 39.2.1 Loading Tactical Graphics and Overlays

You can load overlays that you have saved from a previous session.

➤ **To load overlays:**

1. Choose **File > Overlay > Load Overlay**. The Load Overlay dialog box opens.
2. Select the overlay file you want to load.
3. Click Open.

---

When you load overlay objects, you must use the same terrain database you created them on, or a terrain database that includes the area they were created in.

---

## 39.3. Exporting Tactical Graphics as Shapefiles

You can export point, line, and area tactical graphics to shapefiles. VR-Forces exports all of the graphics on a selected overlay. This may be useful if you need feature data for a terrain, such as a road network, but there is no feature data available from external sources. You can edit the shapefile created by VR-Forces in an appropriate third-party application to add the attributes needed to fully specify the features. For example, suppose you need a road network. You would create routes in the proper locations in VR-Forces and export the overlay to a shapefile. Then you would edit the shapefile to connect the road segments, specify road width, number of lanes, and so on. You could then load the shapefile in VR-Forces or any other application that supports shapefiles.

When VR-Forces creates shapefiles from tactical graphics, it creates separate files for points, lines, and areas. It appends *P.shp*, *L.shp*, or *A.shp* to the filename you provide based on the tactical graphics types being exported. For example, if an overlay has points and lines and you export them to myFeatures, VR-Forces creates files called *myFeaturesP.shp* and *myFeaturesL.shp*.

➤ **To export tactical graphics as shapefiles:**

1. On the Objects List Panel select the Overlays View.
2. Select the Overlay whose tactical graphics you want to export.
3. Choose **File > Overlay > Save Overlay as Shape Files** or click the Save Overlay as Shapefile button ( ) on the Overlays View. The Save Overlay as Shape Files dialog box opens. (You can also right-click an Overlay on the Overlay Bar and open the context-sensitive menu.)
4. Type a name for the shapefile.
5. Click Save.

### 39.3.1 Importing Shapefiles into Overlays

You can import feature data into overlays. Features are placed as points, lines, or areas. This is a quick way to create tactical graphics for features such as roads, buildings, and so on. For example, if you were to load the *MAK Earth (online).mtf* terrain and import *BuildingsP.shp*, which is used in the Little Pond terrain, it places a group of waypoints at the locations of the buildings.

---

Importing shapefiles into an overlay is not the same thing as adding a feature layer to the terrain. For example, importing a file such as *RoadsL.shp* to an overlay creates routes that can be referenced in movement tasks. Adding it as a feature layer creates a road network that could be used for path planning.

---

➤ **To import feature data into an overlay:**

1. Select an overlay.
2. Choose **File > Overlay > Import Shape File Onto Overlay** or click the Import Shapefile Onto Overlay button ( ) on the Overlays View. The Import Shapefile Onto Overlay dialog box opens.
3. Select the shapefile you want to import.
4. Click Open.

# 40. Creating and Editing Tactical Graphics

This chapter explains how to create and edit tactical graphics.


40.1. Creating Tactical Graphics ..... 937
40.1.1 How Areas Are Drawn ..... 937
40.1.2 Creating Freehand Lines ..... 937
40.1.3 Drawing Circles and Ellipses ..... 938
40.1.4 Drawing Arcs ..... 939
40.1.5 Drawing Sector Areas ..... 939
40.1.6 Drawing Spider Webs ..... 940
40.1.7 Drawing Boxes ..... 941
40.1.8 Creating Volumetric (Extruded) Tactical Graphics ..... 941
40.1.9 Adding Text to an Overlay ..... 942
40.1.10 Assigning Tactical Graphics to an Overlay ..... 942
40.1.11 Displaying a Terrain Profile When You Create a Line ..... 943
40.1.12 Publishing Tactical Graphics ..... 944
40.2. Creating a Computed Route ..... 944
40.3. Creating an Intel Collection Area ..... 945
40.4. Creating and Editing a Minefield Area ..... 947
40.5. Creating Nav Edges ..... 948
40.6. Creating and Using Bullseyes ..... 949
40.6.1 Measuring Bearing and Range ..... 950
40.6.2 Attaching a Spider Web to a Bullseye ..... 951
40.7. Attaching Tactical Graphics to a Simulation Object ..... 952
40.7.1 Attaching a Tactical Graphic Automatically ..... 952
40.8. Deleting Tactical Graphics ..... 952
40.9. Editing Tactical Graphics ..... 953
40.9.1 Editing Vertices ..... 953
40.9.2 Resizing Boxes and Text Objects ..... 955
40.9.3 Rotating an Ellipse ..... 956

40.9.4 Changing the Direction of a Line ..... 956
40.9.5 Changing the Color of a Tactical Graphic ..... 956
40.9.6 Using the Force Color for Vertices ..... 956
40.9.7 Changing Linear and Areal Style Properties ..... 957
40.10. Active and Inactive Tactical Graphics ..... 959

# 40.1. Creating Tactical Graphics

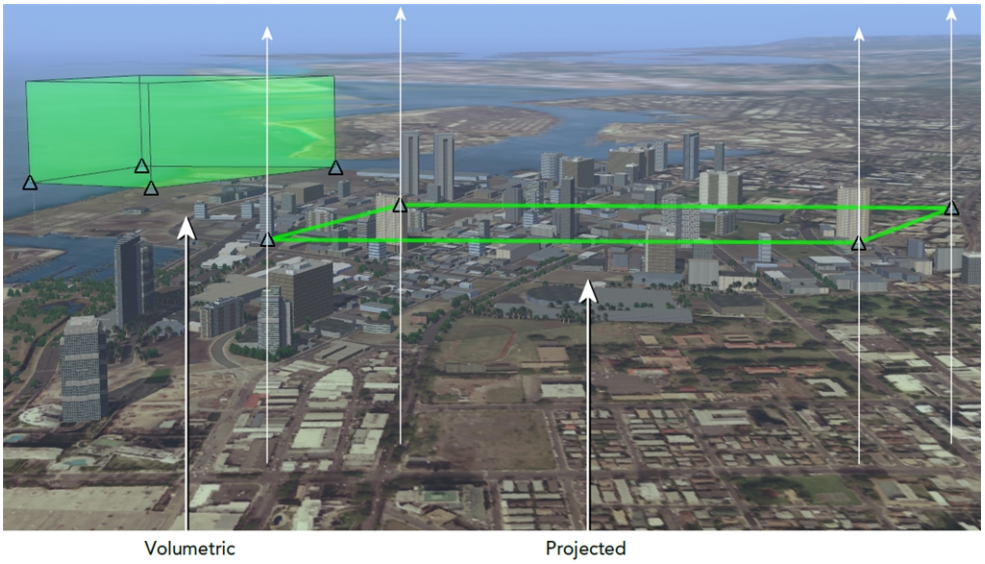
The generic procedures for creating tactical graphics are described in "Chapter 14. Creating and Placing Objects" on page 363. This section provides additional details about tactical graphic creation and placement.

## 40.1.1 How Areas Are Drawn

VR-Forces supports two types of areas, projected and volumetric (Figure 330). The points in a projected area do not have an altitude. They define an area that projects from ground level to an infinite height. Volumetric areas have a floor and a ceiling.

When you create a projected area, the points are drawn using the altitude of the first point in the area. This may result in some or all of the boundary of the area being drawn in the air. This is simply a matter of how it is drawn. The area still is projected from ground level upwards.

**Figure 330. Volumetric and projected areas**




## 40.1.2 Creating Freehand Lines

A freehand line is essentially many short line segments. After you create a freehand line, you can change the sampling rate used to determine how many segments it has. The fewer the segments, the less fluid the line is.

Unlike other lines, the individual vertices of a freehand line do not have vertex markers. You cannot select them individually on the map. However, you can edit them in the Edit Freehand Line dialog box.

The Freehand Line With Arrow tactical graphic automatically puts an arrow at the end of the line. However, you can also add an arrow to a freehand line that is created without one.

If you reduce the sampling rate, resulting in fewer segments and a less fluid line, once you save the line you cannot automatically increase the number of segments to increase the fluidity of the line. You would have to add vertices by hand.

➤ **To create a freehand line:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Select Freehand line.
3. Click where you want the line to start and, while holding down the left mouse button, draw a line on the screen.
4. Release the mouse button. The Create Freehand dialog box opens.
5. Edit the properties as desired.

### 40.1.3 Drawing Circles and Ellipses

Simulation objects do not interact with circles and ellipses. They are strictly for use as graphics.

If you have cleared the Attach Object to Mouse check box in the Create Circle, Create Ellipse, or Create Spider Web dialog box, you must still define the center point and other dimensions before the Create button is enabled. Since the object is not attached to the mouse, you will not see dynamic resizing of the object as you specify the points.

➤ **To draw a circle:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Select Circle. The cursor changes to draw mode and shows a vertex icon.
3. Click to place the center of the circle. A center point is placed on the terrain and a circle is drawn. There is now a vertex icon on the circumference of the circle.
4. Drag the mouse to set the radius of the circle.
5. Click to complete the circle.

➤ **To draw an ellipse:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Select Ellipse. The cursor changes to draw mode and shows a vertex icon.
3. Click to set the center of the ellipse. A center point is set and a small circle is displayed with a vertex indicator at the bottom of the circle.
4. Drag the mouse up or down and click to set the height of the ellipse. A vertex indicator is added to the left side of the circle.
5. Drag the mouse left and right and click to set the width of the ellipse.

### 40.1.4 Drawing Arcs

Simulation objects do not interact with arcs. They are strictly for use as graphics.

➤ **To draw an arc:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Select Arc. The cursor changes to draw mode and shows a vertex icon.
3. Click to place one end of the arc.
4. Click to place the other end of the arc.
5. Drag the mouse to set the radius of the arc.
6. Click to complete the arc.

### 40.1.5 Drawing Sector Areas

Sector areas are defined by two legs with a common origin whose endpoints are connected by an arc (Figure 331). In addition to the attributes typical to tactical graphics, you can manually specify the following attributes in the Edit Sector dialog box:

- Width. The length of a line drawn between the end points of the two legs of the sector.
- Depth. The length of a line from the origin to the center of a line drawn between the end points of the two legs of the sector.
- Heading. The heading of a line drawn from the origin to the center of the arc of the sector.

**Figure 331. Sector area**

➤ **To draw a sector area:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Select Sector. The cursor changes to draw mode and shows a vertex icon.
3. Click to place the common vertex of the sector.
4. Move the mouse and click to locate the end of one leg of the sector. (Do not hold down the mouse button while you move it.)
5. Move the mouse and click to locate the end of the other leg of the sector.

## 40.1.6 Drawing Spider Webs

Spider webs display sectors and ranges. Its heading is oriented to either true or magnetic north, based on the Display Units Settings. Each spoke displays its heading. In addition to the attributes typical to tactical graphics, you can manually specify the following attributes in the Create Spider Web dialog box:

- Distance Between Rings. The distance between each ring in the spider web. If necessary, the X Radius automatically adjusts to be a multiple of the number you enter.
- Number of Spokes. The number of spokes in the spider web.

➤ **To draw a spider web:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Select Spider Web. The cursor changes to draw mode and shows a vertex icon.
3. Click to place the center of the spider web. A center point is placed on the terrain and a spider web is drawn. There is now a vertex icon on the circumference of the spider web.
4. Drag the mouse to set the radius of the circle. It adds rings in steps of the specified distance between rings.
5. Click to complete the spider web.

### 40.1.7 Drawing Boxes

Boxes are constrained to be parallelograms. Simulation objects do not interact with boxes. (In other words, they are not areas.)

➤ **To draw a box:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Select Box. A box is attached to the cursor
3. Click to place the box in the approximate location that you want.
4. Double-click any vertex. The vertex changes to show it is editable.
5. Drag the vertex to reshape the box.

### 40.1.8 Creating Volumetric (Extruded) Tactical Graphics

You can create volumetric tactical graphics. Volumetric tactical graphics are useful for defining air corridors, airspace, and similar 3D areas. You can create the following volumetric graphics:

- Area (extruded).
- Box (extruded).
- Circle (extruded).
- Corridor (a linear object).
- Ellipse (extruded)
- Joint Engagement Zone (Altitude Limited)
- Missile Engagement Zone (Altitude Limited).

Volumetric areal objects have a floor and a ceiling above the terrain. Corridors have a width and height, which are centered on the vertices. Simulation objects can move along a corridor. (They move along the center line and ignore the height and width.)

The Entity in Area condition can check to see if an entity is within the volume of an extruded area.

➤ **To create a volumetric tactical graphic:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Select the volumetric tactical graphic you want to create.
3. Specify the vertices of the tactical graphic just like you would for a 2D tactical graphic. When you right-click to set the final vertex, the Edit dialog box should open.
4. If the Edit dialog box does not open, click its tab to open it.
5. If you are creating a route, specify the height and width. If you are creating any other extruded tactical graphic, specify the floor and ceiling (above mean sea level).
6. Click Create.

## 40.1.9 Adding Text to an Overlay

You can add text to an overlay. The maximum width of the text object is fixed.

➤ **To add text to an overlay:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. Select Text. The text “Text” is attached to the cursor.
3. Click to set the bottom center of the text. The Create Text dialog box opens.
4. Type the text you want in the Text box.
5. Edit any other properties as desired.
6. Click Create.

## 40.1.10 Assigning Tactical Graphics to an Overlay

By default, when you create a tactical graphic, it is assigned to the Tactical Graphics overlay. If no overlay exists, the overlay is created and the graphic is assigned to it. You can assign a tactical graphic to a different overlay when you create it or edit it. To assign a tactical graphic to an overlay when you create it, set this property as described in "14.3.2 Specifying an Object’s Properties Before You Create It (Click to Locate)" on page 377. To move a tactical graphic to a different overlay, follow the procedure in "Moving a Tactical Graphic to a Different Overlay" below.

### Moving a Tactical Graphic to a Different Overlay

➤ **To move a tactical graphic to a different overlay:**

1. Select the tactical graphic you want to move.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Object dialog box opens.
3. If Attach Object to Mouse is selected, clear the check box.
4. In the Overlay list, select the overlay that you want the tactical graphic to move to.
5. Click Update.

You can also move a tactical graphic to a different overlay by dragging it to the new overlay on the Overlays View of the Objects List Panel.

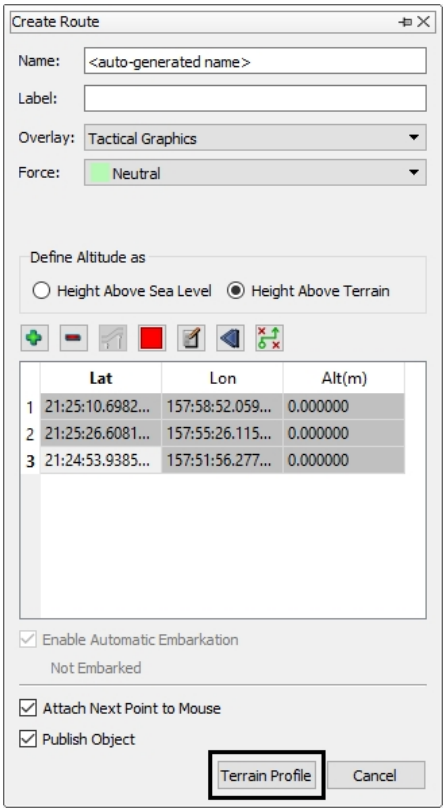
## 40.1.11 Displaying a Terrain Profile When You Create a Line

You can display a terrain profile window while you create a line. You can configure VR-Forces to automatically display a terrain profile when a line is created "58.1.2 Configuring Terrain Profiles" on page 1189), or you can display the window manually.

➤ **To open a terrain profile window while you are creating a line:**

1. Select the tactical graphic that you want to create as described in "14.2. Selecting the Object to Create" on page 365. A Create Object tab is added to the window below the palettes).
2. Click the Create Object tab. A Create Object dialog box that is appropriate for the object opens (Figure 332).

**Figure 332. Terrain Profile button**




3. Click to place the first vertex. The Terrain Profile button is activated.
4. Click Terrain Profile. A terrain profile window opens.
5. Complete the line. The terrain profile window stays open until you complete the line.

### 40.1.12 Publishing Tactical Graphics

By default, all tactical graphics are published. That is, they are sent out over the network and are visible to other participants in an exercise. You can choose to not publish a tactical graphic. In that case, it is visible only in the front-end on which it was created.

Published tactical graphics get saved to the scenario objects file. Unpublished tactical graphics get saved to the overlays file that gets created as part of the scenario. You can also manually save tactical graphics to an overlay file separate from the one stored with the scenario.

➤ **To publish or unpublish a tactical graphic:**

1. Select the graphic you want to edit.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Object dialog box opens.
3. To publish the object, select the Publish Object check box. To unpublish it, clear the check box.

## 40.2. Creating a Computed Route

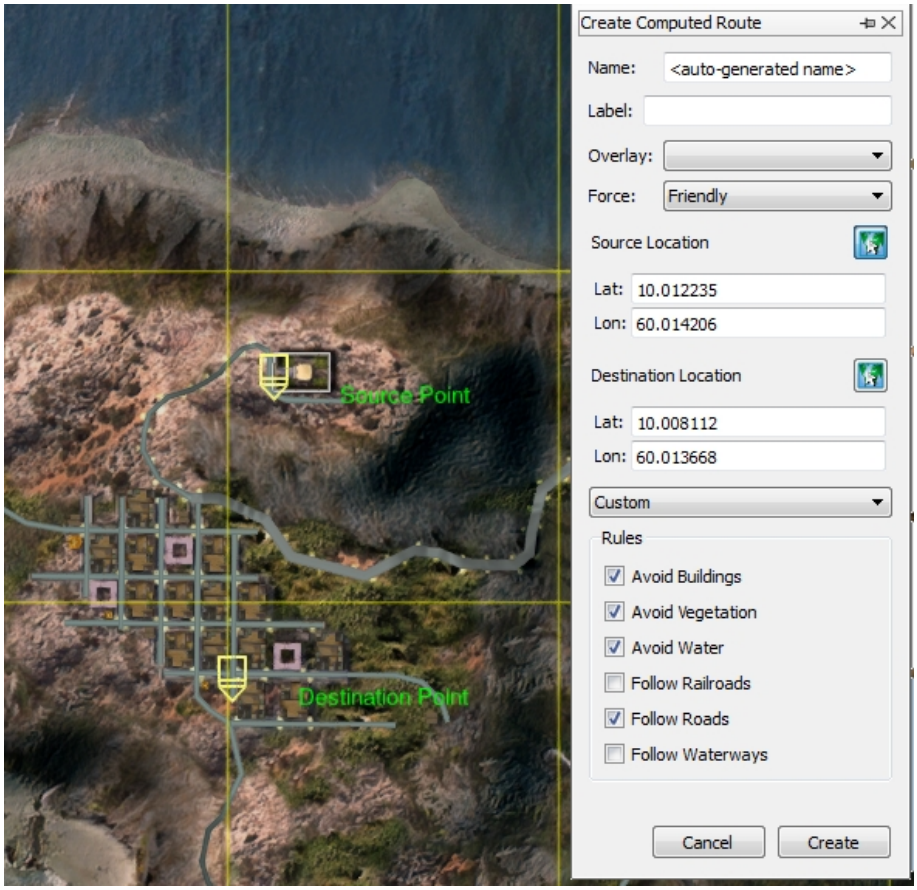
VR-Forces can create routes between two points and take into account criteria such as avoiding buildings, using roads, and avoiding water. Unlike the temporary routes that VR-Forces creates for movement tasks, a computed route is a tactical graphic that is saved with the scenario and can be used by any simulation object.

When you create a computed route, you specify rules that VR-Forces should use when creating the route. VR-Forces includes preconfigured rule sets for ships and ground vehicles. You can add additional preconfigured rule sets. You can also add additional rules. The rules and rule sets are configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/<sms>/gui/computedRouteRulesTypes.xml*.

➤ **To create a computed route:**

1. Choose **Create > Computed Route**. The Create Computed Route dialog box opens (Figure 333).

**Figure 333. Creating a computed route**




2. Optionally, specify a name, label, and overlay.
3. Select the force for the route.
4. Click to place the starting point of the route, or enter a value for the Source Location.
5. Click to place the end point of the route, or enter a value for the Destination Location.
6. Select the type of vehicle from the list. Ground vehicles and ships have a preconfigured set of rules. Select Custom to choose a different set of rules.
7. If you select Custom, select the rules that you want to be enforced for the route. Clear those you do not want to use.
8. Click Create.

## 40.3. Creating an Intel Collection Area

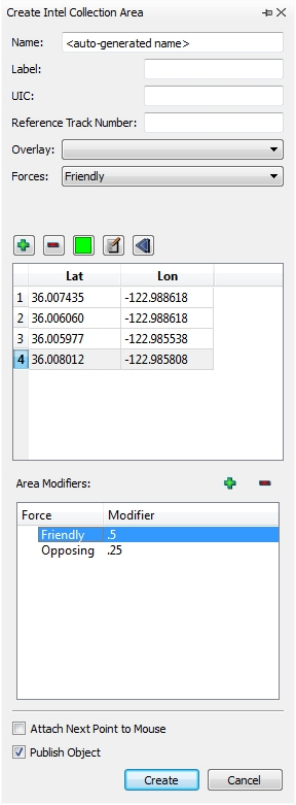
Intel collection areas modify the sensor signatures of simulation objects within their boundaries. This affects the ability of other simulation objects to detect them. Intel Collection Areas are created just like other areas. The difference is specification of

area modifiers. Area modifiers are set per force. A modifier greater than 1.0 increases the sensor signature for members of that force, making them easier to detect. A modifier less than 1.0 reduces their signature, making them harder to detect.

➤ **To create an intel collection area:**

1. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, select the All tag.
2. In the objects list, click Intel Collection Area.
3. Draw an area on the map as you would for any other tactical graphic area.
4. In the Create Intel Collection Area dialog box (Figure 334), click the Add button (+) next to the Area Modifiers label. The Choose Force dialog box opens.

**Figure 334. Create Intel Collection Area dialog box**




5. Select the force for which you want to add a modifier.
6. Click OK. The force gets listed in the Area Modifiers window.
7. Double-click the Modifier column to make it editable.
8. Type the modifier value you want to apply to this force.
9. Optionally, add additional force entries to the list.
10. Click Create.

## 40.4. Creating and Editing a Minefield Area

Minefield areas are tactical graphics that create minefields with the parameters that you specify. There are four types of minefield area:

- Minefield Conventional. A minefield that can include conventional anti-tank and anti-personnel mines, which you define after drawing the minefield area. Conventional mines cannot self-destruct.
- Minefield Scatterable. A minefield that can include remote anti-armor and area denial anti-personnel mines, which you define after drawing the minefield area. Scatterable mines can self-destruct.
- Minefield RAAM-ADAM. A scatterable minefield that includes two types of mines, which self-destruct after 48 hours pass in the simulation. You can edit the minefield after you draw it and make changes to the mines.
- Minefield Graphic. A simple graphic with no effect. You can use it in a simulation to represent where minefields could potentially be.

➤ **To create a minefield:**

1. Open the Tactical Graphics Palette.
2. In the objects list, select the minefield you want to create.
3. Draw an area on the map as you would for any other tactical graphic area.
4. If you are creating a RAAM-ADAM minefield or a minefield graphic, the area displays on the map.

   If you are creating a conventional or scatterable minefield, the Create Minefield panel opens. If you are creating a RAAM-ADAM minefield, you can edit the minefield in that panel. Specify the type of mines for the minefield:

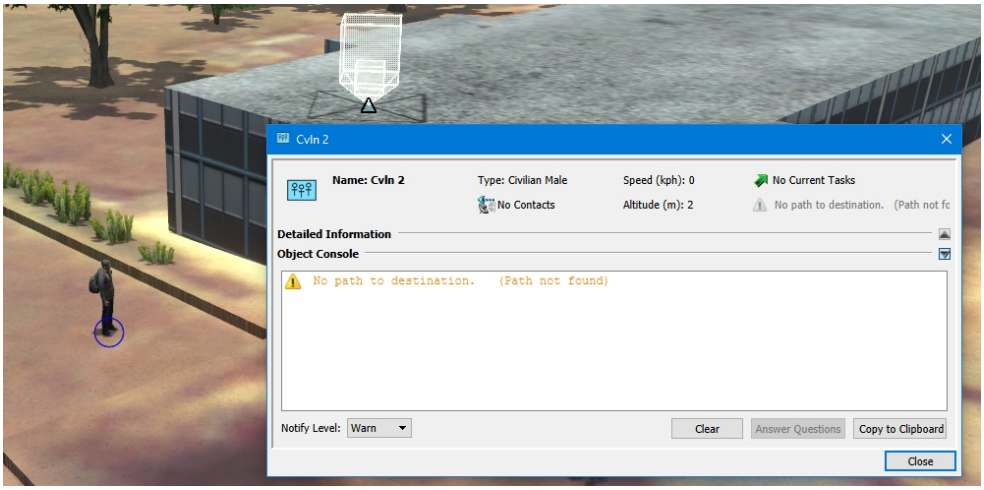
   a. In the lower area, click the Add button (+) to add a mine type. The Configure Mine dialog box opens.
   b. From the Munition Type list, select the type of mine to add to the minefield.
   c. From the Fuse Type list, select the type of fuse for the mine.
   d. If you specified a trip wire fuse, specify the length for the trip wire.
   e. Click OK.
   f. In the Create Minefield panel, specify the areal density for the mine type, which is the number of mines per unit of measurement.
   g. If you are creating a scatterable minefield, you can specify the number of hours before the mine self destructs.
   h. If needed, add more mine types to the minefield.
   i. Click Create. The minefield displays on the map.

# 40.5. Creating Nav Edges

Navigation edges are tactical graphics that affect the navigation mesh in a navigation area. They permit VR-Forces to calculate paths to locations that an entity would otherwise not be able to move to.

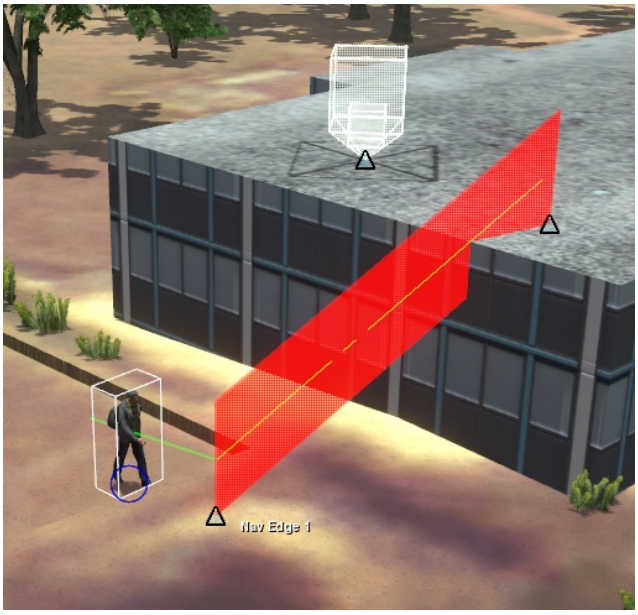
For example, suppose that you want an entity to walk from the ground to a waypoint on top of a building that does not have any interior geometry. Normally, the task would fail with a message, “No path to destination” as in Figure 335

**Figure 335. Pedestrian cannot move to waypoint**



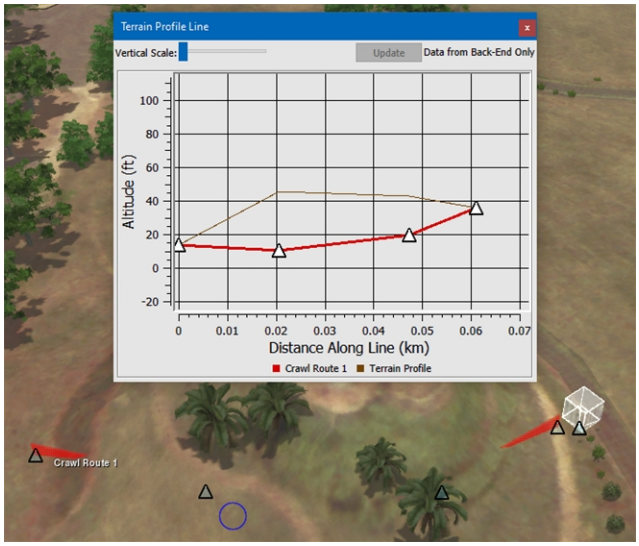

By adding a Pedestrian Nav Edge tactical graphic, the entity can plan a path to the waypoint (Figure 336). Use of nav edges in this way may compromise the realism of entity movement, but may be acceptable to achieve the overall goals of a simulation if the terrain is not as detailed as you would like it to be.

**Figure 336. Navigation edge allows path planning**



Another use for nav edges is to draw them with vertices that are underground, effectively creating tunnels that do not exist in the created terrain (Figure 337).

**Figure 337. Entity follows nav edge underground**




Finally, you might use a nav edge in cases where navigation data exists, but it is too restrictive. For example, the bounding volume of an entity might be slightly too large to permit it to go through a door. Adding a nav edge would allow it to go through the door.

VR-Forces has the following types of nav edge tactical graphics:

- Nav Edge. A generic nav edge.
- Pedestrian Nav Edge. A nav edge that acts like a pedestrian path. Pedestrians will prefer to use it over generic paths.
- Crawl Route (Nav Edge). When a human that has a crawl animation moves along this route, it crawls.

---

You can also add nav edges in a navigation profile. For details, please see "59.3.1 Navigation Profiles" on page 1204.

---

➤ **To create a nav edge:**

1. In the Tactical Graphics Palette, select a nav edge. (Filtering for “nav” will quickly list the available types of nav edges.)
2. Draw the nav edge as you would any linear tactical graphic.

## 40.6. Creating and Using Bullseyes

You can place a bullseye in the scenario and then use that to check the bearing and range between the bullseye and a simulation object or the mouse cursor. You create bullseyes in the same manner as other tactical graphics, as described in "Chapter 14.

Creating and Placing Objects" on page 363.

By default, bullseyes are added to the bullseye overlay. You can assign them to another one; see "40.1.10 Assigning Tactical Graphics to an Overlay" on page 942.

➤ **To create a bullseye:**

1. In the Tactical Graphics Palette, select Bullseye.
2. Place the bullseye on the terrain.

➤ To open the Bullseye Selection Toolbar, choose **View > Toolbars > Bullseye Selection Toolbar**.

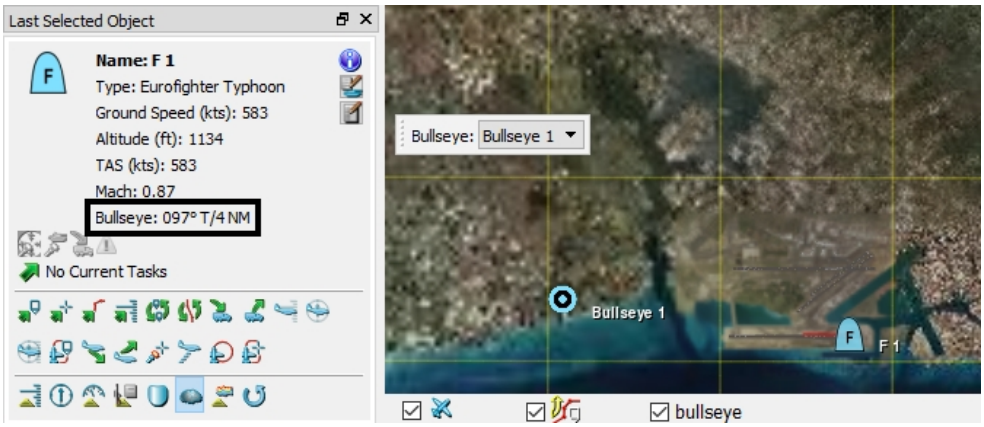
## 40.6.1 Measuring Bearing and Range

You can check the bearing and range between the bullseye and a simulation object or the cursor. Using the cursor, you can only check the bearing and range in the Plan View. The Last Selected Object panel simulation objects always displays the bearing and range from a bullseye, regardless of the view.

➤ **To check the bearing and range from a bullseye to a simulation object:**

1. By default, the first (or only) bullseye in the scenario is selected. If you want to measure the distance to another bullseye, select the bullseye from the list in the Bullseye Selection Toolbar.
2. Select the simulation object. The bearing and range from the selected bullseye displays in the Last Selected Object panel.

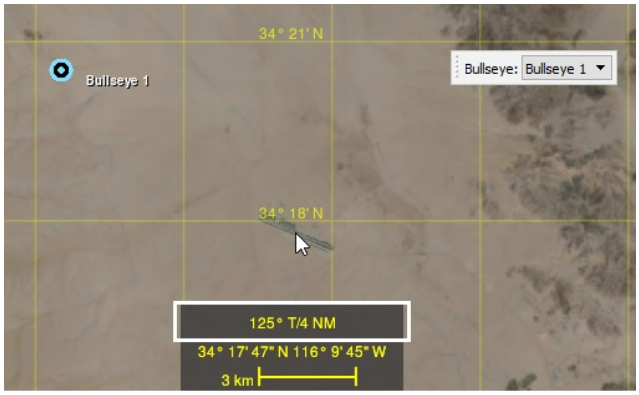
**Figure 338. Bearing and range from bullseye to object**




➤ **To display the bearing and range from a bullseye to the cursor at the bottom:**

1. In the Bullseye Selection Toolbar, select the bullseye you want from the list.
2. Choose **Observer > Mouse Bullseye Position**. The From Bullseye information displays at the bottom of the window.
3. Move the cursor around the terrain. The bearing and range from the bullseye update based on the location of the cursor.

**Figure 339. Bearing and range from bullseye to cursor (bottom)**




➤ **To display the bearing and range from a bullseye beside the cursor:**

1. In the Bullseye Selection Toolbar, select the bullseye you want from the list.
2. Choose **Observer > Bullseye Range/Bearing On Pointer**. The bearing and range display next to the cursor.
3. Move the cursor around the terrain. The bearing and range from the bullseye update based on the location of the cursor.

**Figure 340. Bearing and range from bullseye to cursor (beside cursor)**

## 40.6.2 Attaching a Spider Web to a Bullseye

You can set a spider web on a bullseye. Spider webs display sectors and ranges. The spider webs you can attach to a bullseye come in three sizes, measured in nautical miles (NM).

➤ To attach a spider web to a bullseye, select the bullseye, choose **Set** and then the size of spider web you want to use:

- **Display 70 NM Range Rings**
- **Display 100 NM Range Rings**
- **Display 200 NM Range Rings**

➤ To remove the spider web from a bullseye, select the bullseye and then choose **Set > Clear Range Rings**.

# 40.7. Attaching Tactical Graphics to a Simulation Object

You can attach tactical graphics to a simulation object so that they move with it. For example, if you draw a route on an aircraft carrier deck, you want the route to stay attached to the deck as the carrier moves. Another example is to attach a Terrain Page-in Area to an aircraft so that it pages in terrain as the aircraft flies.

You can attach a tactical graphic to an object manually or automatically (3D observer modes only).

➤ **To attach a tactical graphic to a simulation object manually:**

1. Create a tactical graphics as you normally would.
2. Select the tactical graphic.
3. Choose **Objects > Attach Object To**. The Attach Object To dialog box opens.
4. Select the simulation object to which you want to attach the tactical graphic.
5. Click OK.

## 40.7.1 Attaching a Tactical Graphic Automatically

You can attach a tactical graphic to a 3D model as you create it. (This procedure uses the automatic embarkation capability. For information about embarkation, please see "Chapter 17. Embarked and Embedded Entities" on page 435.)

➤ **To attach a tactical graphic to a 3D model when you create it:**

1. Select a 3D observer mode, such as Stealth mode.
2. Move the observer to view the simulation object on which you want to attach a tactical graphic.
3. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, select the tactical graphic that you want to create.
4. Move the cursor over the 3D model you want to attach to until you see a green box.
5. Click to place the first vertex (or point for point tactical graphics) on the 3D model.
6. Continue to create the tactical graphic as you normally would. The first point stays anchored to the model.

# 40.8. Deleting Tactical Graphics

➤ **To delete a graphical object:**

1. Select the tactical graphic you want to delete.
2. Choose **Objects > Delete**, or press the **Delete** key.

# 40.9. Editing Tactical Graphics

You can edit a tactical graphic's properties. The properties that you can edit vary depending on the type of graphic and can include some or all of the following:

- Add, delete, and edit vertices ("42.1. Displaying Remote Graphics" on page 968).
- Change its name.
- Change the altitude reference ("14.4.2 Setting Altitude in the Create Object or Edit Object Dialog Box" on page 380), "14.4.3 Specifying the Altitude for All of the Vertices in a Route" on page 381.
- Change the direction of a line ("40.9.4 Changing the Direction of a Line" on page 956).
- Edit linear and areal styles:
  - Change the pen style and width.
  - Change the line style.
  - Add or remove arrows.
  - Change the fill of an area.

  ("40.9.7 Changing Linear and Areal Style Properties" on page 957.)
- Move it to a different location ("14.9.1 Dragging an Object to a New Location" on page 384).
- Move it to a different overlay ("Moving a Tactical Graphic to a Different Overlay" on page 942).
- Change the color ("40.9.5 Changing the Color of a Tactical Graphic" on page 956).
- Resize boxes and text objects ("40.9.2 Resizing Boxes and Text Objects" on page 955).
- Rotate an ellipse ("40.9.3 Rotating an Ellipse" on page 956).

To edit a tactical graphic, its overlay must be unlocked.

## 40.9.1 Editing Vertices

You can edit the vertices of routes and areas. You can edit them dynamically or in the Edit Object dialog box.

### Adding a Vertex

You can add vertices to a route or area directly on the terrain or in the Edit Object dialog box.

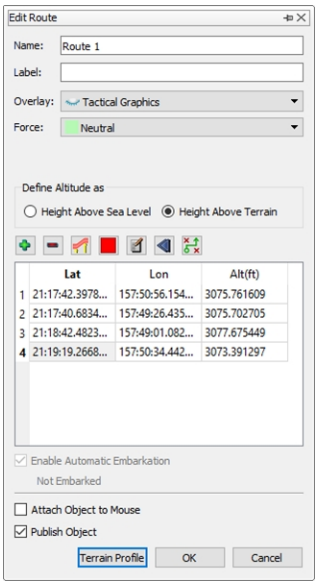
➤ **To add a vertex to a tactical graphic dynamically:**

1. Right-click the vertex next to which you want to add a new vertex. A menu is displayed.
2. Choose **Add Point After** or **Add Point Before**. A point is added midway between the selected vertex and the next or previous vertex, based on the command you chose.
3. Optionally, edit the new point as described in"Editing a Vertex" below.

➤ **To add a vertex in the Edit Object dialog box:**

1. Select the tactical graphic you want to edit.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Object dialog box opens (Figure 341).

**Figure 341. Edit Route dialog box**




3. If Attach Object to Mouse is selected, clear the check box.
4. In the list of vertices, select the vertex after which you want to add the new vertex.
5. Click the Add button ( ). A vertex is added midway between the selected vertex and the next vertex. If you selected the last vertex, a new vertex is added to the end of the route.
6. Optionally, edit the new point as described in "Editing a Vertex" below.
7. Click Update.

## Editing a Vertex

You can edit a vertex dynamically or in the Edit Object dialog box.

➤ **To edit a vertex dynamically:**

1. Double-click the vertex.
2. Move the mouse to change the vertex's location.
3. Use **Alt**+mouse wheel or **Alt**+left mouse button+drag to change the altitude.
4. Click to place the vertex.

➤ **To edit a vertex in the Edit Object dialog box:**

1. Select the tactical graphic you want to edit.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Object dialog box opens.
3. If Attach Object to Mouse is selected, clear the check box.
4. If you are editing a waypoint, click on the terrain to specify a new location or edit the coordinates and altitude in the Edit Waypoint dialog box.

   If you are editing a phase line, route, or area, you can:

   a. Double-click the coordinate value you want to change to make it editable.

   b. Type a new value and press **Enter** or click someplace outside of the value.

   Alternatively, you can click on the map to change the coordinates of the selected vertex. To set the altitude, you must edit the value by hand.
5. Click Update.

### Deleting a Vertex

You can delete vertices directly or in the Edit Object dialog box.

➤ **To delete a vertex directly:**

1. Right-click the vertex you want to delete. A menu displays.
2. Choose **Delete Point**. The point is deleted. (There is no confirmation prompt.)

➤ **To delete a vertex in the Edit Object dialog box:**

1. Select the tactical graphic you want to edit.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Object dialog box opens.
3. If Attach Object to Mouse is selected, clear the check box.
4. In the list of vertices, select the vertex you want to delete.
5. Click the Delete button ( ).
6. Click Update.

## 40.9.2 Resizing Boxes and Text Objects

You cannot edit the individual vertices of a box or a text object, you can only resize them.

➤ To resize a box or text object, double-click one of its vertices to make it editable and drag it to create the new object size.

### 40.9.3 Rotating an Ellipse

In addition to changing the width and height of an ellipse, you can rotate it around its center point. You can undo and redo ellipse rotation.

➤ **To rotate an ellipse:**

1. Select the ellipse.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Object dialog box opens.
3. Select the Free Rotate check box.
4. Click OK.
5. Double-click one of the points on the ellipse to make it editable and drag it in a circular direction.

### 40.9.4 Changing the Direction of a Line

All lines have a direction. The direction affects how a simulation object moves along it and the direction that arrows face, if present. If you draw a line and then decide you want to reverse its direction, you can do so.

➤ **To change the direction of a line:**

1. Select the line.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Object dialog box opens.
3. Click the Reverse Direction button ( ).
4. Click OK.

### 40.9.5 Changing the Color of a Tactical Graphic

You can change the color of a tactical graphic.

➤ **To change the color of an tactical graphic:**

1. Select the graphic whose color you want to change.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit Object dialog box opens.
3. Click the Color button ( ). A color picker dialog box opens.
4. Click a color button or click the Custom Color button to choose a new color from the Color Picker.
5. In the Color Picker, click OK.
6. In the Edit Object dialog box, click OK.

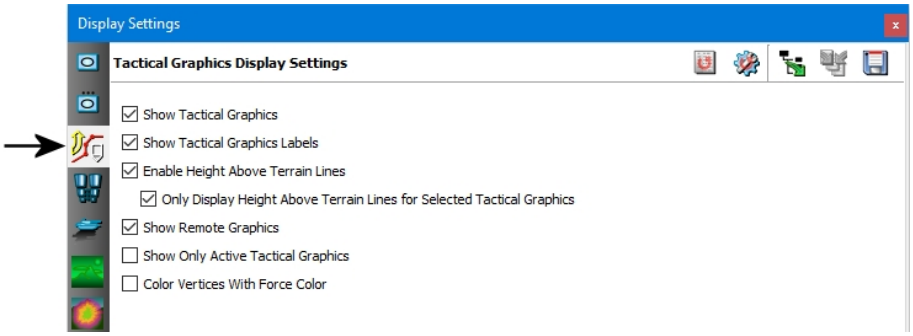
### 40.9.6 Using the Force Color for Vertices

You can specify that the vertices of a tactical graphic use the force color. The color is most obvious when the tactical graphic is selected. It is muted when the graphic is not selected.

➤ **To use the force color of a tactical graphics for its vertices:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Tactical Graphics Display Settings page (Figure 342).

**Figure 342. Tactical Graphics Display Settings page**



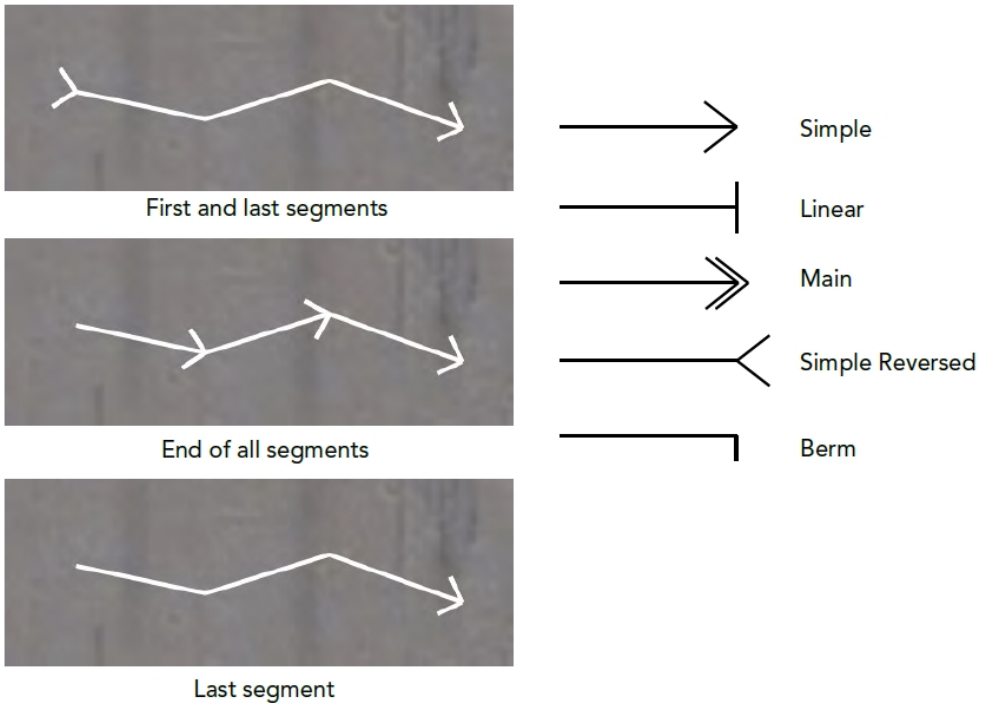

3. Select the Color Vertices With Force Color check box.
4. Click OK.

## 40.9.7 Changing Linear and Areal Style Properties

Lines and areas have a variety of properties that you can set in the Edit Style dialog box. The procedure is essentially the same for all of these properties. The properties you might be able to change are as follows:

- Line width. The width of the lines that make up a tactical graphic, either the actual line or the boundary of an area.
- Pen style. How the line or outline is drawn – solid line, no line, or as dashed and dotted lines. This property does not apply to lines that use a texture, such as Line of Contact.
- Fill style. The fill style for areal objects. Fill styles include degrees of solid fill and various types of line and grid fills.
- Line style. The different types of special lines, such as Main Axis.
- Arrow. You can add arrows to the end of a line, at the end and beginning segment, or at the end of each segment of the line. Figure 343 illustrates the arrow styles.

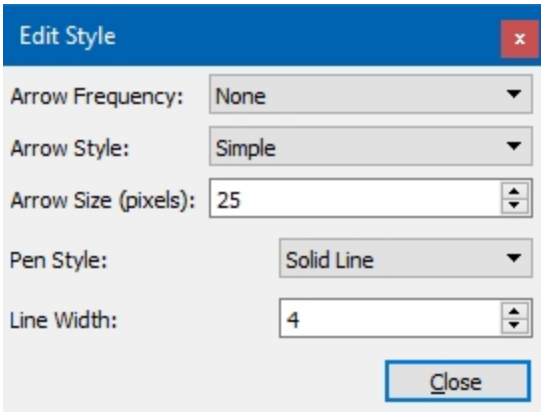
**Figure 343. Arrow styles**




➤ **To change a style property:**

1. Select the graphic you want to edit.
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit object dialog box opens.
3. Click the Edit Style button (). The Edit Style dialog box opens (Figure 344). It lists the style options that you can edit for this tactical graphic.

**Figure 344. Edit Style dialog box**




4. Change the properties by selecting options from the appropriate list or typing new values.
5. Click OK.

## 40.10. Active and Inactive Tactical Graphics

You can activate (display) and deactivate (hide) all published tactical graphics. You can set a tactical graphic's state when you create it or edit it, and using a set data request. You can test for a tactical graphic's state with the Tactical Graphic Active condition. You can set a tactical graphic's state based on simulation time or time of day.

---

In order for inactive tactical graphics to be hidden, you must select Show Only Active Environmentals on the Display Settings dialog box, Tactical Graphics Settings page or click the Show Only Active Tactical Graphics button ( )on the Display Settings Toolber.

---

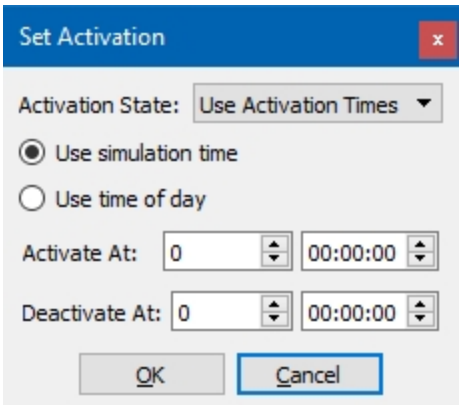
In most cases, deactivating a tactical graphic is a GUI effect. The graphic continues to be simulated and published over the network. Simulation objects continue to interact with it. However, if you set an indirect fire event area to be inactive, and you specify that the detonation start time is Wait for Activation, the indirect fire event does not begin until the area is activated.

For details about the Activation set data request, see"41.2. Activation" on page 962 and "Tactical Graphic Active" on page 868. For details about indirect fire events, see "10.1. Introduction to Indirect Fire" on page 298.

➤ **To set the activation state of a tactical graphic:**

1. Select the tactical graphic you want to edit. (If you are creating a new tactical graphic, open the Create object dialog box and skip to step 3.)
2. Choose **Objects > Edit**. The Edit object dialog box opens.
3. Click the Set Activation button ( ). The Set Activation dialog box opens (Figure 345).

**Figure 345. Set Activation**



4. Select one of the following options from the Activation State list:
   - Active. The tactical graphic is visible.
   - Inactive. The tactical graphic is not visible if Show Only Active Environmentals is selected on the Display Settings dialog box, Tactical Graphics Display Settings page.
   - Use Activation Times. The tactical graphic is active during the times specified in the dialog box.
5. If you selected Active or Inactive, click OK. If you selected Use Activation Times:
   a. Select Use Simulation Time or Use Time of Day.
   b. In the Activate At boxes, specify the time you want the tactical graphic to be visible.
   c. In the Deactivate At boxes, specify the time you want the tactical graphic to be hidden.
6. Click OK.

# 41. Setting the State of Tactical Graphics

You can use set data requests to change the state of a tactical graphic.


41.1. Set Data Requests for Tactical Graphics ..... 962
41.2. Activation ..... 962
41.3. Allow Crossing ..... 963
41.4. Arrowhead Style ..... 963
41.5. Color ..... 964
41.6. Fill Style ..... 964
41.7. Force ..... 964
41.8. Line Width ..... 964
41.9. Notify Level ..... 964
41.10. Pen Style ..... 965

## 41.1. Set Data Requests for Tactical Graphics

Set data requests for tactical graphics provide an alternative to using Edit dialog boxes to change the state of a graphic. The advantage of using set data requests is that you can make changes to tactical graphics from plans and in scripted tasks or scripted sets. You can also quickly make changes from the Set menu without needing to open an Edit dialog box.

Aerodrome and runway set data requests are covered in"60.4. Aerodrome and Runway Set Data Requests" on page 1218 .

## 41.2. Activation

The Activation set data request lets you activate or deactivate tactical graphics. In most cases, this is strictly a visual effect; activated tactical graphics are visible; inactive tactical graphics are not visible. However, in the following cases, setting a tactical graphic to be inactive affects its functioning:

- If you set an indirect fire event area to be inactive, the indirect fire event does not start until the area is activated.
- If you set a spawn point to be inactive, it does not spawn entities.

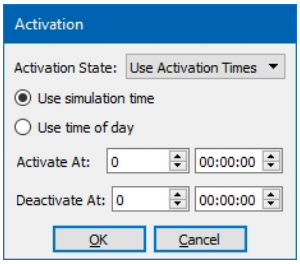
Inactive tactical graphics continue to be published and simulation objects interact with them normally. You can use the Tactical Graphic Active condition to test the state of a tactical graphic.

For more information, please see "40.10. Active and Inactive Tactical Graphics" on page 959 and"Tactical Graphic Active" on page 868.

➤ **To activate or deactivate a tactical graphic:**

1. Select the tactical graphic.
2. Choose **Set > Disposition > Activation**. The Activation dialog box opens (Figure 346).

**Figure 346. Activation**



3. Select one of the following options from the Activation State list:
   - Active. The tactical graphic is visible.
   - Inactive. The tactical graphic is not visible if Show Only Active Environmentals is selected on the Display Settings dialog box, Tactical Graphics Display Settings page.
   - Use Activation Times. The tactical graphic is active during the times specified in the dialog box.
4. If you selected Active or Inactive, click OK. If you selected Use Activation Times:
   a. Select Use Simulation Time or Use Time of Day.
   b. In the Activate At boxes, specify the time you want the tactical graphic to be visible.
   c. In the Deactivate At boxes, specify the time you want the tactical graphic to be hidden.
5. Click OK.

## 41.3. Allow Crossing

The Allow Crossing set data request allows human entities to walk across a crosswalk. When human characters plan a path that includes a crosswalk, when they arrive at the crosswalk, if crossing is allowed, they can cross the street. If it is not allowed, they stop and wait.

➤ **To set a crosswalk to be enabled or disabled:**

1. Select a crosswalk tactical graphic.
2. Choose **Set > Allow Crossing**. The Allow Crossing dialog box opens.
3. Select or clear the Allow Crossing check box.
4. Click OK.

## 41.4. Arrowhead Style

The Arrowhead Style set data request lets you set the type of arrowhead, location, and width for linear tactical graphics. For a description of arrowhead styles, please see "40.9.7 Changing Linear and Areal Style Properties" on page 957.

➤ **To set the arrowhead style:**

1. Select a linear tactical graphic.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Arrowhead Style**. The Arrowhead Style dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the Arrow Style list.
4. Select an option from the Arrow Placement list.
5. Specify the width, in pixels, of the arrow.
6. Click OK.

## 41.5. Color

The Color set data request lets you change the color of linear and areal tactical graphics.

➤ **To set the color of a linear or areal tactical graphic:**

1. Select a tactical graphic.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Color**. The Color dialog box opens.
3. Select the color you want to use for this tactical graphic.
4. Click OK.

## 41.6. Fill Style

The Fill Style set data request lets you specify the fill for areal tactical graphics. The fill can be horizontal, vertical, or diagonal lines, or various degrees of opacity.

➤ **To set the fill style of an areal tactical graphic:**

1. Select a tactical graphic.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Fill Style**. The Fill Style dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the Fill Style list.
4. Click OK.

## 41.7. Force

You can change the force of a tactical graphic. For details, please see "34.27. Force" on page 809.

## 41.8. Line Width

The Line Width set data request lets you set the width of linear and areal tactical graphics.

➤ **To set the color of a linear or areal tactical graphic:**

1. Select a tactical graphic.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Line Width**. The Line Width dialog box opens.
3. Type a value, in pixels, in the Line Width box.
4. Click OK.

## 41.9. Notify Level

You can set the notification level for console messages without opening the Information dialog box. For details, please see "34.50. Notify Level" on page 820.

## 41.10. Pen Style

The Pen Style set data request lets you specify the type of line used to draw linear and areal tactical graphics. This includes solid lines and varies combinations of dashes and dots.

➤ **To set the pen style of a linear or areal tactical graphics:**

1. Select a tactical graphic.
2. Choose **Set > Appearance > Pen Style**. The Pen Style dialog box opens.
3. Select an option from the Pen Style list.
4. Click OK.

# 42. Remote Graphics

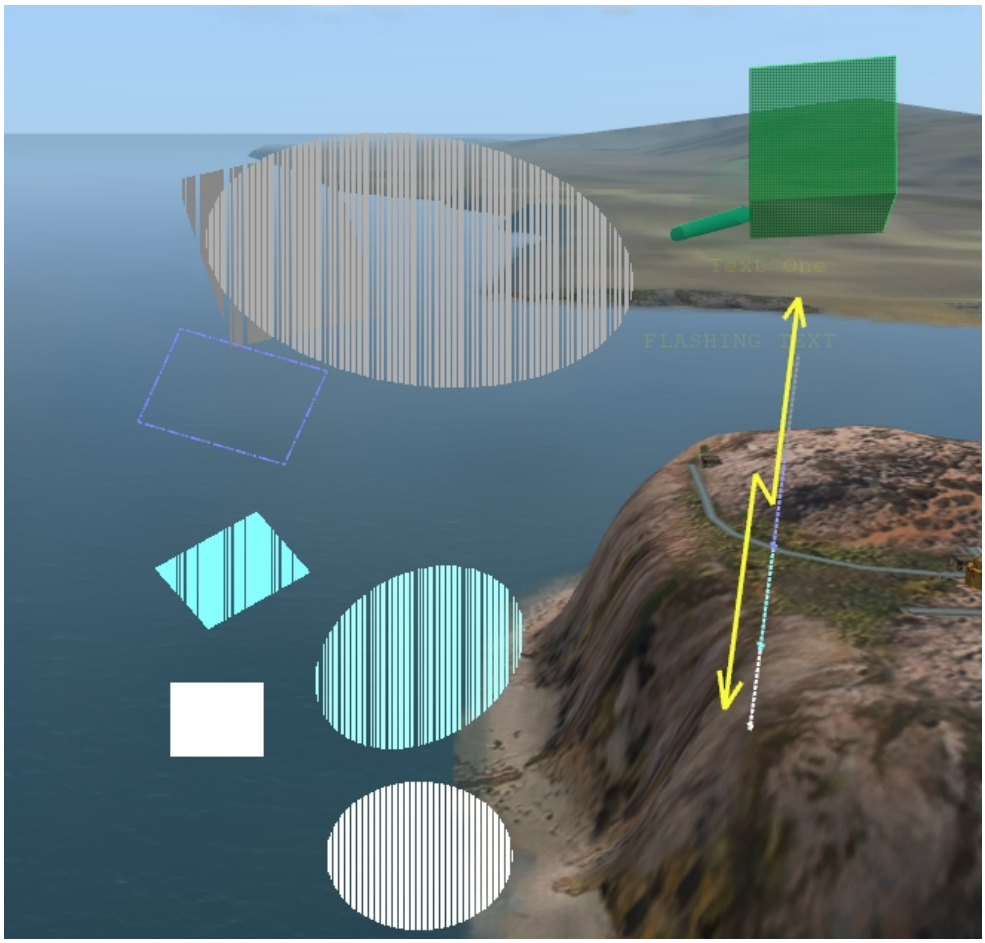
Remote graphics are graphics that are drawn onto the scene by remote programs that use the VR-Vantage Remote Draw API. This chapter explains how to display them in VR-Forces.

42.1. Displaying Remote Graphics ..... 968
42.1.1 Viewing a List of Remote Graphics ..... 969

## 42.1. Displaying Remote Graphics

VR-Forces can display graphics sent from other applications using the VR-Vantage Remote Draw API (Figure 347).

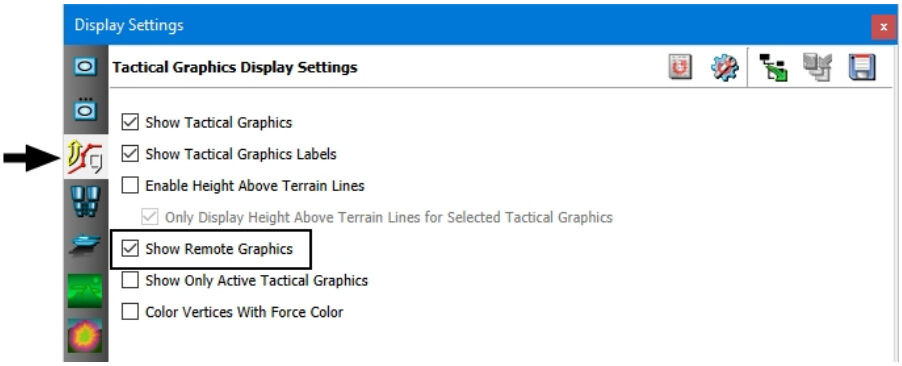
**Figure 347. Remote graphics**




➤ **To enable or disable the display of remote graphics:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Tactical Graphics Display Settings page (Figure 348).

**Figure 348. Tactical Graphics Display Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Show Remote Graphics check box.

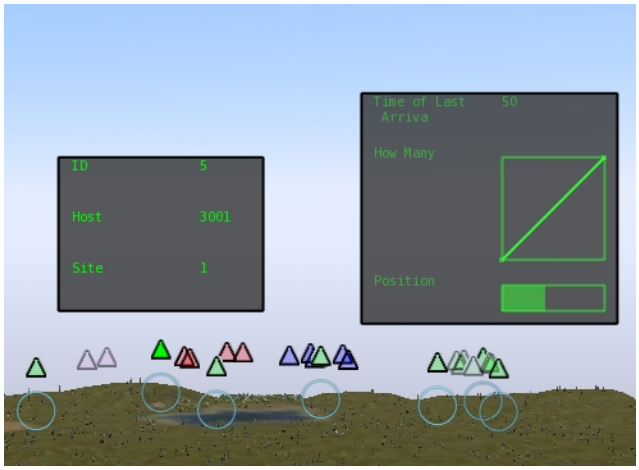
You can also enable and disable remote graphics by choosing **Settings > Remote Graphics**.

## 42.1.1 Viewing a List of Remote Graphics

Remote graphics can be organized into sets. There is no fixed organization. Labeling of sets is entirely at the discretion of the programmer who develops the application that generates the graphics. The Remote Graphics Panel displays remote graphics in a hierarchy by set.

The VR-Vantage Remote Draw API lets developers send data about objects as attribute:value pairs, for example Speed:30 KM. The attributes are organized by type using attribute group templates. You can enable and disable the display of attribute information by group and by individual attribute. Figure 349 illustrates the attributes for the Entity and Packet attribute group templates displayed in Figure 350.

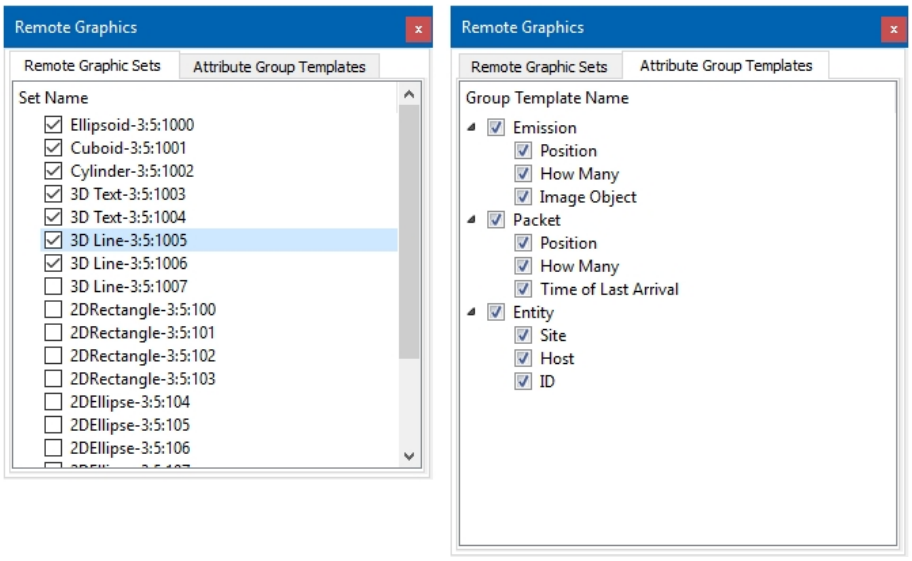
**Figure 349. Remote graphics attribute group display**



➤ **To view a list of remote graphics:**

1. Choose **View > Remote Graphics Panel**. The Remote Graphics Panel is displayed (Figure 350). The Remote Graphics Sets tab lists remote graphics by set.

**Figure 350. Remote Graphics Panel**




2. To hide or display a remote graphic set or individual graphic, check or clear its check box in the Remote Graphics Sets list.
3. To view Attribute Group Templates, select the Attribute Group Templates tab. To see the attribute display, mouse over an object for which display data is available.

# IX. Visual and Audio Effects

VR-Forces has many visual effects that add to your understanding of the interactions between simulation objects. These include fire and detonation lines, sensor contact lines, communications lines, and emitter volumes. You can test for line-of-sight with the intervisibility feature. You can also display many different lighting effects.

# 43. Displaying Tactical Information and Effects

This chapter describes how to manage special visual effects that can be applied to simulation objects.

---

Many of the effects described in this chapter apply to individual entities in Stealth mode. By default, simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios do not use 3D models. Therefore, effects such as trailing effects, smoke clouds, and fire and detonation effects are not supported.

---


43.1. Displaying Trailing and Decal Effects (3D Only) ..... 975
43.1.1 Specifying Models for Trailing Effects and Decal Effects ..... 976
43.1.2 Displaying Persistent Tracks ..... 977
43.2. Displaying Track Histories ..... 978
43.2.1 Configuring Track History Segments and Timeout ..... 978
43.2.2 Coloring an Entity's Track History ..... 980
43.2.3 Displaying a Terrain Profile for a Track History ..... 980
43.3. Viewing Fire and Detonation Effects ..... 981
43.4. Viewing Fire and Detonation Lines ..... 981
43.5. Viewing Unit Combat Graphics ..... 982
43.6. Visualizing Tasks ..... 984
43.6.1 Displaying Task Visualizations for an Entity ..... 985
43.6.2 Pinning Task Visualizations for an Entity ..... 985
43.7. Displaying Sensor Contact Lines ..... 986
43.7.1 Enabling the Display of Sensor Contact Lines ..... 986
43.7.2 Specifying Which Simulation Objects Display Sensor Contact Lines ..... 987
43.7.3 Configuring Sensor Contact Lines ..... 988
43.8. Displaying Threat and Sensor Range Rings ..... 988
43.8.1 Enabling and Disabling the Display of Range Rings ..... 991
43.8.2 Pinning Range Rings for a Simulation Object ..... 992

43.8.3 Configuring the Display of Range Rings ..... 992
43.9. Displaying Laser Designators ..... 994
43.10. Displaying Supply Lines ..... 995
43.11. Displaying Tactical Smoke ..... 995
43.12. Displaying Electromagnetic Emissions ..... 996
43.13. Displaying Radio Communication Lines ..... 997
43.13.1 Enabling Radio Communications Graphics ..... 998
43.13.2 Configuring the Lifetime and Display Mode ..... 999
43.13.3 Configuring the Color of Radio Communication Lines ..... 1000
43.14. Enabling and Disabling Wheel Rotation ..... 1002

# 43.1. Displaying Trailing and Decal Effects (3D Only)

VR-Forces supports trailing effects such as contrails for missiles and aircraft and dust clouds for vehicles. It also supports decal effects, such as tire tracks, footprints, and wakes. In essence, trailing effects are effects that are dispersed through the air, while decal effects are effects that are printed on the ground.

Trailing effects and decal effects are properties of an observer mode. You can enable and disable them on a per-observer basis.

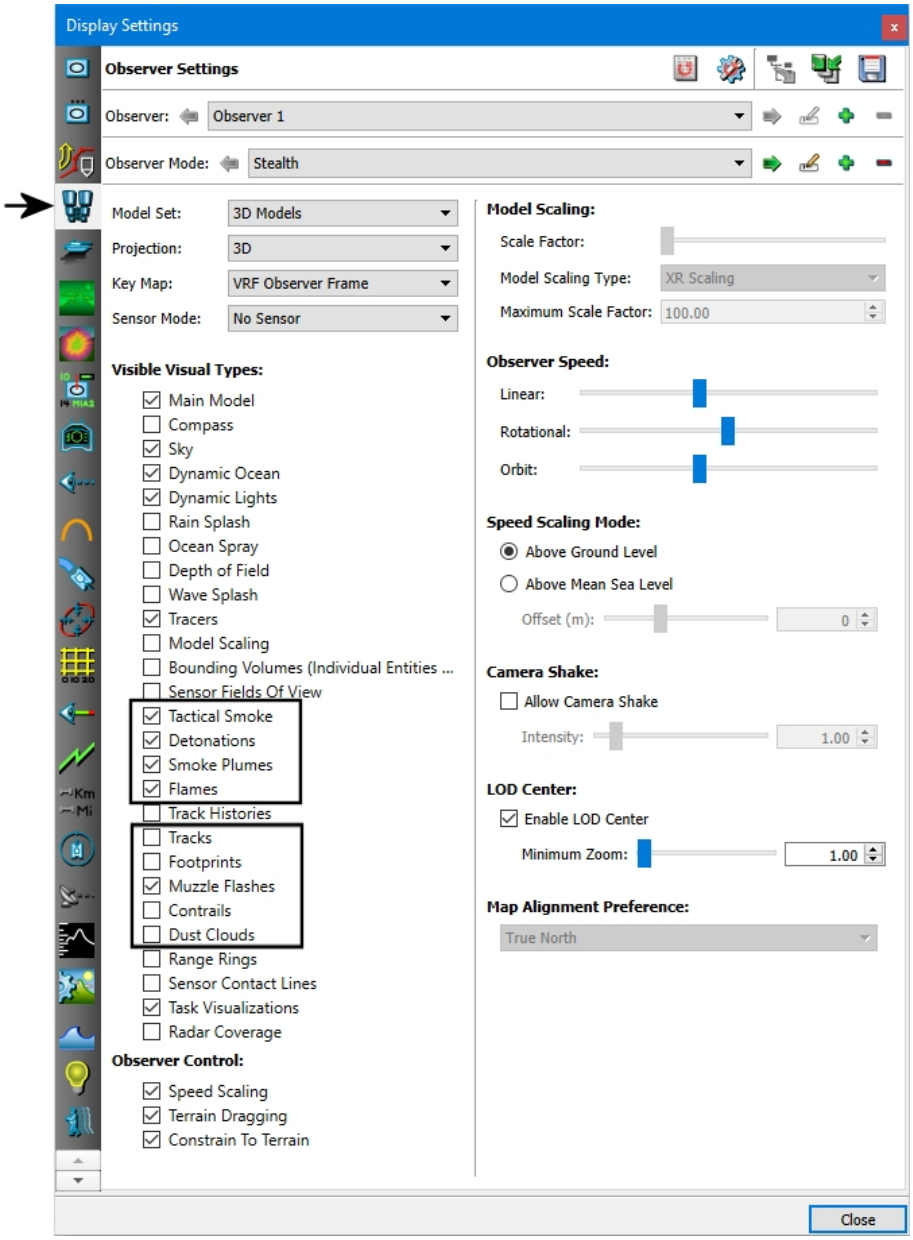
Figure 351 illustrates some trailing effects.

**Figure 351. Tank tracks, dust cloud**

➤ **To enable or disable trailing effects or decal effects:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 352).

**Figure 352. Display Settings dialog box, Observer Settings**




3. Select or clear the check box for each effect that you want to change.

---

You can also enable and disable trailing and decal effects by choosing **Observer >** *effect*.

---

## 43.1.1 Specifying Models for Trailing Effects and Decal Effects

Trailing effects and decal effects are configured through model definitions. (For the purposes of configuration, trailing effects are categorized as decals.) Each effect must have a model definition that uses a decal schema. Then, in an entity's entity

definition, you configure a visualizer for the effect. For details about creating model definitions, please see *"Creating and Editing Model Definitions,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

## 43.1.2 Displaying Persistent Tracks

When displaying tracks, the default for decal effects of vehicle's tracks is to fade after about 20 seconds. You can specify that those tracks should persist on the terrain rather than fading out. This is primarily intended for use with aerial surveillance scenarios. Tracks must be enabled for the persistent tracks to display. See "43.1. Displaying Trailing and Decal Effects (3D Only)" on page 975.

For persistent tracks to display on the terrain, you must draw a Persistent Tracks Area and then create tracks in that area. There are two ways to create persistent tracks: set vehicles to move through the area, or draw tracks in that area.

➤ **To permanently display vehicles' tracks in an area:**

1. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, select Persistent Tracks Area.
2. Click to place the vertices of the persistent tracks area. Double-click when you place the final vertex. The area is created.

   While the scenario is running, any ground vehicles that move through the area will leave permanent, persistent decal effects.

➤ **To draw persistent tracks:**

1. Choose **Simulation > Dynamic Terrain > Add Persistent Tracks**. The Add Persistent Tracks dialog box opens.
2. Click the Draw Track button. The Create Route dialog box opens.
3. On the terrain, draw a route where you want the tracks to display. Double-click to place the final point or click Create. You return to the Add Persistent Tracks dialog box.
4. From the Track Type list, choose the type of tracks you want to create:
   - Inline Wheeled. Motorcycles, bicycles, and other vehicles where one wheel is behind the other.
   - Wheeled. Vehicles with two wheels per axle.
   - Dual Wheeled. Vehicles with four wheels on one or more axles.
   - Tracked. Tanks and other vehicles that move using continuous track, caterpillar track, or treads.
5. From the Track Depth list, choose Light, Medium, or Heavy. Light tracks are less visible than Medium tracks, and likewise Medium tracks are less visible than Heavy tracks.
6. Click OK.

## 43.2. Displaying Track Histories

Track histories allow you to track the paths of simulation objects during an exercise, including the path of munitions as they travel from the shooter to the target. When track histories are enabled, each simulation object leaves a track ribbon. The ribbon is colored based on the simulation object's force. Figure 353 illustrates track histories.

**Figure 353. Track history**

3D 2D

Track histories are a property of an observer mode. You can enable and disable them on a per-observer basis.

---

Track histories have a significant performance and memory cost. For simulations with large simulation object counts, turning track histories off can improve performance and memory usage.

---

➤ **To enable or disable display of all track histories:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 352 on page 976).
3. Select the observer mode for which you want to change the Track Histories setting.
4. Select or clear the Track Histories check box.

---

You can also enable or disable track histories by choosing **Observer > Track Histories** or clicking the Track Histories button ( ) on the Observer Settings Toolbar.

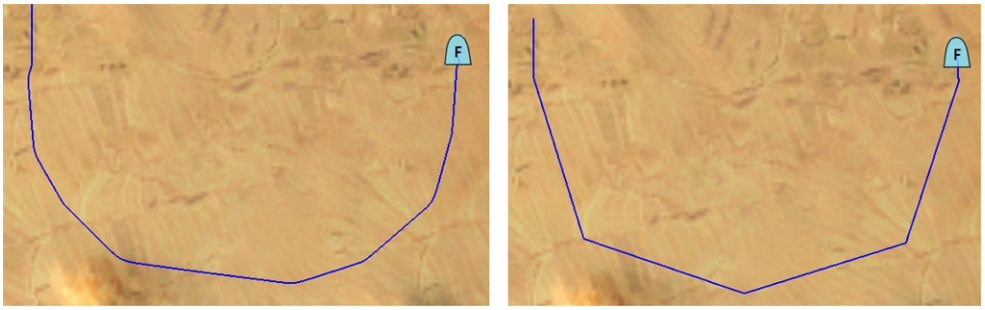
---

### 43.2.1 Configuring Track History Segments and Timeout

You can configure how long track history ribbons are drawn. A track history is composed of a series of segments joined together to form a line. You can configure how long each segment is and how many segments at a time can be displayed. Drawing shorter segments improves the accuracy of the track history, but can degrade performance. Increasing the maximum number of segments provides a longer history,

but can clutter up the screen if there are many simulation objects and can also affect performance. Figure 354 illustrates the visual result of drastically changing the segment length. The left track history uses the default segment length of 0.5 meters. The right track history has a segment length of 5000 meters.

**Figure 354. Track history segment length**




When a track history reaches the maximum number of segments configured, it starts dropping segments from the beginning of the history (the oldest segments).

You can specify that track histories have an infinite length. In this case they never drop segments.

---

! If you specify infinite length for track histories, it is possible that you could eventually use up all the memory in your computer and the program would crash.

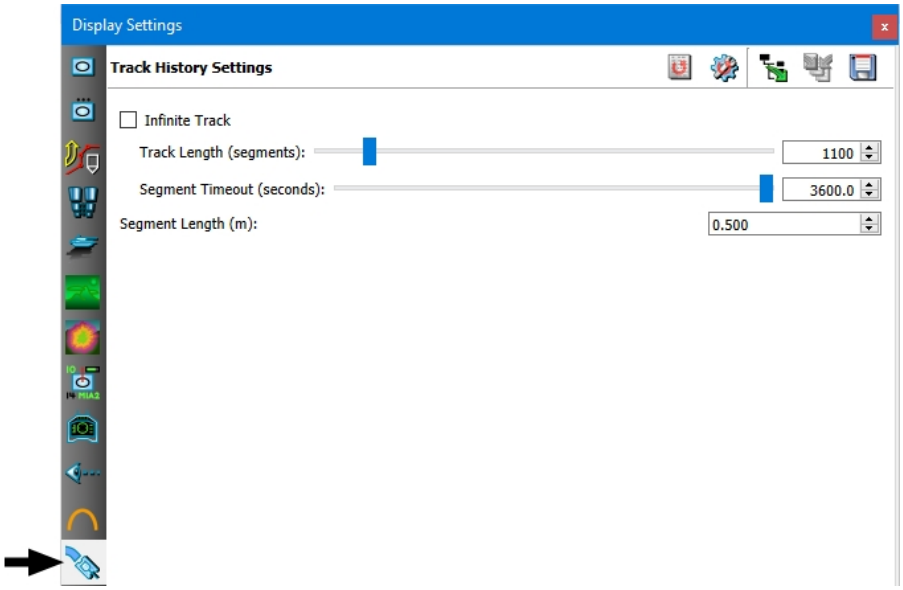
---

You can also specify a timeout value for track histories. The total length of a track history is determined by a combination of the oldest segment creation time, the segment length, and the number of segments.

➤ **To configure track histories:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Track History Settings page (Figure 355).

**Figure 355. Track History Settings page**




3. If you want track histories to have an indefinite length, select the Infinite Track check box.
4. To change the number of segments that can be displayed for a track history, adjust the Track Length slider, or enter a value in the box.
5. To change the segment timeout, adjust the Segment Timeout slider. The default is 3600 seconds (60 minutes).
6. To specify the length of each track history segment, enter a value in the Segment Length box.

## 43.2.2 Coloring an Entity's Track History

You can change the color of an entity's track history. (By default, the track uses the color assigned to the entity's force.) The color you assign is visible only to you in your local GUI and does not persist in later sessions.

➤ **To change an entity's track history color:**

1. Right-click the entity and select **Color Track History**.
2. In the submenu, select a color or **Custom Color**.
3. If you selected **Custom Color**, choose a swatch from the basic colors, click a spot on the palette, specify a shade using its HTML color code, or click **Pick Screen Color** to use a color you see on the screen.
4. To return the entity to its default color, select **Color Track History > Clear Override**.

## 43.2.3 Displaying a Terrain Profile for a Track History

You can display a terrain profile for a track history. (For complete information about terrain profiles, please see "Chapter 58. Using Terrain Profiles" on page 1187.)

The track history terrain profile does not display the track history that gets drawn in the window when you enable track histories. It creates an independent track that starts when you open the terrain profile window.

➤ **To display a terrain profile for a track history:**

1. Select the simulation object whose track history terrain profile you want to see.
2. Choose **Objects > Terrain Profile > Track History Profile**. The Terrain Profile dialog box opens. It updates as the simulation object moves.

## 43.3. Viewing Fire and Detonation Effects

VR-Forces can display the following graphic effects when munitions are fired and detonated:

- Flaming effects.
- Smoke plumes.
- Detonations.
- Muzzle flashes.
- Tracers. Tracers are displayed if the munition in a fire interaction is a tracer munition and the munition is mapped to a tracer model, and the munition must be direct fire. Tracers are not supported in 2D observer modes. You can configure munitions in the Simulation Object Editor. For details, see "63.5. Creating and Editing Munitions" on page 1313. (Entities with weapons that support tracer munitions must enable tracer use for tracers to display. For details about enabling tracer use, see "34.84. Tracer Use" on page 836.)

➤ **To enable fire and detonation effects:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 352 on page 976).
3. Select or clear the appropriate check boxes.

You can also enable or disable display of a fire or detonation effect by choosing **Observer >** *effect*, where *effect* is Flames, Smoke Plumes, Detonations, Muzzle Flashes, or Tracers.

## 43.4. Viewing Fire and Detonation Lines

If fire and detonation lines are enabled, when an entity fires a munition, a line is drawn between the entity and the location of the detonation. The line is colored for the force of the shooter (Figure 356).

**Figure 356. Fire line and detonation**

3D 2D

A detonation is identified by a circle with an X through it. The detonation color indicates the result of the detonation, as follows:

- Entity impact – white.
- Ground impact – gray.
- Airburst – black.
- Other – white.

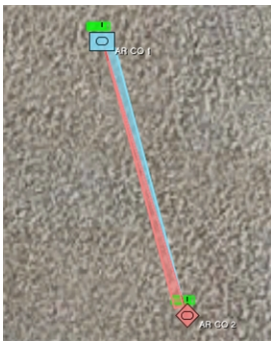
➤ To enable or disable display of fire and detonation lines, choose **Settings > Fire / Detonate Lines**.

## 43.5. Viewing Unit Combat Graphics

When simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios engage in combat, they display two types of graphics, attack indicators, and attack animations. Attack indicators are triangular areas that show the direction a unit is attacking. They are colored with the force of the attacker. Attack animations show where a simulation object is being attacked. The footprint sector where the attack is taking place blinks from green to white.

The graphics persist until the attack is over.

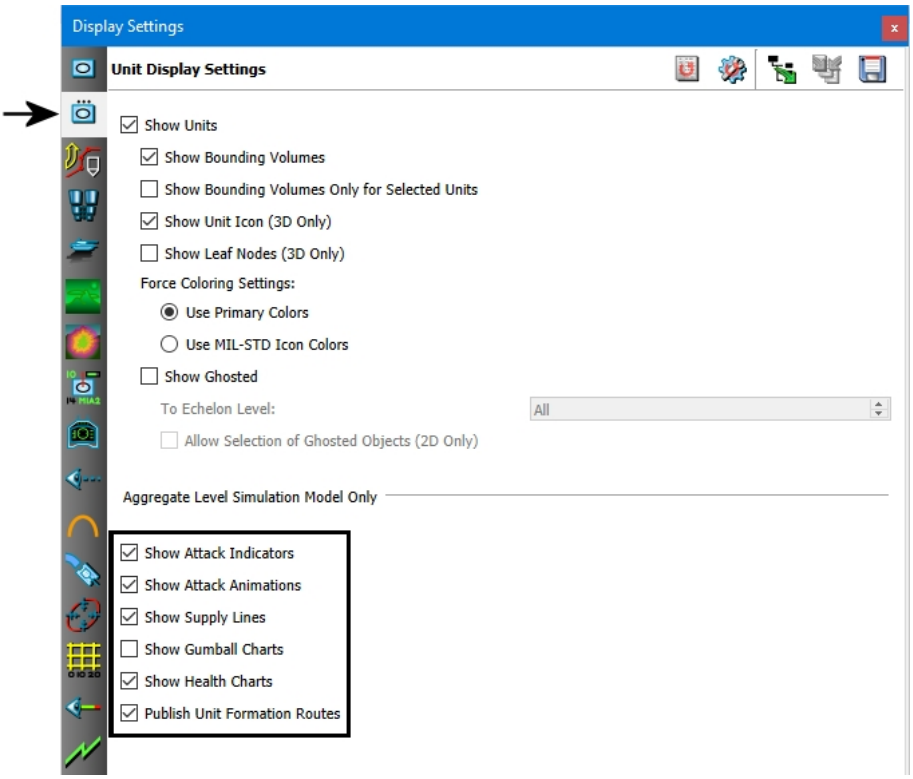
**Figure 357. Attack indicators**



➤ **To enable or disable unit combat graphics:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Unit Display Settings page (Figure 358).

**Figure 358. Unit Display Settings page**




3. To enable or disable attack indicators, select or clear the Show Attack Indicators check box.
4. To enable or disable attack animations, select or clear the Show Attack Animations check box.

## 43.6. Visualizing Tasks

VR-Forces can display graphics that help to show the task a simulation object is executing. Figure 359 and Figure 360 illustrate task visualization lines in Plan View mode and Stealth mode that show an entity moving to a location, and also an aircraft entity moving to a waypoint with its estimated time of arrival according to the simulation clock.

---

Task visualizations are not available for some tasks.

Task visualizations are supported only for individual entities, not for units.

To maintain adequate front-end performance, task visualization have the following limits:

- No more than 10 simulation objects can show task visualizations at the same time.
- The maximum number of segments in a task visualization line is 80. If a simulation object is following a route or series of points that requires more than 80 segments to visualize, VR-Forces samples the points in the line. The resulting visualization line will not be as precise as the actual path the object is following, but still provides a general sense of its intent.

If either of these conditions is met, VR-Forces prints messages if the notification level is set to verbose.

---

You can specify that tasks be visualized for the selected simulation object. You can also specify that tasks be visualized on a per simulation object basis. The per-simulation object setting is saved as part of the scenario.

**Figure 359. Task visualization of human entity moving to location**

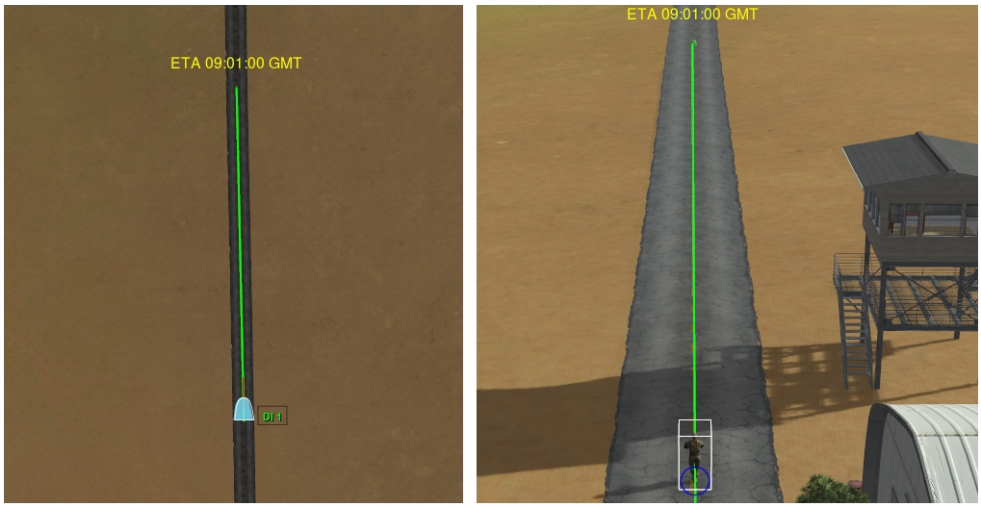


**Figure 360. Task visualization of a fixed wing entity moving to a waypoint**

➤ To enable or disable task visualization lines, choose **Observer > Task Visualizations** or click the Task Visualizations button ( ) on the Observer Toolbar.

## 43.6.1 Displaying Task Visualizations for an Entity

If task visualization is enabled, by default they are displayed for the selected entity. You can disable automatic display of task visualizations for the selected entity. If this setting is disabled, you can still show a task visualization by pinning it to an entity, as described in "43.6.2 Pinning Task Visualizations for an Entity" below.

➤ **To specify that the selected simulation object show task visualization lines:**

1. Enable task visualizations.
2. Select an entity.
3. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
4. Select the Entity Display Settings page Figure 160 on page 419).
5. Select the Show Task Visualizations for Selected Entity check box. Clear the check box to disable them.

## 43.6.2 Pinning Task Visualizations for an Entity

By default, when task visualizations are enabled, they are only displayed for the selected entity. You can pin task visualization to an entity so that they are displayed even if it is not selected. This is the only way to have multiple entities visualize their tasks at the same time. You can pin a task visualization and display it even if the Show Task Visualization for Selected Entity check box on the Entity Display Settings page is cleared.

➤ **To pin task visualizations for a simulation object:**

1. Select the simulation object for which you want to visualize tasks.
2. Choose **Objects > Decorations > Pin Task Visualizations**.

# 43.7. Displaying Sensor Contact Lines

You can display lines between a simulation object and the objects it detects with its sensors (Figure 361). Display of sensor contact lines requires two levels of control. Display of sensor contact lines is an observer-specific setting. They must be enabled in the observer mode to be displayed.

When display of sensor contact lines is enabled, you can specify that sensor contact lines be shown for specific simulation objects, for the selected simulation object, or for both. If you enable display of sensor contact lines for a specific simulation object, the setting is saved with the scenario.

You can also configure the width and color of sensor contact lines.

**Figure 361. Sensor contact lines**

## 43.7.1 Enabling the Display of Sensor Contact Lines

Regardless of other settings, you must enable the display of sensor contact lines in the observer to see them.

➤ **To enable the display of sensor contact lines:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 352 on page 976).
3. In the settings list, select Sensor Contact Lines.

---

You can also enable or disable sensor contact lines by choosing **Observer>Sensor Contact Lines** or clicking the Sensor Contact Lines button ( ) on the Observer Settings Toolbar.

---

### 43.7.2 Specifying Which Simulation Objects Display Sensor Contact Lines

Assuming that the display of sensor contact lines is enabled, you can specify that particular simulation objects always display them and you can specify that simulation objects display sensor contact lines if they are selected.

➤ **To display sensor contact lines for a simulation object whether it is selected or not:**

1. Select the simulation objects for which you want to enable sensor contact lines.
2. Choose **Objects > Decorations > Pin Sensor Contacts**.

---

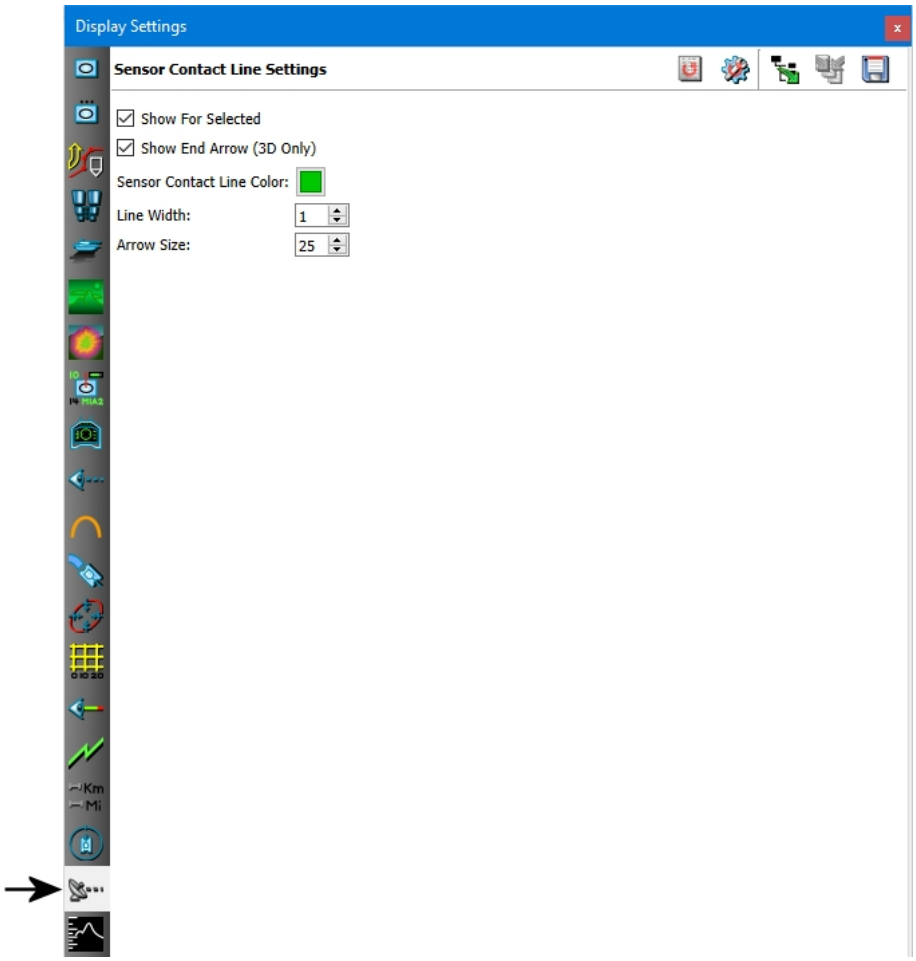
This setting is saved with the scenario.

---

➤ **To enable display of sensor contact lines by the selected simulation objects:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Sensor Contact Line Settings page (Figure 362).

**Figure 362. Sensor Contact Settings page**




3. Select or clear Show For Selected.

This setting is saved with the GUI settings.

### 43.7.3 Configuring Sensor Contact Lines

You can set the color, line width, and arrow size of sensor contact lines.

➤ **To configure sensor contact lines:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Sensor Contact Settings page (Figure 362 on the previous page).
3. Change the values as desired.

## 43.8. Displaying Threat and Sensor Range Rings

You can display a simulation object's threat range – the area within which its armaments are effective. The threat range is displayed as a circle, with a line indicating the armament and its direction of fire (Figure 363). A ring is displayed for

each weapon system that the entity has. For example, in Figure 363, the M1A2 entity has an inner ring for its 62mm machine gun and an outer ring for its 120mm main gun.

You can also display range rings for a simulation object's sensors.

**Figure 363. Range rings (entity-level scenario)**

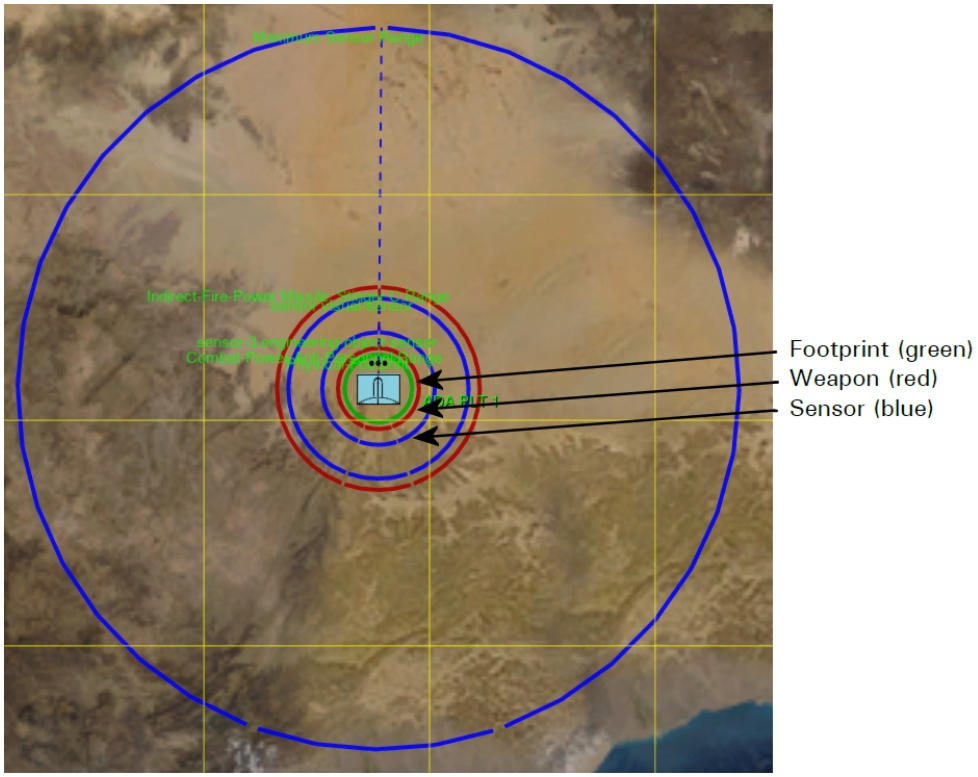
Simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios display range rings that show their combat effectiveness and a footprint that represents the physical area that the unit occupies (Figure 364). Unit range rings have breaks to show the front, rear, left flank, and right flank sectors.

---

On small databases, a simulation object's range ring may extend beyond the edge of the terrain display.

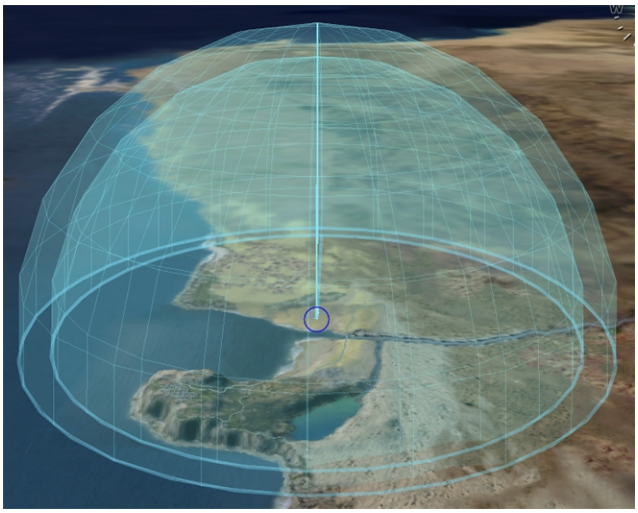
---

**Figure 364. Range rings (aggregate-level scenario)**




You enable range rings globally. They are an observer-specific option. You display range rings on a per-entity basis. You can globally configure the color of rings, their transparency, and the display of labels. In 3D views, you can specify whether or not to display a range sphere (Figure 365).

**Figure 365. Range ring sphere**

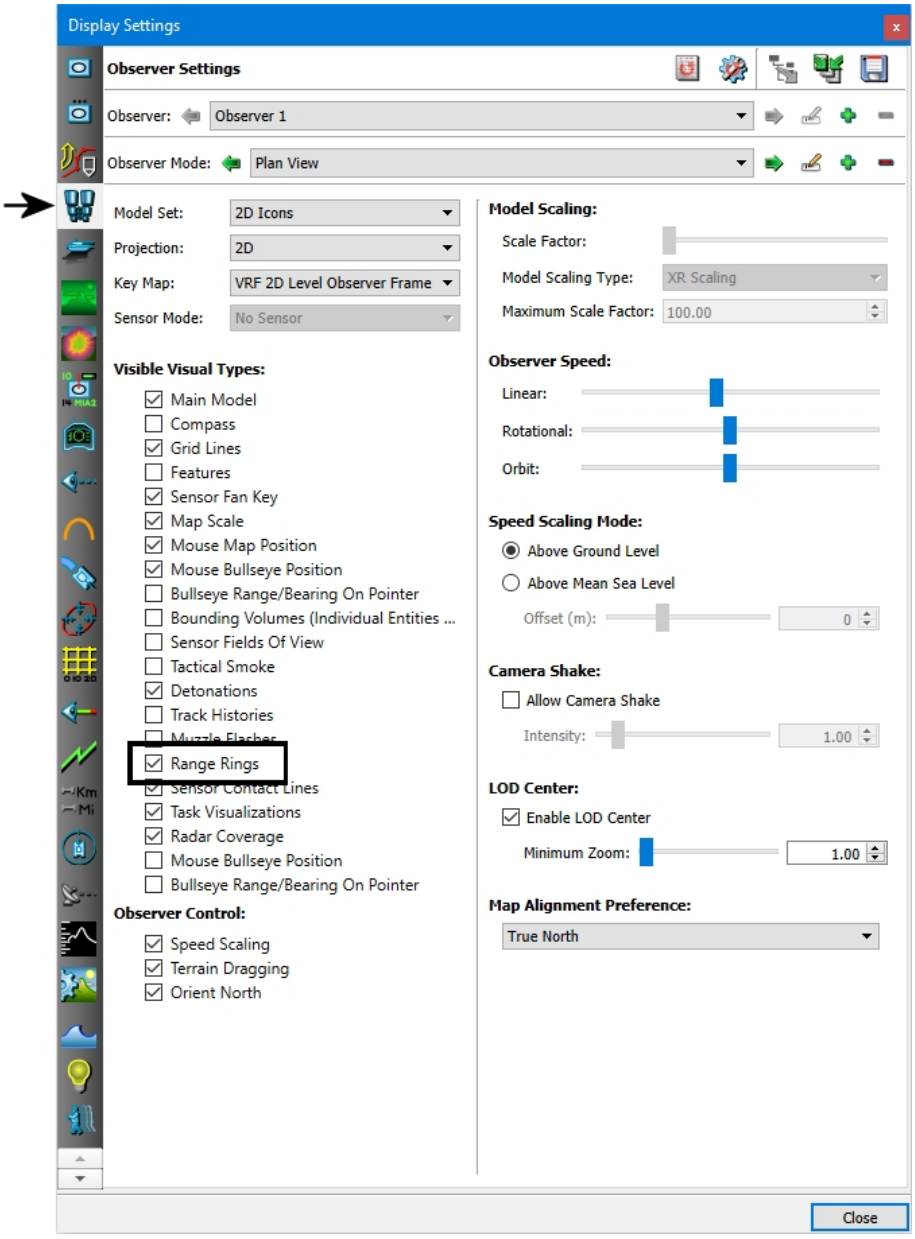


## 43.8.1 Enabling and Disabling the Display of Range Rings

➤ **To enable or disable the display of range rings:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 366).

**Figure 366. Observer Settings page**




3. In the list of options, select or clear the Range Rings check box.

---

You can also enable and disable range rings by choosing **Observer>Range Rings** or by clicking the Range Rings button ( ) on the Observer Settings Toolbar.

## 43.8.2 Pinning Range Rings for a Simulation Object

You display range rings on a per-entity basis. By default, if range rings are enabled, when you select an object, its range rings are displayed as long as the object is selected. You can pin range rings to an object so that they are displayed even if the object is not selected.

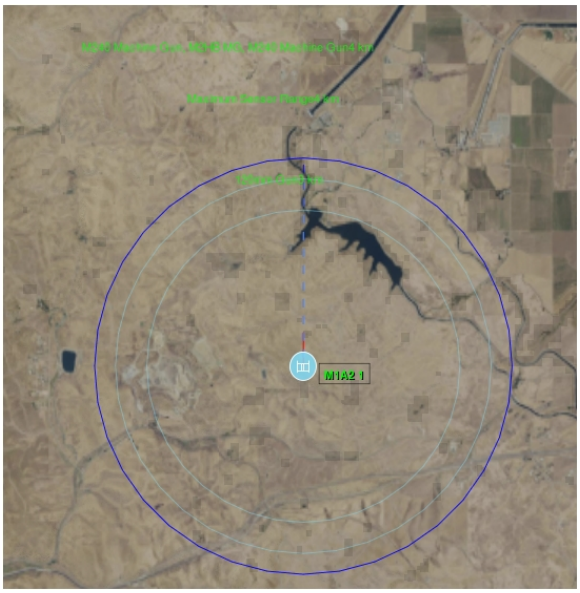
➤ **To pin range rings for a simulation object:**

1. Enable range rings, as described in "43.8.1 Enabling and Disabling the Display of Range Rings" on the previous page.
2. Select a simulation object.
3. Choose **Objects > Decorations > Pin Range Rings**.

## 43.8.3 Configuring the Display of Range Rings

You can configure the color of range rings and their transparency by weapon type and sensor type. You can also configure the display of range ring labels (Figure 367). A label can display the entity name, weapon type, and range of the weapon.

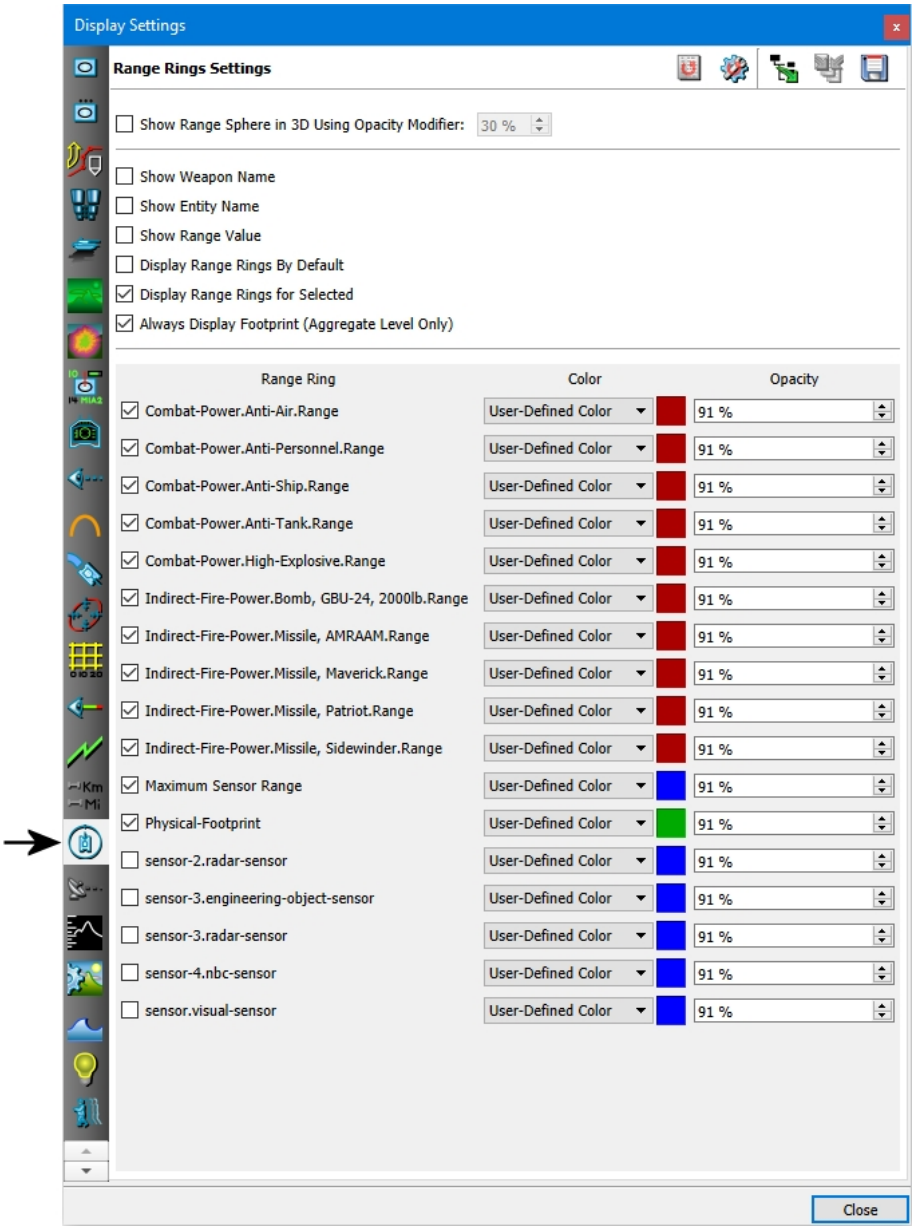
**Figure 367. Range ring labels**




➤ **To configure the display of range rings:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Range Rings Settings tab (Figure 368).

**Figure 368. Range Rings Settings page (*AggregateLevel.sms*)**




3. To display a sphere in 3D views, select the Show Range Sphere in 3D Using Opacity Modifier check box. Optionally, change the opacity modifier value.
4. To display the type of sensor or weapon system, select the Show Weapon Name check box.
5. To display the name of the simulation object, select the Show Entity Name check box.
6. To show the range of the sensor or weapon system, select the Show Range Value check box.

7. To automatically display range rings when a simulation object is created or discovered on the network, select Display Range Rings by Default.

   ---

   If this setting is selected, when you load a scenario, range rings are displayed for all simulation objects.

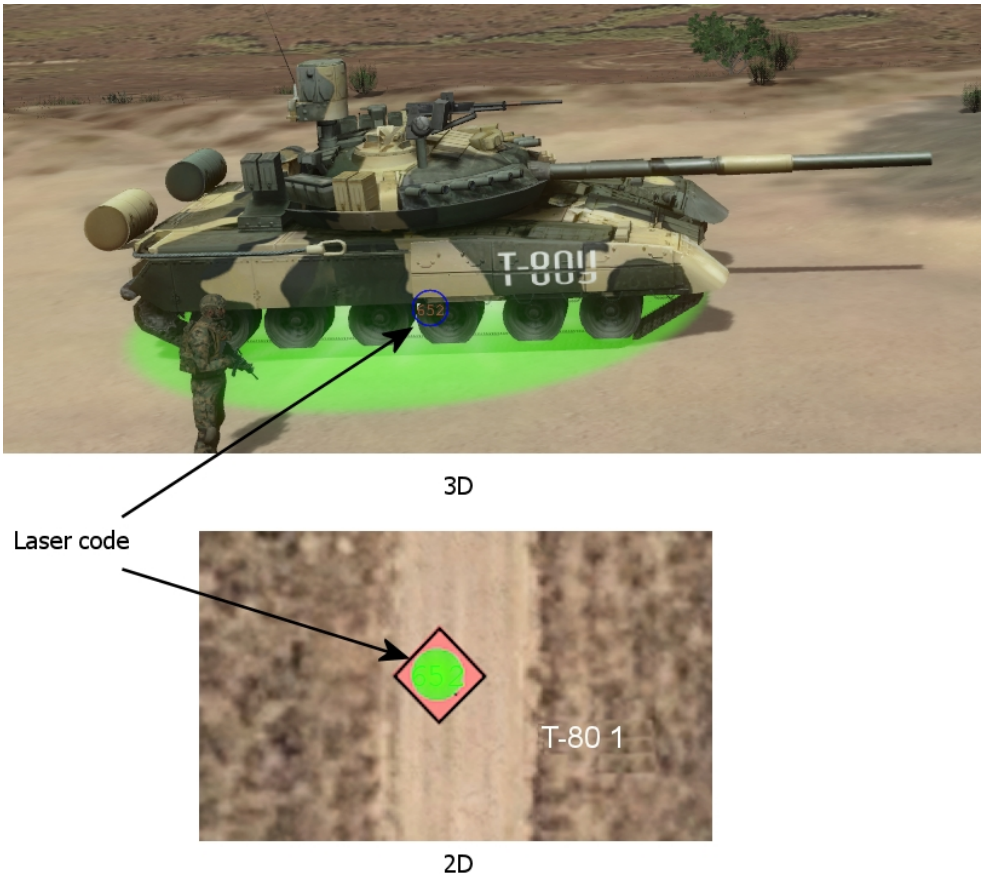
   ---

8. To display range rings for a selected simulation object that has not enabled range rings, select Display Range Rings for Selected.
9. To always show the footprint of a simulation object, select Always Display Footprint.
10. To enable or disable display of range rings for a particular weapon system, select or clear the check box for that system.
11. To change the color used to display a range ring:
    a. For the type of weapon system or sensor whose color you want to change, select User-Defined Color in the Color column list. The color swatch next to the list changes.
    b. Click the color swatch. A color picker dialog box opens.
    c. Select the color you want to use.
    d. Click OK.
12. To change the opacity for a range ring, for the weapon system whose range ring opacity you want to change, change the value in the Opacity column.

## 43.9. Displaying Laser Designators

You can display laser designation information if it is available. VR-Forces displays a green circle and the laser code (on top of the entity icon or model) (Figure 369).

**Figure 369. Laser designators**




➤ To display laser designators, choose **Settings > Laser Designators**, or on the Display Settings Toolbar, click the Laser Designator button ( ).

## 43.10. Displaying Supply Lines

Simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios can provide supplies to and receive supplies from other simulation objects. When a simulation object is supplying another entity you can display supply lines that show resupply is taking place.

➤ **To display supply lines:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Unit Display Settings page (Figure 358 on page 983).
3. Select or clear Show Supply Lines.

## 43.11. Displaying Tactical Smoke

VR-Forces can display tactical smoke munitions fired by VR-Forces entities. You may want to disable tactical smoke if it obscures the observer's view. Also, if many entities are generating smoke, it could affect performance.

- Do not confuse tactical smoke and smoke plumes. Smoke plumes are a visual effect displayed when an entity is on fire. Tactical smoke visualizes a smoke munition that affects line-of-sight.
- If you disable display of tactical smoke, VR-Forces continues to simulate its existence in the back-end and it continues to affect line-of-sight.

➤ **To enable tactical smoke:**

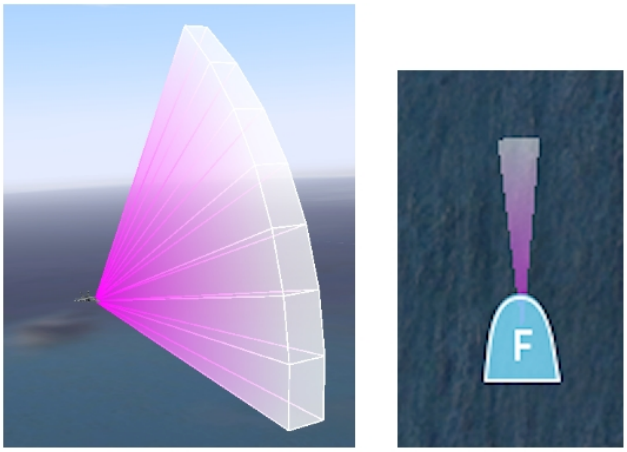
1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 352 on page 976).
3. Select or clear the Tactical Smoke check box.

You can also enable or disable display of a fire or detonation effect by choosing **Observer > Tactical Smoke**.

## 43.12. Displaying Electromagnetic Emissions

VR-Forces can display electromagnetic emissions (emitter volumes) for entities that have emitter systems (Figure 370). You can configure the colors used to represent emitter frequencies and you can configure the size of the emitter volumes. (For details about configuring emitter volumes, please see"49.1. Configuring Emitter Volumes" on page 1064.)

**Figure 370. Emitter volumes**



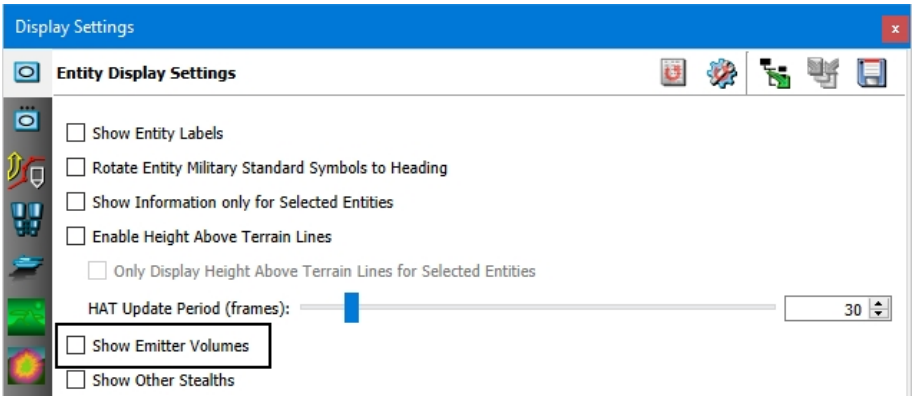

3D 2D

Display of emitter volumes only affects entities that have emitter systems.

➤ **To enable or disable display of electromagnetic emissions:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 371).

**Figure 371. Entity Display Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Show Emitter Volumes check box.

---

You can also enable or disable emitter volumes by choosing **Settings > Emitter Volumes**, or clicking the Emitter Volumes button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

---

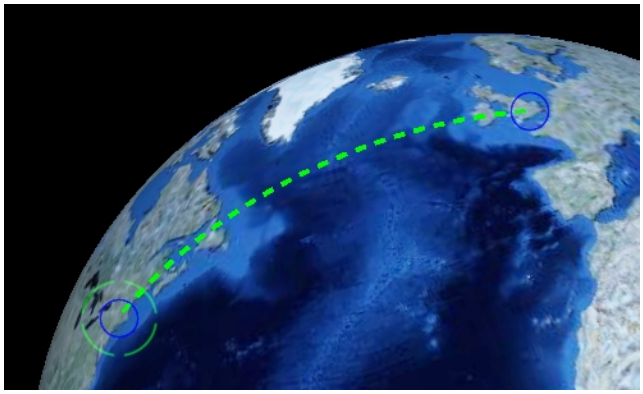
## 43.13. Displaying Radio Communication Lines

VR-Forces can display squawk indicators when a simulation object sends a signal interaction. It can also display communication lines between simulation objects when a VR-Forces simulation object (or a simulation object in an application built with the appropriate MAK libraries) sends a radio message to another simulation object. You can configure a communication line's color and lifetime. Figure 372 displays squawk indicators and a line-of-sight communication line.

**Figure 372. Radio communication line and squawk indicators**

For communications over large distances, a line-of-sight communication line would travel through the earth. Therefore, you can also display communication lines drawn with the curvature of the earth (Figure 373).

**Figure 373. Curvature of the earth communication line**



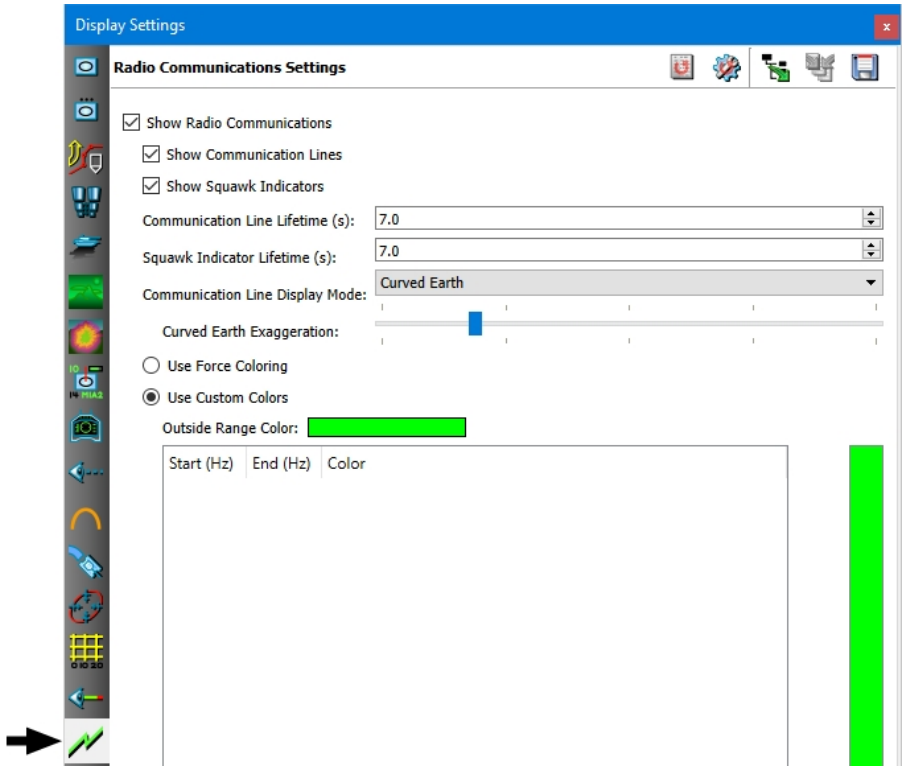
## 43.13.1 Enabling Radio Communications Graphics

You can globally enable or disable the ability to display radio communication lines. When they are enabled, you can enable and disable communication lines and squawk indicators separately.

➤ **To enable or disable radio communications graphics:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Radio Communications Settings page (Figure 374).

**Figure 374. Radio Communications Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Show Radio Communications check box.

---

You can also enable and disable communication lines by choosing **Settings > Radio Communication Display** or by clicking the Radio Communications button (⟋) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

---

➤ **To enable or disable communication lines:**

1. Enable radio communication lines.
2. Select or clear the Show Communication Lines check box.

➤ **To enable or disable squawk indicators:**

1. Enable radio communication lines.
2. Select or clear the Show Squawk Indicators check box.

## 43.13.2 Configuring the Lifetime and Display Mode

You can configure how long a radio communication line is displayed. You can also configure whether it is displayed using line-of-sight or curvature of the earth.

➤ **To configure the lifetime and display mode for radio communication lines:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Radio Communications Settings page (Figure 374 on the previous page).
3. To specify how long a communication line or squawk indicator should be displayed, enter a value, in seconds, in the Communication Line Lifetime and Squawk Indicator Lifetime fields.
4. To specify the display mode, select an option in the Communication Line Display Mode list.
5. If you select Curvature of the Earth, adjust the Curved Earth Exaggeration slider to change the degree to which the curvature is exaggerated.

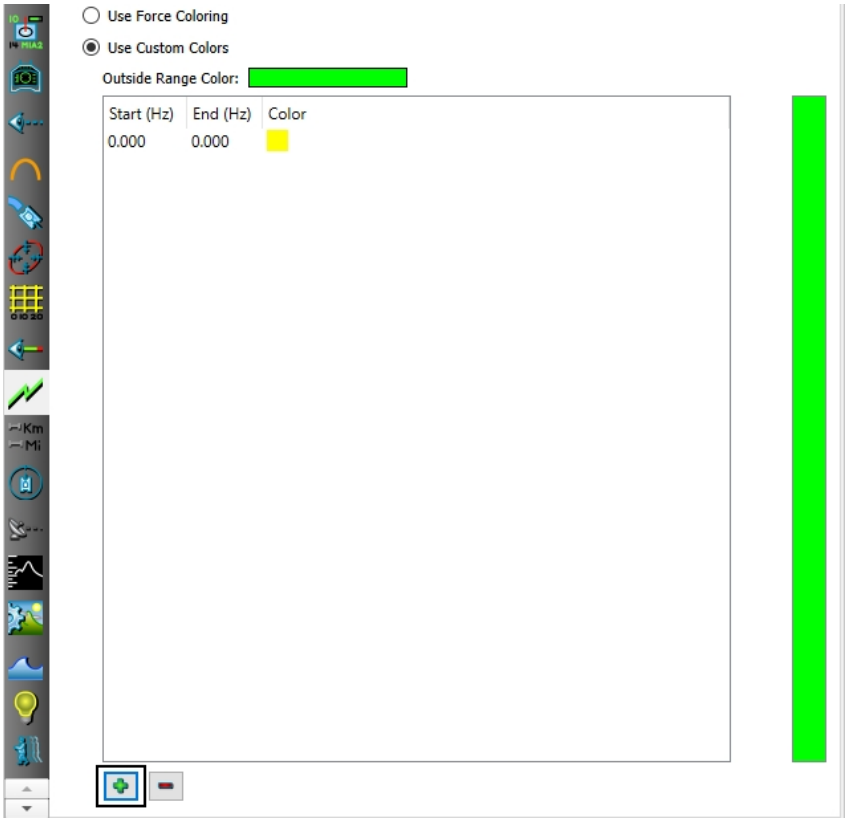
## 43.13.3 Configuring the Color of Radio Communication Lines

By default, radio communication lines are green. You can configure communication lines to use force coloring or to be colored based on the frequency of the message. When you color by frequency, you specify colors for the frequency ranges you are interested in and a color to use for all messages outside the specified frequencies.

➤ **To configure the color of radio communication lines:**

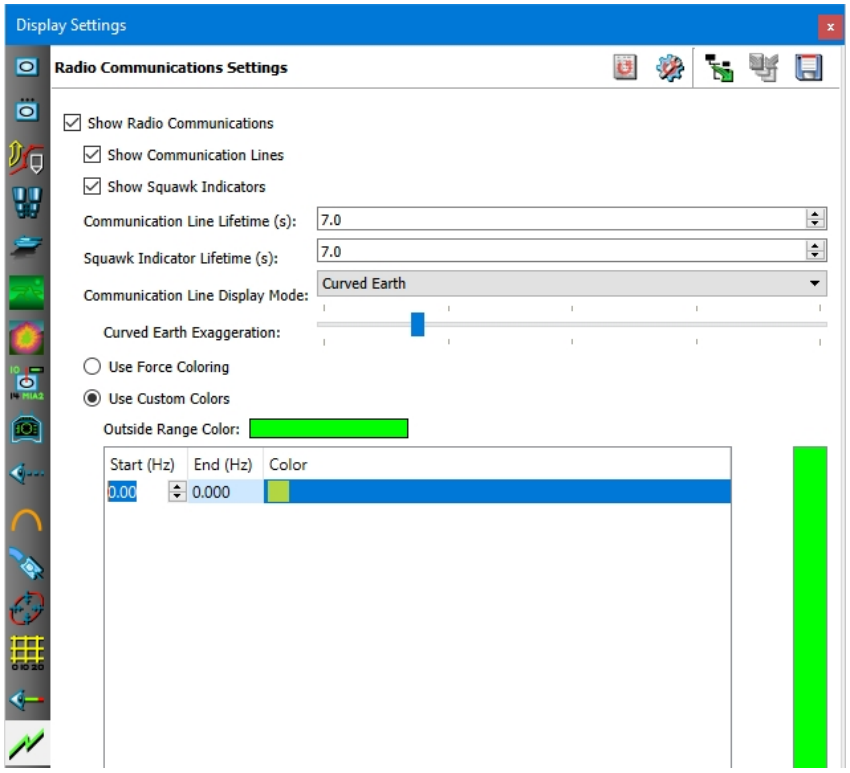
1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Radio Communications Settings page (Figure 374 on the previous page).
3. To color radio communication lines using the force color, select the Use Force Coloring option.
4. To color radio communication lines by frequency:
    a. Select the Use Custom Colors option.
    b. Click the Add button (+). A range is added to the frequency list with a default color (Figure 375).

**Figure 375. New frequency point**




c. Double-click the starting value of the range to make it editable (Figure 376).

**Figure 376. Editable frequency point**




d. Type the starting frequency you want to use.

e. Edit the end frequency.

f. Double-click the color swatch and select a color for this range.

g. Optionally, add points for different frequency ranges.

h. Optionally, click the Outside Range Color color swatch and specify a color for all frequencies not specified in the frequency list.

---

If you configure multiple frequency ranges, you cannot add a range whose values are within those of an existing range.

---

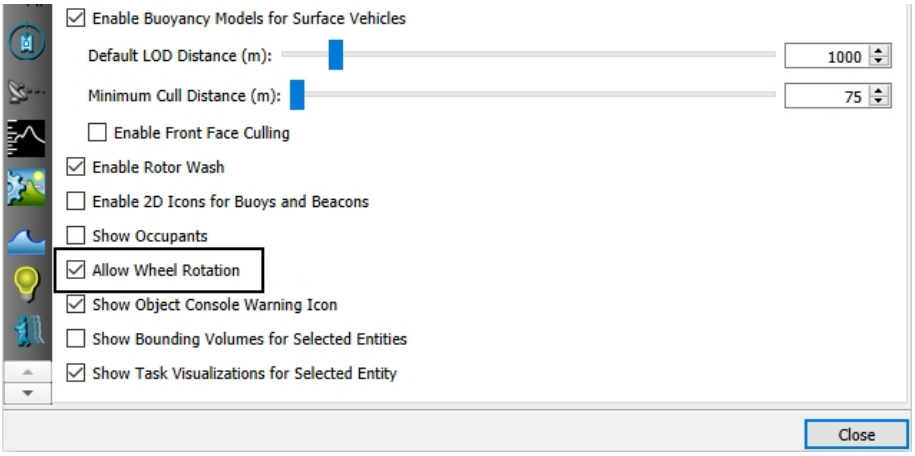
## 43.14. Enabling and Disabling Wheel Rotation

For vehicles that have articulated parts specified for the wheels, you can enable and disable rotation of the wheels. The rate of rotation is determined by the size of the wheel.

➤ **To enable or disable the rotation of vehicle wheels:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 377).

**Figure 377. Wheel Rotation Settings**




3. Select or clear the Allow Wheel Rotation check box.

# 44. Visualizing 2D Icons and 3D Models

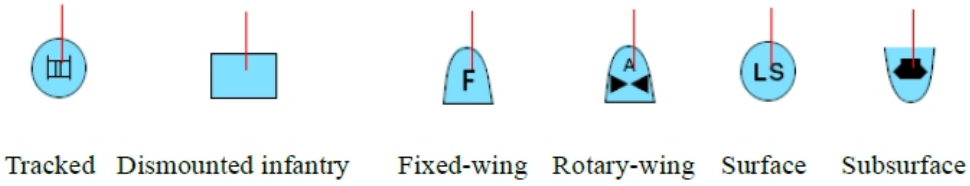
This chapter describes how to change how 2D icons and 3D models look.


44.1. Simulation Object Icons ..... 1006
44.1.1 Changing the Size of 2D Icons ..... 1006
44.1.2 Rotating 2D Icons to a Simulation Object's Heading ..... 1007
44.2. Exaggerating the Scale of 3D Entity Models ..... 1008
44.3. Hiding 3D Models ..... 1011
44.4. Displaying DI-Guys in Vehicles ..... 1011

# 44.1. Simulation Object Icons

The 2D Icons model set uses MIL-STD 2525B icons. Figure 378 illustrates basic icon shapes for friendly forces.

**Figure 378. MILSTD-2525B icons**




The color and shape code for 2D simulation object icons is:

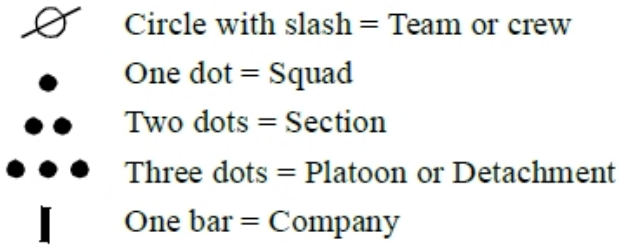
- Light blue – friendly.
- Pink (light red) – hostile.
- Light green – neutral.

Symbols have a black border except as follows:

- If there is no border on the top, the entity domain is subsurface, for example, submarines.
- Selected simulation objects have a white border.

Symbols that represent units have unit identifiers above the symbol, as illustrated in Figure 379.

**Figure 379. Unit echelon indicators**



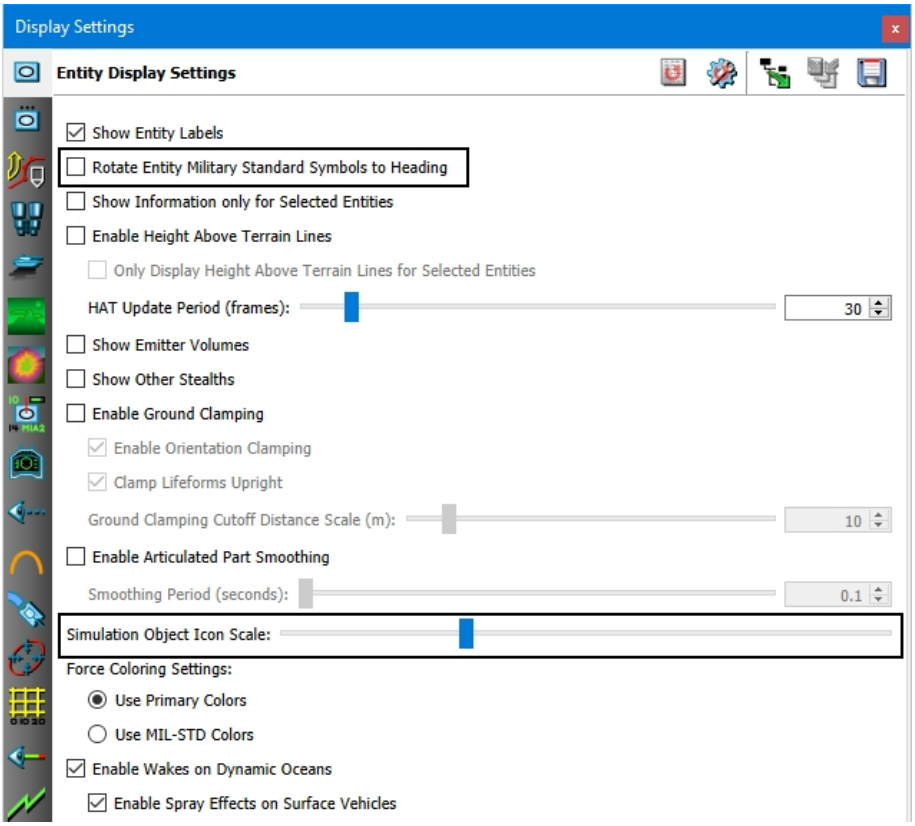

## 44.1.1 Changing the Size of 2D Icons

The Plan View observer mode uses the 2D Icons model set for simulation objects. You can change the size of 2D icons. When many simulation objects are close together, reducing the size of the icons can reduce overlap.

➤ **To change the size of simulation object icons:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 380).

**Figure 380. Entity Display Settings page**




3. Adjust the Simulation Object Icon Scale slider.

You can also change the size of 2D icons from the Display Settings Toolbar.

➤ **To change the size of simulation object icons from the Display Settings toolbar:**

1. On the Display Settings Toolbar, click the Icon Scaling button (). The Simulation Object Icon Scale Factor slider opens.
2. Adjust the slider to change the size of the icons.

---

The Simulation Object Icon Scale Factor slider is a dockable widget that you can undock and leave visible as long as icon scaling is enabled.

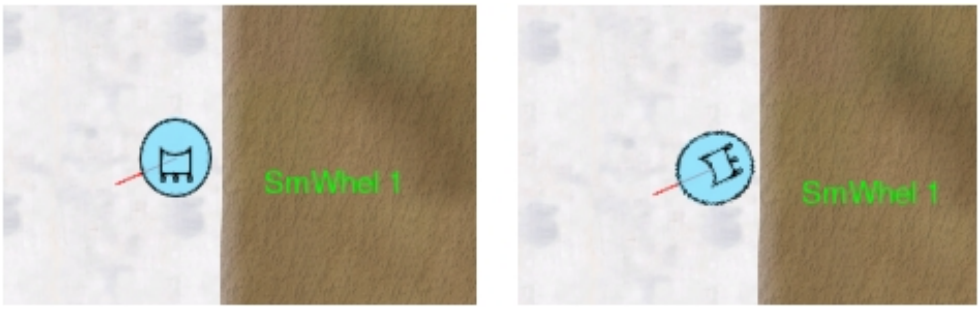
---

## 44.1.2 Rotating 2D Icons to a Simulation Object's Heading

By default, when a simulation object's heading changes, the heading indicator points to the new heading, but the icon remains oriented towards zero degrees (North). You can specify that icons rotate to the heading of the simulation object.

Rotating 2D icons to match an entity's heading works only when Orient North is enabled. If Orient North is disabled, the rotated 2D icons may not match the object's heading. Please see "53.9. Forcing Orientation North" on page 1121 for details about controlling the observer's heading.

**Figure 381. 2D icon rotated to heading**




➤ **To rotate icons to a simulation object's heading:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 380).
3. Select the Rotate Entity Military Standard Symbols to Heading check box.

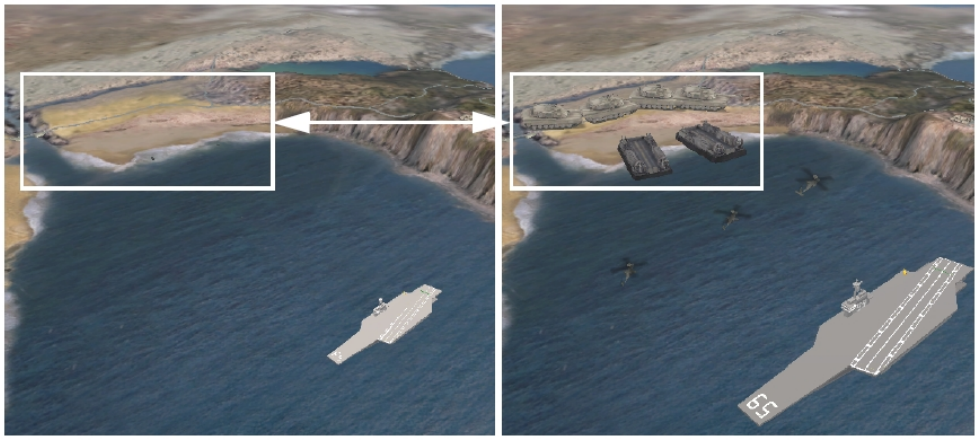
## 44.2. Exaggerating the Scale of 3D Entity Models

If you view the terrain in Stealth observer mode, beyond a certain distance most 3D entity models are too small to see. Model scaling lets you exaggerate the scale of entity models to see them at a great distance. Figure 382 shows the same scene with model scaling off and on. When model scaling is off, only the largest entities are visible. When models are scaled, they are all visible.

VR-Forces supports the following types of model scaling:

- XR scaling. XR scaling tries to give all entities approximately equal visibility. It does not preserve size relationships between entities. The visual effect of model scaling depends on an entity's size and the observer's distance from the entity. When the observer is close to an entity, scaling models may not make any noticeable difference in its size.
- Linear scaling. Linear scaling scales all entities by the current model scale factor. The distance from the observer is not taken into account. A model scale factor of 10 scales all entities to be 10 times normal size.

**Figure 382. Model scaling off and on (Stealth observer mode)**



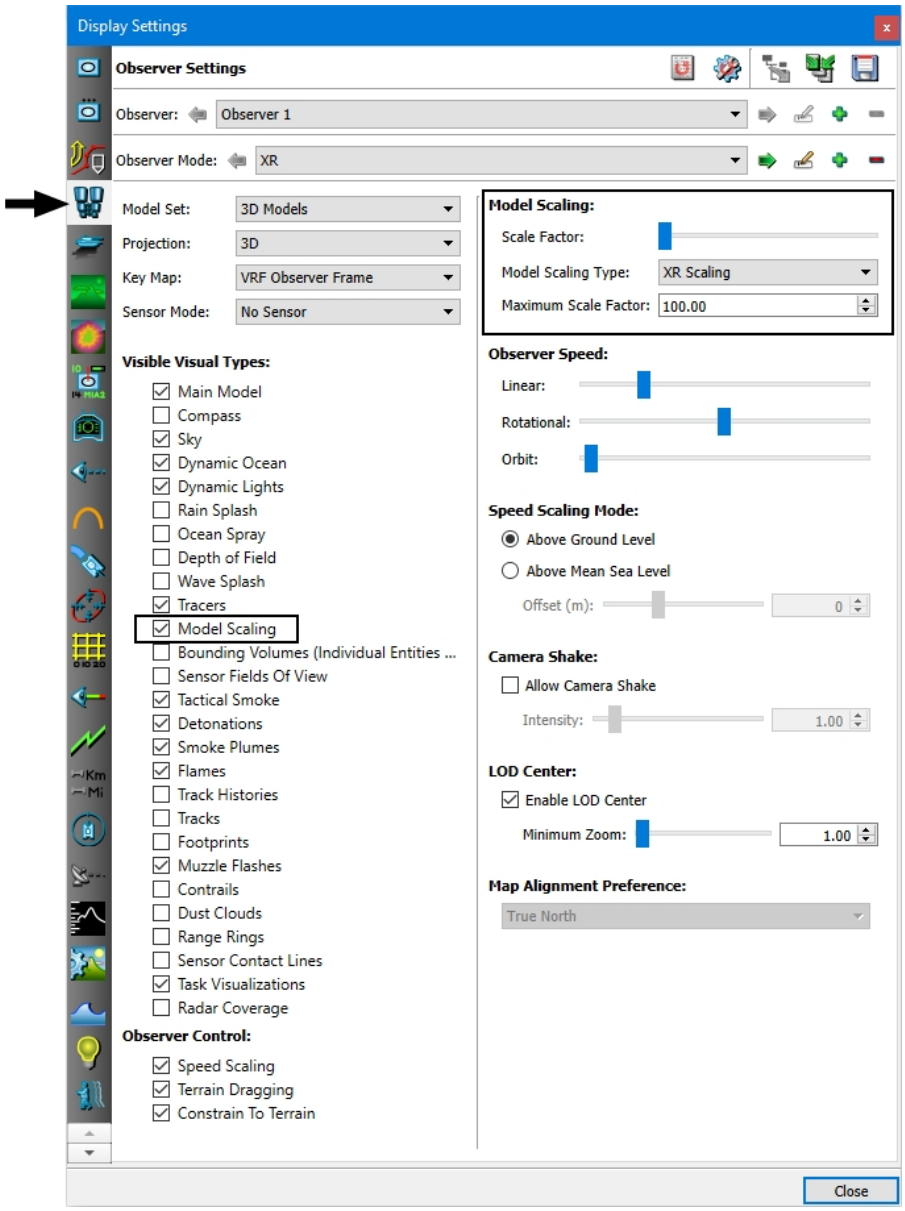
Another way to quickly change the visibility of entities is to switch to XR observer mode. In XR mode, entities are immediately scaled and are represented by colorized 3D models to enhance their visibility.

**Figure 383. XR mode**

➤ **To scale entity models:**

1. Choose **Observer > Advanced Settings.** The Display Settings dialog box opens to the Observer Settings page (Figure 384).

**Figure 384. Observer Settings page**




2. In the list of observer attributes, select Model Scaling.
3. In the Model Scaling Type list, select the type of scaling you want to use: XR or linear.

---

If you want to use XR scaling, you must change the Observer Mode to XR.

---

4. Optionally, change the Maximum Scale Factor.
5. Adjust the Scale Factor slider to the amount of scaling that you want.

## 44.3. Hiding 3D Models

You can hide 3D models and 3D colorized models.

➤ **To hide 3D models:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 384 on the previous page).
3. In the list of observer settings, clear the Main Model check box.

## 44.4. Displaying DI-Guys in Vehicles

If a vehicle has interior geometry, you can configure it to display DI-Guy characters inside the vehicle. If a vehicle is configured to display a DI-Guy, the model is added automatically. You can enable and disable display of DI-Guys. This is a global setting.

The characters displayed in vehicles are for display purposes only. They do not exist as entities in the simulation.

You can show and hide occupants on a per-entity basis with the Hide Occupants set data request. For details, please see"34.34. Hide Occupants" on page 812 .

➤ **To enable or disable display of DI-Guys in vehicles:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page.
3. Select or clear the Show Occupants check box.

# 45. Lighting Effects

This chapter describes the lighting effects supported by VR-Forces.


45.1. Displaying Lighting Effects ..... 1014
45.2. Advanced Lighting Settings ..... 1014
45.2.1 Configuring Ambient and Diffuse Lighting ..... 1015
45.2.2 Specifying the Emissive Lighting Scale ..... 1017
45.3. Displaying Dynamic Lighting ..... 1017
45.3.1 Daylight Control of Lights ..... 1018
45.4. Displaying Ocean Planar Reflections ..... 1018
45.4.1 Configuring Ocean Planar Reflections ..... 1020
45.5. Lens Flare ..... 1021
45.6. Displaying Crepuscular (Sun) Rays ..... 1022
45.7. Configuring the Skybox Cube Map ..... 1024
45.8. Flashlight Mode ..... 1025
45.9. Using High Dynamic Range Lighting ..... 1025
45.10. Disabling Lighting and Clouds ..... 1027
45.11. Displaying Shadows (3D Only) ..... 1028
45.11.1 Enabling Shadows on Trees ..... 1029
45.11.2 Configuring Shadows ..... 1030

## 45.1. Displaying Lighting Effects

VR-Forces can simulate a variety of lighting effects, including:

- Dynamic lighting
- Ocean planar reflection
- Lens flare
- Crepuscular (sun) rays
- Shadows

Use of lighting effects affects performance. VR-Forces lets you enable and disable some effects so you can adjust the mixture of performance and effects that best meets your needs.

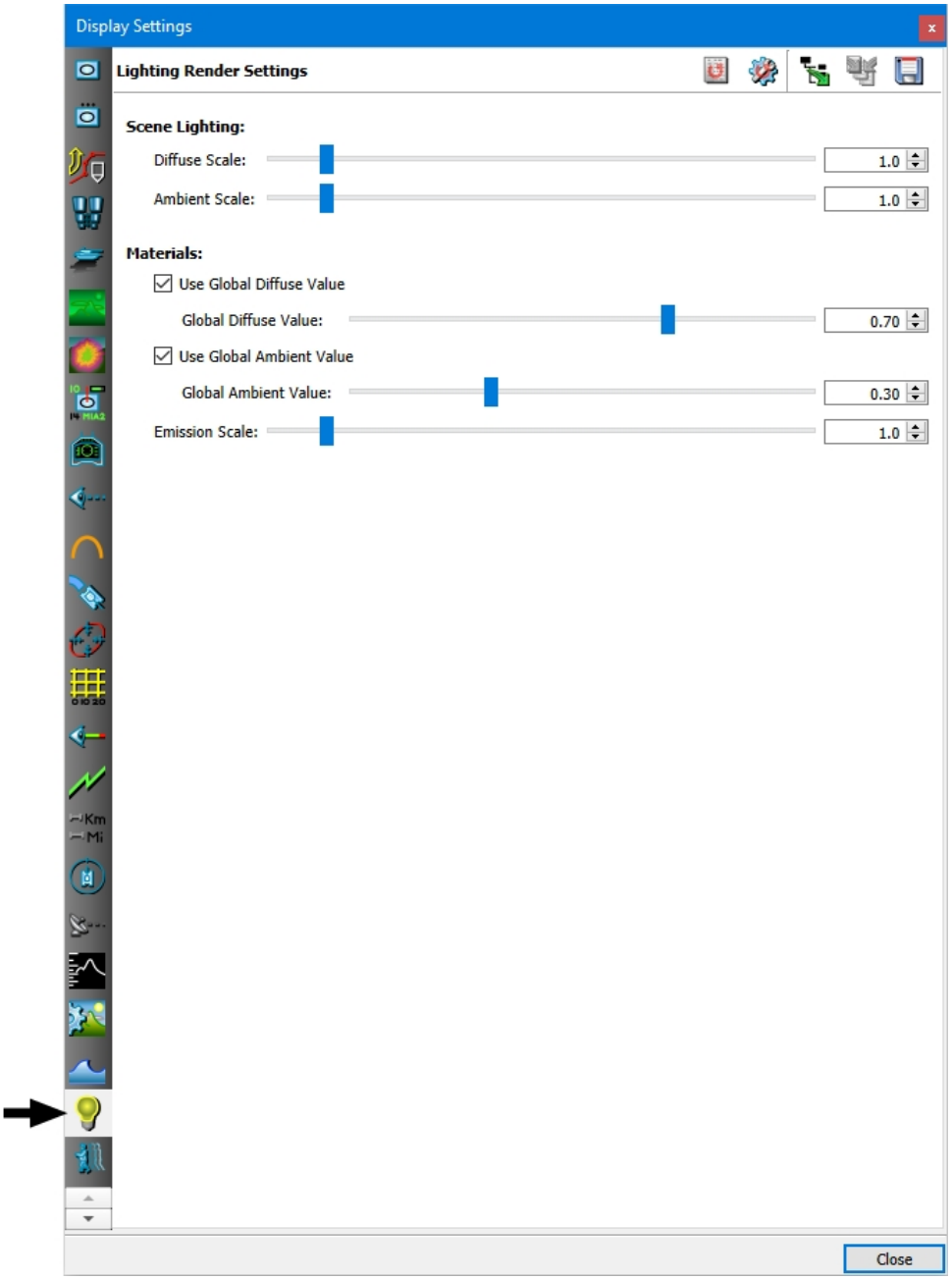
## 45.2. Advanced Lighting Settings

VR-Forces allows you to adjust the lighting for the scene and materials.

➤ **To access the lighting render settings:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Lighting Render Settings page (Figure 385).

**Figure 385. Lighting Render Settings**




## 45.2.1 Configuring Ambient and Diffuse Lighting

Ambient lighting is the lighting available to objects that are not in a direct form of light, such as sunlight. Diffuse lighting is light that is reflected off an object. You can adjust the overall amount of ambient and diffuse lighting in the scene and you can configure whether objects use the material ambient and diffuse values specified in their models or use values provided by VR-Forces.

### Configuring the Ambient and Diffuse Scale Values for Scene Lighting

You can set a scale factor for ambient and diffuse light that is present in the scene. Lower values make objects darker. Higher values make them lighter. The ambient or diffuse scale factor is independent of how material ambient and diffuse values are set.

➤ **To specify the ambient and diffuse lighting scale values:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Lighting Render Settings page (Figure 385 on the previous page).
3. Adjust the Diffuse Scale slider or change the value in the box.
4. Adjust the Ambient Scale slider or change the value in the box.

### Configuring the Material Ambient and Diffuse Values for Materials

Polygons in a 3D scene have a material and a texture. Polygon materials may specify specular, diffuse, and ambient colors that define the way they respond to incoming light.

The ambient color specifies the color used when it is in indirect light. Sometimes the ambient values for different objects do not work well together. You can specify that objects use the ambient material value, or let VR-Forces globally specify ambient material values.

In addition to specifying which material ambient and diffuse values to use, you can set a scale factor. Lower values make objects darker. Higher values make them lighter. The material ambient or diffuse scale factor is independent of how ambient and diffuse values are set for scene lighting.

➤ **To configure the material ambient value:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Lighting Render Settings page (Figure 385 on the previous page).
3. To use the ambient values specified by objects, clear the Use Global Ambient Value check box. To have VR-Forces use a global value, select the Use Global Ambient Value check box.
4. If you selected the Use Global Ambient Value check box, optionally, adjust the Global Ambient Value slider or change the value in the box.

➤ **To configure the material diffuse value:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Lighting Render Settings page (Figure 385 on the previous page).
3. To use the diffuse values specified by objects, clear the Use Global Diffuse Value check box. To have VR-Forces use a global value, select the Use Global Diffuse Value check box.
4. If you selected the Use Global Diffuse Value check box, optionally, adjust the Global Diffuse Value slider or change the value in the box.

### 45.2.2 Specifying the Emissive Lighting Scale

You can change a scale value that controls the brightness of emissive textures. This allows you to make windows, street lights, and other emissive light sources darker or brighter. Increasing the scale value increases the brightness.

➤ **To specify the emissive lighting scale value:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Lighting Render Settings page (Figure 385 on page 1015).
3. Adjust the Emission Scale slider or change the value in the box.

## 45.3. Displaying Dynamic Lighting

VR-Forces can display light cast by light sources such as headlights, street lamps, and spotlights. Display of dynamic lighting is an observer-specific feature. It is enabled by default.

Dynamic lights are either part of the terrain or part of an entity model. If they are part of an entity model, they can be set permanently on or they can be turned on and off by the appearance bit. VR-Forces entities that have lights can enable them using the Set Appearance set data request.

Figure 386 shows a night-time scene with dynamic lighting enabled. The HMMWV's taillights cast light to the rear. The headlights cast light forward. Street lamps and windows are also casting light.

**Figure 386. Dynamic Lighting enabled**

- Light points can be configured to automatically turn on at dusk and turn off at dawn. For details, please see "45.3.1 Daylight Control of Lights" below.
- Emissive lights are always on, day or night. The headlights on vehicles shipped with MAK products are configured with Dynamic Lights and Emissive Textures which are controlled by the Appearance State “Head Lights On”. When the headlights are on and dynamic lights are enabled, the emissive textures are visible.

You cannot change these lighting settings.

➤ **To enable dynamic lighting:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page.
3. In the list of settings, select Dynamic Lights.

You can also enable or disable dynamic lighting by choosing **Observer > Dynamic Lights** or clicking the Dynamic Lights button (💡) on the Observer Settings Toolbar.

### 45.3.1 Daylight Control of Lights

Lights that have a light point type specified can be placed under daylight control.

- Light points that do not have a light point type defined are not automatically placed under daylight control.
- Light points in an OpenFlight file that are loaded as an articulated model use the daylightControlledLights model definition parameter.
- Light points with a type defined use the Daylight Controlled parameter for their type in *./appData/importConfig/Lights_DefaultValues_3_2.csv*.

For more information about configuring light points, please see *“Configuring Light Points,”* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

Light sources (lights that cast light onto other objects) are discovered on the cull pass of the scene graph. Sources found under the terrain root or props root of the scene graph are automatically put under daylight control.

## 45.4. Displaying Ocean Planar Reflections

VR-Forces can show the reflection of terrain and objects on water (Figure 387). To see planar reflections, dynamic ocean must be enabled. (For details about enabling dynamic ocean, please see "11.7.1 Enabling Marine Effects" on page 329.)

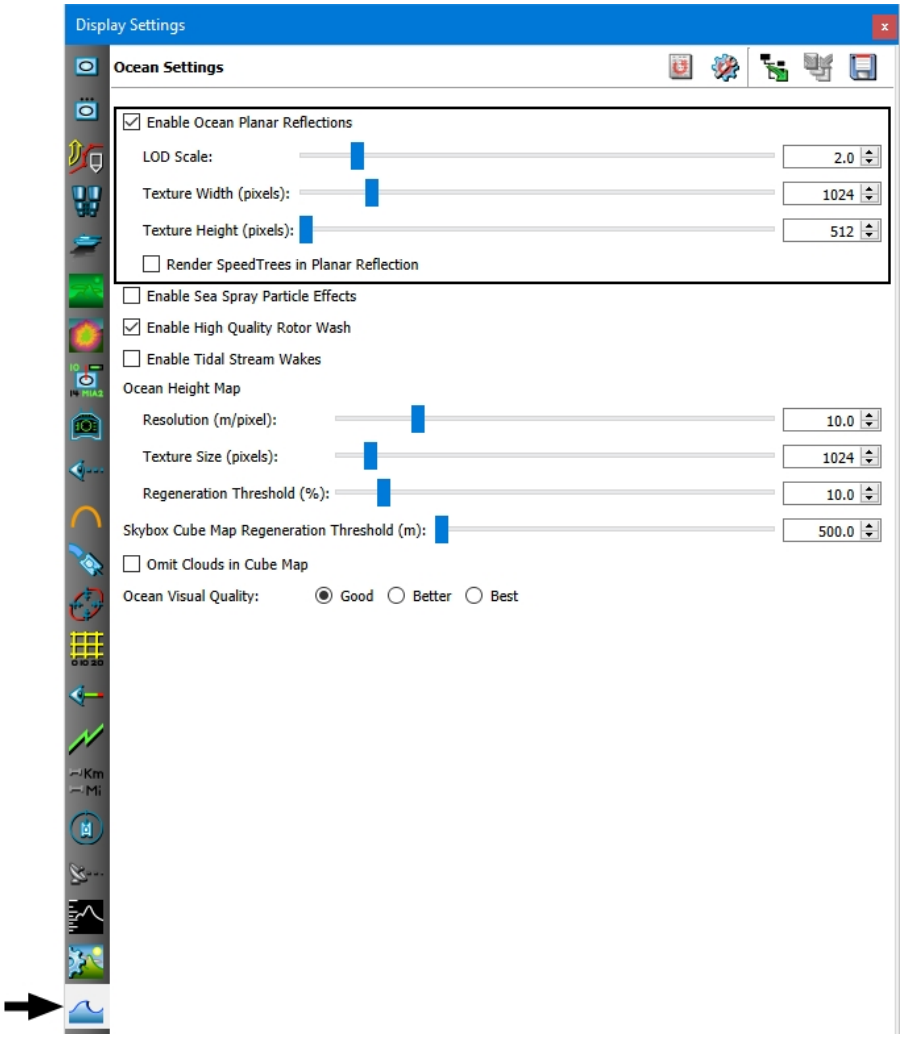
Displaying ocean planar reflections degrades performance.

**Figure 387. Ocean planar reflection**

➤ **To enable or disable planar reflections:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Ocean Settings page (Figure 388).

**Figure 388. Ocean Settings**




3. Select or clear the Enable Ocean Planar Reflections check box.

## 45.4.1 Configuring Ocean Planar Reflections

To reduce the performance impact of ocean planar reflections, you can configure the LOD scale. The LOD scale affects the distance from the observer at which VR-Forces switches LODs. The higher the value, the more quickly LODs are switched.

The Texture Height and Texture Width parameters affect the resolution of the ocean planar reflection texture, in pixels. Higher resolution decreases performance.

You can also enable and disable display of SpeedTrees as planar reflections.

➤ **To configure ocean planar reflections:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Ocean Settings page (Figure 388 above).

3. To change the ocean planar reflection LOD scale, adjust the LOD Scale slider under Enable Ocean Planar Reflections, or change the value in the box.
4. To change the width or height of the ocean planar reflection texture, adjust the Texture Width or Texture Height slider under Enable Ocean Planar Reflections, or change the values in the boxes.
5. To include SpeedTrees in ocean planar reflections, select the Render SpeedTrees in Planar Reflections check box.

## 45.5. Lens Flare

Lens flare is a visual artifact often seen when looking at light sources such as the sun through a camera lens (Figure 389). VR-Forces can simulate lens flare when the observer looks towards the sun.

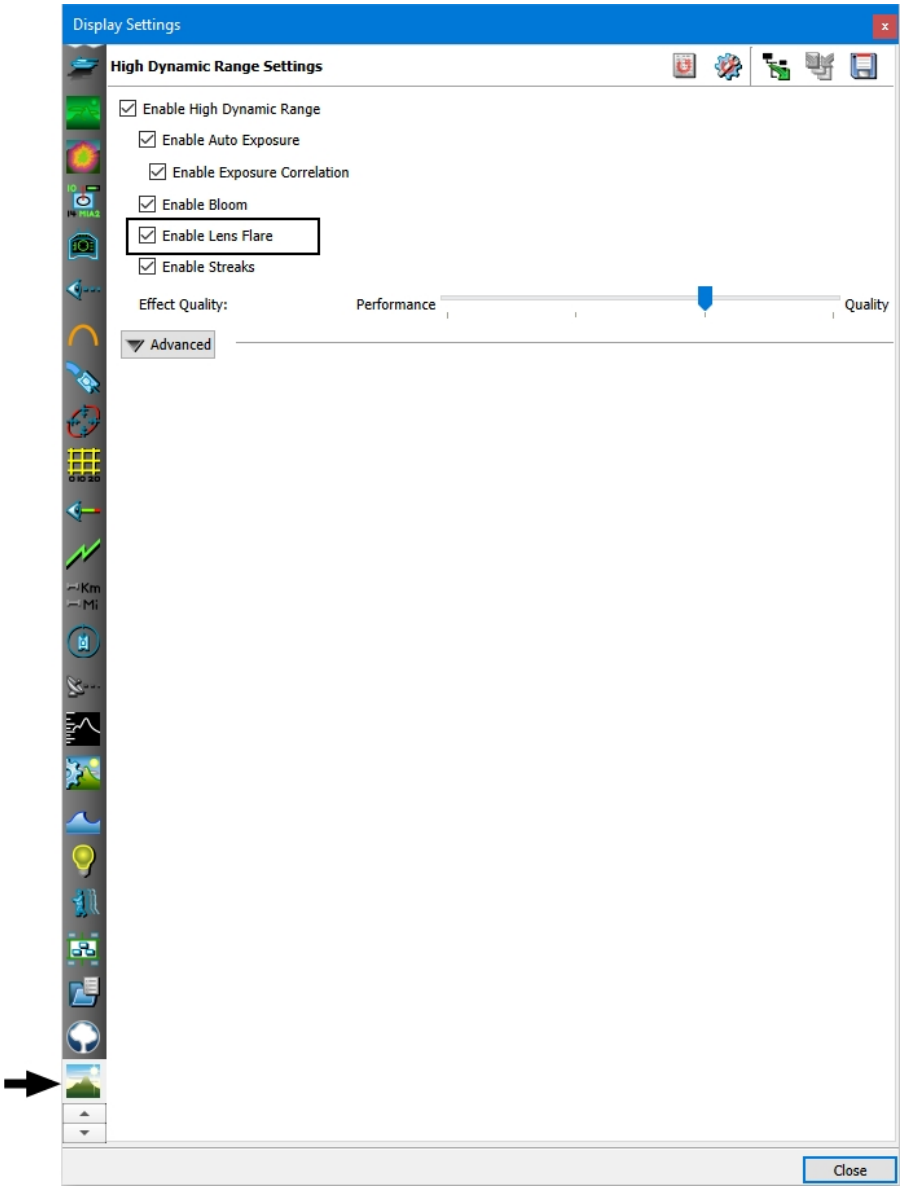
**Figure 389. Lens flare**

Lens flare is supported only when high dynamic range lighting is enabled. You can also enable this in the High Dynamic Range Settings page.

➤ **To enable or disable lens flare:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the High Dynamic Range Settings page (Figure 390).

**Figure 390. High Dynamic Range Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Enable Lens Flare check box.

## 45.6. Displaying Crepuscular (Sun) Rays

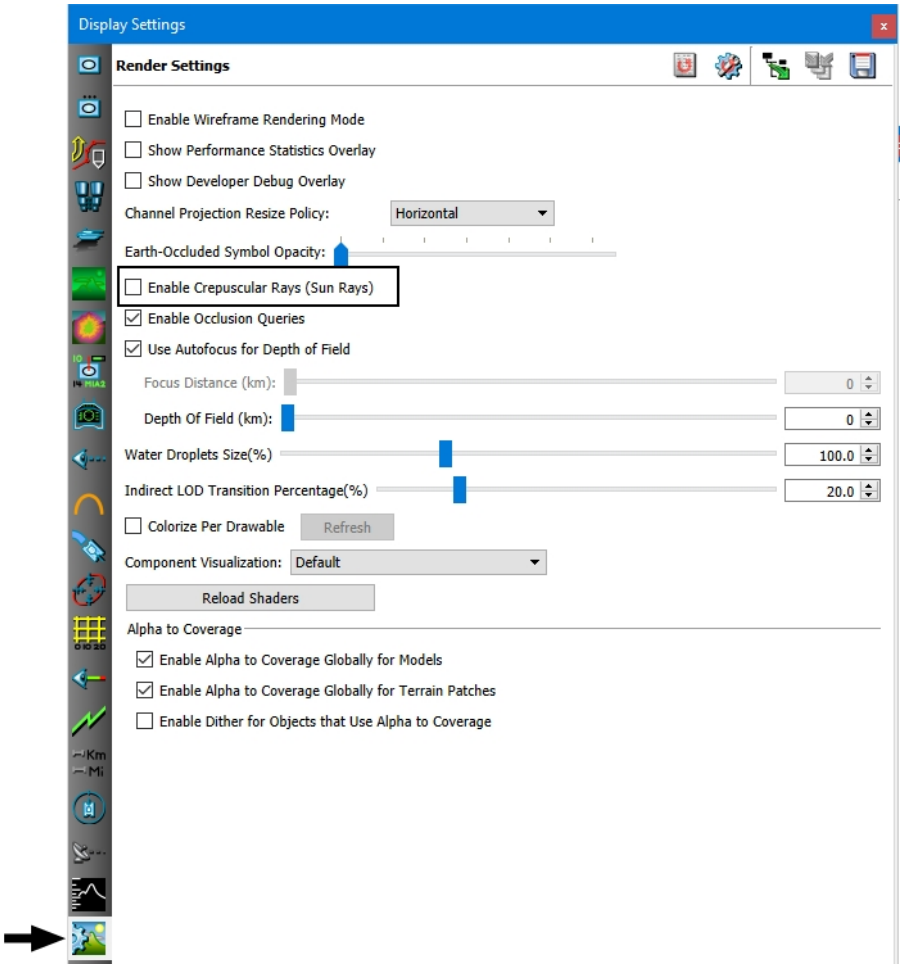
VR-Forces can simulate the effect of crepuscular rays (sunbeams) beaming through clouds (Figure 391).

**Figure 391. Crepuscular rays**

➤ **To enable or disable crepuscular (sun) rays:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 392).

**Figure 392. Render Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Crepuscular Rays check box.

## 45.7. Configuring the Skybox Cube Map

A skybox cube map is a graphics technique used to render reflections and sky effects. The skybox cube map is rendered from the location of the observer. As the observer moves, the cube map needs to be recalculated, which is computationally expensive.

VR-Forces lets you configure the distance that the observer has to move (the skybox cube map regeneration threshold) before it recalculates the cube map. Increasing the threshold can improve performance, at the cost of visual quality.

You can also choose to omit clouds in the skybox cube map. Omitting clouds can increase performance.

➤ **To configure the skybox cube map:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Ocean Settings page (Figure 388 on page 1020).

3. Adjust the Skybox Cube Map Regeneration Threshold slider or enter a value in the box.
4. Optionally, select the Omit Clouds in Cube Map check box.

## 45.8. Flashlight Mode

VR-Forces can light a circular area as if the observer is using a flashlight. You can move the flashlight beam and increase or decrease the diameter of the flashlight beam.

**Figure 393. Flashlight mode**

➤ To turn flashlight mode on or off, press **F**.

➤ To move the flashlight beam, hold down **Alt** and the right mouse button and move the mouse.

➤ To change the size of the flashlight beam, hold down **Alt** and move the mouse scroll wheel forward or back.

## 45.9. Using High Dynamic Range Lighting

High dynamic range (HDR) lighting makes scenes look more realistic. They look particularly good on HDR monitors. HDR is enabled by default.

➤ **To configure HDR lighting:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the High Dynamic Range Settings page (Figure 390 on page 1022).
3. To enable or disable HDR lighting, select or clear the Enable High Dynamic Range check box.
4. Enable other settings as desired.
5. For those settings that are enabled, adjust their parameters. Table 38 describes the HDR settings.

**Table 38. HDR settings**

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Enable High Dynamic Range | Turns High Dynamic Range (HDR) on and off. When HDR is turned on, the scene is rendered in 16-bits per color floating point and then tone mapped to 8-bits per color before being sent to the display. Additionally, there are post process effects applied to objects that are greater than the display range. |
| Enable Auto Exposure | Turns auto exposure on and off, which is a post process that scales the intensity of the rendered image based on the intensity of the screen. When auto exposure is turned off, the global lighting values are used to scale the intensity to a reasonable value. |
| Enable Exposure Correlation | When auto exposure is enabled, this controls whether all the channels share the same auto exposure adjustment. When enabled, all channels use the exposure for the main luminance. If if it disabled, each channel across master or slave computes its own luminance. |
| Enable Bloom | Turns the bloom post process effect on and off. This effect is a blurring of high intensity objects in the scene which gives a glow around bright objects like light points. |
| Enable Lens Flare | Turns the lens flare post process effect on and off. This effect creates a lens flare effect for high intensity objects. |
| Enable Streaks | Turns the streak post process effect on and off. This effect creates a star effect by streaking the high intensity objects in all directions. |
| Dynamic Light Scale | When HDR is turned on, the intensity of dynamic lights are scaled by this setting. |
| Emissive Texture Scale | When HDR is turned on, the intensity of the emissive textures is scaled by this setting. |
| Light Point Scale | When HDR is turned on, light point intensity is scaled by this setting. |
| Shininess Scale | When HDR is turned on the lighting shininess component is scaled by this setting. Exposure adjustments are all related to how the intensity of the scene is scaled before being tone mapped. These values are in order based on when they are applied to the scalar. |
| Specular Scale | When HDR is turned on the lighting specular component is scaled by this setting. |
| Rate Scale | When Auto Exposure is enabled, this scales the time it takes for the auto exposure to adjust to changes in the scene. Increase this value to reduce the time it takes for the auto exposure to adjust. |
| Pre Scale | When Auto Exposure is enabled, this scales the calculated intensity for the scene. Increase this value to reduce the overall intensity of the final image. |

**Table 38. HDR settings (continued)**

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Min Difference | When Auto Exposure is enabled, this clamps the minimum value of the calculated intensity to a portion of the global lighting value. This is used to prevent the auto exposure from going too low compared to the global lighting value. |
| Max Difference | When Auto Exposure is enabled, this clamps the maximum value of the calculated intensity to a portion of the global lighting value. This is used to prevent the auto exposure from going too high compared to the global lighting value. |
| Post Scale | Scales the scalar after all Auto Exposure calculations have been done. This also affects the global lighting value when Auto Exposure is turned off. Increase this value to reduce the overall intensity of the final image. |
| Final Clamp Min | The minimum value for the final value that will be used to scale the intensity prior to tone mapping. |
| Final Clamp Max | The maximum value for the final value that will be used to scale the intensity prior to tone mapping. |
| Bloom Scale | Scales the bloom before it is applied to the scene. Increase this value to increase the intensity of the bloom effect on high intensity objects. |
| Lens Flare Scale | Scales the lens flare effect before it is applied to the scene. Increase this value to increase the intensity of the lens flare effect. |
| Streak Intensity Scale | Scales the streaks before they are applied to the scene. Increase this value to increase the intensity of the streak effect on high intensity objects. |
| Number of Streaks | Number of streaks that the streak effect will create for each high intensity object. Maximum of 8 streaks. |
| Streak Length Scale | Scales the length of the streak effect. Increase this value to increase the length of the streak effect. |
| Streak Rotation Offset | Rotates the streak effect so that it changes the direction that the streaks point. |
| Gamma | Final color correction used to adjust the image based on the display. Change this value based on the characteristics of the display being used. |

## 45.10. Disabling Lighting and Clouds

When you are using XR observer mode and you move the observer out from the terrain, the lighting and cloud effects can interfere with your ability to view simulation objects. Therefore, VR-Forces lets you quickly disable lighting effects and clouds. By default, they are enabled in Stealth observer mode and disabled in XR observer mode.

➤ To enable or disable lighting and clouds, choose **Observer > Sky**.

# 45.11. Displaying Shadows (3D Only)

VR-Forces can display shadows for entities, props, clouds, and terrain features (Figure 394).

**Figure 394. Shadows**

You can enable and disable shadows and you can configure shadow quality.

---

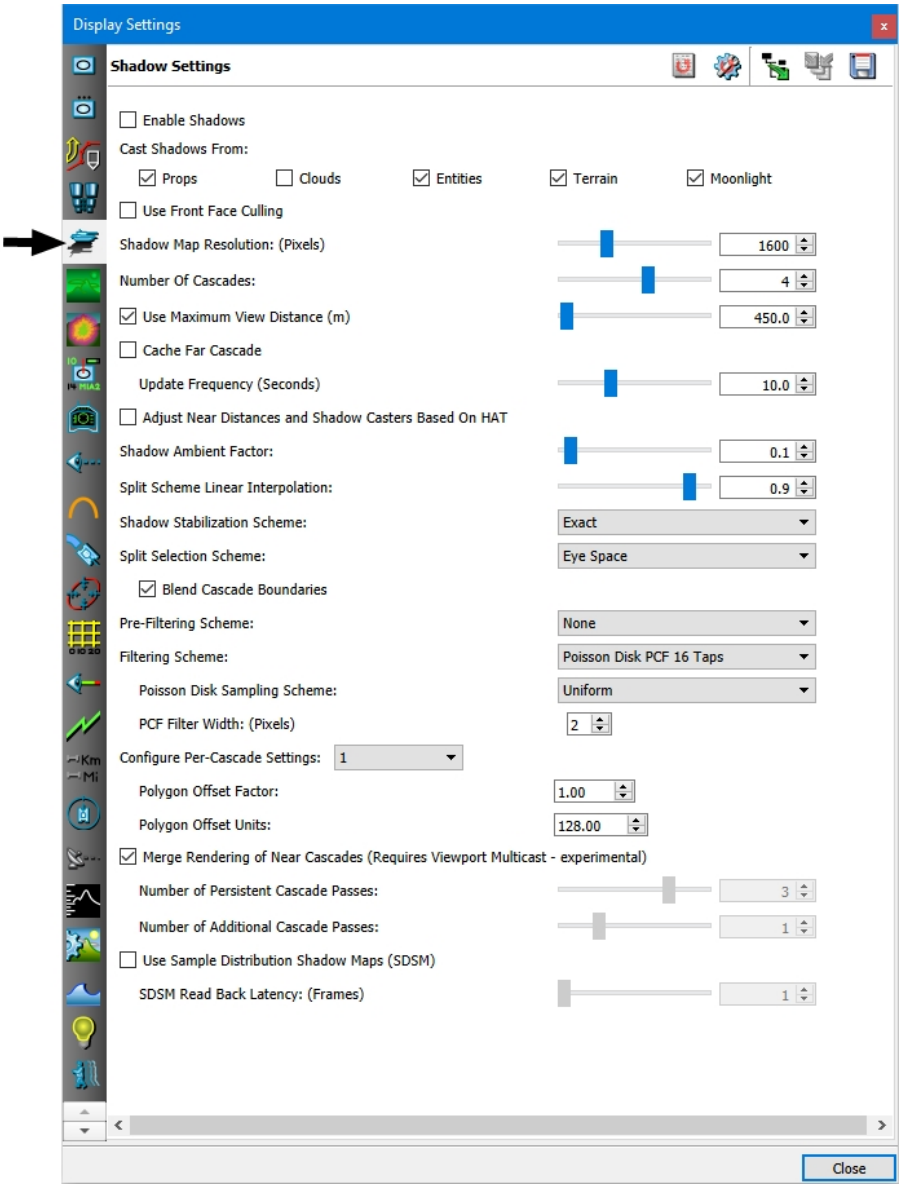
Enabling shadows can affect performance.

---

➤ **To enable and disable shadows globally:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Shadow Settings page (Figure 395).

**Figure 395. Display Settings, Shadow Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Enable Shadows check box.
4. To enable or disable shadows for specific object types, select or clear the check boxes under Cast Shadows From.

You can also enable and disable shadows by choosing **Settings > Shadows** or clicking the Shadows button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

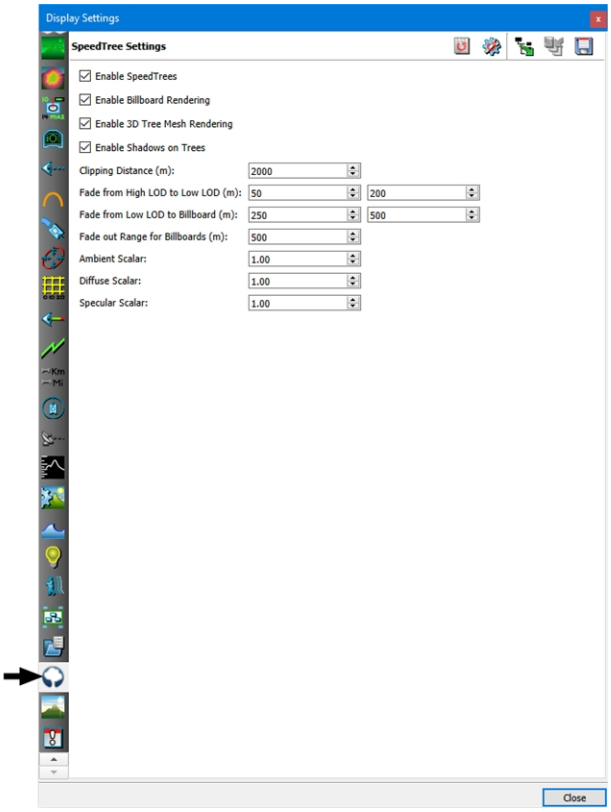
## 45.11.1 Enabling Shadows on Trees

You can enable and disable casting of shadows on SpeedTree trees.

➤ **To enable or disable casting shadows on SpeedTree trees:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the SpeedTree Settings page (Figure 396).

**Figure 396. SpeedTree Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Enable Shadows on Trees check box.

## 45.11.2 Configuring Shadows

You can configure which objects cast shadows and parameters that affect performance and the quality of shadows.

Shadows are drawn based on a shadow map. A shadow map determines what parts of a scene are in shadow relative to a light source. Then the scene is drawn showing the shadows that would be visible from the viewpoint of the observer.

Scenes are split into sections, called cascades. The cascades that are closest to the camera show the highest resolution shadows. Many of the settings control the size of cascades and how they merge together.

For an in-depth understanding of how shadows are rendered in 3D scenes, please see the many articles available on the world wide web.

➤ **To configure how shadows are rendered:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Shadow Settings page (Figure 395 on page 1029).
3. Change the parameters as desired. Table 39 briefly describes them.

**Table 39. Shadow settings**

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Use Front Face Culling | Use of face front culling is a choice between more shadow acne (an effect similar to z-fighting) and more light bleeding artifacts. |
| Shadow Map Resolution | Increasing shadow map resolution provides more detail at the cost of performance and increased memory use. |
| Number of Cascades | The more cascades there are, the more detail is rendered, at the expense of memory usage and performance. |
| Use Maximum View Distance | If enabled, specifies how far away shadows are displayed. The smaller the area in which shadows are displayed, the more quickly they get displayed and the higher the quality. If disabled, uses the scene values. |
| Cache Far Cascade | Caches the farthest cascade and updates it less frequently than the near cascade, which increases performance. |
| Adjust Near Distances and Shadow Casters Based On HAT | As the observer moves higher above the terrain, the near cascade shrinks and only entities are rendered to them. The far cascade becomes responsible for the terrain shadows. |
| Shadow Ambient Factor | Fades out shadows. It determines how much light gets through. |
| Split Scheme Linear Interpolation | Adjusts how cascades are distributed between a logarithmic approach and a linear approach. |
| Shadow Stabilization Scheme | A list of different ways to reduce the shimmer that is common in shadow maps. |
| Split Selection Scheme | A list of different ways to choose which cascade a piece of geometry is in. |
| Pre-Filtering Scheme | A list of different shadow casing techniques to try to smooth shadows. |
| Filtering Scheme | Affects how blurred the shadow map is. |
| Configure Per-Cascade Settings | Lets you configure the polygon offset for cascades. |

**Table 39. Shadow settings (continued)**

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Merge Rendering of Near Cascades | Lets you draw cascades all at once instead of individually. This improves performance. However, it is only available on newer video cards (NVidia 980 or newer).<br>If disabled, you can configure the number of cascades passes to draw shadows. |
| Use Sample Distribution Shadow Map (SDSM) | Adjusts quality based on the depth complexity of an area of the scene. |

# 46. Marine Effects

This chapter describes different marine effects and water droplets.


46.1. Displaying Water Droplets and Splash Effects ..... 1034
46.1.1 Enabling Sea Spray ..... 1036
46.1.2 Setting the Size of Water Droplets ..... 1037
46.1.3 Enabling and Disabling Rotor Wash ..... 1038
46.1.4 Enabling High Quality Rotor Wash ..... 1039
46.2. Displaying Wakes and Spray Effects ..... 1039
46.3. Enabling Buoyancy for Surface Entities ..... 1040

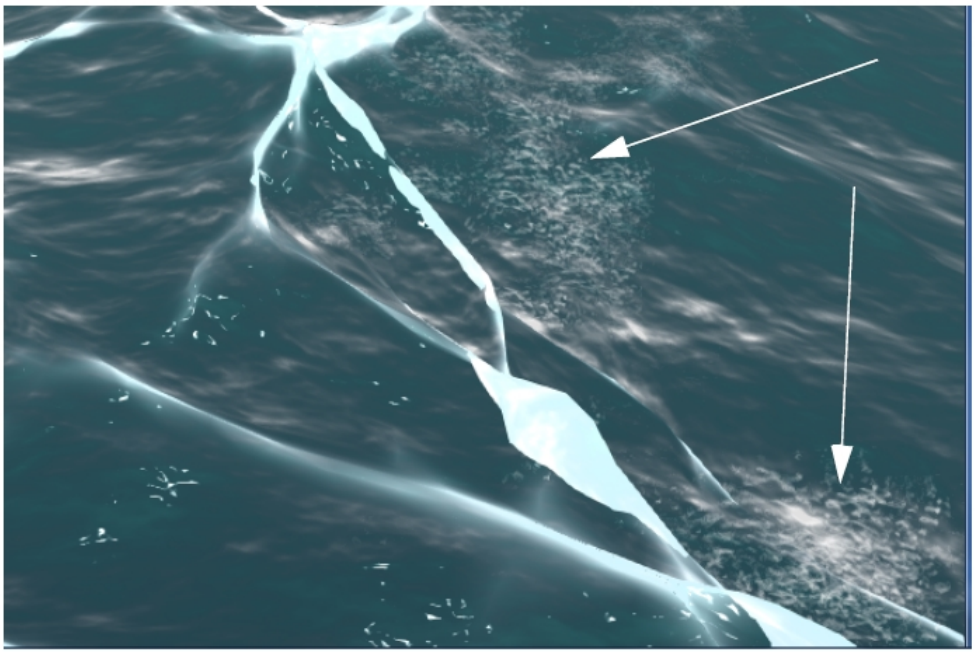
# 46.1. Displaying Water Droplets and Splash Effects

When it is raining, VR-Forces can simulate raindrops hitting the observer's camera lens (Figure 397). If the observer is close to the surface of the ocean (as if a periscope were being raised or lowered), VR-Forces can simulate the effect of waves and water droplets splashing on the observer's camera.

**Figure 397. Rain effect**

When dynamic ocean is enabled, VR-Forces can simulate sea spray (most visible in high seas) (Figure 398). It can also display rotor wash for hovering helicopters. You can display rotor wash at two levels of quality.

**Figure 398. Sea spray effects**

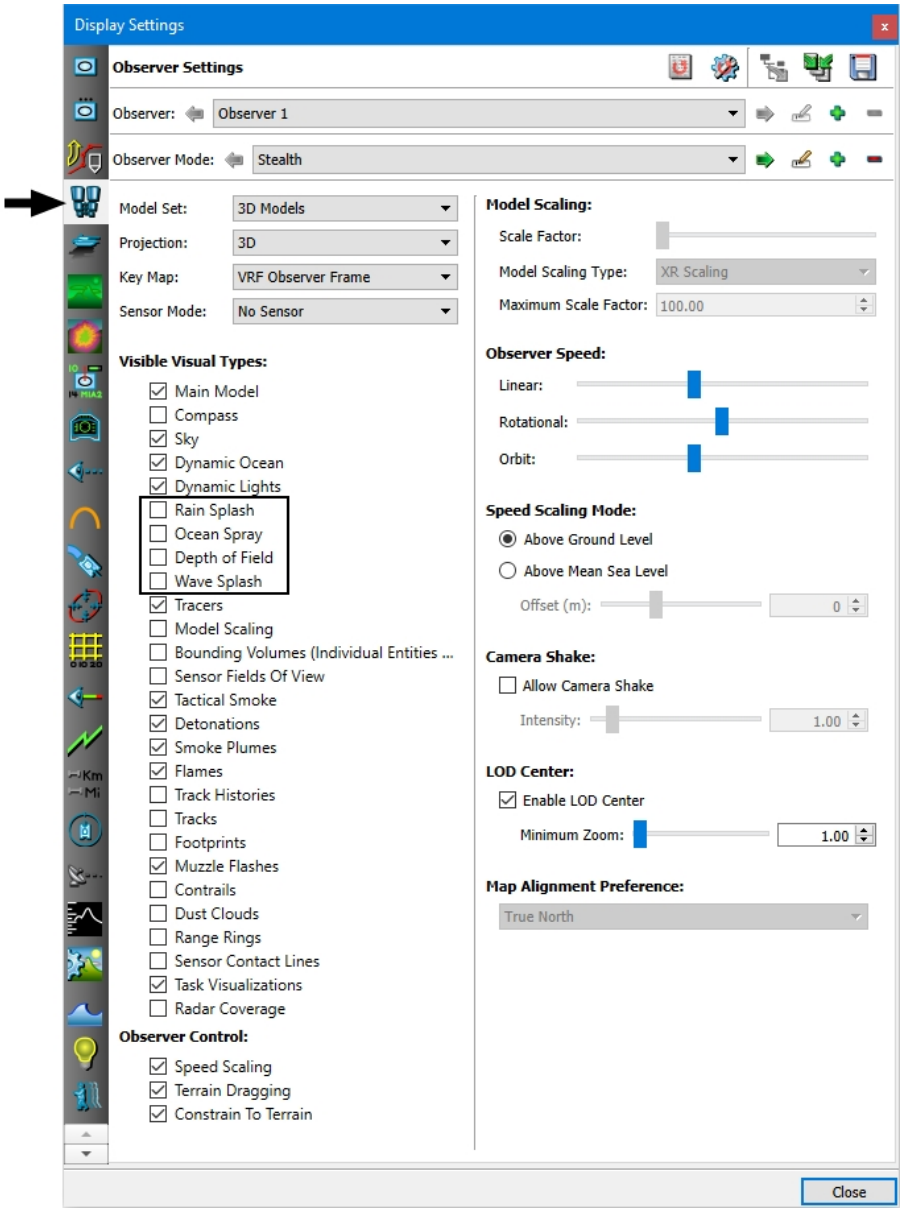


You can change the size of the water droplets for splash effects and sea spray. For details, please see "46.1.2 Setting the Size of Water Droplets" on page 1037.

➤ **To enable or disable splash effects:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 399).

**Figure 399. Observer Settings page**



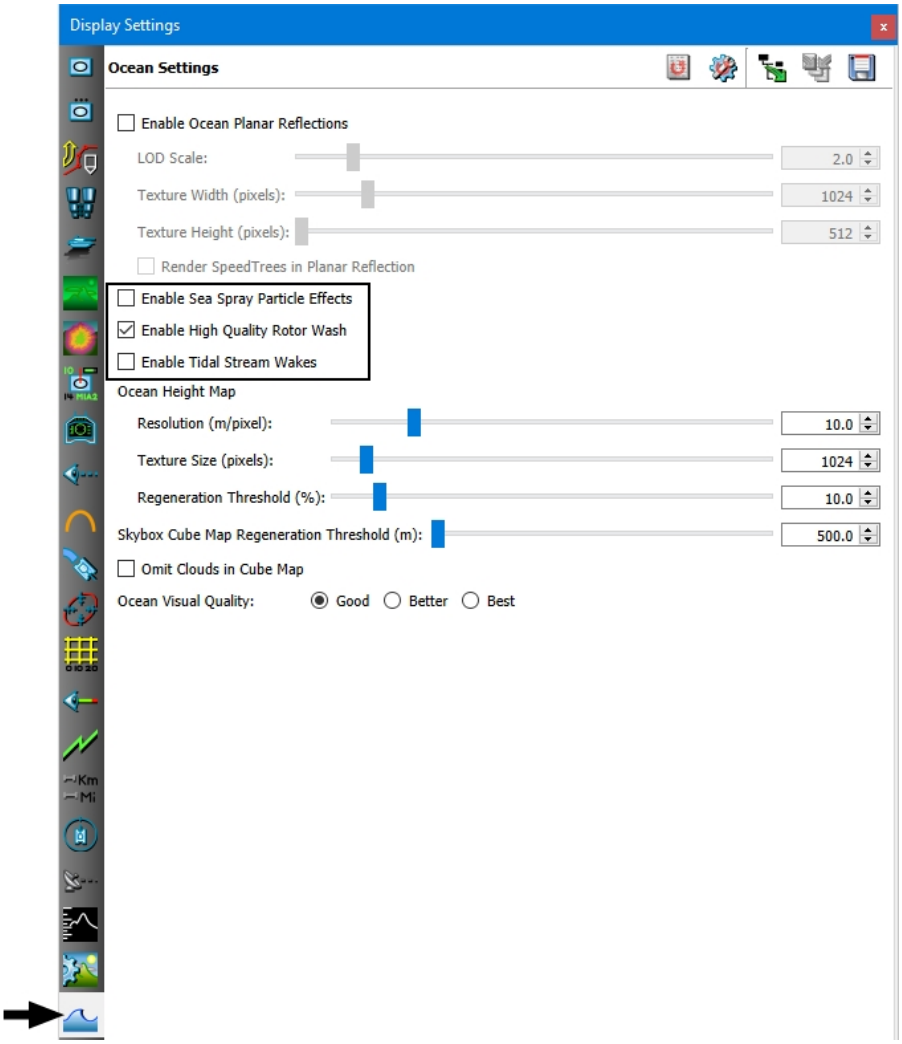

3. Select or clear the Rain Splash, Wave Splash, or Ocean Spray effect check boxes.

## 46.1.1 Enabling Sea Spray

➤ **To enable sea spray effects:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Ocean Settings page (Figure 400).

**Figure 400. Ocean Settings page**




3. Select Enable Sea Spray Particle Effects.

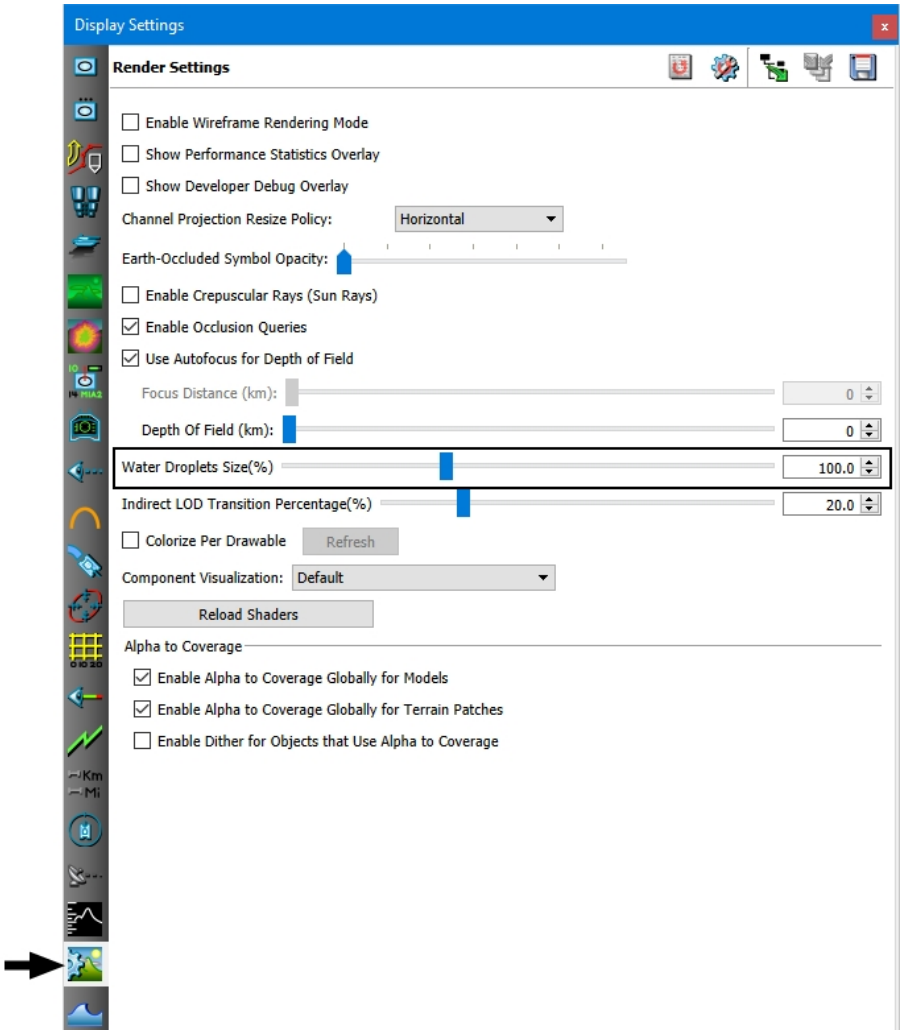
## 46.1.2 Setting the Size of Water Droplets

You can change the size of water droplets for splash effects and sea spray.

➤ **To change the size of water droplets:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 401).

**Figure 401. Render Settings page**




3. Adjust the Droplets Scale slider or enter a value in the box.

## 46.1.3 Enabling and Disabling Rotor Wash

If dynamic ocean is enabled, VR-Forces can display rotor wash over the water for rotary-wing entities. VR-Forces can also display rotor wash over land for some soil types. You can enable or disable rotor wash globally.

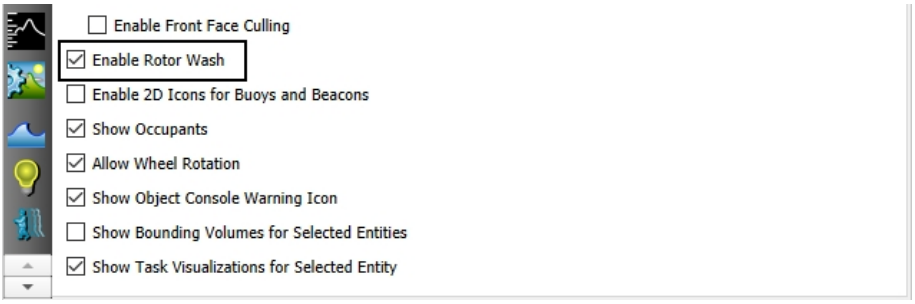
Rotor wash is a particle system. You can edit rotor wash particle systems in the Particle System Editor. For details, please see *Special Effects (Particle Systems)* in Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual.

VR-Forces displays rotor wash only for helicopters that are simulated by VR-Forces. (There is no DIS/HLA standard for rotor wash. VR-Forces sends special messages to enable its display.)

➤ **To enable or disable rotor wash:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 402).

**Figure 402. Rotor wash settings**




3. Select or clear the Enable Rotor Wash check box.

### 46.1.4 Enabling High Quality Rotor Wash

➤ **To enable high quality rotor wash:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Ocean Settings page (Figure 400 on page 1037).
3. Select Enable High Quality Rotor Wash.

## 46.2. Displaying Wakes and Spray Effects

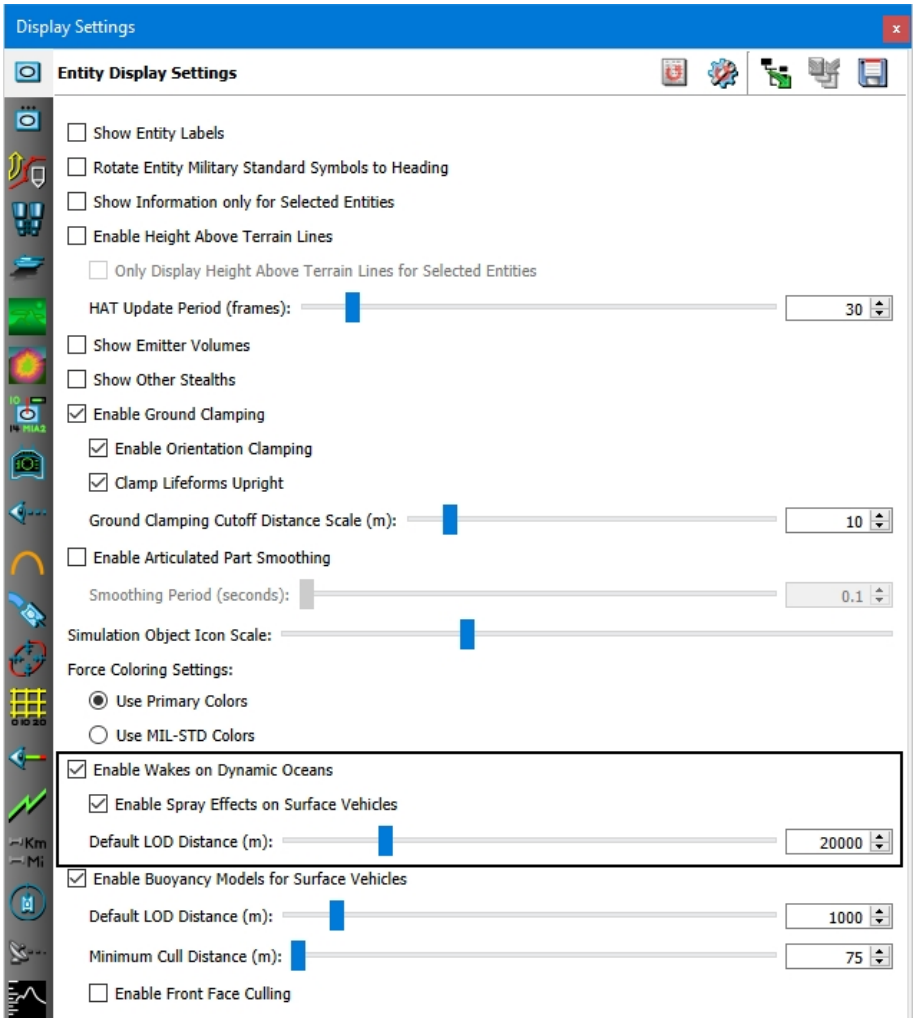
When dynamic ocean is enabled, surface entities display wakes and spray effects. However, these effects affect performance. You can disable them if you need to emphasize performance over visual effects.

Wakes have their own schema, with many attributes, including length, offset, the amount of time over which they fade out, and LOD distance. You can edit these attributes for individual entities in the Visual Model Editors dialog box.

➤ **To enable or disable wakes and spray effects:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 403).

**Figure 403. Entity Display Settings page**




3. To enable or disable wakes, select or clear the Enable Wakes on Dynamic Oceans check box, or toggle the Wake button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.
4. If wakes are enabled, select Enable Spray Effects on Surface Vehicles to enable spray effects. Clear the check box to disable them. Disabling wakes also disables spray effects.

## 46.3. Enabling Buoyancy for Surface Entities

When dynamic ocean is enabled, surface entities can bob up and down with wave action. However, the buoyancy models affect performance. You can disable buoyancy if you need to emphasize performance over visual effects. You can also control the area in which buoyancy models are calculated.

If buoyancy is enabled, VR-Forces calculates buoyancy only for models within certain distances of the observer, as follows:

- Buoyancy models are always calculated for entities within the minimum cull distance. This ensures that if the observer turns, entities that are relatively near will show buoyancy immediately.
- Buoyancy models are not calculated for entities that are beyond the maximum buoyancy LOD range. You can set this value on a per-entity basis in its entity model definition. If it is not set in the model definition, VR-Forces uses the default LOD distance specified on the Entity Display Settings page. If the default distance is set to 0.0, then entities that do not have an LOD range set in their model definitions will have an infinite buoyancy range (although buoyancy still will not be calculated past the far clipping plane).
- Buoyancy models are not calculated for entities beyond the far clipping plane or nearer than the near clipping plane.

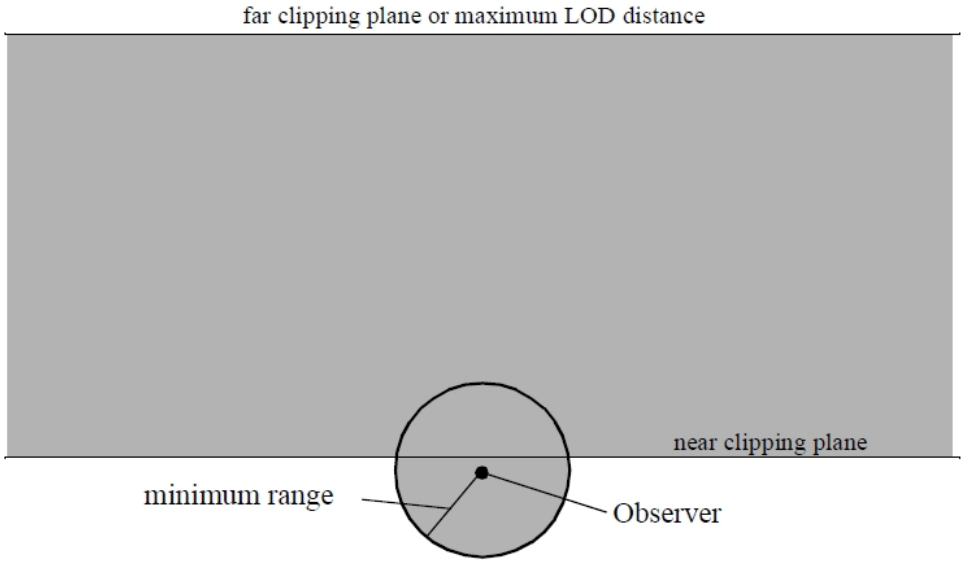
---

VR-Forces uses the nearer of the far clipping plane or the maximum buoyancy LOD range to determine the distance at which it stops calculating buoyancy models.

---

When buoyancy is enabled, you can specify that VR-Forces use face front culling. VR-Forces calculates buoyancy models for all entities within the minimum range and all entities between the near clipping plane and the far clipping plane or maximum buoyancy LOD range, whichever is closest. In Figure 404, the shaded area is the area in which buoyancy models are calculated.

**Figure 404. Face front culling**




By default, face front culling is disabled and only distance culling is used.

➤ **To enable or disable the buoyancy models:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 403 on page 1040).
3. Select or clear the Enable Buoyancy Models for Surface Vehicles check box.
4. To specify the distance beyond which buoyancy models are not calculated, adjust the Default LOD Distance slider or change the value in the box. (If the default distance is set to 0, then entities that do not have an LOD range set in their model definitions will have an infinite buoyancy range. However, buoyancy will not be calculated past the far clipping plane.)
5. To specify the radius within which all entities have their buoyancy models calculated, adjust the Minimum Cull Distance slider or change the value in the box.
6. Optionally, specify use of face front culling.

# 47. Using CameraFX Sensor Views

This chapter explains how to enable and configure simulated night-vision goggle (NVG) and infrared views of the scene.

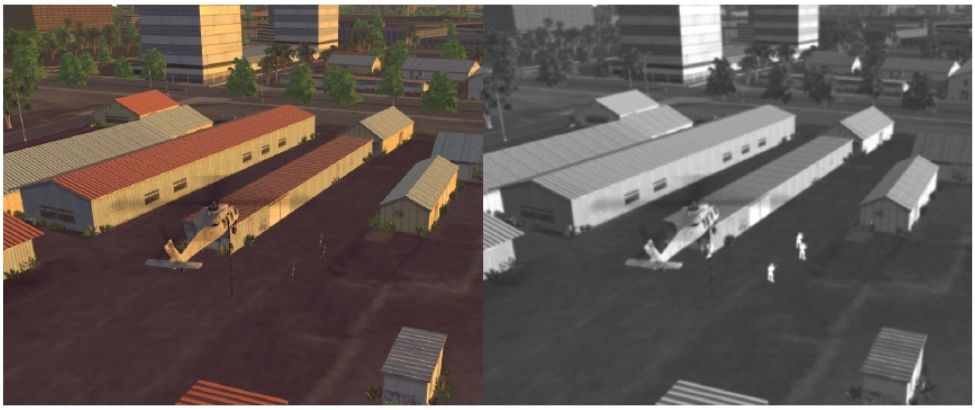

47.1. Using Sensors ..... 1044
47.2. Enabling Sensors ..... 1044
47.3. Configuring Sensors ..... 1045
47.4. Adding New Sensors ..... 1047

## 47.1. Using Sensors

VR-ForcesVR-Vantage Stealth and VR-Vantage IG can simulate the way that the 3D scene would look if an observer were using visual sensor devices such as night vision goggles or viewing the infrared spectrum (Figure 405). This is an observer-specific setting. You can adjust the contrast, blur, and noise of the view.

VR-Forces includes one sensor module: CameraFX, which uses the SenSim libraries from JRM Technologies. The sensors do not take into account the materials of the objects that you are viewing. They simply filter the view to produce the desired effect. If you want physics-based sensor effects, you can purchase the SensorFX Plug-in for VR-Forces, developed by JRM. For details, please contact your MAK salesperson.

**Figure 405. CameraFX**



No sensor (6 A.M.) IR sensor

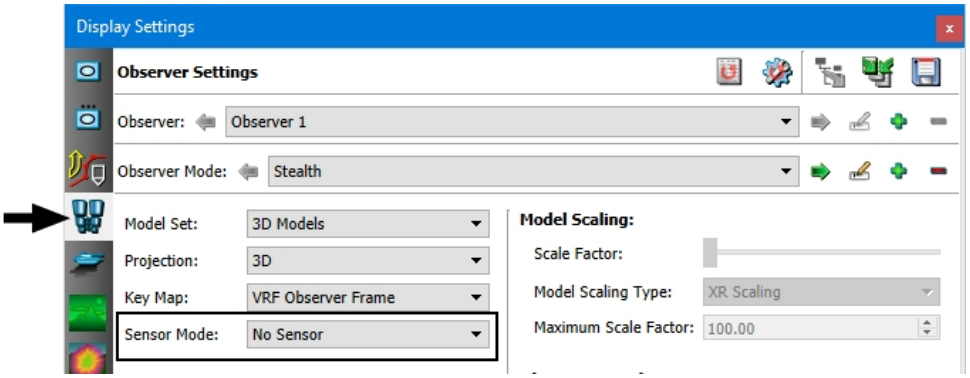
The sensors described in this chapter are strictly visual effects. They have no relationship to the sensor systems used by simulation objects.

## 47.2. Enabling Sensors

Sensors are observer-specific (Figure 406). VR-Forces includes observer modes that have sensors enabled. The names of the observer modes match the sensor modes that they enable.

- NVG (CameraFX) (night vision goggles).
- IR (CameraFX) (infrared).
- IR BlackHot (CameraFX).
- Camera (CameraFX). This mode uses the Visual Camera sensor mode.

**Figure 406. Sensor setting for observer mode**




The default settings for the Camera observer mode make it look very similar to Stealth observer mode. The difference is that when you use the Camera observer mode, you can change the view by changing the sensor settings, such as blur, noise, and gain.

You can also specify use of a sensor configuration as a channel attribute.

➤ **To enable sensors, do one of the following:**

- Select an observer mode that has a sensor configured.
- Edit an observer mode to use a sensor.
- Create a new observer mode and configure it with a sensor.
- Change the Sensor attribute for a channel.

For details about creating and editing observer modes, see "52.4. Creating and Editing Observer Modes" on page 1087. For details about editing channel attributes, see "76.4. Changing a Channel's Attributes" on page 1529.

## 47.3. Configuring Sensors

You can configure the following aspects of sensors:

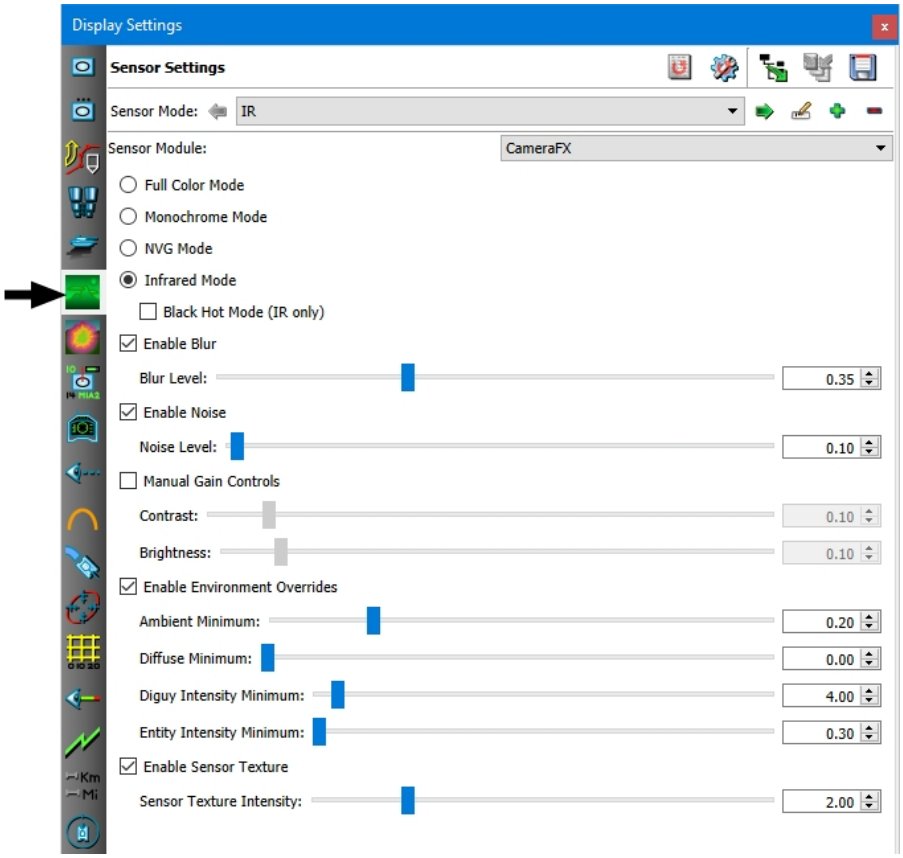
- Blur. The sharpness of the image.
- Noise. The graininess of the image.
- Gain. The contrast and brightness of the image. (IR only)
- Lighting overrides. You can adjust the amount of ambient and diffuse light and the intensity of light emitted by DI-Guys and other entities.
- Sensor texture. VR-Vantage supports a shader-based effects map called a Sensor Texture map. This is a three-channel texture that adds the red, green, or blue channels as appropriate when the observer is in an NVG CameraFX or IR mode. You can enable and disable use of these textures and specify their intensity. For more information about shader-based effects maps, please see Section 11.4, "Using Shader-based Effect Maps", in the *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

You can configure a separate set of settings for each sensor type. VR-Forces remembers the settings. When you change the settings for a sensor type, they affect the display only if that sensor type is in use. For example, if you select NVG in the sensor list on the Observer Settings page, and select IR in the Sensors list on the Sensor Settings page, the changes you make to the IR configuration do not affect the NVG display you are looking at. If you then switch to IR in the VR-Forces window, the new IR settings take effect.

➤ **To configure sensors:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Sensor Settings page (Figure 407).

**Figure 407. Sensor Settings page**




3. In the Sensor Mode list, select the sensor that you want to configure.
4. Select the Sensor module from the list.
5. Select the sensor mode (Monochrome, NVG, and so on). If you select Infrared Mode, select or clear the Black Hot Mode check box.

- It may seem obvious that if, for example, you select NVG from the Sensor Mode list, you would select it for the sensor type. However, VR-Forces lets you add additional sensor configurations to the list and in that case, you would need to specify the correct sensor type for the new sensor. For example, you might create a sensor called NVG-High Contrast. Then you would select NVG as the sensor type and adjust the contrast accordingly.
- Full Color Mode provides natural coloring, as you would see with no sensor modes applied. The benefit of creating a sensor mode using this option is that you can apply noise or blur to the scene.

6. For each setting you want to change, select the controlling check box and adjust the sliders.

## 47.4. Adding New Sensors

You can add, rename, and delete sensors.

➤ **To add a sensor:**

1. Choose **Settings>Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Sensor Settings page (Figure 407 on the previous page).
3. On the Sensor Mode line, click the Add button (). A new sensor called sensor_*number* is added. There are no configuration options on the page. (To rename the sensor, click the Rename button () and enter a new name.)
4. In the Sensor Module list, select CameraFX. The available configuration options are added to the page.
5. Select the type of sensor that you want this to be (Full Color, Monochrome, Infrared, or NVG).
6. Set the Blur, Noise, and Gain levels.

# 48. Intervisibility and Range

This chapter explains how to use the intervisibility and range line features.


48.1. Intervisibility (Line-of-Sight) ..... 1050
48.2. Types of Intervisibility ..... 1051
48.2.1 Point-to-Point Intervisibility ..... 1051
48.2.2 Intervisibility Fan ..... 1051
48.2.3 Simulation Object Intervisibility ..... 1052
48.3. Intervisibility Objects Can Be Transient or Permanent ..... 1052
48.3.1 Creating a Transient Intervisibility Object ..... 1053
48.3.2 Creating a Permanent Intervisibility Object ..... 1054
48.4. Editing an Intervisibility Object ..... 1054
48.5. Configuring Intervisibility Lines and Fans ..... 1055
48.6. Pinning an Intervisibility Object to a Simulation Object ..... 1057
48.7. Showing and Hiding Intervisibility Lines ..... 1057
48.8. Displaying Intervisibility Line Information ..... 1057
48.9. Displaying an Intervisibility Line's Terrain Profile ..... 1058
48.10. Deleting Intervisibility Objects ..... 1059
48.11. Range Lines ..... 1059
48.11.1 Creating a Range Line ..... 1060
48.11.2 Configuring Range Lines ..... 1060

# 48.1. Intervisibility (Line-of-Sight)

You can display intervisibility (line-of-sight or LOS) between points, within areas, and between a point and all simulation objects in a defined area. Intervisibility displays can be transient or permanent. Permanent intervisibility displays are objects. You can resize them and move them around the terrain. Intervisibility objects can be tied to a particular simulation object.

You can display a terrain profile for point-to-point intervisibility lines.

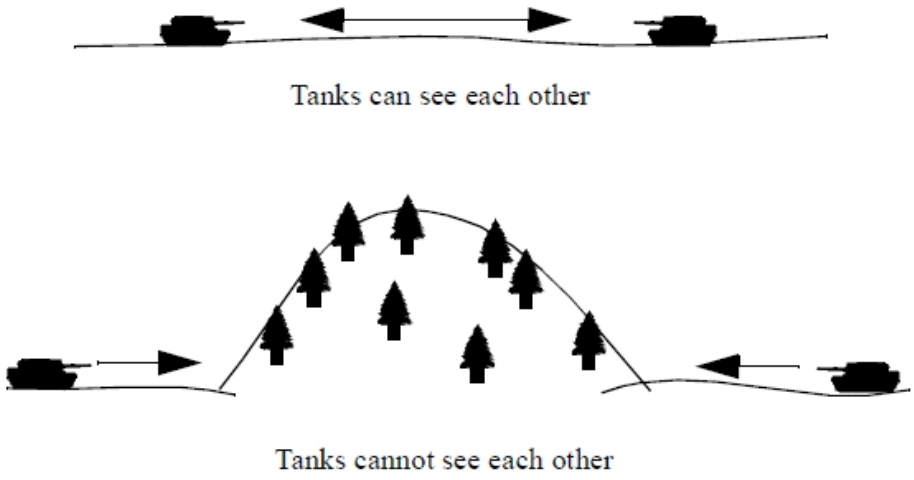



**Figure 408. Intervisibility**

You can configure parameters for intervisibility objects, such as the height above the terrain from which intervisibility is calculated. You can also change the colors used to display intervisibility.

- By default, intervisibility between simulation objects is calculated from the center of their bounding volumes. It is possible that this may not match the line-of-sight calculations used by the simulation application whose output you are viewing. If so, simulation objects may shoot at targets for which they do not appear to have line-of-sight. The VR-Forces target detection sensor uses an offset, which is often above the center of the entity. Unless you change the Origin LOS Elevation value in the Intervisibility Options dialog box to use the same offset as the target detection sensor, simulation objects may shoot at targets for which they do not appear to have line-of-sight.
- Linear and areal features do not block line-of-sight. Only point features block LOS.

## 48.2. Types of Intervisibility

VR-Forces supports the following types of intervisibility:

- Point-to-point (intervisibility line).
- Intervisibility fan.
- Entity intervisibility.

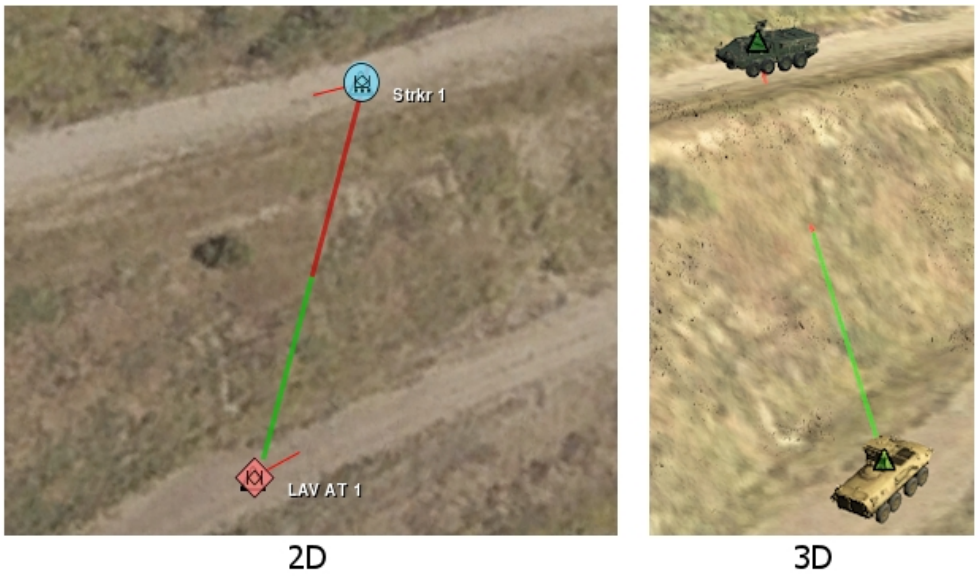
The intervisibility fan and entity intervisibility are displayed as a circular area. However, intervisibility calculations are made within a cylindrical area extending above and below the terrain, so that intervisibility calculations can be made for air platform entities and subsurface entities.

In the 2D viewprojection, intervisibility lines are fully visible on the terrain. In the 3D viewprojection, they may pass through the terrain.

### 48.2.1 Point-to-Point Intervisibility

Point-to-point intervisibility (Figure 409) shows the line-of-sight between any two points. The portion of the line that is visible from the starting point is green. The portion that is not visible is red. You can change the colors used.

**Figure 409. Point-to-point intervisibility**




### 48.2.2 Intervisibility Fan

An intervisibility fan (Figure 410) shows a series of lines radiating from the center of a circle to its outer edge. Each ray shows intervisibility along its path from the origin to the border. You can configure the distance between rays. (For details, please see "48.5. Configuring Intervisibility Lines and Fans" on page 1055.)

**Figure 410. Intervisibility fan**

2D 3D

### 48.2.3 Simulation Object Intervisibility

Simulation object intervisibility (Figure 411) shows which simulation objects are visible from the center of a defined area and whether or not the simulation objects can see the center point. If you center the intervisibility circle on a point on the terrain, you can see which simulation objects can see that point. If you lock the circle to a simulation object, you can see which simulation objects can see that object and which it can see. (For details, please see "48.5. Configuring Intervisibility Lines and Fans" on page 1055.)

**Figure 411. Simulation object intervisibility**

2D 3D

## 48.3. Intervisibility Objects Can Be Transient or Permanent

You can configure intervisibility objects to be transient or permanent. (For details, please see "48.5. Configuring Intervisibility Lines and Fans" on page 1055.) A transient intervisibility object displays intervisibility from the origin point (defined by a mouse click) to wherever you move the cursor. If you click the mouse again, you reset the origin. You cannot use the mouse for other actions until you exit

intervisibility mode (by right-clicking). This mode is convenient when you want to quickly check intervisibility, but do not want to keep intervisibility objects in the display.

A permanent intervisibility object stays in the display after you create it. You can resize the object, edit drawing options, and move it around the display. Intervisibility objects are not saved as part of the scenario.

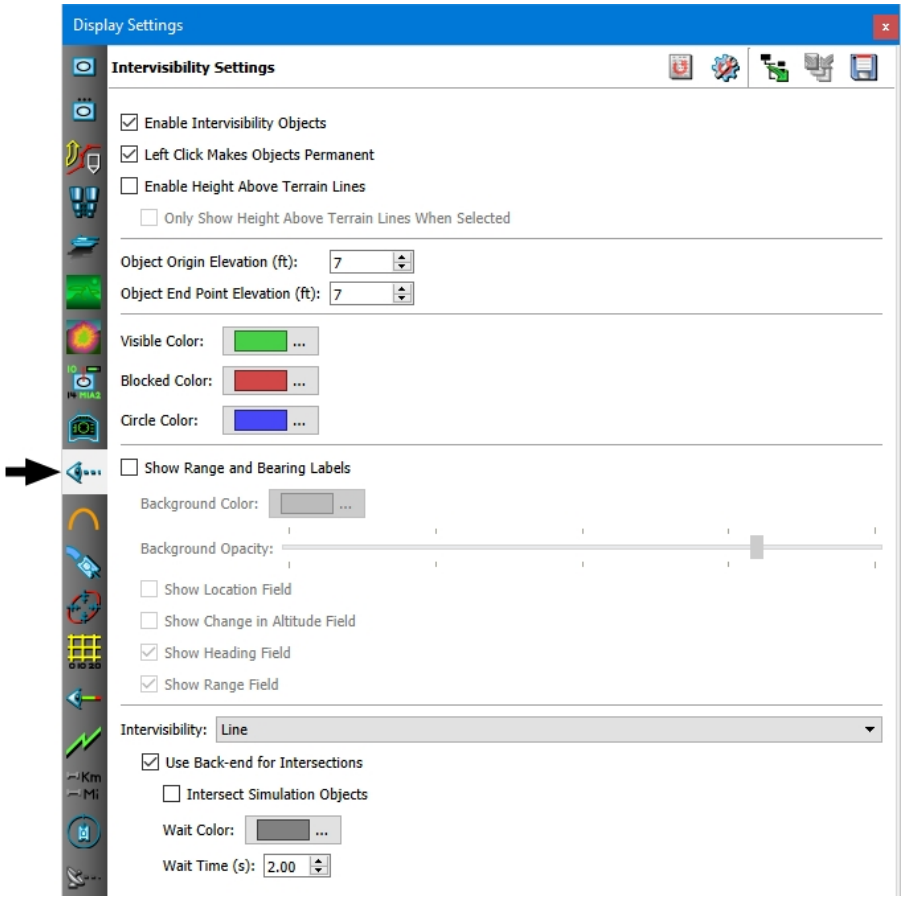
## 48.3.1 Creating a Transient Intervisibility Object

Transient intervisibility objects do not stay in the display after you quit intervisibility mode.

➤ **To display transient intervisibility:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Intervisibility Settings page (Figure 412).

**Figure 412. Intervisibility Settings page**




3. Clear the Left Click Makes Objects Permanent check box.
4. Choose **Intervisibility > Create** *intervisibility_type*, where *intervisibility_type* is a type of intervisibility object, or click one of the buttons on the Intervisibility Toolbar.

5. Click on the terrain to place the origin of the intervisibility object.
6. Move the cursor around the terrain to expand and contract the object. For point-to-point intervisibility, moving the cursor also changes the direction of the line.
7. To change the origin of the intervisibility display, click another location on the terrain.
8. Right-click to cancel intervisibility mode.

### 48.3.2 Creating a Permanent Intervisibility Object

Permanent intervisibility objects remain in the display after you create them. (However, they are not saved as part of the scenario.)

➤ **To create a permanent intervisibility object:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Intervisibility Settings page (Figure 412 on the previous page).
3. Select Enable Intervisibility Objects.
4. Select Left Click Makes Objects Permanent.
5. Choose **Intervisibility > Create** *intervisibility_type*, where *intervisibility_type* is a type of intervisibility object, or click one of the buttons on the Intervisibility Toolbar.
6. Click on a simulation object or on a location on the terrain where you want the origin of the intervisibility object to be located. An intervisibility object is displayed. As you move the cursor closer to the origin, or farther away from it, the circle or line contracts and expands. If you are displaying point-to-point, you can rotate the line around the origin before you specify the end point.
7. Click on the terrain where you want to fix the end point of a line or border of a circle.

## 48.4. Editing an Intervisibility Object

You can change the following aspects of an intervisibility object:

- The location of either end point of an intervisibility line, to change its length and direction.
- The origin of an intervisibility fan, thereby moving the entire fan.
- The diameter of an intervisibility fan.

---

If an intervisibility object is anchored to a simulation object, you cannot change the origin.

---

➤ **To change the length or diameter of an intervisibility object:**

1. To edit a line, double-click its end point.

   To edit a fan, select the object, then double-click the outer ring of the fan.

   The cursor changes (✣).
2. Drag the end point or circle towards or away from the origin. If you are editing an intervisibility line, you can move the end point to any location.
3. Click to exit edit mode.

---

To revert to the original size of the intervisibility object, right-click while you are still in edit mode.

---

To move an intervisibility fan or line:

1. Double-click a fan's center point or any place on a line. The cursor changes.
2. Drag the object to a new location.
3. Click to set the location.

---

To revert to the original location of the intervisibility object, right-click while you are still in edit mode.

---

## 48.5. Configuring Intervisibility Lines and Fans

You can configure the following attributes of intervisibility objects:

- The elevation of the origin and end point.
- The sampling rate for intervisibility fans.
- The update rate for entity intervisibility fans.
- Display of height above terrain lines (3D) and height labels (3D and 2D).
- The colors used to display intervisibility objects.
- Display of bearing and range labels. For more information about bearing and range labels, please see "48.8. Displaying Intervisibility Line Information" on page 1057.

When you change colors or the sampling rate, changes affect all existing intervisibility objects. Changes to the origin and end point elevation only affect newly created objects.

VR-Forces can calculate intersections in the front-end or in the back-end.

➤ **To configure intervisibility objects:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Intervisibility Settings page (Figure 412 on page 1053).
3. For Intersection configuration, select the intervisibility object to configure in the Intervisibility list.
4. Change the settings as desired. Table 40 describes the settings.

**Table 40. Intervisibility settings**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Enable Height Above Terrain Lines | Enables or disables display of height above terrain lines (3D) and height labels (3D and 2D). |
| Show Height Above Terrain Lines Only for Selected | If selected, HAT lines are displayed only for the selected intervisibility objects. |
| Object Origin Elevation | The height, in meters, above the terrain at the origin point from which to calculate intervisibility. |
| Object End Point Elevation | The height, in meters, above the terrain at the end point to use to calculate intervisibility. |
| Fan Line Sample Interval | The distance, in degrees, between each ray in a intervisibility fan. After changing this value, press **Enter** or click away from the field. |
| Entity Fan Update Interval | How frequently, in seconds, to update the entity intervisibility fan. |
| Visible Color<br>Blocked Color | The colors to use for the portion of an intervisibility line that a simulation object can see and the portion where visibility is blocked. |
| Circle Color | The color to use for the outer circle of an intervisibility fan. |
| **Range and Bearing** | |
| Show Range and Bearing Labels | Enable or disable display of range and bearing labels. |
| Background Color | Specify the background color for range and bearing labels. |
| Background Opacity | Specify the opacity of the background for range and bearing labels. |
| Show Location Field | If range and bearing labels are displayed, show the location of the endpoints. |
| Show Change in Altitude Field | If range and bearing labels are displayed, show the difference in altitude between the endpoints. |
| Show Heading Field | If range and bearing labels are displayed, show the heading of each endpoint relative to the other point. |
| Show Range Field | If range and bearing labels are displayed, show the length of the intervisibility line. |

## 48.6. Pinning an Intervisibility Object to a Simulation Object

When you pin an intervisibility object to a simulation object, the intervisibility object moves with the simulation object and you know that its origin is centered on the simulation object.

➤ **To pin an intervisibility object to a simulation object:**

1. Select the simulation object to which you want to pin the intervisibility object.
2. Choose **Intervisibility > Create** *intervisibility_type*, where *intervisibility_type* is a type of intervisibility object, or click one of the buttons on the Intervisibility Toolbar. The origin is placed on the simulation object icon or model.
3. Specify the end point for the intervisibility object.

## 48.7. Showing and Hiding Intervisibility Lines

You can toggle the display of intervisibility lines on and off.

➤ **To enable or disable the display of intervisibility lines:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Intervisibility Settings page (Figure 412 on page 1053).
3. Select or clear the Enable Intervisibility Objects check box.

---

You can also enable and disable display of intervisibility objects by choosing **Intervisibility > Enable/Disable Intervisibility**, or by clicking the Enable/Disable Intervisibility button ( ) on the Intervisibility Toolbar.

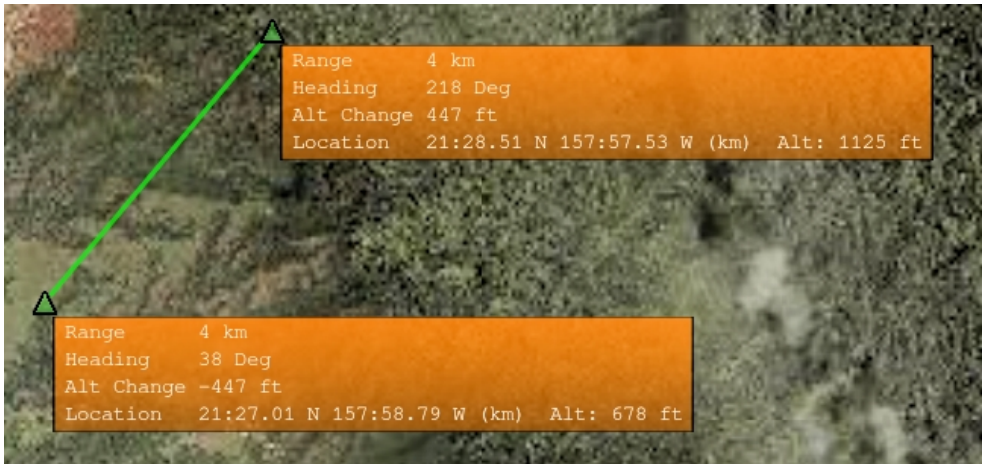
---

## 48.8. Displaying Intervisibility Line Information

You can display the following information about an intervisibility line:

- Location of each endpoint.
- Heading of the line from each endpoint.
- Altitude of each endpoint.
- Length of the line (range).

**Figure 413. Intervisibility line information (2D)**




The information label has a background. You can adjust the color and opacity of the background.

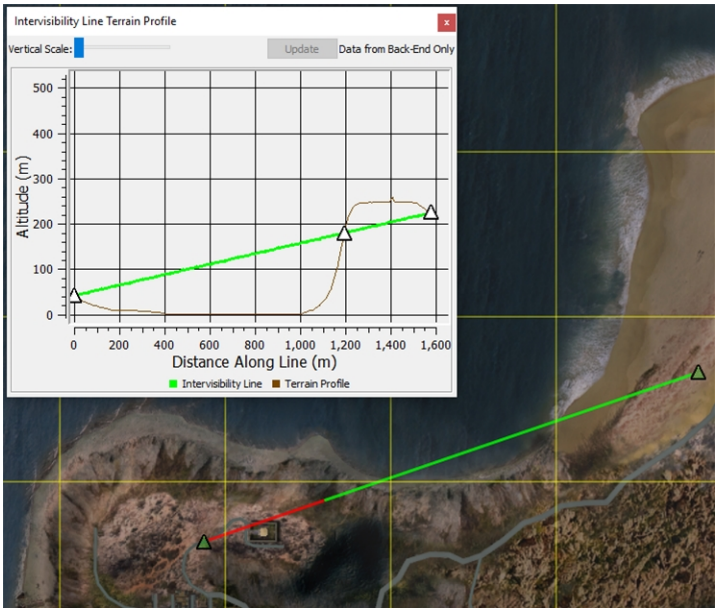
➤ **To display information about an intervisibility line:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Intervisibility Settings page (Figure 412 on page 1053).
3. Select or clear the Show Range and Bearing Labels check box.
4. Select the check boxes for the type of information you want to display. For descriptions of the check box options, please see Table 40 on page 1056 .
5. To change the background color for the label:
   a. Click the Background Color button. A color picker opens.
   b. Select the color you want to use for the background.
   c. Click OK.
6. To change the opacity of the background, adjust the Background Opacity slider.

## 48.9. Displaying an Intervisibility Line's Terrain Profile

By default, a terrain profile window is displayed automatically when you create an intervisibility line. The terrain profile can be very helpful when you try to understand how terrain changes are affecting intervisibility. Figure 414 shows an obstructed intervisibility line and its terrain profile, whose graph illustrates the line intersecting the terrain.

**Figure 414. Terrain profile for an intervisibility line**




You can disable this setting on the Display Settings dialog box, Terrain Profile Settings page. For details, please see"58.1.2 Configuring Terrain Profiles" on page 1189.

## 48.10. Deleting Intervisibility Objects

Before you delete an intervisibility object, note the following:

- If you delete a simulation object that has an intervisibility object pinned to it, the intervisibility object also gets deleted.
- If an intervisibility object is pinned to a simulation object, you can delete the intervisibility object without affecting the simulation object by selecting the outer circle or end point and deleting it.

➤ To delete an intervisibility object, select the object and choose **Intervisibility > Delete**.

## 48.11. Range Lines

During a session, range lines allow you to see the great circle distance and bearing between a start and end point. The distance between the two points and the bearing from the start point to the end point display at the midpoint of the line. If the end points move, for example, the simulation object it is attached to is moving, then this information changes to reflect the change in distance and heading.

See "48.11.1 Creating a Range Line" on the next page and "48.11.2 Configuring Range Lines" on the next page for details about using this feature.

## 48.11.1 Creating a Range Line

You can create a range line to see the great circle distance between two points and also the bearing from the start point to the end point. You can attach each point of the line to a simulation object or place it on a point of the terrain. When either end of a range line is attached to a simulation object, the distance and bearing information is updated as the simulation object moves.

**Figure 415. Creating a range line**

➤ **To create a range line:**

1. Choose **Create > Range Line**.
2. Position the cursor where you want the range line to begin. If you want to attach it to a simulation object, place the cursor over that object until its outline turns white and then click. To place the start point on the terrain, simply click on the location.
3. Position the cursor where you want the range line to end and then click. You can attach the end point to a simulation object or a point on the terrain.

## 48.11.2 Configuring Range Lines

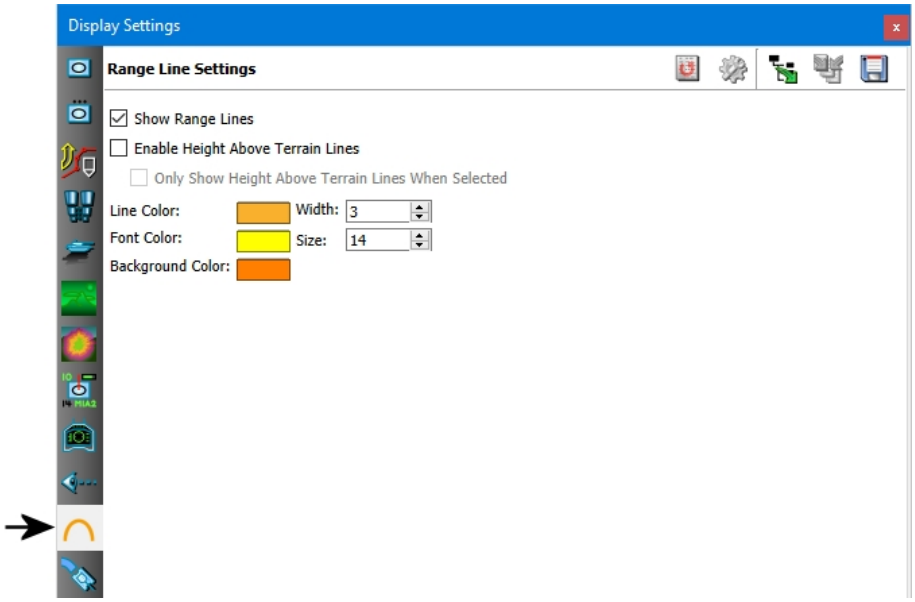
You can configure the following attributes of range lines:

- Display of range lines.
- Display of height above terrain lines (3D).
- The colors used to display range lines and data.
- The thickness of the range lines.
- The font size of the distance and bearing data.

➤ **To configure range lines:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Range Lines Settings page.
3. Change the settings as desired.

**Figure 416. Range Line Settings page**



# 49. Configuring Emitter Volumes

This chapter explains how to configure display of emitter volumes. For information about how to configure simulation of emitters, please see "Chapter 73. Configuring Emitters and Radios" on page 1495.

49.1. Configuring Emitter Volumes ..... 1064
- 49.1.1 Configuring Emitter Volume Color ..... 1064
- 49.1.2 Controlling Emitter Volume Radius ..... 1065
- 49.1.3 Configuring Emitter Volume Segments ..... 1065

# 49.1. Configuring Emitter Volumes

You can configure how VR-Forces colors emitter volumes, how they are drawn, and how they are scaled for visibility. You can configure emitter volumes by editing the DefaultEllipsoidArc model definition or by creating customized ellipsoid arc model definitions and applying them to different entity models.

In order for an entity to display emitter volumes in 2D observer modes and 3D observer modes, it must have a 2D Emitter Volume visualizer in its 2D model set and 3D Emitter Volume visualizer in its 3D model sets. The DefaultEllipsoidArc model definition is an attribute of the visualizer.

## 49.1.1 Configuring Emitter Volume Color

By default, emitter volumes are displayed using fixed colors for high frequency and low frequency. You can configure emitter volumes to be colored based on the emission frequency or pulse rate. When emitter volume color represents frequency, color is determined by the frequency field of the EM Emission update message. In both cases, you specify a low frequency or pulse rate value and a high value.

If the emitter frequency or pulse rate is lower than your specified low value, the emitter volume is red. As frequency rises above the specified low value, emitter volume color changes, progressing through the colors of the visible spectrum until the specified high value is reached. At the high value and above, the emitter volume is violet.

To change coloring from the default, you must add the appropriate attributes to the emitter volume visualizer for the entities whose model definitions you want to change. Table 41 describes the emitter volume visualizer attributes that affect emitter volume color.

**Table 41. Emitter volume visualizer attributes**

| Attribute | Description |
|---|---|
| colorByFrequency | If True, color by frequency instead of using static colors. |
| lowFrequency | The low frequency threshold for coloring by frequency. Default: 800 MHz. |
| highFrequency | The high frequency threshold for coloring by frequency. Default: 1 GHz. |
| usePulseFrequency | If **colorByFrequency** is True and **usePulseFrequency** is True, color emitter volumes by pulse frequency. |
| lowPulseFrequency | The low pulse rate threshold for coloring by frequency. Default: 100 Hz. |
| highPulseFrequency | The high pulse rate threshold for coloring by frequency. Default: 3 KHz. |

## 49.1.2 Controlling Emitter Volume Radius

An emitter volume's radius (that is, the distance it extends from the emitter) is based in part on emitter power and in part on elevation and azimuth sweep data obtained from EM-Emission state messages. A higher emitter power value results in a longer radius, while a wider field of view results in a shorter radius (because the radiated power is distributed over a wider area).

If VR-Forces relied exclusively on these values, the range of sizes among different emitter types could become too wide to be practical, with some emissions being barely visible, and other emissions covering the entire virtual world. Therefore, a configurable exponent weight and scale factor have been added to help fine tune the emitter beam radii. The radius exponent weight (a value between 0 and 1) slows the growth of the radius when power or area is greater than 1 and increases the growth of the radius when power or area is less than 0. The scale factor increases the radii of all beams by the given value.

To change the scale factor and exponent from the default, you must add one or both of the following attributes to the emitter volume visualizer for the entities whose model definitions you want to change:

- linearScale. The amount of linear scaling applied to all emitter volumes. Default: 100.
- exponentialScale. The amount of exponential scaling applied to emitter volumes. Default: 0.1.

### How VR-Forces Calculates the Radius

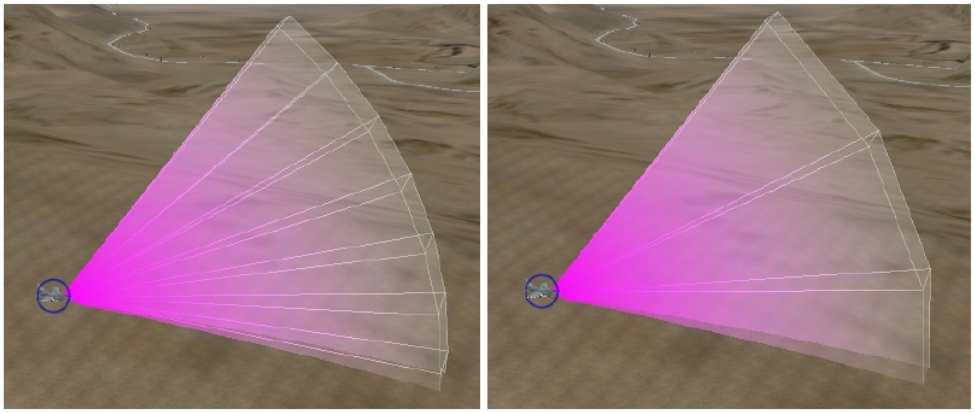
VR-Forces calculates emitter volume radius by approximating the spread of the emissions based on the elevation and azimuth sweeps. If the approximate coverage is zero, it sets the value to 1. Then it applies the linear and exponential scaling values. The code for implementing this is as follows:

```
double tempVar = 8*elevationSweep*sin(2*azimuthSweep);
if (tempVar <=0) tempVar=1.0;
scale = linearScale * pow(sqrt(power/tempVar), exponentialScale );
```

## 49.1.3 Configuring Emitter Volume Segments

VR-Forces displays an emitter volume as a group of spherical sections projecting from the sensing device. By default, for each 10 degrees (or portion thereof) in the emitter's field of view, VR-Forces draws one segment. Figure 417 shows segments set to $10^0$ (the default) and $30^0$.

**Figure 417. Emitter volume segments**



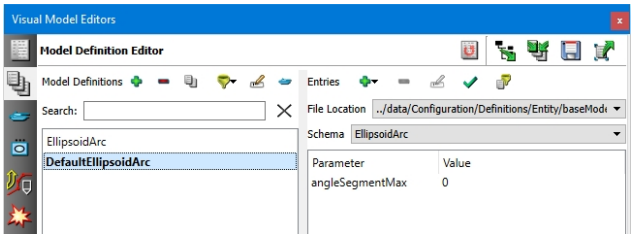

Emitter volume segments are managed by the EllipsoidArc schema and model definitions based on it. VR-Forces ships with one ellipsoid arc model definition – DefaultEllipsoidArc. You can edit this model definition or create copies of it and customize them. If you want to have different emitter volumes for different entities, assign a different ellipsoid arc model definition to each one.

## Specifying the Segment Angle

➤ **To specify the segment angle:**

1. Decide if you want to export the edited model definition to its own file or to an existing file. (For details about the model definition work flow, please see *"Model Definition Files,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)
2. Choose **Settings > Visual Model Editors**. The Visual Model Editors dialog box opens.
3. Select the Model Definition Editor page (Figure 418).
4. If you want to export the edited model definition to an existing file, use the Load and Replace procedure to load the file. (For details, please see *"Importing Model Definitions,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)
5. Click the Filter button (▾) and select EllipsoidArc. The ellipsoid arc model definitions are listed in the window.
6. Select DefaultEllipsoidArc (Figure 418).

**Figure 418. EllipsoidArc model definition**

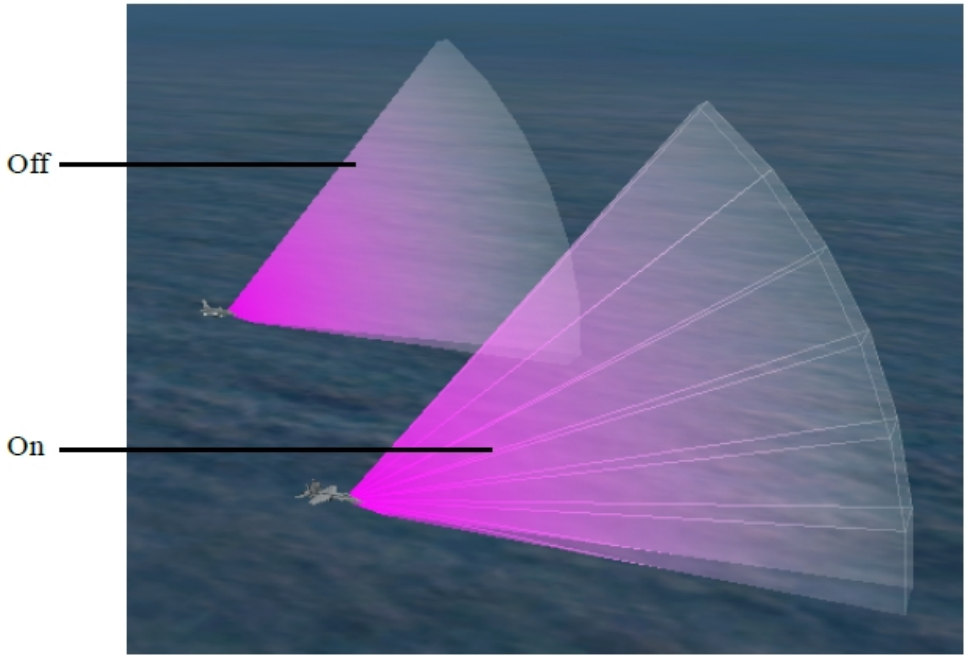


7. Click the Add a new parameter button ( ) and select **angleSegmentMax.**
8. Change the value of the **angleSegmentMax** parameter. The minimum value is 10 (degrees); the maximum is 45.
9. Export the updated setting to the loaded definition file or to a separate file.

### Displaying Segment Outlines

By default, VR-Forces displays opaque outlines showing the segment edges along the surface of the emitter volume.

**Figure 419. Segment outlines**




➤ **To display or hide segment outlines:**

1. Decide if you want to export the edited model definition to its own file or to an existing file. (For details about the model definition work flow, please see *"Model Definition Files,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)
2. Choose **Settings > Visual Model Editors**. The Visual Model Editors dialog box opens.
3. Select the Model Definition Editor page.
4. If you want to export the edited model definition to an existing file, use the Load and Replace procedure to load the file. (For details, please see *"Importing Model Definitions,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)
5. Click the Filter button ( ) and select EllipsoidArc. The ellipsoid arc model definitions are listed in the window.
6. Select DefaultEllipsoidArc.

7. Change the value of the **showLines** parameter.
8. Export the updated setting to the loaded definition file or to an individual file.

### Adding a Custom EllipsoidArc Model Definition

If you want to customize the segment angle and segment outlines for a particular entity without changing the values for other entities, you must create a separate ellipsoid arc model definition and add it to the entity's model definition.

➤ **To create a custom ellipsoid arc model definition:**

1. Decide if you want to export the edited model definition to its own file or to an existing file. (For details about the model definition work flow, please see *"Model Definition Files,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)
2. Choose **Settings > Visual Model Editors**. The Visual Model Editors dialog box opens.
3. Select the Model Definition Editor page (Figure 418).
4. If you want to export the edited model definition to an existing file, use the Load and Replace procedure to load the file. (For details, please see *"Importing Model Definitions,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)
5. Click the Filter button (▾) and select EllipsoidArc. The ellipsoid arc model definitions are listed in the window.
6. Select DefaultEllipsoidArc.
7. Click the Duplicate Model Definition button (). The Duplicate Model Definition dialog box opens with a default definition name.
8. Accept the generated name or type a new name for the model definition.
9. Click OK. The model definition is added to the list.
10. Change the parameter values for the new model definition as desired.
11. Select the Entity Definition Editor page.
12. Select the entity whose emitter volume you want to change.
13. Select the 3D Sensor Volume visualizer for the entity.
14. Click the Value column for the **modeldefinition** attribute. The Choose Model Definition dialog box opens. It has a list of model definitions.
15. Select the model definition that you just created.
16. Click OK.
17. Export the updated setting to the loaded definition file or to an individual definition file.
18. If you are connected to an exercise, disconnect and then reconnect to enable the new model definition.

# 50. Sound Effects

VR-Forces can play sound effects for entities, fire events, and detonation events.


50.1. Introduction to Sound Effects ..... 1070
50.2. Enabling Sound Effects ..... 1070
    50.2.1 Configuring Sound Effects ..... 1071
50.3. Associating Sound Files with Entities and Events ..... 1072

# 50.1. Introduction to Sound Effects

VR-Forces can associate sound effects with entities, fire events, and detonation events. You can enable and disable use of sound effects and you can specify settings that determine how sounds are perceived.

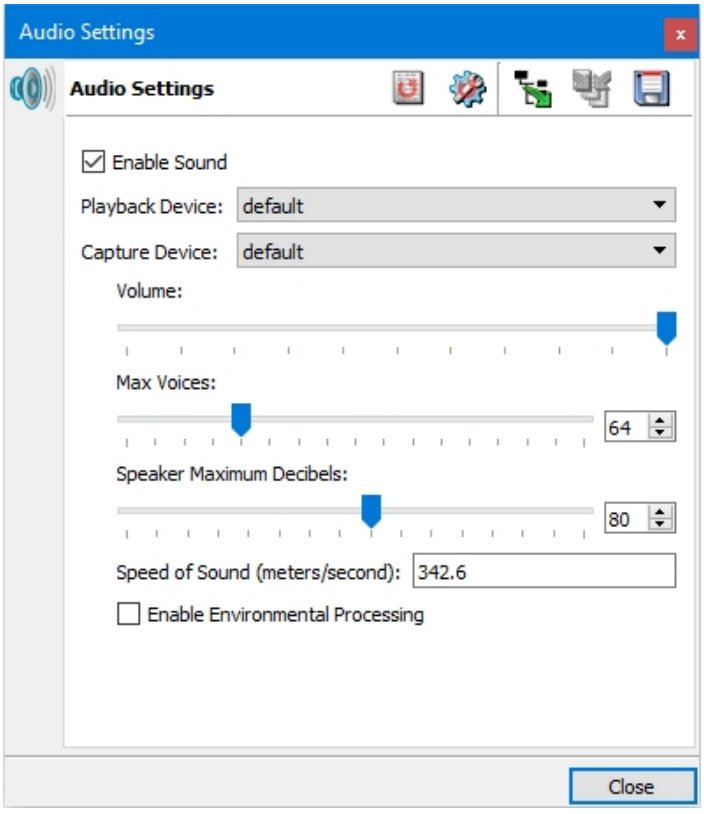
Using sound effects can degrade performance.

# 50.2. Enabling Sound Effects

➤ **To enable sound effects:**

1. Choose **Settings > Audio Settings**. The Audio Settings dialog box opens (Figure 420).

**Figure 420. Audio Settings page**




2. Select the Enable Sound check box.
3. Optionally, specify the playback device (speaker) and capture device (microphone).

You can also enable and disable sound effects by clicking the Audio button ( ) on the Display Settings toolbar.

### 50.2.1 Configuring Sound Effects

You can configure the following sound settings:

- Volume. This is the volume of the system.
- Max Voices. You can have from 1 to 256 voices, or maximum simultaneous playing sounds. Sounds that play at the same time are mixed into a single sound wave prior to being sent to the speaker. This mixing has a CPU cost. A high number of allowable voices can affect performance when there are many audio sounds trying to play.
- Speaker Maximum Decibels. Calibrates the audio system for the speakers that the system is played on. This affects how sounds at a distance fall off so that the sound loudness is realistically replicated. The default setting of 80db represents headphones or a desktop PC's speakers.
- Speed of Sound. This is the speed of sound in the atmosphere in meters/second. The default value is derived by using a standard day as parameters (20 C, 50% relative humidity, 1013.25 mbar/29.92 inHg). This affects the delay in playing sounds at a distance. For example, an explosion 2km away has a several second delay from the time you can see the visual effect to when you can hear the audio effect.
- Enable Environmental Processing. Enables low pass filtering. As sound propagates through air, higher frequency sounds get absorbed more the further you move from the source of the sound. This setting lets you replicate air absorption of a sound based on the distance the sound is from the listener.

➤ **To configure sound settings:**

1. Choose **Settings > Audio Settings**. The Audio Settings dialog box opens (Figure 420 on the previous page).
2. To set the volume, adjust the Volume slider.
3. To specify the maximum number of voices, adjust the Max Voices slider or change the value in the text box.
4. To set the speaker maximum decibels, adjust the Speaker Maximum Decibels slider or change the value in the text box.
5. To set the speed of sound, type a value in the Speed of Sound box.
6. To enable lowpass filtering, select the Enable Environmental Processing check box.

## 50.3. Associating Sound Files with Entities and Events

VR-Forces includes a set of sound files (WAV format) for generic entity platforms and for fire and detonation events. The files are in *./data/Audio/Sounds*. You add and edit mappings between entity types, fire events, or detonation events and sound files in the Visual Models Editor. Sound files are associated with model definitions. For example, the **filename** parameter for the heli_blades model definition specifies *$(DATA_DIR)/Audio/Sounds/heli_blades.wav*. The Rotary Wing element definition has a parameter called **Entity Sound**. The value for the **model definition** attribute is **heli_blades**.

You can quickly see which model definitions are available for sounds by filtering the list of the Visual Model Editors, Model Definitions Editor page for the Sound schema.

# 51. MAK Radio

This chapter describes the MAK Radio features. There is a dialog box, which can also be run as a standalone application, and a toolbar.


51.1. MAK Radio Overview ..... 1074
51.2. Using the Radio in VR-Forces ..... 1074
51.2.1 Operating the Radio from the Dialog Box or Application ..... 1075
51.2.2 Operating the Radio from the Radio Control Toolbar ..... 1076
51.3. Using the Intercom or a VOX Radio ..... 1077
51.4. Configuring the MAK Radio ..... 1077
51.5. Audio Settings ..... 1081
51.6. Jamming Radios ..... 1082

## 51.1. MAK Radio Overview

VR-Forces supports voice communications over radios and intercoms. You can communicate with anyone using the radio application that is in the same exercise. There are 2 radios, each of which has 2 channels. (The radios are configurable. For details, please see "51.4. Configuring the MAK Radio" on page 1077.) Two applications can communicate only when the radios are tuned to the same frequency and that frequency is not being jammed.

There is also an intercom, which represents the internal intercom used by crew members of a single vehicle to communicate with each other. For two applications to communicate using the intercom, they must both be part of the same exercise and have the Attached Entity field set to the same entity. The ADMIN option indicates that the intercom is not connected to any entity but instead to all MAK Radio users who also specify ADMIN. For information about using the intercom and voice-activated radio, please see"51.3. Using the Intercom or a VOX Radio" on page 1077.

Audio data from the radio system is sent as signal interactions/PDUs on the simulation network. It can be received in other VR-Forces GUI applications, the standalone applications, or other applications that can receive standard signal interactions/PDUs (such as VR-Forces).

Radio communications are perfect. Radio signals are not affected by terrain, weather, distance, or other factors. However, you can use the standalone radio application or the radio panel in VR-Forces to jam radios. For more information about jamming, please see "51.6. Jamming Radios" on page 1082.

The radio uses the audio devices configured in the Audio Settings dialog box for capture and playback. Please see "50.2.1 Configuring Sound Effects" on page 1071 for details.

## 51.2. Using the Radio in VR-Forces

Each configured radio has a radio head that represents its state. It displays the radio name, its frequency, and the audio levels for transmit (TX) and receive (RX).

There are different ways to use the radio: the dialog box or toolbar in VR-Forces, or the standalone application.

- To open the MAK Radio dialog box, choose **View > Radios**. The Radio Communications dialog box opens (Figure 421 on page 1076).
- To open the MAK Radio toolbar, choose **View > Toolbars > Radio Control Toolbar**. The toolbar displays (Figure 422 on page 1076).
- To start the MAK Radio standalone application from the Windows 10 Start menu, choose **MAK Technologies > MAK Radio**. The MAK Radio application opens (Figure 421 on page 1076).
- To start the MAK Radio standalone application from the command line, change the directory to *./bin64* and then run **vrLauncher --makRadio**. The MAK Radio application opens (Figure 421 on page 1076).

### 51.2.1 Operating the Radio from the Dialog Box or Application

The controls for operating the radio are the same in the dialog box within VR-Forces and the standalone application (Figure 421).

---

The default key for Push to Talk is **T**, but in the standalone application you can specify other keys using the Audio Settings. See "51.5. Audio Settings" on page 1081.

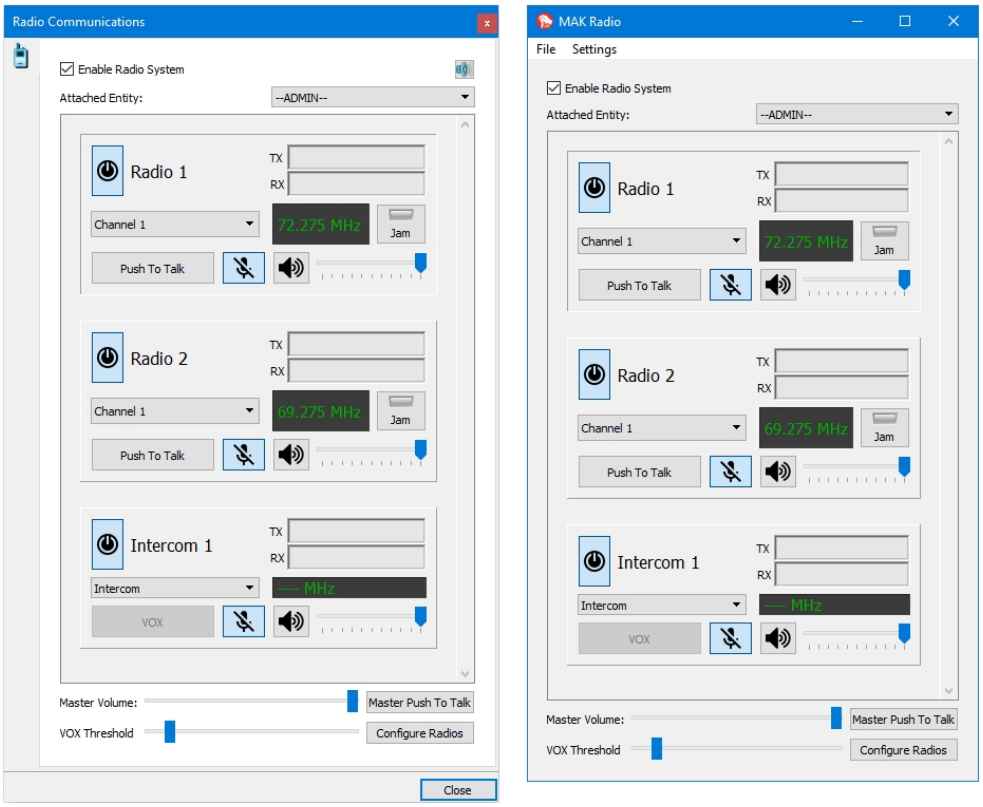
---

➤ **To use the radio:**

1. In the Radio Communications dialog box or MAK Radio standalone application, select the Enable Radio System check box.
2. In the Attached Entity list, select the entity you want to speak for, or ADMIN, if you are an observer.
3. Optionally, adjust the Master Volume slider to adjust the volume of all radios.
4. Optionally, adjust the VOX Threshold slider to adjust the level of sound needed to enable voice activated transmission. (This is usually used for intercoms, not radios.)
5. Optionally, click Master Push to Talk to transmit on all radios that are not muted.
6. Operate a radio head as follows:
   a. Make sure the radio head power button is enabled ( ).
   b. Optionally, select a channel from the list.
   c. Click Push to Talk or press **T** to talk (if this is not a Vox radio).
   d. Click the microphone button ( ) to mute the microphone or enable it.
   e. Click the speaker button ( ) to mute the speaker or enable it.
   f. Adjust the slider to change the radio's volume.
   g. Click the Jam button ( ) to jam the radio frequency.
7. Click Configure Radios to edit the radio configuration. Please see"51.4. Configuring the MAK Radio" on page 1077 for details.
8. In the Radio Communications dialog box only, you can click the audio settings button ( ) to access the Audio Settings for VR-Forces. See "50.2.1 Configuring Sound Effects" on page 1071 for details.

   In the MAK Radio standalone application, you can choose **Settings > Audio Settings** to select the Playback Device (speaker), Recording Device (microphone), and default Push-to-Talk button using the Audio Settings. See "51.5. Audio Settings" on page 1081.

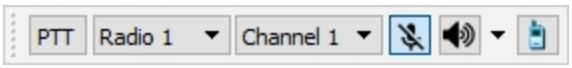
**Figure 421. Radio Communications dialog box and standalone application**




## 51.2.2 Operating the Radio from the Radio Control Toolbar

You can operate the radio from the toolbar (Figure 422).

**Figure 422. MAK Radio toolbar**




➤ **To operate the radio using the toolbar:**

1. Choose a radio head to select it for use.
2. Optionally, select a channel from the list.
3. Click PTT to talk (if this is not a Vox radio).
4. Click the microphone button ( ) to mute the microphone or enable it.
5. Click the speaker button ( ) to mute the speaker or enable it.
6. To change the radio's volume, click the arrow button to open and adjust the slider.
7. Click the radio communications button ( ) to open the Radio Communications dialog box (Figure 421 above).

## 51.3. Using the Intercom or a VOX Radio

The intercom and VOX radios are voice activated and transmit any sound greater than the VOX threshold.

➤ **To use the intercom or a Vox radio:**

1. In the Radio Communications dialog box or MAK Radio application, select the Attached Entity.

   In the dialog box or application, make sure the power button is enabled ( ).
2. In the toolbar, select the intercom or the VOX radio from the list. The PTT button is disabled.
3. Make sure that the microphone is not muted.
4. If you are using a Vox radio, you can select a channel.
5. Start talking.

## 51.4. Configuring the MAK Radio

You can configure the number of radios and channels, the channel frequencies, the sample rate, and the format. The Modulation and Crypto settings for radios are as defined for the Transmitter PDU in the IEEE DIS standard, IEEE Std 1278.1-2012.

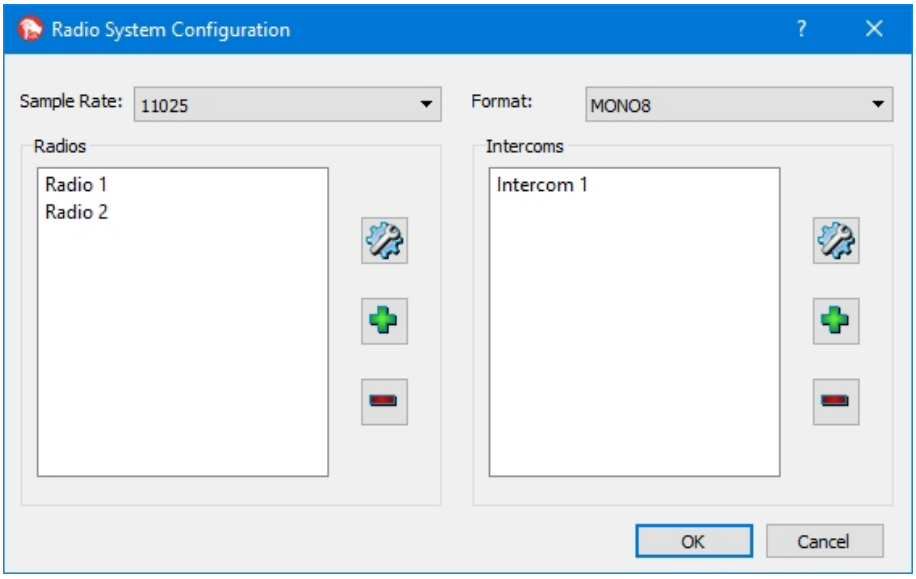
If there is a mismatch between two or more radios in the Transmission, Modulation, and Crypto settings, they cannot talk to each other. The settings must match between communicating radios for the signals to be processed and the transmissions to be heard.

Changes that you make persist from one session of VR-Forces and MAK Radio to another, and the settings are the same for both.

➤ **To configure the MAK Radios:**

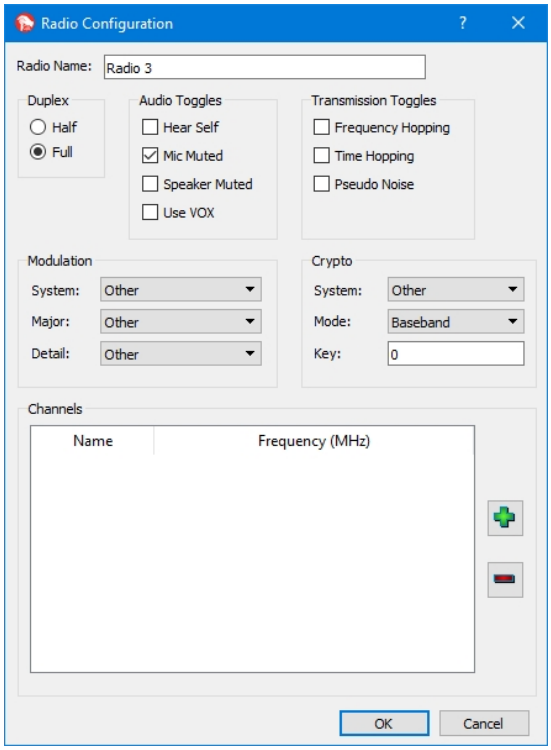
1. In the Radio Communications dialog box or MAK Radio application, click Configure Radios. The Radio System Configuration dialog box opens (Figure 423).

**Figure 423. Radio System Configuration**




2. To change the sample rate for all radios, select the rate from the list.
3. To change the format for all radios, select the format from the list.
4. To add or edit a radio:
    a. Click the Add Radio ( ) or Edit button ( ) next to the list of radios. The Radio Configuration dialog box opens.
    b. Configure the radio as needed. Table 42 describes the settings.

**Figure 424. Radio Configuration**




c. Click OK.

5. To add or edit an intercom:

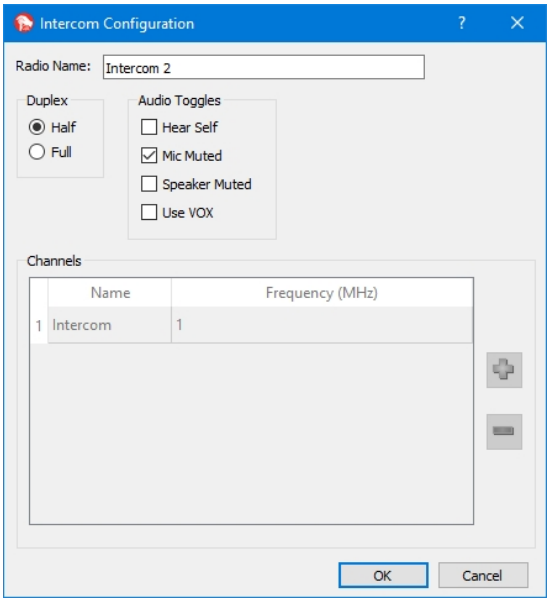
   a. Click the Add Intercom ( ) or Edit button ( ) next to the intercom list. A row is added.

   b. To edit a new or existing intercom, select the row and then click the Edit button next to the intercom list. The Intercom Configuration dialog box opens.

   c. If desired, edit the name of the intercom.

   d. Configure the intercom as needed. Table 42 provides information about the settings. Note that only Duplex and Audio Toggles settings are available for intercoms.

**Figure 425. Intercom Configuration**




e. Click OK.

6. When you are finished, click OK in the Radio System Configuration dialog box. You return to the Radio Communications dialog box. If you added or removed a radio or intercom, the list updates.

**Table 42. Radio and Intercom settings**

| Setting | Options |
|---|---|
| Duplex | Radios and Intercoms<br>— Half. Only one user can talk at a time.<br>— Full. All users can speak simultaneously. |
| Audio Toggles | Radios and Intercoms<br>— Hear Self. Users can hear themselves over the speaker.<br>— Mic Muted. Microphone defaults to muted.<br>— Speaker Muted. Speaker defaults to muted.<br>— Use Vox. Radio is voice-activated. |

**Table 42. Radio and Intercom settings (continued)**

| Setting | Options |
|---|---|
| Transmission Toggles | Radios only<br>— Frequency Hopping. Switches frequencies during transmission to reduce interference and avoid interception.<br>— Time Hopping. Varies the period and duty cycle to achieve anti-jamming or low probability of intercept.<br>— Pseudo Noise. Introduces a deterministically generated random sequence of bits. |
| Modulation | Radios only<br>— System. Radio system type: Generic, SINGCGARS, and so on.<br>— Major. Modulation type: Amplitude, Pulse, and so on.<br>— Detail. Additional information about the modulation type (options based on the Major setting). |
| Crypto | Radios only<br>— System. Cryptographic system for the radio: VINSON, KY-100, and so on.<br>— Mode. Crypto mode: Baseband, Diphase, and so on.<br>— Key. A simulated cryptographic key. This key is a non-zero integer value for simulating secured communication. Set to 0 when simulating plain communications. |
| Channels | Radios only<br>— Use the Add or Delete buttons to manage the radio's channels.<br>— In the rows, double-click to edit each channel's name and frequency as needed. |

## 51.5. Audio Settings

In the MAK Radio standalone application, you can access the Audio Settings. These settings allow you to specify the Playback Device (speaker), Recording Device (microphone), and one or more push-to-talk buttons.

The options are saved in *./appData/settings/makRadio/radioAudioSettings.csv*. You can copy the CSV file to other workstations that should have the same settings.

➤ To choose a Playback Device or Recording Device, choose the speaker or microphone from the appropriate list.

➤ **To set the default push-to-talk key:**

1. In the MAK Radio standalone application, choose **Settings > Audio Settings**. The Audio Settings dialog box opens.
2. Click on the Push To Talk Keys box to give it focus.
3. Press the desired key. If you want to use more than one key, continue pressing keys.
4. Click OK.

## 51.6. Jamming Radios

The Radio Communications dialog box or MAK Radio application allow you to jam radio frequencies. When you click the Jam button on a radio head, it creates another radio that jams the frequency of the currently selected channel. The users will not be able to hear the radio communications, and will not see an indication that their radio is jammed.

➤ To jam a radio frequency, click the Jam button (

).

# X. The Observer and Viewing Scenarios

The observer, or eyepoint, is the location in the 3D or 2D environment from which you observe the scene. You can move the observer (navigate) through the scene. You can attach the observer to a simulation object or prop. When the observer is attached to a simulation object, it moves automatically with that object. You can also control the observer from a remote application using view control messages.

You can have multiple observers in a VR-Forces session. They might be associated with different windows. For example, you could have an observer for the main window and one for an inset window.

The observer is such a pervasive component of the VR-Forces front-end that it is not covered in just one chapter of this manual. For more information, please see:

# 52. The Observer and Observer Modes

This chapter explains how to create, edit, and change observers and observer modes. For details about moving the observer, please see "Chapter 53. Moving the Observer" on page 1097. For details about attaching the observer to simulation objects and props, please see "Chapter 54. Attaching the Observer to Objects" on page 1131.


52.1. Switching Between the 2D and 3D Projections ..... 1086
52.2. Observer Modes ..... 1086
52.3. Changing the Observer Mode ..... 1087
52.4. Creating and Editing Observer Modes ..... 1087
52.4.1 Creating an Observer Mode ..... 1087
52.4.2 Deleting an Observer Mode ..... 1089
52.4.3 Editing an Observer Mode ..... 1089
52.4.4 Renaming an Observer Mode ..... 1089
52.5. Adding an Observer ..... 1089
52.5.1 Adding an Observer on the Observer Settings Page ..... 1090
52.5.2 Adding an Observer in the Display Engine Configuration Editor ..... 1090
52.6. Removing an Observer ..... 1092
52.7. Introduction to XR Mode ..... 1093
52.8. Model Sets ..... 1094
52.8.1 Changing the Model Set ..... 1094
52.9. Communicating Information About the Observer ..... 1094
52.9.1 Making the Observer Visible to Other Applications ..... 1094
52.9.2 Viewing and Attaching to Other Observers ..... 1095
52.10. Displaying Models for Remote Observers ..... 1095

## 52.1. Switching Between the 2D and 3D Projections

VR-ForcesVR-Vantage Stealth supports both 2D and 3D projections. You can switch between them simply by changing the observer mode from Stealth or Out-the-Window, to Plan View. (Changing observer modes is described in "52.3. Changing the Observer Mode" on the facing page.) When you go from a 3D observer mode to 2D, VR-Forces calculates a zoom level so that the observer should appear as if it is roughly the same height above the terrain. When you go from a 2D observer mode to 3D, VR-Forces calculates an altitude to do the same thing, and keeps the 3D view pointing down (so the change in overall view stays fairly small).

## 52.2. Observer Modes

Observer modes let you configure VR-Forces settings that affect how the observer moves and what it sees. You can then quickly change from one group of settings to another by switching between observer modes. An observer mode specifies:

- A model set. A collection of models of a particular type, such as 3D models.
- A key map. A coordinated set of key mappings to movement functions.
- A projection (2D or 3D).
- Settings for simulation object graphics and observer movement.

VR-Forces includes the following observer modes:

- Stealth. Stealth observer mode is a 3D projection configured for situational awareness.
- Out-the-Window. Out-the-Window observer mode is configured for when you use VR-Vantage IG or if you want to use VR-Forces Stealth as a desktop image generator. It hides many of the explanatory visual effects present in the Stealth observer mode.
- Plan View. The Plan View observer mode provides a 2D “big picture” view of the terrain.
- XR. XR, or exaggerated reality, observer mode is a 3D mode that helps you understand the relationships between entities and the terrain when the observer is too far away from entities to view them at realistic sizes. It allows you to exaggerate entity size and terrain.
- IR BlackHot (CameraFX). A view using the CameraFX IR (infrared) BlackHot sensor.
- IR (CameraFX). A view using the CameraFX IR sensor.
- NVG (CameraFX). A view using the CameraFX NVG (night vision goggles) sensor.
- Camera (CameraFX). A view using the Visual Camera CameraFX sensor.

The observer modes all support the three model sets: 3D models, 3D colorized models, and 2D icons. You can edit observer modes and add new ones. For details, please see "52.4. Creating and Editing Observer Modes" on the facing page.

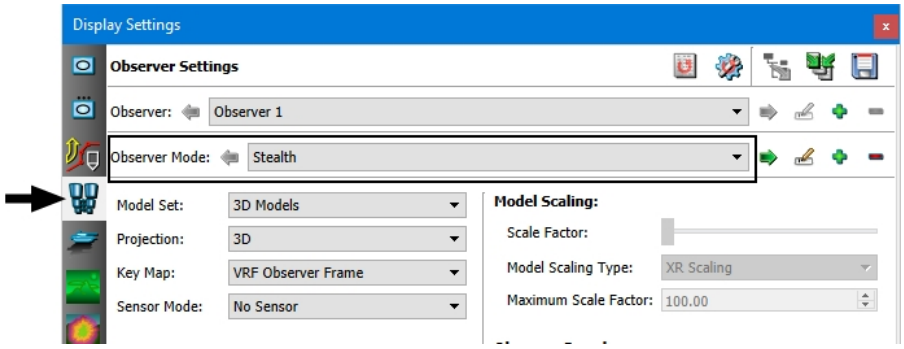
## 52.3. Changing the Observer Mode

When you change the observer mode, terrain may be displayed differently and the model sets used to display simulation objects may change. For descriptions of the observer modes, please see "52.2. Observer Modes" on the previous page.

➤ **To change the observer mode:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 426).

**Figure 426. Observer Settings page**




3. Select an option in the Observer Mode list.

---

You can also change the observer mode by choosing **Observer > Set Observer Mode >** ***mode***, or on the Observer Settings Toolbar, choose an option from the Observer Mode list.

---

## 52.4. Creating and Editing Observer Modes

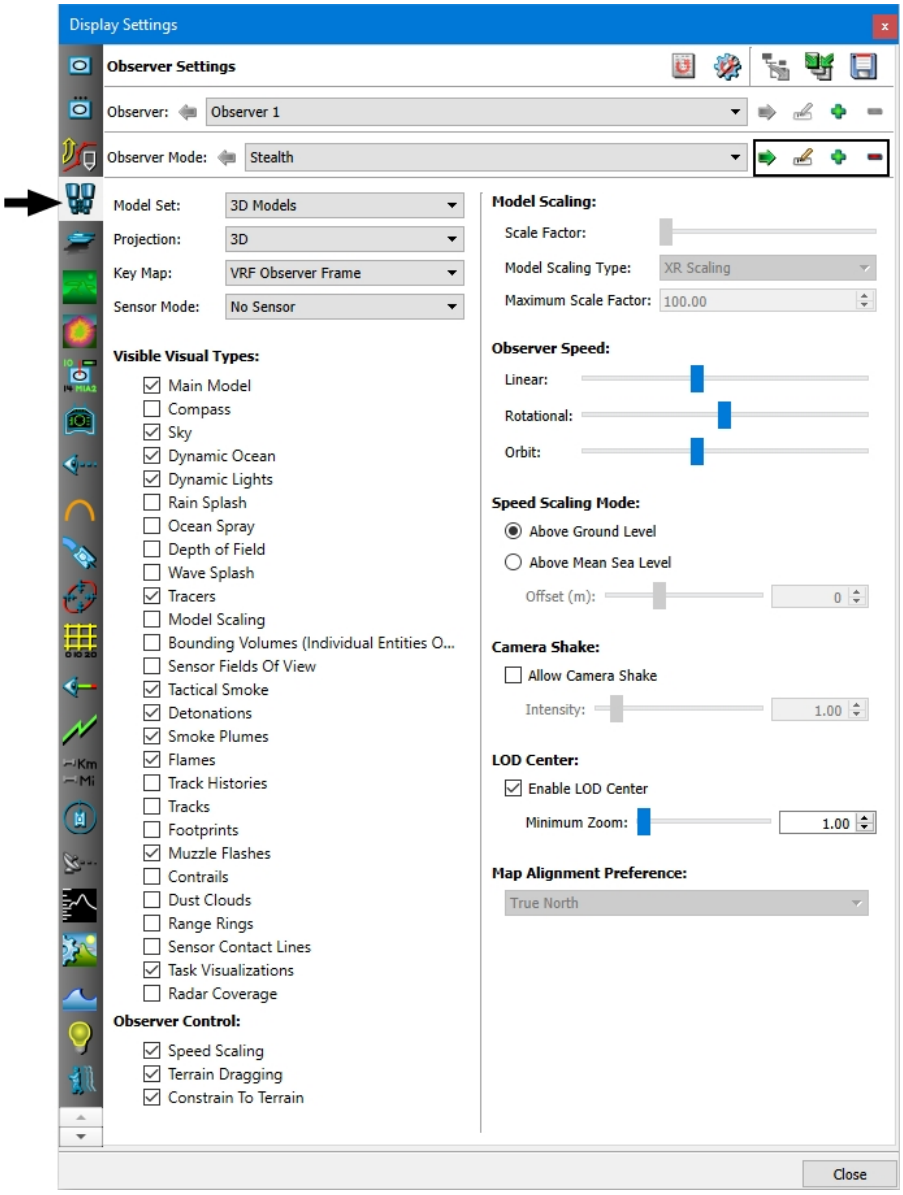
VR-Forces comes with 3D and 2D observer modes. (Table 43 on page 1102 lists the observer modes available for each VR-Forces application.) They are configured with the display settings, key mappings, and model sets that users most commonly want to use. However, if they do not meet your needs, you can easily edit them or create new observer modes.

### 52.4.1 Creating an Observer Mode

➤ **To create an observer mode:**

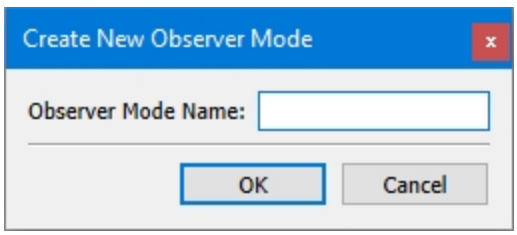
1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427).

**Figure 427. Observer Settings page**




3. Click the Add button (+) to the right of the Observer Mode list. The Create New Observer Mode dialog box opens (Figure 428).

**Figure 428. Create New Observer Mode dialog box**




4. Type a name for the new observer mode.

5. Click OK.
6. In the Model Set list, select a model set.
7. Select a projection (2D or 3D).
8. Select the key map you want to use.
9. Optionally, specify a sensor mode.
10. Optionally, change the observer speed scaling settings and speed scaling mode.
11. Optionally, for 3D model sets, change the Model Scaling settings.
12. Enable or disable the mode-specific settings. The list of settings varies depending on the projection and model set.

### 52.4.2 Deleting an Observer Mode

➤ **To delete an observer mode:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on the previous page).
3. In the Observer Mode list, select the observer mode that you want to delete.
4. Click the Delete button (−).

### 52.4.3 Editing an Observer Mode

➤ **To edit an observer mode:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on the previous page).
3. In the Observer Mode list, select the observer mode that you want to edit.
4. Edit the attributes of the observer mode as desired.

### 52.4.4 Renaming an Observer Mode

➤ **To rename an observer mode:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on the previous page).
3. In the Observer Mode list, select the observer mode that you want to rename.
4. Click the Rename button (✎). The Rename Observer Mode dialog box opens.
5. Type the new name.
6. Click OK.

## 52.5. Adding an Observer

You can add and remove observers. Having multiple observers lets you assign different observers to different windows or channels. Changing the position and orientation of the observer in one channel does not affect the view of a different

observer in a different channel. (For information about windows and channels, please see.)

---

If you have multiple observers, the observer listed in the Observer Settings Toolbar is the observer assigned to the window that has focus. If you open the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel and select a different observer in the Channel Attributes list, the data in relevant panels will change to reflect the values for the selected observer. However, as soon as you return focus to a window, the observer selection will change to match that of the window.

---

You can add observers in the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel or on the Observer Settings page. (For information about the Display Configuration Editor Panel, please see.)

If you want to save your observers, save the display engine configuration in which you created them. (Saving an observer just saves its name. It does not save any information about a particular observer mode or location that you may have used for that observer. To save location information, save an observer view.)

## 52.5.1 Adding an Observer on the Observer Settings Page

➤ **To add an observer on the Observer Settings page:**

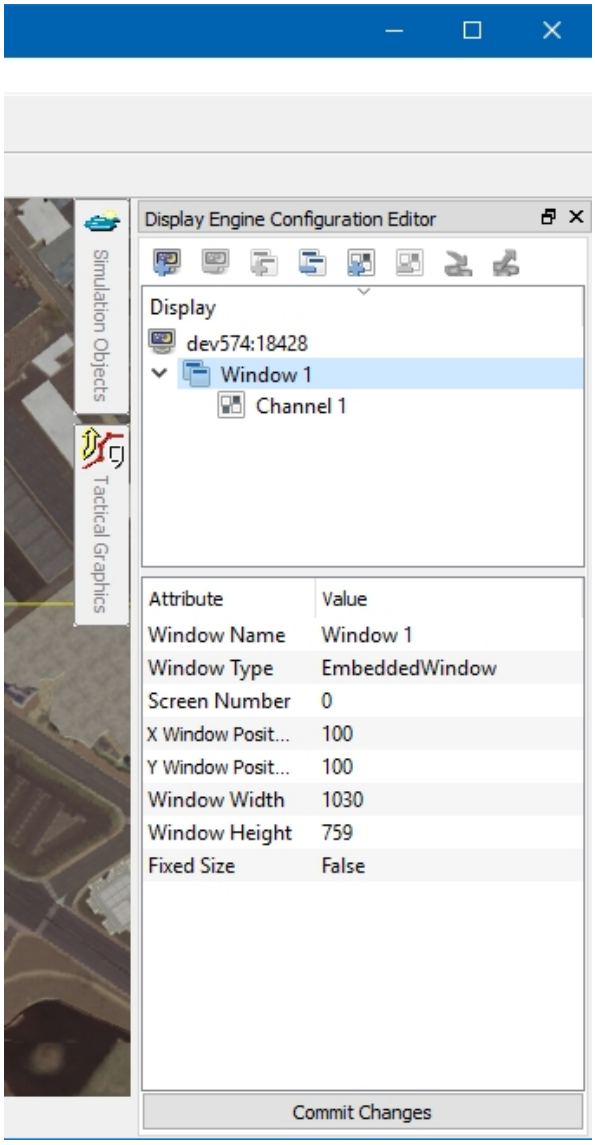
1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on page 1088).
3. Click the Add button (+) to the right of the Observer list. The Create New Observer dialog box opens.
4. Type a name for the new observer.
5. Click OK. The new observer is added to the list.
6. To save the observer, save the display configuration. (Saving the observer settings does not save observers.) (For information saving a display configuration, please see "76.2.5 Saving a Display Engine Configuration" on page 1528.)

## 52.5.2 Adding an Observer in the Display Engine Configuration Editor

➤ **To add an observer on the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel:**

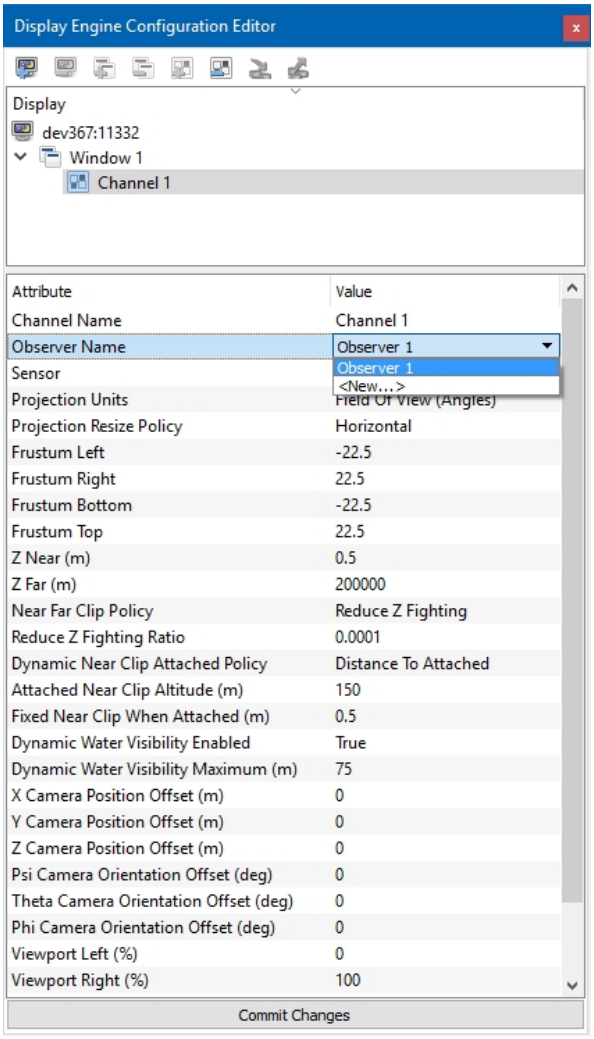
1. Choose **View > Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel**. The Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel opens (Figure 429).

**Figure 429. Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel**




2. Select the channel on which you want to add an observer.
3. Click the Value field for the Observer Name attribute to make it editable.
4. In the list, select New (Figure 430).

**Figure 430. Observer Name attribute**




5. Click Commit Changes. The Add Observer dialog box opens.
6. Type a name for the new observer.
7. Click OK. The new observer becomes the selected observer on the Observer Settings Toolbar, and is listed in the Observer Name attribute. (You may need to refresh the channel attributes before the observer name is listed.)
8. To save the observer, save the display configuration. (For information about saving a display configuration, please see "76.2.5 Saving a Display Engine Configuration" on page 1528.)

## 52.6. Removing an Observer

When you close VR-Forces, all observers get removed. They are not saved unless you save a display configuration. You can also remove observers during a session.

➤ **To remove an observer:**

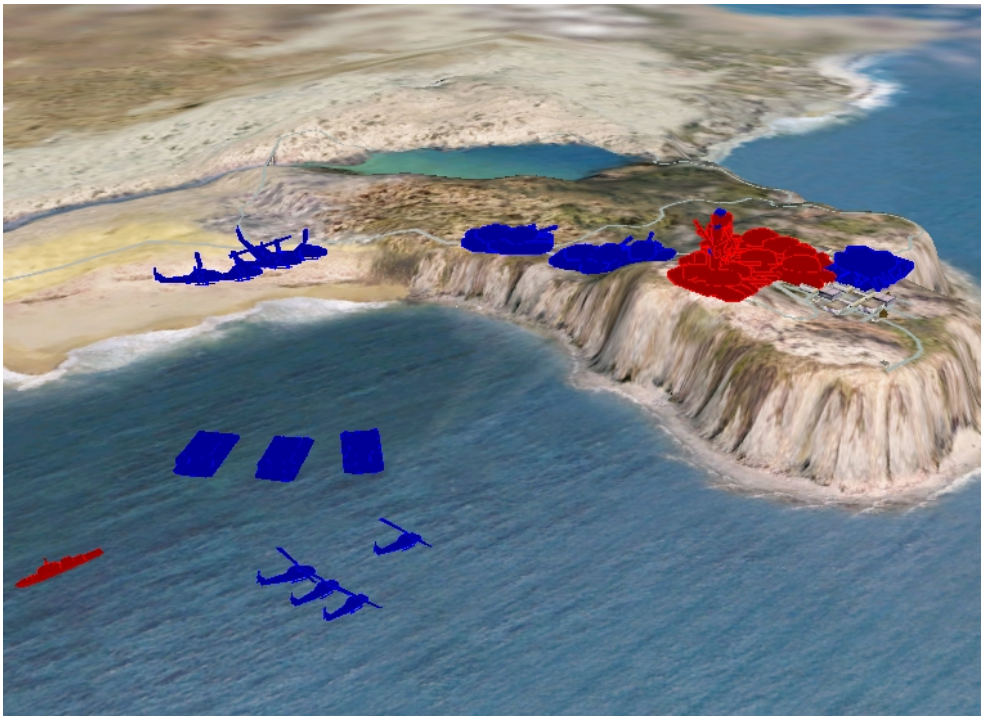
1. Choose **Settings>Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on page 1088).
3. In the Observer list, select the observer that you want to remove.
4. Click the Delete button ( ). The observer is removed.
5. If the observer was saved as part of a display configuration, save the updated display configuration.

## 52.7. Introduction to XR Mode

The Stealth observer mode (3D projection and 3D model set) provides situational awareness at the entity or small unit level. It is not ideal for getting the big picture of a simulation, because when you move the observer out to see large areas of terrain, the entity models, which are scaled to the terrain, are too small to see. The Plan View observer mode provides the big picture of a simulation, but does not provide situational awareness.

XR observer mode bridges the gap between the Stealth and Plan View observer modes. It is a 3D mode, so it provides situational awareness. However, it uses a special model set that makes models visible at greater distances than in Stealth observer mode. The 3D colorized model set shows entities as notional models using force coloring, which helps them stand out from the terrain. It also scales the model size to provided an exaggerated reality (hence XR). (You can also scale the regular 3D model set if you want to.) Figure 431 illustrates model scaling with 3D colorized models.

**Figure 431. Model scaling and colorized models**



For details about scaling models, please see "44.2. Exaggerating the Scale of 3D Entity Models" on page 1008 .

## 52.8. Model Sets

VR-Forces includes the following model sets:

- 3D Models. Realistic, 3D, textured models with articulated parts.
- 3D Colorized Models. 3D model caricatures with minimal articulation. These models do not have textures, they are solid colors, by force. You can change the coloring between primary colors and MIL-STD icon colors.
- 2D icons. MIL-STD 2525B icons.

You can use any of the model sets in both 3D and 2D views. In the 2D view, the 3D models can only be viewed from the top.

### 52.8.1 Changing the Model Set

Each observer mode specifies a model set. You can change the model set associated with an observer mode by editing it (for details, please see "52.4.3 Editing an Observer Mode" on page 1089), but you can also dynamically change the model set being used.

➤ To change the model set, choose **Observer > Set Model Set >** *model_set*, where *model_set* is one of the options on the menu.

## 52.9. Communicating Information About the Observer

VR-Forces can transmit state updates describing the observer's position and orientation, and can respond to view control messages sent by other applications.

### 52.9.1 Making the Observer Visible to Other Applications

By default, VR-Forces sends state update messages to make its state information known to other applications. This makes it possible for a plan view display to represent VR-Forces as an icon, or for one VR-Forces application to synchronize its observer movement with that of another VR-Forces application.

➤ To enable or disable broadcasting of observer information, choose **Settings > Publish Observers** (or **Stop Publishing Observers**).

#### Making the Observer Visible to Just One Application (DIS Only)

In DIS you can send observer information to just one other application, rather than to everyone in the exercise. To do this, on the Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box, instead of using a broadcast address, set the destination address to the address of a specific computer.

### 52.9.2 Viewing and Attaching to Other Observers

If an exercise includes other stealth applications, and they are sending state updates, VR-Forces can detect them. A remote observer entity is listed in the object hierarchy, so you can attach the local observer to it just as you would attach to any other simulation object.

Observer icons are displayed in the 2D view, but they are not normally visible in the 3D view, even when they appear in the entity list. If you want to display visual representations of remote observers, map a visual model to the observer's entity enumeration.

For related information, please "52.10. Displaying Models for Remote Observers" below.

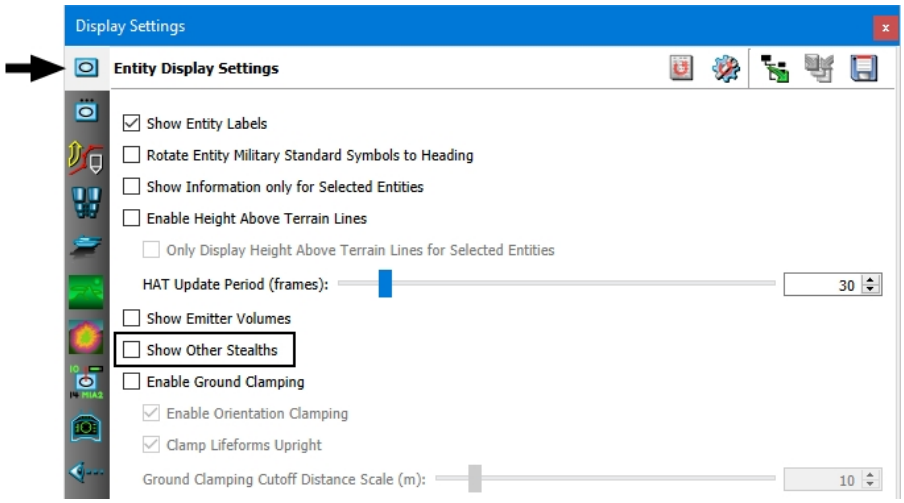
## 52.10. Displaying Models for Remote Observers

VR-Forcesbroadcasts the location and orientation of the observer. By default, it does not display a model for the observer. However, if there are other applications in an exercise that are broadcasting a stealth PDU (such as another VR-Forces application), you might want to represent them with a model.

➤ **To display a model for remote observers:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 432).

**Figure 432. Display Settings, Entity Display Settings page**




3. Select the Show Other Stealths check box.

# 53. Moving the Observer

This chapter explains how to move the observer (eyepoint) in the VR-Forces window.


53.1. Moving the Observer ..... 1099
53.1.1 Using the Compass to View the Observer's Heading ..... 1100
53.1.2 Editing the Compass's Attributes ..... 1101
53.2. Observer Movement Functions and Keyboard Mappings ..... 1102
53.2.1 3D Observer Movement Coordinate Systems ..... 1102
53.2.2 2D Observer Coordinate System ..... 1103
53.2.3 The Attached Context and Observer Movement (3D Only) ..... 1103
53.3. Moving the Observer from the Keyboard in the 3D View ..... 1105
53.3.1 Navigation Options ..... 1107
53.3.2 Orbiting ..... 1107
53.3.3 Moving the Camera ..... 1108
53.4. Moving the Observer Using the Mouse (3D View) ..... 1108
53.4.1 Dragging the Terrain ..... 1108
53.4.2 Changing the Observer's Orientation with the Mouse ..... 1111
53.4.3 Dragging the View ..... 1111
53.4.4 Orbiting the Terrain with the Mouse ..... 1111
53.4.5 Teleporting the Observer ..... 1112
53.5. Moving the Observer in the 2D View ..... 1112
53.5.1 Moving the Observer from the Keyboard in the 2D View ..... 1112
53.5.2 Moving the Observer Using the Mouse in the 2D Projection ..... 1113
53.6. Zooming the Observer ..... 1114
53.6.1 Zooming the Observer in the 3D Projection ..... 1114
53.6.2 Zooming the Observer in the 2D Projection ..... 1115
53.6.3 Setting the Scale Factor for Terrain ..... 1115
53.6.4 Setting the Magnification LOD Angle for Terrains ..... 1116
53.6.5 Zooming In to the Ocean Over Long Distances ..... 1117

53.6.6 Zooming to Extents ..... 1117
53.6.7 Configuring the LOD Center in the Observer Mode ..... 1118
53.7. Centering the Observer on a Simulation Object ..... 1119
53.7.1 Centering on an Object from the Object Console Summary Panel ..... 1119
53.7.2 Centering on an Object from an Information Panel ..... 1120
53.8. Simulating Camera Jitter ..... 1120
53.9. Forcing Orientation North ..... 1121
53.9.1 Specifying True or Magnetic North ..... 1121
53.10. Enabling and Disabling View Constraints (3D Only) ..... 1122
53.11. Controlling Navigation Speed ..... 1122
53.11.1 Enabling or Disabling Speed Scaling ..... 1122
53.11.2 Changing the Observer's Movement Speed ..... 1123
53.12. Saving and Recalling Views ..... 1124
53.12.1 Recalling a View ..... 1126
53.12.2 Deleting Views ..... 1126
53.12.3 Loading Views Automatically When You Load a Terrain ..... 1126
53.12.4 Specifying the Scenario Startup View ..... 1127
53.12.5 Saving Views to a File ..... 1128
53.12.6 Loading Views ..... 1129
53.13. Using the Go To Location Panel ..... 1129
53.14. Controlling the Observer from Other Applications ..... 1130
53.14.1 Enabling the Processing of View Control Messages ..... 1130

# 53.1. Moving the Observer

When you view a simulation, you usually want to move the observer (eyepoint) to different locations to view the terrain and scene elements being simulated. In VR-Forces, you can move the observer using the keyboard and the mouse. There are two basic contexts in which you can move the observer:

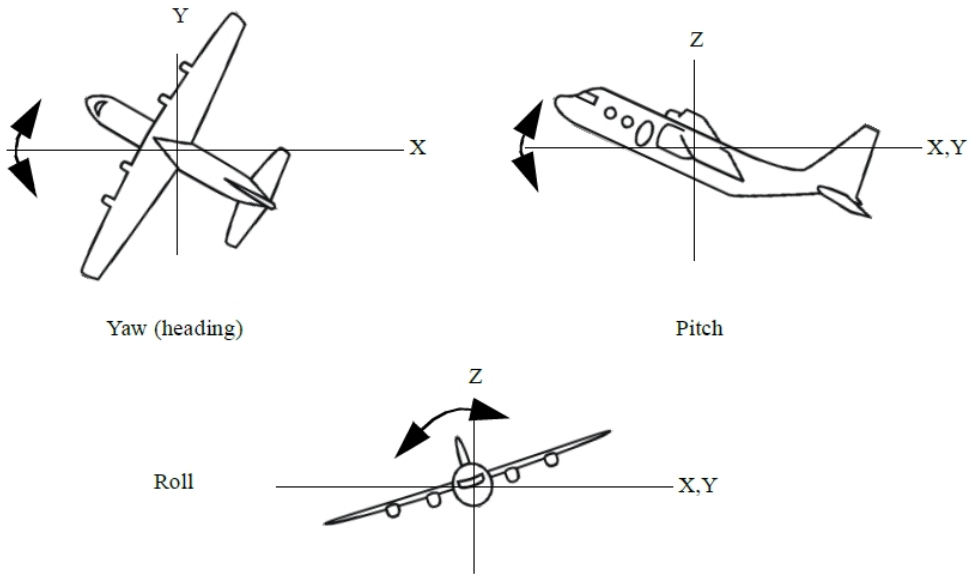
- You can move it independently of any scene element. This is called absolute, or free-fly mode.
- You can attach the observer to a simulation object, in which case it moves with the object. (You can also attach the observer to a prop. For details about attaching the observer to a simulation object or prop, see "Chapter 54. Attaching the Observer to Objects" on page 1131.

Absolute mode and the various attachment types are collectively called attach modes.

Regardless of which attach mode you are using, you can change the position and orientation of the observer. In the 3D projectionview, position is defined by X, Y, and Z coordinates that identify its location in the 3D world. Orientation describes the observer's yaw (heading), pitch, and roll (Figure 433).

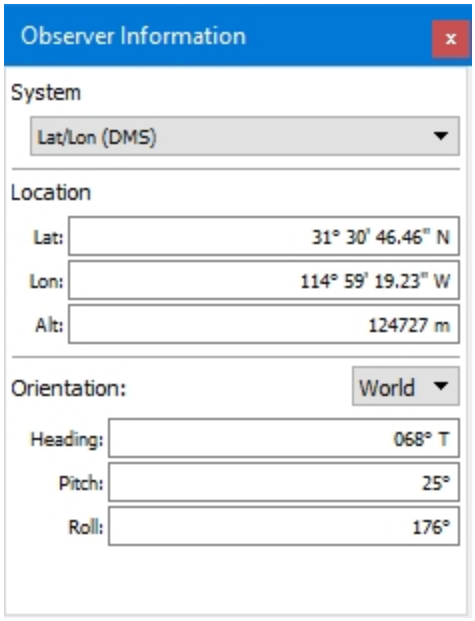
In the 2D projectionview, the Z coordinate is fixed. You can change the X and Y coordinates. You can change the observer's yaw, but pitch and roll are fixed.

**Figure 433. Orientation**




The Observer Information Panel (Figure 434) displays the location and orientation of the observer in whichever coordinate system you select.

**Figure 434. Observer Information Panel**




### 53.1.1 Using the Compass to View the Observer's Heading

VR-Forces can display a compass that always shows the heading of the observer. The compass is an observer mode setting. In Figure 435, the observer's heading is approximately Northwest.

In the 2D view, the compass has two needles. The straight needle indicates true north and the arrow needle indicates magnetic north. Depending on where the observer is in the world, the needles may be close together or wide apart.

**Figure 435. 2D Compass**

In the 3D view, the compass is horizontal and shows the direction where the observer is looking. This uses either true or magnetic north, based on the Heading specified in the Display Units Settings; see "77.8. Specifying Display Units" on page 1555.

**Figure 436. 3D Compass**

➤ **To enable or disable the compass:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on page 1088).
3. Select the observer mode for which you want to change the compass setting.
4. In the list of observer settings, select or clear Compass.

---

You can also enable or disable the compass by choosing **Observer > Compass** or clicking the Compass button ( ) on the Observer Settings Toolbar.

---

## 53.1.2 Editing the Compass's Attributes

You can configure the compass by editing its schema (ChannelCompass) and model definition (smallCompass and (largeCompass). (For details about editing schemas, please see *"Creating and Editing Schemas,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)

By default, all channels have the largeCompass keyword. To change the style of compass used for a channel, change the keyword in the Keywords attribute for the channel. To completely remove the compass, delete the keyword. For details about setting channel attributes, please see "76.4. Changing a Channel's Attributes" on page 1529.

You can change where the compass is displayed in the window by editing the location attribute. The permissible values are top, topRight, right, bottomRight, bottom, bottomLeft, left, and topLeft.

You can change the color of the compass by editing the darkTickColor and lightTickColor attributes. The color is defined using the OpenGL scheme for specifying RGBA. The first three values are the RGB color values. The fourth value specifies opacity. Each value can be from 0.0 through 1.0.

## 53.2. Observer Movement Functions and Keyboard Mappings

When you move the observer, you are executing observer movement functions. An observer movement function is a specific way that the observer can move, such as Move Observer Forward or Move Level Observer Forward. (These functions both move the observer forward, but they use different observer coordinate systems. Observer movement coordinate systems are described in "53.2.1 3D Observer Movement Coordinate Systems" below.)

The various movement functions are mapped to the keys on the keyboard and to mouse buttons and the mouse wheel. If you use the default key mappings for the default observer modes, then most of the time, the observer will behave exactly as you would expect it to. However for some types of movement, such as forward and back, the observer can move differently depending on the projectionview, the observer coordinate system, or the attach mode. Therefore, VR-Forces provides several key mappings that let you choose which type of observer movement to use. You can change these key mappings and create your own key mappings. (For details about editing key maps, see "Chapter 79. Creating and Editing Key Mappings" on page 1569.) This section describes how observer movement can vary based on the observer coordinate system and the attach mode.

Table 43 lists the observer modes and key map settings provided with VR-Forces applications.

**Table 43. Observer modes**

| Observer Mode | Projection | Key Map |
|---|---|---|
| CameraFX modes | 3D | Observer Frame |
| Stealth | 3D | Observer Frame |
| XR | 3D | Observer Frame |
| Plan View | 2D | 2D Level Observer Frame |
| The observer modes all support the three model sets: 3D models, 3D colorized models, and 2D icons. | | |

### 53.2.1 3D Observer Movement Coordinate Systems

In the 3D projectionview, the observer moves in the context of one of the following coordinate systems:

- Level Observer Coordinates: Movement is with respect to the terrain. The level observer coordinate system is defined by the current up vector (Z), and a plane normal to that vector into which the observer's X and Y axes are projected. (Essentially, this means that the observer's heading is used while its pitch and roll are considered to be 0.0.)

---

Movement is always with respect to a plane tangent to the earth's surface. However, in a projected terrain database, such as UTM, Lambert Conformal Conic, or flat earth, the plane is fixed, whereas in a geocentric terrain database the up vector (and hence the tangent plan) changes as the observer's position changes, so movement follows the curvature of the earth.

---

- Observer Coordinates: Movement is with respect to the observer's body coordinate system.
- Entity Level Body Frame Coordinates: Movement is with respect to an entity's body frame, but ignores pitch and roll.
- Entity Body Frame Coordinates: Movement is with respect to an entity's body frame, including pitch and roll.

The practical difference between observer coordinates and level observer coordinates is that in level observer coordinates, if you are looking down at the terrain, when you move forward and backward, you fly over the terrain, looking down. In observer coordinates, when you move forward and backward, you move down towards the terrain or away from it at whatever angle you are oriented towards it.

### 53.2.2 2D Observer Coordinate System

When you use the 2D projectionview in VR-Vantage Stealth, the observer uses a variation of level observer coordinates. Movement is restricted to two dimensions, so there are no movement functions for changing the altitude, pitch, or roll. You can zoom in and out in the 2D projectionview, but this does not change the observer's altitude, it changes the field of view and resolution of the terrain image.

### 53.2.3 The Attached Context and Observer Movement (3D Only)

The key maps control navigation using a particular coordinate system (observer frame or level observer frame). They also support navigation in alternate coordinate systems. The alternate system varies depending on the attached context of the observer. It represents MAK's opinion of which alternate coordinate system would be most useful given the attach mode that the observer is using.

The Move Attached Context *direction* (forward, back, up, down, left, right) functions move the observer in the context of its attach mode. Movement is modified by attach modes in the following ways:

- Follow mode: movement is in the entity's level body frame.
- Track mode: movement is in the entity's level body frame.

- Mimic mode: movement is in the entity's body frame.
- Tether mode: movement is in level observer frame.
- Unattached: movement is in level observer coordinates.

Figure 437 and Figure 438 illustrate the differences between moving the observer in an attached context and without an attached context.

Figure 437 illustrates movement in entity level body coordinates (Follow and Track modes). The Move Observer Left function (**A** in Observer Frame key map) moves the observer to the left in observer coordinates, that is left relative to the observer's heading. The Move Attached Context Left function (**Shift** + **A**) moves the observer left in the attached context. In entity level body frame, this means the observer moves left relative to the entity's heading.

**Figure 437. Observer movement in entity level body frame coordinates**

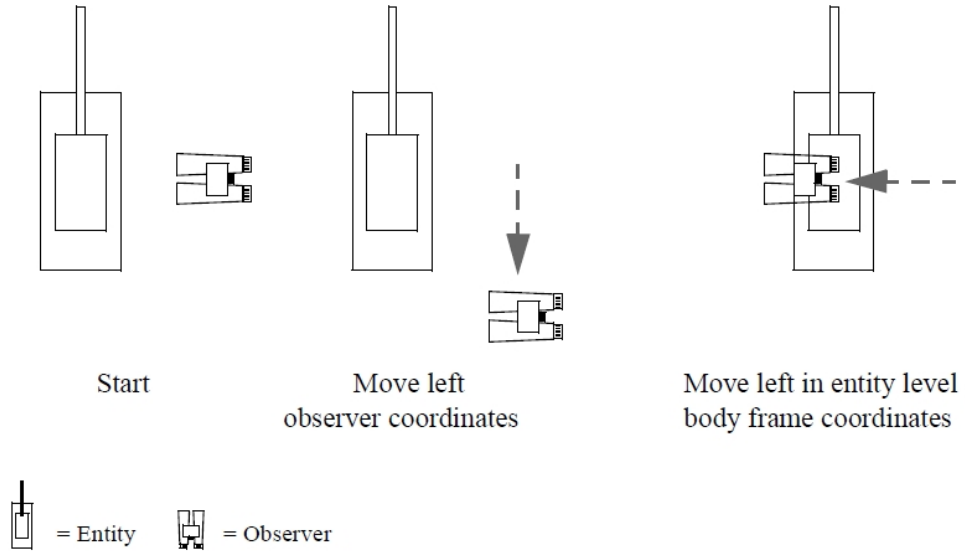
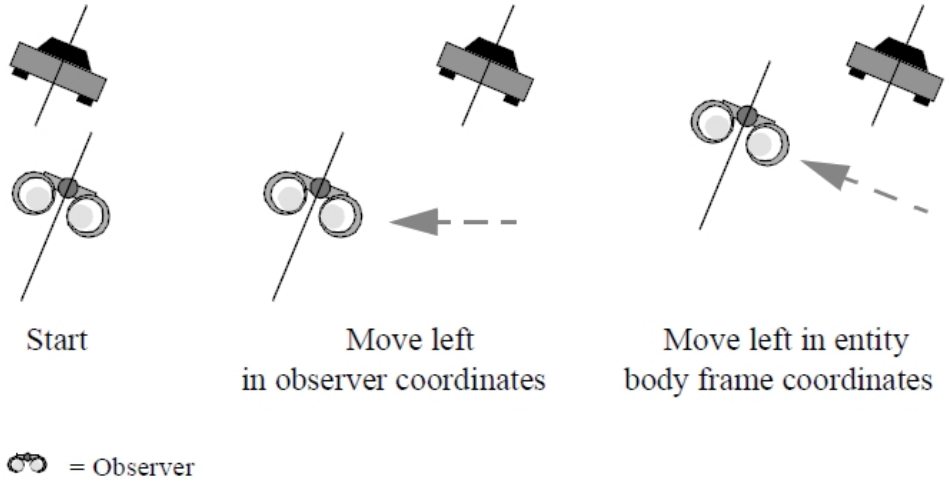



Figure 438 illustrates movement in entity body frame (Mimic mode). The Move Observer Left function moves the observer to the left in observer coordinates, that is left relative to the observer's heading, but ignoring pitch and roll. The Move Attached Context Left function moves the observer left in the attached context. In entity body frame, this means the observer moves left relative to the entity's heading and its pitch and roll.

**Figure 438. Movement in entity body frame coordinates**




## 53.3. Moving the Observer from the Keyboard in the 3D View

VR-Forces maps the observer movement functions to the keyboard using key maps that support the most typical ways that users want to move through the 3D world, either in absolute mode or attached to a simulation object.

---

! References to movement key combinations use the key mappings provided with VR-Forces. If you change these key mappings, the instructions may no longer be valid.

---

As described in "53.1. Moving the Observer" on page 1099, the observer typically moves with respect to the terrain in level observer coordinates or observer coordinates. The corresponding key maps are Level Observer Frame and Observer Frame.

Figure 439 illustrates the positional movement keys. Figure 440 illustrates the keypad layout for changing orientation and movement speed. For a complete list of movement functions and their keyboard and mouse mappings, please see "VR-Forces Quick Reference Card" on page 1761 or the Key Mapping Editor.

---

! To use the keypad for navigation, NumLock must be on.

---

**Figure 439. Primary movement keys, observer coordinates (3D)**

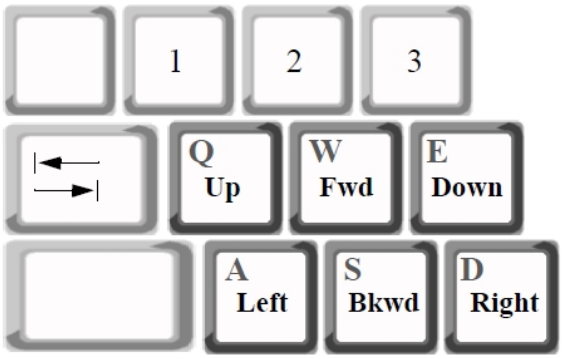
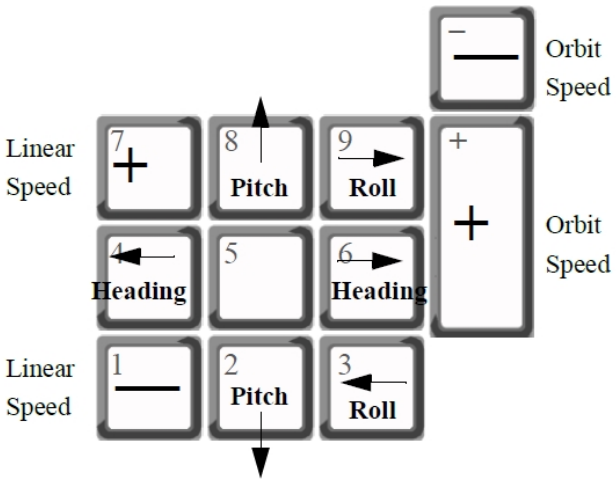



**Figure 440. Keypad layout, heading, pitch, and roll (3D)**




---

If your keyboard does not have a keypad, as on most laptops, the Laptop key map lets you use the arrow keys to control the left, right, up, and down movement mapped to 4, 6, 8, and 2 on keypads.

---

➤ To move the observer, press a key combination and hold it for as long as you want the observer to keep moving.

---

You can press more than one key at a time to combine movement functions. For example, pressing the move forward and move left keys at the same time moves the observer diagonally left and forward.

---

### 53.3.1 Navigation Options

This section lists the different ways that you can move the observer using the keyboard. For a complete list of movement functions and their keyboard and mouse mappings, please see "VR-Forces Quick Reference Card" on page 1761. You can:

- Move forward and backward (observer, level observer, entity, level entity, and attached context coordinates).
- Move up and down (observer, level observer, entity, level entity, and attached context coordinates).
- Move left and right (observer, level observer, entity, level entity, and attached context coordinates).
- Rotate (heading) left and right (observer and level observer coordinates).
- Rotate (pitch) up and down (observer and level observer coordinates).
- Rotate (roll) left and right (observer and level observer coordinates).
- Orbit left and right.
- Orbit up and down.
- Look (move camera) left and right.
- Look (move camera) up and down.
- Tilt (move camera) left and right.
- Reset the observer to the default position and orientation for the attached mode.
- Reset the camera to the default position and orientation.
- Zoom the view.

For details about orbiting, please see "53.3.2 Orbiting" below. For details about moving the camera, please see "53.3.3 Moving the Camera" on the next page.

---

When you view a geocentric terrain and move the observer more than 6 million meters away from the earth's surface, the view is forced to focus toward the center of the earth. The practical effect of this mode is that the left and right movement keys orbit the eyepoint around the earth, rather than moving the entire earth to the left or right.

---

### 53.3.2 Orbiting

You can orbit the observer (revolve left, right, up, and down) around an object or the point on the terrain that is at the center of the window. (If the center of the screen is in the sky, orbit does not work.) When you orbit, the observer's heading continuously changes so that it always faces the point or object around which it orbits. You can change the camera to look at something other than the orbit point while you are orbiting.

➤ **To orbit around an object:**

1. Attach the observer to the object.
2. Press the right or left arrow keys.

➤ **To orbit around a point:**

1. If you are attached to a simulation object, detach (press **z**).
2. Press the right or left arrow keys.

### 53.3.3 Moving the Camera

By default, the observer always looks in the same direction as its heading. However, just as the turret on a tank can swivel and fire in directions other than its body's heading, the observer can look in a direction other than its heading. The ability to look around is enabled in the camera. You can move the observer's camera up, down, left, right, tilt left, and tilt right. (The default key mappings are **Ctrl** + *Keypad number*, where *number* is 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, or 9.)

---

To use the keypad for navigation, **NumLock** must be on.

---

You can tell that the camera is moving, but the heading is not, by observing the compass. If you change the heading, the view of the terrain changes and the compass moves. If you move the camera, but keep the heading static, the view of the terrain changes, but the compass does not move.

---

➤ To move the camera, press the keys mapped to the camera movement functions.

## 53.4. Moving the Observer Using the Mouse (3D View)

You can change the observer's position and orientation with the mouse. (To see the full list of mouse mappings, view the Mouse Settings page on the Application Settings dialog box.)

Using the mouse, you can:

- Drag the terrain
- Drag the view
- Orbit the terrain
- Change orientation
- Teleport (jump)

### 53.4.1 Dragging the Terrain

Dragging the terrain combines the move forward, backward, left, and right functions.

➤ **To drag the terrain:**

1. Click a point on the terrain and hold down the left mouse button.
2. Drag the mouse left, right, forward, and backward.

---

Dragging the terrain is most effective when you are moving large distances, such as several kilometers. To move small distances, use the keyboard.

---

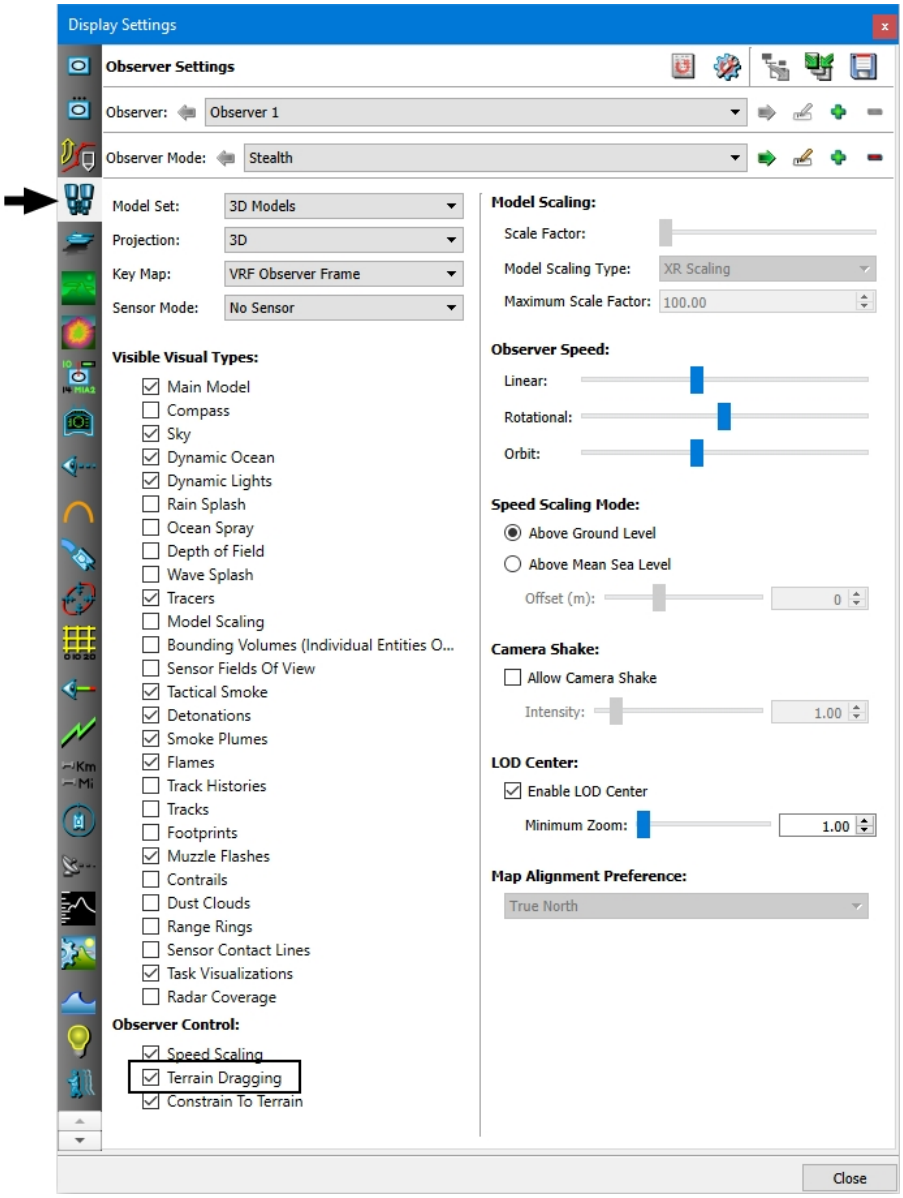
### Disabling Terrain Dragging

There may be times when you want to disable terrain dragging. This may be particularly useful when you are creating simulation objects or objects or editing them and do not want to inadvertently drag the terrain when you are trying to move objects.

➤ **To enable or disable terrain dragging:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 441).

**Figure 441. Observer Settings page**



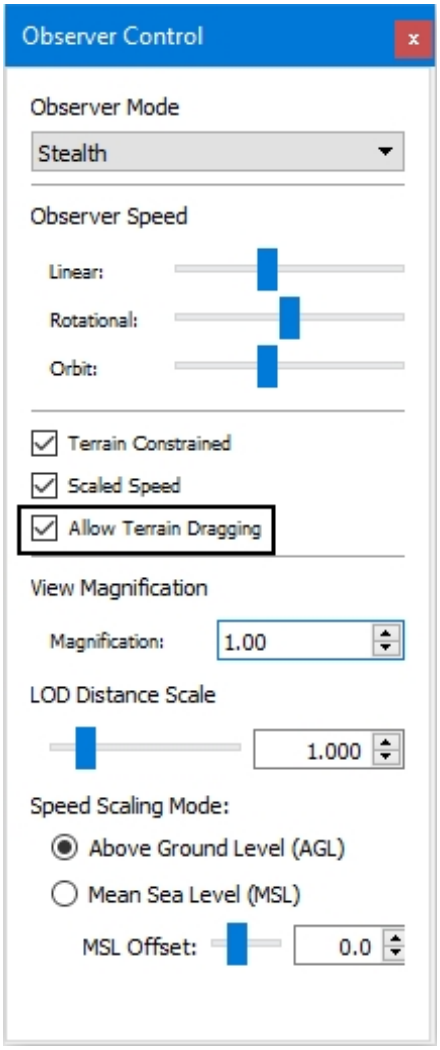

3. Select or clear the Terrain Dragging check box.

---

You can also enable or disable terrain dragging by clearing the Allow Terrain Dragging check box on the Observer Control Panel (Figure 442), or clicking the Terrain Dragging button ( ) on the Observer Settings toolbar.

---

**Figure 442. Observer Control Panel**




## 53.4.2 Changing the Observer's Orientation with the Mouse

➤ To change the observer's orientation, hold down the right mouse button and drag the mouse. The observer rotates in the direction you drag the mouse.

## 53.4.3 Dragging the View

Dragging the view combines the observer up, down, left, and right movement functions. Unlike dragging the terrain, which requires you to click a point on the terrain, you can drag the view from any observer location.

➤ To drag the view, hold down the middle mouse button (or wheel) and drag the mouse.

## 53.4.4 Orbiting the Terrain with the Mouse

➤ To orbit the terrain with the mouse, press **Ctrl** and drag the mouse.

### 53.4.5 Teleporting the Observer

You can teleport the observer to a simulation object, a prop, or a place on the terrain. Teleporting moves the observer 90% of the way from its current position to the location or object clicked on.

➤ **To teleport the observer:**

- **Shift**+click on the terrain or prop that you want to jump to.

  If you **Shift**+click on a filled area, the observer attaches to the area; it does not teleport. If you want to teleport to the terrain under an area, hide the area first. You can hide an area by hiding all tactical graphics or hiding the overlay on which the area is located.

- **Ctrl**+**Shift**+click on the simulation object that you want to jump to.

## 53.5. Moving the Observer in the 2D View

In the 2D view, you move the observer using the mouse and keyboard just as you do in the 3D view. Many of the key and button mappings for the 2D view are the same as those in the 3D view. However, the 2D mappings do not support movement that is not meaningful in two dimensions, such as up and down (altitude), pitch, and roll.

When Orient North is enabled, you cannot change the heading of the observer. For information about Orient North, please see "53.9. Forcing Orientation North" on page 1121.

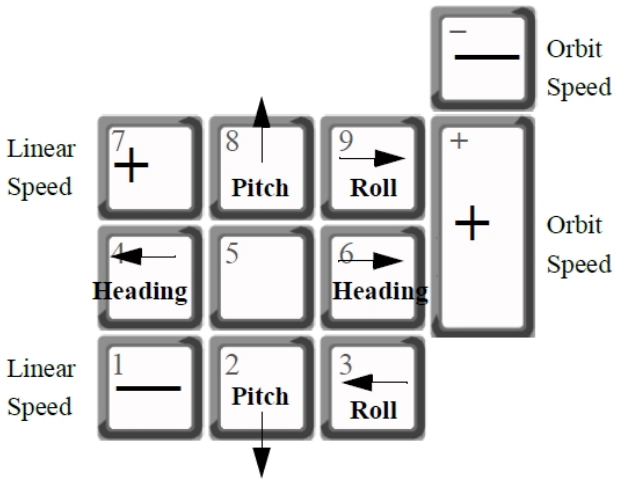
### 53.5.1 Moving the Observer from the Keyboard in the 2D View

Figure 443 illustrates the positional movement keys for the 2D view. Figure 444 illustrates the keypad layout for changing heading and movement speed. For a complete list of movement functions and their keyboard and mouse mappings, please see "VR-Forces Quick Reference Card" on page 1761.

To use the keypad for navigation, **NumLock** must be on.

**Figure 443. Primary movement keys, observer coordinates (2D)**

**Figure 444. Keypad layout, heading, pitch, and roll (2D)**




## 53.5.2 Moving the Observer Using the Mouse in the 2D Projection

You can change the observer's position and heading with the mouse. You can change the observer's position by dragging the terrain, as described in "53.4.1 Dragging the Terrain" on page 1108. You can change heading by orbiting, as described in the next section. (To see the full list of mouse mappings, view the Mouse Settings page on the Application Settings dialog box.)

### Orbiting the Terrain with the Mouse

When Orient North is enabled, you cannot orbit. For information about Orient North, please see "53.9. Forcing Orientation North" on page 1121.

➤ To orbit the terrain with the mouse, press the right mouse button and drag the mouse.

# 53.6. Zooming the Observer

You can zoom the observer in the 3D and 2D projections. Although the apparent effect is similar for top-down views, they are conceptually and behaviorally different. In addition to a straight "in-and-out" zoom, you can zoom the view to the extents of a simulation object or group of simulation objects.

## 53.6.1 Zooming the Observer in the 3D Projection

If you want to see something at a higher level of detail (LOD) without moving the observer, you can adjust the view magnification (zoom) of the observer view. Zooming the observer magnifies objects in the view, increasing the LOD to match the level of zoom. The magnification level is saved in saved views. 3D zoom has these characteristics:

- When you zoom the observer view, its movement and mouse look speeds decrease as the magnification increases, to allow for increased control.
- The channel's (window's) field of view establishes the baseline 1X zoom level. Changing the field of view does not change the effective magnification (that is, it does not change the LOD).
- When you switch from 3D to 2D (Stealth only), VR-Forces calculates a 2D zoom level to match the 3D view. If you then switch back to 3D, it remembers the observer location and zoom level.
- If you zoom in from a very high altitude there may be scene corruption due to insufficient precision in the z-buffer. This can be limited by moving the observer closer to the subject before zooming in. This issue is typically only encountered above 10,000 meters.
- When you zoom, VR-Forces respects the environmental conditions at the observer's location. For example, if the observer is above the cloud layer, zooming does not let you see below the clouds. Or, if it is raining at the observer's location, the visibility will not improve as you zoom in on a distant object.
- After zooming in, when you zoom out, you can only zoom out to magnification level 1. That is, you can only zoom out back to the observer's location. To see more of the terrain, move the observer away from the terrain.

➤ To zoom in, press the **=** key, press **Ctrl** and scroll the mouse wheel forward, or on the Observer Control Panel specify a value in the Magnification box.

➤ To zoom out, press the - (dash) key, press **Ctrl** and scroll the mouse wheel backward, or on the Observer Control Panel specify a value in the Magnification box.

---

Each press of the = or - key, or increment of the mouse wheel, increases or decreases magnification by a factor of 1.25.

---

➤ To reset magnification to 1.0, press zero (**0**) or press the middle mouse button.

### 53.6.2 Zooming the Observer in the 2D Projection

In the 2D projection you can zoom the observer view closer to and away from the terrain. However, unlike in 3D, in which you cannot zoom out past the location of the observer, there is essentially no limit on zooming in and out because in 2D, the observer does not actually have altitude.

- ➤ To zoom in, press **e**, or to step the zoom, press the **=** key.
- ➤ To zoom out, press **q**, or to step the zoom, press the **-** (dash) key.
- ➤ To zoom with the mouse wheel, scroll forward to zoom in on the spot under the mouse cursor, or backward to zoom out. Hold down the **Alt** key and scroll forward to zoom in on the spot at the center of the screen.
- ➤ To reset the observer to the default zoom level, press the **Spacebar**.

### 53.6.3 Setting the Scale Factor for Terrain

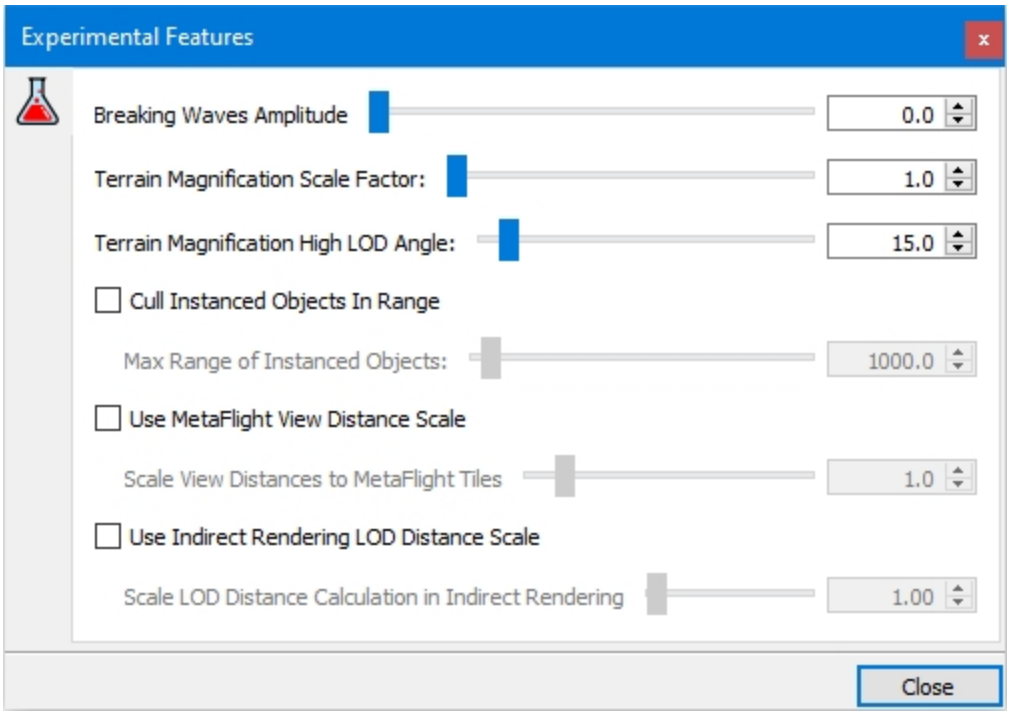
When you zoom the view, all distances used for determining LODs (including terrain) are scaled by the view magnification. In some cases, this is more aggressive than desired for the terrain. To remedy this problem, you can change the amount by which the terrain distance is scaled relative to the view magnification. For example, if view magnification is 8.0 and the Terrain Magnification Scale Factor is 2.0, then the distance used for paging would be scaled by 4.0 (8.0/2.0) rather than by the full factor of 8.0.

Some 3D terrains are not designed to be viewed at higher magnification. Performance may decrease if magnification increases the level of detail of large areas of the terrain. For example, suppose you are looking down a row of trees that is in the center of the view. At normal magnification, there are a certain number of trees at each quality level, say 10 high, 20 medium, and 100 low (for a total of 130 trees in the row). Suppose also that performance will be acceptable only when visualizing 15 or fewer high quality trees. If you magnify the scene 2x, you may now see 20 high, 40 medium, and 70 low quality trees. You see the same number of trees, but performance will decrease because you are visualizing more high quality models.

➤ **To set the scale factor for terrain:**

1. Choose **Settings > Experimental Features**. The Experimental Features dialog box opens (Figure 445).
2. Adjust the Terrain Magnification Scale Factor slider.

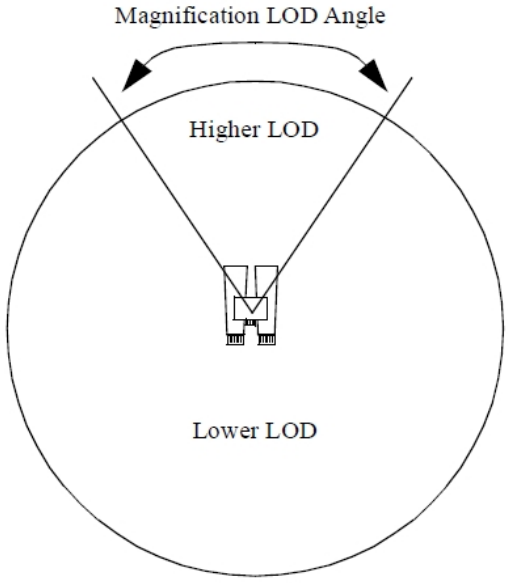
**Figure 445. Experimental Features**




## 53.6.4 Setting the Magnification LOD Angle for Terrains

When the observer zooms in, VR-Forces pages in higher LOD tiles for the terrain. This increases memory usage. You can tune performance by restricting high LOD tiles to the areas you are interested in and using lower LOD tiles for the rest of the terrain. The Terrain Magnification High LOD Angle setting lets you adjust the angle within which higher LOD tiles are used (Figure 446).

**Figure 446. Terrain magnification LOD angle**



If you want the observer to be able to quickly scan a wide angle of terrain, you should increase the magnification LOD angle or you may have to wait for high LOD tiles to page in as you move the observer.

On some terrains, when high LOD tiles are adjacent to low LOD tiles, there can be cracks in the terrain along the boundaries. If you experience this problem, increase the magnification LOD angle.

This feature has a purpose similar to that of LOD centering (described in "53.6.7 Configuring the LOD Center in the Observer Mode" on the next page). This feature is best used for ground vehicles. We recommend LOD centering for use with aircraft.

This setting is saved when you close VR-Forces.

➤ **To set the magnification LOD angle for terrain:**

1. Choose **Settings > Experimental Features**. The Experimental Features dialog box opens (Figure 445 on the previous page).
2. Adjust the Terrain Magnification High LOD Angle slider.

## 53.6.5 Zooming In to the Ocean Over Long Distances

If you zoom in to the ocean over very long distances, the ocean might not be rendered at the correct altitude and ships may be hidden (beneath the rendered ocean). If you experience this problem, in *./data/environment/ocean/Triton.config* set **use-mesh = no**. If after making this change you see performance decrease, these settings will improve performance:

```
prop-wash-default-fade-time = 60.0
wake-wash-length = 1000
wake-wave-generation-distance = 1.0
wake-kelvin-wave-min-amplitude = 0.1
```

## 53.6.6 Zooming to Extents

You can zoom the observer to the extents of the terrain or selected simulation objects. Zoom to extents works as follows:

- If no simulation objects are selected and the observer is not attached to a simulation object, the observer view is reset to the terrain center. This is the same behavior as pressing **Space bar**.
- If the observer is attached to a simulation object, the observer resets to the default attached view. This is the same behavior as pressing **Space bar**.
- If simulation objects are selected and the observer is not attached to a simulation object, the observer view is redisplayed to show the extents of the selected simulation objects. In the 3D view, this is a top-down view.

### Zooming the Observer to the Extents of Selected Simulation Objects

You can quickly change the observer view to show the extents of a selected simulation object or simulation objects. In 2D the observer zooms to the extents. In 3D the observer moves to the correct altitude to view the extents of the simulation objects while looking down at them.

➤ **To zoom the observer to the extents of selected simulation objects:**

1. Select the simulation objects that you want to zoom in on. To zoom to the extents of all simulation objects, do not select any simulation objects.
2. Choose **View > Zoom to Extents**.

### Zooming to Simulation Object Extents when a Scenario Loads

You can configure a scenario so that it zooms to the extents of all simulation objects when the scenario loads. This can be convenient when you have simulation objects located in one part of a large terrain.

---

If a scenario has a saved observer view that is designated as the initial view for the scenario, it overrides Zoom to Scenario Extents on Load.

---

➤ **To zoom to simulation object extents when a scenario loads:**

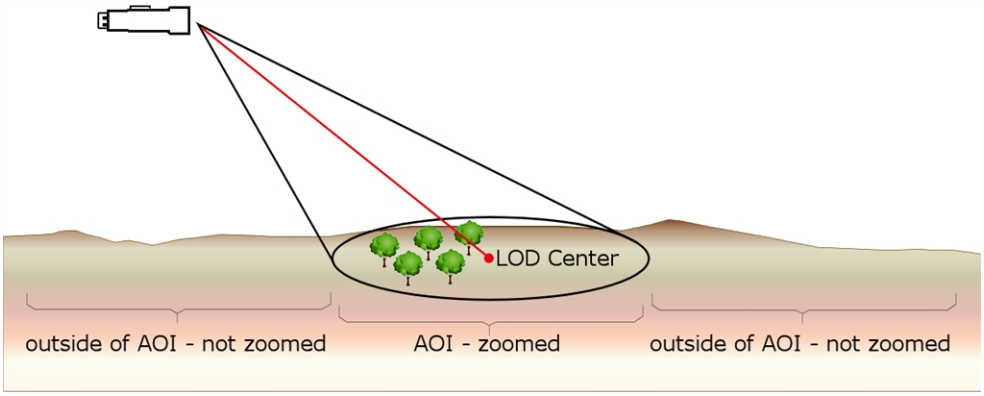
1. Open the scenario that you want to zoom to extents on load.
2. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
3. Select the GUI Settings page.
4. Select the Zoom to Scenario Extents on Load check box.
5. Save the scenario. The next time you load the scenario, if the Zoom to Scenario Extents on Load check box is selected, it zooms to the entity extents.

## 53.6.7 Configuring the LOD Center in the Observer Mode

When the magnification is greater than one, the default behavior is to perform a screen intersection on the area the observer is looking at and improve the LOD at that area and not in other areas. Some areas of the terrain between the observer and the point you have zoomed in on will have a lower LOD, so you might want to change the behavior.

Enabling the LOD center in the observer mode adjusts the LODs for the areas away from the area of interest (AOI) to be lower, which avoids paging or rendering higher LOD models that are not visible in the view. The LOD center uses an intersection with the view vector and the terrain to determine where the AOI is, as shown in (Figure 447).

**Figure 447. LOD centering creates an area of interest where the view intersects the terrain**




This feature has a purpose similar to that of changing the LOD angle (described in "53.6.4 Setting the Magnification LOD Angle for Terrains" on page 1116). This feature is best used with aircraft. We recommend changing the LOD angle for use with ground vehicles.

➤ **To configure the LOD center in the observer mode:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on page 1088).
3. Select or clear the Enable LOD Center check box.
4. To use the LOD center starting at a specific zoom magnification, adjust the Minimum Zoom slider or enter a value in the box.
5. Click Close.

## 53.7. Centering the Observer on a Simulation Object

You can center the observer on a simulation object from the Object Console Summary Panel, the Last Clicked Object Panel, or the Information dialog box. If you center on a simulation object from the Object Console Summary Panel, the observer gets attached to the object. It does not get attached using the other methods.

### 53.7.1 Centering on an Object from the Object Console Summary Panel

If you see that there is a message in the Object Console Summary Panel regarding a simulation object, you may want to quickly view that object. The Object Console Summary Panel lets you center the view on a simulation object. When you center the observer view on a simulation object, the observer attaches to it in Tether mode. For details about Tether mode, please see "54.2.7 Tether Mode" on page 1140.

➤ **To center the observer on a simulation object:**

1. In the Object Console Summary Panel, right-click a message from the simulation object you want to center on. A menu displays.
2. Choose **Center Entity**.

### 53.7.2 Centering on an Object from an Information Panel

You can center the observer on a simulation object from the Last Clicked Object Panel or the Information dialog box. When you center the observer this way, it does not get attached to the object. If the simulation object is moving, it moves away from the center of the display.

If you center on a simulation object in Plan View observer mode, the icon is centered in the window. If you center on a simulation object in Stealth observer mode, the observer stays in the current orientation relative to the centered object. If you press the **Spacebar**, the view changes to a top down view, similar to Plan View mode.

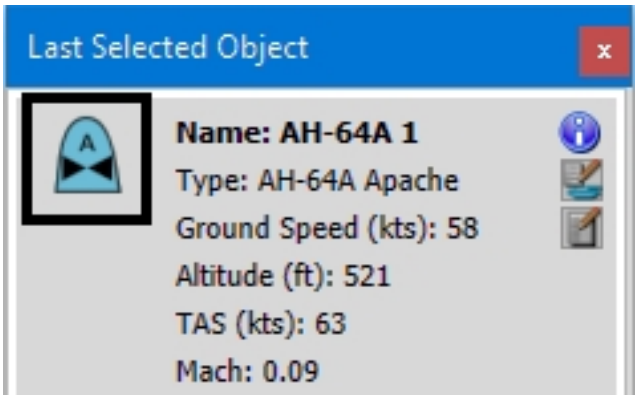
---

If the observer is attached to a simulation object, you cannot center the observer on a different object using this procedure.

---

➤ To center the observer on a simulation object from the Last Clicked Object Panel or the Information dialog box, click the simulation object icon on the panel (for example, Figure 448).

**Figure 448. Simulation object icon**




## 53.8. Simulating Camera Jitter

You can simulate the jitter that cameras attached to aircraft or unsteady human hands may experience.

➤ **To simulate camera jitter:**

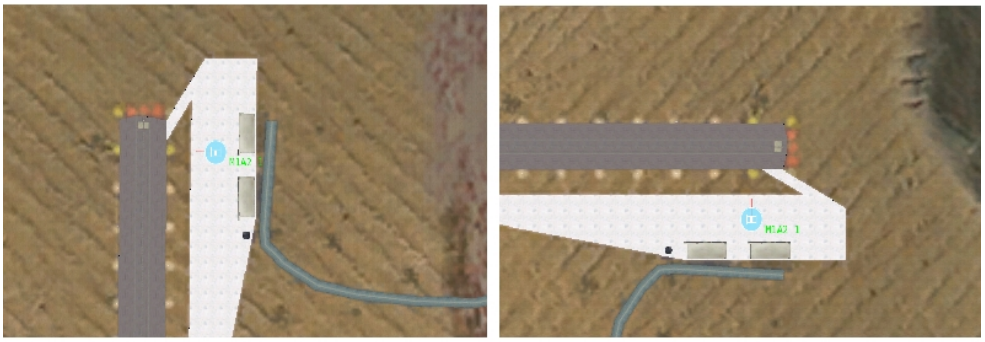
1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on page 1088).
3. In the Camera Shake section, select Allow Camera Shake.
4. Optionally, adjust the Intensity slider or change the value in the box.

# 53.9. Forcing Orientation North

In the 2D view, by default the observer's heading is forced to stay North (up), regardless of the heading of the simulation object to which it is attached. You can disable this setting, in which case if you attach to a simulation object, the view of the terrain rotates to match the heading of the attached simulation object.

Figure 449 illustrates the view when the observer is attached to an entity with orientation forced to North or matched to that of the entity.

**Figure 449. Forcing orientation North**



Orient North | Orient to entity heading

➤ **To enable or disable a northward orientation:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on page 1088).
3. In the Observer Mode list, select Plan View.
4. In the list of observer settings, select or clear Orient North.
5. Optionally, you can define whether north is true or magnetic. See "53.9.1 Specifying True or Magnetic North" below.

---

You can also enable or disable northward orientation by choosing **Observer > Orient North** or clicking the Orient North button ( ) on the Observer Settings Toolbar.

---

## 53.9.1 Specifying True or Magnetic North

When the observer is set to Orient North, you can specify which north to use. True north, also known as geodetic north, is the direction pointing to the geographic location of the North Pole. Magnetic north, on the other hand, is the point where the magnetic field points down. In VR-Forces, it is determined by the World Magnetic Model (WMM). The current parameters are good until 2025. To learn more about the WMM, visit *https://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/geomag/WMM*.

➤ **To specify true or magnetic north:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on page 1088).
3. In the Observer Mode list, select Plan View.
4. In the Map Alignment Preference list, select True North or Magnetic North.

## 53.10. Enabling and Disabling View Constraints (3D Only)

View constraints control how the observer behaves when it approaches solid objects in the view, such as the ground, buildings, and vegetation. When constraints are enabled, the observer has a 1 meter bounding sphere that prevents it from moving through terrain or props.

---

If view constraints are enabled, you may not be able to move the observer into buildings to view and place entities. Changing the near clipping plane or transparency will let you see through walls, but in constrained mode, you will still not be able to move the observer through the walls.

---

➤ **To enable or disable view constraints, use one of the following methods:**

- Press **/** (forward slash).
- Choose **Observer > Constrain to Terrain**.
- On the Observer Control Panel (Figure 442 on page 1111), select or clear the Terrain Constrained check box.

## 53.11. Controlling Navigation Speed

When you navigate through the terrain, there are times you want to move quickly, covering large amounts of terrain, and times you want to move slowly, such as when you are moving down a street or within a building. VR-Forces has the following options for controlling navigation speed:

- Set the navigation speed manually. The observer always moves at the specified speed.
- Use speed scaling to automatically move at different speeds under different circumstances. You can change the rate at which speed is scaled.

In either case, the controls for changing speed are the same. Their effect varies depending on whether or not speed scaling is enabled.

### 53.11.1 Enabling or Disabling Speed Scaling

When speed scaling is enabled, VR-Forces makes the following assumptions:

- If the observer is unattached, the higher above the terrain it is, the faster you want to move.
- The closer you are to an attached object, the more slowly you want to move.

➤ **To enable or disable speed scaling, use any of the following methods:**

- On the Observer Control Panel (Figure 442 on page 1111), select or clear the Scaled Speed check box.
- Press the multiply key (*****) (not the asterisk key).

### Setting the Speed Scaling Mode

When speed scaling is enabled, VR-Forces scales observer speed based on the its height above the terrain. Even if the observer is higher than all terrain points, speed can still be affected if there are changes to the terrain, such as mountains. This can be annoying if it happens unexpectedly. Therefore, you can choose to base speed scaling on height above ground level, or height above mean sea level. In that latter case, changes to the terrain would not affect the speed at which the observer moves. If you set speed scaling to use height above mean sea level, you can specify an offset.

➤ **To set the speed scaling mode, use one of the following methods:**

- On the Observer Control Panel (Figure 442 on page 1111), set the Speed Scaling Mode to Above Ground Level (AGL) or Above Mean Sea Level (MSL)
- On the Display Settings dialog box, Observer Settings page, set the Speed Scaling Mode to Above Ground Level (AGL) or Above Mean Sea Level (MSL)

## 53.11.2 Changing the Observer's Movement Speed

You can change the observer's linear, rotational, and orbital speed. If speed scaling is enabled, these controls change the speed gain. If speed scaling is disabled, the controls change the absolute speed.

➤ **To change the observer's speed, use any of the following methods:**

- Adjust one of the Observer Speed sliders on the Observer Control Panel (Figure 442 on page 1111) or on the Observer Settings page on the Display Settings dialog box. The default (center of the slider) is 1. The range is 0.1 to 10.
- Press one of the following keys to change linear speed:
  - **Keypad7** (faster) or **1** (slower).
  - **Ctrl** + mouse wheel forward or back.
  - Movement key + mouse wheel forward or back.
- Press **Keypad+** (faster) or **-** (slower) to change orbital speed.

When you change the observer's speed using the keyboard or mouse, if the Observer Control Panel or the Observer Settings page is open, you can see the scale slider moving to the new setting.

## 53.12. Saving and Recalling Views

At any given moment, the state of the observer is called its view. You can capture views so that you can quickly return to them. You can also save them for future use. VR-Forces automatically saves observer views as part of the scenario (*scenario_name.osrx*). You can also save views independently of scenarios.

VR-Forces supports the following use cases for saving observer views:

- Associate views with a terrain. Save one or more absolute observer mode views and associate them with a terrain. The views are loaded automatically when the terrain loads. You can specify a default view that the observer jumps to immediately.
- Save a mix of absolute mode and attached mode views to a file. This use case is best when you want to create a set of views for use with multiple scenarios. You can import the file into each scenario that you want to use it with.

---

Nothing prevents you from including observer views that are attached to a simulation object in a terrain's saved views file, but they will not work unless the specific simulation object is available in the simulation.

---

If the observer is not attached to a simulation object, its view is its position and orientation in the simulated environment. If the observer is attached to a simulation object, a view saves the following information:

- Attach mode.
- Positional offset.
- Marking text.

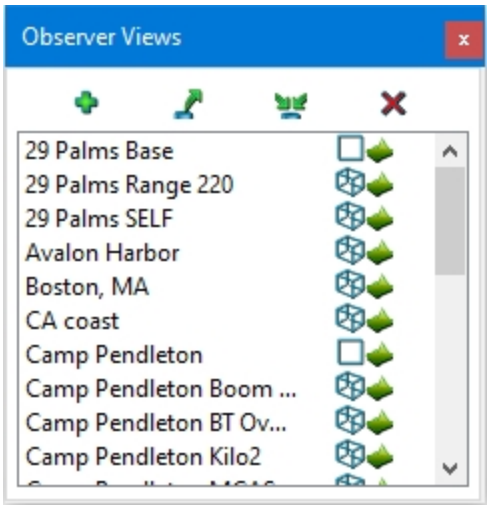
---

When you save a view in the 2D view, the X and Y values are saved. The zoom level is not saved.

---

Saved views are managed in the Observer Views Panel (Figure 450).

**Figure 450. Observer Views Panel**




Its buttons have the following meanings:

- Save the current view.
- Save the views to a file.
- Load a saved views file and append it to the list.
- Clear the list.

The icons in the observer views list have the following meanings:

- 3D view, such as Stealth, XR, or Out-the-Window.
- 2D view, such as Plan View.
- View is associated with the terrain.
- Default view for the terrain.
- Default scenario view.

---

Saved views are keyed to the marking text of the object to which the observer is attached.

---

➤ **To save the current view:**

1. Choose **View > Observer Views Panel**. The Observer Views Panel opens (Figure 450).
2. Click the Add button (). The current view is added to the list.

## 53.12.1 Recalling a View

➤ To recall a view, select it in the Observer Views Panel. The view changes immediately.

### Animating Transitions Between Observer Views

Normally, when you select an observer view, the observer jumps immediately to the new view. However, VR-Forces can smoothly transition from the current observer view to a saved view.

➤ To transition between observer views, hold down the **Ctrl** key and click the view in the Observer Views Panel that you want the observer to move to.

---

If the observer view that you select uses a different observer mode (for example, you would be moving from Plan View mode to Stealth), VR-Forces does not change the observer mode. The view moves to an approximation of the desired view in the current observer mode.

---

## 53.12.2 Deleting Views

➤ **To delete a view:**

1. In the Observer Views Panel, select the view you want to delete.
2. On the shortcut menu, select **Delete Observer View**.

### Clearing the View List

When you clear the list, VR-Forces removes all scenario-specific views and marks views that are associated with the terrain as hidden. When you load a scenario that has views associated with the terrain, VR-Forces ignores any views that are marked as hidden in the scenario. If additional views were associated with the terrain after the observer views list was cleared for the scenario, they are not marked as hidden and, therefore, get loaded. (Hidden views are recorded in the scenarios *.scn* file.)

➤ To remove all views from the list, in the Observer Views Panel, click the Clear List button (✖).

## 53.12.3 Loading Views Automatically When You Load a Terrain

You can associate a saved views file with a terrain so that it loads automatically when the terrain loads. You can also specify that one of the views be the default view. This is most useful when you create a new scenario. Once you save a scenario, the observer views saved with the scenario take precedence over the views associated with the terrain.

You associate views with a terrain by saving the views to a file in the same directory as the MTF file (by default, *./userData/terrains*). The file must have the same name as the terrain and the extension *.osrx*. The next time you open the terrain, the views are listed in the Observer Views Panel. An icon (🌳) next to each view shows that it is associated.

The views associated with the terrain do not get saved as part of the scenario. Each time you load a scenario, if there are views associated with the terrain, they get loaded (unless they are marked as hidden in the scenario file). Then the views saved in the scenario get loaded.

---

The file used for associating views with a terrain is different from the file that is created when you manually save views to a file, as described in "53.12.5 Saving Views to a File" on the next page.

---

➤ **To associate views with a terrain:**

1. Click the Export Views button ( ). A file browser dialog box opens.
2. Change directory to the directory where the terrain's MTF file is, usually *./userData/terrains*.
3. Save the views to a file that has the same name as the MTF file.

### Specifying a Default Observer View for a Terrain

If you associate views with a terrain, you can specify that one of the views be the default view to use. A star is added to the association icon for default views ( ).

You can specify a default 3D view and a default 2D view. When you load a terrain, if there are two default views and the current observer mode is a 3D mode, it uses the 3D default view. If the current observer mode is a 2D mode, it uses the 2D default view.

➤ **To specify a default observer view:**

1. Right-click the observer view that you want to be the default.
2. On the shortcut menu, choose **Set As Default Terrain View**.

### Unsetting a Default View for a Terrain

➤ **To unset a default observer view:**

1. Right-click the default observer view.
2. On the shortcut menu, choose **Unset Default Terrain View**.

## 53.12.4 Specifying the Scenario Startup View

If a scenario has observer views, you can specify that one of them be the view selected when the scenario loads. (The observer view does not get selected when you rewind a scenario.) If a scenario has a default observer view and the terrain has a default observer view, the scenario observer view is used.

➤ **To specify a view as the startup view:**

1. Right-click the view.
2. On the shortcut menu, choose **Set Default Scenario View**. A star icon next to the view shows that it is the default view.

### Unsetting a Default Scenario View

➤ **To unset a default observer view:**

1. Right-click the default observer view.
2. On the shortcut menu, choose **Unset Default Scenario View**.

## 53.12.5 Saving Views to a File

You can save views to a file independently of the scenario and load them at a later time. The default location for saved views is *./appData/settings/vrfGui*. When you create a 2D view for a terrain that includes 2D View Layers, that view includes the currently specified layer.

Saving views to a file is not the same thing as associating views with a terrain. When you associate views with a terrain, they get loaded automatically and you can specify a default view to use immediately. When you save views to a file, you need to load them manually, or from the command line. You cannot specify a default view.

Associating views with a terrain is most beneficial for saving a set of Absolute mode observer views that you always want to be available to the terrain, regardless of the simulation that you are connected to. Saving views to a file manually is most beneficial for saving views when the observer is attached to simulation objects in a simulation or for simulation-specific Absolute mode views.

➤ **To save all views to a file:**

1. In the Observer Views Panel, click the Export Views button ( ). The Save Observer Views dialog box opens.
2. Select the file to which you want to save the views, or type the name of a new file.
3. Click OK.

### Saving an Individual View to a File

You can save a single view to a file.

➤ **To save an individual view to a file:**

1. Right-click the view that you want to save.
2. On the menu, choose **Save Observer View**. The Save Observer View File dialog box opens.
3. Type a name for the file.
4. Click Save.

### 53.12.6 Loading Views

You can load saved views and append them to the list in the Observer Views Panel.

If a scenario has observer views saved as part of the scenario, they are loaded automatically when you load the scenario. If you have saved views independently of the scenario, you can load them and append them to the list in the Observer Views Panel.

---

To load a view, you can also drag and drop the *.osrx* file onto the Observer Views Panel and then select it.

---

➤ **To load views and append them to the list of views:**

1. In the Observer Views Panel (Figure 450 on page 1125), click the Load Views and Append button ( ). The Open Observer Views dialog box opens.
2. Select the saved views file that you want to load.
3. Click OK.

## 53.13. Using the Go To Location Panel

The Go To Location panel allows you to move the current observer to the specified address, latitude and longitude, or MGRS coordinates.

➤ **To go to a location:**

1. Open the Go To Location panel (**View > Go To Location**).
2. Select the method you want to use and then enter the appropriate information:
   - To go to an address, select Go to Address and then enter the complete address. This requires an internet connection. If VR-Forces cannot find some address to match, it displays an alert icon. Hover the mouse over it for more information.

     You can also enter the code for an airport and use that to go to the airport's location.
   - To go to a latitude and longitude, select that option and then enter the degrees, minutes, and seconds.
   - To go to the MGRS coordinates, select that option and then enter the Grid Zone, Map Sheet, Easting, and Northing.
3. Optionally, specify the altitude.
4. Click Go. The Go button becomes active when you have entered the required information.

   If you entered an address but the current observer did not jump to the address you specified, there was an error. An icon displays next to the address field. Hover the mouse over the icon to read the error message.

# 53.14. Controlling the Observer from Other Applications

The VR-Forces front-end can respond to view control messages sent by applications such as the MAK Logger. It also responds to view control messages sent from entity plans and global plans. You can write VR-Link-based applications to send view control messages to VR-Forces using the classes in the VR-Vantage Control Toolkit. You can use view control messages to:

- Specify the attach mode and simulation object.
- Set the observer's position and orientation.

Acceptance of view control messages is a global setting.

---

The view control PDUs are experimental, and are not an official part of DIS. They are of PDU kind 202.

---

## 53.14.1 Enabling the Processing of View Control Messages

➤ To enable or disable the processing of view control messages, choose **Settings > View Controls**, or click the View Control button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

# 54. Attaching the Observer to Objects

This chapter describes attachment modes and how to attach the observer to simulation objects and props.


54.1. Attaching the Observer to a Simulation Object or Prop ..... 1132
54.1.1 Attaching the Observer to Another Observer ..... 1133
54.1.2 Attaching to an Articulated Part ..... 1134
54.1.3 Attaching the Observer in Mimic Track or Tether Track Mode ..... 1134
54.1.4 Attaching the Observer in Mimic Location Track or Tether Location Track Mode ..... 1134
54.1.5 Filtering the Object Attachment List ..... 1135
54.1.6 Detaching from a Simulation Object ..... 1135
54.1.7 Hiding the Attached Model (3D Projection Only) ..... 1135
54.1.8 Attaching to Props ..... 1135
54.1.9 Improving Performance when Attaching to Ground Objects ..... 1135
54.2. Attach Modes in the 3D View ..... 1136
54.2.1 Absolute Mode ..... 1136
54.2.2 Follow Mode ..... 1136
54.2.3 Mimic Mode ..... 1137
54.2.4 Mimic Track Mode ..... 1138
54.2.5 Mimic Location Track Mode ..... 1139
54.2.6 Space Follow Mode ..... 1139
54.2.7 Tether Mode ..... 1140
54.2.8 Tether Track Mode ..... 1140
54.2.9 Tether Location Track Mode ..... 1141
54.2.10 Track Mode ..... 1141
54.3. Attach Modes in the 2D View ..... 1142
54.4. Attaching the Observer at Startup ..... 1143

# 54.1. Attaching the Observer to a Simulation Object or Prop

You can attach the observer to a simulation object and follow it as it moves through the simulation. You can also attach the observer to props and to other observers.

---

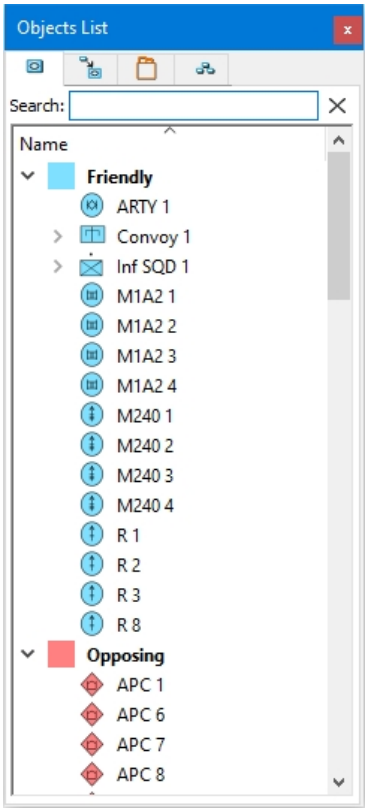
This procedure applies to Follow, Tether, Track, Mimic, and Space Follow modes. To attach in Tether Track or Mimic Track mode, please see "54.1.3 Attaching the Observer in Mimic Track or Tether Track Mode" on page 1134. To attach in Tether Location Track or Mimic Location Track mode, please see "54.1.4 Attaching the Observer in Mimic Location Track or Tether Location Track Mode" on page 1134.

---

➤ **To attach the observer to a simulation object or prop, do one of the following:**

- Right-click an object in the Objects List Panel (Figure 451) or on the terrain and select **Observer Attach > Attach** *mode*, where *mode* is one of the supported attach modes. (For details about attach modes, please see "54.2. Attach Modes in the 3D View" on page 1136 and "54.3. Attach Modes in the 2D View" on page 1142.)

**Figure 451. Objects List Panel**



- Select a simulation object or prop. (For details about selecting simulation objects and props, please see "Selecting Simulation Objects" and *"Selecting Props,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.) On the Attachments Panel (Figure 452), or on the Attach Object Toolbar (Figure 453), click the Attach button ( ) to attach with the current attachment mode.

**Figure 452. Attachments Panel**

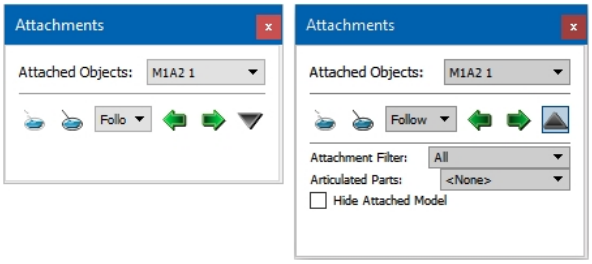



**Figure 453. Attach Object Toolbar**

- On the Attachments Panel or Attach Object Toolbar, click the next or previous arrows to attach to the next (or previous) object in the object list.
- **Shift**+click the object you want to attach to.
- Press greater than (**>**) to attach to the next simulation object or prop in the Objects List without regard to the attachment filter. Press less than (**<**) to attach to the previous object.
- Press period (**.**) to attach to the next simulation object or prop allowed by the attachment filter. Press comma (**,**) to attach to the previous object.

---

- When you select the next or previous object, VR-Forces chooses next and previous based on the order in which the objects were discovered. This might represent the order in which they are listed in the Objects List Panel.
- When you move the attachment from one object to the next, VR-Forces preserves whatever changes you have made to the observer's view relative to the attached object. So if, for example, you moved the observer so that it is not looking at the attached object, when you attach to the next simulation object, the observer will not be looking at this object. It will be in the same relative position to the object that you previously established. To quickly return to the default offset for the attachment mode, press **Spacebar**.

---

## 54.1.1 Attaching the Observer to Another Observer

You can attach observers to other observers if you have more than one window open.

➤ **To attach an observer to another observer:**

1. Filter the Objects List to show All objects or to show observers.
2. Select the window whose observer you want to attach to another observer.
3. In the Objects List, select the observer you want to attach to.
4. Right-click and select **Observer Attach > Attach** *mode*, where *mode* is one of the supported attach modes.

### 54.1.2 Attaching to an Articulated Part

You can attach the observer to an articulated part on an entity, such as a turret. When you attach to an articulated part, the observer moves with the articulated part instead of the main body of the entity.

➤ **To attach to an articulated part:**

1. Attach the observer to an entity, as described in "54.1. Attaching the Observer to a Simulation Object or Prop" on page 1132.
2. On the Attachments Panel (Figure 452 on the previous page), click the down arrow. The Attachments Panel expands.
3. In the Articulated Parts list, select the part to which you want to attach the observer.

### 54.1.3 Attaching the Observer in Mimic Track or Tether Track Mode

To attach the observer in Tether Track and Mimic Track modes, you must specify a primary simulation object and a secondary simulation object (the tracked simulation object).

➤ **To attach the observer in Mimic Track mode or Tether Track mode:**

1. Right-click the primary simulation object in the Objects List Panel or in the window. A shortcut menu displays.
2. Choose **Observer Attach > Attach Mimic Track** (or **Attach Tether Track**). The cursor changes to show an arrow and a Plus sign.
3. Click the secondary simulation object in the Objects List or in the window.

### 54.1.4 Attaching the Observer in Mimic Location Track or Tether Location Track Mode

To attach the observer in Tether Location Track and Mimic Location Track modes, you must specify a primary simulation object and a location.

➤ **To attach the observer in Mimic Location Track mode or Tether Location Track mode:**

1. Right-click the primary simulation object in the Objects List Panel or in the window. A shortcut menu displays.
2. Choose **Attach Mimic Location Track** or **Attach Tether Location Track**. The cursor

changes to show an arrow and a Plus sign.

3. Click a location in the display window.

### 54.1.5 Filtering the Object Attachment List

Although you can attach the observer to simulation objects and props, it is likely that at any given time you will only want to attach to one type of object (usually simulation objects). To reduce the number of objects that you have to iterate through when using Attachments Panel arrows to pick the next or previous object, you can filter the attachment list.

---

The filter for buoys and beacons applies to S-57 feature data, not buoys that are simulation objects, such as sonobuoys.

---

➤ **To filter the attachment list:**

1. On the Attachments Panel (Figure 452 on page 1133), click the down arrow. The Attachments Panel expands.
2. In the Attachment Filter list, select the type of scene element that you want to attach to.

### 54.1.6 Detaching from a Simulation Object

➤ To detach the observer from the simulation object to which it is attached, click the Detach button ( ) on the Attachments Panel (Figure 452 on page 1133), or press **z**.

### 54.1.7 Hiding the Attached Model (3D Projection Only)

You can hide the model for the simulation object to which the observer is attached.

➤ **To hide the attached model:**

1. On the Attachments Panel (Figure 452 on page 1133), click the down arrow. The Attachments Panel expands.
2. Select the Hide Attached Model check box.

### 54.1.8 Attaching to Props

Since props do not move, attaching the observer to a prop does not result in any observer movement. The principal benefit of attaching to a prop is to let you quickly refocus the observer on a particular location in the scene. If you attach in Track mode, using the keyboard movement keys allows you to orbit around the prop.

### 54.1.9 Improving Performance when Attaching to Ground Objects

When the observer is attached to air entities, Z-fighting can affect visual quality. To prevent this problem, VR-Forces needs to calculate the entity's height above the terrain. However, the calculation can affect performance. Unfortunately, when this calculation is enabled (the default), it must be applied to all entity types. If you know

that you will want to attach the observer to ground simulation objects, but not air simulation objects (or if you do not care about Z-fighting), you can disable the height above terrain calculation, which may improve performance when the observer is attached to simulation objects. To disable the height above terrain calculation, start VR-Forces with the **-S | --suppressHatIntersectOnAttach** command line option.

## 54.2. Attach Modes in the 3D View

Attach modes are combinations of position and orientation models and constraints that produce a useful behavior for the observer. Except for Absolute mode, attach modes describe how movement of the simulation object to which the observer is attached affects the position and orientation of the observer.

VR-Forcessupports the following attach modes:

- Absolute: The observer is not attached to a simulation object; it moves in space independently of all simulation objects.
- Follow: The observer position and heading changes with the simulation object's position and heading.
- Mimic: The observer position and orientation changes with the simulation object's position and orientation.
- Mimic Track: The observer's position changes with the simulation object's position while its orientation is focused on a second entity.
- Mimic Location Track: The observer's position changes with the simulation object's position while its orientation is focused on a location.
- Space Follow: The observer is a fixed distance from the simulation object and the simulation object model is scaled to be observable from a great distance.
- Tether: The observer's position changes with the simulation object's position.
- Tether Track: The observer's position changes with the simulation object's position while its heading is focused on a second simulation object.
- Tether Location Track: The observer's position changes with the simulation object's position while its heading is focused on a location.
- Track: The observer's heading changes to track the simulation object's position and heading.

The attach modes are described in detail in the following sections. For details about how to attach the observer to a simulation object, please see "54.1. Attaching the Observer to a Simulation Object or Prop" on page 1132.

### 54.2.1 Absolute Mode

In Absolute, or free-fly mode, the observer is not attached to a simulation object. Movement of simulation objects does not affect the observer in any way.

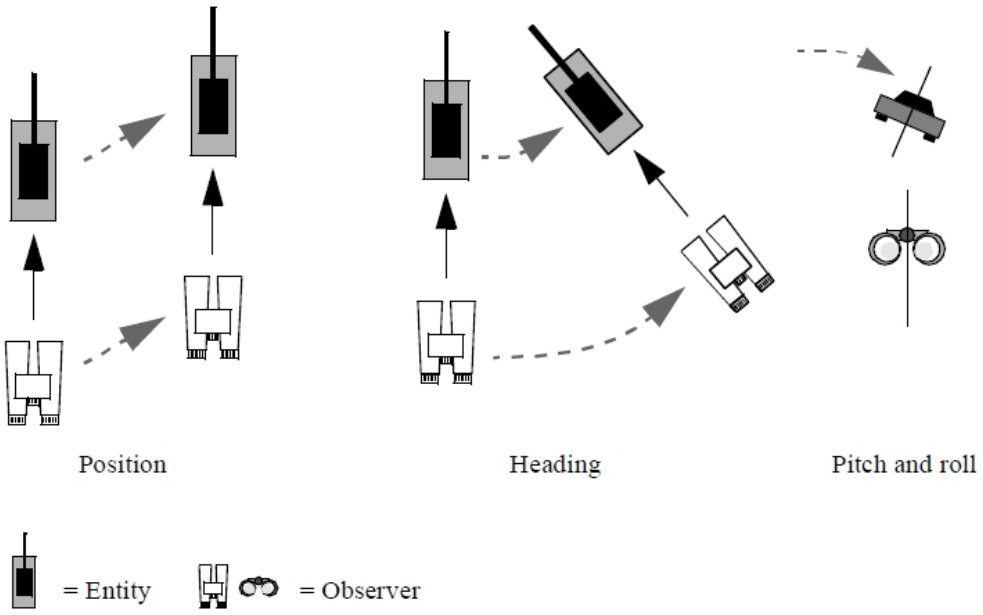
### 54.2.2 Follow Mode

In Follow mode, the observer maintains its relationship to the simulation object as follows:

- When the simulation object's position changes, the observer's position changes to maintain its offset.
- When the simulation object's heading changes, the observer's heading and position change to maintain the offset.
- When the simulation object's pitch or roll change, the observer pitch and roll do not change.

Figure 454 illustrates the characteristics of Follow mode.

**Figure 454. Follow mode**




### 54.2.3 Mimic Mode

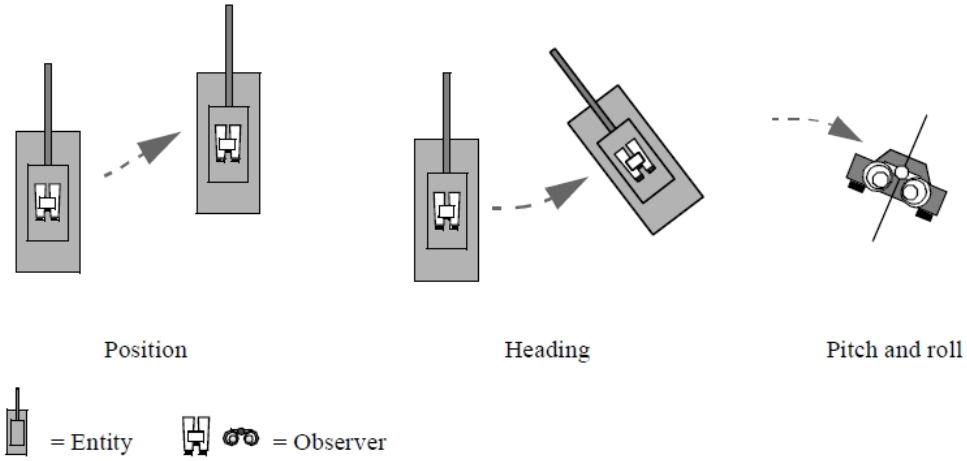
In Mimic mode, the observer behaves as though it is rigidly connected to the entity. Use Mimic mode to create the effect of riding in a vehicle cockpit, or of following a vehicle from an external location while connected to it by a solid, invisible rod. The observer maintains its relationship to the simulation object is as follows:

- When the simulation object's position changes, the observer's position changes to maintain its offset.
- When the simulation object's heading changes, the observer's heading and position change to maintain the offset.
- When the simulation object's pitch or roll change, the observer's pitch and roll change and the observer's position changes to maintain its offset.

When cockpit displays are enabled, you cannot change the position or orientation of the observer relative to the entity.

Figure 455 illustrates the characteristics of Mimic mode.

**Figure 455. Mimic mode**



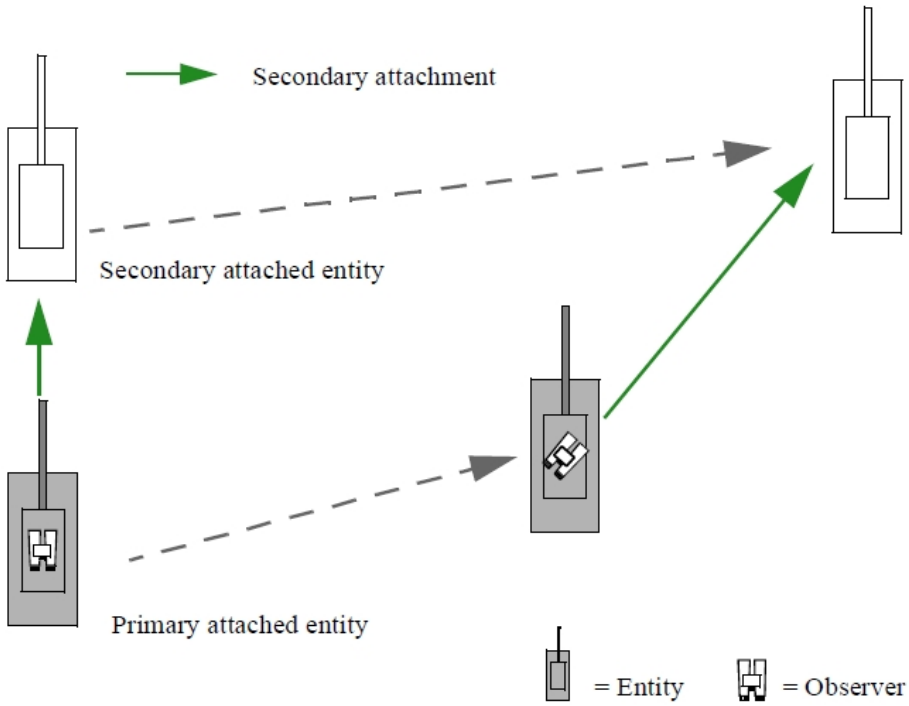

### 54.2.4 Mimic Track Mode

Mimic Track mode combines Mimic mode and Track mode. The observer's position changes with that of the entity to which it is attached, as in Mimic mode, while its orientation changes to remain focused on a secondary, tracked entity.

Orientation controls are disabled.

Figure 456 illustrates the characteristics of Mimic Track mode.

**Figure 456. Mimic Track mode**



### 54.2.5 Mimic Location Track Mode

Mimic Location Track mode works like Mimic Track mode except it tracks a location on the ground rather than an entity.

### 54.2.6 Space Follow Mode

Space Follow mode attaches the observer above an entity, looking down at it. Although it can be used with any entity, its primary purpose is for attaching to space objects such as satellites. You can also usefully use it with fixed-wing and rotary-wing entities.

The observer is attached at a fixed distance, determined by the near clipping plane for the object. For a satellite, this distance is approximately 500,000 meters. Since it is not possible to see regular models at that distance, the attached object is scaled to be visible. (You cannot change the scaling of the attached object.) Other objects are not scaled (except to the extent that model scaling might be enabled).

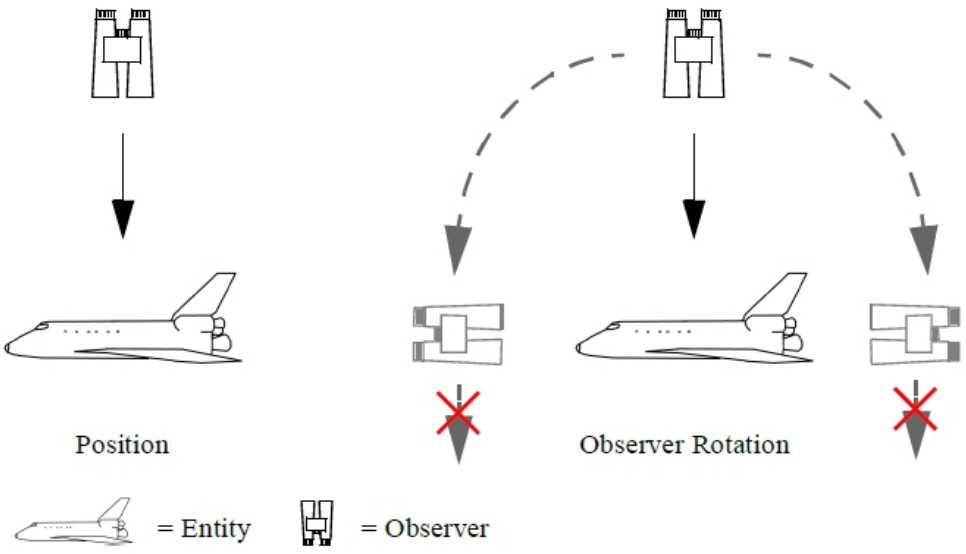
The observer maintains its relationship to the simulation object as follows:

- When the simulation object's position changes, the observer's position changes to maintain its offset.
- When the simulation object's heading changes, the observer's heading changes.
- When the simulation object's pitch or roll changes, the observer's pitch or roll does not change.

You cannot move the observer towards or away from the simulation object. You can rotate the observer around the entity, but you cannot go below the horizontal plane of the entity.

Figure 457 illustrates the characteristics of Space Follow mode.

**Figure 457. Space Follow mode**



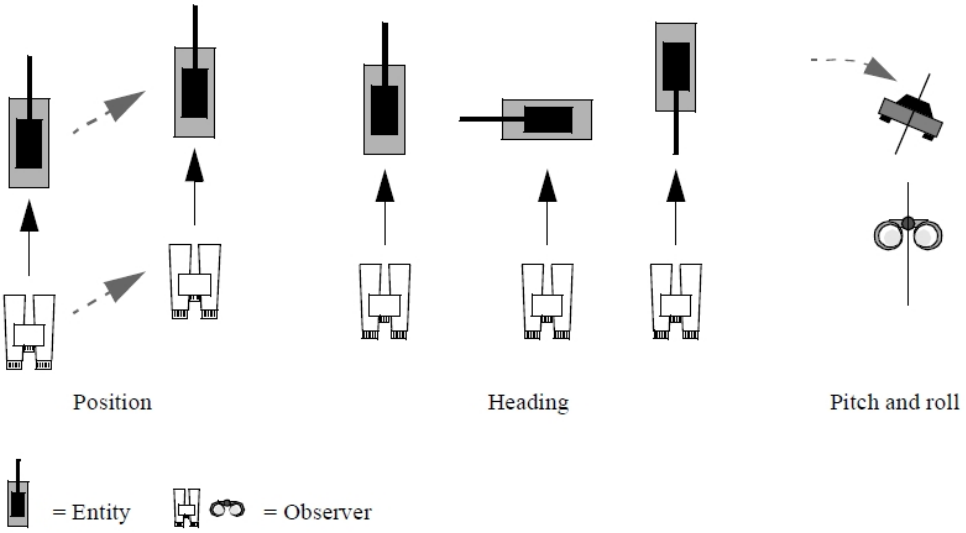
### 54.2.7 Tether Mode

In Tether mode, the observer's maintains a constant offset from the simulation object, but it is not affected by the simulation object's heading, pitch, or roll, as follows:

- When the simulation object's position changes, the observer's position changes to maintain its offset.
- When the simulation object's heading changes, the observer's heading does not change.
- When the simulation object's pitch or roll change, the observer's pitch and roll do not change.

Figure 458 illustrates the characteristics of Tether mode.

**Figure 458. Tether mode**



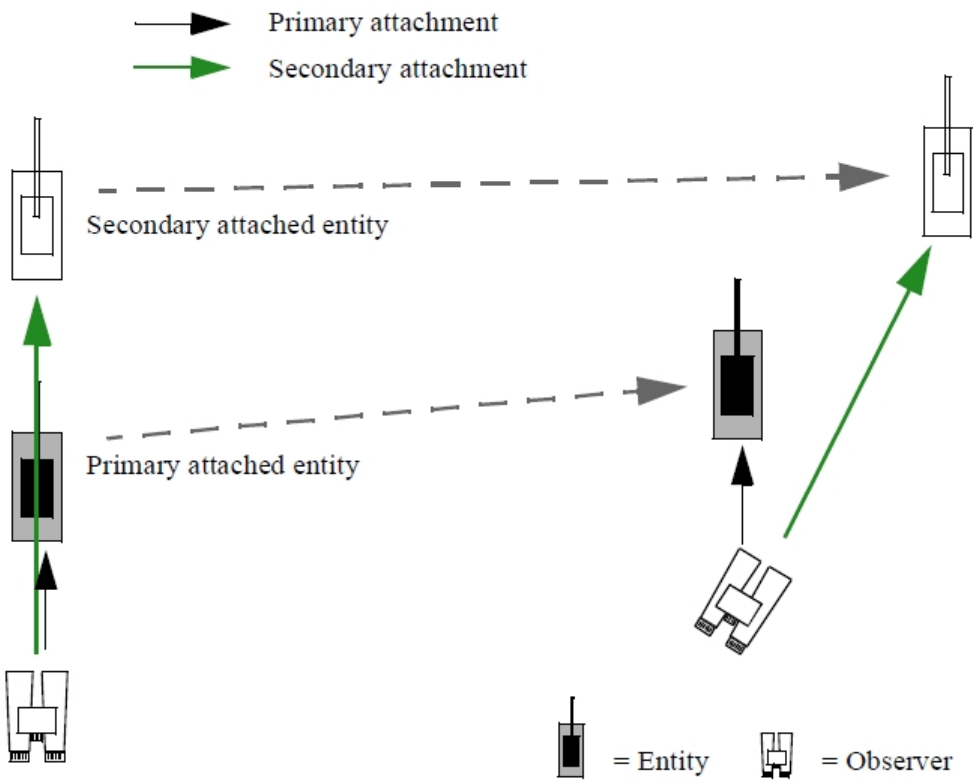

### 54.2.8 Tether Track Mode

Tether Track mode combines Tether mode and Track mode. The observer's position changes with that of the entity to which it is attached, as in Tether mode, while its orientation changes to remain focused on a secondary, tracked entity.

Orientation controls are disabled.

Figure 459 illustrates the characteristics of Tether Track mode.

**Figure 459. Tether Track mode**




## 54.2.9 Tether Location Track Mode

Tether Location Track mode works like Tether Track mode, except that it tracks a location on the ground instead of an entity.

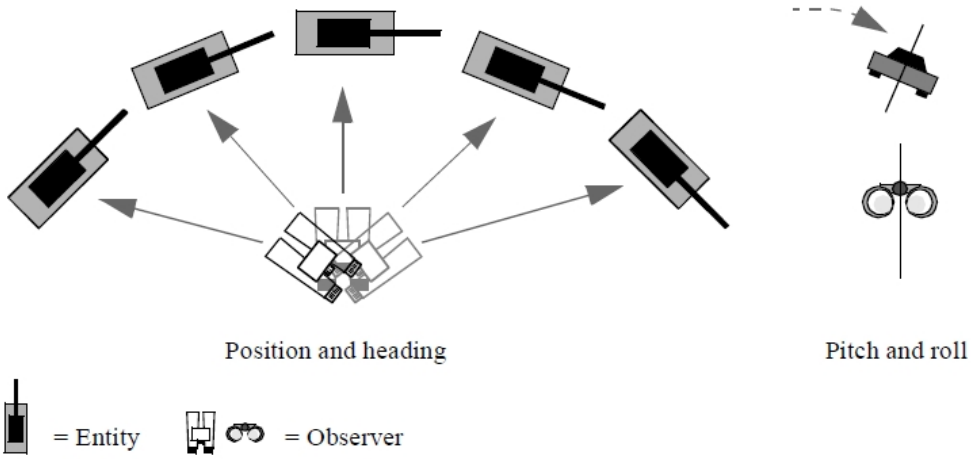
## 54.2.10 Track Mode

In Track mode, the observer's heading changes to track the simulation object's movement, keeping it centered in the field of view. The observer's position does not change. The observer maintains its relationship to the simulation object as follows:

- When the simulation object's position changes, the observer's heading changes to keep the entity centered in the observer's view; the observer's position does not change.
- When the simulation object's heading changes, the observer's heading does not change.
- When the simulation object's pitch or roll change, the observer's pitch and roll do not change.

Figure 460 illustrates the characteristics of Track mode.

**Figure 460. Track mode**




## 54.3. Attach Modes in the 2D View

The 2D projectionview supports Follow mode and Tether mode. In Follow mode, the heading of the observer changes with the entity (if Orient North is disabled); in Tether mode, it does not. You can use the standard movement keys (**w**, **a**, **s**, **d**) to offset the observer with respect to the simulation object's position. You can use the orbit keys (left arrow, right arrow) to offset the observer's orientation with respect to the entity's orientation (in Follow mode) or the terrain.

If the observer is attached to an entity in the 3D view and you switch to the 2D view, the attach mode maps to either Follow or Tether modes, as shown in Table 44. If you then switch back to the 3D view, the original attach mode is restored.

**Table 44. 3D to 2D attachment mode mapping**

| 3D Attach Mode | 2D Attach Mode |
|---|---|
| Follow | Follow |
| Mimic | Follow |
| Mimic Track | Follow |
| Mimic Location Track | Follow |
| Space Follow | Follow |
| Tether | Tether |
| Tether Track | Tether |
| Tether Location Track | Tether |
| Track | Tether |

## 54.4. Attaching the Observer at Startup

To attach the observer to an entity when you load a scenario, save a view and specify it as a favorite, as described in "53.12.4 Specifying the Scenario Startup View" on page 1127.

# 55. Inset Views, Sensor FOVs, HUDs, and Depth of Field

This chapter describes several kinds of special secondary windows plus head up displays.


55.1. Inset Views ..... 1146
55.2. Displaying Cockpit Displays ..... 1147
55.3. Displaying Instrument Panels ..... 1148
55.3.1 Configuring Entities to Use Instrument Panels ..... 1150
55.4. Displaying Sensor Views ..... 1150
55.4.1 Displaying a Sensor Field of View Cone ..... 1151
55.4.2 Controlling the Sensor View ..... 1152
55.5. Using the Depth of Field Effect ..... 1155
55.5.1 Configuring Depth of Field ..... 1157

## 55.1. Inset Views

You can display inset views of individual simulation objects. Figure 461 shows a helicopter hovering over the Ala Moana area in the *MAK Earth (online).mtf* terrain with an inset view of a car driving through the town.

**Figure 461. Inset view**

---

! By default, when you create an inset view, the observer in the inset view is attached to the simulation object in Mimic mode. This has the side effect of causing the 3D model in the main window to disappear. (The reverse occurs if you attach the observer in the main window to the simulation object in Mimic mode.) To make the model reappear, select the inset view and change the attach mode or detach the observer.

---

You can change the observer position and orientation in an inset view using keyboard controls. You can also edit window and channel properties for the window in the Display Engine Configuration Editor. (For information about the Display Engine Configuration Editor, please see Chapter 76, *Display Engine and Window Management*.)

When you create an inset view, the title bar contains the simulation object's name. However, the window is not actually tied to the simulation object and you can change the view in the inset view and view other simulation objects. The title bar will continue to display the name of the simulation object for which the window was created.

➤ **To open an inset view:**

1. Select the object for which you want to create an inset view.
2. Choose **Objects > Create Window > Create Inset View**.

## 55.2. Displaying Cockpit Displays

VR-Forces can display cockpit displays created with GL Studio. It includes cockpits for fixed-wing, rotary-wing, and ground vehicle entities. As with other entity effects, cockpits have schemas and model definitions that you map to entity types. For details about cockpit display models, please see *"Adding New Cockpit Display Models,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

VR-Forces supports 2D cockpits (Figure 462) and 3D cockpits (Figure 463). A 2D cockpit is fixed to the center of the screen and you cannot zoom in or out on the instrument panel. A 3D cockpit is aligned with the front of the vehicle. If you move the eyepoint, the instrument panel moves in or out of view as you would expect. You can zoom in and out on the instruments.

**Figure 462. 2D cockpit**

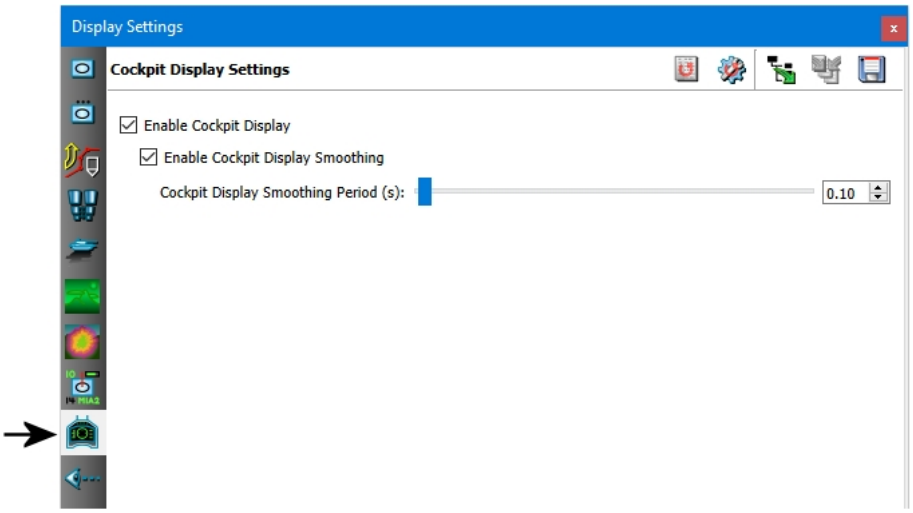
**Figure 463. 3D cockpit**

- Cockpits are displayed only when the observer is attached to an entity in Mimic mode.
- VR-Forces includes one 3D cockpit, for the F-16 fighter jet.
- Cockpits are not supported on Linux.

➤ **To display cockpits:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Cockpit Display Settings page (Figure 464).

**Figure 464. Cockpit display settings**




3. Select or clear the Enable Cockpit Display check box.
4. Optionally, select the Enable Cockpit Display Smoothing check box. This smooths the display in the dynamic widgets, such as orientation or velocity, so they show a smoothed value rather than instantaneous changes.
5. Attach the observer to an entity in Mimic mode.

You can also enable and disable cockpit displays by choosing **Settings > Cockpit Displays** or by clicking the Cockpit Displays button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

## 55.3. Displaying Instrument Panels

Instrument panels are inset windows that display a vehicle instrument such as an altimeter or artificial horizon. Unlike a cockpit display, which is a fixed display that operates in Mimic mode, an instrument panel is an independent window (like an inset

view) that you can place anywhere on the screen (Figure 465). It does not affect the observer mode. You can organize multiple instrument panels to create your own virtual cockpit.

**Figure 465. Instrument panels**

When you create an instrument panel, the title bar of the window lists the entity for which you created it.

---

- Instrument panels are GL Studio controls.
- Instrument panels are not supported on Linux.
- If the source of the instrument panel is removed from the exercise, for example when a Logger recording rewinds, the instrument panels are removed from the inset windows. To see them again you must open new instrument panels. Because the relationship between an instrument panel window and an entity is not persistent across multiple runs of an exercise, you cannot save an instrument panel layout for an entity. (You could save the layout of the windows to a display configuration, but they would not display instrument panels when you loaded the configuration.)
- If you want to put multiple instrument panels in one window, like the six-pack panel provided with VR-Forces, you must use GL Studio.

---

➤ **To open an instrument panel:**

1. Select the entity for which you want to display an instrument panel.
2. Choose **Objects > Create Window > Create Instrument Panel >** *panel*, where *panel* is one of the instrument panels listed.

### 55.3.1 Configuring Entities to Use Instrument Panels

VR-Forces includes a set of instrument panels for fixed-wing aircraft, although many of them may be appropriate for rotary-wing aircraft, and even for ground vehicles. (For example, you might want to show a compass for a ground vehicle to get its heading or an altimeter to show its height above sea level.) The availability of instrument panels to an entity is determined by the **instrumentPanelCategory** parameter in its model definition.

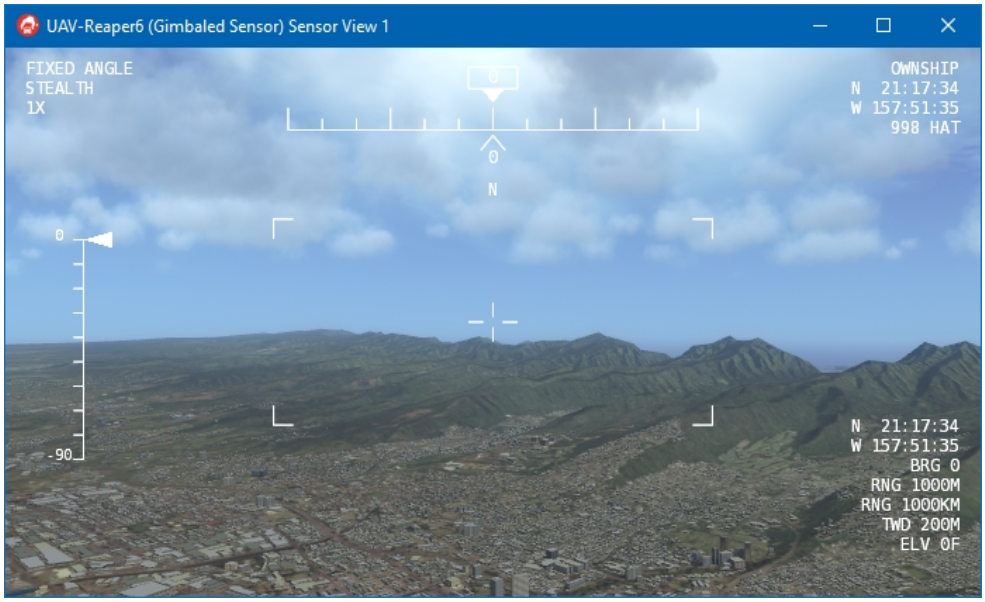
The instrument panels provided with VR-Forces have the **instrumentPanelCategory** set to FixedWing. All fixed-wing entities have this parameter set in their model definition. None of the other entities do. If you want other entities to display instrument panels provided with VR-Forces, you can add this parameter to their model definitions. (You could also copy an instrument panel model definition and change the category to some other value if you want to. Regardless, to use an instrument panel, an entity's model definition must include the **instrumentPanelCategory** parameter and set it to a valid value.)

If you create new instrument panels, you must add instrument panel model definitions for them and specify a value for the **instrumentPanelCategory** parameter. Then you can add the parameter to the appropriate entity model definitions.

## 55.4. Displaying Sensor Views

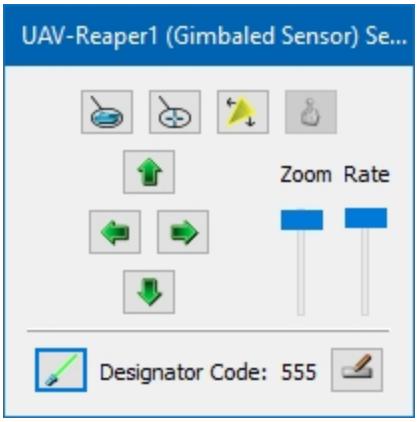
VR-Forces can display the view from gimbaled visual sensors, such as a camera on a UAV (3D only). The view is displayed in an inset window that has information about the observer mode and area being viewed (Figure 466). The window has its own observer and you can change the observer mode in the view.

**Figure 466. Sensor View**



Each sensor view has a control panel (Figure 467) that you can use to move the sensor, change its aim, and zoom in and out. You can also lase whatever the sensor is looking at.

**Figure 467. Sensor Control Panel**




The UAVSensorDemo example scenario demonstrates use of an entity with a gimbaled sensor. The scenario also has a Lua script that shows how to successively aim the sensor at many entities.

➤ **To display a sensor view:**

1. Select an entity that has a gimbaled sensor.
2. Choose **Objects > Create Window > Create Sensor View >** *sensor*

## 55.4.1 Displaying a Sensor Field of View Cone

You can display translucent cones that show the area on the terrain that a gimbaled sensor is observing. Each cone is a different color. Figure 468 shows two sensor field of view cones. One is focused on an entity and is zoomed in for a tight focus. The other is focused on a point on the terrain.

**Figure 468. Sensor field of view cones**

➤ **To display sensor field of view cones:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 427 on page 1088).
3. In the list of settings, select the Sensor Fields of View check box.

---

You can also enable and disable sensor field of view cones by choosing **Observer > Sensor Fields of View** or by clicking the Sensor Fields of View button (▲) on the Observer Settings Toolbar.

---

## 55.4.2 Controlling the Sensor View

When a sensor view opens, a control panel opens with it (Figure 467 on the previous page). This control panel works only with its associated sensor view. If you open multiple sensor views, there will be a control panel for each one. The Sensor Control Panel lets you do the following:

- Aim the sensor at a simulation object or a point on the terrain. (You can also aim a sensor with the Sensor Aim set data request. For details, please see "34.65. Sensor Aim" on page 828.)
- Set the sensor to scan mode. (You can also set a sensor to scan with the Sensor Aim set data request.)

- Take control of the sensor with a joystick. The joystick must be configured for use with the sensor view. For details about configuring joysticks, please see "74.3. Configuring Joysticks and Keyboard Control" on page 1504.
- Zoom the sensor. (You can also zoom a sensor with the Sensor Zoom set data request. For details, please see "34.67. Sensor Zoom" on page 829.)
- Move the sensor field of view. You can change the sensitivity of the movement buttons.
- Lase the center point of the sensor view.
- Set the laser's designator code.

---

If you zoom the sensor view to the maximum magnification and the terrain turns white, you can fix the problem by setting the clipping plane to Clamp Near Clip When Magnified. For details, see "76.4.1 Setting the Clipping Planes" on page 1531.

---

➤ **To aim the sensor at a simulation object:**

1. Click the Aim at Simulation Object button ( ). The Entity to Track dialog box opens.
2. Select the simulation object you want to aim at.
3. Click OK.

➤ **To aim the sensor view at a location:**

1. Click the Aim at Location button ( ). The Location to Track dialog box opens.
2. Click a location on the terrain or enter the coordinates in the dialog box.
3. Click OK.

➤ To set a sensor to scan mode, click the Scan button ( ).

➤ To control the sensor field of view with a joystick, click the Joystick button ( ).

➤ To zoom the sensor view, adjust the Zoom slider.

➤ To move the sensor view, click any of the arrow buttons.

➤ To change the rate at which the arrow buttons move the sensor view, adjust the Rate slider.

If you enable lasing, the entity the sensor view is attached to lases the center point of the sensor view (Figure 469).

**Figure 469. Lasing a point in a sensor view**

➤ To lase the center point of the sensor view, in the Sensor View control panel click the Lase Object button ( ) on the control panel.

VR-Forces calculates a unique laser code for each sensor view so that there are no duplicate codes. You can change the laser designator code.

➤ **To specify the laser designator code when lasing from a sensor view:**

1. In the Sensor View control panel, click the Laser Code button ( ). The Laser Code dialog box opens.
2. Type a 3 or 4 digit code between 111 and 1788, using only digits 1 through 8.
3. Click OK.

## Configuring a Gimbaled Sensor's Azimuth

The characteristics of a gimbaled sensor, such as where it is located on an entity and the range through which the sensor can scan (the azimuth), are configured in the Gimbaled Visual Sensor system. You can edit many properties in the Simulation Object Editor. In particular, you may want to edit the azimuth. If you want the sensor to swivel 360 degrees, set the Minimum Azimuth Angle and Maximum Azimuth Angle to the same value.

➤ **To edit the properties of a gimbaled sensor:**

1. Open the Simulation Object Editor. (For details about using the Simulation Object Editor, please see "Chapter 61. The Simulation Object Editor and SMSs" on page 1225.)
2. Select the entity that has a gimbaled sensor.
3. Select the Systems tab.
4. In the Sensors window, select the Gimbaled Visual Sensor.

5. Click the Properties button ( ).
6. Edit properties as desired.
7. Click OK.
8. Save the SMS.

## 55.5. Using the Depth of Field Effect

Depth of field controls the area in the scene that is in focus. Depth of field is calculated based on a focal depth and a focal range. The focal depth is the distance from the observer that is the center (focal point) of the area in focus. The focal range is the distance from the focal point that is in focus.

In Figure 470, the focal depth is about 10 meters, fairly close to the observer, and the focal range is also small, so that the scene is out of focus just past the car (note that the first large tree is out of focus). In Figure 471, the focal depth is the same, but the range is much greater, so the scene is in focus to the back of the parking lot.

In Figure 472, the focal depth is centered at the second large tree. The focal range is, again, fairly narrow, so that the person and car in the foreground are out of focus.

VR-Forces lets you set the focal depth automatically or manually. In either case, you can adjust the focal range.

**Figure 470. Depth of field (close)**

**Figure 471. Depth of field (far)**

**Figure 472. Depth of field, middle distance**

➤ **To enable depth of field:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 352 on page 976).

3. Select the observer mode for which you want to enable depth of field.
4. Select or clear the Depth of Field check box.

You can also enable or disable depth of field by choosing **Observer > Depth of Field**.

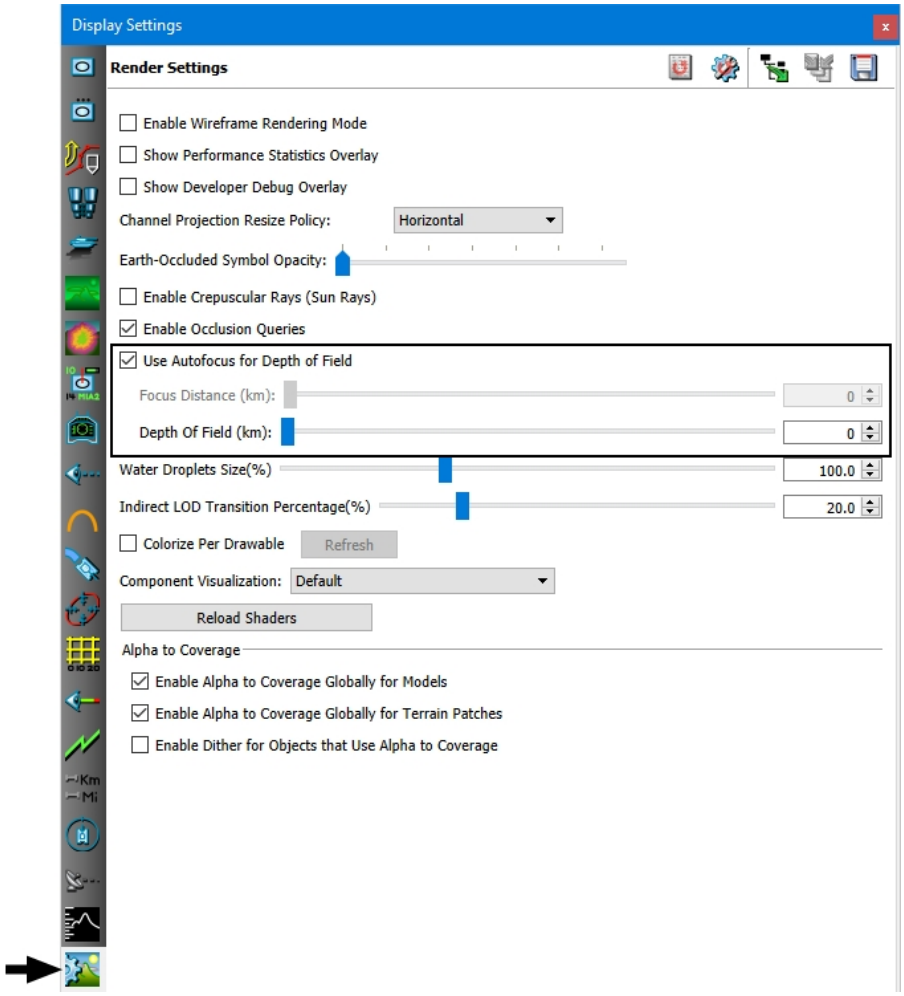
## 55.5.1 Configuring Depth of Field

You can enable and disable automatic depth of field and you can adjust the focal depth and focal range.

➤ **To configure depth of field:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 473).

**Figure 473. Depth of Field settings**



3. To use autofocus for focal depth, select the Use Autofocus for Depth of Field check box.
4. To set the focal depth manually, clear the Use Autofocus for Depth of Field check box and adjust the Focus Distance slider or specify a value in the box.
5. To adjust the focal range, adjust the Depth of Field slider or specify a value in the box.

# XI. Terrain

Each simulation takes place within the extents of a terrain database. A terrain database provides three-dimensional information about a geographic area and provides the environment within which simulation objects function. With the information in a terrain database, VR-Forces calculates height, intervisibility, and other three-dimensional information.

VR-Forces allows you to load terrain data in the following basic ways:

- Compose a terrain from elevation, imagery, and feature data.
- Open an MTF file.
- Stream terrain from local files or a terrain server such as VR-TheWorld Online.
- Open a terrain database in a supported format, such as FLT, DTED, or GDB.

The recommended work flow is:

1. Create an earth file.
2. Connect to the earth file.
3. Save the terrain as an MTF file.
4. Create a scenario and choose the MTF file as the scenario database.

The decision making process for choosing a terrain when you create a scenario is described in "Chapter 7. Creating and Running Scenarios" on page 211.

# 56. Introduction to Terrain Usage in VR-Forces

This chapter provides introductory information about terrain usage, including supported file formats, coordinate systems supported, and use of large terrain databases.


56.1. Composing Terrains (and Creating MTF Files) ..... 1162
56.2. Supported File Formats ..... 1162
56.2.1 Terrain Data ..... 1163
56.2.2 Elevation Data ..... 1163
56.2.3 Supported Image Formats ..... 1163
56.2.4 Supported Feature Data Formats in the Front-end ..... 1164
56.3. Feature Layers and Props ..... 1164
56.3.1 Geometric Representation of Point Feature Data ..... 1164
56.3.2 Feature Data Types Supported by the Back-end ..... 1165
56.4. Coordinate Systems ..... 1165
56.4.1 The UTM Coordinate System ..... 1165
56.4.2 Geocentric Terrain Databases ..... 1166
56.5. Loading Supported Databases ..... 1166
56.6. Using Large Terrain Databases ..... 1166
56.6.1 Terrain Paging ..... 1167
56.6.2 Terrain Streaming ..... 1167
56.7. Using Ground Clamping ..... 1168
56.7.1 Configuring Ground Clamping ..... 1169

## 56.1. Composing Terrains (and Creating MTF Files)

VR-Forces lets you compose terrains from a variety of supported data formats. You can combine elevation data (terrain patches), imagery, and feature data to create terrains.

VR-Forces offers the following basic methods for creating terrains:

- Compose a terrain by loading individual elevation, image, and feature data files. This method is best for relatively small terrains that do not require paging. It supports all of the coordinate systems that VR-Forces supports. For more information, please see Section 1.1, *"Creating a Composed Terrain"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
- Specify a set of files to load using an osgEarth format earth file. Use this method to stream terrain data from local or remote sources. This method is best for terrains with large amounts of elevation or image data, which would benefit from paging. For more information, please see Section 2.1, *"Connecting to Terrain Servers"* and Chapter 3, *Loading Data Using Earth Files*, both in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

When you compose a terrain, you can save it as a MAK terrain file (MTF), which is essentially a description of all of the data used to visualize the simulated 2D and 3D environment. Saving a terrain lets you automatically load all of the data that you loaded manually when you first created it.

You can save terrains in a cached format that loads terrain data more quickly than if the terrain is created from the source data. For details, please see Section 11.1, *"Configuring File Caching"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

## 56.2. Supported File Formats

VR-Forces can import elevation, terrain, images, models, and feature data. Some types of files can contain more than one type of information. For example, GeoTiff files can have elevation data or just have image data. The following sections list the supported formats.

---

In theory, VR-Forces can load any format supported by osgEarth if you use the earth file format to load them. However, VR-Forces does not include drivers for all of the formats supported by osgEarth. Furthermore, when using osgEarth, VR-Forces only supports geocentric terrains. If you are uncertain about support for a particular format, please contact support@mak.com.

---

### 56.2.1 Terrain Data

VR-Forces imports terrain data directly as terrain patches. It supports the following formats:

- MAK terrain database (*.gdb*)
- MAK encrypted data format (*.medf*)
- OpenFlight (*.flt*)
- MetaFlight (*.mft*)
- Shape terrain data (*.shp*)
- TerraPage (*.txp*)
- CDB (using an earth file)

VR-Forces provides limited support for data in the following formats. If you have problems loading data in these formats, MAK will try to assist you, but cannot guarantee that it will be possible to use your data.

- 3DS
- OSG
- IVE
- LWO

### 56.2.2 Elevation Data

VR-Forces supports the following types of elevation data:

- DTED (*.dt0*, *.dt1*, *.dt2*, *.dted*)
- GeoTiff
- DEM
- Arc/Info Binary Data (*.adf*)
- Other formats supported by osgEarth

### 56.2.3 Supported Image Formats

You can import images in the following formats:

- GeoTiff (*.tif*, *.tiff*)
- JPEG (*.jpg*, *.jpeg*)
- PNG
- RGB
- Windows bitmap (*.bmp*)
- GIF
- ECW (Windows only)

- Other formats supported by osgEarth using the GDAL driver. For a list of formats supported by GDAL, go to http://www.gdal.org/ and select the Supported Formats link. If you have problems loading an image format that is not in this list, please contact support@mak.com. However, we cannot guarantee that unlisted formats are fully supported. For more information about earth files, please see *"Connecting to Terrain Servers"* and Chapter 3, *Loading Data Using Earth Files* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

### 56.2.4 Supported Feature Data Formats in the Front-end

VR-Forces supports the following feature data formats in the front-end:

- Shape files
- S-57
- OGR vector formats referenced in earth files

## 56.3. Feature Layers and Props

A terrain can have objects such as buildings and trees embedded in it. These objects cannot be manipulated in this format. However, VR-Forces lets you extract these types of objects from the terrain and render them independently as props. Props are terrain elements that you can manipulate as separate objects.

You can add props to a terrain by extracting them from an external reference in a terrain patch or from a feature layer. You can also add props directly from the Props Palette.

A feature layer is a file that contains feature data such as point features, linear features, and areal features. You can extract point features as props. You can extract props from MAK Terrain Format (GDB) files, shapefiles (SHP), or DFAD data (DFD).

For more information, please see *"Adding Props to a Terrain,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

### 56.3.1 Geometric Representation of Point Feature Data

There are differences between how the front-end and back-end process feature data. This is because the information needed to simulate simulation object interaction with features is different from the information needed to render the scene.

The front-end renders point features such as buildings or trees based on the data provided in the feature layer. These objects could have been extracted as props, in which case they are represented as geometric objects in the terrain.

If you are streaming features using an earth file, you can configure the earth file to extrude buildings into 3D geometry. This capability is demonstrated in some of the insets in *MAK Earth (online).mtf*, for example the Boston and Honolulu insets.

The back-end representation of point features depends on how they are used. Collision avoidance treats them as bounding volumes with infinite height. Line-of-sight calculations treat them as bounding volumes with a defined height. If you extract features as props, the back-end treats them as geometry where that is appropriate and as features otherwise.

The back-end does not recognize extruded geometry.

### 56.3.2 Feature Data Types Supported by the Back-end

The back-end supports the following types of feature data files:

- MAK terrain database (*.gdb*)
- CTDB 4, 7, 7L (*.c4b*, *.c7b*, *.c7l*)
- Shape terrain data (*.shp*)
- S-57
- WFS
- OGR vector formats referenced in earth files
- VMAP

The preferred format for adding features is shapefiles. You can extract feature data from GDB, DFD, VMAP, and CTDB into shapefiles with the vectorNetworkToShapeFiles utility. For details, please see *"Extracting Feature Data from GDB to Shapefiles,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*. You can extract feature data from S-57 files into shapefiles with the ogr2ogr tool. For details, please see *"Converting S-57 Feature Data to Shapefiles,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

## 56.4. Coordinate Systems

VR-Forces supports UTM, geocentric, flat earth, and Lambert Conformal Conic coordinate systems. There is no presumption that a particular database format, such as OpenFlight or DTED, will use a particular coordinate system.

### 56.4.1 The UTM Coordinate System

VR-Forces includes several databases that use Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinates. UTM databases are well-suited to two-dimensional views and simulations on a relatively small geographic area. However, their accuracy decreases as you move away from the origin, so they are not well-suited for exercises that need to simulate over areas greater than one UTM zone.

There are several types of UTM systems. In general, the earth is divided into 60 zones generally 6 degrees wide in longitude. These zones may be further subdivided into quadrangles by using letter designations from south to north. This complicates references to UTM. For example, standard offset could be used with or without the quadrangles (which affects the northing portion of the coordinate), non-offset does not use the quadrangles, and Milgrid requires the quadrangles.

More specifically, UTM coordinates define two dimensional, horizontal, positions. UTM zone numbers designate 6 degree longitudinal strips extending from 80 degrees South latitude to 84 degrees North latitude. UTM zone characters designate eight degree zones extending north and south from the equator. There are special UTM zones between 0 degrees and 36 degrees longitude above 72 degrees latitude and a special zone 32 between 56 degrees and 64 degrees north latitude.

VR-Forces uses the following definition:

A non-Cartesian coordinate system in which the X, Y, and Z correspond to easting (nearly east), northing (nearly north), and height above an ellipsoid that approximates the surface of the earth. When in UTM mode (the default), VR-Forces uses an offset UTM coordinate system, one in which coordinates are expressed with respect to an origin located at the latitude and longitude specified in a configuration file. Typically, this will be the location of the origin of your terrain database.

### 56.4.2 Geocentric Terrain Databases

To support large play areas, simulations can use geocentric coordinates. In the geocentric coordinate system, the origin is at the center of the earth. The positive X-axis passes through the prime meridian at the equator; the positive Y-axis passes through 90 degrees east longitude at the equator; and the positive Z-axis passes though the North Pole.

## 56.5. Loading Supported Databases

MTF files reference elevation, image, and feature files that VR-Forces processes and loads when you load a scenario. However, you can also load terrain databases directly into VR-Forces. They will be converted to the VR-Forces internal format using default values. This process is less efficient than loading MTF terrains, may take more time, and must be repeated each time you load the terrain as part of a scenario or in the front-end.

When you create a scenario you can choose a terrain in any supported format. If you want to open a terrain using the **File > Open Terrain** menu option, you can only choose MTF files. To load a non-MTF terrain out of the context of creating a scenario, you must load it as a terrain patch.

If you load a terrain directly, you can still save it to MTF.

## 56.6. Using Large Terrain Databases

VR-Forces can support large databases, where large might mean a high polygon count, a large geographic area, or both. VR-Forces supports two methods for dealing with large databases – terrain paging and streaming terrain. Both approaches have a common goal – providing access to large amounts of data without loading all of that data into memory at any one time.

VR-Forces cannot arbitrarily page or stream terrains. It can page terrains that have been designed for paging and can stream terrains that are accessed through a terrain server, such as VR-TheWorld Server. For details about support for paged terrains, please see *“Loading MetaFlight Terrains”*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*. For details about connecting to terrain servers, please see *“Connecting to Terrain Servers”* and *“Creating an Earth File to Load Terrain Data”*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

Even if you use terrain paging or streaming terrain, it is still possible that a large terrain could exceed the memory limitations of your operating system.

### 56.6.1 Terrain Paging

Terrain paging breaks up a database into multiple cells that can be loaded independently. By comparison, a non-pageable terrain must be loaded in its entirety. When VR-Forces loads a paged terrain, the front-end loads the terrain at whatever level of detail is required by the zoom level. The simulation engine always loads terrain at the highest level of detail. Therefore, if you rapidly zoom into a section of the terrain in the front-end, there may be a delay in correlation between simulation objects and the terrain until the front-end catches up to the proper level of detail.

In general, the simulation engine does not load terrain until it needs the terrain to support the objects in the scenario. (Some terrain data is always loaded immediately, such as terrain data in OpenFlight format.) For example, if you create a new scenario and specify a paged terrain, the simulation engine does not load terrain until you create a simulation object. Then it only loads the terrain page required for the object.

When you run a scenario, as simulation objects move, the simulation engine tries to predict which terrain pages it will need to support the simulation objects and tries to page them in before the simulation objects need them. If the total polygon count required to page in required terrain exceeds the maximum polygon count configured, VR-Forces pages out (removes) unused pages. The simulation engine pages out the least recently used data.

---

Predictive terrain paging is done in real time, not just when a scenario is running. For example, when you load a scenario, all required terrain is paged in and when you add objects during scenario creation, terrain is paged in.

---

You can also manually page in terrain using terrain page-in areas. For details, please see*"Manually Paging-In Terrain in VR-Forces"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

Paging is done based on the following priorities:

- If a simulation object is moving, paging in terrain that it needs is a higher priority than predictive paging.
- Blocking terrain calls have a higher priority than non-blocking calls. (A blocking call is one that prevents the simulation from progressing until the call is completed. For more information, please see the **assertOnBlockingTerrainCalls** parameter in Table 69, in "B.1. The vrfSim.mtl Configuration File" on page 1584.)
- Paging out terrain to recover memory is a higher priority than paging in terrain. The need to page out is calculated based on the polygon count of the terrain, not on its memory usage.

### 56.6.2 Terrain Streaming

The term terrain paging is used in reference to static, local terrains. Another way to load terrain data for a large area is to stream it from a terrain server. The idea is similar to terrain paging. Only the data you need at a particular location is loaded.

The difference is that a terrain server can serve many computers at a time and normally holds much more data than a static local terrain. It can stream elevation data, imagery, map data, and feature data. It may have data at multiple levels of resolution for a particular portion of the terrain. VR-Forces supports connection configurations to terrain servers, including MAK's VR-TheWorld Server.

## 56.7. Using Ground Clamping

Because of differences in terrain databases among exercise participants, entities can sometimes appear to be underground or hovering above the terrain surface. To compensate, VR-Forces can clamp land and sea entities to the terrain surface. When ground clamping is enabled, VR-Forces keeps an entity anchored to the terrain surface regardless of the altitude data contained in its state update.

---

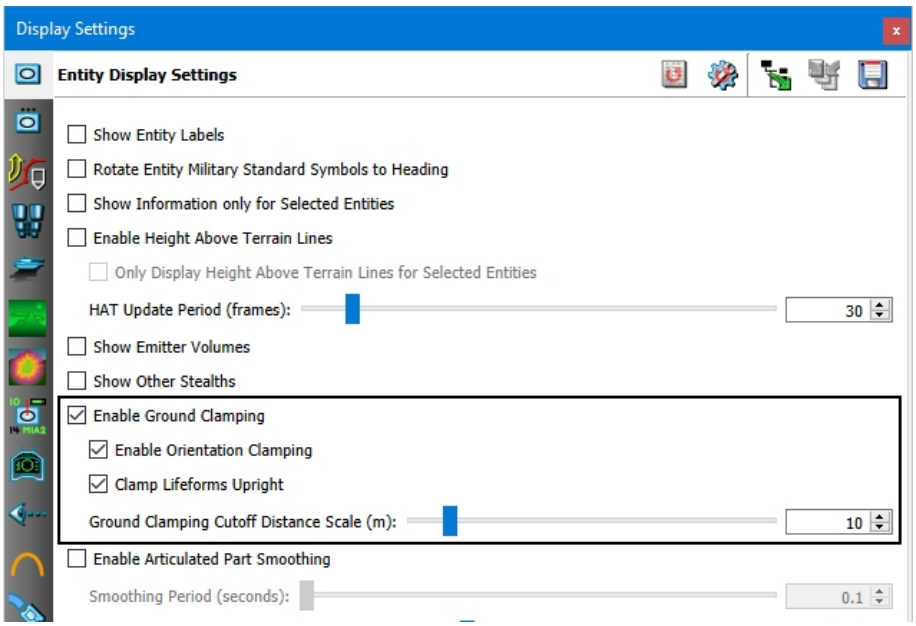
- Use of ground clamping can reduce your frame rate. If you correlate the simulation and visualization terrain databases, you can eliminate the need to use ground clamping.
- Although ground clamping controls are available in aggregate-level scenarios, since aggregate-level scenarios do not use 3D models, they are not useful.

---

➤ **To enable or disable ground clamping:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 474).

**Figure 474. Ground clamping settings**




3. Select or clear the Enable Ground Clamping check box.

You can also enable and disable ground clamping by choosing **Settings > Ground Clamping**, or clicking the Ground Clamping button ( ) on the Display Settings Toolbar.

### 56.7.1 Configuring Ground Clamping

You can configure the following aspects of ground clamping:

- Enable or disable ground clamping.
- Enable or disable orientation clamping.
- Force lifeforms to remain upright relative to the plane of their location when moving up slopes or steps, rather than being perpendicular to the terrain.
- The distance from the terrain within which entities are clamped.

➤ **To configure ground clamping:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Entity Display Settings page (Figure 474 on the previous page).
3. To enable or disable a ground clamping option, select or clear its check box.
4. To specify the distance from the terrain in which entities are ground clamped, adjust the Ground Clamping Cutoff Distance Scale slider or type a value, in meters, in the box. You can also access the Ground Clamping Cutoff Distance Scale slider by clicking the down arrow next to the Ground Clamping button on the Display Settings Toolbar.

The setting for the Ground Clamping Cutoff Distance Scale maximizes at 100 meters. If you set it to the maximum, the distance is infinite and all entities are ground-clamped.

# 57. Displaying Terrain Information

This chapter describes how to change the display of terrain to provide different types of useful terrain information.


57.1. Introduction ..... 1172
57.2. Displaying Grid Lines ..... 1172
57.2.1 Configuring Grid Lines ..... 1173
57.3. Displaying Models and Terrain in Wireframe Mode ..... 1174
57.4. Filtering Earth File Layers ..... 1175
57.5. Displaying Feature Data (2D) ..... 1176
57.5.1 Displaying a List of Vector Features ..... 1178
57.5.2 Changing the Colors Used for Feature Data ..... 1179
57.6. Selecting a 2D View Layer ..... 1180
57.7. Displaying Coordinates and Soil Type for a Location ..... 1180
57.8. Viewing the Map Scale ..... 1181
57.8.1 The Map Scale Overlay ..... 1181
57.9. Configuring Visible Surfaces (GDB Soil Types) ..... 1182
Terrain Databases Provided with MAK Applications ..... 1183

# 57.1. Introduction

As you create and view simulations, you may need information about the terrain. By changing how terrain is displayed, you can get some of this information. If your terrain does not have texture data or an image overlay, features such as elevation coloring can provide a more realistic look to the terrain.

For information about how to compose terrains, please see Chapter 1, *Composing Terrains*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

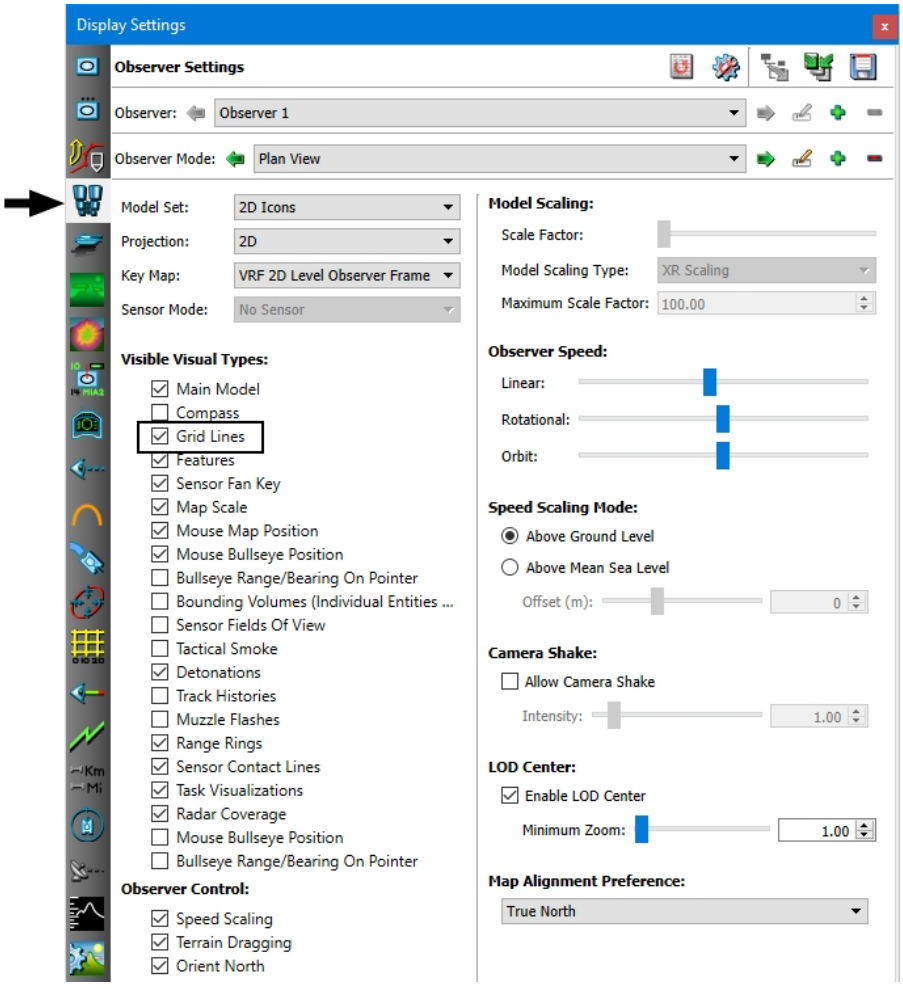
# 57.2. Displaying Grid Lines

VR-Forces can display grid lines in the 2D view. Grid-lines are an observer-specific setting.

To enable or disable grid lines:

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page (Figure 475).

**Figure 475. Observer Settings page**



3. Select Plan View mode (or a locally created 2D observer mode).
4. Select or clear the Grid Lines check box.

---

You can also enable or disable grid lines by choosing **Observer > Grid Lines**.

---

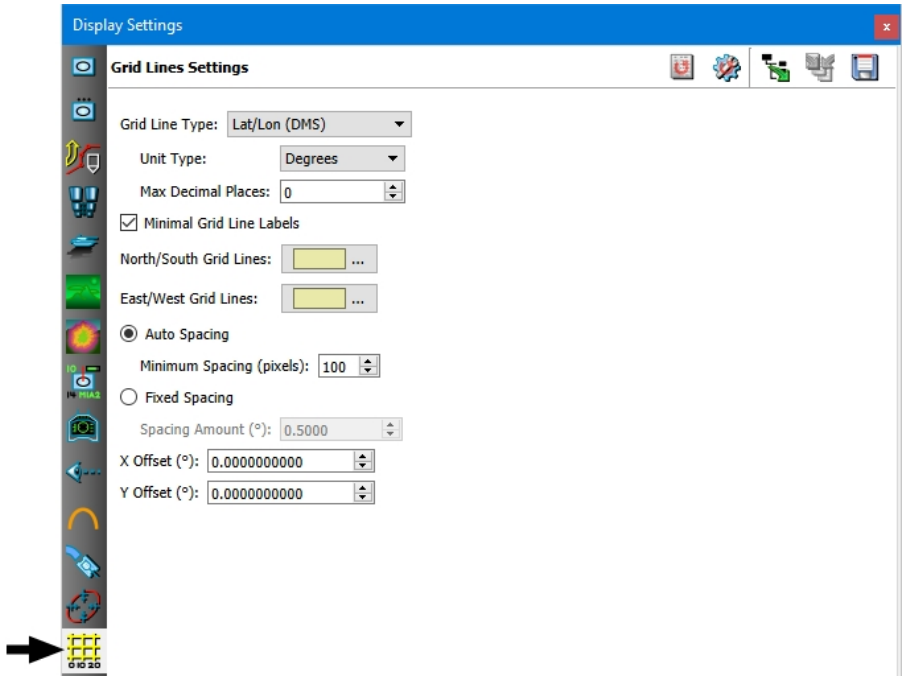
### 57.2.1 Configuring Grid Lines

You can configure the coordinate system used for grid lines, the precision, and the spacing. Spacing can be fixed, in meters, or determined by VR-Forces using a specified number of screen pixels. Fixed spacing can result in a very tight grid and unreadable labels as you zoom out. Auto spacing does not have this problem. However, the grid lines constantly recalculate as you zoom in and out.

➤ **To configure grid lines:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Grid Lines Settings page (Figure 476).

**Figure 476. Grid Lines Settings page**



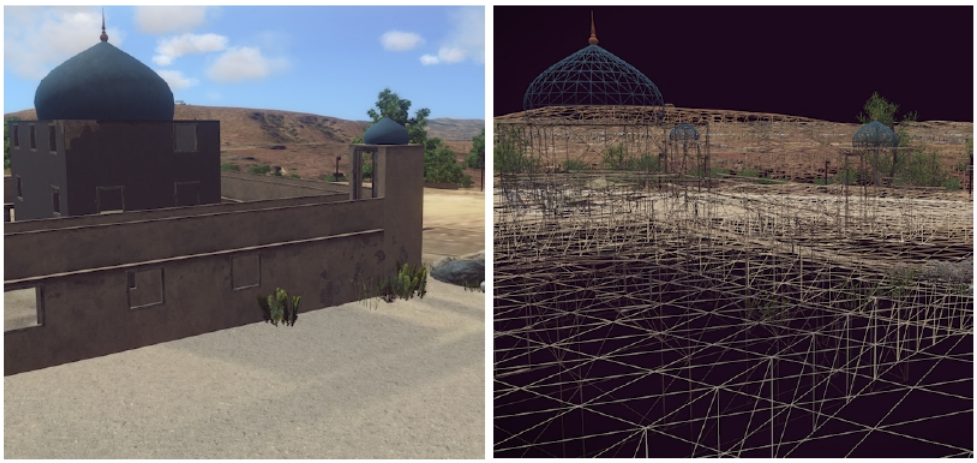

3. To change the coordinate system used for grid lines, select an option in the Grid Line Type list. The list displays grid line types that are appropriate for the type of database loaded. (If no database is loaded, the coordinate system is set to Flat Earth.)
4. To specify the unit type for the grid line labels, select an option on the Unit Type list.

5. To specify the precision of the grid line labels, enter a value in the Decimal Places box.
6. To show more or less information at each grid line, clear or select the Minimal Grid Line Labels check box.
7. To use different colors for the north/south or east/west grid lines, choose a color for the lines.
8. To change the spacing type, select AutoSpacing or Fixed Spacing and specify a value for the chosen spacing type.
9. To specify an offset from the origin, change the values for X Offset and Y Offset.

## 57.3. Displaying Models and Terrain in Wireframe Mode

In wireframe mode, VR-Forces displays the polygons that make up the terrain and objects (Figure 477).

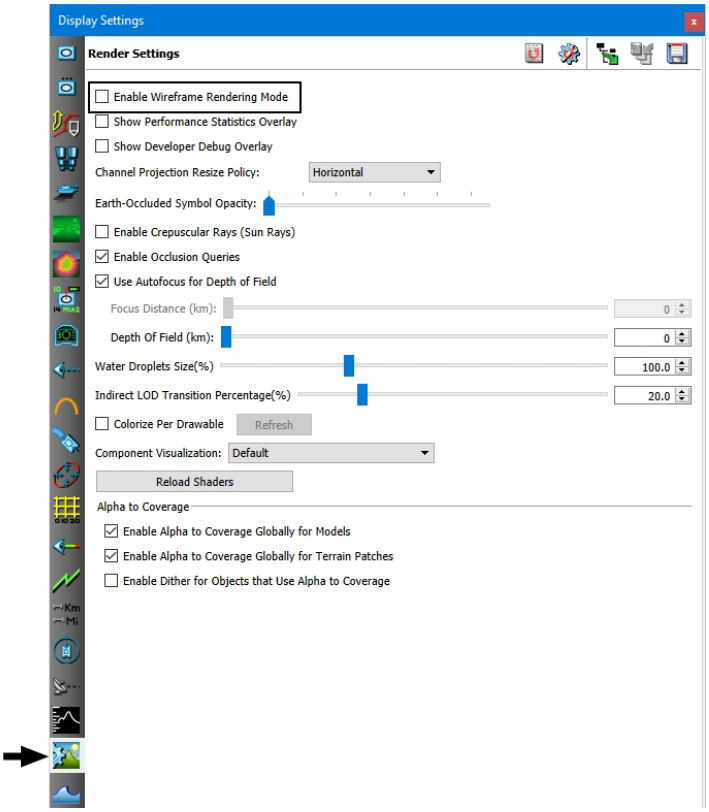
**Figure 477. Wireframe off and on**



➤ **To enable or disable wireframe mode:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 478).

**Figure 478. Render Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Wireframe Rendering Mode check box.

---

You can also enable and disable wireframe mode by choosing **Settings > Wireframe Rendering**.

---

## 57.4. Filtering Earth File Layers

When you load a terrain using an earth file, imagery and feature data is specified in image elements and model elements. You can load multiple instances of these types of data, resulting in a rich, complex terrain. However, if you are only interested in certain types of terrain features, such as roads or rivers, displaying all of the terrain data can obscure the data that you are most interested in. To help declutter the map, you can filter out image and model layers globally or by observer mode.

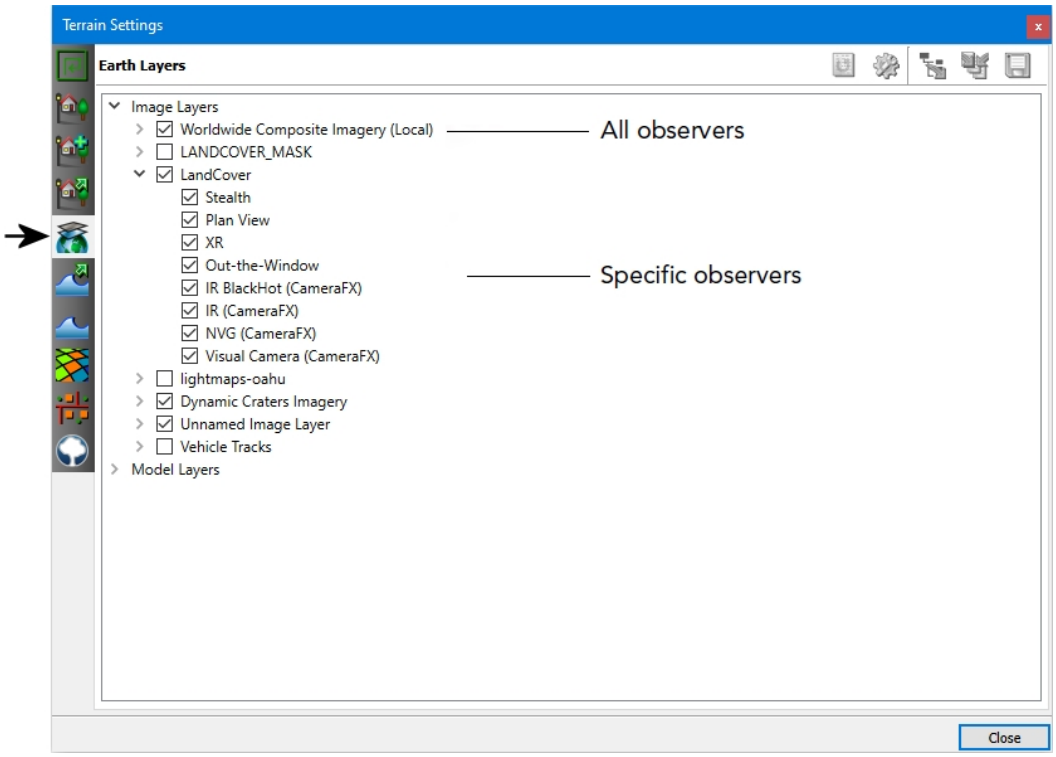
This feature is particularly useful if you want to show some layers in the PVD observer mode and others in one of the 3D observer modes. Settings are saved to the MTF file so that they are in effect in all scenarios that use the terrain.

- Filtering an earth file layer affects all open windows. You cannot hide a layer in one window and leave it open in a different one.
- Filtering only affects the front-end. All layers are loaded in the back-end.

➤ **To filter out earth file layers:**

1. Choose **Settings > Terrain**. The Terrain Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Earth Layers page (Figure 479).

**Figure 479. Earth Layers page**




3. To display or hide an image or model layer for all observer modes, select or clear its check box.
4. To display or hide an image or model layer for a particular observer mode, expand the entry for the layer you want to change and select or clear the check box for the observer mode you want to change.

## 57.5. Displaying Feature Data (2D)

If a terrain contains feature data, you can display it in the 2D view observer mode. Figure 480 shows a section of the Little Pond terrain with features disabled and enabled.

**Figure 480. Feature data**

This setting only displays features imported from GDB files or shapefiles. It does not display features streamed from a terrain server. If you load features using an earth file, they are drawn (or not drawn) based on the configuration information in the file.

---

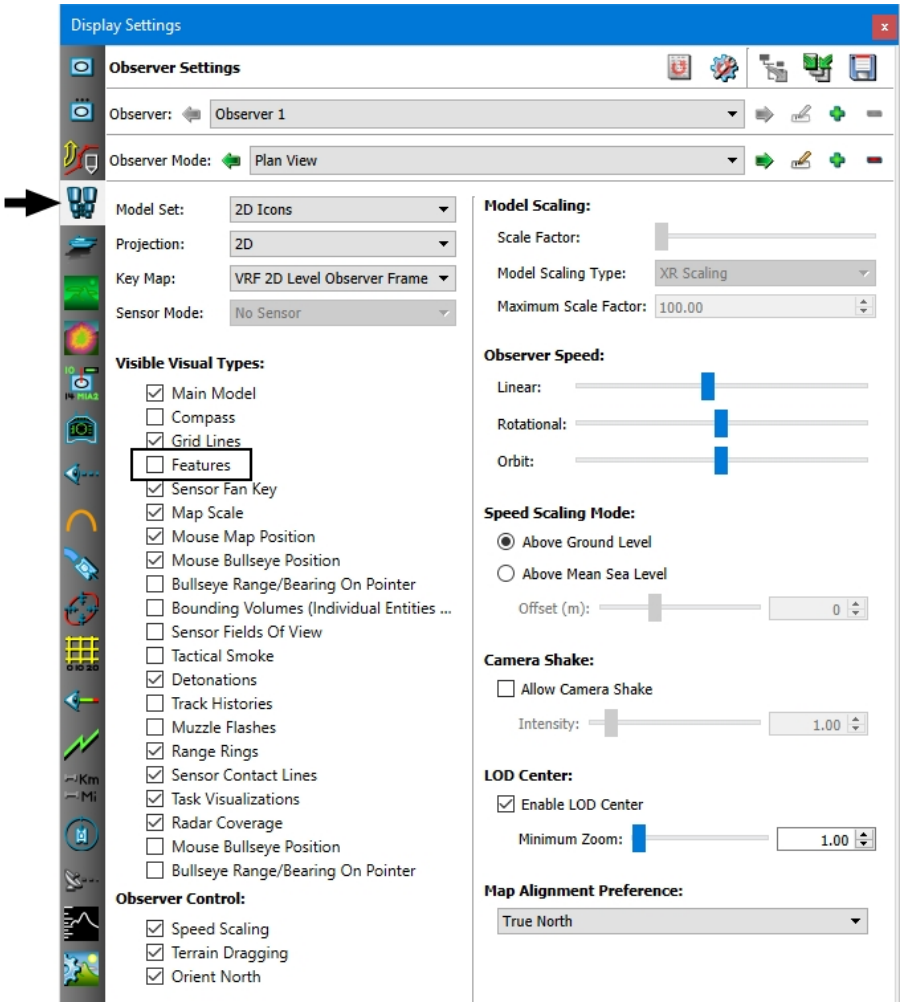
If your terrain has many features, displaying them can take a long time.

---

➤ **To show or hide feature data:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Observer Settings page.
3. In the Observer Mode list, select Plan View (Figure 481).

**Figure 481. Observer Settings page, Plan View observer mode**




4. Select or clear the Features check box.

---

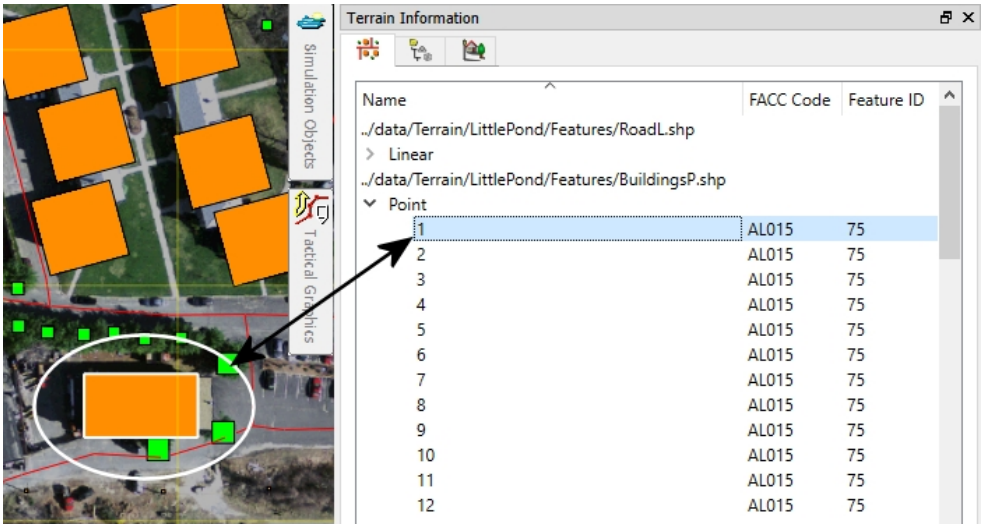
You can also enable or disable display of feature data by choosing **Observer > Features**.

---

## 57.5.1 Displaying a List of Vector Features

If a terrain has vector features, they are listed on the Vector Network tab of the Terrain Information Panel. If you select a feature in the list, it is highlighted in the display, and the other way around (Figure 482).

**Figure 482. Vector feature selected**




➤ **To display the feature list:**

1. Choose **View > Terrain Information Panel**. The Terrain Information Panel opens.
2. Select the Vector Network tab (Figure 482).
3. Expand the top-level categories to see the lists of individual features.

## 57.5.2 Changing the Colors Used for Feature Data

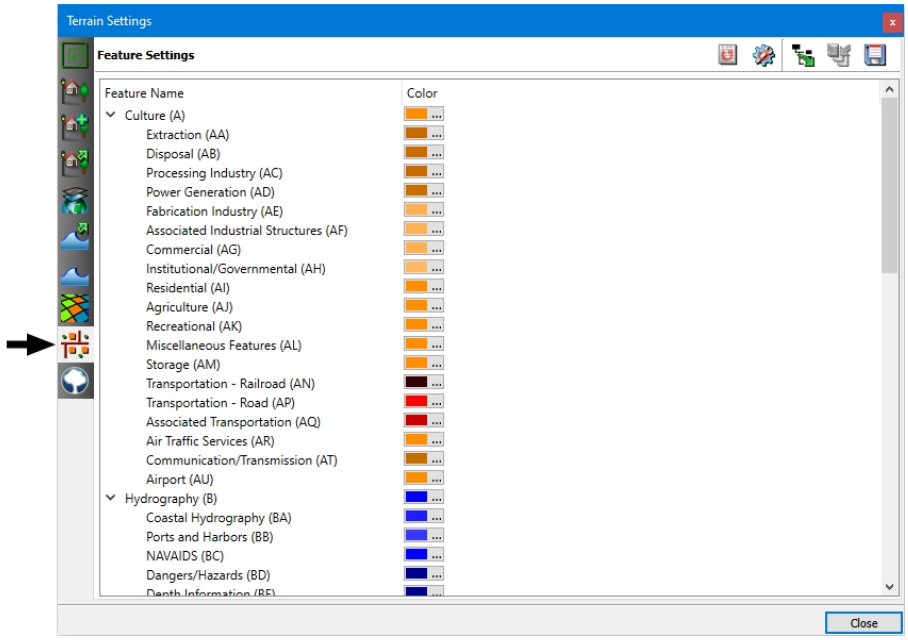
If a terrain database contains feature data, you can change the colors used to display it. In Figure 483 the Woodland feature in the Little Pond terrain was changed to pink. Compare it to the default color (Figure 480 on page 1177).

**Figure 483. Feature data with color change**

➤ **To change the color of feature data:**

1. Choose **Settings > Terrain**. The Terrain Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Feature Settings page (Figure 484).

**Figure 484. Feature Settings page**




3. Click the color swatch for the feature that you want to change. A color picker dialog box opens.
4. Select the color that you want to use.
5. Click OK.

## 57.6. Selecting a 2D View Layer

osgEarth terrains can have different visible layers to display in the 2D view. These can be layers defined specifically to display contour lines, annotations, and so on.

➤ To select a 2D View Layer, choose the layer from the 2D View Layer toolbar.

## 57.7. Displaying Coordinates and Soil Type for a Location

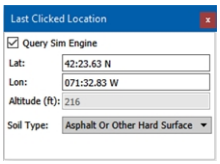
You can display the coordinates and soil type (if defined) of features and any point in the terrain. Soil type must be provided by the simulation engine. If you do not choose to query the simulation engine, the Last Clicked Location Panel just displays coordinates using data from the front-end.

The Last Clicked Location Panel becomes unavailable if you query the simulation engine and it takes more than 1/2 second for a response.

➤ **To check the coordinates and soil type of a feature or location:**

1. If the Last Clicked Location Panel is not open, choose **View > Last Clicked Location**.

**Figure 485. Last Clicked Location Panel**

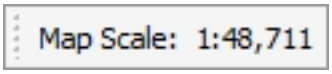



2. If you want soil type information, select Query Sim Engine.
3. Click a point on the terrain or click a feature. Information appears in the Last Clicked Location Panel.

## 57.8. Viewing the Map Scale

If you want to know the relationship between distance on your computer screen and distance on the terrain, you can view the Map Scale Toolbar (Figure 486). It shows the scale between screen space and world space, that is, one inch of screen = x inches of ground distance, or one meter of screen = x meters of ground. The scale changes as you zoom in and out.

**Figure 486. Map Scale Toolbar**

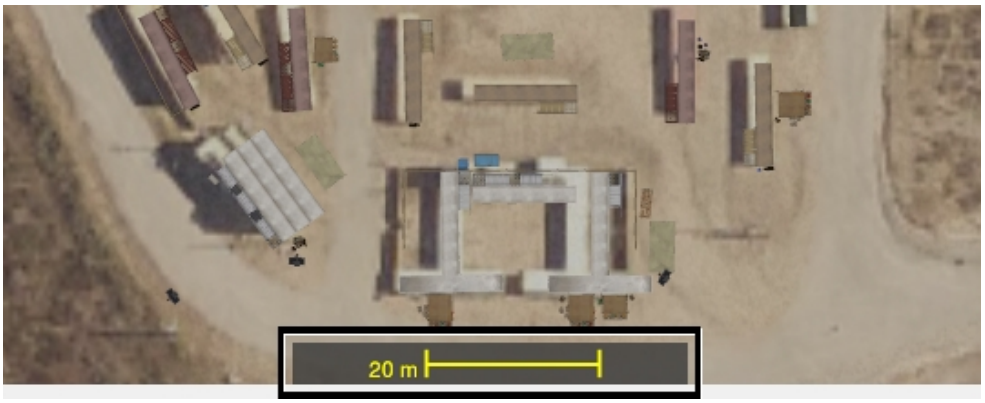



➤ To enable or disable display of the Map Scale Toolbar, choose **View > Map Scale Toolbar**.

### 57.8.1 The Map Scale Overlay

In Plan View Observer mode, you can display a map scale overlay on the terrain.

**Figure 487. Map scale overlay**

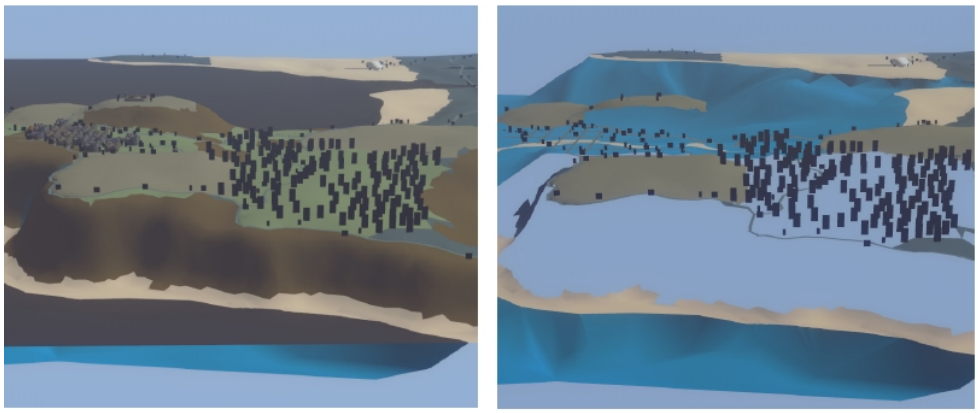



➤ To view or hide the map scale overlay, choose **Observer > Map Scale**.

# 57.9. Configuring Visible Surfaces (GDB Soil Types)

If a terrain patch was loaded from a GDB file, you can display or hide GDB soil types. Figure 488 shows the *makland.gdb* terrain file. The view on the left shows all soil types. The view on the right has Building, Grass, Ocean, and Rock surfaces hidden.

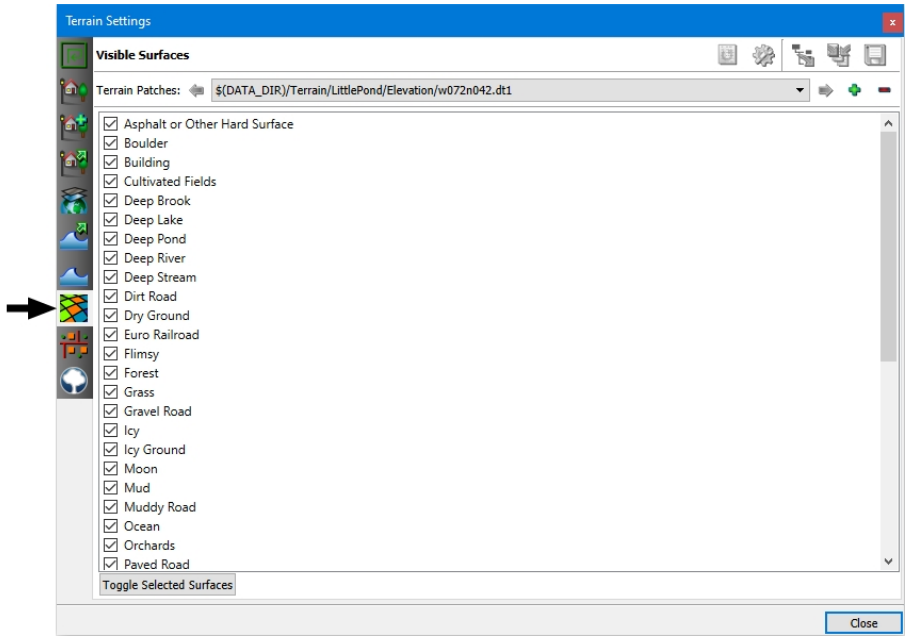
**Figure 488. Visible surfaces toggled off**



➤ **To display or hide GDB soil types:**

1. Choose **Settings > Terrain**. The Terrain Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Visible Surfaces page (Figure 489).

**Figure 489. Visible Surfaces page**




3. In the Terrain Patches list, select the terrain patch that you want to configure.
4. Select the check box for each soil type that you want to be visible.

5. Clear the check box for each soil type that you want to hide.
6. To change the state of multiple soil types at one time:
    a. Select (highlight) the names (not the check boxes) of the soil types whose state you want to change.
    b. Click Toggle Selected Surfaces.

## Terrain Databases Provided with MAK Applications

Table 45 describes the terrain databases provided with MAK Applications. Some have variants, which indicate the coordinate system or other variations. Terrains with "(online)" in the title connect to VR-TheWorld Server or another online server and require an internet connection. Some terrains have variations that emphasize a particular set of features or other data. MAK Applications also has a supplemental data package that includes additional terrains. Please contact your MAK salesperson for download details.

**Table 45. Terrain databases shipped with MAK Applications**

| Variation | Description |
|---|---|
| Aeronautical Charts US IFR (online).mtf<br>Aeronautical Charts US FVR (online).mtf | US Sectional Air Charts for IFR (Instrument Flight Rules) or VFR (Visual Flight Rules) with base imagery. These terrains are designed for airspace simulation using the 2D projection (plan view). |
| Ala Moana.mtf | A high-resolution area of Honolulu, Hawaii, USA, set into a raster map of the world. This terrain is stored locally and does not require an internet connection. |
| ArrivalsHall.mtf | An interior model of an international arrivals hall with passport control stations. |
| Bakersfield Topo Map (online).mtf | VR-TheWorldOnline with topographical maps for the area around Bakersfield, California, USA. This terrain contains some feature data that simulation objects in aggregate-level scenarios can take advantage of. |
| Brooklyn.mtf<br>Brooklyn (online).mtf | A high resolution city center surrounded by an extruded cityscape. Located geographically in Brooklyn, NY, USA, but not an actual location in that city. |
| DestructibleTerrain.mtf | A small terrain for demonstrating destructible terrain based on switch nodes. |
| Ground_DB II | FBX. A simple, generic ground terrain, including a road and some buildings, surrounded by water. |

**Table 45. Terrain databases shipped with MAK Applications (continued)**

| Variation | Description |
|---|---|
| LittlePond.mtf<br>LittlePond (online).mtf | Flat earth. DTED. Shape data. Imagery. A detailed suburban inset in a larger, less detailed terrain covering Boston, Massachusetts, USA and points west. |
| MAK Earth (online).mtf | VR-TheWorld Server terrain with high resolution insets for California, Honolulu, Hawaii, and some other cities. Includes streaming feature data. |
| MAK Earth Base (online).mtf | VR-TheWorld Server MAK Earth terrain with high resolution insets for Honolulu, Hawaii, and Boston, Massachusetts. Includes streaming feature data. |
| MAK Earth Bing Maps (online).mtf | A procedurally generated earth merged with high-resolution imagery and elevation. Imagery data is cached locally for 24 hours before it expires and MAK Applications queries the Bing Maps API for updated data. |
| MAK Earth Space (online).mtf | A procedurally generated earth merged with high-resolution imagery and elevation. |
| MAK Proving Ground | A non-realistic terrain with buildings, trees, roads, a runway, different types of soil, slopes, and other environments. It is designed specifically for testing.d |
| Makland.mtf | UTM. OpenFlight. A fictional terrain created by MAK. It includes a variety of terrain and feature data, including underwater features. It is placed in the Indian Ocean. |
| Massachusetts S-57 (online).mtf | A terrain that has S-57 chart data for Boston Harbor in Massachusetts. |
| ProceduralEarth (online).mtf<br>ProceduralEarth - OpenStreetMap (online).mtf | Procedurally generated terrains. Images are generated based on land use data, resulting in high quality visual imagery without the overhead of high resolution static images. Terrains include procedural airports with airport data for all airports in the world, and street data from OpenStreetMap. |
| RhoneValley (online).mtf | A procedurally generated view of the Rhone Valley in France, including procedural airports. |
| Sadr City.mtf<br>Sadr City (online).mtf | An urban geotypical Middle Eastern terrain in Sadr City, Iraq, a suburb of Baghdad. Ideal for urban scenarios. |

**Table 45. Terrain databases shipped with MAK Applications (continued)**

| Variation | Description |
|---|---|
| SanLuisObispo.mtf | Flat earth. DTED. Imagery. A terrain that covers a portion of California, USA. |
| SanLuisObispoTopoGdal.mtf | Geocentric. San Luis Obispo in topographic coordinates as local streaming terrain using an earth file. |
| Test terrains | Multiple terrains used for testing different terrain database capabilities. |
| Truman Carrier.mtf | A model in VR-Forces of an aircraft carrier as a terrain object rather than a simulation object. |
| VR-Village.mtf | GDB. Feature data. OpenFlight terrain. VR-Village is a fictional database created by MAK. It has a highly detailed small town in a larger, sparsely detailed desert environment. The town includes multilevel buildings, underground tunnels, and a road that tunnels through a mountain. The coordinates place it off the west coast of Africa. |
| WorldFlatEarthNoElevation.mtf | Flat earth. Low resolution projected image of the world. |
| WorldGeocentric.mtf | Geocentric. Low resolution projection of the world. |

# 58. Using Terrain Profiles

This chapter explains what terrain profiles are and how to display and configure them.


58.1. Terrain Profiles ..... 1188
58.1.1 Displaying a Line's Terrain Profile ..... 1188
58.1.2 Configuring Terrain Profiles ..... 1189
58.2. Analyzing Terrain Using a Terrain Profile Line ..... 1191

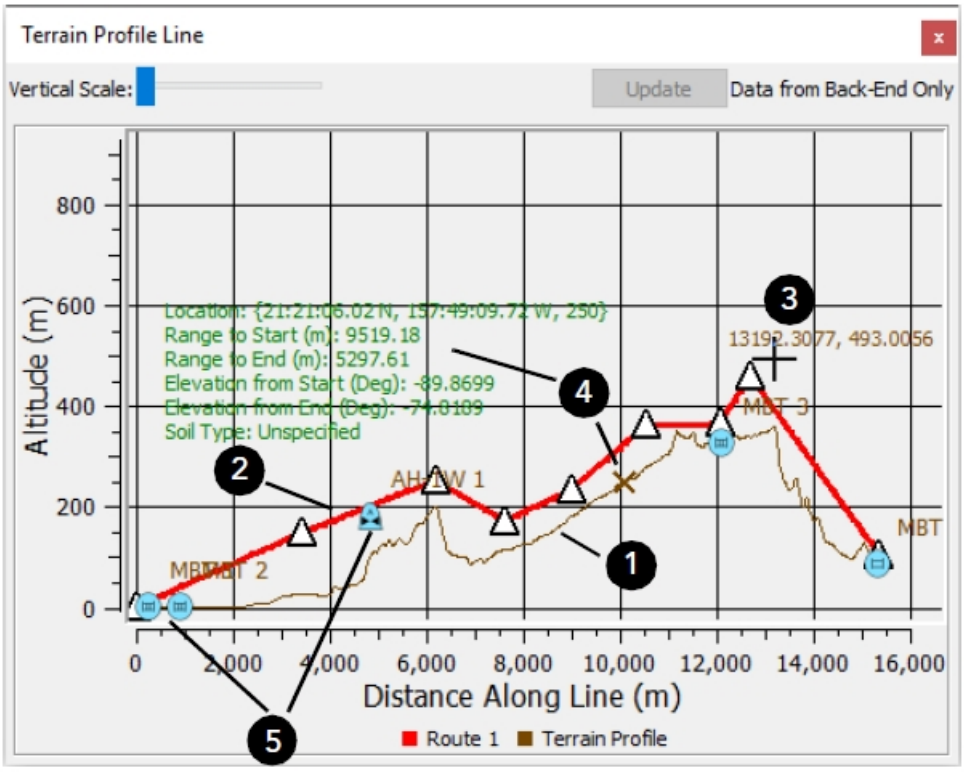
# 58.1. Terrain Profiles

You can display terrain profile windows for line objects that have height (in other words, routes and lines, but not phase lines), for intervisibility lines, and for a simulation object's track history. You can also create lines specifically for the purpose of showing the terrain profile. A terrain profile displays:

- A graph of the line against the terrain.
- Simulation objects within a specified distance of the line or track.
- Location of any one point along the line.
- The location on the grid of the cursor. This helps you estimate distances between the grid lines.

In Figure 490, the brown line (1) represents the terrain and the red line (2) shows a route. The location of the cursor in grid coordinates is displayed (3) and the location of one point along the terrain is displayed (4). Several entities are close to the route and they are shown as well (5).

**Figure 490. Terrain profile**




## 58.1.1 Displaying a Line's Terrain Profile

You can display a terrain profile for routes, intervisibility lines, and terrain profile lines.

➤ **To view a line's terrain profile, use one of the following methods:**

- Right-click a line and choose **Terrain Profile** from the shortcut menu.
- Open the Edit dialog box for a line and click Terrain Profile. (You can configure terrain profiles to open automatically when you open an Edit dialog box.)

To display the terrain profile for a track history, follow the procedure in "43.2.3 Displaying a Terrain Profile for a Track History" on page 980.

## 58.1.2 Configuring Terrain Profiles

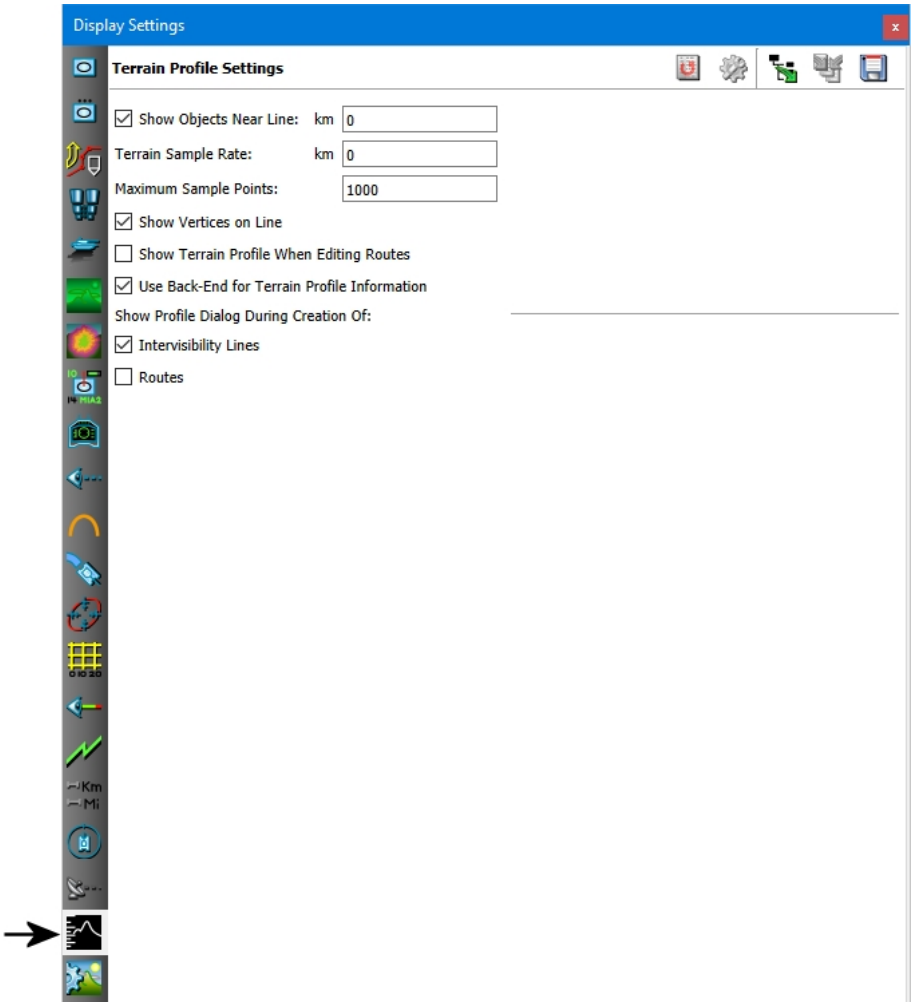
You can configure the following aspects of a terrain profile:

- The frequency, in distance, at which terrain height is sampled to create the graph in the Terrain Profile window.
- Whether to use the back-end for the terrain's height data when displaying the terrain profile line.
- The maximum number of points to sample along a line.
- Whether to show simulation objects that are close to the line and how close to the line simulation objects need to be to be shown.
- Whether to show the vertices of the line.
- Whether terrain profiles should be displayed automatically when a line is created or edited.

➤ **To configure terrain profiles:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Terrain Profile Settings page (Figure 491).

**Figure 491. Terrain Profile Settings page**




3. Change settings as desired. Table 46 describes the configuration options:

**Table 46. Terrain profile parameters**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Show Objects Near Line | If enabled, displays icons for simulation objects near the line. The text box specifies the distance from the line within which simulation objects are displayed. |
| Terrain Sample Rate | Specifies the frequency at which the terrain is sampled along the line. |
| Maximum Sample Points | Specifies the maximum number of sample points for a line. |
| Show Vertices On Line | If enabled, the vertices of the line are displayed. |

**Table 46. Terrain profile parameters (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Show Terrain Profile When Editing Routes | If enabled, a terrain profile window opens when you edit a route. |
| Use Back-End for Terrain Profile Information | If enabled, the height data of the terrain for the Terrain Profile Line comes from the back-end. While you create the line, the profile uses front-end data. When you finish creating the line, the height information comes from the back-end. The Terrain Profile Line indicates whether the data is coming from the front- or back-end. |
| Show Profile During Creation | If enabled, a terrain profile window opens while intervisibility lines, routes, or both are created. |

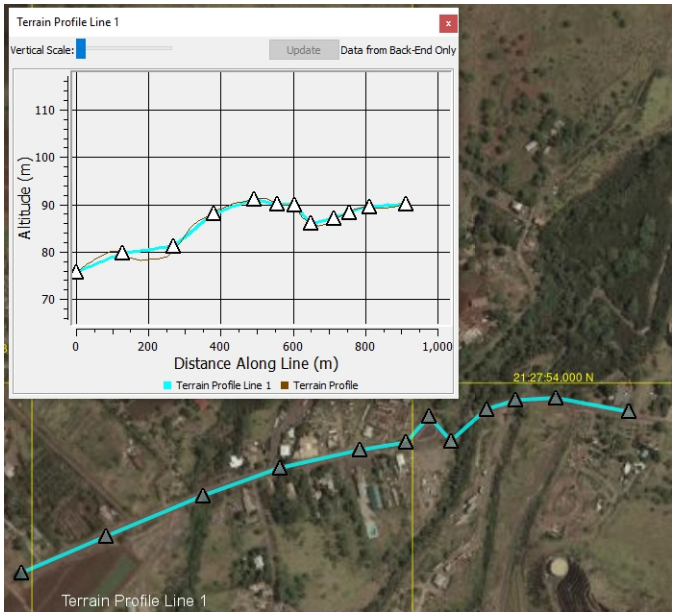
## 58.2. Analyzing Terrain Using a Terrain Profile Line

A terrain profile line is a special line used to analyze the terrain. It is more versatile than a point-to-point intervisibility line because it can have multiple points, which allows a finer analysis of the terrain. Unlike a route (for which you can also view terrain profiles), a terrain profile line is not published, so it has less overhead and does not clutter up object lists.

➤ **To create a terrain profile line:**

1. Choose **Intervisibility > Create Terrain Profile Line**. A Terrain Profile window opens and the cursor changes to draw mode.
2. Click on the terrain to place the vertices of the line. As you add vertices, the Terrain Profile window updates to show the profile of the line (Figure 492).

**Figure 492. Terrain profile line**




3. Double-click to finish the line.

After you create a terrain profile line, you can edit it just like any other line. For details, please see "40.9.1 Editing Vertices" on page 953.

# 59. Generating Navigation Data

This chapter explains how to generate navigation data for use with VR-Forces.


59.1. Introduction ..... 1194
59.1.1 How Navigation Data is Generated ..... 1194
59.1.2 Path Finding ..... 1196
59.2. Navigation Areas ..... 1198
59.2.1 Sectorizing Navigation Areas ..... 1199
59.2.2 Creating a Navigation Area ..... 1199
59.2.3 Editing a Navigation Area ..... 1202
59.2.4 Reverting Edits to a Navigation Area ..... 1202
59.2.5 Displaying Navigation Areas ..... 1202
59.2.6 Removing a Navigation Area ..... 1203
59.2.7 Displaying Information about a Navigation Area ..... 1203
59.3. Generating Navigation Data ..... 1203
59.3.1 Navigation Profiles ..... 1204
59.3.2 Generating Navigation Data for a Navigation Area ..... 1204
59.3.3 Using Newly Generated Navigation Data ..... 1206
59.3.4 Automatic Regeneration of Navigation Data ..... 1206
59.4. Generating Navigation Data for Entities ..... 1207
59.5. Importing Navigation Areas and Navigation Data ..... 1209
59.6. Displaying Navigation Data ..... 1210
59.6.1 Opening Navigation Lab from an Information Dialog Box ..... 1211
59.6.2 Showing Simulation Object Movement in Navigation Lab ..... 1211

# 59.1. Introduction

To use advanced navigation, you must use a terrain that has navigation data generated for the areas in which you want to navigate. You generate navigation data in the VR-Forces front-end.

When you generate navigation data, the VR-Forces creates separate sets of navigation data, at various levels of detail, for specified profiles. VR-Forces includes profiles for lifeforms and ground vehicles. You can modify the profiles and add new ones. The navigation data is stored in separate directories where it can be accessed by multiple terrains, if needed.

The general procedure for generating navigation data is as follows:

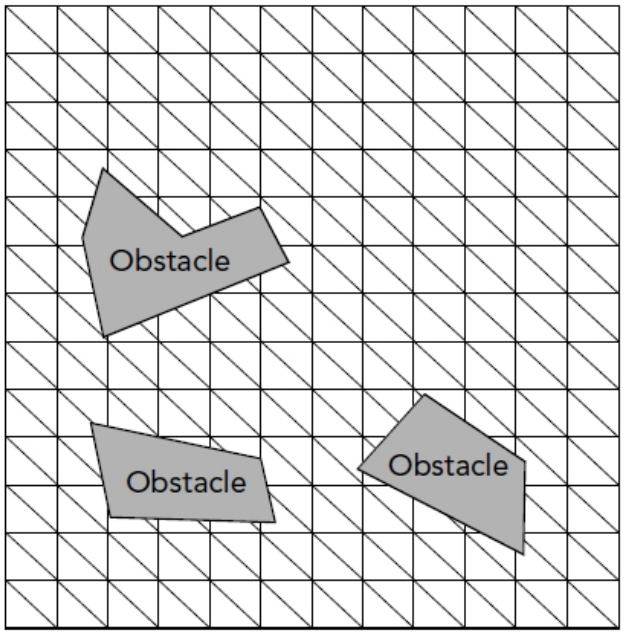
1. Load the terrain on which you want to generate navigation data or load a scenario that uses that terrain.
2. Create a navigation area.
3. Generate the navigation data.
4. Save the terrain.
5. Start a new scenario or save and reload the existing scenario.

## 59.1.1 How Navigation Data is Generated

Navigation data is generated from the front-end. Before you can use newly generated navigation data, you must close your scenario and reopen it. (This is so it can be loaded by the back-end.) If the terrain is modified, the navigation data must be generated again.

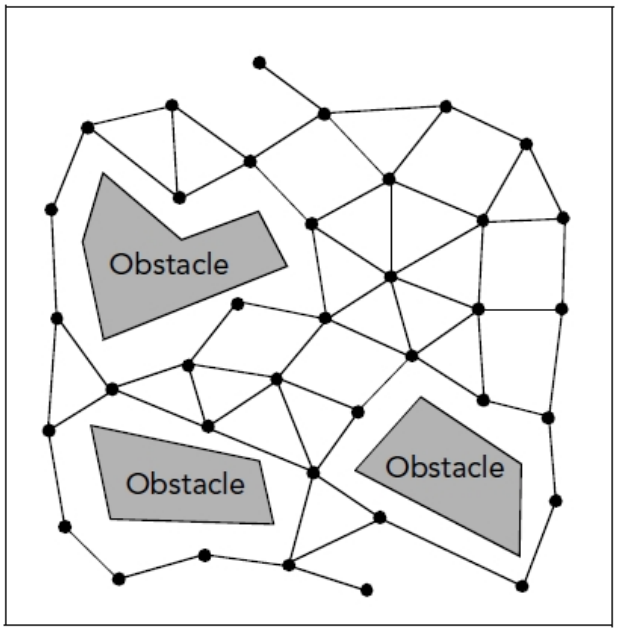
VR-Forces analyzes the terrain and creates a navigation mesh (NavMesh) of the terrain. The NavMesh defines areas in which an entity can move, given its dimensions. A lifeform can move in spaces that a ground vehicle cannot move in. Figure 493 shows a NavMesh for a terrain that has several areas in which entities cannot move.

**Figure 493. NavMesh**




Based on the NavMesh, VR-Forces generates a graph of locations in the terrain that the entity type can move to. Each location can be accessed from at least one other location. Figure 494 shows a hypothetical graph of the paths that an entity can follow in the NavMesh shown in Figure 493.

**Figure 494. Graph**




For details about generating navigation data, please see "Chapter 59. Generating Navigation Data" on page 1193.

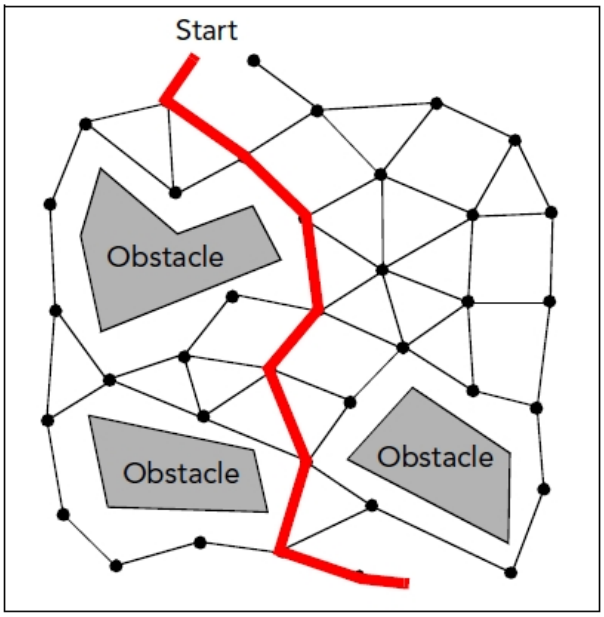
## 59.1.2 Path Finding

Path finding is the process by which an entity plans a path, follows the path, and avoids obstacles along the path.

### Planning a Path

Every time an entity decides to move (either through an autonomous decision or a task assignment), it computes its path. Path computation, or path planning, consists of running an A* algorithm, with a given heuristic, on the navigation data.

**Figure 495. Planning a path**




A path finding heuristic is a cost estimate for the shortest path to reach a target. This cost can be measured according to various criteria, such as distance, time, and danger. The path finding heuristic is critical for the performance of the A* algorithm used by VR-Forces.

The standard path finding heuristic is the Euclidian Heuristic. In this heuristic, the cost of moving from one vertex to another vertex is the Euclidian length of the connecting edge.

### Path Following

Once a path is determined for an entity, it can start moving to its final goal. As illustrated in Figure 495, a path is a set of vertices and edges. However, entities do not necessarily follow the exact path. VR-Forces smooths the entity's movement.

The first intermediary destination (or subgoal) of the entity is the nearest vertex. Before moving towards this point, the entity checks to see if it can move directly to the next vertex in its path. This test is performed against the AI mesh. If the next vertex is reachable, it becomes the new subgoal. The entity continues testing successive vertices until it finds a vertex that it cannot reach directly. The final trajectory is a smooth line that connects the various subgoals.

Figure 496 and Figure 497 illustrate this process. Using the prospective path defined in Figure 495, the entity computes its actual path. In Figure 496, view 1, it tests the first three vertices (dashed lines) and finds that it can reach all of them directly. In Figure 496, view 2, it tests the fourth vertex and finds that it can reach it. It then tests the fifth vertex and finds it cannot reach it directly. Therefore, the fourth vertex becomes the subgoal for this portion of the path. Figure 497 shows the final calculated path (dashed line). Notice how the path to the fourth vertex is much smoother than a path that strictly follows the vertices and edges would be, because the entity determined that it could move directly to that vertex.

**Figure 496. Checking next vertex**

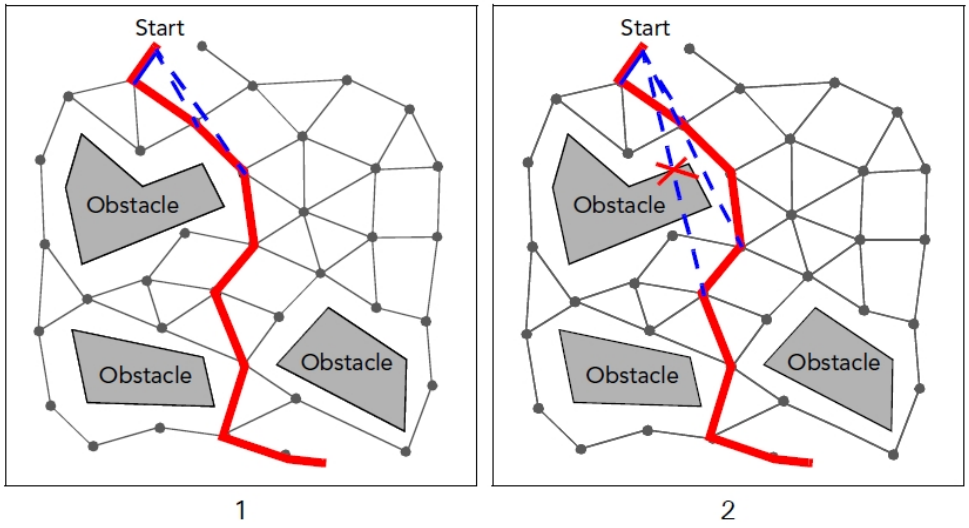
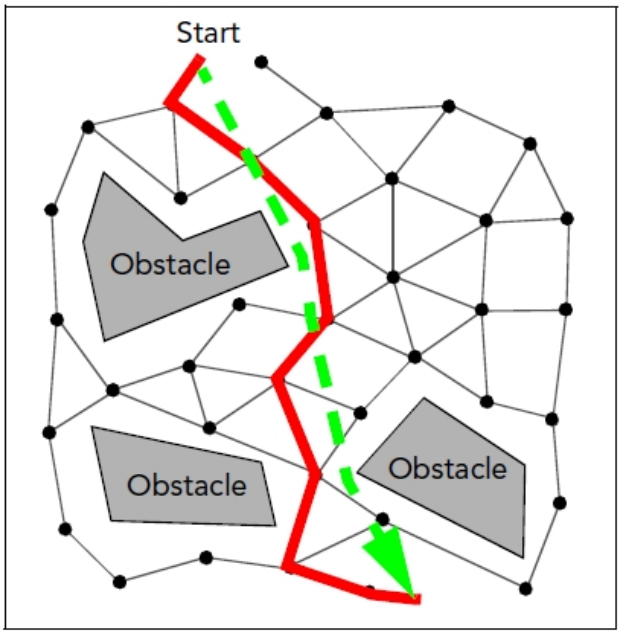



**Figure 497. Final calculated path**

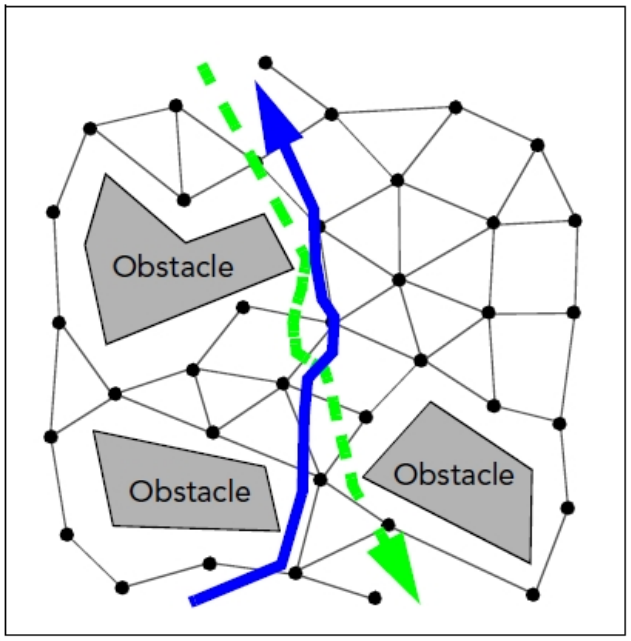


### Dynamic Avoidance

While following its path, an entity may encounter other entities. VR-Forces models include collision avoidance. However in complex scenarios, the scenario developer may have to spend a considerable amount of time creating routes and coordinating entities to minimize collisions among entities and obstacles.

Advanced navigation uses a dynamic avoidance algorithm to make entities behave realistically when they are about to collide. Entities detect potential collisions in advance and adjust their trajectories smoothly using the navigation data.

**Figure 498. Collision avoidance**




In Figure 498, two entities traveling in opposite directions avoid each other, then resume their routes. Compare the track of the dashed line to that in Figure 497.

## 59.2. Navigation Areas

Navigation areas define areas on the terrain for which you can generate navigation data. Navigation areas are rectangular areas that are aligned to the North/South axis. The maximum size of the area on which you can generate navigation data depends on the raster precision value used to generate it. If you reduce the precision of navigation data, creating a sparser graph, the size of the maximum area increases. The maximum size for a navigation area using the default values is 20 km by 20 km. (Raster precision is configured in *./appData/settings/vrfSim/navigationProfiles.mtl*.)

You can create multiple navigation areas on a terrain.

### 59.2.1 Sectorizing Navigation Areas

You can generate navigation data for a navigation area as a whole or you can divide the navigation area into sectors and generate navigation data for each sector. VR-Forces can regenerate navigation data at runtime in response to changes in the terrain (dynamic terrain damage and placement of buildings). If you sectorize the navigation area, regeneration is much quicker because VR-Forces can restrict regeneration to the sector that is affected rather than the entire navigation area.

The disadvantages of using sectors are as follows:

- Increasing the number of sectors slows down generation of navigation data.
- The navigation data generation process can fail if any single sector is too large, too complex, or both. However, this is also true if you generate navigation data for a very large terrain without using sectors.
- Path planning over long distances may be slower.

To generate a maximum size navigation area, you must use multiple sectors.

### 59.2.2 Creating a Navigation Area

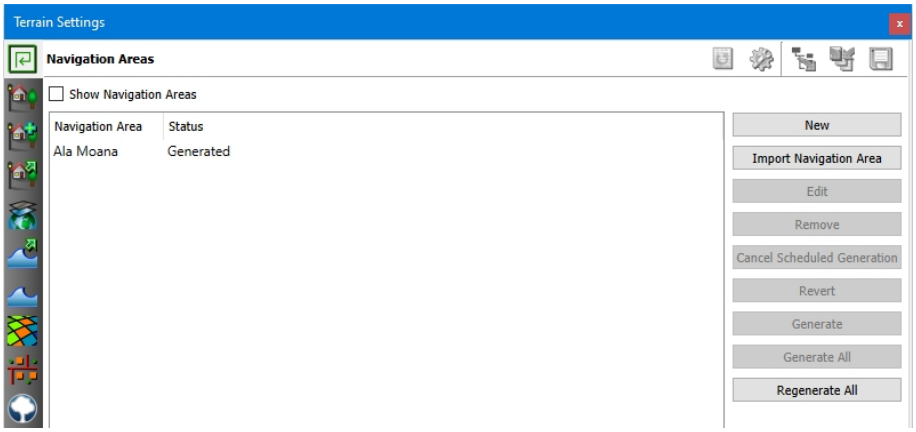
Navigation areas are created on the terrain used by the simulation engine. In most cases, scenarios use the same terrain for the GUI and simulation engine and there is no need to think about where navigation areas are created. However, sometimes scenarios use different terrains for the GUI and simulation engine. In those cases, note the following:

- The GUI only displays the navigation areas that are in the simulation terrain. If the GUI terrain has navigation areas they are not displayed.
- When you create a navigation area, it displays in the coordinate system used by the GUI terrain. Any data entry is in the GUI's coordinate system. However, the navigation area configuration files are saved in the coordinate system of the simulation terrain.
- The simulation terrain must be available to the GUI. If the GUI and simulation engine are running on different machines, it is possible that the files for the terrain used by the simulation engine are not on the computer that is running the GUI. However, for navigation areas to get created, the GUI must have access to the simulation terrain.
- Props are created on the GUI terrain. If you want props to be part of the navigation data, you must add them in a scenario that has the same terrain for the GUI and simulation engine.

➤ **To create a navigation area:**

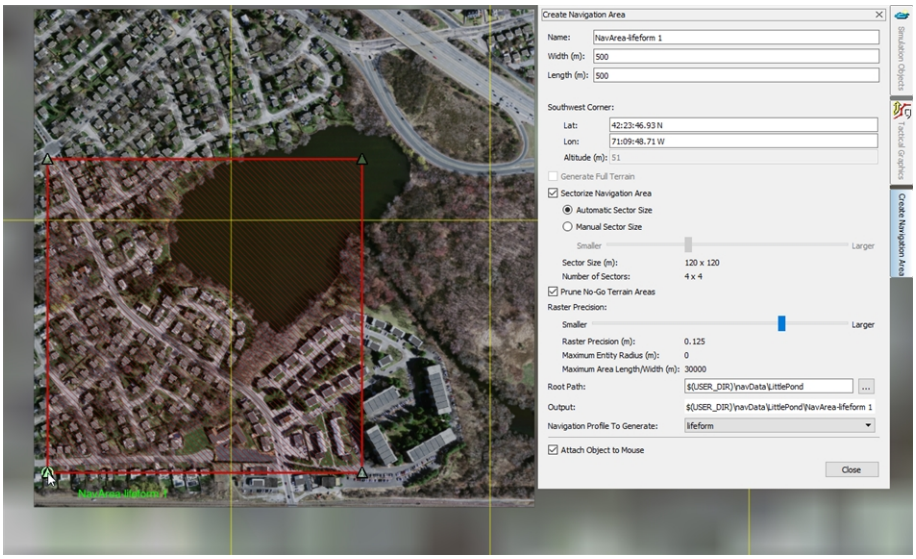
1. Open a scenario or a terrain on which you want to generate navigation data.
2. Choose **Settings > Terrain**. The Terrain Settings dialog box opens.
3. Select the Navigation Areas page (Figure 499).

**Figure 499. Navigation Areas page**




4. Click New. The cursor changes to create mode and shows a box that represents the navigation area. The default size is 500 m by 500 m. The Create Navigation Area tab is added to the window.
5. Click to place the lower left corner of the navigation area (Figure 500).

**Figure 500. New navigation area**




6. In the Create Navigation Area dialog box, edit the properties of the navigation area. Table 47 describes the fields in the dialog box.

**Table 47. Navigation area properties**

| Property | Description |
|---|---|
| Name | The name of the navigation area. You cannot change the name after you create the navigation area. |
| Width<br>Length | The length and width of the navigation area.<br>Do not try to create an area larger than 20 km by 20 km unless you have changed the raster precision to support a larger area. |
| Southwest Corner | The latitude and longitude of the southwest corner of the navigation area. (The altitude value is not used.) |
| Generate Full Terrain | Generate navigation data for the entire terrain. If the terrain is too large for this option, it is disabled. |
| Sectorize Navigation Area | Generate navigation data for sectors, rather than one large area.<br>! If you are creating a large navigation area, we recommend that you always sectorize it. Generation of large unsectorized navigation areas sometimes fails. |
| Automatic Sector Size | If selected, VR-Forces chooses a sector size based on the size of the navigation area. The sector size and number of sectors is shown below the manual sector size slider. |
| Manual Sector Size | Allows you to choose a sector size using the slider. As you move the slider, the sector size and number of sectors is shown below the slider. |
| Prune No-Go Terrain Areas | Do not calculate navigation data for areas in which simulation objects cannot move. |
| Raster Precision | Determines the density of the navigation graph. |
| Root Path | The root path of the data for this terrain. |
| Output Path | The location to save navigation data to. |

**Table 47. Navigation area properties (continued)**

| Property | Description |
|---|---|
| Navigation Profile to Generate | Select the platform type for which you want to generate navigation data. |

Navigation areas created before VR-Forces 4.8 allowed more than one navigation profile. This is supported for backward compatibility only. For faster navigation generation, we recommend one profile per navigation area.

7. Click Create.

## 59.2.3 Editing a Navigation Area

After you create a navigation area, you can edit any of its attributes except its name.

➤ **To edit a navigation area:**

1. Open a scenario or a terrain that has the navigation area you want to edit.
2. Choose **Settings > Terrain**. The Terrain Settings dialog box opens.
3. Select the Navigation Areas page (Figure 499).
4. Select the navigation area you want to edit.
5. Click Edit. The Edit Navigation Area dialog box opens.
6. Make the change you want to make.
7. Click OK.

## 59.2.4 Reverting Edits to a Navigation Area

If you edit a navigation area, you can revert to the previous version of the area.

➤ **To revert an edited navigation area:**

1. Choose **Settings > Terrain**. The Terrain Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Navigation Areas page (Figure 499).
3. Select the navigation area you want to revert.
4. Click Revert.

## 59.2.5 Displaying Navigation Areas

➤ To display navigation areas, choose **Settings > Navigation Areas**, click the Navigation Area button on the Display Settings toolbar, or select the Show Navigation Areas check box on the Terrain Settings dialog box, Navigation Areas page.

### 59.2.6 Removing a Navigation Area

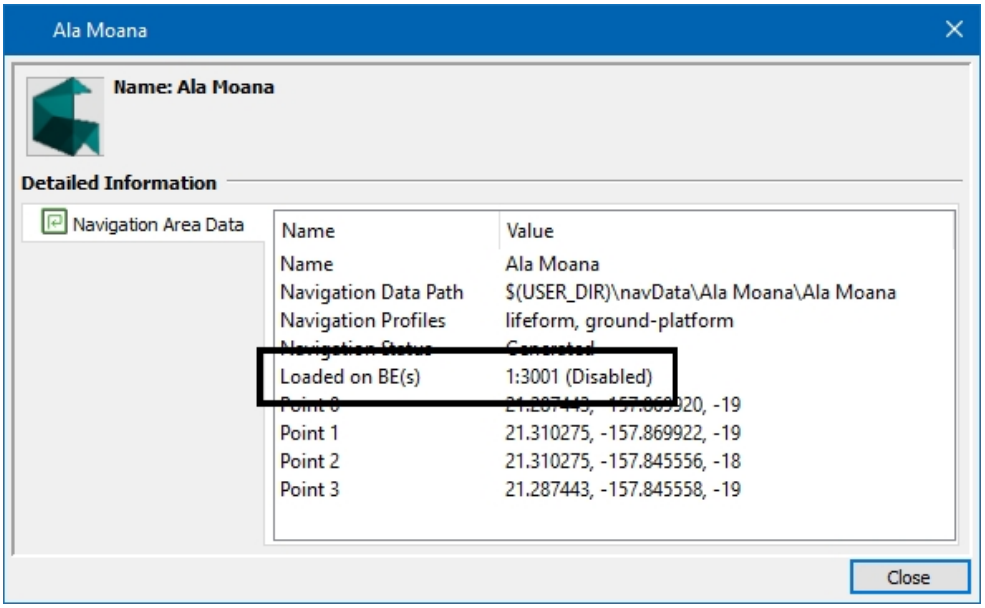
➤ **To remove a navigation area:**

1. Choose **Settings > Terrain**. The Terrain Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Navigation Areas page (Figure 499).
3. Select the navigation area you want to remove.
4. Click Remove.

### 59.2.7 Displaying Information about a Navigation Area

You can display an Information dialog box that has information about the selected navigation area (Figure 501). By default, the dialog box does not display the port used by the navigation area. It is marked (Disabled). To display the port, in *vrfSim.mtl*, set **enableNavigationLabDebugging** to 1.

**Figure 501. Navigation area information**




## 59.3. Generating Navigation Data

To generate navigation data, you create navigation areas and then generate navigation data for them. A terrain can have more than one navigation area. Entities use advanced navigation within the areas and standard navigation if they move between them.

Generating navigation data can last from a few minutes to hours to days depending on the terrain complexity, the level of detail, and your computer's processing power. Navigation data is saved to *./userData/navData* in a directory that matches the name of the terrain on which it was generated. In addition to using sectors ("59.2.1 Sectorizing Navigation Areas" on page 1199), generating cover points can significantly affect the amount of time it takes to generate navigation data.

By default, when you generate navigation data for lifeforms, VR-Forces calculates cover points. For large and complex terrains, this process can be very slow. MAK has recorded this taking 1 week to finish on a maximum size navigation area. You can disable calculation of cover points in the navigation profile. However, if you disable calculation of cover points, tasks that use cover points will not work in the navigation area.

### 59.3.1 Navigation Profiles

VR-Forces generates navigation data based on parameters in a profile. VR-Forces includes profiles for lifeforms and ground entities. They provide default values for generating navigation data that should work for most terrains. You can change the profiles. You can also add profiles. Profiles are configured in *./appData/settings/vrfSim/navigationProfiles.mtl*. The configuration parameters are explained in the file.

Navigation profiles include parameters that control the priority of navigation data regeneration in response to terrain changes and the types of changes that trigger regeneration. For more information about regenerating navigation data, please see "59.3.4 Automatic Regeneration of Navigation Data" on page 1206.

The **nav-edges** block in a navigation profile lets you connect points in the terrain that would not normally be connected by the navigation data generation process. This feature, for example, allows a human entity to walk up to a door, open the door, walk through the door, and then close the door. This is an advanced feature. For details, please see the comments in *navigationProfiles.mtl* or contact support@mak.com.

You can dynamically add nav edges to a navigation area using nav edge tactical graphics. For details, please see "40.5. Creating Nav Edges" on page 948.

The profile that an entity uses for advanced navigation is specified in its OPE file. For example, *Human.ope* specifies use of the lifeform profile:

```
(navigation-parameters
    (DtRwString navigation-profile  "lifeform")
    (DtRwString navigation-method  "shortcut")
)
```

### 59.3.2 Generating Navigation Data for a Navigation Area

The Navigation Areas page (Figure 499) displays the status for each navigation area:

- Generated. Data has been generated.
- Needs Generation. The navigation area needs to have navigation data generated.
- Scheduled Generation. VR-Forces is generating navigation data for multiple navigation areas. This area is in the queue for generation.

You can generate navigation data for:

- Selected navigation areas.
- For all navigation areas that need to have navigation data generated.
- For all navigation areas, including those that already have navigation data.

---

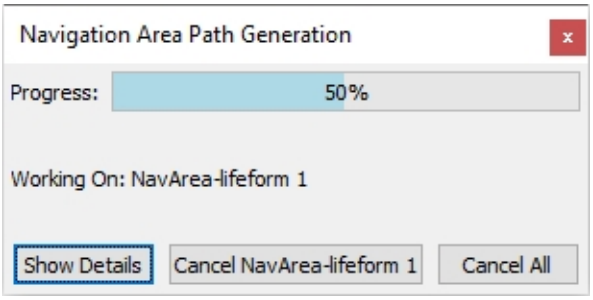
When you generate navigation data, the generator does not use the version of the terrain that is loaded into the simulation engine or GUI. It uses a separate version. Therefore, if you have made any changes to the terrain, for example by adding props, and you want them to be part of the updated terrain, you must save the terrain before you generate navigation data.

---

➤ **To generate navigation data:**

1. Open a scenario or a terrain on which you want to generate navigation data.
2. Choose **Settings > Terrain**. The Terrain Settings dialog box opens.
3. Select the Navigation Areas page (Figure 499 on page 1200).
4. Select the navigation areas for which you want to generate navigation data.
5. Click Generate.
6. You are prompted to save the terrain before navigation data is generated.
7. Click Yes. The Navigation Area Path Generation dialog box opens (Figure 502). You can optionally view details of the generation process or cancel the process. When the navigation data is generated, the dialog box buttons redisplay. You are prompted to reload the scenario.

**Figure 502. Navigation Area Path Generation dialog box**




8. Click OK.
9. Click Finish.
10. Save the terrain. (**File > Terrain > Save Terrain**.)
11. To use the navigation data, reload the scenario.

### Removing a Navigation Area from the Generation Queue

If you schedule multiple navigation areas for navigation data generation by clicking Generate All or Regenerate All, you can remove areas from the generation queue. If you remove a navigation area for which you had already generated navigation data, its status returns to Generated. If you remove a navigation area that has not had navigation data generated, its status returns to Need Generation.

➤ **To remove a navigation area from the generation queue:**

1. Select the navigation area in the Navigation Areas list.
2. Click Cancel Scheduled Generation.

### Canceling Generation of Navigation Data

You can cancel generation of navigation data while it is being generated for a navigation area. If you cancel generation of navigation data, the status for the navigation area changes to Needs Generation, even if you previously generated navigation data for this area.

➤ **To cancel generation of navigation data while it is being generated, do one of the following:**

- Select the navigation area in the Navigation Areas window and click Cancel Scheduled Generation.
- In the Navigation Area Path Generation dialog box, click Cancel NavArea *n*, where *n* is the number of the area currently being generated.

## 59.3.3 Using Newly Generated Navigation Data

To use newly generated navigation data, create a scenario that uses the terrain or open a scenario that uses that terrain. If you generate navigation data while a scenario is open, you must close the scenario, then open it again before you can use the navigation data.

## 59.3.4 Automatic Regeneration of Navigation Data

By default, VR-Forces automatically generates navigation data if a dynamic terrain change occurs in a navigation area. Unless your navigation area is quite small, regenerating navigation data will be much quicker if you create the navigation area with sectors.

The speed at which navigation data is regenerated depends on different factors (most notably sector size, number of affected sectors, and the complexity of the terrain), but in all cases it is not instantaneous. It takes at least several seconds, and possibly considerably longer. It is not abnormal for regeneration to take up to 20-30 seconds even in a well sectorized terrain. Therefore it is normal for entities to continue navigating using the original navigation data for a brief period until navigation data is updated.

Regeneration of navigation data is configured in *./appData/settings/vrfSim/navigationProfiles.mtl*.

You can specify the types of dynamic terrain change that trigger regeneration of navigation data and a priority for how quickly regeneration takes place relative to other profiles. The following code configures regeneration of navigation data for the lifeform profile. Please see the file for explanatory comments.

```
(regeneration-priority 1)
(regenerate-for-dynamic-terrain-types
    (dynamic-terrain-type  "entity")
    (dynamic-terrain-type  "damage")
    (dynamic-terrain-type  "damage_structure")
)
```

---

Regeneration of navigation data in response to terrain changes does not require an additional license. Therefore, terrains that have navigation areas (which require an extra cost license to generate) can be distributed to VR-Forces users and regeneration of navigation data will work even if those users do not have a license for creating navigation areas.

---

## 59.4. Generating Navigation Data for Entities

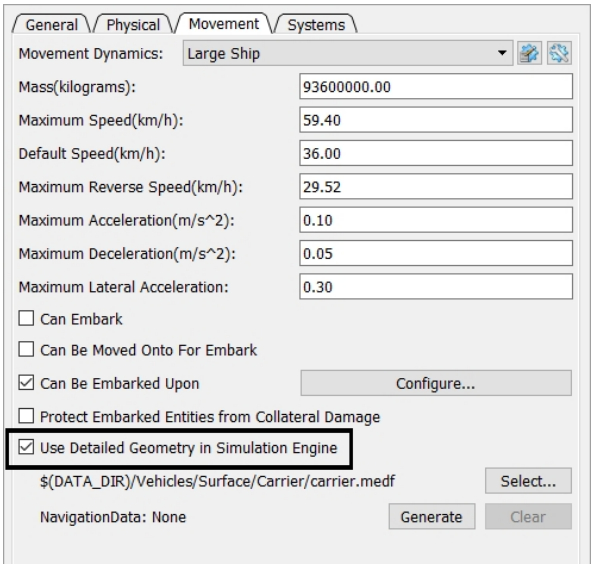
You can generate navigation data for entities that have object geometry. For example, this allows human and ground entities to move around on the deck of an aircraft carrier or some other surface entity. Navigation data is generated for any surface on the entity that is accessible for the profile. For example, lifeforms can move on steeper surfaces than ground platforms. You generate navigation data for entities in the Simulation Object Editor. For complete details about using the Simulation Object Editor, see "Section XII. Creating and Editing Simulation Models" on page 1223.

When you generate navigation data for an entity, it is saved in the *vrfSim/navData* directory for the SMS. It saves immediately, regardless of whether you save changes to the SMS.

➤ **To generate navigation data for an entity:**

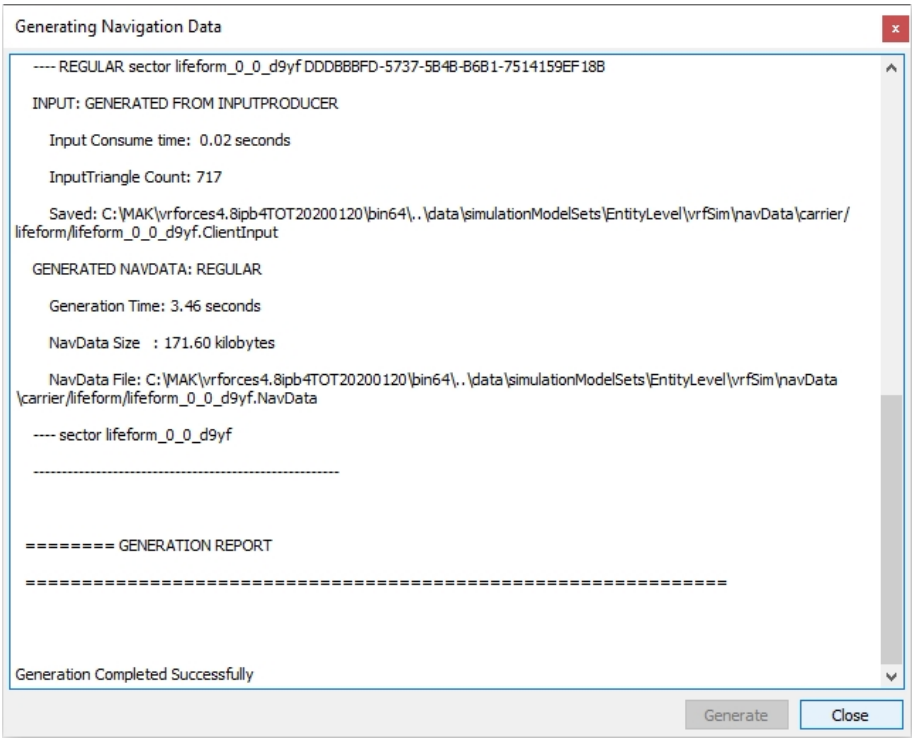
1. Start the Simulation Object Editor, as described in "61.2. Starting the Simulation Object Editor" on page 1227.
2. Load the SMS for the entity you want to edit, for example *EntityLevel.sms*.
3. In the object list, select the entity for which you want to generate navigation data.
4. Select the Movement tab.
5. Select the Use Detailed Geometry in Simulation Engine check box (Figure 503).

**Figure 503. Object geometry**




6. If you have not specified geometry for this entity, click Select and select the appropriate geometry file. (For complete details, please see "63.1.6 Adding Object Geometry to a Simulation Object" on page 1300.)
7. Click Generate. The Generating Navigation Data dialog box opens.
8. Specify the platform types for which you want to generate navigation data.
9. Click Generate. VR-Forces generates navigation data (Figure 504). When the process finishes, the Cancel button changes to read Close.

**Figure 504. Generating Navigation Data dialog box**




10. Click Close.

## 59.5. Importing Navigation Areas and Navigation Data

When you generate navigation data for a navigation area, navigation area configuration files and the navigation data itself are saved to *./userData/navData*. For example, the configuration files for the Ala Moana navigation area provided with VR-Forces are *Ala Moana.navGenConfig* and *Ala Moana.navRuntimeConfig*.

You can import the navigation area and navigation data into other terrains that have the same coordinate systems and cover the same area of the earth. When you import a navigation area, it is imported with the status Generated.

➤ **To import a navigation area and its associated navigation data:**

1. Choose **Settings > Terrain**. The Terrain Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Navigation Areas page (Figure 499 on page 1200).
3. Click Import Navigation Area. A file browser window opens.
4. Navigate to the directory for the navigation area that you want to import and select the *.navRuntimeConfig* configuration file for the navigation area.
5. Click Open. The navigation area is added to the terrain.
6. Save the terrain.

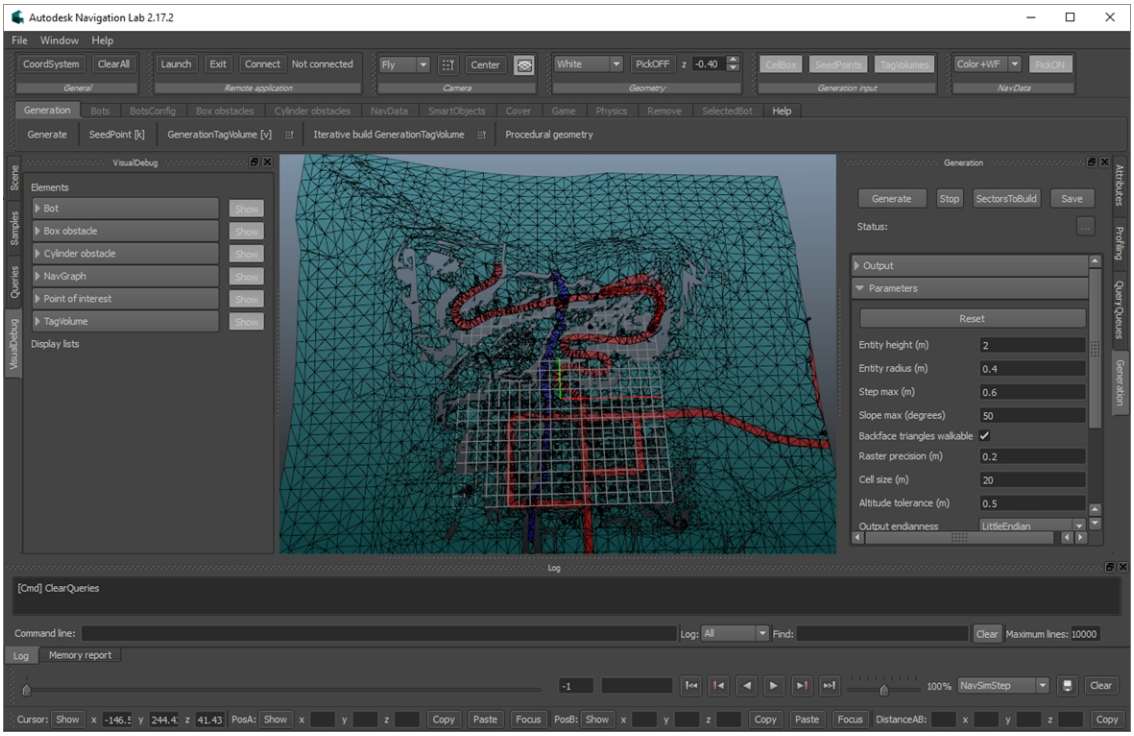
# 59.6. Displaying Navigation Data

VR-Forces includes Autodesk® Gameware Navigation Lab software (Navigation Lab), a tool that lets you view navigation data. It also lets you connect to a simulation and watch entities move about on the terrain.

You can view navigation data for navigation areas and for the object geometry on entities. You can open Navigation Lab and use its menus to select the navigation data to view or you can open it directly from an Information dialog box.

Figure 505 displays the navigation data for VR-Village.

**Figure 505. Navigation data display**




---

Autodesk® Gameware Navigation Lab is not supported on Linux.

---

➤ **To display navigation data by opening it in Navigation Lab:**

1. On the Start menu, choose **MAK Technologies > Navigation Lab**. Navigation Lab opens.
2. Choose **File > Open**. A file browser opens.
3. To view navigation data for a terrain, navigate to a terrain under *./userData/navData*. To view navigation data for an entity, navigate to a directory in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/navData*.

4. Select a file with the *.NavData* extension. The navigation data is displayed in the Navigation Lab window.

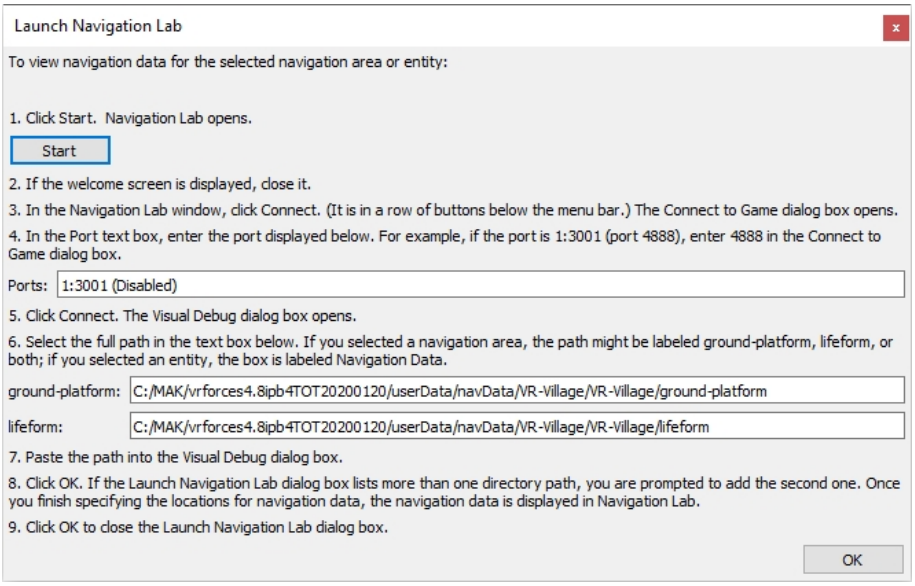
## 59.6.1 Opening Navigation Lab from an Information Dialog Box

Navigation areas and entities that have object geometry and navigation data have a button on their Information dialog box that you can use to quickly display their navigation data in Navigation Lab.

➤ **To open Navigation Lab from an Information dialog box:**

1. Open the Information dialog box for the navigation area or entity for which you want to view navigation data.
2. Click the Navigation Lab button ( ). The Launch Navigation Lab dialog box opens (Figure 506).

**Figure 506. Launch Navigation Lab dialog box**




3. Follow the directions on the dialog box.

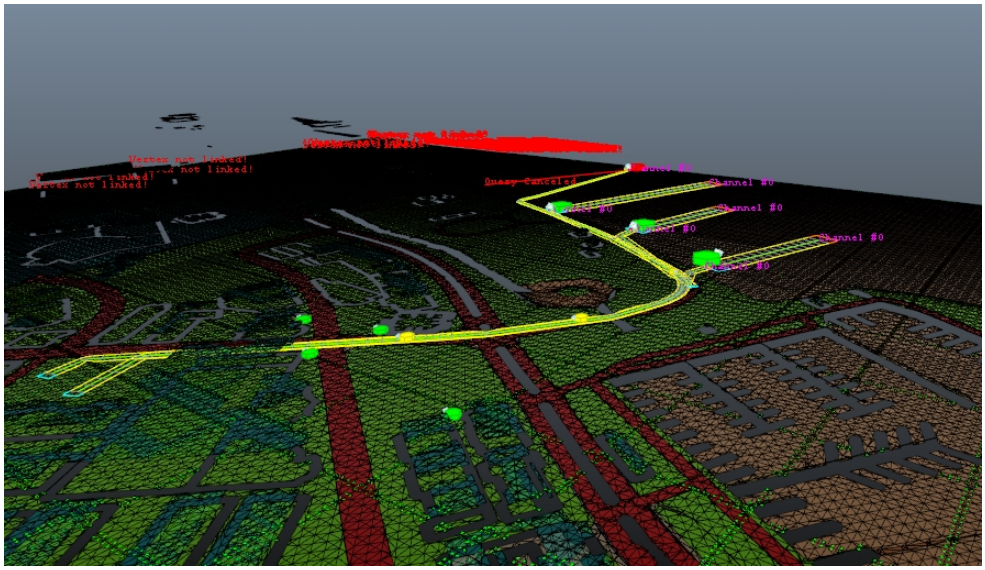
## 59.6.2 Showing Simulation Object Movement in Navigation Lab

You can view simulation objects in Navigation Lab. This can help you analyze problems in navigation data, such as the inability of an entity to plan a path.

➤ **To view simulation objects in Navigation Lab:**

1. Connect to Navigation Lab as described in "59.6.1 Opening Navigation Lab from an Information Dialog Box" above.
2. Run the scenario.
3. In Navigation Lab, look for volumetric objects that represent the simulation objects (Figure 507).

**Figure 507. Simulation objects represented in Navigation Lab**



# 60. Airports and Aerodromes

Aerodrome and runway objects allow you to give aircraft realistic places to take off and land. You can create aerodromes based on information in the terrain file or using tactical graphic objects. You can then control the airport and aerodrome settings either manually or as part of a plan. This chapter describes the settings that are available.


60.1. Overview of Airports and Aerodromes ..... 1214
60.2. Aerodromes and Runways ..... 1214
60.2.1 Computing Aerodromes in a Terrain ..... 1214
60.2.2 Creating an Aerodrome Object ..... 1215
60.2.3 Creating a Runway Object ..... 1215
60.3. Airport Settings Panel ..... 1216
60.3.1 Centering on an Airport ..... 1216
60.3.2 Setting Aerodrome Lights ..... 1216
60.3.3 Setting Runway Conditions ..... 1217
60.4. Aerodrome and Runway Set Data Requests ..... 1218
60.4.1 Aerodrome ..... 1218
60.4.2 Aerodrome Lights ..... 1218
60.4.3 Runway Arrestor Gear ..... 1218
60.4.4 Runway Conditions ..... 1220
60.4.5 Runways ..... 1220
60.5. Viewing Aerodrome and Runway Information ..... 1220
60.5.1 Aerodrome Information ..... 1220
60.5.2 Runway Information ..... 1221

# 60.1. Overview of Airports and Aerodromes

You can compute the location of aerodromes based on the information in the terrain. The Procedural Earth terrains in the MAK data package include aerodrome data, and you can also use your own terrains if they have aerodrome data. After computing the aerodromes, you can edit them as needed for your scenarios. You can also create aerodromes and runways using those tactical graphic objects.

You can control the settings for aerodromes and runways, either as part of a plan or manually with the Airport Settings Panel. The changes you make are reflected in any simulation connected to the exercise.

Airports are a layer in MAK earth and streaming terrains. Airport features are part of the vector files that are distributed with VR-Forces. These files are originally from X-Plane and, while they are good for many of the airports in the world, they may not be entirely accurate. You can use GIS tools to edit the files and change, add, or remove airport features as needed.

# 60.2. Aerodromes and Runways

You can use the Compute Aerodrome feature in terrains where information has been defined. You can also create aerodromes and runways in any terrain.

## 60.2.1 Computing Aerodromes in a Terrain

Using Compute Aerodrome, you can generate a specific aerodrome or all of the aerodromes defined in an area of the terrain. The aerodrome information must be a part of the terrain, such as in the Procedural Earth terrains included in the MAK Data package. When you compute aerodromes, VR-Forces uses the terrain data to create the aerodrome and runway objects.

➤ **To generate an aerodrome for a specific airport:**

1. Choose **Create > Compute Aerodrome**. The Compute Aerodrome dialog box opens.
2. Select the ICAO Code option.
3. In the Airport list, select the aerodrome to generate. You can filter the list by entering part of the name or code.
4. Click Create. The aerodrome and its associated runways are created.

➤ **To generate aerodromes in an area:**

1. Choose **Create > Compute Aerodrome**. The Compute Aerodrome dialog box opens.
2. Select the Area Selection option.
3. To create a new area, click the Add button.
4. On the terrain where you want to generate the aerodromes, draw an area as you would any other areal tactical graphic. When you finish the area, you return to the Compute Aerodrome dialog box.

5. Click Create. Any aerodromes and their associated runways in the area are created. Depending on the number of aerodromes in the area, this can take a little while.

---

If there is already an area that you want to use to generate aerodromes, select that instead of adding a new one and then click Create.

---

## 60.2.2 Creating an Aerodrome Object

You can add aerodrome objects to a terrain. (This does not require that the terrain include any data.)

---

You can also delete aerodrome objects. When you delete an aerodrome, its associated runways are also deleted.

---

➤ **To add an aerodrome object:**

1. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, select Aerodrome.
2. Click in the terrain where you want to place the Aerodrome. The Create Aerodrome dialog box displays.
3. Optionally, enter information for the Aerodrome.
4. Click Create.

## 60.2.3 Creating a Runway Object

When you create runway objects, you can associate them with an existing aerodrome object by entering the Airport Code. When the runway is associated with an aerodrome, you can control its settings from that aerodrome. The default naming convention for runway objects is to use the IACO code followed by the numbers that are derived from the headings at each point of the object's line. (This does not require that the terrain include any data.)

---

You can also use the Aerodrome set data request to associate a runway to an aerodrome. See "60.4.1 Aerodrome" on page 1218.

The runway tactical graphic does not draw tarmac on the terrain.

---

➤ **To create a runway object:**

1. On the Tactical Graphics Palette, select Runway.
2. In the terrain, draw the runway as you would any other two-point linear tactical graphic.

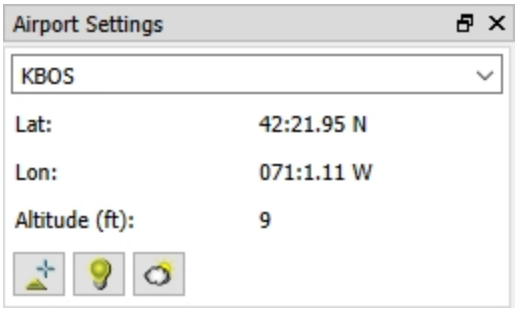
3. In the Create Runway dialog box, you can specify some information for the runway including the Airport Code.
4. Click Create.

# 60.3. Airport Settings Panel

You can locate aerodromes and control some of the settings from the Airport Settings Panel.

➤ To open the Airport Settings Panel, choose **View > Airport Settings Panel**. The Airport Settings Panel opens.

**Figure 508. Airport Settings Panel**




## 60.3.1 Centering on an Airport

You can select and center on an airport from the Airport Settings Panel (Figure 508 above).

➤ **To center on an airport:**

1. In the Airport list, specify the airport that you want to center on. You can select from the list or enter the code.
2. Click Center on Airport ( ). Your window focuses on the selected airport.

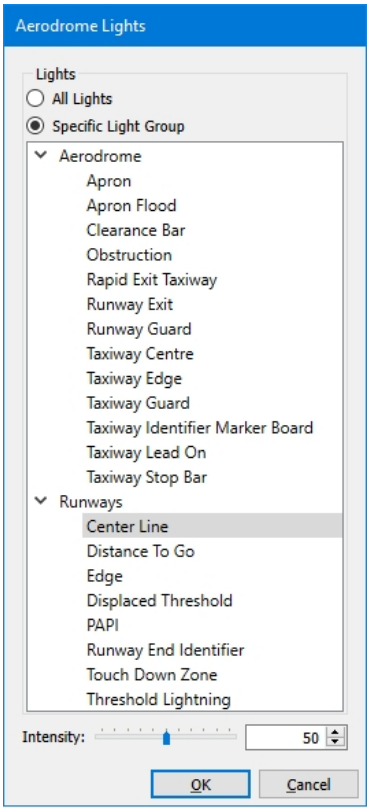
## 60.3.2 Setting Aerodrome Lights

You can adjust the lighting for all aerodrome or runway lights at the specified aerodrome. The lighting changes are not visible in any views of the exercise, but the changes are published to the network and set the state on the published objects. You can also see the light settings in the Information dialog.

➤ **To change an airport's light settings from the Airport Settings Panel:**

1. In the Airport Settings Panel, specify the airport.
2. Click Runway Light Settings ( ). The Aerodrome Lights dialog box opens (Figure 509).

**Figure 509. Aerodrome Lights dialog box**




3. Choose whether you want to set the intensity for all of the lights in the aerodrome or a specific light group.
4. If you choose to control a specific light group, select the group that you want to set.
5. Set the intensity using the slider or by entering a value in the box. The intensity is a percentage, from 0 (off) to 100%.
6. Click OK.

## 60.3.3 Setting Runway Conditions

You can specify the conditions of a runway. The runway conditions are not visible in any views of the exercise, but the changes are published to the network and set the state on the published objects. You can also see the runway condition in the Information dialog box.

➤ **To set runway conditions from the Airport Settings Panel:**

1. In the Airport Settings Panel, specify the airport.
2. Click Runway Condition ( ). The Runway Condition dialog box opens.
3. Select a condition.
4. Click OK.

# 60.4. Aerodrome and Runway Set Data Requests

You can control airport settings using set data requests, including in global or individual plans.

## 60.4.1 Aerodrome

The Aerodrome set data request allows you to assign a runway object to an aerodrome object in the terrain. When the runway is associated with an aerodrome, you can control its settings from that aerodrome.

When you set the aerodrome, the runway is associated with the specified aerodrome and displays under that aerodrome in the Objects List Panel. The code for the aerodrome is also appended to the start of the runway object's name. (If the runway was previously assigned to another aerodrome, the new code replaces that one as part of the name.

➤ **To set the aerodrome for a runway:**

1. Select a runway object.
2. Choose **Set > Aerodrome**. The Aerodrome dialog box opens.
3. Select the Aerodrome from the list of aerodromes in the terrain.
4. Click OK.

## 60.4.2 Aerodrome Lights

Using the Aerodrome Lights set data request, you can set the lights for an aerodrome as well as its associated runways. The lighting changes are not visible in any views of the exercise, but the changes are published to the network and set the state on the published objects. You can also see the light settings in the Information dialog box.

➤ **To set the aerodrome or runway lights:**

1. Select an aerodrome.
2. Choose **Set > Aerodrome Lights**. The Aerodrome Lights dialog box opens (Figure 509 on the previous page).
3. Choose whether you want to set the intensity for all of the lights in the aerodrome or a specific light group.
4. If you choose to set the lights in a specific group, select that group.
5. Set the intensity using the slider or by entering a value in the box. The intensity is a percentage, from 0 (off) to 100%.
6. Click OK.

## 60.4.3 Runway Arrestor Gear

The Runway Arrestor Gear set data request allows you to set the arrestor gear on a runway to either up or down for one or more runways. The arrestor gear state is not

visible in any views of the exercise, but the changes are published to the network and set the state on the published objects. You can also see the arrestor gear state in the Information dialog box.

➤ **To set the state of the runway arrestor gear for one runway:**

1. Select the runway object.
2. Choose **Set > Runway Arrestor Gear**. The Arrestor Gear dialog box opens (Figure 510).

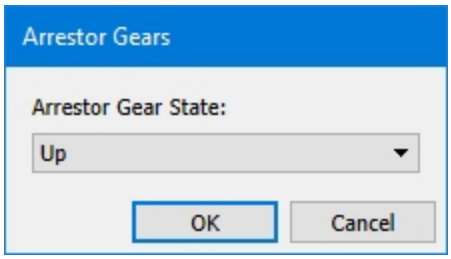
**Figure 510. Arrestor Gear dialog box for one runway**

3. Select the specific runway.
4. Use the Arrestor Gear State list to indicate whether you want to set the gear to either up or down.
5. Click OK. The arrestor gear state is set for the selected runway.

➤ **To set the state of the runway arrestor gear for multiple runways:**

1. Select the runway objects.
2. Choose **Set > Runway Arrestor Gear**. The Arrestor Gears dialog box opens (Figure 511).

**Figure 511. Arrestor Gears dialog box for multiple runways**




3. Use the Arrestor Gear State list to indicate whether you want to set the gear to either up or down.
4. Click OK. The arrestor gear state is set for all selected runways.

### 60.4.4 Runway Conditions

The Runway Conditions set data request allows you to specify the conditions on one or more runways or all runways at one or more aerodromes. The runway conditions are not visible in any views of the exercise, but the changes are published to the network and set the state on the published objects. You can also see the runway condition in the Information dialog box.

➤ **To set runway conditions:**

1. Select one or more runway or aerodrome objects.
2. Choose **Set > Runway Condition**. The Runway Condition dialog box opens.
3. Select a runway condition.
4. Click OK.

### 60.4.5 Runways

The Runways set data request allows you to assign one or more runway objects to the selected aerodrome object in the terrain. You can control runway settings from the aerodrome that the runways are associated with.

When you assign runways to the aerodrome, each runway is associated with the selected aerodrome and displays under that aerodrome in the Objects List Panel. The code for the aerodrome is also appended to the start of the runway object's name. (If the runway was previously assigned to another aerodrome, the new code replaces that one as part of the name.

➤ **To assign runways to the selected aerodrome:**

1. Select the aerodrome.
2. Choose **Set > Runways**. The Runways dialog box opens.
3. Enter the name of the runway, or select one or more runways from the list of those in the terrain.
4. Click OK.

## 60.5. Viewing Aerodrome and Runway Information

While the arrestor gear, conditions, and lights are not visible in either the 2D or 3D views, you can see the states in the Information dialog box for aerodromes and runways.

### 60.5.1 Aerodrome Information

The Information dialog box for aerodromes includes pages that list the runways associated with the aerodrome and also the aerodrome's lights. In the Runways page, you can double-click a runway to open its information.

### 60.5.2 Runway Information

The Information dialog box for runway objects shows various information, including the aerodrome that the runway is assigned to and the surface condition. There are also pages for each of the two runways that show the settings for the arrestor gear and the lights.

# XII. Creating and Editing Simulation Models

This section explains how to use the Simulation Object Editor to create and edit simulation model sets and the simulation models used by simulation objects. It also covers configuration files that you must edit by hand.

# 61. The Simulation Object Editor and SMSs

The Simulation Object Editor is a standalone tool that lets you configure simulation objects and tactical graphics, and create new simulation model sets.


61.1. Introduction to the Simulation Object Editor ..... 1227
61.2. Starting the Simulation Object Editor ..... 1227
61.3. Simulation Model Sets ..... 1229
61.3.1 Including Simulation Model Sets in Other Simulation Model Sets 1230
61.3.2 Enabling and Disabling Read Only Status for SMSs ..... 1231
61.3.3 SMS Priority for Included and Multiple SMSs ..... 1232
61.3.4 Lua Scripts in Included SMSs ..... 1233
61.3.5 Application-Level Files in Included SMSs ..... 1234
61.3.6 Search Paths for Referenced Files in an SMS ..... 1234
61.3.7 Promoting a Model to the Parent SMS ..... 1234
61.3.8 Promoting a System to the Loaded SMS ..... 1236
61.3.9 Hiding Included Objects ..... 1236
61.4. Visual Model Definitions ..... 1236
61.4.1 User-Created Visual Definition Files ..... 1237
61.5. Upgrading Old Simulation Model Sets ..... 1238
61.5.1 The Old SMS Includes a Standard SMS ..... 1238
61.5.2 The Old SMS Was Copied from a Standard SMS ..... 1239
61.5.3 The Old SMS Was Completely New or Copied from base.sms ..... 1240
61.5.4 Copying Visual Data ..... 1241
61.5.5 Running the SMS Upgrade Tool ..... 1241
61.5.6 Migrating an SMS to a New Release by Hand ..... 1242
61.5.7 Migrating Pre-4.7 Weapon and Damage Systems ..... 1242
61.5.8 Converting Pre-4.8 SMSs To Use Articulated Parts ..... 1243
61.6. Opening a Simulation Model Set ..... 1243
61.7. Creating New Simulation Model Sets ..... 1244
61.7.1 Creating a New SMS that Includes an Existing SMS ..... 1244

61.7.2 Creating a New SMS with Minimal Objects ..... 1245
61.7.3 Creating a New SMS by Copying an SMS ..... 1246
61.8. Importing .entity Files ..... 1246
61.9. Applying New and Updated Variables ..... 1246
61.10. Importing and Exporting Object Information ..... 1247
61.10.1 Exporting Object Information ..... 1247
61.10.2 Importing Object Information ..... 1248
61.11. Editing the Tags List ..... 1248
61.11.1 Adding a New Tag ..... 1248
61.11.2 Removing a Tag ..... 1249
61.11.3 Renaming a Tag ..... 1250
61.11.4 Undoing Tag Changes ..... 1250
61.11.5 Using Auto Tags ..... 1250
61.11.6 Assigning Tags Based on Visual Model Characteristics ..... 1251
61.11.7 Exporting Tags ..... 1251
61.11.8 Importing Tags ..... 1251
61.11.9 Managing Tags Using the Object Information File ..... 1251
61.12. Managing the Forces List ..... 1252
61.12.1 Adding a Force ..... 1252
61.12.2 Editing a Force ..... 1253
61.12.3 Removing a Force ..... 1253
61.13. Copying the Object List to the Clipboard ..... 1254

## 61.1. Introduction to the Simulation Object Editor

The Simulation Object Editor lets you create and edit simulation model sets and the objects in them.

Many VR-Forces users want to edit some or all of the following simulation object characteristics:

- Weapon systems
- Basic parameters
- Sensors
- 2D icons and 3D models
- Formations

Users also want to add new simulation objects or tactical graphics types. The Simulation Object Editor allows you to edit most of the aspects of a simulation object or tactical graphic that a typical VR-Forces user will want to change. You can easily add and remove sensors, weapon systems, and other major component systems, change the 2D and 3D models used to represent them, and edit their properties.

In addition to editing simulation objects, you can use the Simulation Object Editor to view information about  and configure some types of systems.

---

The Simulation Object Editor primarily allows you to edit properties that affect simulation. Simulation objects also have visualization models, which are configured in the front-end in the Visual Model Editors and Simulation Object Type Mappings dialog boxes. However, the Simulation Object Editor also lets you configure the 3D models and 2D icons used to display simulation objects.

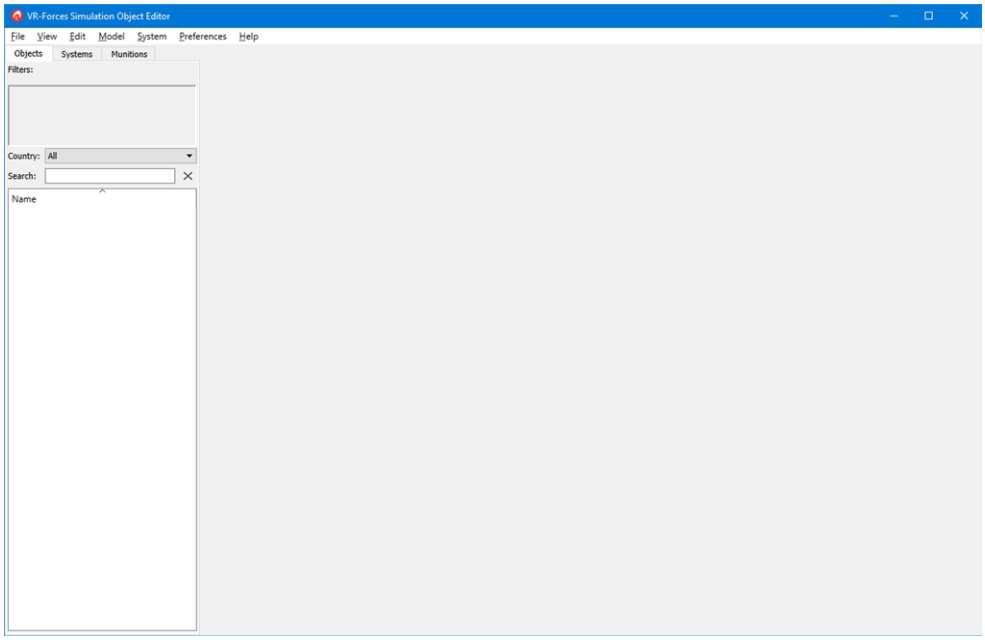
---

The Simulation Object Editor does not allow you to add or remove individual components or edit some of the more detailed entity parameters. For these advanced editing tasks, you must edit specific configuration files, which are described throughout this manual.

## 61.2. Starting the Simulation Object Editor

➤ To start the Simulation Object Editor in Windows, choose **MAK Technologies > Simulation Object Editor**. The Simulation Object Editor opens (Figure 512).

**Figure 512. Simulation Object Editor**




➤ **To start the Simulation Object Editor from the command-line in Windows or Linux:**

1. Change directory to *./bin64*.
2. Run:

   `simulationObjectEditor` *`options`*

Table 48 describes the command-line arguments for the Simulation Object Editor.

**Table 48. Simulation Object Editor command-line arguments**

| Argument | Description |
|---|---|
| `(--` \| `--ignore_rest)` | Ignores the rest of the labeled arguments following this flag. |
| `--appDataDir` *`directory`* | Specifies the location of application data. |
| `--dataDir` *`directory`* | Specifies the location of the data directory (terrains and so on). |
| `--doNotCheckPluginVersions` | Do not check versions in the plug-ins to make sure they can load against this version of the application. |
| `--doNotLoadVrfPlugins` | Do not load the plug-ins contained in XML files in the *./plug-ins* directory. |
| `(-G` \| `--locale)` *`language`* | The name of the language to load into the GUI. |
| `(-h` \| `--help)` | Displays usage information and exits. |
| `--launcherLocation` *`location`* | Specifies the location of the VR-Forces launcher. |

**Table 48. Simulation Object Editor command-line arguments (continued)**

| Argument | Description |
|---|---|
| `--layoutSettingsFile` *`filename`* | Specifies the GUI layout settings file to use. *`filename`* specifies the base filename. It is prefixed with *default_* and the extension *.uisx* is added. Default: SOEUILayoutSettings. |
| `--loadPlugin` *`filename`* | Load the specified Simulation Object Editor plugin. Can be a specific plug-in or plug-in XML file. |
| `(-n \| --notifyLevel)` *`notification_level`* | Sets the level for messages written to the console or the Simulation Object Editor log file (*simulationObjectEditor.log*), where *`notification_level`* is a number from 0 through 4. The least verbose message level is 0, the highest is 4. The default is 2. |
| `--settingsDirectory` *`string`* | Sets the directory to load all ui and settings files from. |
| `--showConsole` | Show the console. |
| `--smsFile` *`string`* | Loads the specified SMS file. |
| `(-v \| --version)` | Displays version information and exits. |
| `--visualTerrain` *`string`* | Terrain used when displaying simulation objects. |

## 61.3. Simulation Model Sets

A simulation model set (SMS) defines all of the simulation objects, tactical graphics, and other object models that you can create in a VR-Forces simulation. The simulation model set file tells VR-Forces where to find all of the configuration files it needs to create, simulate, and display simulation objects and other objects. Every scenario must reference one or more simulation model sets.

If you use the Simulation Object Editor to edit simulation object models, the only configuration file that you need to be aware of is the simulation model set file that you are using. All of the other files are handled by the Simulation Object Editor.

VR-Forces provides the following SMSs:

- *base.sms*. Defines platforms and graphics used by other SMSs.
- *EntityLevel.sms*. Defines entities, units, and other objects used for entity-level scenarios. Includes *base.sms*.
- *AggregateLevel.sms*. Defines units and other objects used for aggregate-level scenarios. Includes *base.sms*.

For details about entity-level modeling and aggregate-level modeling, please see "13.7. Entity-Level Modeling and Aggregate-Level Modeling" on page 358.

! When you use the Simulation Object Editor, you are editing a simulation model set. We strongly recommend that you keep the default SMSs as reference model sets and not edit them. If you want to edit entity models, create a new SMS that includes one of the provided SMSs. Promote the objects you want to edit to the new SMS and use it as the default SMS for your scenarios. For details about creating a new SMS and changing the default SMS, please see "61.7. Creating New Simulation Model Sets" on page 1244.

### 61.3.1 Including Simulation Model Sets in Other Simulation Model Sets

VR-Forces simulation model sets can include other SMSs. This allows you to create core SMSs that can be included in multiple other SMSs that may have incompatible characteristics or which override some characteristics of the core SMS, but which still need core objects.

VR-Forces provides three SMSs: *base.sms*, *EntityLevel.sms*, and *AggregateLevel.sms*. *EntityLevel.sms* and *AggregateLevel.sms* both include *base.sms*, which has platform files and graphics that they both need.

It is important to understand the difference between using an SMS that includes other SMSs and creating a scenario that uses multiple SMSs. Since VR-Forces users usually create new SMSs to configure new types of simulation objects, or add new systems to existing objects, we will consider the differences in that context.

If you want to create a custom standalone SMS for a new or enhanced object, that SMS must include all of the files required to support that object, such as an OPE file, entity file, system files, damage files, and so on. When trying to build such an SMS, it can be easy to overlook required files. This process also requires you to duplicate files that are contained in the supplied SMSs even if you do not need to change them, because the SMS must contain all the files it needs. Then, if you do not load the SMSs in the correct order, your customization can be overridden by one of the other SMSs you are using in the scenario. In summary, it is a cumbersome process that can create needless duplication of files and be difficult to debug if problems arise.

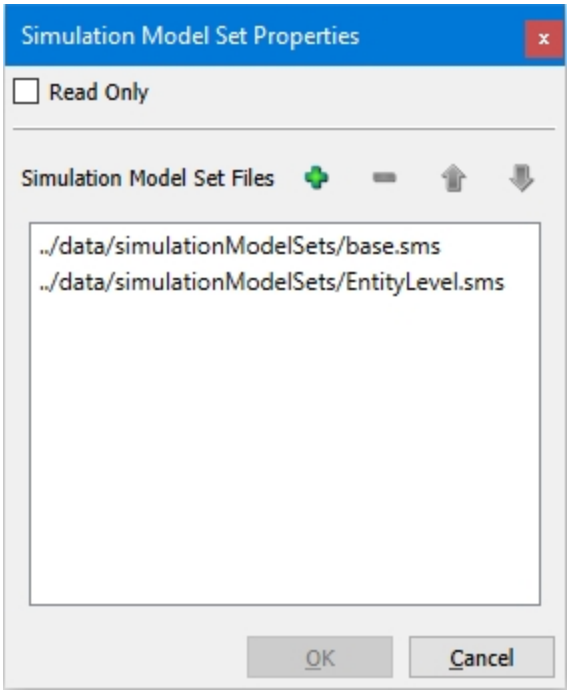
Using included SMSs minimizes the problems inherent in using multiple standalone SMSs. When an SMS includes another SMS, it has a higher priority than the included SMS. When an SMS is loaded, included SMSs are loaded first, and each subsequent SMS has a higher priority than the previously loaded SMS. Any parameters or files in the higher priority SMSs that are also in the lower priority SMSs override those in the lower priority SMSs. The higher priority SMSs do not need to contain any files that they do not change from the included SMSs. Therefore the total footprint of the SMS is smaller. For more information about SMS priority, please see "61.3.3 SMS Priority for Included and Multiple SMSs" on page 1232.

➤ **To include an SMS in another SMS:**

1. Choose **MAK Technologies > Simulation Object Editor**. The Simulation Object Editor opens (Figure 512).
2. Choose **File > Open Simulation Model Set**. The Open Model Set dialog box opens.

3. Select the parent SMS.
4. Click Open. The SMS loads.
5. Choose **File > Properties**. The SMS Properties dialog box opens.

**Figure 513. SMS Properties dialog box**




6. Click the Add button ( ). A line is added to the window with the text <empty file>.
7. Click the Browse button at the end of the line. The Choose File dialog box opens.
8. Select the SMS that you want to include.
9. Click Open. The SMS is added to the list in the window.
10. Click OK. The SMS is saved and reloaded.

## 61.3.2 Enabling and Disabling Read Only Status for SMSs

By default, the SMSs provided with VR-Forces are read-only. You can enable and disable editing.

---

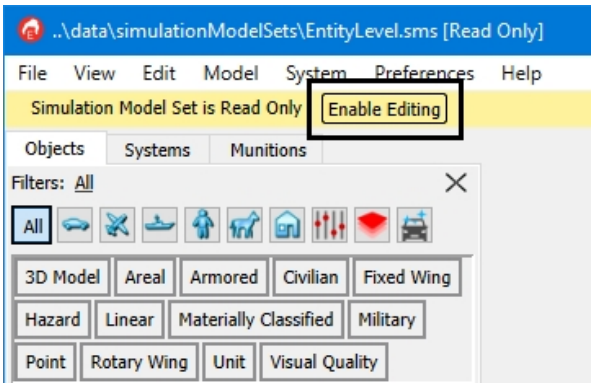
Read-only status is to encourage you to create new SMSs for your customizations to the SMSs provided by VR-Forces. Leaving the default SMSs unedited will simplify upgrading to future versions of VR-Forces.

---

➤ **To enable editing of the objects in an SMS, do one of the following:**

- Click the Enable Editing button (Figure 514). You are prompted to create a new SMS that includes the current one, to enable editing for this and future sessions, or to enable editing for this session only. If the current SMS is one of the three basic SMSs provided by VR-Forces, we recommend that you create a new SMS.

**Figure 514. Enable Editing**




- Choose **File > Properties** and clear the Read Only check box in the SMS Properties dialog box.

➤ **To enable read only status for an SMS:**

1. Choose **File > Properties**. The SMS Properties dialog box opens.
2. Select the Read Only check box.

## 61.3.3 SMS Priority for Included and Multiple SMSs

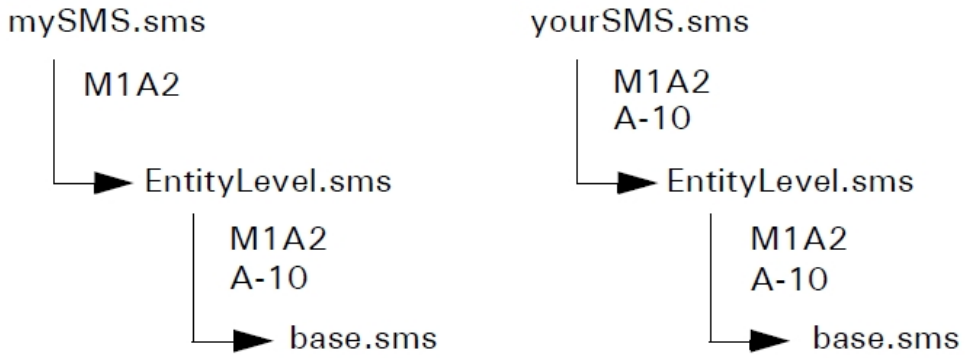
When you load multiple SMSs either through inclusion or by specifying multiple SMSs for a scenario, conflicts are resolved through the priorities of the SMSs.

For included SMSs, priority is based on the inclusion relationships. The highest level SMS is loaded last and has the highest priority. Simulation objects in higher priority SMSs override those in lower priority SMSs. For example, suppose you create a new SMS called mySMS that includes *EntityLevel.sms*. *EntityLevel.sms* already includes *base.sms*. When VR-Forces loads mySMS it loads *base.sms* first. Then it loads *EntityLevel.sms*, and finally mySMS. Objects in mySMS override objects in *EntityLevel.sms* that have the same object type, which in turn overrides *base.sms*.

When you load multiple SMSs, priority is based on the order in which they are loaded. Assuming a simple case of two SMSs that do not include other SMSs, if the second SMS loaded specifies objects that are also in the first SMS loaded, the specification in the second SMS takes precedence.

If you load multiple SMSs that include other SMSs, priority is based on the order loaded, but duplicate SMSs are not loaded twice. Assume the SMS organization shown in Figure 515.

**Figure 515. Multiple SMSs**




If *mySMS.sms* is the first SMS loaded, VR-Forces loads *base.sms*, then *EntityLevel.sms*, then *mySMS.sms*. Priority is determined as described previously for an SMS with included SMSs. The M1A2 entity configured in *mySMS.sms* overrides the one in *EntityLevel.sms*.

Then VR-Forces loads *yourSMS.sms*. It starts with *base.sms*. Since *base.sms* is already loaded, VR-Forces ignores it. Then it moves to *EntityLevel.sms*. Since *EntityLevel.sms* is already loaded, it ignores it. Then it loads *yourSMS.sms*. The M1A2 in *yourSMS.sms* overrides the configuration in *mySMS.sms*. The A-10 in *yourSMS.sms* overrides the A-10 in *EntityLevel.sms*.

The overall priority for the SMSs in this example, from lowest to highest, is *base.sms*, *EntityLevel.sms*, *mySMS.sms*, *yourSMS.sms*.

The priority of multiple SMSs is determined by the order in which they are listed in the **Simulation-Model-Set-Files** parameter in the scenario file. In the following example, *EntityLevel.sms* has the highest priority. When you create a scenario and list multiple SMSs, the priority in the SMS list is top to bottom.

```
(Simulation-Model-Set-Files
"..\data\simulationModelSets\EntityLevel.sms"
"..\data\simulationModelSets\developer_toolkit_examples\addTask.sms")
```

### 61.3.4 Lua Scripts in Included SMSs

System scripts are stored in simulation model sets. When you load an SMS that includes another SMS, the scripts in the highest priority SMS supersede those in the lower priority SMSs.

The highest priority scripts get used by all simulation objects, regardless of which SMS they are in. For example, suppose *EntityLevel.sms* has a script called Patrol Area and *mySMS.sms* (the higher priority SMS) also has a script called Patrol Area. If the entity M1A2, which is defined in *EntityLevel.sms* executes the Patrol Area task, it uses the version in *mySMS.sms*.

Lua scripts in included SMSs have the following additional relationships:

- Any scenario scripted task promoted to a system scripted task is promoted into the highest-priority SMS.

- If you edit a scripted task that is in an included SMS, it is saved into the highest-priority SMS. The version of the script in the included SMS does not change. Therefore if you want a change to a script to affect all uses of that script, edit it in its own SMS.

### 61.3.5 Application-Level Files in Included SMSs

Application-level SMS files, such as *commModelParams.mtl* or *gui/initialCreateMenuConfiguration.xml*, are included the same way entity-specific files are and you do not need to have copies of them in a parent SMS as long as one of the child SMSs has them. However every SMS must have *vrfSim.opd*.

### 61.3.6 Search Paths for Referenced Files in an SMS

The simulation objects in a scenario reference many files to determine their behavior, such as system definition files, scripts, platform files, and so on. If all the simulation objects in a scenario are configured in one SMS, then all of the referenced files are within the file hierarchy of that SMS. However, if you use an SMS that includes other SMSs, then simulation objects may have to search within multiple SMSs to reference the correct files.

An SMS can load files from any SMS it includes, and any currently loaded SMS it is included in.

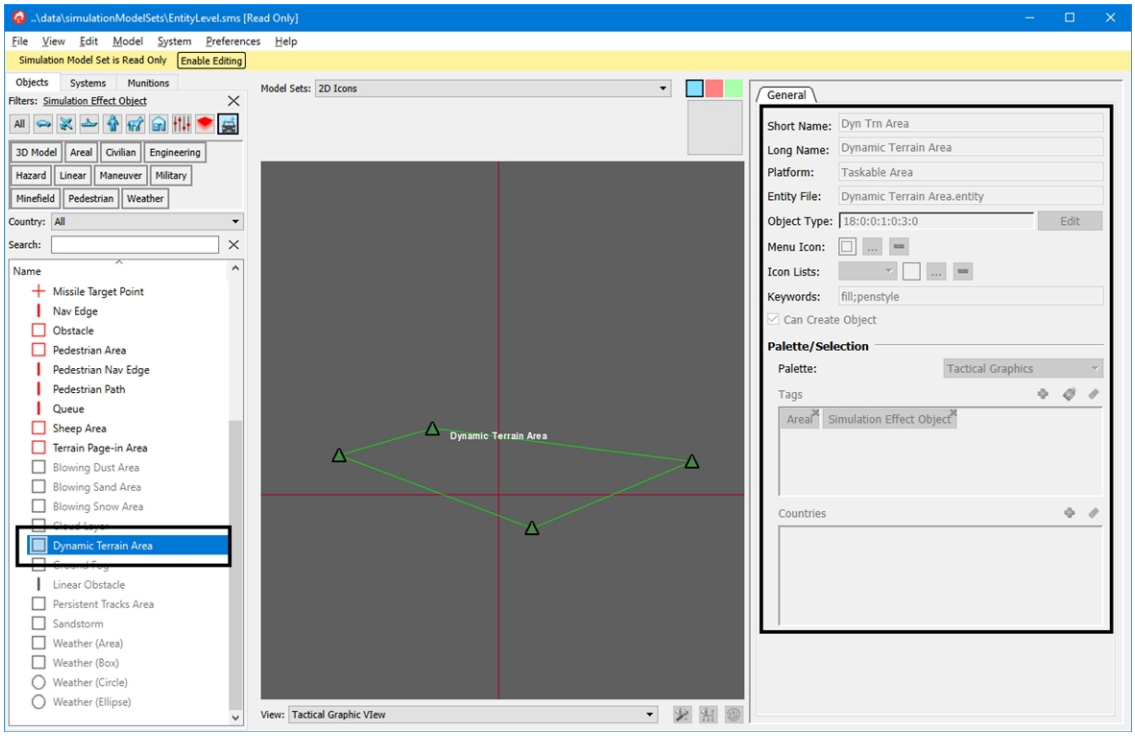
File referencing, as with other aspects of included SMSs, is based on the priority of the SMS in which an object is configured. Given the SMSs in Figure 515 on the previous page, the search paths for each SMS, from lowest to highest priority would be:

- *base.sms*. Can search in *base.sms*, *EntityLevel.sms*, *mySMS.sms*, and *yourSMS.sms*.
- *EntityLevel.sms*. Can search in *base.sms*, *EntityLevel.sms*, *mySMS.sms*, and *yourSMS.sms*.
- *mySMS.sms*. Can search in *base.sms*, *EntityLevel.sms*, and *mySMS.sms*.
- *yourSMS.sms*. Can search in *base.sms*, *EntityLevel.sms*, and *yourSMS.sms*.

### 61.3.7 Promoting a Model to the Parent SMS

When you load an SMS that has included other SMSs, the objects from the included SMSs are listed, but you cannot edit them. You can only edit them by editing the SMS to which they belong. Figure 516 shows *AggregateLevel.sms* filtered for simulation effect objects. The objects at the end of the list are not editable because they are included from *base.sms*. Note in the figure that most of the parameters for the selected object are read-only.

**Figure 516. Included simulation object**

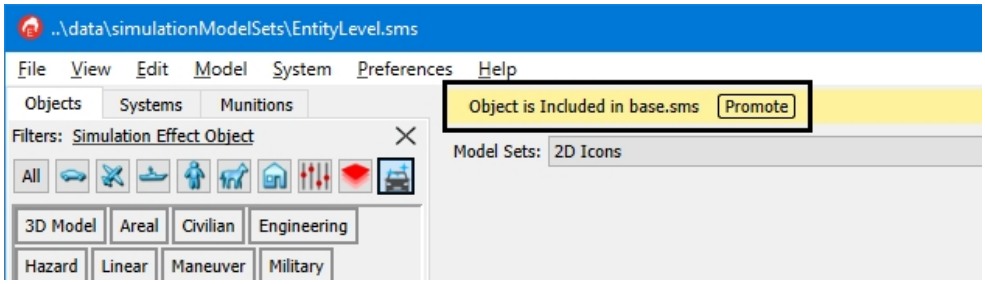



Since one of the purposes of being able to include SMSs in the loaded SMS is to customize simulation objects in the included SMSs, you can promote objects from the included SMS to the loaded SMS. The object then becomes editable and is saved in the loaded SMS. When the SMS is loaded, the object in the loaded SMS overrides the object in the included SMS.

➤ **To promote an object to the parent SMS:**

1. Load the parent SMS.
2. Choose **Preferences > Show Included Simulation Objects**.
3. On the Objects tab or Munitions tab, select the object you want to promote. (Although munitions are on a separate tab, they are also simulation objects.)
4. Choose **Model > Promote to Main Simulation Model Set** or click the Promote button (Figure 517) (above the parameter configuration tabs). The object is added to the parent SMS and is now fully editable. When you save the SMS, a new *.entity* file is added to it.

**Figure 517. Promote button**




### 61.3.8 Promoting a System to the Loaded SMS

Just as with simulation objects ("61.3.7 Promoting a Model to the Parent SMS" on page 1234), if you want to edit a system in an included SMS, you must promote it to the loaded SMS.

➤ **To promote an object to the parent SMS:**

1. Load the parent SMS.
2. Choose **Preferences > Show Included Simulation Objects**.
3. Select the system you want to promote.
4. Choose **System > Promote to Main Simulation Model Set** or click the Promote button (Figure 517 above). The system is added to the parent SMS and is now fully editable.

### 61.3.9 Hiding Included Objects

By default, the Simulation Object Editor lists the simulation objects that are part of included SMSs. However, you can hide included objects if you just want to see the objects in the top level SMS.

➤ To hide or display included objects in the objects list, choose **Preferences > Show Included Simulation Objects**.

## 61.4. Visual Model Definitions

VR-Forces stores visual model definitions in different places depending on which SMS is loaded, as follows:

- When the Simulation Object Editor loads *base.sms*, *EntityLevel.sms*, or *AggregateLevel.sms*, it reads the appropriate definition files for the SMS from the directories under *./appData/definitions*. When you save changes to one of these SMSs, the changes are written back to the original definition files.
- If you create a new SMS, model and element definition files get saved with the SMS in the *./data/simulationModelSets/<sms>/gui/visuals* directory for the new SMS. When you load the SMS, it reads model and element definitions from the SMS-specific files.

For information about model and element definition files, please see Chapter 15, *Model Definitions,* and Chapter 16, *Element Definitions*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

### 61.4.1 User-Created Visual Definition Files

Although we recommend that you use the Simulation Object Editor for all changes to visual models, it is possible to add new model definitions and element definitions using the Visual Model Editors dialog box, instead of the Simulation Object Editor. Additionally, some attributes of element definitions cannot be set in the Simulation Object Editor, so if you want to change them, you have to use the Visual Model Editors.

The new and changed definitions can be exported to files other than the default set of definition files. In fact, in many cases, we recommend that you export them to their own files. However, creating new model or element definitions in the Visual Model Editors and saving them to new files has implications for how they are loaded and saved by the Simulation Object Editor.

When the Simulation Object Editor loads one of the three default SMSs, it loads all files in the appropriate directories, including any additional files that you have created. However, when VR-Forces saves changes to the SMS, it writes the changes only to the default definition files for the SMS. It does not write back to the user-created definition files. Since the user-created files are still in the directory, the next time you load the SMS, there may be conflicts between the files and the results may be unexpected.

Given this behavior, the recommended workflow for reconciling new definitions created in the Visual Model Editors dialog box is as follows:

1. In the Visual Model Editors dialog box, save new model or element definitions to new files in the default definition directories.
2. Open the affected SMS in the Simulation Object Editor.
3. Confirm that your new model or element definitions have been loaded by the SMS.
4. Save the SMS. This saves the new definitions into the default set of SMS definition files.
5. Delete the individual definition files that you created in step 1 so that there are no conflicts with the SMS.

If you create a new SMS, when the Simulation Object Editor loads the SMS, it only loads the definition files that it previously created. If you create additional leaf or model definition files with the Visual Model Editors dialog box, they do not get loaded. You must import them into your SMS. Therefore the recommended workflow is as follows:

1. Open a scenario that uses your SMS.
2. In the Visual Model Editors dialog box, load the .hier file for your SMS. It is either *./appData/definitions/Aggregate/ElementDefinitions/coreAggregateElementDefinitions.hier* or *./appData/definitions/Entity/ElementDefinitions/coreEntityElementDefinitions.hier*.
3. Import the model definition or element definition file to which you want to add new definitions. Be sure to import it from the files in the */gui/visuals* directory for your SMS. Be sure that you only edit one element definition file at a time.
4. Add new definitions as desired.
5. Export the new definitions to the definition file that you imported.
6. Open the SMS in the Simulation Object Editor and confirm that the new definitions are available.

## 61.5. Upgrading Old Simulation Model Sets

The Simulation Object Editor has an upgrade tool that can upgrade SMSs created in VR-Forces 4.4 or later to the current release. The upgrade process varies depending on how you created the SMS that you are upgrading. The possibilities it takes into account are as follows:

- The old SMS was created by including *EntityLevel.sms* or *AggregateLevel.sms* (a standard SMS).
- The old SMS was created by copying *EntityLevel.sms* or *AggregateLevel.sms*.
- The old SMS was a new SMS that did not copy or include *EntityLevel.sms* or *AggregateLevel.sms*. It could have included or be a copy of *base.sms*.

The following sections describe the upgrade process for each of these possibilities. If you need to upgrade an SMS from VR-Forces 4.3.x or earlier, or want to upgrade your SMS manually, please see "61.5.6 Migrating an SMS to a New Release by Hand" on page 1242.

### 61.5.1 The Old SMS Includes a Standard SMS

If you created the old SMS by including a standard SMS, the assumption is that you made no changes to the included SMS. You edited your SMS by promoting simulation objects from the standard SMS and editing them, and by adding new simulation objects in your SMS. You may also have made other changes to the SMS, such as adding scripts and adding or editing system definition files.

Since you did not touch the standard SMS, the upgrade tool assumes that you will simply include the standard SMS that is provided in the new version of VR-Forces and that you want to keep all the changes you made when creating the old SMS. The upgrade wizard does the following:

- Copies all files from the old SMS (except visual data as described in the next paragraph).
- If the old SMS is from VR-Forces 4.5 or later and you specify in the upgrade wizard that you want to copy visual data, it is copied to the new SMS. If you specify that you do not want to copy visual data, no visual data files are copied. (For more information about copying visual data, please see "61.5.4 Copying Visual Data" on page 1241.)
- Compares the files that were promoted into the old SMS to files of the same name in the new included SMS. If the files are different, these files are listed as needing investigation.

## 61.5.2 The Old SMS Was Copied from a Standard SMS

Upgrading an SMS that was created by copying *EntityLevel.sms* or *AggregateLevel.sms* is more complex than upgrading an SMS that was created by including an SMS. The upgrade tool tries to preserve all changes made to the files in the old SMS while incorporating the improvements made to the new version of the standard SMS. However, it errs on the side of keeping changes made to files in the old SMS. This means that if you want your SMS to take advantage of the improvements to the new standard SMS, you may have to compare files by hand. If changes have been made to platform files, you can quickly capture those changes by selecting Apply Platform Changes in the Simulation Object Editor.

The upgrade tool does the following:

- It generates checksums for the files in the old SMS. It compares these checksums to checksums for the files in the standard SMS in the old version of VR-Forces and to the files in the standard SMS in the version of VR-Forces you are upgrading to. It moves files to the new SMS based on these comparisons. Table 49 describes the possible results of these comparisons.

**Table 49. Decision table for comparing SMS files**

| | Yes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| Is the file the same in old standard SMS, old SMS, and new standard SMS? | Copy file to new SMS. | |
| Is the file the same in old standard SMS and old SMS, but changed in new standard SMS? | Copy file from new standard SMS to new SMS. | Optionally, run Apply Platform Updates to capture changes in OPE files. |

**Table 49. Decision table for comparing SMS files (continued)**

| | Yes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| Is the file only in old SMS? | Copy file from old SMS to new SMS. | Optionally, run Apply Platform Updates to capture changes in OPE files. |
| Is the file in old standard SMS and old SMS, but removed from new standard SMS? | If the file was changed in old SMS, copy it to new SMS. Otherwise, remove it. | Optionally, run Apply Platform Updates to capture changes in OPE files. |
| Is the file only in new standard SMS? | Add this file to the new SMS. | |
| Did the file change from the old standard SMS to the old SMS and from the old standard SMS to the new standard SMS? | Copy file from old SMS to new SMS. | Consider merging in changes from the file in the new standard SMS. |
| Is the file the same in old standard SMS and new standard SMS, but different in old SMS? | Copy file from old SMS to new SMS. | Optionally, run Apply Platform Updates to capture changes in OPE files. |

- If the old SMS is from VR-Forces 4.5 or later and you specify in the upgrade wizard that you want to copy visual data, it is copied to the new SMS. If you specify that you do not want to copy visual data, no visual data files are copied. (For more information about copying visual data, please see "61.5.4 Copying Visual Data" on the facing page.)
- The upgrade tool provides a report of files that have conflicts, files that were added, and files that were removed. You can use this report to determine what files you want to examine for manual upgrades.

## 61.5.3 The Old SMS Was Completely New or Copied from *base.sms*

In rare cases, VR-Forces users may create an SMS by copying or including only *base.sms*, by selectively copying files from one of the standard SMSs, or by creating all the files themselves. In this case, there is no reference for the upgrade process. The upgrade tool does the following:

- Copies all files from the old SMS (except visual data as described in the next paragraph).
- If the old SMS is from VR-Forces 4.5 or later and you specify in the upgrade wizard that you want to copy visual data, it is copied to the new SMS. If you specify that you do not want to copy visual data, no visual data files are copied.

(For more information about copying visual data, please see "61.5.4 Copying Visual Data" below.)

- Report files that might need to be reviewed, such as system definitions and OPE files.

## 61.5.4 Copying Visual Data

In VR-Forces 4.4.x, all visual model data was stored in files in *./appData/definitions* and in *./appData/settings/vrfGui*. Visual data was not specific to an SMS. In VR-Forces 4.5 and later, visual data files were restructured and an SMS can have visual data that is specific to the SMS.

For SMSs created in VR-Forces 4.5 or later, the upgrade tool gives you the option of copying visual data from the old version of VR-Forces. If you choose to copy visual data and the old SMS has SMS-specific visual data, the files from the SMS are copied to the new SMS. If the old SMS did not have SMS-specific data, the files from *./appData/definitions* are copied to the new SMS.

If you choose not to copy visual data, the new SMS uses the visual data provided in the new version of VR-Forces.

If you copy visual data to the new SMS, it will take longer to load the SMS when you open a scenario.

## 61.5.5 Running the SMS Upgrade Tool

➤ **To upgrade an SMS to a new version of VR-Forces:**

1. Open the Simulation Object Editor.
2. Choose **File > Upgrade Old Simulation Model Set**. The Upgrade Simulation Model Set dialog box opens. (The upgrade process varies depending on the type of SMS you are upgrading.)
3. Select the SMS that you are upgrading (the old SMS).
4. Specify a name for the upgraded SMS. The default is the name of the old SMS.
5. Click Next. If the old SMS was created by copying a standard VR-Forces SMS or was a completely original SMS, the Original Simulation Model Set page is displayed. If the old SMS was created by including a standard VR-Forces SMS, the Simulation Model Set Version page is displayed. Skip to step 8.
6. If the old SMS was created by copying *EntityLevel.sms* or *AggregateLevel.sms*, select the standard SMS it was copied from. If the source is completely original or was copied from *base.sms*, select Neither. (SMSs created by including standard VR-Forces SMSs do not see this page.)
7. Click Next. The Simulation Model Set Version page is displayed.
8. Select the version of VR-Forces used to create the old SMS.
9. Click Next. If the old SMS was created with VR-Forces 4.4 or 4.4.2, the upgrade process runs and a report is generated. If the old SMS was created with VR-Forces 4.5 or later, the Visual Data page is displayed.

10. Specify whether or not to copy visual data.
11. Click Next. The upgrade process runs and a report is generated.

### 61.5.6 Migrating an SMS to a New Release by Hand

If you need to migrate an SMS that was created in VR-Forces 4.3.x or earlier or do not want to use the upgrade tool, you can migrate your old SMS by hand. You can do this by copying your customized files to a new SMS or by recreating your changes in a new SMS.

When you edit an SMS in the Simulation Object Editor, it:

- Creates or edits *.entity* files for the simulation objects that you edit.
- Modifies visual definition files and entity type mappings.

The Simulation Object Editor does not create or change any other files. However, there are many other files in an SMS that could be customized, such as system definitions, the various damage and ammo select files, and system scripts.

If you upgrade to a new version of , you can quickly add any of the new simulation objects you created by copying their *.entity* files into an SMS in the new release. This will make the simulation objects available to the simulation engine, but will not include their visual definitions. For each entity that you add this way, you will have to edit the 2D and 3D models in the Simulation Object Editor.

If you made any changes to other files, you may have to copy those changed files to the new SMS.

If you have written scripts, use the script export process to export them from the previous release of and then import them into the new release.

Since SMSs often have significant changes from one release to the next, the older your legacy SMS is, the harder it will be to upgrade it simply by copying changed files. We recommend that you review the release notes for interim releases to understand the changes that you might need to account for when migrating old files. You can view the release notes for each release on the VR-Forces Product Versions page at https://www.mak.com/support/product-versions/simulate/vr-forces.

There are several major SMS divergence points to be aware of:

- In VR-Forces 4.2, *default.sms* was reorganized as *base.sms* and *EntityLevel.sms*.
- In VR-Forces 4.5, visual model files were restructured.
- In VR-Forces 4.7, weapon system and damage system files were changed significantly so that they could be edited in the Simulation Object Editor.

### 61.5.7 Migrating Pre-4.7 Weapon and Damage Systems

Due to changes to the system definition files to support editing weapon and damage systems in the SOE, the SMS upgrade tool does not migrate weapon and damage systems from the VR-Forces 4.6.1 and earlier format to VR-Forces 4.7 or later. If you have modified a system using the legacy file formats and want to replicate it in the current release, you have two options, as follows:

- Copy the old system files to the new version of VR-Forces. VR-Forces continues to support the VR-Forces 4.6.1 and earlier format. If you copy the old files to the current SMS, you will not be able to edit them in the SOE.
- Use the SOE to edit an existing system or create a new system to match the system that you customized in the older version of VR-Forces.

---

There are more details about the changes to weapon and damage systems in *VR-Forces Migration Guide*.

---

### 61.5.8 Converting Pre-4.8 SMSs To Use Articulated Parts

In VR-Forces 4.8, entities' articulated parts were enhanced. You can add and adjust them in the Simulation Object Editor, and, using the Set menu, you can set the appearance of articulated parts that are not managed by another controller. To take advantage of this feature, you must update the *.entity*, *.sysdef*, and *.ope* files as described in *VR-Forces Migration Guide*.

To learn more about editing articulated parts in the Simulation Object Editor, see Editing a Model's Articulated Parts.

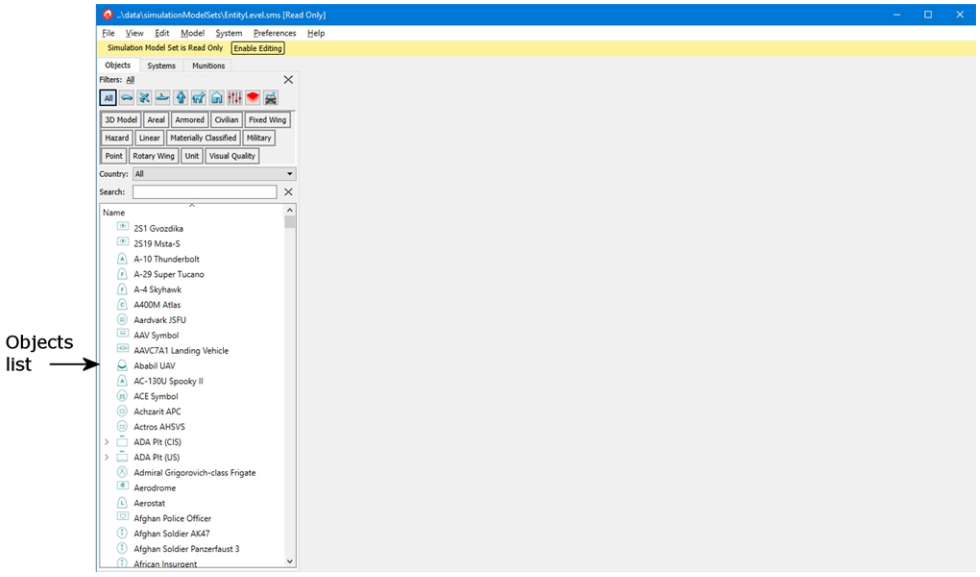
## 61.6. Opening a Simulation Model Set

To edit simulation object models in the Simulation Object Editor, you must open a simulation model set.

➤ **To open a simulation model set:**

1. Choose **File > Open Simulation Model Set**. The Open Model Set dialog box opens.
2. Select the SMS you want to open.
3. Click Open. The SMS is loaded and a list of simulation objects is displayed in the Simulation Object Editor.

**Figure 518. Simulation Object Editor with simulation model set loaded**




# 61.7. Creating New Simulation Model Sets

There are a couple ways to create a new SMS. You can create an SMS that contains no simulation objects but includes an existing SMS, or you can create a new SMS that contains only the most basic objects that VR-Forces requires. You can also create an SMS by copying an existing SMS. In the first two cases, you would add new objects or promote objects from the included SMSs into the parent SMS. In the third case, you would edit the simulation objects already in the SMS and add new ones as desired.

To simplify upgrading to future versions of VR-Forces, the recommended choice is to create a new simulation model set by including an existing SMS.

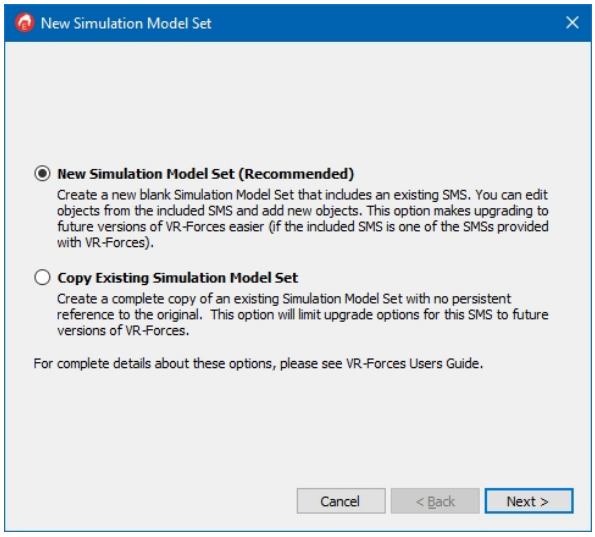
## 61.7.1 Creating a New SMS that Includes an Existing SMS

The recommended method is to use an existing set that includes models that work in VR-Forces, and then customize it by adjusting the existing models or adding new ones.

➤ **To create a new simulation model set based on an existing one:**

1. Choose **File > New Simulation Model Set.** The New Simulation Model Set dialog box opens (Figure 519).

**Figure 519. New Simulation Model Set dialog box**




2. Select New Simulation Model Set.
3. Click Next. The Simulation Model Set Type dialog box opens.
4. Select Extend Existing Simulation Model Set.
5. Click Next. The Extend Existing Simulation Model Set dialog box opens.
6. Select the SMS to use as the basis for your new SMS.
7. Click Next. The New Model Set Name dialog box opens.
8. In the File name box, type a name for the new model set.
9. Click Finish. The Simulation Object Editor loads systems information from the selected model set.
10. Edit the SMS as desired.
11. Choose **File > Save Simulation Model Set**.

## 61.7.2 Creating a New SMS with Minimal Objects

Every SMS must include a basic set of files, such as platform files, GUI configuration files, and system definitions. You ensure that your new SMS has those files by including an existing SMS in it. The minimum set of files is provided by *base.sms*.

➤ **To create a new simulation model set with minimal objects:**

1. Choose **File > New Simulation Model Set**. The New Simulation Model Set dialog box opens (Figure 519 above).
2. Select New Simulation Model Set.
3. Click Next. The Simulation Model Set Type dialog box opens.
4. Select Minimal Simulation Model Set.
5. Click Next. The New Model Set Name dialog box opens.
6. In the File name box, type a name for the new model set.

7. Click Finish. The Simulation Object Editor loads basic object information.
8. Edit the SMS as desired.
9. Choose **File > Save Simulation Model Set**.

### 61.7.3 Creating a New SMS by Copying an SMS

You can create a new SMS by copying an existing SMS. When you do this the new SMS includes any SMSs that were included by the original SMS. All of the simulation objects in the new SMS are editable.

➤ **To create a new simulation model set by copying an SMS:**

1. Choose **File > New Simulation Model Set**. The New Simulation Model Set dialog box opens (Figure 519 on the previous page).
2. Select Copy Existing Simulation Model Set.
3. Click Next. The Select Model Set to Copy dialog box opens.
4. Select a model set and click Next.
5. Click Next. The New Model Set Name dialog box opens.
6. In the File name box, type a name for the new model set.
7. Click Finish. The Simulation Object Editor loads information from the source model set.
8. Make any changes you want to the model set. (For details about how to add and remove included SMSs, please see the procedure in "61.3.1 Including Simulation Model Sets in Other Simulation Model Sets" on page 1230, starting with step 6.)
9. Choose **File > Save Simulation Model Set**.

## 61.8. Importing .entity Files

If you have *.entity* files that you created with a previous version of VR-Forces or by multiple persons on different computers, you may want to import them into an SMS. The easiest way to do this is to copy the files into the *vrfSim* directory in the SMS (*./data/simulationModelSet[<model_set>/vrfSim*). However, you can also import the files from the Simulation Object Editor.

➤ **To import *.entity* files into an SMS:**

1. Choose **File > Add Entity File**. The Add Entity File dialog box opens.
2. Select the file that you want to import.
3. Click Open. The file gets copied to the SMS.

## 61.9. Applying New and Updated Variables

All simulation object models reference one of the basic platforms, such as ground, fixed-wing, and point object. Most simulation objects reference one or more system definition files. If you update the variable bindings in a platform file or system definition file, you must apply these changes to the simulation objects of that platform

type. Although you could do this by hand, as described in "68.5. Adding Variable Bindings to Platform and System Files" on page 1411, that would be a tedious and error-prone activity. The Simulation Object Editor can apply all updates to all files automatically.

Similarly, if new variables are added to the API in descriptor files, these variables must be added to the system definition files and OPE files.

➤ **To apply new and updated variable bindings:**

1. Choose **File > Regenerate SMS Files**. The Regenerate SMS Files dialog box opens.
2. Select the check box for each update you want, as follows:
   - Entity File Updates. All new variable bindings in the OPE files and systems are added as elements in the appropriate *.entity* files.
   - OPE File Updates. Applies changes to platform file descriptors to the OPE files.
   - System File Updates. Updates system files and system template files with any new variables that have been added to the system file descriptors.
3. Click OK.

## 61.10. Importing and Exporting Object Information

You can export a list of all simulation objects in an SMS to a CSV file. You can open the CSV file in a spreadsheet application. You can edit some of the object information and then import the updated object information back into the SMS. This format lets you quickly edit information without selecting objects one-by-one in the Simulation Object Editor.

For each object in the SMS, the object information file lists the object type enumeration, name, short name and filtering tags. You can edit the name, short name and tags.

---

! Although you can also edit the object type, doing so will break the relationship between the limited information in the spreadsheet and the complete configuration stored in the SMS. It is strongly recommended that you not edit the object type.

---

### 61.10.1 Exporting Object Information

➤ **To export object information:**

1. Choose **Model > Export Object Information**. The Export Object Information dialog box opens.
2. Type a name for the file.
3. Click Save.

### 61.10.2 Importing Object Information

➤ **To import object information:**

1. Choose **Model > Import Object Information**. The Import Object Information dialog box opens.
2. Select the file you want to import.
3. Click Open.

## 61.11. Editing the Tags List

If you want to organize simulation objects into tags that are not included in the default tags list, you can add new tags. You can also remove and rename tags. Tags for simulation objects are stored in *./data/simulationModelSets/<sms>/gui/tags.csv*. Tags for systems are stored in *./data/simulationModelSets/<sms>/gui/system-tags.csv*.

---

The procedures in this section also apply to editing the Country list. Select Country on the Edit menu instead of Tags.

---

### 61.11.1 Adding a New Tag

When you add a new tag, you can give it a rank. Ranks determine how tags are displayed in the tag window. They work as follows:

- If a tag is a top-level tag, the rank determines the order in which it is listed relative to other top-level tags.
- If a tag is not a top level tag, the rank determines the preference for including the tag in the tag list. By default, the tag window can only display a maximum of 15 tags. If a top level tag has more than 15 possible sub tags, VR-Forces sorts the tags by rank order starting with 1. Within each group of tags with the same rank, it sorts them by how many simulation objects use that tag. Once it determines the 15 highest ranking tags, it displays them in alphabetical order.

---

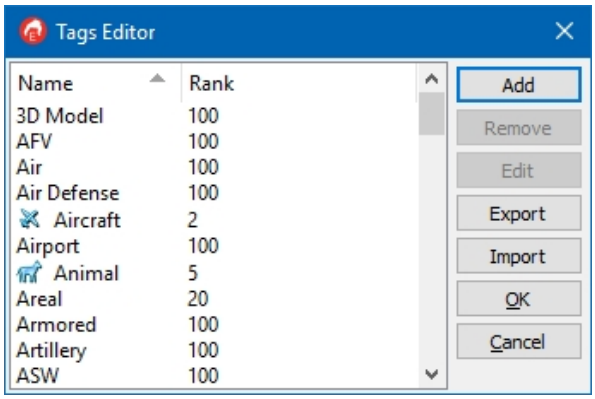
You can configure the maximum number of tags that can be displayed. To do so, change the value for the **myShowTopCategories** element in *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default_PaletteInformationSettings.pisx*.

---

➤ **To add a new tag:**

1. Choose **Model > Tags**. The Tags Editor opens (Figure 520).

**Figure 520. Tags Editor**




2. Click Add. The Add Tag Information dialog box opens.
3. Type the name of the new tag.
4. Optionally, specify a rank.
5. To put the tag in the top row, select the Top Level Tag check box.
6. To make the tag visible, select the Visible check box.
7. To use an icon instead of the tag name, click the Icon button. The Select Tag Icon dialog box opens.
8. Select an icon file.
9. Click Open.
10. Click OK.

---

If you add a tag and do not assign a simulation object to it, it does not get saved when you save the simulation model set.

---

## 61.11.2 Removing a Tag

If you remove a tag, it gets removed from any entity that is assigned to it. You must save the SMS to make the change permanent.

➤ **To remove a tag:**

1. Choose **Model > Tags**. The Tags Editor opens.
2. Select the tag that you want to remove.
3. Click Remove.
4. Click OK.

### 61.11.3 Renaming a Tag

When you rename a tag, all simulation objects that are assigned to the old name are reassigned to the new name. The old name remains in the Tags list until you save the simulation model set, but it is not listed in the Tags Editor. If you assign a simulation object to the old tag name before saving the SMS, the old name is retained and added to the list in the Tags Editor.

➤ **To rename a tag:**

1. Choose **Model > Tags**. The Tags Editor opens.
2. Select the tag that you want to rename.
3. Click Edit. The Edit Tag Information dialog box opens.
4. Type the new name.
5. Click OK. The tags list is updated.
6. Click OK.

### 61.11.4 Undoing Tag Changes

You can undo changes made to the tag list and entity tag assignments.

---

! When you undo tag changes, all changes to the tags list and all changes to entity tag assignments made since the last save of the simulation model set are reversed. Be sure that this is what you want before completing this procedure.

---

➤ **To undo tag changes:**

1. Choose **Model > Revert Tags**. A confirmation prompt is displayed.
2. Click Yes.

### 61.11.5 Using Auto Tags

You can automatically assign a set of tags to new models, to specific models, and to all objects. The tags are assigned by object type based on the information in *./appData/settings/simulationObjectEditor/autoTagInformation.csv*. (The Simulation Object Editor reads the file when it starts up, so if you edit the file while the SOE is open, you must restart the SOE to pick up the changes.)

When you create a completely new model (not a new model from an existing model), if the object type has an entry in *simulationObjectEditor.csv*, the associated tags are automatically added to the model. (When you create a new model from an existing model, the new model has the same tag list as the model it was created from.)

➤ To assign auto tags to the entire object list in an SMS, choose **Model > Apply Auto Tags**.

➤ **To apply auto tags to a specific model:**

1. Select the model whose tags you want to update.
2. Click the Apply Auto Tags button ( ) above the Tags window.

## 61.11.6 Assigning Tags Based on Visual Model Characteristics

You can automatically assign tags to simulation objects that have 3D models based on their visual characteristics, such as articulated parts and display states. This process requires the SOE to examine every visual model and can take a long time.

➤ To assign tags based on visual model characteristics, choose **Model > Assign Tags Based on Visuals**.

## 61.11.7 Exporting Tags

You can export the tags in an SMS. They are saved to a comma separated values (CSV) file. You can then import the tag list into another SMS or another VR-Forces installation.

The tag list lists of tags, priorities, and icons associated with the tags, if any. It does not include any information about simulation objects.

➤ **To export the tag list:**

1. Choose **Model > Tags**. The Tags Editor opens.
2. Click Export. The Export Tag Information dialog box opens.
3. Specify a name for the tag file.
4. Click Save.

## 61.11.8 Importing Tags

➤ **To import a tag list:**

1. Choose **Model > Tags**. The Tags Editor opens.
2. Click Import. The Import Tag Information dialog box opens.
3. Select the tag file you want to import.
4. Click Open.

## 61.11.9 Managing Tags Using the Object Information File

If you want to edit the tags for many simulation objects, including adding new tags, editing individual simulation objects one-by-one can be tedious. You can speed up the process by editing them in a spreadsheet. To do this:

1. Export the simulation object list to a CSV file, as described in "61.10.1 Exporting Object Information" on page 1247.
2. Make the changes you want to tag assignments.
3. Import the edited object information file into the SMS.

# 61.12. Managing the Forces List

When you create an object in the front-end, you must choose a force. You manage the list of forces available and their coloring in the Simulation Object Editor.

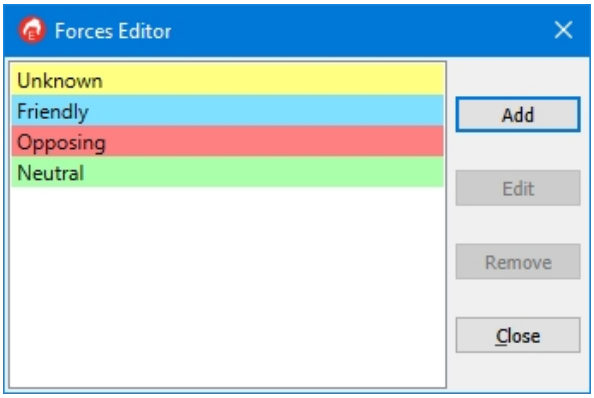
## 61.12.1 Adding a Force

Adding new forces may be useful if you are simulating participants from multiple countries or if you want to easily model and change force relationships for non-governmental forces such as militias or insurgent groups.

➤ **To add a force:**

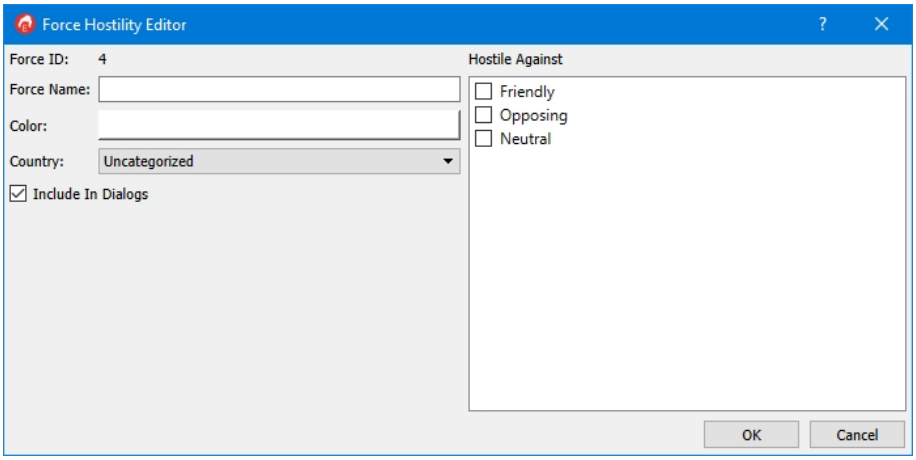
1. Choose **Edit > Forces**. The Forces Editor opens (Figure 521).

**Figure 521. Forces Editor**




2. Click Add. The Force Hostility Editor opens (Figure 522). The new force is assigned a force ID. You cannot edit the force ID.

**Figure 522. Force Hostility Editor**




3. In the Force Name box, type a name for the force.
4. Click the Color button. A color picker opens.

5. Select a color for the force.
6. Optionally, in the Country list, specify a country to associate with the force.
7. Optionally, in the Hostile Against pane, select the forces that the new force will be hostile towards. (You can change hostility at run time in the Hostility Matrix. For details, please see "9.3. Managing Force Hostility Relationships" on page 283.
8. If you want the force to be listed in dialog boxes that list forces, select the Include in Dialogs check box.
9. Click OK.
10. Click Close.

## 61.12.2 Editing a Force

You can edit a force's name, color, hostility, and use. Each force has a force number. When you edit a force, you are changing the attributes of that numbered force.

➤ **To edit a force:**

1. Choose **Edit > Forces**. The Forces Editor opens (Figure 521 on the previous page).
2. Select the force that you want to edit.
3. Click Edit. The Force Hostility Editor opens (Figure 522 on the previous page).
4. To edit the name, change the text in the Force Name box.
5. To edit the color associated with the force, click the Color button and choose a color from the color picker.
6. To edit hostility relationships, in the Hostile Against window, select the forces that the force should be hostile towards.
7. To edit whether or not the force is listed in dialog boxes that list forces, select or clear the Include in Dialogs check box.
8. Click OK.
9. Click Close.

## 61.12.3 Removing a Force

If you create a scenario that has simulation objects with a particular force and you then remove the force, the next time you open the scenario, VR-Forces still maintains that force assignment for the simulation objects. The force will be listed in the Hostility Matrix. However, entity icons will not be colored and you will not be able to create any simulation objects with the removed force.

➤ **To remove a force:**

1. Choose **Edit > Forces**. The Forces Editor opens (Figure 521 on the previous page).
2. Select the force that you want to remove.
3. Click Remove. The force is removed from the list.
4. Click Close.

## 61.13. Copying the Object List to the Clipboard

You can copy the object list to the clipboard and paste it as text into word processing applications.

➤ To copy the object list to the clipboard, choose **Edit > Copy Names in List to Clipboard.**

# 62. Editing Common Parameters

This chapter explains how to use the Simulation Object Editor to edit simulation object parameters that are common to most simulation object types for both entity-level scenarios and aggregate-level scenarios. For details about editing parameters that are specific to individual entities, please see "Appendix 63. Editing Entities for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 1295. For details about editing units, please see "Appendix 64. Editing Units for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 1327 and "Appendix 65. Editing Aggregate-Level Objects" on page 1339.


62.1. Editing Generic Object Parameters ..... 1257
- 62.1.1 Selecting an Object to Edit ..... 1257
- 62.1.2 Editing an Object's Tags ..... 1257
- 62.1.3 Changing an Object's Object Type Enumeration ..... 1258
- 62.1.4 Changing an Object's Name ..... 1261
- 62.1.5 Specifying Whether an Object Can Be Created ..... 1261
- 62.1.6 Specifying the Object Creation Palette ..... 1261
- 62.1.7 Specifying a Default User-Created Overlay ..... 1261
- 62.1.8 Specifying the Platform ..... 1262
- 62.1.9 Editing a Simulation Object's Country List ..... 1262
- 62.1.10 Creating Icon Lists ..... 1262
- 62.1.11 Undoing (Reverting) Changes to an Object ..... 1265
- 62.1.12 Reverting an Inherited Object's Parameters ..... 1265

62.2. Editing a Simulation Object's Visual Model ..... 1265
- 62.2.1 Changing the 3D Model or Colorized Model ..... 1267
- 62.2.2 Changing the 2D Icon Using a Font ..... 1268
- 62.2.3 Changing the 2D Icon Using an Image ..... 1269
- 62.2.4 Editing a Spot Report Model ..... 1270
- 62.2.5 Adding a New Visual Model or Image ..... 1271
- 62.2.6 Displaying Details about the Visual Model ..... 1272
- 62.2.7 Changing a Visual Model's Type ..... 1274
- 62.2.8 Specifying Visual Markings ..... 1275

62.2.9 Importing Visual Models ..... 1276
62.2.10 Pruning Visual Models ..... 1277
62.2.11 Exporting Visual Models ..... 1277
62.2.12 Reloading Visual Models in the VR-Forces GUI ..... 1277
62.3. Creating a New Simulation Object ..... 1278
62.3.1 Creating a Copy of New Model from an Existing Model ..... 1279
62.3.2 Inheriting a New Model from an Existing Model ..... 1279
62.4. Deleting an Object Model ..... 1280
62.5. Creating a Simulation Object Group ..... 1280
62.5.1 Setting the Simulation Connection when Creating an SOG ..... 1281
62.6. Editing Tactical Graphics ..... 1281
62.6.1 Editing a Tactical Graphic's Menu Icon ..... 1281
62.6.2 Setting the Default Values for Tactical Graphics Properties ..... 1282
62.6.3 Specifying Tactical Graphic Properties that Can Be Edited in the Front-End ..... 1283
62.6.4 Editing the Visual Model for a Tactical Graphic ..... 1284
62.7. Creating a Template ..... 1287
62.8. Editing Systems in the Simulation Object Editor ..... 1288
62.8.1 Creating a New System ..... 1288
62.8.2 Editing Probability Tables ..... 1290
62.8.3 Deleting a System ..... 1293
62.8.4 Reverting a System ..... 1293

# 62.1. Editing Generic Object Parameters

This section explains how to edit the parameters that are common to most objects. The procedures in this section apply to simulation objects, tactical graphics, cultural features, and other objects such as weather and contamination areas.

- By default, the SMSs provided with VR-Forces are read-only. It is strongly recommended that you not edit these SMSs. You should create copies or new SMSs that include them. For details, please see "61.7. Creating New Simulation Model Sets" on page 1244.
- If one of the object parameters described in this chapter does not apply to a particular object type, it is either blank or uneditable in the Simulation Object Editor.

## 62.1.1 Selecting an Object to Edit

Most of the Simulation Object Editor procedures assume that you have selected an object in the object list to edit.

➤ **To select an object to edit:**

1. Optionally, in the object list, select the tags for the type of object you want to edit.
2. Select the object in the list.

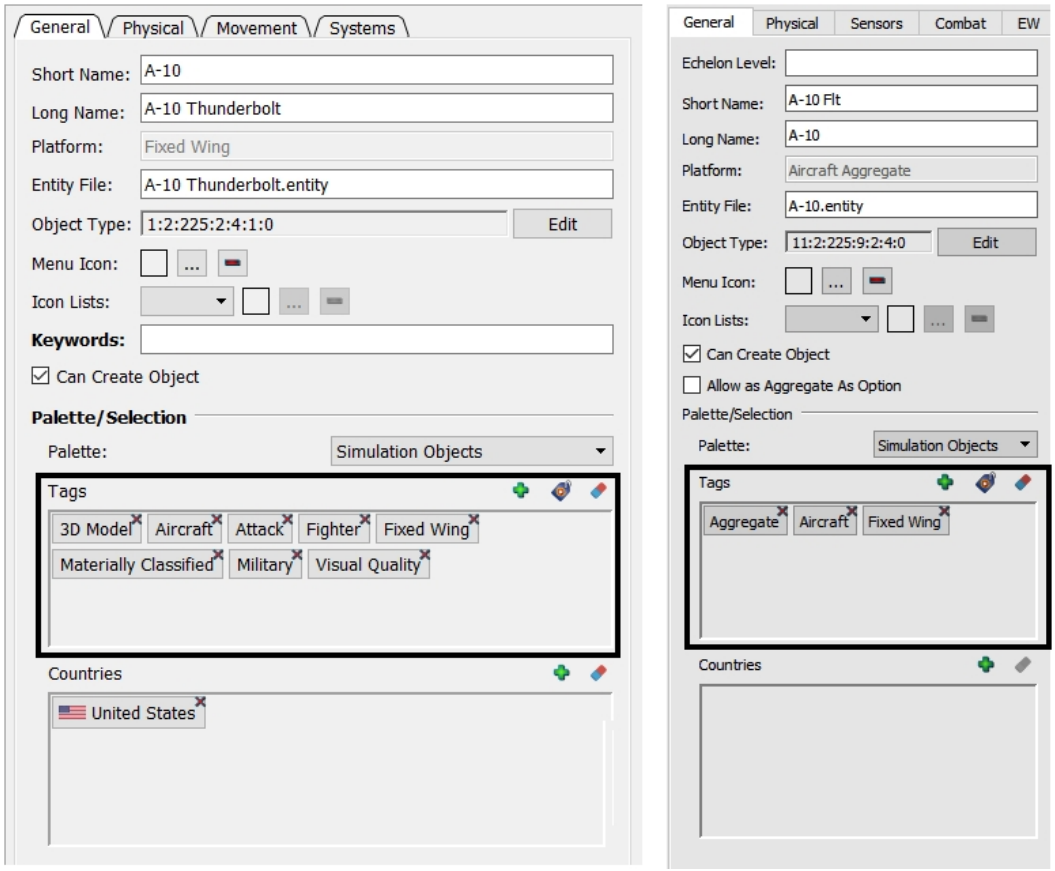
## 62.1.2 Editing an Object's Tags

Objects are organized by tags on the Create menu and the object creation palettes. You can change the tags that an object uses. For details about adding new tags to the list, please see "61.11.1 Adding a New Tag" on page 1248.

➤ **To assign a tag to an object:**

1. Select the object whose tags you want to edit.
2. Select the General tab (Figure 523).

**Figure 523. General tab (entity and aggregate)**




3. Click the Add/Remove button ( ) above the Tags window.
4. The Select Tags dialog box opens.
5. To select one additional tag and close the dialog box, click the tag. To add multiple tags, **Ctrl**+click the names of the countries you want to add.

## 62.1.3 Changing an Object's Object Type Enumeration

The Simulation Object Editor lets you change an object's object type (DIS/RPR enumeration) and matching type. (For details about published and matching object types, please see "Published Object Types and Matching Object Types" on page 1394.) You might want to or have to do this for any of the following reasons:

- If you create a new model, you must specify an entity enumeration (Object Type). (The Simulation Object Editor automatically constructs a Matching Type whose Domain and Kind field match the Object Type and whose other fields are wild cards.)
- If you create a new model from an existing model, the Simulation Object Editor automatically increments the existing model's enumeration for use with the new model. However, you might want to use a different enumeration than the one the Simulation Object Editor generates. (The Simulation Object Editor

automatically creates a Matching Type that is the same as the Object Type.)

- You might want to change an existing object's enumeration.
- You might want to change an object's matching object type.

---

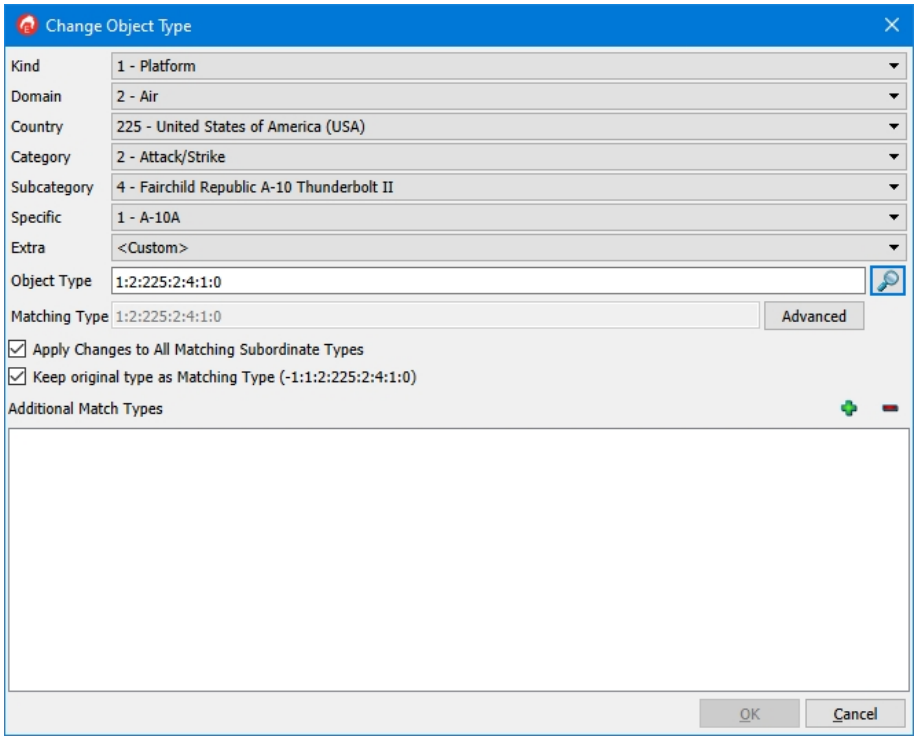
- The Entity Enumeration value displayed in the Simulation Object Editor is the 7-digit DIS or RPR FOM enumeration that VR-Forces uses to build the published object type. The matching object type is not displayed in the Simulation Object Editor, but you can specify it in the Change Enumeration dialog box as described in this procedure.
- You cannot use wildcards in an object type. They are permitted in the matching object type.

---

➤ **To change an object's enumeration:**

1. Select the object in the object list.
2. Select the General tab (Figure 523 on the previous page).
3. Click Edit next to the Object Type text box. The Change Object Type dialog box opens (Figure 524).

**Figure 524. Change Object Type dialog box**

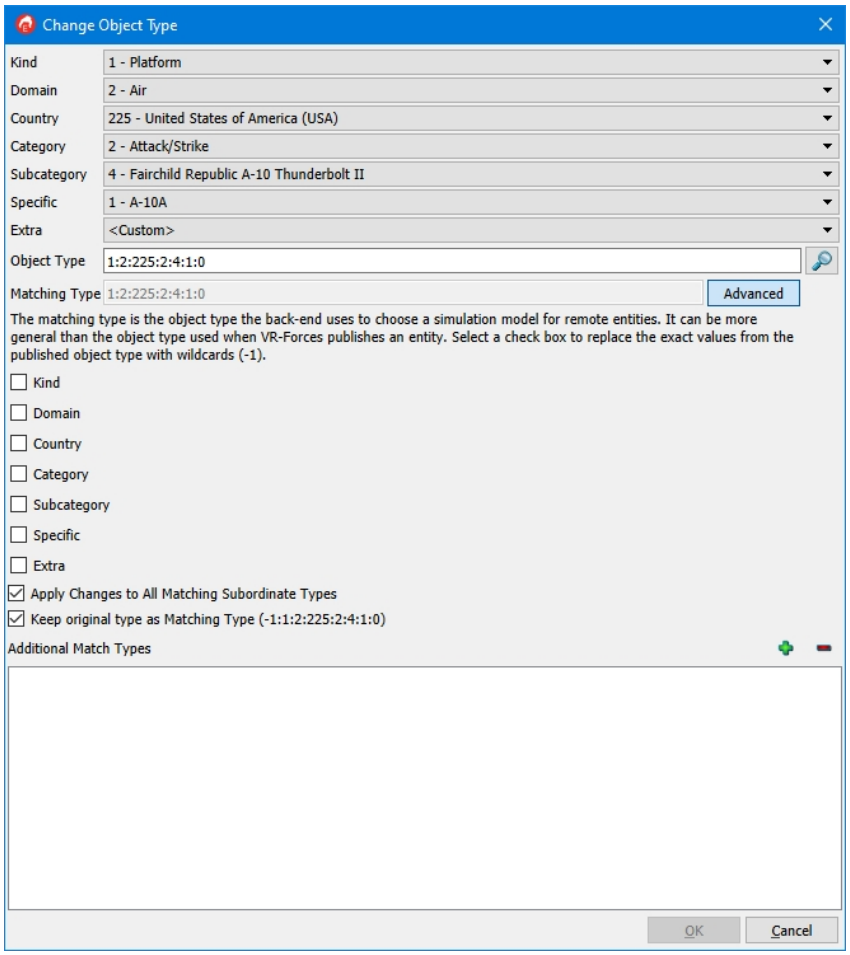



4. Edit the enumeration by selecting options from the lists for enumeration elements or type a new enumeration in the Object Type text box.

You can click the Search button ( ) to open a dialog and search for the entity type by description.

5. Optionally, specify the Matching Type as follows:
   a. Click Advanced. The dialog box expands (Figure 525).

**Figure 525. Change Object Type dialog box, Advanced**




   b. For each field in the matching type enumeration that you want to be a wild card (-1), select the appropriate check box.

6. Optionally, clear the Apply Changes to All Matching Subordinate Types check box. Usually you will want an enumeration change to affect all cases where this simulation object will be created. However, if there is some reason that you want an enumeration change to not affect simulation objects created as part of a unit, you can do that by clearing this check box.

   A more straightforward approach would be to create a new simulation object from the existing simulation object, rather than changing the enumeration.

7. Click OK. The enumeration changes.

### 62.1.4 Changing an Object's Name

The object name is the name listed on the object creation palettes and Create menu. The text placed on the screen next to a 2D icon is the marking text. The marking text is based on the Short Name, which is configured on the General tab.

➤ **To change an object's name:**

1. Select the object in the object list.
2. Select the General tab (Figure 523 on page 1258).
3. Type a new name in the Long Name text box.

### 62.1.5 Specifying Whether an Object Can Be Created

You can control whether a simulation object is listed on an object creation palette. It may not make sense to be able to create some types of simulation objects, such as missiles, which are normally added to a scenario and removed dynamically.

➤ **To enable or disable creation of a simulation object from the Simulation Objects Palette:**

1. Select the object in the object list.
2. Select the General tab.
3. Select or clear the Can Create Object check box (Figure 523 on page 1258).

### 62.1.6 Specifying the Object Creation Palette

You can specify which of the object creation palettes an object should be listed on.

➤ **To specify the object creation palette for an object:**

1. Select the object in the objects list.
2. Select the General tab (Figure 523 on page 1258).
3. In the Palette list, select the palette you want to put it on.

### 62.1.7 Specifying a Default User-Created Overlay

When an object is created, it is placed on an overlay. By default, the object is placed on an overlay according to its type (aircraft, ground vehicle, human, tactical graphics, and so on). You can assign an additional user-created default overlay to objects. You can still assign the object to a different overlay when it is created. For details about overlays and assigning objects to them, please see "39.1. Creating and Editing Overlays" on page 928 and "14.3.2 Specifying an Object's Properties Before You Create It (Click to Locate)" on page 377.

➤ **To specify a default overlay:**

1. Select the object in the objects list.
2. Select the General tab (Figure 523 on page 1258).
3. In the Keywords box, enter **overlay=***name* where *name* is the custom overlay.

## 62.1.8 Specifying the Platform

You cannot change the platform for existing simulation objects or new objects created from existing models. You can only specify the platform for new models that are not created from existing models. For details, please see "62.3. Creating a New Simulation Object" on page 1278.

## 62.1.9 Editing a Simulation Object's Country List

The country code in a simulation object's object enumeration specifies the country in which the object is manufactured. It does not indicate where it is used, and many object types are used in multiple countries. When creating a scenario, it can be convenient if the Simulation Objects Palette only lists the objects used by the country for which you are laying down forces. The Country list in the Simulation Object Editor allows you to specify the countries that use a vehicle. You can then filter the Simulation Objects Palette by country.

You can also apply a country to humans and cultural features if they are specific to a country.

The Country list works exactly like the Tags list. For details about how to configure the list of countries, please see "61.11. Editing the Tags List" on page 1248.

➤ **To assign a simulation object to a country of use:**

1. Select the object in the object list.
2. Select the General tab (Figure 523 on page 1258).
3. Click the Add button ( ) above the Countries pane.
4. The Select Countries dialog box opens.
5. To select one country and close the dialog box, click the country name. To add multiple countries, **Ctrl**+click the names of the countries you want to add.

### Clearing the Countries List

If you add a new model by copying another model, you may want to quickly clear the Countries list before selecting the countries for the new model. (You can clear the other lists the same way.)

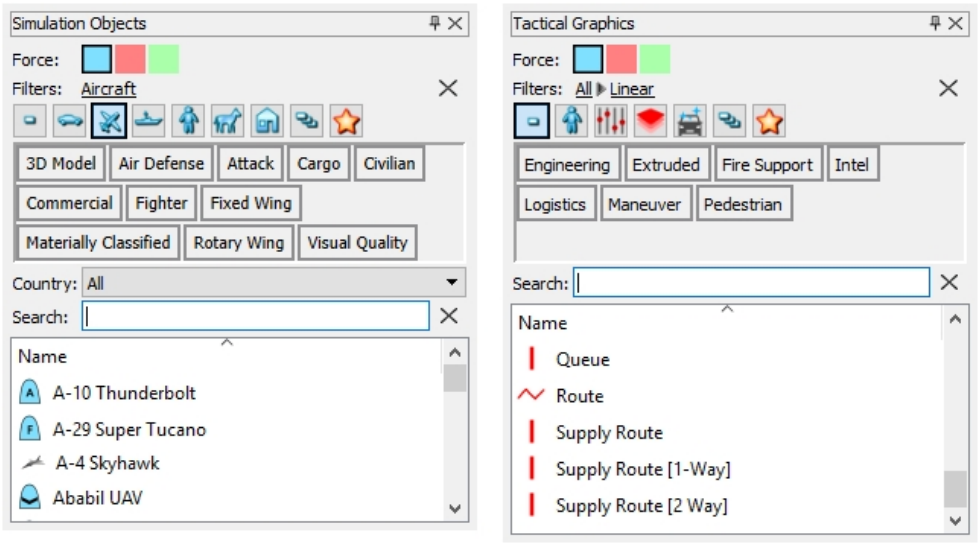
➤ To clear the Countries assigned to an object, on the General tab, click the Clear button ( ) above the Countries window.

## 62.1.10 Creating Icon Lists

By default, the object lists on the object creation palettes and the Objects List Panel show the 2D icon for each object. For entities and units, this is the MIL-STD 2525B icon. For tactical graphics, it is a simple graphic representation of the object, such as a line for linear graphics or a box for areal graphics. However, if you want to use images that are more specific to simulation object types, you can create custom icon lists that replace the default images. For example, instead of a straight line for a route, you might want to use a segmented line. Or instead of a 2D icon for an entity, you might want an image of the entity or a generic platform image.

Figure 526 illustrates object palettes with custom images (A-4 Skyhawk and Route).

**Figure 526. Alternative icons**




When you create a custom icon list, you create a list and then specify an image for each object that you want to change. If you do not specify an image for an object, it uses the default icon. You can create as many icon lists as you want. You specify the icon list to use on the Application Settings dialog box, GUI Settings page.

➤ **To create an icon list:**

1. Choose **Edit > Icon Lists**. The Icon Lists Editor opens.
2. Click Add. The Add List dialog box opens.
3. Type a name for the new list.
4. Click OK.
5. In the Icon Lists Editor, click OK.

➤ **To change the name of an icon list:**

1. Choose **Edit > Icon Lists**. The Icon Lists Editor opens.
2. Select the icon list whose name you want to change.
3. Click Edit. The Edit List dialog box opens.
4. Type a new name for the list.
5. Click OK.
6. In the Icon Lists Editor, click OK.

➤ **To remove an icon list:**

1. Choose **Edit > Icon Lists**. The Icon Lists Editor opens.
2. Select the icon list that you want to remove.

3. Click Remove.
4. Click OK.

### Specifying Icons for an Icon List

After you create an icon list, you specify the images for each simulation object that you want to change the icon for.

➤ **To specify an image for an icon list:**

1. Select a simulation object in the objects list.
2. Select the General tab.
3. In the Icon Lists drop-down list, select the icon list that you want this object to use.
4. Click the Browse button ( ). The Select Menu Icon dialog box opens.
5. Select an image. It can be a PNG, SVG, JPG, or BMP file.
6. Click Open. The image is displayed next to the Browse button.
7. Repeat this procedure for each simulation object for which you want to specify an image.
8. Save the Simulation Model Set.

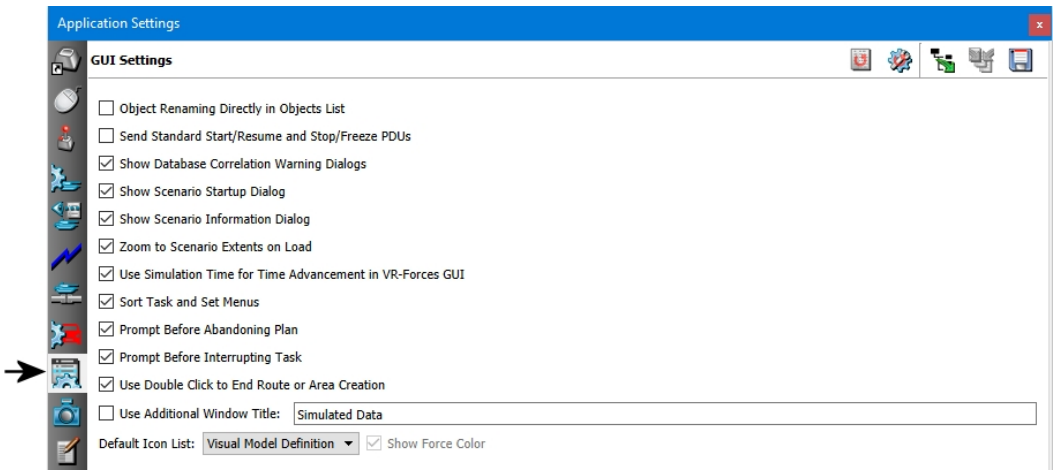
### Using an Alternative Icon List

If you create an icon list, you can specify that VR-Forces use it instead of the default icon list.

➤ **To specify use of an alternative icon list:**

1. In VR-Forces, choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the GUI Settings page (Figure 527).

**Figure 527. GUI Settings page**



3. In the Default Icon List list, select the icon list that you want to use.
4. Optionally, select Show Force Color. This places a colored square behind the image to show its force.

### 62.1.11 Undoing (Reverting) Changes to an Object

If you have made changes to an object and have not yet saved the simulation model set, you can revert to the original simulation object configuration. You can revert an object at any time prior to saving the SMS, regardless of how many other objects you may have changed since you edited the simulation object you want to revert.

➤ **To undo changes to an object:**

1. Select the object in the object list.
2. Choose **Model > Revert Model**.

### 62.1.12 Reverting an Inherited Object's Parameters

You can create a new simulation object from another by inheritance, where you create a copy of the original (parent). See "62.3.2 Inheriting a New Model from an Existing Model" on page 1279. You can then make edits to those parameters. At any time, you can revert the parameters to the parent's parameters.

Please note, reverting a parameter resets it to the values that existed for the parent at the time you created the child. If the parameters changed on the parent after you created the child, reverting does not set the child parameters to the parent's new values.

➤ **To revert an inherited object's parameter to its parent's parameter:**

1. Select the object in the model list.
2. Next to the parameter that you want to revert, click the Revert to Parent button ( ).

## 62.2. Editing a Simulation Object's Visual Model

The Visual Model Editors dialog box allows you to configure all aspects of entity visualization, including the 2D icon and 3D model used. (For details, please see the chapters in Section III, *Visual Models in MAK Applications*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.) However, the Simulation Object Editor lets you quickly and easily change the 3D model or 2D icon used to represent a simulation object. When you change a model in the Simulation Object Editor, the entity's model definition also gets changed.

You edit visual model parameters on the Visual Models Panel (Figure 528).

**Figure 528. Visual Models Panel**

The Visual Models Panel is a fully functional window that supports the same mouse-look and keyboard controls as the VR-Forces main window. If you change the observer view of the selected entity's visual model, the window maintains that offset as you select other entities. Press **Spacebar** to reset the view.

The panel has the following buttons:

- Edit Visual Model. Automatically opens the correct editor based on the model set that is displayed.
- Edit Wake Model. Changes the wake settings for surface entities. (Hidden for other platforms.)
- Visual Effects. Lets you display how the model looks when trailing effects, shadows, and wakes are enabled.
- Switch Node States. Lets you display how the model looks when switch node states are set.
- Environment Settings. Lets you display what the model looks like at different times of day and with different wind and ocean states.

➤ **To change the visual model for a simulation object:**

1. In the object list, select the object whose model you want to change. The model for the currently selected model set is displayed in the Visual Model Panel.

   The visual model window responds to the same keyboard and mouse controls as the front-end.

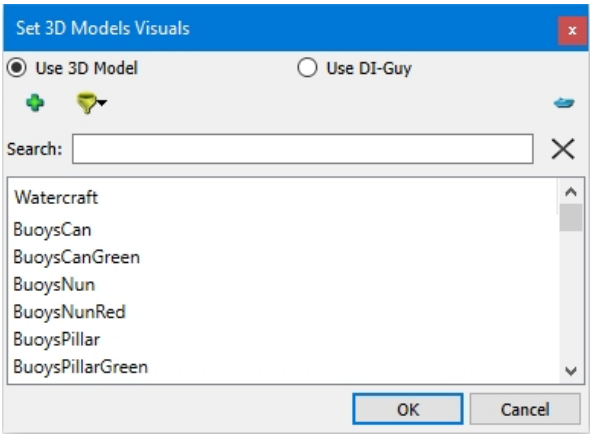
2. In the Model Set list in the Visual Model group box, select the model set that you want to edit for this simulation object.
3. Change the 3D model, 2D icon, or 2D image as described in the following sections.

## 62.2.1 Changing the 3D Model or Colorized Model

➤ **To change a 3D model or 3D colorized model:**

1. In the Visual Model panel, click the Edit button ( ). The Set 3D Models Visuals dialog box opens (Figure 529).
2. If the dialog box has options for 3D Models or DI-Guy, select Use 3D Model. The Modify Visuals dialog box lists available models (Figure 529). (You can add new models. For details, please see "62.2.5 Adding a New Visual Model or Image" on page 1271.)

**Figure 529. Modify Visuals dialog box (3D)**




3. Select the model that you want to use. The new model is displayed in the panel.

> By default, the Modify Visuals dialog box tries to filter the list to show only the type of entity that you are editing. If you do not see the models you expect to see in the list, particularly if you know that the models are available in the *./data* directory, try changing the filter. For example, surface entities are of type Watercraft, while subsurface entities are of type Entity.

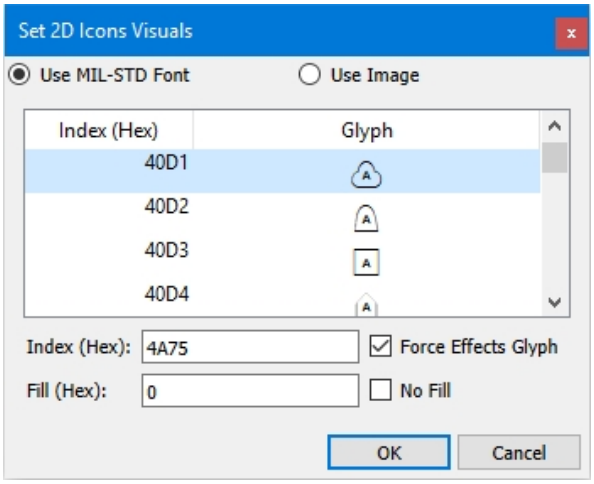
4. Click OK to close the Modify Visuals dialog box.

## 62.2.2 Changing the 2D Icon Using a Font

➤ **To change a 2D icon using the MIL-STD font:**

1. Select the simulation object whose icon you want to edit.
2. In the Visual Models Panel, in the Model Sets list, select 2D Icons.
3. Click the Edit button ( ). The Set 2D Icons Visuals dialog box opens (Figure 530).

**Figure 530. Modify Visuals dialog box (2D)**




4. Select the Use MIL-STD Font option. The dialog box lists index values and associated glyphs.
5. Select the icon glyph that you want to use. The new icon is displayed in the panel.
6. Optionally, change the parameters.
7. Click OK to close the dialog box.

### Regenerating Spot Report Definitions

When you change the 2D icon for a simulation object, the spot report icon for that object does not change. You can change the icon manually, as described in "62.2.4 Editing a Spot Report Model" on page 1270, or you can automatically update spot

report definitions.

➤ **To regenerate spot report definitions:**

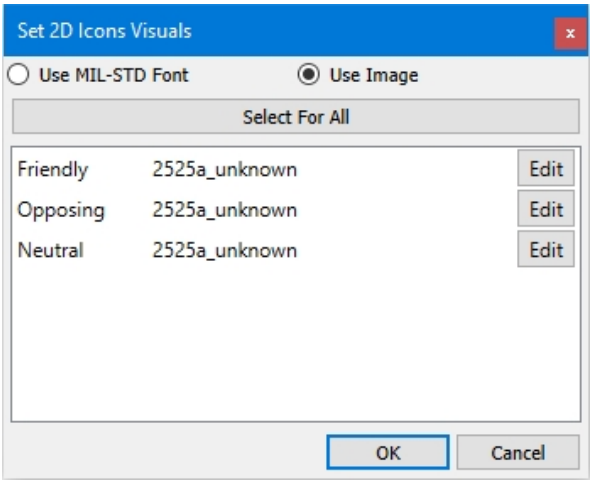
1. Choose **File > Regenerate Spot Report Definitions**. A prompt opens.
2. Click Yes.

### 62.2.3 Changing the 2D Icon Using an Image

➤ **To change a 2D icon using an image:**

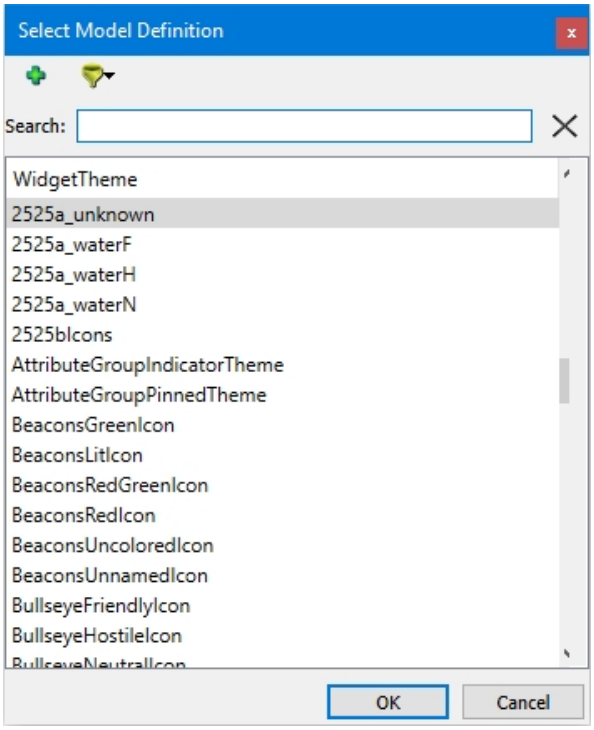
1. Select the simulation object whose icon you want to edit.
2. In the Visual Models group box, in the Model Sets list, select 2D Icons.
3. Click the Edit button ( ). The Set 2D Icons Visuals dialog box opens (Figure 530 on the previous page).
4. Select the Use Image option. The dialog box lists the forces that are configured for this simulation model set (Figure 531).

**Figure 531. Modify Visuals dialog box (2D image)**




5. Click the Edit button for the force whose icon you want to change, or to choose the same image for all forces, click Select for All. The Select Model Definition dialog box opens (Figure 532). It lists the available images. By default the list is for MIL-STD 2525a icons. (You can add new images. For details, please see "62.2.5 Adding a New Visual Model or Image" on page 1271.)

**Figure 532. Select Model Definition dialog box**




6. Select the image that you want to use. The new image is displayed in the panel.
7. Click OK.
8. Click OK to close the Modify Visuals dialog box.

## 62.2.4 Editing a Spot Report Model

You can edit the model that is used when a spot report is at the full knowledge level. The default configurations assign 2D icons to spot reports. In theory, you could assign some other type of model to a spot report. (The icons used at the detected, classified, and identified levels are not editable.)

➤ **To edit a spot report icon:**

1. Select the simulation object whose icon you want to edit.
2. In the Visual Models Panel, in the Model Sets list, select one of the spot report options.
3. Click the Edit button ( ). A dialog box appropriate to the model type opens.
4. Change the model, as described in "62.2.1 Changing the 3D Model or Colorized Model" on page 1267, "62.2.2 Changing the 2D Icon Using a Font" on page 1268, or "62.2.3 Changing the 2D Icon Using an Image" on the previous pageChanging the 3D Model or Colorized Model, Changing the 2D Icon Using a Font, or Changing the 2D Icon Using an Image.

## 62.2.5 Adding a New Visual Model or Image

When you change a model or image in the Simulation Object Editor, you are presented with a list of the currently configured model definitions or images. You can add additional models to the list. You can add new model definitions in the context of editing a simulation object or independently of editing a simulation object. If you edit the list in the context of editing a simulation object, you can also add images to the list.

### Adding A Model Definition while Editing a Simulation Object

➤ **To add a new model or image to the visual models list while editing a simulation object:**

1. In the object list, select the object whose model you want to change. The model for the currently selected model set is displayed in the Visual Model group box.
2. In the Visual Model group box, in the Model Sets list, select the model set that you want to edit.
3. For 3D models or 3D colorized models:

   a. Click the Edit button ( ). The Set 3D Models Visuals dialog box opens (Figure 529 on page 1267).

   b. Click the Add button ( ). The Model Definition dialog box opens. This is a standard file chooser dialog box.

   For 2D icons, do the following:

   a. Click the Edit button ( ). The Set 2D Icons Visuals dialog box opens (Figure 530 on page 1268).

   b. Select the Use Image option. The dialog box lists the forces that are configured for this simulation model set.

   c. Click the Edit button for the force to which you want to add an image. The Select Model Definition dialog box opens (Figure 532 on the previous page).
4. Select the file for the model that you want to add to the list. It must be a model or image type that VR-Forces supports. (This file becomes the value for the filename attribute of the model definition.)
5. Click OK. The Model Definition Name dialog box opens.
6. Type a name for the model definition.
7. Click OK.
8. Click OK to close the Modify Visuals dialog box.

### Adding Model Definitions Independently of Editing a Simulation Object

You can add model definitions in the Simulation Object Editor independently of any simulation object just as you can in the Visual Model Editors dialog box. The only

attribute that you can set is the filename. However, in many cases that is the only attribute you need. If you need to specify other attributes, you must use the Visual Model Editors dialog box.

➤ **To add a model definition independently of editing a simulation object:**

1. Choose **Edit > Add Model Definition**. The Add Model Definition dialog box opens.
2. Click the Add button ( ). The Model Definition dialog box opens. This is a standard file chooser dialog box.
3. Select the file for the model that you want to add to the list. It must be a model or image type that VR-Forces supports. (This file becomes the value for the filename attribute.)
4. Click OK. The Model Definition Name dialog box opens.
5. Type a name for the model definition.
6. Click OK. The new model definition is added to the list.
7. Click OK to close the Add Model Definition dialog box.

## 62.2.6 Displaying Details about the Visual Model

The Visual Models Panel displays the model used for the selected simulation object. You can change how the model is displayed and show information about it, as follows:

- Bounding volumes. Display the bounding volume.
- Environment settings. Show the model at different times of day, different view magnification, different wind speed, and different water quality.
- Markers and marker labels. Displays labels for the markers for sensor and weapon positions. Also, show markers as 2D only.
- Visual effects. Show effects such as shadows, trailing effects, smoke, and flames.
- Model sets. Specifies which model set to use to display the entity.
- Switch node states. Displays the different switch nodes for the model, if applicable. If a model has articulated parts, you can enable them individually. They move at five times the minimum rotation or translation speed.
- View. Perspective view or view the model from the specified side (left, front, top, and so on.)

### Displaying a Visual Model's Bounding Volume

You can display the bounding volume of a 3D model. You can edit the dimensions of the bounding volume on the Physical tab.

➤ To display a model's bounding volume, choose **Preferences > Show Bounding Volumes**.

### Displaying Switch Node States

If a visual model has switch node states, you can display them. Switch nodes can represent damage states and articulated parts.

➤ **To display switch node states:**

1. Choose **View > Switch Nodes States** or click the Switch Nodes States button ( ). The Switch Nodes States dialog box opens.
2. To see a damage state, select an option from the Damage list.
3. To see articulated parts, select the check box for the state you want to display.
4. Click Close.

### Changing the View of the Model

The default view for 3D models is a perspective view. You can also view a model from the front, back, sides, or top.

➤ To change the view of a model, in the Visual Models Panel, select an option from the View list.

### Changing the Model Set

You can select the model set to use to display a visual model. In addition to the three primary model sets, you choose a spot report model set.

➤ To change the model set used to display a visual model, in the Visual Models Panel, select an option from the Model Sets list.

### Displaying Markers and Marker Labels

You can display markers that show the location of support points for a model. You can display the markers as 2D or 3D and can also display text labels that identify them. You can edit the location of support points on the Physical tab.

➤ To toggle markers on and off, choose **Preferences > Show Markers**.

➤ To toggle marker labels on and off, choose **Preferences > Show Marker Labels**.

➤ To toggle markers between 2D and 3D, choose **Preferences > Show Markers as 2D**.

### Displaying the Effects of Environment Settings

You can display how changing the following environment settings affects a visual model:

- Time of day
- View magnification
- Wind speed
- Wind direction
- Choppiness
- Ocean quality

Time of day affects all models. The other settings only affect surface entities.

➤ **To display the effects or environment settings for a model:**

1. Choose **View > Environment Settings** or click the Environment Settings button ( ). The Environment Settings dialog box opens.
2. Change the settings as desired.
3. Click Close.

### Displaying Visual Effects for a Model

You can display the following visual effects for models:

- Dust clouds
- Contrails
- Tracks
- Flames
- Smoke
- Footprints
- Wakes
- Shadows
- Speed

If an effect is not valid for the selected model, the check box is not available.

➤ **To display visual effects for a model:**

1. Choose **View > Visual Effects** or click the Visual Effects button ( ). The Visual Effects dialog box opens.
2. Select the check box for each visual effect that you want to display.
3. To change the apparent speed of a moving model, adjust the Speed slider.
4. Click Close.

## 62.2.7 Changing a Visual Model's Type

The entity element definition hierarchy categorizes element definitions by type. These types associate a variety of parameters with the models in the category. Changing the visual type changes the 3D model for any simulation object that is using a generic model. If a simulation object has a specific model, changing the visual type does not affect it. However, it affects how the model is displayed in the SOE. Surface models are displayed with a background that lets you view wakes and other effects.

➤ **To change a visual model's type:**

1. In the object list, select the model whose type you want to change.
2. Choose **Model > Advanced Visual Model Editing**. The Advanced Visual Model Editing dialog box opens.
3. Select an option in the Visual Type list.

## 62.2.8 Specifying Visual Markings

VR-Forces uses a process called texture mapping to apply different surface textures to a simulation object's physical geometry. For example, you can use this technology to change the colors of a car, change the logo and design on aircraft, and change markings on a vehicle. The Simulation Object Editor allows you to see how different markings look on a vehicle, to apply specific markings to a vehicle, and to configure a vehicle to apply randomly assigned markings.

You can specify the visual markings that are applied to a simulation object when it is added to a scenario. Markings can be specific or random. A simulation object may have more than one type of visual marking. You can set each of them individually. The options are:

- Specific. Use one of the specific marking configured for the object.
- Random. Choose randomly from the markings available for the object. You can choose to be simply random or specify how to randomize the marking:
  - Weighted Random (20/80). Given a list of markings, there is an 80% chance that one of the markings in the top 20% of the list will be applied. There is a 20% chance that one of the other markings will be applied.
  - Weighted Random (Exponential). The markings towards the top of the list are more likely to be chosen then those later in the list.
- Variant. This is a possible pattern, such as country, for subvariant markings.
- Subvariant. Choose the manner in which the variant is displayed, for example, insignia.
- Unused. Do not show the option in VR-Forces.

For weighted random options, the order of the list is based on the order that markings are listed in the relevant metadata file. If you want the markings to have a different priority, you must edit the metadata file.

For example, if colors in the metadata file are listed in the order red, blue, green, yellow, brown and you select the weighted random approach, most cars will be red, because there is an 80% chance of selecting the color in the top 20% of the list. (In a list of five items, the first item in the list is the top 20%.) If you want most cars to be brown, you would need to edit the metadata file to put brown at the top. (For details about metadata files, please see *"The Metafile for Markings"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)

For details about how to change markings at run time, please see "34.46. Markings" on page 818 . For details about how to configure texture maps and their associated files, please see *"Adding Dynamically Changeable Markings to Models"*, in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.

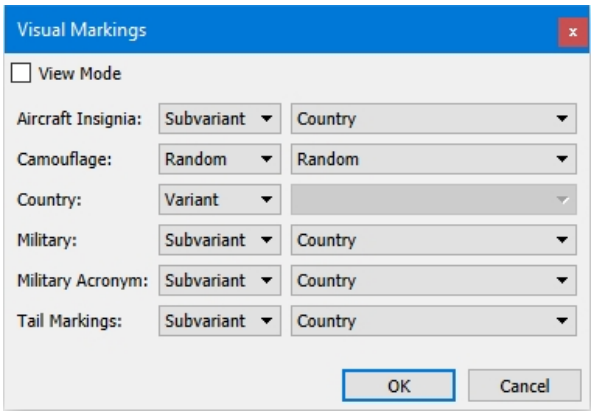
### Viewing a Model's Visual Markings

The Simulation Object Editor lets you see how the available visual markings look on a simulation object.

➤ **To view a model's visual markings options:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. In the Visual Model panel, click the Visual Markings button ( ). The Visual Markings dialog box opens (Figure 533). It has a list of options for each type of marking that the simulation object supports.

**Figure 533. Visual Markings dialog box for the C-130 Hercules aircraft**




3. Select specific options in the lists for each marking type that you want to view.
4. Click Cancel. (If you click OK, the options you have chosen are applied to the model.)

### Setting Visual Markings

In the Simulation Object Editor, you can specify the visual markings that get applied to a simulation object when it is added to a scenario.

➤ **To set the visual markings for a simulation object:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. In the Visual Model panel, click the Visual Markings button ( ). The Visual Markings dialog box opens (Figure 533).
3. For each type of marking, do the following:
   a. If you want to use a specific marking, select it from the list.
   b. If you want markings assigned randomly, select a random option in the list. For weighted random options, the markings at the top of your list are the most likely to be used.
4. Click OK.

## 62.2.9 Importing Visual Models

You can import visual models (element definitions, model definitions, and object type mappings) into an SMS. You might want to do this if you have edited an SMS and then decide that you need to revert to a previous version that you have saved in *./factory*

or elsewhere. When you import visual models, the imported model definitions replace any matching definitions in the SMS. The import operation imports all leaf files in the selected directory.

➤ **To import visual models:**

1. Choose **File > Import Visual Models.** A confirmation prompt opens.
2. Click Yes. A file chooser dialog box opens.
3. Select the directory from which you want to import visual models.
4. Click OK.

### 62.2.10 Pruning Visual Models

Pruning visual models (element definitions, model definitions, and object type mappings) removes duplicate visual models from the set of leaf files that get loaded for an SMS. This improves the load time in the SOE and when you load a scenario.

Pruning only affects the SMS-specific definitions files. It does not touch any additional definition files that may have been saved from the Visual Model Editors dialog box.

➤ **To prune visual models:**

1. Choose **File > Prune Visual Models**. A confirmation prompt opens.
2. Click Yes. A file chooser dialog box opens.
3. Select the directory from which you want to prune visual models.
4. Click OK.

### 62.2.11 Exporting Visual Models

When you update an SMS, you can export the visual models (element definitions, model definitions, and object type mappings) to a directory other than the default directory in the SMS. This would typically be done for archival purposes, such as updating the files in *./factory*.

Only the SMS-specific definitions files get exported. If user-created leaf files were previously loaded, the definitions do not get exported back to those leaf files. They get included in the SMS-specific files.

➤ **To export visual models:**

1. Choose **File > Export Visual Models.** A confirmation prompt opens.
2. Click Yes. A file chooser dialog box opens.
3. Select the directory to which you want to export visual models.
4. Click OK.

### 62.2.12 Reloading Visual Models in the VR-Forces GUI

If you update the visual models associated with simulation objects and you have a scenario open, you can refresh the models used in the scenario without shutting down VR-Forces.

➤ To refresh visual models, in the VR-Forces GUI choose **Settings > Reload Visuals**.

## 62.3. Creating a New Simulation Object

You can create a new simulation object by using an existing object as a template or by building a completely new object.

---

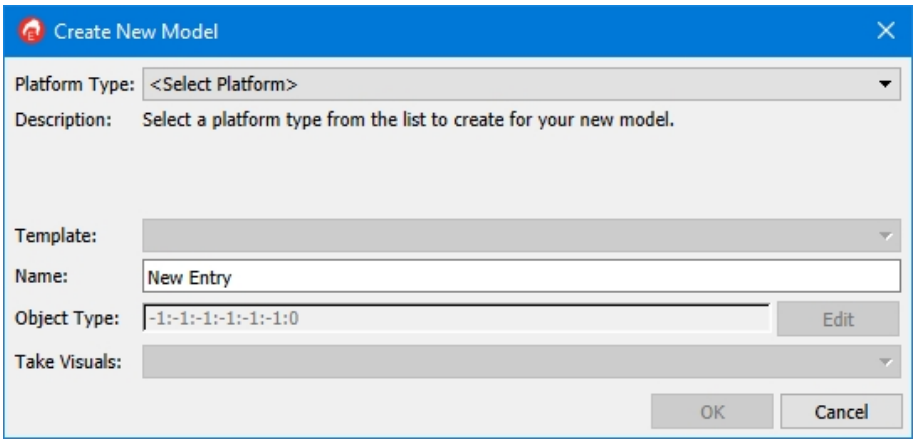
The procedure for creating a new unit is largely the same as for creating a new entity. The main difference is that units do not have 3D models and, when you create a unit, you specify its subordinates.

---

➤ **To create a completely new object:**

1. Choose **Model > New Model**. The Create New Model dialog box opens (Figure 534).

**Figure 534. Create New Entity dialog box**




2. In the Platform Type list, select a platform type.
3. Optionally, select a template. (Templates are specific to a platform type. There might not be a template for some platforms.)
4. In the Name box, type a name for the entity.
5. Optionally, for the Object Type, click Edit and specify the object type enumeration. You can do this after you create the entity if you want to. You can also just accept the object type supplied by VR-Forces.
6. In the Take Visuals list, select a specific model or Closest Match. If you select Closest Match, VR-Forces selects the entity model whose object type enumeration is closest to the one you specified.
7. Click OK. The Simulation Object Editor adds a new entry to the object list. The editor shows default values for all the fields.
8. Optionally, edit the enumeration.
9. Specify 2D and 3D visual models.
10. Specify appropriate values for the object parameters.

11. Type a name to be used in the object's label (marking text) in the Short Name text box.
12. Specify a movement system.
13. Specify a damage model.
14. Optionally, add weapon systems.
15. Optionally, add sensors.
16. Save the simulation model set.

### 62.3.1 Creating a Copy of New Model from an Existing Model

If you create a new simulation object model by copying an existing model, the new model starts with all of the behavioral characteristics and systems of the original one. It increments the object enumeration. You only need to name it and customize it for the new simulation object.

You can use this procedure to create new units.

➤ **To create a new simulation object model as a copy of an existing model:**

1. In the object list, select the source object.
2. Choose **Model > New Model from Existing (Copy)**. The Create New Model dialog box opens.
3. Enter a name for the model.
4. Optionally, edit the enumeration.
5. Click OK. The new simulation object is added to the object list. If you did not edit the enumeration, the original enumeration is incremented. An *.entity* file is created based on the name.
6. Edit the parameters to provide the new simulation object the characteristics you want for it.
7. Save the simulation model set.

### 62.3.2 Inheriting a New Model from an Existing Model

If you create a new simulation object model by inheriting from an existing model, the new model (child) inherits its behavioral characteristics and systems from the original one. You can customize it as needed, but you can also revert it to the settings of the model from which it is inherited (parent).

You can use this procedure to create new units.

If you want to undo any changes, you can revert them. See "62.1.12 Reverting an Inherited Object's Parameters" on page 1265.

➤ **To create a new simulation object model by inheriting from an existing model:**

1. In the object list, select the source object.
2. Choose **Model > New Model from Existing (Inherit)**. The Create New Model dialog box opens.
3. Enter a name for the model.
4. Optionally, edit the enumeration.
5. Click OK. The new simulation object is added to the object list. If you did not edit the enumeration, the original enumeration is incremented. An *.entity* file is created based on the name.
6. Edit the parameters to provide the new simulation object with the characteristics you want for it.
7. Save the simulation model set.

## 62.4. Deleting an Object Model

➤ **To delete an object model from a simulation model set:**

1. Select the object in the object list. (You can select multiple models using the **Shift** or **Ctrl** keys.)
2. Choose **Model > Delete Model** or press **Delete**.

## 62.5. Creating a Simulation Object Group

You create simulation object groups (SOGs) in the Simulation Object Editor. You specify the members of the SOG in a version of VR-Forces that is launched from the Simulation Object Editor. When the Simulation Object Editor launches VR-Forces, it needs to use a simulation connection. For details about setting the simulation connection, please see "62.5.1 Setting the Simulation Connection when Creating an SOG" on the facing page.

Simulation object groups can include scripted tasks and sets. They become scenario-specific scripts when you add the SOG to a scenario.

Simulation object groups are saved with the extension *.sog*.

➤ **To create a simulation object group:**

1. Start the Simulation Object Editor.
2. Load the SMS you want to use.
3. Choose **Model > New Object Group**. The New Object Group dialog box opens.
4. Type a name for the new SOG.
5. Click OK. The new group is added to the objects list and the Simulation Object Editor displays a simulation object group page.
6. Specify the tag, creation palette option, and other generic information as you would for any simulation object.

7. Optionally, change Creation Options and the altitude offset.
8. Click Launch Object Group Editor. You are prompted to save your changes to the SMS.
9. Click Yes. A limited version of VR-Forces opens. It has a green terrain grid.
10. Use the object creation palettes to add objects to the SOG as you would for a scenario. You can change to Stealth observer mode if you want to view the terrain in 3D. It is a flat terrain.
11. Choose **File > Save Object Group** to save the SOG and continue editing. Choose **File > Save Object Group and Exit** to save the SOG and close VR-Forces.

### 62.5.1 Setting the Simulation Connection when Creating an SOG

When you create an SOG, the Simulation Object Editor starts VR-Forces so that you can specify the members of the SOG. By default it uses the DIS localhost connection for *EntityLevel.sms* and the HLA 1516 Evolved RPR 2.0 with MAK extensions connection for *AggregateLevel.sms*. You can change the connection if you want to. (Aggregate-level scenarios must use HLA 1516 Evolved RPR 2.0 with MAK extensions.)

➤ **To set the simulation connection when specifying the members of a simulation object group:**

1. In the Simulation Object Editor, choose **Edit > Object Group Connection**. The Choose Connection dialog box opens.
2. Select the connection you want to use.
3. Click OK.

## 62.6. Editing Tactical Graphics

You can add tactical graphics and edit existing tactical graphics just like you can add and edit simulation objects. You can create a new tactical graphic from an existing one or create a new tactical graphic using one of the basic graphic types - point, route, area, symbol, box, or circle.

When you edit a tactical graphic, you can change the default characteristics of that tactical graphic. When VR-Forces users create one of these graphics, they can edit its specific characteristics as desired.

The basic procedures for adding and editing tactical graphics are the same as for adding and editing simulation objects. This section describes procedures that are specific to tactical graphics.

### 62.6.1 Editing a Tactical Graphic's Menu Icon

Most objects on the Create menu and the various object creation palettes have icons associated with them. For simulation objects, the icon is the icon used to represent them in the front-end. For tactical graphics, the icon illustrates the type of graphic. You can change the icon associated with a tactical graphic and add icons for newly created tactical graphics.

➤ To specify the palette icon for a tactical graphic, on the General tab, click the Browse button ( ) for the Menu Icon line (Figure 523 on page 1258) and select the icon that you want to use.

➤ To remove the icon associated with a tactical graphic, click the Delete button ( ) on the Menu Icon line.

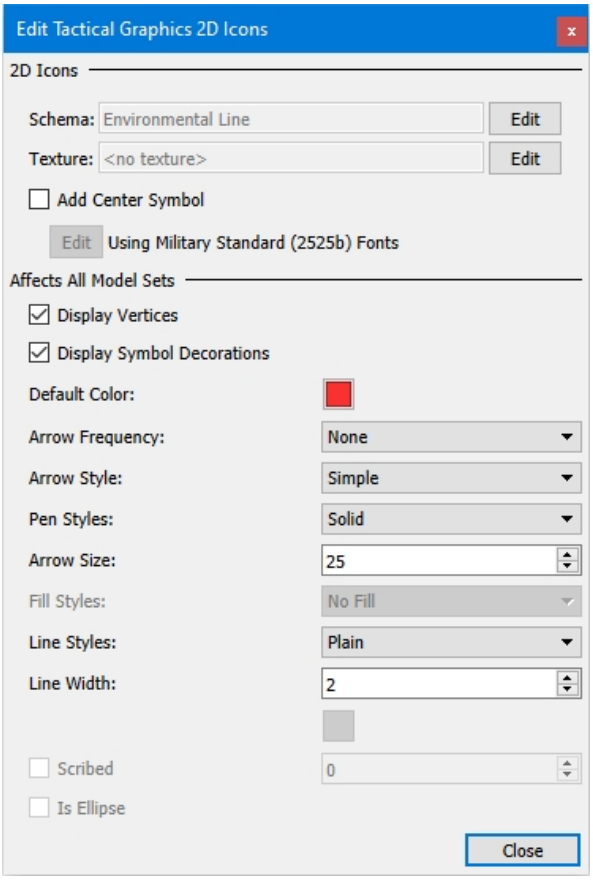
## 62.6.2 Setting the Default Values for Tactical Graphics Properties

When you select a tactical graphic, the Visual Model group box displays all of the properties that can be set for all of the different types of tactical graphics. Properties that do not apply to the selected tactical graphic are disabled. You can set default values for all of the properties that are applicable to the selected graphic. Setting a default value does not mean that the property will be editable in the VR-Forces front-end. The properties that are editable in the front-end are determined by keywords. For details, please see "62.6.3 Specifying Tactical Graphic Properties that Can Be Edited in the Front-End" on the facing page.

➤ **To set a default value for a tactical graphic property:**

1. In the Objects List, select the tactical graphic that you want to edit.
2. In the visuals panel, click the Edit button ( ). The Edit Tactical Graphics 2D Icons dialog box opens (Figure 535).

**Figure 535. Edit Tactical Graphics 2D Icons dialog box**




3. The applicable properties are enabled.
4. Set the default values.

## 62.6.3 Specifying Tactical Graphic Properties that Can Be Edited in the Front-End

When you create a tactical graphic in the front-end, you can edit its properties, such as line style, line width, color, and fill. The properties that you can edit in the front-end are determined by keywords that you specify in the Simulation Object Editor.

The keywords are as follows:

- arrow. The user can change the object's arrow style.
- arrowsize. The user can change the object's arrow size.
- canorient. The user can change the object's orientation (heading).
- defaultlength=<num>. Specifies the starting length of the tactical graphic in meters.
- defaultwidth=<num>. Specifies the starting length of the tactical graphic in meters.
- extruded. The object's width and height can be extruded.

- fill. The user can change the object's fill.
- freehand. The object can be drawn freehand.
- initialaltitude=<num>. Specifies the starting altitude for the tactical graphic in meters.
- max=<num>. Specifies the maximum number of points allowed.
- min=<num>. Specifies the minimum number of points required to create the object.
- noaltitude. The user cannot set an altitude for the object.
- nostyle. Do not allow style editing.
- overlay=<name>. This is a way to define the default overlay for the tactical graphic.
- penstyle. The user can change line style for the object.

When you edit a tactical graphic in the front-end, VR-Forces builds an Edit Style dialog box with the properties specified by the keywords. If no editing is allowed, it removes the Edit icon from the Edit Object dialog box.

➤ To allow a tactical graphic's properties to be edited, on the General tab, type the appropriate keyword in the Keywords text box. Separate each keyword with a semi-colon (;).

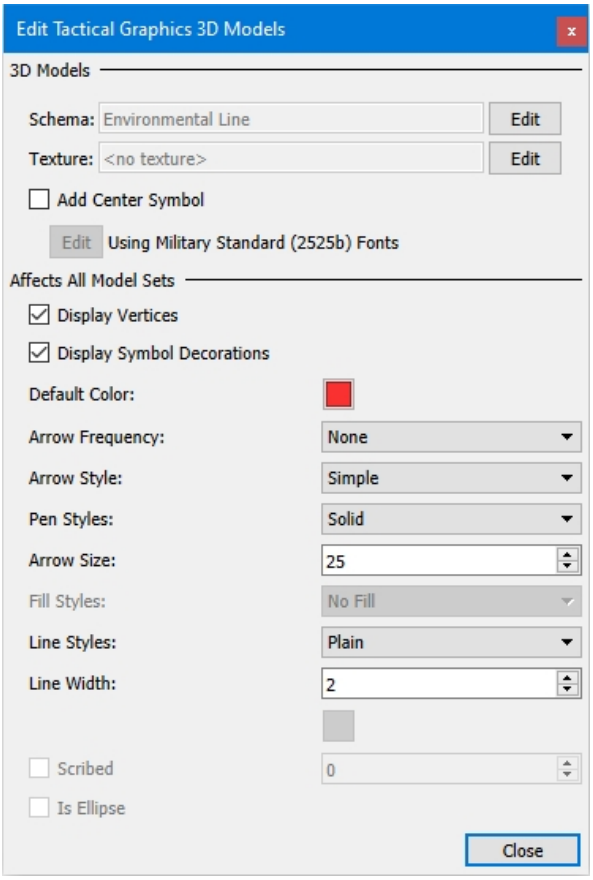
## 62.6.4 Editing the Visual Model for a Tactical Graphic

The visual model for a tactical graphic is based on a schema or on a texture. Schemas employ vector graphics and are best for basic lines, points, and areas. Textures apply raster images and are used primarily for specialized linear and areal graphics, such as fortified lines and minefields. (If you use a texture for a graphic, you cannot edit its style properties.)

➤ **To edit the visual model for a tactical graphic:**

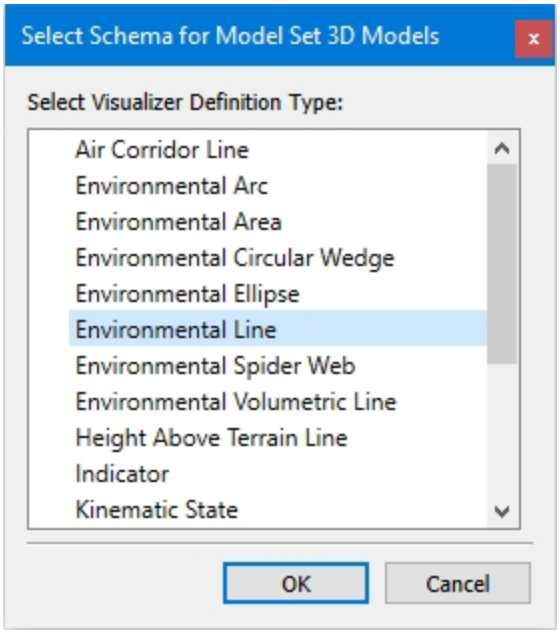
1. In the list of tactical graphics, select the one that you want to edit.
2. In the Visual Model panel, in the Model Sets list, select the model set that you want to edit.
3. Click the Edit button ( ). The Edit Tactical Graphics *model_set* dialog box opens (Figure 536), where *model_set* is the model set you selected.

**Figure 536. Edit Tactical Graphics Models dialog box**




4. On the Schema line, click the Edit button. The Select Schema for Model Set *model_set* dialog box opens (Figure 537).

**Figure 537. Select Schema for Model Set dialog box**




5. Select the schema that you want to use.
6. Click OK.

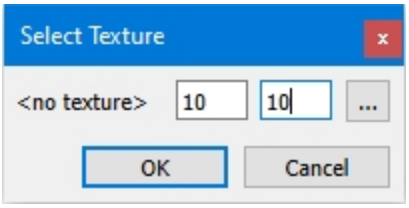
### Editing the Texture for a Tactical Graphic

When you use a texture for a tactical graphic you specify a model definition and the height and width of the texture.

➤ **To specify a texture for a tactical graphic:**

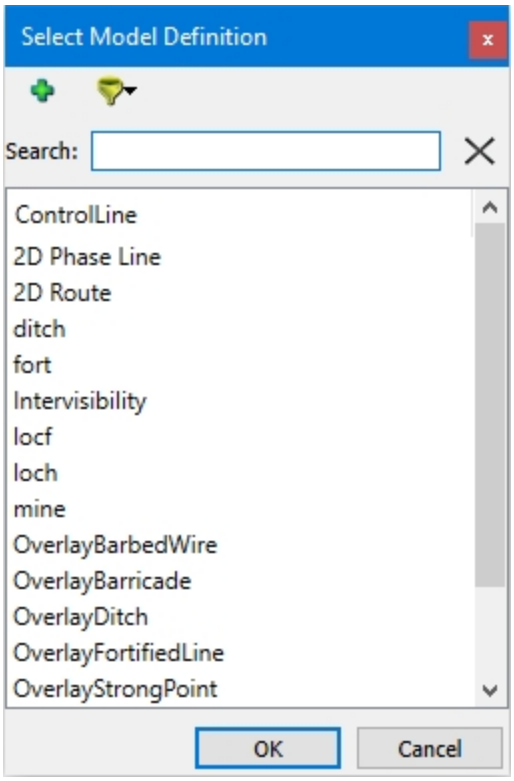
1. In the list of tactical graphics, select the one that you want to edit.
2. In the Visual Model group box, in the Model Sets list, select the model set that you want to edit.
3. Click the Edit button ( ). The Edit Tactical Graphics *model_set* dialog box opens (Figure 536), where *model_set* is the model set you selected.
4. On the Texture line, click Edit. The Select Texture dialog box opens (Figure 538).

**Figure 538. Select Texture dialog box**



5. Click the Browse button ( ). The Select Model Definition dialog box opens (Figure 539).

**Figure 539. Select Model Definition dialog box**




6. Select the model definition that you want to use for this texture.
7. Click OK.
8. In the Select Texture dialog box, specify the width and height of the texture, in pixels.
9. If this is an areal graphic, specify whether or not to use the texture for the outline of the area. If you do not use the texture, a regular line is used.
10. Click OK.

## 62.7. Creating a Template

When you create a new simulation object, you can select a template to base it on. You can create templates from existing simulation objects. In many ways the result is not much different from creating a new model from an existing model. However, when you create a template you can edit it to be more generic than a particular simulation object, which makes it more broadly applicable. Templates are particularly useful for creating aggregate-level units because they are so much more complex than simulation objects in entity-level scenarios.

Templates are listed at the end of the objects list. They are named with the format [Template] *object_name*.

➤ **To create a template:**

1. In the objects list, select the simulation object that you want to use as a template.
2. Choose **Model > Make Template**. A template is created.
3. Optionally, select the template and edit it as you would any simulation object.

## 62.8. Editing Systems in the Simulation Object Editor

You can create and edit systems in the Simulation Object Editor. The support for different system types varies. Details of the use of the SOE to edit particular systems is described in the chapterstopics devoted to those system types.

When you select a system, the SOE presents information and options on one or more tabs. All systems display the General tab. It includes the following information:

- Name. System name.
- Description. A description of the system.
- Supported entity kinds. A list of the entity types that can use this system.
- Objects that use the system. This list is read-only. It updates when you add or remove a system from a simulation object.
- Parameters. A list of the parameters that you can edit for individual simulation objects. This field is read-only.
- Tags. The tags that you want to apply to the system.

Most systems have a set of parameters that have default values. When you add a system to a simulation object, you can edit the parameters for that simulation object. The Attributes tab lists the system parameters for which you can set default values. Some systems have additional tabs for parameters, largely as a convenience to keep the window size manageable.

Weapon systems have a Targets tab that lets you configure hit probabilities, ammunition, and other targeting details. Damage systems have a Damage tab on which you can configure how entities get damaged by different power types.

Munitions are on a separate tab in the Objects List Panel. They have a Detonation tab for configuring the power types supported by the munition.

The Damage Probabilities dialog box helps you understand the impact of different types of weapons on different types of entities.

### 62.8.1 Creating a New System

You can create a new system by copying an existing system or by basing it on a template. Templates represent a type of system that has a set of parameters that all systems of that type typically have. The choice between creating a new system by copying an existing one or using a template is a matter of estimating how much editing of the system you will have to do once you create it. For example, the parameter values for a 130mm gun are probably very similar to those of a 125mm

gun, in which case you might just want to copy the 125mm gun. But they might be quite different for a 70mm gun, in which case you might want to create the new system from a template.

### Creating a New System from an Existing System

If you want to create a new system that is very similar to an existing system, you can copy the existing system to a new system and then edit the parameters.

➤ **To create a new system from an existing system:**

1. Select the Systems tab.
2. Select the system that you want to copy.
3. Choose **System > New System from Existing**. The New System from Existing dialog box opens.
4. In the System Name box, type a name for the new system.
5. In the System Filename box type a filename for the new system or click the Browse button ( ) and select a system definition file. If you select a system definition file, the new system will overwrite the existing system.
6. Click OK. The new system is added to the system list. Edit the system as desired.

### Creating a New System from a Template

If you want to create a system that has all the basic elements of a certain type of system, but which will not be very similar to an existing system, you can create it from a template.

➤ **To create a new system from a template:**

1. Choose **System > New System**. The New System from Template dialog box opens.
2. In the System Type list, select the type of system you want to create. If the type of system you want to create is not in the list, VR-Forces does not have templates for that system type.
3. In the System Template list, select the template that you want to use for the new system. The dialog box provides a brief description of the selected system type. It lists the systems that use the selected template and they simulation object types that support that system.
4. In the System Name box, type a name for the new system.
5. In the System Filename box, accept the default system definition filename or type the name you want to use.
6. Click OK. The new system is added to the system list.
7. Edit the parameters of the system.

## 62.8.2 Editing Probability Tables

Some systems, such as weapon systems and damage systems, use probability tables to determine the likelihood that a weapon will strike an entity, an entity will be damaged by a munition, and so on. These tables can be specified as a range list or a coefficient list.

A range list is a step function, a function that increases or decreases abruptly from one constant value to another. A coefficient list is a continuous function. Its values change according to a curve specified by a polynomial. You can specify the probabilities by editing a table. Once you create a table, you can edit it directly or graphically.

Figure 540 illustrates the following range list:

```
(range-list
    (range 1000.000
        (probability 0.9000)
    )
    (range 2000.000
        (probability 0.8000)
    )
    (range 3000.000
        (probability 0.7000)
    )
    (range 4000.000
        (probability 0.7000)
    )
)
```

**Figure 540. Range list (step function)**

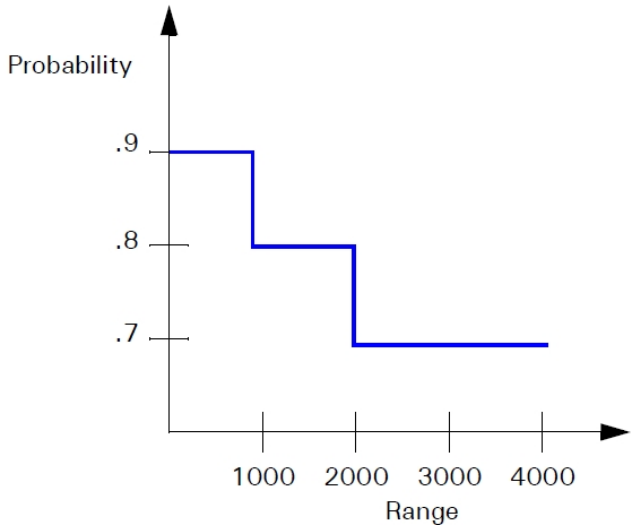
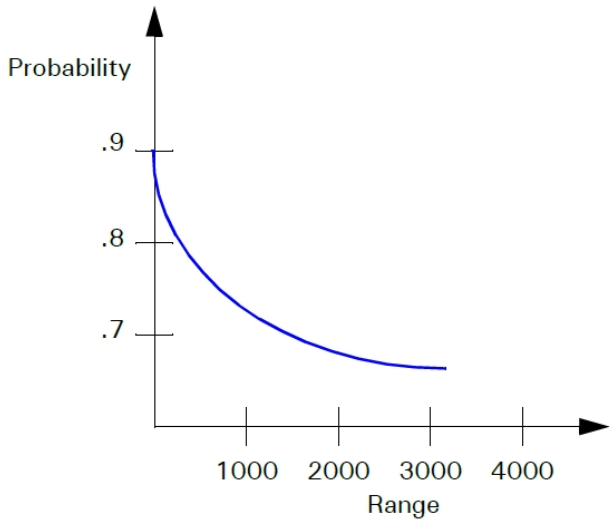



Figure 541 illustrates the curve specified by a coefficient list. The hit probability decreases along the curve rather than at specified steps. (If a coefficient list only has two points, it is graphed as a straight line, not a curve.)

**Figure 541. Coefficient list polynomial curve**




## Editing a Range List Probability Table

Range lists are specific to a particular target type, damage power, or other system parameter. This procedure assumes that you have selected the system parameter for which you want to edit a range list.

➤ **To edit a range list table:**

1. To add a column to the table (that is, add a range value):
    a. Click the Add button ( ) above the table. The New Range dialog box opens.
    b. Type a range value.
    c. Click OK. A column is added to the table. It is automatically sorted to fit in the correct location relative to the other columns.
2. To edit a a range value:
    a. Select the column whose range you want to edit. (If you select a row, the column defaults to the first column.)
    b. Click the Edit button ( ) above the table. The Edit dialog box opens. (You can also double-click the range to open the Edit dialog box.)
    c. Type a range value.
    d. Click OK. The range in the column heading is changed. The table is resorted if necessary.
3. To edit the probability for a given range:
    a. Select the probability value.
    b. Type a probability as a whole number, for example, for 30%, type 30.

### Editing a Range List by Editing its Graph

When you edit a range list graph, you can change the range values and percentage for existing ranges. You cannot add new ranges to the table.

If a system has more than one parameter type, there is a graph for each type. You can edit each of them individually. (Depending on range settings, the graphs might overlap.)

Each graph has a different color. You can change the colors assigned to each graph.

➤ **To edit a range list graph:**

1. Move the mouse cursor over the graph. It changes to cross-hairs.
2. Hold down the mouse button above the horizontal or vertical portion of the graph that you want to edit.
3. Drag the line to the new value. The value in the corresponding cell in the table changes as you drag the line.

### Editing a Coefficient List Probability Table

The columns in a coefficient list probability table have predetermined values: 1, r, r^2, r^3, and so on. You can set the value for each column.

➤ **To edit a coefficient list table:**

1. To add a column to the table (that is, add a coefficient value), Click the Add button ( ) above the table. A new column is added to the table.
2. To edit the probability for a given coefficient:
    a. Select the probability value.
    b. Type a probability.

### Changing the Color of a Probability Graph Line

Each system parameter that is being graphed is listed below the horizontal label for the graph. A color swatch next to the parameter name indicates the color used for that line in the graph.

➤ **To change the color used for a line in a probability graph:**

1. Click the label for the parameter whose color you want to change. A color picker dialog box opens.
2. Select the color you want to use.
3. Click OK.

### Changing the Type of List for a Probability Table

You can change the type of probability table you use for a system parameter, as follows:

➤ To change from a range list to a coefficient list, click the Coefficient List button ( ) above the table. Click Yes in the confirmation dialog box.

➤ To change from a coefficient list to a range list, click the Range List button ( ) above the table. Click Yes in the confirmation dialog box.

### 62.8.3 Deleting a System

➤ **To delete a system:**

1. Select the system in the system list.
2. Choose **System > Delete System**. The system name is struck-through.
3. Save the SMS.

### 62.8.4 Reverting a System

If you edit a system and have not yet saved the SMS, you can revert all changes to the system since the SMS was last saved.

➤ **To revert changes to a system:**

1. Select the system in the system list.
2. Choose **System > Revert System**.
3. Save the SMS.

# 63. Editing Entities for Entity-Level Scenarios

This chapter explains how to use the Simulation Object Editor to edit individual objects in *EntityLevel.sms*. Many of the concepts and procedures also apply to units. For details about editing units, please see "Appendix 64. Editing Units for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 1327 and "Appendix 65. Editing Aggregate-Level Objects" on page 1339.


63.1. Editing Simulation Object Parameters ..... 1297
- 63.1.1 Editing a Simulation Object's Bounding Volume (Size) ..... 1297
- 63.1.2 Displaying a Simulation Object's Bounding Volume ..... 1298
- 63.1.3 Specifying Support Points ..... 1299
- 63.1.4 Excluding Entities from Batch Bounding Volume and Support Point Updates ..... 1300
- 63.1.5 Editing Behavioral Parameters ..... 1300
- 63.1.6 Adding Object Geometry to a Simulation Object ..... 1300
- 63.1.7 Configuring Cultural Features To Be Embedded in the Terrain ..... 1302
- 63.1.8 Ground Clamping Cultural Features ..... 1302
- 63.1.9 Specifying Entity Properties that Can Be Edited in the Front-End 1303
- 63.1.10 Editing a Lifeform's Visual Model and Animation ..... 1303

63.2. Editing Sensor Signatures ..... 1307

63.3. Editing a Model's Articulated Parts ..... 1307
- 63.3.1 Adding Articulated Parts ..... 1307
- 63.3.2 Editing Articulated Parts ..... 1308
- 63.3.3 Animating Articulated Parts ..... 1309
- 63.3.4 Removing Articulated Parts ..... 1309

63.4. Editing a Simulation Object's Systems ..... 1310
- 63.4.1 Adding a System ..... 1311
- 63.4.2 Selecting a Damage Model ..... 1312
- 63.4.3 Selecting a Movement Model ..... 1312
- 63.4.4 Editing a System's Properties ..... 1312
- 63.4.5 Removing a System ..... 1313

63.5. Creating and Editing Munitions ..... 1313
63.5.1 Creating a Simulated Munition ..... 1313
63.5.2 Creating a New Ammunition Type ..... 1314
63.6. Configuring Wakes ..... 1314
63.7. Creating Randomized Simulation Objects ..... 1316
63.8. Configuring Scripted Entity Movement ..... 1319
63.8.1 Configuring Ballistic Missile Movement ..... 1320
63.8.2 Configuring Animated Movement ..... 1322
63.8.3 Editing Movement File Configurations ..... 1324

# 63.1. Editing Simulation Object Parameters

This section explains how to edit parameters that are only applicable to simulation objects and cultural features. (Cultural features are objects that you can add to a scenario to simulate human artifacts such as buildings, bridges, and so on. They are modeled as simulation objects because they exist in the physical world.)

## 63.1.1 Editing a Simulation Object's Bounding Volume (Size)

VR-Forces uses a simulation object's bounding volume to do intersection tests. The bounding volume is specified by the values in the Size/Supports section of the Physical tab. You can display a simulation object's bounding volume in the Visual Model panel. If you change size values, the bounding volume changes accordingly.

You can set the bounding volume in the following ways:

- Edit the value manually.
- Calculate the bounding volume of a particular entity based on the model.
- Calculate the bounding volumes for all entities based on their models.

---

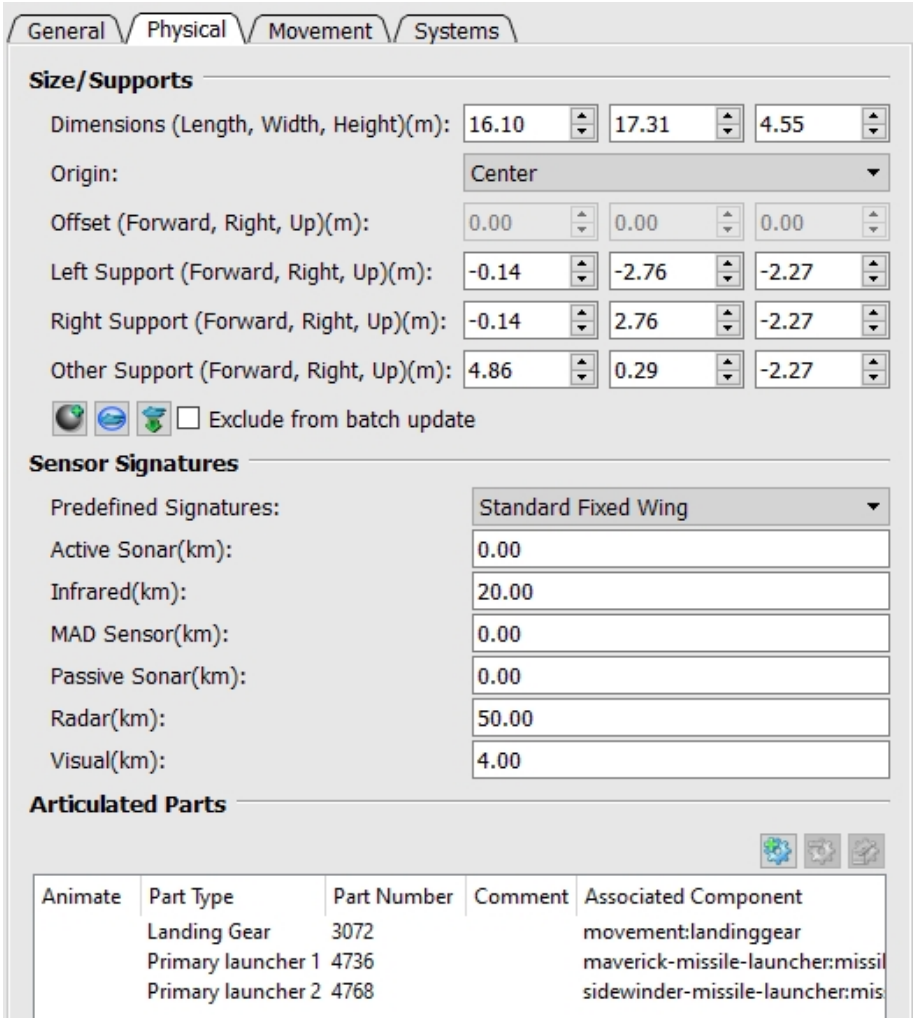
- The bounding volume is not the same thing as the selection box that is displayed around a simulation object when you select it. The selection box is just part of the front-end display. The bounding volume is used by the simulation engine.
- You can exclude individual entities from the global updates.
- VR-Forces calculates the bounding volume for units based on the locations and bounding volumes of the members of the unit.

---

➤ **To change an entity's bounding volume manually:**

1. Select the entity you want to edit in the object list.
2. Select the Physical tab (Figure 542).

**Figure 542. Physical tab**




3. Change any of the values in the Size/Supports section.

➤ To calculate the bounding volume of an entity from its model, click the Calculate Support Points and Bounding Volume from Displayed Model button ( ) or the Calculate Bounding Volume from Displayed Model button ( ).

➤ To calculate the bounding volume for all entities, choose **Model > Check Bounding Volume and Support Points**.

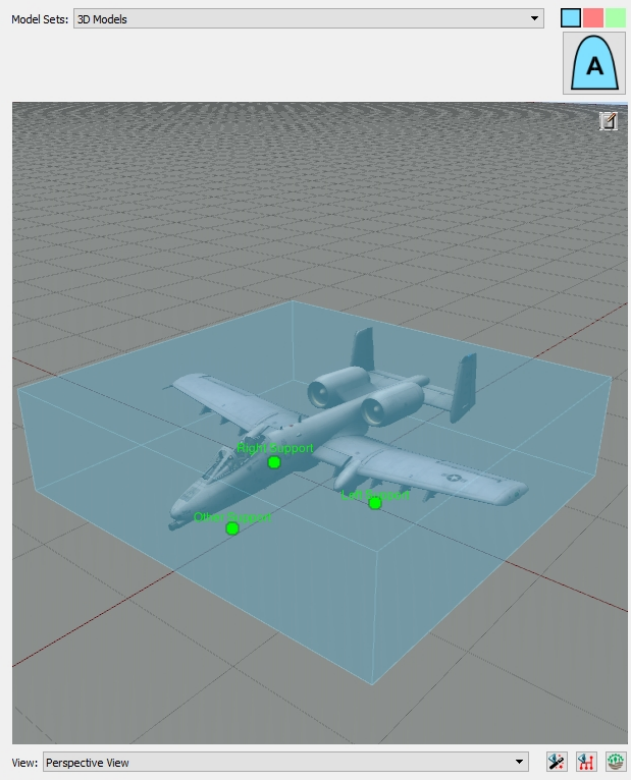
## 63.1.2 Displaying a Simulation Object's Bounding Volume

You must run VR-Forces at least once before you can display bounding volumes in the Simulation Object Editor.

➤ **To display a simulation object's bounding volume:**

1. Select the entity in the object list.
2. In the Visual Model Panel, from the Model Sets list, select 3D Models.
3. Choose **Preferences > Show Bounding Volumes**. The bounding volume displays (Figure 543).

**Figure 543. Bounding volume**




## 63.1.3 Specifying Support Points

Support points are the locations on a model that contact the ground. You can specify support points in any of the following ways:

- Set them manually.
- Calculate them from the 3D model.
- Calculate the support points for all entities based on their models.

➤ **To specify support points manually:**

1. Select the entity you want to edit in the object list.
2. Select the Physical tab (Figure 542 on the previous page).
3. In the Size/Supports section, type the desired values.

➤ To calculate support points based on the model, in the Size/Supports section, click the Calculate Support Points and Bounding Volume from Displayed Model button ( ) or the Calculate Support Points from Displayed Model button ( ).

➤ To calculate the support points for all entities, choose **Model > Check Bounding Volume and Support Points.**

### 63.1.4 Excluding Entities from Batch Bounding Volume and Support Point Updates

If you run the Compute Bounding Volume and Support Points command, it updates all entities. If you have specified the bounding volume or support points for an entity manually, this operation might override those settings. You can exclude individual entities from the global update process.

➤ **To exclude an entity from the global update process:**

1. Select the entity in the object list.
2. Select the Physical tab (Figure 542 on page 1298).
3. In the Size/Supports section, select the Exclude From Batch Update check box.

### 63.1.5 Editing Behavioral Parameters

The Simulation Object Editor lets you edit some of the parameters that affect simulation object behavior.

---

The Sensor Signature parameters specify the distance at which other simulation objects can sense the simulation object you are editing. By contrast, the sensor systems on the simulation object control its ability to sense other simulation objects. For more information, please see "63.4. Editing a Simulation Object's Systems" on page 1310.

---

➤ To edit simulation object parameters, edit any of the parameters in the Physical and Movement tabs. (The tabs reconfigure as you select different types of simulation objects.)

### 63.1.6 Adding Object Geometry to a Simulation Object

Object geometry is to a simulation object as terrain is to the earth. It allows embarked entities to move about on the entity on which they are embarked and it allows entities to move about on cultural features that are embedded in the terrain or embarked on other simulation objects. For example, adding object geometry to an aircraft carrier lets planes taxi on the deck of the carrier. You can add object geometry to simulation objects in the Simulation Object Editor. Object geometry must be in OpenFlight, MEDF, or GDB format. OpenFlight geometry gets converted to GDB and saved. For complete details about adding object geometry and generating navigation data, please see "59.4. Generating Navigation Data for Entities" on page 1207.

Ordinarily, you would specify an object geometry file for an entity. However, some entities have multiple main model visualizers in their element definitions. If an entity has multiple main models, VR-Forces can scan the element definition to identify all of the relevant object geometry files.

---

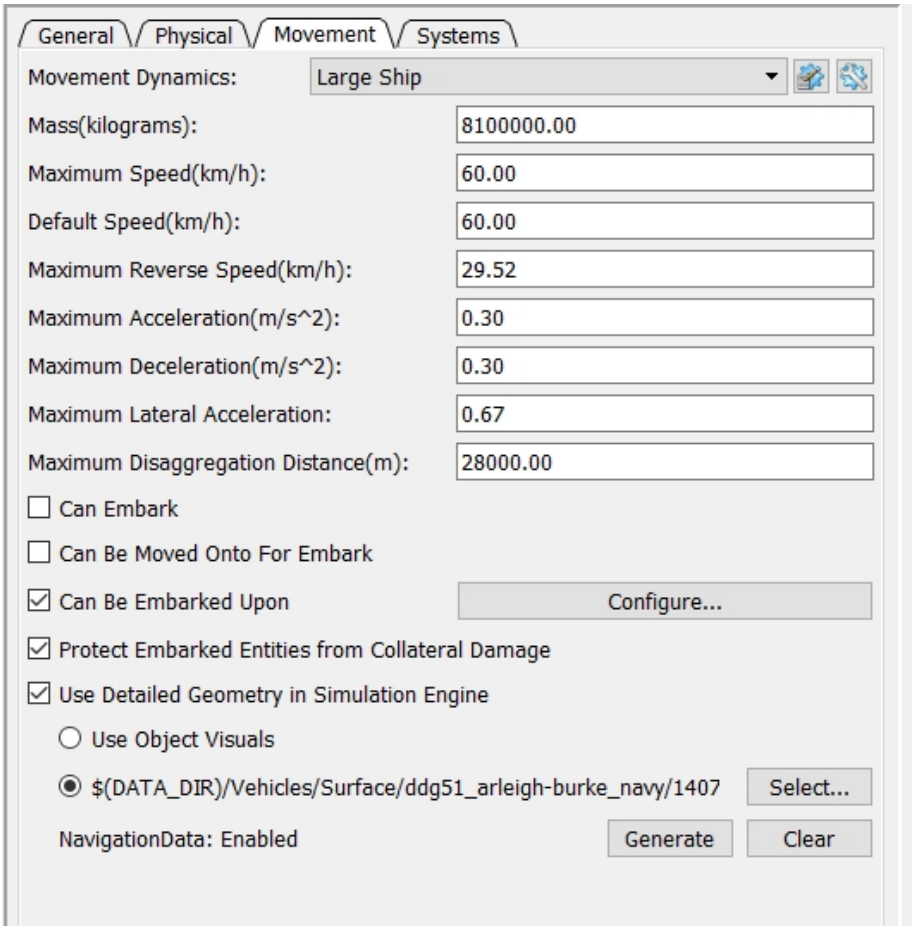
When you edit an entity's embarkation points and slots, the model used is the visual model. This will not necessarily line up with the object geometry for that entity, if it has any.

---

➤ **To add object geometry to a simulation object:**

1. Select the simulation object in the Object List.
2. Select the Movement tab (Figure 544).

**Figure 544. Movement tab**




3. Select Use Detailed Geometry in Simulation Engine.
4. If the entity has multiple main models, select the Use Object Visuals option.
5. If it has just one main model, select the option that lists an medf file.
6. Optionally, to change the object geometry file:

a. Click Select. The Select Object Geometry dialog box opens.
b. Click the Browse button. The Object Geometry dialog box opens.
c. Select the file that contains the object geometry for this entity.
d. Click Open.
e. Click OK.

### 63.1.7 Configuring Cultural Features To Be Embedded in the Terrain

If a cultural feature, such as a house, has object geometry, you can specify that it can be embedded in the terrain. When you place such an object into a navigation area, VR-Forces automatically generates navigation data for that object. This allows entities to walk around and inside the building (if it has interior geometry) as if it were part of the terrain. For more information, please see "14.15.1 Embedding Cultural Features in the Terrain" on page 394.

---

You do not need to generate navigation data in the Simulation Object Editor for cultural features that you want to embed in the terrain. The navigation data is generated when you place the cultural feature in a scenario. Generating navigation data for an object in the Simulation Object Editor is for when you want to embark an entity onto that object.

---

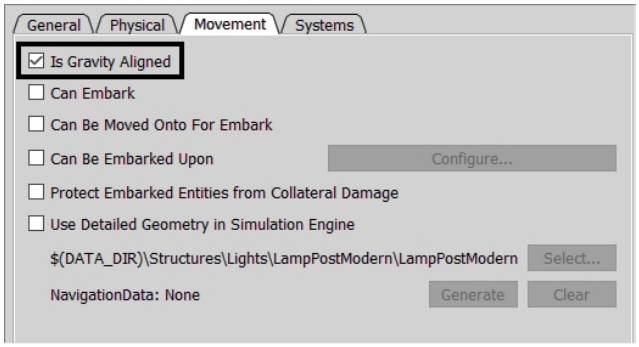
➤ **To allow a cultural feature to be embedded in the terrain:**

1. Select the cultural feature in the Objects List.
2. Select the Movement tab (Figure 544 on the previous page).
3. Select Use Detailed Geometry in Simulation Engine.
4. Click Select. The Select Object Geometry dialog box opens.
5. Click the Browse button. The Object Geometry dialog box opens.
6. Select the file that contains the object geometry for this entity.
7. Click Open.
8. Click OK.
9. Select Embed Object Geometry Into Terrain.

### 63.1.8 Ground Clamping Cultural Features

You can specify that cultural features be aligned to the terrain (ground clamped). If they are not aligned to the terrain, they might end up sticking out at odd angles.

**Figure 545. Is Gravity Aligned check box**




➤ To align cultural features to the terrain, on the Movement tab, select the Is Gravity Aligned check box (Figure 545).

## 63.1.9 Specifying Entity Properties that Can Be Edited in the Front-End

When you create a simulation object in the front-end, you can edit its properties, such as pitch. The properties that you can edit in the front-end are determined by keywords that you specify in the Simulation Object Editor.

The keywords are as follows:

- canbeairborne. The object can be in the air. This is used for things such as fire and smoke; it is not needed for aircraft.
- cansetpitch. The user can change the object's pitch.
- no-orbat. This object cannot be added to the Order of Battle panel for future creation through the Order of Battle panel.
- nocopy. Once placed, the entity cannot be copied.
- noedit. Once placed, the user cannot edit the object.

➤ To allow a simulation object's properties to be edited, on the General tab, type the appropriate keyword in the Keywords text box. Separate each keyword with a semi-colon (;).

## 63.1.10 Editing a Lifeform's Visual Model and Animation

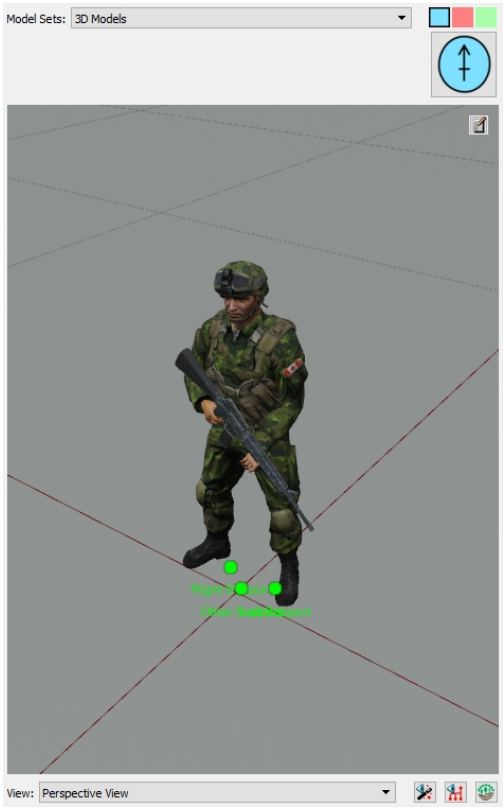
VR-Forces can specify the character, appearance, hand item, head, and animation values for DI-Guy models used in the 3D view and visualization applications such as VR-Vantage. A model's character determines the kinds of movement it can make. The appearance determines what it looks like. The animation specifies the movements that the character makes. In the VR-Forces front-end, you can specify the animation with the DI-Guy Animation task. You can set the appearance with the DI-Guy Appearance set data request. This feature is valid only for lifeforms (the Human and Animal tags).

➤ **To specify the default DI-Guy characteristics for a lifeform:**

1. Select the Human or Animal tag.
2. Select a lifeform in the object list.

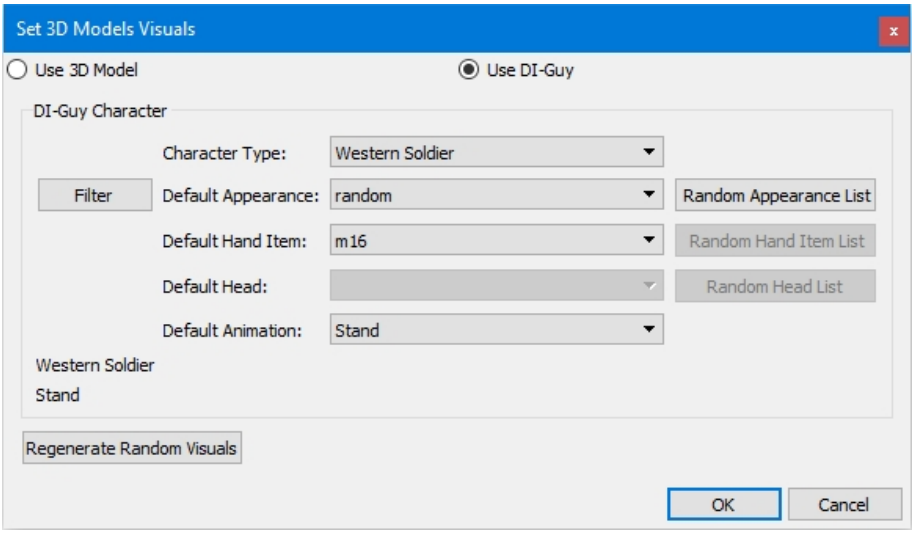
3. In the Visual Model Panel (Figure 546), on the Model Sets list, if 3D Models is not selected, select it.

**Figure 546. Visual Model Panel**




4. In the 3D display, click the Edit button ( ). The Set 3D Models Visuals dialog box opens (Figure 547). The Use DI-Guy option should be selected. If it is not selected, select it.

**Figure 547. DI-Guy Character group box**




5. Optionally, filter the options available in the lists, as follows:
    a. Click Filter. The DI-Guy Filters dialog box opens.
    b. Select an option for each characteristic that you want to filter on.
    c. Click OK.
6. Select the DI-Guy character you want to use from the Character Type list.
7. Select the default appearance from the Default Appearance list. One of the default options is to use a random appearance.
8. If you selected random appearance, optionally, specify the list of appearances to choose from. For details, please see "Configuring the Random DI-Guy Characteristics Lists" below.
9. Optionally, in the Default Hand Item list, select a hand item. If you choose random, click Random Hand Item List to specify the hand items that can be chosen.
10. Optionally, in the Default Head list, select a head. If you select random, you can specify the list of heads to choose from. If you choose random, click Random Head List to specify the heads that can be chosen.
11. Select the default animation from the Default Animation list. The default animation is the animation the entity uses if it is not tasked and if it has a posture and speed that is appropriate to the animation.

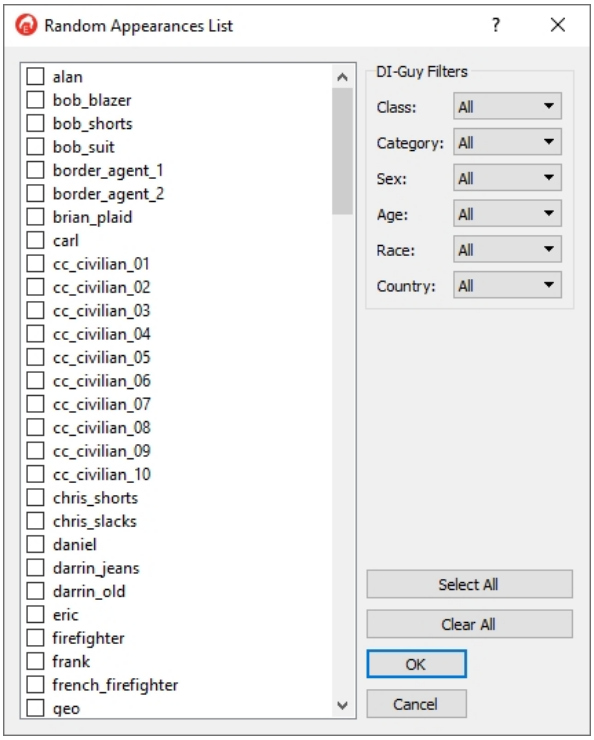
### Configuring the Random DI-Guy Characteristics Lists

When you configure the visual model for a DI-Guy, you can specify that a lifeform use a random appearance, hand item, head, or some combination of these. When VR-Forces creates a lifeform, it chooses from the random characteristic lists. By default, a random list has all options available for the chosen character. However, you can specify a subset of the available characteristics to use.

➤ **To configure the DI-Guy characteristics lists:**

1. Select the Human tag (or Animal tag).
2. Select a lifeform in the object list.
3. In the Visual Model Panel (Figure 546), on the Model Sets list, if 3D Models is not selected, select it.
4. In the 3D display, click the Edit button ( ). The Set 3D Models Visuals dialog box opens (Figure 547). The Use DI-Guy option should be selected. If it is not selected, select it.
5. Click the random list button for the characteristic you want to configure. A dialog box opens (Figure 548). The options available for the character type are listed.
6. Optionally, filter the list by selecting options in the filter lists.

**Figure 548. Random Appearances List dialog box**




7. Select the options that you want to include in the random list.
8. Clear any options that you do not want to include in the random list.
9. Click OK.
10. Click OK to close the Modify Visuals dialog box.

## 63.2. Editing Sensor Signatures

Sensor signatures specify the distance at which other entity sensors can locate a simulation object. VR-Forces includes a set of predefined sensor signatures for each of the sensor domains supported. You can edit the predefined sensor signatures in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/extra/sensor-signatures.csv*.

---

The VR-Forces simulation engine does not read *sensor-signatures.csv*. The file is only used to set predefined sensor signatures in the Simulation Object Editor. If you make change to the predefined sensor signatures, you must update objects in the Simulation Object Editor to put the changes into effect.

---

➤ **To specify sensor signatures:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Select the Physical tab (Figure 542 on page 1298).
3. In the Sensor Signatures section, specify a value in each domain in which the simulation object can be sensed or select a set of predefined signatures in the Predefined Signatures list.

## 63.3. Editing a Model's Articulated Parts

The Simulation Object Editor allows you to manage a simulation objects' articulated parts. This applies to articulated parts that are defined for the model, such as propellers, rotors, flaps, wheels, landing gear, tracks, radar, turrets, fun barrels, missile launchers, doors, hatches, and so on.

The default configuration for articulated parts comes from sim components and entity visual models. All parts from these sources are combined into a single list. These default settings can be overridden or have other settings added at the entity level using the Simulation Object Editor. The overrides to part settings are stored in the *.entity* file for the entity.

### 63.3.1 Adding Articulated Parts

You can add articulated parts to a simulation object. If they are associated with a part on the model that does not articulate visually, they can still have articulation information.

➤ **To add an articulated part:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Select the Physical tab (Figure 542 on page 1298).
3. In the Articulated Parts section, click Add Part ( ). The Add Articulated Part dialog box opens.

4. You can hover the cursor over an available part to see the source file information.
5. Select the part to add and then click OK. The part is added to the list of articulated parts.
6. You can edit the part as needed; see "63.3.2 Editing Articulated Parts" below.
7. Save the simulation model set.

## 63.3.2 Editing Articulated Parts

You can make changes to articulated parts on the simulation object. Your edits override any other settings. The articulated parts on the simulation object come from the system definition files, the model definition, and any articulated parts added to the simulation object.

---

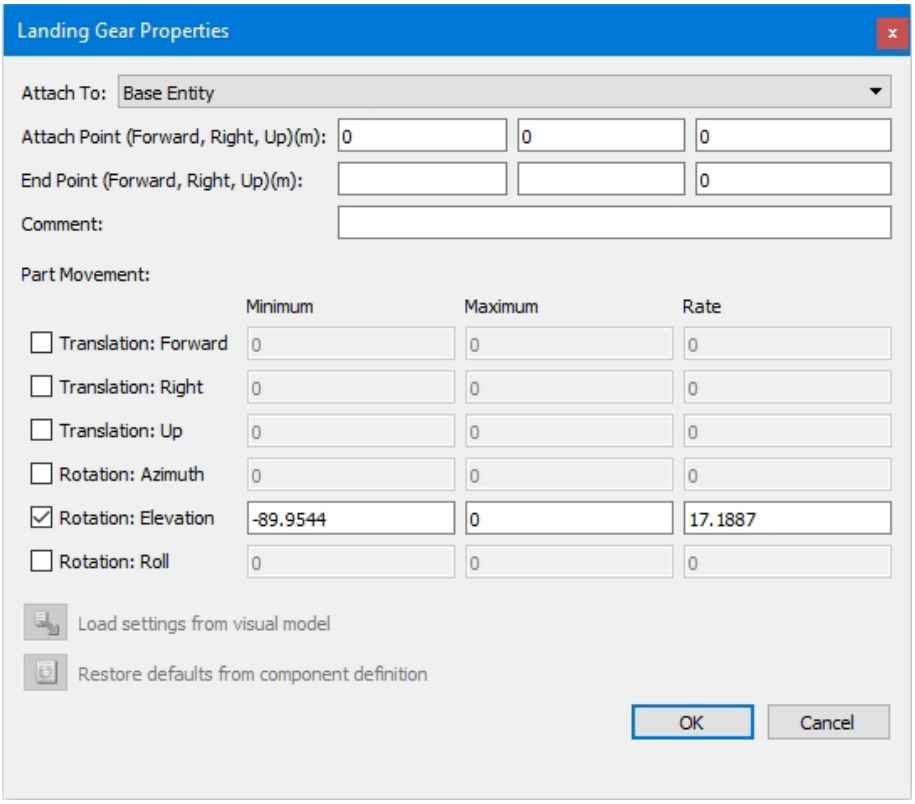
Hover the cursor over a part in the list to see the source file information.

---

➤ **To edit an articulated part:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Select the Physical tab.
3. In the Articulated Parts section, select the articulated part you want to edit.
4. Click Edit Part Properties ( ). The properties dialog box opens (Figure 549).

**Figure 549. Properties dialog box for articulated parts**




5. Make changes as needed.
6. Click OK.
7. Save the simulation model set.

## 63.3.3 Animating Articulated Parts

You can see the animations of articulated parts that are associated with a part of the model that can be animated.

➤ **To animate an articulated part:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. In the Visual Model Panel, from the Model Sets list, select 3D Models.
3. Select the Physical tab.
4. In the Articulated Parts section, select the Animate check box for the articulated part. The part animates in the Visual Model Panel.

## 63.3.4 Removing Articulated Parts

You can remove articulated parts that you added to a simulation object. You cannot remove articulated parts that are part of the model.

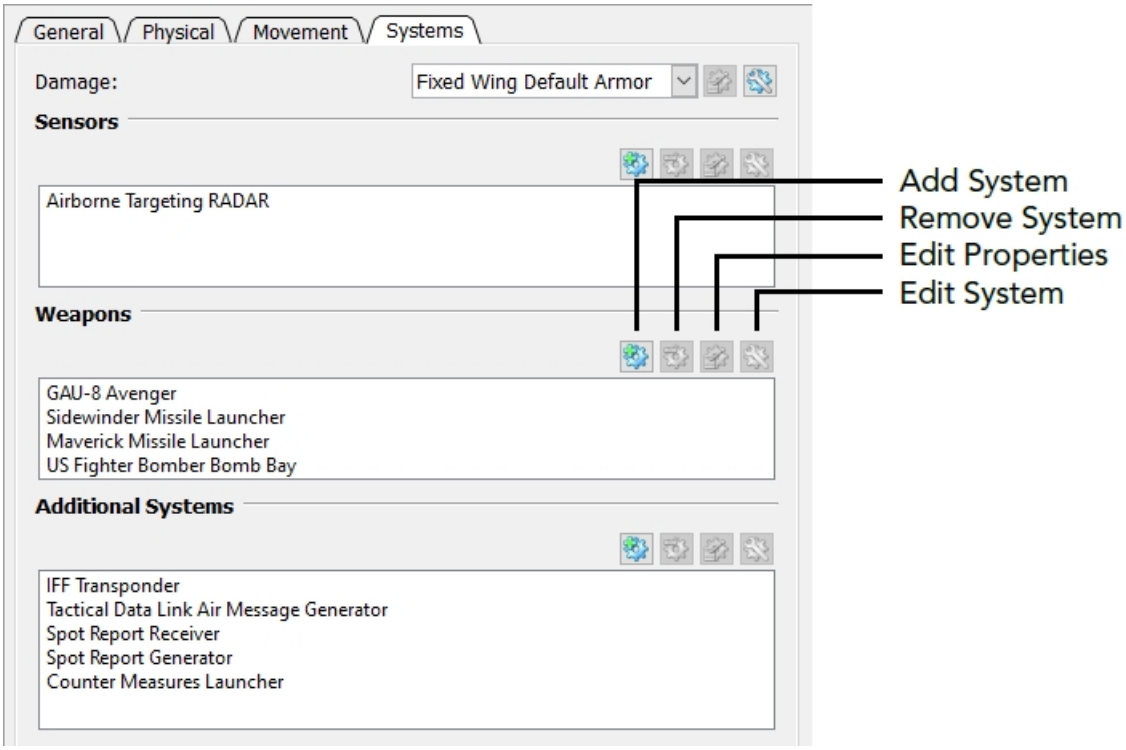
➤ **To remove a custom articulated part:**

1. Select the simulation object.
2. Select the Physical tab.
3. In the Articulated Parts section, select the articulated part you want to remove.
4. Click Remove Selected Part ( ). The part is removed from the entity.

## 63.4. Editing a Simulation Object's Systems

Simulation objects have complex capabilities, such as the ability to move, to take damage, to sense other simulation objects, and to fire munitions. These capabilities are organized as systems. You can quickly change how a simulation object functions by adding, removing, and changing its systems. The Simulation Object Editor lists the systems available in each category and only lists systems that are appropriate for the entity type (Figure 550). For example, a lifeform can have an M-16 or an RPG, but not a cruise missile.

**Figure 550. Systems tab**




Some systems are interdependent. For example, if you add a weapon system to a simulation object, it probably cannot use it unless it also has a sensor system so that it can detect simulation objects. If you change or add systems, it is up to you to know if they have dependencies.

The components that make up a system have parameters and you can edit the parameters of system components by editing the properties of the system.

The Simulation Object Editor lets you edit the following types of systems:

- Damage. You can specify the type of damage model that a simulation object uses. When you select a damage model, the Simulation Object Editor configures the damage files that are appropriate for the object type.
- Sensors. You can specify the sensors that a simulation object uses to locate other simulation objects in the simulation. (By contrast, sensor signatures, which you can also set, specify the distance at which other entity sensors can locate this simulation object. For a list of the sensor signatures used for VR-Forces by category, please see Table 66 on page 1433 .) When you add a weapon, the Simulation Object Editor configures the components and connections necessary for the sensor to work.
- Weapons. The Simulation Object Editor lists the weapon systems that are appropriate for the object type. When you add a weapon, the Simulation Object Editor configures the components, targets, ammunition, and connections necessary for the weapon to work.
- Movement. You can specify the type of movement system that a simulation object uses, for example, tracked, wheeled, pedestrian, and so on. When you select a movement system, the Simulation Object Editor configures all of the actuators and controllers that the simulation object needs to implement the system.
- Other systems. This category includes spot reports, IFF transponders, and emergency transponders.

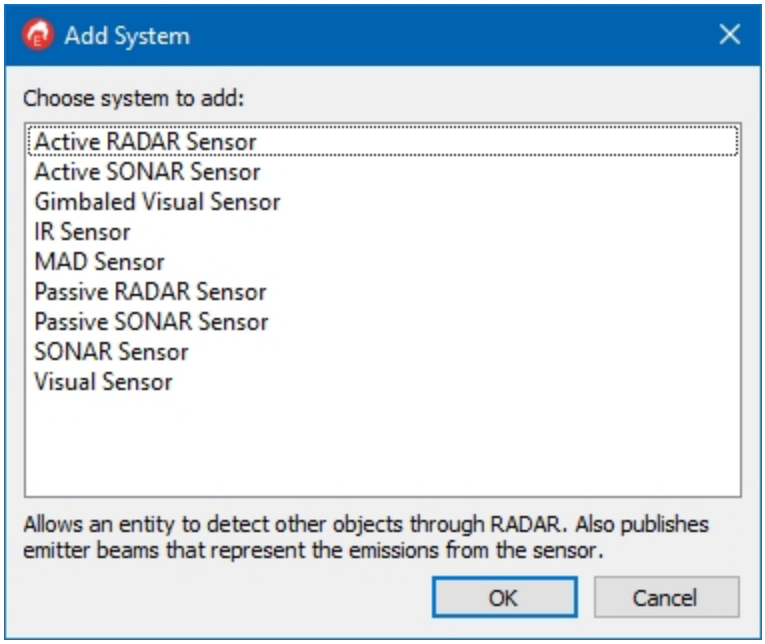
## 63.4.1 Adding a System

There is no specific limit to the number of sensors, weapons, or other systems that you can configure for a simulation object.

➤ **To add a system:**

1. Select a simulation object in the list.
2. Select the Systems tab (Figure 550 on the previous page).
3. Click the Add System button ( ) for the system type you want to add. The Add System dialog box opens (Figure 551). It lists the systems of this type that are available for the simulation object you are editing. If you select a system in the window, the dialog box displays a brief description.

**Figure 551. Add System dialog box**




4. Select the system you want to add.
5. Click OK. The system is added to the list in the Simulation Object Editor.

## 63.4.2 Selecting a Damage Model

You can only have one damage model specified for a simulation object.

➤ To specify a damage model, on the Systems tab (Figure 550 on page 1310), select an option from the Damage list.

## 63.4.3 Selecting a Movement Model

You can only have one movement model specified for a simulation object.

➤ To specify a movement model, on the Movement tab (Figure 544 on page 1301), select an option from the Movement Dynamics list.

## 63.4.4 Editing a System's Properties

Some systems have properties that you can edit.

➤ **To edit a system's properties:**

1. Select the simulation object whose system you want to edit.
2. Select the Systems tab (Figure 550 on page 1310).
3. For sensors, weapons, or other systems, select the system whose properties you want to edit. (You do not have to select the damage or movement model, because there can only be one.) If the system has properties, the Properties button is enabled.

4. Click the Edit Properties button ( ). A Properties dialog box opens. The 3D model in the Visual Model Panel displays a red dot on the simulation object where the system is located. In some cases there are multiple locations.
5. Edit the properties as desired.
6. Click OK.

### 63.4.5 Removing a System

You can remove sensor, weapon, and additional systems.

---

If you remove a system that another system depends on, the other system will not work. It is your responsibility to know these dependencies.

---

➤ **To remove a system:**

1. On the Systems tab, select the system you want to remove.
2. Click the Remove System button ( ).

## 63.5. Creating and Editing Munitions

Munitions fall into two broad categories – simulated munitions and non-simulated munitions. As the name implies, simulated munitions are simulated as individual objects. This category includes missiles, bombs, mines, and hand grenades. Since they are simulated, they have visual and 2D models. They have all of the various tabs for configuring their parameters that other simulation objects have, plus a Detonation tab for configuring their damage power.

Non-simulated munitions are not simulated as individual objects. This category is for ammunition that is fired by some of the direct fire weapons, such as rifles, machine guns, and some ballistic rounds. These munitions have a General tab for basic identifying information and a Detonation tab for configuring their damage power.

### 63.5.1 Creating a Simulated Munition

Simulated munitions have visual models and are configured just like other simulation objects.

➤ **To create a simulated munition:**

1. Choose **Model > New Munition.** The New Munition dialog box opens.
2. Select the New Munition option.
3. Click OK. The Create New Model dialog box opens.

4. In the Platform Type list, select the platform type for the munition. The Description field provides information about the type of munition represented by this platform.
5. In the Template field, select the template you want to use. It is possible that there are no templates for the platform type.
6. In the Name box, type a name for the munition.
7. Optionally, edit the Object Type.
8. In the Take Visuals list, select the model you want to use for this munition.
9. Click OK. A new entry is added to the munitions list.
10. If applicable, on the General tab specify the object types that this munition can target.
11. Edit the Detonation power, as described in ("71.2.2 Configuring Detonation Power in the SOE" on page 1474).
12. Edit other parameters for this munition as desired.

### 63.5.2 Creating a New Ammunition Type

Ammunition munitions are not simulated as individual objects.

➤ **To create a new ammunition type:**

1. Choose **Model > New Munition**. The New Munition dialog box opens.
2. Select the New Ammunition option.
3. Click OK. The Add New Ammunition dialog box opens.
4. Specify the object type for the new ammunition by selecting options from the lists of typing the object type directly.
5. Click OK.
6. Click OK. A new entry is added to the munitions list.
7. On the General tab specify the object types that this munition can target.
8. If this munition has a tracer type, specify it on the General tab.
9. Edit the Detonation power, as described in ("71.2.2 Configuring Detonation Power in the SOE" on page 1474).

## 63.6. Configuring Wakes

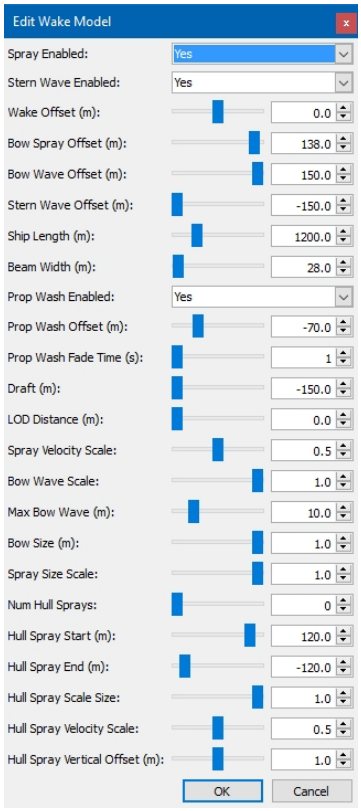
You can configure the wake parameters for surface entities in the Simulation Object Editor. The model window shows the ocean state and you can vary the wind speed, entity speed, and choppiness to see how the wake looks under varying ocean conditions (Figure 552).

**Figure 552. Wake display**

➤ **To configure wakes:**

1. Select a surface entity in the object list.
2. Click the Edit Wake button ( ) on the Visual Models Panel (Figure 528 on page 1266). The Edit Wake Model dialog box opens (Figure 553).

**Figure 553. Edit Wake Model dialog box**




3. Change wake parameter values as desired. For details about wake parameters, please see "Configuring Wakes" in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.
4. To see the effect of parameter changes under different sea conditions:
    a. Click the Environment Settings button ( ) on the Visual Models Panel. The Environment Settings dialog box opens.
    b. Adjust the wind speed, wind direction, choppiness, and ocean quality values.
    c. Click Close.
5. Click OK.

## 63.7. Creating Randomized Simulation Objects

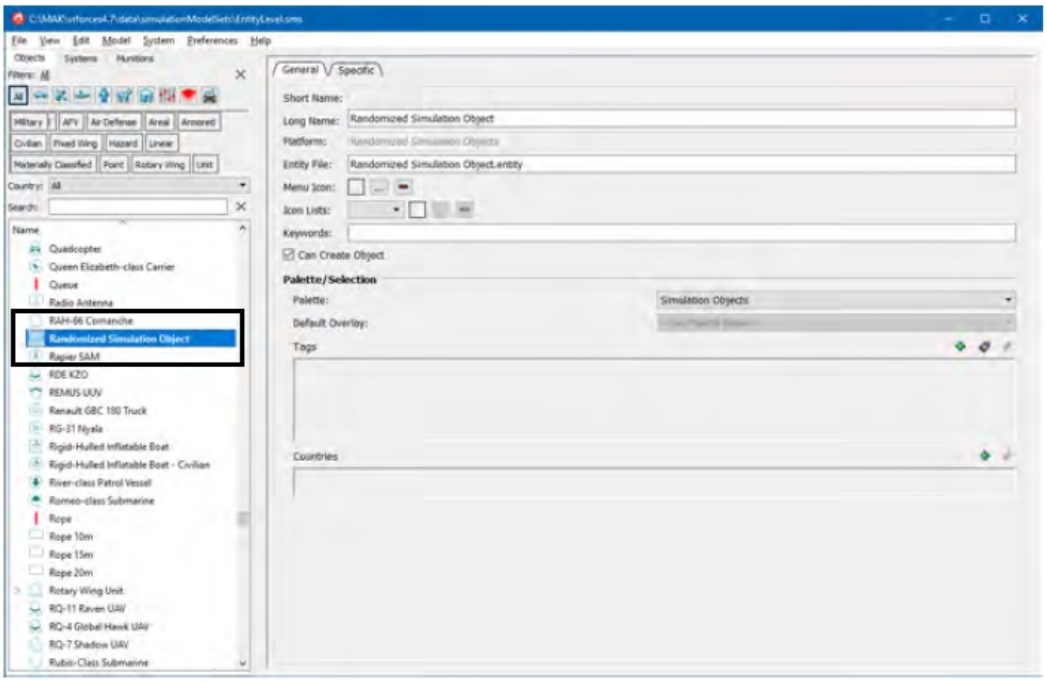
A randomized simulation object is an object that you can use to quickly add a generic simulation object type, such as a civilian vehicle or commercial aircraft, using randomly chosen specific models of these object types. For example, if you want to add several cars to a scenario, you could individually select a Nissan Maxima, a Toyota Corolla, a Honda Accord, and so on, and add them to the scenario. Or you could select a randomized simulation object that references a list of civilian vehicles and click multiple times on the terrain, With each click a randomly chosen vehicle would be added to the scenario.

You create randomized simulation objects in the Simulation Object Editor. You can create them in entity-level and aggregate-level scenarios.

➤ **To create a randomized simulation object:**

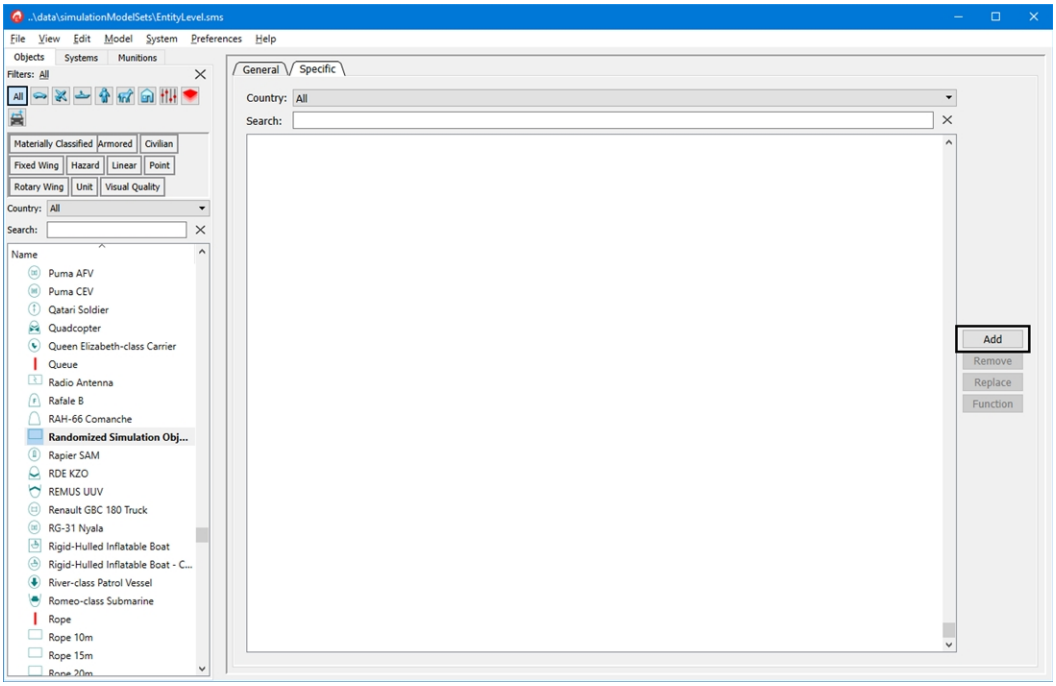
1. Start the Simulation Object Editor.
2. Load the SMS you want to use.
3. Choose **Model > New Randomized Simulation Object**. The Randomized Simulation Object dialog box opens.
4. Type a name for the simulation object and then click OK. The new object is added to the object list.
5. Select the new object in the object list (Figure 554).

**Figure 554. Randomized simulation object**



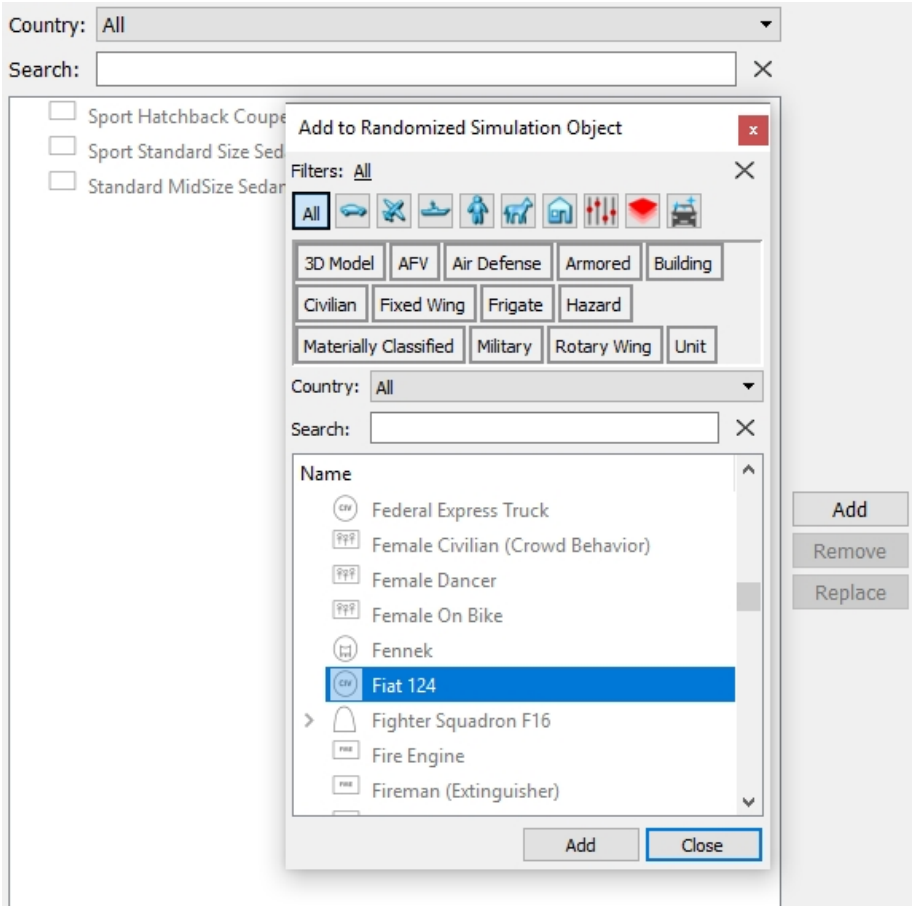

6. Optionally, edit the common simulation object attributes, such as tag, palette, and so on.
7. Select the Specific tab (Figure 555).

**Figure 555. Randomized object, Specific tab**




8. Click the Add button (Figure 555). The Add to Randomized Simulation Object dialog box opens.
9. Select the simulation objects that you want to be part of this randomized simulation object. To select an object, double-click it or select it and click Add. As you select objects, they are added to the list (Figure 556). If you want the probability of a particular simulation object being created to be higher than others, add multiple instances of the same simulation object to the list.

**Figure 556. Randomized object list**




10. Click Close.
11. Save the SMS.

## 63.8. Configuring Scripted Entity Movement

In most cases, simulation objects move based on the intelligence built into their components – sensors, controllers, and actuators. However, there are two instances in which entity movement follows a predetermined sequence, or script. These cases are ballistic missile movement and animated movement tasks.

When you launch a ballistic missile (by creating a missile target in VR-Forces), it does not follow a route or do any path planning; it flies based on the parameters in the scripts it is configured to use. Similarly, if you give an animated movement task to an entity, it moves in whatever way the script prescribes.

Ballistic missile movement is configured using comma-delimited value (CSV) files. Animated movement tasks can be configured with CSV files or 3DS ASCII Export (ASE) files. We refer to these files generically as movement files.

A movement file specifies a time sequence and a set of parameters that define the entity's movement for each time entry. Ballistic missile movement files define lateral-distance, altitude, and range. Animated movement movement files define lateral distance, altitude, range, heading, pitch, and roll.

---

Ballistic missile movement files get configured in a dialog box that is shared with animated movement movement files ("63.8.2 Configuring Animated Movement" on page 1322). Animated movement movement files have more parameters than ballistic missile movement files. If a ballistic missile is configured with a movement file that has these additional parameters, they are ignored.

---

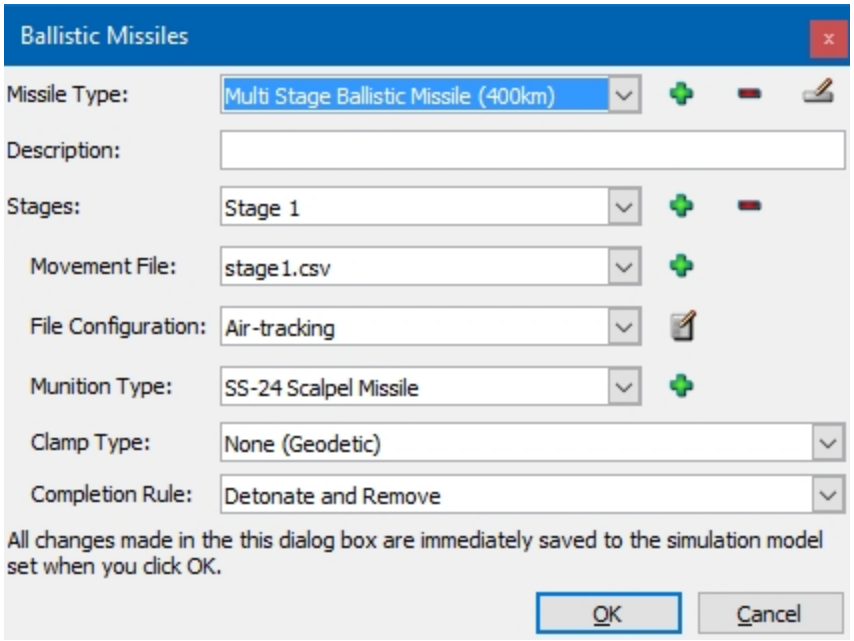
## 63.8.1 Configuring Ballistic Missile Movement

When you create a Missile Target event in VR-Forces, you specify a missile type. Missile types are configured in the Simulation Object Editor.

➤ **To configure ballistic missiles:**

1. Choose **Edit > Ballistic Missiles**. The Ballistic Missiles dialog box opens (Figure 557).

**Figure 557. Ballistic Missiles dialog box**




2. In the Missile Type list, select the missile type that you want to edit. You can add, delete, and rename missile types using the Add ( ), Delete ( ), and Rename ( ) buttons.

3. Optionally, in the Description text box, type a description. This description gets used as a tooltip for the Missile Type in the Create Missile Target and Edit Missile Target dialog boxes.
4. In the Stages list, select the stage that you want to configure. Missiles can be single stage or multi-stage. For single stage missiles, configure Stage 1. For multi-stage missiles, use the Add and Delete buttons to add or delete stages.

   For each stage, specify the following:

   — Movement File. The CSV file to use. The list lists the files in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/scriptedObjectMovement*.

   If you want to use a CSV file that is not listed, click the Add button ( ) next to the Movement File list. A file chooser dialog box opens, where you can select the CSV file that you want to use. The file is copied to *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/scriptedObjectMovement*.

   — File Configuration. Select a file configuration from the list. File configurations specify the type of value in each column in the movement file. For details, please see "63.8.3 Editing Movement File Configurations" on page 1324.

   — Munition Type. The missile to use.

   — Clamp Type. Determines how to calculate altitude for the animation. Table 50 describes the clamp type options.

   — Completion Rule. The action to take when the movement in the CSV file is complete.

**Table 50. Clamp type options**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| None (Geodetic) | Altitude in the animation is used as altitude above the altitude of the animation reference location. A constant altitude in the animation results in a path that follows the curvature of the earth, when a round earth terrain is being used. |
| None (Topographic) | Altitude in the animation is used as altitude above a plane defined by the animation reference orientation. A constant altitude in the animation results in a straight path, even as the earth curves, when a round earth terrain is being used. |
| High Fidelity (Including Orientation) | Altitude in the animation is ignored, and the object is ground clamped to the terrain using three support points, which also sets the orientation of the object. |
| Low Fidelity (Terrain Clamp Only) | Altitude in the animation is ignored, and the object is ground clamped to the terrain using only its origin point. Orientation is set solely from the animation. |

**Table 50. Clamp type options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Altitude Above Terrain (High Fidelity) | Altitude in the animation is used as the altitude above the terrain height. |
| Ground Clamp if Altitude Offset is 0 (High Fidelity) | Acts like **High Fidelity** for frames where altitude is 0, and acts like **None (Geodetic)** for frames where altitude is non-zero. |
| Radar Face Cartesian | Similar to **None (Topographic)**, except the Y coordinate is inverted. The animation would typically be started with an orientation reference corresponding to the angle of a radar face. Useful for cases where animation data is captured radar data. |

5. Click OK.

## 63.8.2 Configuring Animated Movement

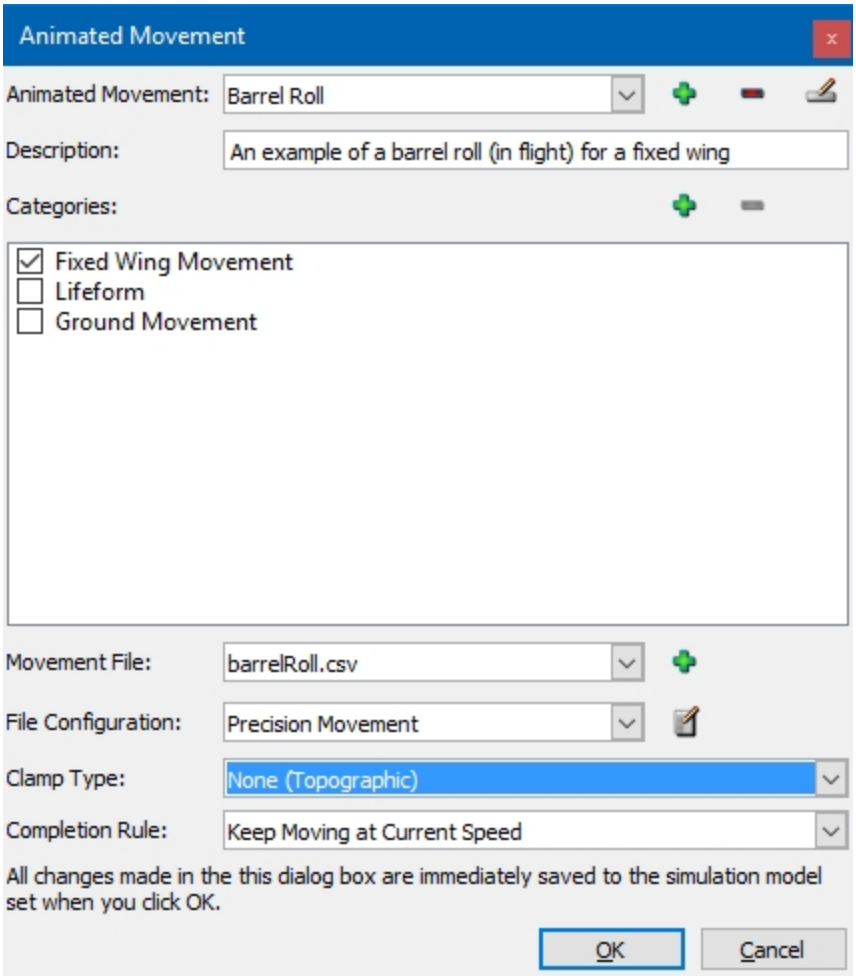
The animated movement feature lets you script a sequence of entity movements. You can do this using a CSV file or a 3DS ASCII Export (ASE) file. VR-Forces includes some sample animated movement files.

Animated movement is assigned to an entity as a task from the Movement submenu. You configure the animated movement options in the Simulation Object Editor.

➤ **To configure animated movement:**

1. Choose **Edit > Animated Movement**. The Animated Movement dialog box opens (Figure 558).

**Figure 558. Animated Movement dialog box**




2. To edit an existing animated movement, select it in the Animated Movement list. To create a new animated movement:

    a. Click the Add button ( ) next to the Animated Movement list. The New Configuration dialog box opens.

    b. Type a name for the new animated movement.

    c. Click OK.

3. Optionally, type a description for the animated movement. This description is displayed in the Animated Movement dialog box when an Animated Movement task is assigned.

4. In the Categories window, select the categories that this animated movement applies to. Use the Add and Delete buttons to add and delete categories.

5. In the Movement File list, select the movement file to use. The list lists the files in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/scriptedObjectMovement*. If you want to use a CSV file or ASE file that is not listed:

a. Click the Add button ( ) next to the Movement File list. A file chooser dialog box opens.

b. Select the file that you want to use. The file is copied to *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/scriptedObjectMovement*.

6. If you chose an ASE file, the dialog box displays a field called Animation. Select an animation from the list.

   If you chose a CSV file, it displays a field called File Configuration. Select a file configuration from the list. File configurations specify the type of value in each column in the movement file. For details, please see"63.8.3 Editing Movement File Configurations" below.

7. In the Clamp Type list, select an option for calculating the altitude. For details, please see Table 50 on page 1321.

8. In the Completion Rule list, select the action you want the entity to take after it completes the animated movement task.

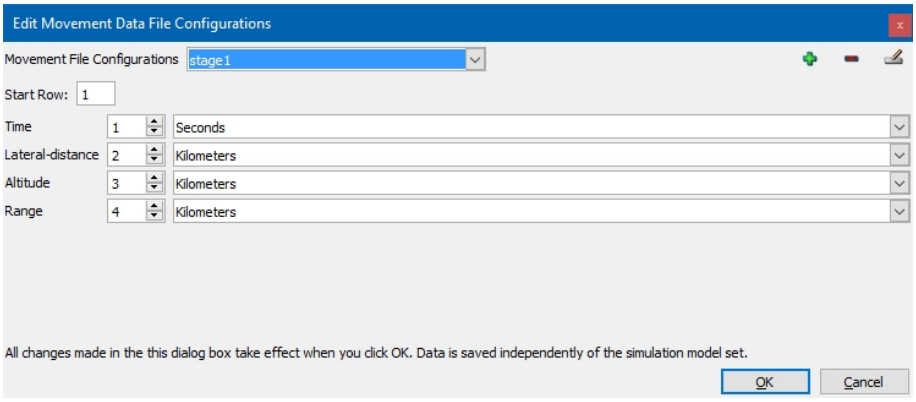
## 63.8.3 Editing Movement File Configurations

VR-Forces assumes that a ballistic missile CSV file contains four columns of data that describe time, lateral distance, altitude, and range. It assumes that animated movement files have seven columns that describe time, lateral distance, altitude, range, heading, pitch, and roll. VR-Forces includes file configurations for the sample CSV files provided. They are organized in the order that the columns are listed in this paragraph. If a CSV file you are using is organized differently, you must create a file configuration that matches your file or edit one of the provided configurations.

➤ **To create or edit a movement file configuration:**

1. In the Ballistic Missiles dialog box or the Animated Movement dialog box, click the Edit button ( ) next to the File Configuration list. The Edit Movement Data File Configurations dialog box opens (Figure 559).

**Figure 559. Edit Movement Data File Configurations dialog box**



- Ballistic missile file configurations have four rows. Animated movement file configurations have seven rows. If you specify a seven-row configuration for a ballistic missile, it ignores the values that it does not use.
- If you are editing an animated movement that uses an ASE file, there is no File Configuration option. This only applies to CSV files.

2. In the Movement File Configurations list, select the configuration you want to edit. If you are creating a new configuration, click the Add button ( ). The New Configuration dialog box opens.
   a. Type a name for the configuration.
   b. Click OK.
3. Optionally, change the Start Row value. This is the row in the CSV file from which VR-Forces should start reading values for entity movement.
4. Specify the column in the CSV file that has the Time value.
5. Optionally, select the time unit from the list.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 for each movement parameter.
7. Click OK.

# 64. Editing Units for Entity-Level Scenarios

This chapter explains how to edit units for entity-level scenarios (*EntityLevel.sms*) in the Simulation Object Editor.


64.1. Introduction to Editing Units ..... 1328
64.2. Creating a Unit for Entity-Level Scenarios ..... 1328
64.3. Specifying an Aggregate As Option ..... 1328
64.4. Editing Unit Composition ..... 1329
- 64.4.1 Adding Subordinates ..... 1330
- 64.4.2 Removing Subordinates ..... 1331
- 64.4.3 Replacing Subordinates ..... 1332
- 64.4.4 Changing the Order of Subordinates ..... 1332
- 64.4.5 Editing a Subordinate Unit ..... 1332

64.5. Editing Formations ..... 1332
- 64.5.1 Adding Formations ..... 1333
- 64.5.2 Removing Formations ..... 1335
- 64.5.3 Renaming Formations ..... 1335
- 64.5.4 Specifying the Default Formation ..... 1335
- 64.5.5 Expanding and Collapsing the Display of Formations ..... 1335
- 64.5.6 Displaying Bounding Boxes ..... 1335
- 64.5.7 Copying Formations ..... 1336
- 64.5.8 Laying Out a Formation Automatically ..... 1337
- 64.5.9 Changing a Formation's Layout by Hand ..... 1338

## 64.1. Introduction to Editing Units

VR-Forces can simulate units in two different ways:

- In entity-level scenarios, VR-Forces models the individual entities of a unit. Although you can aggregate them into one simulated model for movement and certain tasks, when they engage in combat, they disaggregate into their leaf-level entities and interact at the individual entity level. Units for entity-level scenarios are configured in *EntityLevel.sms* or SMSs based on it.
- Units in aggregate-level scenarios do not model individual entities. Combat operations are data-driven and are not based on individual entity interactions. Units for aggregate-level scenarios are configured in *AggregateLevel.sms* or SMSs based on it.

Units in entity-level scenarios and aggregate-level scenarios have many of the same parameters as individual entities. Therefore, for the most part, configuring them in the Simulation Object Editor involves the same procedures as those described in "Chapter 61. The Simulation Object Editor and SMSs" on page 1225 and "Chapter 63. Editing Entities for Entity-Level Scenarios" on page 1295.

The two major differences in configuring the different types of units is that units in entity-level scenarios have subordinates and formations and do not have sensors. Units in aggregate-level scenarios do not move in formation. They have sensors and they have a large amount of information about their combat capabilities, personnel, equipment, and supplies.

## 64.2. Creating a Unit for Entity-Level Scenarios

➤ **To create a unit for entity-level scenarios:**

1. Follow the procedures for creating a new entity in "62.3. Creating a New Simulation Object" on page 1278.
2. Add subordinates, as described in "64.4.1 Adding Subordinates" on page 1330.
3. Optionally, configure formations.

## 64.3. Specifying an Aggregate As Option

When you create a unit using the Aggregate As command, the Aggregate As dialog box has a list of unit types that you can select for the unit that is to be created. VR-Forces is configured with just a short list of generic unit types. You can specify that any unit configured in the Simulation Object Editor be included in the list of Aggregate As options.

---

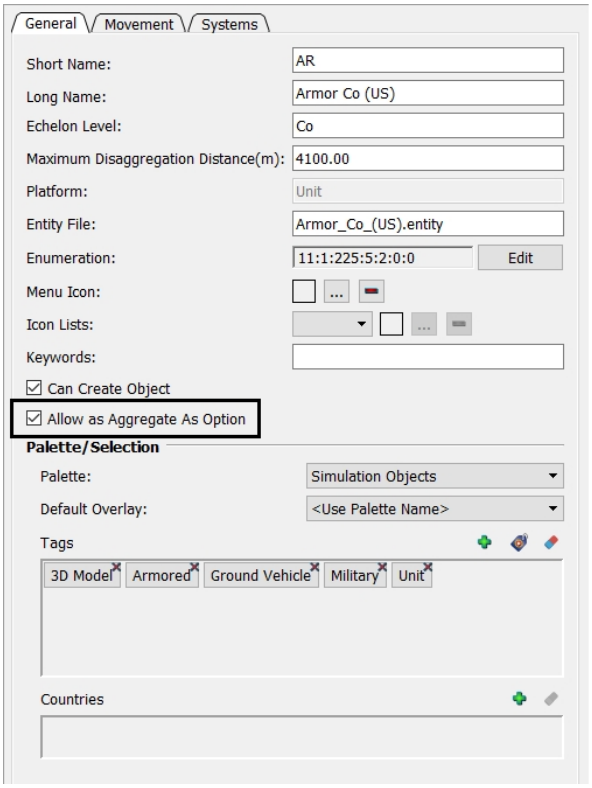
This procedure is valid for entity-level and aggregate-level SMSs.

---

➤ **To specify that a unit can be an option in the Aggregate As list:**

1. Select the unit in the object list.
2. Select the General tab (Figure 560).

**Figure 560. General tab, entity-level unit**




3. Select the Allow as Aggregate As Option check box.
4. Save the SMS.

## 64.4. Editing Unit Composition

Many units available in VR-Forces have predefined sets of subordinates, which you can modify. (Some units are configured as “empty” units — they have no subordinates. These empty units are still available to the list of choices in the Aggregate As dialog box and for mapping to units when you import MSDL scenarios.)

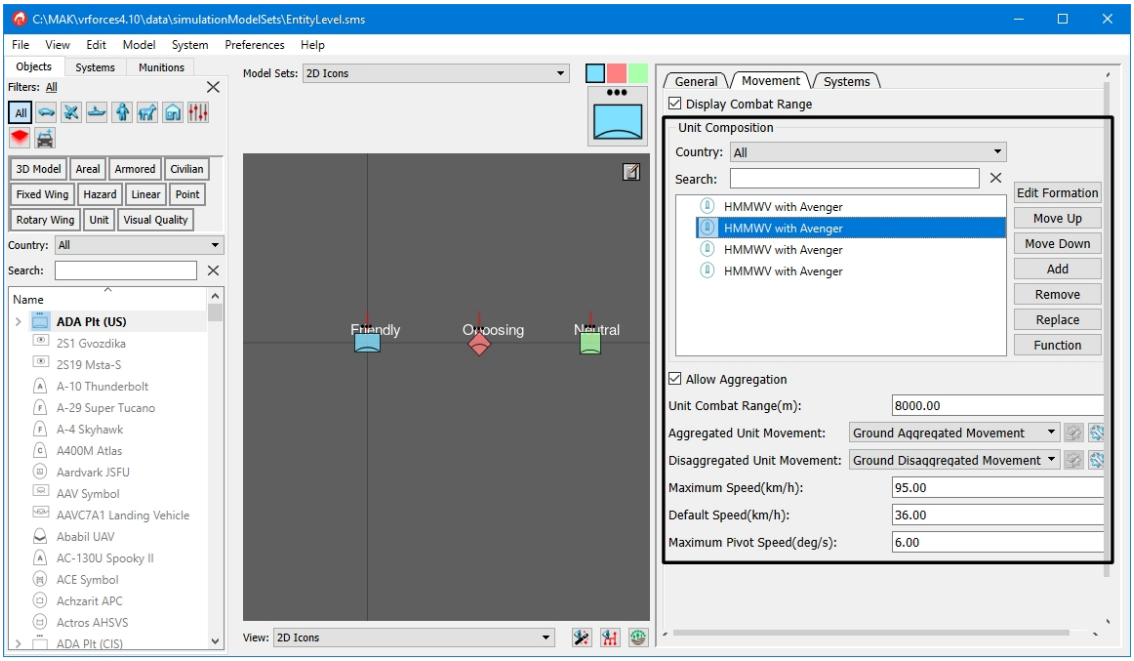
---

A few units (and groups that are managed like units) do not allow aggregation — that is, you cannot combine the subordinates into a single object. These include Crowds, Convoys, Carrier Air Wings, and Animal Herds.

---

Figure 561 illustrates the Simulation Object Editor with a unit selected. The Unit Composition group box is highlighted.

**Figure 561. Unit Composition**



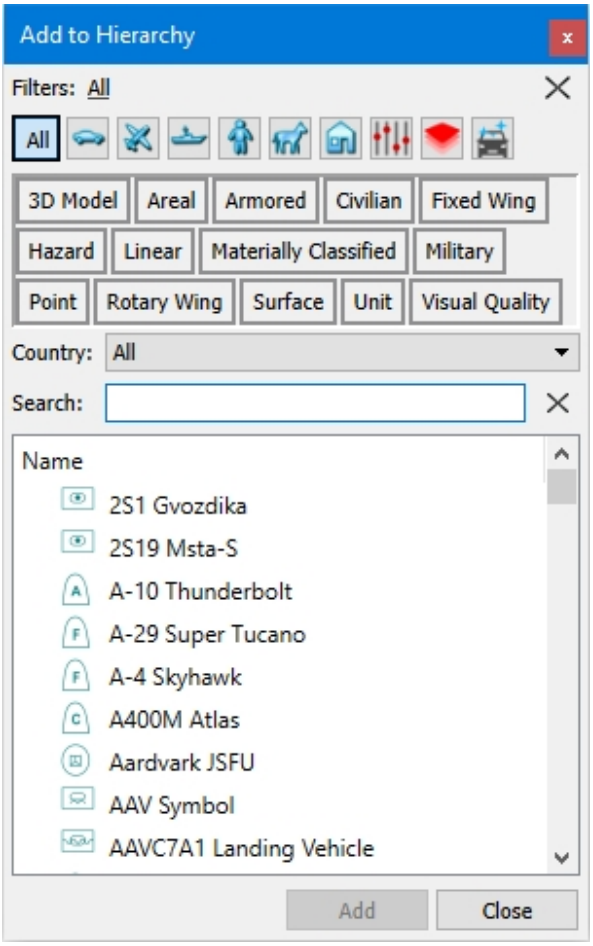

## 64.4.1 Adding Subordinates

When you create a new unit without copying an existing unit, you must specify its subordinates. You can also edit subordinates for existing units.

➤ **To add a subordinate to a unit:**

1. In the Objects List, select the unit.
2. Select the Movement tab.
3. In the Unit Composition group box (Figure 561 above), click Add. The Add to Hierarchy dialog box opens (Figure 562).

**Figure 562. Add to Hierarchy dialog box**




4. In the list of simulation objects, select the simulation object that you want to add.
5. Click Add. The simulation object is added to the list in the Unit Composition window. It is also added to each formation using a default layout algorithm.
6. Continue to add as many subordinates as desired.
7. Click Close.

## 64.4.2 Removing Subordinates

➤ **To remove a subordinate from a unit:**

1. In the Unit Composition window (Figure 561 on the previous page), select the subordinate that you want to remove.
2. In the Unit Composition group box, click Remove. The subordinate is removed from the unit.

### 64.4.3 Replacing Subordinates

Replacing a subordinate is a convenient way to remove a subordinate and insert a different subordinate in the same location in one step.

➤ **To replace a subordinate:**

1. In the Unit Composition window (Figure 561 on page 1330), select the subordinate that you want to replace.
2. In the Unit Composition group box, click Replace. The Add to Hierarchy dialog box opens (similar to Figure 562 on the previous page).
3. In the list of simulation objects, select the object that you want to add as a replacement.
4. Click OK. The new object replaces the selected simulation object in the Unit Composition window. It is also added to each formation in the location of the replaced simulation object.

### 64.4.4 Changing the Order of Subordinates

The order of subordinates in the Unit Composition window determines which entity is the leader, the order in which units are placed into formation, and the succession when units are reorganized.

➤ **To change a subordinate's position in the unit composition:**

1. In the Unit Composition window (Figure 561 on page 1330), select the subordinate that you want to move.
2. In the Unit Composition group box, click Move Up or Move Down.

### 64.4.5 Editing a Subordinate Unit

Units can contain entities and other units as subordinates. When you are editing a unit, you might decide that you want to edit one of its subordinates. You can jump to the subordinate quickly without selecting it in the main list of simulation objects.

---

! If you edit a subordinate unit, the changes affect all uses of that subordinate, not just the one in this particular unit.

---

➤ **To edit a subordinate:**

1. In the Unit Composition window or in the Formation Editor, right-click the subordinate that you want to edit. A menu displays.
2. In the menu, choose **Edit**. The Simulation Object Editor refreshes to show the selected subordinate. (If the Formation Editor is open, you must close it before you can edit the subordinate.)

## 64.5. Editing Formations

Each unit in *EntityLevel.sms* has the following defined formations:

- Column
- Line
- Vee
- Wedge

---

The Convoy unit provided with VR-Forces is an exception to the discussion of units in this section. It does not have any formations because there is no preconceived membership in a convoy.

---

You can add, remove, and rename formations. You can also:

- Change the layout of subordinates in a formation.
- Create new formations.
- Specify the default formation.

The Formation Editor allows you to change the display of formations as follows:

- Expand and collapse the display of subordinate units.
- Zoom in and out on the display.
- Display subordinate bounding boxes.

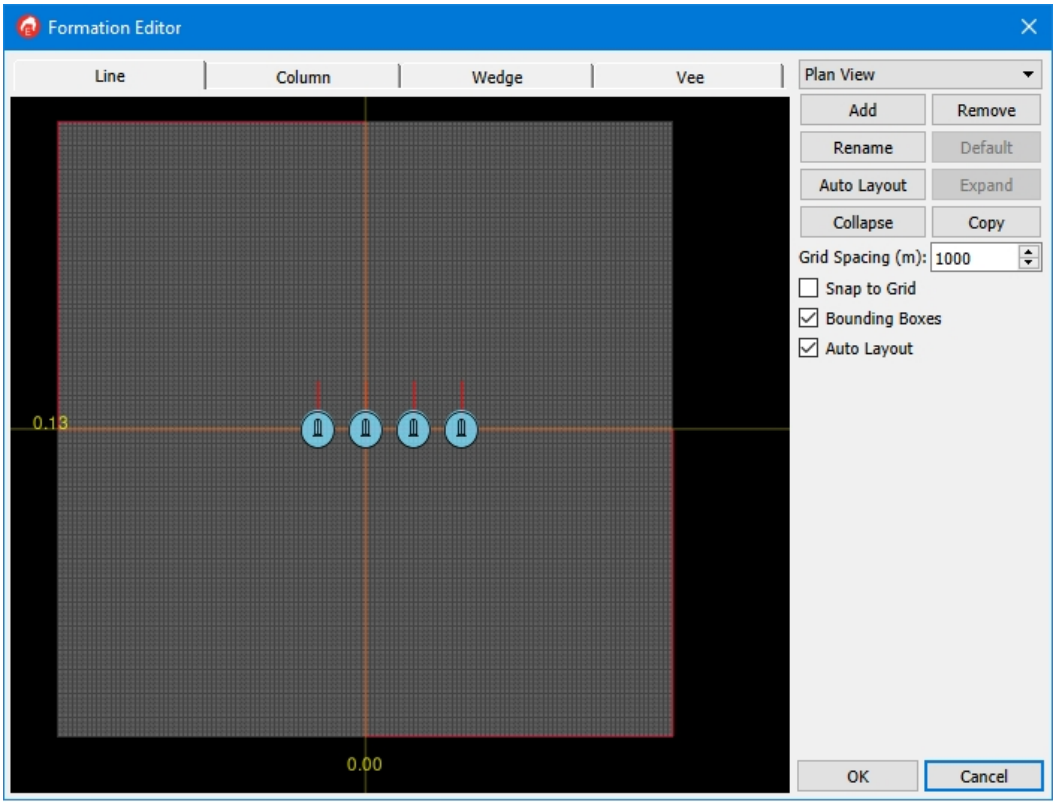
You can also edit formations in formation files. For details, please see "72.1. Configuring Formations" on page 1490.

### 64.5.1 Adding Formations

➤ **To add a formation:**

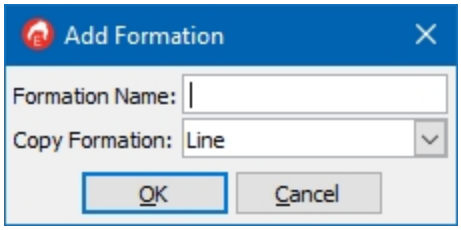
1. In the Unit Composition group box (Figure 561 on page 1330), click Edit Formation. The Formation Editor opens (Figure 563).

**Figure 563. Formation Editor**




2. In the Formation Editor, click Add. The Add Formation dialog box opens (Figure 564).

**Figure 564. Add Formation dialog box**




3. In the Formation Name box, type a name for the formation.
4. In the Copy Formation list, select an existing formation to copy the new formation from.
5. Click OK.
6. Edit the layout of the formation as described in "64.5.9 Changing a Formation's Layout by Hand" on page 1338.

### 64.5.2 Removing Formations

➤ **To remove a formation:**

1. In the Unit Composition group box (Figure 561 on page 1330), click Edit Formation. The Formation Editor opens (Figure 563 on the previous page).
2. In the Formation Editor, select the tab for the formation that you want to remove.
3. Click Remove. The tab is removed.

### 64.5.3 Renaming Formations

➤ **To rename a formation:**

1. In the Unit Composition group box (Figure 561 on page 1330), click Edit Formation. The Formation Editor opens (Figure 563 on the previous page).
2. In the Formation Editor, select the tab for the formation that you want to rename.
3. Click Rename. The New Name dialog box opens.
4. Type a name for the formation.
5. Click OK.

### 64.5.4 Specifying the Default Formation

The default formation is the formation assigned to a unit when you create it in VR-Forces. The default formation is the leftmost tab in the Formation Editor.

➤ **To specify the default formation:**

1. In the Unit Composition group box (Figure 561 on page 1330), click Edit Formation. The Formation Editor opens (Figure 563 on the previous page).
2. In the Formation Editor, select the tab of the formation that you want to specify as the default formation.
3. Click Default. The selected tab moves to the leftmost position.

### 64.5.5 Expanding and Collapsing the Display of Formations

You can expand and collapse the display of formations in the Formation Editor window. This enables you to see how simulation objects are dispersed over the terrain. It can help you quickly identify any unintended variations in subordinate formations.

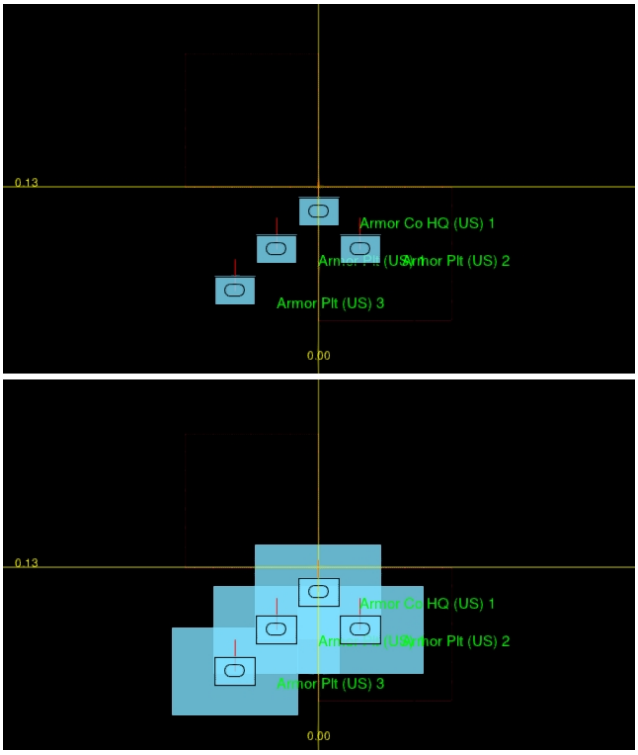
➤ To expand or collapse the display of formations in the Formation Editor, click the Expand or Collapse buttons.

### 64.5.6 Displaying Bounding Boxes

You can display bounding boxes for the subordinate units in a unit. This may be useful when you collapse the views of individual units, but you still want to have a sense for the area that they occupy. Figure 565 illustrates a unit with the display of bounding

boxes off and on.

**Figure 565. Unit bounding boxes in Formation Editor**




➤ To display or hide bounding boxes, in the Formation Editor (Figure 563 on page 1334), select or clear the Bounding Boxes check box.

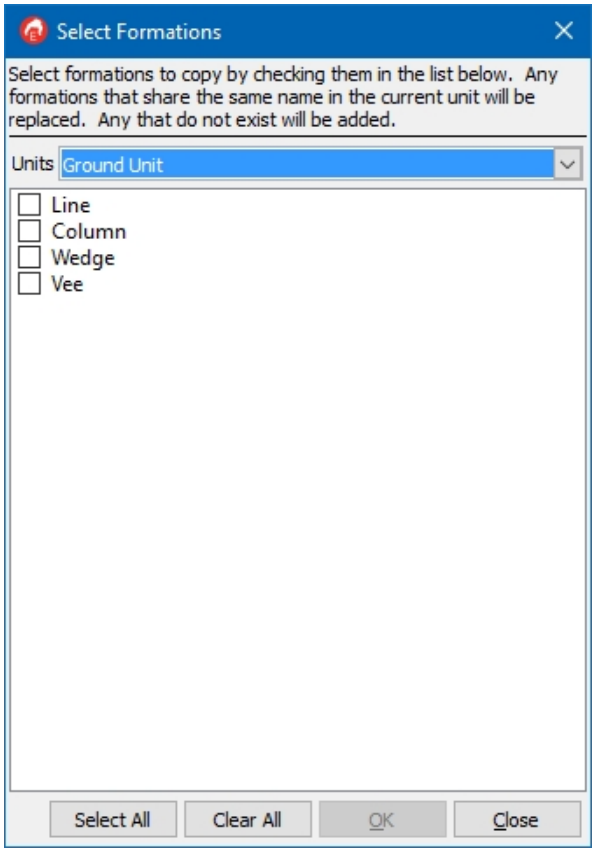
## 64.5.7 Copying Formations

You can copy formations from one unit to another. When you copy formations, the subordinates in the unit are laid out in each formation according to their order in the Unit Composition window.

➤ **To copy a formation:**

1. In the object list, select the unit that you want to copy formations to.
2. In the Unit Composition group box, click Edit Formation. The Formation Editor opens (Figure 563 on page 1334).
3. In the Formation Editor, click Copy. The Select Formations dialog box opens (Figure 566).

**Figure 566. Select Formations dialog box**




4. In the Units list, select the unit whose formations you want to copy.
5. In the window, select the formations that you want to copy.
6. Click OK. The formations are copied from the selected unit to the currently displayed unit.

## 64.5.8 Laying Out a Formation Automatically

You can automatically distribute the simulation objects in a unit into one of the built-in formations. You can specify the distance between each entity in the formation.

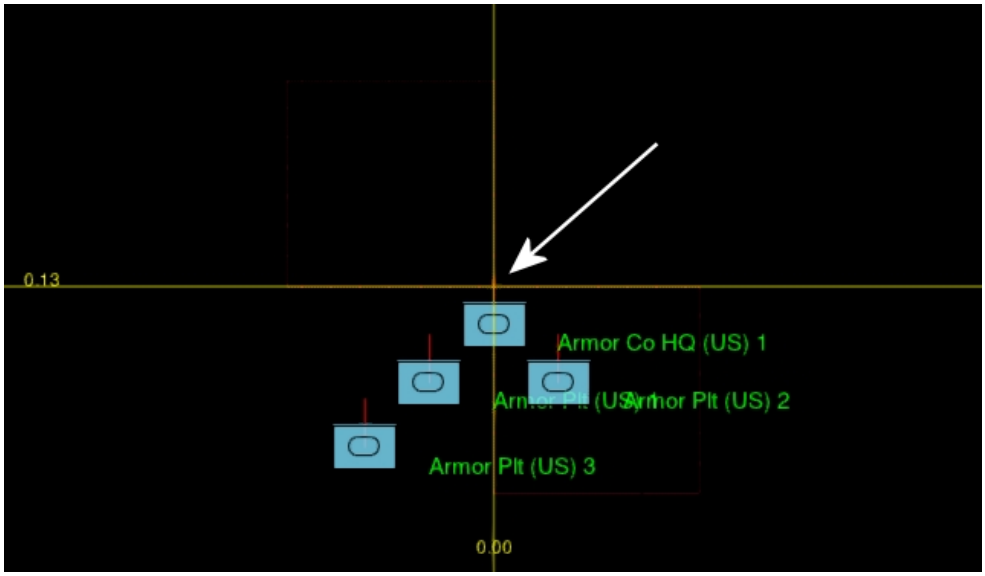
➤ **To lay out a formation automatically:**

1. In the Unit Composition group box, click Edit Formation. The Formation Editor opens (Figure 563 on page 1334).
2. In the Formation Editor, select the tab for the formation that you want to lay out.
3. Click Auto Layout. The Auto Layout dialog box opens.
4. In the list, select a formation type.
5. Specify the distance, in meters, between each entity in the formation.
6. Click OK. The simulation objects in the unit are reorganized to the new layout.

## 64.5.9 Changing a Formation's Layout by Hand

You can lay out a formation by hand. The gridline in the Formation Editor indicates the center of the formation (Figure 567). This is where the unit icon is placed when the unit is collapsed or aggregated.

**Figure 567. Formation Editor cross-hairs**




➤ **To change a formation's layout:**

1. In the Unit Composition group box, click Edit Formation. The Formation Editor opens (Figure 563 on page 1334).
2. In the Formation Editor, select the tab for the formation that you want to lay out.
3. To move a subordinate, double-click it and then move it to the location where you want it to be.
4. Click again to place it in the new location.

### Snapping Subordinates to the Grid

When you lay out a formation, you can specify that simulation objects snap to the grid. That is, they can only be placed at the intersection of vertical and horizontal grid lines. When snap-to-grid is enabled, if you want to place simulation objects more closely together than the grid allows, you can change the scale factor.

➤ To enable snap-to-grid for entity placement, in the Formation Editor, select Snap To Grid.

### Changing the Grid Spacing

Grid spacing determines the distance, in meters, between grid lines. The default is 1000 meters.

➤ To change the grid spacing, enter a value in the Grid Spacing box.

# 65. Editing Aggregate-Level Objects

This chapter explains how to edit simulation objects and combat engineering objects for aggregate-level modeling.


65.1. Creating Objects for Aggregate-Level Modeling ..... 1340
65.2. Configuring Simulation Objects for Aggregate-Level Modeling ..... 1340
65.2.1 Aggregating Units into Higher Echelon Units ..... 1342
65.3. Configuring Ammunition, Weapons, and Equipment ..... 1342
65.3.1 Defining Ammunition, Weapons, and Equipment Items ..... 1345
65.4. Assemblies ..... 1346
65.4.1 Creating Assemblies ..... 1347
65.4.2 Editing Assemblies ..... 1348
65.4.3 Adding Assemblies to a Unit ..... 1349
65.4.4 Removing Assemblies ..... 1349
65.5. Creating Roll Up Rules ..... 1350
65.6. Rolling Up Assemblies ..... 1351
65.7. Adding Activities ..... 1351
65.8. Object Parameters for Aggregate-Level Modeling ..... 1352
65.8.1 General Parameters ..... 1353
65.8.2 Physical Parameters ..... 1353
65.8.3 Movement Parameters ..... 1354
65.8.4 Sensor Parameters ..... 1357
65.8.5 Attack Parameters ..... 1357
65.8.6 Defense Parameters ..... 1359
65.8.7 Combat Parameters ..... 1359
65.8.8 Electronic Warfare (EW) Parameters ..... 1360
65.8.9 Personnel and Equipment Parameters ..... 1360
65.8.10 Supplies Parameters ..... 1361
65.9. Configuring Combat Engineering Objects ..... 1362
65.10. Editing Reader/Writer Key/Value Pairs ..... 1363

## 65.1. Creating Objects for Aggregate-Level Modeling

You create new aggregate-level simulation objects and combat engineering objects the same way you create entity-level objects, by creating a new model or creating an object from an existing model.

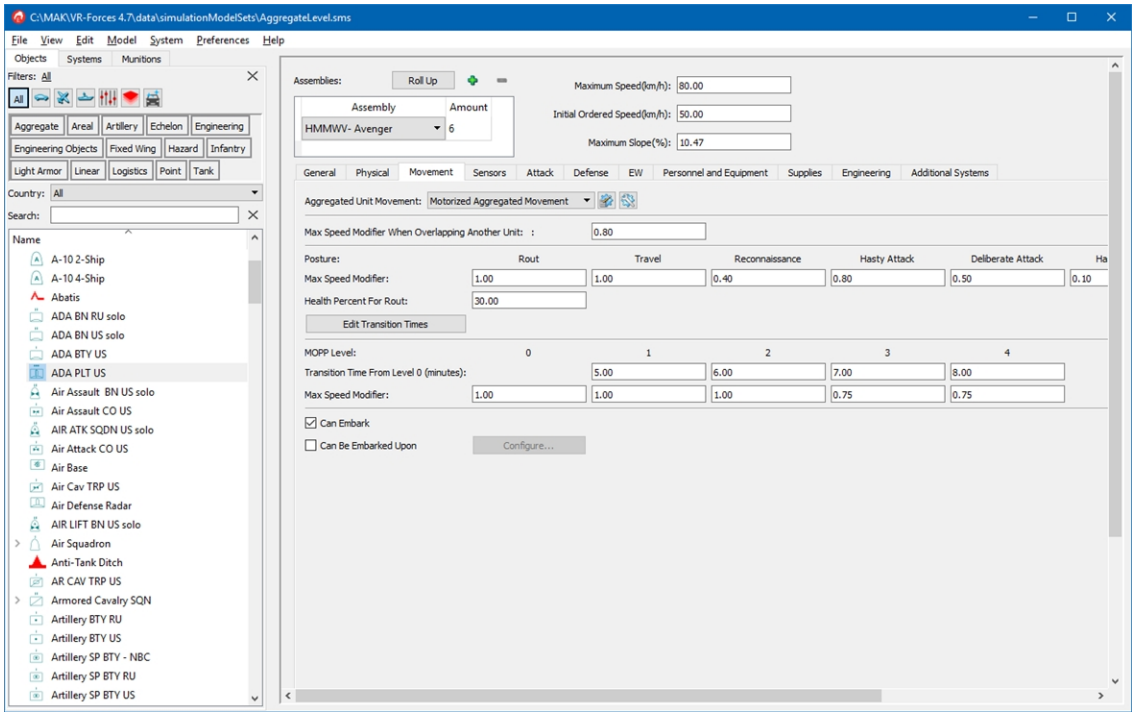
Simulation objects in an aggregate-level scenario have a more complex set of parameters than simulation objects in an entity-level scenario. Ensuring consistency among similar types of simulation objects could become difficult if, after creating new models, you had to configure all of the parameters from scratch or, if after creating a model from an existing model, you had to back out all of the assemblies and parameters that you wanted to change. Therefore, VR-Forces includes templates for common entity types. If you create a new model from a template (by selecting a template and then choosing **Model > New Model From Existing (Copy)** or **New Model From Existing (Inherit)**), you know that you will have a simulation object with similar characteristics to other simulation objects of its type, and that is ready to customize with assemblies or direct specification of equipment, weapons, and personnel.

See "62.3. Creating a New Simulation Object" on page 1278, to learn more about creating new simulation objects.

## 65.2. Configuring Simulation Objects for Aggregate-Level Modeling

Simulation objects for aggregate-level modeling (those used in the aggregate warfare model) are configured in the Simulation Object Editor (*AggregateLevel.sms*). Some aspects of their configuration, such as name, enumeration, and tags, are the same as for simulation objects in an entity-level scenario. Other parameters, the focus of this chapter, are used in the aggregate warfare model (Figure 568).

**Figure 568. Unit in *AggregateLevel.sms***




The parameters for simulation objects in *AggregateLevel.sms* are organized into the following groups:

- General. Basic identification information for the unit.
- Physical. Overall health of the simulation object, its footprint, and sector size for each posture.
- Movement. The movement system to use and how speed is modified by different postures and MOPP levels. (Does not apply to air units.)
- Sensors. Sensor systems and signatures (similar to simulation objects in an entity-level scenario) and how signatures are modified by different postures and MOPP levels.
- Attack. Specifies combat power, ammunition use, weapon systems, and modifiers to combat power. (Does not apply to air units.)
- Defense. Specifies vulnerability to different types of attack and modifiers to vulnerability. (Does not apply to air units.)
- Combat. For air units only. Specifies weapon systems, combat systems, loadout, and other attributes.
- EW. Specifies electronic warfare systems, EW defense, and dependence.
- Personnel and Equipment. Lists personnel and equipment. This information is not used by the back-end in simulations. It is reported as part of the simulation object's state information.

- Supplies. Specifies the supplies a simulation object needs to move, support personnel, and carry out combat engineering operations.
- Engineering. Lets you specify engineering systems. (Does not apply to air units.)
- Additional Systems. Similar to simulation objects in an entity-level scenario, this tab lets you add other systems such as spot report systems.

The individual parameters in each group are described in "65.8. Object Parameters for Aggregate-Level Modeling" on page 1352.

To configure a simulation object, you specify values for as many of the parameters as are appropriate for the object type. However, you cannot configure ammunition, weapons, and equipment (aircraft, ships, and vehicles), without first defining them.

### 65.2.1 Aggregating Units into Higher Echelon Units

You can aggregate simulation objects into higher echelon units. And just as with simulation objects in entity-level scenarios, you specify that a simulation object can be listed in the Aggregate As list by selecting the Allow as Aggregate As Option check box. However, the aggregate-level simulation objects that are configured to use the aggregate warfare model do not have the configuration options for specifying subordinates. Therefore, *AggregateLevel.sms* has a platform, Aggregate Container, for use when aggregating simulation objects. The SMS has several simulation objects configured with that platform for use when aggregating simulation objects. If you want to create additional hierarchical units for aggregation, it is recommended that you use the Aggregate Container platform.

## 65.3. Configuring Ammunition, Weapons, and Equipment

To engage in combat, simulation objects need appropriate amounts of ammunition, weapons, and equipment. When you create a simulation object in the Simulation Object Editor, you specify the amounts that it should have by selecting them from lists of the available types of these resources. The items in these lists are also configured in the Simulation Object Editor. You can configure the ammunition, weapons, and equipment for simulation objects directly for each entity, or you can simplify the process by creating assemblies.

For example, a U.S. armored cavalry troop (AR CAV TRP US) has 9 M1A2s, 13 M3A3s, and 2 M1064 vehicles. An M1A2 has a 120mm gun, a 12.7mm machine gun, and 2 7.62 mm machine guns. An M3A3 has 2 TOW missiles, a 25mm gun, and a 7.62mm machine gun. An M1064 has a 120mm mortar and 12.7mm machine gun. Therefore, the entity as a whole has 26 TOW missiles, 13 25mm guns, 9 120mm guns, 11 12.7mm machine guns, 31 7.62mm machine guns, and 2 120mm mortars (Figure 569).

**Figure 569. Anatomy of a unit without using assemblies**

To configure this unit directly, you would go to the Personnel and Equipment tab in the Simulation Object Editor and select all these weapons in the Weapons list and enter the amounts for each. You would also have to add up all the ammunition required by these weapons and enter them on the Attack tab.

This configuration method works well for simple units and individual entities. If you had to calculate weapons and ammunition at this level of granularity for all units, however, it could become a tedious and error-prone activity. There is an alternative to directly configuring all ammunition, weapons, and equipment individually: you can create assemblies. Assemblies are resources such as complete weapons, vehicles, or even small units, such as platoons. They are a convenient way to package ammunition, weapons, and equipment to more easily add them to units.

Each assembly configures the ammunition and weapons it needs for one instance of the resource, such as an M1A2. When you create a unit, you just give it the assemblies it needs. Their capabilities are “rolled up” to define the total amount of resources for the entity.

Figure 570 illustrates the anatomy of an AR CAV TRP US entity that uses assemblies to represent M1A2, M3A3, and M1064 vehicles. Each assembly specifies its weapons and ammunition. When you configure the AR CAV TRP US, you just specify that it has 9 M1A2, 13 M3A3, and 2 M1064 assemblies. You roll up the assemblies and the Simulation Object Editor calculates the number of each type of weapon needed (Figure 571).

**Figure 570. Anatomy of a unit using assemblies**

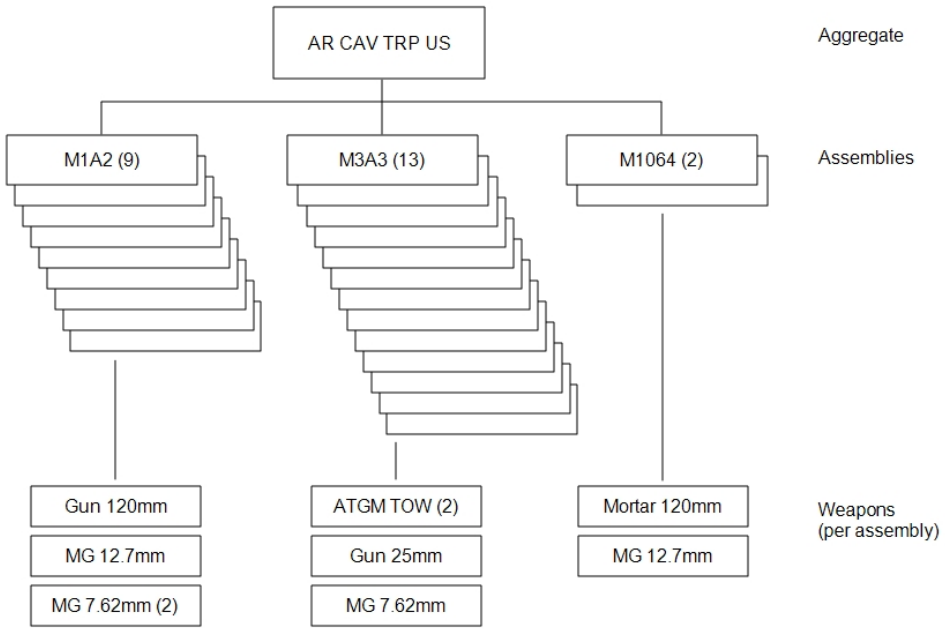
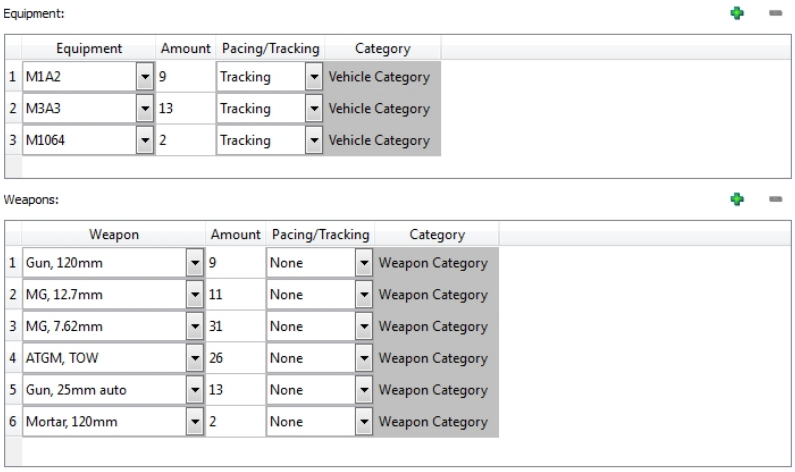



**Figure 571. AR CAV TRP US weapons rolled up on Personnel and Equipment tab**




Using assemblies, the process for configuring units is to:

1. Define the weapons, equipment, and ammunition that units can use.
2. Define assemblies.
3. Create a unit.
4. Specify the unit's assemblies.
5. Roll up the assemblies.
6. Configure all other parameters.

For more information about assemblies, please see "65.4. Assemblies" on page 1346.

### 65.3.1 Defining Ammunition, Weapons, and Equipment Items

Each ammunition, weapon, and equipment item that you want to be available for use by simulation objects is defined as a key/value pair. The key can be any text string you want to use. There is no relationship to any underlying VR-Forces code. The value is a Display Name – the string used in lists when creating assemblies or adding resources directly to a simulation object.

For each ammunition key/value pair you also must specify a type, where the types are:

- Anti-air
- Anti-personnel
- Anti-ship
- Anti-tank
- Biological
- Chemical
- High explosive
- Nuclear
- For weapon system

Use the anti-air, anti-personnel, anti-tank, and anti-ship categories for ammunition that will be used by assemblies or added directly to a simulation object. Use For Weapon System for any type of ammunition that will be used by a weapon system that must be added to a simulation object, such as a missile system, a guided bomb, or indirect fire system.

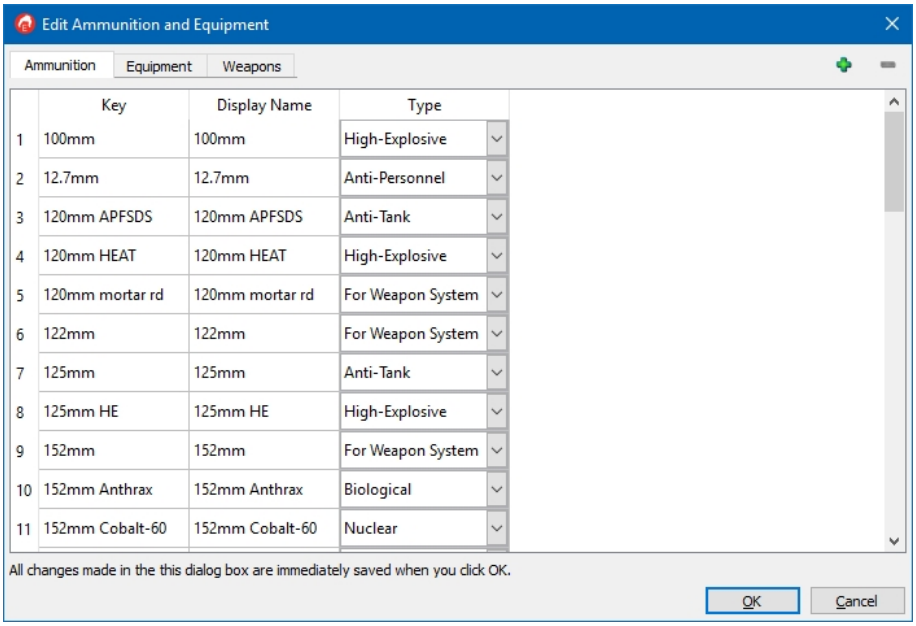
For each weapon and equipment key/value pair, you also must specify a category, where the categories are aircraft, ships, vehicles, and weapons.

The ammunition, weapons, and equipment defined in *AggregateLevel.sms* are representative of the weapons and equipment in common use by the United States and Russia. However, you can add any sort of resource you want. For example, you could create entries for knives, slingshots, and shovels. These could be added to assemblies or directly to a simulation object. The only real requirement for making them useful in a scenario is to assign an appropriate level of combat strength when you add them to a simulation object.

➤ **To define an ammunition, equipment, or weapon item:**

1. Choose **Edit>Ammunition and Equipment**. The Edit Ammunition and Equipment dialog box opens (Figure 572).

**Figure 572. Edit Ammunition and Equipment dialog box**




2. Select the tab for the type of resource you want to add.
3. Click the Add button ( ). A row is added to the list. The Key cell is editable.
4. Type the key value.
5. Click Tab or double-click the Display Name cell to make it editable.
6. Type the text you want to be visible in the lists where this item will be included.
7. For ammunition items, select an option in the Type list.

   For equipment items, select the appropriate category.

   For weapon items, select Weapon Category.
8. Click OK.

## 65.4. Assemblies

Assemblies are a convenient way to provide a simulation object with a set of resources without having to individually configure each resource.

A unit does not model individual entities. It represents some number of vehicles and personnel. For example, a mechanized infantry company has personnel, armored personnel carriers, and so on, which carry a variety of weapons and ammunition. Rather than explicitly configuring a unit to have, for example, 20 APCs, 20,000 rounds of ammunition, 10 howitzers, and 200 infantry, you can configure the ammunition and weapons for one APC as an assembly. Then you would assign a unit 20 APC assemblies. You would not have to tally all the resources associated with an APC.

This becomes even more beneficial if more than one unit uses an assembly. For example, the Scout Hvy PLT US unit uses M3A3 assemblies. The Tank CO US uses M1A2 assemblies. The AR CAV TRP US uses M1A2s, M3A3s, and M1064 assemblies. While it might be a manageable process to configure M1A2s just for one unit and M3A3s just for one unit, to use them in multiple units and have to calculate the sum of all of their weapons and ammunition each time would become tedious and error-prone. Using assemblies makes it easy to assign multiple units of each type to a unit.

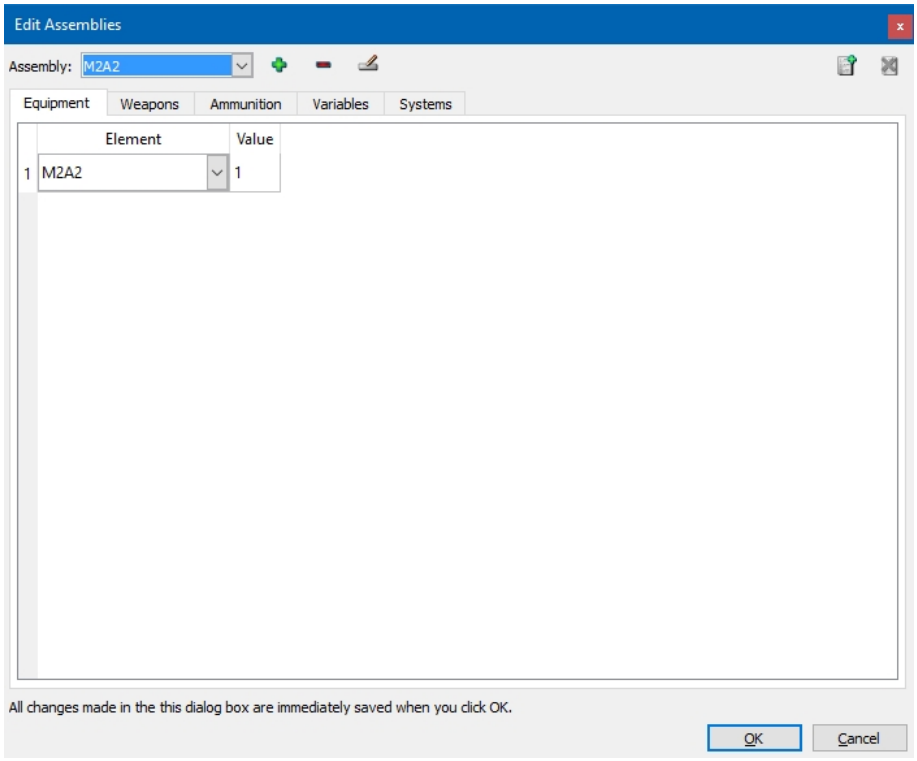
## 65.4.1 Creating Assemblies

When you create an assembly, you specify the equipment, weapons, ammunition, variables, and systems that get configured for a simulation object when you add the assembly to it.

➤ **To create an assembly:**

1. Choose **Edit > Assemblies**. The Edit Assemblies dialog box opens (Figure 573).

**Figure 573. Edit Assemblies dialog box**




2. Click the Add button ( ). The New Assembly dialog box opens.
3. Type a name for the assembly.
4. Optionally, select an assembly to base the new one on.
5. Click OK. The new assembly is added to the Assembly list.
6. Edit the assembly.

## 65.4.2 Editing Assemblies

An assembly specifies equipment, weapons, ammunition, variables, and systems. Variables represent entity resources that do not fit into weapons, ammunition and equipment. These include tangible resources, such as fuel, water, and personnel, and intangible variables, such as health and combat power. If you do not specify particular variables for an assembly, you can specify them directly for a simulation object.

When you create an assembly, you can edit the properties of its systems. You can also edit system properties when you edit a simulation object. Many system properties do not change when you roll up a unit, but some do. For example, indirect fire weapons have a maximum sheaf parameter. The default maximum sheaf value for the 155mm howitzer is 80 meters. If an artillery unit has six howitzers and you roll it up, the maximum sheaf value for the howitzers in that entity becomes 480.

---

! If you specify variables for an assembly, when you roll up assemblies, the variables in the assembly overwrite the values that have been set directly. Therefore, it is recommended that you use them consistently in all your assemblies and that you not edit these values directly in a unit if you know that you will use assemblies that might overwrite them.

---

➤ **To edit an assembly:**

1. Choose **Edit > Assemblies**. The Edit Assemblies dialog box opens (Figure 573 on the previous page).
2. In the Assembly list, select the assembly that you want to edit.
3. For the Equipment, Weapons, Ammunition, and Variables tabs, do the following:
   a. Click the Add Attribute button ( ). A new row is added to the list of resources on the tab. In the Element column, it lists the first resource in the list of available resources.
   b. In the Element list, select the resource you want to add to this assembly.
   c. Double-click the Value cell to make it editable.
   d. Type the amount of this resource that you want to be in this assembly.
4. For the Systems tab, add a system as described in step 3. There is no Value column to complete, but you can edit the system's properties. To edit properties:
   a. Click the Edit Properties button ( ). A Properties dialog box opens.
   b. Set the property values as desired.
5. Click OK.

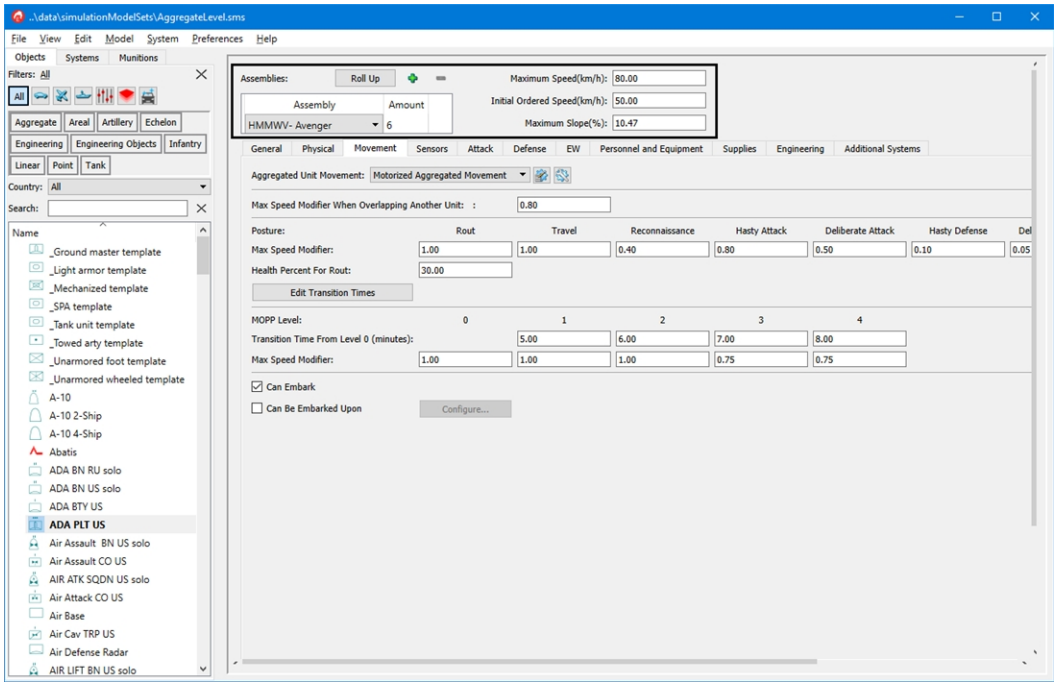
## 65.4.3 Adding Assemblies to a Unit

You can configure individual vehicles and weapons for a unit, or you can add assemblies, which add all the relevant parameters and combine them for the number of instances of each assembly that you add.

➤ **To add an assembly to a unit:**

1. Select the entity in the object list.
2. Click the Add button ( ) above the Assemblies list (Figure 574). A new row is added to the list.

**Figure 574. Assemblies table**




3. In the Assembly column, select an assembly from the list.
4. Double-click the Amount value to make it editable.
5. Enter how many of this assembly that you want to add.

## 65.4.4 Removing Assemblies

➤ **To remove an assembly:**

1. In the Assemblies list, select the index number or any cell in the assembly you want to remove.
2. Click the Delete button ( ).

# 65.5. Creating Roll Up Rules

VR-Forces rolls up assemblies based on a set of rules. Roll up rules are not specific to simulation objects; they are global for an SMS. A roll up rule specifies the assemblies to roll up and the formula to use to roll them up, as follows:

- Sum. Add up the values for all the assemblies.
- Average. Use the average value for identical variables in the assemblies.
- Maximum. Use the highest value specified for identical variables in the assemblies.
- Minimum. Use the lowest value specified for identical variables in the assemblies.

---

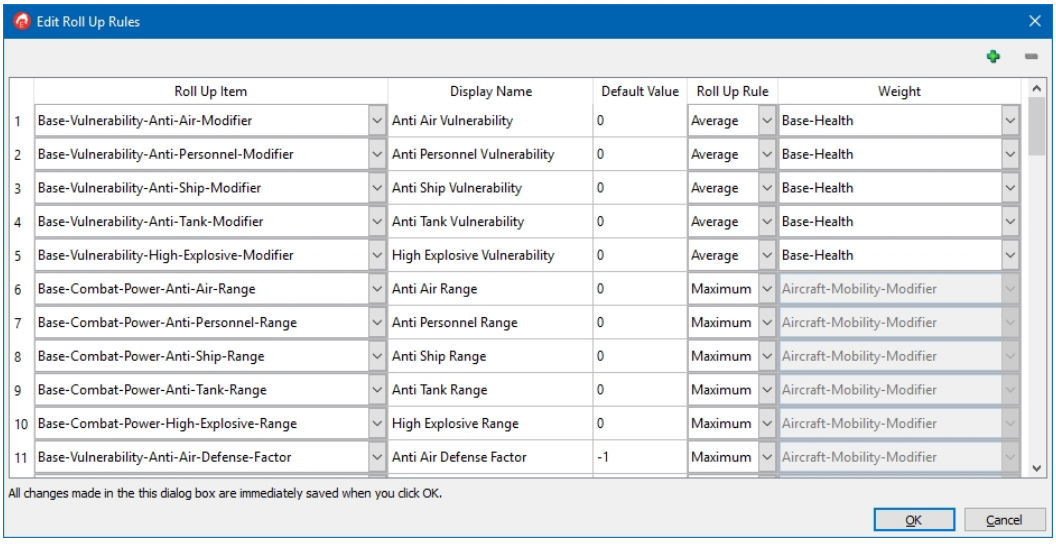
Ammunition, weapons, equipment, and systems are all rolled up by summation. There are no user-editable roll up rules for these resources.

---

➤ **To create roll up rules:**

1. Choose **Edit > Roll Up Rules**. The Edit Roll Up Rules dialog box opens (Figure 575).

**Figure 575. Edit Roll Up Rules dialog box**




2. Click the Add button ( ). A new row is added to the list.
3. Select the type of roll up item from the list.
4. Specify a Display Name.
5. Specify a default value.
6. Select an option in the Roll Up Rule list.

7. If you are adding an Average roll up type rule, select an option in the Weight list. This creates a weighted average based on the item you want to give greater weight, such as health or vulnerability.
8. Add additional items as desired.
9. Click OK.

## 65.6. Rolling Up Assemblies

Once you assign a set of assemblies to a unit, you roll them up so that the full set of resources is applied to the unit. Assemblies are rolled up according to roll up rules.

---

! When you roll up assemblies, the resources and modifiers in the assemblies overwrite the current values for the unit. If you have edited any of these resources or modifiers manually, your changes are lost. Any parameters that are not part of an assembly or roll up rules do not change.

---

➤ **To roll up assemblies for a unit:**

1. Select the unit.
2. Choose **Edit > Roll Up All**, or in the Assemblies area of the Simulation Object Editor window, click Roll Up. You are prompted to confirm the command.
3. Click Yes.

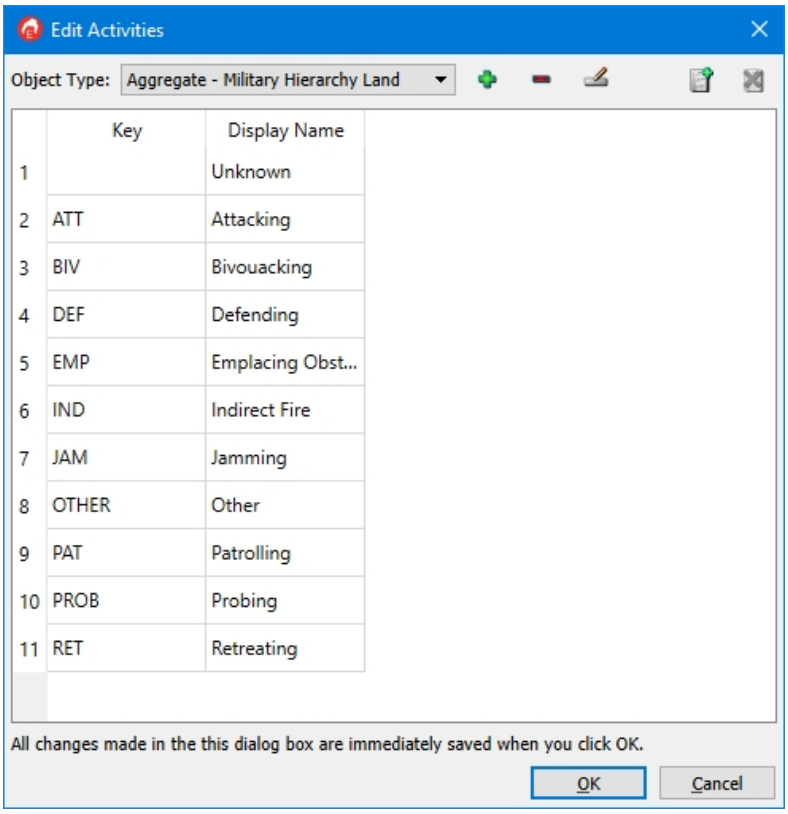
## 65.7. Adding Activities

You can assign simulation objects an activity. The Simulation Object Editor lets you add activities. When you add an activity, it is included in the list of activities for the Activity set data request. However, unless you add code or a Lua script that takes advantage of the new activity setting, assigning an activity to a simulation object will have no effect.

➤ **To add an activity to the Activities list:**

1. Choose **Edit > Activities.** The Edit Activities dialog box opens (Figure 576).

**Figure 576. Edit Activities dialog box**




2. Select an object type in the Object Type list, or click the Add button ( ) to add a new type.
3. Click the Add Attribute button ( ). A new entry is added to the list of activities. The Key cell is active for editing.
4. Type a key value for the activity. This is the value that the code or Lua script uses to identify the activity.
5. Press **Tab** or double-click in the Display Name cell to make it editable.
6. Type the text to display in the Activities dialog box.
7. Click OK.

## 65.8. Object Parameters for Aggregate-Level Modeling

The aggregate warfare model is data driven. It relies on the comparative strengths of opponents given their resources and movement posture. The data used is from an extensive set of parameters that are configured for each simulation object in the Simulation Object Editor.

Most parameters are in one of the following categories:

- Real-world absolute values, such as liters of diesel fuel, number of personnel, and amount of equipment and ammunition.
- Modifiers. Modifiers change the base values for the various indicated conditions, such as posture, MOPP level, or footprint. All modifiers are multipliers. For example, speed modifiers are applied to the maximum speed. If the maximum speed for a simulation object is 20 KM/hr and the modifier for overlapping another unit's footprint is .9, the entity will not be able to go faster than 18 KM/hr while it overlaps another unit.
- Systems. Movement system, sensor systems, other systems.
- Abstract values. Strength and health are abstract values. They represent the relative ability of simulation objects to damage other simulation objects and absorb damage.

For the simulation objects in *AggregateLevel.sms* provided with VR-Forces, real-world values are based on publicly available information about the types of simulation objects. The various modifiers applied to simulation object behavior are derived from customer requirements for the aggregate warfare model. Modifier values have been set from experimentation to provide what we believe to be realistic results. Values for health and strength have also been developed on a relative scale to obtain reasonable results.

If you add new simulation objects to *AggregateLevel.sms*, it is important that you try to set health and strength to values that fit with the existing simulation objects. If you create an entirely new SMS for aggregate-level scenarios, you are responsible for developing your own consistent way to represent the relative strengths of the simulation objects.

Parameters are organized in a set of tabbed pages. The following sections describe the parameters on each tab. The Additional Systems tab does not include aggregate warfare parameters. It lets you specify systems that did not logically belong on the other tabs.

## 65.8.1 General Parameters

Use the General tab to specify identifying information for a unit, such as its name, enumeration, tags, and model.

## 65.8.2 Physical Parameters

Physical parameters describe a simulation object's footprint and how it faces the external world for each posture, which is a simulation object's overall mode of interaction with its environment. Air units and ground units have different parameters.

**Table 51. Physical parameters for ground units**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Health | A quantification of the overall health of the entity. |
| Physical Footprint | The area notionally occupied by the simulation object. The footprint can vary for different postures based on the Footprint Modifier. |
| Height | Height of the physical footprint. |
| Footprint Modifier | The amount by which the footprint changes for the indicated posture. |
| Front Sector Size | The number of degrees, centered on the heading, within which forward-facing sensors and interactions take place. |
| Rear Sector Size | The number of degrees, centered on the heading -180°, within which rear-facing sensors and interactions take place. |
| Flank Sector Size | The number of degrees, centered on the heading +/- 90°, within which side-facing sensors and interactions take place. |

**Table 52. Physical parameters for air units**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Aggregated Unit Movement | The movement system used by the unit. |
| Can Embark | Specifies whether or not the unit can embark on another unit. |
| Can Be Embarked Upon | Specifies whether or not other units can embark on this unit. |
| Health | The health value for this unit. |
| Physical Footprint | The area notionally occupied by the simulation object. |
| Mass | The weight of the unit. |
| Runway Length Required for Takeoff | The runway length this unit needs to take off. |
| Runway Length Required for Landing | The runway length this unit needs to land. |
| Runway Length Required for Landing with Drag Chute | The runway length required if this unit is landing with a drag chute deployed. |
| Has Drag Chute by Default | Whether or not this unit type should be equipped with a drag chute when it is created. |

## 65.8.3 Movement Parameters

A unit has a movement system. You can specify the movement system on this tab and edit its parameters. You can also specify posture transition times.

Aircraft units do not have a Movement tab.

Movement can be affected by:

- Environmental factors. These properties are specified per movement system.
- Posture. A simulation object's posture can affect its speed.
- MOPP level transition time. The amount of time it takes for a unit to change from MOPP level 0 to one of the other MOPP levels.

The Movement tab also has settings for embarkation. These settings are the same as for simulation objects in an entity-level scenario. For details, please see "Appendix 66. Configuring Embarkation" on page 1365.

Table 53 describes the movement parameters.

**Table 53. Movement parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Max Speed Modifier When Overlapping Another Unit | The amount to modify a simulation object's maximum speed when its footprint overlaps another simulation object's footprint. |
| Max Speed Modifier (Posture) | The amount to modify the maximum speed based on the posture. |
| Health Percent For Rout | The amount to modify health when in the rout posture. |
| Transition Time from Level 0 | The amount of time it takes to transition from MOPP Level 0 to a higher MOPP level. |
| Max Speed Modifier (MOPP Level) | The amount to modify the maximum speed based on the MOPP Level. |

### Editing Movement System Properties

Table 54 describes movement system properties. Systems do not all have the same properties.

**Table 54. Movement system properties**

| Property | Description |
|---|---|
| Rain Modifier by Intensity | The amount speed is affected by the intensity of rain. The lower the modifier value, the more slowly the simulation object moves as rain intensity increases. |
| Snow Modifier by Intensity | The amount speed is affected by the intensity of snow. The lower the modifier value, the more slowly the simulation object moves as snow intensity increases. |

**Table 54. Movement system properties (continued)**

| Property | Description |
|---|---|
| Visibility Degrades Max Speed When Below | If visibility drops below this value, maximum speed is reduced. |
| Maximum Amount Visibility Can Degrade Speed | The maximum amount that speed decreases as visibility decreases. Higher values decrease speed more. |
| Wind Degrades Max Speed When Above | If wind speed exceeds this value, the maximum speed of the entity is reduced. (Aircraft only.) |
| Wind Degrades Until | Degrade speed due to wind until the wind speed reaches this value. Then degrade speed at the maximum rate. (Aircraft only.) |
| Maximum Amount Wind Can Degrade Speed | The maximum amount that wind can degrade speed. (Aircraft only.) |
| Retrograde Movement Penalty | Speed is reduced by this amount when moving in retrograde. (Ground movement only.) |

➤ **To edit movement system properties:**

1. Click the Edit Properties button ( ). The Edit Properties dialog box opens.
2. Edit the values for the various properties.
3. Click OK.

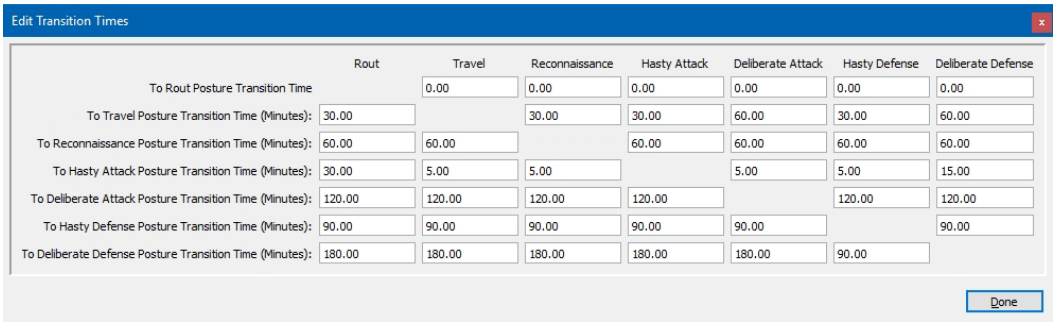
### Editing Posture Transition Times

VR-Forces models the amount of time it takes for a unit to transition from one posture to another. You can specify the transition times for each movement system.

➤ **To edit posture transition times:**

1. Select the Movement tab.
2. Click Edit Transition Times. The Edit Transition Times dialog box opens (Figure 577).

**Figure 577. Edit Transition Times dialog box**




3. Change the times, in minutes, as desired. Changes take effect immediately.
4. Click Done.

## 65.8.4 Sensor Parameters

Use the Sensors tab to specify the sensors that a simulation object has. You can add and remove sensor systems and set their properties using the standard Simulation Object Editor procedures. (For details, please see "63.4. Editing a Simulation Object's Systems" on page 1310.)

You can specify the simulation object's sensor signatures by choosing from a preconfigured set of signatures or by defining a custom set. The Sensor Signatures parameters specify the distance at which other simulation objects can sense the simulation object you are editing using the different types of sensors. The preconfigured signatures make it easy to consistently apply the same set of signatures to similar object types.

As with movement, a unit's posture and MOPP level affect its ability to use its sensors. You can specify signature modifiers for each posture and MOPP Level. (Posture and MOPP level modifiers do not apply to air units.)

## 65.8.5 Attack Parameters

Simulation objects have combat power in five domains: Anti-Air, Anti-Tank, High Explosive, Anti-Personnel, and Anti-Ship. The Attack tab specifies the parameters that determine a unit's ability to attack an opponent in these domains. It allows you to add weapon systems to the simulation object.

---

Aircraft units do not have an Attack tab.

---

**Table 55. Attack parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Range | The distance at which a simulation object can attack in each domain. |
| Hit Factor | When compared to the defense factor for a target simulation object, determines the probability of the attack hitting the target. |
| Strength | The simulation object's strength in each type of combat. This is an abstract value. |
| Ammunition Usage | The number of rounds per minute used for each type of combat. This value is apportioned among ammunition of the same type. For example, if the ammunition usage for Anti-Personnel combat is 1000 rounds per minute and a simulation object has 12.7mm ammunition and 7.62mm ammunition, both of which are type Anti-Personnel, then the simulation object uses 500 rounds per minute of each type of ammunition. |
| Ammunition Auto-Resupply Rate | The amount of ammunition that is automatically resupplied each day if auto-resupply is enabled for this simulation object. |
| Ammunition | The types of ammunition this simulation object has, the amount of each type, and whether or not pacing or tracking is enabled. |
| Distribution | The proportion of casualty types from an attack. |
| Sector Combat Power Modifiers | The amount the base combat power is modified depending on which sector is being attacked. |
| Posture Combat Power Modifiers | The effect on combat power of each posture. |
| Combat Range Modifiers | The effect on the range at which a simulation object can attack based on its posture. |
| CID Level Combat Power Modifiers | The effect on combat power of the enemy detection and classification level. |
| MOPP Level Combat Power Modifiers | The effect on combat power of the MOPP Level. |
| If Morale is Less Than | A percentage of morale below which combat power is affected. |
| Adjust Combat Power By | The combat power modifier to apply if morale is less than the specified amount. |
| Environmental Conditions Combat Power Modifier | The combat power modifier to apply if precipitation intensity is at its maximum or if there is no illumination. |

**Table 55. Attack parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Weapon System Auto-Resupply Rate | The number of rounds per day supplied to each weapon system if auto-resupply is enabled. |
| Weapon System Attack Interval | The amount of time between each weapon system attack by this unit. |

## 65.8.6 Defense Parameters

Use the Defense tab to specify modifiers to a simulation object's vulnerability. Vulnerability is specified within each weapon domain.

Aircraft units do not have a Defense tab.

**Table 56. Defense parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Vulnerability | The amount that a simulation object is vulnerable to the different types of attack. |
| Defense Factor for Guided Munitions | The ability to defend against guided munitions. |
| NBC Vulnerability | Vulnerability to nuclear, biological, or chemical contamination. |
| Posture Vulnerability Modifier | The effect of different postures on the simulation object's ability to defend itself. |
| Sector Vulnerability Modifier | The ability of the simulation object to defend itself to the front, rear, and flanks. |
| MOPP Level Vulnerability Modifier | The ability of the simulation object to defend against NBC contamination at different MOPP Levels. |
| Health Percent for Firepower Kill | The level of health below which this unit will not be able to fire. |
| Health Percent for Mobility Kill | The level of health below which this unit will not be able to move. |
| Health Percent for Sensor Kill | The level of health below which this unit will not be able to sensor other objects. |

## 65.8.7 Combat Parameters

Air units have a Combat tab. This tab lets you configure weapon systems, combat systems, loadout, and health parameters.

**Table 57. Combat parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Weapon Systems | Add, remove, and edit properties for the weapon systems this unit has. |
| Combat Systems | Add, remove, and edit properties for other combat-related systems. |
| Loadout | The type of loadout this unit uses. You can specify a default by clicking the star, and then lists showing the loadouts indicate the default with a star. (Loadouts are specific to each unit. There is no library of preconfigured loadouts available to select from.) |
| Loadout Items | The specific munitions in the loadout. |
| Distribution | The percent chance that a casualty caused by this unit will be of a specific casualty type. |
| Defense Factor for Guided Munitions | The defense factor to apply when this unit is struck by a guided munition. |
| Weapon System Attack Interval | The amount of time between each weapon system attack by this unit. |
| Health Percent for Firepower Kill | The level of health below which this unit will not be able to fire. |
| Health Percent for Mobility Kill | The level of health below which this unit will not be able to move. |
| Health Percent for Sensor Kill | The level of health below which this unit will not be able to sensor other objects. |

## 65.8.8 Electronic Warfare (EW) Parameters

The EW tab lets you specify a simulation object's ability to defend against electronic warfare and how much it depends on communications. You can add EW systems.

## 65.8.9 Personnel and Equipment Parameters

Use the Personnel and Equipment tab to specify the order of battle for the simulation object. These values are not used by the back-end in the simulation. They are for reporting purposes. The configured personnel and equipment amounts are multiplied by the simulation object's health to arrive at the current amount.

**Table 58. Personnel and Equipment parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Personnel Officers | Number of officers. |
| Personnel WOs | Number of warrant officers. |
| Personnel NCOs | Number of non-commissioned officers. |
| Personnel Enlisted | Number of enlisted persons. |
| Equipment | List of equipment types, the number of each, and whether it is flagged for pacing, tracking, or none. |
| Weapons | List of weapon types, the number of each, and whether it is flagged for pacing, tracking, or none. (Ground units only.) |

## 65.8.10 Supplies Parameters

For ground units, the Supplies tab allows you to specify the amount, use per day, use per kilometer, pacing/tracking, and auto-resupply rate for the following supplies:

- Food.
- Water.
- Oil.
- Lubricant.
- Motor gas.
- Aviation fuel.
- Diesel fuel.
- Other Supplies. You can add any other type of supply that you want. The list of items in the Supply drop-down list is drawn from *./data/simulationModelSets/AggregateLevel/gui/rwKeywordValuePairs.xml*. (For information about this file, please see "65.10. Editing Reader/Writer Key/Value Pairs" on page 1363.) You can type in any other supply type that you want to.

  The supplies added here are only used by engineering objects. To use a supply, you configure it here and in the engineering object. For example, a combat engineering company has other supplies called Construction-Material and Explosives.

This tab also lets you specify the conditions under which a simulation object can receive supplies.

For air units, you can specify the amount of aviation fuel, the aerial refueling system, and other supplies.

## 65.9. Configuring Combat Engineering Objects

Combat engineering objects (CEOs) can affect mobility of simulation objects and can cause attrition. Therefore, their simulation models include the information needed for these effects. Since CEOs can be constructed by units, their models include parameters that specify the types of materials needed to create them and sizing information.

The actual process of configuring CEOs is similar to that of other objects. Table 59 describes the parameters specific to CEOs. Some parameters do not apply to all CEOs.

**Table 59. Combat engineering object parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Short Name | The name displayed on the map and sent as marking text over the network. |
| Height | The height of the object. |
| Length | Maximum length of single constructed objects. If a longer object is specified, it is created as several objects. |
| Width | The width of a line object. |
| Minimum Completion Percentage for Effect | The minimum completion percentage before the object affects simulation objects. |
| Minimum Completion Percentage to Detect | The minimum completion percentage before simulation objects can detect the object. |
| Attrition | The rate of attrition to an affected simulation object in each domain. |
| Mobility Modifiers | The amount that mobility of an affected simulation object is modified in each type of movement. |
| Vulnerability Modifiers | The amount that an affected simulation object's vulnerability is modified in each domain. |
| Signature Modifiers | For object types that can be affected by this object, the amount that each type of sensor signature is affected. |
| Resource Required | The type of resource needed to construct this object. |
| Resource Amount | The amount of the required resource needed to build this object. |

**Table 59. Combat engineering object parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| Is Concealed | If selected, the object is detected based on a random probability in the detecting sensor. If cleared, the object is always detected by the appropriate sensor. |
| Maximum Relative Size | For areal objects, the maximum size of a simulation object, relative to the object, for it to be affected by the object. For example, if the maximum relative size for a fortified area is .75, a simulation object must be 75% of the size of the area or smaller for it to be protected. |

## 65.10. Editing Reader/Writer Key/Value Pairs

Some display text is not automatically included in the *untranslated.ts* file provided with VR-Forces. The Simulation Object Editor lets you map some internal keywords to display text so that you can translate it. These internal keywords are called reader/writer keys and they are managed using key/value pairs. These mappings are stored in *./data/simulationModelSets/AggregateLevel/gui/rwKeywordValuePairs.xml*. If you edit this file, do not change the **paramName**; change the string mapped to it.

Besides allowing for translation, you can add new entries to this file. Table 60 describes the effect of adding new keyword:value pairs.

**Table 60. Effect of editing rwKeywordValuePairs.xml parameters**

| Parameter | Result |
|---|---|
| Type | Added to the Type list for the Edit Ammunition and Equipment dialog box, Ammunition tab, in the Simulation Object Editor. |
| Category | Added to the Category list for the Edit Ammunition and Equipment dialog box, Weapon tab and Equipment tab, in the Simulation Object Editor. |
| Posture | Added to the list of Postures in the Posture set data request. However, selecting such a posture would not have any effect unless complementary code is written to update the simulation engine. |
| Resource-Item | Added to the Supply list for configuring Other Supplies on the Supplies tab for simulation objects in the Simulation Object Editor. |

# 66. Configuring Embarkation

This chapter explains how to configure entities for embarkation. It includes a tutorial for configuring embarkation slots.


66.1. Enabling Embarkation ..... 1366
66.2. Configuring Slots ..... 1368
66.2.1 Adding Slots ..... 1368
66.2.2 Configuring Slot Parameters ..... 1370
66.2.3 Configuring Slot Exclusions ..... 1372
66.2.4 Specifying Ingress and Egress Techniques ..... 1373
66.3. Adding Ingress and Egress Points ..... 1374
66.4. Embarkation Slot Tutorial ..... 1376
66.4.1 Configure the SuperTanker for Embarkation ..... 1377
66.4.2 Configure Slots for the Supertanker ..... 1379
66.4.3 Add Ingress Points ..... 1382
66.4.4 Add Egress Points ..... 1383
66.4.5 Save the New Configuration ..... 1384
66.4.6 Test the Embarkation Configuration ..... 1384

# 66.1. Enabling Embarkation

If an entity allows other entities to embark on it, you can configure:

- Allowed entity types. The types of entities that can embark.
- Slots. The location on an entity where embarked entities move to. The number of slots on an entity controls how many entities can embark on it using the Embark task. For entities that are visible when they are embarked, such as humans on a truck or aircraft on an aircraft carrier, it is important to specify sensible looking slots.

  Slots can have a type and a name. Use of slot types and names allows you to tell a simulation object to embark in a specific slot.
- Ingress points. The locations on an entity where entities embark before moving to a slot.
- Egress points. The locations on an entity from which entities disembark.

---

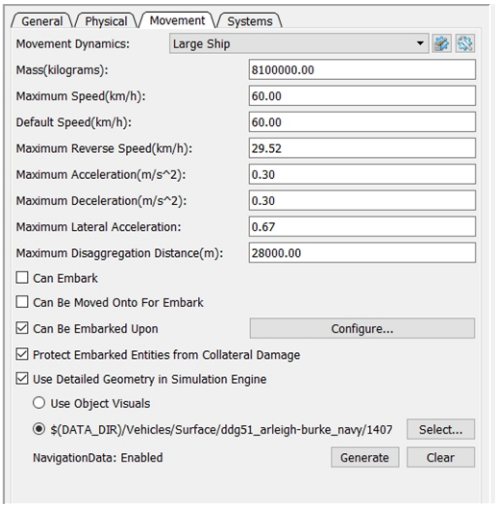
Units can support embarkation, but the usual use of embarkation is for entities to embark on other entities. In entity-level scenarios, if a unit embarks, the individual members of the unit carry out the embarkation task.

---

➤ **To enable embarkation for an entity:**

1. In the Simulation Object Editor object list, select the entity that you want to configure embarkation for.
2. Select the Movement tab (Figure 578).

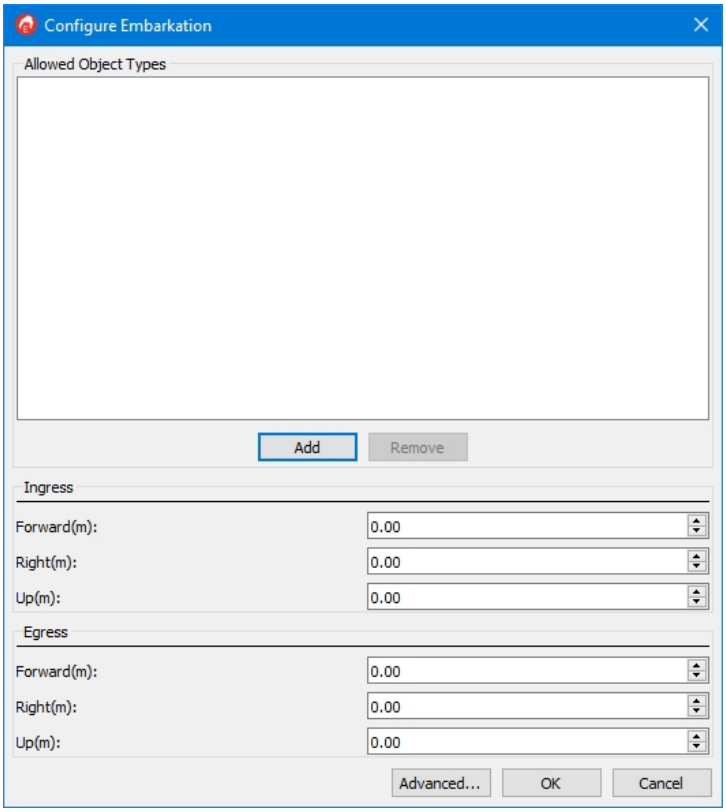
**Figure 578. Movement tab**




3. If Can Be Embarked Upon is not selected, select it.

4. Optionally, select Can Be Moved Onto For Embark. This option lets ground-clamped entities identify entities that they can embark on. They can then walk or drive onto the entity and automatically become embarked.
5. Optionally, select Protect Embarked Entities from Collateral Damage. If selected, embarked entities do not get damaged if the parent entity sustains collateral damage.
6. Click Configure. The Configure Embarkation dialog box opens (Figure 579).

**Figure 579. Configure Embarkation dialog box**




7. Click Add. The Add Type dialog box opens.
8. Select a type of entity that can embark.
9. Optionally, add additional entity types.
10. For each entity type listed, specify ingress and egress points. Values are in meters relative to the center of the parent entity. For more information, please see "66.3. Adding Ingress and Egress Points" on page 1374.
11. Optionally, configure slots. For more information, please see "66.2. Configuring Slots" on the next page.
12. Click OK.

# 66.2. Configuring Slots

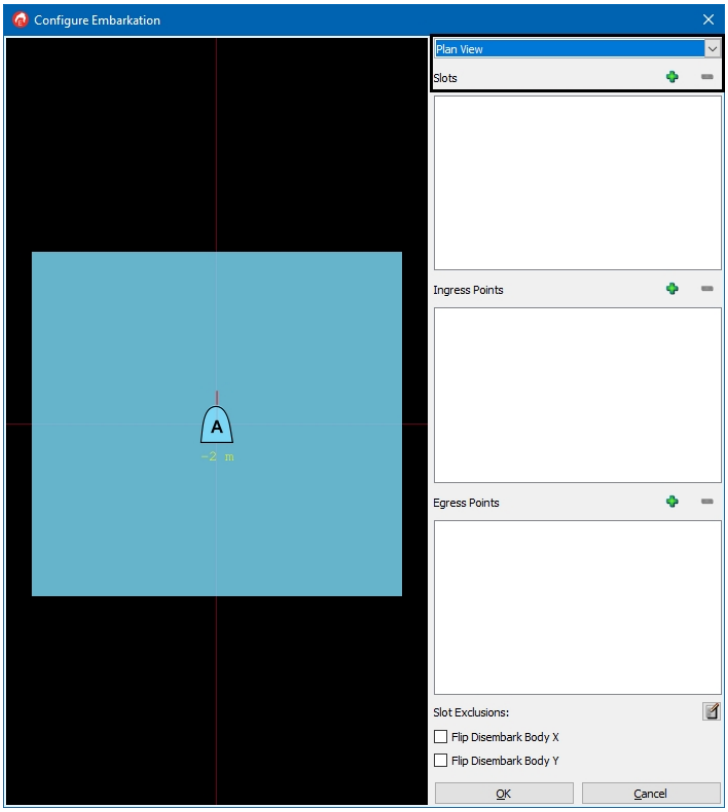
In the simple embarkation configuration process, VR-Forces adds one slot, located at the center of the parent entity. You can edit that slot. You can also add additional slots if you want embarked entities to be in specific locations on the parent.

## 66.2.1 Adding Slots

➤ **To add a slot:**

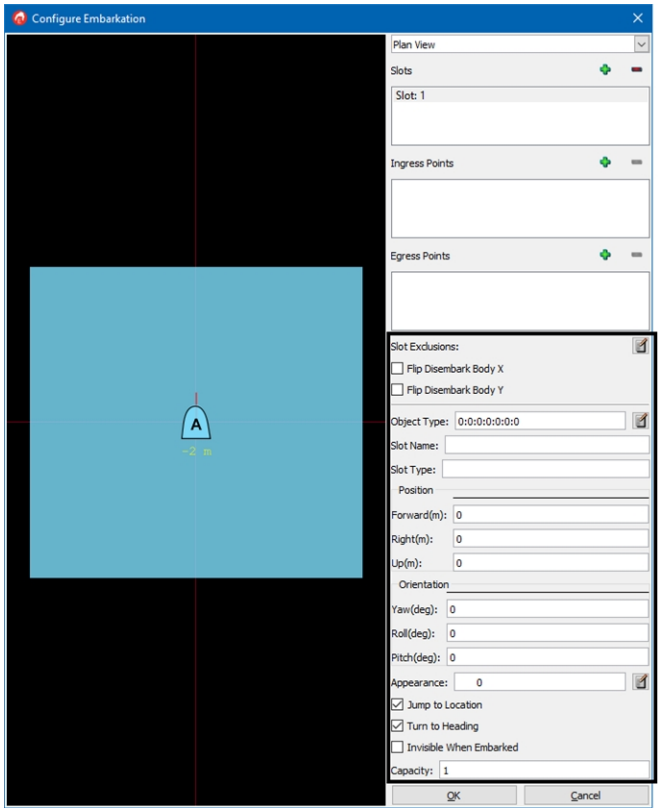
1. In the Simulation Object Editor object list, select the simulation object that you want to configure embarkation for.
2. Select the Movement tab (Figure 578 on page 1366).
3. Select the Can Be Embarked Upon check box.
4. Click Configure. The Configure Embarkation dialog box opens (Figure 579 on the previous page).
5. If you have not already specified the simulation object types that can embark, specify a simulation object type (as described in "66.1. Enabling Embarkation" on page 1366.
6. Click Advanced. The dialog box redisplays. It shows a 2D view of the bounding volume of the simulation object for which you are configuring embarkation (Figure 580).

**Figure 580. Configure Embarkation Advanced**




7. Optionally, change the view mode to Stealth to see a 3D model of the entity.
8. Optionally, use the mouse or keyboard to zoom in or out or otherwise change your view of the entity.
9. Click the Add button above the Slots window (Figure 580). A slot is added to the list and the dialog box redisplays to show the slot's parameters (Figure 581).

**Figure 581. Slot parameters**




10. Optionally, configure Slot Exclusions as described in "66.2.3 Configuring Slot Exclusions" on page 1372.
11. Optionally, configure other slot parameters as described in "66.2.2 Configuring Slot Parameters" below.

## 66.2.2 Configuring Slot Parameters

You can specify the following parameters for a slot:

- The object type that can use it. You can configure different object types in different slots on a simulation object.

  For each field in the object type enumeration, you can specify more than one value. For example, the category value for a helicopter can be 20-25 for military helicopters, 50 for unmanned, and 90-92 for civilian. If you just want to allow a specific category for a given slot, specify that category. If you want to specify a range of values, separate them with a hyphen, for example, 21-24. To specify several specific categories, separate them with commas, for example, 21, 25, 50. You can also combine these options. To specify all helicopters, you could set the object type to 1:2:-1:20-25,50,90-92:-1:-1:-1.
- A name.
- A slot type.

- The location on the parent entity relative to the center of the entity's bounding volume.
- The orientation of the slot relative to the center of the entity.
- The appearance of the simulation object type when it is in the slot. For example, a human embarked on a truck might have its posture set to Sitting.
- For slots that accept humans, an animation to use while embarked.
- Whether or not the embarking entity should just jump to the slot, rather than using normal entity movement. For example, an aircraft will taxi to a slot on a carrier deck.
- Whether or not the embarking entity should snap (turn) to the heading of the parent when the entity starts to move to the egress point or starts to move to the embarkation point. (Some movement models do not work well when snapping to a heading. For those models, use the Orient on Ingress option, not Turn to Heading.)
- Whether or not the embarking entity should smoothly turn (orient) to the heading of the parent when it reaches the embarkation point.
- Whether or not the embarking entity should be invisible while it is embarked.
- How many objects the slot can hold.

➤ **To specify slot parameters:**

1. To change the side of a parent simulation object that the embarked simulation objects exit on, select the Flip Disembark Body X check box, the Flip Disembark Body Y check box, or both.
2. If you have added a new slot, in the Object Type field, specify the object enumeration for the type of simulation object that can use this slot. If this is a previously created slot, you can edit the object type. You can configure different object types in different slots on a simulation object.
3. If you want to give the slot a name, type it in the Slot Name text box.
4. If you want to categorize this slot as a specific named type (a text string, not an object type enumeration), type it in the Slot Type text box.
5. In the Position group box, specify the location of the slot relative to the center of the entity's bounding volume.
6. In the Orientation group box, specify the orientation of the slot relative to the center of the entity.
7. Optionally, specify the appearance of the simulation object type when it is in the slot. If you want to specify an animation for a human, specify a posture that supports animations, such as Upright, Standing Still. The default is to ignore the appearance.
8. Optionally, specify an animation that the entity will use when it embarks.

> Animations only apply to humans. The available animations depend on the entity's posture, as specified by the Appearance parameter.

9. Optionally, specify an ingress technique. For details about specifying an ingress technique, please see "66.2.4 Specifying Ingress and Egress Techniques" on the facing page.
10. Optionally specify an egress technique. For details about specifying an egress technique, see "66.2.4 Specifying Ingress and Egress Techniques" on the facing page.
11. Optionally, for lifeforms only, if the Appearance specifies a posture that has animations, click the Edit button and select an animation.
12. If you want the embarked simulation object to immediately jump to the slot from the ingress point, select Jump To Location. If this check box is clear, the simulation object will move to the slot.
13. If you want the embarked simulation object to snap to the same heading as the parent entity, select Turn To Heading.
14. If you want the embarking entity to smoothly orient itself to the heading of the entity when it reaches the ingress point, select Orient on Ingress.
15. If you want the embarked simulation object to be invisible in 3D observer modes, select Invisible When Embarked.
16. In the Capacity text box, specify the number of entities that can use this slot. -1 means an unlimited number.

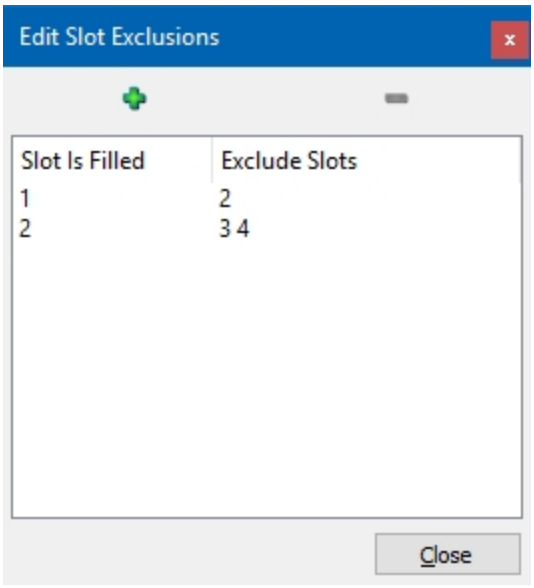
## 66.2.3 Configuring Slot Exclusions

A slot exclusion specifies that if a given slot is occupied, other slots cannot be occupied. For example, an entity might allow both tanks and dismounted infantry entities to embark. If no tanks are embarked, the entity can hold 20 DIs. But if a tank is embarked, it uses up 10 slots and now only 10 DIs can embark.

➤ **To configure slot exclusions:**

1. On the Slot Exclusions line, click Edit. The Edit Slot Exclusions dialog box opens (Figure 582).

**Figure 582. Edit Slot Exclusions dialog box**




2. Click the Add button ( ). A blank line is added to the list.
3. Double-click the cell in the Slot Is Filled column. The cell becomes editable.
4. Type the number of the slot that you want to configure.
5. Double-click the cell in the Exclude Slots column.
6. Type the numbers of the slots that cannot accept entities if the slot you are configuring is filled. You can enter more than one slot to be excluded. Separate the slot numbers with a space.
7. Repeat this procedure to add additional exclusions. You can also edit existing exclusions and delete them.

## 66.2.4 Specifying Ingress and Egress Techniques

When you configure a slot you can specify an ingress and egress technique. An ingress or egress technique associates a string with a script that gets run when the entity embarks. The technique string gets associated with a script ID in the OPE file for the entity type.

To specify a technique in an OPE file, add the **technique-map** block to the embarkation controller. The *Human.ope* file has the following technique map:

```
(embarkation-controller
    ...
    (invisible-at-origin True)
    (technique-map
        (GetInCar "get_in_car")
        (GetOutOfCar "get_out_of_car")
    )
)
```

In this case putting the string GetInCar in the Ingress parameter tells VR-Forces that when the entity embarks, it should run the script that has the script ID get_in_car.

VR-Forces includes two scripts, Get In Car and Get Out Of Car (in the Civilian Vehicle folder) that show how to write a script that implements an ingress or egress technique. As shown in the comments in these scripts, there is a set of standard task variables. Do not define the variables. The script gets their values from the embarkation code.

## 66.3. Adding Ingress and Egress Points

An ingress point specifies where an entity embarks onto another entity. An ingress point can specify a path that the entity follows to get to the ingress point and how it moves once it is on the entity. For example, a jet embarking on an aircraft carrier can taxi to its slot.

---

If you do not specify an ingress point, entities will not move towards the parent before embarking. They will teleport to the slot.

---

An egress point specifies where an entity disembarks from the parent entity.

You can specify that an ingress point should only support some of the slots on the entity. You might want some types of entities embarking at one ingress point and moving to certain slots, while other entities embark at a different location and use other slots. For example, if you are simulating a ferry, cars and trucks would enter at the front or rear and move below deck. Foot passengers would enter at the sides and move to the passenger decks.

When you add an allowed entity type, the Simulation Object Editor automatically creates a slot for that entity type. The ingress and egress points that you configure for that entity type on the basic version of the Configure Embarkation dialog box are automatically associated with the same slot.

In Advanced mode, you can add additional ingress and egress points and associate them with whichever slot you want. You do not have to add them in pairs.

---

This procedure describes configuring an ingress point. To configure an egress point, substitute egress for ingress in each step.

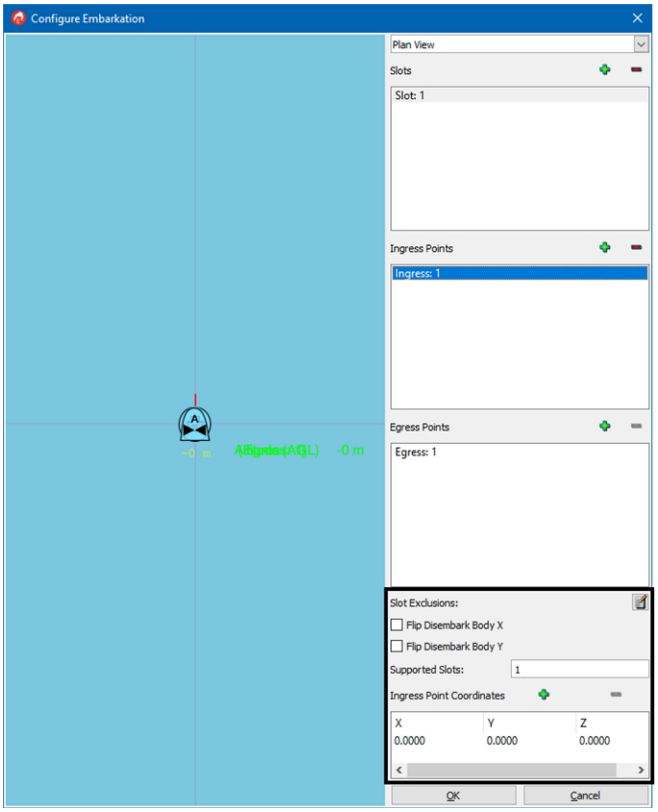
---

➤ **To add an ingress point:**

1. In the Simulation Object Editor object list, select the entity that you want to configure embarkation for.
2. Select the Movement tab (Figure 578 on page 1366).
3. Select the Can Be Embarked Upon check box.

4. Click Configure. The Configure Embarkation dialog box opens (Figure 579 on page 1367).
5. Click Advanced. The dialog box redisplays. It shows an entity icon in Plan View mode.
6. Optionally, change the view mode to Stealth to see a 3D model of the entity.
7. Optionally, use the mouse or keyboard to zoom in or out or otherwise change your view of the entity.
8. Click the Add button ( ) above the Ingress Points list. An ingress point is added to the list. A vertex is added to the display window at the center of the entity bounding volume (Figure 583). The coordinates for the ingress point are displayed at the bottom of the dialog box.

**Figure 583. Ingress Point**

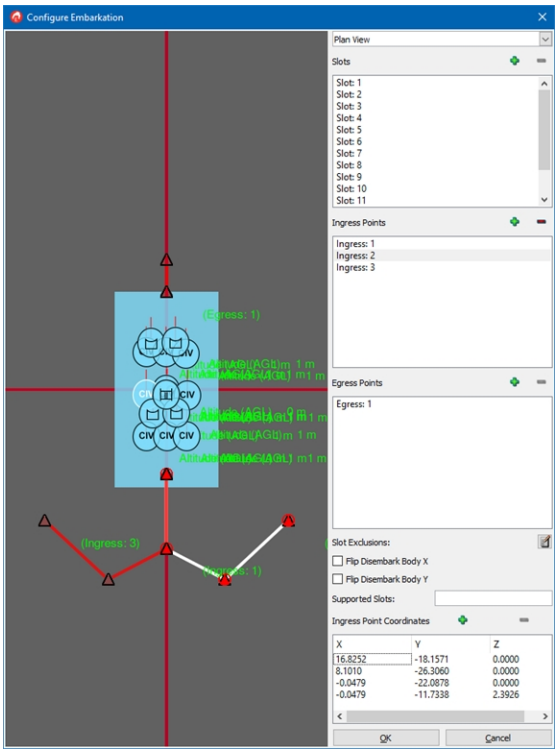



9. Double click the X value for the Ingress point to make it editable.
10. Enter the X value.
11. Repeat for the Y and Z values.
12. If you want to specify a path for the embarking entity

a. Click the Add button for the Ingress Point coordinates list. A new coordinate is added.

b. Specify the X, Y, and Z values for the new coordinate. The path is displayed in the window (Figure 584).

**Figure 584. Ingress point configuration**




13. Optionally in the Supported Slots field, type the numbers for the slots that should support this ingress point. If you leave the field blank, it supports all slots. If you specify more than one slot, separate the numbers with a space.

14. To change the side of a parent simulation object that the embarked simulation objects exit on, select the Flip Disembark Body X check box, the Flip Disembark Body Y check box, or both (Figure 580 on page 1369).

15. Click OK.

## 66.4. Embarkation Slot Tutorial

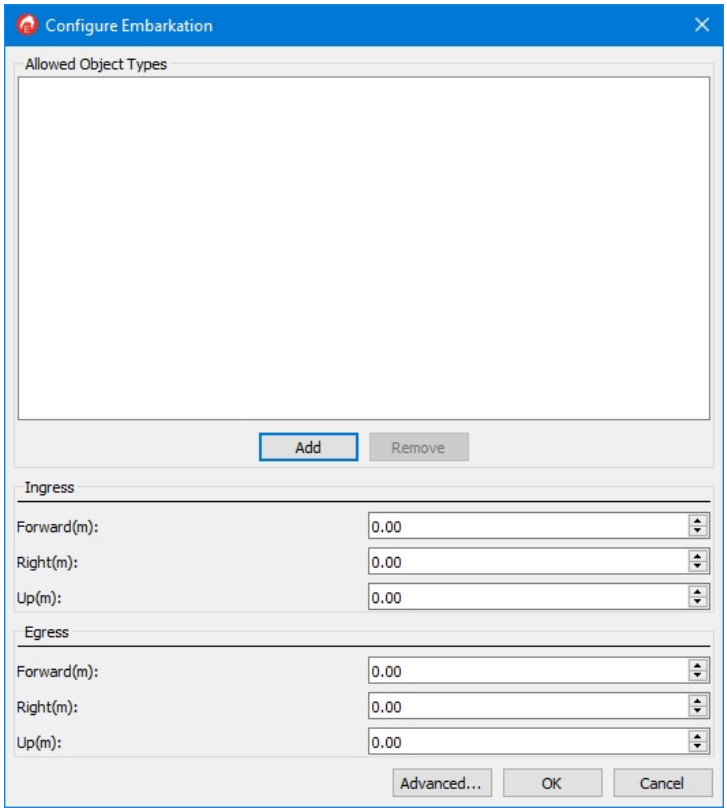
This tutorial shows how to configure an entity for embarkation. The supertanker does not have slots configured for embarkation in the default VR-Forces *EntityLevel.sms*. However, it has two helipads on the deck, which makes it ideal for embarkation. We will add embarkation slots, ingress points, and egress points to the supertanker. Then we will demonstrate the new slots in a scenario.

### 66.4.1 Configure the SuperTanker for Embarkation

➤ **To configure the supertanker for embarkation:**

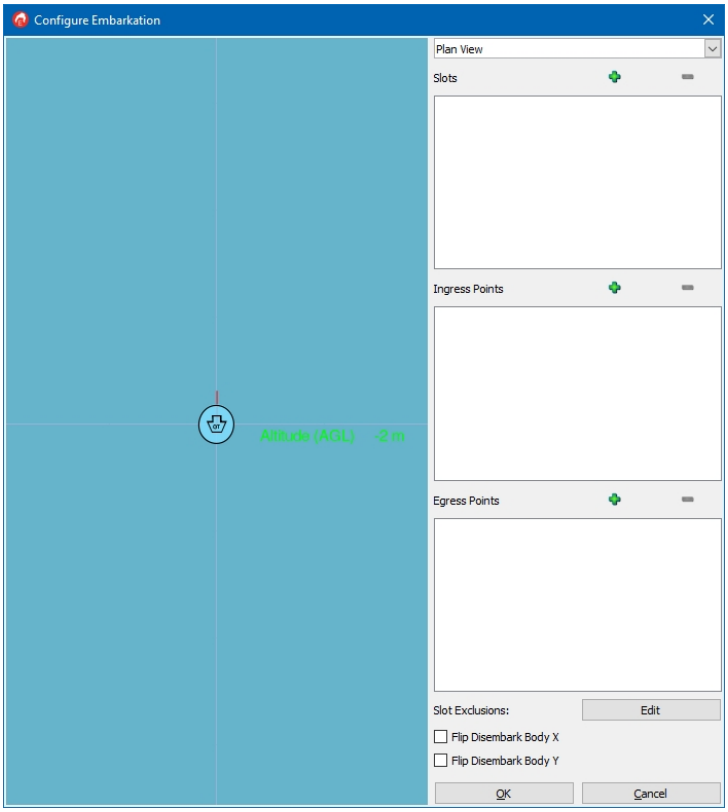
1. Start the Simulation Object Editor.
2. Choose **File > New Simulation Model Set**. The New Simulation Model Set dialog box opens.
3. Select the New Simulation Model Set option.
4. Click Next. The Simulation Model Set Type dialog box opens.
5. Select the Extend Existing Simulation Model Set option.
6. Click Next. The Extend Existing Simulation Model Set dialog box opens.
7. Select *EntityLevel.sms*.
8. Click Next. The New Model Set Name dialog box opens.
9. Specify a name for the new SMS.
10. Click Finish. The new SMS is created and loaded.
11. In the list of entities, select Super Tanker. It is read-only because it is included from *EntityLevel.sms*.
12. At the top of the Simulation Object Editor window, click Promote. The Super Tanker is now editable.
13. Select the Movement tab (Figure 578 on page 1366).
14. Select the Can Be Embarked Upon check box.
15. Click Configure. The Configure Embarkation dialog box opens (Figure 585).

**Figure 585. Configure Embarkation dialog box**




16. Click Add. The Add Type dialog box opens.
17. In the list of entity types, select Rotary Wings (Platform). Rotary Wings (Platform) is listed in the Allowed Object Types window.
18. Click Advanced. The Configure Embarkation dialog box redisplays (Figure 586). We are now ready to configure slots.

**Figure 586. Configure Embarkation 2D**




## 66.4.2 Configure Slots for the Supertanker

We want to configure specific slots for the supertanker. We cannot do that in the basic Configure Embarkation dialog box. The key parts of configuring a slot are specifying the object type and the location. Other parameters can provide more specific behaviors.

### Add a Slot

➤ **To add a slot for the supertanker:**

1. In the list at the upper right of the dialog box, change the observer view from Plan View to Stealth. You will now see a zoomed in view of the supertanker.
2. Zoom out so that you can see the forward half of the supertanker. In particular, you want to see the two helipads (Figure 587).

**Figure 587. Stealth view**

3. Click the Add button ( ) above the Slots window. Slot 1 is added to the list.
4. Select Slot 1.

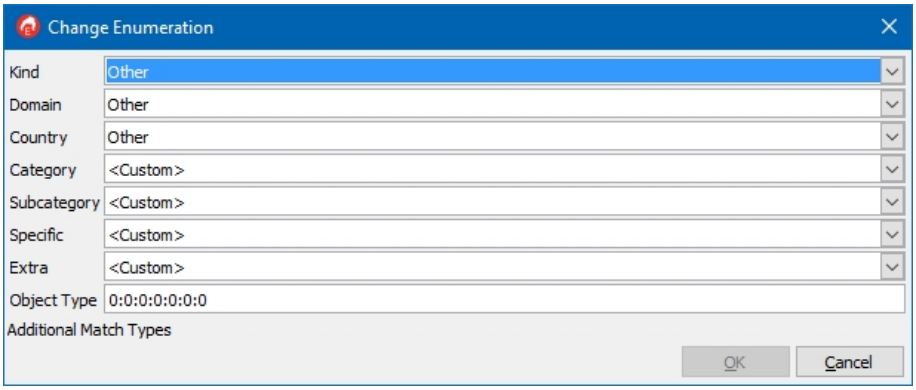
## Specify the Object Type

We need to specify the object types of the entities that can use the slot. In this case, we just need to specify helicopters. However, helicopters have several object type enumerations. Helicopters can have category values of 20-25 (military), 50 (UAV), and 90-92 (civilian). You can specify multiple values in an enumeration using dashes for ranges and separating values with commas. For the helicopter, we want an enumeration that looks like this: 1:2:-1:20-25,50,90-92:-1:-1:-1. We will let the Simulation Object Editor build a basic object type. Then we will customize it.

➤ **To: specify the object type:**

1. On the Object Type line, click the Select button. The Change Enumeration dialog box opens.

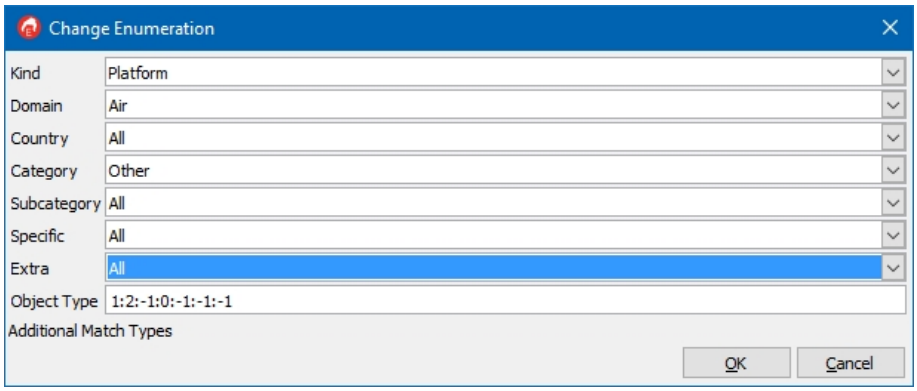
**Figure 588. Change Enumeration dialog box**




2. In the Object Type dialog box, in the Kind list, select Platform (1).

3. In the Domain list, select Air (2).
4. In the Country list, select All (-1).
5. In the Category list, leave as Other (0).
6. For all the other lists, select All (-1). The results in an enumeration of 1:2:-1:0:-1:-1:-1 (Figure 589).

**Figure 589. Completed base enumeration**




7. Click OK. The enumeration is listed in the Object Type box.
8. In the category field, replace 0 with 20-25,50,90-92. The completed object type is: 1:2:-1:20-25,50,90-92:-1:-1:-1. This object type will allow any type of helicopter to land in this slot.

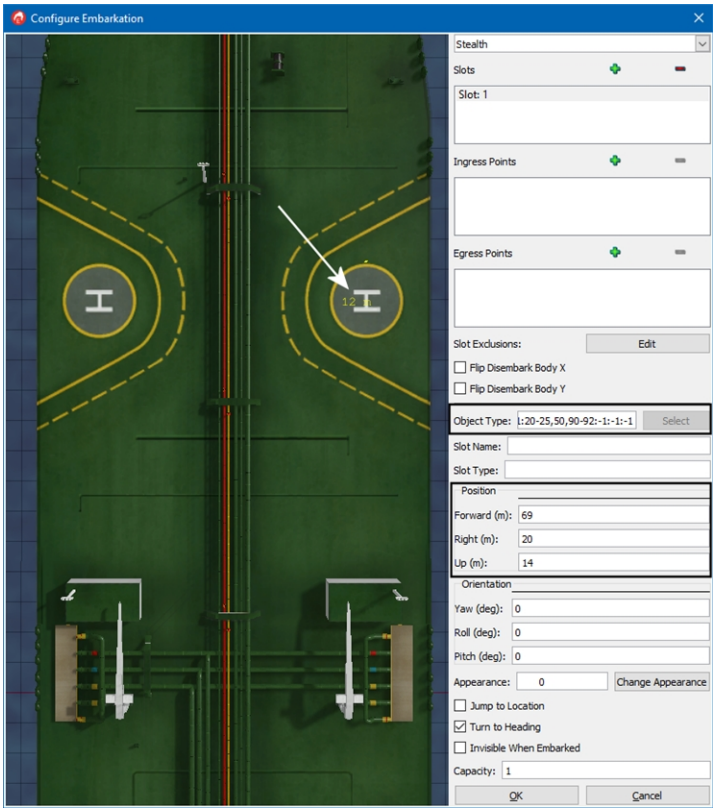
## Specify the Location of the Slot

We must specify the X, Y, and Z location of the slot relative to the origin of the supertanker. You will see a yellow number (-2) at the center of the ship.

➤ **To specify the slot location:**

1. Take a look at the location of the helipad to the right of the center line of the supertanker (starboard). Estimate the distance from the middle of the ship to the helipad.
2. Type your estimated distance for the Forward (Y) value. A yellow number is displayed on the center line of the ship.
3. Adjust the forward value to get to the proper distance (69 is a good value)
4. For the Right (X) coordinate, type an estimated value for the distance to the right of center (starboard). (20 is a good value.) You should now see the number centered on the H of the helipad .
5. Type a value for Up (Z). If you leave this blank, the helicopter will clamp to the deck of the tanker, but first it will sink to 0 meters, which doesn't look too good. 14 meters is a good value for this coordinate.
6. Clear the Jump to Location check box. The dialog box should look like the following figure, Figure 590.

**Figure 590. Slot 1**




### Add a Second Slot

Add a second slot. Use the same object type and forward and up values. The Right coordinate should be -20.

## 66.4.3 Add Ingress Points

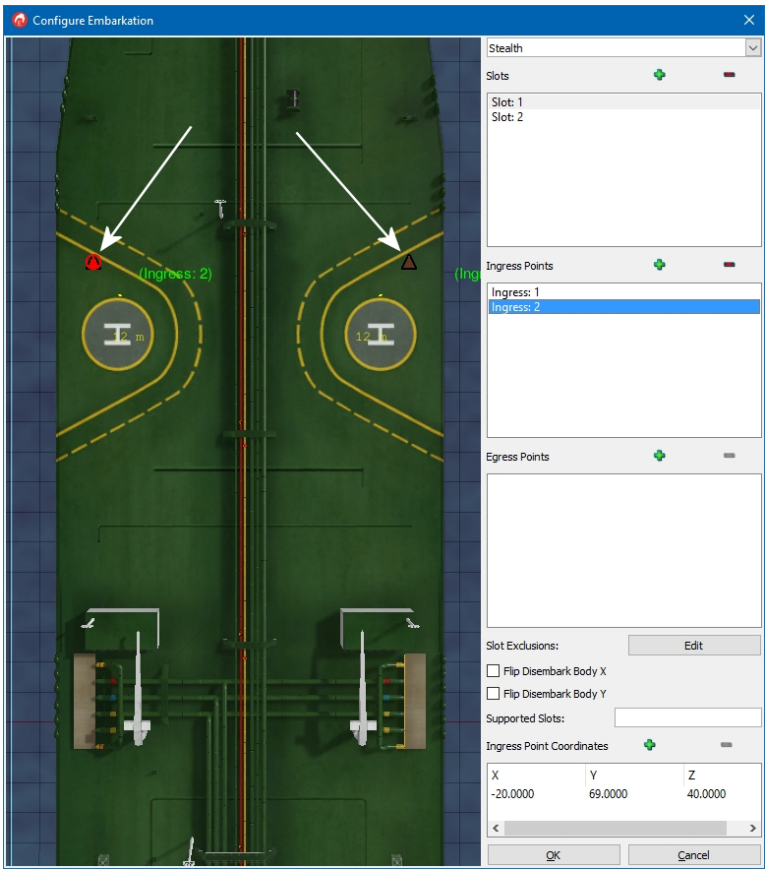
Ingress points define locations relative to the parent entity that an embarking entity moves to before it moves to its slot. While you do not have to define one, it is important that you do so. If there are no ingress points, when you task an entity to embark, it teleports directly to a slot. It does not simulate movement towards the parent.

➤ **To add an ingress point:**

1. Click the Add button ( ) above the Ingress Points window. A red vertex marker is added to the center of the ship.
2. In the Ingress Points Coordinates window, double-click the X value to make it editable.
3. Set it to 20. The vertex marker moves to this location.
4. Set the Y value to 69.

5. Set the Z value to 40. This will cause a helicopter to fly to a point above the helipad (the ingress point) and then land on the helipad.
6. Add a second ingress point. Set the X, Y, and Z to -20, 69, and 40. The completed ingress points look like the following figureFigure 591.

**Figure 591. Completed ingress points**




## 66.4.4 Add Egress Points

Egress points define locations relative to the parent entity that a disembarking entity moves to after it leaves its slot. As with ingress points, egress points help manage realistic looking behavior for entities as they disembark. Without them, the entity simply stays where it is in its slot, but changes its state to disembarked.

➤ **To add an egress point:**

1. Click the Add button ( ) above the Egress Points window. A red vertex marker is added to the ship.
2. Specify X, Y, and Z values. Set the X, Y, and Z to 20, 69, and 40. This will cause a helicopter to disembark and fly to a point above the helipad before beginning its next task. The vertex marker moves to show the location of the egress point.
3. Add a second egress point. Set the X, Y, and Z to -20, 69, and 40.

## 66.4.5 Save the New Configuration

➤ **To save the configuration:**

1. In the Configure Embarkation dialog box, click OK.
2. In the main SOE window, choose **File > Save Simulation Model Set**.

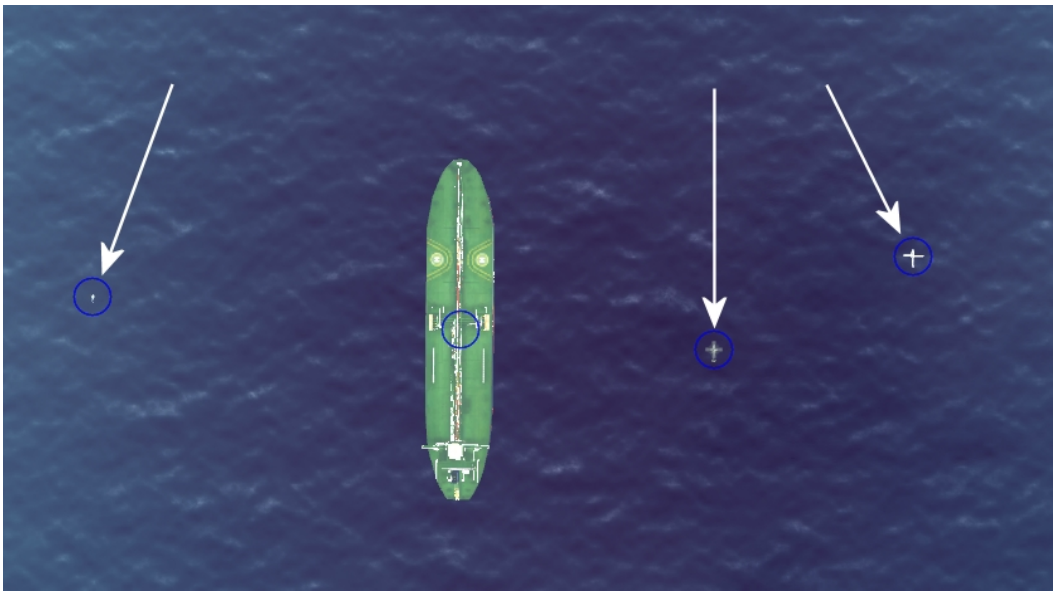
## 66.4.6 Test the Embarkation Configuration

Now you can test the new embarkation configuration for the supertanker.

➤ **To test the embarkation configuration:**

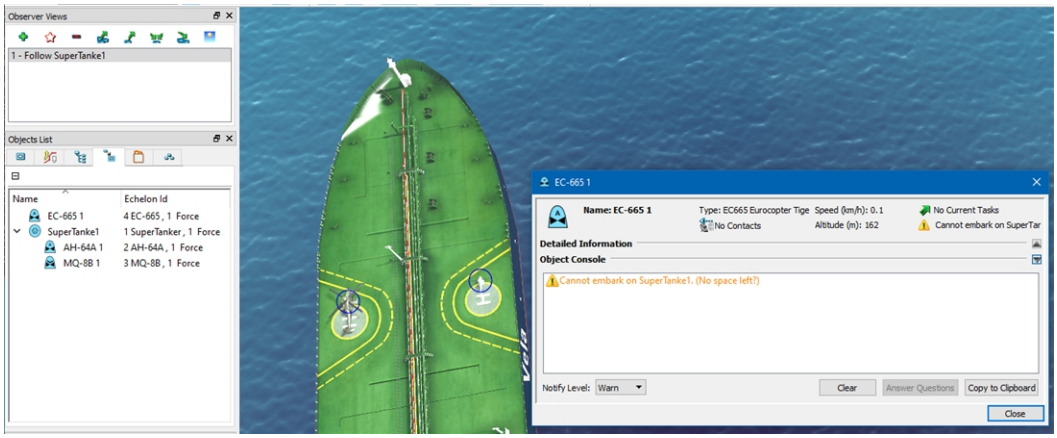
1. Start VR-Forces.
2. Create a new scenario using *EntityLevel.sms* and a terrain that has an ocean area, such as Makland or Ala Moana.
3. Place a supertanker in the water.
4. Add three helicopters. Put one on one side of the tanker and two on the other side. Use a variety of military and civilian helicopters. Set their altitude to 60 - 100 meters.

**Figure 592. Test scenario**



5. Give each helicopter a plan to embark on the supertanker. Stagger the times at which they start their embark task so that they do not all start flying at once.
6. Run the scenario. Two helicopters should be able to embark in the two slots. The third should send a message to its console that it cannot complete its task because there are no slots available (Figure 593).

**Figure 593. Helicopters embarked on Super Tanker**



# 67. Adding DI-Guy Models to VR-Forces

This chapter explains how to take DI-Guy models created with the DI-Guy SDK and integrate them into VR-Forces.


67.1. Adding New DI-Guy Models to VR-Forces ..... 1388
67.1.1 Copy DI-Guy Files to the Data Directory ..... 1388
67.2. DI-Guy Configuration Files ..... 1388
67.2.1 Adding a New DI-Guy Animation ..... 1389
67.3. How VR-Forces Maps DI-Guy Models ..... 1390
67.4. Add a New DI-Guy Entity in the SOE ..... 1390

# 67.1. Adding New DI-Guy Models to VR-Forces

VR-Forces supports DI-Guy characters and includes many lifeform characters. However, MAK customers sometimes want to add their own DI-Guy characters. The general process for adding a new character is as follows:

1. Create the new character using DI-Guy software and copy the required files to the *./data* directory.
2. Add a model definition and element definition for the new character.
3. If the character has animations, add them to *character_animations_table.mtl*.
4. Create a new VR-Forces character in the Simulation Object Editor.

## 67.1.1 Copy DI-Guy Files to the Data Directory

VR-Forces stores files for DI-Guy characters in *./data/Lifeforms/DIGuy* and its subdirectories. After you create a new character using DI-Guy software, you must copy the files for this character to these directories.

DI-Guy documentation recommends that all customer content be placed in *$(DIGUY)/custom*. To follow this convention, create a directory called *./data/Lifeforms/DIGuy/custom* and put your files in the appropriate subdirectories under it.

VR-Forces can visualize custom DI-Guy characters based on DIS enumerations mapped to element definitions or by recognizing custom DI-Guy PDUs.

- If you want to map your custom characters to element definitions, then you must add new simulation models in the Simulation Model Editor. This will automatically create the complementary model and element definitions and object type mappings.
- If you want to visualize characters based on custom DI-Guy PDUs without creating element definitions or object type mappings, place the DI-Guy files in the *./data/Lifeforms/DIGuy/custom* directory as described in the previous paragraph. No further configuration is needed.

# 67.2. DI-Guy Configuration Files

*VR-Forces* can specify the character, appearance, and animation values for DI-Guy models used in 3D visualization applications such as *VR-Forces* and VR-Vantage. A model's character determines the kinds of movement it can make. The appearance determines what it looks like. The animation specifies the movements that the character makes.

In the *VR-Forces* front-end, you can specify the animation with the DI-Guy Animation task. You can set the appearance with the DI-Guy Appearance set data request. For details about specifying DI-Guy characteristics in the front-end, please see "28.14. DI-Guy Animation" on page 641, "34.20. DI-Guy Characteristics (Appearance, Head, Body Weight)" on page 806, and "34.21. DI-Guy Hand Item" on page 806.

You can specify the default character, appearance, and animation for a lifeform entity in the Simulation Object Editor. (For details, please see "28.14. DI-Guy Animation" on page 641 and "63.1.10 Editing a Lifeform's Visual Model and Animation" on page 1303.) The DI-Guy mappings are stored in the entity's *.entity* file.

The DI-Guy animations available to lifeforms are controlled by *./appData/settings/vrfSim/character_animations_table.mtl*. This information is used to populate the lists in the Simulation Object Editor. You can edit this file to add additional DI-Guy characters to those already configured for VR-Forces. The syntax of entries is described in the file.

---

Any characters you add to *character_animations_table.mtl* must be valid DI-Guy characters. You cannot arbitrarily make up new types of characters. If you create new characters using a supported version of the DI-Guy SDK, VR-Forces will support these characters.

---

## 67.2.1 Adding a New DI-Guy Animation

This section explains how to add a new DI-Guy animation to *VR-Forces*. It assumes that you have the DI-Guy software and have created the new animation.

---

The new animation must be made with the same version of DI-Guy supported by VR-Forces. Please see *VR-Forces Release Notes* for the currently supported version.

---

➤ **To add a new DI-Guy animation:**

1. Create the new animation in DI-Guy. You will create an animation and add it to a character's action table. Make sure that the name of the animation file matches the name of the action you added to the action table. For example, if the name of the animation is layEgg, but you call the action lay_egg, it will not work.

   ---

   There is a 1-1 relationship between characters and their action tables. You cannot use an animation based on a chicken character in a cow character's action table.

   ---

2. Add the *motion_name*.bdm file for the animation to *./data/Lifeforms/DIGuy/motions*.
3. Add the *action_table*.cfg file to *./data/Lifeforms/DIGuy/config/diguy*.
4. Add the new animation to *./appData/settings/vrfSim/character_animations_table.mtl*. This table determines whether an animation can be assigned to a character using the DI-Guy Animation task (**is-taskable-animation True**) or whether it is used based on the entity's behavior. For example, if a character is moving

faster than a certain speed, it is given a running animation. An entry for our lay egg example would look like the following:

```
(chicken
    (display-name "Chicken")
    (animations
        (animation
            (animation-name "lay_egg")
            (name-to-be-displayed "Lay an egg")
            (is-taskable-animation  True)
            (animation-variant "normal")
        )
        (animation
            (animation-name "feeding")
            (name-to-be-displayed "Feed")
            (is-taskable-animation  True)
            (animation-variant "normal")
        )
...
```

## 67.3. How VR-Forces Maps DI-Guy Models

Ordinarily, VR-Forces chooses animations to play for a DI-Guy based on the lifeform's speed, position, and similar attributes. However, VR-Forces can specify the DI-Guy state and appearance with the Set DI-Guy Appearance set data request and the Set DI-Guy Animation task. Once you explicitly set the DI-Guy appearance or animation, VR-Forces no longer tries to choose animations and expects to be told how to render that lifeform for the remainder of the simulation.

## 67.4. Add a New DI-Guy Entity in the SOE

Add a new entity in the Simulation Object Editor, as described in "62.3. Creating a New Simulation Object" on page 1278.

When you specify the 3D model, the list of character names is drawn from the **display-name** attribute in the entries in *./appData/settings/vrfSim/character_animations_table.mtl*. Therefore, it must have been updated before you can specify the 3D model in the Simulation Object Editor.

# 68. The Object Parameter Database

This chapter provides a detailed description of the object parameter database. It will be most useful to VR-Forces users who need to develop and configure new components.


68.1. The Object Parameter Database ..... 1392
68.1.1 VR-Forces Classes and Object Parameters ..... 1393
68.1.2 Object Types ..... 1393
68.1.3 Parameter Types ..... 1396
68.1.4 Local and Remote Subcomponents ..... 1397
68.2. Component Descriptors and Parameters ..... 1402
68.2.1 Common Elements of Component Descriptors ..... 1403
68.2.2 Configuring the Priority of Components ..... 1405
68.3. Platform Files ..... 1405
68.4. System Definition Files ..... 1406
68.4.1 Creating a System Definition File ..... 1406
68.4.2 Configuring System Connections ..... 1407
68.5. Adding Variable Bindings to Platform and System Files ..... 1411
68.5.1 Adding a Variable Binding ..... 1412
68.5.2 Making Variables Editable in the Simulation Object Editor ..... 1413
68.5.3 Adding Platform Variable Bindings to the SOE ..... 1413
68.5.4 Adding System Definition File Variables to the SOE ..... 1415
68.6. State Properties and Parameter Properties ..... 1415
68.6.1 Adding State Properties and Parameter Properties ..... 1415
68.6.2 Getting and Setting State Properties Using Lua Scripts ..... 1418
68.6.3 Displaying State Property Values in the Information Dialog Box ..... 1418
68.6.4 An Example of Adding State Properties ..... 1419
68.7. Configuring Units ..... 1426
68.8. Configuring Tactical Graphics ..... 1426
68.9. Pathname Interpretation in Simulation Model Set Files ..... 1427

# 68.1. The Object Parameter Database

VR-Forces simulation objects and tactical graphics have many parameters. Parameter values are stored in files organized in simulation model sets (SMS) that VR-Forces reads when you load a scenario or create new objects. We refer to these files collectively as the object parameter database (OPD). The object parameter database specifies both the characteristics of a simulation object and starting state values. You can modify the behavior of a simulation object by changing the parameters for that type of simulation object. You can add new types of simulation objects and new behaviors to VR-Forces by adding new files to the object parameter database.

---

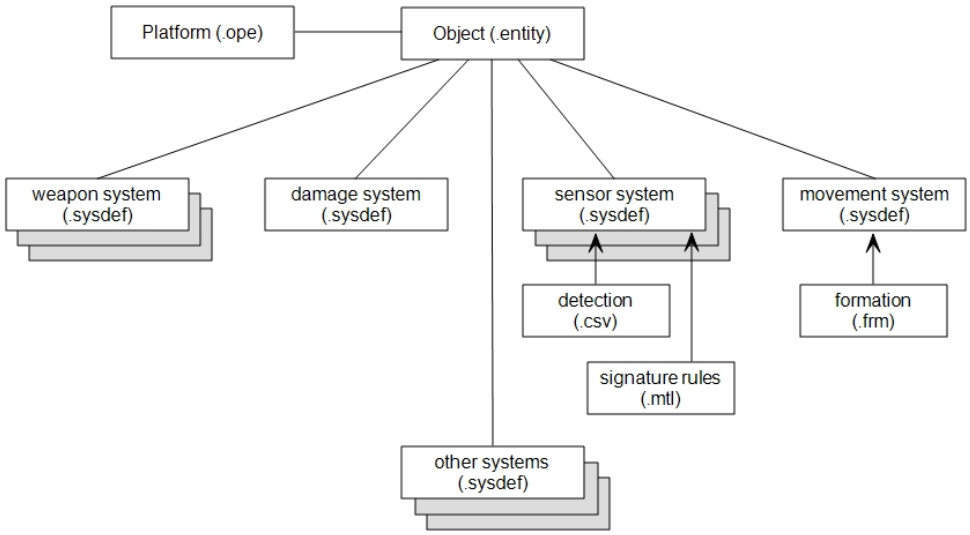
**!** Before you make any changes to the object parameter database, make a backup copy of the file you are changing.

---

Figure 594 illustrates the organization of an entry in the OPD. The primary definition of a simulated object, such as an entity, a tactical graphic, or a cultural feature, is stored in a file with the extension *.entity*. The *.entity* file specifies the object type enumeration, marking text, organizational information, and other parameters. It references a platform file (extension *.ope*), that provides a set of generic components for the object type, such as ground platform, surface platform, or line object. Each *.entity* file also specifies the systems that allow it to interact with the simulated environment, such as sensors, weapons, and movement systems.

Systems are configured in system definition files. System definition files group related component and connection specifications into convenient packages. The components reference additional configuration files. The system definition files also make it possible to add systems to simulation objects in the Simulation Object Editor.

**Figure 594. Object definition**



### 68.1.1 VR-Forces Classes and Object Parameters

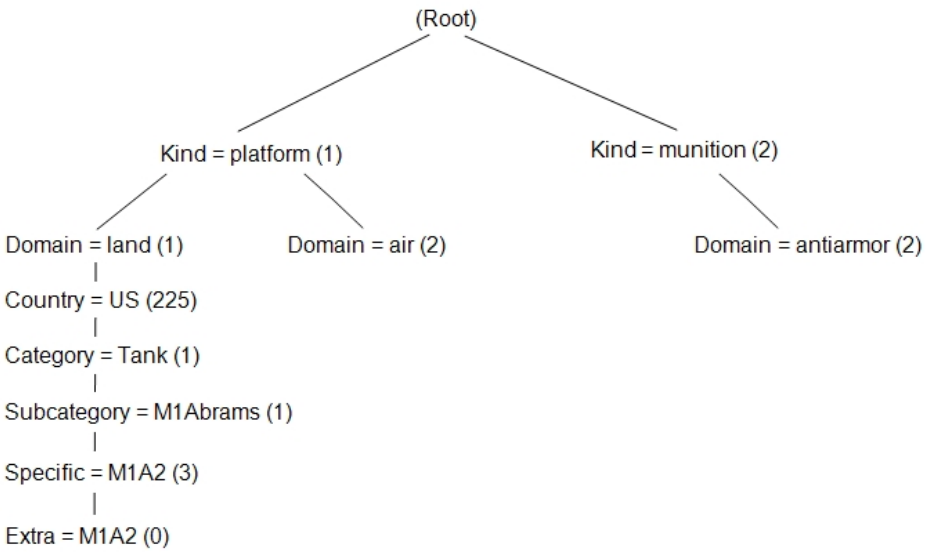
When you create any simulated object in VR-Forces, an instance of *DtVrfObject* is created in the simulation engine. Different types of simulation objects require different parameters for simulation and publishing, which are initialized by a subclass of *DtVrfObjectParameters*, and stored in a subclass of *DtVrfObjectBaseStateRepository*. Each *DtVrfObject* "has a" *DtVrfObjectParameters* and a *DtVrfObjectBaseStateRepository*. The type of parameters object to use for simulation object creation is specified in the simulation object's platform file by the **parameter-type** parameter. The state repository is specified in the **state-repository** parameter in the local-objects block. For example, when an entity that references the platform *Ground_Vehicle.ope*, which has a parameter type **ground-vehicle-param**, is created, a *DtVrfGroundVehicleParameters* object is created to read in the initial values from, and a *DtGroundVehicleStateRepository* is used to store runtime values.

### 68.1.2 Object Types

VR-Forces uses an eight-digit enumeration scheme for specifying objects. The enumerations are based on the seven-digit enumerations used by DIS and the RPR FOM. The additional field distinguishes between individual and unit objects.

This enumeration scheme describes a tree that goes from a more general specification to a more detailed one. Figure 595 illustrates a partial object type tree. To build an object type enumeration, start at the Kind and work your way down the tree, adding the number for each element. So, for example, if you follow the tree down to M1A2 you build the enumeration: 1 1 225 1 1 3 0. Since M1A2 is a leaf in the tree, the last field is 0. For more information about the object enumeration scheme, please see the SISO Enumerations Document (*SISO Reference for Enumerations for Simulation Interoperability*).

**Figure 595. Object type enumeration tree**



### The Object Super-Type

VR-Forces adds a field to the standard 7-digit entity enumeration so that we can manage objects that are not part of the DIS/RPR FOM enumeration scheme, such as units and tactical graphics. We enclose the seven-digit enumeration in parentheses and preface it with the object super-type (Figure 596). For example, the object enumeration for an M1A2, described in the previous paragraph, becomes the object type: 1 (1 1 225 1 1 3 0).

**Figure 596. VR-Forces object-type parameter**

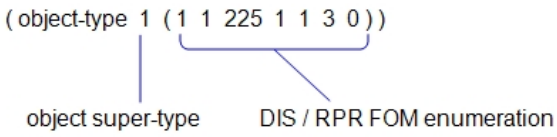



Table 61 lists the values VR-Forces can use for the object super-type. For more information, please see *objTypeEnums.h* or "C.3. Object Type Enumerations" on page 1606.

**Table 61. Object super-type field values**

| Object super-type | Meaning |
|---|---|
| 0 | Other. |
| 1 | Individual (platform entities, individual tactical graphics). |
| 2 | Unit. |
| 3 | Disaggregated unit (a unit composed of other simulation objects). |
| 4 | Aggregated unit (a unit that does not have subordinate simulation objects). |

### Published Object Types and Matching Object Types

Each simulation object in the OPD has two object types – the published object type and the matching object type.

The published object type is used as follows:

- When the front-end sends a create simulation object message to the back-end, the back-end uses the object type to determine which model to create.
- When the back-end publishes a simulation object on the network it uses the published object type as the object enumeration.

Each field of a published object type must have a specific value.

The matching object type is used as follows:

- When the back-end receives a request to create a simulation object and it cannot find an exact match for the object type that it is sent, it finds the best match among matching object types to determine which model to create. (For details about the best match method, please see "The Best Match Method" below.)
- When the back-end discovers a simulation object on the network, it finds the best match among matching object types so that it can create local representative *DtVrf-Objects*.

The matching type can be the same as the published object type or it can have wildcards (-1).

For example, in VR-Forces, the published object type for an A-10 Thunderbolt is 1:2:225:2:4:1:0. If the matching type for the A-10 Thunderbolt is also 1:2:225:2:4:1:0 and VR-Forces discovers a remote simulation object with that same object type, it can match it to the A-10 Thunderbolt simulation model and can represent it properly in the simulation. However, if VR-Forces discovers a remote simulation object with the object type 1:2:225:2:4:1:1 (which is just a variation of an A-10), it will not be able to match the remote entity to an A-10 model because there is no A-10 match for that object type. (VR-Forces would end up matching the remote entity to a more generic fighter model, as explained in"The Best Match Method" below.) But if the A-10's matching object type is 1:2:225:2:4:1:-1, then VR-Forces will be able to match the remote entity to the A-10 model using the best match method.

Object types are specified in the *.entity* file as follows:

```
<simObject objectType="1:1:2:225:2:4:1:0" matchType="1:1:2:225:2:4:1:-
1" platform="@(platforms-dir)/Fixed_Wing_Aircraft.ope">
```

The **objectType** attribute specifies the published object type; **matchType** specifies the matching object type.

### The Best Match Method

As explained in "68.1.2 Object Types" on page 1393, object types describe a simulation object in increasing specificity as the object type fields move from left to right. Objects in the object parameter database are specified in a hierarchy in which entries at higher levels of the hierarchy have wildcard values (-1s) in object type fields that do not need to be specified at that level of the hierarchy. When VR-Forces looks up an object type, it begins at the root of the tree, working its way down until no better matches are found (the best match method.)

Suppose the object type hierarchy for fighter jets looks like this:

- -1:-1:-1:-1:-1:-1:-1:-1:-1 – match any object.
- 1:1:2:-1:-1:-1:-1:-1 – match any fixed-wing entity.
- 1:1:2:225:2:-1:-1:-1 – match any U.S. attack fixed-wing.
- 1:1:1:2:225:2:4:1:-1 – match any A-10 Thunderbolt. (In VR-Forces, this is the A10 Thunderbolt matching object type.)
- 1:1:1:2:225:2:4:1:0 – match a specific A-10 Thunderbolt. (In VR-Forces, this is the A10 Thunderbolt published object type.)

As you replace each wildcard value (-1) with a specific enumeration, the scope of the object type narrows. Given this hierarchy, if VR-Forces discovers a simulation object with the object type 1:1:2:225:2:11:0:0, it starts trying to find the best match as follows:

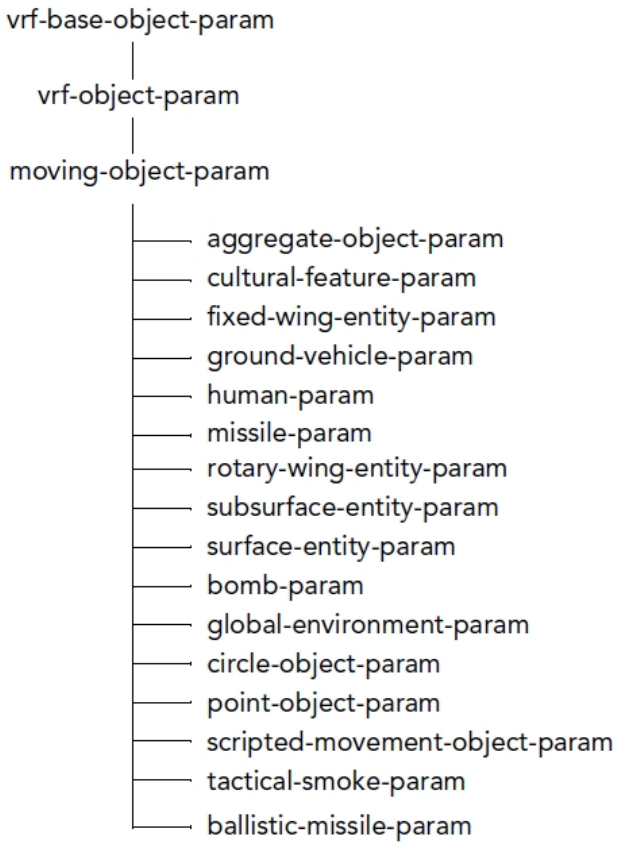
1. The discovered object type matches the top level - any object, because all fields are wild cards.
2. The discovered object type matches the fixed-wing object type, because the first three fields match and the rest are wild cards.
3. The discovered object type matches the U.S. attack fixed-wing object type.
4. The discovered object type does not match the A-10 Thunderbolt matching object type. Although the first five fields match, the sixth is different and is not wild carded.

The best match is the U.S. attack fixed-wing object type, so VR-Forces will use the generic U.S. attack fixed-wing model to represent the discovered simulation object.

### 68.1.3 Parameter Types

In addition to specifying an `object-type` for each object, you must specify a `parameter-type` for each object. The `parameter-type` determines the parameters and components that can be specified for an object. For example, a rotary-wing or fixed-wing entity can have a `nose-support` parameter, but a ground vehicle cannot. Figure 597 illustrates the object parameter type hierarchy.

**Figure 597. Object parameter hierarchy**




The `parameter-type` specifies the set of parameters appropriate to a simulation object, and the object state repository maintains state information for a simulation object, so the `parameter-type` and state repository must match. For more information, please see "The State Repository Hierarchy" on page 1401.

---

The **object-type** is specified in an object's *.entity* file. The parameter-type is specified in the platform (*.ope*) file.

---

## 68.1.4 Local and Remote Subcomponents

As explained in "3.3.2 Local Objects and Remote Objects" on page 114, each VR-Forces back-end simulates objects itself (local objects), and maintains state information about remote objects. All of these objects are instantiated as *`DtVrfObjects`*. The *`DtVrfObject`* class has a "has a" relationship with the following classes:

- *`DtSimObjectStateRepository`*
- *`DtSimObjectNetInterface`*
- *`DtSimTaskManager`*

- *DtSimComponentManager*
- *DtVrfObjectPlanManager*

These classes are referred to as subcomponents of the object. Table 62 maps the subcomponent classes to the parameters that specify them.

**Table 62. Subcomponent classes and parameters**

| Class | Parameter |
|---|---|
| *DtSimObjectStateRepository* | state-repository |
| *DtSimObjectNetInterface* | net-interface |
| *DtOrganizationManager* | organization-manager |
| *DtSimTaskManager* | task-manager |
| *DtSimComponentManager* | component-manager |
| *DtVrfObjectPlanManager* | plan-manager |

VR-Forces creates different subcomponents for an object depending on whether it is a local object or a remote object. The subcomponents are specified in the `local-objects` and `remote-objects` parameter blocks for that object. Table 63 lists the permissible entries for each parameter listed in Table 62.

**Table 63. Permissible subcomponent parameters**

| Parameter | Permissible values |
|---|---|
| state-repository | • ballistic-missile-entity-state-repository<br>• bomb-entity-state-repository<br>• cultural-feature-state-repository<br>• fixed-wing-entity-state-repository<br>• ground-entity-state-repository<br>• human-state-repository<br>• missile-entity-state-repository<br>• rotary-wing-entity-state-repository<br>• surface-entity-state-repository<br>• subsurface-entity-state-repository<br>• vrf-aggregate-state-repository<br>• vrf-moving-object-state-repository<br>• vrf-object-base-state-repository<br>• vrf-object-state-repository<br>• vrf-overlay-object-state-repository<br>• vrf-tactical-smoke-state-repository |

**Table 63. Permissible subcomponent parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Permissible values |
|---|---|
| net-interface | • aggregate-local-entity-net-interface<br>• engineering-object-local-net-interface<br>• individual-local-entity-net-interface-with-properties<br>• local-control-object-net-interface<br>• local-control-object-net-interface-with-properties<br>• local-control-object-net-interface<br>• local-environmental-net-interface<br>• local-tactical-smoke-net-interface<br>• pseudo-aggregate-local-entity-net-interface-with-properties<br>• engineering-object-remote-net-interface<br>• vrf-aggregate-remote-entity-net-interface-with-properties<br>• vrf-individual-remote-entity-net-interface<br>• vrf-individual-remote-entity-net-interface-with-properties<br>• vrf-remote-environmental-net-interface<br>• vrf-remote-environmental-net-interface-with-properties<br>• vrf-remote-tactical-smoke-net-interface |
| task-manager | • local-task-manager |
| component-manager | • component-manager |
| plan-manager | • vrfobject-plan-manager |

Every object must have a state repository specified. Objects that should be published need a net interface. Other subcomponents are optional. However, for most simulation objects, you will want to specify a task manager, plan manager, and component manager so that you can control the simulation object and give it tasks.

The local and remote objects parameters are specified in the platform (*.ope*) files. Therefore they apply to all simulation objects that reference a particular platform. Use the existing entries in the object parameter database as guidance if you create a new platform or change an existing platform. A typical entry for local and remote objects is:

```
(local-objects
    (state-repository  "ground-entity-state-repository")
    (state-repository-min-tick-period  -1.000000)
    (state-repository-min-tick-period-variance  -1.000000)
```

```
    (net-interface  "individual-local-entity-net-interface-with
properties")
    (net-interface-min-tick-period  -1.000000)
    (net-interface-min-tick-period-variance  -1.000000)
    (task-manager  "local-task-manager")
    (component-manager  "component-manager")
    (plan-manager  "vrfobject-plan-manager")
    (nav-interface "active-bot")
)
(remote-objects
    (state-repository  "vrf-moving-object-state-repository")
    (state-repository-min-tick-period  -1.000000)
    (state-repository-min-tick-period-variance  -1.000000)
    (net-interface  "vrf-individual-remote-entity-net-interface-with
properties")
    (net-interface-min-tick-period  -1.000000)
    (net-interface-min-tick-period-variance  -1.000000)
    (task-manager  "")
    (component-manager  "")
    (plan-manager  "")
    (nav-interface "dynamic-obstacle")
)
```

### The State Repository Hierarchy

Each VR-Forces object must have a state repository to maintain essential state information about the object, such as its current location, orientation, appearance, and so on. Therefore, each object must specify a state repository and the state repository must match the **parameter-type** for the object. (The state repository and **parameter-type** are specified in the platform file.)

Table 64 lists parameter types and the state repository type required.

**Table 64. State repository and parameter types**

| State Repository Type | Parameter Type |
|---|---|
| ballistic-missile-entity-state-repository | ballistic-missile-param |
| bomb-entity-state-repository | bomb-param |
| cultural-feature-state-repository | cultural-feature-param |
| fixed-wing-entity-state-repository | fixed-wing-entity-param |
| ground-entity-state-repository | ground-vehicle-param |
| human-state-repository | human-param |
| missile-entity-state-repository | missile-param |
| rotary-wing-entity-state-repository | rotary-wing-entity-param |
| surface-entity-state-repository | surface-entity-param |
| subsurface-entity-state-repository | subsurface-entity-param |

**Table 64. State repository and parameter types (continued)**

| State Repository Type | Parameter Type |
|---|---|
| vrf-aggregate-state-repository | aggregate-object-param |
| vrf-moving-object-state-repository | moving-object-param |
| vrf-overlay-object-state-repository<br>vrf-object-state-repository | vrf-object-param |
| vrf-tactical-smoke-state-repository | tactical-smoke-param |

### The Net Interface Hierarchy

VR-Forces manages network relationships of local and remote simulation objects through the network interface classes. Choose the set of local and remote network interface types that most closely represent the type of object being simulated. For example, for an individual vehicle such as a tank, choose individual-local-entity-net-interface for the local network interface and vrf-individual-remote-entity for the remote network interface. Please see "Appendix C. Object Parameters" on page 1599 for tables that list the network interfaces used for the simulation objects provided with VR-Forces.

## 68.2. Component Descriptors and Parameters

The parameters for a simulation object include a list of all the sensor, controller, and actuator components it uses. (For details, please see "13.5. VR-Forces Uses a Component Architecture" on page 356.) These components might be in the OPE file or in a system definition file. If there are no components of a certain type (for example, no sensors), you can omit the list. (In other words, you do not need a placeholder list for unused components.)

A component descriptor is a text block in a platform or system definition file that describes a component (see "Example 1" on page 1404). A component descriptor must include the type of the descriptor and the type of the component that it is describing. A component descriptor can also contain parameters for the component. "68.2.1 Common Elements of Component Descriptors" on the facing page describes the construction of a component descriptor.

Components can receive data from, and convey data to, other components through ports. These ports are specified in platform files and system definition files.

A component can create a port group, which groups a set of related ports together. For example, the automotive-control port group groups the throttle, steering, and brake ports. Use of port groups simplifies specification of connections because you just have to specify a port group instead of many individual ports. For a detailed discussion of ports and port groups, please see API documentation.

The port group also provides a mechanism for ensuring that only one data provider attempts to put values on those ports each simulation frame. For more information, please see "68.2.2 Configuring the Priority of Components" on page 1405.

### 68.2.1 Common Elements of Component Descriptors

The common elements of component descriptors are:

- Name – The first element in a component descriptor specifies the component's name. This name can be whatever you want, but it must be unique within the simulation object or the system the component is defined in. It gets used in the connections section of the simulation object's parameters. Other components may use this name to find the specified component. In "Example 1" on the next page, the name of the first component is move-along (line 2).
- `component-descriptor-type` – The component descriptor factory creates the type of component descriptor specified by this type. This lets the system know what types of additional data may be present. In Example 1, the component descriptor type for the move-along component is ground-move-to-descriptor (line 3).
- `component-type` – The component factory creates the type of component specified in this entry. In Example 1, the component type is ground-auto-move-along-controller (line 4).

---

The **component-descriptor-type** and **component-type** values are specified in code. You cannot make them up. Please see *compTypes.h* and *compDescTypes.h*.

---

- connections (optional) – The connections (Example 1, line 44) entry specifies how the components connect to one another (through ports, port groups, or both). Components attach to each other by connecting output and input ports to one another, or output port groups to input port groups. Since a component can have more than one port, port group, or both, the name of the port or port group to use is also specified. If a simulation object does not have any components that need to connect to one another, then you can omit this entry. Items in the connections entry can be in one of the following forms:
- Specify a port-to-port connection:

  `connect` *component_name*`:`*output_port* *component_name*`:`*input_port*
- Specify a port group-to-port group connection:

  `connect` *component_name*`:`*output_port_group* *component_name*`:`*input_port_group*

  The connections in "Example 1" on the next page use this format.
- Specify a port-to-port connection, in which one or both of the ports exists inside of a group, as follows:

  The input port belongs to an input port group:

  `connect` *component_name*`:`*output_port* *component_name*`:`*input_port_group*`:`*input_port*

  The output port belongs to an output port group:

  `connect` *component_name*`:`*output_port_group*`:output_port` *component_name*`:`*input_port*

Both input and output ports belong to groups:

connect *component_name*:*output_port_group*:*output_port*
*component_name*:*input_port_group:input_port*

---

The port and port group names are defined in code for each component. Please see class documentation for the names of port and port groups used by a given component.

---

Example 1 shows component descriptors for the Move Along and Patrol Between Points controllers and the Powertrain actuator for a ground vehicle (from the *ground-tracked.sysdef* file.) The Powertrain actuator simulates movement of a ground vehicle based on the throttle, brake, and steering inputs it receives from the automotive controllers. The example also shows how the output port groups for the controllers are connected to the input port group of the powertrain.

**Example 1**

```
(controllers
    (move-along
        (component-descriptor-type "ground-move-to-descriptor")
        (component-type  "ground-auto-move-along-controller")
        (min-tick-period  -1.000000)
        (min-tick-period-variance  -1.000000)
        (tick-period-uses-real-time False)
        (process-state-repository-name  "")
        (process-state-repository-type  "")
        (is-enabled True)
        (near-distance  25.000000)
        (at-distance  1.000000)
        (approach-speed  2.000000)
    )
    (patrol-between-points
        (component-descriptor-type "ground-move-to-descriptor")
        (component-type  "ground-auto-patrol-between-controller")
        (min-tick-period  -1.000000)
        (min-tick-period-variance  -1.000000)
        (tick-period-uses-real-time False)
        (process-state-repository-name  "")
        (process-state-repository-type  "")
        (is-enabled True)
        (near-distance  25.000000)
        (at-distance  1.000000)
        (approach-speed  2.000000)
    )
) ;; end controllers
(actuators
    (powertrain
```

```
31          (component-descriptor-type "automotive-component-
descriptor")
32          (component-type  "automotive-actuator")
33          (min-tick-period  -1.000000)
34          (min-tick-period-variance  -1.000000)
35          (tick-period-uses-real-time False)
36          (process-state-repository-name  "")
37          (process-state-repository-type  "")
38          (is-enabled True)
39          (art-part-list )
40          (check-terrain-collisions False)
41          (use-high-fidelity-ground-clamping True)
42      )
43  ) ;; end actuators
44  (connections
45      (connect move-along:automotive-control powertrain:automotive-
                control)
46      (connect patrol-between-points:automotive-control
powertrain:automotive-control)
47  ) ;; end connections
```

The connection in line 47 would read: the move-along component sends output to its automotive-control output port group. The powertrain receives the move-along controllers output through its automotive-control input port group.

### 68.2.2 Configuring the Priority of Components

Each simulation frame, VR-Forces ticks each simulation object's components in the order in which they are listed in the platform and system definition files. If a component believes it should be providing data, it takes control of the receiving component's ports or port group. Once a component acquires the ports, no other component can send data to that component during that frame. Therefore the order in which components are listed provides a natural priority scheme.

For example, among the ground movement controllers, the collision avoidance controller is placed on the controller list before any of the other movement controllers. If this controller needs to provide input to the ground automotive actuator to avoid a collision, it takes control of the automotive-control port group on the next tick and overrides the controller that previously owned the port group (such as Move To or Move Along).

## 68.3. Platform Files

Platform files (extension *.ope*) are the foundational configuration files for all simulated objects. They provide the basic description of each type of simulation object that you can create, such as a ground vehicle, surface vessel, or human. They also define types of tactical graphics. All platform files are part of an SMS. A platform file includes all of the components that every simulation object of that type needs to have, such as collision avoidance, radios, script controllers, and so on.

A platform file does not include systems that vary among specific examples of the platform, such as weapon systems, movement systems, and damage systems.

A platform file uses variables for the parameters that need to be different for specific examples of a platform. For example, all ground vehicles have a maximum speed, but tanks and civilian vehicles have a different value for this parameter. The values for these variables get set in the Simulation Object Editor.

You can create and edit platform files using a text editor. Platform files use MTL syntax. Most VR-Forces users will not need to create new platform files. You may need to add components or change parameters to be variables.

## 68.4. System Definition Files

The Simulation Object Editor allows VR-Forces users to easily add component systems, such as weapons, sensors, and movement, to simulation objects without needing to understand the components, configuration files, and connections required to make these systems work. These systems are defined in system definition files (*.sysdef*). System definition files are referenced in a simulation object's *.entity* file. They are read by the SOE and can be edited in it.

System definition files have two major sections – data and metadata. The data is a list of the components and connections required to implement the system for a simulation object.

The metadata explains to the Simulation Object Editor how to present the system to the user and how to integrate it into the entity model.

Weapon systems and damage systems have two system definition files, a template file (*.template_sysdef*), which specifies components shared by similar types of weapons or damage systems, and a weapon or platform-specific system definition file (*.sysdef*).

### 68.4.1 Creating a System Definition File

If you want to create a new system definition file, MAK recommends that you copy an existing file and use it as a starting point for adding the components that you want to configure into a system. You can use the SOE to do this or a text editor.

The format of a system definition file is as follows:

```
(system-name
    (controllers
    )
    (actuators
    )
    (connections
    )
    (resources
    )
    (meta-data
        (system-name "Spot Report Generator")
        (system-description "Allows the entity to send spot reports though
 its radio when its sensors detect other entities in the scenario.")
        (allowed-state-repository-types "all")
```

```
        (system-categories "other")
        (meta-data-entry-list
        )
        (parameter-data-list
        )
    )
)
```

As you can see, system definition files use MTL syntax. (For information about MTL syntax, please see "A.2. MAK Technologies Lisp (MTL) Files" on page 1580.) The system-name is an arbitrary name that uniquely identifies the system. The component sections list the various controllers, actuators, sensors, and resources that are needed to build the system. The connections section lists the connections among the components.

---

**!** You can call the system whatever you want, but the name must not start with a number.

---

## 68.4.2 Configuring System Connections

Within each system definition file, you list the connections among the components in the file. (For general information about connections, please see "68.2.1 Common Elements of Component Descriptors" on page 1403.) For systems that are self-contained, for example movement systems, there is no need to connect to components in other systems. However, some systems need to connect to components outside their system. For example, a visual sensor needs a list of object types to detect. This section explains how to make these out-of-system connections.

To understand how system definition files and *.entity* files are integrated, we will look at:

- A **componentSystem** element in a *.entity* file.
- The related system definition file.
- The connection section in the system definition file.

The M1A2, which uses the Ground_Vehicle platform, is configured with a visual sensor (in *M1A2_Abrams_MBT.entity*) as follows:

```
<simObject objectType="1:1:1:225:1:1:3:0" platform="platforms\Ground_
Vehicle.ope">
...
<componentSystem systemName="sensor"
        platform="@(system-dir)/sensors/visual-sensor.sysdef">
    <bodyPosition paramName="sensor-position" right="0.57"
            forward="-1.14" up="2.1"/>
    <real paramName="max-range">4000</real>
</componentSystem>
```

The sensor component references the system definition file *visual-sensor.sysdef*. The parameters specified provide values for the variables in the system definition file. (For more information, please see "68.5. Adding Variable Bindings to Platform and System Files" on page 1411.)

The system definition file has the following connections:

```
1  (visual-sensor-system
2          ...
3      (connections
4          (connect system:object-types-to-detect visual-
   sensor:object-types-to-detect)
5          (connect visual-sensor:detected-objects system:detected-
   objects)
6          (connect system:sensor-offset visual-sensor:sensor-offset)
7      )
8      (resources )
9      (meta-data
10         (system-name  "Visual Sensor")
11         (system-description  "Allows an entity to detect other
   objects through visible light.")
12         (allowed-state-repository-types "all")
13         (system-categories "sensor")
14 ...
15 )
```

The system definition file defines connections for its components. The first connection in the list (line 4) means that some external component (**system**) is providing input from its **object-types-to-detect** port to the visual sensor's **object-types-to-detect** port. The second connection specifies that the visual sensor's **detected-objects** port sends data to some external component's **detected-objects** port. When VR-Forces creates a simulation object, it needs to substitute an actual component for the generic "system" component specified in the system definition file. It does this by referring to an auto-connection block in the OPE file

The platform file has a set of auto-connection blocks like the following (from *Ground_Vehicle.ope*):

```
(auto-connection
    (source-controller "target-selection")
    (source-port-name "object-types-to-detect")
    (destination-category "sensor")
    (destination-port-name "object-types-to-detect")
)
```

The auto-connection block in the OPE file is a template that VR-Forces uses to match systems of a specified category to the appropriate controllers. In this example, the **target-selection** controller sends data through its **object-types-to-detect** port to the **object-types-to-detect** port of any system that is in the sensor category. Since the visual sensor is in the sensor category, it substitutes the **target-selection** controller for the generic system in building its connections.

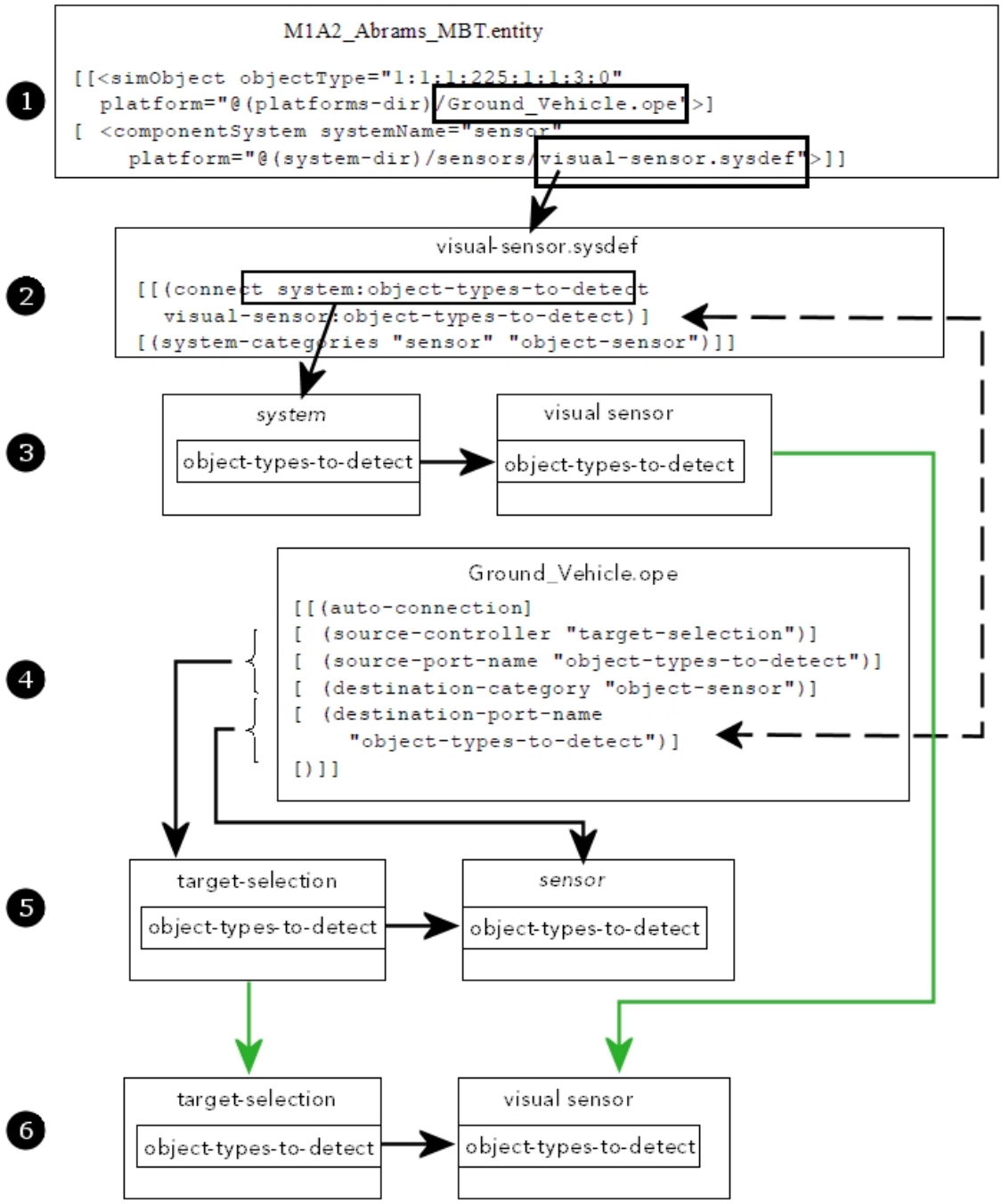
Figure 598 illustrates the relationships of the OPE file, *.entity* file, and system definition files referenced in this section and how connections are made.

The M1A2 entity, which uses the Ground_Vehicle platform, has a visual sensor (callout 1). The visual sensor has several connections. The one illustrated in the figure (2) takes input from an external source's **object-types-to-detect** port and sends it to the visual sensor's **object-types-to-detect** port (3). In this connection, the external source is represented by **system**. Before the sensor can actually work, this unspecified system must be determined.

When the entity is created, VR-Forces checks all the auto-connections in the OPE file (4). In this case, there is an auto-connection from the target-select controller's **object-types-to-detect** port to the **object-types-to-detect** port of a component whose destination category is **sensor** (5). To make this connection, the unspecified sensor must be determined.

VR-Forces matches the **destination-category** value "sensor" in the OPE file to the **system-categories** value "sensor" in the system definition file and the connections can now be completed (6).

**Figure 598. External component connection**




Systems that use templates must pass information between template files and individual system files. The “all” connection supports this exchange of information, as in the following example:

```
(connections
    (connect system:all main-14_5mm-gun:all)
    (connect main-14_5mm-gun:all system:all)
)
```

Most VR-Forces users add new systems by copying existing ones and changing their parameters. If you add new systems in this way, you will not need to worry about adding connections, since the existing auto-connection system will handle them automatically. If developers add new types of components that require intersystem connections, they will need to add new auto-connection blocks to the appropriate OPE files for them to connect.

## 68.5. Adding Variable Bindings to Platform and System Files

Platform files and most system definition files are used by multiple simulation objects. However, the values of some parameters may need to vary for the different simulation objects that use them. This is handled by using variables in the platform and system definition files and specifying the values for these variables in the *.entity* files. VR-Forces uses variable bindings for the parameters that you are most likely to want to change from simulation object to simulation object. If there are other parameters that you want to vary, you can add your own variable bindings.

When you add a variable binding, you must:

1. Change the hard-coded value to a variable in the platform or system definition file.
2. Add the variable to the *.entity* file.
3. Update the Simulation Object Editor so that you can edit the value for the new variable.

The following example shows a variable binding for fuel in a movement system. The variable is specified in the system definition file as follows:

```
(resources
    (fuel
        (resource-type "real-resource")
        (amount  $fuel-amount)
        (full-amount  $fuel-amount)
    )
)
```

The *.entity* file for a simulation object that uses this movement system specifies a value for the variable:

```
<componentSystem systemName="movement"
        platform="@(system-dir)/movement/ground-tracked.sysdef">
    <real paramName="fuel-amount">465</real>
</componentSystem>
```

As you can see, the parameter defined as **fuel-amount** in the *.entity* file is referenced as **$fuel-amount** in the system definition file.

### 68.5.1 Adding a Variable Binding

The procedure for adding a variable binding is the same for platform files and system definition files.

➤ **To add a variable binding to a platform file or system definition file:**

1. In the system definition file, substitute a variable name, in the format $*variable-name* for the hard-coded value that you want to replace. For example, the *Ground_Vehicle.ope* file has a value **is-organized**:

   ```
   (groundParams
       ...
       (is-organized True)
       ...
   )
   ```

   To make this a variable, replace the value with a variable name, as follows:

   ```
   (groundParams
       ...
       (is-organized $entity-is-organized)
       ...
   )
   ```

   You can do this by hand in the OPE file.

2. Optionally, specify a default value for the variable. The default value is used if no value is specified for an entity type that uses this OPE file. The syntax for specifying a default value is:

   ```
   (default “value”)
   ```

   In this example, to set the default value to True, do the following:

   ```
   (groundParams
       ...
       (is-organized $entity-is-organized (default “True”))
       ...
   )
   ```

3. In each *.entity* file that uses this platform file or system definition file, add an element to specify a value for the variable. The attribute must specify the type of the value, the name of the variable, and the value for the variable, for example.

   ```
   <simObject objectType="1:1:1:225:1:1:3:0"
   platform="platforms\Ground_Vehicle.ope">
       <bool paramName=”entity-is-organized”>True</bool>
   ...
   </simObject>
   ```

   Although you can add these entries by hand, it is highly recommended that you do so in the Simulation Object Editor by applying platform updates. When you apply platform updates, all changes to platform and system definition files get applied to all simulation objects that use them. For details, please see "61.9. Applying New and Updated Variables" on page 1246.

If you do not add an attribute to an *.entity* file that references the modified platform or system definition file, a default value will be used, which may result in unexpected behavior.

## 68.5.2 Making Variables Editable in the Simulation Object Editor

When you add new variable bindings, you can make them editable in the Simulation Object Editor (SOE). Variables in platform files are edited in the General, Physical, and Movement tabs. They include variables such as speed, mass, and bounding volume. Variables in system definition files are edited in the Properties dialog boxes for the individual systems. The procedures for adding these two types of variables to the Simulation Object Editor are different.

## 68.5.3 Adding Platform Variable Bindings to the SOE

Variable bindings for platform files are edited in the General, Physical, and Movement tabs. The layout of these tabs is controlled by *.ui* files. The Simulation Object Editor has a *.ui* file for each platform. The files are in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/gui/ui*. You can edit *.ui* files in a text editor or in Qt Designer. Qt Designer is included with VR-Forces (*./bin64/designer.exe*).

You do not need a developers license to use Qt Designer.

In "68.5. Adding Variable Bindings to Platform and System Files" on page 1411, we added a new variable binding to the *Ground_Platform.ope* file. The corresponding entry in *ground-vehicle-param.ui* file would be:

```
<item>
   <widget class="QCheckBox" name="entity_is_organized">
       <property name="text">
       <string>Is Organized</string>
       </property>
       </widget>
</item>
```

Notice that the variable name *entity-is-organized* in the OPE file is expressed as `entity_is_organized` in the *.ui* file. You must use underscores in the *.ui* file for the variable name.

If you are adding an attribute to the Simulation Object Editor and editing the .ui file by hand, the easiest approach is to copy an existing item, paste it where you want, and edit it for the new attribute. Many of these attributes have the **display-units** and **source-units** properties. For attributes that are expressed in units, such as meters or kilograms, these properties specify the unit. The unit value gets expressed in the attribute label, for example (m) or (kg). If your new attribute is not expressed in units, leave these fields blank.

### UI File Details

Whether you edit a *.ui* file by hand or using Qt Designer, you need to understand how data entry elements are defined. This varies depending on the type of widget used, such as text box, check box, option button, or list.

It is beyond the scope of this manual to explain Qt Designer and GUI layout. However, at the most basic level, the controls in the GUI are specified in item elements. Each item has a widget that has a **class** and an **objectName**. (The XML attribute is **name**. In Qt Designer it is **objectName**.)

- The **objectName** for an item is the platform variable name with dashes changed to underscores. For example, the **objectName** for the `short-name` variable is `short_name`.
- If an item has a label, the **objectName** must be `<variable_name>_label`. For example, the **objectName** for the Short Name label is `short_name_label`.

Each data entry widget creates a data entry field that is appropriate for the variable type (integer, real, string). Other elements (systems, vector entry) create more complex controls.

Depending on the type of information displayed, you can assign additional properties to each data entry field. These properties can be:

- element_type. String property that can be assigned a particular reader/writer (variable) type (for example, DtRwReal) or any other internal type that has been registered for element creations. These types are:
- single_system_selector
- multi_system_selector
- sensor_signatures
- aggregate_composition
- aggregate_formation_editor
- push_button
- scripted-movement-system-selector.
- enable_if_checked. String property that defines a check box element. If the check box is selected, the variable is enabled. If clear, it is disabled.
- disable_if_checked. String property that will define a check box element. If the check box is selected, the variable is disabled. If clear, it is enabled.
- disable_if_multiple_selection. Boolean property. If selected, when the user selects multiple simulation objects, this item cannot be edited.
- hide_by_default. Boolean element. If selected, this item is hidden by default and is visible only if the Advanced button is clicked.
- signal_slot. String element. If defined for a push button, a particular slot is called when that signal is sent. The format is:

  `<signal>;<referencedControl>;<slot>released();bounding_volume;`

`onCalculateSupportPointsChanged()`

The referenced control is the name of an existing control in the *.ui* file.

### 68.5.4 Adding System Definition File Variables to the SOE

When you add a system to a simulation object in the Simulation Object Editor, you can edit its properties. The Properties dialog box is not configured in a *.ui* file. It is generated based on the metadata section of the system definition file. Suppose that you want to change the rounds per minute parameter in *120mm-gun.sysdef* to a variable binding. You would create the variable binding as described in "68.5. Adding Variable Bindings to Platform and System Files" on page 1411 and you would add details to the metadata as shown in the following example:

```
(weapon-120mm-gun
    ...
    (rounds-per-minute $rounds-fired-per-minute)
    ...
    (meta-data
        (parameter-data-list
            (bool-parameter-data
                (parameter-name  "rounds-fired-per-minute")
                (variable-type  "DtRwInt")
                (display-label  "Rounds Fired Per Minute")
                (display-units  "")
                (source-units  "")
                (default-value  True)
            )
...
```

## 68.6. State Properties and Parameter Properties

All simulation objects and tactical graphics have properties, such as ordered speed, mass, and force, that are stored in their state repository. You can add the following types of properties to these objects without using the VR-Forces Toolkit:

- State properties. A property that can store state information locally or can be published on the network. You can access the property using Lua scripts or the C++ API and you can change the value.
- Parameter properties. A state property whose value is static and cannot be changed at runtime.

The VR-Forces GUI and simulation components do not know anything about these state properties unless you write code to integrate them.

### 68.6.1 Adding State Properties and Parameter Properties

You define state properties and parameter properties in the **state-data** section of the OPE files for the simulation object types that you want to have them. The basic syntax for defining a state property is:

(*typeproperty_namedefault* [publish *record_type*])

where:

- *type* is a data type. Please see Table 65 for a list of supported data types.
- *property_name* is the name of the property, such as NumberOfWheels.
- *default* is a default value.
- publish is an optional parameter that specifies that the state property should be published.
- *record_type* is an optional parameter to the publish flag. For details, please see Section 4.9, Publishing User-Created State Properties, in *VR-Forces Developers Guide*.

The following example specifies two state properties:

```
(state-data
   (DtRwInt TargetsMissed 0)
   (DtRwInt NumberOfWheels 4 publish)
)
```

Both properties are of type DtRwInt. The TargetsMissed property is initialized with the value 0. It is not published. The NumberOfWheels property has a default value of 4. It is published to the network.

You can bind state properties to variables. This allows you to specify different values for different simulation objects. For a complete discussion of binding properties to variables, please see "68.5. Adding Variable Bindings to Platform and System Files" on page 1411. The format for specifying a state property and binding it to a variable is:

(*typeproperty_namevariable* [(default *default_value*) publish *record_type*])

where:

- *type* is a data type. Please see Table 65 for a list of supported data types.
- *property_name* is the name of the property, such as NumberOfWheels.
- *variable* is a variable name that you use to add the property to platform and system files.
- (default *default_value*) specifies a default value for a variable. (Optional.)
- publish specifies that the state property should be published. (Optional.)
- *record_type* is a parameter to the publish flag. For details, please see Section 4.9, Publishing User-Created State Properties, in *VR-Forces Developers Guide*. (Optional.)

The following example adds a state property with a variable binding:

```
(state-data
    (DtRwInt NumberOfWheels $number-of-wheels (default 4) publish)
)
```

You specify parameter properties in the **parameter-data** section of the OPE file. The syntax is the same.

Table 65 identifies the data types supported for state properties. The Data Type column indicates the name of the data type used in the OPE file definitions. (The data types used by C++ are slightly different.) The Description column describes the format of this type. The HLA Representation/Encoding column indicates what type should be used in an HLA 1516 FOM to match the specification in the OPE. For information about HLA and state properties, please see Section 4.9, Publishing User-Created State Properties, in *VR-Forces Developers Guide*.

**Table 65. Data types supported by state and parameter properties**

| Data Type | Description | HLA Representation/Encoding |
|---|---|---|
| DtRwInt, DtRwInt32 | A 32-bit integer | RPRunsignedInteger32BE, HLAinteger32BE |
| DtRwInt16 | A 16-bit integer | RPRunsignedInteger16BE, HLAinteger16BE |
| DtRwInt8 | An 8-bit integer | RPRunsignedInteger8BE, HLAoctet |
| DtRwReal, DtRwReal64 | A 64-bit float | HLAfloat64BE |
| DtRwReal32 | A 32-bit float | HLAfloat32BE |
| DtRwBoolean | A Boolean | RPRboolean |
| DtRwString | An ASCII string | RPRnullTerminatedArray of HLAASCIIchar |
| C++: DtRwPropertiesFixedArray<br>OPE: DtRwFixedArray | | |
| | A fixed sized list of items | HLAfixedArray |
| C++: DtRwPropertySizedString<br>OPE: DtRwSizedString | | |
| | An ASCII string (alternate encoding for DtRwString) | HLAASCIIstring |
| C++: DtRwPropertiesStructure<br>OPE: DtRwStructure | | |
| | A fixed structure with multiple named fields | HLAfixedRecord with matching fields. |
| C++: DtRwPropertiesList<br>OPE: DtRwList | | |
| | A variable sized list of items | HLAvariableArray |

**Table 65. Data types supported by state and parameter properties (continued)**

| Data Type | Description | HLA Representation/Encoding |
|---|---|---|
| C++: DtRwPropertiesMap<br>OPE: DtRwMap | | |
| | A variable sized map of items | HLAvariableArray of HLAfixedRecords, where the first field in each record is the key. |

## 68.6.2 Getting and Setting State Properties Using Lua Scripts

You can set and get the values for state properties using scripted tasks and sets or through C++ code. For details about accessing them using C++, please see *VR-Forces Developers Guide*. This section describes how to access state properties using Lua.

To get the value of a state property from Lua, use the getStateProperty() function of a SimObject. Use getParameterProperty() to retrieve parameter properties.

```
local hits = this:getStateProperty("TargetsHit")
```

To set the value of a state property from Lua, use the setStateProperty() function.

```
this:setStateProperty("TargetsHit", 2)
```

The setStateProperty() function has an optional third argument that specifies that the property should be created if it does not already exist. If not set, this argument defaults to false. When a state property is added this way, VR-Forces must try to determine what the type of the property is, and it might not make the choice you intended, especially for properties with complex types. Therefore, if you are defining a complex property we recommend that you add it to an OPE file. Properties added using this argument cannot be published to the network.

```
this:setStateProperty("SomeNewProperty", 1.2, true)
```

## 68.6.3 Displaying State Property Values in the Information Dialog Box

You can add user-created state properties to the State Data page in the Information dialog box.

➤ **To add state properties to the State Data page:**

1. Open *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default_guiConfiguration.gui* in a text editor.
2. Find the DtEntityInformationPage **pageitem** element.
3. Add an **informationitem** element for each state property you want displayed, in the following format:

   ```
   <informationitem
   informationitemname="DtStatePropertyPageItem:MyStateProp:Display
   Name"/>
   ```

   where:

- *MyStateProp* is the name of the state property as specified in the OPE file.
- *Display Name* is the text that you want to display for the property in the Information dialog box.

## 68.6.4 An Example of Adding State Properties

This section is an example of how you can add state properties, configure them in the Simulation Object Editor, set them with a scripted set, and use them in a scripted task.

For this example, let's assume a scenario in which ground vehicles need to travel from one location to another. There are several routes they can follow. One route can only be traveled by smaller wheeled vehicles. A second can be traveled by large wheeled vehicles, defined as any vehicles with more than four wheels. A third can be traveled by tracked vehicles.

To make this all work, we need to know if a vehicle has wheels, and if so, how many. We will start by adding state properties to hold this information.

### Add the State Properties

We want to add two state properties. `hasWheels` indicates that a vehicle has wheels. `numWheels` holds the number of wheels. We will add these properties to *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/platforms/Ground_Vehicle.ope* as variables so that we can add them to the Simulation Object Editor. `numWheels` has a default value of 4.

```
(state-data
   (DtRwBoolean hasWheels $has-wheels publish)
   (DtRwInt numWheels $number-of-wheels (default "4") publish)
)
```

### Add the State Properties to the Simulation Object Editor

You do not have to make state properties settable in the Simulation Object Editor, but if you want to use them for a lot of simulation objects, it is convenient to be able to set them when you add new simulation objects or update existing ones.

Ground vehicle variables are configured in *.data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/gui/ui/ground-vehicle-param.ui*. Each variable is configured as an **item** element. We want to add the state properties so that we set **hasWheels** with a check box. If the check box is enabled, the **numWheels** field becomes enabled and we can set that.

If you take a look at the variables available to a ground vehicle in the Simulation Object Editor, you will see that many of them have check boxes and an associated value. You will also see that the Configure button is disabled unless Can Be Embarked On is selected. Using the existing item elements as a guide, we add the following code after Maximum Pivot Speed, so that it is listed after Maximum Pivot Speed:

```
<item>
   <layout class="QHBoxLayout" name="horizontalLayout_66">
       <item>
           <widget class="QCheckBox" name="has_wheels">
```

```
                <property name="text">
                    <string>Has Wheels</string>
                </property>
                <property name="element_type" stdset="0">
                    <string notr="true">DtRwBoolean</string>
                </property>
            </widget>
        </item>
        <item>
            <widget class="QLineEdit" name="number_of_wheels">
              <property name="enable_if_checked" stdset="0">
                    <string notr="true">has_wheels</string>
                </property>
                <property name="source-units" stdset="0">
                    <string notr="true"></string>
                </property>
                <property name="display-units" stdset="0">
                    <string notr="true"></string>
                </property>
            </widget>
        </item>
    </layout>
 </item>
```

We set the name for the **layout** element to a unique name (horizontalLayout_66).

The QCheckBox widget has the name `has_wheels`. This is the variable for the `hasWheels` property (`$has-wheels`), with the hyphen replaced with an underscore. (This convention is described in "68.5.2 Making Variables Editable in the Simulation Object Editor" on page 1413 and "68.5.3 Adding Platform Variable Bindings to the SOE" on page 1413.) The label for the check box is Has Wheels and it is of type DtRwBoolean, which matches the data type we set in the OPE file.

The QLineEdit widget (the data entry field) has the name `number_of_wheels` to reference the `$number-of-wheels` variable. The **enable_if_checked** property is set to `has_wheels`. This means if `has_wheels` is checked, **number_of_wheels** is enabled. We left the other properties blank since we do not express the number of wheels in any unit of measure.

---

You can also edit *ground-vehicle-param.ui* in Qt Designer, which is included with VR-Forces (*./bin64/designer.exe*). When you add a widget for a variable, the objectName property should be set to the variable name, for example, `number_of_wheels`.

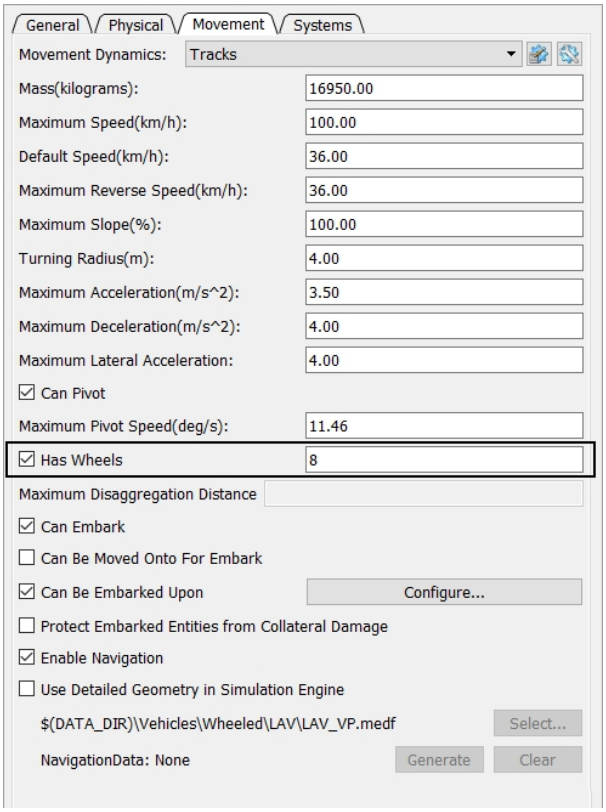
---

### Update the Platform in the Simulation Object Editor

Now we need to update the Simulation Object Editor to use the updated *ground-vehicle-param.ui* file.

1. Start the Simulation Object Editor.
2. Load an entity-level SMS file that you can edit. If you do not have one, see "61.7. Creating New Simulation Model Sets" on page 1244 for instructions.
3. Choose **File > Regenerate SMS Files**. An information prompt opens.
4. Click OK. The Simulation Object Editor is updated so that all ground vehicles now have the Has Wheels check box and the number of wheels data entry field (Figure 599).

**Figure 599. Has Wheels check box and data entry field**




5. You can now configure vehicles to have wheels and set the number of wheels.

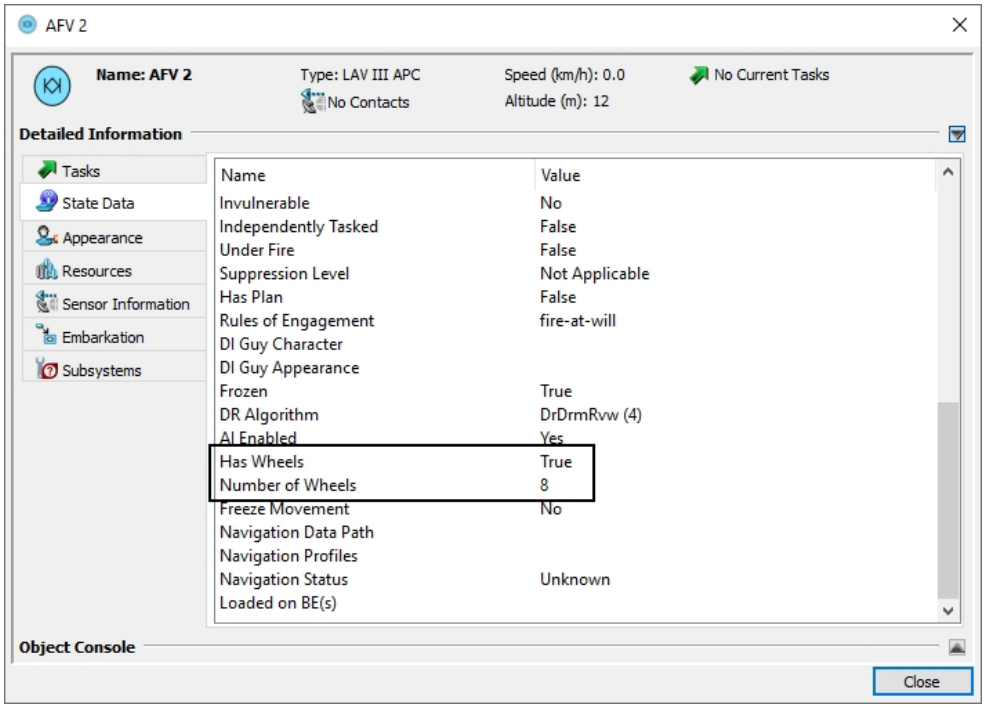
### Add the State Properties to the Information Dialog Box

If you want to see the values for the state properties in the Information dialog box, add the following lines to the DtEntityInformationPage **pageitem** element in *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default_guiConfiguration.gui*:

```
<informationitem
informationitemname="DtStatePropertyPageItem:hasWheels:Has Wheels"/>
<informationitem
informationitemname="DtStatePropertyPageItem:numWheels:Number of
Wheels"/>
```

Figure 600 shows the Information dialog box for an entity that is set to have wheels.

**Figure 600. Information dialog box with user state properties added**

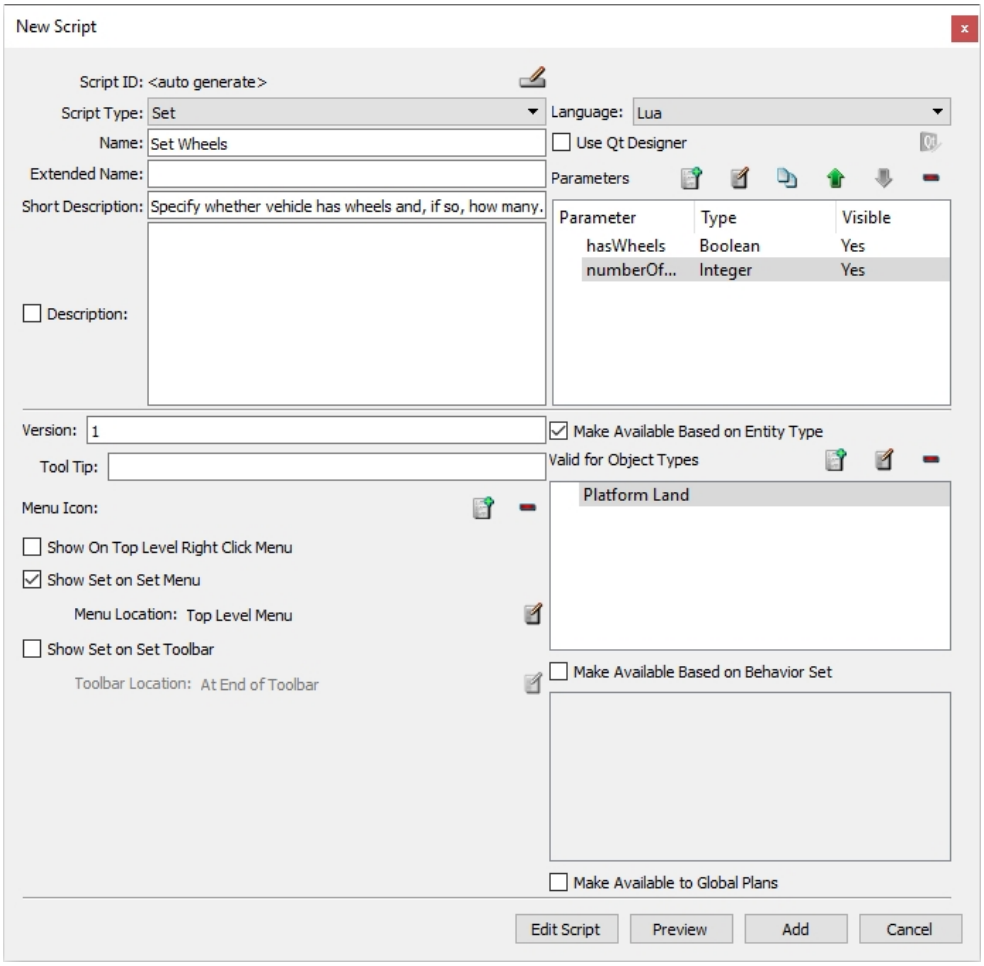



### Write a Scripted Set to Set the Number of Wheels

You might not want to configure every ground vehicle in the Simulation Object Editor with its wheel status. Maybe you just want to be able to set this in the GUI. To do that you can write a scripted set data request.

Figure 601 shows the setup for the Set Wheels scripted set. It has two parameters that match the state properties we added. It is valid for land entities and is on the Set menu.

**Figure 601. Set Wheels meta data**




The Lua script for Set Wheels is as follows. It starts out by getting the current values for the two state properties and printing them to the object console. Then it takes in the input from the Set Wheels dialog box and sets the state properties to the new values. Finally, it gets the state properties and prints them to the console to confirm that it worked. We have left out the generic comments and the unused functions and commented the code.

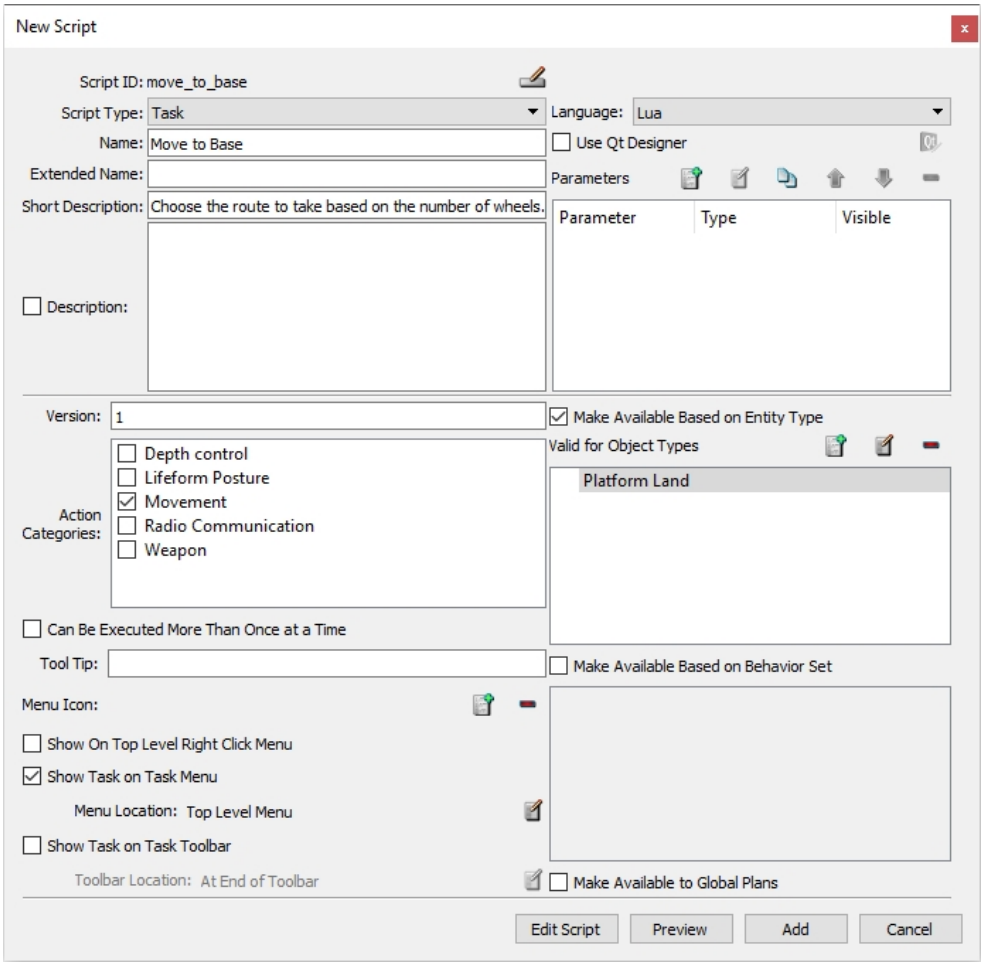
```
require "vrfutil"
function init()
   vrf:setTickWhilePaused(true)
-- get the current values for the state properties
   local haswheels = this:getStateProperty("hasWheels")
   local numwheels = this:getStateProperty("numWheels")
-- if the entity has wheels, print out that it has them and how many
-- this tests that we are getting the state properties correctly
   if haswheels then
       print("This vehicle has wheels.")
       print("Number of wheels is: ", numwheels)
   else
-- if no wheels print this instead
       print("This vehicle does not have wheels.")
```

```
    end
    finished = 0
    vrf:setTickPeriod(0.5)
 end
 function tick()
 -- this happens after we complete the Set Wheels dialog box and click
OK
 -- get the haswheels value from the dbx and set the state property
    haswheels = setParameters.hasWheels
    this:setStateProperty("hasWheels", haswheels)
 -- get the number of wheels from the dbx and set the state property
    wheels = setParameters.numberOfWheels
    this:setStateProperty("numWheels", wheels)

 -- test it again. get the property values and print out the results.
    newhaswheels = this:getStateProperty("hasWheels")
    newnumwheels = this:getStateProperty("numWheels")

    if newhaswheels then
        print("This vehicle has wheels.")
        print("Number of wheels is: ", newnumwheels)
    else
        print("This vehicle does not have wheels.")
    end
    finished = 1

    if finished == 1 then
        vrf:endSet()
    end
 end
```

### Write a Task that Uses the State Properties

Now we will write a script that uses the state properties. Remember that the premise of the exercise was based on the need for different vehicles to travel on different routes to reach a destination. In the scenario, we create three routes – Tracked, Heavy, and Light, that lead to the destination (Base). Our task, Move to Base, gets the `hasWheels` and `numWheels` state properties and based on what it finds gives a Move Along Route task to the entity using the appropriate route. There is no input to the task, so the New Scripted Task dialog box just sets up the name of the task and puts it on the menu (Figure 602).

**Figure 602. Move to Base meta data**




Here is the Lua script:

```
require "vrfutil"
function init()
   moveAlongRouteSubtaskID = -1

-- get the properties and print to the console for test purposes
   haswheels = this:getStateProperty("hasWheels")
   numwheels = this:getStateProperty("numWheels")
   if haswheels then
       print("This vehicle has wheels.")
       print("Number of wheels is: ", numwheels)
   else
       print("This vehicle does not have wheels.")
   end
   vrf:setTickPeriod(0.5)
end

function tick()
   if moveAlongRouteSubtaskID == -1 then
-- see if the vehicle has wheels. If yes, give proper move along task
```

```
-- based on the number of wheels
        if haswheels then
            if numwheels <= 4 then
                moveAlongRouteSubtaskID = vrf:startSubtask("move-along",
                    {route = "Light"} )
            end
            if numwheels > 4 then
                moveAlongRouteSubtaskID = vrf:startSubtask("move-along",
                    {route = "Heavy"} )
            end
-- if no wheels, assume tracked and send on tracked route.
        else
            moveAlongRouteSubtaskID = vrf:startSubtask("move-along",
                {route = "Tracked"} )
        end
    end
    if vrf:isSubtaskComplete(moveAlongRouteSubtaskID) then
        vrf:endTask(true)
    end
end
```

In your scenario, create a few ground vehicles. If necessary, specify the number of wheels they have. Give them the Move to Base task and they will pick the correct route to move along.

## 68.7. Configuring Units

All units have the **parameter-type** `aggregate-object-param`.

In entity-level scenarios, most functionality resides in entities and units have relatively few individual parameters. The principle function of the various elements is to specify controllers and formations, and to specify the **echelon-level** for the different levels of units.

In aggregate-level scenarios, aggregated units can have many systems and parameters. Disaggregated units, like their entity-level counterparts, have limited capabilities. Both types of unit have the **parameter-type** `aggregate-object-param`.

## 68.8. Configuring Tactical Graphics

The object parameter database includes parameters for tactical graphics. Tactical graphics provided with VR-Forces have the **parameter-type** vrf-base-object-param. You should not change the parameters for the objects provided with VR-Forces. However, if you are using the VR-Forces toolkit, you could create other types of tactical graphics. You would have to include parameters for them in the object parameter database.

## 68.9. Pathname Interpretation in Simulation Model Set Files

The files that make up a simulation model set, such as *.entity* files and system definition files, usually contain references to other files in the SMS. These supporting files may also have references to other configuration files. VR-Forces supports the file relationships by specifying files using relative paths and by defining directory variables. This allows you to maintain custom simulation model sets outside of the VR-Forces file hierarchy and not have to move them every time you install a new version of VR-Forces.

Examples of directory variables are in the SMS file and OPD file. The following lines from the *EntityLevel.sms* file show a binding (model-set-directory) and its use:

```
(simulation-model-set
    (variable-bindings
        (DtRwString
            (model-set-directory  "EntityLevel")
        )
        (DtRwString
            (opd-dir  "$(model-set-directory)")
        )
    ...
    )
    (opd-file  "$(model-set-directory)\vrfSim.opd")
    (physical-world  "$(model-set-directory)\physicalWorldParams.mtl")
    ...
)
```

Similarly, the *vrfSim.opd* file has bindings, which are then used in *.entity* files, as shown.

From *vrfSim.opd*:

```
(variable-bindings
    (DtRwString
    ...
        (system-dir "$(opd-dir)/vrfSim/systems"
        )
        (DtRwString
            (ammoselect-dir "$(opd-dir)/vrfSim/ammoselect"
        )
        ...
)
```

From *M1A2_Tank.entity* (**system-dir** variable):

```
<componentSystem systemName="damage"
    platform="@(system-dir)/damage/ground-heavy-armor.sysdef"/>
```

# 69. Configuring Sensors

This chapter explains how to configure sensors and sensor signatures.


69.1. Configuring Sensors ..... 1430
- 69.1.1 Adding a New Sensor to a Simulation Object ..... 1430
- 69.1.2 Editing a Sensor System Definition File ..... 1431
- 69.1.3 Specifying a Sensor Signature ..... 1432
- 69.1.4 Specifying Sensor Detection Probabilities ..... 1435
- 69.1.5 Adding Detection Types (Why Doesn't My Sensor Sense Anything?) ..... 1437
- 69.1.6 Adding a New Sensor Type ..... 1437
- 69.1.7 Illumination and Time of Day ..... 1440
- 69.1.8 Configuring the Effects of Rain on Radar ..... 1440

69.2. Detection Tables ..... 1441

# 69.1. Configuring Sensors

VR-Forces includes several sensor systems and you can add them to simulation objects using the Simulation Object Editor. This section provides additional details about how sensors are configured. A complete sensor configuration requires the following:

- One or more **componentSystem** elements in the *.entity* file for sensor systems.
- A list of sensor signature values in the *.entity* file for the sensor types that can detect the entity type.
- A signature propagator entry in the *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/physicalWorldParam.mtl* file (one per sensor type).

VR-Forces includes sensors such as radar, infrared, visual, magnetic anomaly detector (MAD), and sonar. The simulation objects configured in the object parameter database are configured with appropriate sensors and sensor signatures. For details about sensor components and how they work, please see API documentation.

## 69.1.1 Adding a New Sensor to a Simulation Object

It is recommended that you use the Simulation Object Editor to add new sensors to a simulation object. If you want to do it manually, you can edit its *.entity* file.

All sensors provided with VR-Forces are signature-object-sensors. They are distinguished by the domain in which they operate (for example, visual, radar, infrared, MAD, or sonar).

➤ **To add a sensor to a simulation object by editing its *.entity* file:**

1. Copy an existing **componentSystem** element in the *.entity* file and paste it into the file.
2. Change the **systemName** to be unique, for example, sensor-2.
3. Change the name of the system definition file to point to the sensor you want to add.
4. Change the values for the variables that must be specified for the sensor.

### Connecting a Sensor

If you add a sensor that has been configured to use the auto-connection feature (all sensors provided by MAK support auto-connections), its connections are handled automatically. (For details, please see "68.4.2 Configuring System Connections" on page 1407.)

If you add a new type of sensor, you must connect it to input through its input port and then send the data to its output port for the appropriate controller. The sensor gets input through its `object-types-to-detect` input port. It sends that data out through its `detected-objects` output port. The connections for the visual sensor, in *visual-sensor.sysdef* are:

```
(connect system:object-types-to-detect visual-sensor:object-types-to-detect)
(connect visual-sensor:detected-objects system:detected-objects)
(connect system:sensor-offset visual-sensor:sensor-offset)
```

If you were to create an acoustic sensor, its connections would look like this:

```
(connect system:object-types-to-detect acoustic-sensor:object-types-to-
detect)
(connect acoustic-sensor:detected-objects system:detected-objects)
(connect system:sensor-offset acoustic-sensor:sensor-offset)
```

### 69.1.2 Editing a Sensor System Definition File

The following example is from the visual sensor system definition file:

```
(visual-sensor
    (component-descriptor-type "signature-sensor-descriptor")
        (component-type  "signature-sensor")
        (min-tick-period  2.000000)
        (min-tick-period-variance  0.100000)
        (tick-period-uses-real-time False)
        (process-state-repository-name  "")
        (process-state-repository-type  "")
        (is-enabled True)
        (detect-only-hostile-forces False)
        (detection-types )
        (detect-destroyed-objects False)
        (sensor-geometry
            (in-range
                (range  $max-range)
            )
        )
        (sensor-domain  "visual")
        (sensor-offset  $sensor-position)
        (sensor-positional-error  0.000000)
        (detection-level-determinator
            (determinator-type  "signature-detection-level-determinator")
            (detection-level-to-set-hostility  3)
            (combat-identification-level-table-file
                "$(detection-dir)\std-visual-detection-table.csv")
        )
    )
)
(controllers
)
(actuators
)
(connections
    (connect system:object-types-to-detect
        visual-sensor:object-types-to-detect)
    (connect visual-sensor:detected-objects system:detected-objects)
    (connect system:sensor-offset visual-sensor:sensor-offset)
)
```

As you can see from viewing the file, most of the parameters that you would want to vary from entity to entity are variables whose values are set in the *.entity* file.

### 69.1.3 Specifying a Sensor Signature

A sensor signature indicates that a simulation object can be detected by other simulation objects that have a sensor for that signature. The value of the signature represents the maximum distance, at which the entity can be detected. However, this value is affected by modifiers and the calculations made by the propagator. (Technically, the signature does not assume a particular measurement unit. As implemented, distance is measured in kilometers.)

The modifiers specify multipliers for the base value, based on the current state of the object. For example, a simulation object might have a base value of 5.0 for its visual signature, and a modifier of 1.5 when moving. This means the signature of the entity is 7.5 when moving and 5.0 when not moving.

The following is the sensor signature block from a DI with M4:

```
(sensor-signatures
    (visual
        (base-signature  $visual-signature)
        (modifiers
            (file
                (external-file
                    (filename  "signatureRules/lifeform-visual-rules.mtl")
                )
            )
            (file
                (external-file
                    (filename  "signatureRules/visual-illumination-rules.mtl")
                )
            )
        )
    )
    (infrared
        (base-signature $infrared-signature)
        (modifiers )
    )
    (radar
        (base-signature $radar-signature)
        (modifiers )
    )
)
```

This sensor-signature block shows that a DI M4 can be detected by visual, infrared, and radar sensors. The base-signature values are variables. Their values come from the *.entity* file.

```
<sensorSignatures>
    <real paramName="visual-signature">1.2</real>
    <real paramName="infrared-signature">1.2</real>
    <real paramName="radar-signature">0.25</real>
</sensorSignatures>
```

The visual sensor has two modifiers. The file *lifeform-visual-rules.mtl* is as follows:

```
(signature-modifiers
    (speed-less-than
        (speed 1.0)
        (multiplier 0.5)
    )
)
```

This indicates that if the entity's speed is less than 1 KMH, multiply the base signature by 0.5. A slowly moving entity is less likely to be seen.

For details about the visual illumination rules modifier, please see "69.1.7 Illumination and Time of Day" on page 1440.

If you do not want a simulation object to be detectable by a particular type of sensor, remove the sensor signature from the *.entity* file. If you want it to be detectable by an additional sensor type, add its sensor signature to the *.entity* file. You can edit the values of sensor signatures in the Simulation Object Editor. You cannot add sensor signatures in the Simulation Object Editor.

VR-Forces has a set of predefined sensor signatures in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/extra/sensor-signatures.csv*. These values are used only in the Simulation Object Editor to quickly set standard sensor signatures for entities in the various sensor domains. The standard sensor signatures are also used if you edit the properties of a sensor system in the Simulation Object Editor.

Table 66 lists the sensor signatures that VR-Forces uses for general categories of simulation objects in *EntityLevel.sms*. (These categories do not match the tags list in the Simulation Object Editor. They represent a more granular approach to categorizing simulation objects for the purpose of applying a consistent set of sensor signatures.)

**Table 66. Entity-level sensor signatures**

| Entity Category (with example) | Visual | Radar | Infrared | Sonar Active | Sonar Passive | MAD |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Military Fixed Wing - stealth technology | 2.5 | 4 | 6 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Fixed Wing - Large Jet (Cargo) | 7 | 30 | 30 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Fixed Wing - Small Jet (Fighter) | 4 | 6 | 20 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Fixed Wing - Large Prop | 5 | 25 | 15 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Fixed Wing - Small Prop | 4 | 20 | 15 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Fixed Wing - Large UAV (Predator) | 5 | 20 | 16 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Fixed Wing - Small UAV | 2 | 2 | 1.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A |

**Table 66. Entity-level sensor signatures (continued)**

| Entity Category (with example) | Visual | Radar | Infrared | Sonar Active | Sonar Passive | MAD |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Military Fixed Wing - Micro UAV (Hand Launch) | 1 | 0.5 | 0.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Civilian Fixed Wing - Large (Passenger) | 10 | 40 | 35 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Civilian Fixed Wing - Medium (regional) | 7 | 30 | 30 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Civilian Fixed Wing - Small (Cesna) | 5 | 20 | 12 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Small Rotary Wing | 4 | 20 | 20 | N/A | N/A | 0.3 |
| Medium Rotary Wing | 5 | 25 | 25 | N/A | N/A | 0.3 |
| Large Rotary Wing | 7 | 30 | 30 | N/A | N/A | 0.3 |
| Military/Civilian Large Cargo Ship (tanker/cargo) | 35 | 40 | 30 | 10 | 8 | N/A |
| Military Aircraft Carrier | 35 | 40 | 30 | 10 | 8 | N/A |
| Military Cruiser | 25 | 30 | 25 | 8 | 6 | N/A |
| Military Destroyer | 20 | 28 | 25 | 8 | 6 | N/A |
| Military Frigate | 18 | 25 | 25 | 8 | 6 | N/A |
| Military Large Patrol (Corvette) | 18 | 25 | 25 | 6 | 4 | N/A |
| Military Small Patrol (covered) | 10 | 25 | 25 | 3 | 2 | N/A |
| Military Small (zodiac) | 4 | 6 | 8 | 2 | 1.5 | N/A |
| Civilian Large Commercial Passenger (Cruise) | 45 | 50 | 50 | 10 | 8 | N/A |
| Civilian Medium Commercial | 25 | 40 | 35 | 8 | 5 | N/A |
| Civilian Small Commercial (tug) | 15 | 30 | 35 | 4 | 3 | N/A |
| Civilian Private Medium | 15 | 25 | 25 | 4 | 3 | N/A |
| Civilian Private Small (24->30ft day cruiser) | 10 | 25 | 25 | 3 | 2 | N/A |
| Civilian Private Micro (jet ski) | 5 | 9 | 10 | 1 | 2 | N/A |
| Civilian Sailboat (J-24) | 15 | 20 | 10 | 2 | 0.5 | N/A |
| Small Lifeboat (bright colors) | 7 | 12 | 15 | 1 | 1 | N/A |

**Table 66. Entity-level sensor signatures (continued)**

| Entity Category (with example) | Visual | Radar | Infrared | Sonar Active | Sonar Passive | MAD |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Large Lifeboat (bright colors) | 10 | 15 | 15 | 1 | 1 | N/A |
| Military Submarine - Large (Ohio) | 2 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0.01 | N/A |
| Military Submarine - Medium (LA) | 1.5 | 3 | 2 | 0.75 | 0.01 | N/A |
| Military Submarine - Small | 1.5 | 3 | 2 | 0.5 | 0.25 | N/A |
| Military Submarine - Torpedo (non decoy) | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | N/A |
| Human (no camouflage) | 1.2 | 0.25 | 1.2 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Human (with camouflage) | 0.5 | 0.25 | 0.75 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Human in Water (with bright vest) | 2 | 2 | 1.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Human in Water (no vest) | 0.75 | 2 | 1.5 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Civilian Passenger Car | 4 | 0.5 | 4 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Civilian Truck/Bus | 6 | 1 | 6 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Artillery - large | 3 | 0.75 | 4 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Artillery - small | 1 | 0.5 | 2 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Large vehicle (Logistics) | 5 | 1 | 5 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Medium vehicle (Tank) | 3 | 0.5 | 4 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Small vehicle (Jeep/Technical) | 1 | 1 | 2 | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Military Micro vehicle (human sized or smaller) | 0.5 | 0.25 | 1 | N/A | N/A | N/A |

### 69.1.4 Specifying Sensor Detection Probabilities

Sensor systems can have a detection probability table. If a sensor system does not have a detection probability table, it always detects targets (assuming they meet detection criteria such as being in line-of-sight, within the detection range, are not being jammed, and so on) and the combat identification level (CID) always advances as the apparent signature increases over time. By adding a detection probability table to a sensor, you can add variability to a sensor's ability to detect targets and update information about them.

The systems provided with VR-Forces do not have detection probability tables.

A detection probability table associates apparent signatures with detection probabilities. (Apparent signature refers to the radar return strength, if the sensor is a radar, or to the apparent brightness of a target on the sensor in question. For more information about apparent signatures, please see "69.2. Detection Tables" on page 1441.) The detection probability is applied each detection period of the sensor. For radar, the detection period models the sensor sweep, such that the probability is applied individually for each sensor sweep.

The probability of detection affects detection as follows:

- Initial detection. If an object is not on the current detection list, the probability of detection is applied after the apparent signature is calculated. If a random draw against the probability passes, the target passes to the CID detection table calculation to determine the CID level. If the random draw fails, then the object is treated as if it was not detected. It is processed again on the next sensor detection run.
- Continuing detection. If an object is on the detected list, a random draw is done against the detection probability for its current apparent signature. If this passes, the entity remains detected as normal. Its location and CID level are updated if it is appropriate to do so. If this check fails, the entity remains on the detection list, however the data in the contact information is not updated with any new data, including location, CID level, and so on. On the next sensor detection run, this target is processed again as part of the continuing detection section of the sensor.

The following example shows how you could add a sensor detection probability table to the active-radar-sensor system (*./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/sensors/active-radar-sensor.sysdef*). (The system included with VR-Forces does not have a sensor detection probability table.)

```
(active-radar-sensor-system
    (systems )
    (sensors
        (radar-sensor
            (component-descriptor-type "radar-signature-sensor-descriptor")
            (component-type  "radar-signature-sensor")
            ...
            (detection-period  2.000000)
            (detection-probability
                (signature 1.0
                    (probability 0.2)
                )
                (signature 1.5
                    (probability 0.2)
                )
                (signature 2.0
                    (probability 0.2)
                )
                (signature 2.5
                    (probability 0.2)
```

```
                    )
                    (signature 3.0
                        (probability 0.2)
                    )
                    (signature 3.5
                        (probability 0.2)
                    )
                    (signature 4.0
                        (probability 0.2)
                    )
                )
                (detection-period-variance 0.5)
                ...
            )
        )
    )
```

### 69.1.5 Adding Detection Types (Why Doesn't My Sensor Sense Anything?)

Sometimes VR-Forces users add a sensor to a simulation object and then wonder why it does not detect anything. This problem occurs when a simulation object does not have a weapon. In this case, the sensor's `object-types-to-detect` parameter is empty. To have a simulation object that does not have a weapon detect other simulation objects, specify object types to detect in the `detection-types` parameter in the sensor's system definition file, for example:

```
(detection-types
   (entity-type 1 (1 3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
   (entity-type 1 (1 4 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
)
```

You can also debug an object's failure to fire on another object by comparing them with the Damage Probabilities utility. For details, please see "71.4. Viewing Inter-Object Damage Probability Results" on page 1482.

### 69.1.6 Adding a New Sensor Type

You can easily add new sensor types to your simulation objects. Suppose that you want to add an acoustic sensor. You would do the following:

1. Add a block to the signature-propagator-params block in *physicalWorldParams.mtl*.
2. Add a sensor **componentSystem** element to each entity that can detect targets acoustically.
3. Add a sensor signature to each simulation object that can be detected acoustically.

#### Configuring a Signature Propagator

The *physicalWorldParams.mtl* file specifies the list of sensors available and the propagator to use for each. The following is a portion of this file:

```
(physical-world-params
```

```
    (signature-propagator-params
        (radar
            (propagator-descriptor-type "standard-propagator-descriptor")
            (propagator-type "standard-propagator")
            (check-line-of-sight True)
        )
        (visual
            (propagator-descriptor-type "standard-propagator-descriptor")
            (propagator-type "visual-propagator")
            (check-line-of-sight True)
            ...
        )
    )
)
```

If you edit the file to add an acoustic sensor, it might look like the following:

```
(physical-world-params
    (signature-propagator-params
        (visual
            (propagator-descriptor-type "standard-propagator-descriptor")
            (propagator-type "visual-propagator")
            (check-line-of-sight True)
        )
        (acoustic
            (propagator-descriptor-type "standard-propagator-descriptor")
            (propagator-type "standard-propagator")
            (check-line-of-sight False)
        )
        ...
    )
)
```

You do not have to be able to see a simulation object to hear it, so you do not need to check line of sight.

### Adding a Sensor Component

To add a new sensor component, follow the procedure in "69.1.1 Adding a New Sensor to a Simulation Object" on page 1430. A new acoustic sensor might look like the following:

```
(acoustic-sensor
    (component-descriptor-type "signature-sensor-descriptor")
        (component-type  "signature-sensor")
        (min-tick-period  2.000000)
        (min-tick-period-variance  0.100000)
        (tick-period-uses-real-time False)
        (process-state-repository-name  "")
        (process-state-repository-type  "")
        (detect-only-hostile-forces False)
        (detection-types )
        (detect-destroyed-objects False)
```

```
        (sensor-geometry
            (in-range
                (range  $max-range)
            )
        )
        (sensor-domain  "acoustic")
        (sensor-offset  $sensor-position)
        (sensor-positional-error  0.000000)
        (detection-level-determinator
            (determinator-type  "signature-detection-level-determinator")
            (detection-level-to-set-hostility  3)
            (combat-identification-level-table-file
                "$(detection-dir)\std-acoustic-detection-table.csv")
        )
    )
)
(controllers
)
(actuators
)
(connections
    (connect system:object-types-to-detect
        acoustic-sensor:object-types-to-detect)
    (connect acoustic-sensor:detected-objects system:detected-objects)
)
```

---

**!** You can call the sensor whatever you want, but the name must not start with a number.

---

### Adding a Sensor Signature

If you add a new sensor, you need to add a signature for it to each simulation object that can be detected by the sensor. If you add an acoustic sensor, a sensor signature might look like the following:

```
(sensor-signatures
    (visual
        (base-signature  4.000000)
        (modifiers )
    )
    (acoustic
        (base-signature  2.000000)
        (modifiers )
    )
    ...
)
```

You can probably see simulation objects at a greater distance than you can hear them, so the acoustic sensor has a lower base-signature value than the visual sensor.

### 69.1.7 Illumination and Time of Day

Visual sensors take into account the time of day. They do this through an illumination value that modifies the visual sensor signature. The modification value is configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/signatureRules/visual-illumination-rules.mtl*:

```
(signature-modifiers
    (environmental
        (modifier-coefficients 1.0 0.1)
    )
)
```

"69.1.3 Specifying a Sensor Signature" on page 1432 shows how this file can be referenced in a sensor signature. Given this file, the modifier coefficients are applied to the illumination value, as follows:

```
Multiplier = 1.0 * illumination + 0.1
```

The illumination value is derived from the time of day based on parameters in *Global-Environment.ope*:

```
...
(actuators
    (global-environment-actuator
        ...
        (sunrise-time  21600.000000)
        (sunset-time  64800.000000)
        (daylight-illumination  1.000000)
        (night-illumination  0.100000)
        (day-night-transition-time  7200.000000)
    )
)
```

where:

- **sunrise-time** is the time at which the daylight model changes from night to day, in seconds past midnight.
- **sunset-time** is the time at which the daylight model changes from day to night, in seconds past midnight.
- **daylight-illumination** is the percent illumination during the full daylight hours.
- **night-illumination** is the percent illumination during the full night hours.
- **day-night-transition-time** is the period of time, centered on sunrise and sunset times, where the illumination value transitions from daylight to night, or night to daylight. During this time period, the illumination level is a linear progression between the night and daylight illumination levels.

### 69.1.8 Configuring the Effects of Rain on Radar

VR-Forces can take into account the effect of rain on radar sensors. It does so based on the amount of rainfall per hour, the range from the sensor to the target, and the **rain-to-attenuation-coefficient** parameter in the radar block of the

*physicalWorldParams.mtl* file in an SMS:

```
(radar
    (propagator-descriptor-type "radar-propagator-descriptor")
    (propagator-type "radar-propagator")
    (check-line-of-sight True)
    (default-feature-los-query "MAK_LOF_OBSTACLE")
    (high-altitude-feature-los-query "NONE")
    (rain-to-attenuation-coefficient 0.05)
)
```

The higher the coefficient value, the more that rain reduces the effective range of the radar. Rain is measured in millimeters per hour, where the maximum rain setting in VR-Forces is equal to 20 mm/h.

## 69.2. Detection Tables

The detection tables determine the level of knowledge that a simulation object has of detected simulation objects. The detection level is used in the Detect Entity condition in plans.

Detection tables are comma-delimited files that are most easily read in a spreadsheet. As illustrated in Figure 603, each column represents a detection interval, in seconds, from 0 through 160. Each row represents an apparent signature from one through 4. (An apparent signature is a simulation object's absolute signature after being modified by factors such as terrain and distance. For details, please see API documentation.)

**Figure 603. Detection table displayed in a spreadsheet**

| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | K |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | CID Table-radar | Version 1.0 | | Detection | Interval | (seconds) | -> | | | | |
| 2 | | | 0 | 1 | 5 | 10 | 20 | 40 | 80 | 160 | |
| 3 | Apparent | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | |
| 4 | Signature | 1.5 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | |
| 5 | \| | 2 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 4 | |
| 6 | V | 2.5 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | |
| 7 | | 3 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 4 | |
| 8 | | 4 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | | | |

The detection level is determined by finding the intersection of the apparent signature and the detection interval. For example, if a simulation object with an apparent signature of 3 has been detected for 40 seconds, its detection certainty level is 4 (full knowledge).

The apparent signature is the ratio of the sensor signature given for the simulation object (in kilometers) to the actual range. So if the apparent signature = 1, the detection interval shows the increase in combat ID level over time when the target is at the range given by the sensor signature. If the apparent signature is 2, the detection interval shows the detection progression at 1/2 that range, and so on.

The numbers in the table represent the certainty levels as follows:

- 1 – Detected.
- 2 – Classified.
- 3 – Identified.
- 4 – Full Knowledge.

For details about CID detection levels, please see"9.4. Detecting Targets" on page 285.

# 70. Configuring Weapon Systems

This chapter describes configuration files for weapon systems in entity-level scenarios.


70.1. Introduction to Weapon Systems ..... 1444
70.1.1 The Weapon System System Definition Template File ..... 1445
70.1.2 The Weapon System System Definition File ..... 1447
70.2. Configuring Direct Fire Weapons ..... 1450
70.2.1 Sensing Targets ..... 1451
70.2.2 Configuring Ammunition ..... 1453
70.2.3 Hit Probability Tables ..... 1454
70.2.4 Damage Probability Tables ..... 1456
70.3. Configuring Missile Systems ..... 1456
70.3.1 Missile Launcher ..... 1457
70.3.2 Missile Projectile ..... 1458
70.3.3 Laser-Guided Missile Launcher ..... 1458
70.3.4 Laser-Guided Missile Projectile ..... 1458
70.4. Configuring Indirect Fire Weapons ..... 1459
70.5. Configuring Fixed Weapons ..... 1460
70.6. Configuring Bomb Bay Weapon Systems ..... 1461
70.7. Configuring Weapon Systems in the SOE ..... 1461
70.7.1 Specifying Target Types ..... 1462
70.7.2 Configuring Hit Probability ..... 1462
70.7.3 Configuring the Ammunition to Use ..... 1463
70.7.4 Using the Target Configuration Assistant ..... 1464
70.7.5 Configuring the Target Priorities ..... 1466
70.7.6 Configuring the Target Region ..... 1467
70.7.7 Configuring Missile Launcher Systems in the SOE ..... 1467
70.7.8 Configuring Explosive Devices ..... 1468

# 70.1. Introduction to Weapon Systems

Simulation objects in entity-level scenarios have many weapon systems. They all fall into one of the following types:

- Ballistic direct fire, such as rifles and the main gun on a tank.
- Self-propelled or guided munitions, such as missiles and rockets.
- Indirect fire, such as artillery, naval guns, mortars, and hand grenades.
- Fixed munition, such as mines and IEDs.
- Bomb bay. A weapon system for dropping bombs.

You can create and edit weapon systems by editing configuration files in a text editor or in the Simulation Object Editor. The preferred method is to use the SOE. It provides a point-and-click interface, handles all syntax issues, and includes error checking to ensure that all components required by a system are present.

Weapon systems are defined by a system definition template (*.template_sysdef*) file that includes component definitions (controllers, actuators, and sensors) and a system definition file (*.sysdef*) that contains system-specific parameter values and targeting information, such as ammunition, hit probabilities, and target priorities. Typically a weapon system template includes at least one controller that controls aiming and firing and an actuator that models the physical characteristics of the weapon. Some weapons create munitions when they fire, so the engagement process involves an additional simulation object with its own movement system, weapon (warhead) system, or both.

All objects with weapon systems can engage using a task such as Fire At Target, Fire For Effect, Throw Grenade, and so on.

Simulation objects often engage targets autonomously. Objects that engage autonomously require a sensor to detect targets. Weapon systems are configured to engage certain target types, and this information is passed to the sensor so that the appropriate enemy objects can be detected.

Automatic engagements are controlled by a target selection controller, which is a component separate from any one weapon system. This controller is specified in the platform (*.ope*) file. Weapons pass information to and from the target selection controller through a weapon interface. This is a process state repository used to keep track of targets for the weapon and the number of rounds to fire at that target. No port is used, no connections are necessary; it is created for you. The target selection controller keeps a list of all weapon systems' weapon-interfaces, one for each system.

Weapon systems generate the fire interactions that are published on the network for an engagement. Detonation actions may be generated by the weapon or by the munition it launches.

Once there is a detonation, damage is determined by the target. Damage may be configured in one of two ways: by specifying the power of the munition and the damage caused to a target by a detonation of a given power, or by specifying damage probabilities for each munition type against each target type. For more information, please see "71.1.1 Calculating Damage from Munitions" on page 1470.

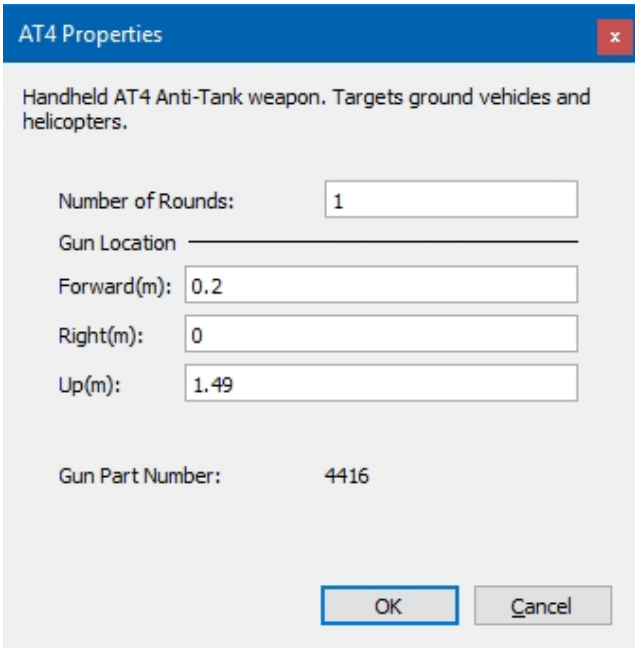
Throughout this chapter, we include snippets from system definition files and other configuration files, but usually without explaining what the various parameters mean. If you want to know more about the parameters, view the referenced systems in the Simulation Object Editor. It has tooltips for most parameters.

### 70.1.1 The Weapon System System Definition Template File

System definition template files (*.template_sysdef*) contain the sensors, controllers, and actuators that are common to a category of weapon or damage system. They contain variable bindings for attributes that are common to the system type and which are given specific values in the individual weapon system and damage system files. They also contain metadata that is used in the SOE.

The following code is a highly edited version of *handheld-launchers.template.sysdef*. It illustrates how components, resources, and metadata are configured in a template file. Notice that the **meta-data** block includes parameter data for the Gun Location and Gun Part Number parameters. These parameters are editable on a per-entity basis when a handheld launcher system is added to an entity (Figure 604).

**Figure 604. Properties for AT4 handheld weapon**




The number of rounds parameter is a variable binding in the template file and is given a default value in the system files that use this template, for example, *handheld-AT4.sysdef* (discussed in "70.1.2 The Weapon System System Definition File" on page 1447).

```
(weapon-handheld-AT4
    (controllers
        (human-acquire
```

```
            ...
            (target-acquire-criteria $target-acquire-criteria)
        )
        (main-gun-control
            ...
            (load-ammo-time  $load-ammo-time (default 5.00000))
            (unload-ammo-time  $unload-ammo-time)
            (disabled-by-suppression True)
            (targeting-control-table $targeting-control-table)
        )
        (aim-at-point
            ...
        )
        (aim-weapon
            ...
        )
    )
    (actuators
        (weapon-state
            ...
        )
        (main-gun
            ...
            (art-part-list
                (primary-gun
                    (art-part-type $gun-art-part-type)
                    (parent-part-type -1)
                    (attach-point $attach-point)
                    ...
                    )
                )
            )
            (muzzle-speed  $muzzle-speed (default 250.0000))
            (hit-probability-table $hit-probability-table)
            (range-name  $range-name)
        )
    )
    (connections
        ...
    )
    (resources
        (M84mm
            (resource-type "integer-resource")
            (amount $num-rounds)
            (full-amount $num-rounds)
        )
    )
    (meta-data
        (system-name  "Handheld Launcher")
```

```
            (system-description  "Template for system will allow the Simulation
                    Object to be given the ability to add a handled
                    launcher to a human.")
            (system-categories "weapon")
            (allowed-state-repository-types "human-param")
            (parameter-data-list
                (vector-parameter-data
                    ...
                    (display-label  "Gun Location")
                    (default-value  0.200000 0.000000 -1.490000)
                    ...
                )
                (art-part-parameter-data
                    ...
                    (display-label  "Gun Part Number")
                    ...
                )
            )
            (meta-data-entry-list )
        )
    )
```

### 70.1.2 The Weapon System System Definition File

System definition files provide weapon-specific values for the variable bindings in the template file. They reference the template file that they use so that VR-Forces can use the correct components and make the necessary connections for the weapon system. Weapon-specific system definition files also include a targeting control table and a hit probabilities table.

---

This section explains the layout of the weapon-specific system definition file for the benefit of advanced VR-Forces users. However, it is recommended that you edit weapon systems using the Simulation Object Editor.

---

The targeting control table lists each target type that this weapon can fire on and the ammunition types that it can use for that target. If it can use more than one ammunition type, it lists them from the highest to lowest priority. (For more information about targeting control tables, please see "70.2.1 Sensing Targets" on page 1451.)

The hit probability table specifies the probability that the weapon can hit a target as a range list or a coefficient list. For more information about hit probability tables, please see "70.2.3 Hit Probability Tables" on page 1454.

By default the metadata in a template file is merged with the metadata in the weapon-specific system file for use in the SOE. If you do not want a system file to merge its metadata with the template file, add the **merge-with-sub-systems** variable to the metadata and set it to False, for example:

```
(meta-data
    (system-name "Light Armor damage model")
    ...
    (meta-data-entry-list )
    (ui-filename "")
    (merge-with-sub-systems False)
)
```

The following example is an edited version of *handheld-AT4.sysdef*, which references *handheld-launchers.template.sysdef*. Notice how it provides values for the **load-ammo-time** and **unload-ammo-time** variables.

```
(weapon-handheld-AT4
    (systems
        (handheld-launcher
            (variable-bindings
                (DtRwReal
                    (load-ammo-time  5.000000)
                )
                (DtRwReal
                    (unload-ammo-time  0.000000)
                )
                (DtTargetAcquireCriteria
                    (target-acquire-criteria
                        (target
                            (entity-type  1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 -1)
                            (time-to-acquire  1.500000)
                            (check-maximum-speed-to-acquire True)
                            (max-speed-of-target  10.000000)
                            (check-elevation-angle-to-acquire False)
                            (max-elevation-angle-to-acquire  1.570796)
                            (check-elevation-to-acquire False)
                            (max-elevation-to-acquire  500.000000)
                        )
                        ...
                    )
                )
                (DtTargetingControlTable
                    (targeting-control-table
                        (ammunition-list
                            (M84mm
                                (amount $num-rounds)
                            )
                        )
```

```
                (entity-target-priorities
                    (priority-entry
                        (target-type 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 -1)
                        (priorities "M84mm")
                    )
                    (priority-entry
                        (target-type 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
                        (priorities "M84mm")
                    )
                    ...
                )
                (max-targets  1)
                (target-region
                    (and
                        (in-range
                            (range  2100.000000)
                        )
                        (not
                            (in-range
                                (range  30.000000)
                            )
                        )
                    )
                )
                (fire-with-spot-report-only False)
            )
        )
        (DtRwReal
            (muzzle-speed  285.000000)
        )
        (DtRangeProbabilityTable
            (hit-probability-table
                (entity-range
                    (entity-type  1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
                    (range-determinant
                        (range-list
                            (range 100.000000
                                (probability 0.90000)
                            )
                            (range 200.000000
                                (probability 0.5000)
                            )
                            (range 500.000000
                                (probability 0.30000)
                            )
                            (range 750.000000
                                (probability 0.10000)
                            )
                        )
                    )
```

```
                        )
                        ...
                    )
                )
                (DtRwString
                    (range-name  "Handheld AT4")
                )
            )
            (system-definition
                (filename  "$(system-dir)\weapons\templates\handheld-
launchers.template_sysdef")
            )
            (is-enabled True)
            (part-of-roll-up False)
            (use-parent-system-resource-manager True)
        )
    )
    (connections
        (connect system:all handheld-launcher:all)
        (connect handheld-launcher:all system:all)
    )
    (meta-data
        (system-name  "AT4")
        (system-description  "Handheld AT4 Anti-Tank weapon. Targets ground
                    vehicles and helicopters.")
        (allowed-state-repository-types "human-param")
        (system-categories "weapon" "aimable-weapon")
        (parameter-data-list
            (int-parameter-data
                (parameter-name  "num-rounds")
                (variable-type  "DtRwInt")
                (display-label  "Number of Rounds")
                (display-units  "")
                (source-units  "")
                (default-value  1)
            )
        )
        (meta-data-entry-list )
    )
)
```

## 70.2. Configuring Direct Fire Weapons

Entities that have direct fire weapons can fire in response to a Fire at Target task and they can detect targets through their sensors and automatically fire at the targets. Entities have to be able to:

- Know what targets they can fire at.
- Detect the targets.

- Determine the ammunition to use.
- Acquire the target and fire at it.

If you want to create a completely new type of weapon system, you must write code for the sensors, controllers, and actuators that it requires. However, if you need a system that is similar to an existing system, you can often create the new system by copying and modifying the configuration of the existing system. Although you can do so by directly editing configuration files, the recommended way to add and edit weapon systems is to use the Simulation Object Editor. To do so, you must understand how to:

- Configure a weapon system.
- Specify the simulation object types that can use the system.
- Specify the simulation object types that can be damaged by the system.
- Specify the amount of damage a simulation object receives from a munition.

The files that manage these relationships are:

- The weapon system template. The template configures the components common to similar types of weapons, such as ballistic guns or missile launchers.
- The weapon system. Defines a specific system, such as a 30mm gun, the simulation object types that it can target, ammunition types it can use, hit probabilities, and the simulation object types that can use it.
- The damage system. Specifies the types of munitions that a simulation object is vulnerable to and the damage file to use to determine the probability of damage.

A direct fire weapon does the following:

1. Acquires the target.
2. Selects the ammunition for the target using the ammo select file.
3. Checks that it has that resource.
4. Determines if it hits the target.
5. Sends a fire interaction.
6. After a delay based on distance and muzzle speed, it sends a detonation interaction.

## 70.2.1 Sensing Targets

Simulation objects that have direct fire weapons will detect targets through their sensors and automatically fire at the targets. Sensor systems can specify what types of targets to detect (using the **detection-types** parameter). The weapon systems can also tell the sensors what they want to target.

Each weapon system has an associated weapon interface. The **targeting-control** parameter takes a list of desired target types and creates a target selection criteria object, which is then set in the weapon interface. The following code shows the targeting control for the *120mm-gun.sysdef* file.

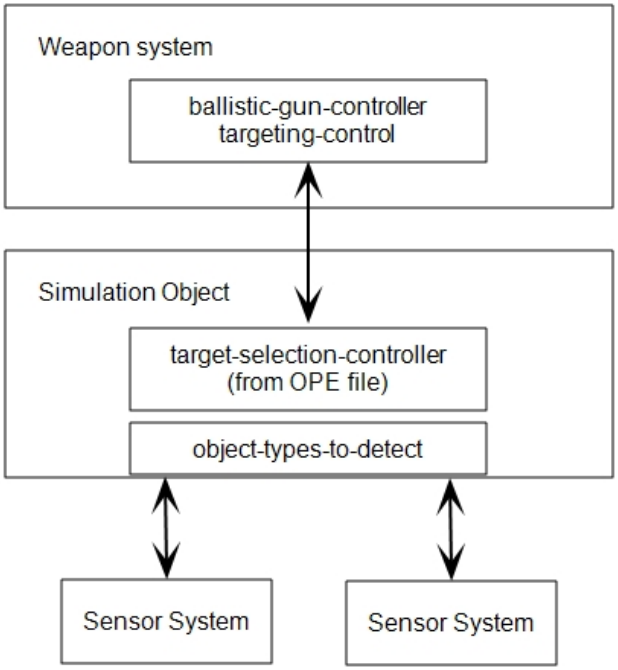
```
(DtTargetingControlTable
```

```
    (targeting-control-table
        (ammunition-list
            (M829A1-AP-120mm
                (amount $num-ap-rounds)
            )
            (M830-HEAT-120mm
                (amount $num-heat-rounds)
            )
        )
        (entity-target-priorities
            (priority-entry
                (target-type 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 -1)
                (priorities "M829A1-AP-120mm" "M830-HEAT-120mm")
            )
            (priority-entry
                (target-type 1 1 -1 2 -1 -1 -1)
                (priorities "M829A1-AP-120mm" "M830-HEAT-120mm")
            )
            ...
        )
        (max-targets  1)
        (target-region )
        (fire-with-spot-report-only False)
    )
)
```

The platform file for the entity uses its target selection controller to iterate through each weapon interface to create a list of object types to detect, which it outputs on its **object-types-to-detect** port.

Each sensor on the entity connects to this port to know what types of objects to detect (Figure 605).

**Figure 605. Direct fire sensor input**




The simulation object gathers the detected objects from all the sensors and stores it in the entity's state repository. (A state repository is a read-write repository of information that is available to all entity components.) The target selection controller selects a target for the weapon.

## 70.2.2 Configuring Ammunition

The targeting control table ammunition-list block specifies the ammunition types that a weapon system can use. Each priority entry in the table specifies a target type (using the best match method) and a space-separated prioritized list of ammunition that should be used for that type of target (highest priority listed first). (The best match method is described in "The Best Match Method" on page 1395. For an example of a targeting control table, please see "70.2.1 Sensing Targets" on page 1451.)

The ammunition types that you can include in a weapon system's ammunition-list are specified in *./data/simulationModelSets/<sms>/ammunitionParams.mtl*. The Simulation Object Editor references this file when it displays the lists of ammunition that you can add to a weapon system. Each ammunition type entry in *ammunitionParams.mtl* specifies a set of parameters that define its characteristics and how it is represented in the Simulation Object Editor, as follows:

- `munition-type` – 7 digit object type enumeration. This is the object type that is used in the fire and detonation interactions created, and should NOT contain -1s.
- **tracer-type** – 7 digit object type enumeration. This parameter is optional. Use it if you want a weapon to support tracer rounds.

- warhead – VR-Link warhead enumeration value to use in fire and detonation interactions for this munition.
- **guidance-mode**. How the munition is guided, if applicable. Options are:
  - 0 - None.
  - 1 - Laser.
  - 2 - Optical Wire.
  - 3 - Radar.
  - 4 - Thermal.
- **gui-label**. The string used to identify the munition in the Simulation Object Editor.
- **targets**. Object type enumerations for the simulation objects that the weapon can target.
- **tags**. The tags used for filtering the munition in the Simulation Object Editor object lists.

The following code shows two entries in *ammunitionParams.mtl*, a missile and a ballistic munition:

```
(spiral-missile
    (munition-type 2 2 222 1 8 0 0)
    (warhead  0)
    (guidance-mode  0)
    (gui-label  "AT-6 Spiral Missile")
    (targets
        (target-type 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
        (target-type 1 3 -1 11 1 -1 -1)
    )
    (tags "3D Model" "Military" "Munition")
)
(AT-30mm
    (munition-type 2 2 222 2 2 0 0)
    (tracer-type 2 2 222 2 2 0 0)
    (warhead  0)
    (guidance-mode  0)
    (gui-label  "AT-30mm")
    (targets
        (target-type 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
    )
    (tags "mm gun")
)
```

### 70.2.3 Hit Probability Tables

A weapon system definition file includes a hit probability table. This table is used by the system's actuator to determine whether it hits a target that it fires upon. A hit

**entity-range** entry is not used, and can be something descriptive. An **entity-range** entry has the form:

- `entity-type` – 7 digit entity type enumeration, which may use -1s as wildcards.
- `range-determinant` – a range determinant can be either a list of probability-range entries with the name “range-list”, or a probability-coefficient list with the name “coefficients”.
- `range-list` – a list of probability-range entries. A probability-range entry has a name, “range”, a range value (in meters), and a list of probability entries. The entry applies to targets in the range from the last entry to the current one (or from 0.0 in the case of the first entry). Each probability entry has a name that the table user uses to find the probability value it is interested in and the value itself (a real number between 0.0 and 1.0.) The ballistic gun looks for the probability entry with the name “probability”.

- For ranges that are greater than the last specified range, the probability is zero.
- The range for missiles is the range from the missile to the target, not from the entity that fired the missile.

- `coefficients` – a coefficient probability list is a list of coefficient probability entries. Each entry has a probability name and the coefficients of a standard polynomial that can be used with a given range to determine the specified probability. The order of the polynomial is determined by the number of coefficients provided. For example, an entry of:

```
(probability -5.00000E-008 -300000E-012 1.0000)
```

indicates that the formula to use for a given range *r* would be:

$(-5.00000E\text{-}008 * r^2) + (-300000E\text{-}012 * r) + 1.0$

Values calculated will be constrained to be between 0.0 and 1.0. Zero values are factored out, for example:

```
(probability -5.00000E-008 0.0000 1.0000)
```

indicates that the formula to use for a given range *r* would be:

$(- 5.00000E\text{-}008 * r^2) + (0.0 * r) + 1.0$

The following is an example of the hit probability table for the handheld-AK47 system:

```
(DtRangeProbabilityTable
    (hit-probability-table
        (entity-range
            (entity-type  3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
            (range-determinant
                (range-list
                    (range 10.000000
                        (probability 1.00000)
                    )
```

```
                        (range 200.000000
                            (probability 0.9000)
                        )
                        (range 550.000000
                            (probability 0.70000)
                        )
                        (range 3600.000000
                            (probability 0.01000)
                        )
                    )
                )
            )
        )
    )
```

### 70.2.4 Damage Probability Tables

The damage actuator uses damage probability tables specified by its component descriptor to determine direct and indirect fire damage. Damage tables are in the damage systems in *./data/simulationModelSets/<sms>/vrfSim/systems/damage*. A damage probability table has a list of surface entries, which provide a sub-table for each surface upon which a round might detonate. The name of the surface entry is the surface name used in the damage model.

For the damage-by-power damage system, VR-Forces has damage probability tables for each power type. For more information, please see "Configuring the Damage File for Damage-By-Power" on page 1476.

For the damage-by-ammo-type damage system, VR-Forces has damage probability tables for direct fire and collateral damage. A munition type does not need to have both types of probability table if one of the types is not appropriate. For example, an M16 does not have a collateral damage file. Conversely, an artillery shell does not have a direct fire probability table. For more information, please see "D.7. Configuring Damage-by-Ammo-Type" on page 1629.

## 70.3. Configuring Missile Systems

Missiles are launched by an object's missile launcher system, which creates a missile entity. The missile flies itself and detonates based on the use of a hit probability table or on the type of missile.

If a missile launcher system definition specifies a hit probability table, when the missile is created, VR-Forces checks to see if the object type of the target is in the table. If it is, a random number is drawn and compared to the range-based probability. If it is determined that the missile should hit the target, the missile begins its normal fly out. If it collides with the terrain or another entity before reaching the target, it detonates and does not hit the target. However, if the missile does not collide with anything and hits or passes the target, it automatically counts as a hit. The missile detonates on the entity. The SA-21 missile launcher and Patriot missile launcher use hit probability tables.

If a missile launcher system definition has a hit probability table, but the target object type is not listed, or if the system does not specify a hit probability table, detonation is determined based on the type of missile, as follows:

- Direct flight. Missiles fly directly to a target. Accuracy is controlled by their maneuverability parameters.
- Laser guided. Missiles follow a laser designator to the target. If the laser is blocked or disrupted, the missile goes to the last known location of the target.
- Route following. Some missiles, such as cruise missiles, can follow a route to a target and detonate either at the target or at a proximity to the target.

---

The range for missiles is the range from the missile to the target, not from the entity that fired the missile.

---

## 70.3.1 Missile Launcher

The missile launcher for direct flight missiles works as follows:

1. The target selection controller chooses the best target for the weapon system and passes it to the weapon through the weapon's weapon-interface.
2. The weapon system's controller determines the right resource for that target type.
3. The missile resource is returned and the system loads the missile to fire.
4. The entity tries to acquire the target. It sends the desired rotation angle and elevation to acquire the target to the rotating mount actuator and elevation mount actuator.
5. Actuators move according to their slew rate speeds and send how far they went in a tick back to the weapon launcher so it can recalculate the remaining amount. It also publishes the articulated part numbers along with amount of rotation/elevation to the network.
6. When the feedback reaches the max angle off boresight, it can fire on the target. The missile object is created.
7. Firing state is sent to the launcher actuator.
8. The launcher actuator sends a fire interaction.

Parameters in the missile launcher's system affect whether or not it fires. For example, the Maverick Missile Launcher system includes the following parameters on the Attributes tab in the Simulation Object Editor:

- Load Ammo Time
- Unload Ammo Time
- Max Vehicle Speed to Fire
- Max Azimuth Angle Off Boresight
- Max Elevation Angle Off Boresight

### 70.3.2 Missile Projectile

When the missile is created, it flies as follows:

1. Using the missile's movement parameters, the missile controller (track-entity if the target is an entity, or target-point if the target is a location) determines the values to be sent to the missile-maneuver actuator.
2. The missile-maneuver actuator calculates the new position, velocity, acceleration, and orientation of the missile.
3. The missile-collision actuator then checks to see whether the missile will collide with the terrain or an entity. If so, it sends out a detonation interaction.

Missile parameters affect how it detonates. The following code is from *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/missile-warhead.sysdef*:

```
(actuators
    (warhead
        ...
        (detonate-on-ground-impact True)
        (detonate-on-water-impact True)
        (detonate-on-entity-impact True)
        (allow-direct-hit True)
        ...
    )
)
```

### 70.3.3 Laser-Guided Missile Launcher

The missile launcher for laser-guided missiles works as follows:

1. The target selection controller chooses the best target for the weapon system and passes it to the weapon through the weapon's weapon-interface.
2. The weapon system's launcher controller tells the lasing controller the targets.
3. The lasing controller looks for an actively lased target that matches the lasing code. If there are no lased targets, it checks to see whether it can autonomously lase. If it can, it starts to lase the target.
4. Once the launcher controller has a lased target, it tells the movement system to rotate to the target.
5. The launcher controller checks for when the entity has rotated to line up with target, within the fire cone defined for it. It creates the missile object and fire interaction.

### 70.3.4 Laser-Guided Missile Projectile

Once it is created, a laser-guided missile flies as follows:

1. Using the missile's movement parameters, the missile controller determines the values to be sent to the missile-maneuver actuator.
2. The missile-maneuver actuator calculates the new position, velocity, acceleration, and orientation of the missile.
3. The missile-collision actuator then checks whether the missile will collide with the terrain or an entity. If so, it sends out a detonation interaction.

## 70.4. Configuring Indirect Fire Weapons

Indirect fire weapon systems use the indirect-fire-weapon-controller. Indirect fire weapons fire in response to an indirect fire task, such as Fire-for-Effect or Throw Grenade. They do not fire on their own, like many direct fire weapons do.

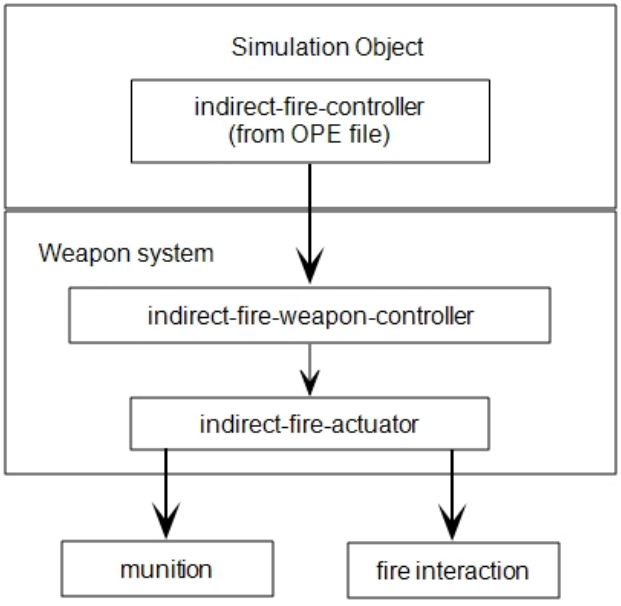
When a simulation object receives an indirect fire task, its indirect-fire-controller queues the task and checks for availability of an indirect fire weapon. It continues to check until a weapon becomes available, then it sends the fire task to the weapon through the indirect weapon interface. If a task requires multiple weapons, the indirect-fire-controller continues this process until the task is complete. (The indirect-fire-controller and indirect weapon interface are analogous to the target-select-controller and weapon interface described for direct fire weapons.)

When an indirect-fire-weapon-controller gets a task, it reads the fire mission from the indirect weapon interface. The indirect fire weapon controller tries to align the turret and load the munition. When the weapon is ready to fire, it passes the information to its indirect-fire-actuator.

The munition is specified as part of the task. The indirect-fire-actuator creates the desired munition and sends out the fire interaction.

Figure 606 illustrates this process.

**Figure 606. Indirect fire**



Do not confuse the indirect-fire-controller and the indirect-fire-weapon-controller. The indirect-fire-controller is on the simulation object that has the weapon system (it is in the platform OPE file). The indirect-fire-weapon-controller is in the indirect fire weapon system. The controllers are illustrated in Figure 606.

Examples of indirect fire weapons include the M284-155mm cannon (*./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/M284-155mm-cannon.sysdef*), the M252-81mm mortar (*M252-81mm-mortar.sysdef*), and MK45 naval gun (*./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/MK45NavalGun.sysdef*). Also, although hand grenades would not normally be thought of as indirect fire weapons, the hand grenade tasks call the fire for effect tasks. Therefore, they use the same controllers and actuators as indirect fire weapons.

The munitions used by the indirect fire weapon systems are configured with explosive power in *detonationParams.mtl*. Therefore simulation objects that are susceptible to explosive power can be damaged by them. Their damage system definition files will point to the appropriate damage table files to assess damage from these munitions.

As with other weapon systems, the system definition files for indirect fire weapons have parameters that control when they can be used and how effective they are. You can set the values for these parameters in the Simulation Object Editor on the Attributes and Firing tabs. The Targets tab only has entries for ammunition, since there is no need for hit probability and target selection for indirect weapons.

## 70.5. Configuring Fixed Weapons

Fixed munitions, such as mines and IEDs, can be triggered in the following ways:

- Immediately, by a detonate message.
- By proximity of a valid target. The weapon needs a sensor system or a proximity controller that can detect targets.
- Timed detonation, from when the system is armed.

Fixed munitions have a detonation controller. The detonation controller processes set detonation messages to determine how it is to be triggered and whether or not it is armed. It tells the warhead-detonation-actuator when to arm the weapon. For immediate and timed detonations, it tells the warhead actuator to detonate the device.

For proximity detonations, the detonation controller takes input from the external sensor or the proximity sensor. The warhead-actuator checks for armed and trigger messages from the detonation controller. It also checks for collisions with the terrain and simulation objects. If a collision occurs or it is triggered by the detonation controller, it sends a detonation interaction over the network.

VR-Forces has two types of fixed weapons: naval mines and IEDs.

IEDs are simulation objects that have an explosive device system (*./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/explosive-device.sysdef*). These objects need a sensor to detect targets. The Roadside IED object has a visual sensor. You can specify the ammunition, targets to detect, and the type of fuse on the Targets tab for the system in the Simulation Object Editor.

Naval mines use the *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/naval-mine-explosive-device.sysdef* system definition file. It has a proximity sensor built into the system definition, so it does not need an external sensor to detect targets. You can specify the ammunition, targets to detect, and the type of fuse on the Targets tab for the system in the Simulation Object Editor.

You can turn an entity into an IED by adding the explosive device system in the Simulation Object Editor. You can configure cultural features as IEDs by adding the Other Explosive Device system.

## 70.6. Configuring Bomb Bay Weapon Systems

The bomb-bay weapon system releases bombs in response to Release Bomb tasks. Bombs can drop directly onto targets or be laser guided. Once a bomb is released, it uses the *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/movement/smart-bomb-dynamics.sysdef* movement system to control movement. It has a warhead actuator that is similar to the warhead actuator in missiles. Its ability to navigate toward and hit its target is controlled by parameters that you can set in the Simulation Object Editor. The Simulation Object Editor also allows you to specify the ammunition type for bomb bay systems. For more information about bombs, please see "27.25. Release Bomb Tasks" on page 631.

## 70.7. Configuring Weapon Systems in the SOE

Like other systems, weapon systems have a General tab for identification information and one or more tabs for physical parameters. Targeting is configured on the Targets tab. When you configure a direct fire weapon system, you must specify:

- The probability that the weapon will hit its target.
- The ammunition it should use.
- Target priorities.
- Target region.

The following sections explain each aspect of target configuration. However, sometimes it can be confusing to understand how to configure the minimum requirements for a target type. The SOE has two features that help you with this process — the Target Configuration Assistant and the Configuration Status window. For details, please see "70.7.4 Using the Target Configuration Assistant" on page 1464.

## 70.7.1 Specifying Target Types

Weapon systems have one or more target types that they can fire upon. You can add, edit, and remove target types. For each target type, you must specify Hit Data. You might also need to specify an ammunition type that is valid for the target.

➤ **To add a target type:**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. Click the Add button ( ) next to the Target Type label. The Add New Target Type to Hit Table dialog box opens.
4. Specify an object enumeration for this target type.
5. Select a creation option, as follows:
   - Copy Currently Selected. Use the same type of hit table as the currently selected target.
   - Create Empty Range Table. Create a range list table for configuring how this weapon can fire on the new target.
   - Create Empty Coefficient Table. Create a coefficient table for configuring how this weapon can fire on the new target.
6. Click OK. The target is added to the Target Type list and a Hit Data table is created based on the selected option.
7. Check the Configuration Status window to see if there are any configuration issues as a result of adding this target type.

## 70.7.2 Configuring Hit Probability

You can configure hit probability using a range list or a coefficient list. You can configure a range list by editing the table or by editing the graph directly. You configure a coefficient list by editing the table.

➤ **To edit a hit probability table:**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. In the Target Type window, select the Target Type that you want to configure.
4. Edit the probabilities as described in "62.8.2 Editing Probability Tables" on page 1290.

### Changing the Hit Probability Based on Skill Level

VR-Forces users can change the skill level of entities with the Skill Level set data request. The skill level can be novice, experienced, or expert. The default skill level is expert. If the skill level of an entity is set to novice or experienced, the hit probability of the entity's weapon changes based on the **Maximum Skill Level Effect** parameter for

the weapon system. For example, if the **Maximum Skill Level Effect** is set to .20 (20%), then the probability can shift as much as 20% for a novice, 10% for an experienced entity, and 0% for an expert.

For direct fire ballistic weapons, you can set **Maximum Skill Level Effect** on the Attributes tab for the weapon system. For indirect fire weapons (artillery and mortars), you set **Maximum Skill Level Effect** on the Firing tab.

For details about setting the skill level of an entity, please see"34.69. Skill Level" on page 829 .

## 70.7.3 Configuring the Ammunition to Use

You can specify the types of ammunition that a weapon system can use. You also specify the default amount. Some weapon systems can use more than one type of ammunition.

➤ **To add a type of ammunition for a weapon system:**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. Click the Add button ( ) above the Ammunition window. The Choose Ammunition dialog box opens. It lists ammunition types that may be appropriate for this system. Ammunition types that are not supported for this weapon system have an alert icon next to their name. You can add them to the ammunition list, but they will not have any effect on targets unless you also configure them to work with the weapon system.
4. Select the ammunition type that you want to add.
5. Click OK. The ammunition is added to the list in the window.

### Adding a New Ammunition Type from the Targets Page

You can add new ammunition types on the Munitions tab. However, you can also start the process from the Choose Ammunition dialog box that you open from the Targets tab.

➤ **To add a new ammunition type:**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. Click the Add button ( ) above the Ammunition window. The Choose Ammunition dialog box opens.
4. Click Add New from Existing. The Create New Model dialog box opens.
5. Type a name for the new ammunition type.
6. On the Object Type line, click Edit. The Change Object Type dialog box opens.
7. Specify the object type for the new ammunition by selecting options from the lists or directly entering the object type.

8. Click OK. The new ammunition type is added to the list.
9. Select the Munitions tab.
10. Select the new ammunition type that you added.
11. Specify the parameters for this munition.

### Removing an Ammunition Type

➤ **To remove an ammunition type from a weapon system:**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. In the Ammunition window, select the row for the ammunition type that you want to remove.
4. Click the Remove button ( ) .

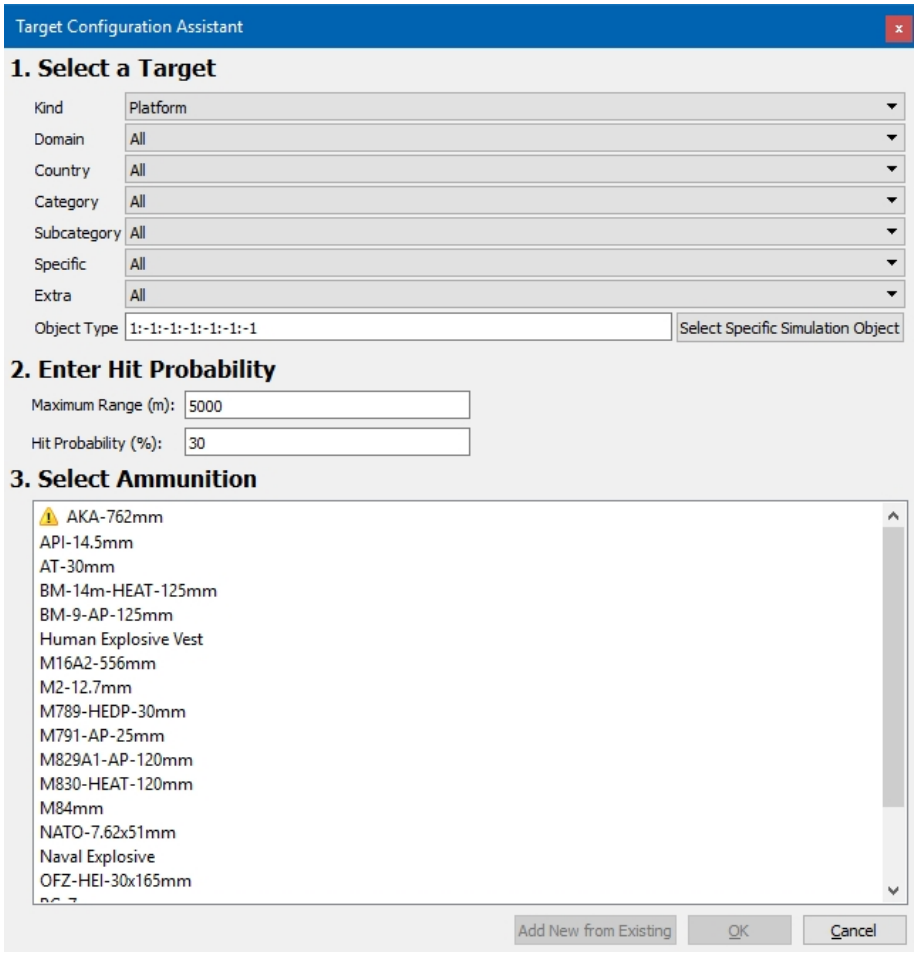
## 70.7.4 Using the Target Configuration Assistant

You can specify a target type, hit probabilities, and ammunition independently, as described in the previous sections, or you can specify them within one dialog box. This ensures that you have made the minimum configuration necessary for the weapon system to successfully fire on a target type.

➤ **To use the Target Configuration Assistant**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. In the Hit Probabilities section, click the Target Configuration Assistant button. The Target Configuration Assistant opens (Figure 607).

**Figure 607. Target Configuration Assistant**




4. Select a target type. You can build an object type by selecting options from the lists, directly entering the object type, or selecting a specific simulation object as the target.
5. In the Maximum Range box, enter the maximum distance at which the weapon can hit the target. For range lists, the SOE automatically divides the range for the hit probability table into three segments.
6. In the Hit Probability box, enter the probability of hitting the target at the maximum range.
7. In the ammunition list, select the ammunition to use for this target type. The window lists all possible ammunition types. If an ammunition type is not configured to fire on the target type, it is preceded by an alert icon (as illustrated in Figure 607). You can still add this ammunition type, but you would have to configure it to fire on the target type or it will not work.
8. Click OK. The target type, hit probability, and ammunition are added to the page.
9. Check the Configuration Status window to see if there are any issues for this target type.

10. Optionally, specify weapon target priorities and the target region.

## 70.7.5 Configuring the Target Priorities

Weapons can only fire at objects that have been configured as possible targets. Within that set of possible targets, you can assign priorities. When the target controller identifies more than one possible target, it chooses its target based on the priorities.

You can specify the types of objects that a weapon can target and the priorities of those target types. For each target type, you can specify the preferred ammunition to use.

➤ **To add a new target priority:**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. Click the Add button ( ) above the Weapon Target Priorities window. The Add New Target Priority dialog box opens.
4. Specify the object type for the target you want to add.
5. Click OK. The target is added to the bottom of the list.

### Changing a Target Priority's Object Type

You can change the object type of a target priority.

➤ **To change the object type of a target priority**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. In the Weapon Target Priorities window, select the target priority you want to change.
4. Click the Edit button ( ) above the Weapon Target Priorities window. The Select Target Type dialog box opens.
5. Change the object type.
6. Click OK.

### Changing the Priority of a Weapon Target

Weapon targets are listed in the Weapon Target Priorities window in order of priority, from highest to lowest. You can change the priority of a weapon target by changing the order in which it is listed.

➤ **To change the priority of a weapon target:**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.

3. In the Weapon Target Priorities window, select the target whose priority you want to change.
4. Click the Up Arrow above the window to raise the target's priority. Click the Down Arrow to lower its priority.

## 70.7.6 Configuring the Target Region

You can configure a target region for a weapon system. (Many weapon systems do not have a value for this parameter.) If you specify a target region, the weapon system will not fire at a target unless it is within or without the region. For example, a visual sensor might detect a target at 500 meters, but you do not want the weapon to fire until the target is within 100 meters.

The target region can be specified as a range, a frustum, or both. You can specify a minimum range, maximum range, or both.

➤ **To specify the target region for a weapon system:**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. To specify the target region as a range:
    a. Select the Minimum Range check box.
    b. Enter a value for the minimum range.
    c. Select the Maximum Range check box.
    d. Enter a value for the maximum range.
4. To specify the target region as a frustum:
    a. Select the Use Frustum check box..
    b. Specify the maximum and minimum values for the azimuth and elevation.
    c. Optionally, select the Outside Frustum check box, to specify the that the target region is outside of the frustum.

## 70.7.7 Configuring Missile Launcher Systems in the SOE

VR-Forces has several types of missile launcher systems. The types of missiles that they use determines the parameters that must be set on the Targets tab.

- Laser-guided missile systems configure ammunition (as described in "70.7.3 Configuring the Ammunition to Use" on page 1463) and weapon target priorities (as described in "70.7.5 Configuring the Target Priorities" on the previous page).
- Cruise missile launchers configure ammunition.
- Other missile launcher systems can use hit probability tables or they can calculate hits based on the type of missile, as explained in "70.3. Configuring Missile Systems" on page 1456. When you configure a missile system, you specify how to calculate hit probability by choosing one of the following options:

- Simulate Missile Guidance. Do not use a hit probability table. Calculate based on missile type.
- Use Probability Table. Configure the launcher like a direct fire weapon system. Specify target type, hit data, ammunition, weapon target priorities, and target region.

## 70.7.8 Configuring Explosive Devices

Explosive devices, such as IEDs and naval mines, must specify the ammunition type, detonations parameters, and objects to detect.

➤ **To configure an explosive device weapon system:**

1. Select the weapon system you want to edit.
2. Select the Targets tab.
3. In the Detonation Proximity Distance box, specify the distance to use for proximity detonation.
4. Select any of the check boxes that apply for types of impact this device will support.
5. Specify the ammunition, as described in "70.7.3 Configuring the Ammunition to Use" on page 1463.
6. Specify the object types that this device can detect for proximity detonation.

# 71. Configuring Damage Systems

This chapter describes configuration files for damage systems in entity-level scenarios.


71.1. Introduction to Damage Systems ..... 1470
71.1.1 Calculating Damage from Munitions ..... 1470
71.2. Configuring Damage-by-Power ..... 1470
71.2.1 Configuring the Power of a Detonation ..... 1471
71.2.2 Configuring Detonation Power in the SOE ..... 1474
71.2.3 The Damage File for Damage-By-Power ..... 1475
71.2.4 Adding a New Power Type ..... 1477
71.3. Configuring Damage in the SOE ..... 1479
71.3.1 Configuring Damage Power Entries ..... 1479
71.3.2 Configuring Impact Surfaces ..... 1480
71.3.3 Configuring the Angle of Incidence ..... 1481
71.3.4 Specifying Effect Data ..... 1481
71.4. Viewing Inter-Object Damage Probability Results ..... 1482
71.5. Configuring Damage for Dynamic Terrain ..... 1484
71.5.1 Standard Terrain Damage ..... 1484
71.5.2 High Fidelity Terrain Damage ..... 1485
71.6. Configuring Detonation Results ..... 1486

# 71.1. Introduction to Damage Systems

Like weapon systems, damage systems are based on high-level template_system files and lower level system definition files that reference the templates. The template files specify the damage actuators and metadata. The system definition files specify the damage to entity surfaces by the different power types that can damage the entity.

You can create and edit damage systems by editing configuration files in a text editor or in the Simulation Object Editor. The preferred method is to use the SOE. It provides a point-and-click interface, handles all syntax issues, and includes error checking to ensure that all components required by a system are present.

Like other systems, damage systems have a General tab and Attributes tab for identification parameters and other default parameters. The damage done to the entity is configured on the Damage tab.

## 71.1.1 Calculating Damage from Munitions

VR-Forces has the following ways to calculate damage:

- Damage-by-power. Each munition is configured for its power in the explosive, kinetic, fragmentation, and armor-piercing domains as appropriate. (You can add new domains without writing code.) Damage systems (*.sysdef* files) contain entries for the types of munition power that can affect simulation objects that use the system. They configure the amount of damage that occurs when different levels of power are applied. The damage-by-power model is used for all entity-level simulation objects in VR-Forces 4.5 and later and is the preferred method for calculating damage.
- Damage-by-ammo-type. Each munition that can affect a simulation object is configured individually in the damage system used by that object and refers to a damage file that is specific to that type of munition. This model was used in VR-Forces 4.4.2 and earlier. It is supported in VR-Forces 4.5 and later. For details about damage-by-ammo-type, please see "D.7. Configuring Damage-by-Ammo-Type" on page 1629.

The damage-by-power method of configuration makes it much easier to add new munitions than damage-by-ammo-type. However, if you have specific requirements for the effects of a munition on different simulation objects, you can use the damage-by-ammo-type method in conjunction with damage-by-power. If VR-Forces finds an **ammo-entry** block in the damage system file, it uses that entry and its related damage file for that ammo type instead of the damage-by-power damage file that would otherwise be used.

# 71.2. Configuring Damage-by-Power

In the damage-by-power method of calculating damage, each munition has a `detonation-power-entry` block in *./data/simulationModelSets/base/detonationParams.mtl*. The following is the entry for the 7.62 mm bullet:

```
(detonation-power-entry
```

```
    (munition
        ;; 7.62 mm
        (munition-type  2 8 222 2 2 -1 -1)
        (warhead  -1)
        (guidance-mode  0)
    )
    (power-list
        (kinetic
            (direct 2.24) ;; Kilojoules
        )
    )
)
```

The `munition` block identifies the munition type using the DIS/RPR FOM object enumeration. (The default configuration does not use the **warhead** or **guidance-mode** parameters.)

The `power-list` block is a list of domains and the configuration for a determinant that produces a power value based on an input range. In this example, the 7.62 mm shell has power in the kinetic domain.

The default configurations support the following domains:

- Explosive. Munitions that affect simulation objects within some range of the detonation. Explosive munitions represent power in kiloPascals (kPa) of incident pressure.
- Kinetic. Munitions that directly strike a simulation object. Kinetic munitions represent power in kilojoules (kJ) of energy.
- Armor-piercing. Munitions that strike an armored object and penetrate it. Armor piercing munitions represent power in millimeters of penetration.
- Fragmentation. Explosives that cause damage by fragmenting, such as grenades.

---

You can add other domains without writing code. For details, please see"71.2.4 Adding a New Power Type" on page 1477 .

---

The power values used in the default configuration are based on publicly available information about the power of the various types of munitions and the values used try to be consistent in their relative power.

## 71.2.1 Configuring the Power of a Detonation

You can configure detonation power by editing *detonationParams.mtl* or in the Simulation Object Editor. This section explains how to edit the file directly and what the parameters mean. For details about editing detonation power in the SOE, please see "71.2.2 Configuring Detonation Power in the SOE" on page 1474. To determine the power of a detonation at a specific location a power determinant must be defined. The determinant maps a range value to a power value. Range can have different possible

**range-from** parameter is defined for the determinant. If **range-from** is undefined, `impact-point` is assumed unless the determinant does not support this setting.

- If **range-from** is `impact-point`, the determinant determines power based on the range from the impact point of the detonation to some other location in the vicinity. This is used for the explosive and fragmentation domains, but could be used for any power that has some area of effect (for example, perhaps shrapnel or incendiary damage). This is equivalent to collateral damage as defined in the damage-by-ammo-type damage system.

  Example (from *detonationParams.mtl*):

```
(detonation-power-entry
   (munition
        ;; 85 mm HEAT
       (munition-type  2 2 222 2 8 1 -1)
       (warhead  -1)
       (guidance-mode  0)
   )
   (power-list
       (explosive
           (range-from "impact-point")
           (range-list
               (range 3.5
                   (power 70.0)
               )
               (range 4.6
                   (power 40.0)
               )
               (range 5.7
                   (power 27.5)
               )
               ...
               (range 35.0
                   (power 2.4)
               )
           )
       )
       (kinetic
           (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
           (range-coefficients -2.6600E-004   0.0000   5319.0)
       )
       (armor-piercing
           (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
           (range-coefficients -9.0000E-006   0.0000   180.0)
       )
   )
)
```

- If **range-from** is `shooter-to-impact` (as in the previous example), the determinant determines power based on the range from the entity that fired the round to the point of impact. Any points outside of the point of impact are not affected by the detonation. This is used for the kinetic and armor-piercing domains, but could be used for any power that is directed at a particular target and has no area of effect. This is equivalent to direct damage as defined in the damage-by-ammo-type damage system.
- If **range-from** is `unused`, the determinant determines power without using the input range. This is used by the direct determinant, which ignores the **range-from** setting completely. (For more information, please see "Determinant Types" below.)
- If **range-from** is `shooter-and-impact-point`, the determinant determines power based on both the range from the shooter and from the impact point. This option is not implemented by VR-Forces.

### Determinant Types

VR-Forces supports the following types of determinant.

- The **range-coefficients** determinant calculates the power based on a series of coefficients. Configuring coefficients works exactly the same way as the hit probability coefficients, except that the output value can be any number 0 or greater, not just a probability for 0.0 to 1.0. For example:

```
(kinetic
   (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
   (range-coefficients -1.3000E-003   0.0000   26005.0)
)
```

- The **range-list** determinant determines the power based on a step function. This is configured exactly the same way as the hit probability **range-list**, except that the output value can be any number 0 or greater, not just a probability for 0.0 to 1.0. For example:

```
(explosive
   (range-from "impact-point")
   (range-list
       (range 4.5
           (power 70.0)
       )
       (range 6.0
           (power 40.0)
       )
       ...
       (range 47.0
           (power 2.4)
       )
   )
)
```

- The **direct** determinant always produces the same power at the point of impact, regardless of the range from the shooter. It produces no power at any range from the point of impact. As a result, the **range-from** setting is ignored, because the range input is unused. For example:

```
(kinetic
   (direct 272.873) ;; Kilojoules
)
```

- The **equivalent-tnt-mass** determinant allows you to define an amount of TNT, in kilograms, that produces an equivalent explosion. VR-Forces calculates power at a specified range in kPa. This determinant is used only for the explosive damage category. The following example shows its use for M107 HE munition:

```
(detonation-power-entry
   (munition
       ;; M107 HE (155 mm)
       (munition-type  2 9 225 2 14 2 -1)
       (warhead  -1)
       (guidance-mode  0)
   )
   (power-list
       (explosive
           (range-from "impact-point")
           (equivalent-tnt-mass 5.74)
       )
   )
)
```

## 71.2.2 Configuring Detonation Power in the SOE

You configure the detonation power of each munition type on its Detonation tab. When you add or edit the detonation power for a munition, VR-Forces creates a copy of the *detonationParams.mtl* in the SMS. It is merged with the version in *base.sms* when a scenario is loaded.

➤ **To configure the detonation power of a munition:**

1. Select the Munitions tab of the Object List.
2. Select the munition that you want to configure.
3. Select the Detonation tab.
4. In the Power List, select the power type that you want to configure.
5. If the munition uses a range-list determinant or a coefficient-list determinant, edit the list by editing the table or by directly editing the graph, as described in "62.8. Editing Systems in the Simulation Object Editor" on page 1288Editing Systems in the Simulation Object Editor.

   If the munition uses the direct determinant, the range is ignored. Specify the direct power in the Direct text box.

   If the munition uses the equivalent TNT mass determinant, specify the explosive power in the Equivalent TNT text box.

### Adding a Damage Power Type and Determinant

You can add and remove power types from the power list. When you add a power, you specify a determinant (range list, range coefficient, direct, equivalent TNT mass).

➤ **To add a power and determinant:**

1. Select the Munitions tab of the Object List.
2. Select the munition that you want to configure.
3. Select the Detonation tab.
4. On the Power List line, click the Add button ( ). The Power and Determinant dialog box opens.
5. In the Categories window, select a power type. The options for this type of power are listed.
6. Select the determinant you want to use.
7. Specify the data for the determinant.
8. Click OK. The power is added to the list.

### Changing the Determinant for a Power Type

You can change the determinant for a power type. If you change the determinant the values for the old determinant are removed and you must specify the correct data for the new determinant type.

➤ **To change the determinant for a detonation power type:**

1. Select the Munitions tab of the Object List.
2. Select the munition that you want to configure.
3. Select the Detonation tab.
4. Select the power you want to edit.
5. On the Power List line, click the Edit button ( ). The Choose Determinant dialog box opens.
6. Select the determinant you want to use.
7. Specify the data for the new determinant.
8. Click OK. The graph and data on the tab change.

## 71.2.3 The Damage File for Damage-By-Power

Entity damage is configured through the system definition files and the damage files they reference. A system definition file configures power in the **damage-by-munition-power** block.

The system definition files provided with VR-Forces have a `damage-model` block. However none of the files provided use this block. It is available for customers who

want to configure munitions using the damage-by-ammo-type method. It also enables backwards compatibility with old SMSs. For information about using the damage-model block, please see "D.7. Configuring Damage-by-Ammo-Type" on page 1629.

### Configuring Damage-by-Power in a System Definition File

A system definition file can define any number of `damage-by-power-entry` items, each for a different power-type. This is the damage domain of the power. To add a new type of power, add new settings in *detonationParams.mtl* and in the system definition files for simulation objects that need to be damaged by this effect.

### Configuring the Damage File for Damage-By-Power

Damage system files configure damage based on the side of the bounding volume being affected. The damage actuator delivered with VR-Forces uses surfaces of front, rear, left-side, right-side, bottom, and top (other components could model the entity's geometry differently, and therefore use different surface strings). A surface entry has a list of angle-of-incidence entries. An `angle-of-incidence` entry has an angle (in radians).

The `determinant` block specifies the damage. The determinant can be a **step-function** or a list of coefficients. Each determinant can specify probabilities for catastrophic-kill, mobility-kill, firepower-kill or some combination of them.

The *ground-heavy-armor.sysdef* file has a parameter called **round-down** that indicates what probabilities should be used when the input power value is between two steps. For power we want to round down to the next lower power (and lesser probability).

Therefore **round-down** is set to 1 (true) for all damage files. If this parameter is not specified, the step function rounds up.

The following code, which uses the `step-function` determinant, is from *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/damage/ground-heavy-armor.sysdef*:

```
(damage-by-munition-power
   (damage-by-power-entry
       (key "explosive")
       (value
           (front
               (angle-of-incidence
                   (angle  1.570800)
                   (determinant
                       (step-function (round-down 1)
                           (power 7.5
                               (catastrophic-kill  0.1)
                           )
                           (power 12.5
                               (catastrophic-kill  0.5)
                           )
                           (power 20.0
                               (catastrophic-kill  0.6)
                           )
                           (power 45.0
                               (catastrophic-kill  0.75)
```

```
                                )
                                (power 70.0
                                    (catastrophic-kill  0.99)
                                )
                            )
                        )
                    )
                )
                ...
            )
        )
    )
```

The following code, which uses the **coefficients** determinant, is from *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/damage/missile-default.sysdef*:

```
(string-DtDamageProbabilityTable-map
    (damage-by-munition-power
        (damage-by-power-entry
            (key "explosive")
            (value
                (front
                    (angle-of-incidence
                        (angle  1.5708)
                        (determinant
                            (coefficients
                                (catastrophic-kill 0.02 -0.4)
                                (firepower-kill 0.022 -0.44)
                                (mobility-kill 0.025 -0.5)
                            )
                        )
                    )
                )
        ...
)
```

## 71.2.4 Adding a New Power Type

To add a new type of power, you add it to the relevant munitions in *detonationParams.mtl*, add it to *./appData/settings/simulationObjectEditor/powerTypes.csv*, and then add it to the appropriate damage system. For example, suppose you want to model the effects of the heat generated by a munition. You could add thermal power. For the sake of this example, suppose that an 85mm HEAT round has thermal power. To add thermal power, you would have to do the following:

1. Add the new power to the **detonation-power-entry**, as follows:

```
(detonation-power-entry
    (munition
```

```
            ;; 85 mm HEAT
            (munition-type  2 2 222 2 8 1 -1)
            (warhead  -1)
            (guidance-mode  0)
        )
        (power-list
            (explosive
                (range-from "impact-point")
                (range-list
                    (range 3.5
                        (power 70.0)
                    )
                    ...
                )
            )
            (kinetic
                (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
                (range-coefficients -2.6600E-004   0.0000   5319.0)
            )
            (armor-piercing
                (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
                (range-coefficients -9.0000E-006   0.0000   180.0)
            )
            (thermal
                (range-from "impact-point")
                (range-list
                    (range 3.5
                        (power 70.0)
                    )
                    ...
                )
            )
        )
)
```

You would have to determine the unit of heat that you wanted to use to measure its effect and come up with realistic power levels at different distances.

2. In the damage systems for the simulation objects that can be affected by thermal power, add a **damage-by-power** entry. Suppose that you want lifeforms to be damaged by thermal power. You would update the *lifeform-default.sysdef* file as follows:

```
(damage-by-power-entry
    (key "thermal")
    (value
        (front-side
            ...
        )
```

```
            (left-side
                ...
            )
            (right-side
                ...
            )
            ...
        )
        ...
)
```

3. Add the power type to *./appData/settings/simulationObjectEditor/powerTYpes.csv*. The fields for each entry in the file are:
   - power. The power name.
   - withoutaddition. The text that will be placed on the X and Y axis of graphs.
   - withaddition. If there is additional information the Simulation Object Editor gives, the %1 will be replaced with that on the X and Y axis.
   - withoutadditionx. If wanted, a different title for the X axis.
   - withadditionx. If wanted a different replaceable title for the X axis.
   - humanonly. true if this applies only to human damage.
   - allowaddition. true if this can be used for addition, false if for title only.
   - defaultrangetype. The default range type (shooter-to-impact or impact-point). Please see *detonationParams.mtl* for more information.
   - supportedranges. Comma list of supported range calculation values. Please see *detonationParams.mtl* for more information.

## 71.3. Configuring Damage in the SOE

The Simulation Object Editor provides an easy GUI for specifying damage for each of the power types that apply to an entity. You can configure damage for each surface on an entity and for angles of incidence.

---

Most of the damage systems provided with VR-Forces do not configure damage for different angles of incidence.

---

### 71.3.1 Configuring Damage Power Entries

The Damage Power Entries window lists the types of damage power that VR-Forces supports. A damage system does not necessarily support all types of damage power. If a damage power type is not supported, it is labeled [Unused]. It does not have entries in the Effect Data table. You can disable use of a damage power type and enable unused damage power types.

➤ To disable a damage power type, click the Remove button ( ).

➤ To enable an unused damage power type, add an entry to its Effect Data table.

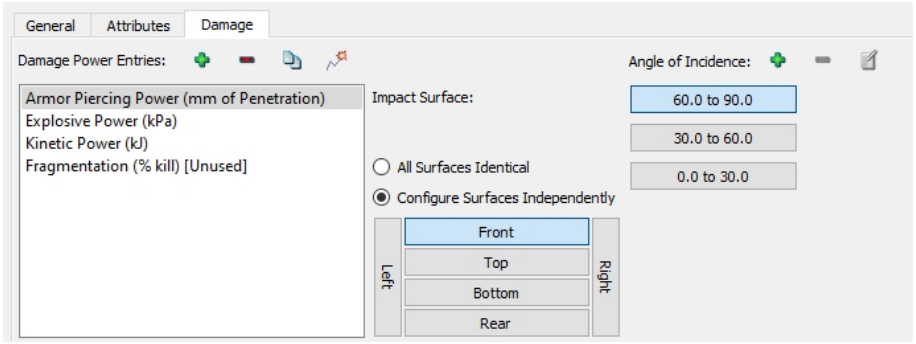
## 71.3.2 Configuring Impact Surfaces

A damage system can vary the amount of damage sustained based on the surface that is struck or can use the same effect data for all surfaces.

➤ **To configure the same damage for all surfaces of an entity:**

1. In the Damage Power Entries list, select the damage power for which you want to configure impact surfaces.
2. In the Impact Surface options list, select All Surfaces Identical (Figure 608).

**Figure 608. Damage power entries and impact configuration**




3. Optionally, specify the angles of incidence to use, as described in"71.3.3 Configuring the Angle of Incidence" on the facing page.
4. Specify effect data for each angle of incidence, as described in "71.3.4 Specifying Effect Data" on the facing page.

If you configure damage differently for each surface, you must specify the angle of incidence and effect data for each surface.

➤ **To specify damage for each surface:**

1. In the Damage Power Entries list, select the damage power for which you want to configure impact surfaces.
2. In the Impact Surface options list, select Configure Surfaces Independently (Figure 608).
3. For each surface that you want to configure:
    a. Click the box that represents the surface you want to configure.
    b. Optionally, specify the angles of incidence to use for this surface, as described in "71.3.3 Configuring the Angle of Incidence" on the facing page.
    c. Specify effect data for each angle of incidence, as described in "71.3.4 Specifying Effect Data" on the facing page.

## 71.3.3 Configuring the Angle of Incidence

You can specify different damage results based on the angle at which a munition strikes an entity. If a damage system treats all surfaces identically, you configure one set of angles of incidence. If it treats different surfaces differently, you can configure angles of incidence for each surface. The default for most damage systems is that there is no difference based on the angle. You can specify multiple angles as ranges. The total range of all angles must be 0 degrees to 90 degrees.

➤ **To add an angle of incidence:**

1. In the Damage Power Entries list, select the damage power for which you want to configure angles of incidence.
2. If you are configuring each impact surface independently, click the surface for which you want to configure the angle of incidence.
3. Click the Add button ( ) next to the Angle of Incidence label (Figure 608 on the previous page). The New Angle dialog box opens.
4. Type an angle, in degrees.
5. Click OK. The new angle is added to the list.

### Editing an Angle of Incidence

➤ **To edit an angle of incidence:**

1. In the Damage Power Entries list, select the damage power for which you want to configure angles of incidence.
2. If you are configuring each impact surface independently, click the surface for which you want to configure the angle of incidence.
3. Click the angle that you want to edit.
4. Click the Edit button ( ) next to the Angle of Incidence label. The Edit Angle dialog box opens.
5. Type the new angle.
6. Click OK.

## 71.3.4 Specifying Effect Data

For each of the damage power types used by a damage system, you can specify effect data. Effect data can be specified using a range list or a coefficient list. You can change the type of list that is used for a damage system. You can specify effect data for catastrophic kill, firepower kill, and mobility kill. (Many of the systems provided with VR-Forces only configure catastrophic kill.)

If you are using a range list, edit the ranges and range values as described in Figure 540 on page 1290.

If you are using a coefficient list, edit the probability table as described in "Editing a Coefficient List Probability Table" on page 1292.

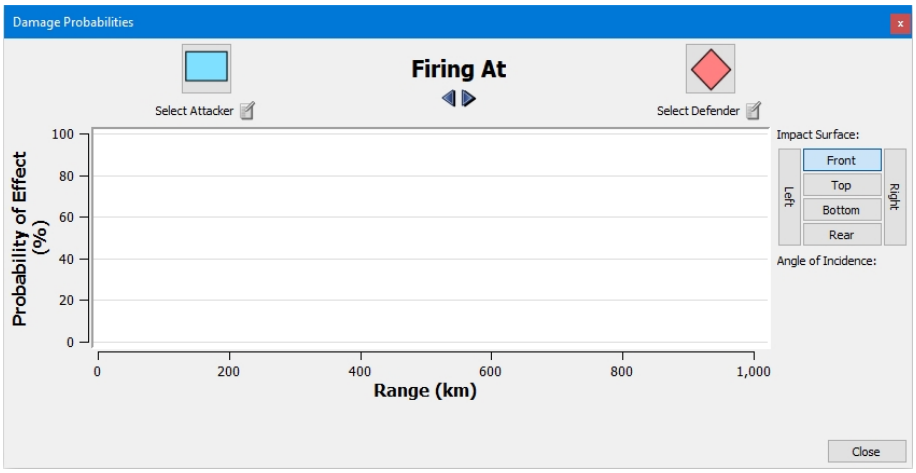
# 71.4. Viewing Inter-Object Damage Probability Results

Sometimes when VR-Forces users create a new weapon system or damage system, the systems do not work as expected. The system might not fire on a target or might not damage it when it does. This is usually due to a mismatch in systems or a misunderstanding of how damage probabilities are calculated. The Damage Probabilities viewer shows you what you can expect when a specific entity fires on another specific entity.

➤ **To view damage probability results:**

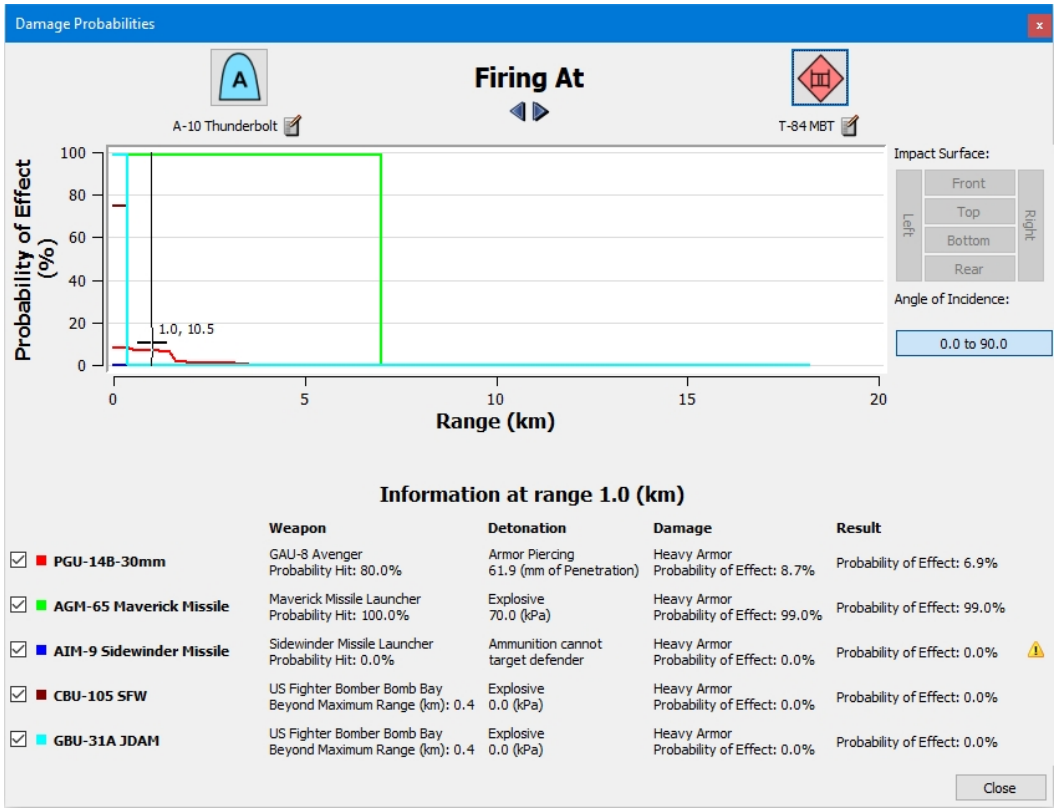
1. Choose **View > Damage Probability Results**. The Damage Probabilities viewer opens (Figure 609).

**Figure 609. Damage Probabilities viewer**




2. Click the Select Attacker button. The Select Simulation Object dialog box opens. It is an object list similar to the object list in the SOE or the Simulation Objects Panel.
3. Select the entity that you want to test as the attacker.
4. Click OK. The entity name is displayed under the button.
5. Click the Select Defender button. The Select Simulation Object dialog box opens.
6. Select the entity that you want the attacker to fire on.
7. Click OK. The entity name is displayed under the button. The viewer redisplays to show the probability graph for each weapon that the attacker has (Figure 610).

**Figure 610. Damage Probabilities viewer with entities selected**




8. Click in the graph at the range for which you want to see the probability of effect result. The Information table title (Information at range x.x) shows the range you have selected. The Result column in the Information table shows the probability that each weapon system on the attacker has of damaging the defender.
9. If the defender has multiple impact surfaces configured, select the surface whose probability you want to view.
10. If the defender has multiple angles of incidence configured, select the angle of incidence whose probability you want to view.
11. Optionally, clear the check boxes next to individual weapon systems to filter the number of graphs in the window.
12. Optionally, to reverse the relationship between attacker and defender, click the Firing At arrow buttons.
13. Optionally, to see the configuration page for the attacker or defender, click the Edit button ( ) next to the entity name.
14. Optionally to see the configuration page for the weapon, munition, or damage system, click the label in the appropriate column.

15. Optionally, click an Alert button ( ) or Information button ( ) to display explanatory information, such as the fact that a weapon system cannot target the selected defender.

## 71.5. Configuring Damage for Dynamic Terrain

Dynamic terrain damage is configured using the damage-by-power approach. It is configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/base/vrfSim/systems/other/dynamic-terrain.sysdef* in the settings for the dynamic-terrain-munition-damage controller. Terrain can be damaged using standard terrain damage or high fidelity terrain damage.

### 71.5.1 Standard Terrain Damage

When you use standard terrain damage, the controller publishes a series of concentric damage areas of decreasing damage from the impact point. The type of terrain damage (that is, the switch in the terrain to be updated) is defined by **standard-terrain-damage-type** in *dynamic-terrain.sysdef*. The detonation power domain that causes this damage is defined by **standard-power-type**. The `standard-terrain-damage-table` block specifies the concentric areas. When a detonation is received, for each entry in this table a new area is created based on the range that produces the specified power. Then the switch in the terrain model is set to the specified damage setting.

The following code is from *./data/simulationModelSets/base/vrfSim/systems/other/dynamic-terrain.sysdef*:

```
(standard-terrain-damage-table
   (damage-by-power-entry
       (power 15)
       (damage "slight")
   )
   (damage-by-power-entry
       (power 40)
       (damage "moderate")
   )
   (damage-by-power-entry
       (power 75)
       (damage "destroyed")
   )
)
```

This table generates three dynamic terrain areas. The smallest area is defined by the area on the terrain that experiences an explosive power of at least 75. It is switched to a value of “destroyed”. The next larger area is the area that experiences power between 40 and 75. It is switched to a value of “moderate”. Finally the outer area is the area that experiences power between 15 and 40. It is switched to a value of “slight”.

### 71.5.2 High Fidelity Terrain Damage

You can configure high fidelity damage areas along with the standard damage. To determine where high fidelity damage areas should be created, VR-Forces queries the terrain to find any dynamic terrain features that match the given **dynamic-terrain-type** setting. This can be used to generate additional or more specific types of damage to select locations in the terrain that support a higher fidelity of damage. Just as with standard damage, a **power-type** is specified that corresponds to the detonation power domain that is causing this damage. High fidelity terrain damage is configured in the `high-fidelity-terrain-damage-table` block. It has the same format as the `standard-terrain-damage-table`.

The high fidelity damage lets you specify the damage-algorithm used. VR-Forces only supports the range-based algorithm, but you can develop your own algorithms in a plug-in. If you add additional damage algorithms, they might require configuration options that are not supported in the `high-fidelity-damage-table` provided by MAK. If necessary, you can specify additional parameters using the **additional-algorithm-config** parameter, which accepts a list of key/value string pairs.

High fidelity damage can produce a secondary detonation. This can be specified by setting **detonation-on-destroy** to True and defining the **detonation-munition** parameter. The **delay** parameter defines a delay in seconds between when power was first experienced and when the damage should be done. This allows the secondary detonation to create a particle effect that can mask the underlying terrain switch.

The following code is from *./data/simulationModelSets/base/vrfSim/systems/other/dynamic-terrain.sysdef*:

```
(high-fidelity-terrain-damage-table
   (entry
       (dynamic-terrain-type "damage_house")
       (power-type "explosive")
       (damage-algorithm "range-based")
       (delay 2.0)
       (detonate-on-destroy True)
       (detonation-munition 2 0 0 4 2 0 0)
       (terrain-damage-table
           (damage-by-power-entry
               (power 15) ;; explosive power is in kPa
               (damage "slight")
           )
           (damage-by-power-entry
               (power 40)
               (damage "moderate")
           )
           (damage-by-power-entry
               (power 70)
               (damage "destroyed")
           )
       )
       (additional-algorithm-config
       ;; Additional key/value pairs (string values) can be added here for
```

```
        ;; custom algorithm configuration
        ;; For example:
        ;; (my-custom-algorithm-config "config value string")
        )
    )
)
```

## 71.6. Configuring Detonation Results

The SISO Enumerations Document specifies a list of detonation results, such as Entity Impact, Ground Impact, Detonation, and Air Burst. When a munition detonates, a detonation-result message is sent on the network. Applications can use this information to determine how to visualize the detonation or for other purposes.

By default, VR-Forces uses a small subset of the detonation results specified in the SISO Enumerations Document. You can customize the detonation result messages sent by VR-Forces by editing the detonation-results-table in *./data/simulationModelSets/base/detonationParams.mtl*.

For each munition type, you can configure the detonation results for entity impacts, surface impacts, and mid-air detonations. You can specify the detonation results using the strings listed in the comments at the top of the detonation-results-table or you can use any of the integer values specified in the SISO Enumerations Document for the different detonation result types. The *DtDetonationManager* converts the strings or integers into the appropriate detonation result messages to send over the network. (For details about the *DtDetonationManager*, please see *VR-Forces Developers Guide* class documentation. If editing *detonationParams.mtl* does not meet your needs, you can use the API to override *DtDetonationManager*.

The following code shows the entry in the detonation-results-table for an anti-ship missile:

```
(detonation-result-entry
    (munition
        ;; Anti-Ship Missile (incl. Exocet)
        (munition-type  2 6 -1 1 -1 -1 -1)
        (warhead  -1)
        (guidance-mode  0)
    )
    (entity-impact-result-list
        (default-entity
            (entity-type -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
            (detonation-result "entity-impact")
        )
    )
    (surface-impact-result-list
        (default
            (surface-type "default")
            (detonation-result "ground-impact")
        )
        (water
            (surface-type "water")
            (detonation-result "detonation")
```

```
            )
            (undefined
                (surface-type "undefined")
                (detonation-result "detonation")
            )
            (ground
                (surface-type "ground")
                (detonation-result "ground-impact")
            )
        )
        (mid-air-detonation-result "detonation")
    )
```

# 72. Configuring Movement Systems

This chapter describes configuration files that affect simulation object movement.


72.1. Configuring Formations ..... 1490
72.1.1 Formation Files ..... 1490
72.1.2 Creating a User-Defined Formation ..... 1491
72.2. Configuring Obstruction Avoidance ..... 1492
72.2.1 Configuring Object Types ..... 1492
72.2.2 Configuring Vector Feature Types ..... 1492
72.3. Configuring Embarkation ..... 1493

# 72.1. Configuring Formations

Although you can create and edit formation files by hand as described in this section, the recommended way to create and edit formations is to use the Simulation Object Editor.

The object parameter database lists the formations available to a unit in the `formations` element in its *.entity* file. Each formation is identified by its name and the path to the formation file, for example:

```
<formations paramName="formation-list" autoLayout="0">
   <formation formationName="Line" formationFile=
       "@(formation-dir)/platoonLine.frm"/>
   <formation formationName="Column" formationFile=
       "@(formation-dir)/platoonColumn.frm"/>
   <formation formationName="Wedge" formationFile=
       "@(formation-dir)/platoonWedge.frm"/>
   <formation formationName="Vee" formationFile=
       "@(formation-dir)/platoonVee.frm"/>
</formations>
```

## 72.1.1 Formation Files

A formation file specifies the name of the formation and has an entry for each simulation object in the default formation definition. Each entry specifies a **promotion-id**, a **leader-promotion-id**, and a **position-offset**, where:

- The **promotion-id** specifies the order in which simulation objects are promoted to unit leader if the leader is incapacitated.
- The **leader-promotion-id** specifies the unit member from whom the entry's position will be offset.
- The **position-offset** specifies how many meters behind, to the right, and above the entry will follow its leader. The **position-offset** is specified in terms of the body coordinate system of its leader.

The following is a portion of the formation file for a column formation:

```
(column-formation
  (entry-0
     (promotion-id  0)
     (leader-promotion-id  -1)
     (position-offset  0.000000 0.000000 0.000000)
  )
  (entry-1
     (promotion-id  1)
     (leader-promotion-id  0)
     (position-offset  -25.000000 0.000000 0.000000)
  )
```

```
   (entry-2
      (promotion-id  2)
      (leader-promotion-id  1)
      (position-offset  -25.000000 0.000000 0.000000)
   )
   (entry-3
      (promotion-id  3)
      (leader-promotion-id  2)
      (position-offset  -25.000000 0.000000 0.000000)
   )
)
```

In a column, each simulation object follows the simulation object in front of it by 25 meters. Therefore, the **leader-promotion-id** for each entry is the **promotion-id** of the simulation object in front of it, and each entry has a **position-offset** of -25 meters.

The number of entries in a formation file is finite. However, it is possible to place more simulation objects into a unit than there are entries in a formation file. If this happens, VR-Forces increments the **promotion-id** of the last entry in the formation file and assigns the new simulation object the same **position-offset** as the last entry in the formation file. For a simple formation like a column, this works well. If you are using a more complex formation, this mechanism might create unintended relationships among simulation objects.

If you want to change the layout of the formations provided with VR-Forces, you can edit the formation files.

### 72.1.2 Creating a User-Defined Formation

You can create formations other than those provided by VR-Forces. It is recommended that you create formations in the Simulation Object Editor. If you use the Simulation Object Editor, you do not have to edit any formation files or *.entity* files by hand.

➤ **To create a formation:**

1. Using one of the formation files supplied with VR-Forces as your template, place as many entries as you want in the formation file and specify their offsets.
2. Save the new formation under a new name.
3. Add an entry to the formation list block in the *.entity* file for each unit that you want to be able to use the formation. Be sure to use the same structure and naming conventions as the default entries. For example:

```
<formations paramName="formation-list" autoLayout="0">
    <formation formationName="Line" formationFile="@(
        formation-dir)/DI-companyLine.frm"/>
    <formation formationName="Column" formationFile="@(
        formation-dir)/DI-companyColumn.frm.frm"/>
    <formation formationName="Wedge" formationFile="@(
        formation-dir)/DI-companyWedge.frm"/>
    <formation formationName="Vee" formationFile="@(
        formation-dir)/DI-companyVee.frm"/>
</formations>
```

We recommend that you configure your formations so that simulation objects follow the leader, rather than the next closest member of the formation (as is done in column formation.) This ensures that formations have the best chance of maintaining their formation as they maneuver.

## 72.2. Configuring Obstruction Avoidance

You can configure ground entities to avoid specific entity types, vector features, or both.

---

The more vector feature types and entity types specified for avoidance, the more memory and processing power required.

---

Obstruction avoidance is influenced by the **stopping-distance-factor** and **lateral-clearance** parameters. If entities display erratic behavior, try raising the values, lowering the speed of the entities, or both.

### 72.2.1 Configuring Object Types

To specify the types of objects that an entity type should avoid, add or remove the appropriate object type from the obstruction sensor entry in the movement system definition file. For example, the following object types are configured for ground entities:

```
(object-type
    (object-type  1 (18 -1 -1 2 -1 -1 -1)) ;; vrfObstacles object type
    (object-type  1 (1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)) ;; DtPlatform entity kind
    (object-type  1 (3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)) ;; DtLifeForm entity kind
)
```

### 72.2.2 Configuring Vector Feature Types

Configuring avoidance of vector features relies on the attributes on the feature data as well as the named queries defined in *./appData/settings/featureconfig.txt*. To configure specific feature data for obstruction avoidance, modify the feature-types-to-avoid type list in the obstruction sensor in the appropriate system definition file. The types in this file are named feature queries, and you can add as many as you need.

Example of *human.sysdef*:

```
(obstruction-sensor
    ...
    (feature-types-to-avoid
        (type "MAK_OBSTACLE")
    )
)
```

Example of *air-cushion-default.sysdef*. This entity specifically calls out building, infrastructure, and vegetation, instead of obstacle, because obstacle also includes waterway.

```
(obstruction-sensor
```

```
    ...
    (feature-types-to-avoid
        (type "MAK_BUILDING")
        (type "MAK_INFRASTRUCTURE")
        (type "MAK_VEGETATION")
    )
)
```

## 72.3. Configuring Embarkation

Entities and units that are configured to allow entities to embark on them have an occupancy-director-controller component. Its parameters configure embarkation, as follows:

- The locations at which entities can embark on an entity are configured as **ingress-points**.
- The locations from which entities can disembark are configured as **egress-points**.
- The number of entities that can embark on an entity is defined by the **embarkation-slots** parameter.

The **embarkation-slots** parameter has one or more **embarkation-slot-entry** parameters that identify a location on the entity where an embarked entity can be placed. The **embarkation-slot-entry** parameters also specify the orientation of the embarked entity and the types of entities that can occupy the slot.

The **ingress-points** and **egress-points** parameters each have one or more **load-entry** parameters. The **load-entry** parameters specify one or more **load-entry-point** parameters. If there is one **load-entry-point**, an embarked entity enters the parent entity at that point and is immediately placed in an available slot. If a **load-entry** has multiple load entry points, they specify the points in a route that the embarking entity follows to reach its slot. This configuration is for large parent entities, such as aircraft carriers, on which entities land and then taxi to a slot.

You configure embarkation in the Simulation Object Editor. For details, please see "Appendix 66. Configuring Embarkation" on page 1365.

# 73. Configuring Emitters and Radios

This chapter describes configuration files for emitters and radios. For information about configuring the display of emitters, please see "Chapter 49. Configuring Emitter Volumes" on page 1063.

73.1. Configuring Emitters ..... 1496
73.2. Configuring Radios ..... 1498
73.2.1 Publishing Radio Transmitters ..... 1498

## 73.1. Configuring Emitters

All fixed-wing aircraft have emitters as part of their radar sensor. Emitters have search modes. Search modes have a list of beams. You can configure entities with emitters that have more than one beam. You can also configure multiple emitters. The basic radar sensor with an emitter and two search modes (*./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/systems/sensors/active-radar-sensor.sysdef*) is as follows:

```
(active-radar-sensor-system
    (systems )
    (sensors
        (radar-sensor
            (component-descriptor-type "radar-signature-sensor-descriptor")
            (component-type  "radar-signature-sensor")
            . . .
            (sensor-domain  "radar")
            (sensor-offset $sensor-position)
            (sensor-positional-error  0.000000)
            (detection-level-determinator
                (determinator-type  "signature-detection-level-determinator")
                (detection-level-to-set-hostility  3)
                (combat-identification-level-table-file
                    (filename  "$(detection-dir)\std-radar-detection-table.csv")
                )
            )
            (detection-period  0.000000)
            (publish-emitter-system True)
            (emitter-system
                (system-name-enum  5570)
                (system-function-enum  5)
                (radar-mode-list
                    (search-mode
                        (index  0)
                        (radar-mode  "Search")
                        (beam-list
                            (beam-0
                            (index  0)
                            (type  "track")
                            (frequency  4999999488.000000)
                            (frequency-range  10000.000000)
                            (power  70.000000)
                            (pulse-repetition-frequency  0.000000)
                            (pulse-width  0.000000)
                            (azimuth-center  0.000000)
                            (azimuth-sweep  0.523599)
                            (elevation-center  0.349066)
                            (elevation-sweep  0.523599)
                            (sweep-sync  0.000000)
                            (beam-function-enum  1)
```

```
                            (beam-param-index  0)
                        )
                    )
                )
                (track-mode
                    (index  1)
                    (radar-mode  "Track")
                    (beam-list
                        (beam-0
                            ...
                        )
                    )
                )
            )
        )
    )
)
```

To configure multiple emitters for an entity, add additional radar-sensor blocks. Each block must have a unique name. For example:

```
(radar-sensor-1
    (component-descriptor-type "radar-signature-sensor-descriptor")
    (component-type  "radar-signature-sensor")
    . . .
    (emitter-system
        ...
        )
    )
)
(radar-sensor-2
    (component-descriptor-type "radar-signature-sensor-descriptor")
    (component-type  "radar-signature-sensor")
    . . .
    (emitter-system
        ...
        )
    )
)
```

To add multiple modes on an emitter, add additional mode blocks to the radar mode list. The names of radar modes (for example, track-mode and search-mode) and the value for the **radar-mode** parameter are arbitrary. You can name them whatever you want.

To add multiple beams on a radar mode, add additional **beam-list** blocks and change the name of each block. For example:

```
(search-mode
    (index  0)
    (radar-mode  "Search")
    (beam-list
        (beam-0
```

```
            ...
        )
        (beam-1
            ...
        )
    )
)
```

## 73.2. Configuring Radios

All radios are *DtVrfRadio* classes or subclasses. The radio is responsible for managing incoming and outgoing radio messages on a single simulation object. Each radio is associated with a specific communication model, and uses this communication model to send and receive messages.

Radios are configured in platform (OPE) files. The radios block in the OPE file lists all the radios on the simulation object and the parameters for each radio. Parameters include the type of radio descriptor and type of radio class, which are strings used to create the C++ classes from the factories. The **comm-model-name** parameter identifies which communication model a radio is associated with. Every radio must be associated with a communication model.

A typical radio entry is as follows:

```
(main-radio
    (radio-descriptor-type "radio-descriptor")
    (radio-type  "default-radio")
    (comm-model-name  "default-radio-model")
    (publish-transmitter True)
    (transmitter-params
        (radio-type  7 1 225 2 1 20)
        (initial-frequency  3000000.000000)
        (power  30.000000)
    )
)
```

### 73.2.1 Publishing Radio Transmitters

The external communication model requires that any simulation objects sending or receiving messages though the communications effects server publish a DIS or HLA radio transmitter object. By default, the internal communication model does not publish radio transmitters.

Publishing radio transmitters is controlled by two parameters:

- The **publish-transmitters** parameter in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/commModelParams.mtl*. By default, this parameter is False for the simple communication model and True for the external communication model.
- The **publish-transmitter** parameter in an entity's OPE file. This parameter is set to true for all object types.

To publish radio transmitters, both of these parameters must be True. If you do not change the OPE files and set **publish-transmitters** to True, all simulation objects will publish radio transmitters. If you set **publish-transmitters** to True and do not want all simulation objects to publish radio transmitters, you can set **publish-transmitter** to False for the object types that you do not want to publish them.

# 74. Joystick and Keyboard Controls

This chapter explains how to configure joysticks and the keyboard to control entity movement.


74.1. Using a Joystick to Control Entities ..... 1502
74.1.1 Switching Between Systems ..... 1503
74.1.2 Disabling Joystick Control ..... 1504
74.2. Using the Keyboard to Control an Entity ..... 1504
74.3. Configuring Joysticks and Keyboard Control ..... 1504
74.3.1 Creating a Joystick Configuration ..... 1505
74.3.2 Mapping the Joystick Stick ..... 1507
74.3.3 Mapping Joystick Buttons and Keyboard Keys ..... 1508
74.3.4 Configuring “Switch Between” Options ..... 1511
74.3.5 Using Multiple Joysticks ..... 1513
74.3.6 Specifying a Favorite Joystick Configuration ..... 1515
74.4. Installing a Gamepad on Linux ..... 1515

# 74.1. Using a Joystick to Control Entities

VR-Forces supports use of joysticks, other types of game controllers, and keyboard keys to control ground, fixed-wing, and rotary-wing entities. You can attach multiple joysticks, which allows you to control multiple entities, movement and weapons fire on one entity, or some combination. You can also use a joystick and keyboard mappings together to control an entity.

Joystick control is managed in the front-end. Joysticks should be attached to the computer from which you are running the front-end. Control messages are sent to the back-end, which can be on any computer in the simulation.

---

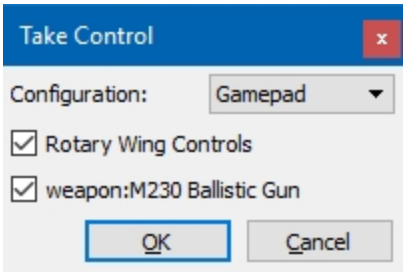
- Red Hat 7 does not support joysticks by default, but it can be enabled in the operating system. For details, go to this web site: https://access.redhat.com/solutions/64114
- You cannot enable or disable joystick support for all entities at once. You can only enable joysticks for individual entities.
- Embarked entities controlled by joystick cannot disembark. For example, if you use a joystick to control a fixed-wing taking off from a carrier, the aircraft will take off, but it will remain in an embarked state.
- For information about how to configure joysticks, please see "74.3. Configuring Joysticks and Keyboard Control" on page 1504.

---

➤ **To enable joystick control:**

1. Select the entity for which you want to enable joysticks.
2. Choose **Objects > Joystick > Take Control**. The Take Control dialog box opens.

**Figure 611. Take Control dialog box**




3. Select a joystick configuration from the Configuration list. (If you have specified a joystick configuration as a favorite, you do not have a choice of the configuration to use.)
4. Select the entity functions you want to control, usually movement and one or more weapons. (You can have more than one joystick attached and can also use keyboard controls, if they are configured.)
5. Click OK.

### 74.1.1 Switching Between Systems

Systems that are controlled by joysticks can be organized into functional groups so that you can configure them similarly and switch between the systems using a “switch between” key or button. VR-Forces includes a switch group for weapons. If an entity has multiple weapon systems, you can manage them in the following ways:

- Configure all weapons to use the same keys or joystick controls for the same function. For example, to fire any weapon, you could press **f**. Use the switch between key to switch between weapons for a given entity. You only need to learn one set of controls to manage all your weapons.
- Configure all weapons to use different keys or joystick controls for the same functions. For example, to fire a 120mm gun, press **f**; to fire a 7.62mm gun, press **g**. You would not use the switch between option.

If an entity has multiple weapons and you use switch options to change which one you control, there is no visual cue in the GUI to show you which weapon you are currently controlling. If there are more than two weapons on an entity, the switch option cycles through them.

You can create your own switch groups. For details, please see "74.3.4 Configuring “Switch Between” Options" on page 1511.

#### Configuring Multiple Identical Systems

If an entity has more than one instance of the same system, you must change the name of the function group if you want to control them separately. For example, suppose you want to mount two chain guns on an Apache helicopter. If they both have the same function group name (`weapon:M230 Ballistic Gun`), then you could not switch between them. You would need to rename one of them. This is done in the Simulation Object Editor when you add the additional system. (For complete details about using the Simulation Object Editor, please see "Appendix 61. The Simulation Object Editor and SMSs" on page 1225 through "Appendix 66. Configuring Embarkation" on page 1365.)

➤ **To rename a system function group:**

1. On the Start menu, choose **MAK Technologies > Simulation Object Editor**. The Simulation Object Editor opens.
2. Load *EntityLevel.sms*.
3. Select the entity whose system you want to edit.
4. In the systems list, for example the Weapons list, select the system you want to edit.
5. Click the Properties button for the system. A Properties dialog box opens.
6. Edit the function group name. For example, change `weapon:M230 Ballistic Gun` to `weapon:M230 Ballistic Gun 1`.
7. Click OK.
8. Save the SMS.

### 74.1.2 Disabling Joystick Control

➤ **To disable joystick control:**

1. Select the entity for which you want to disable joysticks.
2. Choose **Objects > Joystick > Release Control**.

## 74.2. Using the Keyboard to Control an Entity

The joystick configuration process allows you to configure keyboard control of entity movement and weapons. You can use keyboard control along with joysticks. For example, you could control entity movement from the keyboard and weapons from a joystick, or the opposite.

To enable or disable keyboard control, follow the procedures for enabling and disabling joystick control. Similarly, to configure keyboard control, follow the joystick configuration process. For more information, please see "74.1. Using a Joystick to Control Entities" on page 1502 and "74.3. Configuring Joysticks and Keyboard Control" below.

## 74.3. Configuring Joysticks and Keyboard Control

You can control entity movement and weapon fire using a joystick, the keyboard, or both. You can attach multiple joysticks and can use a mix of joystick and keyboard control at the same time. You configure joystick and keyboard mappings on the Application Settings dialog box, Joystick Configuration page.

The controls available for configuration on the Joystick Configuration page are taken from the joystick controllers in the movement, gun, and other system definitions. For example, the *ground-tracked.sysdef* file has the following entry:

```
 (joystick
    (component-descriptor-type "joy-controller-descriptor")
    (component-type  "ground-move-joystick-controller")
...
    (joystick-controls
        (steering
            (function-name "steering")
            (function-group $automotive-driving)
            (description "Controls the steering of this entity")
            (min-value -1.0)
            (max-value 1.0)
        )
        (throttle
            (function-name "throttle")
            (function-group $automotive-driving)
            (description "Controls the throttle of this entity")
            (min-value 0.0)
            (max-value 1.0)
        )
```

```
        (brake
            (function-name "brake")
            (function-group $automotive-driving)
            (description "Controls the braking of this entity")
            (min-value 1.0)
            (max-value 1.0)
            )
        (change-gear
            (function-name "change-gear")
            (function-group $automotive-driving)
            (description "Puts the entity in forward, reverse or pivot gear")
            (min-value 0)
            (max-value 2)
            (cycle True) ;; Each click cycles from min to max
        )
    )
)
```

Based on this system definition file, the Joystick Configuration page (Figure 612 on the next page) has an Automotive Driving function with controls for brake, change-gear, steering, and throttle.

The **min-value** and **max-value** parameters determine how the edit buttons on the Joystick Configuration page work, as follows:

- If **min-value** and **max-value** are both set to 1 (as in the brake control in the example system definition file), the control is a key mapping button ( ). You can set it to Yes or No.
- If **max-value** is an integer greater than 1 (as in the change gear control in the example system definition file), the control is a key mapping button. You can configure keyboard buttons to increase or decrease the control by 1, or to set it to a specific value.
- If **min-value** does not equal **max-value** and **max-value** is less than or equal to 1 (as in the throttle control in the example system definition file), there is a joystick button ( ) and a key mapping button on the Joystick Configuration page. The keyboard button lets you specify a percentage increase or decrease of the control value. (For example, increase throttle by 10%.)

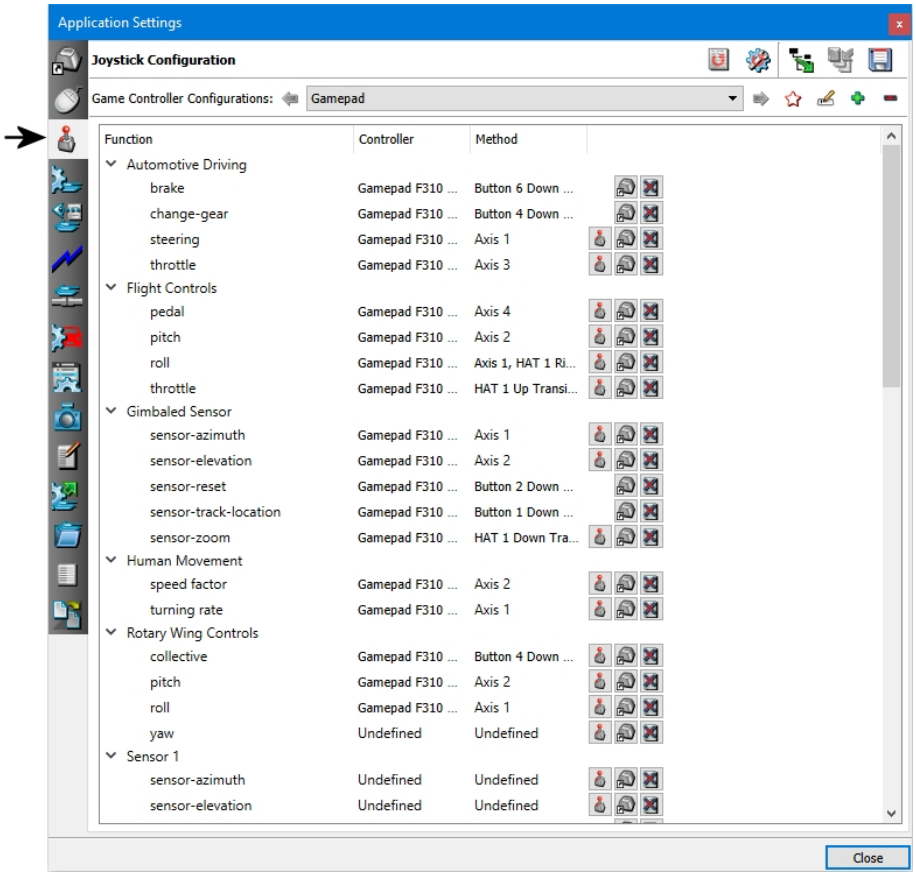
## 74.3.1 Creating a Joystick Configuration

A joystick configuration contains the joystick mappings and, optionally, keyboard mappings that you can use to control an entity. VR-Forces includes default configurations for a gamepad and a joystick.

➤ **To create a joystick configuration:**

1. Create or open a scenario.
2. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
3. Select the Joystick Configuration page (Figure 612).

**Figure 612. Joystick Configuration page**




4. Click the Add button ( ). The New Configuration dialog box opens.
5. Type a name for the configuration.

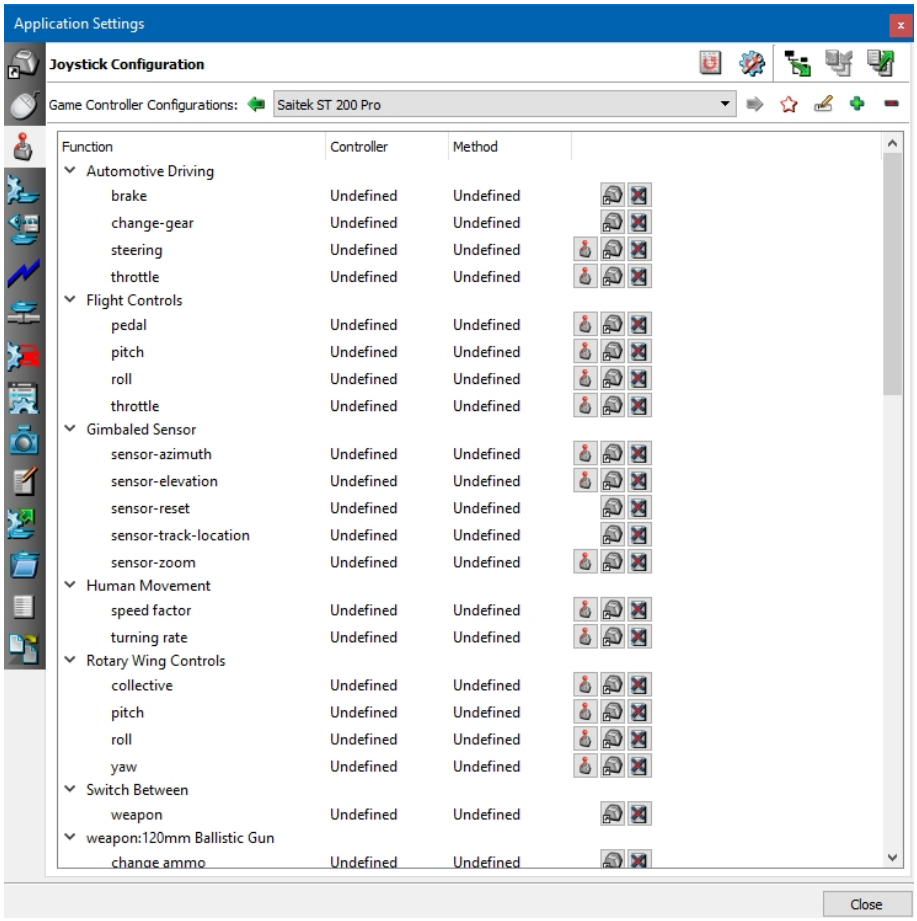
---

! The name of the joystick configuration must match the name that the joystick uses to identify itself to the computer.

---

6. Click OK. The window redisplays to show the functions that this device can control (Figure 613).

**Figure 613. Joystick configuration**




7. Edit the joystick and keyboard mappings as described in"74.3.2 Mapping the Joystick Stick" below and "74.3.3 Mapping Joystick Buttons and Keyboard Keys" on the next page.

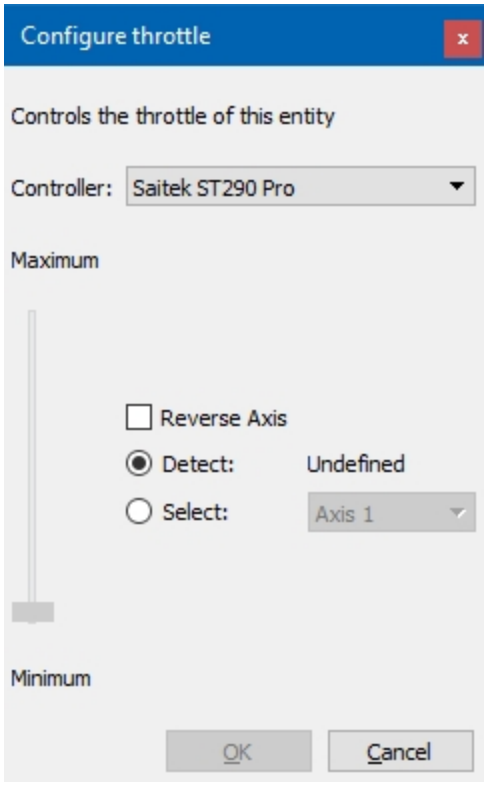
## 74.3.2 Mapping the Joystick Stick

To control an entity with a joystick, you map the joystick controls to specific entity movement components and weapons.

➤ **To map joystick controls:**

1. Create a joystick configuration, as described in "74.3.1 Creating a Joystick Configuration" on page 1505 .
2. On the Joystick Configuration page (Figure 612 on the previous page), click the Joystick button ( ) for the function you want to map. A joystick configuration dialog box opens (Figure 614).

**Figure 614. Joystick configuration dialog box**




3. In the Controller list, select the controller you want to configure.
4. Configure each axis as follows:
    a. To let VR-Forces select the axis, select the Detect option and move the joystick in the axis you want to use for this control.
    b. To choose the axis, select the Select option and select an Axis from the list.
    c. Move the joystick in the axis you are configuring. If the Maximum/Minimum slider moves in the direction that you expect, you are finished. If the slider moves opposite to what you expect, select the Reverse Axis check box. It should now move as expected.
5. Click OK.
6. Repeat this process for each function you want to control with the joystick.

## 74.3.3 Mapping Joystick Buttons and Keyboard Keys

You can map joystick buttons and keyboard keys to entity movement control and weapon control. When entity control is enabled, the entity control key mappings override any other key mappings, such as observer control mappings.

➤ **To map joystick buttons and keyboard keys to entity control:**

1. Create a joystick configuration, as described in "74.3.1 Creating a Joystick Configuration" on page 1505.
2. On the Joystick Configuration page ("Figure 612. Joystick Configuration page" on page 1506), click the Key Mapping button ( ) for the control you want to map. A configuration dialog box opens. It may call for a range of values (Figure 615), or just be a toggle (Figure 616).

**Figure 615. Key mapping configuration dialog box**

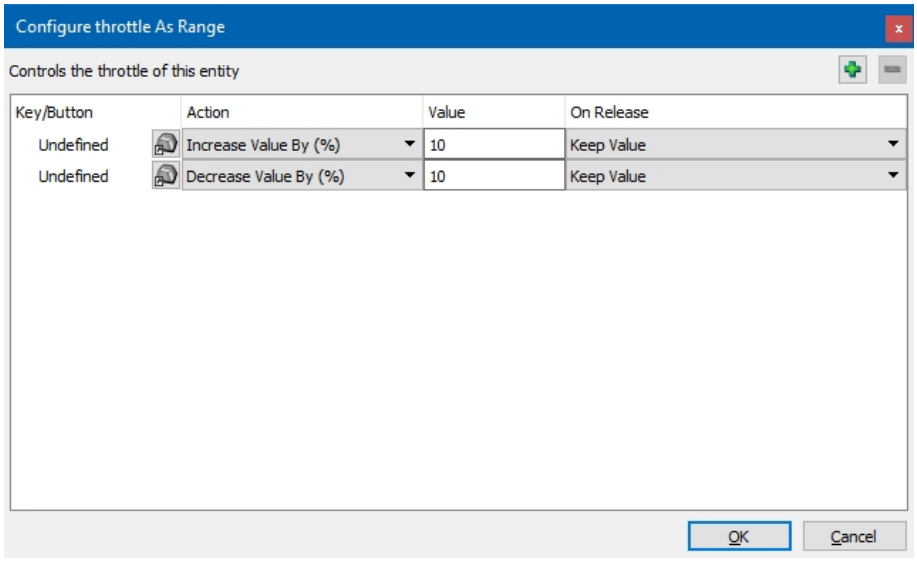
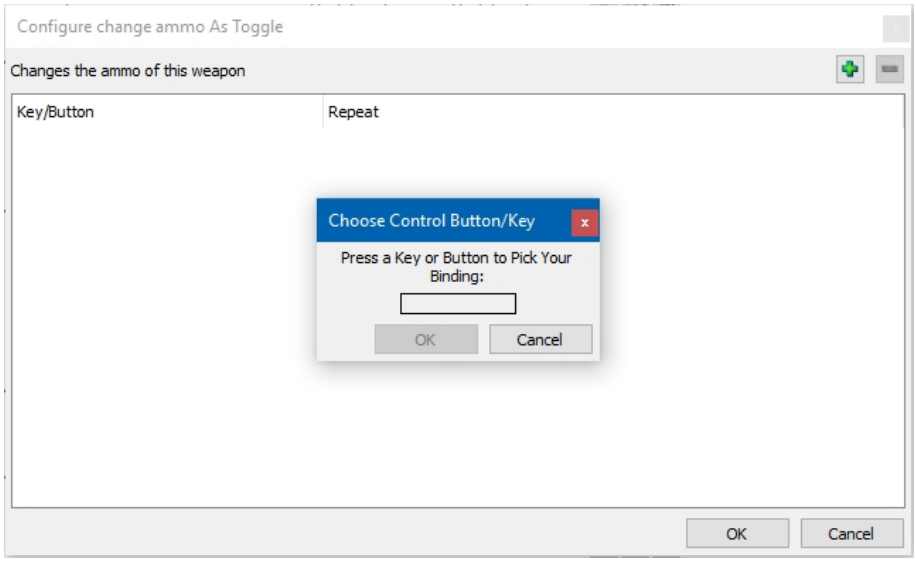



**Figure 616. Key mapping configuration as toggle dialog box**

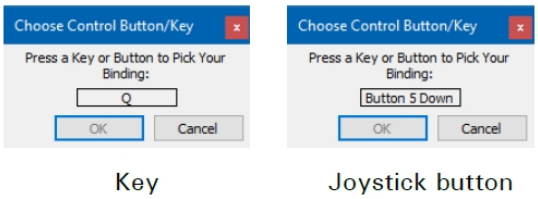



3. If the mapping requires a range, for each row in the dialog box, do the following:

a. Click the Key Mapping button ( ). The Choose Control Button/Key dialog box opens (Figure 616).

b. Press the joystick button or keyboard key that you want to use to activate this control. It is displayed in the dialog box (Figure 617). (If a key binding is not available, the OK button does not become activated.)

**Figure 617. Choose Control Button/Key dialog box with selection**



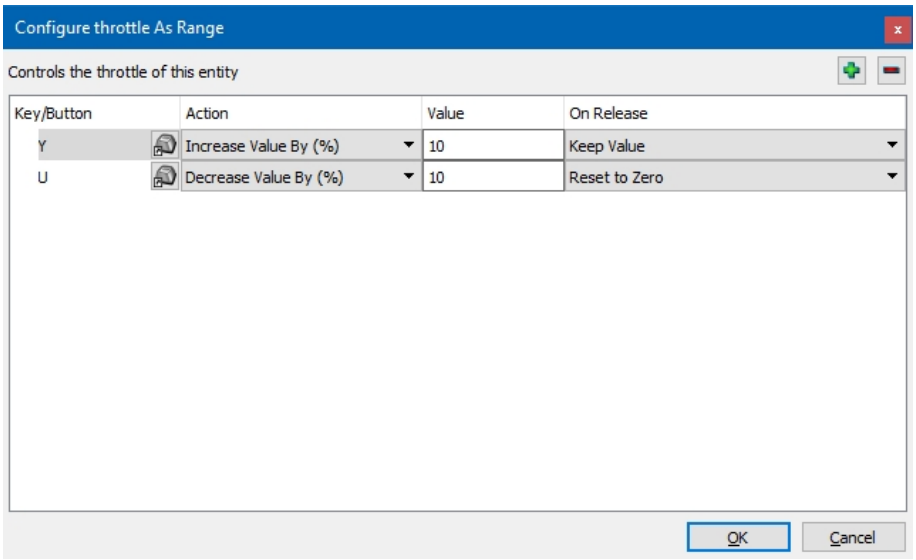

c. Click OK.

d. In the Action column, select an option from the list.

e. In the Value column, enter an appropriate value for the Action option.

f. In the On Release column, select an option from the list. (This is what happens when you release the key.) A complete dialog box looks similar to Figure 618.

**Figure 618. Key mapping configuration dialog box**




4. If the keyboard mapping is a toggle, The Choose Control Button/Key dialog box opens automatically. Do the following:

a. Press the key or joystick button that you want to use.

b. Click OK.

c. In the Repeat column, select Yes or No. Yes means that the action repeats if you hold down the key. No means it happens one time for each key press.

5. Click OK.

6. Repeat this process for each function you want to configure.

### 74.3.4 Configuring “Switch Between” Options

Some entities may have multiple systems of a certain type, such as weapons. You might want to be able to control all similar systems with the same set of keys and joystick controls. VR-Forces lets you do this with switch groups. You can specify a key or button to press to switch between the different systems in a switch group. For example, you might press a button to switch between a tank’s main battle gun and a machine gun.

The controls for which you can specify a switch between option are listed in the Switch Between section of the Joystick Configuration page. Specifying the key or button to use is described in "74.3.3 Mapping Joystick Buttons and Keyboard Keys" on page 1508. This section explains how to set up switch options.

To set up a switch option, when you define a function group in a system definition file’s meta data, you use the syntax `switch_option:system`. The `switch_option` is a keyword. If an entity has multiple systems that use that keyword, you can switch between them using the switch between key or button. VR-Forces systems use the **weapon** keyword for switching between weapon systems. The following code, from *mm-gun.template_sysdef* shows how this works.

The controllers specify two function groups for joystick control – `$slew-group` and `$ballistic-gun-group`. These groups specify four functions that the joystick can control – slew, elevation, fire, and change ammo:

```
(weapon-120mm-gun
   (controllers
       (turret-joystick
           ...
           (joystick-controls
               (slew
                   (function-name "slew")
                   (function-group $slew-group)
                   (description "Controls the slew of this weapon")
                   (min-value -1.0)
                   (max-value 1.0)
               )
           )
       )
...
       (main-gun-control-joy
           (joystick-controls
               (elevation
```

```
                    (function-name "elevation")
                    (function-group $ballistic-gun-group)
                    (description "Controls the elevation of this weapon")
                    (min-value -1.0)
                    (max-value 1.0)
                )
                (fire
                    (function-name "fire")
                    (function-group $ballistic-gun-group)
                    (description "Fires this weapon")
                    (min-value 1.0)
                    (max-value 1.0)
                )
                (change-ammo
                    (function-name "change ammo")
                    (function-group $ballistic-gun-group)
                    (description "Changes the ammo of this weapon")
                    (min-value 1.0)
                    (max-value 1.0)
                )
            )
```

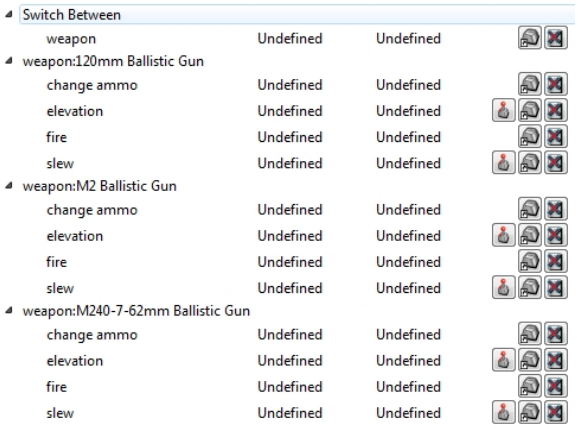
The meta-data section of the sysdef file specifies a value for these groups. It is specified as the keyword `weapon` followed by the name of the system – `weapon:120mm Ballistic Gun`:

```
(meta-data
   (system-name "Ballistic Gun (Elevating/Rotating)")
   (system-description "Template for a system that will allow for the
Simulation Object to be equipped with a rotating, elevating mounted
ballistic weapon.")
   (allowed-state-repository-types "ground-vehicle-param"
       "surface-entity-param" "rotary-wing-entity-param")
   (system-categories "weapon")
   (parameter-data-list
       ...)
       (string-parameter-data
           (parameter-name  "slew-group")
           (variable-type  "DtRwString")
           (display-label  "Slew Joystick Group Name")
           (display-units  "")
           (source-units  "")
           (list-items "")
           (list-display 0)
           (allow-edit True)
           (display-value True)
           (roll-up-rule "none")
           (default-value $default-slew-group
       )
       (string-parameter-data
           (parameter-name  "ballistic-gun-group")
```

```
            (variable-type  "DtRwString")
            (display-label  "Ballistic Gun Joystick Group Name")
            (display-units  "")
            (source-units  "")
             (list-items "")
            (list-display 0)
            (allow-edit True)
            (display-value True)
            (roll-up-rule "none")
            (default-value $default-ballistic-gun-group)
        )
 ...
```

Other weapon systems are configured similarly. On the Joystick Configuration page (Figure 619), the Switch Between group lists weapon as an option. The weapons configured for switching all show the `switch_option:sysdef syntax`.

**Figure 619. Switch between option**



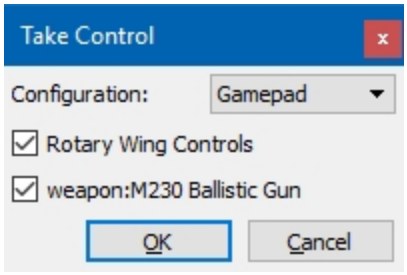

For details about using the switch between option, please see "74.1.1 Switching Between Systems" on page 1503.

## 74.3.5 Using Multiple Joysticks

You can attach multiple joysticks or game controllers to your computer. You must create a configuration for each joystick that you want to use. When you take control of an entity, you select the configuration you want to use and the functions that you want to control with the selected configuration.

In Figure 620, the selected entity (a helicopter) has two functions that can be controlled by joystick or game controller.

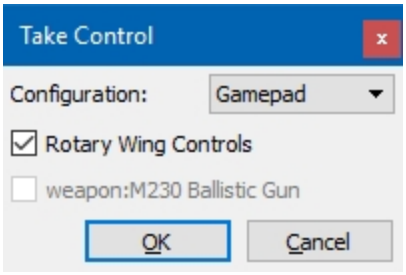
**Figure 620. Take Control dialog box**




You could select one configuration to control both, or you could control the two functions with different controllers, as follows:

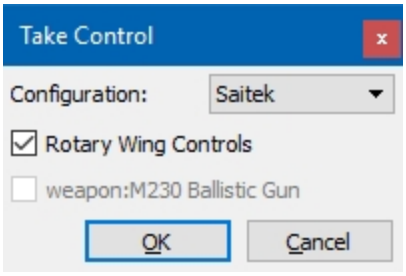
1. Select the entity.
2. Choose **Objects > Joystick > Take Control**. The Take Control dialog box opens.
3. Clear the Rotary Wing Controls check box. This leaves the Gamepad configuration controlling the M230 ballistic gun.
4. Click OK.
5. Select the entity again and choose **Objects > Joystick > Take Control**. The Take Control dialog box opens (Figure 621). Only the Rotary Wing Controls function is available, because the ballistic gun is already under the control of the Gamepad configuration.

**Figure 621. Take Control dialog box, one function available**




6. In the Configuration list, select a different configuration (Figure 622).

**Figure 622. Take Control dialog box, second configuration selected**



7. Click OK. The rotary wing controls are now controlled by the Saitek configuration and the ballistic gun by the Gamepad configuration.

### 74.3.6 Specifying a Favorite Joystick Configuration

Ordinarily, when you ask to take control of an entity with a joystick, you must specify the joystick configuration to use. You can specify a configuration as the favorite. In that case the configuration is automatically applied. However, you cannot choose a different configuration.

➤ **To specify a favorite joystick configuration:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Joystick Configuration page (Figure 612 on page 1506).
3. In the Game Controller Configurations list, select the configuration that you want to specify as the favorite.
4. Click the Star button ( ). A star is added to the configuration name in the list.

## 74.4. Installing a Gamepad on Linux

You can use Logitech Gamepads on Linux. You configure them like you would a joystick.

➤ **To install a Gamepad driver on Linux:**

1. Download the xboxdrv driver for Linux.
2. Install the driver:

   ```
   yum install xboxdrv
   ```
3. Test to see if your controller is recognized:

   ```
   xboxdrv -L
   ```

   Your device should be listed win an ID next to it.
4. To test that the device is working:

   ```
   xboxdrv -i id
   ```
5. To get the device to work with VR-Forces, issue the following command:

   ```
   xboxdrv --detach-kernel-driver --silent
   ```

# 75. Attaching Components to Remote Entities

This chapter explains how to configure components on remote entities.

75.1. Attaching Components to Remote Entities ..... 1518

## 75.1. Attaching Components to Remote Entities

You can attach VR-Forces sensors, actuators, and controllers to remote (non-VR-Forces) entities. This feature allows you to add to the capabilities of the remote entity and better integrate it with the VR-Forces simulation. For example, you could add a radio to an entity or you could enable spot reporting. When you attach a component to a remote entity, you can write a plan for that entity that uses the attached components. For details, please see "37.10. Writing Plans for Remote Entities" on page 911.

VR-Forces includes an example scenario, remoteAttachment, that uses remote attachment. Its use requires that you run an external application, the f18 example that comes with VR-Link. For details about how to run the scenario, please see the scenario's description. This and other example scenarios are found in *./userData/scenarios*.

When you add a component to a remote entity, the application that is simulating the entity is responsible for updating its position and health status. VR-Forces simulates the attached components. You can specify that VR-Forces simulate the components on one back-end or across all back-ends.

Simulation of components on remote entities has the following limitations:

- Only individual platforms and lifeforms can attach components. Units and environmental process objects are not supported.
- VR-Forces components cannot control remote entities. That is, they cannot change their position or state. Therefore, you should not attach components such as movement systems to remote entities, because they will have no effect on the entities. Similarly, components that expect to be attached to a locally simulated entity, such as an articulated part, may not work properly when attached to remote entities.

Components are attached to remote entities on the basis of entries in a component attachment table. The component attachment table provided by VR-Forces is *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/extra/componentAttachmentTable.mtl*.

The component attachment table associates entities with attachment key-names. The following is a sample component attachment table:

```
(remote-configurations
    (attachment-entry
        ;; CIS MIG 29
        (attach-by object-type (obj-type 1 (1 2 222 1 2 1 -1)))
        (key-name "mig29-config")
    )
    (attachment-entry
        ;; US F-18
        (attach-by object-type (obj-type 1 (1 2 225 1 9 -1 -1)))
        (key-name "f18-config")
    )
)
```

The entries in this table associate the key-names mig29-config and f18-config with appropriate entity type enumerations. You can also associate a key-name with marking text, as follows:

```
(attachment-entry
    (attach-by marking-text “HMMWV 1)
    (key-name "hmmwv-attachments")
)
```

The key-names in the component attachment table have corresponding entries in *vrfSim.opd* in the remote-configurations block, as follows:

```
(remote-configurations
    (remote-configuration
        (key-name "f18-config")
        (configuration-path "$(remote-config-dir)/f18.mtl")
    )
    (remote-configuration
        (key-name "mig29-config")
        (configuration-path "$(remote-config-dir)/mig29.mtl")
    )
)
```

The key-names are associated with specific configuration files, which by default are located in *./data/simulationModelSets/<model_set>/vrfSim/remoteConfigurations*. The configuration files contain the components that are to be attached to the remote entity. For examples, please see the files in the *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/remoteConfigurations* directory.

# XIII. Configuring the Graphical User Interface

The chapters in this section describe the display engine, windows, and channels, explain features of the graphical user interface (GUI), and how to configure menus and toolbars.

# 76. Display Engine and Window Management

This chapter explains how to add and configure windows and channels and how to save display engine configurations.


76.1. The Display Engine ..... 1524
76.1.1 Window Types ..... 1524
76.2. Managing Display Engine Configurations ..... 1524
76.2.1 Adding a Window ..... 1524
76.2.2 Adding a Channel to a Window ..... 1527
76.2.3 Removing a Window ..... 1528
76.2.4 Removing a Channel ..... 1528
76.2.5 Saving a Display Engine Configuration ..... 1528
76.2.6 Loading a Display Engine Configuration ..... 1528
76.3. Changing a Window's Attributes ..... 1529
76.4. Changing a Channel's Attributes ..... 1529
76.4.1 Setting the Clipping Planes ..... 1531
76.4.2 Specifying the Projection Resize Policy Attribute ..... 1533
76.4.3 Changing a Channel's Frustum (Field of View) ..... 1535
76.4.4 Changing the Viewport ..... 1536
76.4.5 Configuring Water Visibility ..... 1538
76.4.6 Channel Keywords ..... 1538
76.5. Configuring Multichannel Displays ..... 1539
76.5.1 Changing the Camera's Position and Orientation Offset ..... 1541
76.6. Stereoscopic Displays ..... 1541
76.6.1 Configuring Anaglyphic Stereo ..... 1542
76.6.2 Configuring Polarized Stereo ..... 1543

# 76.1. The Display Engine

The VR-Forces front-end has a component called a display engine. The display engine renders 3D and 2D data and can display data in one or more windows, which can each have zero or more channels. The windows and channels being rendered at any particular time make up a display engine configuration. You can save display engine configurations and can load them to quickly recreate a particular configuration.

## 76.1.1 Window Types

VR-Forces supports the following types of windows:

- Full screen. A full screen window uses the entire area of a monitor. It does not have any menus, panels, or other GUI controls.
- Resizable. A resizable window can be moved, resized, maximized, and minimized. It does not have any GUI controls. An inset view is an example of a resizable window. (For information about inset views, please see Inset Views.)
- Embedded. An embedded window is part of an application. The main display window in the VR-Forces front-end is an embedded window. The application provides a variety of controls that affect the view in the window. You could, if you wanted to, change VR-Forces's window to a different type, in which case it would no longer be embedded in the main application window.

A window can have zero or more channels. Each channel defines a viewable area on the screen. You must have at least one channel to see a rendered image in the window. Each channel can have its own observer.

# 76.2. Managing Display Engine Configurations

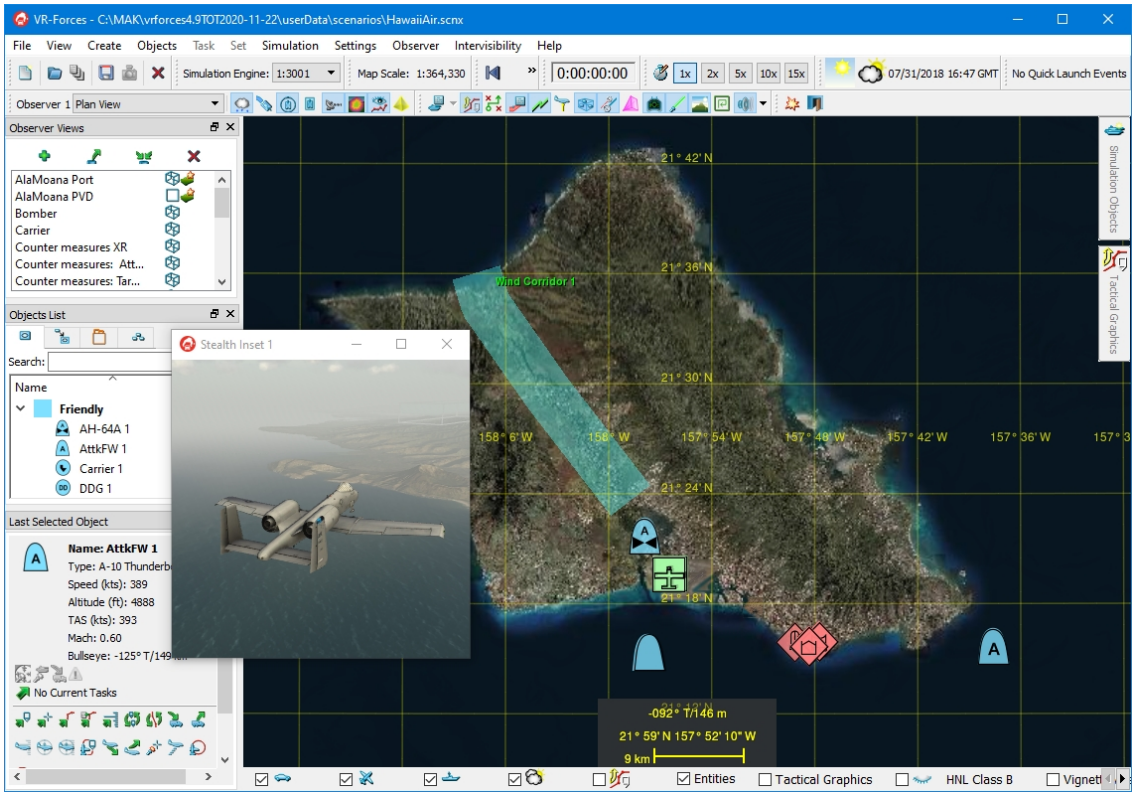
You can add windows to the display engine and you can add channels to the windows. The windows and channels make up a display engine configuration. You can save a display engine configuration and load a saved configuration.

## 76.2.1 Adding a Window

You can add as many windows as you want. New windows are named for the window type, for example Stealth Inset 1, Stealth Inset 2, Plan View Inset 1, and so on. Each window is created with one channel. You can add new windows from the File menu or in the Display Engine Configuration Editor.

➤ To add a window from the File menu, choose **File > New Stealth Window** (or **New Plan View Window**). A new window opens (Figure 623).

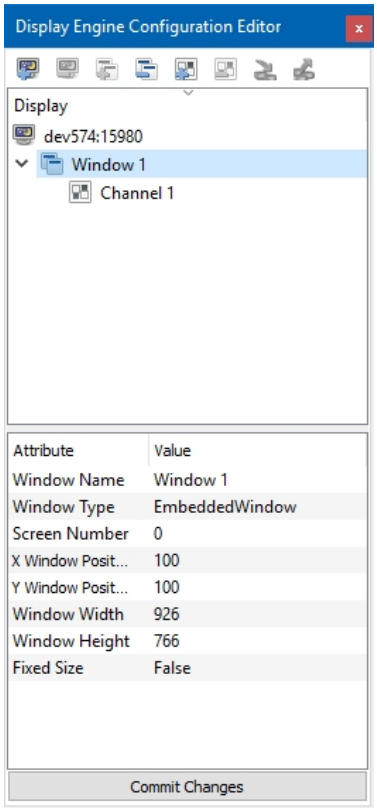
**Figure 623. New window**




➤ **To add a window from the Display Engine Configuration Editor:**

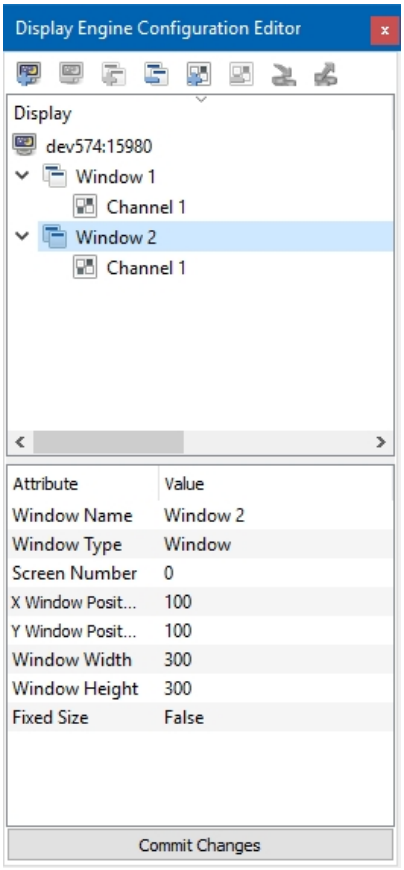
1. Choose **View > Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel**. The Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel is added to the VR-Forces window (Figure 624).

**Figure 624. Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel**




2. Select the display engine at the top of the Display tree.
3. Click the Add a Window button (), or right-click the display engine name and choose **Add a Window** on the context-sensitive menu. A new window opens and is listed in the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel (Figure 625).

**Figure 625. New window**




## 76.2.2 Adding a Channel to a Window

Adding a channel to a window lets you configure multiple views within that window.

➤ **To add a channel to a window:**

1. In the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel, select the window to which you want to add a channel.
2. Click the Add a Channel button (), or right-click the window name and choose **Add a Channel** from the menu.

---

To see a difference between the channels, change the attributes of the new channel. For details about editing channel attributes, please see "76.4. Changing a Channel's Attributes" on page 1529.

---

### 76.2.3 Removing a Window

➤ **To remove a window:**

1. In the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel, select the window that you want to remove.
2. Click the Remove Window button (), or right-click the window name and choose **Remove Window** from the menu.

### 76.2.4 Removing a Channel

➤ **To remove a channel:**

1. In the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel, select the channel that you want to remove.
2. Click the Remove Channel button (), or right-click the window name and choose **Remove Channel** from the menu.

### 76.2.5 Saving a Display Engine Configuration

You can save a display engine configuration so that you can easily replicate the configuration at a later time.

➤ **To save a display engine configuration:**

1. Click the Save Display Engine Configuration button (), or right-click the name of the display engine and choose **Save Display Engine Configuration** on the menu. The Save Display Engine Configuration dialog box opens.
2. Type a name for the display engine configuration.
3. Click Save.

### 76.2.6 Loading a Display Engine Configuration

➤ **To load a display engine configuration:**

1. In the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel, select the display engine at the top of the window.
2. Click the Load Display Engine Configuration button (), or right-click the name of the display engine and choose **Load Display Engine Configuration** on the menu. The Load Display Engine Configuration dialog box opens.
3. Select the display engine configuration you want to load.
4. Click Open.

---

You can also drag-and-drop a *.DCX* file to the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel to load it.

---

## 76.3. Changing a Window's Attributes

You can change the following attributes of a window:

- Window Name.
- Window Type (for details about window types, please see "76.1.1 Window Types" on page 1524 ).
- Screen Number.
- Position (X, Y coordinates of upper left corner, in screen pixels).
- Width and height, in pixels.
- Fixed size.

➤ **To change a window's attributes:**

1. Select the window in the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel. A list of attributes is displayed at the bottom of the editor (Figure 624 on page 1526).
2. Click the value of the attribute that you want to change.
3. To change a numeric value, type or select a value.
4. To change the Window Type or Fixed Size, select a value from the list.
5. To change the name, type a new name.
6. Click Commit Changes. The window is updated.

---

You can also change a window's position by dragging it to a new location. You can change its size by resizing the window directly. The new values are shown in the attributes list the next time you select the window in the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel.

---

## 76.4. Changing a Channel's Attributes

You can change the following attributes of a channel:

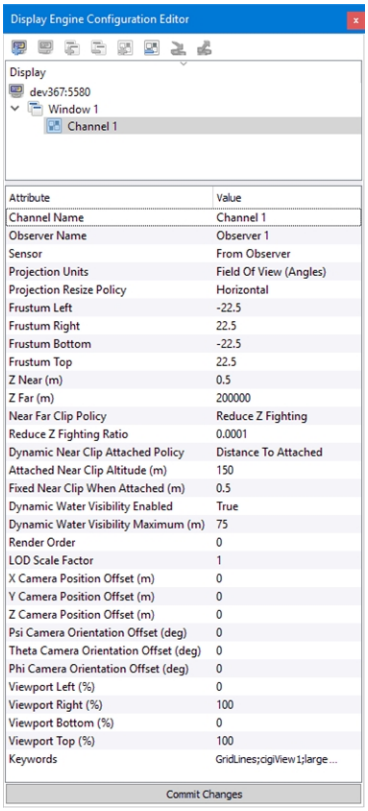
- Channel Name.
- Observer Name.
- Sensor. Use the sensor configured for the current observer, or override the observer and use one of the listed sensors.
- Projection Units – field of view, in angles, or database, in meters.
- Projection Resize Policy – fixed, vertical, or horizontal.
- Frustum (Left, Right, Top, and Bottom) (field of view).
- Z Near and Z Far (clipping planes).
- Near Far Clip Policy.

- Reduce Z Fighting Ratio.
- Dynamic Near Clip Attached Policy.
- Attached Near Clip Altitude.
- Fixed Near Clip When Attached.
- Dynamic Water Visibility Enabled.
- Dynamic Water Visibility Maximum.
- Render Order. Set the order in which channels are rendered in a particular window. For example, to display Channel 1 over Channel 2, set Channel 1 to render after Channel 2.
- LOD Scale Factor.
- Camera Position Offset (X, Y, Z).
- Camera Orientation Offset (Psi (heading), Theta (pitch), Phi (roll)).
- Viewport (Left, Right, Bottom, Top).
- Keywords – keywords to associate with the channel, for example, "showCockpits". (For a list of channel keywords, please see "76.4.6 Channel Keywords" on page 1538.)

➤ **To change a channel's attributes:**

1. Choose **View > Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel**.
2. Select the channel in the Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel. A list of attributes is displayed at the bottom of the editor (Figure 626).

**Figure 626. Channel attributes**




3. Click the value of the attribute that you want to change.
4. To change a numeric value, type or select a new value.

   To change the Observer Name, Sensor, Project Units, Projection Resize Policy, or Parent Channel, select a value from the list.

   To change the Channel Name, type a new name. (For details about some of these attributes, see the sections that follow this one.)
5. Click Commit Changes. The window is updated.

## 76.4.1 Setting the Clipping Planes

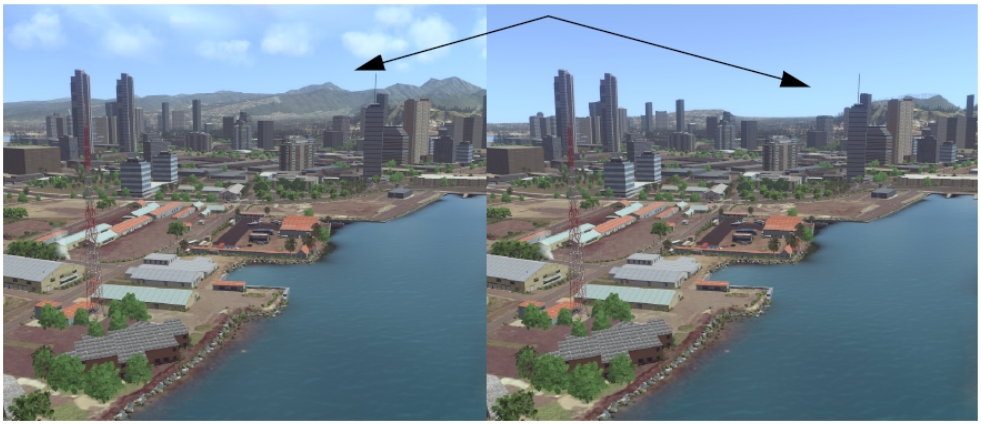
To improve performance, the graphics engine does not render anything that falls outside of a specified range of distances from the observer. This range is determined by the near and far clipping planes. Clipping planes are set on a per-channel basis.

Figure 627 illustrates the effect of changing the near clipping plane (the Z Near attribute). Figure 628 illustrates the effect of changing the far clipping plane (the Z Far attribute). (To see the effect of changing the near and far clipping planes, the Near Far Clip Policy must be set to Fixed.)

**Figure 627. Near clipping**

Z Near = 1 Z Near = 500

**Figure 628. Far clipping**



Z Far = 200000 Z Far = 5000

The ratio between the far clipping plane and the near clipping plane determines the precision with which the renderer can determine differences in depth. If this ratio becomes too small, then terrain and objects that are distant may not sort correctly, resulting in what is referred to as Z-fighting. VR-Forces provides different policies for managing the way near and far clipping planes are determined.

VR-Forces sets the clipping planes using one of the following policies (the Near Far Clip Policy attribute), plus their modifiers:

- Fixed. Clipping planes are set explicitly using the Z Near and Z Far attributes.
- Reduce Near Clip. Clipping planes are adjusted dynamically based on the observer's altitude. The near clipping plane is increased slightly as the observer rises to 20,000 meters, but stays under 1.5 meters. When the observer rises above 20,000 meters, the near and far clipping planes gradually increase. The Reduce Near Clip policy can be modified by the Dynamic Near Clip Attached Policy.

- Reduce Z Fighting. Clipping planes are set based on a ratio of the near clipping plane to the far clipping plane (the Reduce Z Fighting Ratio attribute). The near clipping plane can get as large as needed to maintain the ratio. This policy is the default clipping plane policy. The Reduce Z Fighting policy can be modified by the Dynamic Near Clip Attached Policy.
- Clamp Near Clip When Magnified. It is the same as Reduce Z Fighting, but adds an intersector to clamp the near clipping plane to prevent the near clip from going past objects or terrain in the scene when using view magnification. The intersector is only used when view magnification is 2x or more (this value can be changed through the API by extending the channel and overriding the call that calculates the clamp). This is an expensive operation, so only enable it if you really need it.

The Reduce Z Fighting clipping plane policy greatly reduces Z-fighting when you are using dynamic ocean. However, if the observer is attached to a simulation object and its altitude is moderately high, it may be closer to the entity than the near clipping plane and the entity may be clipped away. You can adjust the ratio to provide the best results. If you are not using dynamic ocean or you are frequently attaching to entities, you may want to use one of the other clipping plane policies.

If you set the Near Far Clip Policy to Reduce Z Fighting or Reduce Near Clip and the observer is attached to a simulation object, VR-Forces can dynamically change the near clipping plane based on the Dynamic Near Clip Attached Policy, as follows:

- Ignore Attached. Do not take entity attachment into account when setting the near clipping plane.
- Fixed Near Clip. Set the near clipping plane to the value of the Fixed Near Clip When Attached attribute if the observer altitude is >= the value of the Attached Near Clip Altitude attribute.
- Distance To Attached. Use the distance between the observer and the attached entity to determine the near clipping plane if the observer altitude is >= the value of the Attached Near Clip Altitude attribute. When this policy is selected, VR-Forces compares the near clipping value without this modifier to the value with it and uses the smaller of the two values. This is the default policy.

Reverse Z buffering is enabled by default to reduce Z fighting. It is not supported in 2D observer modes. The Oculus Rift HMD does not work with reverse Z buffering. To disable reverse Z buffering, start VR-Forces with the **--disableReverseZBuffer** command-line option.

## 76.4.2 Specifying the Projection Resize Policy Attribute

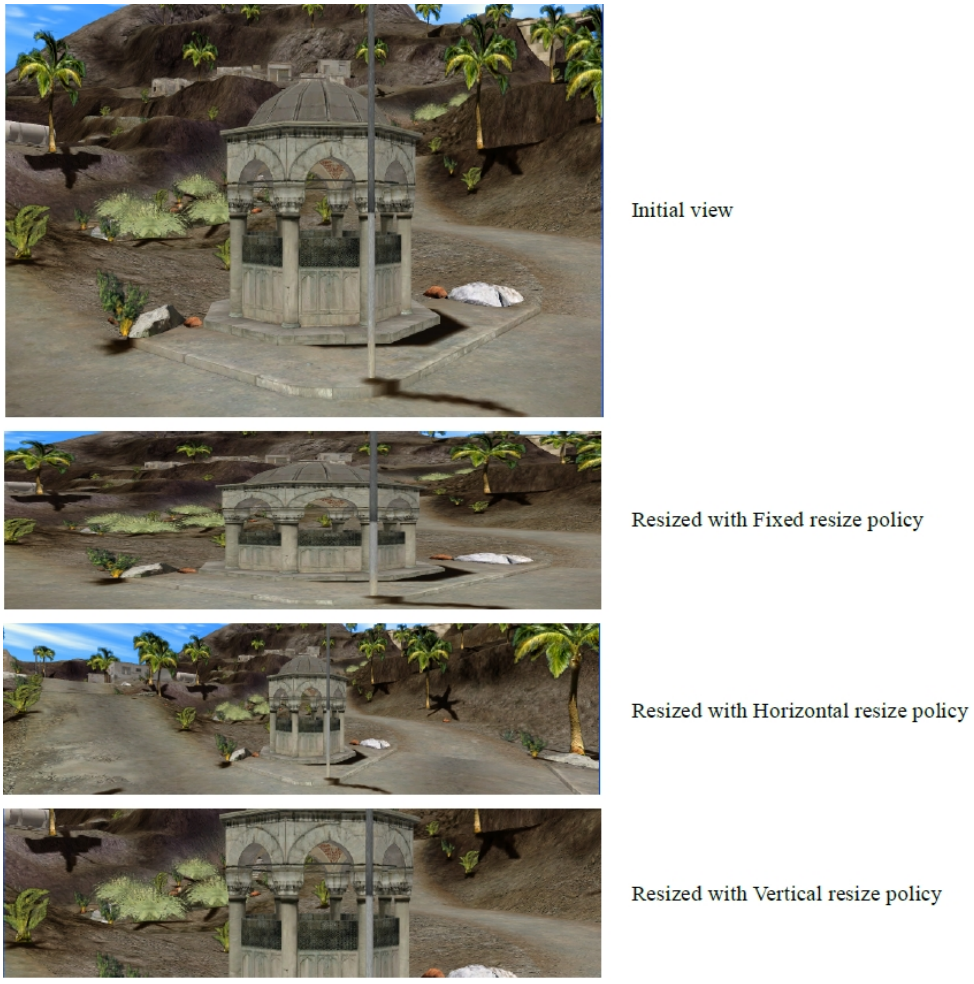
The Projection Resize Policy determines how a channel behaves when you resize it. The options are:

- Fixed. Keep the aspect ratio the same regardless of how the window is resized.
- Horizontal. Change the horizontal field of view (FOV) to so that the ratio of the FOV angles matches the aspect ratio of the viewport.
- Vertical. Change the vertical FOV so that the ratio of the FOV angles matches the aspect ratio of the viewport.

Figure 629 illustrates the effect of different resize policies

You can change the projection resize policy for individual channels by editing the Projection Resize Policy attribute. You can also change the projection resize policy for all channels.

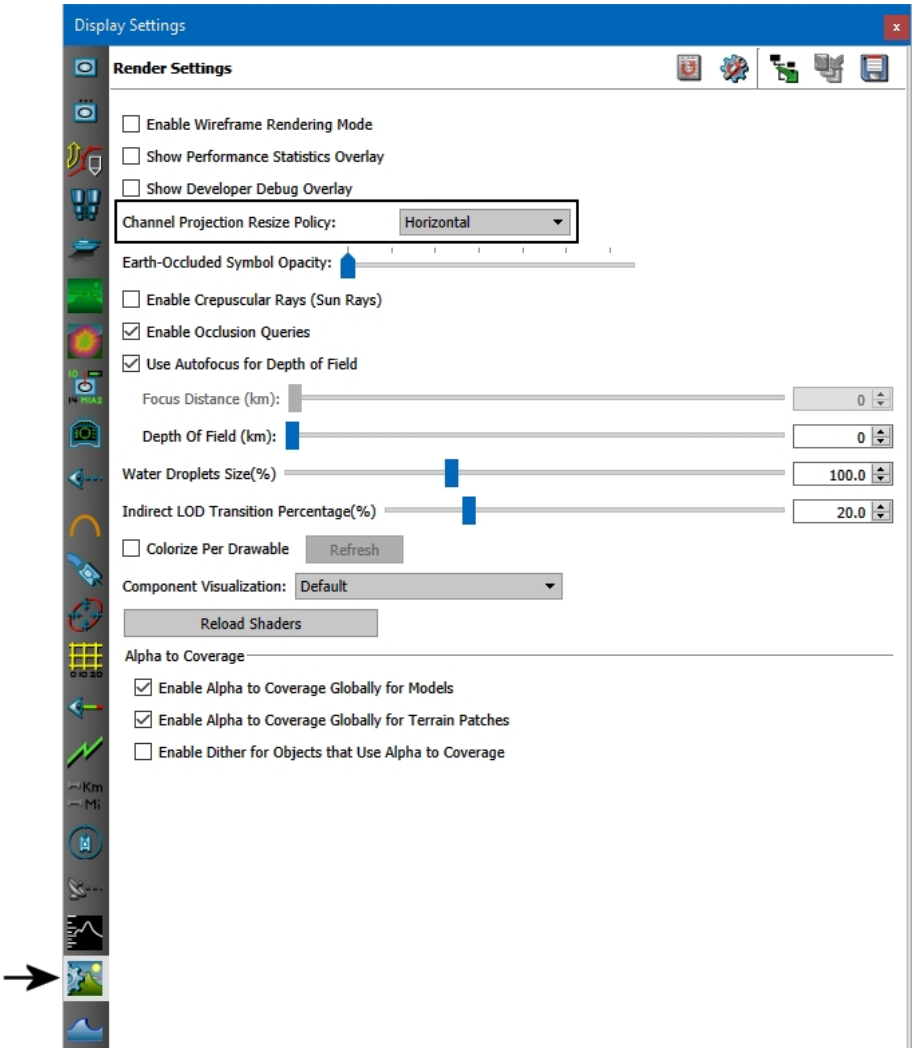
**Figure 629. Effect of different projection resize policies**




➤ **To change the projection resize policy for all channels:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Render Settings page (Figure 630).

**Figure 630. Display Settings, Render Settings page**




3. Select an option on the Channel Projection Resize Policy list.

## 76.4.3 Changing a Channel's Frustum (Field of View)

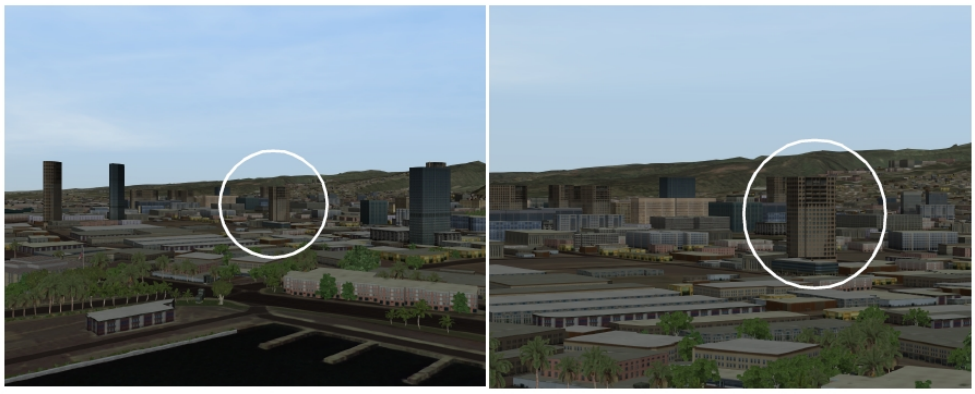
The field of view setting affects perspective in a manner similar to a camera lens.

A wide field of view creates an effect like that of a wide-angle lens. Objects appear smaller and farther away from the observer, since the observer coverage spans a wider area. Depth distances between objects become exaggerated.

A narrow field of view creates an effect like that of a telephoto lens. Objects appear larger and closer to the observer, and the overall scene depth appears flattened. The distances between objects appears compressed. Since objects appear closer but the distance from the object to the camera has not changed, you may want to scale the distance used to determine the level of detail. You can do this by modifying the LOD Scale Factor attribute.

Figure 631 illustrates different field of view settings taken from the same observer location. The view on the left has frustum values -22.5, 22.5, -22.5, 22.5. The view on the right has the frustum values -10, 10, -10, 10.

**Figure 631. Field of view**

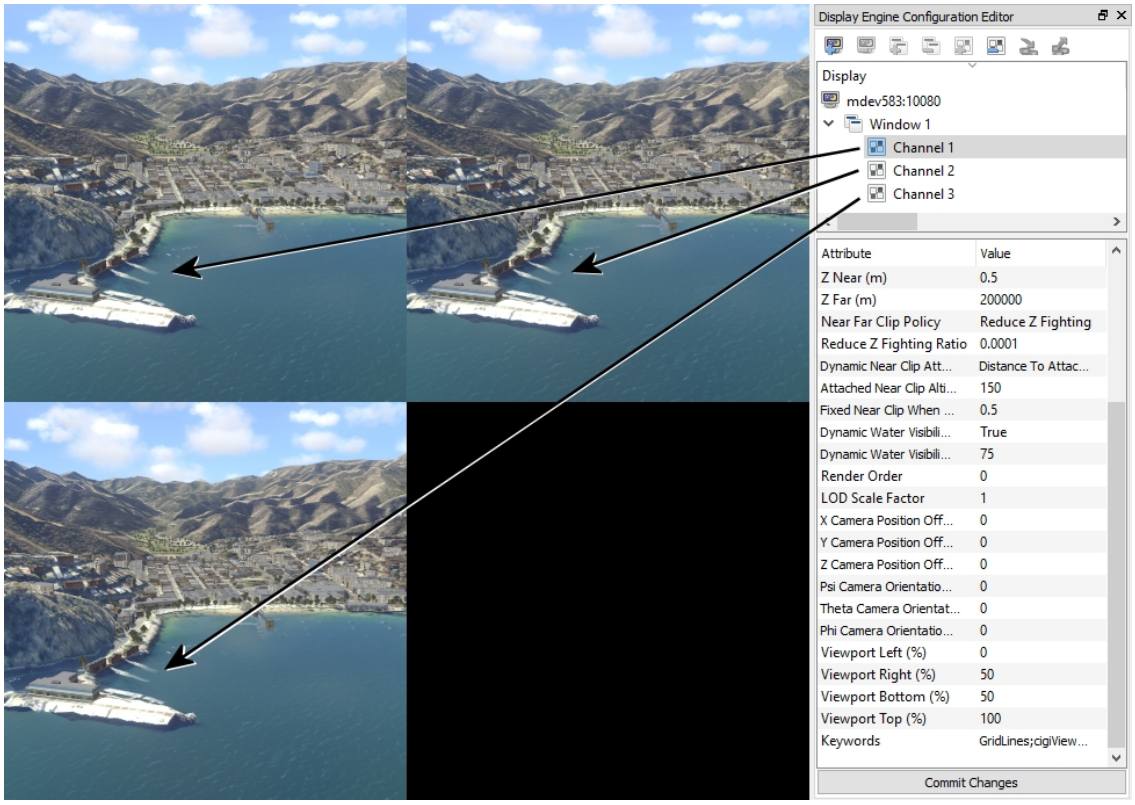


➤ To change a channel's field of view, edit the frustum values in its attributes list.

## 76.4.4 Changing the Viewport

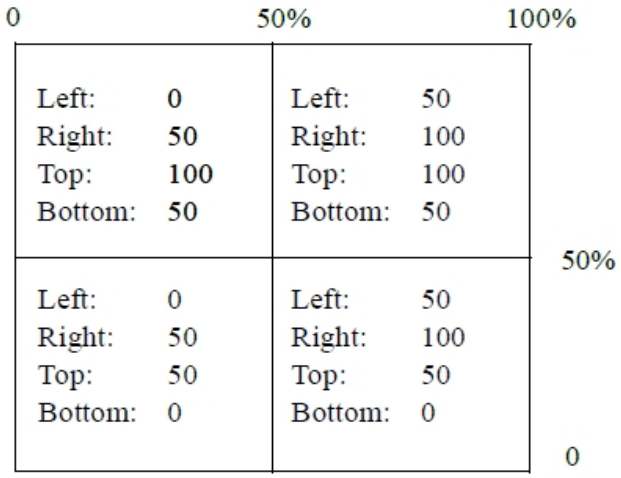
When you change the viewport of a channel, you change the portion of the window in which the channel is displayed. This does not change the extents of the scene. A narrow viewport compresses the scene width. A short viewport compresses the height. Figure 632 shows a window that has three channels, each with a different viewport. (The arrows show which portion of the window corresponds to each channel.) Notice that each channel has the same field of view.

**Figure 632. Window with three channels and three viewports**




Viewports are specified as a percentage of the window from left to right and top to bottom. Figure 633 shows the percentage allocation for the viewports in Figure 632 above.

**Figure 633. Viewport configuration**



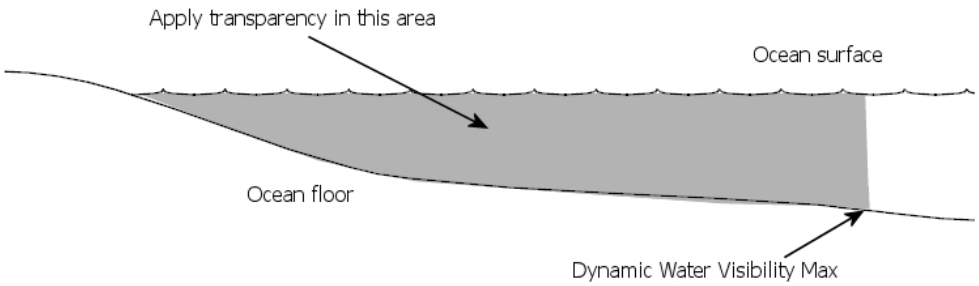

When you change viewports, the window might not completely refresh. To see the changes, resize the window.

## 76.4.5 Configuring Water Visibility

The water visibility attributes (along with the surface transparency setting on the Environment Conditions dialog box, Weather page) are designed to reduce Z-fighting. Z-fighting occurs when the altitude of the ocean surface and the depth of the ocean floor are very close to each other, usually around coastlines that have bathymetry data. The likelihood of Z-fighting decreases as the difference between the ocean surface and ocean floor increases, but it increases as the observer's altitude increases (because the ocean surface and ocean floor are proportionally closer to each other). Therefore there is a dynamic relationship as these factors change.

Adding transparency to the water reduces Z-fighting. The Dynamic Water Visibility Enabled attribute increases transparency automatically as the observer's altitude increases. Dynamic Water Visibility Maximum specifies the maximum depth to which transparency is added (Figure 634).

**Figure 634. Dynamic water visibility**




Dynamic water visibility is enabled by default. When Dynamic Water Visibility Enabled is True, VR-Forces increases the water visibility depth from the value Surface Transparency setting (at 0 meters altitude), to the maximum value specified at the current Ocean LOD Elevation. The default depth is 75 meters. This value provides reasonable performance given the default Ocean LOD Elevation (5000 meters), the altitude above which VR-Forces stops displaying dynamic ocean. If you change the Ocean LOD Elevation so that dynamic ocean is displayed when the observer is higher than 5000 meters, Z-fighting may increase and you may need to increase the Dynamic Water Visibility Maximum value. (For details about setting the Ocean LOD Elevation, see *"Setting the Ocean LOD Elevation,"* in *Adding Content to MAK Applications Reference Manual*.)

There is no performance cost to enabling this attribute when you are not using dynamic ocean. If there are no underwater terrain polygons, these attributes have no effect.

## 76.4.6 Channel Keywords

You can edit channel keywords in the Keywords attribute of each channel in the Display Engine Configuration Editor. VR-Forces supports the following channel keywords:

- largeCompass. If the compass is enabled, this channel shows the large compass. Default: Included in configuration of all channels.
- smallCompass. If the compass is enabled, this channel shows the small compass. Default: Not included in the configuration of any channels.
- GridLines. If grid lines are enabled, this channel shows the grid lines. Default: Included in configuration of all channels.
- showRemoteGraphics. If remote graphics are received this channel displays them. Default: Included for all channels except inset views.
- showCockpits. If GL Studio cockpits are enabled, this channel shows them. Default: Included in configuration of all channels.
- NoExternalInput. This keyword disables all mouse/keyboard/touch events for the channel. Default: Only included in the configuration of Sensor Gimbal View channels.
- cockpitOnly. If this keyword is true, the scene will not be rendered in the channel. Default: Included in the configuration of instrument panels only.

## 76.5. Configuring Multichannel Displays

People running simulations often want to set up a multichannel configuration using multiple monitors (on one or more computers) to display exercises. Typical configurations are a horizontal alignment, which widens the view, and the angled alignment, which surrounds the observer to simulate an out-the-window view (Figure 635).

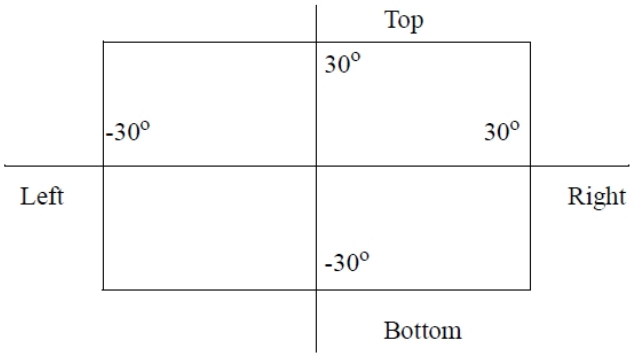
You could set up these display configurations by having one computer with several monitors attached, or you could have multiple computers, each running a VR-Forces front-end. You might also want to have a 2D view on one monitor and a 3D view on another.

**Figure 635. Multi-channel displays (top-down view)**

By default, all windows and channels show the same view of the terrain (Figure 637, default window views). Therefore, if you want a setup in which each channel shows a different view of the terrain, you must configure the channels to calculate an offset from the master view.

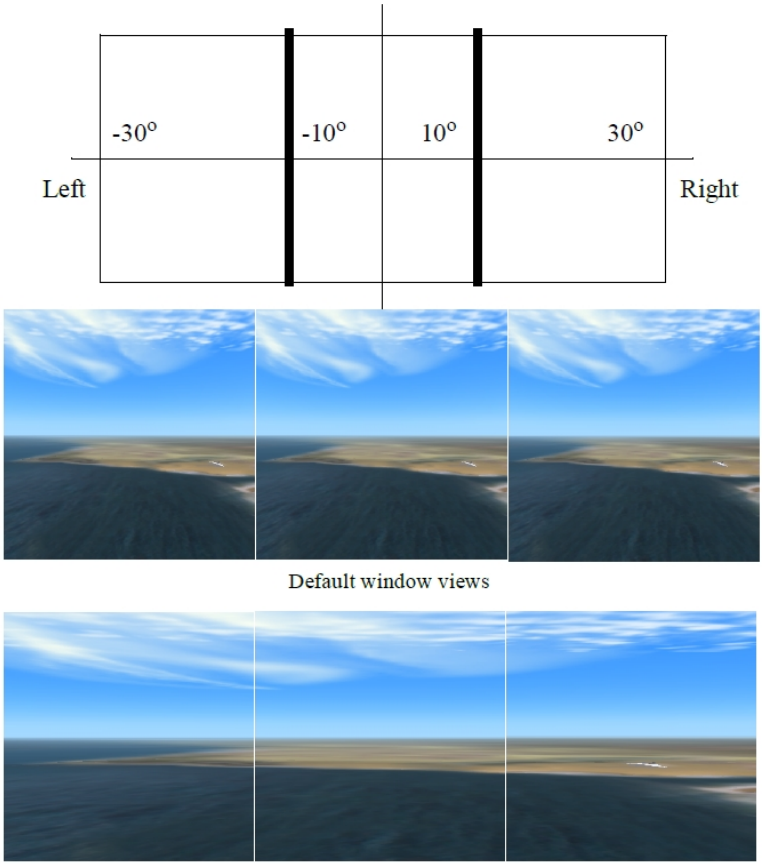
The distribution of the view across multiple channels is controlled by the frustum. Figure 636 illustrates the default frustum for Channel 1. It has a 60° field of view, from -30° to +30°.

**Figure 636. Default frustum for Channel 1**




If you wanted to split the view into, for example, three horizontal channels, you would edit the left and right frustum values for each channel, as shown in Figure 637. The field of view is the same: -30° to +30°. However, now each channel shows a 20° segment of the total field of view.

**Figure 637. Frustum values for three channels**




Once you configure the windows and channels you need to create the views you want, save the display engine configuration on each computer that you have configured. The next time you run the scenario, load the appropriate display engine configurations on each computer.

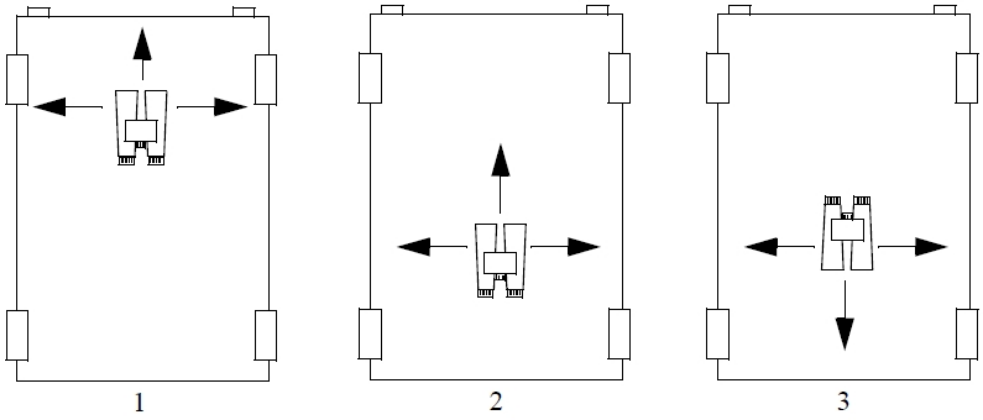
For a multi-monitor configuration to work correctly, use fixed size windows whose size matches the aspect ratio specified by the horizontal and vertical fileds of view and set the projection resize policy to fixed. (For information about the projection resize policy, please see "76.4.2 Specifying the Projection Resize Policy Attribute" on page 1533.)

### 76.5.1 Changing the Camera's Position and Orientation Offset

Changing the frustum affects how much of the database is in the view. Changing the camera's position and orientation affects the point from which you look at the view. For example, imagine you are simulating the view from a vehicle, as in vehicle 1 in Figure 638. (The camera location is represented by the binoculars.)

If you wanted to show the view as experienced by a gunner riding in the back of the vehicle, or in a turret, you would change the X, Y, and Z camera position offsets in the channel's attribute list (vehicle 2).

**Figure 638. Position and orientation offsets**




If you wanted the gunner to look out the rear of the vehicle, you would change its orientation, with the Psi (heading), Theta (pitch), and Phi (roll) Camera Orientation Offsets (vehicle 3).

## 76.6. Stereoscopic Displays

Stereoscopic display produces realistic three dimensional imagery by showing each of the viewer's eyes a different image, rendered from that eye's point of view. A stereoscopic display requires a system that can render two channels, one for each eye, and a method of displaying the correct channel to the correct eye of the viewer. Three common display methods are active stereo, polarized display, and anaglyphic stereo. OpenSceneGraph can support all three of these methods, and since VR-Forces uses OpenSceneGraph for most of its rendering, all three should be possible in VR-Forces.

- Active Stereo: In an active stereo setup, frames are alternated on the display for the left eye and the right eye, and a pair of shutter glasses blocks light to either the left or right eye in synchronization with the display. This method requires hardware support to synchronize the glasses to the display, along with a graphics card capable of quad buffering, and a display that can refresh at twice the desired frame rate. Active stereo should be possible with VR-Forces, but has not been tested.
- Anaglyphic Stereo: Anaglyphic stereo is the cheapest and simplest method to use. A typical setup is a display showing a red channel and a cyan channel simultaneously, along with a pair of glasses with one red lens and one cyan lens for the viewer. This will work with no special hardware aside from the inexpensive glasses. It is also the simplest method to set up in VR-Forces, requiring only that some OpenSceneGraph environment variables be set.
- Polarized Stereo: A polarized display shows the frames for both eyes simultaneously, but with their light polarized in different directions. The viewer wears glasses that have lenses polarized to match the two different frames, allowing each eye to see only the frame intended for it. Polarized stereoscopy requires some specialized equipment to display the images with the correct polarization. One simple method for producing this kind of display is to use two projectors with polarizing filters, projecting onto a rear projection screen. Monitors are available that can polarize the two frames. It is easy to configure a polarized display with VR-Forces.

## 76.6.1 Configuring Anaglyphic Stereo

You can configure OpenSceneGraph for anaglyphic stereo rendering through environment variables. To use VR-Forces in anaglyphic mode, run it with the environment variables described in Table 67.

**Table 67. Environment variables for anaglyphic stereo**

| Environment Variable | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|
| OSG_STEREO | Turn stereo on. | ON |
| OSG_STEREO_MODE | Use anaglyphic stereo when in stereo. | ANAGLYPHIC |
| OSG_SCREEN_DISTANCE | Specifies the distance, in meters, that the viewer is from the screen. | 0.50 |
| OSG_SCREEN_HEIGHT | Specifies the height of the image, in meters, on the screen. | 0.26 |
| OSG_SCREEN_WIDTH | Specifies the width of the image, in meters, on the screen. | 0.325 |
| OSG_EYE_SEPARATION | Specifies the eye separation (interoccular distance). | 0.06 |

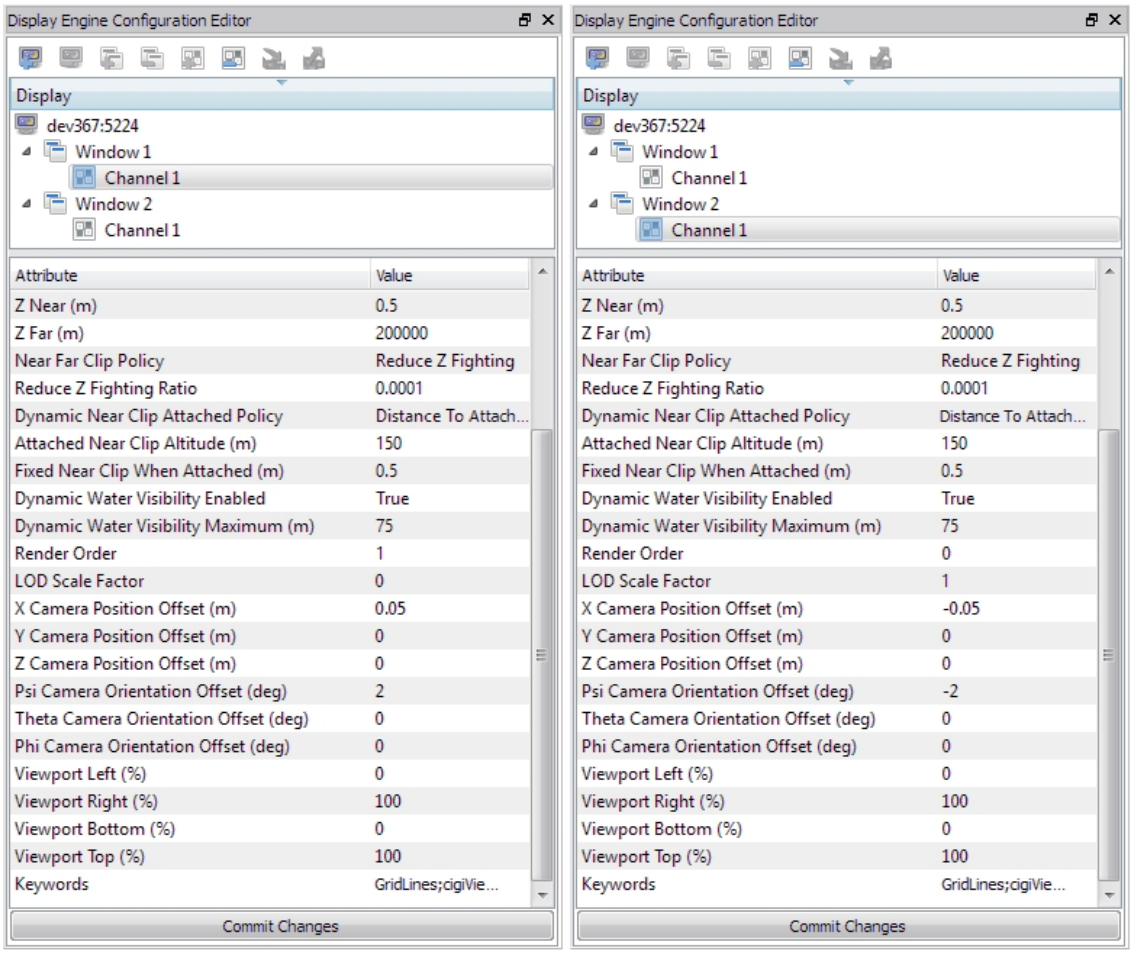
For more information, please see the OpenSceneGraph documentation at http://www.openscenegraph.org/index.php/documentation/guides/user-guides/62-stereo-settings.

## 76.6.2 Configuring Polarized Stereo

You can configure polarized stereo by taking advantage of VR-Forces's ability to produce multichannel displays. You configure one channel per eye. Each channel renders with a camera that is at a slight offset from the other channel's camera to represent the spacing between the viewer's eyes.

Varying the eye spacing and focal length can produce different effects, and the best values may depend on what the viewer is looking at. Figure 639 shows an example configuration.

**Figure 639. Polarized stereo channel configurations**



➤ **To compute the correct channel configuration values:**

1. Pick a focal length, **L**. Objects at this distance will appear to be in the plane of the display. Objects that are further away will appear behind the display, and objects closer will appear in front of it.
2. Pick an eye spacing, **E**, to represent the distance between the viewer's eyes. Human eyes are typically about 0.063m apart[1].
3. Set the X Camera Position values to **–E/2** meters for the left channel and **E/2** meters for the right channel.
4. Set the Psi Camera Orientation values to **–arctan(E/2)/L** degrees for the left channel and **arctan(E/2)/L** degrees for the right channel.

[1]"Variation and extrema of human interpupillary distance", N. A. Dodgson, Proc SPIE 5291. Select publications link and scroll to 2004 at http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~nad10/pubs/EI5291A-05.pdf.

# 77. GUI Controls, Layouts, and Behaviors

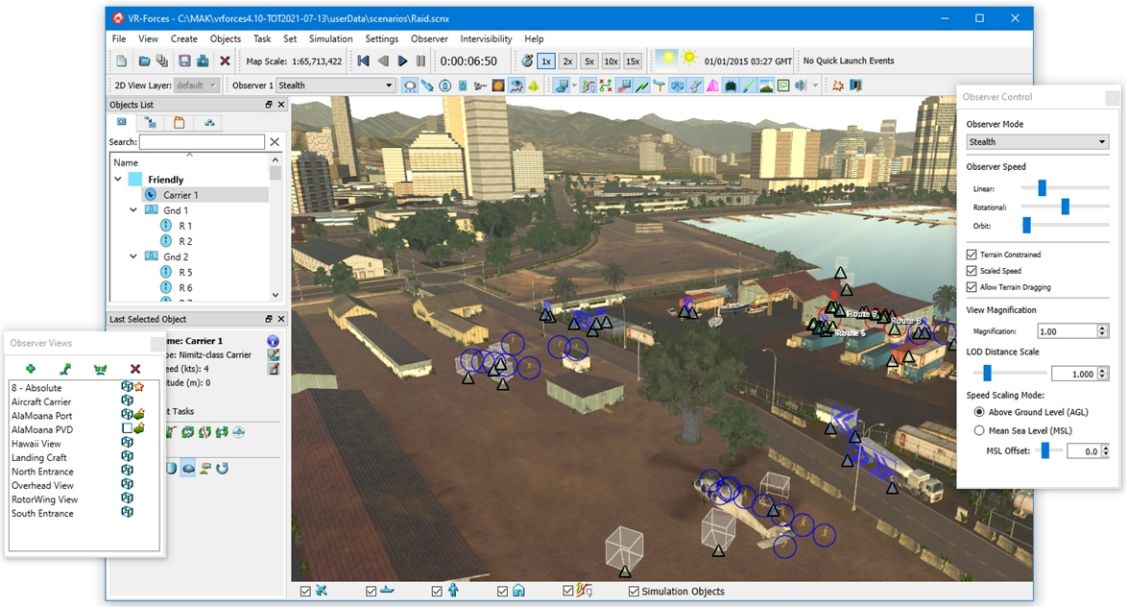
This chapter provides details about using the various panels and toolbars in the front-end.


77.1. Dockable Panels and Toolbars ..... 1546
77.1.1 Docking and Undocking a Panel ..... 1546
77.1.2 Docking and Undocking a Toolbar ..... 1546
77.1.3 Docking a Toolbar Vertically ..... 1547
77.1.4 Displaying and Hiding Panels and Toolbars ..... 1547
77.2. Saving Window Layouts ..... 1547
77.2.1 Creating a Window Layout ..... 1548
77.2.2 Choosing the Window Layout ..... 1549
77.2.3 Setting a Window Layout as the Default Layout ..... 1549
77.2.4 Reverting a Window Layout ..... 1550
77.2.5 Updating a Window Layout ..... 1550
77.2.6 Renaming a Window Layout ..... 1550
77.2.7 Deleting a Window Layout ..... 1551
77.2.8 Restoring a Factory Layout ..... 1551
77.3. Using Tear-Off Menus ..... 1551
77.4. Viewing the Window in Full-Screen Mode ..... 1552
77.4.1 Hiding the Mouse in Full Screen Mode ..... 1552
77.5. Using Context-Sensitive Menus ..... 1553
77.6. Common VR-Forces Buttons ..... 1553
77.7. Adding Text to the Title Bar ..... 1554
77.8. Specifying Display Units ..... 1555

# 77.1. Dockable Panels and Toolbars

VR-Forces has floating, dockable panels for many of its important functions (Figure 640). It also has toolbars that let you quickly access the commands available on the menus.

**Figure 640. VR-Forces window and undocked panels**




## 77.1.1 Docking and Undocking a Panel

➤ **To undock a panel:**

1. Place the cursor over the panel's title.
2. Press and hold the left mouse button.
3. Drag the panel away from the window.

➤ To dock a floating panel, double-click its title bar.

## 77.1.2 Docking and Undocking a Toolbar

➤ **To undock a toolbar:**

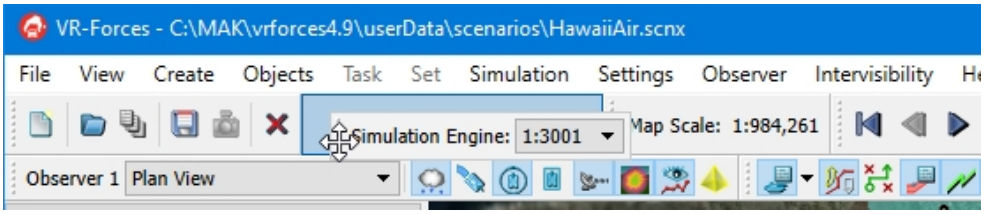
1. Place the cursor over the handle.

**Figure 641. Toolbar handle**

2. Press and hold the left mouse button.
3. Drag the toolbar away from the window.

➤ To dock a toolbar, drag it back to the toolbar strip. The other toolbars will move to create a space to drop in the toolbar (Figure 642).

**Figure 642. Docking a toolbar**

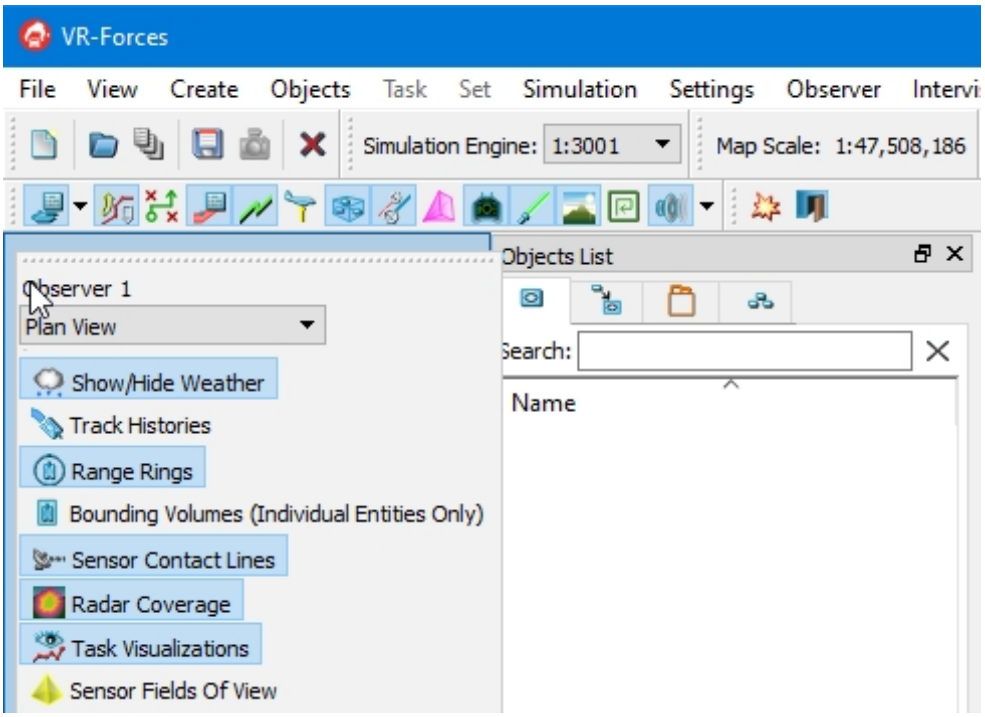



### 77.1.3 Docking a Toolbar Vertically

You can dock a toolbar vertically. Doing so displays the label for each button.

➤ To dock a toolbar vertically, drag it to the left- or right-hand edge of the window.

**Figure 643. Vertically docking a toolbar**




### 77.1.4 Displaying and Hiding Panels and Toolbars

You can hide any of the panels or toolbars.

➤ To hide or view a panel or toolbar, select it on the View menu.

## 77.2. Saving Window Layouts

You can save window layouts to named layouts and can easily switch between them while VR-Forces is running. A layout stores the window size and the visibility and location of all toolbars and panels. You can specify that a layout be the default layout

used at startup.

Layouts get saved to *./appData/settings/vrfGui*. Each layout is saved to a separate file using the naming convention layout_*layout_name*.uisx. For backup, you can save layouts to *./factory/settings/vrfGui*.

You can see the available window layouts under **View > Window Layouts**. VR-Forces includes three layouts to get you started:

- The Scenario Controller layout provides toolbars and panels that help you manage and modify a scenario while it runs.
- The Scenario Creation layout has a set of toolbars and panels that users typically need when creating a scenario.
- The Scenario Viewer layout removes the toolbars and panels to maximize the amount of the window that displays the scenario.

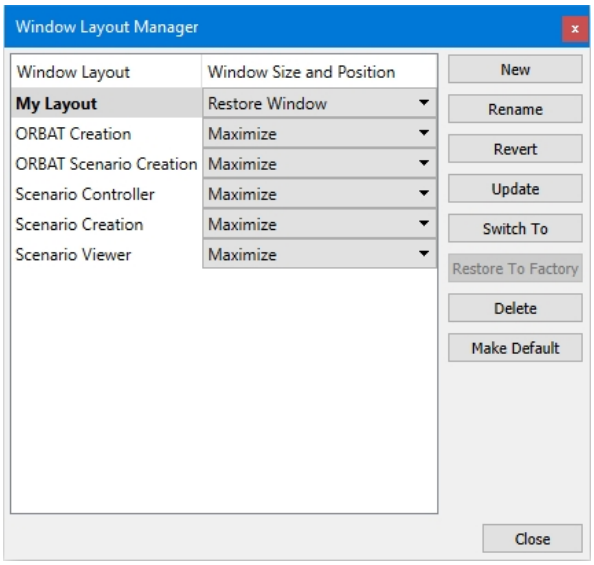
When you shut down VR-Forces, it saves the window layout. If you do not specify a default window layout, when VR-Forces starts up, it uses the saved window layout.

## 77.2.1 Creating a Window Layout

➤ **To create a window Layout:**

1. Arrange the toolbars, panels, and window size in the layout you want.
2. Choose **View > Window Layout Manager**. The Window Layout Manager dialog box opens (Figure 644).

**Figure 644. Layout Manager**




3. Click New. The Layout Name dialog box opens.
4. Type a name in the Layout Name box.
5. Click OK.
6. Select one of the window size options:

- Maximize. Maximizes the window when this window layout is selected, regardless of the window size when the layout is created.
- Restore Window. Save the current window size as part of the window layout. This is the default option.
- Full Screen Mode. Put the window into full screen mode when this layout is selected, regardless of the window size when the layout is created.

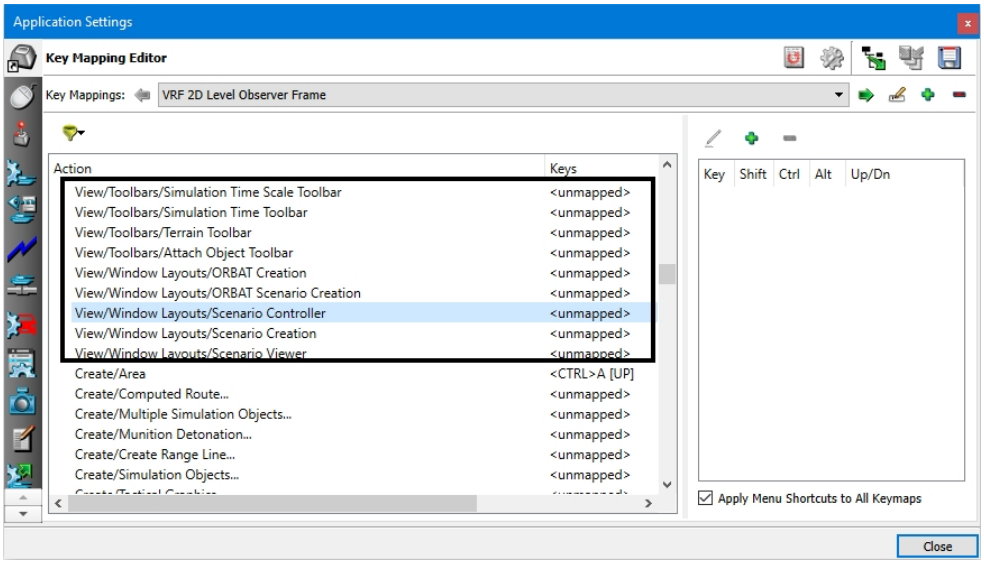
7. Optionally, click Make Default to make your new layout (or whichever layout is selected) the layout you see at startup. A star appears next to the name of the default layout.
8. Click OK. The layout is added to the list of layouts.

## 77.2.2 Choosing the Window Layout

You can easily choose a window layout at any time. You can change layouts from the View menu or from the Layout Manager.

You can map keys to layouts to select them from the keyboard. Each layout can be mapped to a key (Figure 645). For details about mapping keys, please see "Chapter 79. Creating and Editing Key Mappings" on page 1569.

**Figure 645. Layout action in Key Mapping Editor**




➤ To choose a window layout, choose **View > Window Layouts >** *layout*, where *layout* is one of the listed named layouts.

➤ To change the window layout in the Window Layout Manager, in the list of layouts, double-click the layout you want to use or select the layout you want and click Switch To.

## 77.2.3 Setting a Window Layout as the Default Layout

When VR-Forces starts, if there is a default layout, it uses that layout. Otherwise, it uses the window layout it saved the last time you shut down VR-Forces.

➤ **To set a window layout to be the default layout:**

1. Choose **View > Window Layout Manager**. The Window Layout Manager dialog box opens (Figure 644 on page 1548).
2. In the list of layouts, select the layout you want to be the default.
3. Click Make Default. A star is displayed next to the name of the layout to indicate it is the default layout.

#### Clearing the Default Layout

If you have specified a default layout, you can specify that a different layout be the default or clear it so that there is no default layout.

➤ **To clear the default layout:**

1. Choose **View > Window Layout Manager**. The Window Layout Manager dialog box opens (Figure 644 on page 1548).
2. To specify a different default layout, select the desired layout and click Make Default.
3. To just clear the current default layout, in the list of layouts, select the default layout and click Clear Default.

### 77.2.4 Reverting a Window Layout

If you use a named window layout and then rearrange the window, you can revert to the saved layout.

➤ To revert a window layout, choose **View > Revert Window Layout**. (You can also revert a layout on the Window Layout Manager dialog box.)

### 77.2.5 Updating a Window Layout

If you load a window layout and then make changes to the layout, such as resizing the window or closing a panel, VR-Forces does not keep track of the changes. If you switch to a different layout or shut down, the changes are lost. If you want to save changes to a layout, you must explicitly update it.

➤ **To update a window Layout:**

1. Choose **View > Window Layout Manager**. The Window Layout Manager opens (Figure 644 on page 1548).
2. Select the layout you are using.
3. Click Update.

### 77.2.6 Renaming a Window Layout

You can change the name of a window layout.

➤ **To rename a window layout:**

1. Choose **View > Window Layout Manager**. The Window Layout Manager dialog box opens (Figure 644 on page 1548).
2. Select the layout you want to rename.
3. Click Rename. The Layout Name dialog box opens.
4. Type a new name for the layout.
5. Click OK.

### 77.2.7 Deleting a Window Layout

You can delete window layouts that you have created.

➤ **To delete a window layout:**

1. Choose **View > Window Layout Manager**. The Window Layout Manager dialog box opens (Figure 644 on page 1548).
2. Select the layout you want to delete.
3. Click Delete.

### 77.2.8 Restoring a Factory Layout

VR-Forces includes two layouts. They are in *./appData/settings/vrfGui*, which makes them available to the Layout Manager. They are also in *./factory/settings/vrfGui* so that they can be restored. All layouts created after you install VR-Forces are saved to *./appData/settings/vrfGui*. If you want to back up your layouts, you can copy them to any backup location you want. If you want to be able to restore a layout in the Layout Manager, copy it to *./factory/settings/vrfGui*.

To restore a layout from the factory, it must be present in *./appData/settings/vrfGui* so that you can select it in the Layout Manager. If you delete a layout and then want to recover it, if you have saved a copy of it to *./factory/settings/vrfGui* or anyplace else, you can copy it to *./appData/settings/vrfGui*.

➤ **To restore a window layout to the factory layout:**

1. Choose **View > Window Layout Manager**. The Window Layout Manager dialog box opens (Figure 644 on page 1548).
2. Select the layout you want to restore.
3. Click Restore From Factory.

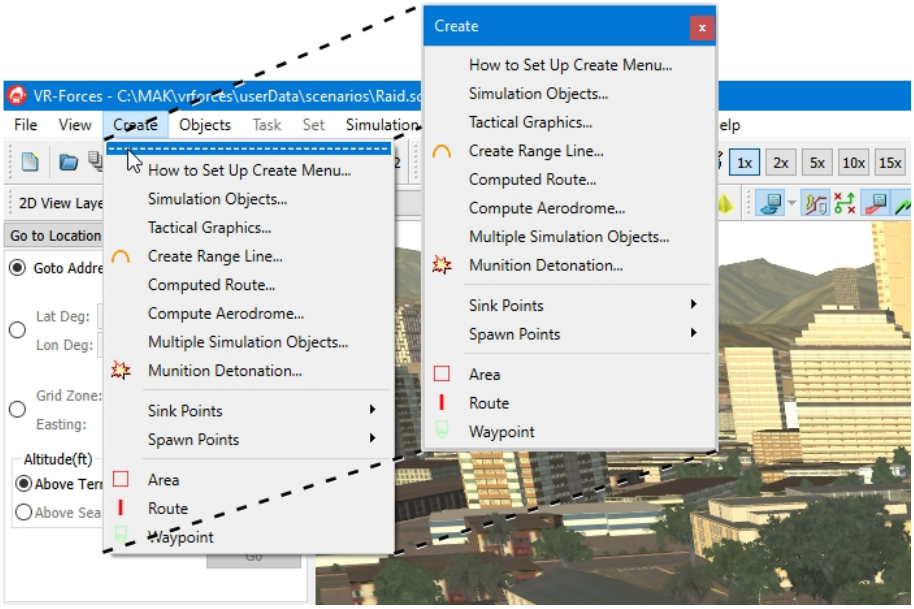
## 77.3. Using Tear-Off Menus

You can “tear-off” the Create menu and leave it displayed on the desktop.

➤ **To tear off the Create menu:**

1. Click the Create menu.
2. Move the cursor over the grab bar (dashed line) at the top of the menu to highlight it (Figure 646).
3. Click the grab bar. The menu is displayed as a window that you can leave open and reposition. (You can also continue to use the standard menu.)

**Figure 646. Tearing off a menu**




## 77.4. Viewing the Window in Full-Screen Mode

You can display VR-Forces so that it covers the entire screen and does not show the title bar or border. This mode is intended for use in demonstrations. When menus and panels are hidden, you can still use all keyboard controls, and you can still click simulation objects in the window to attach the observer to them.

You can configure VR-Forces to start in full screen mode with the **--fullScreen** command-line option. If you are viewing a simulation that takes place primarily over the ocean, you may get better performance using the **--pseudoFullScreen** command-line option.

➤ To view VR-Forces in full-screen mode, choose **View > Show Full Screen**, or press **Ctrl**+**Enter**.

➤ To exit full screen mode, press **Ctrl**+**Enter**.

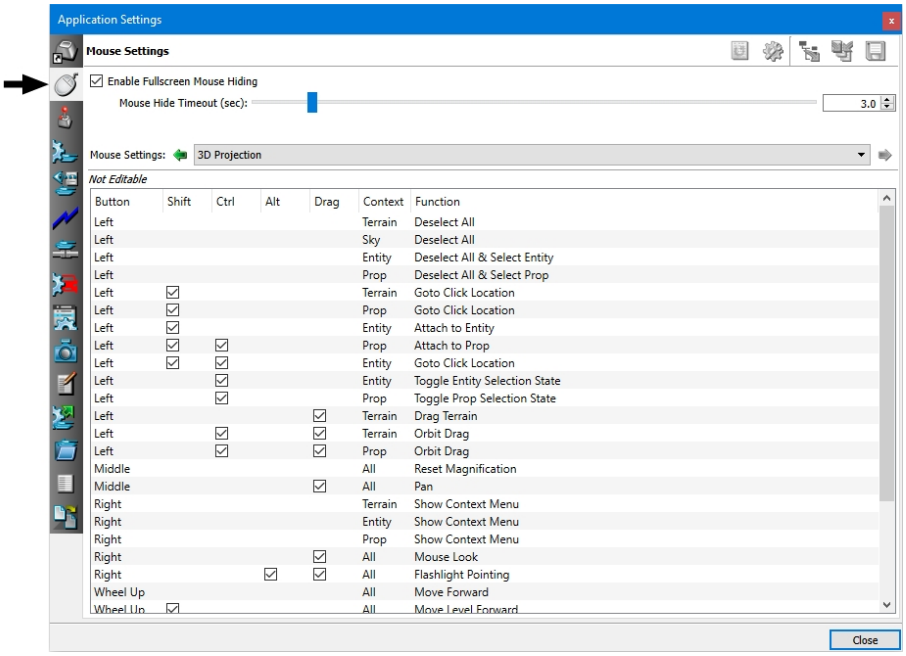
### 77.4.1 Hiding the Mouse in Full Screen Mode

Since full screen mode is often used only for display purposes, with no user interaction, the mouse is automatically hidden in this mode. As soon as you move the mouse, it displays. If you then stop using it, it is hidden when the threshold is reached.

➤ **To hide the mouse in full screen mode:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Mouse Settings page.

**Figure 647. Mouse Settings page**




3. Select the Enable Fullscreen Mouse Hiding check box.
4. Optionally, change the Mouse Hide Timeout value.

## 77.5. Using Context-Sensitive Menus

VR-Forces has context sensitive menus (also called shortcut menus, popup menus, or right-click menus) that you can display by clicking the right mouse button.

If you right-click a simulation object, tactical graphic, or other scene object, the menu displays the actions that you can take.

If you right-click the menu bar, you can select the commands available on the View menu.

## 77.6. Common VR-Forces Buttons

VR-Forces dialog boxes have a common set of buttons, as follows:

- Add an item (definition, model, and so on).
- Remove the selected item.
- Copy the selected item and add the copied version to the list.

- Select a filter of some type.
- Rename the selected item.
- Add from a list.
- Move up in the list.
- Move down in the list.
- Select the previous item.
- Select the next item.
- Add an attribute.
- Remove local attribute definition and use the parent's definition.
- Search.

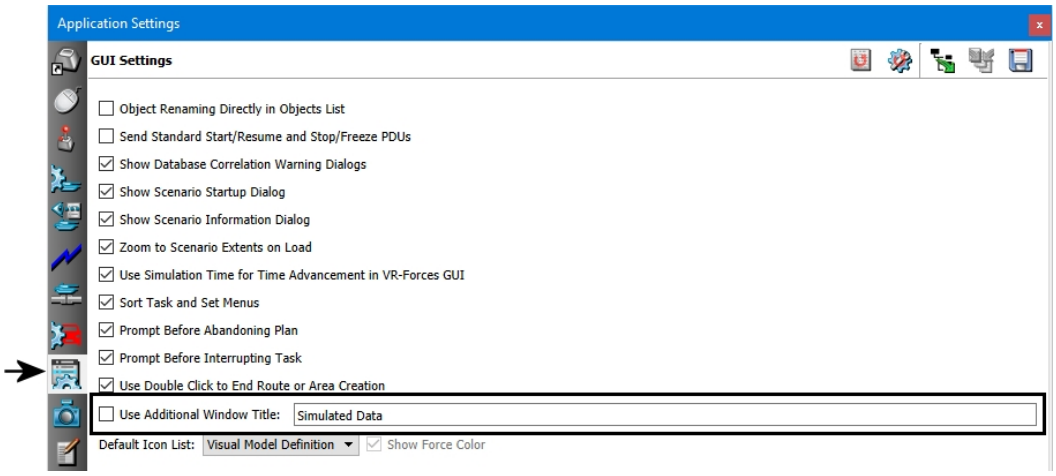
## 77.7. Adding Text to the Title Bar

VR-Forces displays the name of the scenario in the title bar. You can display additional text of your choice if you want to. The text is independent of the scenario. It is an application-wide setting.

➤ **To add text to the title bar:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the GUI Settings page (Figure 648).

**Figure 648. GUI Settings page**



3. Select the Use Additional Window Title check box.
4. Type the text you want to display in the text box.

## 77.8. Specifying Display Units

You can specify the units used to display coordinate system, distance, altitude, and other measurements. Display units are configured by measurement type, and can be specified for the application, simulation object platforms, and weather. This means that you can use different measurement units for different types of data. You can also specify the number of decimal places for measurement values. When you change a measurement display unit, the changes take effect immediately. They are saved and applied the next time you run VR-Forces

The coordinate system information for the observer location in the Observer Information Panel and grid line coordinates, units, and precision are not affected by the settings described in this section.

The types of data and the display objects that they affect are as follows:

- Coordinate system
- Distance
- Altitude
- Velocity (speed)
- Acceleration
- Rotational velocity
- Orientation (heading)

Table 68 describes the coordinate systems that you can specify.

**Table 68. Coordinate systems supported**

| Coordinate system | Description |
|---|---|
| Latitude/Longitude (degrees:minutes:seconds) | Location is displayed as two position fields and one altitude field. Displays coordinates in the latitude and longitude using the geodetic WGS84 coordinate system. Each angle is displayed in degrees:minutes:seconds with seconds displaying base 10 fractional seconds. |
| Latitude/Longitude (degrees decimal minutes) | Location is displayed as two position fields and one altitude field. Displays coordinates in the latitude and longitude using the geodetic WGS84 coordinate system. Each angle is displayed in degrees:minutes with minutes displayed as a decimal. |

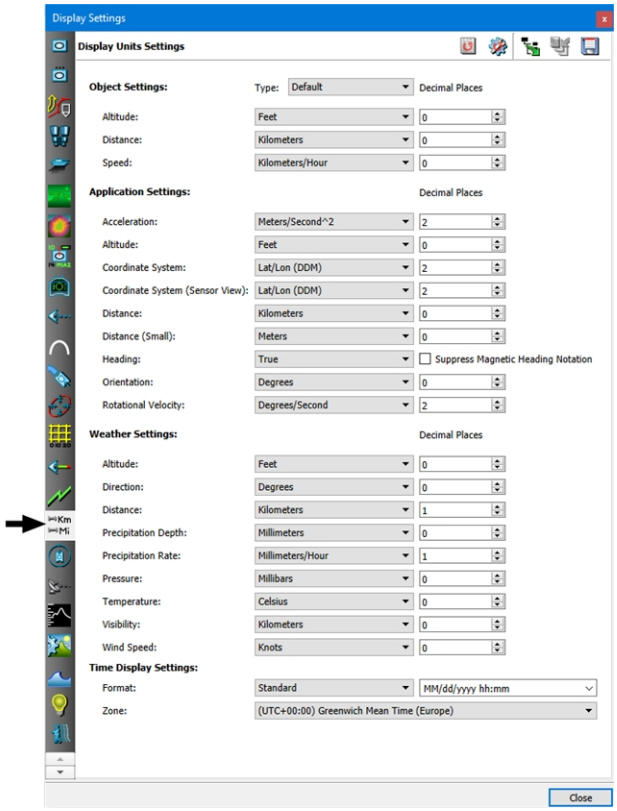
**Table 68. Coordinate systems supported (continued)**

| Coordinate system | Description |
|---|---|
| Latitude/Longitude (decimal radians) | Location is displayed as two position fields and one altitude field. Displays coordinates in the latitude and longitude using the geodetic WGS84 coordinate system. Each angle is displayed in decimal radians. |
| Geocentric | Location is displayed as three position fields. Position coordinates are displayed in the geocentric coordinate system. The position fields are always in meters. |
| UTM | Location is displayed as two position fields and one altitude field. Position coordinates are displayed in the Universal Transverse Mercator system. The first position field displays the zone and the x location in meters. The second position field displays the y position in meters. |
| MGRS | Location is displayed as two position fields and one altitude field. Position coordinates are displayed in the Military Grid Reference System. The first position field displays the zone. The second position field displays the grid location. The precision controls the number of digits used in the grid display. |
| Database | Location is displayed as three position fields. Location is displayed using VR-Forces's current internal cartesian database system. The position fields are displayed using the current distance units. |

➤ **To specify measurement units:**

1. Choose **Settings > Display**. The Display Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Display Units Settings page (Figure 649).

**Figure 649. Display Units Settings page**




3. To specify the measurement unit settings for objects, choose the type and then select the unit for each option from its list.
4. To specify the measurement unit settings for the application or weather, select the measurement unit you want for each option from its list.
5. Type a precision for each measurement unit in the corresponding box in the Decimal Places column.
6. Specify the default time display format and zone.

# 78. Configuring Toolbars, Dialog Boxes, and Menus

This chapter explains how to specify which menus, menu options, toolbars, and dialog box pages get displayed in the graphical user interface (GUI).


78.1. Introduction ..... 1560
78.2. Configuring Menus and Menu Commands ..... 1560
78.2.1 Alphabetizing the Task and Set Menus ..... 1560
78.2.2 Creating New Menus ..... 1561
78.3. Configuring Dialog Box Pages ..... 1561
78.4. Configuring Context-Sensitive Menus ..... 1563
78.4.1 Editing the Task Menu ..... 1564
78.4.2 Editing the Set Menu ..... 1565
78.5. Configuring Toolbars ..... 1565
78.5.1 Creating Toolbars ..... 1566
78.5.2 Specifying an Icon for a Toolbar Item ..... 1566
78.6. Locking Main GUI Elements ..... 1566

# 78.1. Introduction

VR-Forces displays menus, menu commands, toolbars, dialog box pages, and shortcut menus based on the information in an XML configuration file. The default file is *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default_guiConfiguration.gui*. You can edit this file or create alternative GUI configuration files. VR-Forces includes an example of a simple GUI configuration file, *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default_guiSimpleScenarioPlayer.gui*, that shows how you might create a highly modified GUI. You can specify an alternative GUI configuration file with the **--gui** command-line option when you start VR-Forces.

The elements in the configuration file are fairly self-explanatory. This chapter provides a brief description of the file.

---

For those GUI elements that can be rearranged, such as toolbars, the *.gui* file provides the initial organization of GUI elements. If a user rearranges toolbars, the new layout is saved in the settings file and overrides the *.gui* file.

---

# 78.2. Configuring Menus and Menu Commands

Menus are configured in the **<mainmenuconfiguration>** element. Each menu is configured in a **<mainmenu>** element. Menu commands are configured in **<menuitem>** elements. The following example configures a menu bar with one menu that has two items, which are separated by a separator line.

```
<mainmenuconfiguration name="main_menu_configuration">
    <mainmenu menuname="DtFileMenu">
        <menuitem itemname="DtNewScenarioMenuItem"/>
        <separator separatorname="1"/>
        <menuitem itemname="DtExitItem"/>
    </mainmenu>
</mainmenuconfiguration>
```

The values for the **itemname** attributes must be valid IDs registered in VR-Forces code. *default_guiConfiguration.gui* has all of the valid IDs for menus and menu commands.

To remove a menu or menu command from the GUI, delete the applicable element from *default_guiConfiguration.gui* or create an alternative file that does not have the elements. To add menus or menu items, you must know the ID.

## 78.2.1 Alphabetizing the Task and Set Menus

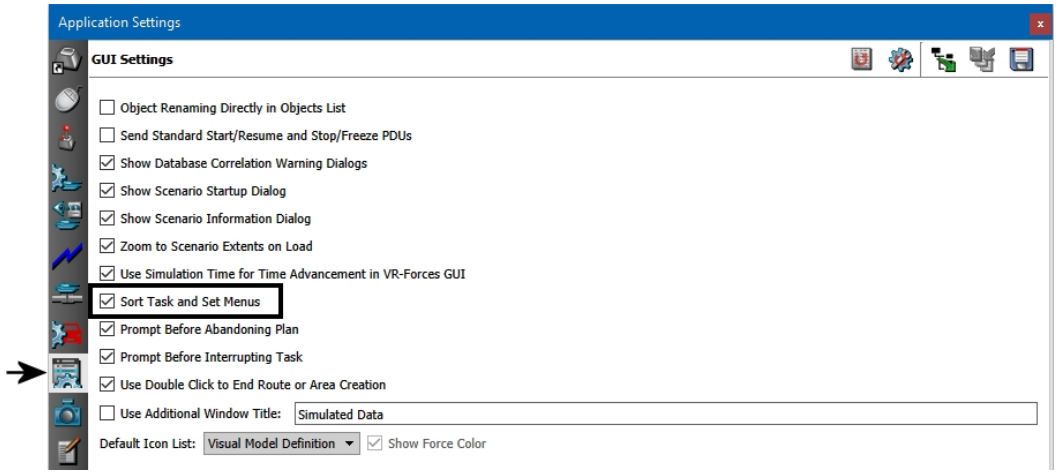
You cannot edit the Task and Set menus in *default_guiConfiguration.gui*. By default, VR-Forces alphabetizes the commands on the Task and Set menus and their submenus. This alphabetization overrides the menu ordering specified for scripted tasks and sets in their metadata. It also overrides menu placement specified for tasks and sets through the API.

If you want to, you can disable alphabetization and the commands will be listed according to script metadata and C++ code.

➤ **To enable or disable alphabetization of Task and Set menu commands:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the GUI Settings page (Figure 650).

**Figure 650. GUI Settings page**




3. Select or clear the Sort Task and Set Menus check box.

### 78.2.2 Creating New Menus

You can create new menus and submenus. To do so use the same syntax as the existing menu structure in *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default_guiConfiguration.gui*. For top level menus, add a **mainmenu** element. For submenus, use a **menu** element. For the menu name, specify the string you want to appear in the GUI. The following example creates a menu called My File Menu at the top level. It has a submenu called Save Scenario Commands.

```
<mainmenuconfiguration name="main_menu_configuration">
    <mainmenu menuname="My File Menu">
        <menuitem itemname="DtNewScenarioMenuItem"/>
        <separator separatorname="1"/>
        <menu menuname="Save Scenario Commands">
            <menuitem itemname="DtSaveScenarioAsMenuItem"/>
            <menuitem itemname="DtSaveScenarioMenuItem"/>
        </menu>
        <menuitem itemname="DtExitItem"/>
    </mainmenu>
</mainmenuconfiguration>
```

## 78.3. Configuring Dialog Box Pages

Dialog boxes such as Display Settings and Terrain Settings have multiple pages for configuring different features. The GUI configuration file lets you disable or enable the pages on dialog boxes. The dialog boxes are configured as **<pagecollection>** elements inside the **<pagecollections>** element. The following example configures the Application Settings dialog box:

```
<pagecollections name="page_collections">
    <pagecollection pagecollectionname="DtApplicationSettings"
title="Application Settings" location="8" visible="True" index="-1"
show="DtKeyMappingEditorPage" closable="True" floatable="True"
movable="True">
        <pageitem pageitemname="DtKeyMappingEditorPage"/>
        <pageitem pageitemname="DtMouseMappingEditorPage"/>
        <pageitem pageitemname="DtJoystickConfigurationPage"/>
. . .
        <pageitem pageitemname="DtScriptedTaskOptionsPage"/>
        <pageitem pageitemname="DtEntityBehaviorOptionsPage"/>
    </pagecollection>
</pagecollections>
```

In addition to settings dialog boxes, you can configure the pages on information dialog boxes, and the specific data on the pages. These are configured in **<informationpagecollection>** elements. The following example is part of the Information dialog box. The page is broken up into sections. The first section displays summary data. The second section has the individual pages and specifies the information on each page.

```
<informationpagecollections name="information_page_collections">
    <pagecollection pagecollectionname="DtEntityInformation"
title="Entity Information" location="9" visible="True" index="-1"
show="DtTaskStatePage" closable="True" floatable="True"
movable="True">
        <section sectionname="DtEntityCompactData"
maximumHeightIsMinimumHeight="true">
            <informationitem informationitemname="DtEntityIcon"
row="0" col="0" rowspan="2" width="50"/>
            <informationitem informationitemname="DtStateMarkingText"
row="0" col="1"/>
            <pageitem pageitemname="DtInformationIconBar" row="1"
col="1"     width="20">
                <informationitem
informationitemname="DtEmbarkedOnItem"/>
            </pageitem>
            <informationitem informationitemname="DtCreatePaletteName"
row="0" col="2"/>
            <pageitem pageitemname="DtSensorInformationPage" row="1"
col="2"/>
            <informationitem informationitemname="DtEntitySpeed"
row="0" col="3" width="128"/>
            <informationitem informationitemname="DtEntityAltitude"
row="1" col="3" width="128"/>
            <pageitem pageitemname="DtTaskStatePage" row="0" col="4"
width="128"/>
            <informationitem
informationitemname="DtObjectConsoleInformationStatusItem" row="1"
col="4"/>
```

```
        </section>
        <section sectionname="DtEntityExpandedData" collapsible="True"
tabbed="small" collapsed="True" title="Detailed Information">
            <pageitem pageitemname="DtTaskStatePage"/>
            <pageitem pageitemname="DtEntityInformationPage">
                <informationitem
informationitemname="DtEntityLocation"/>
                <informationitem informationitemname="DtEntitySpeed"/>
                <informationitem
informationitemname="DtEntityAltitude"/>
                <informationitem
informationitemname="DtEntityVelocity"/>
                <informationitem
informationitemname="DtEntityAcceleration"/>
                ...
                <informationitem
informationitemname="DtNavigationAreaPorts"/>
                <informationitem
informationitemname="DtEntityStateDRAlgorithm"/>
            </pageitem>
            <pageitem pageitemname="DtEntityAttributesPage"/>
            <pageitem pageitemname="DtResourceInformationPage"/>
            ...
        </section>
        <section sectionname="DtObjectConsoleSection" title="Object
Console" collapsible="true" collapsed="true"
maximumHeightIsMinimumHeight="true">
            <pageitem
pageitemname="DtObjectConsoleInformationWidget"/>
        </section>
    </pagecollection>
...
 </informationpagecollections>
```

Notice that by default, the DtTaskStatePage does not have any **<informationitem>** elements. The information on that page is generated dynamically. There are no static fields.

## 78.4. Configuring Context-Sensitive Menus

The Objects menu on the main menu bar and the context-sensitive, or popup, menus vary depending on which objects are selected. These menus are configured as a set of **<rightclickmenu>** elements. There are multiple versions of these elements to account for the different contexts in which a menu might be displayed, for example, one unit, multiple single entities, a mix of entities and control objects. The following example is part of the context-sensitive menu for multiple entities:

```
<rightclickmenu rightclickmenuname="Multiple_Entity">
    <popupmenu menuname="DtVrfRightClickContextMenu">
        <menu menuname="DtRightClickTaskMenu"/>
        <menu menuname="DtRightClickSetMenu"/>
```

```
            <menuitem itemname="DtTopLevelRightClickScriptedTasksSets"/>
            <menuitem itemname="DtVrfEntityPlanAction"/>
            <menu menuname="Manage Plan">
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfEntityAbandonPlanAction"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfEntityRestartPlanAction"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfEntitySkipTaskAction"/>
            </menu>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfManageReactiveTasksAction"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfVrlinkObjectInformationItem"/>
                <separator separatorname="3"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfEditObjectAction"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfMoveObjectAction"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfCopyAction"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfDeleteAction"/>
                <separator separatorname="16"/>
            <menu menuname="Embarkation">
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfEmbarkOnAction"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfDisembarkAction"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfDisembarkAllAction"/>
            </menu>
            <menu menuname="DtUnitDisplayEntityMenu">
                <menuitem itemname="DtVrfAggregateAsAction"/>
                <separator separatorname="AggSeparator1"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtExpandAggregateMenuItem"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtExpandAllAggregateMenuItem"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtCollapseAggregateMenuItem"/>
                <menuitem itemname="DtCollapseAllAggregateMenuItem"/>
            </menu>
            <menu menuname="Decorations">
                <menuitem itemname="DtObjectSettingsAction"/>
            </menu>
        </popupmenu>
</rightclickmenu>
```

Notice that the entries for the Task menu (DtRightClickTaskMenu) and the Set menu (DtRightClickSetMenu) do not have any **<menuitem>** elements. That is because these menus are themselves context-sensitive and get built dynamically.

## 78.4.1 Editing the Task Menu

The Task menu is a context sensitive menu built based on the platform type, controllers, scripts, and systems for a simulation object. Therefore, there is no all inclusive configuration file that you can edit to add and remove tasks. However, the file *./data/simulationModelSets/<sms>/gui/initialTaskMenuConfiguration.xml* is an SMS-specific set of tasks that get initialized when you load a scenario. If you remove a task from the list in this file, it will not be included on the Task menu. Removing a task in this way affects all simulation objects. If you edit this file, be sure to change the value for the **count** element to match your changes.

### 78.4.2 Editing the Set Menu

The Set menu is a context-sensitive menu built dynamically based on the controllers and scripts that define set data requests. While some set data requests are specific to particular platforms or object types, some are generically available to any platform that has a **set-data** controller in its platform file. This can result in some set data requests being available for objects for which they do not have much meaning. For example, you can set the ordered speed for a lamp post or a building.

You can cause VR-Forces to ignore set data requests when it builds the Set menu by adding an **ignore-sets** parameter to a **set-data** controller in an OPE file. The following code shows the set-data controller in *AirBase.ope* in the AggregateLevel SMS:

```
(set-data
    (component-descriptor-type "set-controller-descriptor")
    (component-type  "cultural-feature-set-controller")
    (min-tick-period  -1.000000)
    (min-tick-period-variance  -1.000000)
    (tick-period-uses-real-time  False)
    (process-state-repository-name  "")
    (process-state-repository-type  "")
    (is-enabled  True)
    (debug-detail  False)
    (create-component  True)
    (ignore-sets "set-speed" "set-capability" "set-engagement-rules"
        "set-engagement-zones" "set-scan-sector" "set-current-speed"
        "set-altitude")
)
```

This method of editing the Set menu only applies to set data requests that are registered for in code, not scripted sets. The strings that you can add to **ignore-sets** are in *./include/vrftasks/radioMessageTypes.h*.

You can remove some set data requests from the menu for all simulation objects by editing *./data/simulationModelSets/<sms>/gui/initialSetMenuConfiguration.xml*. Be sure to change the value for the **count** element to match your changes.

## 78.5. Configuring Toolbars

You can configure use of the various toolbars provided with VR-Forces. For each displayed toolbar, you can configure which row it is in and which command icons are used. The following example shows that the Scenario toolbar is in the top row:

```
<toolbarconfiguration name="toolbar_configuration">
    <toolbarrow toolbarname="Top_Row">
        <toolbar toolbarname="DtScenarioToolbar" visible="True"
            floating="False">
            <item itemname="DtNewScenarioMenuItem"/>
            <separator separatorname="DtScenarioToolbar_1"/>
            <item itemname="DtLoadScenarioMenuItem"/>
            <item itemname="DtLoadBatchScenarioMenuItem"/>
            <separator separatorname="DtScenarioToolbar_2"/>
            <item itemname="DtSaveScenarioMenuItem"/>
```

```
            <separator separatorname="DtScenarioToolbar_3"/>
            <item itemname="DtCloseScenarioMenuItem"/>
        </toolbar>
    </toolbarrow>
</toolbarconfiguration>
```

### 78.5.1 Creating Toolbars

Since toolbars are just buttons that reference existing menu options, you can create your own toolbars as easily as you add, delete, or edit the toolbars provided with VR-Forces. Simply add a **toolbar** element in one of the **toolbarrow** elements.

If you want to add tasks or sets to the Task or Set toolbars, or create a new toolbar, specify the **itemname** using the task or set ID as listed in *./include/vrfGuiConstants/vrfMenuIds.h*. If you want to add a scripted task to a toolbar, the **itemname** is its script ID plus "ToolbarItem". For example, if you add the Place IED scripted task to the Task toolbar, it would look like this:

```
<toolbar toolbarname="DtTaskToolbar" visible="True" floating="False">
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskMoveToActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskMoveToLocationActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskMoveAlongRouteActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskMoveToAltitudeActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskPatrolObjectsActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskPatrolRouteActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskEmbarkActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskDisembarkActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskFlyAltitudeActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskFlyHeadingActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskFlyHeadingAndAltitudeActionToolbarItem"/>
    <item itemname="DtVrfTaskFireAtTargetActionToolbarItem"/>
<item itemname="Place_IEDToolbarItem"/>
</toolbar>
```

### 78.5.2 Specifying an Icon for a Toolbar Item

If you add an item to a toolbar, you can associate an icon with the toolbar button. To associate an icon with a scripted task, specify it in the Scripts dialog box. For details, please see "31.2.2 Specifying a Menu Icon" on page 723. For tasks or sets, create an SVG file and put it in *./data/Icons*. The file should use the menu ID of the task or set (from *./include/vrfGuiConstants/vrfMenuIds.h*) with the DtVrf text and Action text stripped from it. For example, the icon for DtVrfTaskMoveToAltitudeAction is *TaskMoveToAltitude.svg*. The icon for DtVrfSetHeadingAction is *SetHeading.svg*.

## 78.6. Locking Main GUI Elements

VR-Forces plug-ins can modify menus, dialog boxes, and other GUI features. You can lock GUI settings for first level elements (elements under the root element). This feature is used in *./appData/settings/vrfGui/default_guiSimpleScenarioPlayer.gui*. The syntax would be as follows:

```
<mainmenuconfiguration name="main_menu_configuration" locked="True">
    ...
```

```
</mainmenuconfiguration>
```

Given this configuration, none of the menus on the main menu could be modified.

# 79. Creating and Editing Key Mappings

This chapter explains how to edit key mappings and create new key mappings.


79.1. Introduction to Key Maps ..... 1570
79.2. The Key Mapping Editor ..... 1570
79.2.1 Binary Key Mappings ..... 1571
79.3. Editing a Key Map ..... 1571
79.3.1 Adding a Key Mapping ..... 1571
79.3.2 Changing a Key Mapping ..... 1573
79.3.3 Deleting a Key Mapping ..... 1573
79.4. Using Combined Key Mappings ..... 1574
79.5. Filtering the Function List ..... 1574
79.6. Creating a Key Map ..... 1575
79.7. Deleting a Key Map ..... 1575

## 79.1. Introduction to Key Maps

When you move the observer, you are actually executing functions that control the observer's movement. For example, the Move Observer Forward function moves the observer forward in observer coordinates. The Move Level Observer Forward function moves the observer forward in level observer coordinates.

The various movement functions are mapped to the keys on the keyboard and to mouse buttons and the mouse wheel.

VR-Forces comes with key mappings that we think will meet the needs of most VR-Forces users. However, you can edit the default keyboard mappings and create new mappings of your own with the Key Mapping Editor.

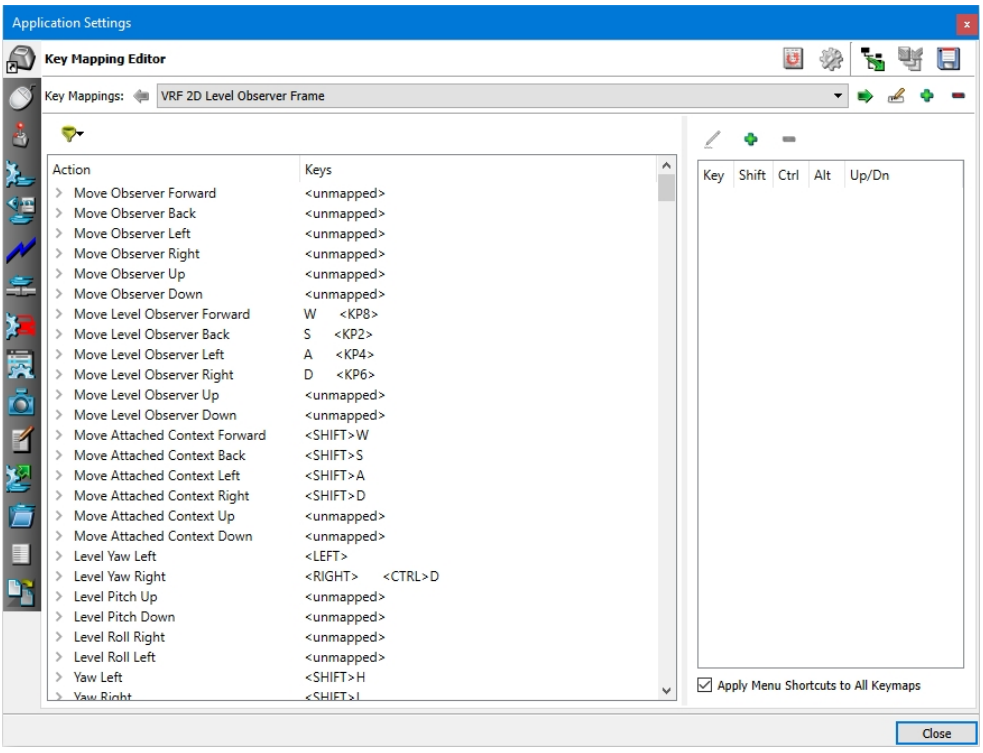
## 79.2. The Key Mapping Editor

The Key Mapping Editor (Figure 651) lists all of the functions that you can control from the keyboard and the keys to which they are mapped. Some functions are mapped to more than one key or key combination. A key can be mapped to more than one function (combined mappings). You can:

- Edit a function's key mappings.
- Add new mappings.
- Delete mappings.

Changes are saved automatically.

**Figure 651. Key Mapping Editor**



### 79.2.1 Binary Key Mappings

Many navigation functions require you to press and hold a key. For example, you press and hold **W** to move the observer forward. (By contrast, some keyboard actions are toggles or unary functions, such as pressing period to attach to the next simulation object.) For these actions, VR-Forces needs to keep track of when the key is pressed down (start the action) and when it is released (stop the action). To a human user, a function like Move Observer Forward is experienced as one action. But the computer experiences it as two actions. Therefore, key mappings must take this into account. The Key Mapping Editor shows the key mappings for these functions as paired functions that are subordinate (children) to the primary function (the parent), as shown in the Move Observer Up entry in Figure 651.

## 79.3. Editing a Key Map

The Key Mapping Editor lists all of the VR-Forces functions that you can control from the keyboard.

➤ **To edit a key map:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**. The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Key Mapping Editor page (Figure 651 on the previous page).
3. Select the function whose key mappings you want to edit.
4. Edit the key mappings. as described in:
   - "79.3.1 Adding a Key Mapping" below.
   - "79.3.2 Changing a Key Mapping" on page 1573.
   - "79.3.3 Deleting a Key Mapping" on page 1573.
5. Optionally, export the key map to a file.
6. Click OK.

### 79.3.1 Adding a Key Mapping

If a function is not mapped to a key, it is marked **<unmapped>**. You can add a mapping to unmapped functions and you can add additional key mappings to functions that are already mapped. If you add a key mapping to a binary function, the Key Mapping Editor automatically applies it to the child (UP and DN) functions. You can add key mappings to the child functions of binary mappings. When you add a key mapping to a child function, it is not applied to its paired function or the parent function.

---

In some cases, an unmapped function is unmapped because it is not meaningful in the observer frame for the key mapping. For example, the level observer movement functions are not meaningful in the observer frame key mappings.

---

➤ **To add a key mapping:**

1. Optionally, filter the function list. For details, please see "79.5. Filtering the Function List" on page 1574.
2. Select the function to which you want to add a key mapping.
3. Click the Add button (✚) above the Key Map window (Figure 652). The Key Entry dialog box opens (Figure 653).

**Figure 652. Key Mapping Editor**

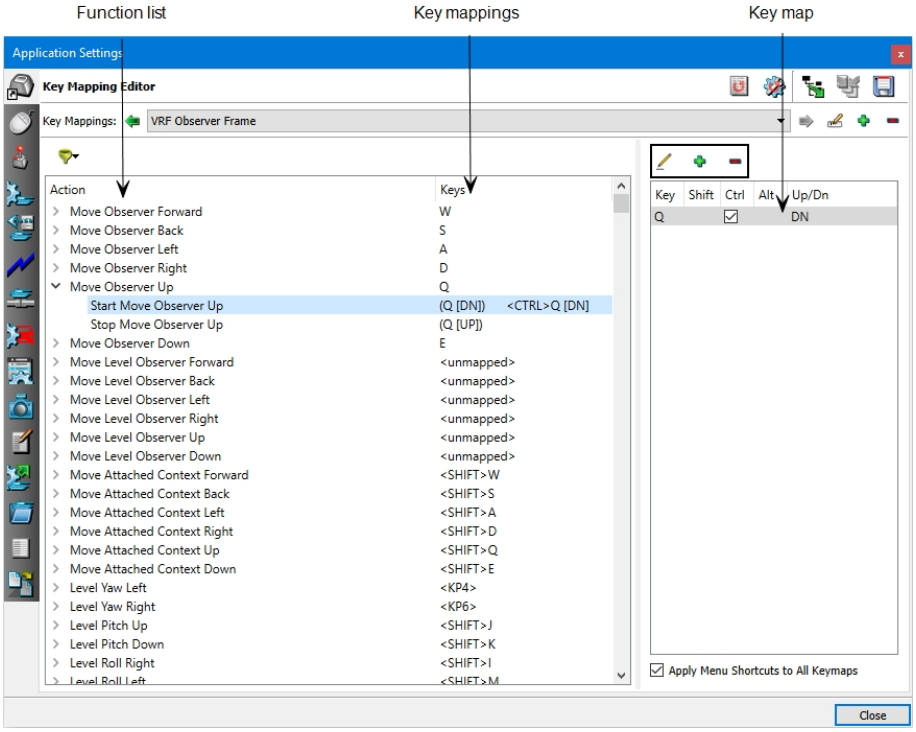
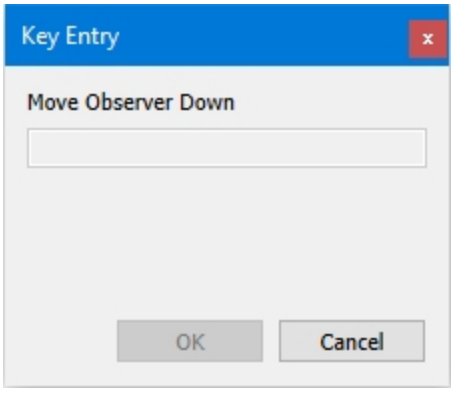



**Figure 653. Key Entry dialog box**




4. On the keyboard, press the key or key combination (such as **Ctrl**+key or **Shift**+key) that you want to map to this function.

5. Click OK. (If you choose a key combination that is already in use, VR-Forces notifies you and asks how to proceed. For details about duplicate key mappings, please see "79.4. Using Combined Key Mappings" on the next page.) The mapping is added to the function and is listed in the Keys column of the function list and in the Key Map window.

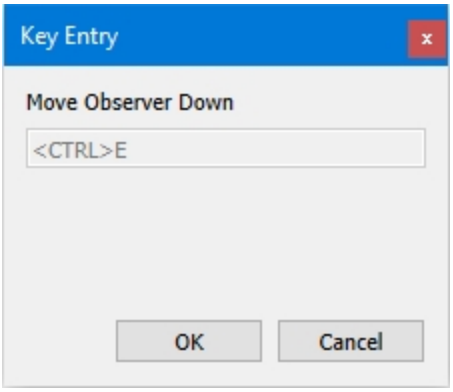
## 79.3.2 Changing a Key Mapping

If a key mapping is assigned to a binary function, the key is automatically assigned to the child functions. You cannot edit the key mappings for the child functions. You can only change the parent's key mapping. However, if you add a key mapping to a child function, you can edit it.

➤ **To change a key mapping:**

1. Select the function whose key mapping you want to change. Its key mappings are listed in the Key Map window (Figure 652).
2. In the Key Map window, select the key mapping that you want to change.
3. Click the Edit Key Mapping button ( ). The Key Entry dialog box opens (Figure 654). It shows the current key mapping.

**Figure 654. Key Entry dialog box**




4. On the keyboard, press the key or key combination (such as **Ctrl**+key or **Shift**+key) that you want to map to this function.
5. Click OK. The mapping changes.

## 79.3.3 Deleting a Key Mapping

➤ **To delete a key mapping:**

1. Select the function whose key mapping you want to delete. Its key mappings are listed in the Key Map window (Figure 652).
2. In the Key Map window, select the key mapping that you want to delete.
3. Click the Delete button ( ) above the Key Map window. The mapping is deleted. The function list is updated.

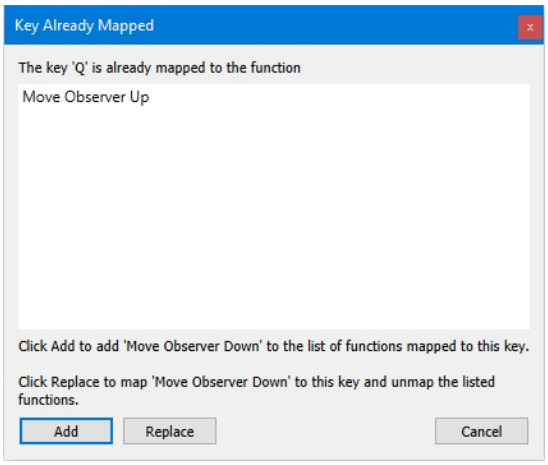
## 79.4. Using Combined Key Mappings

You can assign a key combination to more than one function. This allows you to combine the behaviors of two or more functions into one key combination. For example, the **Z** key detaches the observer from the attached simulation object. The **Spacebar** resets the observer view to the default view. Suppose that whenever you detach from a simulation object, you want the observer to return to the default view. You could map the Reset function to **Z**. **Z** is now mapped to two functions. When you press **Z**, VR-Forces detaches from the attached simulation object and moves the observer to the default view.

➤ **To manage combined key mappings:**

1. Add the appropriate key mapping to a function.
2. Click OK. The Key Already Mapped dialog box opens (Figure 655). It lists the functions that already use this key mapping.

**Figure 655. Key Already Mapped dialog box**




3. If the functions listed are the ones with which you want to share this key mapping, click Add. The key mapping is added to the function.
4. If you do not want to share this key mapping with other functions and want to use it for the function that you are editing, click Replace. The key mapping is applied to the function you are editing and removed from the functions listed in the dialog box.
5. If you do not want to remove the key mapping from existing functions and do not want to share it with the other functions, click Cancel. Presumably you wanted a unique key mapping for the function you are editing and did not realize you chose one that was already in use. Choose a different key mapping for this function.

## 79.5. Filtering the Function List

You can filter the function list in the Key Mapping Editor. Functions are grouped thematically.

➤ To filter the function list, click the Filter button ( ) and select an option on the list.

## 79.6. Creating a Key Map

➤ **To create a key map:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**.The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Key Mapping Editor page (Figure 652 on page 1572).
3. Click the Add button ( ). The Create New Key Map dialog box opens.
4. Type a name for the new key map.
5. Click OK.
6. Add key mappings for the movement actions as described in "79.3.1 Adding a Key Mapping" on page 1571.

## 79.7. Deleting a Key Map

➤ **To delete a key map:**

1. Choose **Settings > Application**.The Application Settings dialog box opens.
2. Select the Key Mapping Editor page (Figure 652 on page 1572).
3. In the key mapping list, select the key mapping that you want to delete.
4. Click the Delete button ( ).
5. Confirm that you want to delete the selected key map.

# XIV. Appendixes

The appendixes contain supplementary information.

# A. MTL Syntax

This chapter describes the syntax of VR-Forces MTL files.

A.1. Introduction ..... 1580
A.2. MAK Technologies Lisp (MTL) Files ..... 1580
A.2.1 Using Environment Variables in an MTL File ..... 1581
A.2.2 Specifying Lists of Lists ..... 1581
A.2.3 Using Conditional Statements ..... 1581

## A.1. Introduction

VR-Forces uses many different configuration files to manage element definitions, model mapping, back-end configurations, menus, and so on. Almost all of the configuration files for the front-end are XML files that get created and updated through the Display Settings dialog box, Terrain Settings dialog box, and the other front-end configuration dialog boxes. Although you could edit these files with text editors, we recommend that you not edit them by hand and we do not document their contents and syntax. When you save settings, they are saved to files with the correct extension.

---

Developers may need to create and edit configuration files using the VR-Forces Front-End API. Please see *VR-Forces Developers Guide* and the class documentation for details.

---

The back-end configuration files mostly use the MAK Technologies LISP (MTL) syntax. The major back-end configuration file is *vrfSim.mtl*. It is described here, in "Appendix A. MTL Syntax" on the previous page. Other files are described throughout this manual in the appropriate section.

## A.2. MAK Technologies Lisp (MTL) Files

Many of the configuration files for MAK products are ASCII text files that use MAK Technologies LISP (MTL) to encode configuration information. MTL files have the extension *.mtl*. You can edit them in any text editor. Be sure that your text editor uses the proper end-of-line characters for your platform.

Most parameter entries take the format:

```
(setq parameter_name value)
```

For example:

```
(setq EnableWireFrame 1)
```

Or:

```
(setqb parameter_name value)
```

The setqb syntax indicates a bound variable.

To comment out a line, precede the text with two semi-colons (;;). You can also add a comment at the end of a line by preceding it with two semi-colons.

In most cases, the parameter names are known to the MAK application and the MTL commands simply assign values to them. However, you can use the **setq** command to create arbitrary symbolic names or aliases that are then used in later commands. For example, in the following two commands, the symbolic name VaporTrail is assigned to an OpenFlight file. Then the symbolic name is used in the **trail-map** command. The name VaporTrail has no intrinsic meaning. It is given meaning by the **setq** command, which allows it to be used later in the **trail-map** command.

```
 (setq VaporTrail (list "./../data/models/makTrails/VaporTrail"
"VaporTrail.flt" 6.0 1.5 1.5 4.0 1.5 0.5))
 (trail-map (list 1 2 -1 0 -1 -1 -1)(list VaporTrail 0.0 0.0 0.0))
```

In addition to the **setq** command, a commonly used command is the **load** command. This command instructs the application to load the file specified, for example:

```
(load mtl-path "params.mtl")
```

## A.2.1 Using Environment Variables in an MTL File

If you want to use an environment variable in an MTL file, use the following syntax:

```
(setqb parameter_name (getenv (quote env_var)))
```

For example:

```
(setqb disDestAddr (getenv (quote DEST_ADDR)))
```

## A.2.2 Specifying Lists of Lists

The example of setting a symbolic name in a previous section uses a list. You can also specify a list of lists, for example:

```
(trail-map (list 1 2 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
    (list vaporTrail -8.0 -3.0 0.0)
    (list vaporTrail -8.0 3.0 0.0)
)
```

A parameter entry can also have multiple individual lists:

```
(trail-map (list 1 2 -1 0 -1 -1 -1)(list VaporTrail 0.0 0.0 0.0))
```

## A.2.3 Using Conditional Statements

MTL commands can be conditional. Conditional statements are used frequently when parameters are different for DIS and HLA. A simple conditional statement has the format:

```
(if (condition) (statement_to_evaluate))
```

If you have more than one statement to evaluate, use a sequence block:

```
;; HLA specific parameters
(if (equal HLA 1)
    (sequence
        (setqb fomMapperLib "")
        (setqb fomMapperInitData "")
        (setqb rprFomVersion 1.0)
        (setqb pathToSublistFile "sublist.mtl")
        (setqb ignoreAdvisories 0)
        (setqb fedLookahead 1.0)
    )
)
```

# B. The vrfSim.mtl Configuration File

This chapter describes the *vrfSim.mtl* file.

B.1. The vrfSim.mtl Configuration File ..... 1584

## B.1. The *vrfSim.mtl* Configuration File

The file *./appData/settings/vrfSim/vrfSim.mtl* configures back-ends. Table 69 describes the parameters in *vrfSim.mtl*. The Description column includes the command-line argument equivalent for parameters that have them.

**Table 69. *vrfSim.mtl* parameters**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **additionalSystemScriptsDirectory** | Directories other than the default script directory where VR-Forces should look for system scripts. |
| **aggregateSpatialModelTickPeriodUsesRealTime**<br>**aggregateSpatialModelTickPeriod**<br>**aggregateSpatialModelTickVariance**<br>**aggregateSpatialModelTickAsFastAsPossibleWhilePaused** | Configure aggregate spatial model tick rates. Default is to run the aggregate spatial model every frame. Tick period is given in seconds, with the special value of -1 indicating tick every frame. |
| **appNumber** | Specifies the application number.<br>Default: 3001. Command line: **-a** \| **-p** |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **assertOnBlockingTerrainCalls** | When set to true (1), causes blocking terrain calls to assert in debug mode if the simulation is running. Blocking terrain calls can cause long ticks in a running simulation which can have very negative effects on the models. This parameter can help developers find places in the code that are making the offending calls. Note that calling the blocking form of any terrain intersection function causes an assertion; it is not necessary for the call to actually block and even non-paging implementations will assert. This is to make it easier to find potential problems regardless of the particular terrain or location being used. Default: 0. For more information, see API documentation. |
| **batchScenarioFileName** | Specifies a batch file to run. Command line: **-B** |
| **cgfDispatcherReceivePort** | Specifies the port to be used by the *DtCgfDispatcher's* file transporter to receive scenario objects and plan files from the *DtVrfRemoteController*. |
| **clockMode** | Configuration in Windows for absolute time stamping. When set to 0, uses the performance counter, which is a highly accurate internal timer (default behavior). When set to 1, synchronizes with the system clock on every tick. Command line: **--clockMode***mode* (Windows only.) Use Absolute Time Stamps must be enabled. |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **countryCodesMappingFile** | The file VR-Forces uses to import country codes to map to object type enumerations. |
| **daemon** | Runs vrfSim as a daemon process (Linux only.) vrfSim does not try to read characters from a console, and forks a background process on startup. It exits cleanly on receipt of the SIGTERM, SIGQUIT, SIGINT signals. Default: Off. Command line: --**daemon** |
| **datumShiftX**<br>**datumShiftY**<br>**datumShiftZ** | These parameters, along with the **spheroidSemiMajor** and **spheroidSemiMinor** parameters, let you change the reference ellipsoid used for geocentric to geodetic conversions. For more information, see Choosing a Reference Ellipsoid in *VR-Link Developers Guide*. These parameters are used only if **VRF_ useCustomMapDatum** is set to 1. |
| **defaultParameterDatabasePath** | Specifies the location to search for the object parameter database if the full path is not specified in a scenario file. |
| **defaultTerrainDatabasePath** | Specifies the location to search for the terrain database if the full path is not specified in a scenario file. |
| **diGuyAnimationsFile** | Specifies the DI-Guy animations file to load if **useDIGuy** is 1. |
| **disableParallelTick** | If enabled (1), VR-Forces ticks thread safe components in parallel. If disabled (0), all components are ticked serially in the main thread. |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **doNotUseConsole** | Disables (1) or enables (0) writing of output to the console. Default: 0. |
| **enableLogFileTimestamps** | If enabled, puts timestamps in front of each line in for all log files. |
| **enableNavigationLabDebugging** | Enables debugging using the Navigation Lab application. A connection is made on an available port, starting with 4888, to enable Navigation Lab to connect to the simulation engine. |
| **entVrfDataTimeThreshold** | Specifies how often, in seconds, VR-Forces environmental and simulation object data is sent. If you specify -1.0, the update is sent only if some item in the vrfDataObject has changed. |
| **forceParameterDbReload** | If set to 1 (default), forces the back-end to reload the object parameter database (OPD) each time a scenario is loaded. If set to 0, if a scenario is started that uses the same SMS as the previous one (for example, in a rewind), the SMS is not reloaded. |
| **gamewareMemorySize** | Set the working memory size limit used internally by GameWare when calculating paths. Size is in MB. Increasing this limit can allow for path plans on larger navigation areas by more entities simultaneously. Note: Multiple working memory blocks are allocated with this limit, so this is not an overall limit for Gameware. |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **gamewareQueryTimeBudget** | Set the time budget for GameWare navigation queries per frame. This is the amount of time GameWare is given to perform tasks such as path planning each simulation frame. The higher the value, the more responsiveness path planning will be, but the slower the VR-Forces simulation frame rate will be. Default: 1.0 ms. |
| **loadPluginIfVersionMismatch** | Specifies whether (1) or not (0) to load a plug-in if there is a mismatch between how the plug-in was built and how VR-Forces was built. Mismatches can be build type (release versus debug), operating system, or protocol (DIS, HLA 1.3, HLA 1516, HLA Evolved.)<br>Allowing a plug-in to load if there is a mismatch can cause VR-Forces to be unstable. |
| **logFrameRateStatistics** | Enables (1) or disables (0) logging of frame rate statistics to a file. |
| **maxDrainInputTime** | Sets the maximum time to wait in drainInput() before returning. For the MAK RTI, the default value drains the entire input stream before returning. For the Pitch RTI, the default value reads a single input from the input stream, so set to a value other than -1 to process more information. Use with DIS or HLA. |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **maxNavigationRegenerationThreads** | Sets the maximum number of threads that can be running at a given time regenerating GameWare navigation data. If you have many available CPUs and are using dynamic terrain, increasing this number will speed up the regeneration of navigation data due to changes in the terrain. If you are more limited in CPU availability, increasing this value may have a negative affect on VR-Forces performance. Default: 2. |
| **msdlSIDCMappingFile** | The file VR-Forces uses to map between SIDC codes and object type enumerations when it imports MSDL files. |
| **navigationRegenerationDelay** | Sets the delay (in seconds) between the occurrence of an event that triggers navigation data regeneration and the start of the regeneration. Decreasing this improves the responsiveness of navigation to dynamic terrain changes; however, it increases the likelihood that navigation data will be generated multiple times if multiple events result in navigation changes in a particular area. Default: 2.5 |
| **notifyLevel** | Sets the notification level (0-4) for information and warning messages. Default: 2. Command line: **-n** |
| **objectConsoleNotifyLevel** | Specifies the notification level (0-4) for messages sent to the object console. Default: 1. |
| **pluginsDirectory** | Specifies the directory in which configuration (MTL) files for plug-ins are located. The directory must end with a slash, for example, *./plugins/* |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **publishZeroVelocityWhenPaused** | When set to 1, the default, VR-Forces sets simulation object velocities to 0 when it is paused so that simulation objects do not continue to dead reckon. To publish the current velocity, set to 0. |
| **regenerateNavigationDataAtRuntime** | Enables navigation data to be regenerated at runtime based on changes in dynamic terrain. This may have a negative effect on performance as it requires spawning threads to perform the regeneration. However, it allows entities to correctly navigate around and through the changes in the terrain. Default: 1. |
| **rejectMismatchedScenarioMessages** | If true (the default) reject mismatched scenario run messages based on unique scenario run id. |
| **reportedHostAddressString** | Specifies how VR-Forces reports its IP address to another VR-Forces application for the purpose of file transfers. It is only important when you have a GUI or remote controller on one side of a router and a simulation engine on the other, and there is some kind of network address translation occurring whereby they have to connect to one another using an IP address other than the one they recognize themselves at locally. |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **reuseEntityIdentifiersOnScenarioLoad** | If true, reuse object identifiers that might be part of the scenario. If the object identifier saved in the scenario objects file does not currently match the site/app of the back-end loading that object, then the user will be warned and the object will be assigned a new entity identifier that is compliant with that site/app. This will not apply to simulation object groups or scenario import. They will always get new entity identifiers. |
| **scenarioFileName** | Specifies the scenario file to load. Command line: **-L** |
| **sendBackendLogToNetwork** | Enables (1) or disables (0) sending simulation engine log messages to the front-end. |
| **sessionId** | Specifies the session ID. Command line: **-i** |
| **setDeadReckoningAlgorithmToStaticOnPause** | When the simulation is paused, set the dead reckoning algorithm for aggregates and entities to static. If enabled and **publishZeroVelocityWhenPaused** is disabled, the objects in a VR-Forces run simulation show current values for velocity, speed, acceleration, and so on. |
| **setMainThreadToHighPriority** | If set to 1, sets the main thread to THREAD_PRIORITY_TIME_CRITICAL in Windows. Using this option on a single core processor will probably cause deadlock. (Windows only.) |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **simMgmtPduProcessLevel** | Specifies how simulation management PDUs are processed:<br>1 – Processes PDUs sent to a specific back-end. Wildcards are ignored.<br>2 – Processes only wildcarded PDUs. Ignores those sent to specific back-ends.<br>3 – Processes all PDUs. |
| **simulationModelSet** | Specifies the default simulation model set or sets. If specifying multiple SMSs, separate them by a semi-colon. |
| **siteId** | Specifies the site ID. 0 = use internal default.<br>Command line: **-s** \| **-t** |
| **spheroidSemiMajor**<br>**spheroidSemiMinor** | These parameters, along with the datumShift parameters, let you change the reference ellipsoid used for geocentric to geodetic conversions. For more information, see Choosing a Reference Ellipsoid in *VR-Link Developers Guide*. These parameters are used only if **VRF_ useCustomMapDatum** is set to 1. |
| **startInRunMode** | Specifies that the simulation start in run mode (1), rather than pause mode (0). Default: 0. |
| **startMinimized** | If true (1), the back-end minimizes at startup. |
| **statusUpdateHeartbeat** | Specifies how often, in seconds, the back-end status heartbeat is sent. |
| **suppressDataAvailableException** | Prevent terrain interface non-blocking intersect calls from throwing an exception if the dataAvailable flag is not checked. |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **targetFrameRate** | Specifies the frame rate for the current frame above which the back-end will sleep, yielding CPU time to other processes. This option applies only to variable frame mode. For more information, see "6.12. Tuning the Target Frame Rate" on page 201 . Default: 22. |
| **taskVisualizationPublicationMode** | Specifies whether or not to publish task visualizations and how to publish them, as follows:<br>0 = Never publish task visualizations.<br>1 = Standard mode. The VR-Forces GUI will request task visualizations only for objects for which they are enabled.<br>2 = Always publish task visualizations, regardless of whether they are being displayed in the GUI. Can be useful for logging purposes. |
| **terrainDatabase** | Specifies the terrain database to load. This parameter is overridden by the scenario file if one is specified in **scenarioFileName.** Command line: **-T** |
| **useCustomMapDatum** | Allows modification of the reference ellipsoid used for geocentric to geodetic conversion. If you enable this parameter, there are several sub-parameters to configure. For details, see the comments in the file. |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **useDrawControlForTaskVisualizations** | If true, publish task visualizations as VR-Vantage draw control objects instead of their standard publication method. This allows task visualizations to be displayed in any VR-Vantage based application; however the VR-Forces GUI will no longer be able to filter task visualizations by entity. |
| **useDIGuy** | Specifies whether (1) or not (0) to use DI-Guy characters. |
| **HLA Parameters** | **For details, see "5.5. Command-Line Options for HLA Federations" on page 178.** |
| **destroyFedExec** | Specifies whether (1) or not (0) the *DtExerciseConn* destructor should try to destroy the federation execution. Default: 1. |
| **execName** | The federation execution name. Command line: **-x** |
| **federateName** | The federate name. Command line: **-N** |
| **federateType** | Lets you specify the federate type for HLA Evolved. |
| **fedFileName** | Specifies the FED file name. Command line: **-F** |
| **fomMapperLib** | A FOM Mapper library. Command line: **-f** |
| **fomMapperInitData** | An initialization string. Command line: **--fomMapperInitData** |
| **hostAddressString** | Specifies the host address. This is usually the same as the device address. |
| **localSettingsDesignator** | Specifies the local settings designator for HLA Evolved. |
| **mimModule** | Specifies a MIM (MOM and Initialization) Module for HLA Evolved. |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **minDrainInputTime** | The minimum time to stay in drainInput() before returning. |
| **rprFomVersion** | The RPR FOM version. (0.5, 0.8, 1.0, 2.0)<br>Command line: **--rprFomVersion** |
| **runInTimeManagementMode** | Enables (1) or disables (0) use of time management. |
| **sendFedTime** | Enables (1) or disables (0) sending and receipt of interactions in time stamp order. Default: 0. |
| **useAbsoluteTimeStamps** | If set to 1, use absolute time stamps. If set to 0, use relative time stamps. Default: 0. |
| **useAdvisories** | Enables (1) or disables (0) HLA advisory messages. |
| **DIS Parameters** | **See "5.6. Command-Line Options for DIS Exercises" on page 180.** |
| **additionalDestinationAddresses** | Specifies additional destination addresses to send to. Accepts multiple IP addresses separated by semi-colons (;). |
| **addMulticastAddr** | The multicast address.<br>Command line: **-s** |
| **appIdRange** | Specifies the application ID range to use to identify simulation objects generated by VR-Forces. |
| **defaultHeartbeatThreshold** | Specifies the DIS heartbeat threshold, in seconds. A heartbeat is sent when the threshold is reached, even if no data has changed. |
| **defaultObjectTimeout** | Specifies the DIS object timeout threshold, in seconds. If VR-Forces does not receive a heartbeat for an object for the time period specified, it removes the object from the exercise. |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **destAddrString** | Destination address for point-to-point communications mode. Command line: **-A** |
| **deviceAddress** | Specifies the address of the network card to use for UDP traffic. |
| **disPort** | The port number. Command line: **-P** |
| **exerciseId** | The exercise ID. Command line: **-x** |
| **heartbeatVariance** | When a simulation object is created, a random value between -**heartbeatVariance** and +**heartbeatVariance** is added to the heartbeat. This spreads heartbeats over time instead of them all being at the same time. |
| **hostAddressString** | Specifies the host address. This is usually the same as the device address. |
| **maxDrainInputReads** | The maximum number of reads to make in drain input before returning |
| **mcastTtl** | Specifies the multicast time to live.<br>Command line: **--mcastTtl** |
| **recvBufferSize** | Specifies the receive buffer size, as a positive value. A value of -1 means use the system default.<br>Command line: **--recvBufferSize** |
| **sendBufferSize** | Specifies the send buffer size, as a positive value. A value of -1 means use the system default.<br>Command line: **--sendBufferSize** |

**Table 69. vrfSim.mtl parameters (continued)**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **subnetMask** | When the destination address is not specified (“0.0.0.0”), the subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network interface address to determine the destination broadcast address. If neither is specified (subnet mask is blank), the network interface's default broadcast address is used. |
| **suppressSelfReflect** | Prevent VR-Forces from reflecting DIS PDUs. |
| **useAbsoluteTimeStamps** | If set to 1, use absolute time stamps. If set to 0, use relative time stamps. Default: 0. |
| **useAsyncIO** | Enables (1) or disables (0) use of asynchronous I/O, which can help reduce dropped packets under heavy network load. Default: 0. Command line: **-I** |
| **useIpv6** | Use the IPV6 protocol. |

# C. Object Parameters

This appendix describes the high-level parameters in the Simulation Model Set. It also has reference material for local and remote subcomponents and object type enumerations.


C.1. The Structure of a Simulation Object Parameter ..... 1600
C.2. The Parameter Type Hierarchy ..... 1600
C.2.1 Vrf Base Object Parameters ..... 1600
C.2.2 Vrf Object Parameters ..... 1605
C.2.3 Moving Object Parameters ..... 1606
C.2.4 Parameter Types for Entity Platforms ..... 1606
C.3. Object Type Enumerations ..... 1606
C.3.1 Object Super-type ..... 1606
C.3.2 AggregateKind ..... 1607
C.3.3 ObjectKind ..... 1607
C.3.4 Unit Category ..... 1607
C.3.5 Unit Specific ..... 1609
C.3.6 Point Object Category ..... 1609
C.3.7 Linear Object Category ..... 1609
C.3.8 Areal Object Category ..... 1609
C.3.9 Interaction ..... 1609

# C.1. The Structure of a Simulation Object Parameter

Many of the files in the object parameter database uses MAK Technologies LISP (MTL). (For details about MTL, see "A.2. MAK Technologies Lisp (MTL) Files" on page 1580.) A parameter block has the form:

```
(block_name
    ( parameter_name value)
    ...
    (parameter_name
        (sub-parameter value)
    )
    and so on
)
```

Entries have the following requirements:

- The block_name can be anything that you like. It must not start with a number.
- The parameter_name must be exactly as documented (except that in some cases, a parameter may contain an arbitrary length list of sub-parameters, for which the parameter names are not used – these will be noted). Parameter names must not contain spaces, and must not start with a digit (or a dash followed by a digit, for example, -1).
- The first parameter in any parameter block must be **parameter-type**.
- You can include comments in the file. A comment begins with a semicolon(;) and continues to the end of the line.
- All numerical parameters use standard MKS values: meters, kilograms, seconds, radians, liters, and so on.
- Real constants must begin with a digit and contain a decimal point. For example, 0.5 and 0. are acceptable, but .5 and 0 are not.

---

*.entity* files use XML format, not MTL.

---

# C.2. The Parameter Type Hierarchy

Figure 597 on page 1397 illustrates the hierarchy of parameter types. In this section, we describe the parameters associated with each **parameter-type**.

## C.2.1 Vrf Base Object Parameters

All object parameters inherit from the parameter type **vrf-base-object-param**. The parameters associated with vrf-base-object-param are potentially applicable to any type of object (ground, rotary-wing, control object, and so on). In addition to parameters, each object has an object type and parameter type, as described in Table 70.

**Table 70. Object and parameter type**

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **object-type** | (Required) 8-digit object type. Not actually a parameter. Specifies the key used to look up the entry. For more information, see "68.1.2 Object Types" on page 1393. |
| **parameter-type** | (Required) One of the following (string):<br>• "vrf-base-object-param"<br>• "vrf-object-param"<br>• "moving-object-param"<br>• "fixed-wing-entity-param"<br>• "ground-vehicle-param"<br>• "rotary-wing-entity-param"<br>• "missile-param"<br>• "surface-entity-param"<br>• "subsurface-entity-param"<br>• “human-param”<br>• “aggregate-object-param”<br>• “cultural-feature-param”<br>• “bomb-param”<br>• “global-environment-param”<br>• “circle-object-param”<br>• “point-object-param”<br>• “scripted-movement-object-param”<br>• “tactical-smoke-param”.<br>The value must be in quotation marks. |

## Local Object Subcomponent Parameters

The **local-objects** parameter specifies the types of subcomponents to create for locally simulated objects. You can omit optional items, or set them with an empty string “”. Table 71 lists the subcomponent parameters and their possible values.

**Table 71. Local object subcomponent parameters**

| Subcomponent parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **state-repository** | (Required) Maintains the state information for the object. An object that has components (sensors, controllers, and actuators) for simulation sets and retrieves information in the repository. Some simulation components expect a specific kind of state repository. Specify the state repository type that most closely matches the kind of simulation object you expect to simulate. Consider these types:<br>• "vrf-object-base-state-repository": Used for the base object in the object parameter database.<br>• "vrf-object-state-repository": Derived from vrf-object-base-state-repository, it adds the concepts of resources, sector of responsibility, engagement rules, and targeting. Because there are more simulation object-specific state repository types that are derived from this type, this kind of repository is not typically specified.<br>• “vrf-overlay-object-state-repository”: For tactical graphics.<br>• "vrf-moving-object-state-repository": For any object that you expect to simulate movement. Units in entity-level scenarios have this kind of state repository. The more simulation object-specific repository types that follow inherit this kind of state repository, so choose one of those when simulating a specific type of individual entity.<br>• "ground-entity-state-repository": For ground vehicles, such as tanks, trucks, dismounted infantry.<br>• "rotary-wing-entity-state-repository": For rotary-wing aircraft.<br>• "fixed-wing-entity-state-repository": For fixed-wing aircraft.<br>• "missile-entity-state-repository": For missile and rocket entities.<br>• "surface-entity-state-repository": For surface entities.<br>• "subsurface-entity-state-repository": For subsurface entities.<br>• “human-state-repository”: For lifeform entities.<br>• “vrf-aggregate-state-repository”: For units.<br>• “cultural-feature-state-repository”: For cultural features that are created as entities. |

**Table 71. Local object subcomponent parameters (continued)**

| Subcomponent parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **network-interface** | (Optional) The network interface handles the publication of the object over the network. It acts as an interface between a simulation object's state repository and its network (VR-Link) representation. Choose one that most closely matches the kind of simulation object you are simulating. Consider these types:<br>• "aggregate-local-entity-net-interface": For units.<br>• "pseudo-aggregate-local-entity-net-interface": For units that have subordinate simulation objects that are separately simulated.<br>• "individual-local-entity-net-interface": For individual platform entities, such as tanks, aircraft, dismounted infantry.<br>• "local-environmental-net-interface": For simulation objects that are best represented as an environmental process. Tactical graphics use this type of network interface. |
| **net-interface-min-tick-period** | (Optional) Specifies the shortest period of time, in seconds, that can elapse between ticks of a simulation object's network interface. |
| **net-interface-min-tick-period-variance** | (Optional) Specifies an amount within which the **net-interface-min-tick-period** can vary. Defined as:<br>plus or minus rand(**net-interface-min-tick-period**/2) |
| **component-manager** | (Optional) A component manager contains the lists of sensor, controller, and actuator components used to simulate the behavior of a given object (typically simulation objects). Expected value: "component-manager". |
| **plan-manager** | (Optional) The simulation object plan manager. If you want a simulation object to be able to execute a plan, it must have a plan manager. |
| **task-manager** | (Optional) If a component manager is specified for an object, then you must specify a task manager. The task manager works in conjunction with the component manager to manage the processing and message handling associated with execution of a task. Expected value for individual entities or units: "local-task-manager". |

### Remote Object Subcomponent Parameters

The **remote-objects** parameter specifies the types of sub-components to create for remote objects. Remote objects are those objects simulated by other applications on the network (including other VR-Forces applications). You can omit optional items, or set them with an empty string "". Table 72 lists the subcomponent parameters and their possible values.

**Table 72. Remote object subcomponent parameters**

| Subcomponent parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **state-repository** | (Required) Maintains the state information for the object. Unlike the local-object entry, it is not as important to specify the closest match based on type. For entities, the "vrf-moving-object-state-repository" is sufficient. A more specific state repository may be specified. However, some of the simulation object-specific data may not be set. May be one of these types:<br>• "vrf-object-state-repository": Derived from vrf-object-base-state-repository, it adds the concepts of resources, sector of responsibility, engagement rules, and targeting. Because there are more simulation object-specific state repository types that are derived from this type, this kind of repository is not typically specified.<br>• "vrf-overlay-object-state-repository": For tactical graphics.<br>• "vrf-moving-object-state-repository": For any object that you expect to simulate movement, including individuals and units.<br>• "ground-entity-state-repository": For ground vehicles, such as tanks, trucks, dismounted infantry.<br>• "rotary-wing-entity-state-repository": For rotary-wing aircraft.<br>• "fixed-wing-entity-state-repository": For fixed-wing aircraft.<br>• "missile-entity-state-repository": For missile and rocket entities.<br>• “human-state-repository”: For lifeform entities.<br>• “vrf-aggregate-state-repository”: For units.<br>• “cultural-feature-state-repository”: For cultural features that are created as entities.<br>• "surface-entity-state-repository": For surface entities.<br>• "subsurface-entity-state-repository": For subsurface entities. |

**Table 72. Remote object subcomponent parameters (continued)**

| Subcomponent parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| **network-interface** | (Optional) The network interface is the interface between the remote network (VR-Link) representation of the object and its state repository. It acts as an interface between a simulation object's state repository and its network (VR-Link) representation. Choose one that most closely matches the kind of simulation object you are simulating. May be one of these types:<br>• "vrf-aggregate-remote-entity-net-interface": For remote units.<br>• "vrf-individual-remote-entity-net-interface": For individual platform entities, such as tanks, aircraft, dismounted infantry.<br>• "vrf-remote-environmental-net-interface": For simulation objects that are best represented as an environmental process. Tactical graphics use this type of network interface. |
| **net-interface-min-tick-period** | (Optional) Specifies the shortest period of time, in seconds, that can elapse between ticks of a simulation object's network interface. |
| **net-interface-min-tick-period-variance** | (Optional) Specifies an amount within which the **net-interface-min-tick-period** can vary. Defined as:<br>plus or minus rand(**net-interface-min-tick-period**/2) |
| **plan-manager** | Do not specify a plan manager for remote objects. (Give it the value "" (empty string). If you specify a plan manager, it is ignored.) |
| **component-manager** | Do not specify a component manager for remote objects. (Give it the value "" (empty string). If you specify a component manager, it is ignored.) |
| **task-manager** | (Optional) Do not specify a task manager for remote objects. (Give it the value "" (empty string). If you specify a task manager, it is ignored.) |

## C.2.2 Vrf Object Parameters

The parameter type **vrf-object-param** inherits from **vrf-base-object-param** and is the parent of the moving object parameter type. Vrf object parameters include resources, engagement rules, and target acquisition time. The **vrf-object-param** parameter type represents an intermediate class in the parameter hierarchy. It is not usually used to represent objects in VR-Forces. You will probably want to instantiate a derived type, (for simulation objects) or you will want to specify vrf base object parameters (for case of control objects.)

Control objects have the parameter type **vrf-base-object-param**.

### C.2.3 Moving Object Parameters

Moving objects have the parameter type **moving-object-param**. Moving objects inherit parameters from vrf objects and vrf base objects. The **moving-object-param** parameter type is used for objects that are capable of movement, such as simulation objects. Parameters include support points, maximum speed, maximum reverse speed, turning radius, maximum slope, ordered speed, maximum acceleration, maximum deceleration, and fuel efficiency. Units are moving objects and have this parameter type. All of the platform-specific parameter types derive from this one.

### C.2.4 Parameter Types for Entity Platforms

Table 73 lists the parameter types used by each entity type.

**Table 73. Parameter types for simulation objects**

| Platform | Parameter Type | Inherits from |
|---|---|---|
| Ground vehicle | **ground-vehicle-param** | **moving-object-param** |
| Fixed-wing | **fixed-wing-entity-param** | **moving-object-param** |
| Human | **human-param** | **moving-object-param** |
| Rotary-wing | **rotary-wing-entity-param** | **moving-object-param** |
| Surface | **surface-entity-param** | **moving-object-param** |
| Subsurface | **subsurface-entity-param** | **moving-object-param** |
| Cultural feature | **cultural-feature-param** | **moving-object-param** |
| Missile | **missile-param** | **moving-object-param** |
| Unit | **aggregate-param** | **moving-object-param** |
| Unit Container | **moving-object-param** | **vrf-object-param** |

## C.3. Object Type Enumerations

This section lists the object type enumerations as listed in the header file *objType-Enums.h*. It is presented here primarily for customers who have purchased VR-Forces, but not the toolkit. Therefore we have departed from the typical header file format for readability.

### C.3.1 Object Super-type

The header file *objTypeEnums.h* contains the VR-Forces extensions to the DIS/RPR FOM enumerations. The enumerations specify individual, unit, and other object types. The sim object super-type is an enumeration used in the *DtObjectType* class (an extension of the *DtEntityType* class). It extends the DIS/RPR FOM entity type enumeration by specifying the sort of object associated with the *DtEntityType*. Because object types are not guaranteed to be unique across all of the possible individual and unit types, the extra enumerated field provides a way to uniquely identify all objects in a VR-Forces simulation.

VR-Forces uses the value 3 in the object super-type for all of the units that it simulates.

| | |
|---|---|
| Other | 0 |
| Individual | 1 |
| Unit | 2 |
| Disaggregated Unit | 3 |
| Aggregated Unit | 4 |
| Interaction | 5 |

## C.3.2 AggregateKind

The enumeration for *DtAggregateKind* should start with 0, but VR-Forces starts with 10, to ensure that simulation object types will be unique.

| | |
|---|---|
| Other | 10 |
| MilitaryHierarchy | 11 |
| CommonType | 12 |
| CommonMission | 13 |
| SimilarCapabilities | 14 |
| CommonLocation | 15 |
| DtSimArtPartKind | 20 |

## C.3.3 ObjectKind

Extension of entity kind to represent non-simulation object objects, such as control objects (control points, routes, phase lines, obstacles, and so on.)

| | |
|---|---|
| DtPointObjectKind | 16 |
| DtLinearObjectKind | 17 |
| DtArealObjectKind | 18 |
| DtCircleObjectKind | 19 |
| DtTextObjectKind | 20 |

## C.3.4 Unit Category

VR-Forces extends the enumeration to include *DtAggregateCategoryForce*, which represents the force level. All of the entries from Force through the end of the list, are extensions to the standard.

| | |
|---|---|
| Other | 0 |
| IndividualVehicle | 1 |
| Element | 2 |
| Platoon | 3 |
| Battery | 4 |
| Company | 5 |
| Battalion | 6 |
| Regiment | 7 |
| Brigade | 8 |
| Division | 9 |
| Corps | 10 |
| Force | 11 |
| Team | 12 |
| Squad | 13 |
| Section | 14 |

### Unit Subcategory

The Subcategory field enumerations for Kind field = Military Hierarchy specify the Echelon Type of the unit. Not all of the echelon types are applicable to each of the categories.

In the following list, ForceFriendly, ForceOpposing, ForceNeutral, and ForceOther are extensions to the DIS/RPR FOM enumerations.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Other | 0 | ArmyAviationFixedWing | 13 |
| CavalryTroop | 1 | ArmyAviationRotaryWing | 14 |
| Armor | 2 | ArmyAttackHelicopter | 15 |
| Infantry | 3 | AirCavalry | 16 |
| MechanizedInfantry | 4 | ArmorHeavyTaskForce | 17 |
| Cavalry | | MotorizedRifle | 18 |
| ArmoredCavalry | 6 | MechanizedHeavyTaskForce | 19 |
| Artillery | 7 | CommandPost | 20 |
| SelfPropelledArtillery | 8 | CEWI | 21 |
| CloseAirSupport | 9 | TankOnly | 22 |
| Engineer | 10 | ForceFriendly | 23 |
| AirDefenseArtillery | 11 | ForceOpposing | 24 |
| AntiTank | 12 | | |

## C.3.5 Unit Specific

The Specific field enumerations for Kind field = Military Hierarchy specify whether the unit contains a headquarters, and is enumerated as follows.

| | |
|---|---|
| Noheadquarters | 0 |
| ContainsHeadquarters | 1 |

## C.3.6 Point Object Category

Subcategories for use with the Kind field = *DtPointObjectKind*.

| | |
|---|---|
| Other | 0 |
| ControlPoint | 1 |
| TargetPoint | 2 |
| Marker | 3 |

## C.3.7 Linear Object Category

Subcategories for use with the Kind field = *DtLinearObjectKind*.

| | |
|---|---|
| Other | 0 |
| PhaseLine | 1 |
| Route | 2 |

## C.3.8 Areal Object Category

Subcategories for use with the Kind field = *DtArealObjectKind*.

| | |
|---|---|
| Other | 0 |
| ControlArea | 1 |
| Obstacle | 2 |

## C.3.9 Interaction

Kinds for Supertype interaction.

| | |
|---|---|
| Other | 0 |
| Fire | 1 |
| Detonate | 2 |

# D. Deprecated Weapon System and Munition Damage Configuration

This appendix describes methods for configuring weapon systems used prior to release 4.7 and damage systems prior to release 4.5. For conceptual detail about weapon systems and munition damage, please see "Chapter 70. Configuring Weapon Systems" on page 1443.

D.1. Configuring Direct Fire Weapons ..... 1612
D.1.1 Sensing Targets ..... 1613
D.1.2 Ammo Select Tables ..... 1614
D.1.3 Hit Probability Tables ..... 1615
D.1.4 Damage Probability Tables ..... 1617
D.2. Configuring Indirect Fire Weapons ..... 1617
D.3. Configuring Fixed Weapons ..... 1619
D.4. Configuring Bomb Bay Weapon Systems ..... 1620
D.5. Calculating Damage from Munitions ..... 1620
D.6. Configuring Damage-by-Power ..... 1621
D.6.1 Configuring the Power of a Detonation ..... 1622
D.6.2 The Damage File for Damage-By-Power ..... 1625
D.6.3 Adding a New Power Type ..... 1627
D.7. Configuring Damage-by-Ammo-Type ..... 1629
D.7.1 Configuring Damage for Damage-by-Ammo-Type ..... 1630
D.8. Direct Fire Configuration Examples ..... 1631
D.8.1 Direct Fire Weapon Damage-By-Power Example ..... 1631
D.8.2 Direct Fire Weapon Damage-by-Ammo-Type Example ..... 1636

# D.1. Configuring Direct Fire Weapons

This section explains how direct fire weapons were configured in VR-Forces release 4.6.1 and earlier. This method of configuring systems is supported in VR-Forces 4.7 and later for legacy purposes.

Entities that have direct fire weapons can fire in response to a Fire at Target task and they can detect targets through their sensors and automatically fire at the targets. Entities have to be able to:

- Know what targets they can fire at.
- Detect the targets.
- Determine the ammunition to use.
- Acquire the target and fire at it.

If you want to create a completely new type of weapon system, you must write code for the sensors, controllers, and actuators that it requires. However, if you need a system that is similar to an existing system, you can often create the new system by copying and modifying the configuration files of the existing system. To do so, you must understand the relationships between the different configuration files to allow you to:

- Configure a weapon system.
- Specify the simulation object types that can use the system.
- Specify the simulation object types that can be damaged by the system.
- Specify the amount of damage a simulation object receives from a munition.

The files that manage these relationships are:

- The weapon system. Defines the system, the simulation object types that it can target, and the simulation object types that can use it.
- The ammo select file. Specifies the type of munition to use for each type of simulation object that a weapon can fire at.
- The damage system. Specifies the types of munitions that a simulation object is vulnerable to and the damage file to use to determine the probability of damage.
- The damage file. Specifies the probability that a simulation object will sustain damage and the type of damage it will sustain when hit by a particular munition in a particular location.
- The hit file. Specifies the probability that a ballistic gun will hit a target at different distances. The hit file is not used for projectile weapons and indirect fire.

For detailed examples of how to configure a direct fire weapon, please see "D.8.1 Direct Fire Weapon Damage-By-Power Example" on page 1631 and "D.8.2 Direct Fire Weapon Damage-by-Ammo-Type Example" on page 1636.

The weapon does the following:

1. Acquires the target.
2. Selects the ammunition for the target using the ammo select file.
3. Checks that it has that resource.
4. Determines if it hits target.
5. Sends a fire interaction.
6. After a delay based on distance and muzzle speed, it sends a detonation interaction.

## D.1.1 Sensing Targets

Simulation objects that have direct fire weapons detect targets through their sensors and automatically fire at the targets. Sensor systems can specify what types of targets to detect (using the **detection-types** parameter). The weapon systems can also tell the sensors what they want to target.

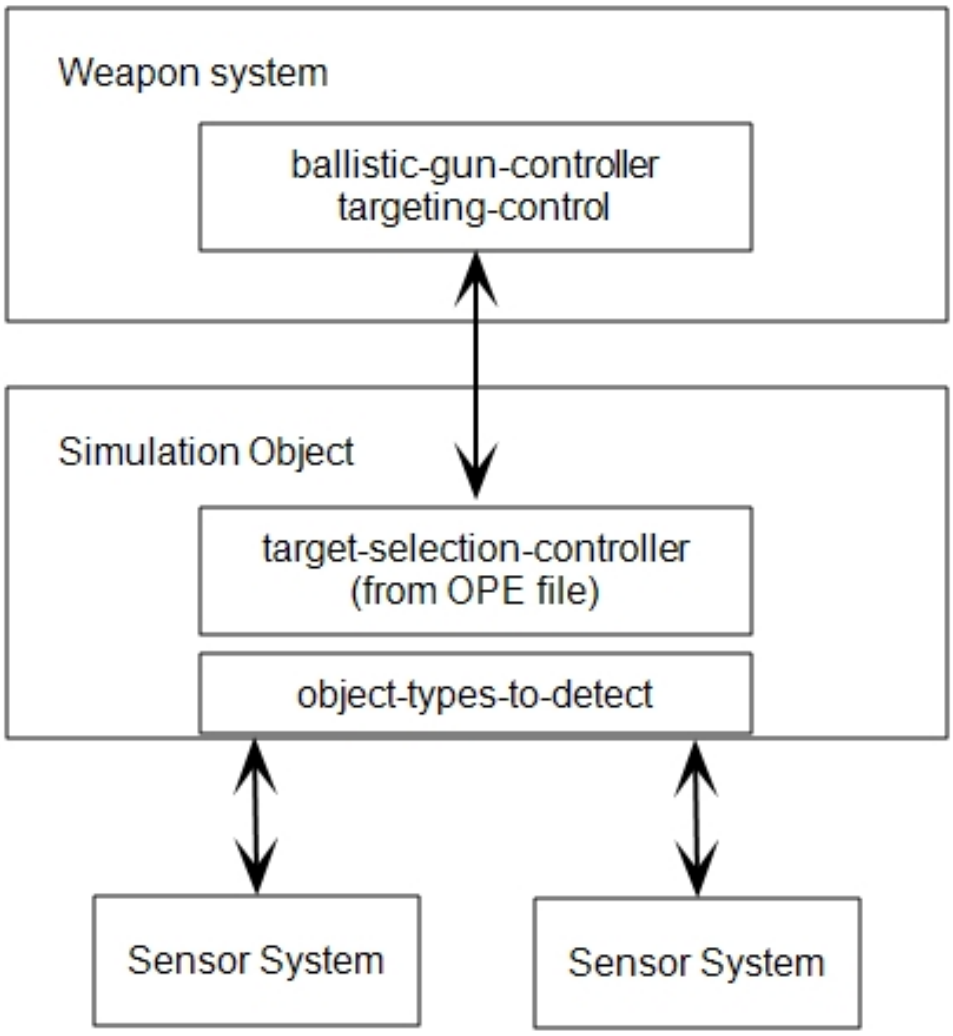
Each weapon system has an associated weapon interface. The **targeting-control** parameter takes a list of desired target types and creates a target selection criteria object, which is then set in the weapon interface. The following code shows the targeting control for *handheld-AK47.sysdef* file. It also shows the ammo select file.

```
(main-gun-control
    (component-descriptor-type "ballistic-gun-ctlr-descriptor")
    (component-type  "ballistic-gun-controller")
    ...
    (ammo-select-table-file
        (filename  "$(ammoselect-dir)\AKA762.asl")
    )
    (rounds-per-trigger-pull  5)
    (targeting-control
        (target-priorities
            (entity-priority
                (entity-type  3 1 -1 1 -1 -1 -1)
                (priority  1)
            )
            (entity-priority
                (entity-type  3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
            (priority  2)
        )
    )
    ...
)
```

The platform file for the entity uses its target selection controller to iterate through each weapon interface to create a list of object types to detect, which it outputs on its object-types-to-detect port.

Each sensor on the entity connects to this port to know what types of objects to detect (Figure 656).

**Figure 656. Direct fire sensor input**




The simulation object gathers the detected objects from all the sensors and stores it in the entity's state repository. (A state repository is a read-write repository of information that is available to all entity components.) The target selection controller selects a target for the weapon.

## D.1.2 Ammo Select Tables

The ballistic gun controller descriptor refers to an ammo select table file, which contains the ammo select table for that controller. Each entry in this file specifies a target type (using the best match method) and a prioritized list of ammunition that should be used for that type of target (highest priority listed first). (The best match method is described in "The Best Match Method" on page 1395.) The name of the entry is not used, and so may be something descriptive for readability. Each entry has the following fields:

- **target-type** – a 7-digit entity type enumeration, which can use -1s to denote wildcards.
- **ammo** – list of ammunition entries. The names of the ammunition entries are assumed to be the resource names. If the resource name is found in the Object Resource Manager, the amount of the ammunition is decremented appropriately, and is not used if the resource amount is 0. In this case, the next ammunition entry (if any) in the ammunition list is used. Each ammunition entry has the following fields:
- **munition-type** – 7 digit object type enumeration. This is the object type that is used in the fire and detonation interactions created, and should NOT contain -1s.
- **tracer-type** – 7 digit object type enumeration. This parameter is optional. Use it if you want a weapon to support tracer rounds.
- **warhead** – VR-Link warhead enumeration value to use in fire and detonation interactions for this munition.

The following is an example of an Ammo Select Table (*M16.asl*):

```
(ammo-select-table
   (lifeform ;; matches any lifeform
      (target-type  3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
      (ammo
         (M16A2-556mm ;; these names need to match resource names
            (munition-type  2 8 225 2 1 1 0)
            (tracer-type    2 8 225 2 1 2 0)
            (warhead  0)
         )
      )
   )
   (civilian-vehicle  ; "technical"
      (target-type  1 1 -1  27 -1 -1 -1)
      (ammo
         (M16A2-556mm ;; these names need to match resource names
            (munition-type  2 8 225 2 1 1 0)
            (tracer-type    2 8 225 2 1 2 0)
            (warhead  0)
         )
      )
   )
)
```

## D.1.3 Hit Probability Tables

A weapon system definition file specifies a hit probability file. This file contains a hit probability table that is used by the system's actuator to determine whether or not it hits a target that it fires upon. A hit probability table has one or more entity-range entries. The name of the **entity-range** entry is not used, and can be something descriptive. An **entity-range** entry has the form:

- **entity-type** – 7 digit entity type enumeration, which may use -1s as wildcards.
- **range-determinant** – a range determinant can be either a list of probability-range entries with the name "range-list", or a probability-coefficient list with the name "coefficients".
- **range-list** – a list of probability-range entries. A probability-range entry has a name, "range", a range value (in meters) and a list of probability entries. The entry applies to targets in the range from the last entry to the current one (or from 0.0 in the case of the first entry). Each probability entry has a name that the table user uses to find the probability value it is interested in and the value itself (a real number between 0.0 and 1.0.) The ballistic gun looks for the probability entry with the name "probability".

---

- For ranges that are greater than the last specified range, the probability is zero.
- The range for missiles is the range from the missile to the target, not from the entity that fired the missile.

---

- **coefficients** – a coefficient probability list is a list of coefficient probability entries. Each entry has a probability name and the coefficients of a standard polynomial that can be used with a given range to determine the specified probability. The order of the polynomial is determined by the number of coefficients provided. For example, an entry of:

  `(probability -5.00000E-008 -300000E-012 1.0000)`

  indicates that the formula to use for a given range *r* would be:

  $(-5.00000E\text{-}008 * r^2) + (-300000E\text{-}012 * r) + 1.0$

  Values calculated will be constrained to be between 0.0 and 1.0. Zero values are factored out, for example:

  `(probability -5.00000E-008 0.0000 1.0000)`

  indicates that the formula to use for a given range *r* would be:

  $(- 5.00000E\text{-}008 * r^2) + (0.0 * r) + 1.0$

  The following is an example of the *M1A2MainGun.hit* hit probability table:

```
(hit-probability-table
    (entity-range
        (entity-type  1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
        (range-determinant
            (range-list
                (range 1000.000000
                    (probability 0.90000)
                )
                (range 2000.000000
                    (probability 0.8000)
                )
                (range 3000.000000
```

```
                    (probability 0.75000)
                )
                (range 4000.000000
                    (probability 0.70000)
                )
            )
        )
    )
)
```

### D.1.4 Damage Probability Tables

The damage actuator uses damage probability tables specified by its component descriptor to determine direct and indirect fire damage. The damage probability table has a list of surface entries, which provide a sub-table for each surface upon which a round might detonate. The name of the surface entry is the surface name used in the damage model.

For the damage-by-power damage system, VR-Forces has damage probability tables for each power type. For more information, please see "Configuring the Damage File for Damage-By-Power" on page 1626.

For the damage-by-ammo-type damage system, VR-Forces has damage probability tables for direct fire and collateral damage. A munition type does not need to have both types of probability table if one of the types is not appropriate. For example, an M16 does not have a collateral damage file. Conversely, an artillery shell does not have a direct fire probability table. For more information, please see "D.7.1 Configuring Damage for Damage-by-Ammo-Type" on page 1630.

## D.2. Configuring Indirect Fire Weapons

Indirect fire weapon systems use the indirect-fire-weapon-controller. Indirect fire weapons fire in response to an indirect fire task, such as Fire-for-Effect or Throw Grenade. They do not fire on their own, like many direct fire weapons do.

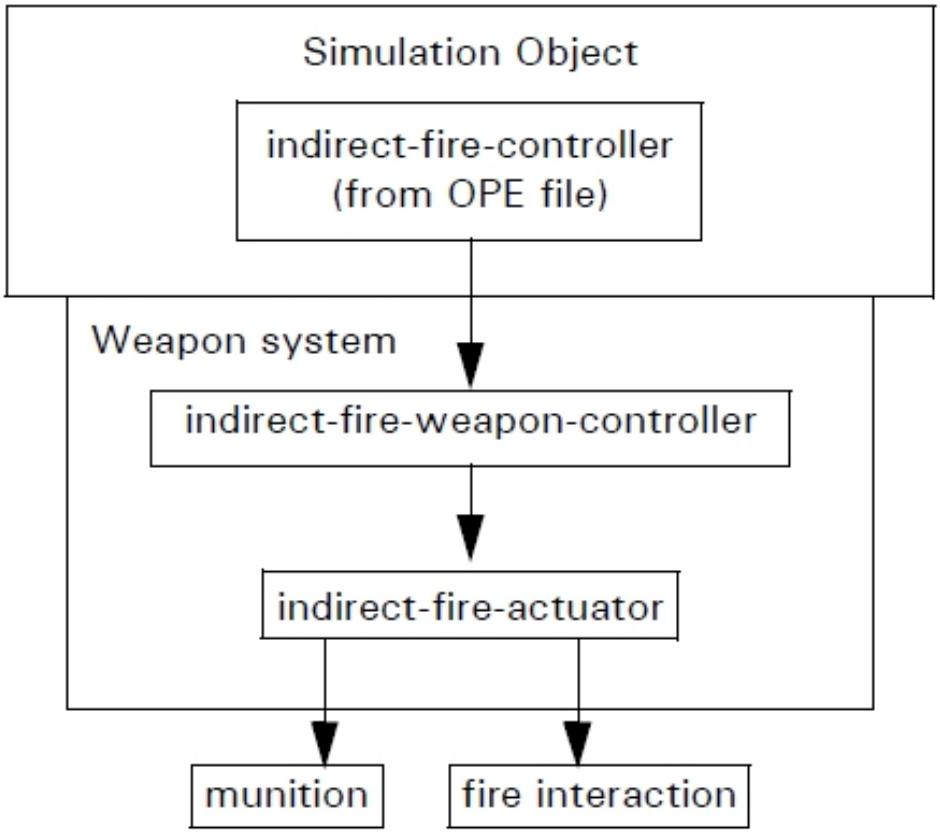
When a simulation object receives an indirect fire task, its indirect-fire-controller queues the task and checks for availability of an indirect fire weapon. It continues to check until a weapon becomes available. Then it sends the fire task to the weapon through the indirect weapon interface. If a task requires multiple weapons, the indirect-fire-controller continues this process until the task is complete. (The indirect-fire-controller and indirect weapon interface are analogous to the target-select-controller and weapon interface described for direct fire weapons.)

When an indirect-fire-weapon-controller gets a task, it reads the fire mission from the indirect weapon interface. The indirect fire weapon controller tries to align the turret and load the munition. When the weapon is ready to fire, it passes the information to its indirect-fire-actuator.

The munition is specified as part of the task. The indirect-fire-actuator creates the desired munition and sends out the fire interaction.

Figure 657 illustrates this process.

**Figure 657. Indirect fire**




Do not confuse the indirect-fire-controller and the indirect-fire-weapon-controller. The indirect-fire-controller is on the simulation object that has the weapon system (it is in the platform OPE file). The indirect-fire-weapon-controller is in the indirect fire weapon system. The controllers are illustrated in Figure 657.

Examples of indirect fire weapons include the M284-155mm cannon (*./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/M284-155mm-cannon.sysdef*), the M252-81mm mortar (*M252-81mm-mortar.sysdef*), and MK45 naval gun ( *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/MK45NavalGun.sysdef*). Also, although hand grenades would not normally be thought of as indirect fire weapons, the hand grenade tasks call the fire for effect tasks. Therefore, they use the same controllers and actuators as indirect fire weapons.

The munitions used by the indirect fire weapon systems are configured with explosive power in *detonationParams.mtl*. Therefore simulation objects that are susceptible to explosive power can be damaged by them. Their damage system definition files will point to the appropriate damage table files to assess damage from these munitions.

As with other weapon systems, the system definition files for indirect fire weapons have parameters that control when they can be used and how effective they are. For example, they have minimum and maximum ranges, as shown in this snippet from the cannon-controller in *M284-155mm-cannon.sysdef*:

```
(load-ammo-time  15.000000)
(unload-ammo-time  5.000000)
(default-ammo-list
    (m107  "M107-155mm")
    (m485  "M485-Illumination")
)
(num-rounds-per-mission  5)
(min-range  2000.000000)
(max-range  30000.000000)
(min-altitude 200.0)
(max-altitude 12500.0)
(preferred-altitude 1000.000000)
(muzzle-speed-list )
(range-name  "M284-15mm Cannon")
```

The following snippet is from the M284-cannon actuator in the same system definition file:

```
(projectile-start-speed  0.000000)
(muzzle-offset  6.090000 0.000000 0.000000)
(probable-error-in-range  15.000000)
(probable-error-in-displacement  4.000000)
(probable-error-in-burst-height  5.000000)
(simulate-munition True)
```

## D.3. Configuring Fixed Weapons

Fixed munitions, such as mines and IEDs can be triggered in the following ways:

- Immediately, by a detonate message.
- By proximity of a valid target. The weapon needs a sensor system or a proximity controller that can detect targets.
- Timed detonation, from when the system is armed.

Fixed munitions have a detonation controller. The detonation controller processes set detonation messages to determine how it is to be triggered and whether or not it is armed. It tells the warhead-detonation-actuator when to arm the weapon. For immediate and timed detonation, it tells the warhead actuator to detonate the device.

For proximity detonations, the detonation controller takes input from the external sensor or the proximity sensor. The warhead-actuator checks for armed and trigger messages from the detonation controller. It also checks for collisions with the terrain and simulation objects. If a collision occurs or it is triggered by the detonation controller, it sends a detonation interaction over the network.

VR-Forces has two types of fixed weapons, naval mines and IEDs.

IEDs are simulation objects that have an explosive device system (*./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/explosive-device.sysdef*). These objects need a sensor to detect targets. The Roadside IED object has a visual sensor. The detonate controller lists the object types to detect:

```
(fuse-type  "Proximity Fuse")
(detonation-proximity-distance  2.000000)
(armed True)
(object-types-to-detect
    (object-type  1 (1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
    (object-type  1 (3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
    (object-type  1 (5 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
)
```

Naval mines use the *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/naval-mine-explosive-device.sysdef* system definition file. It has a proximity sensor built into the system definition, so it does not need an external sensor to detect targets. The detonate controller does not list the object types to detect:

```
(fuse-type  "Proximity Fuse")
(detonation-proximity-distance  25.000000)
(armed True)
(object-types-to-detect )
```

However, the proximity sensor component does list object types to detect:

```
(default-proximity 150)
(detect-only-hostile-forces True)
(object-types-to-detect
    (object-type  1 (1 3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
    (object-type  1 (1 4 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1))
)
```

You can turn an entity into an IED by adding the explosive device system in the Simulation Object Editor. You can configure cultural features as IEDs by adding the Other Explosive Device system.

## D.4. Configuring Bomb Bay Weapon Systems

The bomb-bay weapon system releases bombs in response to Release Bomb tasks. Bombs can drop directly onto targets or be laser guided. Once a bomb is released, it uses the *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/movement/smart-bomb-dynamics.sysdef* movement system to control movement. It has a warhead actuator that is similar to the warhead actuator in missiles. Its ability to navigate toward and hit its target is controlled by parameters that you can set in the Simulation Object Editor. For details, please see "27.25. Release Bomb Tasks" on page 631.

## D.5. Calculating Damage from Munitions

VR-Forces has the following ways to calculate damage:

- Damage-by-power. Each munition is configured for its power in the explosive, kinetic, fragmentation, and armor-piercing domains as appropriate. (You can add new domains without writing code.) Damage systems (*.sysdef* files) reference the damage files (*.dmg*) for the type of munition power that can affect simulation objects that use the system. Damage files configure the amount of damage that occurs when different levels of power are applied. The damage-by-power model is used for all entity-level simulation objects in VR-Forces 4.5 and later and is the preferred method for calculating damage.
- Damage-by-ammo-type. Each munition that can affect a simulation object is configured individually in the damage system used by that object and refers to a damage file that is specific to that type of munition. This model was used in VR-Forces 4.4.2 and earlier. It is supported in VR-Forces 4.5 and later.

The damage-by-power method of configuration makes it much easier to add new munitions than damage-by-ammo-type. You add the munition to one file and the generic power calculations in the damage files translate the power of the munition to damage. However, if you have specific requirements for the effects of a munition on different simulation objects, you can use the damage-by-ammo-type method together with damage-by-power. If VR-Forces finds an **ammo-entry** block in the damage system file, it uses that entry and its related damage file for that ammo type instead of the damage-by-power damage file that would otherwise be used.

For more information, please see "D.6. Configuring Damage-by-Power" below and "D.7. Configuring Damage-by-Ammo-Type" on page 1629.

## D.6. Configuring Damage-by-Power

This section is largely the same as the description in "D.6.2 The Damage File for Damage-By-Power" on page 1625. However, there are some differences between how damage-by-power was configured in VR-Forces 4.6.1 and earlier and how it is configured in VR-Forces 4.7 and later, so this information is presented in its entirety.

In the damage-by-power method of calculating damage, each munition has a **detonation-power-entry** block in *./data/simulationModelSets/base/detonationParams.mtl*. The following is the entry for the 7.62 mm bullet:

```
(detonation-power-entry
    (munition
        ;; 7.62 mm
        (munition-type  2 8 222 2 2 -1 -1)
        (warhead  -1)
        (guidance-mode  0)
    )
    (power-list
        (kinetic
            (direct 2.24) ;; Kilojoules
        )
```

```
    )
)
```

The **munition** block identifies the munition type using the DIS/RPR FOM object enumeration. (The default configuration does not use the **warhead** or **guidance-mode** parameters.)

The **power-list** block is a list of domains and the configuration for a determinant that produces a power value based on an input range. In this example, the 7.62 mm shell has power in the kinetic domain.

The default configurations support the following domains:

- Explosive. Munitions that affect simulation objects within some range of the detonation. Explosive munitions represent power in kiloPascals (kPa) of incident pressure.
- Kinetic. Munitions that directly strike a simulation object. Kinetic munitions represent power in kilojoules (kJ) of energy.
- Armor-piercing. Munitions that strike an armored object and penetrate it. Armor piercing munitions represent power in millimeters of penetration.
- Fragmentation. Explosives that cause damage by fragmenting, such as grenades.

---

You can add other domains without writing code. For details, please see "D.6.3 Adding a New Power Type" on page 1627.

---

The power values used in the default configuration are based on publicly available information about the power of the various types of munitions and the values used try to be consistent in their relative power.

## D.6.1 Configuring the Power of a Detonation

To determine the power of a detonation at a specific location a power determinant must be defined. The determinant maps a range value to a power value. Range can have different possible meanings, depending on how the **range-from** parameter is defined for the determinant. If **range-from** is undefined, **impact-point** is assumed unless the determinant does not support this setting.

- If **range-from** is **impact-point**, the determinant determines power based on the range from the impact point of the detonation to some other location in the vicinity. This is used for the explosive and fragmentation domains, but could be used for any power that has some area of effect (for example, perhaps shrapnel or incendiary damage). This is equivalent to collateral damage as defined in the damage-by-ammo-type damage system.

  Example (from *detonationParams.mtl*):

```
(detonation-power-entry
    (munition
         ;; 85 mm HEAT
        (munition-type  2 2 222 2 8 1 -1)
```

```
            (warhead  -1)
            (guidance-mode  0)
        )
        (power-list
            (explosive
                (range-from "impact-point")
                (range-list
                    (range 3.5
                        (power 70.0)
                    )
                    (range 4.6
                        (power 40.0)
                    )
                    (range 5.7
                        (power 27.5)
                    )
                    ...
                    (range 35.0
                        (power 2.4)
                    )
                )
            )
            (kinetic
                (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
                (range-coefficients -2.6600E-004   0.0000   5319.0)
            )
            (armor-piercing
                (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
                (range-coefficients -9.0000E-006   0.0000   180.0)
            )
        )
    )
```

- If **range-from** is **shooter-to-impact** (as in the previous example), the determinant determines power based on the range from the entity that fired the round to the point of impact. Any points outside of the point of impact are not affected by the detonation. This is used for the kinetic and armor-piercing domains, but could be used for any power that is directed at a particular target and has no area of effect. This is equivalent to direct damage as defined in the damage-by-ammo-type damage system.
- If **range-from** is **unused**, the determinant determines power without using the input range. This is used by the direct determinant, which ignores the **range-from** setting completely. (For more information, please see"Determinant Types" on page 1473.)
- If **range-from** is **shooter-and-impact-point**, the determinant determines power based on both the range from the shooter and from the impact point. This option is not implemented by VR-Forces.

### Determinant Types

VR-Forces supports the following types of determinant.

- The **range-coefficients** determinant calculates the power based on a series of coefficients. Configuring coefficients works exactly the same way as the hit probability coefficients, except that the output value can be any number 0 or greater, not just a probability for 0.0 to 1.0. (For details about hit probability, please see "D.1.3 Hit Probability Tables" on page 1615.) For example:

```
(kinetic
    (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
    (range-coefficients -1.3000E-003   0.0000   26005.0)
)
```

- The **range-list** determinant determines the power based on a step function. This is configured exactly the same way as the hit probability **range-list**, except that the output value can be any number 0 or greater, not just a probability for 0.0 to 1.0. For example:

```
(explosive
    (range-from "impact-point")
    (range-list
        (range 4.5
            (power 70.0)
        )
        (range 6.0
            (power 40.0)
        )
        ...
        (range 47.0
            (power 2.4)
        )
    )
)
```

- The **direct** determinant always produces the same power at the point of impact, regardless of the range from the shooter. It produces no power at any range from the point of impact. As a result, the **range-from** setting is ignored, because the range input is unused. For example:

```
(kinetic
    (direct 272.873) ;; Kilojoules
)
```

- The **equivalent-tnt-mass** determinant allows you to define an amount of TNT, in kilograms, that produces an equivalent explosion. VR-Forces calculates power at a specified range in kPa. This determinant is used only for the explosive damage category. The following example shows its use for M107 HE munition:

```
(detonation-power-entry
    (munition
        ;; M107 HE (155 mm)
```

```
            (munition-type  2 9 225 2 14 2 -1)
            (warhead  -1)
            (guidance-mode  0)
        )
        (power-list
            (explosive
                (range-from "impact-point")
                (equivalent-tnt-mass 5.74)
            )
        )
    )
```

## D.6.2 The Damage File for Damage-By-Power

Entity damage is configured through the system definition files and the damage files they reference. A system definition file configures power in the **damage-by-munition-power** block.

The system definition files provided with VR-Forces have a **damage-model** block. However none of the files provided use this block. It is available for customers who want to configure munitions using the damage-by-ammo-type method. It also enables backwards compatibility with old SMSs. For information about using the damage-model block, please see "D.7. Configuring Damage-by-Ammo-Type" on page 1629.

### Configuring Damage-by-Power in a System Definition File

A system definition file can define any number of **damage-by-power-entry** items, each for a different power-type. This is the damage domain of the power. To add a new type of power, add new settings in *detonationParams.mtl* and in the system definition files for simulation objects that need to be damaged by this effect.

Each damage-by-power-entry specifies a damage file that defines how a power value maps to a damage probability. (Damage files are in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/damage*.) The comments in the damage file indicate the unit of measurement for power.

The following example is from *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/damage/ground-heavy-armor.sysdef*:

```
(damage-by-munition-power
    (damage-by-power-entry
        (power-type "explosive")
        (damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\heavy-armor-explosive.dmg")
        )
    )
    (damage-by-power-entry
        (power-type "kinetic")
        (damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\heavy-armor-kinetic.dmg")
        )
    )
```

```
    (damage-by-power-entry
        (power-type "armor-piercing")
        (damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\heavy-armor-armor-piercing.dmg")
        )
    )
)
(damage-model )
```

It shows that simulation objects that use the *ground-heavy-armor.sysdef* system definition file can be damaged by explosive, kinetic, and armor piercing power.

### Configuring the Damage File for Damage-By-Power

Damage files configure damage based on the side of the bounding volume being affected. The damage actuator delivered with VR-Forces uses surfaces of front, rear, left-side, right-side, bottom, and top (other components could model the entity's geometry differently, and therefore use different surface strings). A surface entry has a list of angle-of-incidence entries. An **angle-of-incidence** entry has an angle (in radians).

The **determinant** block specifies the damage. The determinant can be a **step-function** or a list of coefficients. Each determinant can specify probabilities for catastrophic-kill, mobility-kill, firepower-kill or some combination of them.

The *ground-heavy-armor.sysdef* file has a parameter called **round-down** that indicates what probabilities should be used when the input power value is between two steps. For power we want to round down to the next lower power (and lesser probability). Therefore **round-down** is set to 1 (true) for all damage files. If this parameter is not specified, the step function rounds up.

The following code, which uses the **step-function** determinant, is from *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/damage/heavy-armor-explosive.dmg*:

```
(damage-table
    (front
        (angle-of-incidence
            (angle  1.570800)
            (determinant
                (step-function (round-down 1)
                    (power 7.5
                        (catastrophic-kill  0.1)
                    )
                    (power 12.5
                        (catastrophic-kill  0.5)
                    )
                    (power 20.0
                        (catastrophic-kill  0.6)
                    )
                    (power 45.0
                        (catastrophic-kill  0.75)
                    )
                    (power 70.0
                        (catastrophic-kill  0.99)
```

```
                    )
                )
            )
        )
    )
    ...
)
```

The following code, which uses the **coefficients** determinant, is from *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/damage/missile-explosive.dmg*:

```
(damage-table
    ...
    (left-side
        (angle-of-incidence
            (angle  1.5708)
            (determinant
                (coefficients
                    (catastrophic-kill 0.02 -0.4)
                    (firepower-kill 0.022 -0.44)
                    (mobility-kill 0.025 -0.5)
                )
            )
        )
    )
    ...
)
```

## D.6.3 Adding a New Power Type

To add a new type of power, you add it to the relevant munitions in *detonationParams.mtl* and then add it to the appropriate damage system. For example, suppose you want to model the effects of the heat generated by a munition. You could add thermal power. For the sake of this example, suppose that an 85mm HEAT round has thermal power. To add thermal power, you would have to do the following:

1. Add the new power to the **detonation-power-entry**, as follows:

```
(detonation-power-entry
    (munition
        ;; 85 mm HEAT
        (munition-type  2 2 222 2 8 1 -1)
        (warhead  -1)
        (guidance-mode  0)
    )
    (power-list
        (explosive
            (range-from "impact-point")
            (range-list
                (range 3.5
                    (power 70.0)
```

```
                )
                ...
            )
        )
        (kinetic
            (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
            (range-coefficients -2.6600E-004   0.0000   5319.0)
        )
        (armor-piercing
            (range-from "shooter-to-impact")
            (range-coefficients -9.0000E-006   0.0000   180.0)
        )
        (thermal
            (range-from "impact-point")
            (range-list
                (range 3.5
                    (power 70.0)
                )
                ...
            )
        )
    )
)
```

You would have to determine the unit of heat that you wanted to use to measure its effect and come up with realistic power levels at different distances.

2. In the damage systems for the simulation objects that can be affected by thermal power, add a **damage-by-power** entry. Suppose that you want lifeforms to be damaged by thermal power. You would update the *lifeform-default.sysdef* file as follows:

```
(damage-by-munition-power
    (damage-by-power-entry
        (power-type "explosive")
        (damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\lifeform-explosive.dmg")
        )
    )
    (damage-by-power-entry
        (power-type "kinetic")
        (damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\lifeform-kinetic.dmg")
        )
    )
    (damage-by-power-entry
        (power-type "thermal")
        (damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\lifeform-thermal.dmg")
```

```
            )
        )
    )
```

3. Create a damage file called *lifeform-thermal.dmg*. Configure it similarly to other damage files.

## D.7. Configuring Damage-by-Ammo-Type

Damage-by-ammo-type is the damage configuration approach used by VR-Forces in release 4.4.2 and earlier. It is no longer the default approach. However, it is still supported both for backwards compatibility and for those cases where you want to configure a specific munition to affect a specific entity type.

To configure damage-by-ammo-type, you add an **ammo-entry** to the **damage-model** block of the damage system's system definition file (*.sysdef*) for each type of ammunition that you want a simulation object using that system definition to be vulnerable to. Then, you create a damage table (*.dmg*) for the type of damage that you can take.

The following code is from *vrforces4.4.2/data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/damage/lifeform-default.sysdef*.

```
(damage-model
    (ammo-entry
        (ammo
            ;;Ballistic anti-air munitions-- 20-30mm HE cannon
            (munition-type  2 1 -1 2 -1 -1 -1)
            (warhead  -1)
            (guidance-mode  0)
        )
        (direct-damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\light-armor-vs-explosive-round.dmg
        )
        (collateral-damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\collateral-gnd-PG7.dmg")
        )
    )
    (ammo-entry
        (ammo
            (munition-type  2 2 222 1 8 -1 -1)
            (warhead  -1)
            (guidance-mode  0)
        )
        (direct-damage-file
            (filename  "")
        )
        (collateral-damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\gnd-TOW.dmg")
        )
    )
    ...
```

```
)
```

These entries specify two munition types that lifeforms are vulnerable to (anti-air munitions and TOW missiles). In the case of ballistic anti-air munitions, they can take collateral damage and direct damage. In the case of TOW missiles they can take collateral damage.

## D.7.1 Configuring Damage for Damage-by-Ammo-Type

As in damage-by-power, damage files for damage-by-ammo-type configure damage based on the side of the bounding volume being affected. The damage actuator delivered with VR-Forces uses surfaces of front, rear, left-side, right-side, bottom, and top (other components could model the entity's geometry differently, and therefore use different surface strings). A surface entry has a list of angle-of-incidence entries.

An **angle-of-incidence** entry has an angle (in radians).

A surface entry has a **range-determinant**. The entry is intended for use with angles of incidence that go from the previous entry's specified angle to the current one (or in the case of the first entry, from 0.) The range determinant is exactly the same as the range determinant described in "D.1.3 Hit Probability Tables" on page 1615.

The damage actuator provided by MAK looks for a probability entry with the name **catastrophic-kill**, **mobility-kill**, or **firepower-kill**.

The following code is a portion of the damage table from *vrforces4.4.2/data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/damage/light-armor-vs-explosive-round.dmg*.

```
(damage-table
    (front
        (angle-of-incidence
            (angle  0.5236) ;; 30 degrees
            (range-determinant
                (coefficients
                    (catastrophic-kill -5.0000E-008   0.0000   1.0000)
                )
            )
        )
        (angle-of-incidence
            (angle  1.0472) ;; 60 degrees
            (range-determinant
                (coefficients
                    (catastrophic-kill -5.0000E-008   0.0000   1.0000)
                )
            )

    ...
    )
    ...
)
```

The following code is a portion of the damage table from *vrforces4.4.2/data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/damage/collateral-gnd-PG7.dmg*.

```
(damage-table
    (front
        (angle-of-incidence
            (angle  0.5236) ;; 30 degrees
            (range-determinant
                (range-list
                    (range 1.000000
                        (catastrophic-kill  0.900000)
                    )
                    (range 2.000000
                        (catastrophic-kill  0.750000)
                    )
                (range 5.000000
                    (catastrophic-kill  0.600000)
                )
                (range 10.000000
                    (catastrophic-kill  0.450000)
                )
                (range 15.000000
                    (catastrophic-kill  0.050000)
                )
            )
        )
        ...
    )
    ...
)
```

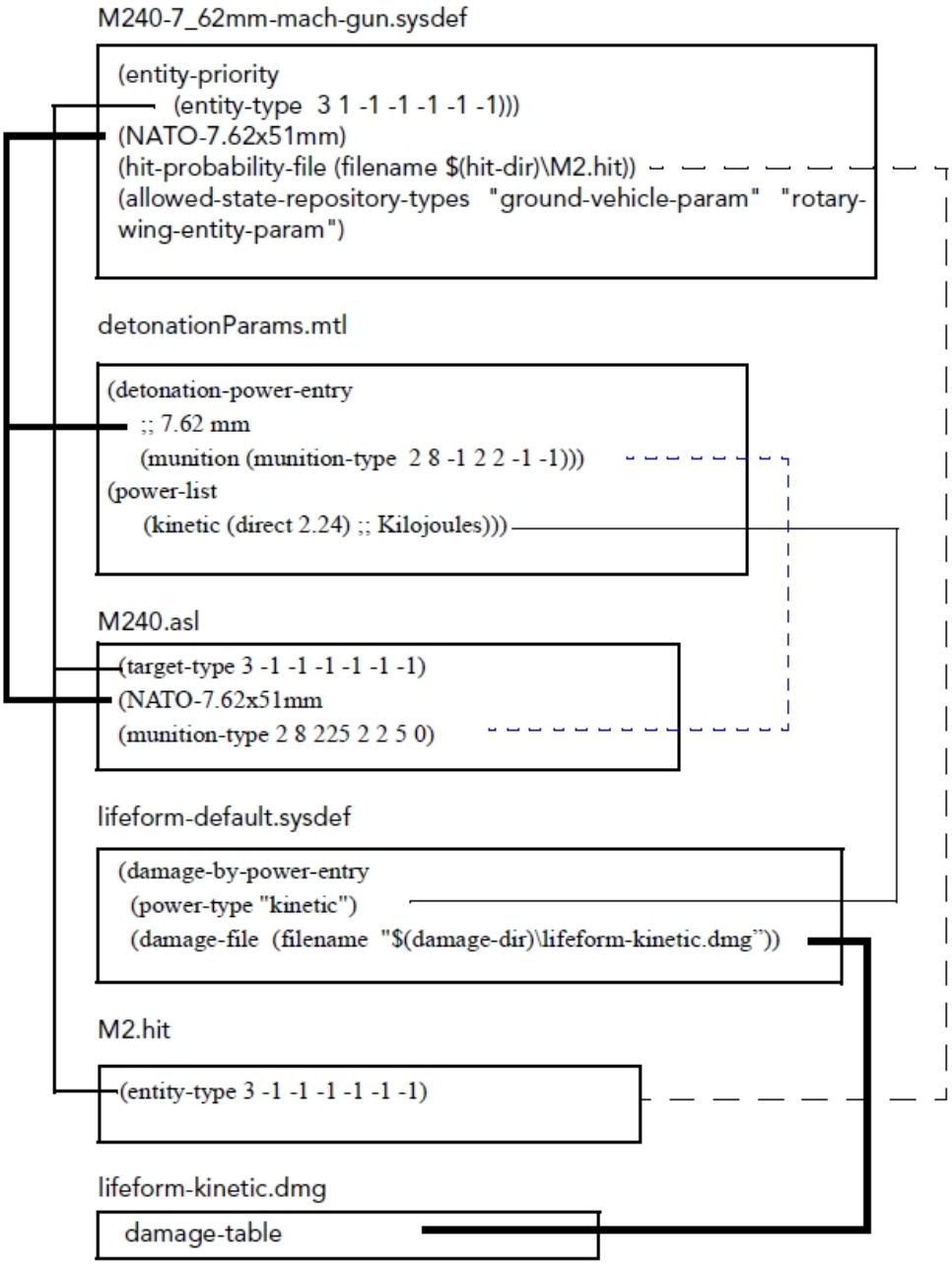
## D.8. Direct Fire Configuration Examples

This section has two examples of how to configure a direct fire weapon using the VR-Forces 4.6 and earlier approaches. The first uses the damage-by-power method. The second uses the damage-by-ammo-type method.

### D.8.1 Direct Fire Weapon Damage-By-Power Example

This section describes the files that work together to define an M240 machine gun and allow it to fire on and damage entities using VR-Forces 4.6 and earlier configuration files. Figure 658 illustrates the relationships between the files. (The lines of code are not in context. They are the minimum needed to show the connections between the files.)

**Figure 658. Anatomy of a weapon system using damage-by-power**




Lines indicate relationships between configuration file parameters and files.

## The Weapon System System Definition File

The M240 machine gun is configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/weapons/M240-7_62mm-mach-gun.sysdef*. Most of the file specifies the various components of the system that make it work. We are interested in the lines that help it connect to other files.

The meta-data section of a system definition file provides information the Simulation Object Editor needs to make the system available in the systems section.

In the following code snippet, the **allowed-state-repositories-types** parameter specifies that ground vehicles and rotary-wing entities can use this system.

```
(meta-data
    (system-name  "M240 Machine Gun")
    (system-description "Vehicle mounted M240 7.62mm Machine Gun. Typical
      secondary gun on tanks such as the M1A2. Targets lifeforms
      and unarmored vehicles.")
    (allowed-state-repository-types "ground-vehicle-param"
      "rotary-wing-entity-param")
    (system-categories "weapon")
```

The resources section specifies the type of ammunition this weapon uses.

```
(resources
    (NATO-7.62x51mm
    ...
)
```

The targeting control section specifies the entity types that this system can fire at — humans and several types of ground vehicles. Note that wildcards are used for entity types.

```
(targeting-control
    (target-priorities
        (entity-priority
            (entity-type  3 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1)
            (priority  2)
        )
        (entity-priority
            (entity-type  3 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
            (priority  2)
        )
        (entity-priority
            (entity-type  1 1 -1 7 -1 -1 -1); large trucks
            (priority  3)
        )
        ...
    )
)
```

Finally, a ballistic direct fire weapon system system definition file specifies a hit file for the munition it uses. The hit file specifies the probability that targets will get hit by the munition.

```
(main-gun-joy
    (component-descriptor-type "ballistic-gun-descriptor")
    ...
    (velocity-affects-hit-chance False)
    (hit-probability-file
        (filename  "$(hit-dir)\M2.hit")
    )
    (range-name  $display-name (default "M240 MG"))
    (start-with-tracers true)
```

```
)
```

### The Ammo Select File

When an entity with an M240 machine gun detects a target, it must choose the correct ammunition for that target. This is specified in the ammo select file. The ammo select file for the M240 is *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/ammoselect\M240.asl*.

The file has entries like the following:

```
(lifeform ;; matches any lifeform
    (target-type  3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
    (ammo
        (NATO-7.62x51mm ;; these names need to match resource names
            (munition-type  2 8 225 2 2 5 0)
            (tracer-type    2 8 225 2 2 4 0) ; Ball/tracer mix, 4:1
            (warhead  0)
        )
    )
)
```

There is an entry for each of the target types in *M240-7_62mm-mach-gun.sysdef*. If you specify a target type in a weapon system definition file and do not have a corresponding entry in an ammo select file, the weapon will not know what kind of ammunition to use for that target type and will not fire on it.

For each target, it specifies the entity type for the munition and tracer bullet.

---

Weapon systems that fire autonomously, such as the main guns on tanks, machine guns, and missiles, need an ammo select file. Some weapons, such as artillery and naval guns, do not need an ammo select file because they only fire when tasked by users or in a plan, and the choice of munition is one of the task parameters.

---

### The *detonationParams.mtl* File

As noted in previous sections, the M240 gun uses a 7.62 mm munition. The *detonationParams.mtl* file specifies that a 7.62 mm munition has kinetic power.

### The Damage System System Definition File

Each simulation object has a damage system. The M240 can target lifeforms. Most lifeforms use the Default Armor damage system. It is configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/damage/lifeform-default.sysdef*. This file uses the damage-by-power configuration. It specifies that a lifeform can be damaged by explosive power and kinetic power.

```
(damage-by-munition-power
    (damage-by-power-entry
        (power-type "explosive")
        (damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\lifeform-explosive.dmg")
```

```
        )
    )
    (damage-by-power-entry
        (power-type "kinetic")
        (damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\lifeform-kinetic.dmg")
        )
    )
)
```

Since the M240 machine gun fires a munition that has kinetic power, if a lifeform is attacked by this munition, VR-Forces looks at the *lifeform-kinetic.dmg* damage file to calculate damage.

### The Hit File

A hit file specifies the probability that a simulation object will be hit by a type of munition at various distances. The hit file specified by the M240 system definition is *M2.hit*. It has an entry for each simulation object type that can be struck by this munition type. The following code snippet is the entry for human entities.

```
(entity-range
    (entity-type  3 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1)
    (range-determinant
        (range-list
            (range 10.000000
                (probability 1.00000)
            )
            (range 200.000000
                (probability 0.80000)
            )
            (range 500.000000
                (probability 0.4000)
            )
            (range 1000.0
                (probability 0.2)
            )
            (range 3600.000000
                (probability 0.100)
            )
        )
    )
)
```

For more information about hit files, please see "D.1.3 Hit Probability Tables" on page 1615.

### The Damage File

Once a simulation object has been fired on, with an appropriate munition, for which it can take damage, and by which it can be hit, VR-Forces calculates the damage using the damage file specified in the damage system definition file. For the M240 machine gun, targeting a human entity, the damage file is *lifeform-kinetic.dmg*.

Based on the side of the entity that is hit, the angle it is hit at, and the range of the munition, the damage file specifies the type of damage caused.

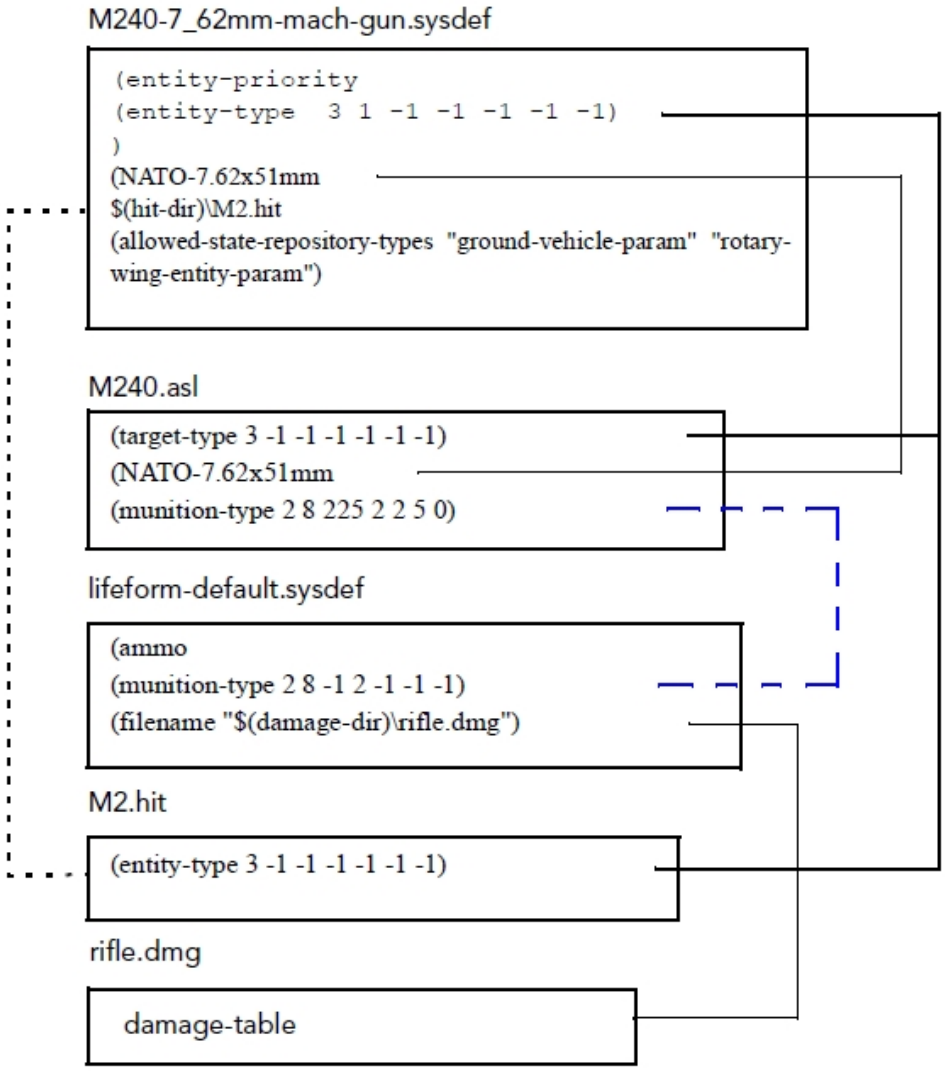
For more information about damage files, please see "D.1.4 Damage Probability Tables" on page 1617.

## D.8.2 Direct Fire Weapon Damage-by-Ammo-Type Example

This section describes the files that work together to define an M240 machine gun and allow it to fire on and damage entities using the damage-by-ammo-type method and VR-Forces 4.6 and earlier configuration files. Figure 659 illustrates the relationships between the files. (The lines of code are not in context. They are the minimum needed to show the connections between the files.)

In the damage-by-ammo-type approach, the hit file, ammo select file, and weapon system file are the same as in the damage-by-power approach and will not be discussed in this section. The damage system system definition file is different, as is the damage file. The *detonationParams.mtl* file is not used.

**Figure 659. Anatomy of a weapon system using damage-by-ammo-type**




Lines indicate relationships between configuration file parameters.

## The Damage System System Definition File

Each simulation object has a damage system. The M240 can target lifeforms. Most lifeforms use the Default Armor damage system. For the damage-by-ammo-type approach, in VR-Forces 4.4.2 or earlier, it is configured in *./data/simulationModelSets/EntityLevel/vrfSim/systems/damage/lifeform-default.sysdef*. The damage system has a a **damage-model** block with an **ammo-entry** block for each type of ammunition that simulation objects that use the damage system are vulnerable to. The ammo entry can specify a damage file (*.dmg*) for direct hits and for collateral damage. The *lifeform-default.sysdef* includes the following ammo entry:

```
(damage-model
    ...
    (ammo-entry
        (ammo
```

```
            munition-type  2 8 -1 2 -1 -1 -1)
            (warhead  -1)
            (guidance-mode  0)
        )
        (direct-damage-file
            (filename  "$(damage-dir)\rifle.dmg")
        )
        (collateral-damage-file
            (filename  "")
        )
    )
)
```

The **munition-type** parameter uses wildcard values that match the munition type sent by the M240 machine gun (2 8 225 2 2 5 0). This means that a human entity that uses the Default Armor damage file can be damaged by a bullet fired by an M240 machine gun.

### The Damage File

Once a simulation object has been fired on, with an appropriate munition, for which it can take damage, and by which it can be hit, VR-Forces calculates the damage using the damage file specified in the damage system definition file. For the M240 machine gun, targeting a human entity, the damage file is *rifle.dmg*.

Based on the side of the entity that is hit, the angle it is hit at, and the range of the munition, the damage file specifies the type of damage caused.

For more information about damage files, please see "D.1.4 Damage Probability Tables" on page 1617.

# E. Systems and System Usage

The tables in this appendix provide information about the systems provided with VR-Forces and list the simulation objects that use them.

E.1. VR-Forces Systems ..... 1640

# E.1. VR-Forces Systems

To see a list of systems for each SMS with a description, a list of simulation objects that use it, and the types of ammunition used (if applicable), load the SMS in the Simulation Object Editor and view the General tab for each system.

Some scripted tasks are only available to simulation objects that have a particular system. Table 74 lists systems and the scripted tasks configured in them for *EntityLevel.sms*. Table 75 lists systems and the scripted tasks configured in them for *AggregateLevel.sms*.

**Table 74. EntityLevel.sms**

| System | Scripted Tasks |
|---|---|
| Cargo Door | Open_Cargo_Door, Close_Cargo_Door |
| Sliding Door | Open_Sliding_Door, Close_Sliding_Door |
| Air Drop | Air_Drop |
| Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertically Launched) | Launch_ASW_Missile |
| Car Door | open_car_door, close_car_door |
| DDG Embedded Support Craft (LAMPS/RHIB) | Embedded_Sector_SAR |
| Fast Roping | Deploy_Ropes, FastRopeInsertion |
| Fighter Jet | Fixed_Wing_Takeoff, Fixed_Wing_Land, orbit_object |
| Heavy Plane | Fixed_Wing_Takeoff, Fixed_Wing_Land, orbit_object |
| High Maneuverability Fighter | Fixed_Wing_Takeoff, Fixed_Wing_Land, orbit_object |
| Folding Wing | Fold_Wings, Unfold_Wings |
| Tracks | move-to-location-path-plan, move-to-waypoint-path-plan |
| Tracks/Amphibious | move-to-location-path-plan, move-to-waypoint-path-plan |
| Wheels (off road) | move-to-location-path-plan, move-to-waypoint-path-plan |
| Wheels (road) | move-to-location-path-plan, move-to-waypoint-path-plan |
| Throw Grenades | ThrowGrenade, ThrowGrenadeTarget |
| Handheld UAV | orbit_object |
| Homing Torpedo Capability (Forward Launched) | Delayed_homing, Delayed_homing_ASW, Launch_Torpedo_Salvo |

**Table 74. EntityLevel.sms (continued)**

| System | Scripted Tasks |
|---|---|
| Human Disaggregated Movement | circle_around_location, find_cover_unit, find_firing_positions, move_between_cover_to_location_unit |
| Flee From Explosions | bhave-Flee_From_Explosion |
| IFF Code Changer | iff-code-changer |
| KN-02 Strategic Missile Launcher | launch-ballistic-missile-at-location, launch-ballistic-missile-at-target-object |
| KN-08 Strategic Missile Launcher | launch-ballistic-missile-at-location, launch-ballistic-missile-at-target-object |
| Lifeform Suppression | Suppressed_Crouch, Suppressed_Prone |
| M203 Grenade Launcher | Fire_M203_at_Location, Fire_M203_at_Target |
| Naval Depth Charge Deployment | Drop_Naval_Depth_Charge, Drop_Naval_Depth_Charge_At_Location |
| Naval Mine Deployment | Drop_Naval_Mine, Drop_Naval_Mines_Along_Route |
| Naval Mine Sweep | Naval_Mine_Sweep |
| No Dong Strategic Missile Launcher | launch-ballistic-missile-at-location, launch-ballistic-missile-at-target-object |
| Nodong Strategic Missile Launcher | launch-ballistic-missile-at-location, launch-ballistic-missile-at-target-object |
| Pedestrian Crowd Movement | Crowd_Around, Crowd_Around_Location, Crowd_In_Front_Of, Crowd_Along_Line, Disperse_Crowd, Wander_In_Area, Protest, Protest_Along_Line |
| Pedestrian Traffic Generator | Create_Initial_Pedestrians, Create_Pedestrians, Delete_Created_Pedestrians |
| Periscope | Raise_Periscope, Lower_Periscope |
| Dipping SONAR Sensor | Sonar_Dip |
| Scud C Strategic Missile Launcher | launch-ballistic-missile-at-location, launch-ballistic-missile-at-target-object |
| Scud-ER Strategic Missile Launcher | launch-ballistic-missile-at-location, launch-ballistic-missile-at-target-object |
| Scud B Strategic Missile Launcher | launch-ballistic-missile-at-location, launch-ballistic-missile-at-target-object |
| Sonobuoy Deployer | Deploy_Sonobuoy, Deploy_Sonobuoys_Along_Route |

**Table 74. EntityLevel.sms (continued)**

| System | Scripted Tasks |
|---|---|
| SS-25 Sickle Strategic Missile Launcher | launch-ballistic-missile-at-location, launch-ballistic-missile-at-target-object |
| Tactical Radar Jammer | automatic_jamming |
| Tanker Refueling Boom | Deploy_Refueling_Boom, Stow_Refueling_Boom |
| Tactical Data Link Air Message Generator | Set_TDL_Messaging |
| Tactical Data Link Ground Message Generator | Set_TDL_Messaging |
| Tactical Data Link Subsurface Message Generator | Set_TDL_Messaging |
| Tactical Data Link Surface Message Generator | Set_TDL_Messaging |
| UGM-133 Strategic Missile Launcher | launch-ballistic-missile-at-location, launch-ballistic-missile-at-target-object |

**Table 75. AggregateLevel.sms**

| System | Scripted Tasks |
|---|---|
| Mortar, 120mm | Indirect_Fire, Limited_Munition_Attack |
| Aerial Refueling Boom | refueling_mission |
| Aerial Refueling Drogue | refueling_mission |
| 122mm Howitzer | Indirect_Fire, Limited_Munition_Attack |
| 152mm Howitzer Auto | Indirect_Fire, Limited_Munition_Attack |
| 155mm Howitzer | Indirect_Fire, Limited_Munition_Attack |
| Bomb, 2000lb JDAM | Bomb_Location, Limited_Munition_Attack, Ground_Attack, attack_air_base |
| Mk 45 5-inch Gun | Indirect_Fire, Limited_Munition_Attack |
| 9K330 Surface-to-Air Missile Launcher | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_AntiAir_Missile, Automatic_Air_Defense, React_To_Air_Threats |
| 9P140 MRL | Indirect_Fire, Limited_Munition_Attack |

**Table 75. AggregateLevel.sms (continued)**

| System | Scripted Tasks |
|---|---|
| AIM-120 AMRAAM Missile | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_AntiAir_Missile, Automatic_Air_Defense, react_to_air_threats_air |
| Communications Jammer | EW_Attack, Activate_Jammer, Deactivate_Jammer |
| Bomb, GBU-24 | Bomb_Location, Limited_Munition_Attack, Ground_Attack, attack_air_base |
| Harpoon Antiship Missile | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_Antiship_Missile, React_To_Naval_Threats_Missile |
| M993 MLRS | Indirect_Fire, Limited_Munition_Attack |
| Torpedo, Mark 54 | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_Torpedo, React_To_Naval_Threats_Torpedo |
| Maverick Missile | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_Antiship_Missile, Attack_with_Land-Attack_Missile |
| Patriot Anti-Air Missile | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_AntiAir_Missile, Automatic_Air_Defense, React_To_Air_Threats |
| Radar Jammer | EW_Attack, Activate_Jammer, Deactivate_Jammer |
| Guided Bomb | Bomb_Location, Limited_Munition_Attack, Ground_Attack, attack_air_base |
| RIM-66 SAM | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_AntiAir_Missile, Automatic_Air_Defense, React_To_Air_Threats |
| Sidewinder Anti-Air Missile | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_AntiAir_Missile, react_to_air_threats_air |
| Stinger Anti-Air Missile | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_AntiAir_Missile, Automatic_Air_Defense, React_To_Air_Threats |
| Tomahawk Cruise Missile | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_Land-Attack_Missile |
| Unguided Bomb | Bomb_Location, Limited_Munition_Attack, Ground_Attack, attack_air_base |
| Torpedo, Type 40 (RPK-6 Vodopad SUBROC) | Limited_Munition_Attack, Attack_with_Torpedo, React_To_Naval_Threats_Torpedo |
| Air-Drop Supply | Provide_Supplies, Change_Supplying_Command |
| Aircraft Aggregated Movement | Maximum_Speed_Modifier, wait_for_escort, escort_air_unit, land_at_air_base |
| Biological Weapon | Biological_Attack, NBC_Attack |
| Booby Trap Setter | Create_Booby_Trap, Improve_Booby_Trap |
| Boom Aerial Refueling Receiver | refuel_from_tanker |
| Bridge Builder | Construct_Bridge, Improve_Bridge |

**Table 75. AggregateLevel.sms (continued)**

| System | Scripted Tasks |
|---|---|
| Chemical Weapon | Chemical_Attack, NBC_Attack |
| Ditch Digger | Create_Anti-Tank_Ditch, Improve_Ditch, Create_Dry_Gap |
| Drogue Aerial Refueling Receiver | refuel_from_tanker |
| Engineering Obstacle Destroyer | Destroy_Obstacle, Destroy_Fortification, Destroy_Ditch, Destroy_Bridge, Destroy_Explosive, Breach_Obstacles, Improve_Breach |
| Explosive Hazard and Simple Obstacle Destroyer | Destroy_Explosive_Hazard, Destroy_Obstacle, Breach_ Obstacles, Improve_Breach |
| FASCAM | FASCAM |
| Fortification Builder | Construct_Barricade, Improve_Fortification, Construct_ Fortified_Line, Construct_Fortified_Area, Construct_Strong_ Point |
| Fuel Tank | drop_fuel_tanks |
| Ground Aggregated Movement | Maximum_Speed_Modifier, Halt_Movement, Move_To_ Location_Plan_Path, Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path |
| Ground Combat Behaviors | Attack_Target |
| Infantry Aggregated Movement | Maximum_Speed_Modifier, Halt_Movement, Move_To_ Location_Plan_Path, Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path |
| Mechanized Aggregated Movement | Maximum_Speed_Modifier, Halt_Movement, Move_To_ Location_Plan_Path, Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path |
| Mine Dispenser | Create_Minefield |
| MOPP Gear | Change_MOPP_Level |
| Motorized Aggregated Movement | Maximum_Speed_Modifier, Halt_Movement, Move_To_ Location_Plan_Path, Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path |
| Nuclear Weapon | Nuclear_Attack, NBC_Attack |
| Obstacle Builder | Construct_Abatis, Improve_Obstacle, Construct_Barbed_ Wire, Construct_Berm |
| Ground Resupply | Provide_Supplies, Change_Supplying_Command |
| Riverine Aggregated Movement | Maximum_Speed_Modifier, Halt_Movement, Move_To_ Location_Plan_Path, Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path |
| Ship Aggregated Movement | Maximum_Speed_Modifier, Halt_Movement, Move_To_ Location_Plan_Path, Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path |
| Simple Obstacle Destroyer | Destroy_Obstacle, Breach_Obstacles, Improve_Breach |
| Subsurface Aggregated Movement | Maximum_Speed_Modifier, Halt_Movement, Move_To_ Location_Plan_Path, Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path |

**Table 75. AggregateLevel.sms (continued)**

| System | Scripted Tasks |
|---|---|
| Tank Aggregated Movement | Maximum_Speed_Modifier, Halt_Movement, Move_To_Location_Plan_Path, Move_To_Waypoint_Plan_Path |
| Tactical Data Link Air Message Generator | Set_TDL_Messaging |
| Tactical Data Link Ground Message Generator | Set_TDL_Messaging |
| Tactical Data Link Subsurface Message Generator | Set_TDL_Messaging |
| Tactical Data Link Surface Message Generator | Set_TDL_Messaging |

# MAK Products Glossary

This glossary defines terms used in MAK product documentation.

# A

## absolute dead reckoning

A method of dead-reckoning in which an application uses the time stamps contained within state updates if the sender is using absolute time stamping. Contrast with relative dead reckoning.

## aggregate

The combination of individual entities, aggregates, or both into a single object — for example, an organizational group such as a platoon.

## API

Application Programming Interface.

## articulated part

A part of an entity that is capable of movement relative to the entity, such as a wheel, turret, or gun.

## attached part

An object that is attached to another object, such as a rocket attached to a jet.

# B

## body coordinate frame

A coordinate framework centered on an entity. To represent the orientation of an entity, an application uses Euler angles or a rotation matrix that rotates from a reference frame to the body coordinate frame.

# C

## channel

A channel renders the view of an observer in a 3D visualization application.

## clipping

A feature that prevents the display of terrain and objects or parts of objects, that are closer than or farther than specific distances from the observer.

## clipping planes

The range of distances from the observer (near clipping and far clipping) in which an application clips (does not display) objects.

## culling

The process of discarding database objects which are not within view, and therefore need not be rendered and displayed.

## Cartesian coordinates

A system for indicating location by means of three planes intersecting at right angles to one another at the origin.

# D

## Data Distribution Management

The set of High-Level Architecture services used to specify the routing of data between publishers and subscribers. DDM adds greater control over the Declaration Management (DM) services that only specify filtering based on the class of the data (e.g., ground vehicle versus aircraft). DDM uses the data content to express regions of interest and regions of affect whose overlap establish a communication channel. An example is geographic filtering where a publisher indicates a region around the entity or effect and a subscriber indicates a region expressing its sensor range.

## dead-reckoning

A process by which an application calculates the expected location of an entity during periods between state updates, based on velocity, acceleration, and rotational velocity. See also absolute dead reckoning and relative dead reckoning.

## DDM

Data Distribution Management.

## Defense Modeling and Simulation Office

The former name of the executive secretariat for the Executive Council on Modeling and Simulation (EXCIMS), which provided a full-time focal point for information concerning Department of Defense modeling and simulation (M&S) activities. Renamed Modeling and Simulation Coordination Office. Currently the MSCO promulgates M&S policy, initiatives, and guidance to promote cooperation among DoD components to maximize efficiency and effectiveness.

## DIS

Distributed Interactive Simulation.

## DIS data packets

See Protocol Data Unit.

## display engine

An object in an application that can render 3D data.

## Distributed Interactive Simulation

The DIS protocol is a set of standards that govern how participating applications share information about the virtual world. The protocol specifies a set of packets, called protocol data units (PDUs), that communicate this information. Each PDU identifies the sender and contains other information depending on the PDU type. The DIS protocol also specifies when and how frequently PDUs are sent.

The DIS protocol has been superseded by the High-Level Architecture for use by the Department of Defense.

## DMSO

See Defense Modeling and Simulation Office.

# E

## element definition

In VR-Forces and VR-Vantage, an element definition specifies all of the visualizers that control the various aspects of visualizing a scene element. For example, an element definition includes the main model or military symbology, trailing effects, cockpit displays, and so on.

## emitter

A simulated device on an entity that emits electromagnetic radiation, for example, radar.

## entity

An element in a simulation, such as a vehicle or a person, that is represented in the simulation through the issuance of state messages.

## entity maintenance

A process by which the MAK Data Logger compensates for discontinuities following a time jump. The Logger sends out interim state messages for entities that were present before the time jump so that they do not time out before the next update message arrives.

## entity-type

A list of seven components as specified by the DIS protocol and the HLA RPR FOM. If none of the seven components contains a wildcard (-1) value, then the entity type refers to a specific, narrowly-defined entity. If some components contain a wildcard, then the entity type refers to a class of entities. A larger number of wildcards indicates a broader, more general class.

The components of an entity-type are:

- Entity kind
- Domain
- Country
- Category
- Subcategory
- Specific
- Extra.

## environmental process

According to the IEEE 1278.1a specification (DIS), environmental process PDUs communicate simple environment variables, small scale environmental updates, and embedded processes.

### Euler angles

A set of three angles used to describe the orientation of an entity as a set of three successive rotations about three different orthogonal axes (x, y, and z). These angles specify successive rotations needed to transform from a reference coordinate system to the entity's body coordinate system.

### event

An interaction between objects or between an object and the terrain, such as firing of a munition, or a collision of entities.

### exercise

The DIS term for a one or more interacting simulation applications. Compare to federation execution in HLA.

### exercise connection

The object (DtExerciseConn) through which a VR-Link application connects to the network. State messages are sent through the exercise connection and information about remote entities is received through the exercise connection. (All MAK products are VR-Link applications.)

### exercise ID

A numeric identification for a DIS simulation exercise.

## F

### FED file

Federation Execution Data file. The Federation Execution Data is the subset of FOM data needed and read by the RTI. VR-Link applications also read the FED file.

### federate

A connection to the RTI. Typically a single simulation application can be thought of as a federate.

### federation

A group of HLA federates capable of playing in the same federation execution.

### Federation Object Model

Defines the data content of a federation execution.

### federation execution

The federation execution represents the actual operation, over time, of a subset of the federates and the RTI initialization data taken from a particular federation. A federation execution is the logical equivalent of a DIS simulation exercise.

### field of view

Controls the perspective of the observer.

A wide field of view creates an effect like that of a wide-angle camera lens. Objects appear smaller and farther away from the observer, since the observer coverage spans a wider area. Depth become exaggerated.

A narrow field of view creates an effect like that of a telephoto lens. Objects appear larger and closer to the observer, and the overall scene depth appears flattened. The distances between objects appears compressed.

### filter range

A setting that prevents distant entities from being processed while allowing distant terrain to appear normally.

### FOM

See Federation Object Model.

### FOM Module

In HLA Evolved, defines additional modular data content for a federation execution, usually extensions to an existing Federation Object Model. (Also supported by the HLA 1.3 and HLA 1516 versions of the MAK RTI. Per the HLA Evolved interface specification:

"A partial FOM (containing some or all OMT tables) that specifies a modular component of a FOM. A FOM module may contain classes not inherent to it but upon which the FOM module depends, i.e., superclasses to the modular components. These superclasses will be included in the FOM module either as complete or scaffolding definitions."

### frame rate

The rate at which the application displays updated images.

## G

### ground clamping

A process by which the a 3D visualization application keeps an entity anchored to the surface of its terrain database, regardless of the altitude data contained in its entity state message.

### geocentric coordinates

A coordinate system calculated with respect to the earth's center. The origin of the geocentric coordinate system is the center of the earth. The positive X-axis passes through the prime meridian at the equator; the positive Y-axis passes through 90 degrees east longitude at the equator; and the positive Z-axis passes though the north pole.

### geodetic coordinates

A coordinate system in which position is determined relative to a reference ellipsoid, such as the surface of the earth at sea level. In MAK applications, geodetic coordinates consist of latitude and longitude in radians, and altitude in meters above the reference ellipsoid.

### gridded data

Data that has been processed in a rectangular array of points, in X, Y or latitude/longitude, at which single data values define a two dimensional function. According to the IEEE 1278.1a specification, gridded data transmits information about

large-scale or high-fidelity spatially and temporally varying ambient fields and about environmental processes and features.

### guise

An alternative entity type used to display an object depending on the force ID. For example, a tank could look like an M1A1 to friendly forces and a T72 to hostile forces.

## H

### head-up display

A set of indicators and readouts superimposed onto a graphics display. Also called an overlay.

### heartbeat

In DIS, the frequency with which current Protocol Data Units are sent to the network regardless of whether the entity's state has changed.

### High-Level Architecture

The High Level Architecture (HLA) for simulations is a U.S. Department of Defense (DOD)-wide initiative to provide an architecture to support interoperability and reuse of simulations. The HLA supersedes DIS for the DOD.

### HLA

See High-Level Architecture.

## I

### interaction

A describing a simulation event. An interaction describes an event, it does not update an object's state.

## L

### Logger control PDUs

A set of DIS PDUs or HLA interactions that let you control the MAK Logger remotely.

### logical range

A suite of TENA Resources, sharing a common object model, that work together for a given range event. Similar in concept to the HLA Federation.

### Local RTI Component

The libraries on a computer that implement a Run-Time Infrastructure. A federate communicates with the HLA network through the LRC.

### LRC

See Local RTI Component.

# M

## MAK Technologies Lisp

An adaptation of the Lisp language used in configuration files for MAK products.

## message

A general term used to refer to DIS PDUs and HLA interactions and state updates. In TENA, a message is similar to an HLA interaction.

## MIM

The MOM & Initialization Module (MIM) allows for extensions to be made to the High-Level Architecture standard MOM. It is a subset of the Federation Object Model that contains OMT tables that describe the HLA MOM. The MIM also contains additional predefined HLA constructs such as object and interaction roots, data types, transportation types and dimensions. HLA specifies a standard MIM that is incorporated into all FDDs automatically by the Run-Time Infrastructure. The standard MIM can be replaced with a user-supplied MIM containing the standard MIM plus extensions.

## model definition

In VR-Forces and VR-Vantage, a model definition specifies the 3D model and other basic attributes of a model. It is referenced by an element definition.

## Modeling and Simulation Coordination Office

The executive secretariat for the Executive Council on Modeling and Simulation (EXCIMS), which provided a full-time focal point for information concerning Department of Defense modeling and simulation (M&S) activities. The MSCO promulgates M&S policy, initiatives, and guidance to promote cooperation among DoD components to maximize efficiency and effectiveness. (Formerly DMSO)

## MSCO

Modeling and Simulation Coordination Office. (Formerly DMSO.)

## MTL

See MAK Technologies Lisp.

# O

## orientation clamping

Adjusts the pitch and roll of an entity so that it appears properly seated when the terrain is inclined. For example, if a tank is moving horizontally across the face of a hill, orientation clamping prevents the tank from appearing level, and therefore, partially embedded into the hillside. Used with ground clamping.

## object

An element in a simulation that has persistence, as opposed to an interaction, which is a transient element.

### object handle

An integer that an application uses to identify a particular object in Run-Time Infrastructure service calls. An object handle is meaningful only to a particular federate. The same object can be known to different federates by different object handles.

### object name

A character string that can be used to identify an object. In HLA, the object name is known to the Run-Time Infrastructure, and the RTI provides functions to find out an object's name, given its handle, and vice versa. Object names can be chosen by applications that register the objects with the RTI, however if you do not want to choose names for objects, the RTI will assign names for you.

### observer

In MAK 3D applications, the point of view into the scene. (Called the eyepoint in MAK Stealth 6.x and earlier.)

## P

### PDU

See Protocol Data Unit.

### Protocol Data Unit

A unit of data message (packet) that is passed on a network between DIS simulation applications.

## R

### radio transmitter

A simulated device on an entity, capable of transmitting radio communications.

### radio receiver

A simulated device on an entity, capable of receiving radio communications.

### Realtime Platform Reference FOM

An HLA reference Federation Object Model based on the DIS protocol.

### recording

A MAK Data Logger file that stores a history of the interactions in a simulation for playback.

### reflected entity list

A list of entities simulated by remote applications (federates in HLA) and about which the local simulation has received information over the network.

### reference FOM

A designed to be used as a whole, or with modification, by a wide variety of similar federation executions.

### relative dead reckoning

A method of dead reckoning in which an application approximates the location of an object based on the local time of receipt of the last state update message. Contrast with absolute dead reckoning.

### remote display engine

A display engine running in an application that is separate from the master application, and which is controlled by the master application.

### RID file

See RTI Initialization Data.

### RTI Initialization Data

Data required by a Run-Time Infrastructure during initialization, independent of the FOM being used. RID data is usually dependent on a specific implementation of the RTI.

### RPR FOM

See Realtime Platform Reference FOM.

### RTI

See Run-Time Infrastructure.

### Run-Time Infrastructure

A library and other supporting software that implements the HLA interface specification. All federates communicate with one another in an HLA environment through RTI functions.

## S

### scene element

In VR-Vantage and VR-Forces, any object that is rendered in the scene, such as an entity model, interaction, or tactical graphic.

### Simulation Interoperability Standards Organization

A group that seeks to promote modeling and simulation interoperability and reuse for the benefit of diverse M&S communities, including developers, procurers, and users, world-wide.

### simulation time

In VR-Forces, simulation time is used in dead-reckoning of remote entities and thresholding of local entities. Typically, simulation time is set once during each iteration of the application's main simulation loop so that all entities are dead-reckoned based on the same value of current time.

### SISO

See Simulation Interoperability Standards Organization.

### smooth period

The period of time over which trajectory smoothing takes place.

### smoothing

A method of ensuring that transitions from an entity's dead-reckoned position to its actual position are not so abrupt as to be visually disconcerting.

### state

The current status of an object, including location, direction of movement, extent of damage, and so on.

## T

### tape

An alternative term for a Logger recording. Not a physical magnetic tape.

### terrain following

In a 3D visualization application, causes the observer (eyepoint) to maintain a constant distance above the terrain surface. The observer's height changes in tandem with the peaks and valleys as it passes over the geography.

### timeout

The period of time in which an application continues to display an entity after that entity's update messages have stopped appearing on the network. Time-outs are usually not used in HLA because there is no set frequency (no heartbeat) for transmitting messages.

### timescale

A factor by which time is accelerated or slowed during playback of a Data Logger recording.

### topographic coordinates

A right-handed Cartesian coordinate system whose X-Y plane is tangent to the earth's surface at the origin, with the positive X axis pointing north, the positive Y axis pointing east, and the positive Z axis pointing down. There are an infinite number of topographic coordinate systems – one for each point on the earth's surface.

### topographic coordinate frame

A coordinate frame in the context of the terrain.

### trajectory smoothing

A method used by to smooth positional discontinuities that could occur when new state updates arrive.

## U

### UDP port

A network channel through which an application sends and receives data for DIS exercises.

### Universal Transverse Mercator

In general, a non-cartesian coordinate system in which the X, Y, and Z correspond to easting (nearly east), northing (nearly north), and height above an ellipsoid that approximates the surface of the earth.

### UTM

See Universal Transverse Mercator.

## V

### view control messages

A set of programmatic messages that let you control the view in VR-Vantage applications remotely.

# Index

## -


-- command-line option, 158, 168, 176
  Simulation Object Editor, 1228
--additionalSystemScriptsDirectory command-line option, 168
--alphaBits command-line option, 158
--antiAliasing command-line option, 158
--appDataDir command-line option, 158, 174
  Simulation Object Editor, 1228
--appIdRange command-line option, 167, 174
--appIdRangeMax command-line option, 168
--appNumber command-line option, 165, 167-168
--attributePduStrategy command-line option, 174
--autoConnect command-line option, 158
--backend command-line option, 175
--clockMode command-line option, 169
--config command-line option, 175
--countryCodesMappingFile command-line option, 169
--daemon command-line option, 169
--dataDir command-line option, 158, 169
  Simulation Object Editor, 1228
--defaultObjectTimeout command-line option, 167, 169
--defaultSimulationModelSet command-line option, 158
--depthBuffer command-line option, 158
--destAddrString command-line option, 167, 173
--deviceAddress command-line option, 167, 174
--diGuyAnimationsFile command-line option, 169
--diGuyCharacerDataFile command-line option, 169
--dis command-line option, 158
--disableDynamicTerrain command-line option, 158
--disableErrorDialog command-line option, 159
--disableIndirectEntities command-line option, 159
--disableKDTrees command-line option, 161
--disableOcclusionCulling command-line option, 159
--disableParallelTick command-line option, 169
--disableReverseZBuffer command-line option, 159
--disableTerrainObserverViews command-line option, 159
--discoveredModelPreloadFileName command-line option, 204
--disPort command-line option, 167, 175
--dispSetting command-line option, 159
--disVersion command-line option, 167, 174, 181
--doNotCheckPluginVersions command-line option, 159
  Simulation Object Editor, 1228
--doNotLoadVrfPlugins command-line option, 159, 169
  Simulation Object Editor, 1228
--enableChannel command-line option, 170
--enableIndirectEntities command-line option, 160
--enableIndirectEntities command-line option[--aaa], 1762
--enableLogFileTimestamps command-line option, 160
--enableMetoc command-line option, 173
--enableVSync command-line option, 160
--entDispSetting command-line option, 160
--entityDefsDir command-line option, 160
--entTypeMap command-line option, 159
--envSetting command-line option, 160
--execname command-line option, 167, 173
--exerciseId command-line option, 168, 175

--exitOnTestResultCommand command-line option, 170
--extraArgs command-line option, 159
--extraArgs command-line option[--aaa], 1762
--factoryRootDir command-line option, 160
--federateName command-line option, 166, 173
--federateType command-line option, 166, 173
--fedFileName command-line option, 165, 173
--fileNotifyLevel command-line option, 170
--fileTransporterReceivePort command-line option (DIS), 166-167
--fileTransporterReceivePort command-line option (HLA), 165
--fomMapperInitData command-line option, 165, 173
--fomMapperLib command-line option, 165, 173
--fomModules command-line option, 165, 173
--forceTextShaping command-line option, 160
--fowPerspective command-line option, 160
--frameRate command-line option, 160
--frontend command-line option, 175
--frontEndPID command-line option, 169
--fullScreen command-line option, 160, 1552
--fullyLoadTerrain command-line option, 170
--gui command-line option, 160, 1560
--guiArgs command-line option, 175
--help command-line option, 160
Simulation Object Editor, 1228
--highestPriority command-line option, 160
--hla13 command-line option, 161
--hla1516 command-line option, 161
--hla1516e command-line option, 161
--hostAddressString command-line option, 165, 167, 170
--ignore_rest command-line option, 158, 168
Simulation Object Editor, 1228
--ignoreZoomForSpeedtreeLod command-line option, 165
--launcherLocation command-line option
Simulation Object Editor, 1228
--layoutSettingsFile command-line option, 161
Simulation Object Editor, 1229
--loadObservers command-line option, 161
--loadObserverViews command-line option, 161
--loadPlugin command-line option, 161, 170, 178
Simulation Object Editor, 1229
--loadSimulationObjectGroup command-line option, 161
--locale command-line option, 160, 175
Simulation Object Editor, 1228
--localSettingsDesignator command-line option, 166, 173
--logFileName command-line option, 161
--mainScreenNum command-line option, 162
--makRadio command-line option, 176
--mcastTtl command-line option, 167, 174
--mergeEntityTypeMap command-line option, 162
--mergeHierarchyEntityDef command-line option, 162
--mergeHierarchySpotReportDef command-line option, 162
--mergeHierarchyTacticalGraphicsDef command-line option, 162
--mergeHierarchyUnitDef command-line option, 162
--mergeLeafEntityDef command-line option, 162
--mergeLeafSpotReportDef command-line option, 163
--mergeLeafTacticalGraphicsDef command-line option, 163
--mergeLeafUnitDef command-line option, 163
--mergeModelDefs command-line option, 163
--mergeTacticalGraphicsTypeMap command-line option, 163
--mergeUnitTypeMap command-line option, 163
--mimModule command-line option, 173
--modelPreloadFileName command-line option, 204
--msdlSIDCMappingFile command-line option, 170
--multicastAddresses command-line option, 167, 174
--noAppDataEntityDefs command-line option, 163
--noAppDataEntityTypeMap command-line option, 163-164
--noAppDataModelDefs command-line option, 163
--noAppDataSpotReportDefs command-line option, 163
--noAppDataTacticalGraphicsDefs command-line option, 163
--noAppDataTacticalGraphicsTypeMap command-line option, 164
--noAppDataUnitDefs command-line option, 164
--nonVrfObjectsUUIDScheme command-line option, 164, 170
--noRtiCompilerCheck command-line option, 173
--notifyLevel command-line option, 163, 170, 1229
--numCallbackThreads command-line option, 171
--outputLogFile command-line option, 171
--plugin command-line option, 164
--pseudoFullScreen command-line option, 164, 1552
--pvd command-line option, 164
--recvBufferSize command-line option, 167, 175
--reportedHostAddressString command-line option, 167

--reportedHostAddressString command-line option (DIS), 166
--rprFomRevision command-line option, 166, 173
--rprFomVersion command-line option, 166, 173
--scenarioFile command-line option, 164
--sendBufferSize command-line option, 168, 175
--sessionId command-line option, 165, 167
--setMainThreadToHighPriority command-line option, 171
--settingsDirectory command-line option
Simulation Object Editor, 1229
--settingsFile command-line option
vrfSim, 169
--sharedSettingsDirectory command-line option, 164, 171
--showConsole command-line option, 158
Simulation Object Editor, 1229
--simArgs command-line option, 176
--simulationModelSet command-line option, 172
--siteId command-line option, 166, 168
--smsFile command-line option
Simulation Object Editor, 1229
--startMinimized command-line option, 172
--stealth command-line option, 164
--stencilBits command-line option, 164
--subnetMask command-line option, 168, 175
--suppressDataAvailableException command-line option, 172
--suppressHatIntersectOnAttach command-line option, 164, 1136
--suppressSelfReflect command-line option, 175
--synchronizeOcean command-line option, 164
--targetFrameRate command-line option, 172, 201
--testOutputFilename command-line option, 172
--timeManagement command-line option, 138, 173, 180
--tracyPort command-line option, 172
--useAbsoluteTimeStamps command-line option, 166, 172
--useAbsoluteTimeStamps command-line option (DIS), 167
--useAdvisories command-line option, 165, 173
--useAsyncIO command-line option, 168, 175, 181
--useFileCommChannel command-line option, 165
--useGeographicDdm command-line option, 167
--useIpv6 command-line option, 168, 175
--usePredefinedConnection command-line option, 176
--userDataDir command-line option, 165, 172
--userScenarioDirectory command-line option, 165
--userTerrainDirectory command-line option, 165
--useUserSettingsDirectory command-line option, 165, 172
--version command-line option, 165, 172, 176
Simulation Object Editor, 1229
--visualTerrain command-line option
Simulation Object Editor, 1229
--waitQueue command-line option, 173
-1 (wildcard), 1395
-a command-line option, 165, 167-168, 177
-A command-line option, 167, 173, 181
-B command-line option, 169, 175, 256
-c command-line option, 169
-C command-line option, 158, 175
-d command-line option
vrfSim, 169
-debug command-line option, 176
-e command-line option, 159
-E command-line option, 159
-e command-line option[--aaa], 1762
-f command-line option, 165, 173, 179
-F command-line option, 160, 175
-G command-line option, 160, 175, 177
Simulation Object Editor, 1228
-h command-line option, 160, 170, 175
Simulation Object Editor, 1228
-H command-line option, 165, 167
-i command-line option, 128, 165, 167, 170
-K command-line option, 161
-l command-line option, 161
-L command-line option, 161, 170, 234
-n command-line option, 163, 170, 178, 1229
-N command-line option, 165, 173
-O command-line option, 164
-p command-line option, 166, 173
-P command-line option, 167, 175, 180
-q command-line option, 171
-r command-line option, 171
-R command-line option, 176
-s command-line option, 171, 177
-S command-line option, 164, 166, 173-174, 181, 1136
-T command-line option, 172
-v command-line option, 165, 172, 176
Simulation Object Editor, 1229
-x command-line option, 167-168, 173, 175, 178, 181
-z command-line option, 159
-Z command-line option, 165

## 2

2D
  icon, 373
    changing, 1268
    changing size, 1006
    color, 421
    customizing color, 425
    customizing transparency, 425
    label, 417
    scaling, 1006
    using image for, 1269
  label
    shadow text, 422
  observer
    attachment behavior, 1142
  observer coordinate system, 1103
  projection
    switching to 3D, 1086
  window, 132
2D Icon model set, 1094
2D view layer, 1180
2D View Layer
  loading saved view, 1129
  saving view, 1128

## 3

3D
  model, 374
    changing, 1267
    DI-Guy, 641
    licensing, 91
  observer coordinate systems, 1102
  projection
    switching to 2D, 1086
  window, 132
3D Cartesian coordinate system, 773
3D Colorized Models model set, 1094
  color
    changing, 426
3D Models model set, 1094
3D settings, 203
3DS
  ASCII Export, 1322
  ASE, 577
  ASE file, 1319
  file, 1163
3DS ASCII Export format, 577

## 9

9-Line briefing, 616

## A

Abandon if Time on Target Cannot Be Achieved option, 588
Abandon Plan command, 913
abandoning plan, 540, 913
  confirmation prompt, 546
abatis
  constructing, 692
absolute
  pathname, 345
Absolute mode, 1136
acceleration
  displaying, 417
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
acceleration-factor parameter, 361
acceleration-to-rpm-factor parameter, 294
accessibility check, 473
accumulation
  rain, 318
ACO, 229
action category, 570, 720, 736
action table, 1389
actionCategories.tsk, 570, 736
Activate Jammer task, 684
activating
  jammer, 684
  scenario event, 267
  scenario event from plan, 268
  spawn points, 448
activation
  indirect fire, 959
Activation set data request, 962
active
  sonar, 292
  stereo, 1541
  tactical graphic, 959, 962
active-radar-sensor system, 508
Active Sonar Mode dialog box, 798
Active Sonar Mode set data request, 798
activity
  adding, 1351
  unit, 841
Activity dialog box, 841
Activity set data request, 1351
actuator, 356-357
  indirect fire, 1459, 1617

missile-collision, 1458-1459
missile-maneuver, 1458-1459
warhead, 1461, 1620
warhead detonation, 1460, 1619
Add Conditional Expression dialog box, 861
Add Group of Entities
dialog box, 475
Add Jamming Target dialog box, 798
Add Jamming Target set data request, 798
Add to Order of Battle dialog box, 479
adding
activities, 1351
articulated part to simulation object, 1307
channel, 1527
DI-Guy animation, 1389
DI-Guy character, 1388
extended label, 424
feature layer, 1164
formation, 1333
global commands to plan, 899
group of entities, 475
image, 1271
key mapping, 1571
linked event, 263
media to scenario event, 263
model
visual, 1271
model definition, 1271
object
to Favorites list, 395
object geometry, 1300
observer, 1089-1090
parameter properties, 1415
pedestrians
to crowd, 638
plug-in, 151
power type, 1477, 1627
sensor component, 1438
sensor signature, 1432, 1439
sensor type, 1437
simulation objectto unit, 522
slot, 1366, 1368, 1374
state properties, 1415
subordinate to unit, 1330
system to simulation object, 1311
tag, 1248
targets to priority list, 834-835
text
to title bar, 1554
text object, 942
vertex, 953
window, 1524
additional-algorithm-config parameter, 1485
additional-opds parameter, 344
additionalDestinationAddresses parameter, 1595
additionalSystemScriptsDirectory parameter, 1584
addMulticastAddr parameter, 1595
address
going to, 1129
Advanced Visual Model Editing dialog box, 1274
advisory message
enabling and disabling, 1595
aerodrome
compute, 1214
create, 1215
information dialog box, 1220
set runways, 1220
Aerodrome Lights set data request, 1218
Aerodrome set data request, 1218, 1220
Affects Controls check box, 733
agent
contamination, 499
aggregate
See also unit, 79
aggregate-comms-jammer
system, 507
aggregate-formation-controller parameter, 1490
aggregate-level
combat, 499
entity
configuring, 1340
modeling, 358
aggregate-level modeling, 485
aggregate-level unit
parameter, 1341
aggregate-object-param parameter, 1402, 1426
aggregate-param parameter, 1606
aggregate-radar-jammer system, 509
Aggregate As
dialog box, 1328
specifying a unit as option, 1328
aggregate warfare model, 495, 1340
aggregated state, 524
aggregated unit, 488
attack by fire, 686
AggregateLevel.sms, 359, 495, 1340
aggregateSpatialModelTickAsFastAsPossibleWhile Paused parameter, 1584
aggregateSpatialModelTickPeriod parameter, 1584
aggregateSpatialModelTickPeriodUsesRealTime parameter, 1584
aggregateSpatialModelTickVariance parameter, 1584
aggregating objects in Order of Battle, 481
aggregation
automatic, 526

manual, 526
state, 521
units that do not allow, 1329
agility
terrain, 83
AI, 798
AI Enabled dialog box, 799
AI Enabled set data request, 798
aiming
sensor, 828
Aiming dialog box, 799
Aiming set data request, 799
air
tactical navigation, 829
turbulence, 327
Air-to-Air Attack dialog box, 684
Air-to-Air Attack task, 684
Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack dialog box, 685
Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack task, 684
Air-to-Ground Attack dialog box, 685
Air-to-Ground Attack task, 685
air base
assigning aircraft, 842
attacking, 684
facilities
setting, 845
landing at, 705
personnel
setting, 849
air corridor, 941
air crew
setting for air base, 849
air defense, 687
air traffic
configuring an air traffic area, 463
creating an air traffic area, 463
generating, 460, 586
methods, 459
air unit
attacking air base, 684
combat, 1359
fuel tank
dropping, 701
aircraft
attacking with gun, 613
landing at air base, 705
landing at airport, 586
lighting, 799
refuel, 579, 600
refueling, 708
See also Fixed-Wing entity and Rotary-Wing entity, 821
setting speed, 821
speed, 411
strafing target, 632
tanker
lighting, 833
refuel self, 667
aircraft assignment
deleting, 842-843
editing, 842
Aircraft Lighting set data request, 799
Airdrop Along Route task, 576
Airdrop from Aircraft embarkation task, 658
Airdrop task, 658
airlift, 600
cargo, 601
airport
centering on, 1216
landing aircraft at, 586
procedural
requirement for air traffic generation, 459
runway lights
setting from panel, 1216
setting runway lights
from panel, 1216
Airport Settings Panel, 1216
airspace, 941
airspace control order, 229
Ala Moana terrain, 1183
all-tasks-exclusive parameter, 570
Allow Crossing dialog box, 963
Allow Crossing set data request, 963
allowed-state-repositories-types parameter, 1633
alpha bits, 158
alpha to coverage, 197
VRV_ALPHA_TO_COVERAGE_RENDERBIN environment variable, 197
altitude, 416, 772
entity
displaying, 426
fixed-wing entity, 562
flying to, 582-583
intervisibility line, 1057
object
changing, 386, 953
observer
filtering simulation objects by, 192
ordering entity to, 591
in Move Along Route with Actions task, 589
pasted object, 391
route
setting, 381
setting, 380-381, 800
fixed-wing entity, 563
in dialog box, 380

manually, 380
specifying measurement unit, 1555
switching from 2D to 3D, 1086
testing entity for, 865
vertex
changing, 954
displaying, 924
Altitude
condition, 865
dialog box, 800
set data request, 800
Altitude set data request, 563
Always Join Session with Open Database, 137
Always Join Session with Session Database, 137
ambient
color, 1016
occlusion map, 85
value
material, 1016
ammo-entry, 1470, 1621, 1629
ammo-entry block, 1637
ammo parameter, 1615
ammo select file, 1451, 1612, 1634
ammo select table, 1614
counter measure, 294
ammunition, 504
amount, 841
creating, 1314
freeze levels, 811
pacing and tracking, 841
specifying amount, 825
status, 413
unit, 1342, 1345
Ammunition dialog box, 841
Ammunition Pacing/Tracking dialog box, 842
Ammunition Pacing/Tracking set data request, 841
anaglyphic stereo, 1541
configuring, 1542
angle
damage, 1476, 1626, 1630
angle-of-incidence parameter, 1476, 1626, 1630
angleSegmentMax parameter, 1067
animal herd
area
creating, 470
disallows aggregation, 1329
unit
creating, 469
animated movement
configuring, 1319
movement file
configuring, 1324
Animated Movement dialog box, 577, 1324
Animated Movement task, 577
animation
attack, 982
DI-Guy, 169, 641
adding, 1389
choosing, 1390
entity, 577
fast roping, 660
ladder extraction, 663-664
ladder insertion, 665-666
observer view transition, 1126
rope extraction, 661-662
rope insertion, 663
testing DI-Guy, 866
urgency, 837
Answer Questions button, 777
anti-air
missile, 686
resource, 504
weapon, 687
anti-aliasing, 158, 196
anti-personnel, 504
anti-ship
missile, 686
resource, 504
Anti-ship (Fixed Depth) task, 627
anti-submarine
missile, 625
anti-tank
ditch
improving, 703
resource, 504
anti-tank ditch
digging, 692
Any
as condition parameter, 892
Any Subordinate of Selected Aggregate check box, 893
API
SDK toolkit, 95
apparent signature, 1436, 1441
appData directory, 174
appearance
bit, 1017
DI-Guy, 169
random, 1305
pasting, 390
power plant, 293
setting, 800
specifying for DI-Guy model, 1303
testing DI-Guy, 866
Appearance dialog box, 801
Appearance set data request, 801

appending
saved views to view list, 1129
appIdRange parameter, 1595
application
data
specifying location of, 158, 1228
ID, 109
number, 165, 167-168, 257, 347
configuring, 1584
default, 177
specifying at startup, 177
remote
notifying of VR-Forces run and pause, 256
seeing observer, 1094
application ID, 167
Application Settings dialog box, 236, 526
File Caching Settings page, 193
General Application Settings page, 133, 142
GUI Settings page, 546
Key Mapping Editor page, 1571, 1575
Mouse Settings page, 1108
Performance Options page, 200
Performance Settings page, 199
Script Settings page, 188, 733, 753
Spot Report Settings page, 275-276, 278-280, 831
applying
auto tags, 1250
platform update, 1246
appNumber parameter, 1584
arc
drawing, 939
segment, 1066
architecture
component, 356
area, 918, 921
air turbulence, 327
creating for multiple entity creation, 475
diamond dust, 325
disaggregation, 527, 918
drawing, 937
extruded, 866, 941
feature
list of, 1178
fill style, 957
fortified
constructing, 696
ground fog, 325
hazard, 500
haze, 325
high fidelity damage, 1485
minefield, 947
mist, 325
navigation
creating, 1199
importing, 1209
NBC, 499
pedestrian, 476
sandstorm, 325
sector, 939
smoke, 325
suppressive fire at, 567, 623, 630
terrain page-in, 918
types, 937
Arm Mine at Depth task, 613
Armed dialog box, 801
Armed set data request, 801
arming
IED, 801
mine
naval, 613
armor-piercing power domain, 1471, 1622
Arrivals Hall terrain, 1183
arrow
adding to line, 957
freehand line, 937
sensor contact line, 988
Arrowhead Style dialog box, 963
Arrowhead Style set data request, 963
articulated part, 1307
adding to simulation object, 1307
animating in SOE, 1309
attaching observer to, 1134
displaying, 1272
editing for simulation object, 1308
removing from simulation object, 1309
tasks for moving, 671
Articulated Part dialog box, 801
Articulated Part set data request, 801
articulated parts, 1002
artificial intelligence, 798
artillery
Fire-for-Effect task, 622
unit, 704
ASCII Export file, 1319, 1322
ASE file, 1319, 1322
ASE format, 577
Ask to Join Session, 137
assembly, 1342, 1346
adding to entity, 1349
creating, 1347
editing, 1348
removing, 1349
roll up rule, 1350
rolling up, 1351

assertOnBlockingTerrainCalls parameter, 1167, 1585
Assign Aircraft dialog box, 842-843
Assign Aircraft set data request, 842
assigning
  echelon ID, 355
  plan to multiple simulation objects, 911
  session ID, 128
assigning aircraft
  air base, 842
Assume Unknown is Hostile dialog box, 802
Assume Unknown is Hostile set data request, 801
asynchronous I/O, 181, 1597
atmospheric condition layers, 314
attach, 1136
  observer
    articulated part, 1134
Attach Components to Remote Entities On parameter, 215
attach mode, 84, 1099, 1103, 1136
  2D behavior, 1142
  Absolute, 1136
  Follow, 1136
  Mimic, 1137
  Mimic Location Track, 1139
  Mimic Track, 1138
  movement
    attached context, 1103
  prop
    affect of, 1135
  Space Follow, 1139
  Tether, 1140
  Tether Location Track, 1141
  Tether Track, 1140
  Track, 1141
Attach Object to Mouse check box, 383
attached
  context, 1103
Attached Near Clip Altitude
  attribute, 1533
attaching observer
  to object
    with keyboard, 1133
  to simulation object or prop, 1132
attachment
  list
    filtering, 1135
  order, 1133
  preservation of view changes, 1133
Attachment Panel, 1133
  filtering attachment list, 1135
attack
  air-to-ground, 685
  animation, 982
  anti-air missile, 686
  indicator, 982
  limited munition, 499
  missile, 499
Attack Aircraft with Guns task, 613
Attack By Fire dialog box, 686
Attack By Fire task, 686
attack parameter
  edting, 1357
Attack with Anti-Air Missile dialog box, 686
Attack with Anti-Air Missile task, 686
attack with anti-ship missile, 686
Attack with Anti-Ship Missile dialog box, 686
Attack with Anti-Ship Missile task, 686
Attack with Land-Attack Missile dialog box, 687
Attack with Land-Attack Missile task, 687
Attack with Torpedo dialog box, 687
Attack with Torpedo task, 687
attacking
  air base, 684
Attention Grabbing dialog box, 802
Attention Grabbing set data request, 802
attribute
  Attached Near Clip Altitude, 1533
  Dynamic Near Clip Attached Policy, 1533
  Dynamic Water Visibility Enabled, 1538
  Dynamic Water Visibility Maximum, 1538
  Fixed Near Clip, 1533
  Fixed Near Clip When Attached, 1533
  itemname, 1560, 1566
  Near Far Clip Policy, 1532
  Reduce Z Fighting Ratio, 1533
  sensor, 1529
  setting simulation object, 800
  window, 1529
attrition
  rate, 495
  unit, 502
audio, 1070
  adding to scenario event, 263
Audio Settings dialog box, 1070-1071
auto-reorganize parameter, 343
Auto Launch dialog box, 804
auto tag
  applying, 1250
automatic
  aggregation, 525
  aggregation and disaggregation, 526
  attachment, 952
  counter measures, 294
  embarkation, 439
  laser, 815

reorganization, 824
running of scenarios, 252
Automatic Air Defense task, 687
Automatically Close Doors
set data request, 802
Automatically Close Doors dialog box, 802
Automatically Join Session, 136
Automatically Open Session Database without Joining Session, 136
autonomous lasing, 287
autoTagInformation.csv, 1250
Avoid Roads, 819
avoidance
collision, 803, 1198
avoiding
collisions, obstacles, and features, 359
objects, 1492


## B


B-- command-line option, 176
back-end, 108
balancing load, 238
console, 1587
dropping from exercise, 113
enabling time management, 138, 180
feature representation, 1164
frame rate
statistics, 187
heartbeat, 1592
late joining, 113
mapping objects to, 347
missing, 113
multiple, 108, 112, 347
reloading OPD, 1587
remapping, 113
in batch mode, 255
sending messages, 108
starting, 123
as daemon, 169
synchronizing, 137
background
2D label, 422
intervisibility information, 1057
background process, 711, 717, 783
Bakersfield topo map terrain, 1183
balancing
object load, 238
ballistic-missile-entity-state-repository, 1401
ballistic-missile-param parameter, 1401
ballistic gun
controller descriptor, 1614
ballistic missile, 303, 625
firing, 304
movement
configuring, 1320
movement file
configuring, 1324
scripted movement, 1319
target event, 305-306
Ballistic Missiles dialog box, 1320, 1324
barbed wire
constructing, 693
barricade
constructing, 693
batch file, 252
command-line option, 169
configuring, 1585
editing, 253
batch mode, 252-253
remapping, 255
starting from command line, 256
batchScenarioFileName parameter, 1585
beacon
emergency, 807, 1311
wake, 332
beam, 823
emitter, 293, 808
standard and tracking, 808
bearing
bullseye, 950
intervisibility line, 1057
viewing
range line, 1060
behavior
scripted, 577
simulation object, 358
behavior set, 721
assigning to force, 560
creating, 558
script availability, 736, 738
berm
constructing, 694
bin
render, 197
binary key mapping, 1571
binding
system definition file variable, 1411
Biological Attack dialog box, 688
Biological Attack task, 688
biological contamination, 499-500, 688
bit
depth, 158
depth and stencil, 196

bitmap, 1163
  adding to scenario event, 263
  location of, 96
block
  ammo-entry, 1637
  damage-by-munition-power, 1475, 1625
  damage-model, 1475, 1625, 1629, 1637
  determinant, 1476, 1626
  high-fidelity-terrain-damage-table, 1485
  munition, 1471, 1622
  power-list, 1471, 1622
  standard-terrain-damage-table, 1484
blowing dust, 324
blowing sand, 324
blowing snow, 324
blur, 1044-1045
BMP, 1163
body coordinates, 1099
bomb, 1461, 1620
  creating, 1313
  dropping, 631
  laser guided, 631
  target, 616
bomb-bay weapon system, 1461, 1620
bomb-entity-state-repository, 1401
bomb-param parameter, 1401
Bomb Location dialog box, 688
Bomb Location task, 688
booby trap
  creating, 694
  destroying, 699
  improving, 702
boolean
  operator, 869
boom
  refueling, 671, 673
border
  icon, 1006
bounding box
  selecting objects, 401
  unit, 1335
bounding overwatch, 644
bounding volume, 360, 1272
  displaying, 1272
  simulation objects, 428-429
  specifying, 1297
  unit
    color, 537
box
  drawing, 941
  extruded, 941
  resizing, 955
breach
  improving, 702
Breach Obstacles dialog box, 689
Breach Obstacles task, 689
breaching
  fortification, 689
  obstacle, 689
breaking
  wave, 334
bridge, 393, 1297
  building, 695
  destroying, 699
  improving, 703
brightness, 1045
broadcasting
  state update, 1094
  stealth position and orientation, 1095
buffer
  size, 168, 175
building, 393, 1297
  avoiding, 360
  bridge, 695
  conditional statement, 883
  creating entity in, 379
  ditch, 696
  dry gap, 696
  embedding in terrain, 394
  fortified area, 696
  setting avoidance, 803
bullseye
  range, 950
  spider web, 951
  tactical graphic, 949
bump map, 85
buoy
  wake, 332
buoyancy
  enabling or disabling, 1040
  LOD distance, 1041
burst
  length, 451, 455
  period, 451, 455
  spawn, 451
  spawn pattern, 455
button
  Answer Questions, 777
  common for model definitions, 1553
  Joystick, 1507
  Key Mapping, 1509
  toolbars, 130
buttonGroup
  property, 789

# C

C++
  scripted task, 741
  task, 715, 766
cache
  clearing model instancing, 193
  model instance, 193
caching
  terrain data, 88
calculating
  support point, 1299
calculating damage, 1470, 1620
California terrain, 1184
camera
  effects, 1044
  jitter, 1120
  moving, 1108
  position and orientation, 1541
  shaking, 1120
  ways to move, 1107
Camera Orientation Offset, 1530
Camera Position Offset, 1530, 1541
camouflage
  marking, 1275
can-be-radar-jammed parameter, 508
can-pivot parameter, 609
Can Be Executed More Than Once at a Time check box, 742
canceling
  reactive task, 556
cancelling
  generation of navigation data, 1206
Capabilities dialog box, 803
Capabilities set data request, 802
capability
  setting, 802
capture
  screen, 133
car
  displaying driver in, 1011
  getting in and out of, 657
car bomb
  detonating, 805
car door
  opening and closing, 657
Car Door task, 672
cargo
  carrying, 600
  embarking, 601
  unloading, 602
cargo door
  closing, 671
  opening, 672
carrier
  placing entity on, 380
carrier air wing
  disallows aggregation, 1329
Cartesian
  coordinate system, 773-774
CAS, 616
  strafing target, 632
catastrophic-kill parameter, 1630
Categories
  clearing list, 1262
category
  action, 720, 736
  echelon, 354
  undoing changes, 1250
  weapon and ammunition
    adding, 1363
CEO. See combat engineering object, 500
certainty level for spot reports, 277
cgfDispatcherReceivePort parameter, 1585
chaff, 626
  launching, 294
Change Hostility dialog box, 284
Change MOPP Level dialog box, 691
Change MOPP Level task, 690, 848
Change Posture dialog box, 691
Change Posture task, 691, 850
changing
  2D icon, 1268
  2D icon image, 1269
  3D model, 1267
  altitude
    vertex, 954
  channel attributes, 1529
  color
    force, 426
    tactical graphics, 956
  colorized model, 1267
  control object, 953
  entity
    enumeration, 1258
    parameter, 1300
    tag, 1257
  entity name, 386
  extended label index, 424
  field of view, 1535
  force hostility, 283
  frame rate mode, 344
  gain, 1123
  grid spacing, 1338

icon list, 1262
icon size, 1006
intervisibility object, 1054
key mapping, 1573
line
direction, 956
marking, 818
model set, 1094, 1273
MOPP level, 690
name
tactical graphic, 386
object tag, 1257
observer mode, 1087
order of objects in OOB, 483
posture, 691, 850
script ID, 723
simulation object
name, 1261
Simulation Time Scale Toolbar range, 243
site ID, 347
spot report icon, 1270
subordinate order, 1332
terrain database for scenario, 346
unit of measurement, 1555
unit state, 525
runtime, 524
viewport, 1536
width of line, 957
window attributes, 1529
channel
adding, 1527
attribute
sensor, 1529
changing attributes, 1529
keyword, 1530
compass, 1101
keywords, 1538
multiple, 1539
observer, 1089
projection resize policy, 1533
property, 1529
removing, 1528
Channel Name, 1529
character
DI-Guy, 169
adding, 1388
specifying for DI-Guy model, 1303
character_animations_table.mtl, 1389
check box
Can Be Executed More Than Once at a Time, 742
Color by Force Type, 421
Show Occupants, 1011
check() function, 761
checking
version
plug-in, 159
checking waypoint accessibility, 473
checkInit() function, 761
checkpoint, 230, 247
deleting, 249
disabling periodic, 249
periodic
scheduling, 248
rolling back to, 244
saving, 247-248
saving from snapshot, 248
scenario, 247
Checkpoint Settings page, 245, 249-250
Chemical Attack dialog box, 692
Chemical Attack task, 691
chemical contamination, 499-500, 691
choice
list
in Qt Designer, 789
choosing
window layout, 1549
chop
wave, 328
choppiness
ocean, 332
CID level, 285
for firing at target, 286
icon
color, 286
circle
drawing, 938
extruded, 941
Circle Around Location task, 637
circling
point, 597
civilian
creating, 470
Civilian Idle task, 637
Civilian Pray task, 637
Civilian Protest task, 637
Civilian Talk task, 638
civilian visit point, 476
Clamp Near Clip When Magnified
policy, 1533
clamping
entities, 1168
human entities, 811
class
DtSimComponentManager, 1398
DtSimObjectNetInterface, 1397
DtSimObjectStateRepository, 1397

DtSimTaskManager, 1397
DtVrfObject, 1397
FeatureSet, 756
Location3D, 772
Lua, 756
SimObject, 757
Vector3D, 772
VectorGeoc3D, 774
VectorOffset3D, 774
VR-Forces, 1393
vrf, 757
Classified CID level, 285
clearing
default window layout, 1550
model instancing cache, 193
object console, 433
snapshot list, 251
target priority list, 834
view list, 1126
click to create, 375
click to locate, 375, 377
client
Tracy, 191
climb rate, 583
clipboard, 432
clipping plane
adjusting when creating simulation objects, 379
clock mode, 116, 344
clockMode parameter, 1585
close air support, 616, 685
strafing, 632
Close Car Door task, 671
Close Cargo Door task, 671
Close Door task, 638
Close Window task, 638
closing
all windows, 141
application, 141
car door, 657, 671
cargo door, 671
Create Object dialog box, 377
door, 638
formation, 490-491
simulation, 246
simulation engine, 141
window, 638
cloud
cover, 314
disabling, 1027
skybox cube map, 1024
smoke, 626
cockpit
enabling with keyword, 1539
cockpit display, 1148
enabling or disabling, 1147
Cockpit Display Settings page, 1148
cockpitOnly keyword, 1539
code
country, 1586
laser, 815
assigning, 287
coefficient probability, 1455, 1616
coefficients determinant, 1477, 1627
collapsing
unit, 530
collateral damage, 1637
probability table, 1456, 1617
collision avoidance, 359, 1198
configuring, 1492
specifying for entity, 803
Collision Avoidance Types dialog box, 803
Collision Avoidance Types set data request, 803
color
2D icon, 421, 425
2D label background, 422
ambient, 1016
compass, 1101
diffuse, 1016
emitter volume
pulse rate, 1064
entity label, 416
fog, 317
force
changing, 426, 1253
intervisibility
configuring, 1055
partially identified simulation objects, 286
radio communication line, 1000
represents emitter volume frequency, 1064
sensor contact line, 988
sensor field of view, 828
specular, 1016
squawk indicator, 1000
tactical graphic vertex, 956
tactical graphics
changing, 956
unit bounding volume, 537
Color by Force Type check box, 421
Color dialog box, 964
Color set data request, 964
coloring
draw call, 201
colorized model
changing, 1267
combat, 495
aggregate-level, 499

power, 495
unit, 525
graphics, 982
combat engineering object, 500
completion percentage
setting, 849
configuring, 1362
creating, 503
creating new model, 1340
partial completion, 503
rate of creation, 503
status, 503
combat identification level, 285
CID, 1435
Combat parameters, 1359
combined mode
vrfLauncher, 176
combining
key mapping, 1574
Come to Stop task, 578
comm-model-name parameter, 1498
comma-separated values file, 303
command
Abandon Plan, 913
Create Sensor View, 909
Delete Self, 452
Disembark, 440
Embark On, 438
global
adding to plan, 899
Issue Plan, 904
menu
configuring, 1560
Restart Plan, 912
Send Text Message, 902
Test Result, 910
command-line
Simulation Object Editor, 1228
command-line option, 157
--, 158, 168, 176
--additionalSystemScriptsDirectory, 168
--alphaBits, 158
--antiAliasing, 158, 196
--appDataDir, 158, 174
--appIdRange, 167, 174
--appIdRangeMax, 168
--appNumber, 165, 167-168
--attributePduStrategy, 174
--autoConnect, 158
--backend, 175
--clockMode, 169
--config, 175
--countryCodesMappingFile, 169
--daemon, 169
--dataDir, 158, 169
--defaultObjectTimeout, 167, 169
--defaultSimulationModelSet, 158
--depthBuffer, 158
--destAddrString, 167, 173
--deviceAddress, 167, 174
--diGuyAnimationsFile, 169
--diGuyCharacerDataFile, 169
--dis, 158
--disableDynamicTerrain, 158
--disableErrorDialog, 159
--disableIndirectEntities, 159
--disableKDTrees, 161
--disableOcclusionCulling, 159
--disableParallelTick, 169
--disableReverseZBuffer, 159
--disableTerrainObserverViews, 159
--discoveredModelPreloadFileName, 204
--disPort, 167, 175
--dispSetting, 159
--disVersion, 167, 174, 181
--doNotCheckPluginVersions, 159
--doNotLoadVrfPlugins, 159, 169
--enableChannel, 170
--enableIndirectEntities, 160, 1762
--enableLogFileTimestamps, 160
--enableMetoc, 173
--enableVSync, 160
--entDispSetting, 160
--entityDefsDir, 160
--entTypeMap, 159
--envSetting, 160
--execname, 167, 173
--exerciseId, 168, 175
--exitOnTestResultCommand, 170
--extraArgs, 159, 1762
--factoryRootDir, 160
--federateName, 166, 173
--federateType, 166, 173
--fedFileName, 165, 173
--fileNotifyLevel, 170
--fileTransporterReceivePort (DIS), 166-167
--fileTransporterReceivePort (HLA), 165
--fomMapperInitData, 165, 173
--fomMapperLib, 165, 173
--fomModules, 165, 173
--forceTextShaping, 160
--fowPerspective, 160
--frameRate, 160
--frontend, 175
--frontEndPID, 169
--fullScreen, 160, 1552

--fullyLoadTerrain, 170
--gui, 160, 1560
--guiArgs, 175
--help, 160
--highestPriority, 160
--hla13, 161
--hla1516, 161
--hla1516e, 161
--hostAddressString, 165, 167, 170
--ignore_rest, 158, 168
--ignoreZoomForSpeedtreeLod, 165
--layoutSettingsFile, 161
--loadObservers, 161
--loadObserverViews, 161
--loadPlugin, 161, 170, 178
--loadSimulationObjectGroup, 161
--locale, 160, 175
--localSettingsDesignator, 166, 173
--logFileName, 161
--mainScreenNum, 162
--makRadio, 176
--mcastTtl, 167, 174
--mergeEntityTypeMap, 162
--mergeHierarchyEntityDef, 162
--mergeHierarchySpotReportDef, 162
--mergeHierarchyTacticalGraphicsDef, 162
--mergeHierarchyUnitDef, 162
--mergeLeafEntityDef, 162
--mergeLeafSpotReportDef, 163
--mergeLeafTacticalGraphicsDef, 163
--mergeLeafUnitDef, 163
--mergeModelDefs, 163
--mergeTacticalGraphicsTypeMap, 163
--mergeUnitTypeMap, 163
--mimModule, 173
--modelPreloadFileName, 204
--msdlSIDCMappingFile, 170
--multicastAddresses, 167, 174
--noAppDataEntityDefs, 163
--noAppDataEntityTypeMap, 163-164
--noAppDataModelDefs, 163
--noAppDataSpotReportDefs, 163
--noAppDataTacticalGraphicsDefs, 163
--noAppDataTacticalGraphicsTypeMap, 164
--noAppDataUnitDefs, 164
--nonVrfObjectsUUIDScheme, 164, 170
--noRtiCompilerCheck, 173
--notifyLevel, 163, 170, 1229
--numCallbackThreads, 171
--outputLogFile, 171
--plugin, 164
--pseudoFullScreen, 164, 1552
--pvd, 164
--recvBufferSize, 167, 175
--reportedHostAddressString, 167
--reportedHostAddressString (DIS), 166
--rprFomRevision, 166, 173
--rprFomVersion, 166, 173
--scenarioFile, 164
--sendBufferSize, 168, 175
--sessionId, 165, 167
--setMainThreadToHighPriority, 171
--settingsFile, 169
--sharedSettingsDirectory, 164, 171
--showConsole, 158
--simArgs, 176
--simulationModelSet, 172
--siteId, 166, 168
--startMinimized, 172
--stealth, 164
--stencilBits, 164
--subnetMask, 168, 175
--suppressDataAvailableException, 172
--suppressHatIntersectOnAttach, 164, 1136
--suppressSelfReflect, 175
--synchronizeOcean, 164
--targetFrameRate, 172, 201
--testOutputFilename, 172
--timeManagement, 138, 173, 180
--tracyPort, 172
--useAbsoluteTimeStamps, 166, 172
--useAbsoluteTimeStamps (DIS), 167
--useAdvisories, 165, 173
--useAsyncIO, 168, 175, 181
--useFileCommChannel, 165
--useGeographicDdm, 167
--useIpv6, 168, 175
--usePredefinedConnection, 176
--userDataDir, 165, 172
--userScenarioDirectory, 165
--userTerrainDirectory, 165
--useUserSettingsDirectory, 165, 172
--version, 165, 172, 176
--waitQueue, 173
-a, 165, 167-168, 177
-A, 167, 173, 181
-B, 169, 175
-c, 169
-C, 158, 175
-debug, 176
-e, 159, 1762
-E, 159
-f, 165, 173, 179
-F, 160, 175
-G, 160, 175, 177
-h, 160, 170, 175

-H, 165, 167
-i, 128, 165, 167, 170
-K, 161
-l, 161
-L, 161, 170
-n, 163, 170, 178, 1229
-N, 165, 173
-O, 164
-p, 166, 173
-P, 167, 175, 180
-q, 171
-r, 171
-R, 176
-s, 171, 177
-S, 164, 166, 173-174, 181, 1136
-T, 172
-v, 165, 172, 176
-x, 167-168, 173, 175, 178
DIS, 181
-z, 159
-Z, 165
B--, 176
enableVSync, 202
F--, 176
Simulation Object Editor
--, 1228
--appDataDir, 1228
--dataDir, 1228
--doNotCheckPluginVersions, 1228
--doNotLoadVrfPlugins, 1228
--help, 1228
--ignore_rest, 1228
--launcherLocation, 1228
--layoutSettingsFile, 1229
--loadPlugin, 1229
--locale, 1228
--settingsDirectory, 1229
--showConsole, 1229
--smsFile, 1229
--version, 1229
--visualTerrain, 1229
-G, 1228
-h, 1228
-v, 1229
command line
loading scenario from, 234
loading scene, 165
loading terrain, 165
options, 158
comment
MTL parameter, 1580
commModelParams.mtl file, 1498
communication
component, 356
line, 997
line-of-sight, 999
communication model, 1498
custom, 356
simulation object, 355
communications
jamming, 507
company
pre-configured, 520
simulation object icon, 1006
comparison operator, 868
compass
color, 1101
configuring, 1101
keyword, 1539
location, 1101
model definition, 1101
observer, 1100
component, 1396
actuator, 357
architecture, 356
attaching to remote entities, 215
attaching to remote entity, 1518
communication among, 356
controller, 357
descriptor
elements of, 1403
emitter, 808
entity, 1402
sensor, 357
simulation object, 1402
systems, 1406
tuning
performance, 195
Component-Attachment-Table parameter, 343
Component-Attachment parameter, 343
component-descriptor-type, 1403
component-manager parameter, 1603, 1605
component-type, 1403
component attachment table, 1518
Component Attachment Table parameter, 217
Component Manager, 1603
componentAttachmentTable.mtl, 1518
composing
terrain, 1162
compute
aerodrome, 1214
runways, 1214
computed route
creating, 944
Concealed dialog box, 804

Concealed set data request, 804
concealment
  setting, 804
concurrent task, 540, 545, 736, 742
condition
  considerations for using, 865
  Detect Entity, 865
  Do Until Interrupt, 864
  Engineering Object Breached, 865
  Entity Altitude, 865
  Entity Destroyed, 865
  Entity Di-Guy Animation Check, 866
  Entity Di-Guy Appearance Check, 866
  Entity Embarked, 866
  Entity Has Target, 866
  Entity In Area, 866, 941
  Entity Left of Line, 867
  Entity Under Fire, 867
  If, 861
    creating, 876
  Lifeform Surrendered, 867
  Missile Approach Warning, 867
  name, 893
  name condition
    pattern, 892
  pattern, 894
    editing CSV file, 894
  Random, 867
  Receive Text Message, 868
  Resource, 868
  Scenario Event, 868
  Simulation Date/Time, 868
  Simulation Object Independently Tasked, 868
  Simulation Time, 868
  Tactical Graphic Active, 868, 959, 962
  Wait Until, 864
  While, 863
condition-entity-types.csvfile, 894
conditional expression dialog box, 883
conditional statement, 859
  building, 883
  filtering simulation object list, 550
  trigger, 861
cone
  gimbaled sensor, 1151
  sensor
    color, 828
configuration
  display engine, 1524
    loading, 1528
    saving, 1528
  entity display, 160
  environment, 160
  file
    condition-entity-types.csv, 894
    RTI, 100
  joystick
    favorite, 1515
  MAK radio, 1077
  plug-in
    deleting, 154
  simulation model set, 219
configuration file
  character_animations_table.mtl, 1389
  commModelParams.mtl, 1498
  for object parameter database, 1229
  navigation area, 1209
  sysdef, 1406
  vrfSim.mtl, 1584
  vrfSimSettings.xml, 198
configuring
  aggregate-level entity, 1340
  back-end
    console, 1587
    heartbeat, 1592
  ballistic missile movement, 1320
  batch file, 1585
  combat engineering objects, 1362
  compass, 1101
  condition pattern enumerations, 894
  context-sensitive menu, 1563
  counter measures, 294
  Create Object dialog box, 377
  damage-by-power, 1470, 1621
  depth of field, 1157
  destination address, 1596
  detection tables, 285
  DI-Guy, 1586, 1594
    character and appearance, 1303, 1388
  dialog box
    information, 1562
    pages, 1561
  direct fire weapon, 1450, 1612
  DIS, 1595-1596
  display, 159
  drainInput, 1588
    for DIS, 1596
    for HLA, 1595
  embarkation, 1366
    slot, 1368, 1374
  embedded entity, 442
  emitter, 1496
  emitter volume, 1064
    segments, 1065
  exercise ID, 1596
  feature avoidance, 1492

FED file name, 1594
federation execution, 1594
  name, 1594
fixed weapon system, 1460, 1619
FOM Mapper, 1594
formations, 1490
frequency of data sends, 1587
GDB soil type, 1182
grid lines, 1173
ground clamping, 1169
GUI elements, 1560
heartbeat threshold, 1595
HLA, 1594
hostility, 283
IED, 805
ingress and egress points, 1374
instrument panel, 1150
interest management, 192
intervisibility objects, 1055
joystick, 1504
keyboard entity control, 1504
map datum, 1593
menu, 1560
movement file, 1324
multicast address, 1595
multichannel display, 1539
mutually exclusive tasks, 570
object avoidance, 1492
obstruction avoidance, 1492
ocean planar reflection, 1020
orientation clamping, 1169
path
  to OPD file, 1586
port number, 1596
power of detonation, 1471, 1622
projection resize policy, 1533
props, 1164
pulse rate, 1064
radar converage, 291
radios, 1498
range lines, 1060
range rings, 992
receive port, 1585
right-click menu, 1563
scenario file to use, 1591
sensor contact line, 988
sensor effects, 1045
sensors, 1430
session, 135
  ID, 1591
shadows, 1030
signature propagator, 1437
simulation management message, 1592
  site ID, 1592
  slot exclusion, 1372
  start mode, 1592
  stereo
    anaglyphic, 1542
    polarized, 1543
  system for MAK RTI, 100
  TDL message, 281
  terrain database
    path, 1586
    to load, 1593
  terrain profile, 1189
  time management, 138
  time stamp order, 1595
  toolbar, 1565
  tracers, 1453, 1615
  track history, 978
  unit
    ammunition, weapons, equipment, 1342
  visual quality slider, 199
confirmation prompt
  plan
    enabling or disabling, 546
  task
    enabling or disabling, 546
connecting
  to network automatically, 158
connection
  configuring in system definition file, 1407
  information, 148
  sensor, 1430
  simulation object group, 1281
Connection Information dialog box, 148
console
  configuring for back-end, 1587
  messages
    sending, 903
    sent to, 177
  object, 429
  setting notification level, 820
constrained
  time, 137
constraint, 1136
  view, 1122
Construct Abatis dialog box, 692
Construct Abatis task, 692
Construct Anti-Tank Ditch dialog box, 693
Construct Anti-Tank Ditch task, 692
Construct Barbed Wire dialog box, 693
Construct Barbed Wire task, 693
Construct Barricade dialog box, 694
Construct Barricade task, 693
Construct Berm dialog box, 694

Construct Berm task, 694
Construct Booby Trap dialog box, 695
Construct Booby Trap task, 694
Construct Bridge dialog box, 695
Construct Bridge task, 695
Construct Dry Gap dialog box, 696
Construct Dry Gap task, 696
Construct Fortified Area dialog box, 696
Construct Fortified Area task, 696
Construct Fortified Line dialog box, 697
Construct Fortified Line task, 697
Construct Minefield dialog box, 698
Construct Minefield task, 697
Construct Strong Point dialog box, 698
Construct Strong Point task, 698
constructing
  abatis, 692
  barbed wire, 693
  barricade, 693
  berm, 694
  fortified line, 697
  strong point, 698
contamination
  agent, 499
  biological, 688
  chemical, 691
  nuclear, 707
  nuclear, biological, chemical, 499-500
  type
    setting, 844
Contamination dialog box, 844
Contamination set data request, 844
context-sensitive menu, 1553
  configuring, 1560, 1563
contrail, 975
contrast, 1045
control
  remote, 86
control object, 918, 1605
  concepts, 918
  copying, 388-389
  count of, 433
  creating, 365
  editing, 953
  list of for scenario, 347
  name, 918
  parameter-type, 1426
  pasting, 388
  pedestrian path, 476, 918
  selecting, 400-401
  spot report, 278
control panel
  gimbaled sensor, 1152
controller, 356
  component, 357
  detonation, 1460, 1619
  dynamic-terrain-munition-damage, 1484
  game, 1502
  indirect fire, 1459, 1617
  indirect fire weapon, 1459, 1617
  joystick, 1504
  lasing, 1458
  launcher, 1458
  making decisions and performing tasks, 357
  missile, 1458-1459
  target selection, 1452, 1457-1458, 1613
controlling
  messages, 177
  remote, 1130
conventional mines, 947
convoy, 578
  behavior, 552
  disallows aggregation, 1329
Convoy Along task, 552, 578
Convoy To task, 552, 578
coordinate
  going to, 1129
  observer, 1099
  point, 1180
coordinate system, 83
  3D, 1102
  3D Cartesian, 773
  Cartesian, 773-774
  changing unit of, 1555
  geocentric, 1166
  Lambert Conformal Conic, 1103
  LCC, 1103
  supported, 1165
  UTM, 1103
copying
  formation, 1336
  objects, 388-389
  performance and, 389
  plan statements, 912
  scripted task, 750
  spawn pattern, 457
corridor, 941
  wind, 326
count
  object, 433
  simulation object, 433
counter measure, 626
  ammo select table, 294
  launching, 294
Counter Measures Auto Launch
  set data request, 295

Counter Measures Auto Launch set data request, 804
Countries list, 1262
country
  marking, 1275
Country, 1262
country code, 1586
Country list, 1262
countryCodesMappingFile parameter, 1586, 1589
cover
  rain accumulation, 318
  snow on ground, 319
CPU time
  giving up, 201
crawling, 822
create
  aerodrome, 1215
  runway, 1215
create-script-id parameter, 738
Create Anti-Tank Ditch dialog box, 693
Create Barbed Wire dialog box, 693
Create Barricade dialog box, 694
Create Berm dialog box, 694
Create Booby Trap dialog box, 695
Create Bridge dialog box, 695
Create Dry Gap dialog box, 696
Create Fortified Area dialog box, 697
Create Fortified Line dialog box, 697
Create global command, 904
Create Indirect Fire dialog box, 299
Create Intelligence Object dialog box, 265
Create menu, 365
  assigning or removing simulation object, 1261
  selecting object, 370
Create Minefield (ADAM-RAAM) dialog box, 702
Create Minefield (Volcano) dialog box, 698
Create Multiple Entities
  dialog box, 473
Create New Entity dialog box, 1278
Create Object
  dialog box, 365
    Attach Mouse to Object, 383
    configuring, 377
  tab, 375
Create Object dialog box, 377
Create Pedestrians dialog box, 471
Create Pedestrians task, 638
Create Route dialog box, 381
Create Scenario Event dialog box, 261
Create Sensor View
  command, 909
Create Spawn Pattern dialog box, 453, 457
Create Strong Point dialog box, 698
Create_Global_Dynamic_Terrain parameter, 345
Create_Global_Environment parameter, 345
Created Object variable, 869
creating, 373
  aggregate-level entity, 1340
  area for multiple entities, 475
  assembly, 1347
  batch file, 253
  behavior set, 558
  booby trap, 694
  civilians, 470
  combat engineering object, 503
  computed route, 944
  control object, 365
  crowd, 470
  crowd unit, 468
  crowds, 468
  cultural feature, 393, 1297
  demonstration recordings, 906
  embedded entity, 674
  entity, 373
    adjusting clipping plane, 379
    fixed-wing, 562
    from existing, 1279
    in buildings, 379
    new, 1278
  fortified area, 696
  fortified line, 697
  freehand line, 937
  global plan, 896
  herd area, 470
  herd unit, 469
  If block, 876
  indirect fire event, 298
  inset view, 1146
  joint engagement zone altitude limited, 941
  joystick configuration, 1505
  key map, 1575
  minefield
    aggregate, 697
    entity, 947
  missile engagement zone altitude limited, 941
  navigation area, 1199
  new scenario, 213
  object, 365-366, 370, 375
    in plan, 904
    mouse with, 383
    setting properties, 377
  objects, 370
  observer mode, 1087
  overlay, 929
  pedestrian area, 470
  plans, 875

prop, 373, 394
range lines, 1060
reactive task, 743
scenario event, 260
script, 717
scripted set, 742
selection group, 403
selection group from menu, 403
simulation model set, 1244
simulation object, 365, 370, 375
from existing, 1279
group, 1280
multiple, 472
simulation objects
multiple, 468
sink points, 448
snapshot, 250
spawn points, 447
strong point, 698
system definition file, 1406
tactical graphics, 373, 937
text object, 942
unit, 518, 1329
aggregation state, 521
entity, 518
user-defined formation, 1491
window layout, 1548
crepuscular ray, 1022
crew
air base, 849
crosswalk, 476
crouching, 822
crowd
adding members, 638
creating, 468, 470
disallows aggregation, 1329
dispersing, 642
gathering around object, 640
gathering at location, 639
gathering at waypoints, 640
performance, 811
protesting, 648-649
rioting, 649
unit
creating, 468
wander, 651
Crowd Along Line dialog box, 639
Crowd Along Line task, 639
Crowd Around Location task, 639
Crowd Around Object task, 640
Crowd Around Waypoints task, 640
Crowd in Front of Entity dialog box, 641
Crowd in Front of Entity task, 641
cruise missile
firing, 620
CSV
file, 577
CSV file, 303, 1319, 1322
configuring for ballistic missile or animated movement, 1324
importing objects from, 227
cube map
recalculating, 1024
culling
face front, 1041
occlusion, 159
cultural-feature-param parameter, 1401, 1606
cultural-feature-state-repository, 1401
cultural feature, 393, 1297
aligning to gravity, 1302
creating, 365-366, 370, 375
embedding in terrain, 394, 1302
ground clamping, 1302
heading
setting, 382
information, 409
pitch
setting, 382
Current Speed dialog box, 805
Current Speed set data request, 804
cursor, 373-374
curvature of the earth
display mode, 999
custom
overlay name, 1261
plan, 446, 452, 456


## D


daemon
running vrfSim as, 1586
starting back-end as, 169
daemon parameter, 1586
damage
actuator, 1476, 1626, 1630
calculating, 1470, 1620
collateral, 1637
displaying, 1272
dynamic terrain, 1484
file, 1427
model, 1310-1311
specifying, 1312
probability, 1625
probability table, 1456, 1617

damage-by-ammo-type, 1456, 1470, 1617, 1621, 1629
  example, 1636
damage-by-munition-power block, 1475, 1625
damage-by-power, 1456, 1470, 1478, 1617, 1621, 1628
  adding new, 1477, 1627
  configuring, 1470, 1621
  damage file, 1475, 1625
  terrain, 1484
damage-by-power-entry, 1476, 1625
damage-model block, 1475, 1625, 1629, 1637
damage file, 1451, 1470, 1612, 1621, 1625, 1635, 1638
  damage-by-power, 1475, 1625
damage system, 1451, 1456, 1470, 1612, 1617, 1621, 1634, 1637
  migrating to new release, 1242
damage table, 1629
dashed line, 957
data
  configuring frequency of sends, 1587
  directory, 96
    specifying location of, 158, 1228
  effect, 1481
  elevation, 1163
  input, 1402
  kill, 1481
  path, 1194
  port, 356
  synchronizing, 120
data directory
  back-end, 169
    user, 172
data distribution management, 191-192
  See also DDM, 191
data type
  state property, 1417
database, 1165
  large, 1166
  loading, 1166
  object parameter, 1392
  paging, 1167
  terrain, 83
    loading, 139
    provided, 1183
date, 311
  format, 312
  setting, 311-312
  simulation, 221
Date and Time page, 222-223, 312-313
datumShiftX parameter, 1586
datumShiftY parameter, 1586
datumShiftZ parameter, 1586
day-night-transition-time is parameter, 1440
daylight
  controlling light, 1018
daylight-illumination parameter, 1440
DDM, 191-192
  region size, 192
Deactivate Jammer task, 698
deactivating
  indirect fire, 959
  jammer, 698
  spawn points, 448
dead-reckoning, 199, 1590
dead reckoning
  changing for fast forward, 243
debug mode
  running from vrfLauncher, 177
debug overlay, 206
debugging
  Navigation Lab, 1587
decal effects, 975
  enabling and disabling, 975
  models, 976
decay rate for spot reports, 277
decision making, 357
decreasing speed of navigation, 1122
deep-snow-depth parameter, 362
default
  formation, 1335
  joystick configuration, 1515
  name, 375
  plan, 446, 452, 456
  Set commands, 793
  settings
    restoring, 118
  simulation model set, 158
    configuration, 219
  simulation model set configuration, 220-221
  spawn pattern, 453
  value
    parameter, 348
  variable binding value, 1412
  view, 1127
default-task-rules.tsk, 570, 736
default overlay
  specifying, 1261
default_guiConfiguration.gui, 1418, 1560
default_guiSimpleScenarioPlayer.gui, 1560
default_ModelPreload.mpsx
  file, 204
DefaultEllipsoidArc
  model definition, 1064
defaultHeartbeatThreshold parameter, 1595

defaultObjectTimeout parameter, 1595
DefaultObserverView parameter, 345
defaultParameterDatabasePath parameter, 346, 1586
defaultSpawnTemplates.mtl, 453
defaultTerrainDatabasePath parameter, 346, 1586
defense parameter
  editing, 1359
defensive
  measure, 626
  movement, 707
delay parameter, 1485
Delete Checkpoints dialog box, 249
Delete Object global command, 904
Delete Self
  command, 452
Delete Self global command, 904
deleting
  aircraft assignment, 842-843
  articulated parts, 1309
  assembly, 1349
  channel, 1528
  checkpoints, 249
  entity, 392
    from simulation model set, 1280
  extended label, 425
  intervisibility object, 1059
  key map, 1575
  key mapping, 1573
  messages from object console, 433
  object, 1280
    in plan, 904
  object from OOB, 482
  object from selection group, 405
  observer, 1093
    mode, 1089
  overlay, 931
    object, 952
  plan statement, 882-883
  plug-in
    configuration, 154
    XML file, 154
  scenario event, 271
  script, 751
  selection group, 405
  simulation object, 392
    in plan, 904
  snapshots, 251
  spawn pattern, 459
  tag, 1248-1249
  trigger, 881
  unit, 527
  vertex, 955
  view, 1126
  window, 1528
  window layout, 1551
Deliberate-Attack
  posture, 497
Deliberate-Defense
  posture, 497
demonstration
  creating, 906
  mode, 1552
Deploy Refueling Boom task, 671
Deploy Sonobuoy task, 676
Deploy Sonobuoys Along Route task, 676
deploying
  embedded entity, 674
    with task, 675
  sonobuoy, 676
depth
  bits, 158
  buffer, 196
  focal, 1155
  moving to, 592
  rain, 318
  snow, 319
  sonar, 830
depth charge, 613-614, 619
depth of field, 1155
  configuring, 1157
  enabling and disabling, 1155
descent rate, 583
description
  script, 725
  spawn pattern, 454
designator, 354
  laser beam, 287
Designer, 786
destAddrString parameter, 1596
destination address, 167, 173, 1596
destroy-script-id parameter, 738
Destroy Bridge dialog box, 699
Destroy Bridge task, 699
Destroy Ditch dialog box, 699
Destroy Ditch task, 696, 699
Destroy Explosive dialog box, 700
Destroy Explosive task, 699
Destroy Fortification dialog box, 700
Destroy Fortification task, 700
Destroy Obstacle dialog box, 700
Destroy Obstacle task, 700
destroyed
  setting simulation object to, 805
Destroyed set data request, 805
destroyFedExec parameter, 1594

destroying
  booby trap, 699
  bridge, 699
  ditch, 699
  federation execution, 1594
  fortification, 700
  obstacle, 700
  unexploded ordnance, 699
destructible
  terrain, 1183
detaching
  observer from object, 1135
detachment
  simulation object icon, 1006
Detect Entity condition, 865
Detected CID level, 285
detecting
  targets, 285
detecting target, 1451, 1613
detection-types parameter, 1451, 1613
detection table, 285, 1441
detection types
  sensor, 1437
determinant
  coefficients, 1477, 1627
  direct, 1474, 1624
  equivalent-tnt-mass, 1474, 1624
  power, 1472, 1622
  range-coefficients, 1473, 1624
  range-list, 1473, 1624
determinant block, 1476, 1626
detonating
  IED and car bomb, 805
detonation
  configuring power of, 1471, 1622
  effects, 981
  event
    mapping sound effects to, 1072
    sound effects, 1070
  line, 981
  proximity, 1460, 1619
detonation-munition parameter, 1485
detonation-on-destroy parameter, 1485
detonation-power-entry, 1470, 1621
detonation controller, 1460, 1619
Detonation Fuse Type dialog box, 805
Detonation Fuse Type set data request, 805
detonation interaction, 1459
detonation result, 1486
detonationParams.mtl, 1460, 1470, 1476-1477, 1486, 1618, 1621, 1625, 1627, 1634, 1636
developer debug overlay, 206
Device address, 167, 174
deviceAddress parameter, 1596
DI-Guy
  action table, 1389
  adding new characters, 1388
  animation
    adding, 1389
    testing for, 866
    urgency, 837
  appearance
    testing for, 866
  character data file, 169
  choosing animation, 1390
  configuring, 1586
    animations and appearances, 169
    character and appearance, 1303, 1388
    use of, 1594
  displaying in vehicle, 1011
  hand item
    hiding, 831
  instancing, 205
  integration with VR-Forces, 641
  license, 87
  motion file, 1389
  performance, 205
DI-Guy Animation task, 641
DI-Guy Characteristics dialog box, 806
DI-Guy Characteristics set data request, 806
DI-Guy Gesture task, 641
DI-Guy Hand Item dialog box, 806
DI-Guy Hand Item set data request, 806
DI-Guy Settings page, 205
dialog box
  Active Sonar Mode, 798
  Activity, 841
  Add Conditional Expression, 861
  Add Group of Entities, 475
  Add Jamming Target, 798
  Add to Order of Battle, 479
  Advanced Visual Model Editing, 1274
  Aggregate As, 1328
  AI Enabled, 799
  Aiming, 799
  Air-to-Air Attack, 684
  Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack, 685
  Air-to-Ground Attack, 685
  Allow Crossing, 963
  Altitude, 800
  Ammunition, 841
  Ammunition Pacing/Tracking, 842
  Animated Movement, 577, 1324
  Appearance, 801
  Application Settings, 236, 526
    File Caching Settings page, 193

General Application Settings page, 133, 142
GUI Settings page, 546
Key Mapping Editor page, 1571, 1575
Mouse Mappings page, 1108
Performance Options page, 200
Performance Settings page, 199
Script Settings page, 188, 733, 753
Spot Report Settings page, 275-276, 278-280, 831
Armed, 801
Arrowhead Style, 963
Articulated Part, 801
Assign Aircraft, 842-843
Assume Unknown is Hostile, 802
Attack By Fire, 686
Attack with Anti-Air Missile, 686
Attack with Anti-Ship Missile, 686
Attack with Land-Attack Missile, 687
Attack with Torpedo, 687
Attention Grabbing, 802
Audio Settings, 1070-1071
Auto Launch, 804
Automatically Close Doors, 802
Ballistic Missiles, 1320, 1324
Biological Attack, 688
Bomb Location, 688
Breach Obstacles, 689
capabilities, 803
Change Hostility, 284
Change MOPP Level, 691
Change Posture, 691
Chemical Attack, 692
Collision Avoidance Types, 803
Color, 964
Concealed, 804
conditional statement, 883, 893
configuring, 1561
Connection Information, 148
Construct Abatis, 692
Construct Anti-Tank Ditch, 693
Construct Barbed Wire, 693
Construct Barricade, 694
Construct Berm, 694
Construct Booby Trap, 695
Construct Bridge, 695
Construct Dry Gap, 696
Construct Fortified Area, 696
Construct Fortified Line, 697
Construct Minefield, 698
Construct Strong Point, 698
Contamination, 844
Create Anti-Tank Ditch, 693
Create Barbed Wire, 693
Create Barricade, 694
Create Berm, 694
Create Booby Trap, 695
Create Bridge, 695
Create Dry Gap, 696
Create Fortified Area, 697
Create Fortified Line, 697
Create Indirect Fire, 299
Create Intelligence Object, 265
Create Minefield (ADAM-RAAM), 702
Create Minefield (Volcano), 698
Create Multiple Entities, 473
Create New Entity, 1278
Create Object, 365
configuring, 377
Create Pedestrians, 471
Create Route, 381
Create Scenario Event, 261
Create Spawn Pattern, 453, 457
Create Strong Point, 698
Crowd Along Line, 639
Crowd in Front of Entity, 641
Current Speed, 805
Delete Checkpoints, 249
Destroy Bridge, 699
Destroy Ditch, 699
Destroy Explosive, 700
Destroy Fortification, 700
Destroy Obstacle, 700
Detonation Fuse Type, 805
DI-Guy Characteristics, 806
DI-Guy Hand Item, 806
Display Settings, 118, 291, 1011, 1580
Cockpit Display Settings page, 1148
Display Units Settings page, 1556
Entity Display Settings page, 418-420, 426-427, 433, 985, 997, 1002, 1006, 1008, 1039, 1042, 1095, 1168-1169
Grid Lines Settings page, 1173
Indirect Fire Settings page, 302
Interest Management Settings page, 192
Intervisibility Settings page, 1053-1054, 1056-1058
Lighting Render Settings page, 1016-1017
Observer Settings page, 329, 429, 975, 978, 981, 986, 991, 996, 1010-1011, 1018, 1035, 1087, 1089-1090, 1093, 1101, 1109, 1120-1121, 1123, 1152, 1156, 1172, 1177
Ocean Settings page, 332-333, 1019-1020, 1024, 1036, 1039
Radio Communications Settings page, 998, 1000
Range Rings Settings tab, 992

Render Settings page, 188, 190, 197-198, 202, 1023, 1157, 1174, 1534
Sensor Settings page, 1046-1047
Shadow Settings page, 1028, 1031
SpeedTree Settings page, 1030
Symbol Decoration Settings page, 420-421
Tactical Graphics Display Settings page, 923-924, 957, 968
Terrain Profile Settings page, 1059
Track History Settings page, 979
Unit Display Settings page, 533, 536-537, 983, 995
Edit Activities, 1352
Edit Behavior Sets, 558-560
Edit Spawn Pattern, 458
Edit Trigger Condition, 878
Embark On, 438, 657
Embarked, 807
Emitter, 808
Engagement Results, 845
Engagement Zones, 809
Environment Conditions, 222-223, 312-313, 320
Environmental Object Information, 409
Equipment Pacing/Tracking, 845
Escort Air Unit, 701
Execute Close Air Support, 617
Experimental Features, 334, 1115, 1117
Export Object Information, 1247
Facilities, 846
Fill Style, 964
Find Cover, 643
Find Firing Position, 644
Fire Cruise Missile, 620
Fixed Wing Takeoff, 582
Flee From Entities, 646
Fly Creeping Line Pattern, 604
Fly Expanding Square Pattern, 606
Fly Heading, 584
Fly Heading and Altitude, 583
Fly Loiter Pattern, 585
Fly Parallel Pattern, 608
Follow Entity, 585
Food, Water, Motor-Gas, Aviation-Fuel, Diesel Fuel, Oil, Lubricant, 847
Food, Water, Motor-Gas, Aviation-Fuel, Diesel Fuel, Oil, Lubricant Pacing/Tracking, 847
for IFF transponder, 813
Force, 809
Formation, 810
Freeze Fuel Levels, 810
Freeze Movement, 811
Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans, 464
Has Drag Chute, 847
Heading, 812
Health, 848
If/Else Expression, 876
Import Object Information, 1248
Improve Booby Trap, 702
Improve Breach, 702
Improve Bridge, 703
Improve Ditch, 703
Improve Fortification, 703
Improve Obstacle, 704
Indirect Fire, 704
information
configuring, 1562
Information, 409, 427
displaying state properties, 1418
Initial Scenario Information, 213, 220-221
Invulnerable, 814
Jammer State, 814
Jamming Mode, 814
Land at Air Base, 705
Lase Autonomous, 815
Laser Code, 815
Laser Power and Wavelength, 816
Launch Flight, 706
Launch QRA Aircraft, 707
License Setup, 97
Line Width, 964
Load Batch File, 255
Load Overlays, 932
Loadout, 848
Location, 817
locking, 1566
Look At, 817
MAK radio
standalone application, 1075
Manage Reactive Task, 556
Manage Reactive Tasks, 476
Markings, 818
MOPP Level, 849
Morale, 849
Move Along Route, 587
Move Along Route with Actions, 589
Move Between Cover to Location, 647
Move Into Formation, 591
Move to Depth, 592
Move to Location, 592
Move to Waypoint, 595
Munition Target Settings, 299, 302, 304, 306
Navigation Enabled, 819
Navigation Preferences, 819
New Scenario, 251, 340
Notify Level, 820
Nuclear Attack, 708

Object Visible to Sensor At, 266
Open Car Door, 672
Open Model Set, 1230, 1243
Orbit Object, 597
Ordered Speed, 821
pages
  configuring, 1560
Patrol Between, 598
Patrol Route, 598
Pattern Hold (Location), 599
Pattern Hold (Waypoint), 600
Pen Style, 965
Percent Complete, 849
Performance Settings, 198
  configuring slider, 199
Personnel, 850
Pitch, 821
Place IED, 628
Plug-ins, 149
Posture, 822, 850
Preferred Targets, 850
Preferred Trajectory Height, 823
Prepare Aircraft for QRA Status, 708
Protest Along Line, 648
Protest Around Location, 649
Radar Mode, 823
Refuel from Tanker, 709
Refueling Mission, 709
Register Trigger, 880
Remove Jamming Target, 824
Resources, 825
Resources Pacing/Tracking, 851
Resupply Mode, 851
Riot, 649
Role, 852
Rotary Wing Land, 601
Rules of Engagement, 826
Sail Heading, 602
Save Scenario, 231
Scenario Event, 268
Scenario Properties, 237
Scenario Snapshots, 245, 248, 250-251
Scenario Startup, 126-127
Sector of Responsibility, 828
Sector Search Operation, 675
Send NBC Report, 710
Send Obstacle Report, 710
Sensor Field of View Color, 828
Simulation Connections Configuration, 149
Sonar Depth, 830
Spot Reports, 831
Squad Travel to Waypoint, 650
Stow Hand Item, 832
Strafe Ground Target, 633
Subsystem Enabled, 832
Superior, 832
Supplying, 852
Surrendered, 833
Synchronize Laser Code, 833
Target, 834
Target Priority List - Update, 835
TDL Messaging, 836
Terrain Settings
  Earth Layers page, 1176
  Visible Surfaces page, 1182
Throw Grenade at Location, 634
Throw Grenade at Target, 634
Tracer Use, 836
Turn to Heading, 609
Undetectable, 836
Unit State, 837
User Task, 678
Visual Markings, 1276
Wait Duration, 670
Wait Elapsed, 670
Wait for Escort, 711
Wait in Queue, 651
Wait Until Expression, 878
Weapons Pacing/Tracking, 853
Weather, 322
While Expression, 877
Window Layout Manager, 1548
Zig Zag to Heading, 610
diamond dust area, 325
diffuse
  color, 1016
digging
  anti-tank
    ditch, 692
diGuyAnimationsFile parameter, 1586
dipping
  sonar, 677
direct determinant, 1474, 1624
direct fire weapon
  configuring, 1450, 1612
direct fire weapon system
  damage-by-ammo-type
    example, 1636
  damage-by-power
    example, 1631
direction
  line
    changing, 956
  Lua, 772
  tidal current, 328, 332
  wind, 314

directory
  appData, 174
  back-end data, 169
  back-end user data, 172
  data, 96
  installed, 94
DIS
  command-line options, 180
  configuring, 1595-1596
  Enumeration Document, 114
  exercise ID, 168, 175
  heartbeat
    threshold, 1595
  IPV6, 175
  port, 167, 175
  port number, 180
  self reflection, 175
  specifying broadcast modes, 181
  starting in, 158
  startup tutorial, 128
  timeout, 169
DIS Enumeration Document, 1393
DIS Enumerations Document, 1486
disable_if_checked, 1414
disable_if_multiple_selection, 1414
disabled-by-suppression parameter, 569
disableParallelTick parameter, 1586
disabling
  advisory messages, 1595
  buoyancy, 1040
  cockpit displays, 1147
  creation of a simulation object type, 1261
  decal effects, 975
  editing of overlay, 929
  entity labels, 419
  environment, 1027
  frame rate statistics, 1588
  indirect fire event, 962
  intervisibility, 1057
  joystick, 1504
  joystick use, 1502
  periodic checkpointing, 249
  quit prompt, 141
  radar jamming, 814
  radio communication lines, 998
  range rings, 988, 991
  reactive task, 554
  rotor wash, 1038
    high quality, 1039
  scenario event, 270
  Scenario Startup dialog box, 127
  sensor contact line, 986
  shadows, 1028
  speed scaling, 1122
  spot report, 274
  spot report for simulation object, 831
  squawk indicators, 998
  tactical smoke, 995
  terrain dragging, 1109
  track histories for all simulation objects, 978
  trailing effects, 975
  view constraint, 379
  wireframe mode, 1174
disabling entity systems, 832
disaggregated state
  unit, 524
disaggregated unit, 488
disaggregation
  area, 526-527, 918
  automatic, 526
  manual, 526
disaggregation range, 526
disembark, 441
  all entities on parent, 441
Disembark
  command, 440
Disembark All task, 655
Disembark task, 655
Disembarked set data request, 440, 807
disembarked status
  testing for, 866
disembarking
  entities, 436
  entity, 807
  instantly, 441
Dismount Helicopter task, 666
dispersal-angle parameter, 632
Disperse Crowd task, 642
dispersing
  crowd, 642
display
  dragging, 1111
  field of view, 1535
  loading configuration, 159
  navigating, 1099
  perspective, 1535
  remote, 203
  time
    format, 313
  unit
    changing, 1555
display engine, 1524
  configuration, 1524
    loading, 1528
    saving, 1528

window
adding, 1524
Display Engine Configuration Editor Panel, 1090, 1524, 1528, 1530
display mode
curvature of the earth, 999
Display Settings dialog box, 118, 291, 1011, 1580
Cockpit Display Settings page, 1148
Display Units Settings page, 1556
Entity Display Settings page, 418-420, 426-427, 433, 985, 997, 1002, 1006, 1008, 1039, 1042, 1095, 1168-1169
Grid Lines Settings page, 1173
High Dynamic Range Settings page, 1025
Indirect Fire Settings page, 302
Interest Management Settings page, 192
Intervisibility Settings page, 1053-1054, 1056-1058
Lighting Render Settings page, 1016-1017
Observer Settings page, 329, 429, 975, 978, 981, 986, 991, 996, 1010-1011, 1018, 1035, 1087, 1089-1090, 1093, 1101, 1109, 1120-1121, 1123, 1152, 1156, 1172, 1177
Ocean Settings page, 332-333, 1019-1020, 1024, 1036, 1039
Radio Communications Settings page, 998, 1000
Range Rings Settings tab, 992
Render Settings page, 188, 190, 197-198, 202, 1023, 1157, 1174, 1534
Sensor Settings page, 1046-1047
Shadow Settings page, 1028, 1031
SpeedTree Settings page, 1030
Symbol Decoration Settings page, 420-421
Tactical Graphics Display Settings page, 923-924, 957, 968
Terrain Profile Settings page, 1059
Track History Settings page, 979
Unit Display Settings page, 533, 536-537, 983, 995
Display Settings Toolbar, 421
Display Terrain parameter, 216
Display Units Settings page, 426, 924, 1556
displaying
articulated part, 1272
bounding volume, 1272
damage, 1272
entity information, 416
environment setting, 1273
feature data, 1176
full screen, 1552
grid line, 1172
hand item, 831
height-above-terrain lines, 426, 924
hidden panels, 1547
intervisibility
lines, 1057
object, 1054
label
2D, 420
entity, 417
laser designator, 994
markers and marker labels, 1273
navigation data, 1210
objects, 922-923
other MAK 3D GUI viewers, 1095
panel, 1547
performance statistics, 188
persistent tracks, 977
range rings, 988
globally, 988, 991
on bullseye, 951
per entity, 988, 992
resources, 427
scenario information, 235
Scenario Startup dialog box, 127
segment outlines, 1067
stealth models, 1095
switch node, 1272
tactical graphics, 923, 959, 962
terrain profile
creating line, 943
toolbars, 1547
track histories, 978
trailing effects, 975
transient intervisibility, 1053
vertex labels, 924
view, 1126
visual effect, 1274
disPort parameter, 1596
distance
specifying unit, 1555
viewing
bullseye, 950
range line, 1060
Distance To Attached
policy, 1533
Distributed Interactive Simulation, 92
See also DIS, 92
ditch
anti-tank
digging, 692
building, 696
destroying, 699
improving, 703

DLL, 149
  plug-in
    removing, 153
  specifying for plug-in, 152
Do Until Interrupt statement, 859, 864
dockable panel, 1546
docking
  panel, 1546
  toolbar, 1547
    vertically, 1547
documentation, location of, 96
domain
  power, 1471, 1622
doNotUseConsole parameter, 1587
door
  car
    closing, 671
    opening, 672
  cargo
    closing, 671
    opening, 672
  closing, 638
  opening, 647
dotted line, 957
Douglas sea state, 328, 331
dr-allow-gui-overrides parameter, 199
drag-and-drop
  canceling, 386
drag and drop
  plan statements, 912
drag chute
  setting for aggregate air unit, 847
dragging
  canceling move, 386
  object to new location, 384
  objects, 817
  simulation object, 384
  terrain, 1108
  view, 1111
drainInput
  configuring, 1588
    for DIS, 1596
    for HLA, 1595
draw call
  coloring, 201
drawing
  arc, 939
  area, 937
  box, 941
  circle, 938
  ellipse, 938
  spider web, 940
driver
  embaring as, 657
  slot, 657
driving
  left or right side or road, 561
  on and off roads, 560
  on roads, 561
Drop Fuel Tanks task, 701
Drop Naval Depth Charge at Location task, 614
Drop Naval Depth Charge task, 613
Drop Naval Mine task, 614
Drop Naval Mines Along Route task, 616
drop slots
  number available, 576, 658
  specified for entity, 658
dropping
  mine, 614, 616
dropping bomb, 631
dropping from exercise, 113
dry gap
  building, 696
DtSimComponentManager class, 1398
DtSimObjectNetInterface class, 1397
DtSimObjectStateRepository class, 1397
DtSimTaskManager class, 1397
DtVrfObject class, 1397
duplicate
  key mapping, 1574
dust
  blowing in the wind, 324
dust cloud, 975
dynamic-terrain-munition-damage controller, 1484
dynamic-terrain-type parameter, 1485
dynamic avoidance, 1198
dynamic lighting, 1017
dynamic linked library, 149
Dynamic Near Clip Attached Policy
  attribute, 1533
dynamic ocean, 85, 328
  enabling and disabling, 329
  rotor wash
    enabling and disabling, 1038
  wake and spray
    disabling, 1039
dynamic terrain, 158
  damage
    high fidelity, 1485
  global dynamic terrain processor, 217
  navigation data regeneration, 1206
dynamic terrain damage, 1484
Dynamic Water Visibility Enabled
  attribute, 1538

Dynamic Water Visibility Maximum
  attribute, 1538

## E

earth file, 88, 1164
  hiding layers, 1175
Earth Layers page, 1176
echelon-level parameter, 1426
echelon ID, 352, 354
  assignment of, 355
  unit member, 489
echelon level
  ghosted icons by, 534
ECW, 1163
Edit Activities dialog box, 1352
Edit Behavior Sets dialog box, 558-560
Edit Spawn Pattern dialog box, 458
Edit Trigger Condition dialog box, 878
editing, 322
  aircraft assignment, 842
  articulated parts, 1308
  assembly, 1348
  attack parameters, 1357
  batch file, 253
  channel attributes, 1529
  control object, 953
  defense parameters, 1359
  electronic warfare parameters, 1360
  ellipse, 956
  embarkation ingress and egress points, 1493
  entity model, 1257
  equipment parameters, 1360
  fill style, 957
  force hostility, 283
  formation, 1332
  frustum, 1535
  indirect fire event, 301
  intervisibility object, 1054
  key maps, 1570-1571
  line, 957
  Lua scripts, 753
  model
    visual, 1265
  movement system properties, 1355
  name
    object, 388
  navigation area, 1202
  object
    in OOB, 482
    location, heading, altitude, 386
    scene, 953
  object map file, 347
  object parameters, 1257
  observer mode, 1089
  overlay and overlay object, 929
  parameter, 1300
  personnel parameters, 1360
  plan, 875
    file, 346
    statements, 882
  plans, 875
  posture
    transition time, 1356
  scenario description, 237
  scenario file, 340
  scenario properties, 235
  script ID, 723
  scripted task, 747
  sensor, 1431
  sensor parameters, 1357
  sensor signature, 1432
  Set menu, 1565
  simulation object, 1227
    property, 1303
  simulation objects, 386
  spawn pattern, 457
  supplies parameters, 1361
  system
    properties, 1312
  tactical graphic, 953
    property, 1283
    visual model, 1284
  Task menu, 1564
  unit, 1329
  unit subordinate, 1332
  vertex, 954
  weather zone
    environment, 322
  window attributes, 1529
effect
  fire and detonation, 981
  lighting, 85
  ocean, 328
  trailing, 975
effect data, 1481
egress
  technique, 1373
egress-points parameter, 1493
egress point, 1366, 1493
  configuring, 1374
electromagnetic emissions, 808, 996
  segment angle, 1066
  sensing, 509

electronic
  emission
    sensing, 507
  warfare, 507-509
electronic warfare, 289, 507
electronic warfare parameter
  editing, 1360
element
  informationitem, 1563
  informationpagecollection, 1562
  mainmenu, 1560
  mainmenuconfiguration, 1560
  menuitem, 1564
  pagecollection, 1561
  pagecollections, 1561
  rightclickmenu, 1563
  toolbar, 1566
  toolbarrow, 1566
element definition
  changing type, 1274
  common buttons, 1553
  exporting, 1277
  importing, 1276
  pruning, 1277
  spot report
    regenerating, 1268
element_type, 1414
elevation
  data, 1163
  intervisibility point
    configuring, 1055
  snow cover, 319
ellipse
  drawing, 938
  extruded, 941
  rotating, 956
  undoing and redoing rotation, 956
ellipsoid
  reference, 1586, 1592
EM-Emission update message, 1065
Embark On
  command, 438
Embark On dialog box, 438, 657
Embark task, 437, 656
embarkation
  automatic, 439
  condition, 866
  configuring, 1366
    slot exclusions, 1372
  editing ingress and egress points, 1493
  egress point, 1374
  embedded entity alternative, 441
  immediate, 438
  ingress point, 1374
  instant, 439
  occupancy-director-controller, 1493
  slot, 1493
    configuring, 1368, 1374
    ingress and egress technique, 1373
embarkation-slot-entry parameter, 1493
embarkation-slots parameter, 1493
Embarkation View, 398, 436, 438, 441
  embarking objects in, 439
Embarked dialog box, 807
embarked object
  information, 411
Embarked set data request, 438, 807
embarking
  entities, 380, 436
  humans in cars, 657
  in Embarkation View, 439
  instantly, 438
embedded entity, 441, 674
  assigning tasks to, 444
  configuring, 442
  deploying, 674
  deploying with task, 675
  recovering, 674
  restoring parent, 444
  Simulation Object Editor, 442
  system, 442
embedded window, 1524
Emergency Beacon set data request, 807
emergency transponder
  set data request, 807
emission sensor, 509
emissions-sensor system, 509
emitter, 823
  beam, 293, 808
  configuring, 1496
  ID, 808
  information, 411
  setting, 808
  systems, 996
Emitter dialog box, 808
emitter ID
  jammer, 814
Emitter Power, 1065
Emitter set data request, 684, 698, 808
emitter volume
  color, 1064
  configuring, 1064
  outlines, 1067
  pulse rate, 1064
  radius, 1065
  segment angle, 1066

segment size, 1065
empty units, 1329
enable_if_checked, 1414
enableLogFileTimestamps parameter, 1587
enableNavigationLabDebugging parameter, 1203, 1587
enableVSync command-line option, 202
enabling
advisory messages, 1595
buoyancy, 1040
cockpit displays, 1147
creation of a simulation object type, 1261
decal effects, 975
editing of overlay, 929
entity labels, 419
frame rate statistics, 1588
intervisibility, 1057
joystick use, 1502
marine effects, 329
periodic snapshot, 250
radar jamming, 814
radio communication lines, 998
range rings, 988, 991
reactive task, 554
rotor wash, 1038
high quality, 1039
scenario event, 270
Scenario Startup dialog box, 127
sensor contact line, 986
shadows, 1028
sound effects, 1070-1071
speed scaling, 1122
spot report, 274
simulation object, 831
squawk indicator, 998
tactical smoke, 995
time management, 138
in back-end, 138, 180
track histories for all simulation objects, 978
tracks, 975
trailing effects, 975
wireframe mode, 1174
enabling entity systems, 832
ending
scenario, 246
scenario event, 269
engagement
information, 414
Engagement Results dialog box, 845
Engagement Results set data request, 845
engagement rules, 826
engagement zone, 801, 809
joint
creating, 941
missile
creating, 941
Engagement Zone
set data request, 809
Engagement Zones dialog box, 809
Engineering Object Breached condition, 865
Engineering Object Information page, 503
entity
adding to Props Palette, 395
aggregate-level
creating, 1340
parameters, 1352
aircraft
attacking with gun, 613
altitude
displaying, 426
testing, 865
animation, 577
attaching observer to, 1132, 1136
avoiding obstacles, features, and collisions, 359
body frame coordinate system, 1102
bounding volume, 428-429
centering observer on, 1119
clamping to ground, 1168
component
attaching to remote, 1518
components, 1402
configuring
emitter, 1496
obstruction avoidance, 1492
console message, 429
controlling by keyboard, 1504
controlling with joystick, 1502
copying, 388-389
count, 433
creating, 365-366, 370, 373, 375
from existing, 1279
in Simulation Object Editor, 1278
creating group of, 472
creating in plan, 904
cultural feature
embedding in terrain, 394
deleting, 392
from simulation model set, 1280
deleting in plan, 904
disembarking, 436, 807
all, 441
display settings, 160
dragging, 384
editing, 386, 1227

embarkation
  configuring, 1366
  testing, 866
embarking, 380, 436
embedded, 441
enumeration
  in condition, 892
  in plan, 894
extents
  zooming on scenario load, 1118
filtering, 191-192
  attachment list, 1135
fixed-wing, 562
following
  entity, 585
  route, 586
following route with actions, 588
generating navigation data, 1207
ghosted, 532
ground
  road driving, 560
ground clamping, 1169
heading
  setting, 382
icon
  changing size, 1006
image
  adding, 1271
inset view, 1146
instrument panel
  configuring, 1150
intervisibility, 1051
label, 420
  2D, 417, 420
  3D, 416
  color, 416
  enabling and disabling, 419
  pinning to display, 419
level body frame coordinate system, 1102
mapping sound effects to, 1072
messages
  viewing, 430
model, 1229
  adding visual, 1271
  editing, 1257
  editing visual, 1265
movement
  scripted, 1319
moving, 384
moving to
  altitude, 591
  location, 592
  object or entity, 595
name, 416
  changing, 386
  pasting, 390
notification level
  object console, 430
object geometry, 1300
organization, 354
pasting
  control object, 389-390
patrolling between, 598
patrolling route, 598
pitch
  setting, 382
placing, 375
  new, 379
  on entity, 380
platform
  updating, 1246
primary, 1138, 1140
properties
  specifying at creation, 377
random creation of, 393
range ring, 992
resource
  at creation, 384
  monitoring, 427
saving console messages, 432
scaling
  3D model, 1008
secondary, 1138, 1140
See also simulation object, 79
setting
  collision avoidance types, 803
  target, 833
shadows, 1028
sound effects, 1070
spawned, 446
spawning
  maximum simultaneous, 454
specifying for multiple entity creation, 475
surface
  buoyancy, 1040
symbol
  changing color, 1253
system
  disabling, 832
  enabling, 832
  status, 411
systems, 1310
tag
  changing, 1257
task
  visualizing, 984-985

trailing effects, 975
type
enumeration, 416
unit, 518
velocity
publishing, 1590
visual markings, 818, 1275
VR-Forces, 114
wake
enabling and disabling, 1039
ways to add to scenario, 224
zooming to extents, 1117
entity-level
modeling, 358
entity-level modeling, 485
entity-range parameter, 1455, 1615
entity-type parameter, 1455, 1616
Entity Altitude condition, 865
Entity Behavior Settings page, 521, 526, 561
Entity Control Panel, 575, 821
Entity Definition Editor page, 1068
Entity Destroyed condition, 865
Entity Di-Guy Animation Check condition, 866
Entity Di-Guy Appearance Check condition, 866
Entity Display Settings page, 418-420, 426-427, 433, 985, 997, 1002, 1006, 1008, 1011, 1039, 1042, 1095, 1168-1169
Entity Editor. See Simulation Object Editor, 1225
Entity Embarked condition, 866
entity enumeration
changing, 1258
entity file
importing, 1246
Entity Has Target condition, 866
Entity In Area
condition, 866
Entity In Area condition, 941
Entity Left of Line condition, 867
entity plan, 858
Entity Resource Manager, 1615
entity state repository, 1453, 1614
entity type
changing, 1258
Entity Under Fire condition, 867
entityDestroyed() function, 760
EntityLevel.sms, 359
entrance
embarkation, 1374
entry point
scripted task, 759
entVrfDataTimeThreshold parameter, 1587
enumeration, 1393
entity
changing, 1258
for condition patterns, 894
in condition, 892
object type, 1606
published and matching, 1394
environment
disabling, 1027
global, 217
loading configuration, 160
weather zone, 322
editing, 322
environment condition
marine
setting, 330
Environment Conditions dialog box, 222-223, 312-313, 320
environment setting
displaying, 1273
Environment Settings toolbar, 222-223, 312-313
Environment Settings Toolbar, 313
environment variable
MAK_INSTALL_DIR, 94
MAKLMGRD_LICENSE_FILE, 99
OpenSceneGraph
anaglyphic stereo, 1542
RTI_CONFIG, 100
VRV_ALPHA_TO_COVERAGE_RENDERBIN, 197
Environmental Object Information dialog box, 409
ephemeris, 217
model, 311
equipment
pacing and tracking, 845
unit, 1342, 1345
Equipment Pacing/Tracking dialog box, 845
Equipment Pacing/Tracking set data request, 845
equipment parameter
editing, 1360
equivalent-tnt-mass
determinant, 1474, 1624
equivalent task, 740
escaping
plan, 913
task assignment, 548
escort
waiting for, 710
Escort Air Unit dialog box, 701
Escort Air Unit task, 701
Establish Refueling Station task, 579
event, 357
linked
adding, 263

  list
    numbering, 270
  scenario, 260
Event window, 268-269
EW-Comms-Degradation-Percentage, 507
EW-Comms-Dependence, 507
EW-Defense-Strength, 507
exaggerated reality, 1093
exaggerating
  3D models, 1008
exclusion
  slot, 1372
execName parameter, 1594
exectool
  module, 758
executable
  installation locations, 94
Execute Close Air Support dialog box, 617
Execute Close Air Support task, 616
execution name, HLA
  specifying, 178
exercise
  clock, 115
  starting, 242
exercise-start--time parameter, 344
exercise ID, 1596
  DIS, 168, 175
exerciseId parameter, 1596
exit
  embarkation, 1374
exiting
  application, 141
  full screen window, 1552
  plan, 913
  prompt, 141
  scenario, 246
  simulation engine, 141
expanded label, 416
  pinning to display, 419
expanding
  unit, 530
    all, 530
Experimental Features dialog box, 334, 1115, 1117
Explode Charge at Depth task, 619
explosion, 981
explosive device
  arming, 801
explosive device system, 1461, 1620
explosive power, 1460, 1618
explosive power domain, 1471, 1622
Export Object Information dialog box, 1247
exporting
  element definitions, 1277
  model definitions, 1277
  MSDL, 225
  object information, 1247
  object type mappings, 1277
  Order of Battle, 483
  overlays to shapefiles, 932
  scripted task, 749
  settings, 118
  tags, 1251
  visual models, 1277
extended label, 422, 919
  adding, 424
  deleting, 425
  index
    changing, 424
extended name, 724
extent
  zooming to, 1117
external communication model, 1498
external script
  editing, 753
Extract Using Ladder task, 664
Extract Using Rope task, 662
extracting
  prop
    from terrain, 1164
extras file, 343
extruded
  tactical graphic, 941
extruded area, 866
extruded geometry, 1164
eyepoint. See observer, 1099


## F


F-- command-line option, 176
face front culling, 1041
Facilities dialog box, 846
Facilities set data request, 845
factory
  window layout
    restoring, 1551
factory settings
  restoring, 118
fan
  intervisibility, 1051
far clipping plane, 1531
FASCAM task, 701
Fast Rope Insertion task, 660
favorite, 370
  adding or removing from list, 395
  joystick configuration, 1515
  observer view, 1127

Favorites
clearing list, 1262
favorites.mst, 395
FDD file, 100
feature, 84
avoiding, 359, 1492
configuring avoidance of, 1492
coordinate, 1180
data
displaying, 1176
geometry, 1164
soil type, 1180
vector
list of, 1178
feature layer
adding, 1164
Feature Settings page, 1180
featureconfig.txt, 1492
FeatureSet class, 756
FED file, 100
name, 165, 173, 1594
specifying, 180
federate
name, 166, 173, 1594
time managed, 137
federateName parameter, 1594
federateType parameter, 1594
federation execution
destroying, 1594
name, 1594
specifying name, 178
federation time, 137
fedFileName parameter, 1594
field of view, 1065, 1114, 1535-1536
changing, 1535
file
ammo select, 1634
batch, 252-253
damage, 1470, 1621, 1625, 1635, 1638
default_ModelPreload.mpsx, 204
FED, 100, 180
formation, 1490
hit, 1635
hostility relationships, 348
log, 155, 1587
MTL, 1580
object map, 347
OPE, 1444
physicalWorldParams.mtl, 1437
plan, 346
platform, 1405
RID, 100, 178
rid.mtl, 178
scenario, 209, 340, 345
scenario extras, 453
scenario objects, 340, 347
scnx, 209, 340
simulation model set, 1229
system definition, 1444
transporter (DIS), 166-167
transporter (HLA), 165
vrfGui.log, 155
vrfSim.log, 155
vrfSim.mtl, 1584
vrfSimSettings.xml, 198
File Caching Settings page, 193
fill style, 957
Fill Style dialog box, 964
Fill Style set data request, 964
filtering
earth file layers, 1175
function list, 1574
object attachment list, 1135
object creation palette, 370
scripted task list, 747
simulation object list, 550
simulation objects
by observer altitude, 192
in scene, 191
Find Cover dialog box, 643
Find Cover task, 642
Find Firing Position dialog box, 644
Find Firing Position task, 643
finite state machine, 758
fire
effects, 981
event
mapping sound effects to, 1072
sound effects, 1070
indirect, 298
line, 981
suppressive, 567, 623, 630
at location, 568
at point, line, or area, 567, 623, 630
target, 619
Fire-for-Effect task, 622
fire-when-fired-upon, 826
fire and maneuver task, 644
Fire at Target task, 619
Fire Cruise Missile dialog box, 620
Fire Cruise Missile task, 620
fire interaction, 1457-1458
fire team
dismount helicopter task, 666
Fire Team Bound to Location task, 644
Fire Team Suppress Target task, 623

Fire Team Travel to Waypoint task, 645
Fire TOW At Target task, 620
firepower-kill parameter, 1630
firing
  at target, 286, 619
  ballistic missile, 304
  cruise missile, 620
  target at
    spot report, 286
  TOW missile, 620
fixed-frame, 138
fixed-frame-run-to-complete, 117, 138
fixed-frame-run-to-complete keyword, 344
fixed-frame best-effort, 116, 344
fixed-frame keyword, 344
fixed-wing
  speed, 411
fixed-wing-entity-param parameter, 1401, 1606
fixed-wing-entity-state-repository, 1401
fixed-wing entity
  altitude, 582-583
  attacking with gun, 613
  circling a point, 597
  counter measures, 626
  creating, 562
  dropping bombs, 631
  follow entity behavior, 586
  heading, 583-584
  holding pattern, 599
  landing, 565, 580-581
  landing at airport, 586
  loiter pattern, 584
  refuel, 600
  refuel self, 667
  refueling station, 579
  search and rescue
    fly creeping line pattern, 603
    fly expanding square pattern, 605
    fly parallel pattern, 607
  setting
    altitude, 563
    IFF transponder, 812
    speed, 821
  strafing target, 632
  takeoff, 564
  takeoff and landing, 563
  taking off, 582
Fixed Near Clip attribute, 1533
Fixed Near Clip When Attached
  attribute, 1533
fixed trajectory missile, 303
fixed weapon system
  configuring, 1460, 1619
fixed wing entity
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
Fixed Wing Land At Aerodrome task, 580
Fixed Wing Land On Runway task, 581
Fixed Wing Land task, 565
Fixed Wing Takeoff dialog box, 582
Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway task, 582
Fixed Wing Takeoff task, 564
flag
  marking, 1275
flaming effects, 981
flare, 626
  launching, 294
flashlight
  mode, 1025
flat earth
  coordinate system, 1103
Flee From Entities dialog box, 646
Flee From Entities task, 646
FLEXlm, 97
flight IDs for generated air traffic, 460
flight plan
  directory, 461
  generating air traffic from, 460, 586
    with air traffic areas, 460
  weighting in flight plan list, 462
FLIR, 1044
floating
  panel, 1546
FLT file, 1163
Fly Altitude dialog box
  dialog box
    Fly Altitude, 583
Fly Altitude task, 582
Fly Creeping Line Pattern
  Search and Rescue task, 603
Fly Creeping Line Pattern dialog box, 604
Fly Expanding Square Pattern
  Search and Rescue task, 605
Fly Expanding Square Pattern dialog box, 606
Fly Heading and Altitude dialog box, 583
Fly Heading and Altitude task, 575, 583
Fly Heading dialog box, 584
Fly Heading task, 584
Fly Loiter Pattern dialog box, 585
Fly Loiter Pattern task, 584
Fly Parallel Pattern
  Search and Rescue task, 607
Fly Parallel Pattern dialog box, 608
flying
  altitude to, 582-583
  loiter pattern
    circle, 584

cloverleaf, 584
figure eight, 584
racetrack, 584
to heading, 583-584
focal depth, 1155
focal range, 1155
focus
scene, 1155
fog, 325
denseness of, 316
height and color, 317
fog-of-war, 274
same side, 277
fog of war, 160
folder
adding scripted task to, 748
removing scripted task from, 749
scripted task, 748
adding, 748
deleting, 748
renaming, 748
follow entity
fixed-wing entity behavior, 586
Follow Entity dialog box, 585
Follow Entity task, 585
in plan, 872
Follow mode, 1103, 1136
Follow Route task, 586
following
paths, 1196
route, 586, 588
simulation objects, 585
FOM, 100
module, 165, 173
FOM Mapper
configuring, 1594
initialization data, 165, 173
initialization string, 1594
library name, 165, 173
specifying at startup, 179
fomMapperInitData parameter, 1594
fomMapperLib parameter, 1594
food, 504
pacing and tracking, 847
setting, 846
Food, Water, Fuel, Oil, and Lubricant Pacing/Tracking set data request, 847
Food, Water, Motor-Gas, Aviation-Fuel, Diesel Fuel, Oil, Lubricant dialog box, 847
Food, Water, Motor-Gas, Aviation-Fuel, Diesel Fuel, Oil, Lubricant Pacing/Tracking dialog box, 847
Food, Water, Motor-Gas, Aviation-Fuel, Diesel Fuel, Oil, Lubricant set data request, 846
footprint, 975
affect of posture, 497
sensor, 500
unit, 496
force, 354, 416
adding, 1252
behavior set
assigning to, 560
color
2D icon, 421
changing, 1253
editing, 1253
hostility
changing, 1253
changing in plan, 284
matrix, 283
name
changing, 1253
removing, 1253
setting at runtime, 809
Force dialog box, 809
Force set data request, 809
tactical graphic, 964
forceHostilty.mtl, 283
forceParameterDbReload parameter, 1587
format
time display, 313
formation, 490
adding, 1333
bounding box, 1335
closing, 490-491
configuring, 1490
copying, 1336
default, 1335
editing, 1332
expanding and collapsing in Formation Editor, 1335
file, 1490
layout
automatic, 1337
manual, 1338
moving to, 590
removing, 1335
renaming, 1335
setting, 810
in plan, 871
snap to grid, 1338
supported, 809
user-defined, 1491
Formation dialog box, 810
Formation Editor, 1333, 1335-1338

Formation set data request, 810
  in plan, 871
fortification
  breaching, 689
  destroying, 700
  improving, 703
fortified area
  constructing, 696
fortified line
  constructing, 697
fragmentation power domain, 1471
frame-mode parameter, 139, 344
  time management, 138
frame-time parameter, 344
frame mode
  changing for fast forward, 243
Frame Mode parameter, 217
frame rate, 172, 201-202
  exercise clock, 116
  mode
    specifying, 344
  setting, 160
  statistics
    back-end, 187
    enabling and disabling, 1588
Frame Rate Monitor Panel, 187
frame time
  changing for fast forward, 243
Frame Time parameter, 217
framentation power domain, 1622
free-fly mode, 1136
freehand line, 937
  sampling rate, 937
Freeze Fuel Levels dialog box, 810
Freeze Fuel Levels set data request, 810
Freeze Movement dialog box, 811
Freeze Movement set data request, 810
Freeze Munition Levels set data request, 811
frequency
  color of, 1064
  radio communication line, 1000
  sampling for terrain profile, 1189
front-end, 108
  coordinating multiple, 112
  feature representation, 1164
  joining session at startup, 135
  multiple, 108
  process ID, 169
  selecting database, 214
  sending messages, 108
  starting, 123
frustum, 1529, 1541
  editing, 1535
fsm
  module, 758
fuel, 504, 802
  freeze levels, 810
  pacing and tracking, 847
  setting, 846
  specifying amount, 825
  status, 413
fuel tank
  dropping, 701
Full Color Mode, 1047
Full Knowledge CID level, 285
full screen, 164
  hiding mouse, 1552
  mode, 160
  window, 1524, 1552
function
  check(), 761
  checkInit(), 761
  entityDestroyed(, 760
  getParameterProperty(), 1418
  getStateProperty(), 1418
  init(), 759
  list
    filtering, 1574
  loadState(), 760
  movement, 1570
  profiler, 188
  receiveObjectMessage(), 760
  receiveTextMessage(), 760
  resume(), 759
  saveState(), 759
  setCheckpointMode, 765
  shutdown(), 760
  suspend(), 759
  tick(), 759

## G

gain, 1044
  changing, 1123
  sensor effects, 1045
game pad, 1502
Gamepad
  installing on Linux, 1515
Gameware Navigation Lab, 1210
gamewareMemorySize parameter, 1587
gamewareQueryTimeBudget parameter, 1588
gasoline, 504
GDB terrain, 1163
  configuring soil type, 1182
  shapefile, 1164
General Application Settings page, 133, 142

Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans dialog box, 464
Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task, 464, 586
  compared to other air traffic generation methods, 459
generating
  air traffic
    methods, 459
  air traffic from flight plan, 460, 586
  navigation data, 1203, 1205
    entity for, 1207
  traffic, 446
geocentric
  converting to geodetic, 1586, 1592
  coordinate system, 1103, 1166
    vector, 774
  terrain, 1166
geodetic
  converting from geocentric, 1586, 1592
geographic DDM, 192
geometric
  objects, 772
geometry
  extruded, 1164
  object
    adding to entity, 1300
  sharing, 193
GeoTIFF, 1163
gesture
  task, 641
getParameterProperty() function, 1418
getStateProperty() function, 1418
ghosted
  icon
    by echelon level, 534
  unit, 532
ghosted units, 532
GIF, 1163
gimbaled sensor, 828-829, 1150
  control panel, 1152
  create view command, 909
  field of view, 1151
  setting azimuth, 1154
GL Studio, 88, 1147
  instrument panel, 1149-1150
  license, 90
global
  environment, 217
  weather, 217
global command
  adding to plan, 899
  Create, 904
  Delete Object, 904
  Delete Self, 904
  Issue Plan, 904
global dynamic terrain processor, 217
global plan, 311, 858
  compared to other air traffic generation methods, 459
  creating, 896
  file, 209
global setting, 120
Go To Location Panel, 1129
God ray, 1022
graphic
  adding to scenario event, 263
  buffer
    depth and stencil, 196
  depth, 158
  fire and detonation, 981
  mode
    wireframe, 1174
  object
    showing and hiding, 922-923
  unit combat, 982
graphical object, 918
  changing
    line width, 957
  deleting, 952
  spot report, 278
graphical user interface, 108
  configuring, 1560
gravity
  aligning cultural feature, 1302
grenade
  creating, 1313
  hand, 634
  types, 634
grid line
  configuring, 1173
  displaying, 1172
  keyword, 1539
Grid Lines Settings page, 1173
grid spacing
  changing, 1338
GridLines keyword, 1539
ground
  attacking from air, 685
ground-entity-state-repository, 1401
ground-vehicle-param parameter, 1393, 1401, 1606
Ground Clamp Fidelity set data request, 811
ground clamping, 1168
  configuring, 811, 1169
  cultural feature, 1302
Ground Clamping Cutoff Distance Scale, 1169

ground cover
  rain, 318
  snow, 319
ground fog, 325
ground truth, 274-275
ground vehicle
  changing drag and traction factors by soil type, 361
  configuring obstruction avoidance, 1492
  road driving, 560
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
group
  entities
    adding, 475
  selection, 402
  simulation object, 392
GUI, 108
  configuring, 1560
  layout
    saving, 1547
  layout settings, 161
  localizing, 101
  locking, 1566
  settings
    file, 209
    scenario, 340
  Simulation Object Editor
    layout settings, 1229
Gui-Terrain-Database parameter, 343
GUI Settings page, 127, 141, 236, 257, 546, 1264, 1554, 1561
guidance-mode parameter, 1471, 1622
GuiObserverViews parameter, 345
GuiScenarioSettings parameter, 345
gumball, 413
gun
  attacking aircraft with, 613

## H

hail
  intensity, 318
Halt Movement task, 702
hand grenade, 634
  types, 634
hand item
  hiding, 831
hard-freeze-temperature parameter, 362
Has Drag Chute dialog box, 847
Has Drag Chute set data request, 847
Hasty-Attack
  posture, 497
Hasty-Defense
  posture, 497
HAT
  See height-above-terrain line, 924
hazard
  area, 500
haze area, 325
HDR, 1025
header file
  objTypeEnums.h, 1606
heading, 416, 1099
  flying to, 583-584
  indicator, 382, 417
  intervisibility line, 1057
  object
    changing, 386, 953
  observer, 1100
  pasting, 390
  rotating icon to, 1007
  setting, 365, 812
    manually, 382
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
  turning to, 609
  viewing
    range line, 1060
  zig zag to, 610
Heading dialog box, 812
Heading set data request, 812
headlight, 1017
health, 495
  restoring simulation object, 825
Health dialog box, 848
heartbeat
  back-end
    configuring, 1592
  DIS, 1595
  relationship to thresholds, 198
  varying, 1596
heartbeatVariance parameter, 1596
heavy lift system, 600
height
  fog, 317
height-above-terrain line, 426, 922, 1122
  displaying, 924
helicopter
  fast rope insertion, 660
  ladder extraction, 663
  ladder insertion, 665
  rope extraction, 661
  rope insertion, 663
  rope sling load drop off, 660
  rope sling load pick up, 659

rotor wash, 1038
high quality, 1039
terrain avoidance, 567
help, 170, 175
herd
unit
creating, 469
herd area
creating, 470
heuristic
path planning, 1196
hidden
objects
object
hidden, 930
HiddenTerrainViews parameter, 345
Hide Occupants, 658
Hide Occupants set data request, 812
hide_by_default, 1414
hiding
3D models, 1011
all panels, 1547
hand item, 831
intervisibility lines, 1057
mouse, 1552
objects, 922-923
overlay objects, 930
panel, 1547
simulation objects, 274
symbol decorations, 421
tactical graphics, 959, 962
toolbar, 1547
vertex labels, 924
hierarchy
entity, 354
high-explosive
resource, 504
high-fidelity-damage-table, 1485
high-fidelity-terrain-damage-table block, 1485
high dynamic range, 1025
High Dynamic Range Settings page, 1022, 1025
high fidelity damage area, 1485
hit file, 1451, 1612, 1635
hit probability
file, 1427
skill level, 1462
table, 1454, 1615
HLA, 191-192
1516
troubleshooting, 257
command-line options, 178
federation execution name
specifying, 178
parameters, 1594
specifying federation execution, 178
starting in, 161
startup tutorial, 128
time management, 137
holding pattern
fixed-wing, 599
rotary-wing, 599
horizontal navigation, 1570
host address, 165, 167, 1594, 1596
hostAddressString parameter, 1594, 1596
hostile-fire-only parameter, 569
hostility
changing
plan in, 284
matrix
force, 283
hostility relationships file, 209, 348
hostname
license server, 97
HUD
See also overlay, 1074
human
animation speed, 837
getting in and out of car, 657
idling, 637
ladder extraction, 664
ladder insertion, 666
praying, 637
protesting, 637
releasing from queue, 677
rope extraction, 662
sliding down rope, 660
talking, 638
urgency, 837
waiting in line, 650
human-param parameter, 1401, 1606
human-state-repository, 1401
humans
adding to crowd, 638


## I


ice crystal cloud, 325
icon
2D, 373
changing, 1268
customizing, 425
displaying label, 420
image, 1269
borders, 1006
changing on objects list panel, 1262
common, 1553

heading
rotating to, 1007
level of nesting, 532
list
changing, 1262
location of, 96
notification, 432
scaling
2D, 1006
Set menu, 723
settings, 118
simulation object, 1006
size
changing, 1006
spot report
changing, 1270
updating, 1268
tactical graphic, 1281
Task menu, 723
toolbar
setting, 1566
triangle, 432
warning, 432
yellow, 286
icon list
creating, editing, and removing, 1263
specifying entity icons, 1264
using, 1264
ID
application, 167
echelon, 354
emitter, 823
marking
license plate number, 1275
object, 354
script, 720, 723, 738, 766
editing, 723
session, 123, 165, 167
site, 171, 1592
task, 767
unique, 353
identification
simulation object
UUID, 352
Identification Friend or Foe
See IFF, 812
identifier
site and application, 109
identifying
simulation objects, 352
idling
human, 637
IED, 1461, 1620
arming, 801
detonating, 805
placing, 628
If block
creating, 876
If statement, 859, 861
building, 883
If/Else Expression dialog box, 876
IFF
behavior in air traffic generated from flight plans, 464
dialog box for IFF transponder, 813
for Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans task, 464
information, 411
modes used in generated air traffic, 464
set data request for IFF transponder, 812
ignore-sets parameter, 1565
illumination, 1440
model, 217, 313
setting, 311
image
2D icon, 1269
adding, 1271
format
supported, 1163
list in script, 731
imagery
filtering, 1175
ImGui overlay
debug, 206
immediate embarkation, 438
impact-point range, 1472, 1622
Import Object Information dialog box, 1248
importing
element definitions, 1276
entity file, 1246
model definitions, 1276
MSDL, 224-225, 1589
navigation area, 1209
navigation data, 1209
object from CSV files, 227
object information, 1248
object type mappings, 1276
order of battle, 483
scenarios, 224
scripted task, 749
settings, 118
shapefiles to overlay, 933
tags, 1251
visual models, 1276
improve-script-id parameter, 738

Improve Booby Trap dialog box, 702
Improve Booby Trap task, 702
Improve Breach dialog box, 702
Improve Breach task, 702
Improve Bridge dialog box, 703
Improve Bridge task, 703
Improve Ditch dialog box, 703
Improve Ditch task, 696, 703
Improve Fortification dialog box, 703
Improve Fortification task, 703
Improve Obstacle dialog box, 704
Improve Obstacle task, 704
improving
  anti-tank ditch, 703
  booby trap, 702
  breach, 702
  bridge, 703
  ditch, 703
  fortification, 703
  obstacle, 704
  strong point, 703
improvised explosive device
  placing, 628
inactive
  tactical graphic, 959, 962
increasing speed of navigation, 1122
independent mode
  tutorial, 128
independent setting
  global and observer, 120
independent task, 540, 545
index
  extended label
    changing, 424
indicated airspeed, 411
indicator, 419
  heading, 417
  squawk, 997
indirect-fire-actuator, 1459, 1617
indirect-fire-controller, 1459, 1617
indirect-fire-weapon-controller, 1459, 1617
indirect fire, 298
  activation, 959
  creating, 298
  deactivation, 959
  editing, 301
  trajectory, 823
Indirect Fire dialog box, 704
indirect fire event
  disabling, 962
Indirect Fire page, 299, 302
Indirect Fire Settings page, 302
Indirect Fire task, 704
indirect fire weapon system, 1459, 1617
individual
  plan, 311
influenceName parameter, 761
influenceParameters parameter, 761
influencer parameter, 761
information
  connection, 148
  entity label, 416
  multiple objects, 415
  object, 409
  scenario
    displaying, 235
Information dialog box, 409, 427
  aerodrome, 1220
  centering observer from, 1120
  configuring, 1562
  display user-created state properties, 1418
  runway, 1221
information message, 1589
informationitem
  element, 1563
informationpagecollection
  element, 1562
infrared, 1044
ingress
  technique, 1373
ingress-points parameter, 1493
ingress point, 1366, 1493
  configuring, 1374
init() function, 759
initial-road-preference parameter, 819
Initial Scenario Information dialog box, 213, 220-221
Initial Unit State, 521
initialization string
  FOM Mapper, 1594
initialSetMenuConfiguration.xml, 1565
initialTaskMenuConfiguration.xml, 1564
input
  of data, 1402
  port and port group, 1403
Insert Using Ladder task, 666
inset view, 1146
installing
  on Linux, 95
  on Windows, 94
    default directory, 94
  RTI, 100
instancing
  DI-Guy, 205
instant embarkation, 438

instrument panel, 1148
  channel keyword, 1539
  configuring, 1150
  GL Studio, 1149-1150
instrumentPanelCategory parameter, 1150
Intel Collection Area, 945
intelligence
  artificial, 798
intelligence object, 265
intensity
  rain, snow, and hail, 318
interaction, 117
  detonation, 1459
  fire, 1457-1458
  signal, 997
interactive script, 777
intercom, 1074
interest management, 191-192
  configuring, 192
Interest Management Settings page, 192
interface
  Lua, 756
  weapon, 1452, 1613
intersection
  KD trees, 161
interval
  spawn, 450, 452, 455
  timeout, 167
intervisibility, 1050
  enabling and disabling, 1057
  entity, 1051
  fan, 1051
    moving, 1054-1055
  grid, 1051
  line, 918
    hiding, 1057
    information, 1057
  object
    configuring, 1055
    deleting, 1059
    displaying, 1054
    editing, 1054
    transient and permanent, 1052
  pinning object to simulation object, 1057
  point-to-point, 1051
  terrain profile, 1058
  terrain profile line, 1191
  types, 1051
intervisibility fan
  simulation object, 1052
Intervisibility Settings page, 1053-1054, 1056-1058
invert pattern, 892
Invert Selection check box, 893
inverting condition parameter, 892
Invisible set data request, 813
Invulnerable dialog box, 814
Invulnerable set data request, 814
IP address, 166-167, 1590
IPV6, 168, 1597
  DIS, 175
Issue Plan
  command, 904
itemname
  attribute, 1560, 1566
IVE, 1163

## J

jam-strength-factor parameter, 509
jammer
  activating, 684
  deactivating, 698
  emitter ID, 814
  mode, 814
Jammer State dialog box, 814
Jammer State set data request, 814
jamming
  communications, 507
  MAK radio frequency, 1082
  radar, 289, 507-508
    enabling and disabling, 814
  target, 798
jamming-defense-factor parameter, 508
Jamming Mode dialog box, 814
Jamming Mode set data request, 814
jitter
  camera, 1120
joining exercise
  late, 113
joint engagement zone
  altitude limited
    creating, 941
joystick, 1502
  configuration
    creating, 1505
    favorite, 1515
  configuring, 1504
  control
    mapping, 1507
  controller, 1504
  disabling, 1504
  Gamepad, 1515
  keyboard contorl, 1504
Joystick button, 1507

Joystick Configuration page, 1504-1505, 1507, 1509, 1511, 1515
JPEG, 1163
JPG, 1163
JRM Technologies, 1044
jumping, 822
  observer, 1112

## K

KD tree, 161
key-names
  location of configuration files, 1519
key map, 1570
  creating, 1575
  deleting, 1575
  editing, 1571
key mapping, 1106
  adding, 1571
  binary, 1571
  changing, 1573
  combining, 1574
  deleting, 1573
Key Mapping button, 1509
Key Mapping Editor, 1570
  adding mapping, 1571
  binary mapping, 1571
  changing mapping, 1573
  deleting mapping, 1573
  filtering function list, 1574
Key Mapping Editor page, 1571, 1575
key value pair
  reader writer, 1363
keyboard, 1570
  attaching to objects from, 1133
  changing speed, 1123
  control, 1552
    mapping, 1508
  controlling entities, 1504
  creating selection group from, 404
  entity control
    configuring, 1504
  inset views, 1146
  mappings, 1102, 1105, 1570
  movement functions, 1102
  moving observer, 1105
  navigation, 1570
keyword
  channel, 1530, 1538
  cockpitOnly, 1539
  GridLines, 1539
  largeCompass, 1101, 1539
  NoExternalInput, 1539
  showCockpits, 1539
  showRemoteGraphics, 1539
  simulation object property, 1303
  smallCompass, 1101, 1539
  tactical graphic property, 1283
kill data, 1481
kinetic power domain, 1471, 1622
kneeling, 822

## L

label, 352
  2D
    background, 422
    displaying, 420
    showing and hiding, 421
  entity, 420
    2D, 417
    3D, 416
    enabling and disabling, 419
  extended, 919
  object, 354, 420, 919, 924
  overlay, 930
  pinning to display, 419
  simulation object, 354, 420
    extended, 422
  spot report, 279
  tactical graphics, 919, 924
ladder
  extraction, 663-664
  insertion, 665-666
Ladder Extraction task, 663
Ladder Insertion task, 665
Lambert Conformal Conic
  coordinate system, 1103
Land at Air Base dialog box, 705
Land at Air Base task, 705
Land at Airport Near Location task, 586
land attack
  missile, 687
landing
  air base, 705
  fixed-wing entity, 563, 565, 580-581
  rotary-wing entity, 601
language
  scripted task, 741
  specifying, 160
    for GUI, 177
largeCompass keyword, 1101, 1539
Lase Autonomous dialog box, 815
Lase Autonomous set data request, 288, 815
Lase Target task, 287, 624

laser
  autonomous, 815
  bomb, 631
  code, 815
    range, 287
    synchronizing between entities, 288, 833
    using, 287
  designator
    displaying, 994
  power, 815
  targeting, 624
  wavelength, 815
laser-guided missile, 1458
Laser Code dialog box, 815
Laser Code set data request, 287-288, 815
Laser Power and Wavelength dialog box, 816
Laser Power and Wavelength set data request, 815
lasing
  autonomous, 287
lasing controller, 1458
Last Clicked Environment Panel, 327
Last Clicked Location Panel, 1180
Last Clicked Object Panel
  centering observer from, 1120
late joiner, 113
lateral-clearance parameter, 1492
latitude, 416, 772
  and longitude
    going to, 1129
Launch Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertical) task, 625
Launch Ballistic Missile at Location task, 625
Launch Ballistic Missile at Target Object task, 625
Launch Counter Measures
  task, 295
Launch Flight dialog box, 706
Launch Flight task, 705
Launch QRA Aircraft dialog box, 707
Launch QRA Aircraft task, 706
Launch Smoke task, 626
Launcher
  VR-Forces, 123
launcher controller, 1458
launching
  counter measures, 294
  torpedo, 627
layer
  earth file
    hiding, 1175
  feature
    adding, 1164
layout
  default
    clearing, 1550
  formation
    automatic, 1337
    manual, 1338
  GUI, 161, 1229
    choosing, 1549
    creating, 1548
    default, 1549
    deleting, 1551
    renaming, 1550
    restoring factory, 1551
    reverting, 1550
    saving, 1547
    updating, 1550
LCC
  coordinate system, 1103
leader-promotion-id parameter, 1490
length
  intervisibility object, 1055
  simulation object name, 353
  track history, 978
level
  notification for messages, 177
level-of-detail, 1114
level observer, 1102
library
  dynamic, 149
license
  3D models, 91
  DI-Guy, 87
  GL Studio, 90
  OpenSceneGraph, 91
  osgEarth, 92
  SilverLining, 89
  SpeedTree, 90
License Manager, 97
license server
  hostname, 97
License Setup dialog box, 97
lifeform, 867
  appearance
    random, 1305
  configuring DI-Guy appearance and character, 1388
  setting
    posture, 822
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
Lifeform Surrendered condition, 867
lifetime
  radio communication line, 999
  squawk indicator and communication line, 999

light
daylight control, 1018
flashlight mode, 1025
point, 1018
source, 1018
lighting
aerodrome, 1218
aircraft, 799
tanker, 833
airport runways, 1216
disabling, 1027
dynamic, 1017
effects, 85
high dynamic range, 1025
Lighting Render Settings page, 1014, 1016-1017
limited munition attack, 499
line
arrow
editing, 957
changing width, 957
creating
displaying terrain profile, 943
opening terrain profile, 1189
direction
changing, 956
dotted and dashed, 957
editing, 957
opening terrain profile, 1189
fire, 981
fortified
constructing, 697
freehand, 937
height-above-terrain, 426, 922
intervisibility, 918
information, 1057
radio communication, 997
sensor contact, 988
style, 957
supply, 995
suppressive fire at, 567, 623, 630
task visualization, 984-985
terrain profile, 918, 1191
for intervisibility, 1058
vertex
showing in terrain profile, 1189
waiting in, 650
line-of-sight
communication line, 999
See also intervisibility, 1050
terrain profile, 1058
unit versus entity, 500
line-of-sight. See intervisibility, 1050
Line Width dialog box, 964
Line Width set data request, 964
linear feature
list of, 1178
linear obstacle, 918, 921
linear scaling, 1008
linked event
adding, 263
Linux
installing Gamepad, 1515
installing on, 95
lisp, 1600
list, 1262
clearing Categories, Used by Countries, and Favorites, 1262
Countries, 1262
image in script, 731
spot report, 279
target priority
add to, 834-835
clear, 834
update, 835
viewing, 834
vector feature, 1178
list box
multiple, 548
listing
components in OPD, 1405
Little Pond terrain, 1184
load-balanced scenario
saving, 232
starting, 240
load-entry-point parameter, 1493
load-entry parameter, 1493
load balancing, 238
scenario
existing, 239
new, 238
Load Batch File dialog box, 255
Load Overlays dialog box, 932
Load Scenario dialog box, 233, 239
loading
cargo, 601
database, 1166
display engine configuration, 159, 1528
entities on entities, 436
entity display settings, 160
environment configuration, 160
object type mapping, 159
plug-ins, 149-150, 159, 161, 164, 169, 178
saved views, 1129
scenario, 164, 170, 233
at startup, 234
recently used, 234

scene from command line, 165
settings, 118
tactical graphics, 931
terrain, 139
from command line, 165
paged, 170
Loadout dialog box, 848
Loadout set data request, 816, 848
loadPluginIfVersionMismatch parameter, 1588
loadState() function, 760
local
object, 114, 1397
network interface, 1402
simulation object, 114
local-objects parameter, 1398, 1601
Local Weather Zones page, 320
locale
specifying, 160
localization
specifying, 160
localizing
GUI, 101
localSettingsDesignator parameter, 1594
location
compass, 1101
fixed-wing at creation, 562
going to, 1129
jumping to, 1112
moving to, 592
new entity, 379
object
changing, 386, 953
observer, 1099
ordering entity to, 592
ordering simulation object to, 592
setting, 365, 817
by dragging, 384
suppressive fire at, 568
window, 1529
Location dialog box, 817
Location set data request, 817
Location3D class, 772
locking
GUI element, 1566
overlay, 929
LOD, 1114
center, 1118
scale
setting, 1020
terrain
magnification angle, 1116
scale factor, 1115
zooming in, 1116
LOD distance
buoyancy, 1041
log file, 155, 170-171, 1229, 1587
messages sent to, 177
sending entity messages, 432
specifying, 161
vrfSim, 171
logFrameRateStatistics parameter, 1588
Logger
recording to, 257
recording view control messages, 906
logger-files-path parameter, 254
Logger Control message, 256
logical
operator, 869
logistics, 504
resupply
starting or stopping, 852
resupply modes, 851
logo
marking on entity, 1275
loiter pattern
flying, 584
longitude, 416, 772
and latitude
going to, 1129
Look At dialog box, 817
Look At set data request, 817
loop in plan, 864
Lower Periscope task, 672
lua
global variables
saving, 765
Lua, 715, 717
background process, 783
classes, 756
direction vector, 772
interface, 756
locations and vectors, 772
method, 756
module, 758
object, 756
location of, 772
parameter, 768
as table, 766
require, 758
script
extended name, 724
table, 766
tasks and subtasks, 766
utility functions, 758
vector
geocentric, 774

offset, 774
Lua API Documentation, 756, 766
lubricant, 504
setting, 846
lubricants
pacing and tracking, 847
LWO file, 1163


## M


mach, 411
magnetic, 1121
magnification
performance, 1116
mainmenu
element, 1560
mainmenuconfiguration
element, 1560
MAK Earth terrain, 1184
MAK radio, 1074-1075
configuring, 1077
dialog box, 1075
jamming, 1082
toolbar, 1076
using, 1074
MAK RTI
configuring, 100
MAK Technologies LISP, 1580
MAK_INSTALL_DIR
environment variable, 94
making decisions, 357
Makland terrain, 1184
MAKLMGRD_LICENSE_FILE
environment variable, 99
Manage Reactive Task dialog box, 556
Manage Reactive Tasks dialog box, 476
managing
plug-ins, 149
maneuver and fire task, 644
manual
aggregation, 525
aggregation and disaggregation, 526
location of, 96
map
cube
recalculating, 1024
Sensor Texture, 1045
texture, 85
map datum
configuring, 1593
map scale overlay, 1181
Map Scale Toolbar, 1181
mapping
joystick controls, 1507
joystick keyboard controls, 1508
keyboard, 1106
keys, 1570
model
to remote observer, 1095
movement to keyboard, 1105
objects
back-ends to, 240
simulation objects, 232
sound effects, 1072
marine
conditions
setting, 330
effects
enabling and disabling, 329
marker
displaying, 1273
label
displaying, 1273
system, 1313
marking
changing, 818
remote simulation object, 872
marking text, 416, 1261
markings
visual, 818, 1275
Markings dialog box, 818
marksmanship, 829
Massachusetts S-57 terrain, 1184
matching object type, 1394
material
ambient value, 1016
max-detonation-distance-for-passing-rounds parameter, 569
max-range-altitude parameter, 631
max-range parameter, 631
max-slope parameter, 564
max-speed parameter, 821
max-thrust parameter, 564
Max Sheaf Radius, 704
maxDrainInputReads parameter, 1596
maxDrainInputTime parameter, 1588
Maximum Disaggregation Range, 526
maximum sheaf parameter, 1348
Maximum Skill Level Effect parameter, 1462
maxNavigationRegenerationThreads parameter, 1589
mcastTtl parameter, 1596
MEDF
file, 1163

media
  adding to scenario event, 263
memory
  improving use of, 193
menu
  configuring, 1560
  context-sensitive, 1553
  locking, 1566
  separator, 1560
  set
    editing, 1565
  Settings, 118
  shortcut, 1563
  sorting
    Task and Set, 1560
  Task, 716
  tearing off, 1552
menuitem
  element, 1564
merge-with-sub-systems parameter, 1448
merging
  scenarios, 224
mesh
  navigation, 948
message, 170, 1229
  console, 170, 1229
  entity, 429
    saving, 432
  frequency of, 1587
  information and warning, 1589
  notification level, 163
  notification of, 432
  object
    viewing, 430
  object console
    sending, 903
  radio, 667-668
  receiving, 1498
  sending, 1498
    between front-end and back-end, 108
    text (command), 902
    text (task), 669
  sent, 357
  session
    configuring, 135
  setting levels, 177
  Start/Resume, 256
  state update, 1094
  Stop/Freeze, 256
  tactical data link, 281
  TDL, 281
  time stamp ordered
    TSO, 137
  view control, 1130
  warning icon, 432
metadata
  in system definition file, 1406
  script, 717
meteorological and oceanographic FOM module, 173, 335
method
  Lua, 756
METOC command-line option, 173
METOC FOM, 335
  enabling, 336
  object classes, 335
MGRS
  coordinate
    going to, 1129
middle-click menu, 1553
migrating
  SMS, 1242
MIL-STD 2525B color, 426
  unit, 537
military
  marking, 1275
Military Scenario Definition Language
  exporting, 225
  importing, 225
Mimic Location Track mode, 1139
Mimic mode, 1103, 1136-1137
Mimic Track mode, 1138
mimModule parameter, 1594
minDrainInputTime parameter, 1595
mine
  creating, 1313
  dropping, 614, 616
  naval
    arming, 613
  sweeping for, 609
minefield
  creating
    aggregate, 697
    entity, 947
minimum lift speed, 564
minimum tick period, 195
minimum tick period variance, 195
missile, 1458
  anti-air, 686
  anti-ship, 686
  anti-submarine, 625
  ballistic, 303, 625
    firing, 304
    target event, 305-306
  creating, 1313
  cruise, 620

fixed trajectory, 303
land attack, 687
laser-guided, 1458
strategic, 303
TOW, 620
types, 1456
missile-collision actuator, 1458-1459
missile-entity-state-repository, 1401
missile-maneuver actuator, 1458-1459
missile-param parameter, 1401, 1606
Missile Approach Warning condition, 867
missile attack, 499
missile controller, 1458-1459
missile engagement zone
altitude limited
creating, 941
missile launcher, 1457
laser-guided, 1458
missile launcher system, 1456
missile loadout, 816
Missile Target
page, 304, 306
missile target event, 305-306
Mission Oriented Protective Posture. See MOPP, 500
mist area, 325
mobility
modifier, 501
mobility-kill parameter, 1630
mode
Absolute, 1136
batch, 252
C and S / 5 in IFF, 813
flashlight, 1025
Follow, 1136
jammer, 814
Mimic, 1137
Mimic Track, 1138
observer, 1086
Space Follow, 1139
specifying, 181
speed scaling, 1123
stealth, 836
Tether, 1140
Tether Track, 1140
Track, 1141
view, 1103, 1136
model
3D, 374
changing, 1267
DI-Guy, 641
exaggerating entity, 1008
hiding, 1011
scaling, 1008
adding
visual, 1271
aggregate-level
new, 1340
calculating support point from, 1299
colorized
changing, 1267
decal effects, 976
DI-Guy
choosing, 1390
entity, 1229
editing, 1227, 1257
illumination, 313
instance
caching, 193
layer
filtering, 1175
mapping
common buttons, 1553
to remote observer, 1095
name, 416
object, 1229
physical, 357
preloading, 203
set, 1094
changing, 1094
showing, 1272
sharing resources, 193
simulation, 1229
stealth, 1095
tactical graphic, 1284
topological, 117
trailing effects, 976
vehicle, 78
visual
editing, 1265
refreshing, 1277
model definition
adding, 1271
compass, 1101
DefaultEllipsoidArc, 1064
exporting, 1277
importing, 1276
pruning, 1277
tactical graphic texture, 1286
wake, 332
Model Definition Editor page, 1066-1068
model instancing, 193
cache
clearing, 193
Model Preload Configuration page, 204

model set, 1094
  changing, 1273
modeling
  aggregate-level, 358, 485
  entity-level, 358, 485
modifier, 495
  combat engineering object, 501
  mobility, 501
  visibility, 502
  vulnerability, 501
modifiers, 1353
modifying
  control object, 953
  sensor signature, 945
module
  exectool, 758
  fsm, 758
  location of, 758
  Lua, 758
monitor
  multiple, 1539
    performance, 203
monitoring
  entity resources, 427
MOPP level, 500
  changing, 690
  setting, 848
MOPP Level dialog box, 849
morale
  setting, 849
Morale dialog box, 849
motion
  file, 1389
mouse
  changing speed, 1123
  drag terrain, 1108
  drag view, 1111
  hiding in full screen mode, 1552
  locking to object, 383
  moving observer, 1108, 1111, 1113
  orbiting terrain, 1111, 1113
  teleporting observer, 1112
Mouse Settings page, 1108, 1113, 1553
Move Along Route dialog box, 587
Move Along Route Retrograde task, 707
Move Along Route task, 586
Move Along Route with Actions dialog box, 589
Move Along Route with Actions task, 588
Move Between Cover to Location dialog box, 647
Move Between Cover to Location task, 646
Move Into Formation dialog box, 591
Move Into Formation task, 590
Move to Altitude task, 591
Move to Bullseye Offset task, 591
Move to Depth dialog box, 592
Move to Depth task, 575, 592
Move to Location (Plan Along Roads) task, 560, 593
Move to Location dialog box, 592
Move to Location Retrograde task, 707
Move to Location task, 592
  in plan, 593
Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads) task, 595
Move to Waypoint dialog box, 595
Move to Waypoint Retrograde task, 707
Move to Waypoint task, 560, 595
movement
  DI-Guy, 641
  freezing, 810
  lifeform, 822
  model, 1310
    specifying, 1312
  retreat, 707
  scripted, 577
  speed
    affect of posture, 497
  speed scaling, 1122
  stopping, 702
  system, 1311, 1406
  task
    affect of aggregation and disaggregation, 525
  unit, 490, 498
movement file
  configuring, 1324
movement parameter, 1354
movement system
  properties
    editing, 1355
moving
  along a route, 586
  along a route with actions, 588
  articulated parts, 671
  camera, 1108
  in formation, 871
  intervisibility fan, 1054-1055
  object, 384
  objects, 384, 817
    between overlays, 942
  observer, 1099, 1107
    mouse with, 1108, 1111, 1113
  options, 1107
  to altitude, 591
  to location, 592
  to points or simulation objects, 595
  vertex, 954
moving-object-param parameter, 1402, 1606

moving-object-param parameter type, 1606
moving object parameter, 1606
MSDL
  exporting, 225
  importing, 224-225, 1589
MTL file, 1580
  vrfSim.mtl, 1584
multicast address
  configuring, 1595
multicast mode
  specifying, 181
multicast time-to-live, 181, 1596
multichannel
  configuring, 1539
multimedia
  adding to scenario event, 263
multiple
  back-ends, 108, 112, 347
  front-ends, 108
    coordinating, 112
  object
    information, 415
  simulation model set, 218
  VR-Forces processes, 108
multiple entity creation, 472
  specifying entity type, 475
multiple list box, 548
Multiple Object Information window, 415
multiscreen performance, 203
munition
  display of path and detonation, 981
  freeze levels, 811
  non-simulated, 1313
    creating, 1314
  simulated, 1313
    creating, 1313
  tracer, 1314
munition-type parameter, 1453, 1615, 1638
munition block, 1471, 1622
Munition Target Settings dialog box, 299, 302, 304, 306
mutually-exclusive-task-groups parameter, 570
mutually exclusive task, 540, 545, 862
  configuring, 570
muzzle flashes, 981

## N

name, 352
  changing
    simulation object, 1261
    tactical graphic, 386
  component, 1403
  control object, 918
  default, 375
  displaying, 417
  entity, 416
  extended, 724
  FED file, 1594
  federate, 1594
  in condition, 892-893
  object, 1261
    editing, 388
  setting, 365
  short, 1261
  simulation object, 353, 416, 1261
  slot, 657, 1366
  spawn pattern, 454
  trigger, 862
nav-edges, 1204
nav edge, 948
Naval Depth Charge Deployment
  system, 613-614
Naval Mine Deployment
  system, 614, 616
naval mine explosive device system, 1461, 1620
navigating
  view, 1099
navigation
  attached context, 1103
  function
    editing key map, 1571
  key map, 1570
  keyboard, 1570
  mesh, 948
  options to, 1107
  speed scaling, 1122
  tactical air, 829
navigation-preference parameter, 819
navigation aid, 829
navigation area
  cancelling generation of navigation data, 1206
  clamping to, 811
  configuration file, 1209
  creating, 1199
  disabling use of, 818
  editing, 1202
    reverting, 1202
  generating navigation data for, 1204
  importing, 1209
  information, 1203
  nav edge, 948
  pedestrian path, 476, 918
  removing, 1203
  sector, 1199

status, 1206
Navigation Areas page, 1199, 1202-1203, 1205, 1209
navigation data, 1194
displaying, 1210
generating, 1203, 1205
canceling, 1206
removing from queue, 1206
generating at runtime, 1199
generating for entity, 1207
importing, 1209
profiles, 1204
regenerating, 1589-1590
regenerating automatically, 1206
using, 1206
Navigation Enabled dialog box, 819
Navigation Enabled set data request, 818
Navigation Lab, 1210
debugging, 1587
viewing simulation objects in, 1211
Navigation Preferences dialog box, 819
Navigation Preferences set data request, 819
Navigation Priority set data request, 819
navigationProfiles.mtl
regenerating navigation data, 1206
navigationRegenerationDelay parameter, 1589
NBC
area, 499-500
report, 709
sending, 709
near clipping plane, 1531
Near Far Clip Policy
attribute, 1532
net-interface-min-tick-period-variance parameter, 196, 1603, 1605
net-interface-min-tick-period parameter, 196, 1603, 1605
NETN METOC FOM, 335
network
connecting to
automatically, 158
vector, 560
network-interface parameter, 1603, 1605
network interface, 1603
hierarchy, 1402
new
spawn pattern, 453
window, 132
New Scenario dialog box, 251, 340
night-illumination parameter, 1440
night vision, 1044
no dialog box, 176
NoExternalInput keyword, 1539
noise, 1045
propulsion
RPM, 293
non-VR-Forces
simulation object, 872
normal map, 85
north
magnetic, 1121
true, 1121
notification
icon, 432
notification level, 170, 1229, 1589
setting, 177, 820
setting for entity console, 430
specifying, 163
Notify Level dialog box, 820
Notify Level set data request, 820
tactical graphics, 964
notifyLevel parameter, 1589
Nuclear Attack dialog box, 708
Nuclear Attack task, 707
nuclear contamination, 499-500, 707
number-of-runs parameter, 254
numbering
events, 270
NVG, 1044


## O


OBJ
file, 1163
object
adding
to Props Palette, 395
to selection group, 403-404
adding to Order of Battle, 479, 481
altitude
changing, 386, 953
attaching observer to, 1132
changing
line width, 957
name, 386
combat engineering, 500
concepts, 113
configuring
avoidance of, 1492
control, 918
copying, 388-389
count, 433
creating, 365-366, 370, 373, 375
from OOB, 481
in plan, 904
creating new in Simulation Object Editor, 1278

creation
  mouse locking, 383
cultural feature, 393, 1297
deleting, 1280
  from plan, 904
deleting from simulation model set, 1280
detaching observer from, 1135
disembarking, 807
dragging, 384
  to new location, 817
editing, 953
editing name, 388
embarking in Embarkation View, 439
enabling and disabling creation of, 1261
entity enumeration
  changing, 1258
exaggerating models, 1008
fill style, 957
geometric, 772
heading
  changing, 386, 953
hiding, 274, 930
ID, 352, 354
intelligence, 265
intervisibility, 1052
  pinning to simulation object, 1057
label, 354, 420, 919, 924
list, 347
list of, 1247
local, 114
location
  changing, 386, 953
locking mouse to, 383
Lua, 756
messages
  viewing, 430
model, 1229
moving, 384
moving to, 595
multiple
  information, 415
name, 1261
object type
  changing, 1258
orbiting, 1107
order
  changing in OOB, 483
overlay, 918
palette, 365
  specfiying, 1261
parameter, 1600
  default value, 348
  parameters, 1393
    editing, 1257
  pasting, 388-390
    altitude, 391
  placing, 375
  properties
    setting, 365
    specifying, 377
  remapping back-ends, 240
  remote, 114
  removing from OOB, 482
  selecting, 400, 1257
    for creation, 365
  selecting in multiple list box, 548
  setting icon for icon list, 1264
  showing and hiding, 923
  subcomponents, 1397
  super-type, 1394
  tag
    changing, 1257
  timeout threshold, 1595
  type, 1393
  vertex
    adding, 953
    deleting, 955
    editing, 954
  views of, 398
  VR-Forces, 114
Object-Map parameter, 343
object-type parameter, 1601
object console, 429
  clearing, 433
  notification of messages, 432
  setting notify level, 430
  warning icon, 432
Object Console Summary Panel, 400, 430, 777, 1119
  answering questions, 431
  selecting simulation object, 402
object creation palette
  changing icons, 1262
  filtering, 370
object geometry, 394
  adding, 1300
Object Group tag, 393
object information
  exporting, 1247
  exporting and importing, 1247
  importing, 1248
object information file, 1247, 1251
object map file, 209, 340, 347
  missing back-ends, 113
object parameter database, 114, 1229, 1392
  component list order, 1405

configuring
sensors, 1430
configuring path to, 1586
pathname interpretation, 1427
reloading, 1587
system definition file, 1406
Object Parameter Database Editor. See OPD Editor, 1392
object type
mapping
loading, 159
published and matching, 1394
object type enumeration, 1606
object type mapping
exporting, 1277
importing, 1276
pruning, 1277
Object Visible to Sensor At dialog box, 266
objectConsoleNotifyLevel parameter, 430, 1589
objects, 373, 375
Objects Console Summary Panel, 409
Objects List Panel, 398, 400, 436, 439, 521, 1132
changing icons, 1262
Embarkation View, 436
Objects List View
adding object to unit, 522
removing object from unit, 522
Objects View, 398
objTypeEnums.h header file, 1606
obscurants
configuring at different elevations, 314
observer, 1099
adding, 1089-1090
altitude
filtering simulation objects by, 192
attaching
articulated part, 1134
to simulation object or prop, 1132
to simulation objects, 1135
attachment
in 2D, 1142
order, 1133
camera, 1108
changing, 1541
camera shake, 1120
centering on object from Information dialog box, 1120
centering on object from Last Click Object Panel, 1120
centering on object from Object Console Summary Panel, 1119
compass, 1100
coordinate system
2D, 1103
3D, 1102
detaching from object, 1135
dragging
terrain, 1108
view, 1111
go to location, 1129
heading, 1100
inset view, in, 1146
location and orientation, 1099
mode, 1086
changing, 1087
creating, 1087
deleting, 1089
editing, 1089
renaming, 1089
setting, 120
switching projection, 1086
view control message, 906
XR, 1093
movement, 1136
functions, 1102, 1570
speed, 1123
moving
keyboard with, 1105
mouse with, 1108, 1113
north
magnetic, 1121
true, 1121
orbiting, 1107
orientation, 1111
rain and wave effects, 1034
remote, 1095
removing, 1089, 1093
saving view, 1124
teleporting, 1112
view
attachment change, 1133
saving, 1124
transitioning between, 1126
visibility
to other applications, 1094
ways to move, 1107
zooming, 1114
2D, 1115
3D, 1114
entity extents, 1117
zooming to extents, 1117
Observer Control Panel, 1122
Observer Information Panel, 1099
Observer Name, 1529

Observer Settings page, 291, 329, 429, 975, 978, 981, 986, 991, 996, 1008, 1010-1011, 1018, 1035, 1046, 1087, 1089-1090, 1093, 1101, 1109, 1120-1121, 1123, 1152, 1156, 1172, 1177
Observer Settings Toolbar, 1008
Observer Views Panel, 1124
  loading saved views, 1129
  saving views, 1128
obstacle, 918, 921
  avoidance, 359
  breaching, 689
  configuring avoidance of, 1492
  destroying, 700
  fill style, 957
  improving, 704
  linear, 918, 921
  report, 710
    sending, 710
obstructed terrain
  viewing in terrain profile, 1058
obstruction
  configuring avoidance of, 1492
occlusion culling, 159
occupancy-director-controller
  role in embarkation, 1493
ocean
  choppiness, 332
  configuration
    Triton.config, 1117
  dynamic
    enabling and disabling, 329
  effect, 328
  planar reflection, 1018
    configuring, 1020
    performance, 1020
    SpeedTrees, 1020
    texture height, 1020
    texture width, 1020
  quality, 333
  swell, 331
  synchronized, 164
  Triton SDK, 89
  zoom
    display problems, 1117
Ocean LOD Elevation, 1538
Ocean Settings page, 332-333, 1019-1020, 1024, 1036, 1039
oceanographic and meteorological FOM module, 335
off road driving, 560
offset
  burst, 451
offset start time, 455
oil, 504
  pacing and tracking, 847
  setting, 846
on-ground-tolerance parameter, 565
OOB, 478
OOB. See Order of Battle, 478
opacity
  2D label background, 422
OPD
  reloading, 1587
OPE file, 1427, 1444
  adding state properties, 1415
Open Car Door dialog box, 672
Open Cargo Door task, 672
Open Door task, 647
Open Model Set dialog box, 1230, 1243
Open Window task, 647
OpenFlight
  file, 1163
  format, 78
opening
  car door, 657, 672
  cargo door, 672
  Create Object dialog box, 377
  door, 647
  inset view, 1146
  scenario, 247
  simulation model set, 1243
  terrain, 1166
  window, 647
OpenSceneGraph, 75, 89
  environment variables for anaglyphic stereo, 1542
  license, 91
operator
  boolean, 869
  comparison, 868
  logical, 869
option
  command-line, 158
  navigation, 1107
Orbat parameter, 343
orbit
  observer, 1107
Orbit
  set data request, 820
Orbit Object dialog box, 597
Orbit Object task, 597
Orbit task, 597
orbiting
  terrain
    with mouse, 1111, 1113
Order-Of-Battle parameter, 343

order of battle, 209
  importing, 483
  instantiating members in scenario, 481
Order of Battle, 478
  adding simulation objects to, 479, 481
  changing order of objects, 483
  creating units, 481
  exporting, 483
  object
    editing, 482
  removing objects from, 482
  reorganizing, 483
Order of Battle Palette, 482
Order of Battle Panel, 478
Order of Battle View, 398
ordered altitude
  setting, 589
ordered speed, 588
  setting, 590, 820
Ordered Speed dialog box, 821
Ordered Speed set data request, 820
  fixed-wing for, 821
ordnance
  unexploded
    destroying, 699
organization
  entity of, 354
  unit, 489
orient north, 1121
  true, 1121
orientation, 1099
  camera, 1541
  clamping, 1169
  displaying, 417
  icon, 1007
  magnetic north, 1121
  observer, 1099, 1108, 1111, 1113, 1136
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
  true north, 1121
orthagonal projection, 1180
OSG file, 1163
osgEarth, 89
  license, 92
osgearth_cache, 88
Out-the-Window
  observer mode, 120
out-the-window view, 1539
outline
  emitter volume segment, 1067
  segment, 1067
output
  port group, 1403
overlay, 84
  concepts, 918
  creating, 929
  custom name, 1261
  default
    specifying, 1261
  deleting, 931
  editing
    enabling and disabling, 929
  export to shapefile, 932
  file, 340, 931, 944
  hidden objects, 930
  hiding, 930
  hiding graphics on, 923
  importing shapefile to, 933
  introduction to, 928
  label, 930
  locking and unlocking, 929
  map scale, 1181
  moving objects between, 942
  object, 918
    selecting, 400
  setting, 365
  tab, 930
  text
    adding, 942
overlay object
  copying, 388-389
  deleting, 952
  disaggregation area, 527
  moving
    to different overlay, 942
  pasting, 388-390
  spot report, 278
Overlay parameter, 343
Overlays tab, 923
Overlays View, 398
Override Position, 439
overriding
  default scenario parameters, 215
  plan, 913
overwatch
  bounding, 644

## P

pacing
  ammunition, 841
  equipment, 845
  resource, 851
  weapon, 853
package
  scripted task, 749

page
Checkpoint Settings, 245, 249-250
Date and Time, 222-223, 312-313
DI-Guy Settings, 205
dialog box
configuring, 1561
Display Units Settings, 426, 924
Earth Layers, 1176
Engineering Object Information, 503
Entity Behavior Settings, 521, 526, 561
Entity Definition Editor, 1068
Entity Display Settings, 1011
Feature Settings, 1180
General Application Settings, 133, 142
GUI Settings, 127, 141, 236, 257, 1264, 1554, 1561
High Dynamic Range Settings, 1022, 1025
Indirect Fire, 299, 302
Joystick Configuration, 1504-1505, 1507, 1509, 1511, 1515
Lighting Render Settings, 1014
Local Weather Zones, 320
Missile Target, 304, 306
Model Preload Configuration, 204
Mouse Settings, 1113, 1553
Navigation Areas, 1199, 1202-1203, 1205, 1209
Observer Settings, 291, 1008, 1046, 1090, 1123
Radar Coverage Settings, 291
Render Settings, 1037, 1157
Resource Information, 428
Scenario Event Settings, 271
Sensor Settings, 1046
Shadow Settings, 1028, 1031
Simulation Settings, 424-425, 881
Supplies, 503
Symbol Decoration Settings, 422
Tactical Data Link Settings, 281-283
Tactical Graphics Display Settings, 960, 963
Tactical Graphics Settings, 959
Terrain Profile Settings, 1189
Thermoclines, 335
Unit Display Settings, 426
Weather, 315-319, 330, 1538
pagecollection
element, 1561
pagecollections
element, 1561
paged LOD
magnification high LOD angle, 1116
magnification scale factor, 1115
paged terrain
loading, 170
paging
terrain, 1167
palette
Entity, 365
object creation, 365
changing icon, 1262
specifying, 1261
Order of Battle, 482
Props, 365
Tactical Graphics, 366
panel
displaying and hiding, 1547
displaying hidden, 1547
dockable, 1546
docking, 1546
floating, 1546
Frame Rate Monitor, 187
hiding all, 1547
Last Clicked Location, 1180
Object Console Summary, 430
undocking, 1546
Visual Models, 1265
paper map, 1180
parachute, 648
using Airdrop from Aircraft task, 658
Parachute to Target task, 648
parachuting, 822
parameter
acceleration-factor, 361
acceleration-to-rpm-factor, 294
adding in Qt Designer, 786
additional-algorithm-config, 1485
additional-opds, 344
additionalDestinationAddresses, 1595
additionalSystemScriptsDirectory, 1584
addMulticastAddr, 1595
aggregate-formation-controller, 1490
aggregate-level entity, 1352
aggregate-level unit, 1341
aggregate-object-param, 1402, 1426
aggregate-param, 1606
aggregateSpatialModelTickAsFastAsPossibleWhilePaused, 1584
aggregateSpatialModelTickPeriod, 1584
aggregateSpatialModelTickPeriodUsesRealTime, 1584
aggregateSpatialModelTickVariance, 1584
all-tasks-exclusive, 570
allowed-state-repositories-types, 1633
ammo, 1615
angle-of-incidence, 1476, 1626, 1630
angleSegmentMax, 1067
appIdRange, 1595
appNumber, 1584
assertOnBlockingTerrainCalls, 1167, 1585

Attach Components to Remote Entities On, 215
attack
  editing, 1357
auto-reorganize, 343
ballistic-missile-param, 1401
batchScenarioFileName, 1585
bomb-param, 1401
can-be-radar-jammed, 508
can-pivot, 609
catastrophic-kill, 1630
cgfDispactherReceivePort, 1585
clockMode, 1585
comm-model-name, 1498
commenting out, 1580
Component-Attachment, 343
Component-Attachment-Table, 343
component-manager, 1603, 1605
Component Attachment Table, 217
component list order, 1405
countryCodesMappingFile, 1586, 1589
create-script-id, 738
Create_Global_Dynamic_Terrain, 345
Create_Global_Environment, 345
cultural-feature-param, 1401, 1606
daemon, 1586
datumShiftX, 1586
datumShiftY, 1586
datumShiftZ, 1586
day-night-transition-time is, 1440
daylight-illumination, 1440
deep-snow-depth, 362
defaultHeartbeatThreshold, 1595
defaultObjectTimeout, 1595
DefaultObserverView, 345
defaultParameterDatabasePath, 346, 1586
defaultTerrainDatabasePath, 346, 1586
defense
  editing, 1359
delay, 1485
destAddrString, 1596
destroy-script-id, 738
destroyFedExec, 1594
detection-types, 1451, 1613
detonation-munition, 1485
detonation-on-destroy, 1485
deviceAddress, 1596
diGuyAnimationsFile, 1586
DIS, 1595
disabled-by-suppression, 569
disableParallelTick, 1586
dispersal-angle, 632
Display Terrain, 216
disPort, 1596
doNotUseConsole, 1587
dr-allow-gui-overrides, 199
dynamic-terrain-type, 1485
echelon-level, 1426
editing in Simulation Object Editor, 1300
egress-points, 1493
electronic warfare
  editing, 1360
embarkation-slot-entry, 1493
embarkation-slots, 1493
enableLogFileTimestamps, 1587
enableNavigationLabDebugging, 1203, 1587
entity-range, 1455, 1615
entity-type, 1455, 1616
entry, 1600
entVrfDataTimeThreshold, 1587
equipment
  editing, 1360
execName, 1594
exercise-start--time, 344
exerciseId, 1596
federateName, 1594
federateType, 1594
fedFileName, 1594
firepower-kill, 1630
fixed-wing-entity-param, 1606
fomMapperInitData, 1594
fomMapperLib, 1594
forceParameterDbReload, 1587
frame-mode, 139, 344
  time management, 138
frame-time, 344
Frame Mode, 217
Frame Time, 217
gamewareMemorySize, 1587
gamewareQueryTimeBudget, 1588
ground-vehicle-param, 1393, 1606
Gui-Terrain-Database, 343
guidance-mode, 1471, 1622
GuiObserverViews, 345
GuiScenarioSettings, 345
hard-freeze-temperature, 362
heartbeatVariance, 1596
HiddenTerrainViews, 345
HLA, 1594
hostAddressString, 1594, 1596
hostile-fire-only, 569
human-param, 1401, 1606
ignore-sets, 1565
improve-script-id, 738
influenceName, 761
influenceParameters, 761
influencer, 761

ingress-points, 1493
initial-road-preference, 819
instrumentPanelCategory, 1150
jam-strength-factor, 509
jamming-defense-factor, 508
lateral-clearance, 1492
leader-promotion-id, 1490
load-entry, 1493
load-entry-point, 1493
loadPluginIfVersionMismatch, 1588
local-objects, 1398, 1601
localSettingsDesignator, 1594
logFrameRateStatistics, 1588
logger-files-path, 254
Lua
  table, 766
max-detonation-distance-for-passing-rounds, 569
max-range, 631
max-range-altitude, 631
max-slope, 564
max-speed, 821
max-thrust, 564
maxDrainInputReads, 1596
maxDrainInputTime, 1588
maximum sheaf, 1348
Maximum Skill Level Effect, 1462
maxNavigationRegenerationThreads, 1589
mcastTtl, 1596
merge-with-sub-systems, 1448
mimModule, 1594
minDrainInputTime, 1595
missile-param, 1606
mobility-kill, 1630
movement, 1354
moving-object-param, 1606
munition-type, 1638
mutually-exclusive-task-groups, 570
navigation-preference, 819
navigationRegenerationDelay, 1589
net-interface-min-tick-period, 196, 1603, 1605
net-interface-min-tick-period-variance, 196, 1603, 1605
network-interface, 1603, 1605
night-illumination, 1440
notifyLevel, 1589
number-of-runs, 254
object, 1393, 1600
  editing, 1257
Object-Map, 343
object-type, 1601
objectConsoleNotifyLevel, 430, 1589
on-ground-tolerance, 565
Orbat, 343
Order-Of-Battle, 343
Overlay, 343
parameter-type, 1393, 1396, 1401, 1426, 1600-1601
passing-rounds-suppress, 569
personnel
  editing, 1360
physical, 1353
Plan, 343
plan-manager, 1603, 1605
pluginsDirectory, 1589
position-offset, 1490
power-plant-active, 293
power-type, 1485
promotion-id, 1490
providing information to components, 356
publish-transmitter, 1498
publish-transmitters, 1498
publishZeroVelocityWhenPaused, 1590
Radio Button Choice, 731, 789
rain-to-attenuation-coefficient, 1440
random-number-seed, 343
Random Number Seed, 217
range-determinant, 1455, 1616, 1630
range-from, 1471, 1622
range-list, 1455, 1616
recvBufferSize, 1596
regenerateNavigationDataAtRuntime, 1590
rejectMismatchedScenarioMessages, 1590
relative-heading, 442
relative-position, 442
remote-objects, 1398, 1603
reportedHostAddressString, 1590
reuseEntityIdentifiersOnScenarioLoad, 1591
rotary-wing-entity-param, 1606
round-down, 1476, 1626
rprFomVersion, 1595
RTI_timeMgmt, 138
RTI_useRtiExec, 138
run-duration, 255
run-duration-time, 344
runInTimeManagementMode, 138, 1595
saturation-water-depth, 362
scenario
  file, 341
  setting, 214
scenario-data, 345
Scenario-Extras, 343
scenario-filename, 254
scenario-name, 344
Scenario-Scripts, 343
Scenario Name, 215
ScenarioDescription, 345

ScenarioExtentInformation, 345
scenarioFileName, 1591
script, 725
script-ids, 738
scripted task
  getting list of, 771
SelectionGroups, 343
send-spot-reports-on-own-force, 277
sendBackendLogToNetwork, 1591
sendBufferSize, 1596
sendFedTime, 1595
sensor
  editing, 1357
separation-distance, 552
separation-tolerance, 552
sessionId, 1591
setDeadReckoningAlgorithmToStaticOnPause, 1591
setMainThreadToHighPriority, 1591
setting simulation object, 793
showLines, 1068
sim-time, 344
simMgmtPduProcessLevel, 1592
Simulation-Model-Set-Files, 344
simulation-run-duration, 255
Simulation Model Sets, 216
Simulation Object, 732, 790
Simulation Terrain, 215
simulationModelSet, 1592
siteId, 1592
slope-avoidance-factor, 362
slot, 1370
sms-filename, 254
soil-list, 360
specifying for task, 548
speed-to-rpm-factor, 294
spheroidSemiMajor, 1592
spheroidSemiMinor, 1592
standard-power-type, 1484
standard-terrain-damage-type, 1484
startInRunMode, 1592
startMinimized, 1592
state-repository, 1602, 1604
statusUpdateHeartbeat, 1592
stopping-distance-factor, 1492
stopping-factor†, 361
structure of entries, 1600
subnetMask, 1597
subsurface-entity-param, 1606
sunrise-time, 1440
sunset-time, 1440
supplies
  editing, 1361
suppressDataAvailableException, 1592
suppression-degrades-sensor-performance-by, 570
suppression-detonation-insult, 569
suppression-detonation-range, 569
suppression-insult-level, 569
suppression-recovery-time, 569
suppressSelfReflect, 1597
surface-entity-param, 1606
tactical-smoke-param, 1402
targetFrameRate, 1593
targeting-control, 1451, 1613
task
  Lua, 768
task-manager, 1603, 1605
taskVisualizationPublicationMode, 1593
terrain-check, 567
Terrain-Database, 343
terrainDatabase, 1593
time-multiplier, 343
Time Multiplier, 217
tracer-type, 1453, 1615
under-fire-parameter, 867
underFireDistance, 826
underFireTime, 826
use-logger-control, 254
useAbsoluteTimeStamps, 1595, 1597
useAdvisories, 1595
useAsyncIO, 1597
useCustomMapDatum, 1593
useDIGuy, 1594
useDrawControlForTaskVisualizations, 1594
useIpv6, 1597
using remote entities as, 872
vrf-base-object-param, 1426, 1600
wakeLength, 332
warhead, 1454, 1471, 1615, 1622
water-slide-depth, 362
water-slide-factor, 362
parameter-type
  control object, 1426
parameter-type parameter, 1393, 1396, 1401, 1426, 1600-1601
parameter property, 1415
  adding, 1415
parameters
  Combat, 1359
paratrooper, 648, 658
parent
  disembarking from, 441
particle effect
  sea spray, 1037

passenger
  embarking as, 657
  slot, 657
passing-rounds-suppress parameter, 569
passive sonar, 292
paste
  special
    altitude, 391
Paste Special, 390
pasting
  appearance, 390
  objects, 388-390
  performance and, 389
  plans, 390
  simulation object, 390
patch
  terrain, 1163
path
  data, 1194
  disabling use of navigation data, 818
  finding, 1196
  following, 1196
  planning, 593, 595, 1196
    priority, 819
    using road data, 819
  specifying for RTI, 100
pathname
  interpreting by object parameter database, 1427
  scenario files, 345
Patrol Area task, 597
Patrol Between dialog box, 598
Patrol Between task, 598
Patrol Route dialog box, 598
Patrol Route task, 598
patrolling
  area, 597
  between objects, 598
  route, 598
pattern
  editing condition, 894
  in condition, 892, 894
  loiter
    flying, 584
Pattern Hold (Location) dialog box, 599
Pattern Hold (Location) task, 599
Pattern Hold (Waypoint) dialog box, 600
Pattern Hold (Waypoint) task, 599
Pattern tab, 894
pause
  scenario
    using PDU, 256
pause mode, 1592
pausing
  scenario
    automatically, 217, 251
  simulation, 244
PDU
  sending, 1094
  siman
    configuring, 1592
  Start/Freeze, 256
  Start/Resume, 256
  Stop/Freeze, 256
  Underwater Acoustics, 293
  view control, 1130
pedestrian
  creating, 470
pedestrian area, 476
  adding entities to, 471
  adding pedestrians, 638
  creating, 470
pedestrian path
  control object, 476, 918
pedestrians
  adding to crowd, 638
pen style, 957
Pen Style dialog box, 965
Pen Style set data request, 965
Percent Complete dialog box, 849
Percent Complete set data request, 849
performance, 191-192, 196, 1115
  affected by copy and paste, 389
  alpha to coverage, 196
  anti-aliasing, 158
  asynchronous I/O, 181
  attached observer, 1135
  coloring draw calls, 201
  cube map calculation, 1024
  DI-Guy, 205
  factors affecting, 185
  frame rate, 172, 201
  function profiler, 188, 190
  graphics
    depth, 158
  HAT lines, 427, 924
  improving, 193
    human entities, 811
  interest management, 191
  load balancing, 238
  main thread, 171
  multiple screens, 203
  network
    tuning, 198
  occlusion culling, 159
  ocean planar reflections, 1020

optimizing, 185
preloading models, 203
setting application priority, 160
shadows, 1030
statistics
displaying, 188
VR-Vantage, 190
stencil bits, 164
Tracy Client, 191
tuning
network interface, 196
visual for 3D application, 198
visual, 202
zooming in, 1116
Performance Options page, 200
Performance Settings dialog box, 198-199
Performance Settings page, 199
Performance Statistics Overlay check box, 191
period
burst, 451
periodic checkpointing
disabling, 249
scheduling, 248
periodic snapshot
enabling, 250
periscope
lowering, 672
raising, 673
permanent intervisibility object, 1052
personnel
air base
setting, 849
status, 413
Personnel and Supplies set data request, 849
Personnel dialog box, 850
personnel parameter
editing, 1360
perspective
in display, 1535
perspective view
model
view, 1273
phase line, 918, 920
Entity Left of Line, 867
physical model, 357
physical parameter, 1353
physicalWorldParams.mtl
file, 1437
pinning
range rings, 992
sensor contact lines, 987
task visualization, 985
track history
spot report, 280
TDL message, 283
pitch, 1099
setting, 821
manually, 382
viewing, 382
Pitch dialog box, 821
Pitch set data request, 821
Place IED dialog box, 628
Place IED task, 628
placing, 375
IED, 628
new entity, 379
props, 375
simulation objects, 375
tactical graphics, 375
plan
abandoning, 540, 913
confirmation prompt, 546
from a plan, 913
adding
statement, 876
task, 876
altitude condition, 865
assigning to multiple simulation objects, 911
concepts, 856
condition
If, 876
conditional statement, 859
considerations for creating, 875
console message
sending, 903
copying, 912
creating object, 904
custom, 446, 452, 456
default, 446, 452, 456
deleting
object, 904
simulation object, 904
statement, 882-883
Do Until Interrupt condition, 864
drag and drop statement, 912
editing, 875
statement in, 882
entity, 858
when aggregated, 525
file, 209, 340
editing, 346
Follow Entity task, 872
force hostility, 284
global, 311, 858
writing, 896

global command
adding, 899
global task
view control, 906
If condition, 861
including scenario events, 268
individual, 311
inverting condition parameter, 892
issuing, 904
manager, 1603
Move to Location task, 593
name in condition, 893
pasting, 390
pattern in condition, 894
printing, 883
remote simulation object, 872, 911
restarting, 912
saving, 883
simulation time condition, 868
Tasked by Superior, 871
test result, 170, 910
trigger, 861
unit, for, 911
variable, 869
viewing, 870
Wait Until condition, 864
When statement, 861
While condition, 863
writing, 875
plan-manager parameter, 1603, 1605
Plan parameter, 343
plan view, 1093
Plan View
magnetic north, 1121
true north, 1121
Plan View window, 132
Plan window, 870, 875-878, 883, 912
planar reflection, 1018
SpeedTrees, 1020
planning
path, 593, 595, 1196
priority, 819
plant
avoiding, 360
platform
specifying, 1262
update
applying, 1246
platform file, 1405
variable binding
adding, 1412
adding to Simulation Object Editor, 1413
variable bindings, 1411
platoon
marking, 1275
preconfigured, 520
simulation object icon, 1006
playing
scenario event, 267
plug-in
adding, 151
configuration
deleting, 154
DLL
removing, 153
specifying, 152
list
viewing, 154
loading, 149-150, 159, 161, 164, 169, 178
managing, 149
version
checking, 159
XML file, 151
deleting, 154
Plug-ins dialog box, 149
Plug-ins Editor, 149, 151-154
pluginsDirectory parameter, 1589
PNG, 1163
point, 920
civilian visit, 476
crowd gathering at, 640
feature
list of, 1178
moving to, 595
orbiting around, 1107
patrolling between, 598
reversing, 956
riot, 649
strong
constructing, 698
suppressive fire at, 567, 623, 630
terrain profile
sampling rate, 1189
point-to-point communications
configuring, 1596
specifying, 181
point-to-point intervisibility, 1051
point feature
in front-end and back-end, 1164
POL
status, 413
polarized stereo, 1541
configuring, 1543
policy
Clamp Near Clip When Magnified, 1533
Distance To Attached, 1533

Reduce Near Clip, 1532
Reduce Z Fighting, 1533
polygon, 921, 1166
not going through, 1122
port, 356, 1403
default, 180
for scenario files, 1585
group, 356, 1403
number, 1596
specifying at startup, 180
specifying
at startup, 180
position, 1099
camera, 1541
observer, 1108, 1113, 1136
window attribute, 1529
position-offset parameter, 1490
post processor settings, 1025
posture
adding, 1363
affect on footprint, sensing, sensor signature, speed, 497
changing, 691, 850
Deliberate-Attack, 497
Deliberate-Defense, 497
Hasty-Attack, 497
Hasty-Defense, 497
Reconnaissance, 497
Rout, 497
setting, 822
transition time
editing, 1356
urgency, 837
Travel, 497
unit, 497
Posture dialog box, 822, 850
Posture set data request, 822, 850
power
adding new, 1477, 1627
combat, 495
determinant, 1472, 1622
explosive, 1460, 1618
laser, 815
power-list block, 1471, 1622
power-plant-active parameter, 293
power-type parameter, 1485
praying
human task, 637
precedence
components in OPD, 1405
precipitation, 314
intensity, 318
rain on terrain, 318
snow on ground, 319
type, 318
preconfigured unit, 520
Prefer Roads, 819
preferred movement mode, 651
preferred road data, 651
Preferred Targets dialog box, 850
Preferred Trajectory Height dialog box, 823
Preferred Trajectory Height set data request, 823
preloading
model, 203
Prepare Aircraft for QRA Status dialog box, 708
Prepare QRA task, 708
primary color
unit, 537
primary simulation object, 1138, 1140
printing
plan, 883
window, 133
priority
path planning, 819
weather zone, 320
prisoner-of-war, 832
probability
damage, 1625
probability-coefficient list, 1455, 1616
probability table
direct and collateral damage, 1456, 1617
procedural earth terrain, 1184
process
background, 783
object mappings to, 347
VR-Forces, 108
process ID
front-end, 169
proficiency
weapon systems, 829
profile
navigation data, 1204
profiler
function, 188
projected terrain database, 1103
projection
supported, 84
switching 2D to 3D, 1086
Projection Resize Policy, 1529
configuring, 1533
Projection Units, 1529
promotion-id parameter, 1490
prompt
confirmation
abandoning plan, 546

quit
disabling, 141
task confirmation
enabling or disabling, 546
prone, 822
prop, 375, 1164
adding
to Props Palette, 395
attaching observer to, 1132, 1135
configuring, 1164
creating, 365-366, 370, 373, 375, 394
extracting
from terrain, 1164
filtering attachment list, 1135
heading
setting, 382
pitch
setting, 382
placing, 375
saving, 394
property
buttonGroup, 789
channel, 1529
editing system, 1312
object
setting, 365
parameter, 1415
scenario
editing, 235
state, 1415
user-defined, 1415
tactical graphic
default, 1282
window, 1529
Props Palette, 365-366
adding objects to, 395
propulsion noise, 293
Protest Along Line dialog box, 648
Protest Along Line task, 648
Protest Around Location dialog box, 649
Protest Around Location task, 649
protesting
crowd, 648-649
human, 637
Provide Suppressive Fire at Object task, 630
Provide Suppressive Fire from Cover task, 567
Provide Suppressive Fire on Location task, 568, 629
providing
supplies, 506
proximity detonation, 1460, 1619
proximity fuse, 805
proximity sensor, 1460, 1619
pruning
element definitions, 1277
model definitions, 1277
object type mappings, 1277
visual models, 1277
publish-transmitter parameter, 1498
publish-transmitters parameter, 1498
published object type, 1394
publishing
entity velocity when paused, 1590
radio trasmitter, 1498
tactical graphics, 944
publishZeroVelocityWhenPaused parameter, 1590
puddles
rain, 318
pulse repetition rate, 1064


## Q


Qt Designer, 786, 1413
adding design elements, 791
parameter
adding, 786
selecting for script dialog box use, 786
UI file
details, 1414
Qt Linguist, 101
quadcopter, 600-601
quality
ocean, 333
question
asking from script, 777
scripted task, 431
queue
releasing entity from, 677
waiting in, 650
Quick Launch toolbar, 267
quick reaction alert
preparing aircraft for, 708
Quick Reaction Alert
launching aircraft, 706
quit prompt
disabling, 141
quitting
plan, 913
retask procedure, 548


## R


radar, 823
affect of rain, 1440

coverage, 289
configuring, 291
ID, 808
jamming, 289, 507-508
sensor, 808
Radar-Jamming-Strength-Receiving, 508
radar coverage
displaying, 291
enabling, 291
Radar Coverage Settings page, 291
radar mode
search, 823
track, 823
Radar Mode dialog box, 823
Radar Mode set data request, 823
radar sensor
sector blanking, 826
radio, 801, 805, 1074
communication line, 997
color, 1000
enabling and disabling, 998
lifetime, 999
configuring, 1498
message
set data request, 667
task, 668
Radio Button Choice parameter, 731, 789
Radio Communications Settings page, 998, 1000
radio transmitter
publishing, 1498
radius
emitter volume, 1065
sheaf, 704
rain, 314
accumulation, 318
effect on radar, 1440
intensity, 318
puddles, 318
splash effect, 1034
rain-to-attenuation-coefficient parameter, 1440
Raise Periscope task, 673
random
DI-Guy appearance, 1305
simulation object, 393
random-number-seed parameter, 343
Random condition, 867
Random Number Seed parameter, 217
randomized simulation object, 1316
range
bullseye, 950
focal, 1155
ground clamping, 1169
intervisibility line, 1057
laser codes, 287
Simulation Time Scale Toolbar
changing, 243
range-coefficients determinant, 1473, 1624
range-determinant parameter, 1455, 1616, 1630
range-from parameter, 1471, 1622
range-list determinant, 1473, 1624
range-list parameter, 1455, 1616
range line
configuring, 1060
creating, 1060
range ring, 988
bullseye, 951
configuring display of, 992
displaying, 988
displaying for entity, 992
enabling and disabling, 988, 991
pinning, 992
sensor, 989
range rings
spider web, 940
Range Rings Settings tab, 992
rate
climb, turn, and descent, 583
turn, 584
ray
crepuscular, 1022
intervisibility, 1051
sun, 1022
reactive task, 476, 552, 678, 716, 761, 782
canceling, 556
creating, 743
disabling, 554
enabling, 554
Visit Interest Points, 476
reader writer key value pair, 1363
Real DB, 91
real time
checkpointing in, 248
running faster or slower than, 117
recalling
view, 1126
view state, 1124
receive buffer size, 167, 175, 1596
Receive Text Message condition, 868
receiveInfluence() function, 760
receiveObjectMessage() function, 760
receiveTextMessage() function, 760
receiving
radio messages, 1498
supplies, 506
recently used scenario, 234

Reconnaissance
posture, 497
recording
to Logger, 257
recovering
embedded entity, 674
recovery, 802
recvBufferSize parameter, 1596
redo
ellipse rotation, 956
Reduce Near Clip
policy, 1532
Reduce Z Fighting
policy, 1533
Reduce Z Fighting Ratio
attribute, 1533
reference ellipsoid, 1586, 1592
configuring, 1593
reflection
map, 85
planar, 1018
refresh rate, 202
refreshing
visual models, 1277
refuel
aircraft, 579, 600
tanker aircraft, 667
Refuel from Tanker dialog box, 709
Refuel from Tanker task, 708
Refuel From task, 600
refueling
aircraft, 708
refueling boom, 671, 673
Refueling Mission dialog box, 709
Refueling Mission task, 709
regenerateNavigationDataAtRuntime parameter, 1590
regenerating navigation data, 1206
regenerating spot report definition, 1268
region
DDM, 192
update threshold, 192
register
trigger, 863
Register Trigger dialog box, 880
registering
triggers, 880
regulating
time, 137
reinitializing
scenario, 246
rejectMismatchedScenarioMessages parameter, 1590
rejoining exercise, 113
relative-heading parameter, 442
relative-position parameter, 442
relative path, 345
Release Bomb on Laser Spot task, 631
Release Bomb on Location task, 631
Release Bomb on Target task, 631
Release Next Entity From Queue task, 677
reloading
visual models, 1277
remapping
back-ends, 113
batch mode, 255
simuilation objects, 232
remapping objects, 240
remote
attachment
key-names, 1519
control, 86
of the observer, 1130
display
on multiple screens, 203
entity
attaching components to, 215, 1518
object, 114, 1397, 1603
network interface, 1402
observers, 1095
simulation object, 114, 545
markings, 872
plan, 911
use in plans, 872
stealth
displaying model, 1095
remote-configurations entry, 1519
remote-objects parameter, 1398, 1603
remote graphics
keyword, 1539
Remote Sensor Receiver system, 824
Remote Sensor set data request, 824
remoteAttachment example scenario, 1518
remoteConfigurations directory, 1519
Remove Jamming Target dialog box, 824
Remove Jamming Target set data request, 824
removing
articulated parts, 1309
assembly, 1349
channel, 1528
force, 1253
formation, 1335
navigation area, 1203
object from Favorites list, 395
object from OOB, 482
objects from selection group, 405

observer, 1089, 1093
simulation objectfrom unit, 522
subordinate, 1331
system, 1313
tag, 1248-1249
targets from priority list, 834-835
triggers from plan, 881
view, 1126
window, 1528
renaming
formation, 1335
observer mode, 1089
scenario, 232
selection group, 405
tag, 1248, 1250
render bin, 197
Render Settings page, 188, 190, 197-198, 202, 1023, 1037, 1157, 1174, 1534
Reorganize set data request, 824
reorganizing
concepts for units, 489
OOB members, 483
unit, 824
versus closing formation, 491
repair, 802
replacing
saved view list, 1129
subordinate, 1332
replicating
settings and data, 120
report
NBC, 709
obstacle, 710
reportedHostAddressString parameter, 1590
repository, 1602
require statement
Lua, 758
Reserve Space, 439
resetting
simulation object health and stores, 825
resizeable window, 1524
resizing
boxes and text overlay objects, 955
windows, 1533
resource
information, 411
monitoring entity, 427
pacing and tracking, 851
specifying, 825
status at creation, 384
tracking unit, 525
resource-item
adding, 1363
Resource condition, 868
Resource Information
page, 428
Resources dialog box, 825
Resources Pacing/Tracking dialog box, 851
Resources Pacing/Tracking set data request, 851
Resources set data request, 825
Restart Plan command, 912
restarting
plan, 912
Restore set data request, 825
restoring
embedded entity parent, 444
simulation object health and stores, 825
unit, 525, 825
view, 1126
result
detonation, 1486
resume() function, 759
resuming
simulation, 242
resupply, 507, 802
modes, 851
Resupply Mode dialog box, 851
Resupply Mode set data request, 851
retreat, 707
retrograde movement, 707
reuseEntityIdentifiersOnScenarioLoad parameter, 1591
Reverse Actions button, 590
Reverse Direction, 587
Reverse Route button, 590
reversing
line direction, 956
reverting
category changes, 1250
navigation area edits, 1202
window layout, 1550
revision
RPR FOM, 166, 173
revolving
observer, 1107
rewinding
scenario, 244, 247
scripted task, 746
to a snapshot or checkpoint, 244
RGB, 1163
Rhone Valley terrain, 1184
RID file, 100, 178
rid.mtl file, 100, 178
right-click menu, 1553
configuring, 1563

rightclickmenu
  element, 1563
ring
  range, 988
Riot dialog box, 649
Riot task, 649
road
  data
    using in path planning, 819
  driving on, 561
  driving on left or right side, 561
  network, 560
  using route as, 586
Role dialog box, 852
Role set data request, 852
roll, 1099
roll up
  rule, 1350
rolling back to a snapshot, 244
rolling up assembly, 1351
rope
  extraction, 661-662
  insertion, 663
  sliding down, 660
  sling load drop off, 660
  sling load pick up, 659
Rope Extraction task, 661
Rope Sling Load Drop Off
  task, 660
Rope Sling Load Pick Up
  task, 659
Rope Suspention Insertion task, 663
rotary-wing
  speed, 411
rotary-wing-entity-param parameter, 1401, 1606
rotary-wing-entity-state-repository, 1401
rotary-wing entity
  altitude, 582-583
  attacking with gun, 613
  circling a point, 597
  heading, 583-584
  holding pattern, 599
  landing, 601
  landing at airport, 586
  terrain avoidance, 567
Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo to Location task, 600
rotary wing entity
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
Rotary Wing Land dialog box, 601
Rotary Wing Land task, 601
Rotary Wing Retrieve Cargo task, 601
Rotary Wing Unload Cargo task, 602
rotating
  ellipse, 956
rotation
  wheel, 1002
rotation path
  smoothing, 199
rotor wash, 1034
  enabling and disabling, 1038
  high quality, 1039
roughness type
  mapped to soil type, 360
round, 298
round-down parameter, 1476, 1626
Rout
  posture, 497
route, 918, 921
  altitude
    displaying, 924
    setting, 381
  computed
    creating, 944
  extruded, 941
  following, 586, 588
  patrolling, 598
  using as road, 586
RPR FOM, 179
  revision, 166, 173
  specifying version, 1595
  version, 166, 173
rprFomVersion parameter, 1595
RTI, 100
  configuring for time management, 138
  definition of, 100
RTI_CONFIG environment variable, 100
RTI_timeMgmt parameter, 138
RTI_useRtiExec parameter, 138
rtiexec, 138
rule
  roll up, 1350
rules of engagement
  pasting, 390
  setting, 825
Rules of Engagement dialog box, 826
Rules of Engagement set data request, 825
run
  scenario
    using PDU, 256
run-duration-time parameter, 344
run-duration parameter, 255
run mode, 1592
  starting back-end in, 171
runInTimeManagementMode parameter, 138, 1595

running, 822
  batch scenario, 255
  simulation, 242
runway, 564
  compute, 1214
  condition
    setting, 1220
  create, 1215
  information dialog box, 1221
  set aerodrome, 1218
Runway Condition set data request, 1220
runway lights
  setting from panel, 1216
Rush to Location task, 649
rwKeywordValuePairs.xml, 1363

## S

Sadr City terrain, 1184
Sail Heading dialog box, 602
Sail Heading task, 575, 602
salvo, 298
sample
  scenario, 238
sampling rate
  freehand line, 937
  intervisibility
    configuring, 1055
San Luis Obispo terrain, 1185
sand
  blowing in wind, 324
sandstorm, 325
satellite
  setting orbit, 820
saturation-water-depth parameter, 362
Save Scenario dialog box, 231
saved views file, 209
  scenario, 340
saveState() function, 759
saving
  checkpoint, 247-248
  display engine configuration, 1528
  global variables, 765
  load-balanced scenario, 232
  observer view
    individual, 1128
  plan, 883
  prop, 394
  scenario, 113, 230, 247
    existing, 231
    under new name, 232
  screen capture, 133
  scripts, 746
  settings, 118, 120
  tactical graphics, 931
  view, 1124-1125
    to file, 1128
  window layout, 1547, 1550
scale
  factor
    material ambient and diffuse value, 1016
  terrain, 1181
Scale Factor slider, 1008
Scaled Speed check box, 1123
scaling
  3D model, 1008
  3D models, 1008
  icon
    2D, 1006
  model
    linear and XR, 1008
scatterable mines, 947
scenario, 209
  batch, 253
  building blocks, 224
  checkpoint, 247
  checkpoints and snapshots, 247
  closing, 246
  collaborative development, 224
  component attachment table, 217
  compressed format, 209, 340
  creating new, 213
  creating objects from OOB, 481
  description
    editing, 237
  end time, 217, 251
    new scenario, 251
  file, 113, 209, 340
    editing, 340
    parameters, 341
    pathnames, 345
    specifying which to use, 1591
  format
    saving to different, 232
  frame mode, 217
  frame time, 217
  importing, 224
  information
    displaying, 235
  load-balanced
    saving, 232
    starting, 240
  load balancing existing, 239
  load balancing new, 238
  loading, 164, 170, 233
    at startup, 170

recently used, 234
merging, 224
MSDL
exporting, 225
importing, 225
name, 215
parameter
setting, 214
version, 345
properties
editing, 235
random number seed, 217
reinitializing, 246
remoteAttachment, 1518
renaming, 232
reopening, 247
resuming, 242
rewinding, 244, 247
scripted task, 746
rolling back to snapshot or checkpoint, 244
running, 242
sample, 238
saving, 113, 230, 247
existing, 231
under new name, 232
scenario objects, 347
simulation model set, 216
SMS
multiple, 218
starting, 242
starting date and time, 221
startup observer view, 1127
temporary directory, 348
terrain, 346
display, 216
simulation, 215
time multiplier, 217
zoom to extents on load, 1118
scenario-data parameter, 345
Scenario-Extras parameter, 343
scenario-filename parameter, 254
scenario-name parameter, 344
Scenario-Scripts parameter, 343
scenario-specific
GUI settings file, 340
spawn pattern, 453
scenario event, 260
adding audio, video, and graphics, 263
creating, 260
deleting, 271
enabling and disabling, 270
ending, 269
intelligence object, 265
sending, 267
sending from plan, 268
Scenario Event condition, 868
Scenario Event dialog box, 268
Scenario Event Manager, 260, 265, 267, 269-271
Scenario Event Settings page, 271
Scenario Event Toolbar, 260
scenario extras file, 340, 453
Scenario Name parameter, 215
scenario objects, 347
file, 347, 931
default values in, 348
scenario objects file, 340
Scenario Properties dialog box, 237
scenario script, 715
Scenario Snapshots dialog box, 245, 248, 250-251
Scenario Startup dialog box, 126-127
Scenario Toolbar, 250
ScenarioDescription parameter, 345
ScenarioExtentInformation parameter, 345
scenarioFileName parameter, 1591
scene
loading from command line, 165
scheduling
crowd gathering, 640
periodic checkpoint, 248
spawn event, 450
schema
tactical graphic model, 1284
SciTE, 716
scnx
file, 209, 340
screen
capturing image, 133
multiple
performance, 203
screen capture
saving, 133
setting save location, 133
screen number
setting, 162
Screen Number attribute, 1529
script
adding to task toolbar, 740
availability
by simulation object type or behavior set, 736
creating, 717
deleting, 751
description, 725
extended name, 724
ID, 738
editing, 723
image list, 731

laying out using Designer, 786
location
object, 772
making available by behavior set, 738
metadata, 717
parameter types, 725
previewing dialog box, 722
saving, 746
script
editing, 753
script ID, 720, 723
set data request, 715
simulation object type supported, 737
system and scenario, 715
Task menu location, 734
script-ids parameter, 738
Script Settings page, 188, 733, 753
scripted
behavior, 577
movement
configuring, 1319
scripted set, 716
accessing state properties, 1418
creating, 742
scripted task, 715-716
accessing state properties, 1418
actioncategory, 570
adding to folder, 748
adding to toolbar, 1566
Affects Controls check box, 733
background process, 783
concurrent, 742
copying, 750
editing, 747
entry point, 759
execution flow, 761
exporting and importing, 749
filtering list, 747
folder
adding, 748
deleting, 748
renaming, 748
importing, 749
in system definition, 738
interactive, 777
language, 741
organizing, 748
package, 749
parameters
getting list of, 771
question, 431
reactive task, 552, 761, 782
removing from folder, 749
rewinding, 746
script ID, 766
script storage location, 749
system
creating, 751
making available on Task menu, 751
storage location, 751
Update_EW_Degradation, 508
scripts file, 340
scriptstext editor
specifying, 753
SDK toolkit, 95
sea
spray, 1034
enabling and disabling, 1037
state, 331
Douglas, 328
swell, 331
sea spray
size, 1037
search
radar mode, 823
search and rescue, 674
emergency beacon, 807, 1311
flight pattern
creeping line, 603
expanding square, 605
parallel, 607
sensor, 1311
Search and Rescue task
Fly Creeping Line Pattern, 603
Fly Expanding Square Pattern, 605
Fly Parallel Pattern, 607
secondary
simulation object, 1138, 1140
window, 132
section
simulation object icon, 1006
sector
area, 939
navigation area, 1199
spider web, 940
unit, 496, 989
Sector Blanking set data request, 826
sector of responsibility
setting, 827
Sector of Responsibility dialog box, 828
Sector of Responsibility set data request, 827
Sector Search Operation dialog box, 675
Sector Search Operation task, 674
segment
angle
setting, 1066

arc size, 1066
edge, 1067
emitter volume, 1065
outline
displaying, 1067
Segment Timeout slider, 980
Selected Simulation Engine Toolbar, 368, 370
selecting
database for front-end, 214
entity
from Object Console Summary Panel, 402
object, 400
multiple list box, 548
to create, 365
objects, 1257
observer, 1089
selection group, 404
simulation objects, 401
unit, 521, 530
selection box, 401
selection group, 472
adding object to new, 403
adding to, 404
creating, 403
creating from keyboard, 404
creating from menu, 403
deleting, 405
file
scenario, 340
introduction, 402
removing object from, 405
renaming, 405
selecting, 404
Selection Group View, 398
SelectionGroups parameter, 343
self
as condition parameter, 892
self reflection
DIS, 175
send-spot-reports-on-own-force parameter, 277
send buffer size, 168, 175, 1596
Send NBC Report dialog box, 710
Send Obstacle Report dialog box, 710
Send Radio Set task, 667
Send Radio Task task, 668
Send Text Message command, 902
Send Text Message task, 669
sendBackendLogToNetwork parameter, 1591
sendBufferSize parameter, 1596
sendFedTime parameter, 1595
sending
console message, 903
data
configuring, 1587
messages, 357
NBC report, 709
obstacle report, 710
radio messages, 1498
scenario events, 267
from plan, 268
set data request via radio message, 667
task via radio message, 668
text message (command), 902
text message (task), 669
view control
in plan, 906
SenSim, 1044
sensing
electronic emission, 507
sensing target, 1451, 1613
sensor, 285, 356-357, 1430, 1451, 1613
adding new, 1437
affect of posture, 497
aiming, 828
apparent signature, 1435
attaching to remote entity, 1518
channel attribute, 1529
configuring, 1430
connecting, 1430
detection probability, 1435
detection table, 1441
detection types, 1437
emission, 509
footprint, 500
gimbaled, 828-829, 1150
field of view, 1151
field of view color, 828
setting azimuth, 1154
information, 411
mode
full color, 1047
parameter
editing, 1357
proximity, 1460, 1619
radar, 808
sector blanking, 826
range ring, 989
See also. sensor signature, 1432
sensor contact line, 986
SIGINT, 509
signature
apparent, 1441
signature-object-sensor, 1430
system, 1310

system definition file, 1406
editing, 1431
unit, 500
view, 1151-1152
create command, 909
visual
illumination, 1440
zooming, 829
sensor-signatures.csv, 1307, 1433
Sensor Aim set data request, 828
sensor component
adding, 1438
sensor contact line
configuring, 988
enabling, 986
enabling and disabling, 986
specifying objects that can display, 987
sensor contact line pinning, 987
Sensor Control Panel, 1152
sensor effects, 1044
blur, noise, and gain, 1045
configuring, 1045
Sensor Enabled set data request, 832
Sensor Field of View Color dialog box, 828
Sensor Field of View Color set data request, 828
Sensor Settings page, 1046-1047
sensor signature, 292, 1311, 1432
adding, 1439
affect of posture, 497
modifying, 945
predefined, 1307
setting, 1307
standard, 1433
Sensor Texture map, 1045
sensor view, 1150
create command, 909
Sensor Zoom set data request, 829
separation-distance parameter, 552
separation-tolerance parameter, 552
separator
menu, 1560
server
terrain, 1166-1167
session, 112
ID, 123, 165, 167
assigning, 128
configuring, 1591
setting at startup, 170
joining at startup, 135
message
configuring, 135
starting and stopping, 256
sessionId parameter, 1591
set
scripted, 716
creating, 742
Set Ammunition, 841
Set Appearance, 1017
Set command
default, 793
set data request, 793
Activation, 962
Active Sonar Mode, 798
Add Jamming Target, 798
Aerodrome, 1218, 1220
Aerodrome Lights, 1218
AI Enabled, 798
Aiming, 799
Aircraft Lighting, 799
Allow Crossing set, 963
Altitude, 563, 800
Ammunition Pacing/Tracking, 841
Appearance, 801
Armed, 801
Arrowhead Style, 963
Articulated Part, 801
Assign Aircraft, 842
Assume Unknown is Hostile, 801
Attention Grabbing, 802
Automatically Close Doors, 802
Capabilities, 802
Collision Avoidance Types, 803
Color, 964
Concealed, 804
Contamination, 844
Counter Measures Auto Launch, 295, 804
Current Speed, 804
Destroyed, 805
Detonation Fuse Type, 805
DI-Guy Characteristics, 806
DI-Guy Hand Item, 806
Disembarked, 440, 807
Embarked, 438, 807
Emergency Beacon, 807
Emitter, 684, 698, 808
Engagement Results, 845
Engagement Zone, 809
Equipment Pacing/Tracking, 845
Facilities, 845
Fill Style, 964
Food, Water, Fuel, Oil, and Lubricant Pacing/Tracking, 847
Food, Water, Motor-Gas, Aviation-Fuel, Diesel Fuel, Oil, Lubricant, 846
for IFF transponder, 812
Force, 809, 964

Formation, 810
in plan, 871
Freeze Fuel Levels, 810
Freeze Movement, 810
Freeze Munition Levels, 811
Ground Clamp Fidelity, 811
Has Drag Chute, 847
Heading, 812
Hide Occupants, 812
Invisible, 813
Invulnerable, 814
Jammer State, 814
Jamming Mode, 814
Lase Autonomous, 288, 815
Laser Code, 287-288, 815
Laser Power and Wavelength, 815
Line Width, 964
Loadout, 816, 848
Location, 817
Look At, 817
Navigation Enabled, 818
Navigation Preferences, 819
Navigation Priority, 819
Notify Level, 820
tactical graphic, 964
Orbit, 820
Ordered Speed, 820
Pen Style, 965
Percent Complete, 849
Personnel and Supplies, 849
Pitch, 821
Posture, 822, 850
Preferred Trajectory Height, 823
Radar mode, 823
Remote Sensor, 824
Remove Jamming Target, 824
Reorganize, 824
Resources, 825
Resources Pacing/Tracking, 851
Restore, 825
Resupply Mode, 851
Role, 852
Rules of Engagement, 825
Runway Condition, 1220
script, 715
Sector Blanking, 826
Sector of Responsibility, 827
sending by radio, 667
Sensor Aim, 828
Sensor Enabled set, 832
Sensor Field of View Color, 828
Sensor Zoom, 829
Set Ordered Speed, 575
Skill Level, 829
Sonar Depth, 830
Spot Reports, 831
Stow Hand Item, 831
Subsystem Enabled, 832
Superior, 832
Supplying, 852
Surrendered, 832
Synchronize Laser Code, 288, 833
TACAN transmitter, 829
tactical graphics, 962
Tanker Lighting, 833
Target, 833
Target Priority List - Add, 834
Target Priority List - Clear, 834
Target Priority List - Update, 835
Tasked by Superior, 552, 835
TDL Messaging, 836
Tracer Use, 836
Undetectable, 836
Unit State, 837
Urgency, 837
Weapons Pacing/Tracking, 853
Set menu
editing, 1565
icon, 723
sorting, 1560
Set MOPP Level, 848
Set Morale, 849
Set Ordered Altitude in Move Along Route with Actions task, 589
Set Ordered Speed set data request, 575
set statement, 793
See also. set data request, 793
Set toolbar
adding to, 1566
setCheckpointMode function, 765
setDeadReckoningAlgorithmToStaticOnPause parameter, 1591
setMainThreadToHighPriority parameter, 1591
setting
altitude, 380, 800
dialog box, 380
manually, 380
route, 381
altitude for fixed-wing entity, 563
appearance, 800
autonomous lasing, 815
capabilities, 802
collision avoidance types, 803
color
unit bounding volume, 537
combat engineering object percent complete, 849

concealment, 804
date, 312
emitter, 808
emitter volume radius, 1065
factory and default, 118
formation, 810
frame rate, 160
heading, 365, 812
manually, 382
icons, 118
IFF, 812
laser code, 815
loading, 118
location, 365, 817
LOD scale, 1020
MOPP level, 848
morale, 849
name, 365
notification level, 177, 820
entity, 430
ordered speed, 820
overlay, 365
pitch
manually, 382
posture, 822
precipitation
intensity, 318
type, 318
properties
object, 365
resources, 846
rules of engagement, 825
saving, 118
sector of responsibility, 827
segment arc size, 1066
simulation object, 793
parameters, 793
to be destroyed, 805
simulation speed with time management, 242
skill level, 829
superior, 832
support point, 1299
target, 833
time of day, 313
time zone, 313
user, 120
visibility, 316
weather, 314
settings
GUI
saving, 1547
GUI layout, 161
post processor, 1025
property
default, 1282
scenario GUI, 340
Simulation Object Editor
GUI layout, 1229
synchronizing, 120
Settings menu, 118
shader, 85
shadow
configuring, 1030
enabling and disabling, 1028
SpeedTree
enabling and disabling, 1029
text
2D label, 422
Shadow Settings page, 1028, 1031
shake
camera, 1120
shaking camera, 1120
shape terrain data, 1163
shapefile
exporting overlays to, 932
importing to overlay, 933
sharing
resources, 193
sheaf radius, 704
shooter
laser, 287
shooter-and-impact-point range, 1473, 1623
shooter-to-impact range, 1473, 1623
short name, 1261
shortcut menu, 1553, 1563
Show Function Profiler Overlay, 188, 191
Show Ground Truth For, 276
Show Occupants, 658
Show Occupants check box, 1011
Show Only Active Environmentals, 959
Show Session Terrain Change Prompts, 137
Show Spot Reports from Viewpoint of Force, 276
Show Spot Reports Sent By, 277
showCockpits keyword, 1539
showHuds, 1530
showing
objects, 922-923
symbol decoration, 421
vertex labels, 924
showLines parameter, 1068
showRemoteGraphics keyword, 1539
SHP
file, 1163
shutdown() function, 760
SIGINT sensor, 509

signal
  interaction, 997
signal_slot, 1414
signature
  apparent, 1436, 1441
  sensor, 292, 1432
signature-object-sensor, 1430
signature propagator
  configuring, 1437
SilverLining, 88
  configuration, 89
  license, 89
sim-time parameter, 344
simMgmtPduProcessLevel parameter, 1592
SimObject class, 757
simple-radio-comm-model, 355
Simthetiq, 91
simulated world
  navigating, 1099
simulation
  closing, 246
  date, 221
  engine, 108
  pausing, 244
  resuming, 242
  rewinding, 244
  running, 242
    automatically, 252
  speed
    with time management, 242
  start mode, 1592
  starting, 242
  time, 115, 137, 221
    checkpointing in, 248
    evaluating in plan, 868
Simulation-Model-Set-Files parameter, 344
simulation-run-duration parameter, 255
Simulation Connections Configuration dialog box, 149
Simulation Control Toolbar, 130, 242, 244, 246
Simulation Date/Time condition, 868
simulation engine
  closing, 141
  exiting, 141
  remapping objects to, 240
  specifying, 368, 370
simulation management message
  configuring, 1592
simulation model set, 1229
  AggregateLevel.sms, 495
  configuration, 219
    default, 220-221
  creating, 1244
  default, 158
  deleting entity, 1280
  entity-level and aggregate-level, 359
  file, 1229
  hostility file, 283
  multiple, 218
  new
    creating, 1244
  opening, 1243
  platform file, 1405
  specifying on command-line, 172
simulation model set configuration
  default, 219
Simulation Model Sets parameter, 216
simulation object
  adding to
    selection group, 404
    unit, 522
  adding to Order of Battle, 479, 481
  articulated parts, 1307
  assigning plan to multiple, 911
  attaching observer to, 1136
  attaching tactical graphic to, 952
  attribute
    information, 411
  automatically attaching tactical graphic to, 952
  behavior, 358
  centering observer on, 1119
  changing
    name, 1261
    undoing changes, 1265
  changing tag, 1257
  collision and obstacle avoidance, 359
  communication model, 355
  components, 1402
  concepts, 352
  console
    setting notification level, 820
  console message, 429
    saving, 432
    sending, 903
    viewing, 430
  copying, 388-389
  count, 433
  creating, 365, 370, 375
    from existing, 1279
    in plan, 904
    multiple, 472
  creating from OOB, 481
  creating multiple, 468
  creation
    enabling and disabling, 1261

deleting, 392
in plan, 904
deleting in plan, 904
destroyed, 805
dragging, 384
to new location, 817
editing, 386, 1227
enumeration
published and matching, 1394
filtering attachment list, 1135
filtering list of, 550
filtering using interest management, 191
firing at target, 286
frame rate
back-end, 187
heading, 812
setting, 382
hiding, 274
hiding list of in Simulation Object Editor, 1236
hostility, 283
icon, 1006
CID level and color, 286
identifiers, 352
information, 409
multiple, 415
inset view, 1146
intervisibility fan, 1052
label, 354, 420
extended, 422
list
spot report, 279
list of, 1247
local and remote, 114
model, 1229
editing, 1257
reloading, 1277
move to location, 592
name, 416, 1261
length restrictions, 353
pasting, 390
patrol between, 598
patrol route, 598
pinning intervisibility object to, 1057
pitch
setting, 382, 821
placing, 375
plan
issuing to, 904
viewing, 870
platform
updating, 1246
properties
specifying at creation, 377
property
editing, 1303
keyword, 1303
random creation of, 393
range ring, 988
remote
in task, 545
plans, 911
removing
from unit, 522
resource
monitoring, 427
resource at creation, 384
restoring health and stores, 825
See also entity and unit[simulation object
aaa], 79
selecting, 400-401
from Object Console Summary Panel, 402
setting
appearance, 800
location, 817
state and parameters, 793
setting icon for icon list, 1264
specifying resource, 825
spot report
enabling or disabling, 831
state, 357, 793
storing list of, 347
systems
adding, 1311
editing, 1310
target detection, 285
task, 358
tasking by superior, 835
track history, 978
trailing effect, 975
UUID, 352-353
viewing in Navigation Lab, 1211
views of, 398
waiting, 670
ways to add to scenario, 224
writing plan, 875
zooming to extents, 1117
Simulation Object Editor, 88, 1227
command-line arguments, 1228
configuring DI-Guy character and appearance,
1303
configuring systems, 1227
embedded entity, 442
force
adding, 1252
editing, 1253
removing, 1253

formation
bounding box, 1335
generating navigation data for entity, 1207
managing forces, 1252
simulation object group, 1280
starting, 1227, 1503
variable binding
adding, 1413
system definition file, 1415
simulation object group, 224, 392
and selection groups, 402
connection, 1281
creating, 1280
loading with terrain, 161
simulation object icons, 1006
Simulation Object Independently Tasked condition, 868
Simulation Object parameter, 732, 790
simulation object type
script availability, 736
script validity, 737
Simulation Object variable, 869
Simulation Objects Palette, 365-366
assigning or removing simulation object, 1261
Simulation Selection Toolbar, 130
Simulation Settings page, 424-425, 881
Simulation Terrain parameter, 215
simulation time, 116
Simulation Time condition, 868
Simulation Time Scale Toolbar, 130, 243
range
changing, 243
Simulation Time Toolbar, 130
simulationModelSet parameter, 1592
simulationObjectEditor.csv, 1250
sink point, 446
creating, 448
SISO Enumerations Document, 114, 1486
SISO Reference for Enumerations for Simulation Interoperability, 1393
site ID, 109, 166, 168, 171, 347
configuring, 1592
specifying, 171
at startup, 177
siteId parameter, 1592
sitting, 822
situational awareness, 1093
size
region, 192
sea spray, 1037
splash effect, 1037
water droplet, 1037
window, 1529
Size group box, 1299
skill level
hit probability, 1462
Skill Level set data request, 829
Skip Task
task, 552
skipping task, 551
sky
star configuration, 89
skybox cube map, 1024
omitting clouds, 1024
Skybox Cube Map Regeneration Threshold, 1025
slider
Segment Timeout, 980
visual quality
configuring, 199
slope-avoidance-factor parameter, 362
slot
adding, 1366, 1368, 1374
configuring, 1368, 1374
embarkation, 1366, 1493
exclusion, 1372
ingress and egress technique, 1373
name, 657, 1366
parameters, 1370
passenger and driver, 657
type, 657, 1366
smallCompass keyword, 1101, 1539
smoke
creating, 626
plume, 981
trail, 975
smoke area, 325
smooth period, 200
smoothing, 199
SMS
migrating, 1242
object list, 1247
vrfSim.opd, 1234
sms-filename parameter, 254
snap to grid
formation, 1338
snapshot, 247
automatic deletion, 244
clearing list, 251
creating, 250
deleting, 251
enabling periodic, 250
rolling back to, 244
saving as checkpoint, 248
snow, 314
blowing in wind, 324
depth, 319

intensity, 318
SO file, 149
SOEUILayoutSettings, 1229
SOG. See simulation object group, 392
soil-list parameter, 360
soil type
changing drag and traction factors for ground vehicles, 361
configuring for GDB, 1182
mapped to roughness type, 360
point and feature, 1180
solid line, 957
sonar
active
mode, 798
active and passive, 292
depth, 830
dipping, 677
information, 411
sonobuoy, 676
thermocline, 293, 334
Sonar Depth dialog box, 830
Sonar Depth set data request, 830
Sonar Dip task, 677
sonobuoy
deploying, 676
sorting
Task and Set menus, 1560
sound effects, 1070
enabling, 1070-1071
mapping to entities, 1072
space entity
specifying measurement unit, 1555
Space Follow mode, 1139
spawn burst, 451
spawn event
scheduling, 450
spawn interval, 450, 452, 455
variance, 451-452, 455
spawn pattern, 449
bursts, 455
copying, 457
default, 453
deleting, 459
description, 454
editing, 457
name, 454
new, 453
scenario-specific, 453
timing, 455
Spawn Pattern Manager, 447-448, 453, 457-458
spawn point, 446
activating and deactivating, 448
compared to other air traffic generation methods, 459
creating, 447
enabling and disabling, 962
spawned
entity, 446
Specify Time on Target option, 588
specifying
application number, 168
bounding volume, 1297
damage model, 1312
entity to create, 475
FED file, 180
frame rate mode, 344
HLA federation execution, 178
language, 160
log file, 161
movement model, 1312
notification level, 163
platform, 1262
point-to-point and multicast modes, 181
port
at startup, 180
resource, 825
segment angle, 1066
simulation model set, 172
site ID, 171
terrain profile sampling frequency, 1189
unit target, 850
specular
color, 1016
specular map, 85
speed, 416
aircraft, 411
gain, 1123
scaling, 1122
enabling and disabling, 1122
setting, 820
specifying measurement unit, 1555
tidal current, 328, 332
wind, 314
speed-to-rpm-factor parameter, 294
speed scaling
mode, 1123
SpeedTree, 88
license, 90
LOD
zoom, 165
shadows
enabling and disabling, 1029
SpeedTree Settings page, 1030
SpeedTrees
planar reflection, 1020

spheroidSemiMajor parameter, 1592
spheroidSemiMinor parameter, 1592
spider web
  drawing, 940
splash effect, 1034
  size, 1037
spot-report-generator.sysdef file, editing, 277
spot report, 160, 274, 709-710
  custom viewpoint, 276
  decay rate, 277
  enabling and disabling, 274
    for simulation object, 831
  icon
    changing, 1270
    updating, 1268
  label, 279
  role in target detection, 286
  setting defaults in sysdef file, 277
  tactical graphics, for, 278
  track history, 279
    pinning, 280
  using in task, 279
  viewpoint, 275-276
Spot Report Settings page, 275-276, 278-280, 831
Spot Reports dialog box, 831
Spot Reports set data request, 831
spotlight, 1017
spray
  enabling and disabling, 1039
spreadsheet
  tag, 1251
squad
  dismount helicopter task, 666
  simulation object icon, 1006
Squad Travel to Waypoint dialog box, 650
Squad Travel to Waypointtask, 650
squatting, 822
squawk indicator, 997
  color, 1000
  enabling and disabling, 998
  lifetime, 999
standard-power-type parameter, 1484
standard-terrain-damage-table, 1485
standard-terrain-damage-table block, 1484
standard-terrain-damage-type parameter, 1484
standard beam, 808
standard terrain damage, 1484
standing, 822
stars
  configuration, 89
Start/Resume message, 256
starting
  back-end, 123
  front-end, 123
  scenario
    load-balanced, 240
  scenario event, 267
  simulation, 242
  Simulation Object Editor, 1227, 1503
  VR-Forces, 123
startInRunMode parameter, 1592
startMinimized parameter, 1592
startup
  back-end minimize, 1592
  option, 157
  tutorial, 128
state
  sea, 331
  simulation object
    information, 411
  update
    sending, 1094
state-repository parameter, 1602, 1604
state property, 1415
  accessing from lua, 1418
  adding, 1415
  data types supported, 1417
  displaying in Information dialog box, 1418
  user-defined, 1415
state repository, 1453, 1602, 1614
  hierarchy, 1399-1401
statement
  adding to plan, 876
  deleting, 882-883
  editing in plan, 882
  plan
    drag and drop, 912
statistics
  displaying, 188
  VR-Vantage performance, 190
status
  combat engineering object, 503
  entity, 427
  navigation area, 1206
  personnel, ammunition, weapons, and POL, 413
  subtask, 767
  task, 549, 767
statusUpdateHeartbeat parameter, 1592
Stealth
  control, 906
  observer mode, 120
  window, 132
stealth mode, 836
stencil bits, 164
stencil buffer, 196
step-function, 1476, 1626

stereo display
  types of, 1541
Stop/Freeze message, 256
stopping
  movement, 702
  scenario event, 269
  subtask, 768
  task, 551, 768
stopping-distance-factor parameter, 1492
stopping-factor parameter, 361
stores
  restoring simulation object, 825
storm
  sand, 325
Stow Hand Item dialog box, 832
Stow Hand Item set data request, 831
Stow Refueling Boom task, 673
Strafe Ground Target dialog box, 633
Strafe Ground Target task, 632
strafing
  target, 616
strategic missile, 303
strategic missile weapon system, 625
streaming
  terrain, 1167
street light, 1017
strength, 495
strong point
  creating, 698
  improving, 703
style
  fill, 957
  line, 957
  pen, 957
subcomponent, 1601
  classes, 1397
subgoal, 1196
submarine
  lowering periscope, 672
  moving to depth, 592
  raising periscope, 673
subnet mask, 168, 1597
subnetMask parameter, 1597
subordinate
  adding to unit, 1330
  disaggregated unit, 524
  editing, 1332
  in condition, 892
  information, 414
  order
    changing, 1332
  removing from unit, 1331
  replacing, 1332
  task status, 868
  unit
    aggregated unit, 524
Subordinates tab
  unit, 524
subsurface-entity-param parameter, 1401, 1606
subsurface-entity-state-repository, 1401
subsurface entity
  moving to depth, 592
  patrol area task, 597
  RPM, 293
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
Subsystem Enabled dialog box, 832
Subsystem Enabled set data request, 832
subtask
  Lua, 766
  state
    canceled, 767
    complete, 767
    running, 767
  status, 767
  stopping, 768
sun
  ray, 1022
sunbeam, 1022
sunrise-time parameter, 1440
sunset-time parameter, 1440
super-type, 1394
superior
  setting, 832
  tasking simulation object, 835
Superior dialog box, 832
Superior set data request, 832
supplies, 504
  information, 414
  providing, 506
  receiving, 506
  starting or stopping delivery, 852
Supplies page, 503
supplies parameter
  editing, 1361
supply line, 995
Supplying dialog box, 852
Supplying set data request, 852
support point
  setting, 1299
suppressDataAvailableException parameter, 1592
suppression-degrades-sensor-performance-by
      parameter, 570
suppression-detonation-insult parameter, 569
suppression-detonation-range parameter, 569
suppression-insult-level parameter, 569
suppression-recovery-time parameter, 569

suppressive fire
  at location, 568
  at point, line, or area, 567, 623, 630
suppressSelfReflect parameter, 1597
surface
  changing drag and traction factors for ground vehicles, 361
  clamping to, 1168
  damage specification, 1476, 1626, 1630
  transparency, 328, 332, 1538
  type
    mapped to roughness type, 360
surface-entity-param parameter, 1401, 1606
surface-entity-state-repository, 1401
surface entity
  buoyancy, 1040
  patrol area task, 597
  RPM, 293
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
  wake, 975
  zig zag to heading task, 610
surge depth, 328, 332
surrender
  lifeform
    testing, 867
surrendered, 867
Surrendered dialog box, 833
Surrendered set data request, 832
suspend() function, 759
swell, 85, 328
  sea, 331
switch node
  displaying, 1272
  visual model, 1272
Switch Node States, 1272
symbol
  location of, 96
symbol decoration
  showing and hiding, 421
Symbol Decoration Settings page, 420-422
synchronization
  vertical, 202
Synchronize Laser Code dialog box, 833
Synchronize Laser Code set data request, 288, 833
synchronized
  ocean, 164
synchronizing
  back-ends, 137
  data and settings, 120
  laser codes, 833
sysdef file. See system definition file, 1406
system, 1406
  active-radar-sensor, 508
  adding to simulation object, 1311
  aggregate-comms-jammer, 507
  aggregate-radar-jammer, 509
  configuring in Simulation Object Editor, 1227
  connection, 1407
  damage, 1470, 1621, 1634, 1637
  editing
    properties, 1312
  embedded entity, 442
  emissions-sensor, 509
  entity, 1310
    disabling, 832
    enabling, 832
    status, 411
  explosive device, 1461, 1620
  marker in 3D model view, 1313
  missile launcher, 1456
  movement
    properties, 1355
  Naval Depth Charge Deployment, 613-614
  Naval Mine Deployment, 614, 616
  naval mine explosive device, 1461, 1620
  Remote Sensor Receiver, 824
  removing, 1313
  script, 715
  scripted task
    creating, 751
  sensor, 1430
    detection probability table, 1435
  simulation object
    editing, 1310
  tactical radar jammer, 289
  weapon, 1444
system definition
  specifying scripted task in, 738
system definition file, 1406, 1444
  applying new variable bindings, 1246
  configuring connections, 1407
  creating, 1406
  sensor, 1431
  variable binding, 1411
    adding, 1412
    adding to Simulation Object Editor, 1415
system scripted task
  making available on Task menu, 751

## T

tab
  Create Object, 375
  overlay, 930
  Viewpoint, 275

table
  damage, 1629
  detection, 285
  Lua, 766
  taskParameters, 768
TACAN transmitter set data request, 829
tactical-smoke-param parameter, 1402
tactical air navigation
  transmission, 829
tactical data link
  message, 281
Tactical Data Link Settings page, 281-283
tactical graphic, 918
  active and inactive, 959, 962
  air traffic area
    compared to other traffic generation methods, 459
    creating, 462
  attaching to simulation object, 952
  automatically attaching to simulation object, 952
  box
    drawing, 941
  bullseye, 949
    spider web, 951
  changing name, 386
  changing state with set data requests, 962
  color
    changing, 956
  compared to combat engineering object, 503
  console
    notification level, 430
  creating, 365-366, 370, 373, 375, 937
  editing, 953
  export to shapefile, 932
  extruded, 941
  force, 964
  HAT lines, 924
  hiding from Overlays tab, 923
  importing shapefile to, 933
  information, 409
  label, 924
  labels, 919
  loading, 931
  menu icon, 1281
  model, 1284
  moving
    to different overlay, 942
  notify level, 964
  placing, 375
  property
    default value, 1282
    editing, 1283
    keyword, 1283
    setting at creation, 377
  publishing, 944
  range, 950
  saving, 931
  selecting, 401
  showing and hiding, 922-923, 959, 962
  texture, 1284, 1286
  vertex
    adding, 953
    deleting, 955
  vertex color, 956
  volumetric, 941
  weather, 323
Tactical Graphic Active condition, 868, 959, 962
Tactical Graphics Display Settings page, 923-924, 957, 960, 963, 968
Tactical Graphics Palette, 365-366
Tactical Graphics Settings page, 959
tactical radar jammer system, 289
tactical smoke
  dissipation, 627
  enabling or disabling, 995
  launching, 626
tag
  adding, 1248
  assigning based on 3D model characteristics, 1251
  changing, 1257
  editing in spreadsheet, 1251
  exporting, 1251
  importing, 1251
  object
    changing, 1257
  Object Group, 393
  removing, 1248-1249
  renaming, 1248, 1250
taillight, 1017
takeoff
  fixed-wing entity, 563-564
taking off, 582
talking
  human, 638
tanker aircraft
  internal refueling, 667
  refueling station, 579
Tanker Lighting set data request, 833
target
  bomb, 616
  detecting, 1451, 1613
    probability of, 1435
  detection, 285
    spot reports, 286

firing at, 286, 619
identifying with laser beam, 287
jamming, 798
priority list
add to, 834-835
clear, 834
update, 835
viewing, 834
setting, 833
specifying using laser, 624
strafe, 616
strafing, 632
unit
preferred, 850
target-type parameter, 1615
Target dialog box, 834
Target Priority List - Add set data request, 834
Target Priority List - Clear set data request, 834
Target Priority List - Update set data request, 835
target selection controller, 1452, 1457-1458, 1613
Target set data request, 833
targetFrameRate parameter, 1593
targeting-control parameter, 1451, 1613
task, 545
Activate Jammer, 684
adding to plan, 876
Air-to-Air Attack, 684
Air-to-Ground Air Base Attack, 684
Air-to-Ground Attack, 685
Airdrop, 658
Airdrop Along Route, 576
Airdrop from Aircraft, 658
Animated Movement, 577
Anti-ship (Fixed Depth), 627
Arm Mine at Depth, 613
articulated parts
moving, 671
assigning to unit, 551
Attack Aircraft with Guns, 613
Attack By Fire, 686
Attack with Anti-Air Missile, 686
Attack with Anti-Ship Missile, 686
Attack with Land-Attack Missile, 687
Attack with Torpedo, 687
Automatic Air Defense, 687
background, 711
background process, 783
Biological Attack, 688
Bomb Location, 688
Breach Obstacles, 689
by superior, 835
C++, 715, 766
Car Door, 672
Change MOPP Level, 690, 848
Change Posture, 691, 850
Chemical Attack, 691
Circle Around Location, 637
Civilian Idle, 637
Civilian Pray, 637
Civilian Protest, 637
Civilian Talk, 638
Close Car Door, 671
Close Cargo Door, 671
Close Door, 638
Close Window, 638
Come to Stop, 578
concepts, 540
concurrent, 540, 545, 720, 736, 742
configuring mutually exclusive, 570
confirmation prompt
enabling or disabling, 546
Construct Abatis, 692
Construct Anti-Tank Ditch, 692
Construct Barbed Wire, 693
Construct Barricade, 693
Construct Berm, 694
Construct Booby Trap, 694
Construct Bridge, 695
Construct Dry Gap, 696
Construct Fortified Area, 696
Construct Fortified Line, 697
Construct Minefield, 697
Construct Strong Point, 698
Convoy Along, 552, 578
Convoy To, 552, 578
Create Pedestrians, 638
Crowd Along Line, 639
Crowd Around Location, 639
Crowd Around Object, 640
Crowd Around Waypoints, 640
Crowd in Front of Entity, 641
Deactivate Jammer, 698
Deploy Refueling Boom, 671
Deploy Sonobuoy, 676
Deploy Sonobuoys Along Route, 676
Destroy Bridge, 699
Destroy Ditch, 696, 699
Destroy Explosive, 699
Destroy Fortification, 700
Destroy Obstacle, 700
DI-Guy Animation, 641
DI-Guy Gesture, 641
Disembark, 655
Disembark All, 655
Dismount Helicopter, 666
Disperse Crowd, 642

Drop Fuel Tanks, 701
Drop Naval Depth Charge, 613
Drop Naval Depth Charge at Location, 614
Drop Naval Mine, 614
Drop Naval Mines Along Route, 616
Embark, 437, 656
escaping retask procedure, 548
Escort Air Unit, 701
Establish Refueling Station, 579
Execute Close Air Support, 616
Explode Charge at Depth, 619
Extract Using Ladder, 664
Extract Using Rope, 662
FASCAM, 701
Fast Rope Insertion, 660
filtering simulation object list, 550
Find Cover, 642
Find Firing Position, 643
Fire-for-Effect, 622
Fire at Target, 619
Fire Cruise Missile, 620
Fire Team Bound to Location, 644
Fire Team Suppress Target, 623
Fire Team Travel to Waypoint, 645
Fire TOW At Target, 620
Fixed Wing Land, 565
Fixed Wing Land At Aerodrome, 580
Fixed Wing Land On Runway, 581
Fixed Wing Takeoff, 564
Fixed Wing Takeoff On Runway, 582
Flee From Entities, 646
Fly Altitude, 582
Fly Heading, 584
Fly Heading and Altitude, 575, 583
Fly Loiter Pattern, 584
Follow Entity, 585
Generate Air Traffic from Flight Plans, 464, 586
gesture, 641
Halt Movement, 702
ID, 767
Improve Booby Trap, 702
Improve Breach, 702
Improve Bridge, 703
Improve Ditch, 696, 703
Improve Fortification, 703
Improve Obstacle, 704
independent, 540
Indirect Fire, 704
Insert Using Ladder, 666
Ladder Extraction, 663
Ladder Insertion, 665
Land at Air Base, 705
Land at Airport Near Location, 586
Lase Target, 287, 624
Launch Anti-Submarine Missile (Vertical), 625
Launch Ballistic Missile at Location, 625
Launch Ballistic Missile at Target Object, 625
Launch Counter Measures, 295
Launch Flight, 705
Launch QRA Aircraft, 706
Launch Smoke, 626
Lower Periscope, 672
Lua, 766
  parameter, 768
Move Along Route, 586
Move Along Route Retrograde, 707
Move Along Route with Actions, 588
Move Between Cover to Location, 646
Move Into Formation, 590
Move to Altitude, 591
Move to Bullseye Offset
  bullseye
    Move to Bullseye Offset, 591
Move to Depth, 575, 592
Move to Location, 592
  for plan, 593
Move to Location (Plan Along Roads), 560, 593
Move to Location Retrograde, 707
Move to Waypoint, 595
Move to Waypoint (Plan Along Roads), 560, 595
Move to Waypoint Retrograde, 707
movement
  affect of aggregation state change, 525
mutually exclusive, 540, 545, 862
Nuclear Attack, 707
Open Cargo Door, 672
Open Door, 647
Open Window, 647
Orbit, 597
Orbit Object, 597
Parachute to Target, 648
parameters, 548
Patrol Area, 597
Patrol Between, 598
Patrol Route, 598
Pattern Hold (Location), 599
Pattern Hold (Waypoint), 599
performing, 357
Place IED, 628
Prepare QRA, 708
procedures
  introduction, 545
Protest Along Line, 648
Protest Around Location, 649
Provide Suppressive Fire at Object, 630
Provide Suppressive Fire from Cover, 567

Provide Suppressive Fire on Location, 568, 629
Raise Periscope, 673
reactive, 476, 552, 678, 716, 761, 782
Refuel From, 600
Refuel from Tanker, 708
Refueling Mission, 709
Release Bomb on Laser Spot, 631
Release Bomb on Location, 631
Release Bomb on Target, 631
Release Next Entity From Queue, 677
retask, 545
riot, 649
Rope Extraction, 661
Rope Sling Load Drop Off, 660
Rope Sling Load Pick Up, 659
Rope Suspention Insertion, 663
Rotary Wing Airlift Cargo to Location, 600
Rotary Wing Land, 601
Rotary Wing Retrieve Cargo, 601
Rotary Wing Unload Cargo, 602
Rush to Location, 649
Sail Heading, 575, 602
scripted, 715-716
  action category, 570
  adding to task toolbar, 740
  adding to toolbar, 1566
  available by behavior set, 738
  concurrent, 742
  execution flow, 761
  filtering list, 747
Search and Rescue
  Fly Creeping Line Pattern, 603
  Fly Expanding Square Pattern, 605
  Fly Parallel Pattern, 607
Sector Search Operation, 674
Send Radio Set, 667
Send Radio Task, 668
Send Text Message, 669
simulation object, 358
Skip Task, 552
skipping, 551
Sonar Dip, 677
spot report
  using in, 279
Squad Travel to Waypoint, 650
state
  canceled, 767
  complete, 767
  running, 767
status, 410, 549, 767
stopping, 551, 768
Stow Refueling Boom, 673
Strafe Ground Target, 632
Throw Grenade at Location, 634
toolbar
  adding to, 1566
Turn to Heading, 609
unit concepts, 491
user, 678
viewing current, 870
visualizing, 984-985
Wait, 670
Wait Duration, 670
Wait Elapsed, 670
Wait for Escort, 710
Wait in Queue, 650
Wander, 651
Wander In Area, 651
who can execute, 547
Zig Zag to Heading, 610
task-manager parameter, 1603, 1605
Task menu, 716
  editing, 1564
  extended name, 724
  icon, 723
  location for script, 734
  sorting, 1560
  system scripted task
    hiding, 751
task visualization, 1593-1594
  pinning, 985
Tasked by Superior set data request, 552, 835
  using in plans, 871
tasking
  by superior, 835
taskParameters
  table, 768
taskVisualizationPublicationMode parameter, 1593
TDL
  message, 281
TDL message
  configuring, 281
  track history
    pinning, 283
TDL Messaging dialog box, 836
TDL Messaging set data request, 836
tearing off menu, 1552
technique
  egress, 1373
  ingress, 1373
teleporting observer, 1112
template
  unit, 1340
temporary directory
  scenario, 348

terminating
application, 141
terrain
agility, 83, 1162
Ala Moana, 1183
analyzing, 1191
Arrivals Hall, 1183
avoidance, 567
Bakersfield topo map, 1183
caching earth files, 88
California, 1184
composability, 1162
coordinates, 1180
damage-by-power, 1484
databases provided, 1183
destructible, 1183
drag
disabling, 1109
dragging with mouse, 1108
dynamic, 158
damage, 1484
global dynamic terrain processor, 217
navigation data regeneration, 1206
embedding buildings in, 394
embedding cultural feature, 1302
embedding cultural features in, 394
extracting props from, 1164
formats
supported, 1163
GDB
soil type, 1182
geocentric, 1166
large, 1166
Little Pond, 1184
loading
from command line, 165
loading simulation object group, 161
magnification angle, 1116
MAK Earth, 1184
Makland, 1184
Massachusetts S-57, 1184
opening, 1166
orbiting
with mouse, 1111, 1113
page-in area, 918
paged
loading, 170
paging, 1167
patch, 1163
placement of new entities, 379
procedural earth, 1184
profile. See terrain profile, 1188
Rhone Valley, 1184
Sadr City, 1184
San Luis Obispo, 1185
scale, 1181
scale factor, 1115
See also terrain database and terrain server, 83
shape, 1163
soil type, 1180
streaming, 1167
Truman carrier, 1185
VR-Village, 1185
wireframe mode, 1174
world
flat, 1185
geocentric, 1185
terrain-check parameter, 567
Terrain-Database parameter, 343
terrain damage
standard, 1484
terrain database, 83, 1165
changing for a scenario, 346
configuring, 1593
path to, 1586
loading, 139
at startup, 172
provided, 1183
Terrain Information Panel, 1178
Terrain Magnification High LOD Angle, 1116
Terrain Magnification Scale Factor, 1115
terrain profile
concepts, 1188
configuring, 1189
displaying
line creation, 943
line, 918, 1191
opening automatically, 1189
sampling frequency, 1189
terrain profile line, 1191
track history, 980
vertex
showing, 1189
Terrain Profile Settings page, 1059, 1189
Terrain Profile window, 1188-1189
intervisibility line, 1058
terrain server, 1166-1167
Terrain Settings dialog box
Earth Layers page, 1176
Navigation Areas page, 1199
Visible Surfaces page, 1182
terrainDatabase parameter, 1593
TerraPage file, 1163
Test Result
command, 910

testing
amount of resources, 868
Tether Location Track mode, 1141
Tether mode, 1103, 1119, 1136, 1140
Tether Track mode, 1140
text
creating, 942
in title bar, 1554
object
resizing, 955
sending as command, 902
sending as task, 669
shadow, 422
text editor, 716
scripts
specifying, 753
texture
map, 85
ocean planar reflection
height, 1020
width, 1020
sharing, 193
tactical graphic, 1284, 1286
thermocline
sonar, 293, 334
Thermoclines page, 335
this
Lua object, 757
threat ring, 988
threshold
data updates, 1587
DIS heartbeat, 1595
object timeout, 1595
Throw Grenade at Location dialog box, 634
Throw Grenade at Location task, 634
Throw Grenade at Target dialog box, 634
tick
rate
tuning, 195
tick() function, 759
tidal current
direction, 332
speed, 332
speed and direction, 328
tidal stream
wake, 332
TIFF, 1163
time
advancement, 116
evaluating in plan, 868
format, 313
scenario
end, 251
ending, 217
setting, 311, 313
simulation, 115, 221
zone, 222, 313
setting, 313
time-multiplier parameter, 343
time constrained, 137
time management
concepts, 137
configuring, 138
enabling, 138
for back-end, 138, 180
RTI requirements, 138
setting simulation speed, 242
Time Multiplier parameter, 217
Time Multiplier toolbar, 343
time of day, 115, 311
advancement, 116
illumination, 1440
time regulating, 137
time scale
parameters
changing automatically, 243
time stamp, 166-167, 172
time stamp order
configuring, 1595
time stamp ordered message, 137
time zone, 311
timed fuse, 805
timeout
DIS, 169
interval, 167
object, 1595
track history, 979
timestamp, 160, 166-167
timing
spawn pattern, 455
tire track, 975, 977
title bar
text
adding, 1554
To Echelon Level, 534
toolbar
adding task or set, 1566
Attachments, 1133
button, 130
configuring, 1560, 1565
Display Settings, 421
displaying and hiding, 1547
docking, 1547
vertically, 1547
element, 1566
Environment Settings, 222-223, 312-313

icon
setting, 1566
locking, 1566
MAK radio, 1076
Map Scale, 1181
Objects, 436, 439, 521
Observer Settings, 1008
Quick Launch, 267
Scenario, 250
Scenario Event, 260
Simulation Control, 242, 244, 246
Simulation Objects Palette, 366
Simulation Time Scale, 243
task
adding script, 740
undocking, 1546
toolbarrow
element, 1566
toolkit
API, 95
SDK, 95
topological model, 117
torpedo, 687
anti-submarine, 625
launching, 627
TOW missile
firing, 620
tracer, 836
ammunition, 1314
configuring, 1453, 1615
displaying, 981
tracer-type parameter, 1453, 1615
Tracer Use dialog box, 836
Tracer Use set data request, 836
track
radar mode, 823
track history
configuring, 978
displaying, 978
enabling and disabling for all simulation objects, 978
length, 978
spot report, 279
pinning, 280
TDL message
pinning, 283
terrain profile, 980
timeout, 979
Track History Settings page, 979
Track mode, 1103, 1136, 1141
tracking
ammunition, 841
entity
resources, 427
equipment, 845
resource, 851
weapon, 853
tracking beam, 808
Tracy Client
performance, 191
traffic
generating, 446
spawn pattern, 449
trail
model, 976
trailing effects, 975
enabling and disabling, 975
model, 976
simulation object, 975
trajectory
history. See track history, 978
indirect fire, 823
smoothing, 199
trajectory history. See track history, 978
transient intervisibility
displaying, 1053
object, 1052
transition time
posture
editing, 1356
urgency, 837
translating
GUI text, 101
translation, 1363
transmitter
publishing radio, 1498
transparency
2D icons, 425
alpha to coverage, 196
surface, 328, 332, 1538
transponder
emergency, 807, 1311
transponder, IFF, 812
trap
creating, 694
Travel
posture, 497
tread track, 975, 977
tree
setting avoidance, 803
triangle
vertex label, 924
triangle icon, 432
trigger, 861
automatically checking for unused, 881

cleaning up unused, 881
deciding order in plan, 870
name, 862
reactive task, 552
registering, 880
registration, 863
taskless, 871
unregister, 881
Triton Ocean SDK, 89
Triton.config
ocean configuration file, 1117
true airspeed, 411
Truman carrier terrain, 1185
tuning
network performance, 198
performance
component, 195
network interface, 196
visual performance, 198
turbulence
air, 327
turn rate, 583-584
Turn to Heading dialog box, 609
Turn to Heading task, 609
turret
attaching observer to, 1134
tutorial
starting VR-Forces, 128
two-dimensional view layer, 1180
TXP file, 1163
type
adding, 1363
slot, 657, 1366


## U


UI file, 1413
variable binding
adding, 1414
unconstrained, 137
under-fire-parameter parameter, 867
underFireDistance parameter, 826
underFireTime parameter, 826
underwater
visibility, 328, 331
Underwater Acoustics PDU, 293
Undetectable dialog box, 836
Undetectable set data request, 836
undo
ellipse rotation, 956
undocking
panel, 1546
toolbar, 1546
undoing
category changes, 1250
simulation object edits in Simulation Object Editor, 1265
unexploded ordnance
destroying, 699
unique
ID, 353
unique ID
UUID, 246
unit, 1606
activity, 841
adding simulation object to, 522, 832
aggregate-level, 520
aggregated, 686
aggregated state, 524
ammunition, weapons, equipment, 1342, 1345
artillery, 704
assigning tasks, 551
attrition, 502
from combat engineering object, 502
bounding box
Simulation Object Editor, 1335
bounding volume
color, 537
changing state manually, 526
Circle Around Location task, 637
closing formation, 490
collapsing, 530
convoy, 578
behavior, 552
count of, 433
creating, 518, 1329
preconfigured, 520
creating in Order of Battle Panel, 481
crowd
creating, 468
deleting, 527
disaggregated and aggregated, 488
disaggregated state, 524
disaggregation area, 527
display, 1555
displaying ghosted icons, 532
echelon ID, 489
editing, 1329
embark task, 656
empty, 1329
entity
individual tasks and plans, 525
entity-level, 488
expanded and collapsed, 488
expanding, 530
expanding all, 530

expanding and collapsing, 530
footprint, 496
formation, 490, 810, 1490
  adding, 1333
  automatic layout, 1337
  copying, 1336
  default, 1335
  editing, 1332
  manual layout, 1338
  removing, 1335
  renaming, 1335
  snap to grid, 1338
herd
  creating, 469
information, 409, 414
introduction, 523
measurement, 1555
movement, 490, 498
  affected by combat engineering objects, 500
moving to formation, 590
new, 1340
organization concepts, 489
parameter type, 1426
posture, 497
preconfigured, 520
removing simulation object from, 522, 832
reorganizing, 489, 491, 824
restoring, 525, 825
sector, 496, 989
selecting, 521, 530
sensor, 500
setting formation in plan, 871
specifying as Aggregate As option, 1328
state
  affect on combat, 525
  affect on movement task, 525
  affect on resource tracking, 525
  at creation, 521
  changing at runtime, 524
  initiating change, 525
  setting, 837
  showing in GUI, 523
subordinate
  adding, 1330
  changing order, 1332
  editing, 1332
  in condition, 892
  removing, 1331
  replacing, 1332
target
  preferred, 850
task behavior, 491
task status of subordinates, 868
  template, 1340
  writing plan for, 911
Unit Display Settings page, 426, 533, 536-537, 983, 995
Unit State dialog box, 837
Unit State set data request, 837
Universal Transverse Mercator, 1165
unloading
  cargo, 602
  entities from entities, 436
unlocking
  overlay, 929
unpublishing
  tactical graphics, 944
unregistering
  trigger, 881
unused range, 1473, 1623
unused trigger
  automatically checking for, 881
  cleaning up, 881
update
  frequency of, 1587
  messages, 1094
  rate
    intervisibility, 1055
Update_EW_Degradation
  script, 508
updating
  platforms, 1246
  target priority list, 835
  visual models, 1277
  window layout, 1550
upgrading
  weapon and damage systems, 1242
Urgency set data request, 837
USE-DEFAULT keyword, 348
use-logger-control parameter, 254
useAbsoluteTimeStamps parameter, 1595, 1597
useAdvisories parameter, 1595
useAsyncIO parameter, 1597
useCustomMapDatum parameter, 1593
useDIGuy parameter, 1594
useDrawControlForTaskVisualizations parameter, 1594
useIpv6 parameter, 1597
user
  data
    specifying directory, 165
  scenario
    specifying directory, 165
  settings, 120
  task, 678

terrain
specifying directory, 165
user-defined
formation, 1491
user-defined state property, 1415
User Task dialog box, 678
using, 836
navigation data, 1206
UTM, 1165
coordinate system, 1103
database, 214
UUID, 352
scheme, 164
simulation object, 353

## V

vapor trail, 975
variable
Created Object, 869
global
saving, 765
plan, 869
Simulation Object, 869
tick rate, 195
variable-frame keyword, 344
variable-frame run-to-complete, 116, 344
variable binding, 1411
adding to platform file or system definition file, 1412
adding to Simulation Object Editor, 1411
applying changes, 1246
default value, 1412
platform file, 1411
Simulation Object Editor
adding new, 1413
variable frame mode, 201
variance
spawn interval, 451-452
varying
heartbeat, 1596
vector
geocentric, 774
Lua, 772, 774
network, 560
vector feature
configuring avoidance of, 1492
list, 1178
Vector3D class, 772
VectorGeoc3D class, 774
VectorOffset3D class, 774
vehicle
displaying driver in, 1011
model, 78
velocity
displaying, 417
specifying measurement unit, 1555
version
displaying, 165
plug-in
checking, 159
RPR FOM, 166, 173, 1595
version parameter
scenario file, 345
vertex
adding, 953
altitude
displaying, 924
deleting, 955
editing, 954
line
terrain profile, 1189
showing and hiding, 924
tactical graphic
color, 956
vertical sync, 203
video
adding to scenario event, 263
view
clearing list, 1126
constraint, 1122
default, 1127
deleting, 1126
dragging with mouse, 1111
floor, 1122
go to location, 1129
inset, 1146
loading saved, 1129
model, 1273
navigating, 1099
observer
transitioning between, 1126
recalling, 1124
restoring, 1126
saved
scenario, 340
saved with scenario, 209
saving, 1124-1125, 1128
individual, 1128
sensor, 1151-1152
zooming, 1114
2D, 1115
3D, 1114

view constraint
  disabling, 379
view control
  sending in plan, 906
view control message, 1130
  enabling processing of message, 1130
  script, 1130
view mode
  Absolute, 1136
  Follow, 1136
  Mimic, 1137
  Mimic Location Track, 1139
  Mimic Track, 1138
  Space Follow, 1139
  Tether, 1140
  Tether Location Track, 1141
  Tether Track, 1140
  Track, 1141
viewing
  current task, 870
  Logger files, 257
  obstructed terrain in terrain profile, 1058
  other MAK 3D GUI viewers, 1095
  plan, 870
  plug-in
    data, 154
  target priority list, 834
viewpoint
  spot report, 275-276
    custom, 276
Viewpoint tab, 275
viewport, 1530
  changing, 1536
visibility, 314, 316
  configuring at different elevations, 314
  modifier, 502
  of observer to other applications, 1094
  underwater, 328, 331
  water, 1538
visible surface
  configuring, 1182
Visible Surfaces page, 1182
Visit Interest Points reactive task, 476
visual effect
  displaying, 1274
visual marking
  randomized, 1275-1276
visual markings
  editing, 818
  specifying, 1275
Visual Markings dialog box, 1276
visual model
  adding, 1271
  details, 1272
  editing, 1265
  exporting, 1277
  importing, 1276
  pruning, 1277
  refreshing, 1277
  tactical graphic, 1284
Visual Models Panel, 1265
visual quality slider
  configuring, 199
visual sensor, 1440
  gimbaled, 1150
visual type
  changing
    model
      changing type, 1274
visualization
  task, 1593-1594
visualizing
  tasks, 984-985
volumetric
  tactical graphic, 941
VR-Forces
  entity or object, 114
  Launcher, 123
  starting, 123
  window, 130, 140
VR-Forces Objects Panel, 1132
VR-Forces window, 217
VR-Vantage
  view control, 906
  viewing other, 1095
VR-Vantage Control Toolkit, 1130
VR-Village terrain, 1185
vrf-aggregate-state-repository, 1402
vrf-base-object-param parameter, 1426, 1600
vrf-base-object-param parameter type, 1605
vrf-moving-object-state-repository, 1402
vrf-object-param parameter, 1402, 1605
vrf-object-state-repository, 1402
vrf-overlay-object-state-repository, 1402
vrf-tactical-smoke-state-repository, 1402
vrf class, 757
vrfGui, 108
vrfGui.log file, 155
vrfLauncher
  combined mode, 176
  special command-line arguments, 177
vrfMsgDump, 88
vrfSim, 108
  daemon, starting as, 169
  log file, 171
  running as daemon, 1586

vrfSim.log file, 155
vrfSim.mtl, 1203
vrfSim.mtl file, 1584
vrfSim.opd
  remote-configurations block, 1519
  required in every SMS, 1234
vrfSimSettings.xml file, 198
vrfutil
  functions, 758
VRV_ALPHA_TO_COVERAGE_RENDERBIN
      environment variable, 197
VSync, 160, 202-203
vulnerability, 495
  modifier, 501

## W

wading, 822
Wait Duration dialog box, 670
Wait Duration task, 670
Wait Elapsed dialog box, 670
Wait Elapsed task, 670
Wait for Escort
  task, 710
Wait for Escort dialog box, 711
Wait in Queue dialog box, 651
Wait in Queue task, 650
Wait task, 670
Wait Until Expression dialog box, 878
Wait Until statement, 864
wake, 85, 89, 975
  enabling and disabling, 1039
  model definition, 332
  tidal stream, 332
wakeLength parameter, 332
walking, 822
wall
  not walking through, 1122
wall-clock time, 138
wall clock time, 116
wander
  crowd, 651
Wander In Area task, 651
Wander task, 651
warfare
  electronic, 289, 507-509
warfare model
  aggregate, 495
warhead-detonation-actuator, 1460, 1619
warhead actuator, 1461, 1620
warhead parameter, 1454, 1471, 1615, 1622
warning
  icon, 432
warning message, 1589
water
  pacing and tracking, 847
  splash, 1034
  visibility, 1538
water-slide-depth parameter, 362
water-slide-factor parameter, 362
water droplet
  size, 1037
wave
  breaking, 334
  choppiness, 328
  effect, 1034
wavelength
  laser, 815
waypoint, 918, 920
  altitude
    displaying, 924
  civilian visit point, 476
  crowd gathering at, 640
  ordering entity to, 595
  patrolling between, 598
  riot, 649
weapon
  anti-air, 687
  laser guided, 624
  pacing and tracking, 853
  status, 413
  system, 1310-1311
  system definition file, 1406
  unit, 1342, 1345
weapon-interface, 1457-1458
weapon interface, 1452, 1613
weapon system, 1444, 1451
  bomb-bay, 1461, 1620
  indirect fire, 1459, 1617
  migrating to new release, 1242
  strategic missile, 625
weapong system, 1612
Weapons Pacing/Tracking dialog box, 853
Weapons Pacing/Tracking set data request, 853
weather
  global, 217
  local zone, 319
  meteorological and oceanographic module, 173,
      335
  setting, 314
  specifying measurement unit, 1555
  tactical graphic, 323
Weather dialog box, 322
weather elevation layers, 314

Weather page, 315-319, 330, 1538
weather zone, 319
  priority, 320
wheel
  rotation, 1002
When statement, 859, 861
  building, 883
While Expression dialog box, 877
While statement, 859, 863
width
  changing for line, 957
  sensor contact line, 988
wildcard, 1395
wind, 85
  corridor, 326
  direction and speed, 314
  elevation, 315
  offset, 298
  speed and direction, 314
window
  adding, 1524
  attributes
    editing, 1529
  channel
    adding, 1527
  closing, 638
  Event, 268-269
  location
    changing, 1529
  Multiple Object Information, 415
  new, 132
  observer, 1089
  opening, 647
  printing, 133
  property, 1529
  removing, 1528
  secondary, 132
  selecting simulation objects in, 401
  size
    changing, 1529
  specifying, 160
  Terrain Profile, 1188
  types, 1524
window layout
  changes
    saving, 1550
  choosing, 1549
  creating, 1548
  default
    clearing, 1550
    setting, 1549
  deleting, 1551
  restoring factory, 1551
  reverting, 1550
  updating, 1550
Window Layout Manager dialog box, 1548
Window Name attribute, 1529
Window Type attribute, 1529
Windows
  installing on, 94
wireframe mode, 1174
world coordinates, 1099
world terrains, 1185
writing
  entity plan, 875
  global plan, 896
  plan
    for multiple simulation objects, 911
  plans
    remote entities, 911

## X

X-plane-format flight plans, 459
XML
  RTI configuration file, 100
XML file
  plug-in, 151
    deleting, 154
XR mode, 1093
XR scaling, 1008
xtr file, 348

## Y

yaw, 1099
yellow icon, 286
yellow triangle icon, 432

## Z

Z-fighting, 159, 1135, 1533, 1538
Z Far, 1529
Z Near, 1529
Zig Zag to Heading dialog box, 610
Zig Zag to Heading task, 610
zone
  localized weather, 319
  time, 222
zoom
  LOD center, 1118
  magnification angle, 1116
    terrain, 1116

ocean
display problems, 1117
scale factor
terrain, 1115
scenario
on load, 1118
SpeedTree LOD, 165
switching from 3D to 2D, 1086
to entity extents, 1117
to extents, 1117
zooming
observer, 1114
2D, 1115
3D, 1114
performance, 1116
sensors, 829

# VR-Forces Quick Reference Card

**Table 1. vrfGui Command-Line Options**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (-- \| --ignore_rest) | Ignore all command-line options after this one. |
| --alphaBits *bits* | Sets the number of alpha bits (0, 8). |
| --antiAliasing *level* | Set the anti-aliasing level (0, 2, 4, 8, or 16). Default: 4. |
| --appDataDir *directory* | Specifies the location of application data. |
| --appIdRange *range* | Application ID range of VR-Forces back-ends. |
| (-c \| --showConsole) | Display a console window. |
| (-C \| --autoConnect) {*filename* \| *connector_name*} | Automatically connect to the network using the specified connector. |
| --dataDir *directory* | Specifies the location of the data directory. |
| --defaultSimulationModelSet *sms* | The simulation model set to use as the default when starting up the GUI. |
| --depthBits *bits* | Sets the depth of graphics to 24 bits or 32 bits. Default: 24. |
| --dis | Use the DIS protocol and enable DIS-specific options. |
| --disableDynamicTerrain | Disables the dynamic terrain engine. |
| --disableIndirectEntities | Disables indirect rendering of entities. |
| --disableOcclusionCulling | Disables occlusion culling, which can improve performance. |

**Table 1. vrfGui Command-Line Options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (-z \| --disableReverseZBuffer) | Disables use of reverse Z-buffering, which is enabled by default to reduce Z-fighting. |
| --disableTerrainObserverViews | Disables the loading of terrain observer view files. Loading a terrain does not clear the observer views and the terrain's observer views do not load. |
| --dispSetting *filename* | Specifies the display engine configuration to load. |
| --doNotCheckPluginVersions | Do not check the version in a plug-in to make sure it can load in VR-Forces. |
| --doNotLoadVrfPlugins | Prevents loading of plug-ins in the *./plugins* directory. |
| (-e \| --extraArgs) *string* \| "*string1 ... stringn*" | Allows you to send arbitrary strings to the initializer, which can be queried for by plug-ins. This option works around the restriction on adding new command-line arguments. It can take one argument or multiple arguments. Multiple arguments must be wrapped in double quotes. |
| (-E \| --entTypeMap) *filename* | Load the specified entity type mapping file. The file extension determines the type of mapping. |
| --enableIndirectEntities | Enables indirect rendering of entities. To disable indirect rendering, use **--disableIndirectEntities**. |
| --enableLogFileTimestamps | Print a timestamp for each line in a log file. |
| --enableVSync | Turns on VSync. |
| --entDispSetting *filename* | Specifies the entity display setting to load. |
| --entityDefsDir *directory* | Loads the *.hier* and *.leaf* files in the specified directory. |
| --envSetting *filename* | Specifies the environment configuration file to load. |

**Table 1. vrfGui Command-Line Options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--factoryRootDir` *directory* | Set the root directory used to restore settings to factory defaults. |
| `--forceTextShaping` | Force all text to use HarfBuzz shaping. |
| `--forceVBO` | Forces use of vertex buffer objects in OpenGL. |
| `--fowPerspective` *force* | Shows the ground truth and spot reports perspective for the specified force. |
| `--fullScreen` | Start in full screen mode. |
| (`-F` \| `--frameRate`) *rate* | Specifies a fixed frame rate for rendering. If 0, it is variable. |
| (`-G` \| `--locale`) *language* | Specifies the locale (for localization). |
| `--gui` *filename* | Specify GUI configuration file to load. |
| (`-h` \| `--help`) | Displays command-line usage information. |
| `--highestPriority` | Changes application and the main render thread to the highest available priority. |
| `--hla13` | Use HLA 1.3 and enable HLA-specific options. |
| `--hla1516` | Use HLA 1516 protocol and enable HLA-specific options. |
| `--hla1516e` | Use HLA Evolved protocol and enable HLA-specific options. |
| (`-I` \| `--unbatchedRendering`) | Disables instance rendering. |
| (`-K` \| `--disableKDTrees`) | Disable creation of KD trees for intersections. |
| (`-l` \| `--logFileName`) *filename* | Specifies the log file name. |
| (`-L` \| `--loadObservers--loadObserverViews`) *filename* | Loads the saved observersobserver views in the specified file. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--layoutSettingsFile` *filename* | Specifies the GUI layout settings file to use. *filename* specifies the base filename. It is prefixed with *default_* and the extension *.uisx* is added. |
| `--loadPlugin` *filename* | Specifies plug-ins to load. Accepted multiple times. |

**Table 1. vrfGui Command-Line Options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--loadSimulationObjectGroup` *group* | Creates a new scenario on the simulation object group editing terrain and creates an instance of the simulation object group on that terrain. |
| `--mainScreenNum` *num* | Specifies the display that the main window should use. |
| `--mergeEntityTypeMap` {*directory* \| *filename*} | Merges all entity type mapping files (*.*metx*) in a directory or individual entity type mapping files. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeHierarchyEntityDef` *filename* | Merges the specified *.hier* file into the default hierarchy. Merging is additive. |
| `--mergeHierarchySpotReportDef` {*directory* \| *filename*} | Merges the element definition *.hier* files in the specified directory or the individual *.hier* file into the hierarchy after *./appData* or *./entityDefsDir* have been loaded. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeHierarchyTacticalGraphicsDef` *filename* | Merges the specified *.hier* file into the default hierarchy. Merging is additive. |
| `--mergeHierarchyUnitDef` *filename* | Merges the specified *.hier* file into the default hierarchy. Merging is additive. |
| `--mergeLeafEntityDef` {*directory* \| *filename*} | Merges the leaf files in the specified directory or the individual leaf file into the default entity element definitions. |
| `--mergeLeafSpotReportDef` {*directory* \| *filename*} | Merges the leaf files in the specified directory or the individual leaf file into the default spot report element definitions. This adds or replaces leaves. |
| `--mergeLeafTacticalGraphicsDef` {*directory* \| *filename*} | Merges the leaf files in the specified directory or the individual leaf file into the default tactical graphics element definitions. Can be used multiple times. |

**Table 1. vrfGui Command-Line Options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--mergeLeafUnitDef {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges the leaf files in the directory or the specified individual leaf file into the default unit element definitions. |
| `--mergeModelDefs {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges all model definition files (*.*ommx*) in the specified directory or individual model definition files. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeTacticalGraphicsTypeMap {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges all tactical graphics type mapping files (*.*metx*) in a directory or individual tactical graphics type mapping files. Can be used multiple times. |
| `--mergeUnitTypeMap {`*`directory`* `\|` *`filename`*`}` | Merges all unit type mapping files (*.*metx*) in a directory or individual unit type mapping files. Can be used multiple times. |
| `(-n \| --notifyLevel)` *`notify_level`* | Specifies the notification level for application messages. Range: 0-4. |
| `--noAppDataEntityDefs` | Do not load the entity element definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataEntityTypeMap` | Do not load entity type mappings in *./appData/settings/<application>*. |
| `--noAppDataModelDefs` | Do not load model definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataSpotReportDefs` | Do not load the spot report definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataTacticalGraphicsDefs` | Do not load the tactical graphics element definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataTacticalGraphicsTypeMap` | Do not load tactical graphics type mappings in *./appData/settings/<application>*. |
| `--noAppDataUnitDefs` | Do not load the unit element definitions in *./appData/definitions*. |
| `--noAppDataUnitTypeMap` | Do not load unit type mappings in *./appData/definitions*. |

**Table 1. vrfGui Command-Line Options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| --nonVrfObjectsUUIDScheme *scheme* | Sets the UUID scheme for non VR-Forces objects. Values are entity-identifier, global-identifier, marking-text. Default: entity-identifier. |
| (-O \| --hasNTPSync) | Enables synchronized ocean between different display engines. System clocks must be synchronized. |
| --plugin *filename* | Load the specified plug-in. Can be used multiple times. |
| --pseudoFullScreen | Use pseudo full screen for full screen mode. |
| --pvd | Start the VR-Forces front-end with only 2D modes available. |
| (-S \| --suppressHatIntersectOnAttach) | Suppress the periodic HAT intersection when attached. |
| --scenarioFile *filename* | Specifies a scenario to load. |
| --sharedSettingsDirectory *directory* | Specifies the directory where shared settings are stored. If the **--useSharedSettings** flag is set, this is also used to store the settings. |
| --stealth | Start the VR-Forces front-end with only 3D modes available. |
| --stencilBits *bits* | Sets the number of stencil bits (0 or 8). Default: 0. |
| (*terrain_MTF_file* \| *scene_MSF_file*) | Specifies a terrain (MTF) or scene (MSF) file to load. |
| --unplug *filename* | Do not load the specified plug-in. Can be used multiple times. |
| --useFileCommChannel *channel* | The communication file to be used as a base for communicating text based commands from external applications. |
| --useUserSettingsDirectory | Indicates that the system should store settings in the user login settings directory, rather than the application settings directory. Used in conjunction with **--sharedSettingsDirectory**. |
| --userDataDir *directory* | Specifies the user data directory. |

**Table 1. vrfGui Command-Line Options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| `--userScenarioDirectory` *directory* | Specifies the user scenario directory. |
| `--userTerrainDirectory` | Specifies the user terrain directory. |
| (`-v` \| `--version`) | Display version information and exit. |
| (`-Z` \| `--ignoreZoomForSpeedtreeLod` | Disable zoom for SpeedTree LOD. |
| HLA Only | |
| (`-a` \| `--appNumber`) *number* | Application number. |
| (`-f` \| `--fomMapperLib`) *libname* | FOM Mapper library name. |
| (`-F` \| `--fedFileName`) *fedfile_name* | FED file name. |
| `--fileTransporterReceivePort` *port* | Port for the file transporter. |
| `--fomMapperInitData` *data* | FOM Mapper initialization data. |
| `--fomModules` *module* | Specifies a FOM Module. Can be used multiple times. (HLA Evolved only.) |
| (`-H` \| `--hostAddressString`) *address* | Specifies the host address. |
| (`-i` \| `--sessionId`) *ID* | Specifies the session ID for this instance of the front-end. |
| `--ignoreAdvisories` | Enables or disables HLA advisory messages. Default: true. |
| `--localSettingsDesignator` *designator* | Specifies a string that is passed to the RTI during federate connect. (HLA Evolved only.) |
| (`-N` \| `--federateName`) *federate_name* | Federate name. Default: VR-Forces. (HLA Evolved only.) |
| (`-p` \| `--federateType`) *type* | The federate type distinguishes different categories of federates. |
| `--reportedHostAddressString` *address* | Specifies how VR-Forces reports its IP address to another VR-Forces application for the purpose of file transfers. |
| `--rprFomRevision` *revision_number* | RPR FOM revision. |
| `--rprFomVersion` *version_number* | RPR FOM version. (0.5, 0.7, 0.8, 1.0, 2.0006, 2.0014, 2.0017, or 2.0) |
| (`-s` \| `--siteId` *ID* | Site ID. |
| `--useGeographicDdm` | Specifies use of geographic DDM if you are using the MAK RTI. Default: false. |
| (`-x` \| `--execName`) *exec_name* | Execution name. Default: VR-Link. |
| DIS Only | |

**Table 1. vrfGui Command-Line Options (continued)**

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| (-a \| --appNumber) *number* | Application number. |
| (-A \| --destAddrString) *address* | Destination address. |
| --appIdRange *range* | The application ID range for VR-Forces back-ends. |
| --defaultObjectTimeout *timeout* | Specifies the timeout interval for objects. |
| --deviceAddress *address* | Specifies the address of the network card to use for UDP traffic. |
| --disVersion | The DIS version. Default: 5. |
| --fileTransporterReceivePort *port* | Port for the file transporter. |
| (-H \| --hostAddressString) *address* | Specifies the host address. This is usually the same as the device address. |
| (-i \| --sessionId) *ID* | Specifies the session ID for this instance of the front-end. |
| --mcastTtl *time* | Specifies the multicast time-to-live. Default: -1. |
| --multicastAddresses *address1 ... addressn* | Specifies one or more multicast addresses. |
| (-P \| --disPort) *port* | DIS port. |
| --recvBufferSize *size* | Receive buffer size. |
| --reportedHostAddressString *address* | Specifies how VR-Forces reports its IP address to another VR-Forces application for the purpose of file transfers. |
| (-s \| --siteId *ID* | Site ID. |
| --sendBufferSize *size* | Send buffer size. Default: -1. |
| --subnetMask *mask* | Specifies a subnet mask. |
| --useAsyncIO | Use asynchronous I/O. Default: False. |
| --useIpv6 | Use the ipv6 protocol, if available. |
| (-x \| --exerciseId) *ID* | Exercise ID. |

**Table 2. Mouse Button Mappings**

| Navigation Action | Mouse Action | Context |
|---|---|---|
| Attach to entity. | **Shift**+left-click | Entity. |
| Attach to prop. | **Ctrl**+**Shift**+left-click | Prop. |

**Table 2. Mouse Button Mappings (continued)**

| Navigation Action | Mouse Action | Context |
|---|---|---|
| Deselect all. | Left-click | Terrain or sky. |
| Drag terrain. | Left-click+drag | Terrain or prop. |
| Object selected, others unselected. | Left-click | Selected entity or prop. |
| Select entity or prop. | **Ctrl**+left-click | Unselected entity or prop. |
| Select object and unselect all others | Left-click | Unselected entity or prop |
| Teleport to location | **Shift**+left-click | Terrain |
| Teleport to prop | **Shift**+left-click | Prop |
| Teleport to entity | **Ctrl**+**Shift**+left-click | Entity |
| Unselect | **Ctrl**+left-click | Selected entity or prop |
| Display context-sensitive menu | Right-click | Entity or prop |
| **3D Only** | | |
| Drag the view | Middle mouse button drag | All |
| Drag heading and pitch (mouse look) | Right Drag | All |
| Orbit drag | **Ctrl**+left-click+drag | Terrain or prop |
| Zoom in (magnification) | **Ctrl**+ mouse wheel forward | All |
| Zoom out (magnification) | **Ctrl**+ mouse wheel backward | All |
| Reset magnification | Middle mouse button | All |
| Move observer forward | Mouse wheel forward | All |
| Move observer back | Mouse wheel back | All |
| Move observer level observer forward | **Shift**+mouse wheel forward. | All |
| Move observer level observer backward | **Shift**+mouse wheel backward. | All |
| Move flashlight beam | Right mouse button drag | All |
| Expand flashlight beam | **Alt**+mouse wheel forward. | All |
| Contract flashlight beam | **Alt**+mouse wheel backward. | All |
| **2D Only** | | |
| Rotate terrain | Right-click + drag | All. Orient North disabled. |

**Table 2. Mouse Button Mappings (continued)**

| Navigation Action | Mouse Action | Context |
|---|---|---|
| 2D Zoom in | Mouse wheel forward; Middle button + drag | All |
| 2D Zoom out | Mouse wheel backward; Middle button + drag | All |

In keyboard mappings, K = numeric keypad (K8 means press Keypad 8). To use the numeric keypad for navigation, NumLock must be on.

**Table 3. Observer Keyboard Mappings**

| Observer Movement | Observer | Level Observer | Laptop | 2D Level Observer |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Move forward | **w** | unmapped | **w** | unmapped |
| Move back | **s** | unmapped | **s** | unmapped |
| Move left | **a** | unmapped | **a** | unmapped |
| Move right | **d** | unmapped | **d** | unmapped |
| Move up | **q**, **Ctrl+q** | unmapped | **q**, **Ctrl+q** | unmapped |
| Move down | **e**, **Ctrl+e** | unmapped | **e**, **Ctrl+e** | unmapped |
| Move forward level observer | unmapped | **w** | unmapped | **w** |
| Move back level observer | unmapped | **s** | unmapped | **s** |
| Move left level observer | unmapped | **a** | unmapped | **a** |
| Move right level observer | unmapped | **d** | unmapped | **d** |
| Move up level observer | unmapped | **q**, **Ctrl+q** | unmapped | unmapped |
| Move down level observer | unmapped | **e**, **Ctrl+e** | unmapped | unmapped |
| Move attached context forward | **Shift+w** | **Shift+w** | **Shift+w** | **Shift+w** |
| Move attached context back | **Shift+s** | **Shift+s** | **Shift+s** | **Shift+s** |
| Move attached context left | **Shift+a** | **Shift+a** | **Shift+a** | **Shift+a** |
| Move attached context right | **Shift+d** | **Shift+d** | **Shift+d** | **Shift+d** |
| Move attached context up | **Shift+q** | **Shift+q** | **Shift+q** | unmapped |
| Move attached context down | **Shift+e** | **Shift+e** | **Shift+e** | unmapped |
| Level yaw left | K **4** | K **4** | Left arrow | Left arrow |
| Level yaw right | K **6** | K **6** | Right arrow | Right arrow |
| Level pitch up | **Shift+j** | **Shift+j** | **Shift+j** | unmapped |

**Table 3. Observer Keyboard Mappings (continued)**

| Observer Movement | Observer | Level Observer | Laptop | 2D Level Observer |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Level pitch down | Shift+k | Shift+k | Shift+k | unmapped |
| Level roll right | Shift+i | Shift+i | Shift+i | unmapped |
| Level roll left | Shift+m | Shift+m | Shift+m | unmapped |
| Yaw left | Shift+h | Shift+h | Shift+h | Shift+h |
| Yaw right | Shift+l | Shift+l | Shift+l | Shift+l |
| Pitch up | K 8 | K 8 | | unmapped |
| Pitch down | K 2 | K 2 | ¯ | unmapped |
| Roll right | K 9 | K 9 | K 9 | unmapped |
| Roll left | K 3 | K 3 | K 3 | unmapped |
| Orbit right | Ctrl+d, ® | Ctrl+d, ® | Ctrl+d | unmapped |
| Orbit left | Ctrl+a, ¬ | Ctrl+a, ¬ | Ctrl+a | unmapped |
| Orbit up | Ctrl+w, | Ctrl+w, | Ctrl+w | unmapped |
| Orbit down | Ctrl+s, ¯ | Ctrl+s, ¯ | Ctrl+s | unmapped |
| Look up | Ctrl+K 8 | Ctrl+K 8 | Ctrl+K 8 | Ctrl+K 8 |
| Look down | Ctrl+K 2 | Ctrl+K 2 | Ctrl+K 2 | Ctrl+K 2 |
| Look left | Ctrl+K 4 | Ctrl+K 4 | Ctrl+K 4 | Ctrl+K 4 |
| Look right | Ctrl+K 6 | Ctrl+K 6 | Ctrl+K 6 | Ctrl+K 6 |
| Look tilt left | Ctrl+K 3 | Ctrl+K 3 | Ctrl+K 3 | Ctrl+K 3 |
| Look tilt right | Ctrl+K 9 | Ctrl+K 9 | Ctrl+K 9 | Ctrl+K 9 |
| Zoom in | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | Ctrl + e |
| Zoom out | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | Ctrl + q |
| Suppress constrain to terrain | x | x | x | x |
| Water impact | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Reset observer: In absolute mode, go to the center of the scene. If attached, reset the attach position and orientation. | Space | Space | Space | Space |
| In absolute mode, go to the center of the scene. If attached, reset the attach position and orientation. | | | | |
| Toggle speed scaling mode (MSL or AGL) | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Level observer | K 5 | K 5 | Shift+Space+ ¯ | K 5 |

**Table 3. Observer Keyboard Mappings (continued)**

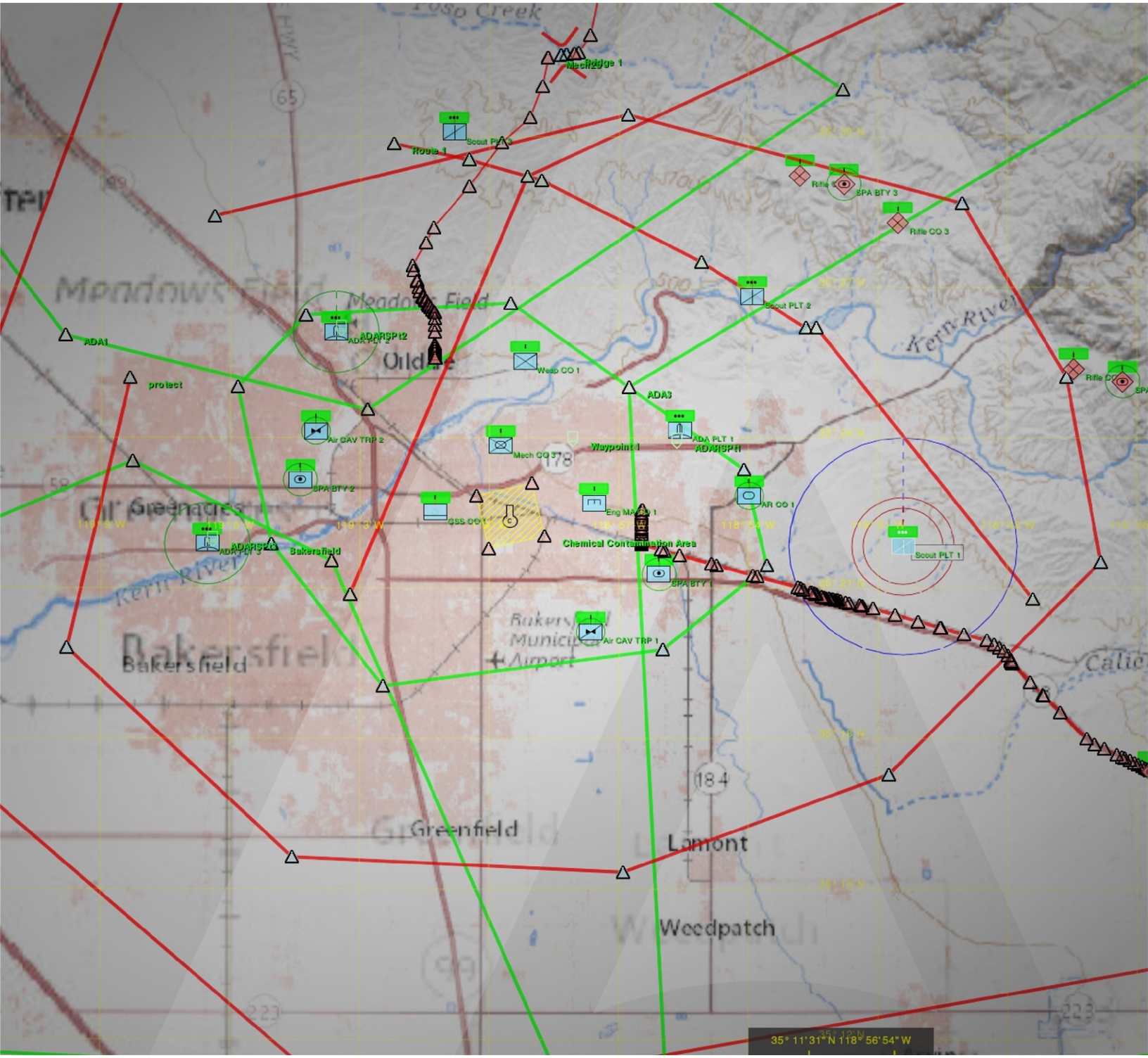
| Observer Movement | Observer | Level Observer | Laptop | 2D Level Observer |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Toggle force north orientation | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle orient to target constraint | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle flashlight | **F** | **F** | **F** | **F** |
| Reset the camera | K **0** | K **0** | | K **0** |
| Increase view magnification | **=** | **=** | **=** | unmapped |
| Decrease view magnification | **-** | **-** | **-** | unmapped |
| Reset view magnification | **0** | **0** | **0** | unmapped |
| Increase view resolution | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | **=** |
| Decrease view resolution | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | **-** |
| Detach | **z** | **z** | **z** | **z** |
| Toggle hide model on attach | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Attach to the next entity allowed by the attachment filter | Period (.) | Period (.) | Period (.) | Period (.) |
| Attach to next entity or prop | **>** | **>** | **>** | **>** |
| Attach to the previous entity allowed by the attachment filter | Comma (,) | Comma (,) | Comma (,) | Comma (,) |
| Attach to previous entity or prop | **<** | **<** | **<** | **<** |
| Set mimic attach type | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Set tether attach type | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Next attach mode | **Shift+z** | **Shift+z** | **Shift+z** | **Shift+z** |
| Increase linear speed | K **7** | K **7** | K **7** | K **7** |
| Decrease linear speed | K **1** | K **1** | K **1** | K **1** |
| Increase orbit speed | K **+** | K **+** | K **+** | K **+** |
| Decrease orbit speed | K **-** | K **-** | K **-** | K **-** |
| Increment rotation speed gain | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |

**Table 3. Observer Keyboard Mappings (continued)**

| Observer Movement | Observer | Level Observer | Laptop | 2D Level Observer |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Decrement rotation speed gain | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle speed scaling on or off | K * | K * | K * | K * |
| Toggle prop transparency | T | T | T | T |
| Toggle terrain scaling | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Increment terrain scale | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Decrement terrain scale | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle track histories | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle entity labels | L | L | L | L |
| Toggle rotate entity symbols | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle tactical graphics | Shift+G | Shift+G | Shift+G | Shift+G |
| Toggle entity height above terrain lines | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle tactical graphics HAT lines | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle entity height above terrain mode | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle tactical graphics height above terrain mode | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Toggle constrain to terrain on or off | / | / | / | / |
| Toggle constrain to center | U | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |
| Clear the current movement mode. This key is an escape mechanism if keys are not behaving as you expect. This is typically due to a loss of the window context. | c | c | c | c |
| Next observer mode | ] | ] | ] | ] |
| Previous observer mode | [ | [ | [ | [ |
| Toggle view controls on or off | Shift+c | Shift+c | | Shift+c |
| Clear all trajectory histories | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped | unmapped |

**Table 3. Observer Keyboard Mappings (continued)**

| Observer Movement | Observer | Level Observer | Laptop | 2D Level Observer |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Toggle OSG framerate statistics | **F2** | **F2** | **F2** | **F2** |
| Print OSG statistics | **Shift**+**[** | **Shift**+**[** | **Shift**+**[** | **Shift**+**[** |


Mech Bridge 1
Scout PLT 3
Route 1
Rifle CO 3
SPA BTY 3
Scout PLT 2
ADA1
protect
ADARSPt2
Weap CO 1
ADA3
Air CAV TRP 2
Mech CO 3
Waypoint 1
ADA PLT 1
ADARSPt1
SPA BTY 2
AR CO 1
CSS CO 1
Eng MAN 1
Chemical Contamination Area
Scout PLT 1
Bakersfield
SPA BTY 1
Air CAV TRP 1
Bakersfield
Greenfield
Lamont
Weedpatch
184
35° 11'31" N 118° 56'54" W